Help+Manual®

Write. Publish. Deliver.

User Manual

Version 9.2

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Part I Welcome to Help+Manual 20

Part II What's new in Version 9? 22

1 User Interface 23
2 PDF and Printed Manuals 24
3 Embedded PDF Files 26
4 Link Tool 27
5 Version Control 28
6 Image Styles 29
7 Markdown Import 30
8 Project Configuration 30
9 DeepL Machine Translation 30
10 Publishing 32

Part III Introduction 34

1 About Help+Manual 35
2 Why Help+Manual? 35
3 License Management 37
4 The User Interface 43
- Devices with Hi-Res Displays 44
- Workspaces and Preferences 45
- The File Menu 47
- The Project Explorer 48
- Toolbars 53
- The Editor 55
- The Quick Search Tool 58
- Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59

5 Getting help 65
6 How to buy Help+Manual 66

Part IV Quick Start Tutorials 68

1 Create Your First Project! 69
2 Get to Know the Project Explorer 70
- Project Explorer Sections 70
- Navigating in the Project Explorer 73
- Managing Topic Files 77
- Tips & Tricks in the Project Explorer 82

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Converting old projects 85
Opening recent projects 89
Importing data 90
Adding topics 91
Editing topics 94
Using styles 96
Organizing the TOC 100
Inserting graphics 104
Inserting tables 107
Creating hyperlinks 110
Publishing your project 113

3 Tutorial Projects and Templates 116

Template files 116
Featured images for title pages 118
Video & Interactive Media 119
Multiple TOCs 119
Conditional output tutorial 120
Modular help systems tutorial 120
Non-scrolling header template 121
Help+Manual help source code 121
HTML5 & CSS tutorial 122

Part V Basic Working Procedures 123

1 Creating Projects 124

Creating an empty new project 124
HMXZ or HMXP? 126
Setting the default topic 128
Publishing formats 132
Converting old projects 132
Command line project converter 137

2 Configuring Your Project 139

Project Configuration 139
Background colors and help viewers 142
International languages setup 143

3 Importing Data 148

New project with imported data 149
Importing Sandcastle projects 151
Importing data into existing projects 155
Settings for importing data 157
Importing & copying topics and XML files 165
Merging HTML files into topics 169

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

4 Creating Topic Files 172
About topics and the TOC 173
Creating new topics in the TOC 174
Creating new topics in Topic Files 179
Creating topics from other sources 183
Topic Options 186
Editing the topic caption and header 189
Topic headers 191
Using help windows for CHM files 194
Reusing content with snippets 196
Using HTML page templates 203
Creating popup topics 207
Using JavaScript popups 212
Using field-level popups 215
5 Editing Topic Files 217
Recently changed topics 217
Topic Options 218
Topic History - Previous Versions 220
Word and Character Count 223
Writing and formatting text 223
The paragraph end mark 228
Topic Headers 229
Selecting text and content 232
Copying, cutting and pasting 233
Searching and replacing 235
Spell checking 238
Special characters, lines and breaks 245
Using comments and bookmarks 253
Mini-TOC and Link lists 256
Inserting QR codes 262
Printing topics 263
Editing XML source code 264
6 Re-using content with snippets 265
PDF Snippets 272
7 Text Formatting and Styles 273
Formatting text manually 274
Quick guide to using styles 277
Style display in the Toolbar 279
Defining styles 281
HTML fonts and headings 286

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Editing styles ... 288
Formatting text with styles ... 292
Turning formatting into styles ... 295
Using indents ... 299
Multiple style sets ... 302
Image caption and comment styles ... 305
Copying styles from other projects ... 306
Table styles ... 308
Formatting program source code ... 310
Numbered and Bulleted Lists ... 313
Bulleted lists ... 313
Numbered lists ... 318
Outline numbered lists ... 324
Formatting lists ... 334
Temporary list customization ... 337
HTML list output format ... 341
8 Managing the TOC & Topic Files ... 342
Multiple TOCs ... 343
Topic Options ... 352
Topic History - Previous Versions ... 355
Moving, cutting and pasting topics ... 357
Editing the TOC caption and topic header ... 360
Deleting TOC entries and topics ... 361
Sorting TOC entries ... 363
Changing the levels of topics ... 364
Exporting and importing topics ... 365
Topic IDs and context numbers ... 368
Multiple TOC entries for one topic ... 371
Topic icon, status and timestamps ... 373
Topic files without TOC entries ... 375
Managing topic files in the Explorer ... 377
9 Toggles: Expanding Text and Images ... 382
About toggles ... 383
Expanding section toggles ... 384
Expanding inline text toggles ... 389
Expanding image toggles ... 392
Toggle IDs ... 395
Editing and reusing toggles ... 396
Formatting toggles with CSS ... 399
Expand All / Collapse All ... 402
Toggle troubleshooting ... 404
Updating old expanding sections ... 406

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Printing topics containing toggles 407
10 Links, Anchors, Macros, Scripts and HTML 409
Supported hyperlink types 409
Inserting topic links 410
Anchors - jump targets 415
Inserting figure links 420
Inserting Internet links 422
Inserting file links 424
Link lists and See Also links 430
Contextual Links from Applications 435
Linking to PDF files 438
Linking to WebHelp Topics 440
Linking to eWriter topics 444
Inserting script links 452
Editing and formatting links 455
Linking to other projects and help files 457
Preventing dead links 461
Named destinations in PDF 465
Links and secondary windows 469
Inserting HTML code objects 469
A-Links and A-Keywords 476
11 Using Graphics 479
Supported graphics formats 479
Inserting graphics and screenshots 481
Positioning graphics 489
Image Styles 492
Responsive images 496
SVG Graphics 500
Editing, resizing, PDF, DOCX and hi-res devices 503
Using the Impict graphics editor 506
Using the screen capture function 507
Using graphics as hyperlinks 508
Graphics with hotspots, macros and scripts 509
Finding and replacing graphics 513
Managing your graphics 514
Shortcuts for graphics 517
12 Working with Tables 518
About tables 519
Inserting tables 520
Managing column widths 522
Editing, copying and pasting in tables 525

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Selecting and formatting cells and tables 525
Adding, deleting and moving rows and columns 528
Splitting, merging and unmerging 529
Sorting tables 530
Deleting the contents of cells 531
Converting text to tables 531
Indenting tables 532
Table styles 533
Table Counters, Captions and CSS 535
Text/paragraph styles in tables 537
Nested tables 539
Using background graphics 540
Handling table borders 541
Conditional text in tables 542

13 Videos and Online Media 548

Inserting videos and online media 549
Animated HelpXplain presentations 561
Support in output formats 563

14 Keywords and Indexes 565

Adding and editing keywords 565
Editing the index directly 568
Find and replace keywords 573
Exporting and importing the index 574
Using keywords with anchors 577
Using A-keywords 579
Index section header separators 582

15 Single Sourcing 585

One Source - Many Formats 586
One Source - Different Versions 589
One Source - Multiple TOCs 592
Templates and Skins 601

16 Peer Review with Annotated PDFs 604

17 Backups and Emergencies 608

Part VI Publishing 612

1 Publishing Your Projects 613

General publishing instructions 613
Publishing instructions by format 618
Publishing projects with multiple TOCs 629
CHM in Asian Languages 629

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Microsoft help compilers ... 632
Publication checklist ... 633
Distribution files ... 636
Transforming your output with skins ... 638
2 Configuring for Publishing ... 644
Publishing for Hi-Res Displays ... 644
HTML Help ... 645
Help Windows ... 650
Optimize Publish Speed ... 651
WebHelp ... 655
Layout and templates ... 660
Full text search enhancements ... 664
Profiling WebHelp with Google Analytics ... 666
Transforming your output with skins ... 667
HM2Go - mini server for local WebHelp ... 673
Adobe PDF and printed manuals ... 677
MS Word DOCX ... 682
Configuring DOCX templates ... 683
The Topics Section (required) ... 684
The Table of Contents ... 686
Keyword Index, Table of Figures ... 689
Additional pages, variables, Word fields ... 693
Creating variable fields in Word ... 694
About the Word Macros ... 695
eWriter Help ... 696
Changes in the new version ... 697
Compared to CHM and WebHelp ... 699
Links & Context Help ... 701
Project and viewer configuration ... 709
Project content ... 710
General Settings ... 711
App Menus ... 714
Publishing eWriter Help ... 716
Distributing eWriter Help ... 718
The eViewer Apps ... 719
Differences Windows/Mac ... 721
Installation & configuration ... 724
Open menu entry ... 727
User data storage ... 728
Localization ... 729
EWriter for Software Help ... 731
Links & Context Help ... 731
URL-style command syntax ... 739
loadpage ... 744
loadcontext ... 745

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

defpos ... 745
openmenu ... 747
pw ... 748
close ... 748
JavaScript ... 749
Kindle/Mobi and ePUB 3.0 eBooks ... 749
Standard ePUB 3.0 eBooks ... 750
Amazon Kindle/Mobi eBooks ... 753
Formatting recommendations ... 756
Cover pictures with title and author ... 758
eBook settings and templates ... 760
Managing Fonts in eBooks ... 764
Distributing ePUB and Kindle eBooks ... 768
ePUB resources ... 769
Optimize Publish Speed ... 771
Visual Studio Help ... 775
Optimize Publish Speed ... 775
3 Testing and Statistics ... 779
Tools for finding help bugs ... 779
Using the Report Tool ... 780
Word and Character Count ... 781
Testing links and missing graphics ... 781
Searching for topics and referrers ... 782
Testing keywords ... 785
4 PDF and Printed Manuals ... 785
About PDF output ... 786
Peer review with annotated PDFs ... 786
Topic headings ... 790
Title page images ... 792
Named destinations ... 793
Graphics in PDF ... 797
Publishing PDF files ... 798
Printing user manuals ... 800
Using PDF templates ... 803
The Print Manual Designer ... 805
Embedding files in PDFs ... 807
Fonts & font embedding ... 808
5 Automating Publishing Jobs ... 809
Using publishing tasks ... 810
Creating and editing tasks ... 812
6 Command Line Publishing ... 816
H+M command line syntax ... 817

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Exit codes ... 825
Basic command line options ... 826
Using include options ... 828
Output to multiple formats ... 830
Skins & redefining variables ... 834
INI and batch files ... 837
Temp files location ... 844
Publishing from your application ... 845

Part VII More Advanced Procedures 847

1 Using Version Control Systems ... 848
Introduction ... 848
Syncing Your Project ... 850
Supported Version Control Systems ... 851
Configuration in Help+Manual ... 852
Using Git ... 853
Git Components ... 854
GitHub & GitHub Desktop ... 856
Other Hosting Options ... 863
Configuring a Merge Tool ... 868
Using Git in Help+Manual ... 871
Using Subversion (SVN) ... 876
SVN Components ... 877
Setting up SVN ... 878
Setting up your Projects ... 879
Configuring a Merge Tool ... 884
Using SVN in Help+Manual ... 886
Scripts and Customization ... 889
Backups ... 891

2 Using Context-Sensitive Help ... 892
Context help support by output format ... 892
Creating context-sensitive topics ... 895
Links to help from your application ... 897
Linking to WebHelp topics ... 899
Linking to and controlling eWriter help ... 903
Auto-generating topics for context help ... 911
Named destinations in PDF ... 913

3 Using Variables ... 917
Where you can use variables ... 917
User-defined variables ... 919
Global predefined variables ... 923
Editing, formatting and disabling variables ... 924

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Inserting variables in topics and headers 932
Inserting variables in other project locations 934
Date and time variables 937
Counter variables for numbering 941
User-defined counters 942
Figure and table counters 944
Find and replace variables 958
Variables in HTML templates 959
Redefining variables 960
Variables in style repositories 962
The power of editable variables 963
Variables in PDF templates 968
4 Conditions and Customized Output 969
How conditional output works 969
Multiple TOCs 970
About include options 979
Using conditional output 982
Preventing dead links 984
Defining include options 988
Topic include options 989
Conditional text include options 994
Conditional text in tables 996
Modular projects include options 1002
Redefining variables 1004
HTML template conditions 1006
5 Templates in Help+Manual 1007
Template types 1007
Templates for projects 1008
HTML Skins 1010
Content templates for topics 1016
PDF and printed manual templates 1019
Word DOCX templates 1021
HTML templates 1021
eWriter Help Templates 1024
Page templates for ePUB and Kindle eBooks 1024
Using secondary windows in CHM help 1025
6 HTML Output and HTML Templates 1026
Font Size Units & Dimensions in HTML 1027
Types of HTML templates 1028
Editing HTML templates 1030
HTML topic page templates 1036

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Layout template for WebHelp 1043
The TOC template for WebHelp 1044
The Keyword Index template for WebHelp 1045
The Search template for WebHelp 1046
HTML font families and headings 1048
Variables in HTML templates 1049
Conditional output in HTML templates 1052
Graphics references in HTML templates 1056
Featured images for chapter titles 1059
Referencing external files 1062
Script and CSS components for experts 1063
Troubleshooting 1075
7 Working with Style Repositories 1076
Creating and using style repositories 1078
Styles in style repositories 1083
Snippets in style repositories 1086
Variables and build options 1087
8 Working with Modular Help Systems 1088
Support in output formats 1088
Creating and editing modular projects 1089
Merge methods for CHM 1096
Links and search in runtime CHM 1100
Managing modules in the TOC 1103
Managing graphics in modules 1107
Managing IDs and context numbers 1107
Creating links between modules 1110
Publishing modular projects 1114
Multiple WebHelp projects 1117
9 Using Baggage Files 1119
Uses for Baggage Files 1120
Adding and referencing files 1121
Removing, exporting and importing 1122
Editing Baggage Files 1123
Baggage handling 1124
10 Source Code Documentation 1125
About MS Sandcastle 1126
Configuring Your .NET Project 1127
Importing from Visual Studio 1129
11 Visual Studio Help 1132
Requirements and limitations 1132

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

About publishing VS Help 1135
12 XML and XML editing 1137
XML Editing 1137
Generating H+M XML 1138
13 Using OLE Objects 1139
Inserting OLE objects 1140
14 Replacing Formatting and Styles 1143
Introduction to style replacement 1144
Font attributes - styled text 1147
Font attributes - unstyled text 1151
Paragraph attributes - styled text 1154
Paragraph attributes - unstyled text 1158
Styling imported formatted text 1162
Integrating imported formatting globally 1165

Part VIII Multi-User Editing & Translation 1170

1 Multi-User Editing 1171
2 Translating Your Projects 1177
About translation support 1177
Machine translation with DeepL 1178
Using translation memory tools 1187
Translating in Help+Manual 1191
Translating with external editors 1194
Translating texts in images 1197
Translation-friendly Tidy XML 1198
Instructions for translators and editors 1200

Part IX Help+Manual Premium Pack 1204

Part X Tools included with Help+Manual 1206

1 The Screen Capture Tool 1207
2 The Project Report Tool 1212
3 The Impict Screenshot Editor 1216
4 The Print Manual Designer 1217
5 The Spell Checker 1220
Creating and editing custom dictionaries 1226
Using custom dictionaries 1228
6 The Formula Editor 1232
7 The Project Converter 1234

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

8 The Help Context Tool 1241

9 The Project Synchronization Tool 1245

About Project Synchronization 1245

Synchronization Steps 1247

Step 1: Create a translation sibling 1247

Step 2: Translate the original project copy 1250

Step 3: Update the original project 1251

Step 4: Synchronize the new version 1251

Step 5: Translate the changes 1254

Identifying changes 1255

Interim updates 1256

Synching existing projects 1257

Problems and troubleshooting 1258

Part XI Reference 1260

1 Program Options 1261

Program Options - General 1261

Program Options - Ribbon 1263

Program Options - Shortcuts 1264

Program Options - Editor 1265

Program Options - Compilers 1268

Program Options - PDF Export 1271

Program Options - Version Control 1272

2 Workspace, Toolbars and Dialogs 1274

The Workspace 1275

The Topic Options Tab 1277

The XML Source Tab 1280

The File Menu 1281

Recent Projects & Workspaces 1282

Publish 1282

Save As 1288

Print Manual 1290

Import 1292

Style Repository Manager 1293

Resolve Styles Dialog 1295

The Project Tab 1296

Clipboard 1296

Manage Topics 1297

Add Topic/File 1298

Explore 1304

Change 1304

Find 1306

File 1307

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Mini Toolbar ... 1308
Project ... 1309
Publish ... 1310
Bookmark ... 1315
Options ... 1316
Tools ... 1316
Spelling ... 1316
Screen Capture ... 1316
Image Editor ... 1318
Report Tool ... 1318
Index Tool ... 1321
Templates & Skins ... 1323
Context Tool ... 1323
Synchronize ... 1324
The Write Tab ... 1324
Clipboard ... 1324
Editing ... 1325
Find & Replace Text ... 1326
Font ... 1328
Format Font ... 1329
Syntax Highlighting ... 1331
Paragraph ... 1334
Format Paragraph ... 1336
Format Borders and Shading ... 1339
Format Bullets and Numbering ... 1340
Styles ... 1345
Create Style from Selection ... 1346
Edit Styles ... 1347
Replace Styles ... 1349
Insert / Insert Object ... 1349
Link ... 1352
Image ... 1359
Hotspot editor ... 1361
Media: Local Videos ... 1363
Media: Online Video Services ... 1365
Media: HelpXplain ... 1367
Anchor ... 1369
Text Variable ... 1370
Conditional Text ... 1371
Toggle ... 1373
Caption ... 1378
HTML Code Object ... 1379
Comment ... 1381
QR Code ... 1381
Snippets ... 1382
OLE Object ... 1385

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Special Characters ... 1387
The Table Tab ... 1390
Table Properties ... 1391
The View Tab ... 1398
The Help Tab ... 1399
3 Project Configuration Settings ... 1400
Common Properties ... 1401
Title & Copyright ... 1402
Language Settings ... 1403
Project Search Path ... 1405
Text Variables ... 1406
Custom Builds ... 1410
Topic Status ... 1410
Miscellaneous Options ... 1411
HTML Page Templates ... 1413
Publishing Options ... 1415
WebHelp ... 1415
Layout ... 1415
Navigation ... 1420
Table of Contents ... 1423
Keyword Index ... 1425
Full Text Search ... 1428
Zoom Indexer ... 1433
Google Analytics ... 1433
HTML Export Options ... 1435
Popup Topics ... 1440
HTML Fonts ... 1441
Adobe PDF ... 1442
PDF Layout ... 1442
PDF Options ... 1446
Font Embedding ... 1447
CID font embedding ... 1450
Microsoft HTML Help ... 1451
Help Windows ... 1452
General Options ... 1452
HTML Help Viewer UI ... 1454
Extended .HHP Settings ... 1457
HTML Export Options ... 1459
Popup Topics ... 1462
HTML Fonts ... 1463
Visual Studio Help ... 1464
Namespace & Options ... 1464
Popup Topics ... 1466
HTML Export Options ... 1467
Microsoft Word ... 1472

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Word Options ... 1472
eBooks: ePUB+Kindle ... 1472
ePUB+Kindle: General Settings ... 1473
ePUB+Kindle: Table of Contents ... 1475
ePUB+Kindle: Page Template ... 1476
HTML Export Options ... 1476
eWriter Help ... 1477
General Settings ... 1477
App Menus ... 1479
4 Styles, Formatting and Tables ... 1482
Why use dynamic styles? ... 1482
How do styles work? ... 1484
About inheritance in styles ... 1485
The standard styles ... 1490
Paragraph, text and table styles ... 1491
Image Styles ... 1492
Style organization strategies ... 1497
Tabs, indents and HTML ... 1500
About table and column widths ... 1502
5 Publishing Formats ... 1504
HTML Help ... 1506
HTML Help project files ... 1508
WebHelp ... 1510
Browser compatibility ... 1512
Kindle and ePUB eBooks ... 1513
Apple iBooks® - ePUB ... 1513
Amazon Kindle/Mobi ... 1515
ePUB resources ... 1517
eWriter Help ... 1519
Adobe PDF ... 1523
Printed manuals ... 1524
Visual Studio Help ... 1525
MS Word DOCX ... 1525
6 Project Content ... 1526
Snippets and multiple references ... 1527
Graphics, Videos and OLE Objects ... 1529
Graphic formats and file size ... 1529
SVG Graphics ... 1532
Embedded graphics ... 1535
About using video files ... 1536
About using OLE objects ... 1538
Scripts and HTML ... 1539
About JavaScript links ... 1540

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

About Winhelp macro links ... 1544
About inline HTML code ... 1545
7 Modules, Conditional Output & Variables ... 1547
Modular Projects ... 1547
CHM: Runtime and publish time merging ... 1551
Planning modular projects ... 1555
Variables and Conditional Output ... 1558
Where you can use variables ... 1558
Global predefined variables ... 1561
Variables in Style Repositories ... 1565
Date and time variables ... 1565
HTML template variables ... 1569
HTML template output conditions ... 1577
PDF template variables ... 1581
Conditional output ... 1582
TOC entry and topic file include options ... 1584
Context-Sensitive Help & Popups ... 1586
Context-sensitive help technologies ... 1587
About popup topics ... 1590
Using field-level popups ... 1592
Implementing context help ... 1594
Popups in CHM and eBooks ... 1597
About map files ... 1598
8 Project Structure & Templates ... 1600
Topic IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords ... 1600
About topic IDs and anchors ... 1601
About help context numbers ... 1603
About index keywords ... 1605
About A-Keywords ... 1606
Help Windows in HTML Help ... 1609
External windows in HTML Help ... 1609
Help windows in HTML Help ... 1610
HTML Templates ... 1611
Graphics in HTML templates ... 1613
HTML Template Variables ... 1615
HTML Template Output Conditions ... 1623
9 International Languages and Unicode ... 1627
About H+M's Unicode support ... 1627
About project language settings ... 1629
Language settings and PDF ... 1632
Part XII Frequently Asked Questions 1634
1 General questions ... 1635
2 Publishing questions ... 1635

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3 Dynamic styles questions 1636
4 Editing questions 1637
5 HTML and HTML Help questions 1638
6 PDF questions 1641
7 Printing questions 1643
8 Searching in WebHelp 1644
9 Spell check questions 1645
10 Table questions 1646
11 User interface questions 1646
12 Video questions 1647

Index 1648

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Welcome to Help+Manual

Welcome to Help+Manual! Technical documentation has never been easier. And never more fun.

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

1 Welcome to Help+Manual

Turbocharge your technical writing and have fun doing it!

Help+Manual 9 is a single-source documentation authoring suite for individual technical writers and teams. It is now the most mature and comprehensive solution of its kind available. The focus is twofold:

- Make documentation development as efficient and enjoyable as possible for the author (you and your team)
- Enable you to produce the best possible documentation in all relevant formats, customized to your specific needs

About this documentation

This help is designed both as a course in using Help+Manual and as an ongoing reference while you are working with the program. You can skim it for easy reference, work through it systematically for in-depth knowledge and refer to it for additional information whenever you need.

Getting started – new users

- Study the Introduction 35 and Quick Start Tutorials 69 sections to familiarize yourself with the basics of the program.
- Check out all the links in the **Help** tab – plenty of help is available!
- Visit the User Forum to get help from us and other experienced Help+Manual users.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

What's new in Version 9?

Help+Manual 9 is the best release ever. It adds improvements and powerful new features that will change the way you work on your documentation.

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

2 What's new in Version 9?

This new version of Help+Manual includes a wide range of major improvements and new features. Some that users have been asking for, some that will surprise you. The user interface is more modern and attractive and works even better than before on modern, high-resolution Windows displays. The eWriter format has new standalone viewers for both Windows and MacOS, allowing you to create modern local software documentation for both Windows and Apple Mac applications. Table and figure counters can now be referenced directly with links that include their captions and numbers.

Help+Manual upgraders should read this chapter!

If you're upgrading from an earlier version of Help+Manual you should definitely take the time to read this chapter. It will give you direct access to all the new features and changes that are going to make working with HM even more efficient than it was already.

If you're new to Help+Manual

If you're a completely new user, get started with the Quick Start Tutorials 69 chapter. That will teach you the basic principles of working with the program and introduce you to the most important tools. After that you can start referring to the Basic Working Procedures 124 chapter to help you with your daily work.

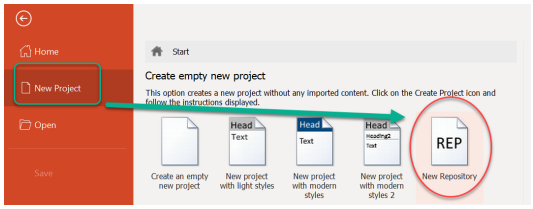
2.1 User Interface

Basic version supports HMXP for Help+Manual Translation Assistant

The Basic version of Help+Manual can now save uncompressed HMXP projects and activate Tidy XML for more efficient translation. This makes it compatible with our Help+Manual Translation Assistant program.

New Project dialog

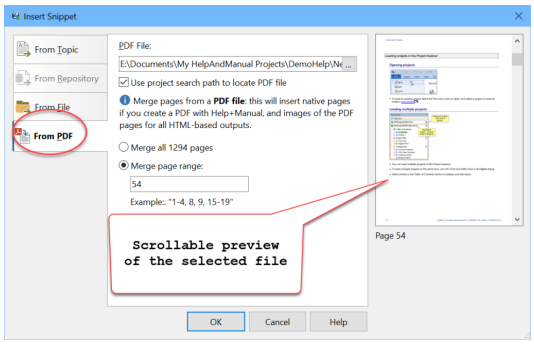
It is now possible to create a new style repository 1076 directly with the **New Project** dialog. In the past, you had to first create a regular project and then save it as a style repository.



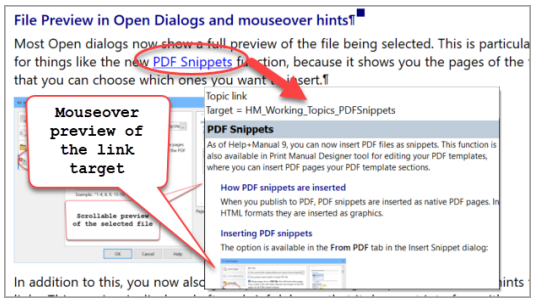
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

File Preview in Open Dialogs and mouseover hints

Most Open dialogs now show a full preview of the file being selected. This is particularly useful for things like the new PDF Snippets 272 function, because it shows you the pages of the file so that you can choose which ones you want to insert.



In addition to this, you now also get a preview of the target topic in mouseover hints for topic links, and entries in the table of contents. This preview is displayed after a brief delay so that it does not interfere with normal operation.



Author Comments

When you save comments 253 the timestamp now includes the time as well as the date..

Syntax Highlighter

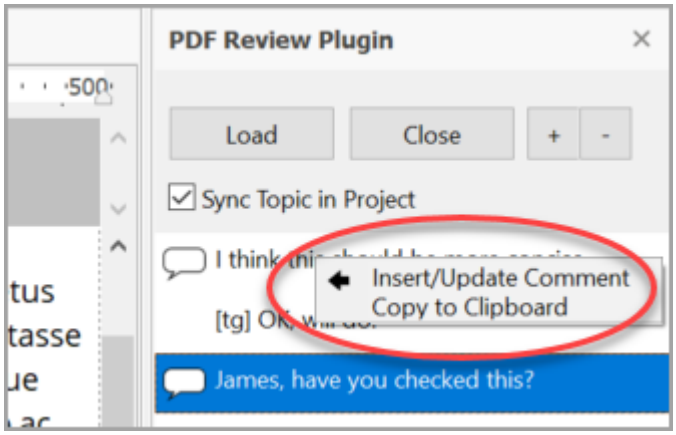
The performance of the Syntax Highlighter 310 has been improved.

2.2 PDF and Printed Manuals

PDF Peer Review Plugin

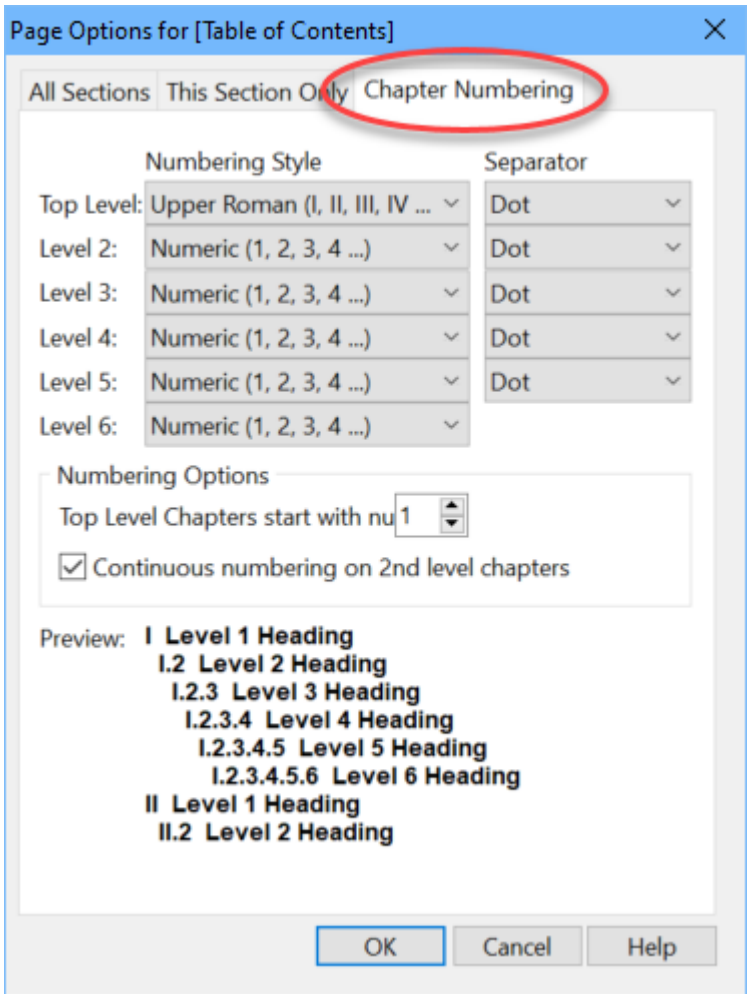
The PDF Peer Review Plugin 604 now includes a context menu that allows you to update the comments in your project with comments and annotations added to the PDF by your colleagues.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Extended chapter numbering options

In Print Manual Designer you now have much more control over how your chapter numbering is formatted, with a range of new options in a separate Chapter Numbering tab in the Page Options dialog of the Topics Section.



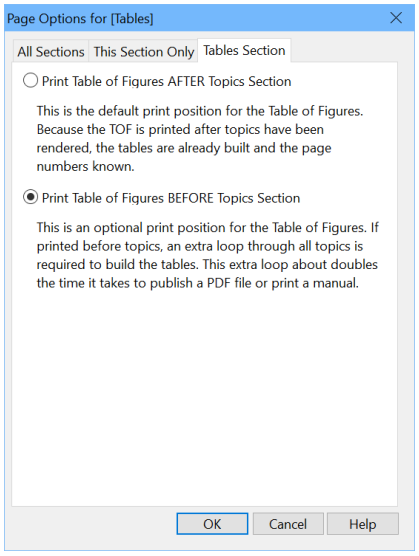
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Extended support for transparent PNGs

Transparent PNGs can now also be used in Print Manual Designer for both PDF and printed manuals. (They were already supported for PDF in topic pages, but not in Manual Designer).

Alternative positions for Table of Figures

The Table of Figures section in Print Manual Designer can now be exported either before or after the Table of Contents.



2.3 Embedded PDF Files

In a major new feature, Help+Manual 9 now supports **embedding** of PDF files, including **native embedding** in PDF output, both in your project and in your PDF templates. In the past, this was only possible by editing the PDF with external tools after it was generated by Help+Manual.

See PDF Snippets 272 for instructions. This feature is also supported in the Print Manual Designer 805 tool for editing PDF templates.

PDFs are embedded natively

When Help+Manual exports a PDF, the embedded PDF pages are inserted natively. This means that they include all their fonts, their page layout and their portrait or landscape page orientation.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Insert PDFs in your PDF templates

Print Manual Designer now allows you to insert external PDFs in any location in the template. You can insert individual pages or the entire PDF. The page numbering of the output PDF is adjusted automatically, and the function supports PDFs with both portrait and landscape pages, or a combination.

Insert PDFs in your project

You can insert both individual pages from PDF files and entire PDFs as snippets with the new PDF Snippets 272 function. In PDF output the pages are inserted as native PDFs, here too with automatic adjustment of page numbers. In other output formats the PDF pages are converted into images.

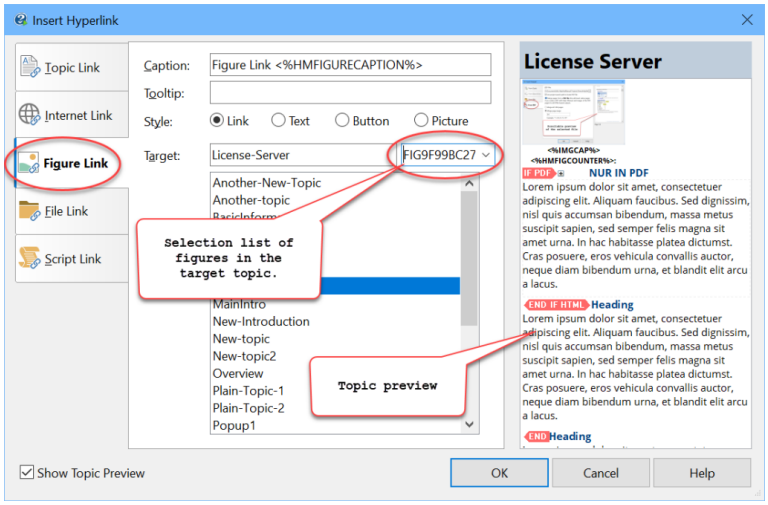
Supported PDF types

You can insert any PDF file, not just one created by Help+Manual.

2.4 Link Tool

Figure links for images and tables

The link tool now includes a dedicated Figure Link 420 option for linking to figures, tables and link captions that have been added to the list of figures. The figure is selected in the same way as an anchor in a topic.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Link to images, tables and captions with topic links

The topic link tool 410 can now link to images 481, tables 520 and caption objects 944 for figure and table counters with regular topic links, in the same way that you link to anchors. The only requirement is that the target object must have an ID assigned to it. Then the ID will show up in list of anchors displayed in the drop-down beside the *Target:* field in the link tool.

2.5 Version Control

See Using Version Control Systems 848 for full details on the new VCS support in Help+Manual 9.

Integrated Git and SVN support plus an editable scripted interface for any VCS

In the past, Help+Manual used the programming interface of version control systems (VCS) to interface with them. This involved a huge amount of development work, which was repeated every time the systems introduced software changes. Among other things, this caused significant problems for Subversion (SVN) users. In addition to having to use older versions of SVN, they also had to install additional SVN tools from another third party provider.

The new scripted interface is user-configurable

This situation was untenable and has now been corrected. Help+Manual now uses the editable scripted interface supported by all modern version control systems. Ready-to-use scripts for Git and Subversion are already included. In addition to this, there is a script template called by Help+Manual that you can use to interface with any other system that supports command line access. The scripts for Git and SVN are also fully-editable, allowing you to configure them for your own needs.

Resulting changes

No more TOC icons

This update has resulted in a couple of unavoidable changes. First and foremost, you will no longer have the overlay icons in the Help+Manual TOC showing the current VCS status of each topic. This is no longer possible, because it depends on the programming interface. However, the benefit is that you now have the ability to configure VCS access and

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

provide integrated access to any modern VCS, not just the nominally supported Git and SVN.

No default support for Team Foundation Server

In addition to this, we have removed standard support for Microsoft Team Foundation Server (TFS). Microsoft TFS has always been the most problematic VCS, and it is available in several not mutually compatible versions, so Help+Manual was only able to support a subset of the system anyway. TFS is also on the way to becoming obsolete, and even Microsoft is switching to Git for its own version control needs. We have thus decided to no longer support it by default. Instead, TFS users who must stay with TFS need to configure the custom script template for their version of TFS. This can be achieved using Microsoft's **`tf.exe`** program for the command line calls. However, if possible, we strongly recommend switching to Git, which is significantly superior to TFS.

2.6 Image Styles

Many users have asked for the ability to apply borders to images globally, or to define the same size for an entire class of images. This is now possible with the new image style introduced in Help+Manual 9.

You can now define styles for images 492 in the same way as for paragraphs and tables. And just as with paragraphs and tables, changing the image style definition changes the formatting for all images tagged with the style.

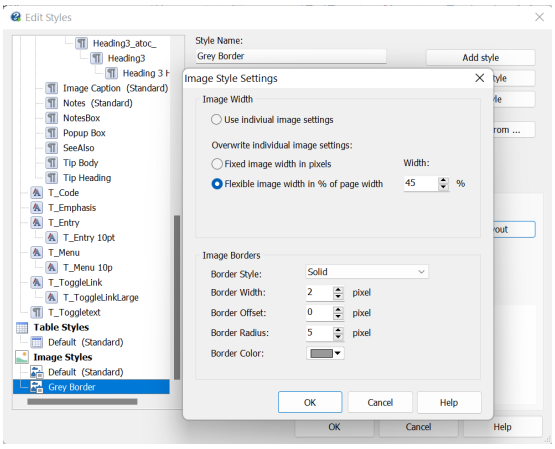


Image styles: Borders

You can define the border style (solid, dashed etc.), width and color. Plus the radius, which creates rounded corners, and an offset, for a border offset from the image.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Image styles: Scaling

Define the dimensions of the image, either absolutely or relative to the page width. This ensures that all images with this style will have the same width. If you choose relative percentage, they will also be responsive, adjusting in relation to the width of the current window. This is essential for responsive web design for both desktop and mobile devices, and it also ensures that your images won't break PDF and Word layouts.

2.7 Markdown Import

Markdown import for new and existing projects

Help+Manual now supports importing Markdown files, both for creating new projects and into existing projects. See Creating an empty new project 124, New project with imported data 149 and Importing data into existing projects 155 for details.

There are no special settings for Markdown import as it is by definition a very simple format. The Markdown flavor (Daring Fireball or Common Mark) is selected automatically on the basis of the content of the file. A set of standard styles are used to represent the few Markdown formatting options.

2.8 Project Configuration

Configuration > Common Properties > Project Search Path

Invalid search path entries are now identified automatically and highlighted in red.

Configuration > Common Properties > Text Variables

You will now be warned that you are creating a conflicting duplicate if you try to create a variable with the same name as one of Help+Manual's own predefined global variables, for example **`TITLE`** or **`COPYRIGHT`**.

2.9 DeepL Machine Translation

API Glossaries

The new API Glossaries in the DeepL machine translation tool 1178 radically improves the ability to define your own translations for specific words and phrases. The earlier word list option was local on your computer and couldn't integrate with DeepL's translation on its

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

servers. This meant that your translations weren't included in DeepL's advanced context analysis, often resulting in less meaningful translations.

In contrast, API Glossaries are fully integrated with DeepL, so that the words you define for your translations are included in the contextual analysis, with significantly better results.

Automatic selection of the correct Base API URL

You now no longer have to select the Base API URL for your DeepL subscription. This is now done automatically on the basis of your free or paid DeepL Auth-Key.

Turkish language support added

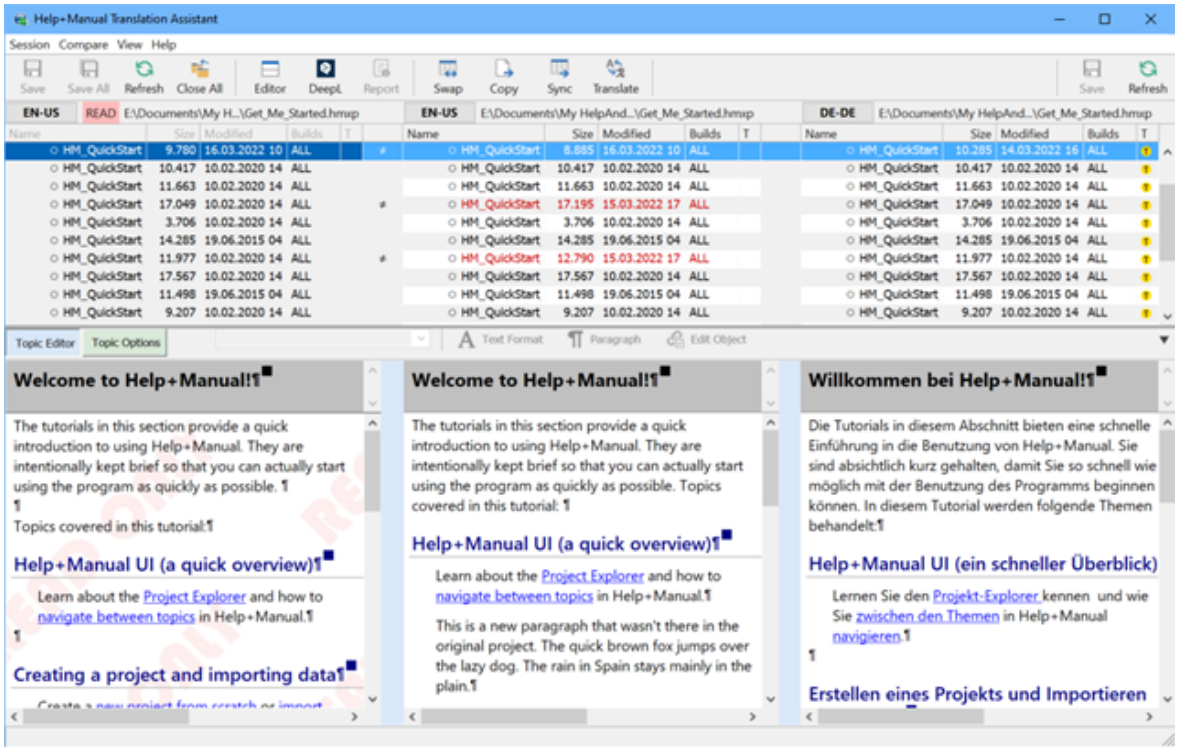
The DeepL plugin now also supports Turkish in both directions, in addition to all the other languages.

Bulk DeepL translation for entire topics and projects with Help+Manual Translation Assistant

The new Help+Manual Translation Assistant is a new product, but definitely worth mentioning here. It gives you a WYSIWYG three-pane comparison view of original, update and translation that makes it much easier for translators to work on Help+Manual projects. It is fully integrated with DeepL, allowing you to perform bulk translations of entire projects in minutes. This can radically reduce your costs by doing all the hard work of the raw translation. The human translator then just needs to do basic proofreading and correction.

Once you have done the translation, HMTA can then generate a zip package of all the files that you want the translator or proofreader to work on. They then return the edited package to you, which HMTA imports seamlessly into your existing project.

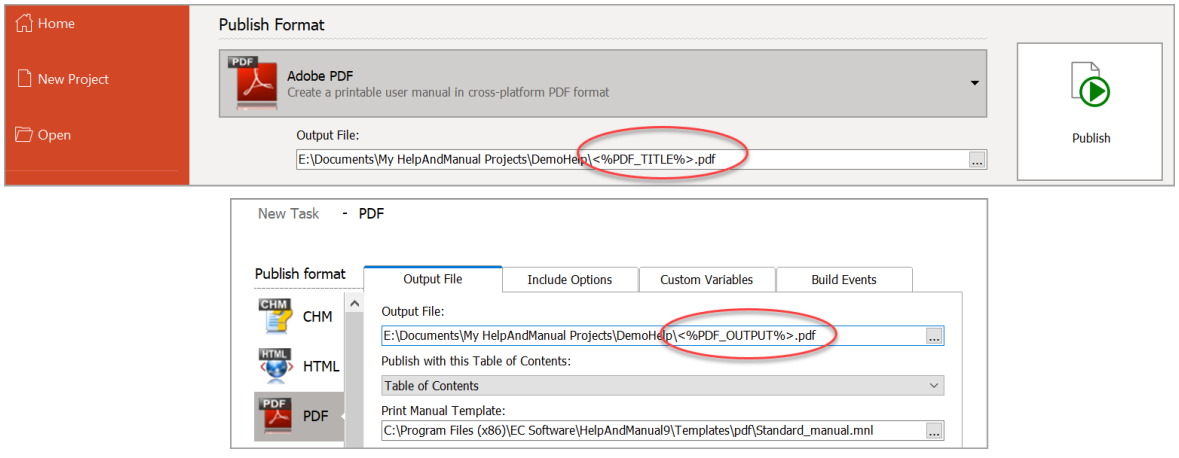
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2.10 Publishing

Global variables support for output

You can now use user-defined and HM global variables in the output file name fields for publishing, both in the main Publish screen and in the Publishing Task Manager for batch output. The only restriction is that it must be a global variable defined for the entire project, not a per-topic variable definition.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Automatic selection of output file on "Explore output folder"

When you click on the "Open and explore output folder" option in the Publish screen after publishing, Help+Manual now automatically selects the output file as well as opening the correct folder. This can be useful for WebHelp, and in folders containing multiple files of the same type.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Introduction

A brief overview of Help+Manual, what you need to know and what you can do with it.

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

3 Introduction

3.1 About Help+Manual

Help+Manual is a professional help authoring and documentation tool that is as easy to use as a normal word processor. Originally, help authoring tools were developed to make it easier to produce interactive help files for Windows applications in the standard Microsoft help formats.

Help+Manual can do this and much more. In addition to publishing your projects as standard Windows help files you can also produce websites for access on the Internet, Adobe PDF files, printed manuals and a number of other formats 1504.

This is why we refer to Help+Manual as a help authoring and documentation tool – you can use it for creating and managing documentation of all kinds: Software documentation, production documentation, corporate information systems accessed on the Internet or your intranet and much more.

Help+Manual is XML-based has full support for flexible single sourcing, team authoring and conditional output.

- **Single sourcing:**
  Publish multiple formats from the same project at any time.
- **XML-based:**
  Help+Manual project files are pure XML for maximum flexibility. The Basic version saves in a compressed format with all project files packed into a single file. The Professional and Floating license versions can also save as a directory of plain-text XML files.
- **Team authoring:**
  Multiple authors can work on the same project (requires the Professional or Floating license version).
- **Conditional output:**
  Generate different versions from the same project.
- **Reuse content:**
  Create libraries of reusable topics and texts and insert them in your projects in Link or Copy mode. In Link mode the texts update everywhere where they are used when the original files are changed. In the Professional and Floating license versions you can also reuse topics from other projects directly.

3.2 Why Help+Manual?

Create hyperlinks by dragging and dropping. Add graphics and multimedia elements in seconds. Make screenshots of your application with the integrated screenshot tool and enhance them quickly with the screenshot editing program. Compile your project to any suppor-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ted output format with a couple of clicks. Work in collaboration with a team of authors all editing the same project at the same time. Produce help and documentation faster and more efficiently and have fun in the process!

Save time

Help+Manual helps you to create better documentation quicker. Despite its power the user interface and workflow are amazingly intuitive The time required for producing the help for a medium-sized software project can be measured in days or weeks instead of months.

Save money

Online help is a key feature of your software and is just as important for success as an application that does not crash. Professional, attractive and well-organized documentation can significantly decrease your support costs. At the same time it will also increase user satisfaction, generating a positive snowball effect.

Concentrate on your work

Explain your software to your users, not the help authoring tool to yourself. Help+Manual's intuitive user interface is transparent and straightforward. All the technical details are handled in the background by the program. What you see is what you get and what you get is what you need.

Work in a team

With Help+Manual you and your co-authors can all work on the same project at the same time. Just put your project on server where all team members can access it and get to work. Help+Manual makes sure that no two team members can try to change the same topic at the same time.

All standard help formats are supported

No matter whether you need to create modern HTML Help CHM files 1506, multi-browser friendly WebHelp 1510 and even Visual Studio Help 1525 for internal Visual Studio .NET programming documentation (both the old HXS and the new MSHC formats), Help+Manual is the right tool for the job. It generates all standard help formats and it creates them all from the same single source.

In addition to this Help+Manual also generates Adobe PDF 1523, printed manuals 1524, Apple iBooks® eBooks 1513 using the universal ePUB format for the Apple iPad and

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

other devices, Windows EXE eBooks for CDs and older Windows machines and Word DOCX – also all from the same single source file, that you only need to edit once!

Reuse content

Create libraries of reusable topics and texts and insert them in your projects in Link or Copy mode. In Link mode the texts update everywhere where they are used when the original files are changed. In the Professional and Floating license versions you can also reuse topics from other projects directly.

Localize your documentation

Help+Manual projects can be edited and translated directly by translators working with professional tools like SDL Trados. In addition to this, tools are included to help translators using Help+Manual itself as their translation editor.

Supply a user manual

You can output printed manuals on paper or as a PDF file that your users can view on screen or print themselves. Here too, Help+Manual delivers where other help authoring tools just make promises – it creates ready-to-ship user manuals directly from your help project, including powerful facilities for controlling all the elements that need to be different in printed and electronic output.

Forget about maintaining different versions for your online help and printed manuals!

Writing help can be fun

Don't believe it? Give it a try with Help+Manual...

3.3 License Management

Help+Manual licenses are still perpetual – you can use them without a time limit once you have purchased them – but we have now added maintenance options for upgrades and true, server-based floating licenses that can be used in any geographical location. This topic explains the few things you need to know to get the best out of this system.

License management with proxy servers

If you are behind a proxy server Help+Manual may initially experience problems contacting our license server to register your licenses or check floating licenses in and out. If this

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

is the case you can enter the credentials for your proxy server with **Edit Proxy Settings** in the View 1398 tab. This opens a separate utility program that requires administrator permissions.

Maintenance: What it is and how to renew it

The maintenance concept is simple: All updates and upgrades, both major and minor, are free provided your maintenance is still valid. You can check it with **About Help+Manual** in the **Help** tab.

Renewing your maintenance

Just click on the **Extend Maintenance** tool in the **Help** tab to purchase maintenance extension and to enter your purchased maintenance key once you receive it. If you are connected to the Internet your maintenance will then be extended right away. If you are not there is an offline option you can use. Just follow the instructions shown.

Changing licenses

If you ever need to change your license key for any reason, use the **Change Serial Number** tool in the **Help** tab.

Floating licenses: Activation and offline use

Floating server licenses can be used anywhere, not just on your local network.

Floating license manager utility for administrators

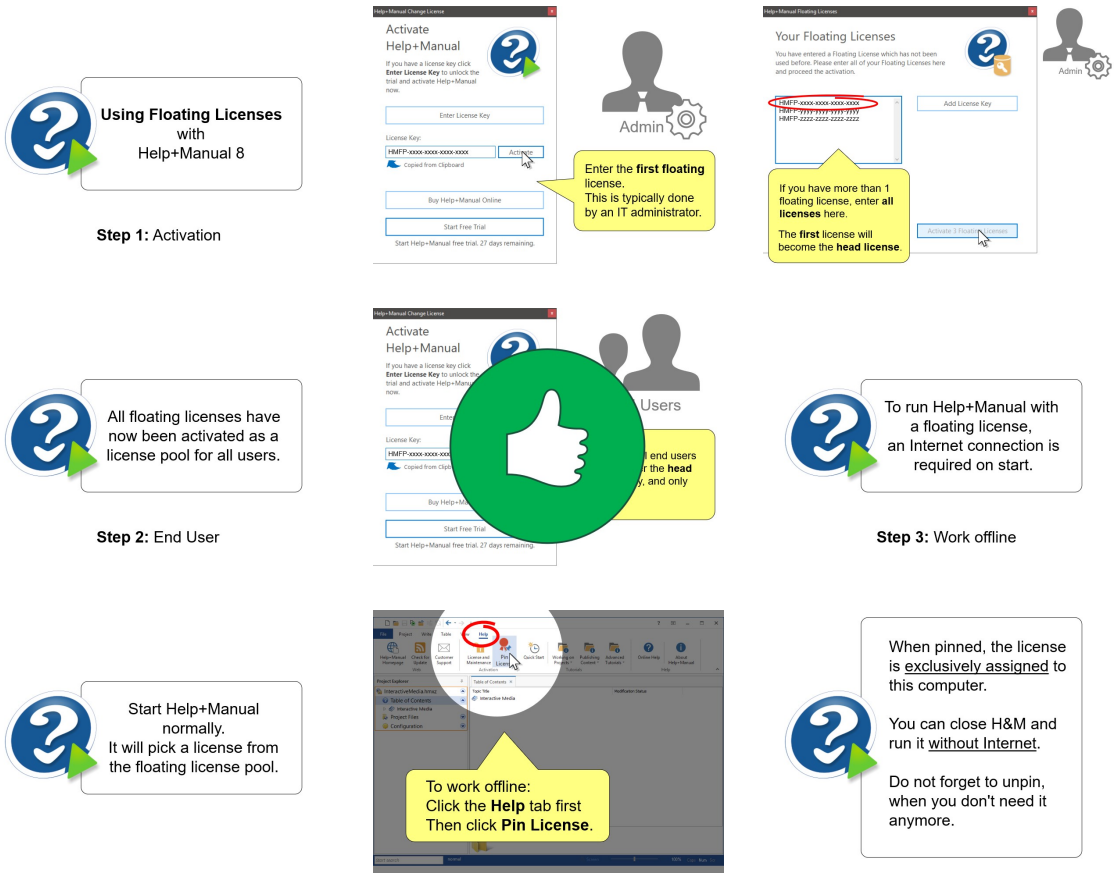
Please note that a floating license manager utility is available for administrators. This useful tool allows you to add licenses to your pool, see who is currently using a license and release licenses for use by other users. See below for full details.

How floating licenses work

Each user installs Help+Manual on their own computer and your administrator issues you with a floating license key that you enter using the normal registration process. If this doesn't start automatically just use the tool in the **Help** tab.

A floating license is normally only active while you are using it. It is released automatically as soon as you close the program, allowing other users to use the same key. When you are using floating licenses in this way an Internet connection is required. However, you can also "pin" your license to your computer for offline work, for example on a plane.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



How to activate and use floating licenses

Using floating licenses normally:

1. The administrator first registers all the floating license keys on one computer. This first step is important, because it combines all your licenses in your license pool, establishing the number of available license slots. An Internet connection is required for this.
2. You then give each user a license key, which can be any key from the pool. You can give all users the same key, if you like, and this is actually a good idea.
3. Each user registers Help+Manual on their computer by entering the license key. This only needs to be done once and requires an Internet connection.
4. When a user starts Help+Manual a license slot is checked out for them and released as soon as you close the program. This makes it possible for other users to access your company's contingent of floating licenses. An Internet connection is required when using floating licenses like this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using floating licenses offline:

If a user needs to work offline, for example on a long flight, they must "pin" their license before you go offline. To do this start Help+Manual while you have an Internet connection and select the **Pin License** tool in the **Help** tab. The tool will then be highlighted until you unpin the license. The license will then remain active until unpinned. The administrator can release a pinned floating license with the administration tool, which is available on request, but only after eight days have elapsed since the license was pinned.

Using your computer as a build server

Many users like to use Help+Manual's command line publishing options 816 to manage extensive lists of publishing tasks as batch operations. This can be done with any Professional or Floating license but you must activate the license for this purpose.

Command line batch activation

Before using your machine as a build server you need to activate your license for batch use with the following command line call:

```
<path>HELPMAN.EXE /LIC:XXXXXXXXXXXXX
```

Where XXXXXXXXXXXXX is your license key. The server must have an Internet connection when you do this. Upon successful activation, the digital license key for build server use is saved in the Help+Manual program directory on the headless server. You only need to do this once. After this you can run normal batch operations on the licensed computer from anywhere in your local network.

Build server operation does not use a license slot!

Note that this build server functionality provides you access in addition to your current license. If you do this with a floating license it does not occupy a floating license slot. Even if all your floating licenses are currently in use by users, you can still use your build server in addition to those users.

Floating license manager for administrators

This administration tool allows you to add floating licenses to your pool, see who is currently using your licenses and release licenses to make them available to other users under certain circumstances.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

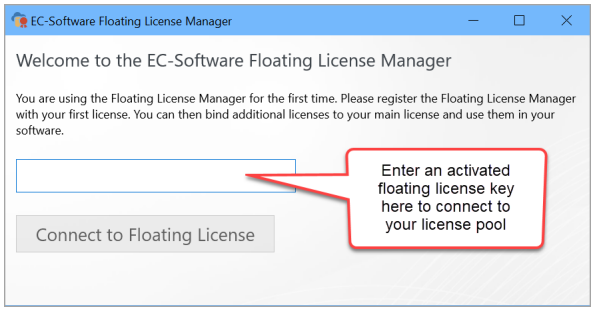
How to get the floating license manager

The download link for this utility is included in the instructions you receive when you purchase floating licenses. You can also get it from EC Software support by mailing support@ec-software.com.

Connecting the manager to your license pool

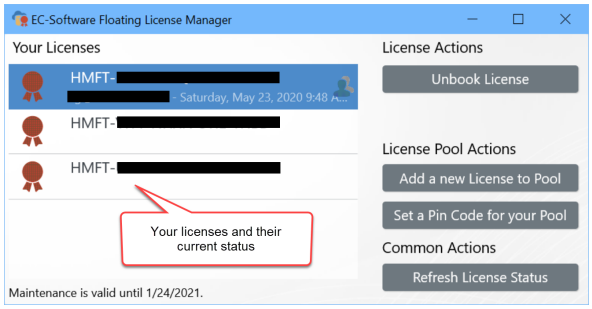
Before using the utility you must activate at least one of your floating licenses in Help+Manual, which you then use to activate the manager. After that you can add the other licenses to your pool with the manager (although you can also do this in Help+Manual).

1. Install Help+Manual on your own computer and activate at least one of your keys on that computer to create your license pool.
2. Unpack the license manager from the ZIP file. There is no installation, just double-click on it to run it.
3. Enter an activated floating license key (from Step1) at the first screen to connect it to your pool:



The license manager screen

The license manager shows you a list of all the license keys in your pool, who is currently using them and the date and time they started their current session. In the case of licenses pinned for offline use the date and time shows when the license was pinned.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Refresh

Hit this option to contact our license server and refresh the status display of all your licenses

Add a New License to Pool

This allows you to add new licenses to the pool. (This can also be done by activating the license on **the same computer and copy of Help+Manual** that you used to activate your first license.)

Unbook Selected license

This option allows you to release licenses that are in use, subject to the following restrictions:

- A normally used floating license can only be released by the administrator after two hours have passed since the user started Help+Manual.
- A floating license that has been pinned for offline use can only be released by the administrator after eight days have passed since the license was pinned. However, you can see who is using it so you can contact them to tell them to unpin it before that...

Set a Pin Code for Your Pool (used to revoke access to licenses)

This adds an additional PIN code that your authorized users must enter the first time they start Help+Manual after you set the PIN. You don't need this for normal operation. It is provided for when you want to revoke access to licenses for specific users. For example, you might make a license available to a temporary translator for a limited time. If you want to prevent that user from continuing to use the license after the job is finished you just enter a PIN and give the PIN code to all authorized users. All users will then be asked to enter the PIN once the next time they start the program. Once they have entered it they won't need to enter it again. Once you have entered a PIN you will also have a function for changing the PIN.

PIN codes: These can be as simple or as complex as you like. Spaces and special characters are permitted.

Make a note of the PIN you enter!

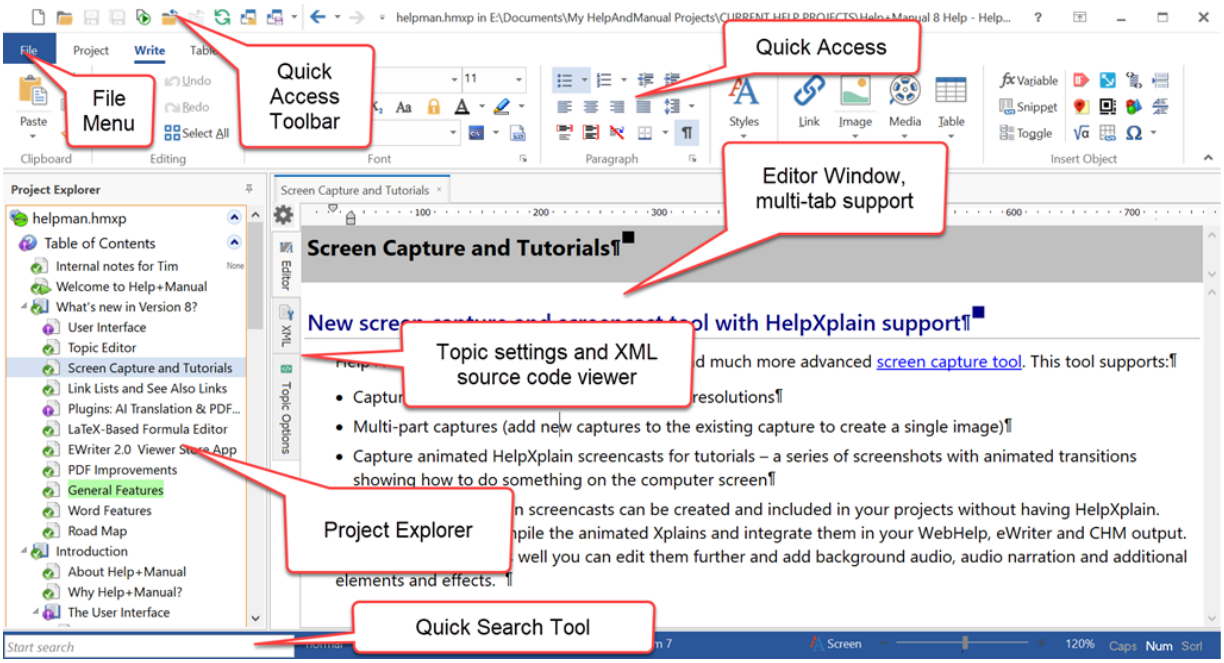
You will not be able to change or remove your PIN without the original PIN code, so please do store it in a safe place!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3.4 The User Interface

The main Help+Manual window

The Help+Manual window has four main components: The File Menu, the Ribbon Toolbar, the Project Explorer and the Editor Window.



The Help+Manual user interface

The File Menu

The File menu switches to a special interface for file-related operations like creating new projects, publishing your projects and importing data. It includes functions like creating new projects, publishing your projects to different formats, printing user manuals and saving your projects in different formats for different purposes.

The Quick Search Tool

This tool in the lower left of the program window provides instant access to any Help+Manual function, tool or project. Just type the first couple of letters of the name of what you want in the tool and then select it from the list displayed.

You can select the tool with CTRL+SPACE. If this key combination is already assigned on your computer you can change it in **View** > **Program Options** > **Shortcuts**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Ribbon Toolbar

Help+Manual's functions are accessed primarily through the Ribbon Toolbar (or Ribbon for short). It is divided into tabs that group functions according to tasks.

The Project Explorer 48

The Project Explorer provides access to all the components of your project, including the table of contents, your topic files, other project files and all the settings and templates associated with your project.

The Editor 55

The editor is where you do all your editing work. You will spend most of your time here editing topics, working as you do in a normal word processor. However, this is also where your project options and settings are displayed when you select the Configuration sections of your project in the Project Explorer.

3.4.1 Devices with Hi-Res Displays

More and more users are enjoying the benefits of modern mobile devices with ultra high-resolution displays like the Microsoft Surface Pro and Lenovo Yoga Pro series. Often, however, the text and controls in application programs can look much too small on these displays.

Help+Manual has full support for these devices and will generally adjust itself automatically to give you a good experience. In addition to this, you can manually adjust the size of the user interface and the zoom level in the editor.

User interface size adjustment

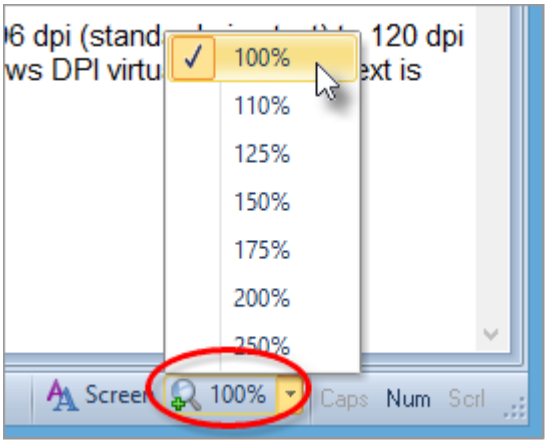
Adjust this with the **Text Size** control in the **View** tab in the Ribbon toolbar. This will also adjust the size of all the icons and other user interface elements.

Zoom in the editor window

You also have full zoom in the editor window. This zooms all the elements displayed correctly. You can change it in two places:

- With the **Editor Zoom** setting in the **View** tab of the Ribbon toolbar
- With the Zoom control in the status bar on the right below the main editor window

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3.4.2 Workspaces and Preferences

Workspaces: Save your project setups for different tasks

In Windows you can save "virtual desktops" with different configurations of programs for different tasks. Workspaces in Help+Manual are similar. They allow you to save the "set" of projects you are currently working on to a file so that you can then reload it in one easy process, instead of manually re-opening all the projects.

In addition to the open projects workspace also stores and reopens all open tabs and remembers the last topic you were working on in each project.

How to save and load workspaces

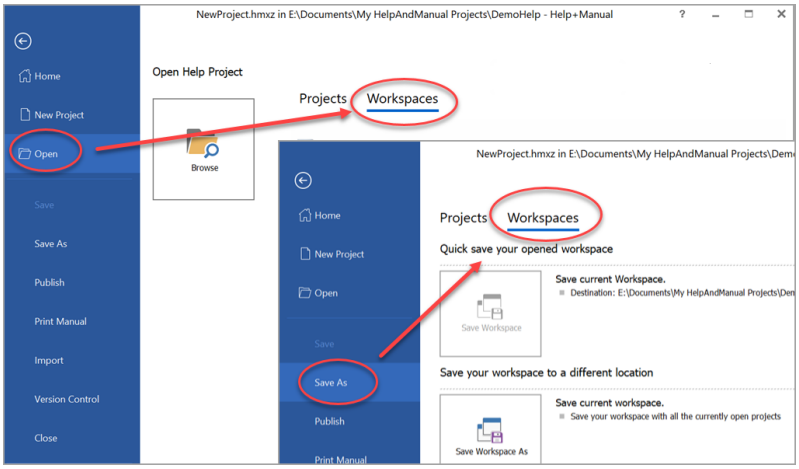
Save a workspace

1. With all the projects you are working on open, select *Save As...* in the **File** menu and then the **Workspaces** tab.
2. Click on *Save Workspace As...* and choose a location and a name for the file.

Load a workspace

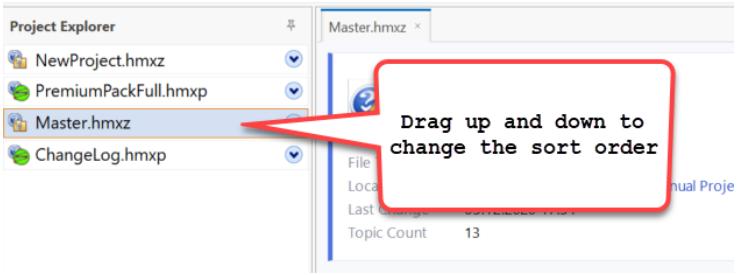
1. Select *Open* in the **File** menu and then select the **Workspaces** tab.
2. If the workspace you want is not listed use the **Browse** option to locate and load it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



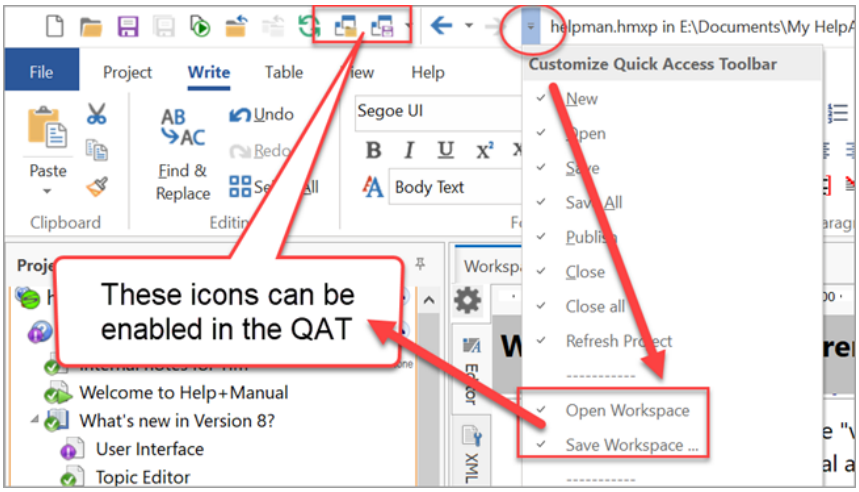
Rearranging projects in workspaces

You change the order of projects in an open workspace by dragging them with the mouse in the Project Explorer:



Workspaces in the Quick Access Toolbar

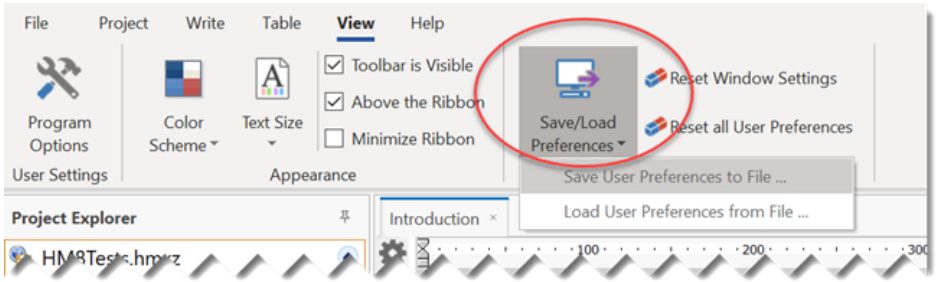
You can optionally enable Save and Load Workspace icons in the **Quick Access Toolbar** at the left hand end of the Help+Manual title bar. Use the menu tool to the right of the QAT to enable these tools and others.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Save/Load Preferences

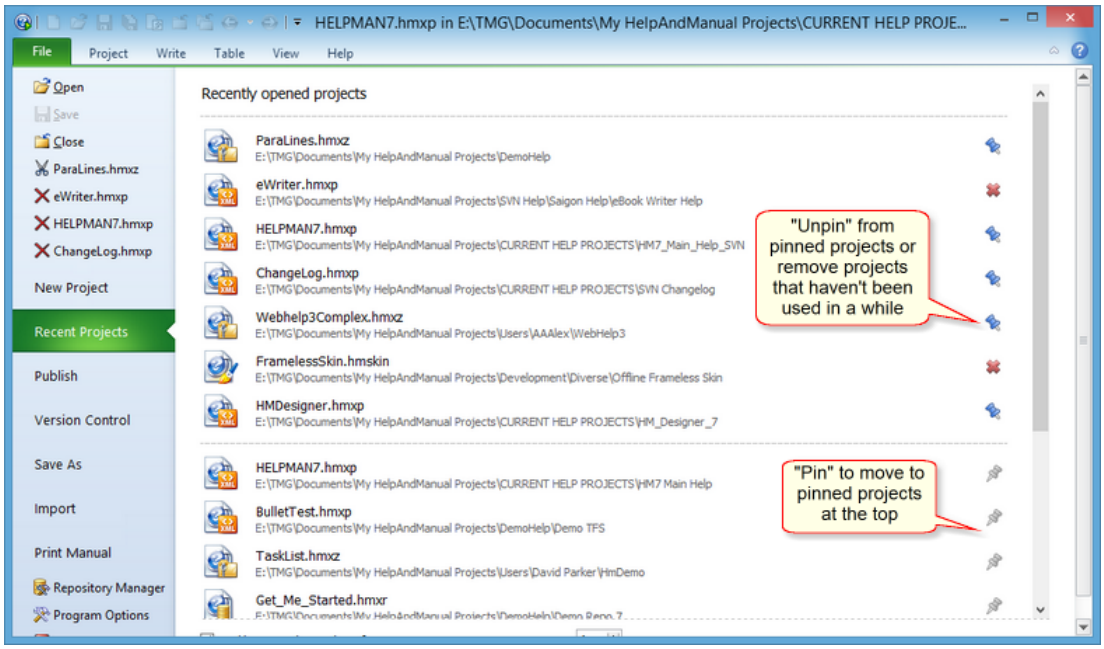
The innocent-looking Save/Load Preferences option in the View tab hides a very useful feature. This tool saves all user preferences, license key, keyboard shortcuts, recent projects, recent workspaces, Quick Access Toolbar settings, pinned projects, syntax highlighter configuration and everything else that you can configure to plain text file. You can use this to load your desktop settings on your laptop computer, for example, or for restoring all your settings when you are upgrading to a new computer.



3.4.3 The File Menu

The File menu switches to a special interface called "backstage view" for managing file-related operations. These include creating new projects and selecting recent projects, importing data from external sources, publishing your projects to any of the supported output formats and saving projects under different names and in different locations.

Many of these operations are quite complex and the special backstage view provides more space than conventional dialogs. This makes it easier to provide intuitive access to all the various functions and options needed.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Recent Projects

Recent Projects

Click/select: Open the selected project in the current instance of Help+Manual.

Pin icons (on right) "Pinning" a project entry moves it to the top of the list for easy access.

RIGHT-CLICK MENU:

Open in new instance:
Open the project in a new copy of Help+Manual.

Add to / Remove from pinned projects:
Moves the entry to the top of the list for easy access or removes the entry from the pinned list (same as pin icon).

Remove from list:
Prune the list by removing the current entry completely.

Move Up/Down:
Arrange the list to suit your preferences

Quickly access recent documents: Shows the select number of recent documents from the top of the list in the File Menu.

1. Use the pin icons to move the projects you want to manage to the top of the list.
2. Activate quick access to enter these projects in the File Menu.

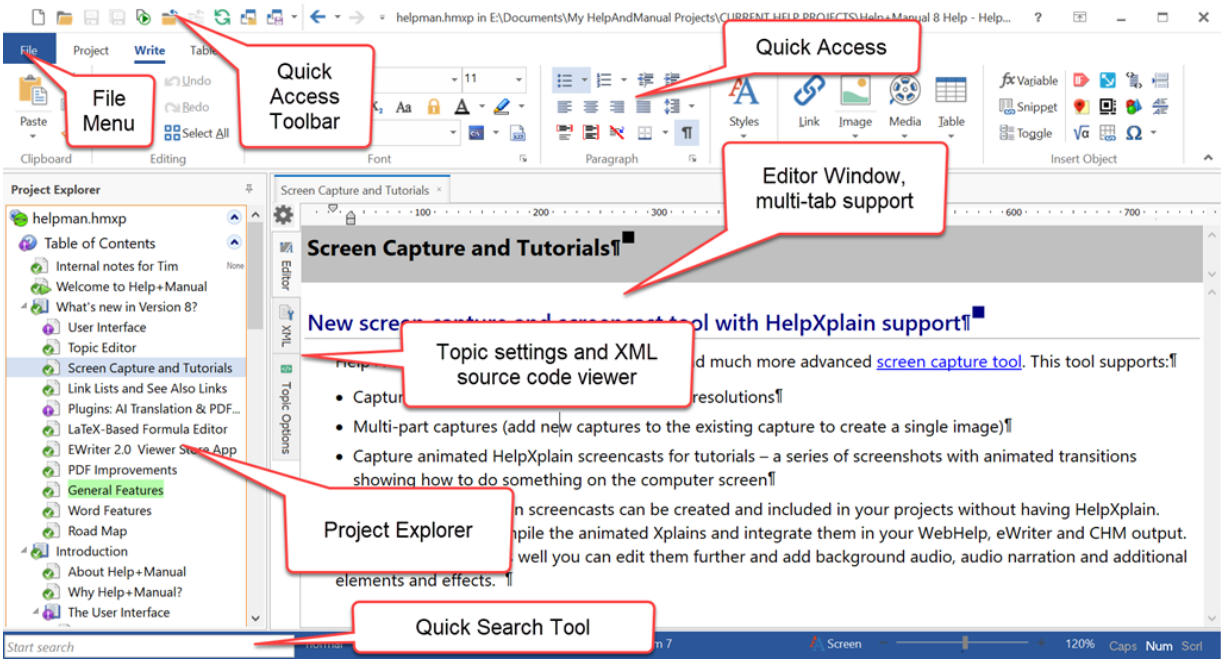
Workspaces

Lists the workspaces 45 you have created so that you can select them.

3.4.4 The Project Explorer

The Project Explorer is the main pane on the left of the Help+Manual window. It provides direct access to all the components of your projects, including both topics and settings. This is where you select topics for editing, create new topics, change the structure of your project and configure all your project's settings.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



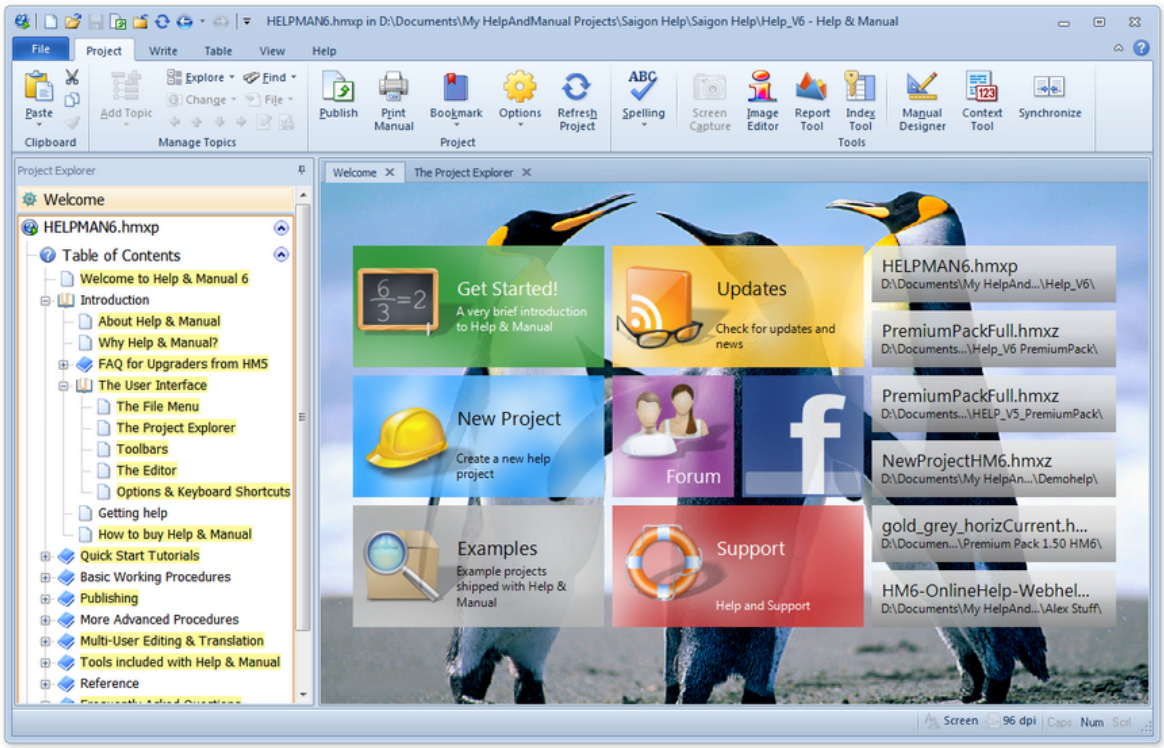
Help+Manual Project Explorer

- **Editing:** Just select an item in the Project Explorer to view it for editing in the Editor.
- **Multiple projects:** You can load multiple projects into the Explorer and work on them all at the same time, for example to copy and paste between projects and to work on the components of modular help systems.

The Welcome Section

The Welcome section of the Project Explorer displays general information, recently-opened projects, tips for finding information in the help, live information on the latest program updates and other details. There are links to sample projects that will help you to learn how to use the program better, a link to the Help+Manual user forum and Facebook page, an update checker and an option for creating new projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



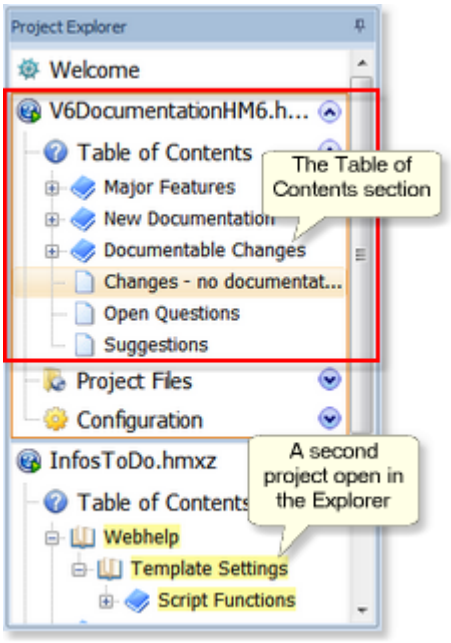
The Welcome Screen

Tip – removing recently-opened projects from the Welcome section:
The recently-opened projects listed in the Welcome section are the same as the ones listed in the Recent Projects section 47 in the File Menu. Removing recently-opened projects from there also removes them from the Welcome section.

The Table of Contents

The Table of Contents or "TOC" is used to organize the topics in your project in a hierarchical structure. Every topic that has a TOC entry here will also have a corresponding entry in the TOC of your published output.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

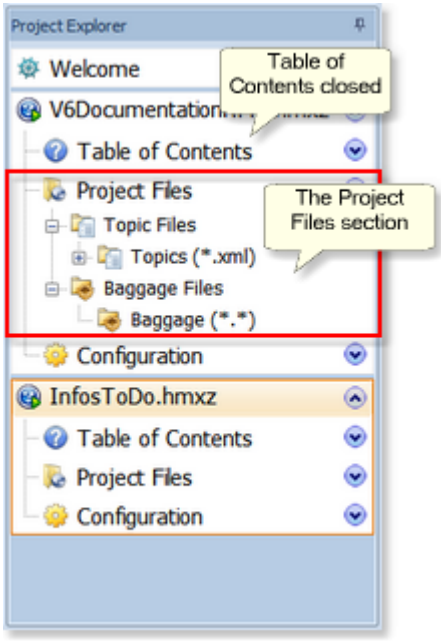


You can create new topics by adding new entries to the TOC, which automatically creates a matching topic file for the TOC entry in the **Project Files > Topic Files** section (see below).

You can change the structure of your project by moving entries around in the TOC. This is quick and very easy. You just drag TOC entries with the mouse or manipulate them with the tools in **Project > Manage Topics**.

Each topic file has its own individual settings, which are accessed in the tab in the editor.

The Project Files Section



Project Files:
The Project Files section is used for managing and viewing the files in your project. It is divided into two groups, Topic Files and Baggage Files. The Topic Files section contains all your topic files, both those that are included in the TOC and those that are not (known as "invisible files" in Help+Manual 4 and earlier).

Topic Settings in Topic Options:
Each topic file has its own individual settings, which are accessed in the Topic Options tab to the left of the editor window.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Topic Files

This section lists all the topic files in your project, including topic files that do not have entries in the TOC – for example topics containing the text for popup windows, for display in external windows or for use as embedded topics.

Topics without TOC entries

To create a topic without a TOC entry you create it in the Topic Files section. Just click in the Topic Files section where you want to insert the topic and create a new topic 91. You can always change the position of the topic later.

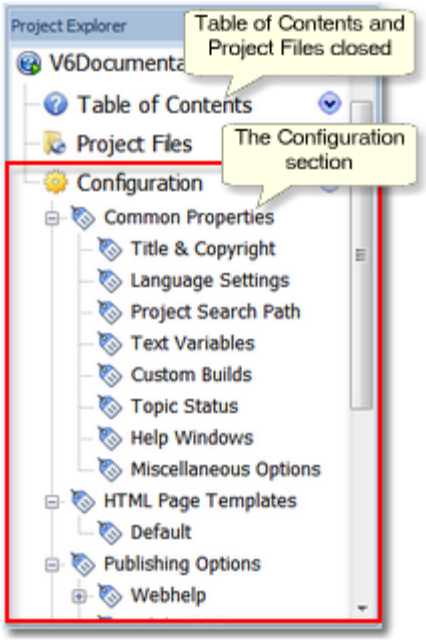
Baggage Files

You do not need to concern yourself with this section when you are just getting started with Help+Manual. It is used for storing additional files you want to associate with your project, such as additional graphics and script files that you want to reference in the code of your HTML templates.

All the files included in the Baggage Files section are automatically exported to the relevant output formats when you publish your project. See Using Baggage Files 1119 for more information.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Configuration Section



Project configuration settings

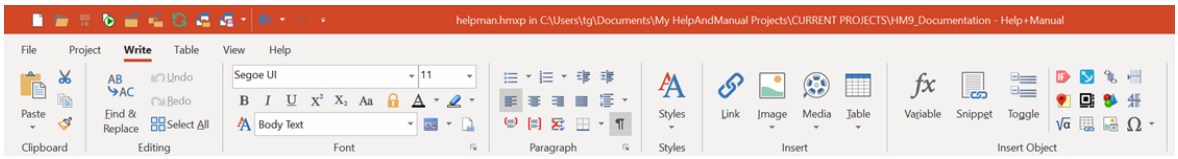
This section contains all your project's configuration settings 1400. This includes your project title, copyright notice, your language settings for help in international languages, special settings and editable layout templates for your output formats, "skins" for changing the appearance and formatting of your entire project, user-defined variables and so on.

Program configuration settings are in the File Menu!

Note that the Configuration section in the Project Explorer only contains settings for your individual projects (each project has its own configuration settings). The general configuration settings for Help+Manual are accessed in the **File Menu**!

3.4.5 Toolbars

The Ribbon Toolbar is context-sensitive, automatically displaying the functions relevant to what you are doing at the moment. Functions that cannot be used in the current context are grayed out.



The Ribbon Toolbar

The File Menu and Quick Access Toolbar

This "Quick Access Toolbar" above the Ribbon provides direct access to the most frequently used functions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The File Menu

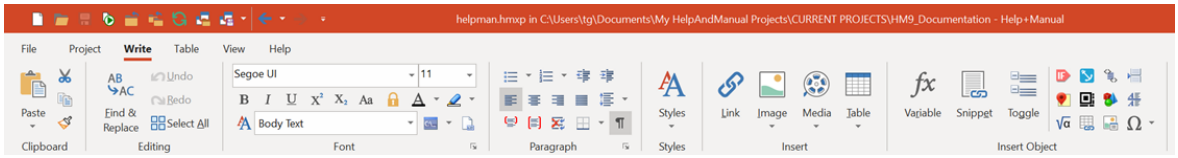
Selecting the File menu 47 switches to a special display interface for managing file-related functions, including creating new projects, importing data, publishing your projects to different formats and so on.

The Quick Access Toolbar

This configurable mini toolbar above the Ribbon provides direct access to your most frequently-used functions. Click on the button at the right end of the Quick Access Toolbar to configure it.

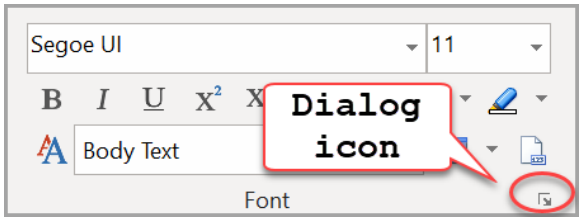
The Ribbon Toolbar

The Ribbon Toolbar or "Ribbon" for short is organized in tabs, each of which contains groups of tools. The Ribbon is user-configurable 1263.



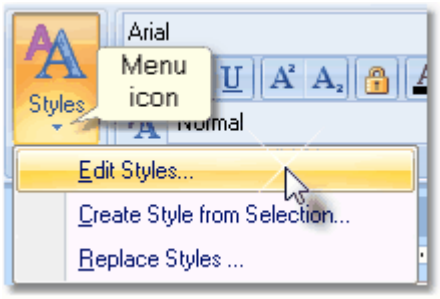
Most of the tools are available directly in the "groups" within each tab – for example above you can see the Clipboard, Editing, Styles and Font groups. Some groups and tools also provide access to dialogs with additional options.

Dialog icons and menu icons



Some groups in the Ribbon have little icons in the bottom right corner. Clicking on these icons displays a full dialog of options for that function group.

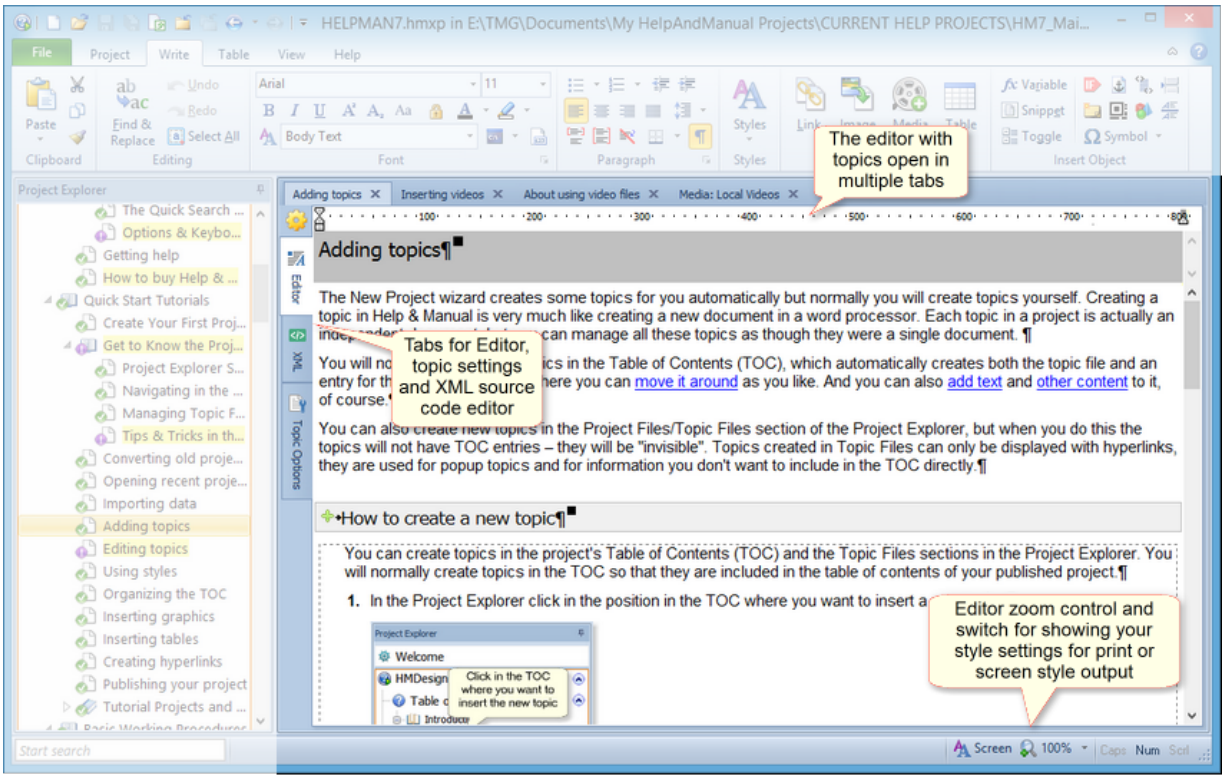
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Other controls in the ribbon have menu icons that display a normal menu of options when you click on them. These menu options open dialogs – for example for editing styles

3.4.6 The Editor

This is the large area on the right below the Ribbon. When you select items in the Project Explorer you edit their contents in the Editor. This will usually be the content of your topics but the editor pane also displays project settings in the Configuration section of the Project Explorer.



Help+Manual Topic Editor

Editor Tabs

This is the main editor where you will spend most of your time. It shows an approximately WYSIWYG (what you see is what you get) view of your topic pages. You can edit multiple topics at the same time in multiple tabs.

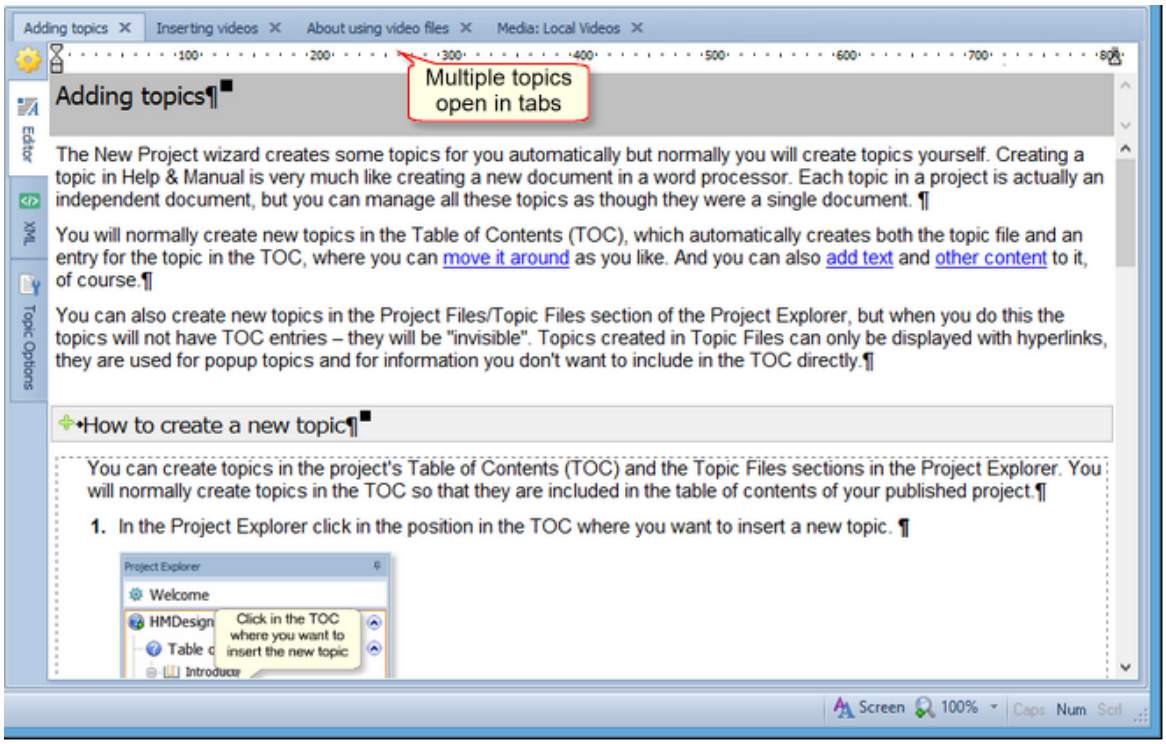
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

To load a topic into the page editor just select it in the Project Explorer, either in the Table of Contents or in the Topic Files section. Then you can start editing as you would in a normal text editor.

To load a topic into a new tab right-click on the topic in the Project Explorer and select *Open topic in a New Tab*.

To move a tab to a new position just drag the tab left or right. You cannot move the leftmost tab, which is the main browsing tab.

To undock a tab to an external window drag it away from the editor or double-click on its tab. To redock an undocked tab double-click on its header bar.



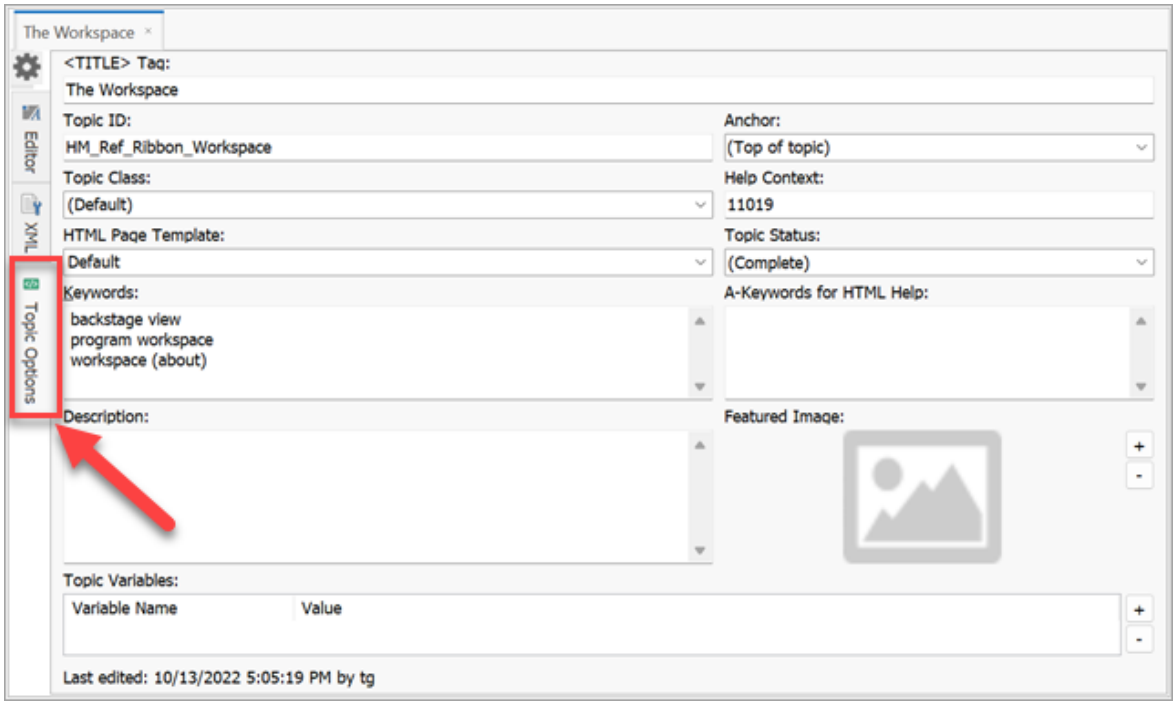
You can select topics both in the Table of Contents section and the Topic Files section of the Project Explorer. The Topic Files section lists all the topic files in your project, the Table of Contents section only shows those topic files that have entries in the Table of Contents (TOC).

The Topic Options tab

This tab displays the editable settings of the current topic. Among other things you can enter index keywords for the topic here. These keywords will then be included in the index when you publish your project. See this topic 186 for details on the settings here.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Tip: You can display Topic Options next to the editor window by selecting *Show Topic Options side by side* in the settings menu (gear button in the top left corner).



Apart from adding index keywords it is better not to change any of the settings displayed here until you become more familiar with working with Help+Manual.

The XML Source tab

This tab is for experts and is only displayed in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. It displays the XML source code of your topics and allows you to edit it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you don' t understand what you see here don't worry about it. You don't need to know anything about XML to use Help+Manual efficiently.

Warning: Anything you enter here is automatically checked against the Help+Manual XML schema file. Anything not compatible with the schema is silently deleted when you return to the normal editor pane.

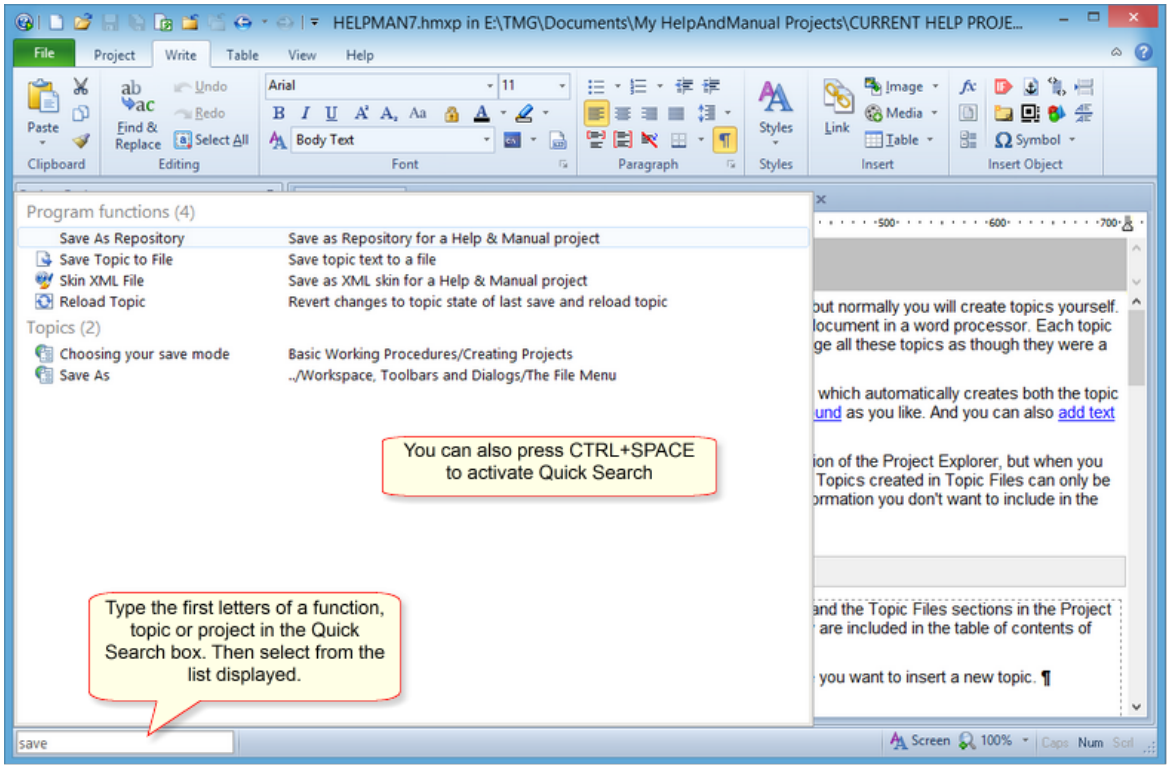
For details about XML in Help+Manual see XML and XML editing 1137.

3.4.7 The Quick Search Tool

This tool in the lower left of the program window provides instant access to any Help+Manual function, tool or project. Just type the first couple of letters of the name of what you want in the tool and then select it from the list displayed.

You can select the tool with CTRL+SPACE. If this key combination is already assigned on your computer you can change it in **View** > **Program Options** > **Shortcuts**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Help+Manual Quick Search Tool

3.4.8 Options & Keyboard Shortcuts

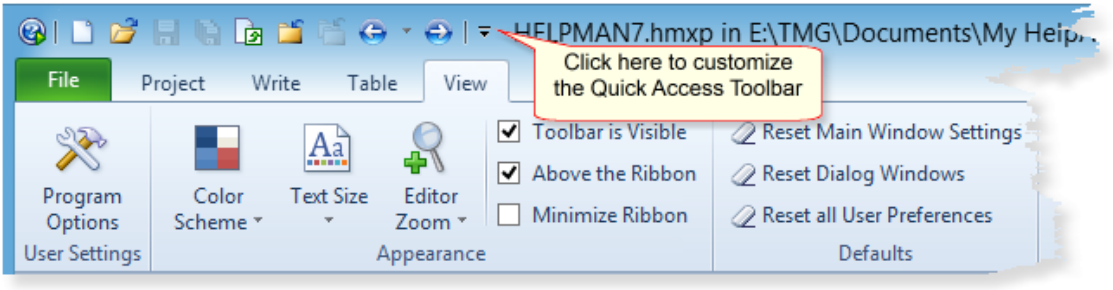
Help+Manual is extensively customizable. Most customization options are available in the **View** section in the ribbon and the **Program Options** settings that can be accessed both in **View** and in the **File menu**.

Almost all program functions can be controlled with keyboard shortcuts, which you can configure in the Program Options 1264. In addition to this you can also undock the Project Explorer by double-clicking on it and add items to the Quick Access Toolbar by selecting the Customize button at its right-hand end.

Customizing the user interface

- Select the **View** tab in the Ribbon to access the options for changing Help+Manual's appearance and behavior.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

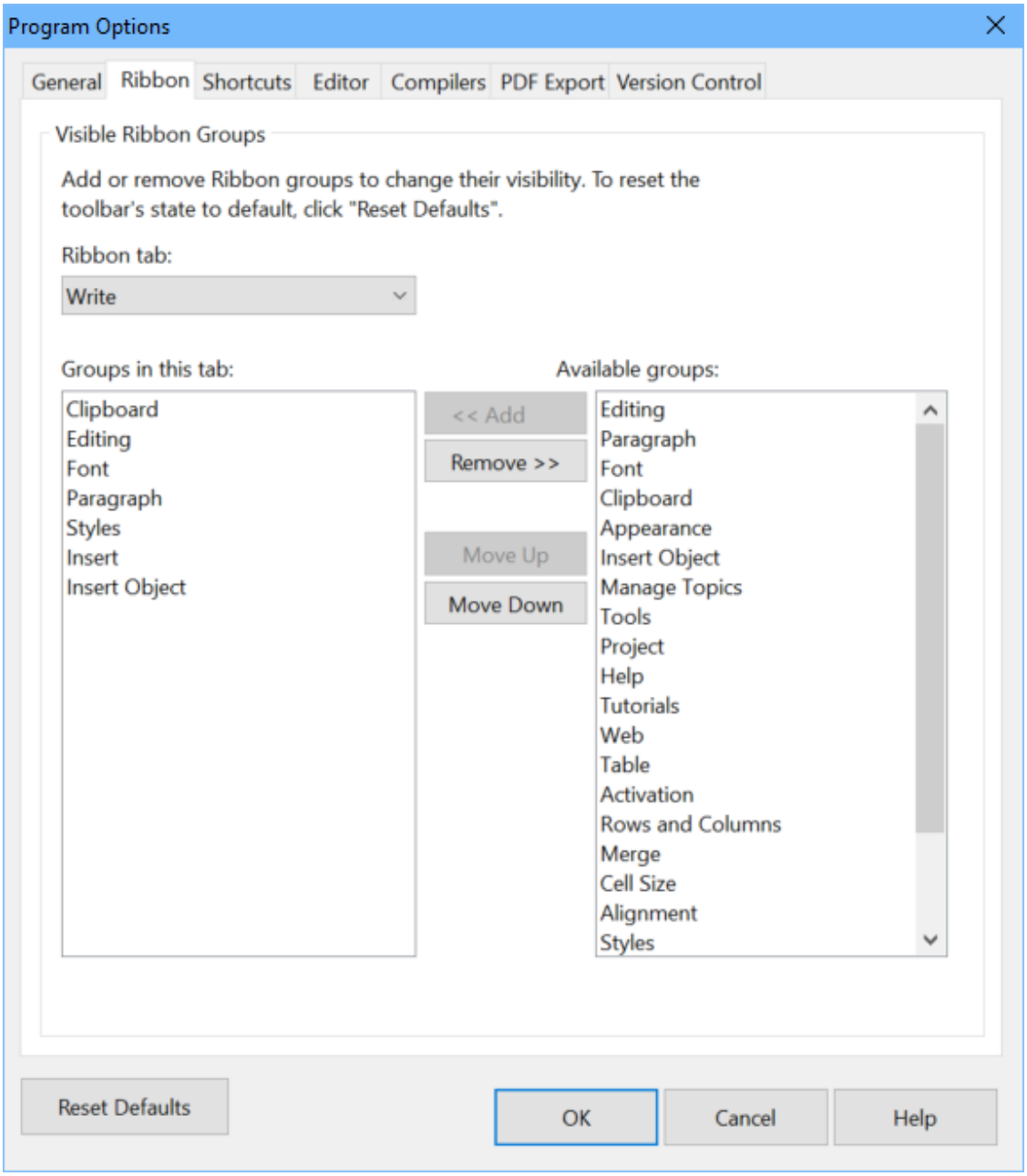


- Select the drop-down gallery on the right of the Quick Access Toolbar to customize the Quick Access Toolbar 53.

Program customization options

- Select **Program Options** in the **File** menu or **View** > **Program Options** in the Ribbon to access the program configuration 1261 dialog.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



- You can configure the appearance of the program, the layout and contents of the Ribbon Toolbar, the behavior of the editor, automatic update checking and many other things.

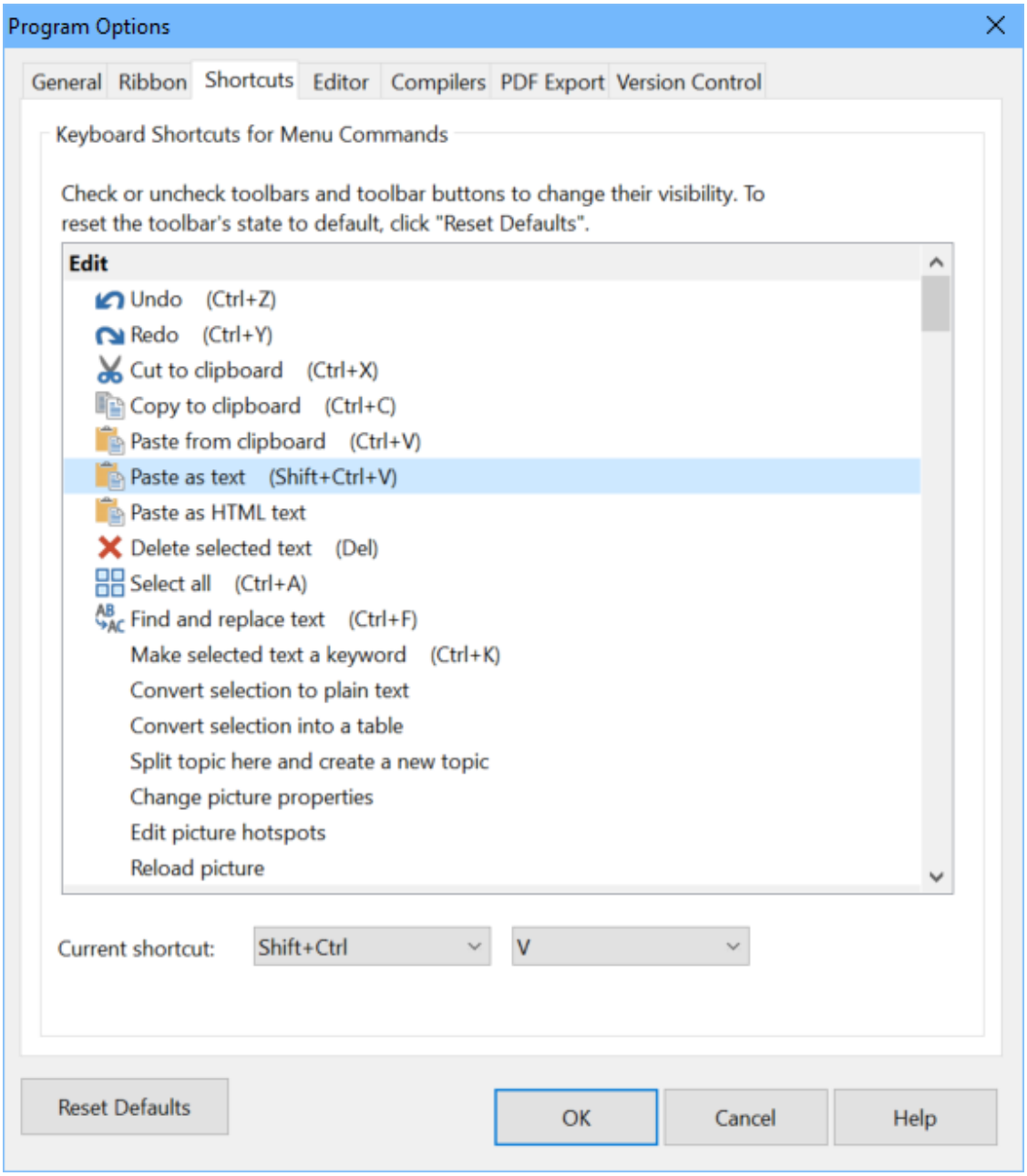
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Keyboard shortcuts and accelerators

Keyboard shortcuts:

You can assign keyboard shortcuts to most functions in Help+Manual, many functions are already configured with keyboard shortcuts.

- Select **Program Options** in the **File** menu or **View** > **Program Options** in the Ribbon or to view and edit keyboard shortcuts.



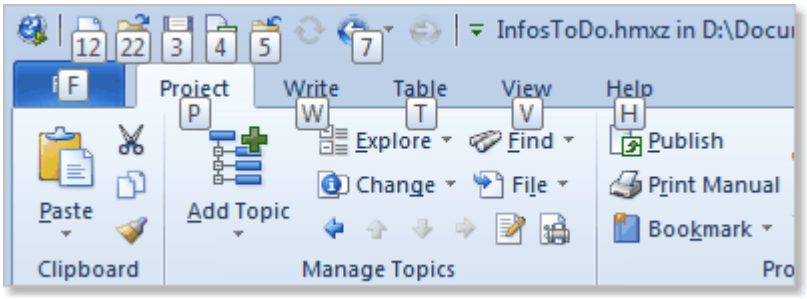
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- You can also assign keyboard shortcuts to styles. Select **Write** > **Styles** > **Edit Styles** in the Ribbon to access the styles editing dialog.

Accelerator keys:

The Ribbon interface has an additional accelerator keys interface which can also be used by authors with vision handicaps.

1. Press the ALT key once briefly (you may have to press it twice if you have just clicked on a control in the Ribbon). Small icons showing accelerator letters and codes will be displayed on the Ribbon controls.



Accelerator key display

2. Type the accelerator letters on the keyboard to perform the corresponding actions. If multiple letters are displayed type them one after another. These are not key combinations!

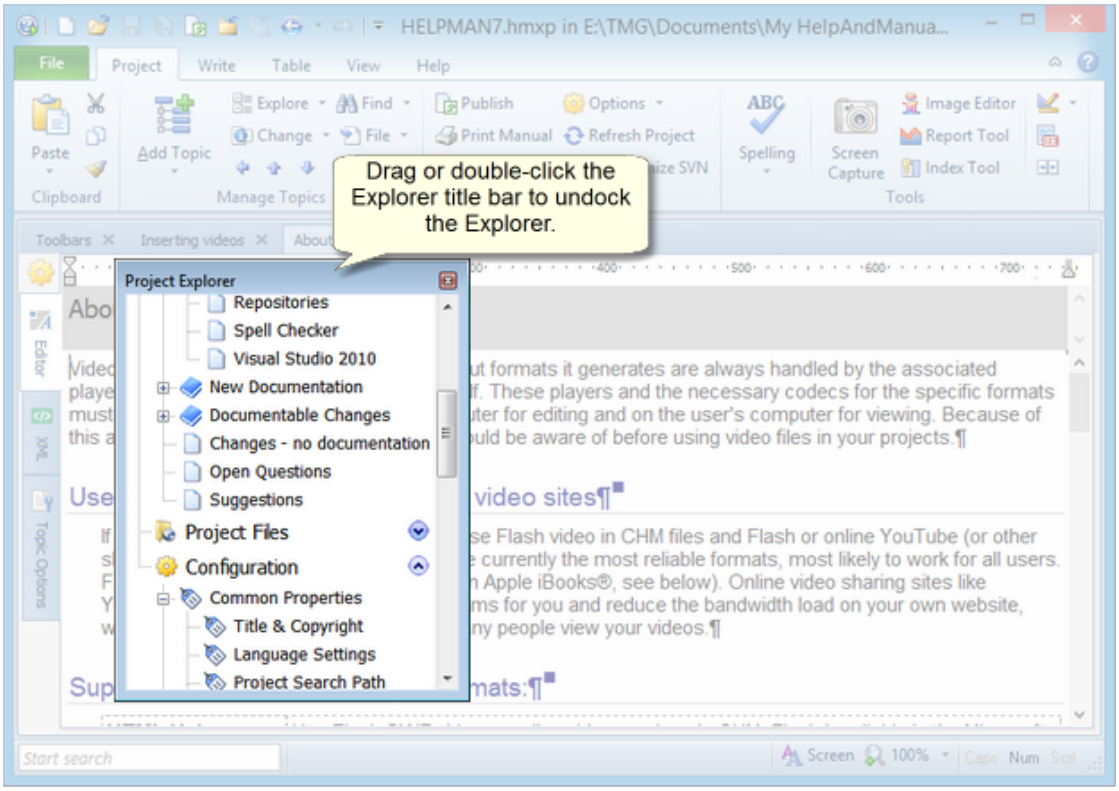
Additional accelerator keys will be displayed to access any menus in the individual Ribbon groups.

Undocking the Project Explorer

Undocking the Project Explorer

- Double-click on the Project Explorer title bar or drag it out of the program window to display it as a separate window.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Undocking the Project Explorer

- To re-dock the Project Explorer double-click on its title bar again.

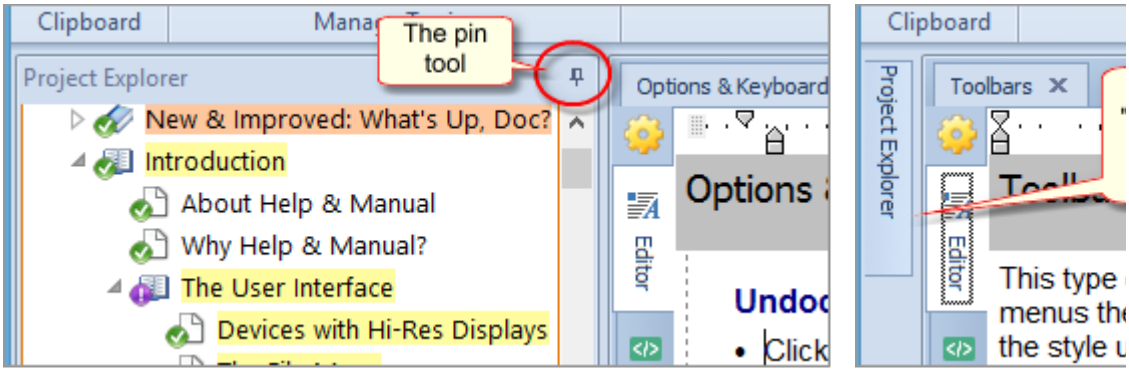
Undocking, docking and pinning Explorer panes

- Click in the title bar and drag the new Explorer pane out to the left to display it in a separate window.
- Drag it onto one of the light blue location icons *When you are dragging an Explorer pane light blue "location icons" will appear on each side of the HM window. Drag the mouse cursor onto one of these icons to dock the pane on that side of the window.* on each side of the window.
- Double-clicking on an Explorer pane title bar also docks and undocks.
- You can also "pin" individual Explorer panes to the left margin by clicking on the pin tool in the pane's title bar (see below).

Pinning the Project Explorer to the margin

- Click on the "pin" tool in the Explorer title bar to "pin" the Explorer to the left margin of the window. The Explorer will then be hidden while you are editing and will only be displayed when you mouseover the Explorer title in the left margin.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



- To "unpin" just mouseover the Explorer title to display it and then click on the pin tool in the title bar again.

See also:

Using the Project Explorer 70

3.5 Getting help

There are a number of different sources of help in Help+Manual. In addition to this help file you can also access tutorials, the online user forum and EC Software support.

To get started, your main source of information should be this help file. We have designed it to provide all the information you will need for using and learning Help+Manual.

Before contacting support, please make sure that you really can't find the information you need here or on the user forum. Thanks!

Displaying the help

- The quickest way to display the help is to press **F1**. If context-sensitive help is available it will be displayed automatically.
- Most dialogs have a **Help** button that displays relevant information.
- Select the **Help** tab in the Ribbon for additional help options.

Using the user forum

- The online Help+Manual user forum is a great resource that contains a huge amount of material. Register today (it's completely free) and get support from the EC Software team and thousands of other experienced Help+Manual users.
- The forum is located at https://helpman.it-authoring.com/
- The forum portal page also has a list of links to other useful sites and user groups where you can find more information about help authoring.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Contacting EC Software support

- Direct email support is available from the EC Software team at support@helpandmanual.com. You can send a mail to this address automatically by clicking on the **Customer Support** tool in the Help tab of the Ribbon.

Tutorials

- Check the **Help** tab in the Ribbon for links to a number of useful tutorials.
- You can also find a collection of tutorial projects in the *Examples* folder in the *My Documents\My HelpAndManual Projects* directory.
- A selection of tutorials for programmers showing you how to integrate your help with your application is available here on the EC Software website:

  https://www.helpandmanual.com/support_tutorials.html

Getting a printed user manual

You can download a formatted PDF version of the entire documentation designed for printing from our download page at:

https://www.helpandmanual.com/downloads.html

3.6 How to buy Help+Manual

You can buy Help+Manual directly online worldwide with all major credit cards. As soon as your transaction is completed you will be able to download and install the program and start working right away.

Direct order link and Help+Manual homepage:

Order link:

https://www.helpandmanual.com/order.html

List of authorized resellers worldwide:

https://www.helpandmanual.com/partner_resellers.html

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual homepage:

https://www.helpandmanual.com

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Quick Start Tutorials

Quick start! Learn Help+Manual step by step, tutorials are intentionally kept brief.

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

4 Quick Start Tutorials

4.1 Create Your First Project!

You can create a new Help+Manual project from scratch or import documentation from another source and convert it into a new Help+Manual project. In both cases an interactive on-screen wizard will guide you through the process.

Creating an empty new project

1. Select the File menu, then select **New Project**.
2. Select the option *Create an empty new project* and then enter the name of your project, the save location and other data in the form displayed.
3. If you have Help+Manual Professional you can choose between two save formats (you can switch formats at any time with *Save As...* in the File menu):
   - **Uncompressed XML:**
     Saves your project as a collection of XML files. Must be saved in an empty folder. This format is required for multi-user editing. The main project file has the extension `.hmxp`. This is the preferred format for normal work when it is available.
   - **Compressed single-file format:**
     Saves the same project files in a single compressed file with the extension `.hmxz`. This is the only format supported by the Help+Manual Basic.
4. Click on *Create* to create your new project.

Creating a new project from imported data

1. Select the File menu and click on **New Project**.
2. Select the data type you want to import in the *Import existing documentation to a new project* section.
3. Follow the instructions displayed in the interactive wizard, select your save format (see above) and then select *Import* to complete the operation.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can also import some formats directly by clicking on the File menu and selecting **Open**. Then select the format type and open the file – additional instructions may be displayed.

See Importing data 90 for information on the different import formats.

4.2 Get to Know the Project Explorer

The Project Explorer is the control center for your Help+Manual projects. It displays the structure of your project with the Table of Contents (TOC), all your topic files (including those not in the TOC), additional files associated with your project (Baggage Files) and all the configuration settings saved with your project (Configuration).

You can open multiple projects at the same time. Each project has its own full entry in the Project Explorer. Working in the Project Explorer you can copy and paste single and multiple topics and chapters both within your project and between different projects.

In addition to this, you can also open Help+Manual more than once and have multiple projects open in the different instances of the program. If you are working in the uncompressed HMXP format you can also have the same project open multiple times in different instances of the program.

4.2.1 Project Explorer Sections

When you load a project its contents and settings are accessible in three main sections in the Project Explorer on the left: Table of Contents, Project Files and Configuration.

The Table of Contents or "TOC" is a hierarchical tree of entries that define the structure of your project, organizing your topics into chapters and sub-chapters. Most TOC entries have direct links to topic files in the Project Files section. (You can also create additional TOCs 343 with different structures for the same project.)

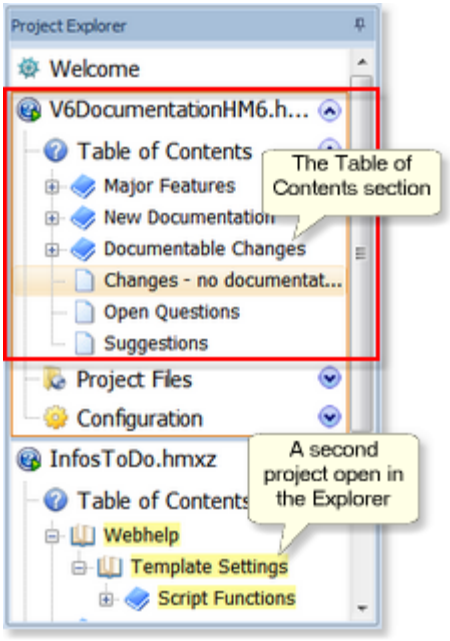
The Project Files section provides access to the actual files that make up your project.

The Configuration section stores all the settings associated with your project.

> **Key Information**
> Topic entries in the TOC are actually links pointing to matching topic files in the Topic Files section. The actual topics are only stored in the Topic Files section.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Table of Contents section



This is the "structure" of your topic. It consists of TOC "entries", most which are linked to topic files in the Project Files section. Other TOC entries include empty TOC nodes/("chapters without text") without any content of their own, and entries that link to web pages or to other Help+Manual projects that you want to merge into the current project.

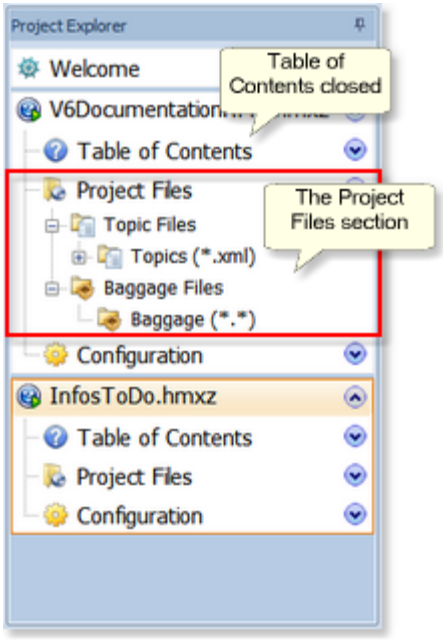
The TOC section does not actually contain any topic files. It is really just a structured list of titles with links to the actual topic files, which are stored in the **Project Files/Topic Files** section of the Project Explorer.

You can create new topic files 172 by adding entries to the TOC. Doing this creates a TOC entry and a topic file, and links the entry to the topic file. You can also create topic files directly in the Topic Files section. Then the files do not have TOC entries.

You can change the structure of your TOC by moving the entries around in the TOC tree, either with the mouse or with the blue arrow tools in **Project** > **Manage Topics**. Doing this just moves around the entries in the TOC – the topic files and other items to which the TOC entries link remain unchanged.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Project Files section



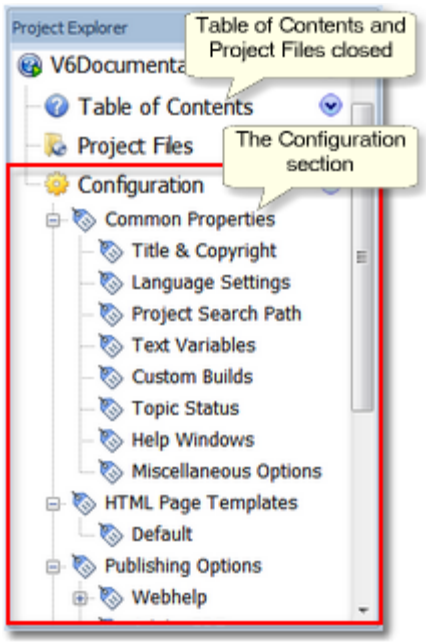
This section lists all the topic files in your project and "Baggage Files", which are additional files associated with your project.

The **Topic Files** subsection lists all your topic files, including those that do not have entries in the TOC. For example, these include popup topics and topics that are only displayed when the user clicks on a hyperlink.

The **Baggage Files** subsection is the place where you store files that you want to export together with your project when you publish it. These can include graphics you want to use in your own HTML templates, JavaScript files containing functions you want to use in your HTML-based publishing formats and so on. If you are just getting started with Help+Manual you don't need to worry about the Baggage Files section at the moment.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Configuration section



Project configuration settings

This section contains all your project's configuration settings 1400. This includes your project title, copyright notice, your language settings for help in international languages, special settings and editable layout templates for your output formats, "skins" for changing the appearance and formatting of your entire project, user-defined variables and so on.

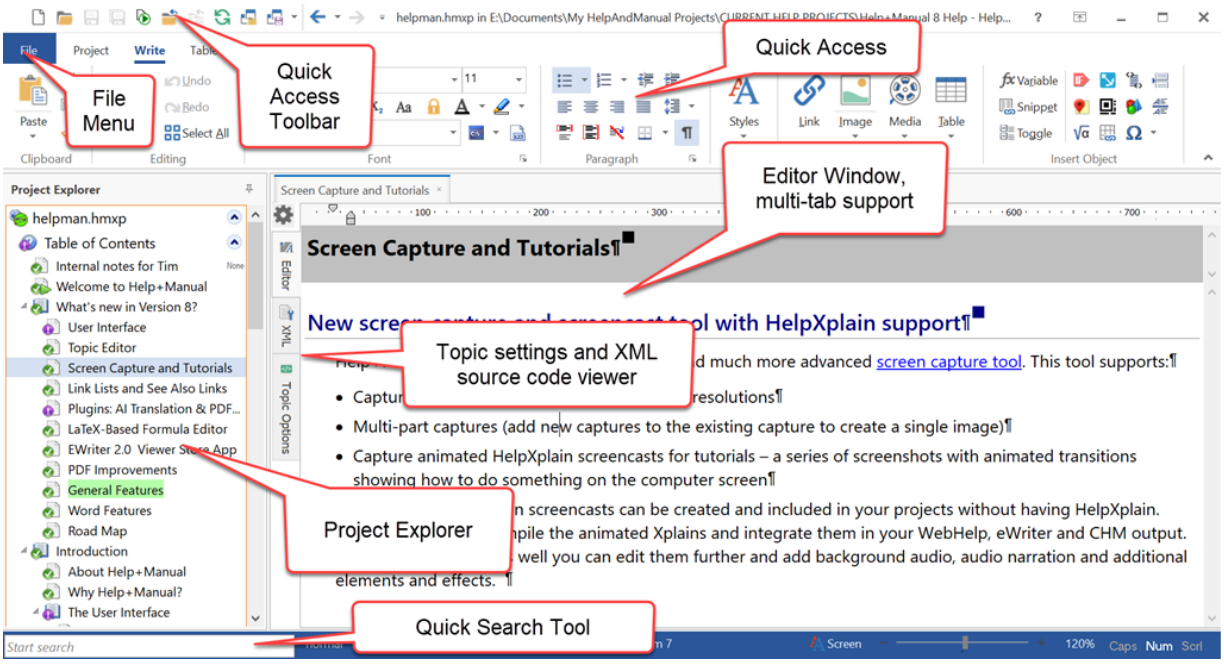
Program configuration settings are in the File Menu!

Note that the Configuration section in the Project Explorer only contains settings for your individual projects (each project has its own configuration settings). The general configuration settings for Help+Manual are accessed in the **File Menu**!

4.2.2 Navigating in the Project Explorer

If you are familiar with Windows Explorer and a word processor like MS Word then you already have the basic skills you need to find your way around the Project Explorer. It functions like a combination of Windows Explorer and Word.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



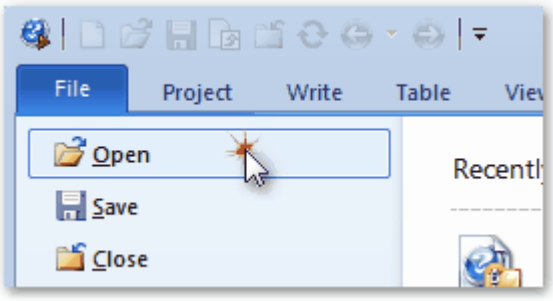
Help+Manual Project Explorer

The Project Explorer displays the contents of your projects in the same way as files in the Windows Explorer file manager. Selecting topic files in the Table of Contents (TOC) or Topic Files sections displays their contents in the Editor, which works like a word procesor.

The Project Explorer display is exactly the same for projects using both the compressed **.hmxz** format and the uncompressed **.hmxp** format. The only difference between the two formats is the way they are saved – both contain exactly the same files and folders. The compressed format just has its folders and files inside a single file, which works like a ZIP archive.

Loading projects in the Project Explorer

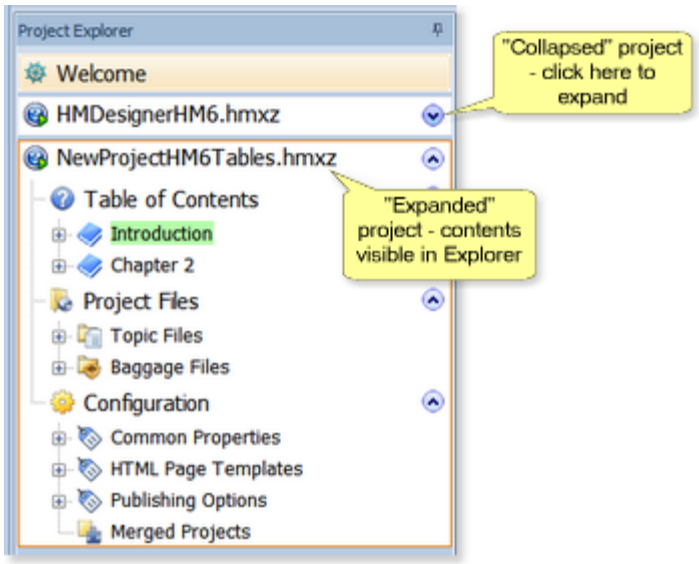
Opening projects:



- To load an existing project select the File menu, click on *Open*. and select a project to load (or create a new project 69).

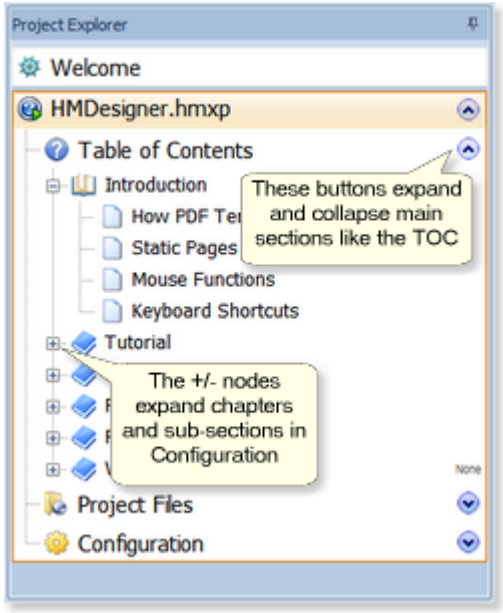
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Loading multiple projects:



- You can load multiple projects in the Project Explorer.
- To load multiple projects at the same time, use *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click* in the **Open** dialog.
- Select entries in the Table of Contents section to display and edit topics.

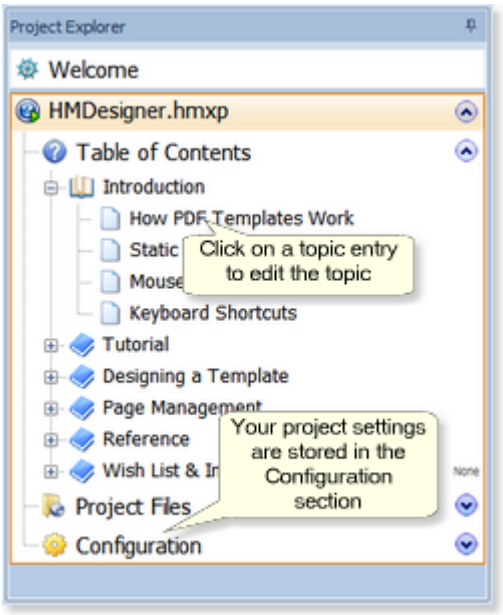
Expanding and collapsing projects and sections



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- The and buttons expand and collapse projects and the main sections of each project.
- Inside the main sections the **+/-** nodes expand and collapse the subsections, just as they do in the Windows Explorer.

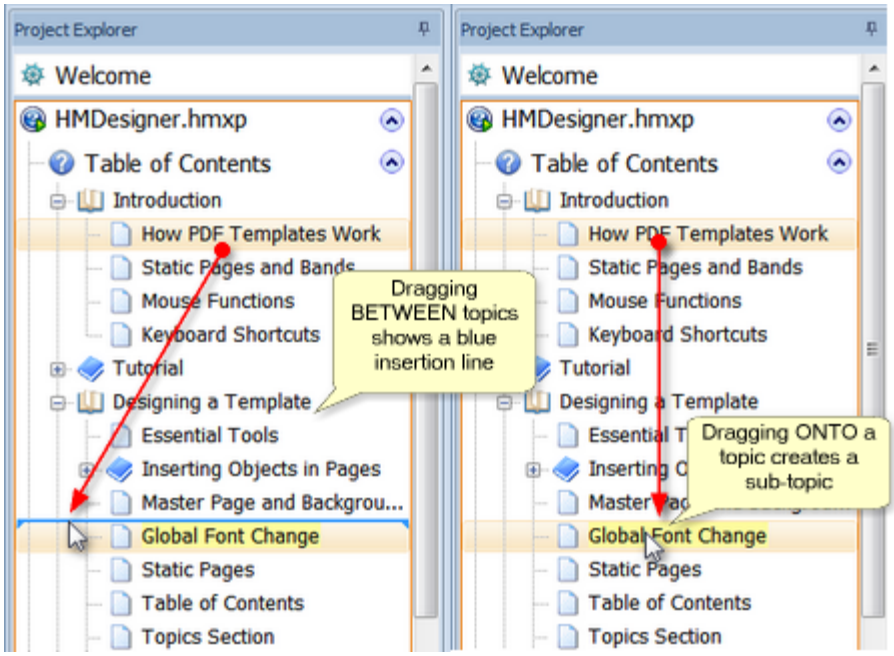
Editing in the Project Explorer



- To edit a topic or topic file just click on an item in the Table of Contents or Project Files sections of the Explorer. Topic contents are displayed in the editor and can be edited directly. Work as you would in a word processor.
- To edit your project properties just select items in the Configuration section – the dialogs with the settings are displayed in the editor pane.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Dragging, copying and pasting in the Project Explorer



You can move, copy and paste topics in the Explorer. Drag with the mouse, right-click to display editing options or use the Clipboard functions in the **Project** tab.

- Drag a topic between other topics to insert it before or after the other topics.
- Drag a topic onto another topic to make it a child (subtopic) of the other topic.
- Use *Ctrl+C* to copy, *Ctrl+X* to cut and *Ctrl+V* to paste topics in the Project Explorer.

4.2.3 Managing Topic Files

When you are working in the Project Files section, the Project Explorer functions as a file manager for your topic files and the folders where they are stored. If you are working in uncompressed XML format (Professional and Floating license versions only, **.hmxp** project file) the files and folders are stored directly on your hard drive. In the compressed single-file **.hmxz** format the files and folders are stored inside the compressed **.hmxz** file, which is actually a normal ZIP archive.

How to "filter" the TOC display by build/include options

You can use include options to "filter" the display of your topics in the TOC and Topic Files section of the Project Explorer. This makes it possible for you to see only the topics that will be included in a specific build, so that you can preview the results of specific build options without publishing your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Apply build options to one or more topics. If you don't do this filtering will not have any effect! See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for details.
2. Select *Explore* > *Filter* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and set the filter options you want to apply. The filter settings are also available from the right-click menu in the Project Explorer (*Explore* > *Filter*).

   This works both in the TOC and in Topic Files. This only filters entire topics, it does not filter conditional text tagged within your topics.

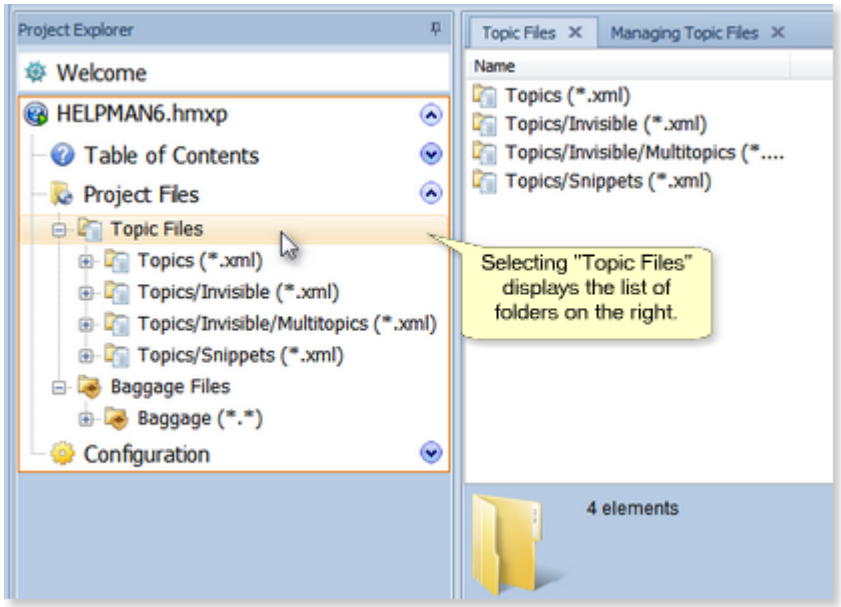
Important Notes:

- The current build settings of topics are shown in the Project Explorer, next to the topic caption in the TOC. Topics and chapters set to *All Builds* (the default) will always be included, of course – you cannot hide them.
- Filtered topics will be either shown in a different color or hidden completely. This depends on your settings for *When filtering the table of contents...* in **View** > **Program Options** > **General**. See Program Options - General 1261 for details on these settings.

How to view topic files and folders in the Explorer

Folders:

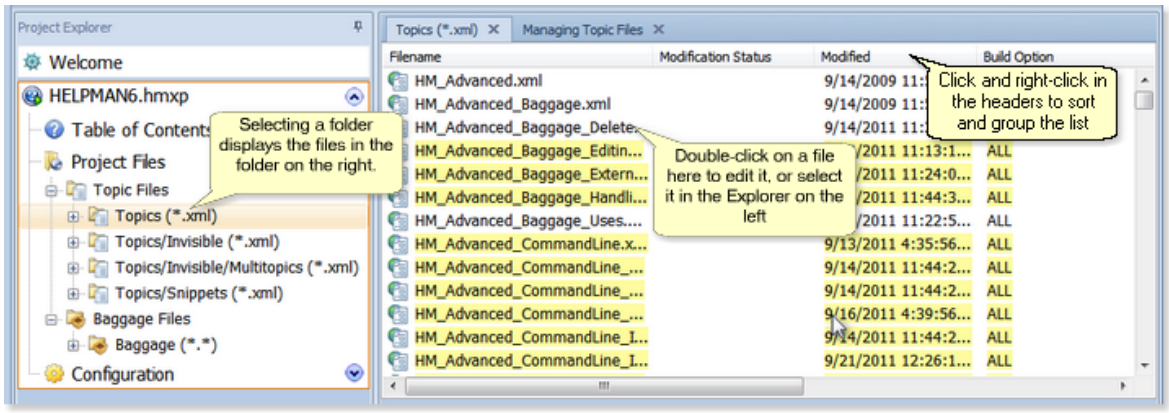
Select *Topic Files* in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer. This will initially display a list of the folders in which your topic files are stored. How many folders are displayed will depend on whether you have created sub-folders:



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Files:

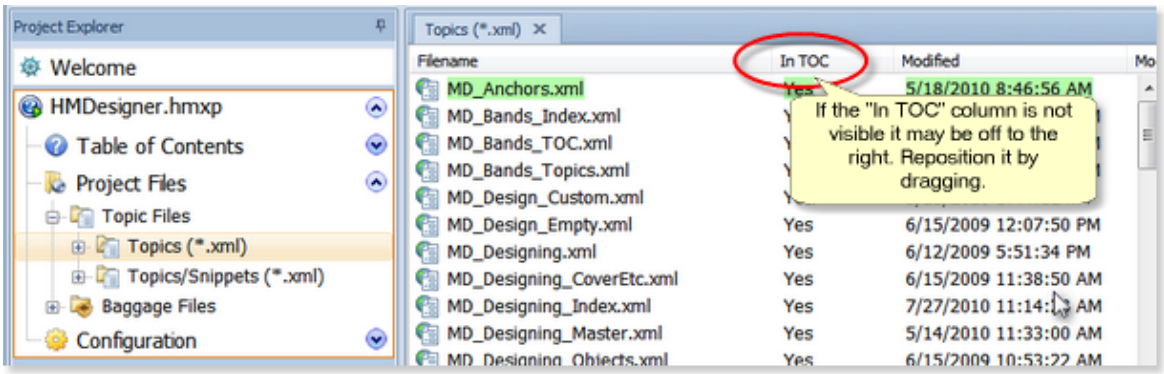
Select the *Topics* folder or any other folder in the Topic Files section:



Tip: You can check whether a topic file has a TOC entry with the *In TOC* column above the file list on the right. By default this is the last column on the right so it may not be visible immediately. You can rearrange the columns by dragging them left and right with the mouse.

Checking whether topic files are in the TOC

You can check whether topic files have TOC entries with the *In TOC* column above the file list on the right. You can also sort and group files by this option (see below). In addition to this you can also locate files that do not have TOC entries with the Report Tool in the Project tab.



How to sort and group files in the Project Explorer

You can sort and group files by several different criteria (name, modification status, modification date, build option, topic status). You can combine sorting and grouping: When the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

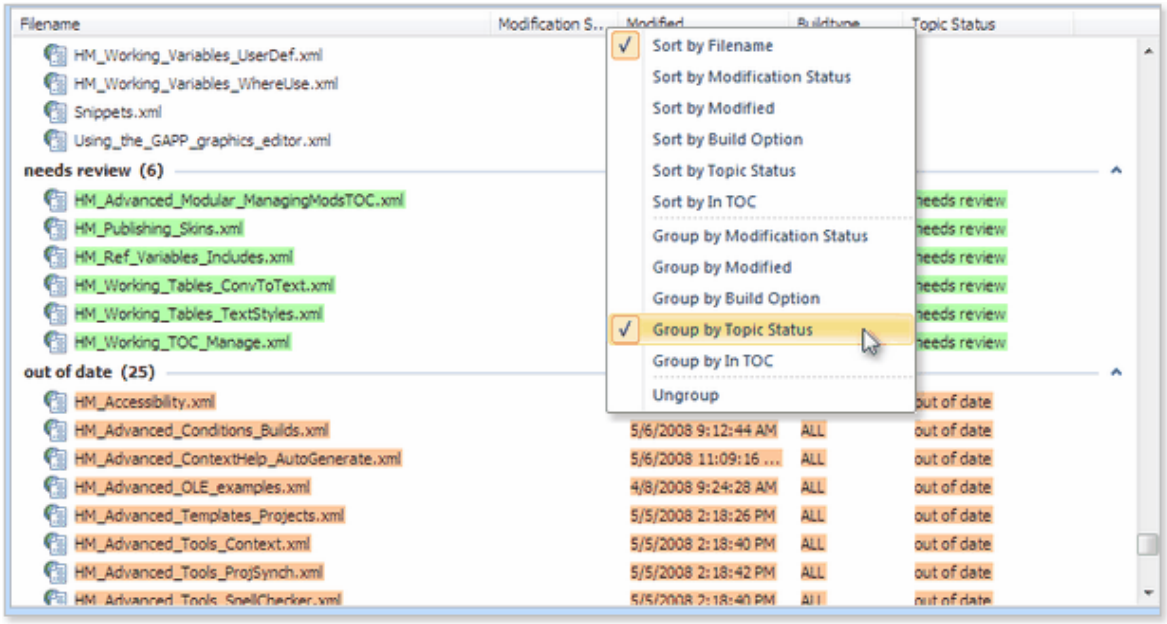
files are grouped the sorting options are applied within each group.

Sorting the files:

Just left-click in the column header you want to sort by. Alternatively you can also right-click in the column header and select the sort option in the context menu.

Grouping the files:

Right-click in the column header and select the group option in the context menu, or select *Ungroup* to return to an ungrouped list.



Creating folders for organizing topic files

You can create additional folders in the Topic Files section to organize your files to make them easier to manage. For example, it is a good idea to keep topic files without TOC entries in separate folders.

All folders must be sub-topics of the main Topics folder

All folders you create must be sub-folders of the main **Topics** folder. You cannot create additional top-level folders on the same level as the **Topics** folder.

Folders must contain at least one topic to appear in the file system

When you create a folder in Help+Manual in an uncompressed HMXP project it is only registered in the project file. It will not be created aS a physical sub-folder in your project

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

folder until you add at least one topic to it. (You won't see the folder in Windows Explorer until it contains one or more topics.)

1. Select the folder in which you want to create your new folder – either the main *Topics* folder or a sub-folder that you have already created.
2. Right-click and select *Add New Folder* in the context menu, or select *Add File* > *Add New Folder* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**
3. Enter the name for the new folder and select **OK**.

Moving, deleting and renaming topic files

Cutting and pasting is not possible with topic files in the Topic Files section because you are actually dealing with physical files. (See Moving, cutting and pasting topics 357 for instructions on working with topic entries in the TOC.) However you can move files between folders and delete files in the Topic Files section.

Moving topic files and folders:

To move a topic file from one folder to another just drag it to the new folder with the mouse. You can also move folders in the same way.

Deleting topic files:

Just select the topic file in the Explorer and press DEL or right-click and select *Delete File*.

Renaming topic files:

You cannot rename topic files directly. To rename the topic file you need to edit the Topic ID.

1. Select the topic file in the Explorer.
2. Select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window, edit the Topic ID and save your project to update the Topic Files display.

All references to the topic in the project will be updated automatically. However, since the ID changes any references to the topic from other help projects or elsewhere will no longer work. This includes links to specific topics in WebHelp from other websites, because the topic ID is also the name of the HTML topic file in WebHelp.

You should thus be cautious about renaming topics, particularly topics that get a lot of traffic on your website.

See also:

Moving cutting and pasting topics 357

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using the Project Explorer 70

4.2.4 Tips & Tricks in the Project Explorer

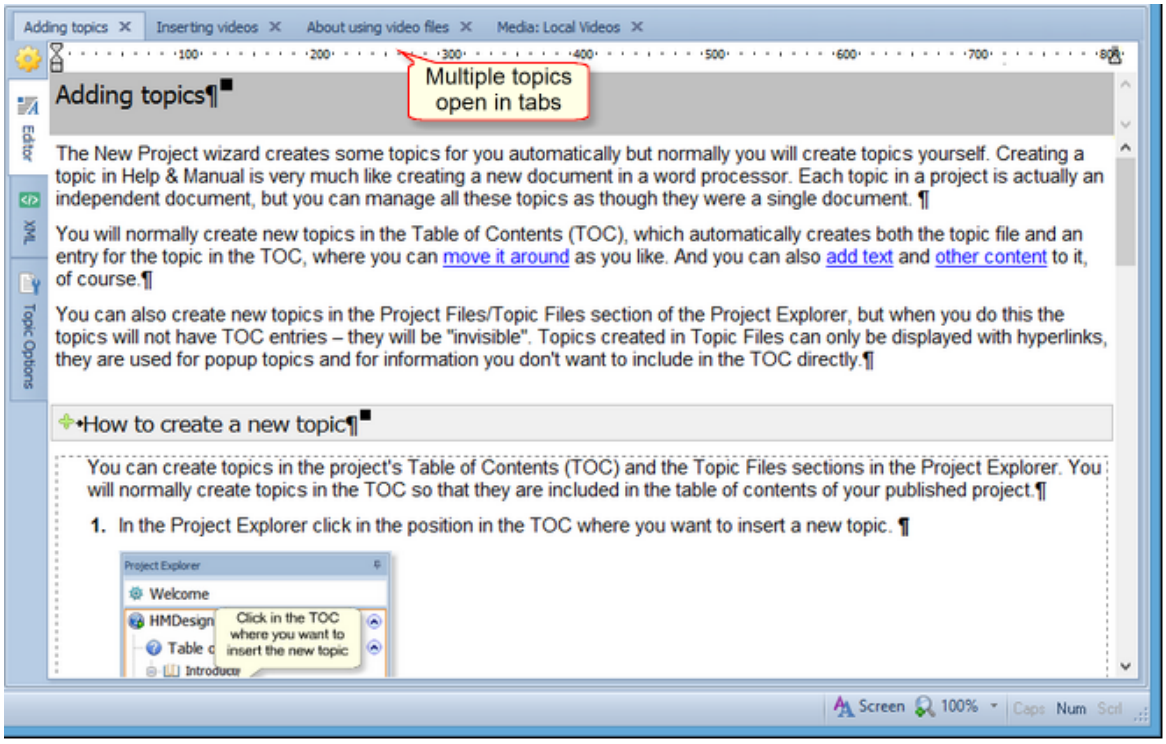
You can have multiple projects open for editing at the same time in the Project Explorer. The Explorer has a number of features that make these functions more useful. In addition to this you can also open the main Help+Manual program multiple times and have projects open in completely separate copies of the program.

If you are working in the uncompressed HMXP format you can also have the same project open in different copies of the program (Pro and Floating license versions of Help+Manual only).

Opening topics in new tabs

You can edit multiple topics at the same time in "tabs" in the editor, which are like tabs in a modern web browser.

- To open a topic in a tab, right-click on the topic title in the Table of Contents pane and select *Open topic in a new tab*.

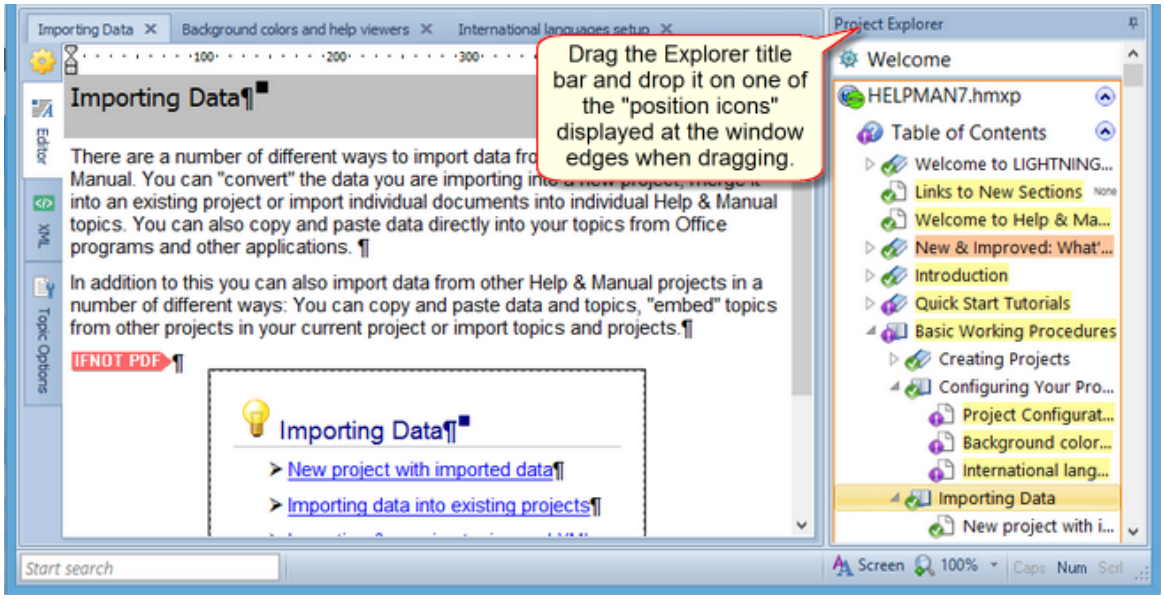


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Changing the Explorer position

If you don't like the Project Explorer position on the left of the editor pane you can change it. Just click in the title bar of the Explorer and drag it onto one of the four light blue position icons displayed on the edges of the program window while you are dragging.

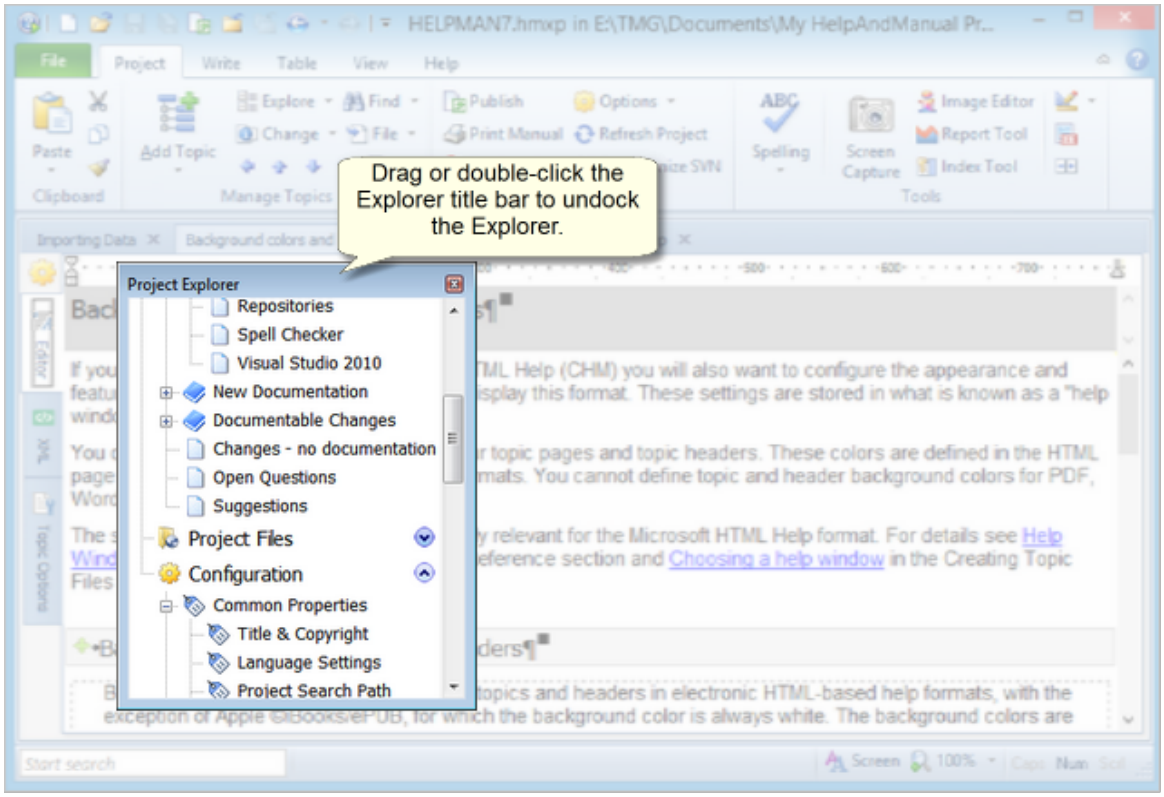
You can position the Project Explorer to the left, right, above or below the Editor Pane. You can also undock the Project Explorer to an external window (see below).



Undocking the Project Explorer

You can "undock" the entire Project Explorer to display it in a separate window. For example, if you have a dual monitor system you may want to display the Explorer in a separate monitor.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Undocking the Explorer:

- Double-click on the Explorer title bar. You can then drag the new window and resize it as you like.

  OR

- Click in the Explorer title bar and drag it out of the Help+Manual window.

Redocking the Explorer:

- Double-click on the title bar of the undocked Explorer window.

Tabbing the Explorer:

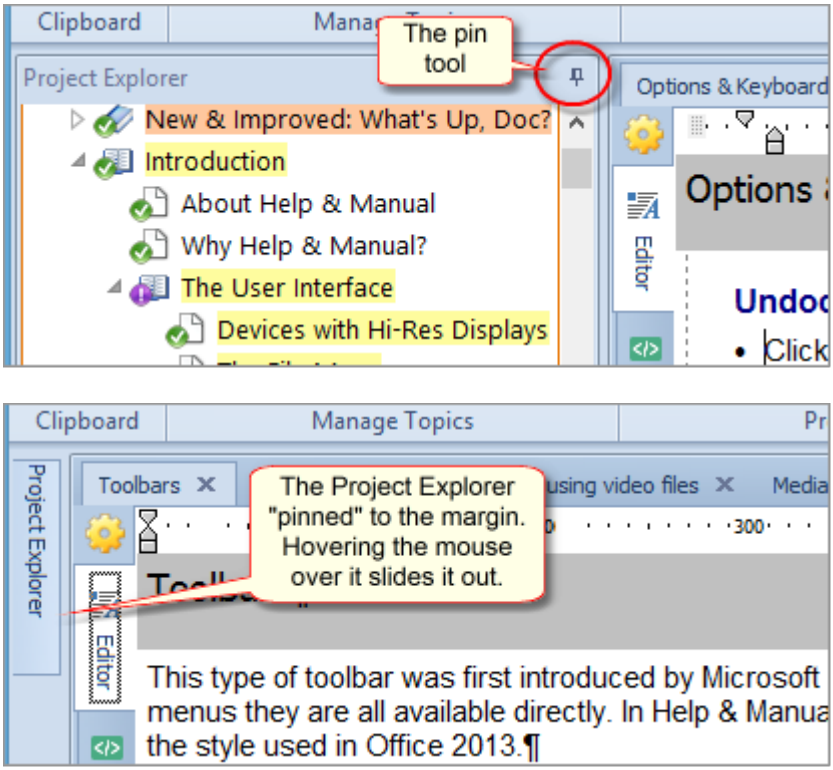
You can also display the Explorer in a tab by dragging it into the topic tabs area.

Pinning the Project Explorer to the margin (auto-hide function)

Clicking on the "pin" tool in the Project Explorer title bar "pins" the Explorer into the left margin of the Help+Manual window. The Explorer then collapses into the left margin,

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

showing only its title in a vertical tab. This can give you more room for editing on smaller monitors.



- To display the pinned Explorer just move the mouse pointer over the vertical tab in the left margin.
- To unpin the Explorer, first display it, then click on the pin tool in its title bar.

4.2.5 Converting old projects

Help+Manual automatically converts the project files from older versions with obsolete formats (H+M 3 and H+M 4) when you open them. Alternatively, you can also use the standalone converter program to convert old projects manually.

Help+Manual 4 projects are generally converted 1:1 and do not require any post-processing after conversion. Older Help+Manual 3 projects did not have the styles and other features introduced in the modern versions of the program and may require some reformatting after importing.

Backward compatibility with Help+Manual 5 and 6:

The Help+Manual 5 and 6 project formats are almost identical with the current format and require no conversion.

You can edit projects saved with Help+Manual 9 in versions 5 and 6 but this is not recom-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

mended. Any new features will be stripped out by the older versions when you do this. If you are working on projects in a team all team members should also be using exactly the same version.

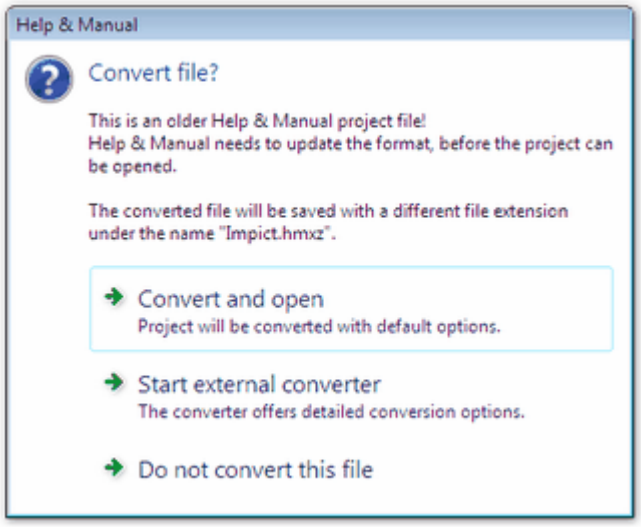
Converting old projects automatically

Help+Manual 5 and Help+Manual 6 projects

Just open the project normally. No conversion is required. However, newer features of the current version of Help+Manual are not supported by earlier versions. If you use these features and then edit and save with the older version, the features may be deleted by the older version.

Help+Manual 3 and 4 projects

1. Select the File menu and click on **Open**, then select the format of the project you want to open in the *Files of Type:* field (or the drop-down menu next to the *File Name:* field in newer versions of Windows).
2. Select the file you want to convert and click on *Open* to display the following dialog:



3. Select **Convert and open** to convert the old project.The new project file will be saved in the same directory as the old project you are converting.

This method automatically converts the old project into a single compressed file with the extension **`.hmxz`** containing all the project components except the graphics files. If you are using the Basic version of Help+Manual this is the only project format you can use.

Using the external converter:

If you use the external converter you can also convert old projects to the uncompressed XML format (HMXP, Professional and Floating license versions only) and select additional conversion options for Help+Manual 3 projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

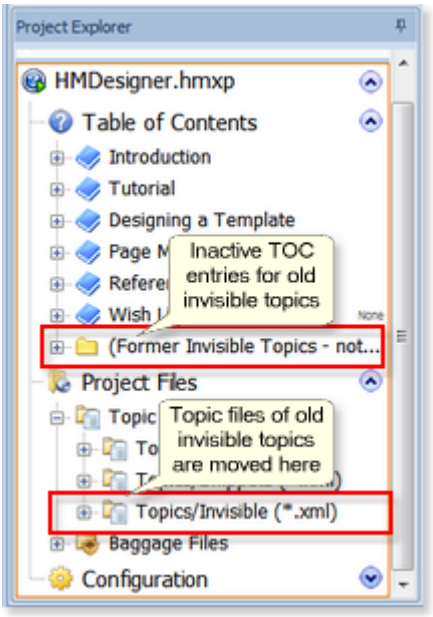
Follow the instructions above and select **Start external converter**. For full details see The Project Converter.

Invisible topics from obsolete Help+Manual project formats (HM3 and HM4)

If your old HMX or HM3 project contains "invisible topics" (topics without TOC entries) they will be moved to a sub-folder called *Topics\Invisible* in the Topic Files section in the Project Explorer.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

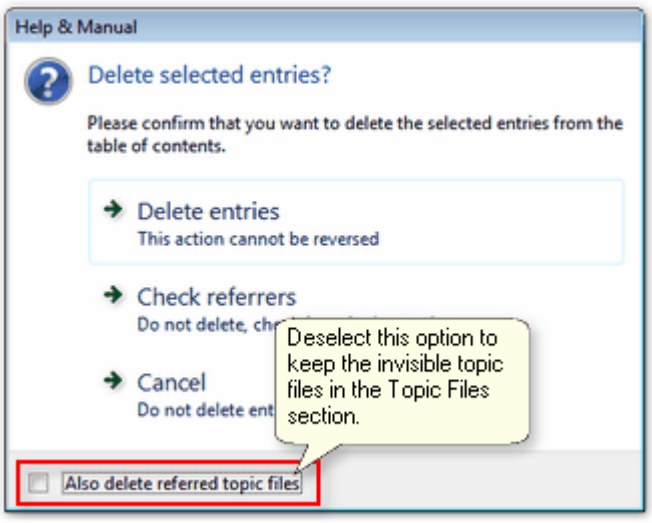
Automatic Converter:



When you use the automatic converter a chapter called *(Former Invisible Topics)* will also be created at the bottom of the converted project's Table of Contents (TOC) section.

These TOC entries are linked to the topic files of the former invisible topics but they will still not be included in your published output because their include options are automatically set to "None".

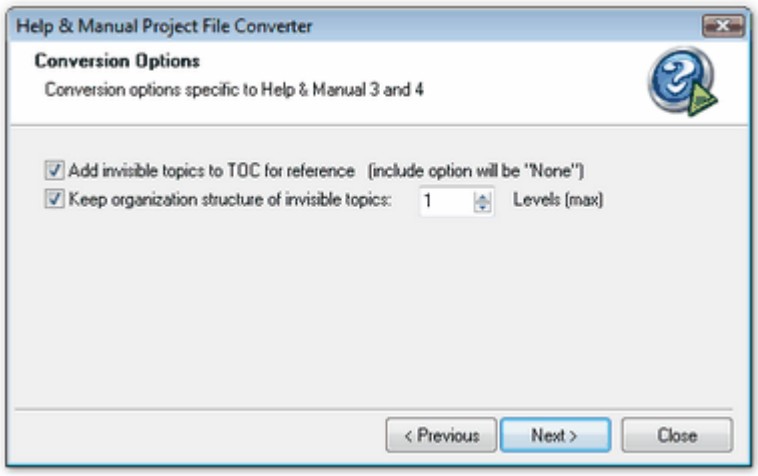
You can delete the (Former Invisible Topics) chapter by selecting it and pressing DELETE. Before confirming, deselect the option *Also delete referred topic files* to keep the actual topic files.



External Converter:

When you use the external converter program you can decide what you want to do with your old invisible topics:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Add invisible topics to TOC creates the (Former Invisible Topics) chapter described above. We recommend deselecting this option.

Keep organization structure creates sub-folders in the Topic Files section to match your folder structure in your old project. You can create a maximum of 10 levels but the converter will not create more levels than the original project contained.

Important: Images from old projects are not copied or moved

When you convert old projects the images they use are left in their original locations. The images are accessed by adding links to the old locations to the Project Search Path in the converted project. If you want to store the images with your new project you must manually copy them to a new folder in your new project folder and then update the Project Search Path of your new project so that it only references the new folder(s) location.

See Managing your graphics 514 for more details on these subjects.

See also:

Choosing your save mode 126
The Project Converter 1234

4.2.6 Opening recent projects

To open a project you have edited recently just select it in the *Recent Projects* list in the File menu.

Recent Projects

Click/select:	Open the selected project in the current instance of Help+Manual.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Pin icons (on right)	"Pinning" a project entry moves it to the top of the list for easy access.
RIGHT-CLICK MENU:	**Open in new instance:** Open the project in a new copy of Help+Manual. **Add to / Remove from pinned projects:** Moves the entry to the top of the list for easy access or removes the entry from the pinned list (same as pin icon). **Remove from list:** Prune the list by removing the current entry completely. **Move Up/Down:** Arrange the list to suit your preferences
Quickly access recent documents:	Shows the select number of recent documents from the top of the list in the File Menu. 1. Use the pin icons to move the projects you want to manage to the top of the list. 2. Activate quick access to enter these projects in the File Menu.

Workspaces

Lists the workspaces 45 you have created so that you can select them.

4.2.7 Importing data

You can import existing documentation into your Help+Manual projects from a wide variety of different formats. When you import data you can either create a new project or import the data into an existing project. The procedure in both cases is almost identical.

When you import data an interactive wizard guides you through each step of the process. However, each data format needs to be handled a little differently. You will find important information on each format further below.

Importing data to new projects

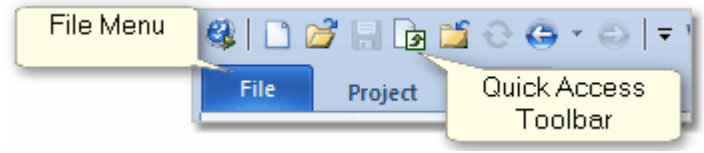
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Select the **File** menu.
2. Select **New Project**.
3. Select the documentation format under the *Import existing documentation to a new project* heading, then follow the instructions displayed.

See Settings for importing data 157 for details on the import settings.

Importing data into existing projects

1. Click anywhere in the **Table of Contents** section in the Project Explorer. The data will be inserted at the end of the current Table of Contents. You can move imported chapters and topics after importing if necessary.



2. Select the File menu and click on **Import**.
3. Select the documentation format, then follow the instructions displayed in the interactive wizard.

See Settings for importing data 157 for details on individual settings that you need to consider for each import format.

See also:

Settings for importing data 157

4.2.8 Adding topics

The New Project option creates some topics for you automatically to get you started. In your normal daily work you will create topics yourself. Creating a topic in Help+Manual is very much like creating a new document in a word processor – but the document is also part of a larger project. Each topic in a project is actually an independent document, but you can manage all these topics as though they were a single document.

You will normally create new topics in the Table of Contents (TOC), which automatically creates both the topic file and an entry for the topic in the TOC, where you can move it around 100 as you like. And you can also add text 94 and other content 104 to it, of course.

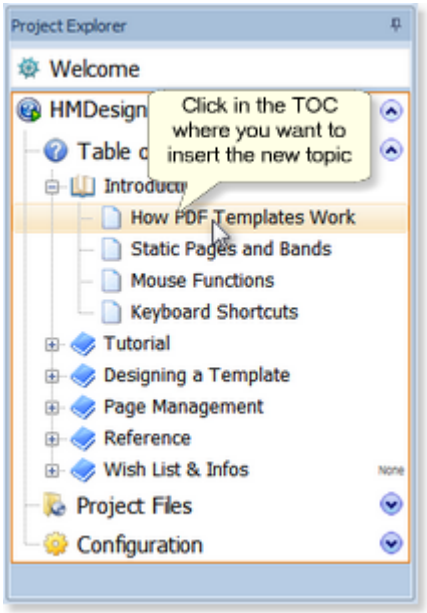
You can also create new topics in the Project Files/Topic Files section of the Project Explorer, but when you do this the topics will not have TOC entries – they will be "invisible". Topics created in Topic Files can only be displayed with hyperlinks, they are used for popup topics and for information you don't want to include in the TOC directly.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to create a new topic

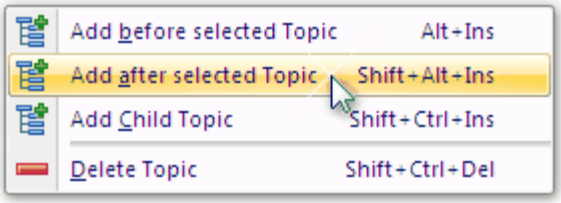
You can create topics in the project's Table of Contents (TOC) and the Topic Files sections in the Project Explorer. You will normally create topics in the TOC so that they are included in the table of contents of your published project.

1. In the Project Explorer click in the position in the TOC where you want to insert a new topic.



2. Select *Add Topic* in the **Project** tab of the Ribbon.

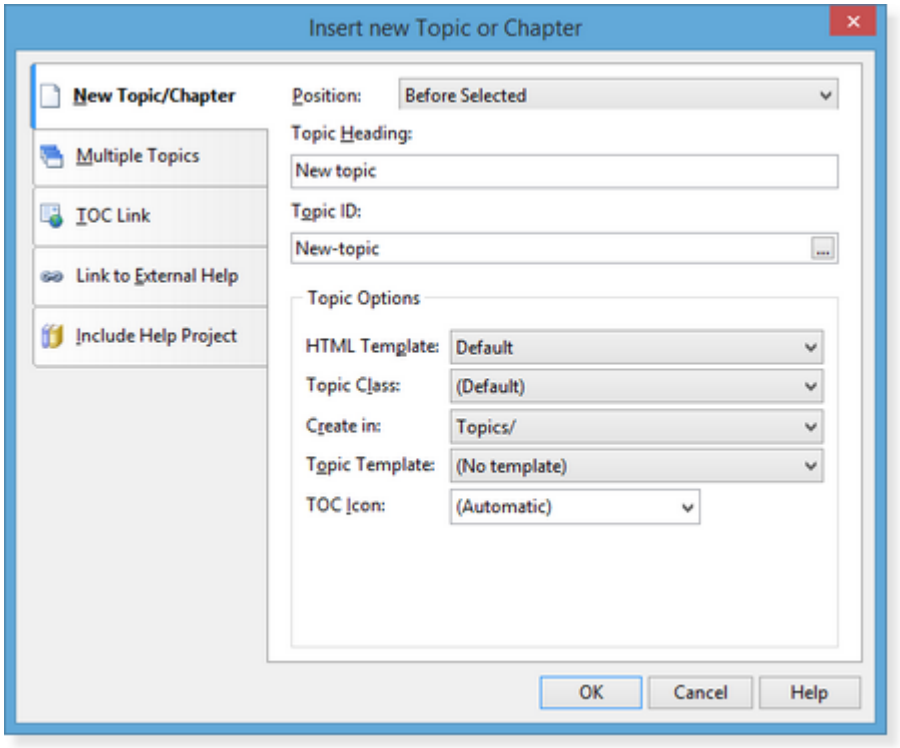
3. Choose where you want to insert your topic relative to the selected topic:



Insert Child inserts the new topic as a sub-topic of the selected topic, turning the parent topic into a chapter (if it is not already a chapter).

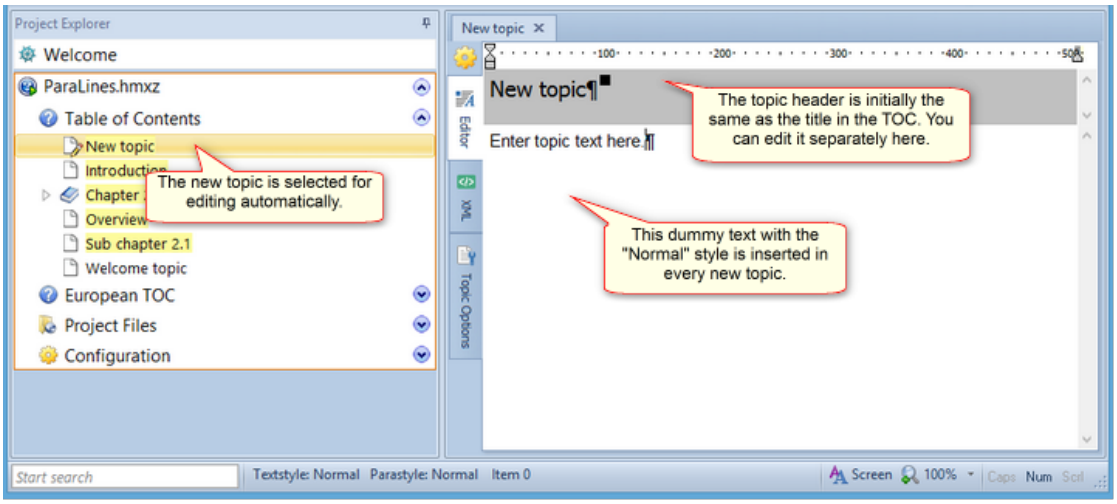
4. This displays the *Insert New Topic or Chapter* dialog:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Select the *New Topic/Chapter* option. Enter a heading (title) for the new topic. The Topic ID is created automatically from the heading. You can edit this if you like. Leave the *HTML Template*, *Topic Class*, *Create in:* and *Topic Template:* settings as they are. See Add Topic/File 1298 for detailed information on the settings in this dialog if you are interested.

5. After entering your settings click on OK to create the new topic and insert it in the TOC.



6. Once you have created a topic you can edit it 94 and move it around 100 in the TOC.

See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Creating and Editing Topics 172
Add Topic/File 1298 (dialog reference)

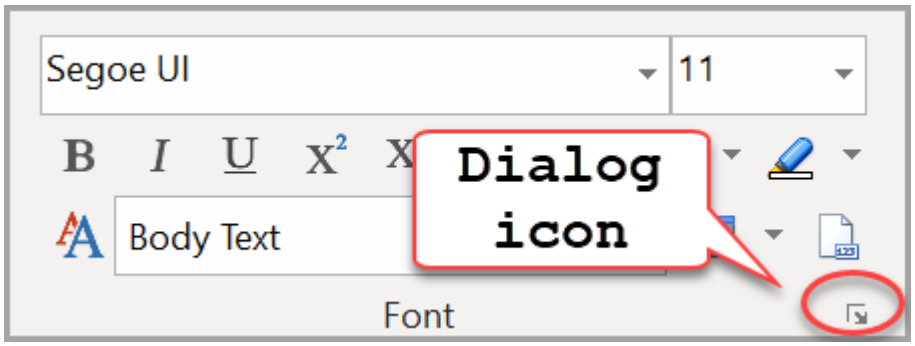
4.2.9 Editing topics

Entering and editing text in your topics in Help+Manual is very similar to working in a word processor. To edit a topic select the topic in the Table of Contents or Project Files section of the Project Explorer, then click inside the editing window to start editing.

The Write tab in the Ribbon provides direct access to all the tools you need while you are editing. The only group inside this section that may be unfamiliar to word processor users is the Insert group, which contains special tools and objects used in help authoring projects.

Editing overview

- You can type and enter text and copy and paste from other programs just as you would in a normal word processor.
- **Double-click** to select a word, **triple-click** to select an entire paragraph.
- Use the tools in the Font and Paragraph groups in the **Write** tab to format text. Select text to apply new formatting, select a formatting option (Bold, Italic etc.) and type to change formatting from the current cursor position.
- The Font and Paragraph groups have additional dialog modes that you can display by clicking on the little icons in their bottom right corners.



- Hover the mouse pointer over the tools in the **Write** tab of the Ribbon for descriptions.
- You can save a lot of time and work by using styles. See the Using styles 96 tutorial.

Spell checking

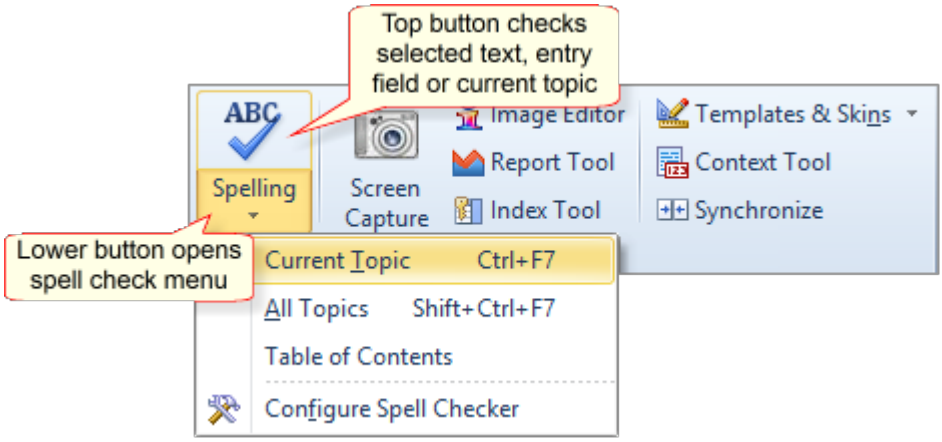
Live spell checking:

1. Select **Project** > **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker** and select the dictionary for the language you want to use in the Main Dictionaries section at the bottom of the dialog. Select *Download dictionaries* to get additional dictionaries.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Activate the *Check spelling as you type* option. Misspelled words will then be underlined in red as you type.

Manual spell checking:



- Select the top half of the *Spelling* tool in the **Project** tab to check the current topic or text entry field or window. If text is selected only the selected text will be checked.
- Select the bottom half of the tool for the spell-check menu.

Spell checking is supported almost everywhere in Help+Manual where you can enter text. Just right-click to display the context menu or click on the upper half of the *Spelling* tool in the **Project** tab to access.

Copying and pasting

- You can copy and paste text just as you would in a normal word processor. This works within topics, between topics and between projects.
- You can open multiple projects and copy and paste between them, or you can open Help+Manual a second time and copy and paste between the two windows.
- You can copy and paste formatted text from and to other programs, including Office programs like MS Word and MS Excel.

Copying images from Word:

When you copy text with images from MS Word a dialog will be displayed prompting you to convert the embedded image data to an external graphics file. Always do this, or right-click on the image afterward and convert the image into an external file. Otherwise the image will be embedded in your topic file and will take up too much space.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you have many embedded images you may experience slow editing performance in the single-file HMXZ format. Even if you don't, embedded images unnecessarily bloat your topic files and should be avoided if possible.

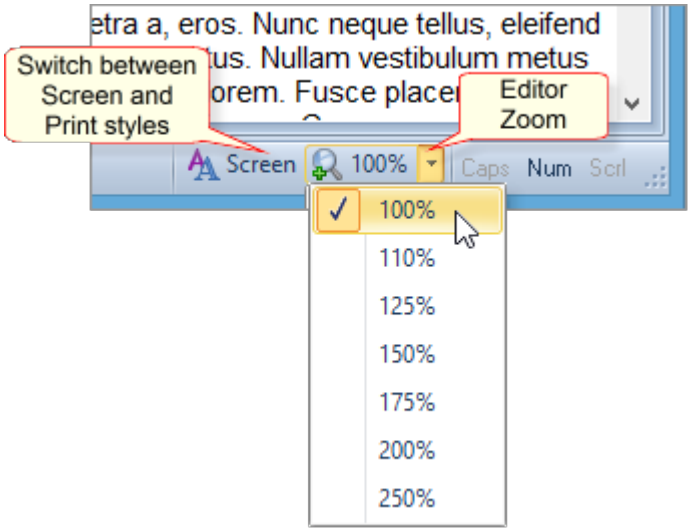
Editor zoom and preview mode for screen/print styles and font sizes

You can zoom the entire contents of the editor quickly with the Zoom control in the status bar below the editor window. This control is also available in the **View** tab in the ribbon toolbar.

You can also switch the editor display between the styles defined for electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Visual Studio Help and eWriter Help) print-style help formats (PDF, printed manuals, Word DOCX and ePUB and Kindle Mobi eBooks).

This will only have an effect if you have defined different settings for screen and print output in your style definitions. See Multiple style sets 302 for more information on using different style sets for different output formats.

Display buttons in the status bar:



See also:

Use Styles 96 (Quick Start Tutorial)
Creating and Editing Topics 172
Text Formatting and Styles 273

4.2.10 Using styles

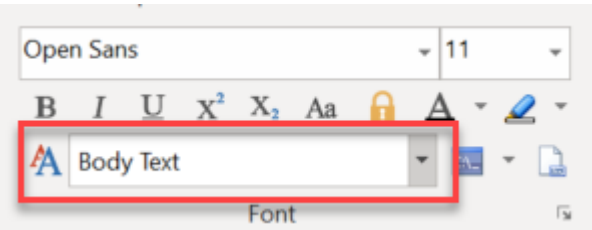
You can format all your text manually if you like but it's much more efficient to use styles. Styles are formatting definitions that you can apply to text and paragraphs with a single click.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The style definition is then linked to the formatted text and if you change the definition everything formatted with the style is updated immediately. This works in the same way as styles in a word processor like MS Word.

How to apply a style

To apply a style to a paragraph just click anywhere in the paragraph and select the style in the Style Selector in the **Write** tab:



If you included a keyboard shortcut in the style definition 288 you can use the keyboard shortcut instead of the Style Selector.

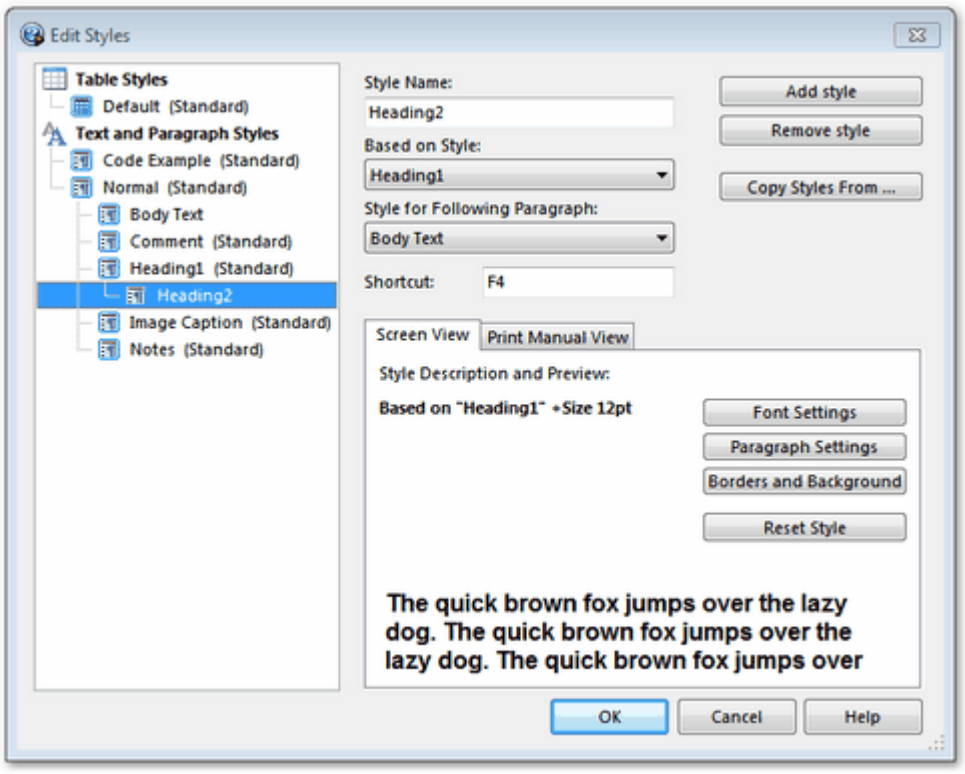
If you select text before applying a style the style's font attributes will only be applied to the selected text.

Note: If the paragraph consists of formatted imported text you must select the entire paragraph before applying a style. Formatted text has priority over styles and must be selected to be changed.

How to modify a style

1. Click in a paragraph in your project formatted with a style you want to change, then select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab.
2. This displays the **Edit Styles** dialog. The style at the current cursor position is selected automatically.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Click on the *Font Settings* and *Paragraph Settings* buttons and adjust the font and paragraph settings. If you want you can also apply *Borders and Background* settings.
4. Click on **OK** to close the dialog. The results are immediately visible in the editor and will be applied to all the text in your entire project formatted with the edited style.

The same settings will also be applied to text formatted with styles based on the edited style, for all attributes that have not been explicitly changed in the other styles.

How to change the font and paragraph settings for your entire project

There are a number of predefined standard styles. The most important one is *Normal*, which is the default style for all normal body text paragraphs in your project. Most other styles are based on Normal. This means that changing the settings of Normal will automatically change all text in your entire project formatted with Normal or with any style based on Normal.

Changing the definition of Normal changes the body text style for your entire project in a couple of seconds.

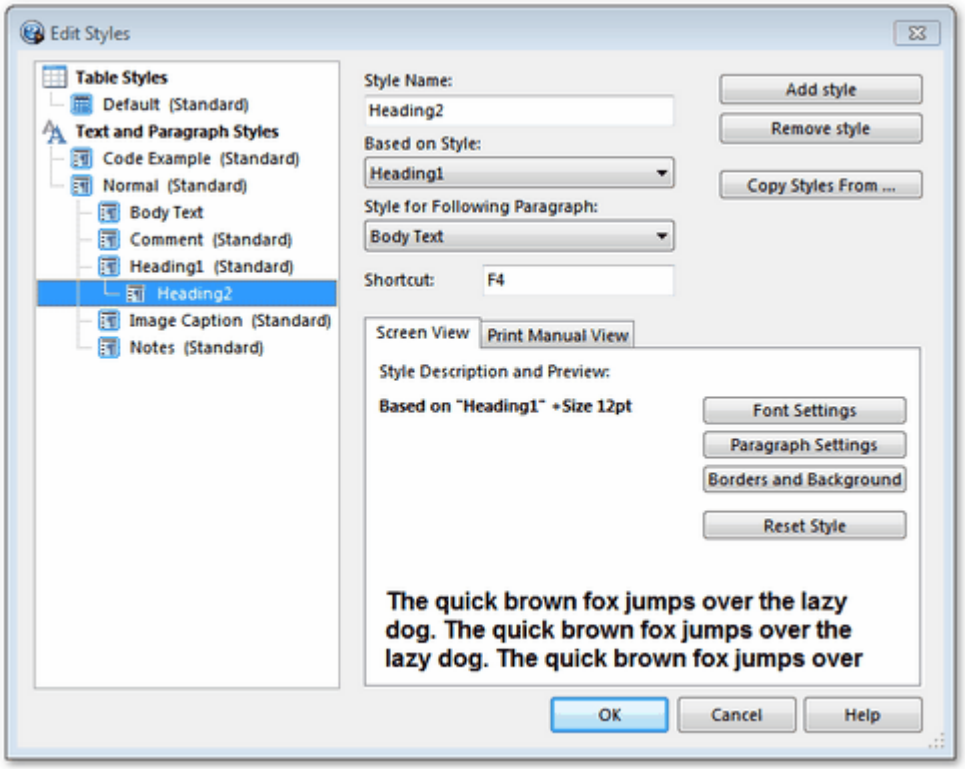
The same settings will also be applied to text formatted with styles based on Normal, for all attributes that have not been explicitly changed in the other styles.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to define a new style

In addition to changing the Normal style you will also want to define your own styles so that you can apply complex formatting quickly and change it whenever you want.

1. Select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab to display the Edit Styles dialog:



2. Select *Add Style* to define a new style, then edit its default name in the *Style Name:* field. You can change style names whenever you like!
3. Select *Font Settings* and *Paragraph Settings* to edit the settings for the style. You can also add a style for the next paragraph; then pressing ENTER in a paragraph with the current style will automatically format the new paragraph with the "next" style.
4. If you want you can also assign a shortcut key so that you can apply the style quickly.
5. Then click on **OK** to close the dialog.

Using table styles

You can define table styles in the **Edit Styles** dialog (see above) in the same way as you define styles for paragraphs and text.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Applying a style to a table:

Click inside the table, select *Properties* in the **Table** tab and then select the style in the *Table Style:* field.

Creating a table with a style:

Create a table with *Table* > *Insert Table* in the **Write** or **Table** tab and select the style in the Table Style: field when entering the table configuration settings. Any additional settings you enter in the Insert Table dialog will override the style settings for that table.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273
Dynamic Styles 1482 (Reference)

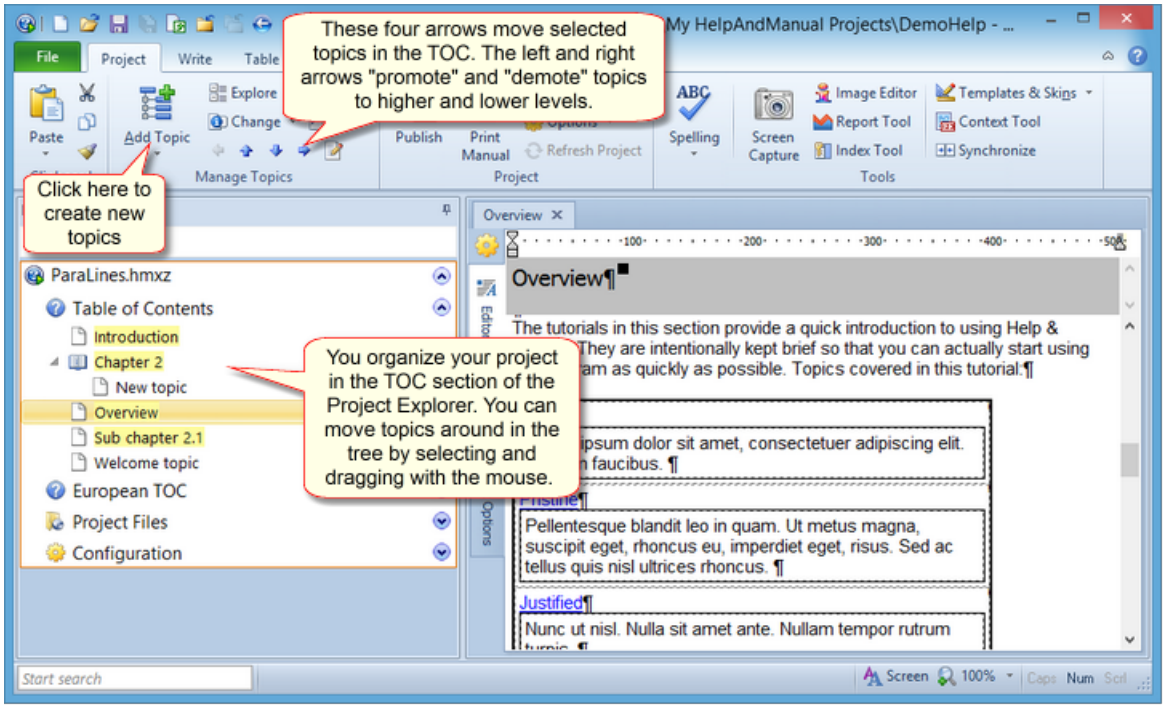
4.2.11 Organizing the TOC

One of the main differences between Help+Manual and a word processor is that in a word processor you work in a single document. In a Help+Manual project, each topic is an independent file that is like a word processor document. However, Help+Manual manages all these files as though they were a single document. For example, you can perform search and replace operations globally in all your topic files.

You can move topics around in the Table of Contents (TOC) section of the Project Explorer with the keyboard and the mouse and you can also change the "level" of topics in the TOC tree hierarchy.

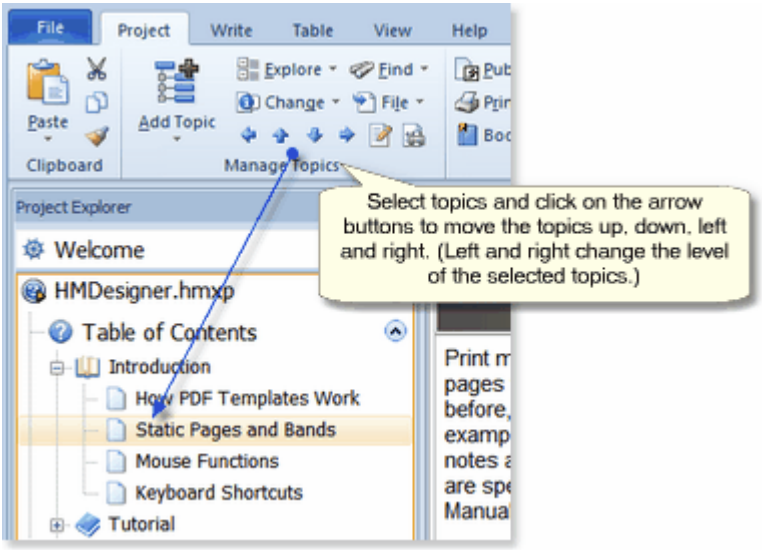
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Table of Contents (TOC) Overview



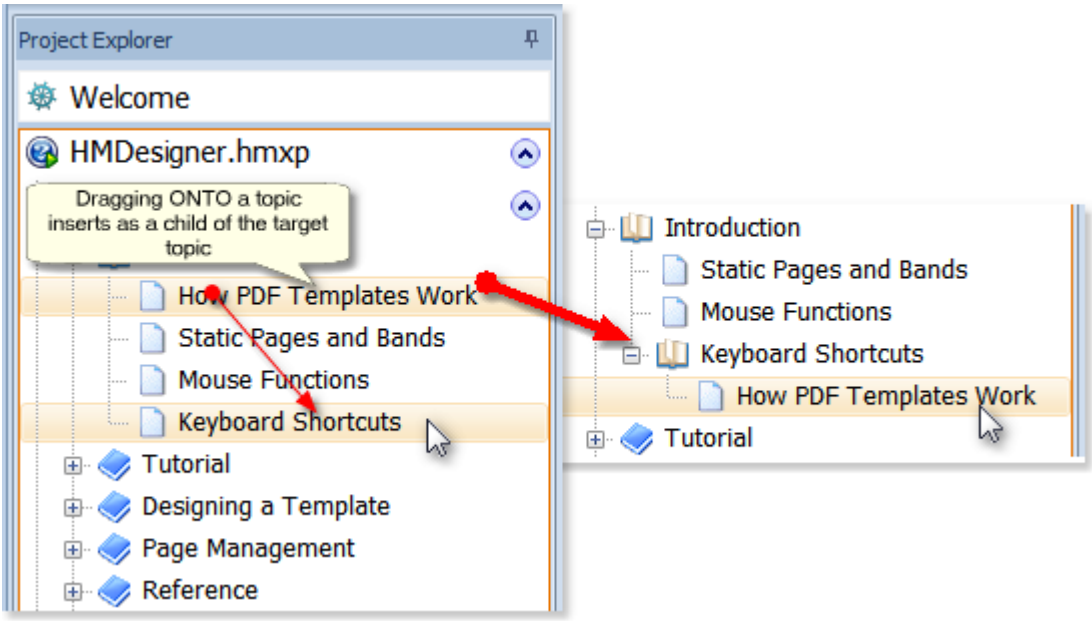
Moving topics around in the TOC

- Use the arrow tools in **Project** > **Manage Topics** to move selected topics around in the TOC:

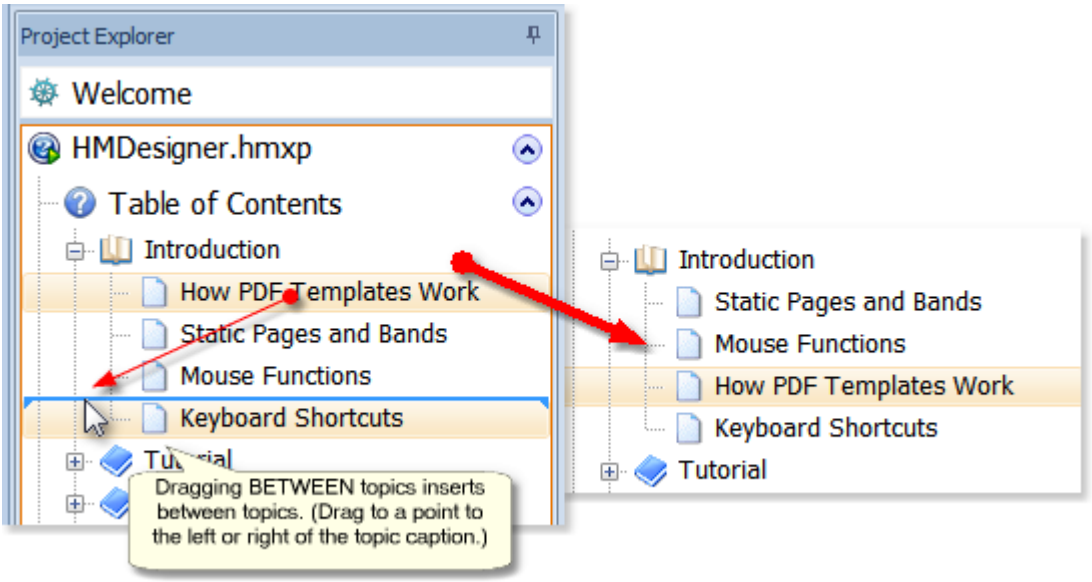


- Drag a topic onto another topic to make it the child (sub-topic) of the target topic:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



- Drag a topic between two topics to insert it between them:



Using cut and paste in the TOC

You can also use normal cut and paste methods to move topics around in the TOC and to copy and move topics between projects. There are two ways to do this:

- Open the second project in the current instance of Help+Manual. The second project will be displayed as an additional item in the Project Explorer and you can then cut and paste between the two projects in the Project Explorer.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Open Help+Manual a second time, open the second project there and then cut and paste between the projects.

There are three different ways to cut and paste in the TOC:

- Right-click in the TOC to display Cut, Copy and Paste options.
- Use the tools in the **Clipboard** group in the Ribbon.
- Use *Ctrl+X* and *Ctrl+C* to cut or copy and *Ctrl+V* to paste.

Managing files in the Topic Files section

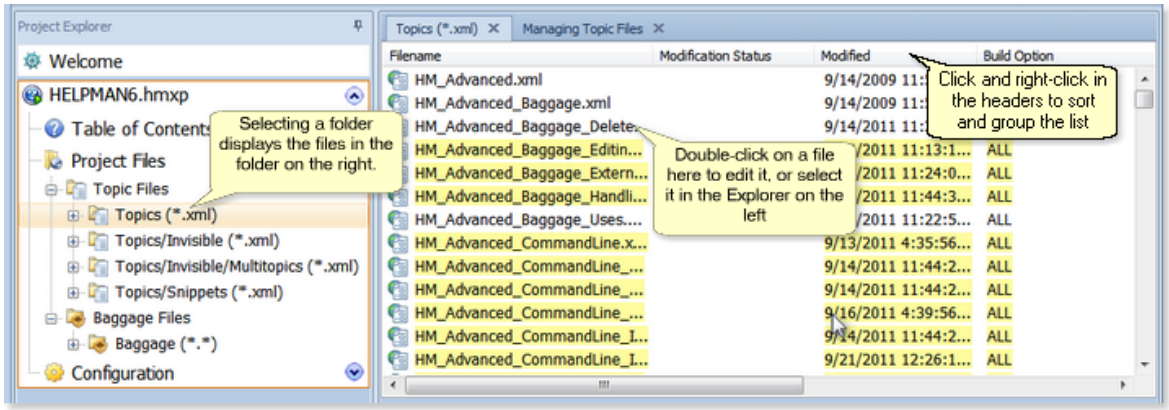
All the topic files in your TOC are also available in the **Project Files** > **Topic Files** section of the Project Explorer.

These are not second copies of your topic files, they are the same files! The TOC entries are really just links pointing to your topic files. The TOC shows the Table of Contents structure with links to the topic files, the Topic Files section only shows you the files.

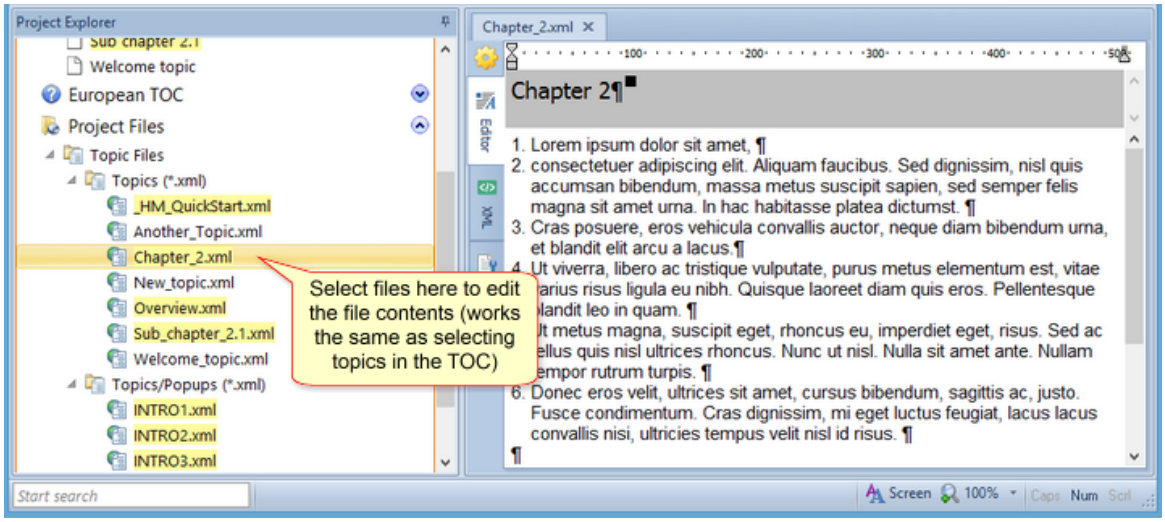
In addition to your TOC topics, the Topic Files section can also contain topic files not included in the TOC, for example topic files for popups and topics that are only accessible by clicking on hyperlinks.

Folder display and file display in Topic Files:

The folders in the Project Files section are just like folders in Windows Explorer. You can delete topic files and you can shift them from one folder to another if you have created multiple folders. However, there is no "table of contents" structure here because you are really just looking at disk folders containing lists of files.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



See also:

Managing Topics in the TOC 342

4.2.12 Inserting graphics

In addition to text you will also want to add graphics to illustrate your topics. This tutorial shows you how to add ordinary graphic images to your topics from files and by cut and paste.

You can also use Help+Manual's built-in screen capture utility 507 to capture images of objects on your computer screen and insert them in your topics. In addition to graphics you can also insert video files 548 and OLE objects 1139 from other programs.

See Graphics formats and file size 1529 for details on choosing graphics formats.

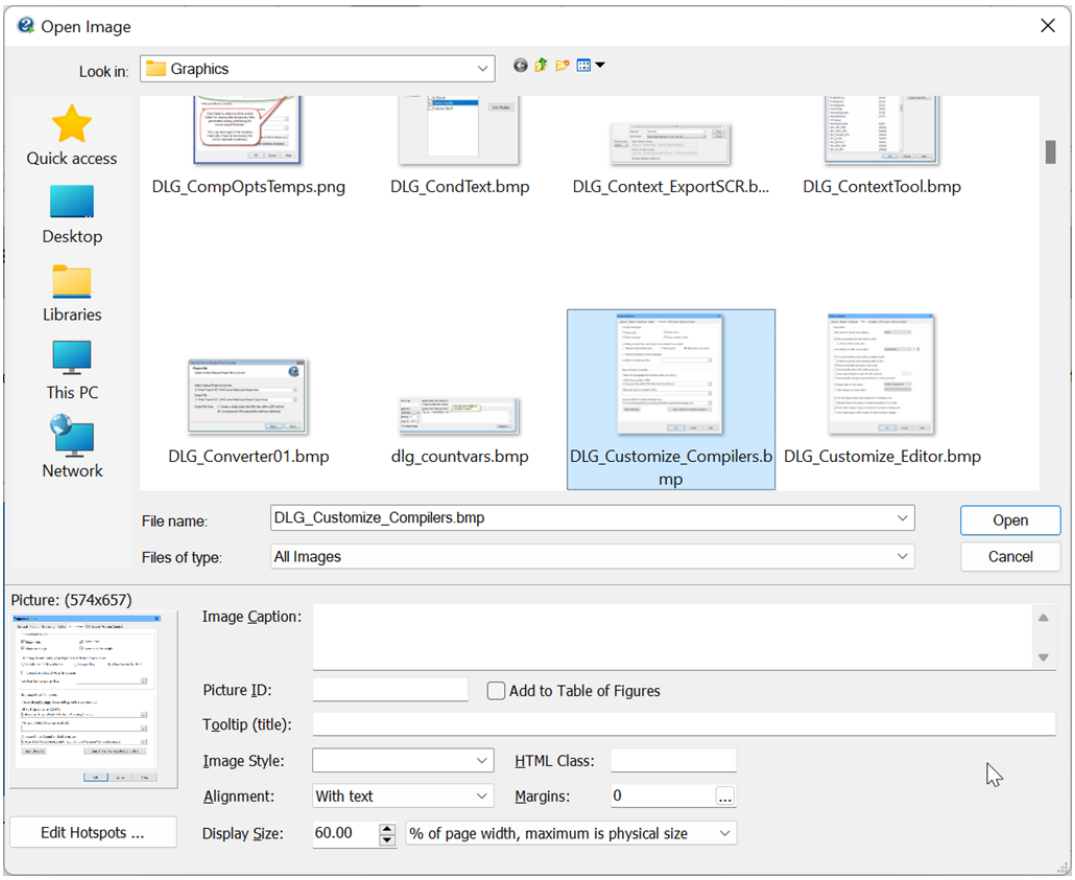
Key Information
Graphics files are the only project components that are not stored as an integral part of your project. However, you can put your folder(s) containing your graphics files in your project folder. This is also recommended.

Inserting a graphic from a file

1. Click in the position where you want to insert a graphic, then select *Image* in **Write > Insert**:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. This displays the *Open Image* dialog. Select the image you want to insert, then click on *Open* to insert the image in your document.



Click on the preview thumbnail at the lower left for a full-size preview.

Picture ID: An optional ID for use in HTML output (ignore this for now!)

Tooltip: Displays a tooltip when the user mouseovers the image in HTML formats.

Caption: A caption displayed below the image

Padding: Space around the image (in pixels), you can enter individual values for each side with ...

Alignment: Position of the image in relation to the text on the page

Zoom% / Autosize: Resize 503 the image or display in full size.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Zoom is proportional to document width: Make image responsive. The zoom percentage is then relative to the container width (document page or table cell).

3. If the image is not in your project folder you will be asked whether you want to copy it or add the path to the image location to your project.

Where to store your images

Help+Manual allows you to use images in any location. However, it is better to store your images in a one or more graphics folders together with your project. Otherwise it is easy to lose track of your images.

You can easily move all your images 514 to different locations later if you need to.

Inserting images with cut and paste

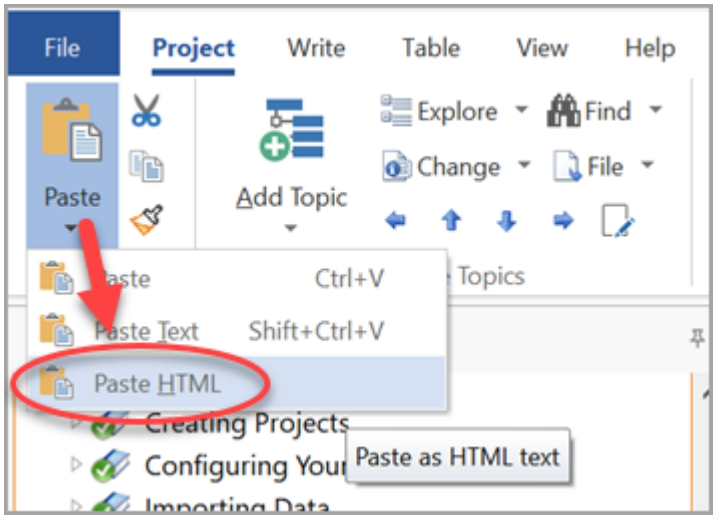
1. Copy the image in your graphics program, then switch to Help+Manual and select **Write** > **Clipboard** > **Paste** or press **`Ctrl+V`.** You can then either embed the image (not recommended!) or choose the Convert Embedded Image option (recommended!). Choosing Convert will display the *Save Image* dialog with the following options:
   - **File name:** Give the file a descriptive name!
   - **Save as type:** You can save the image as a BMP, GIF, JPEG, PNG or Impict IPP image. Use BMP for most purposes, Help+Manual converts and compresses BMPs automatically when you publish your project.
2. Then just click on *Save* to save the graphics file. It will be inserted in the topic at the current cursor position.

After inserting you can double-click on the image to display and edit the image properties and settings.

Pasting transparent PNGs and GIFs

If a copied PNG or GIF file loses its transparency when you paste it try using the *Paste HTML* option in the Help+Manual **Paste** tool instead. This will work with some graphics programs:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



See Inserting graphics and screenshots 481 for more detailed instructions and an explanation.

Pasting graphics from MS Word

If you paste graphics from MS Word together with text a dialog will be displayed asking you to convert the image data to an external file. This is recommended, because embedding images in your topics uses up a huge amount of memory and computer resources (many times the uncompressed size of the image itself).

Always select the option for converting embedded images to external files after pasting them from Word or other programs. If you forget to do this you can always access the conversion option by right-clicking on the embedded image after inserting it.

See also:

Using Graphics 479
Graphics, Videos and OLE Objects 1529

4.2.13 Inserting tables

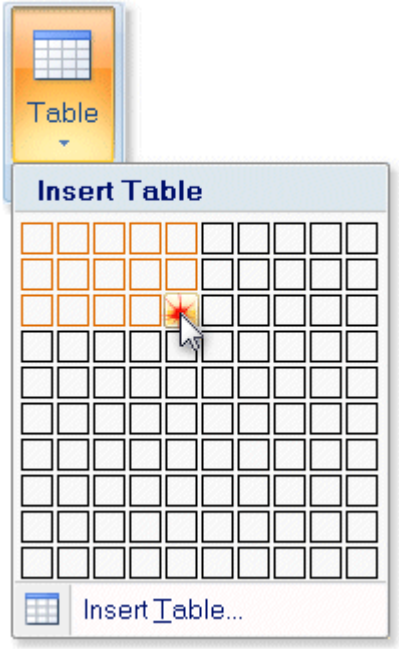
Tables can be used both to arrange tabular data and as a formatting tool, in the same way as in HTML pages. However, in preparation for responsive web design we strongly recommend that you avoid using tables for layout whenever possible, because they break responsive design.

Help+Manual has full support for complex and nested tables. This tutorial just shows you the basics of inserting tables – for full details see the Working with Tables 518 chapter.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to insert a quick table

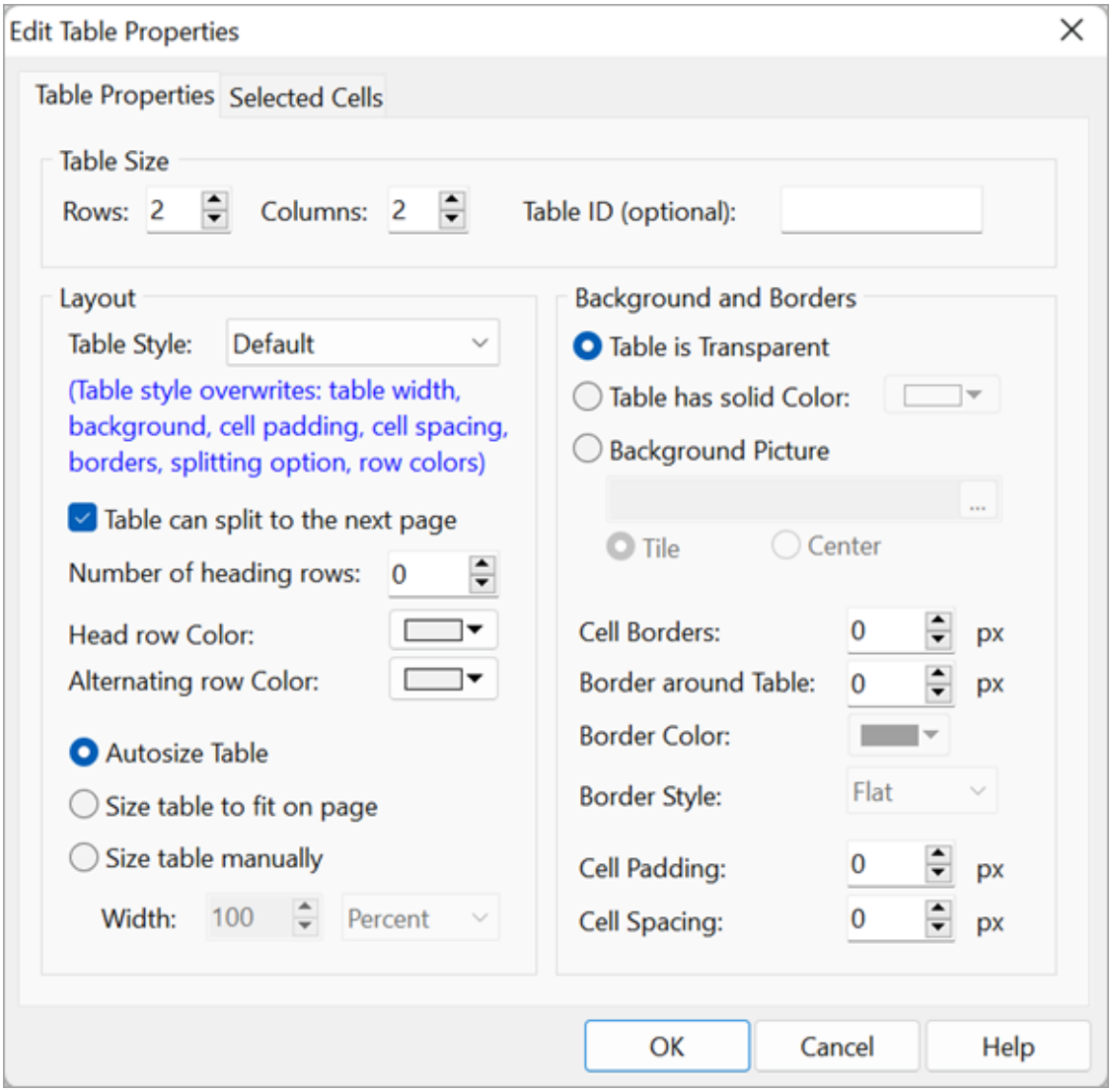
1. Click in the topic at the position where you want to insert the table.
2. Select *Insert* > *Table* in the **Write** tab or *New* > *Table* in the **Table** tab.
3. Move the mouse in the grid to highlight the number of columns and rows you want to have, then click to insert the table,



How to insert a table with settings

1. Click in the topic at the position where you want to insert the table.
2. Select *Insert* > *Table* in the **Write** tab or *New* > *Table* in the **Table** tab, then select *Insert Table* to display the Insert Table dialog.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Select the number of rows and columns and choose the color and cell border settings. For the moment leave all the other settings as they are – you can always change them later.
4. Click on OK to insert the table.

For full details of the settings see Table Properties 1391 in the **Reference** section.

Manipulating tables

- Drag column borders with the mouse to change column widths. This can be tricky and works differently from static word processor tables! See Managing Column Widths 522 for more detailed instructions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- To change the width of the entire table, right-click in the table, select **Table** > **Properties** and define the table width settings.
- Click in the table and select the **Table** tab to display the table tools – most of these are self-explanatory.
- Use the *Lock Column* tool in the **Table** tab to make column widths fixed or dynamic.
- Click in the table and select **Table** > **Table** > **Properties** to edit the table properties.
- Click and drag to select cells, columns and rows, then select Table Properties and apply settings in the Selected Cells tab (if you don't select anything the settings apply to the current cell only).

Using table styles

You can define table styles in the Edit Styles 96 dialog in the same way as you define styles for paragraphs and text.

Applying a style to a table:

Click inside the table, select *Properties* in the **Table** tab and then select the style in the *Table Style:* field.

Creating a table with a style:

Create a table with *Table* > *Insert Table* in the **Write** or **Table** tab and select the style in the Table Style: field when entering the table configuration settings. Any additional settings you enter in the Insert Table dialog will override the style settings for that table.

See also:

Working with Tables 518
How table sizing works 1502

4.2.14 Creating hyperlinks

The Web without hyperlinks would be unthinkable and the same applies to interactive help and documentation. Hyperlinks between topics are what makes your help genuinely useful. You can create links to topics and specific places in topics. In addition to this you can create links to pages on the Web and external files, and you can also create special links that execute scripts.

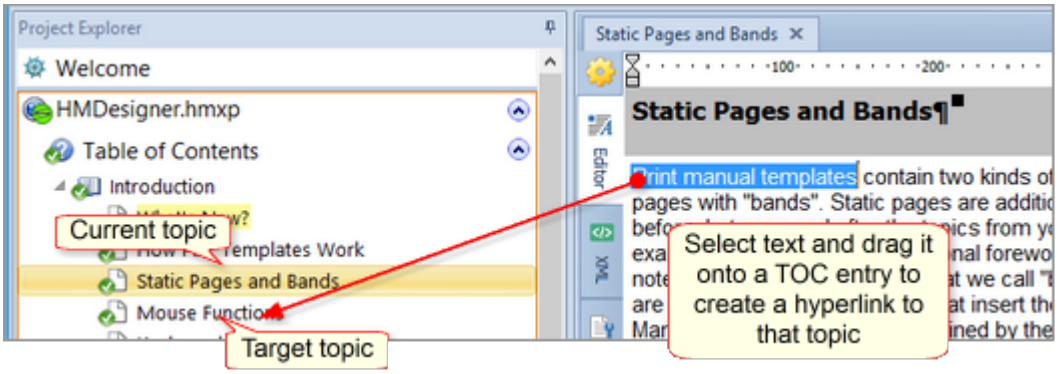
This tutorial shows you the basics of creating hyperlinks to topics and specific positions in topics. For full details on working with hyperlinks see Links, Anchors, Macros, Scripts and HTML 409.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Create a hyperlink with drag and drop

This is the fastest and easiest way to create a hyperlink and it is the method that you will probably use most frequently when working on a project.

1. Select the text you want to turn into a hyperlink in the editor.

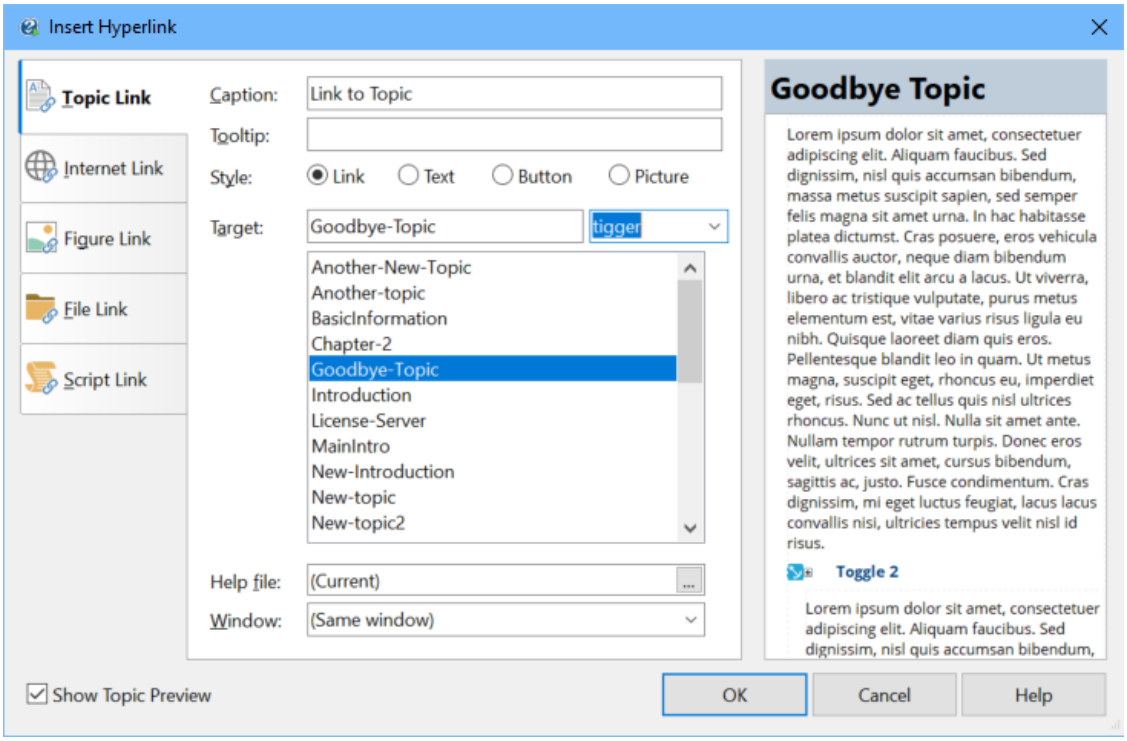


2. Drag the selected text to the Table of Contents (TOC) in the Project Explorer and drop it on the topic you want to link to.
3. That's it, your hyperlink is finished. You can then edit the hyperlink by double-clicking on it if you wish.

Create a hyperlink manually

1. Select the text you want to use as the link. (This is optional with this method – you can also create a link without selecting anything first.)
2. Select *Insert* > *Link* in the **Write** tab or press *Ctrl+L* to display the Edit Hyperlink dialog. For the moment leave the default setting of *Topic Link* unchanged.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



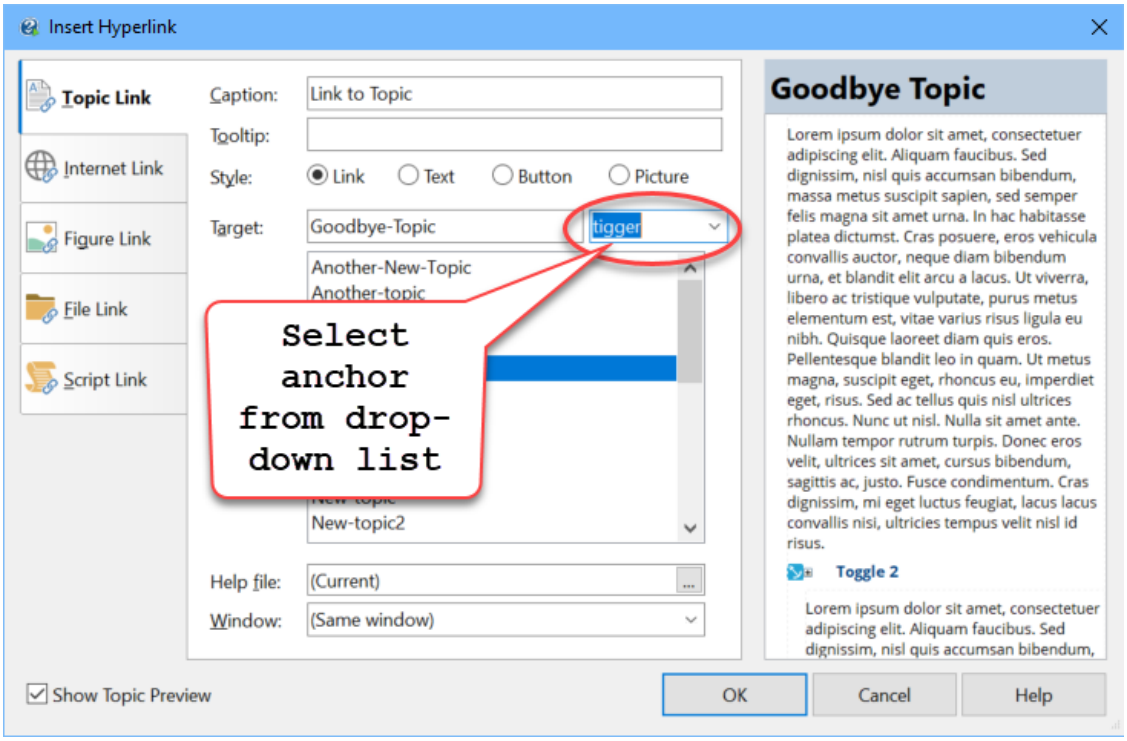
3. Select the Topic ID of the topic you want to link to from the list below the *Target:* field.
4. Choose a style for the link from the options on the left.
5. Click on OK to create the link.

Create a hyperlink to an anchor

Sometimes you will want to link to a specific location in the middle of a topic instead of just displaying the top of the topic. This is achieved with anchors 415, which are named "link targets" that you can insert anywhere in a topic.

1. In the topic you want to link to, click in the position for the link target and select the Insert Anchor tool in **Write > Insert Object.**
2. Type a name for the anchor in the Anchor ID: field and click on OK to insert the anchor. Don't worry about the other settings in the dialog at the moment.
3. Manually create a hyperlink (see above) to the topic containing the anchor.
4. In the Insert Hyperlink dialog select the name of the anchor you want to link to from the drop-down list next to the *Target:* field.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



You can also activate an anchor for an existing link by double-clicking on the link and selecting the anchor from the list.

See also:

Links, Anchors, Macros, Scripts and HTML 409
Topic IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600

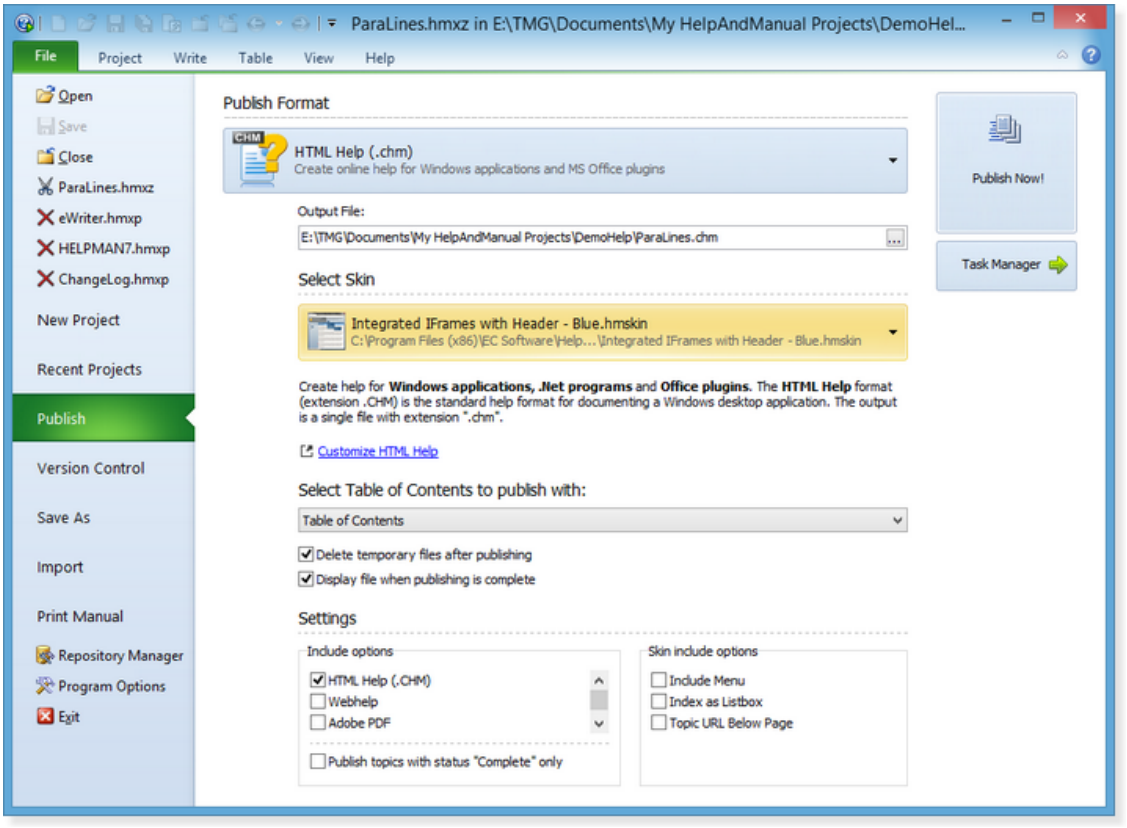
4.2.15 Publishing your project

Once you have completed a couple of topics you will want to publish your output to see what your finished product is going to look like. You can output any of the formats 1504 supported by Help+Manual at any time – you don't have to decide in advance what format you are building your project for. The only thing you may need to do before you begin is install the necessary Microsoft help compilers for HTML Help and Visual Studio Help (VS Help is only relevant for .NET program code documentation).

How to publish your project

1. Save your project, then click on the File menu and select **Publish**. This displays the Publish interface:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Help+Manual Publish Dialog

2. Select the format you want to publish to from the **Publish Format** drop-down list.
3. Check the output file name and location in the *Output File:* field and change them if you want.
4. Make sure that the *Display file when publishing is complete* checkbox is selected, leave all other settings as they are.
5. Click on the **Publish Now** button. In a few moments you will be able to admire your finished product.

Notes on individual output formats:

MS HTML Help/CHM:
If you haven't done it already, you need to install the free Microsoft HTML Help Workshop package so that you have the compiler that Help+Manual needs to turn your project into a CHM help file. See "Installing the Microsoft help compilers" further below on this page for details.

WebHelp
When you publish WebHelp 1415 always use an empty folder because this format generates a large number of output files. The program will suggest creating a folder called \HTML inside your project directory, which is a good choice for quick testing.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ePUB and Kindle Mobi eBooks
Before publishing ePUB or Kindle 1513 eBooks please check the eBook sections in Configuring Your Output 749 and Publishing Formats 1513. You need to install a program from Amazon to generate Kindle Mobi eBooks. You will also need to install the free Calibre eBook viewer reader software so that you can preview your eBooks locally on your Windows computer.

eWriter Help
This is a special format unique to Help+Manual. See the eWriter chapter 696 for information before using it.

Adobe PDF
The layout of your **PDF output** is controlled by separate template files. See Adobe PDF 677 for details.

Installing the Microsoft help compilers

HTML Help compiler:

Unless you have already done so you need to download and install the free Microsoft compiler for HTML Help CHM files 1506 if you are planning on using this format. You can find the correct version of this compiler on the EC Software website, here:

https://www.helpandmanual.com/downloads_mscomp.html

Visual Studio Help compiler for .NET programmers (MS Help 2 & MS Help 3):

You only need to publish to the Visual Studio Help formats if you are a Visual Studio .NET programmer. These help formats are only used for documenting programming components added to Visual Studio .NET. The compiler for VS MS Help 2 (HXS) is also only available to programmers working with Microsoft Visual Studio .NET 2008. VS MS Help 3 (MSHC) does not require a compiler.

For details on using this format see the chapter on Visual Studio Help 1132 in the **More Advanced Procedures** section.

Setting the compiler paths:

After installing the compilers go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and make sure that Help+Manual knows where to find them. The HTML Help compiler executable is called **hhc.exe**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

Customize - Compilers 1268
Testing Your Project 779
Configuring Your Output 644
Visual Studio Help 1132

4.3 Tutorial Projects and Templates

In addition to the Quick Start Tutorials included in this help file, Help+Manual also comes with a number of other useful tutorials and templates. All the tutorials are stored in Help+Manual HMXZ project files that you can publish and edit yourself, so that you can experiment with the procedures described directly.

This chapter provides brief descriptions of the subjects covered in these tutorials and information on where you can find them.

- An introduction to using featured images and descriptions 118 for title pages.
- An introduction to inserting videos and interactive online media 119 in your projects.
- A tutorial project explaining and demonstrating the use of multiple TOCs 119.
- A tutorial on how to use conditional output 120
- A tutorial on how to work with modular help systems 120, including instructions for using A-Links to link between modules
- The entire source code of Help+Manual's own help 121
- Tutorials showing you how to create your own non-scrolling headers, navigation buttons with mouseover effects, print links and buttons, CSS styles for hyperlinks, CSS styles for the TOC in WebHelp, background images in the TOC and topics and more (HTML5 & CSS 122)

See also:

Quick Start Tutorials 69

4.3.1 Template files

In addition to the other resources listed in this chapter the *Templates* folder in the Help+Manual program directory also contains a number of other useful templates and configuration files:

Location of the files:

The files are stored in the *Templates* folder in the Help+Manual program directory.

Help+Manual skin files *(*.hmskin)*	**\Templates\HTML skins**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	These are special template files that store the formatting, layout and design of an entire project for HTML-based output formats. When you publish a project you can then select a skin file in the Publish 1310 dialog to apply the design of a different project to your output. Some sample skins are provided in `\Templates\skins` but if you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can save any project as a skin with *Save As* in the File menu. You can then edit the skin file by opening it with Help+Manual, just like a normal project. If you purchase the Help+Manual Premium Pack the skins from this package are also installed in this directory.
Print manual templates (**.mnl*):	**\Templates\pdf** These standard template files can be used as a basis for creating and editing your own print manual templates for PDF files and printed manuals 785. Please copy these templates to your project folder before editing them! (In Windows Vista you will probably not be able to save your own versions of the templates otherwise.)
Word DOCX templates (**.docx*):	**\templates\Word** A selection of template files for Word DOCX output 682 for different formats and requirements.
Standalone viewer for eWriter Help:	**\Templates\ebooks** This is the standalone version of the viewer that can also be embedded in eWriter Help 696 help files.
Full-text search language files for WebHelp in multiple languages	**\Templates\WebHelp**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

(**.zlang*):	These files allow you to set the interface texts for the full-text search function in WebHelp to a number of different languages. The language files can be selected for your project in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options**> **WebHelp** > **Full-text Search**.
XML schema and stylesheet files (**.xsd* and **.xsl*):	**\Templates\xml** These are the source files for the XML Schema definition and XSL stylesheets, if generated. Do not make any changes to these files!

See also:

Templates in Help+Manual 1007
Transforming your output with skins 638
PDF and Printed Manuals 785
Configuring your output for WebHelp 655
Configuring your output for eBooks 696

4.3.2 Featured images for title pages

Tutorial location and name:

Location:	**My Documents\My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples\Feature Images** (on some Windows systems **My Documents** is called **Documents**)
Quick access:	Welcome section at the top of the Project Explorer
Name:	**Feature Images**.hmxz

Subjects covered:

This tutorial shows you how to create attractive chapter title pages with images and descriptions for both PDF and HTML-based output. This uses the featured image and description that you can associate with each topic in the Topic Options tab to the left of the main editor window in Help+Manual.

This subject is also covered in detail in the separate help of the Manual Designer 803 program for PDF. See this topic 1059 for basic reference information for using featured images in HTML templates.

See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Featured Images for Title Pages 792

4.3.3 Video & Interactive Media

Tutorial location and name:

Location:	**My Documents\My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples\Interactive Media** (on some Windows systems **My Documents** is called **Documents**)
Quick access:	Welcome section at the top of the Project Explorer
Name:	**InteractiveMedia**.hmxz

About the tutorial:

This tutorial shows you how to add video, online video and online interactive HTML media to your projects. It includes a number of examples of media already inserted and full instructions.

See also:

Videos and Online Media 548

4.3.4 Multiple TOCs

Tutorial location and name:

Location:	**My Documents\My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples\Multiple TOCs** (on some Windows systems **My Documents** is called **Documents**)
Quick access:	Welcome section at the top of the Project Explorer
Name:	**Multiple-TOCs**.hmxz

Subjects covered:

This tutorial shows you how to use Help+Manual's Multiple TOC feature to create completely different versions of your project with a different TOC structure and content.

See also:

Multiple TOCs 970

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

4.3.5 Conditional output tutorial

Tutorial location and name:

Location:	**My Documents\My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples\Conditional Output** (on some Windows systems **My Documents** is called **Documents**)
Quick access:	Welcome section at the top of the Project Explorer
Name:	**CondOutput.hmxz**

Subjects covered:

This tutorial project walks you through using the conditional output capabilities of Help+Manual.

You will learn how to use build conditions to control the content included in your output. When you have finished working through this tutorial you will be able to:

- Include and exclude topics, groups of topics and modules from your output on the basis of output formats or your own defined build conditions.
- Include and exclude topic content (text, images etc.) on the basis of output formats or user-defined build conditions.
- Define your own build conditions to create multiple versions of the same project for different purposes.
- Exclude all the topics of a chapter while including the chapter topic (this is a trick that is not normally possible directly).

See also:

Conditions and Customized Output 969

4.3.6 Modular help systems tutorial

Tutorial location and name:

Location:	**My Documents\My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples\Modular Help Systems** (on some Windows systems **My Documents** is called **Documents**)
Quick access:	Welcome section at the top of the Project Explorer
Names:	**Master.hmxz, Module_A.hmxz, Module_B.hmxz**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Subjects covered:

This tutorial project is an example of a simple modular help system. It guides you through all the steps of creating and using modular help systems for a variety of different output formats. When you have completed the tutorial you will be able to:

- Create and manage modular projects for all types of output formats.
- Add project files to your TOC as modules.
- Create genuine modular help systems for the HTML Help format. This allows you to create different versions of your help without re-publishing, just by adding or removing help files from your distribution.
- Create dynamic conditional hyperlinks between modules using A-Links.

See also:

Working with Modular Help Systems 1088

4.3.7 Non-scrolling header template

Template location and name:

Location:	**My Documents\My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples\HTML5 Tricks** (on some Windows systems **My Documents** is called **Documents**)
Quick access:	Welcome section at the top of the Project Explorer
Name:	**dhtml**.hmxz

About the template:

This HTML template is included in the DHTML tutorial project. It works both in HTML Help and WebHelp. In addition to this it includes full printing support with a Print button and generation of a printer-friendly version.

See also:

Using HTML templates 1026

4.3.8 Help+Manual help source code

Location of the help project source code:

Location:	**My Documents\My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples\HelpAndManual7** (on some Windows systems **My Documents** is called **Documents**)
Quick access:	Welcome section at the top of the Project Explorer

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Name: **helpman**.hmxp

About the source code:

This is the complete source code of Help+Manual's own help as an example of a relatively complex project. You are welcome to reverse-engineer the help and use its components in any way you like but please don't use the actual text from the help in your own projects.

4.3.9 HTML5 & CSS tutorial

Tutorial location and name:

Location:	**My Documents\My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples\HTML5 Tricks** (on some Windows systems **My Documents** is called **Documents**)
Quick access:	Welcome section at the top of the Project Explorer
Name:	**HTML5-and-CSS**.hmxz

Subjects covered:

This tutorial shows you how to edit the HTML templates in your project or skin to create some more advanced formatting and effects. All the code required is included in the tutorial project, which you can also use as a template for your own projects. Once you have worked through all the lessons you will be able to:

- Create non-scrolling headers *A non-scrolling header stays visible while the user scrolls the text of your topic. Help & Manual's own help uses these headers.* for your HTML Help and WebHelp output.
- Add graphical navigation buttons to your topic headers, with and without mouseover effects *When the user positions the mouse over the button it changes and becomes highlighted.*.
- Add a **Print** link or button to your topic headers.
- Use CSS styles to change the appearance and behavior of all the hyperlinks in your project.
- Add customized icons to the TOC (table of contents) of your WebHelp projects.
- Add a background to the TOC in WebHelp.
- Add background images to topics and headers.

See also:

Using HTML templates 1026

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Basic Working Procedures

The most common basic tasks you will use when working with Help+Manual. A "How-To" guide and reference manual.

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

5 Basic Working Procedures

More information

Once you have learned the basics in this section see More Advanced Procedures 848 to learn what else you can do with Help+Manual.

The "How-To" topics are intentionally kept as brief as possible. The focus is on how to do what you need to do. More detailed background information on many subjects is provided in the Reference 1261 section and in other areas.

See also:

Introduction 35
The User Interface 43
Quick Start Tutorials 69

5.1 Creating Projects

Creating a new project with Help+Manual is generally as easy as creating a new word processing file – you just click on the File menu, select *New Project* and follow the instructions.

In addition to creating an empty new project you can also create a project with data imported from other sources, including Word RTF files, compiled HTML Help CHM files, Microsoft Sandcastle program code documentation projects and HTML pages. See Importing Data 148 for more details.

See also:

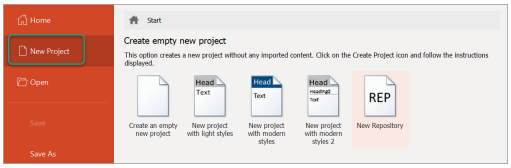
Importing Data 148
Help Formats 1504

5.1.1 Creating an empty new project

When you create a new project Help+Manual automatically generates a table of contents (TOC) with a small set of topics that you can use as a starting-point.

How to create an empty new project

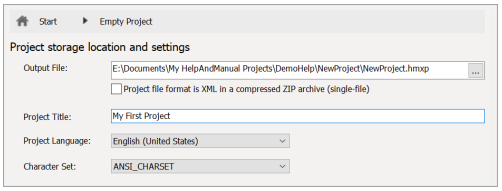
1. Select the **File** menu and click on **New Project** to display the New Project settings page:



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Select *Create an empty new help project*, or choose one of the options that includes a set of styles that you can use right away. Don't select New Repository 1076 here – that is a special kind of project for sharing styles and other assets across multiple projects.

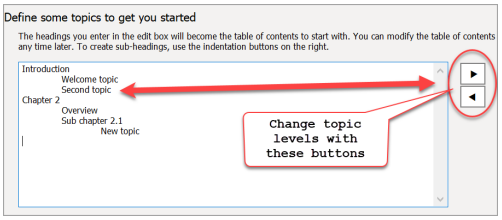
2. Select the project save format and specify the project save location, the project file name, the project title and the language settings:



Save format:
We recommend using the uncompressed HMXP format for ongoing work, which requires saving in an empty folder. See HMXZ or HMXP? 126 for details on the save formats.

Title, language and character set:
Enter a title for your help project and select your help project language and character set. See International languages setup 143 for details on settings for other languages. Then click on *Next*.

3. At the bottom of the **New Project** page you can see a small set of standard topics that you can now edit and add to. You can edit, delete and add topics if you want to. Don't worry about getting everything right now – you can change everything later very easily.



4. Click on **Create** on the right to create and open your new project. All the topics whose titles you entered in the previous step will automatically be created.

Backups and project recovery!

Your work is the most valuable thing on your computer. When setting up a project, always make sure that you will have backups of your work in the case of an emergency. Ideally, your backups should be on a different computer, or at the very least on an external drive. Then if something catastrophic happens to your machine, you will be able to recover your work from the backup.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that if you are ever unable to save your current work, for example when you lose a network connection, Help+Manual will automatically enable you to save a special rescue copy containing only those topics that have been edited since the last save.

In addition to this, your unsaved edits are also saved to an ongoing background backup. If you experience a Windows or other system crash so that Help+Manual itself is no longer available, you will be prompted to restore your unsaved changes from the backup the next time you open the project.

Check out Backups and Emergencies 608 to learn about this and other backup options so that you are prepared to recover your valuable project work if something ever goes badly wrong on your computer.

See also:

Importing Data 148

5.1.2 HMXZ or HMXP?

Help+Manual Help stores your projects as a collection of plain text XML files, the code of which looks a little like HTML. You don't need to know anything at all about XML to use the program.

If you are using the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can save your project in single-file compressed mode (HMXZ) or uncompressed XML mode (HMXP). Single-file mode saves all your project files in a single compressed file with the extension `.hmxz`. Uncompressed mode saves your project as a collection of files and folders with a project file with the extension `.hmxp`. Uncompressed XML projects must always be saved in an empty folder.

Key Information
The uncompressed XML format (*.hmxp*) is only supported in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. The Basic version can only save in the compressed single-file format (*.hmxz*).

Which format should I use?

If you can choose between the two formats we recommend using the uncompressed HMXP format for your ongoing work. It has a number of benefits and is also better protected against damage that can be caused to any computer files by Windows crashes or network errors during saving.

The compressed HMXZ format is compact and convenient and an excellent choice for archiving and small, quick projects.

The uncompressed format has the following benefits:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- It consists of a folder of plain-text XML files, with a separate file for every topic and for the other project components. Since the files are plain text, data can be recovered from the undamaged portions of files, even individual files become damaged. And it is almost impossible to damage the entire project.
- It handles very large projects better, because you only need to load the topics that are currently being edited into memory instead of the entire project.
- It supports multi-user editing 1171, storage in version control systems 848 and the use of the Project Synchronization 1245 tool for updating translations.

How to choose and change save mode

You can only choose and change your save mode with Help+Manual Professional. The Basic version saves in compressed mode only.

- When creating a new project the default save mode is Single-File Compressed (HMXZ). You can save in uncompressed XML (HMXP) by deselecting the option *Project file format is XML in a compressed ZIP archive* in the Output file screen of the New Project wizard.
- To switch to the other save format (compressed or uncompressed) click on the File menu and select *Save as...*
- Always save to an empty folder when saving in Uncompressed XML mode. Help+Manual will not allow you to save to a folder with any content but you can add files and folders to your HMXP project folder later.

About single-file compressed mode

Help+Manual Basic only supports compressed mode.

- One compressed `.hmxz` file containing all project files.
- Contains exactly the same files and folders as uncompressed XML mode. The content of both formats is identical.
- Compact and easily portable.
- Does not support multi-user editing, saving in version control repositories, processing with external tools or editing with external editors.

About uncompressed XML mode

A Help+Manual Professional or Floating license is required for this mode.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Your project and all its topics, formatting and settings are stored in a collection of plain-text XML files. The main project file has the extension `.hmxp`.
- Must be saved in an empty folder, but you can add sub-folders (for example for graphics) and other files later if you want.
- Required for multi-user editing, saving in version control systems and editing with external editors.
- Not quite as portable as `.hmxz`, but data security is better because damage to a single file cannot compromise your entire project.

5.1.3 Setting the default topic

The "default" or "home" topic is the topic that is displayed automatically when the user opens your help without a specific topic being called when you are using the CHM or WebHelp formats. If you don't configure this the help will open at the first topic.

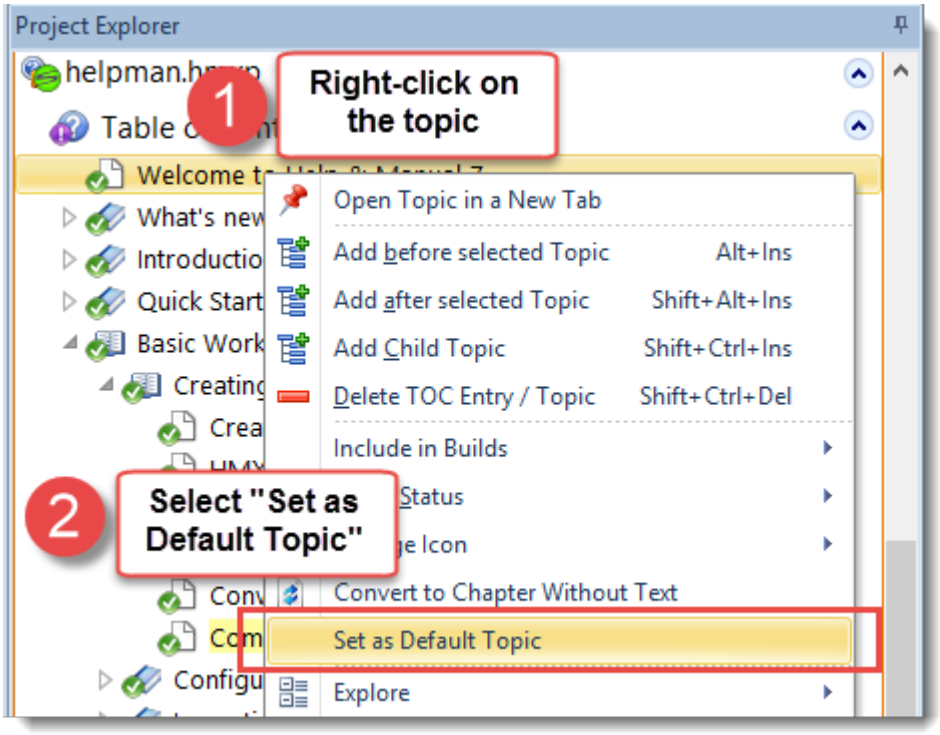
How to set the default topic

There are two ways to set the default topic: You can choose it directly in the TOC, or you can specify it by its topic ID in the project configuration options.

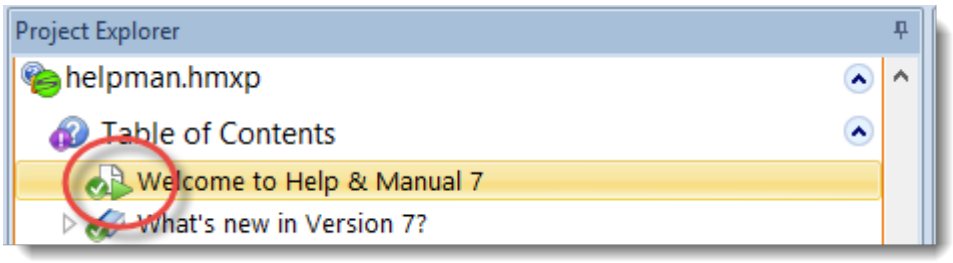
Setting the default topic in the TOC

To do this just right-click on the topic in the table of contents and select *Set as Default Topic* in the context menu:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Once you have set it, the default topic is indicated by a green arrow icon (the green check marks you see in the example are for version control status):

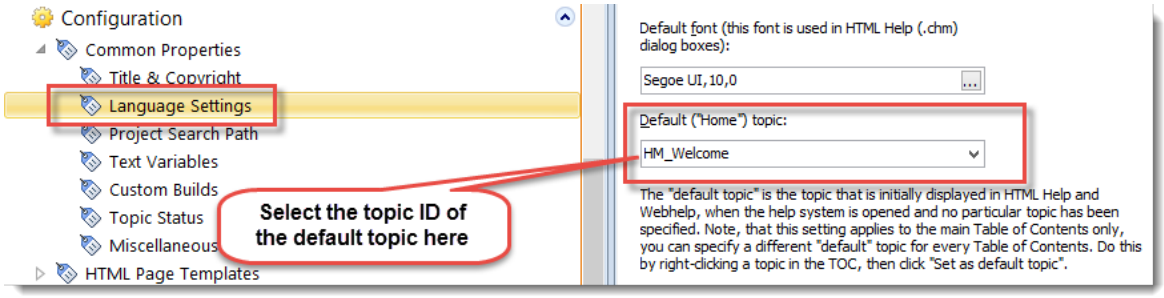


Setting the default topic in the configuration options:

If you are only using one TOC in your project you can also set the default topic the project configuration options.

In the Project Explorer on the left, navigate down to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Language Settings**. You can then set the default topic by selecting its ID. (If you need to locate the ID select the topic in the TOC first and look in the Topic Options tab on the left of the editor window.)

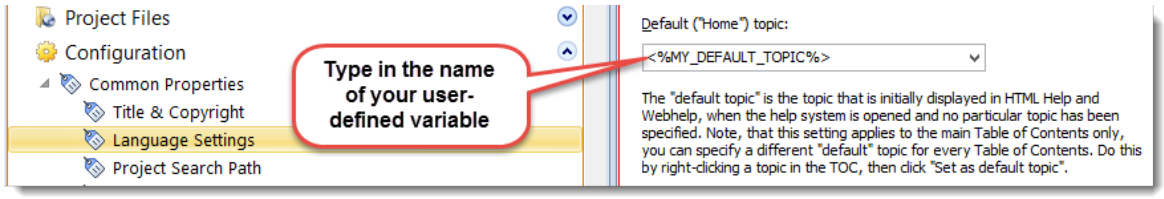
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Note that this setting will generally only apply for the main TOC if you have defined multiple TOCs in your project. See the section on default topics in multiple TOCs further below for details on this.

Defining the default topic with a variable

If you use the default topic setting in Language Settings you can also use a user-defined variable instead of selecting the topic ID directly. (This variable must insert a valid topic ID, of course.) This makes it possible for you to change the default topic at publish time by changing the definition 960 of the variable.



Important: Variables can only be used for the main TOC

Since this setting is only used for the main TOC, you can also only change the default topic with variables for the main TOC.

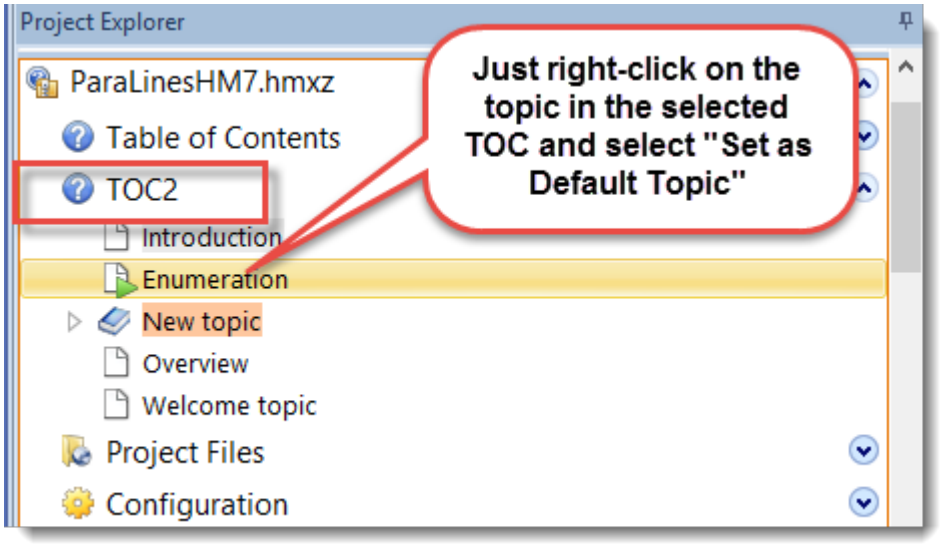
Setting the default topic with multiple TOCs

If you are using multiple TOCs 970 in your project you can set a separate default topic for each TOC. Then you will automatically get the correct default topic for that TOC when you use it.

Important: The default for secondary TOCs must be set in the TOC
Default topics for secondary TOCs must be set directly in the TOC. The setting in **Configuration > Common Properties > Language Options** is only for the main TOC.

Each TOC you define can have its own default topic:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Multiple default topics: how the correct one is chosen

Help+Manual allows you to combine multiple projects in modular help systems and each project can have multiple TOCs, each with their own default topic. This means you can have multiple default topics defined, but your output can only ever have one default topic. The right one to use is chosen as follows:

In modular projects only the Master defines the default topic

In modular projects only the default topic defined in the Master project is used. Any default topics set in child modules are always ignored, because child projects can be excluded.

Logic for choosing the default topic

1. If the current TOC has default topic defined it will be used.
2. If the current TOC has no default defined, the default topic defined in the main TOC is used.
3. If the main TOC has no default topic defined, the default topic defined in the **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Language Settings**. If nothing is defined there, the first topic is used.
4. If the Language Settings option is used, resolve any variables used there and use that topic if the result is a valid topic ID that exists. If the topic does not exist or is not included use the first topic in the current TOC.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.1.4 Publishing formats

If you are familiar with other help authoring tools you may expect that you need to decide what publishing format you are going to use when you create your project. This is not necessary in Help+Manual. You can always publish your project to any of the supported formats at any time. To change your publishing format you just need to select Publish 613 and choose a different output format.

Available publishing formats

You can generate a total of **eight different output formats** (ten including printed manuals), each of which has its advantages and disadvantages for specific purposes. You can generate multiple formats from the same project, for example HTML Help for your online help and PDF for your printable manual.

Supported publishing formats in Help+Manual:

- HTML Help (`.chm`)
- WebHelp (HTML, for display in normal web browsers)
- Adobe PDF (`.pdf`)
- Word DOCX (`.docx`)
- ePUB eBooks (`.epub`) for Apple iOS devices and all other ePUB readers
- Amazon Mobi for Kindle eBooks (**`.mob`**)
- Windows eWriter Help (proprietary `.ewriter` file with a standalone eViewer or `.exe` with integrated viewer)
- Visual Studio 2002-2008 Help (`.hxs`, for Visual Studio .NET 2002-2008 components only)
- Visual Studio 2010 Help (`.mshc`, for Visual Studio 2010 .NET components only)

For details on these help formats and their individual features and uses see Help Formats 1504 in the Reference section.

See also:

Help Formats 1504

5.1.5 Converting old projects

Help+Manual automatically converts the project files from older versions with obsolete formats (H+M 3 and H+M 4) when you open them. Alternatively, you can also use the standalone converter program to convert old projects manually.

Help+Manual 4 projects are generally converted 1:1 and do not require any post-processing after conversion. Older Help+Manual 3 projects did not have the styles and other features introduced in the modern versions of the program and may require some reformatting after im-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

porting.

Backward compatibility with Help+Manual 5 and 6:

The Help+Manual 5 and 6 project formats are almost identical with the current format and require no conversion.

You can edit projects saved with Help+Manual 9 in versions 5 and 6 but this is not recommended. Any new features will be stripped out by the older versions when you do this. If you are working on projects in a team all team members should also be using exactly the same version.

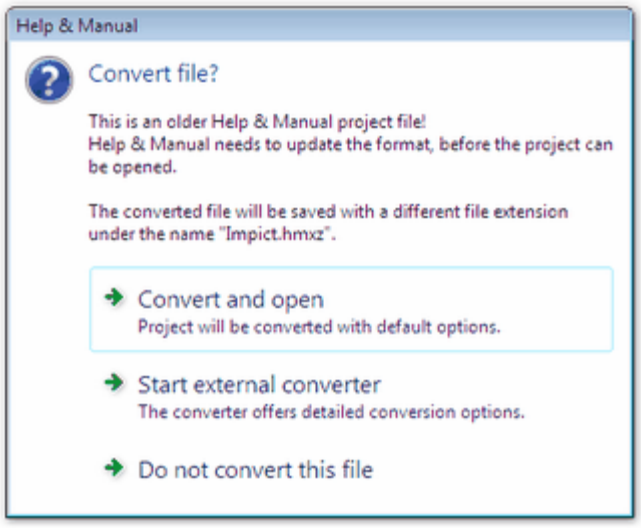
Converting old projects automatically

Help+Manual 5 and Help+Manual 6 projects

Just open the project normally. No conversion is required. However, newer features of the current version of Help+Manual are not supported by earlier versions. If you use these features and then edit and save with the older version, the features may be deleted by the older version.

Help+Manual 3 and 4 projects

1. Select the File menu and click on **Open**, then select the format of the project you want to open in the *Files of Type:* field (or the drop-down menu next to the *File Name:* field in newer versions of Windows).
2. Select the file you want to convert and click on *Open* to display the following dialog:



3. Select **Convert and open** to convert the old project.The new project file will be saved in the same directory as the old project you are converting.

This method automatically converts the old project into a single compressed file with the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

extension **.hmxz** containing all the project components except the graphics files. If you are using the Basic version of Help+Manual this is the only project format you can use.

Using the external converter:

If you use the external converter you can also convert old projects to the uncompressed XML format (HMXP, Professional and Floating license versions only) and select additional conversion options for Help+Manual 3 projects.

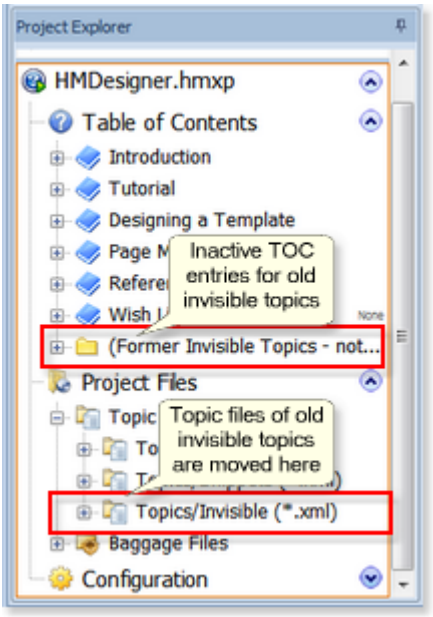
Follow the instructions above and select **Start external converter**. For full details see The Project Converter 1234.

Invisible topics from obsolete Help+Manual project formats (HM3 and HM4)

If your old HMX or HM3 project contains "invisible topics" (topics without TOC entries) they will be moved to a sub-folder called *Topics\Invisible* in the Topic Files section in the Project Explorer.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

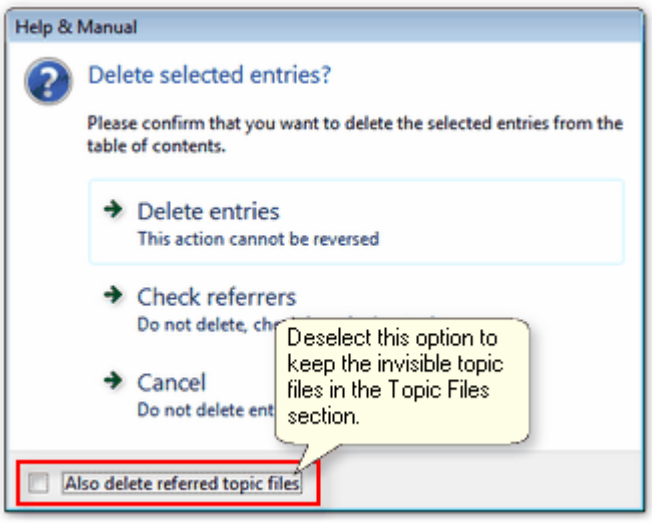
Automatic Converter:



When you use the automatic converter a chapter called *(Former Invisible Topics)* will also be created at the bottom of the converted project's Table of Contents (TOC) section.

These TOC entries are linked to the topic files of the former invisible topics but they will still not be included in your published output because their include options are automatically set to "None".

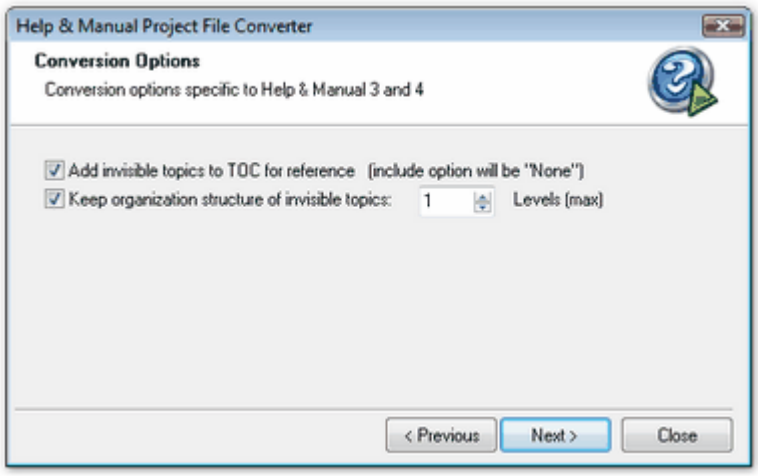
You can delete the (Former Invisible Topics) chapter by selecting it and pressing DELETE. Before confirming, deselect the option *Also delete referred topic files* to keep the actual topic files.



External Converter:

When you use the external converter program you can decide what you want to do with your old invisible topics:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Add invisible topics to TOC creates the (Former Invisible Topics) chapter described above. We recommend deselecting this option.

Keep organization structure creates sub-folders in the Topic Files section to match your folder structure in your old project. You can create a maximum of 10 levels but the converter will not create more levels than the original project contained.

Important: Images from old projects are not copied or moved

When you convert old projects the images they use are left in their original locations. The images are accessed by adding links to the old locations to the Project Search Path in the converted project. If you want to store the images with your new project you must manually copy them to a new folder in your new project folder and then update the Project Search Path of your new project so that it only references the new folder(s) location.

See Managing your graphics 514 for more details on these subjects.

Post-processing for Help+Manual 3 projects

There are three areas where you may need to make adjustments after converting and importing old HM3 projects:

Settings for styles:

The settings for your styles may need to be edited a little because styles in Help+Manual 3 projects did not have the same close association with text and paragraphs that they have in Help+Manual 4 and 5. All the formatting of your text will be converted correctly but you may find that some paragraphs are associated with the Normal style instead of a newly-defined style matching the old formatting.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Imported and converted tables:

Some of the static tables from H+M3 projects may also need a little post-editing. Tables in Help+Manual 3 were fixed-width only and they were often split into multiple tables to handle page break problems in PDF and printed manuals. The Project Converter has options 1234 for dealing with both of these issues but because of the differences between the two table formats you may need to make some manual corrections to your tables after importing.

Custom code in HTML templates:

The HTML templates 1021 used in Help+Manual 4 and later have changed considerably, so it is not possible to transfer custom code from your **.hm3** projects when they are imported – the risk of damaging the resulting code would be too great.

If you have entered custom code in your templates you will need to re-enter it in the templates of your converted Help+Manual project.

See also:

The Project Converter 1234
Text Formatting and Styles 273
Dynamic Styles 1482
Working with Tables 518

5.1.6 Command line project converter

The project converter also has a command line version that you can use manually and in batch files to convert old Help+Manual 3 and Help+Manual 4 projects. (Help+Manual 5 and 6 projects do not need conversion.)The program file is called **HMXConv.exe** and is stored in the Help+Manual program directory.

The syntax of the project converter command line module is displayed automatically if you open a command line window at the Help+Manual program directory and enter **HMXConv.exe** (the version with a graphical user interface is **HMC.exe**).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Project converter (hmxconv.exe) command line syntax:	
HMXConv.exe Inputfile Outputfile [switches] • *Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.* • *Wildcard characters are not supported.* • *Switches can be included in any order after the output file argument.* • *Relative paths are relative to the current directory – this is either the current directory of the command prompt or the directory you set with the CD command in your batch file.*	
HMXConv.exe	The converter application, include a path to the program if necessary. It is stored in the Help+Manual program directory.
Inputfile	The file to be converted. Include the extension (.hmx or .hm3) and the path if necessary. Wildcards are not supported.
Outputfile	The name of the converted project. You must include the extension, as follows: If you don't use the /decompress switch use the extension .hmxz, a compressed .hmxz file will be generated. If you do use /decompress use the extension .hmxp and include a path to an empty folder.
/noinvisibles	Prevents creation of a Former Invisible Topics folder in the TOC. Your invisible topics will still be imported to the Topic Files section in the new project. By default the converter creates a folder called *Former Invisible Topics* in the TOC to show you the invisible topics that have been imported from your old project. This folder's build options are automatically set to "none" so that it is not included in your published output. It is a convenience only and is not really needed.
/maxfolder-depth=x	Sets the number of levels of invisible topics folders in the new Topic Files section. The default value is 1, the maximum value is 10. Set to a higher number if your old project contains multiple levels of invisible topics that you want to preserve.
/log=filename	Saves any console messages to the specified log file. Include a path if you want to specify where the file is to be saved.
/fullreport	Generates a detailed conversion report. This will also be diverted from the console to the log file if you include the /log switch.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Project converter (hmxconv.exe) command line syntax:

```
HMXConv.exe Inputfile Outputfile [switches]
```

- *Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.*
- *Wildcard characters are not supported.*
- *Switches can be included in any order after the output file argument.*
- *Relative paths are relative to the current directory – this is either the current directory of the command prompt or the directory you set with the CD command in your batch file.*

Options for Help+Manual 3 (.hm3) files

/autosizetables	Converts fixed-width tables to autosize mode.
/autosizelastcol	Makes the last column of tables dynamic so that the table width can adjust automatically.
/jointables=tolerance	Merges tables that are less than `tolerance` pixels apart from each other.
/convertstyles	Attempts to convert Help+Manual 3 style names to dynamic styles in the new project's stylesheet. Text that is not associated with a clearly-defined style name will not be converted.

5.2 Configuring Your Project

Once you have created a new project the first thing you want to do is to check through the settings for the project in the Configuration section of the Project Explorer. There are a large number of options that you will probably use once you are more experienced but the basic settings are quick and intuitive. This chapter guides you through the most important ones that you need to remember.

5.2.1 Project Configuration

After creating your project it's a good idea go through the Configuration 1400 section of your project in the Project Explorer and check all your basic settings, which are initially set to default values. You can change these settings at any time, but some are easy to forget, like the help title, window titles and copyright information and so it's a good idea to get into the habit of doing a check whenever you start a new project.

This topic lists the basic settings in Configuration that you should always check when you create a new project. The other sections are also important but these generally contain things

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

that you will edit while working on or publishing your project. For full details see the Project Configuration 1400 chapter.

Backups and project recovery!

Your work is the most valuable thing on your computer. When setting up a project, always make sure that you will have backups of your work in the case of an emergency. Ideally, your backups should be on a different computer, or at the very least on an external drive. Then if something catastrophic happens to your machine, you will be able to recover your work from the backup.

Note that if you are ever unable to save your current work, for example when you lose a network connection, Help+Manual will automatically enable you to save a special rescue copy containing only those topics that have been edited since the last save.

In addition to this, your unsaved edits are also saved to an ongoing background backup. If you experience a Windows or other system crash so that Help+Manual itself is no longer available, you will be prompted to restore your unsaved changes from the backup the next time you open the project.

Check out Backups and Emergencies 608 to learn about this and other backup options so that you are prepared to recover your valuable project work if something ever goes badly wrong on your computer.

Setting your help title, copyright notice and version

The first thing you want to do is to enter the title of your project, the name of the author, your copyright notice and so on.

- Select *Title & Copyright* in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** in the Project Explorer.
- Enter your details. You can insert the version numbers and other information you store here in your project topics with variables – see here 1561 for a list.

See Title & Copyright 1402 in the **Project Configuration** chapter for details on the settings.

Setting the default topic

The default topic in your help is the topic that is automatically displayed when the help is opened in HTML Help, WebHelp, Visual Studio Help (MS Help 2.0 and MS Help 3.0) and eWriter Help for Windows and MacOS (this feature is not supported in Apple iBooks®/ePUB eBooks). If you don't set a topic the help will open at the first topic containing text in your TOC.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Select Title & Copyright 1402 in **Configuration** > **Common Properties.**
2. Select the topic ID of the default topic in the *Default Topic:* field.

Tip: You can also use a user-defined text variable 919 instead of entering the topic ID here directly.

Setting your language settings

One of the most important things to check is your language settings. Help+Manual supports almost all international languages but you need to make sure that your project is configured correctly to handle the language you are using, even if it is English or a common Western European language.

See International languages setup 143 for full details!

Setting the title of your help windows

You probably want the Help Title you enter in Title & Copyright section of Project Configuration to be displayed in the title bar of your published help in HTML Help. This is normally done with the <%TITLE%> variable but you can also enter a different text manually if you like.

Important: This setting is only for HTML Help (CHM) output files. All other output formats where the title is relevant take the title directly from the Title & Copyright section.

1. Select *Help Windows* in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Microsoft HTML Help.**
2. Click on the name of the help window whose title you want to change. If you have not defined any additional help windows only the standard *Main* help window type will be displayed. See Using secondary windows 1025 for more information.
3. In the *General* tab, check that the <%TITLE%> variable is entered in the *Title bar text:* field. If it is not just type it in manually. Alternatively you can type in a title manually but this will not be updated automatically if you change your project title.

See Help Windows 1609 and Help Windows Settings 1452 in the Reference section background information.

Checking your output format settings

All the output formats you can generate with Help+Manual can be customized with a large number of options in your Project Configuration. You will only need to check and adjust the settings for the formats you are actually going to use, of course.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See Configuring Your Output 644 and Project Configuration 1400 chapter for details on all the individual settings in these sections.

See also:

Project Configuration 1400
Configuring your Output 644
Using help windows 194
Templates and Secondary Windows 1007

5.2.2 Background colors and help viewers

If you are planning to publish your project to HTML Help (CHM) you will also want to configure the appearance and features of the Microsoft help viewer used to display this format. These settings are stored in what is known as a "help window definition".

You can also define background colors for your topic pages and topic headers. These colors are defined in the HTML page templates for HTML-based publishing formats. You cannot define topic and header background colors for PDF, Word DOCX or printed manuals.

The settings in Help window definitions are only relevant for the Microsoft HTML Help format. For details see Help Windows 1609 and Help Windows Settings 1452 in the Reference section and Choosing a help window 194 in the Creating Topic Files section.

Background colors of topics and headers

Background colors can only be set for the topics and headers in electronic HTML-based help formats, with the exception of Apple ©iBooks/ePUB, for which the background color is always white. The background colors are ignored in PDF, DOCX and printed manuals.

Background colors for HTML Help, WebHelp, eWriter Help and Visual Studio Help

In all these formats the background colors for the topic and header are set in the HTML Page Template settings.

If you are using a skin to publish your output you must edit these settings in the **`.hmskin`** file. When you use a skin, the templates in the skin replace those in your project. You will need to make a copy of the skin in your project folder to edit the skin.

- In the Project Explorer, go to **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** > **Default** and set the colors for the header and topic.

You can apply different background colors to different topics by creating additional HTML page template definitions 1036 and choosing different templates for individual topics in the **Topic Options** tab accessible on the left the main editor window.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to edit the Microsoft HTML Help CHM file viewer features

You can adjust the features of the Microsoft help viewer for HTML Help CHM files by editing the settings of the *Main* help window in **Configuration** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows**.

1. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows** and select the *Main* help window in the drop-down list at the top of the dialog window.
2. Set the size and position of the help window in the *General Options* tab. In HTML Help this setting will only be used the first time the user opens the help. After this Windows will apply the last size and position used by the user.
3. The title bar text is displayed in the title bar of the help viewer. The standard setting <%TITLE%> displays the title of your help project from your Title and Copyright settings.
4. Select the *HTML Help Options* tab and define the help viewer settings.

HTML Help CHM Viewer window size and position

Note that if you want to control the size and position of the help viewer window in HTML Help you must change two settings:

1. Set the window size and position in the *Color and Position* section.
2. Deselect the option *Save user-defined positions after first use* in the HTML Help Options section.

If you don't do this your window settings will be ignored and Windows will save and use the last window size and position set manually by the user. Note that most users prefer the help window to remember their own settings. They dislike it when a program sets its own window size and position for the help!

See also:

Using help windows 194
Help Windows 1609
Help Windows Settings 1452
Templates and Secondary Windows 1007

5.2.3 International languages setup

Help+Manual is fully Unicode-enabled and can edit and publish help files in virtually all international languages. There are just some restrictions on right-to left languages, which are only supported in HTML Help CHM files and WebHelp (for example languages like Hebrew, Arabic and Farsi).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Working in Unicode languages requires both configuration settings for the language you are using in your project and special Windows settings for the Microsoft help compilers, which are not Unicode programs.

Even if you are working in English or any other Western European language it is still important to check that the language settings of your project are correct before starting work.

For more information see International Languages and Unicode 1627 and Language Settings 1403 in the Reference section.

Where to find the language settings

- Go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Language Settings** in the Project Explorer to view and edit the language settings for your project.
- See Language Settings 1403 in the Project Configuration section of the help for details.

English and Western European languages

Windows version and configuration:

Projects in English and Western European languages can be published and viewed on all versions of Windows without restrictions. The language of the help file does not have to match the language of the Windows version on which the file is being viewed.

Configuration > Common Properties > Language Settings:

Language of the help file:	The default setting is *English (United States)*. This should not be changed for English and Western European languages unless you experience problems with sorting in the Keyword Index. Because of a bug in the Microsoft HTML Help viewer it is best to set *English (United States)* for all Western European languages if possible – otherwise "HTML Help" will be displayed in the title bar of the help if the language setting does not match the language of the user's Windows version.
Font character set:	The default setting is *ANSI_CHARSET*. This should not be changed for English and Western European languages.
Default font:	This option only defines the font used in the TOC and dialog boxes in HTML Help CHM files.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that HTML Help is designed to work with the default font and font size settings so please test thoroughly if you use different fonts or sizes.

The default is **`MS Sans Serif,8,0`**. The value 8 defines the font size and should generally not be changed. The last value defines the character set and 0 tells Help+Manual to set the character set automatically.

Eastern European languages, Greek, Russian, Turkish etc.

Windows version and configuration:

Publishing projects:

You can publish projects written in these languages to WebHelp, MS Word DOCX, PDF, eBooks and Visual Studio Help (MS Help 2.0/3.0) with any version of Windows XP or later with support installed for the language you are using.

Publishing projects to CHM:

To publish projects in these languages to HTML Help / CHM you must also set the "system locale" of your Windows configuration to match the language of your project. See Publishing instructions by format 623 and CHM in Non-Latin Languages 629 for more details on this and a method for publishing to multiple CHM languages without having to restart Windows.

Changing the system locale for CHM publishing

Note that the *system locale* and the *user locale* are different! Simply setting the display and/or data entry language does not change the system locale!

1. Log in to a user account with administrator permissions.
2. In current Windows versions (7 and 10) go to **Settings** > **Time & Language** > **Region** > **Additional date, time & regional settings**. Then select **Region** in the new dialog that opens and you will find the locale setting in the **Administrative** tab. Alternatively, you can open the Control Panel directly and select the **Region** option.
3. Click on **OK** to apply the setting and then restart Windows.

Viewing published help:

Help+Manual's output files can be viewed on most versions of Windows on which proper support for the specific languages is installed. Some features of HTML Help (full-text search, Keyword Index sorting) will only work properly if the language of the Windows

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

version matches the language of the help file. This applies particularly for Asian languages. For example, all functions of a Chinese HTML Help file will only work correctly on a Chinese version of Windows.

See About H+M's Unicode support 1629 for more details on this.

Configuration > Common Properties > Language Settings:

Language of the help file:	This setting must be set to the language in which your help is written. This is important both for proper sorting in the Keyword Index and proper identification of the language by the system.
Font character set:	This setting must be set to the correct character set to display the language used in your help file.
Default font:	This is not the default font of your help project! This option only defines the font used in the TOC and dialog boxes by HTML Help CHM files. Note that HTML Help/CHM is designed to work with the default font and font size settings so please test thoroughly if you use different fonts or sizes. You may need to change the font to display all characters correctly in your language. The default is **`MS Sans Serif,8,0`**. The value 8 defines the font size and should generally not be changed unless you are using a language with a special character set, like Asian languages, Greek, Russian etc. The last value defines the character set and 0 tells Help+Manual to set the character set automatically.

Asian languages, all languages requiring Unicode

This group includes all languages that require Unicode, which means languages with more than 255 characters requiring two bytes to store each character. For example, this includes most Asian languages like Chinese, Japanese and Thai.

Windows version and configuration:

Editing projects:

Help+Manual projects written in Unicode-based languages can be edited on Windows XP or later provided that support is installed for the language you are using.

Publishing projects:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- You can publish Unicode projects to WebHelp, MS Word DOCX, eBooks and Visual Studio Help (MS Help 2.0/3.0) with any version of Windows XP or later with support installed for the language you are using.
- To publish Unicode projects to HTML Help (CHM) you must also set the "system locale" of your Windows configuration to match the language of your project.

Changing the system locale for CHM publishing

Note that the *system locale* and the *user locale* are different! Simply setting the display and/or data entry language does not change the system locale!

1. Log in to a user account with administrator privileges.
2. Open the **Regional and Languages** section in the Windows Control Panel.
   - **Windows XP:** Select your language as the default language for non-Unicode programs in the **Advanced** tab (this tab is only displayed if you have administrator rights).
   - **Windows Vista and later:** Select the *Change System Locale* button in the **Administrative** tab (this tab is only displayed if you have administrator rights.
3. Click on **OK** to apply the setting and then restart Windows.

Viewing published help:

Help+Manual's output files can be viewed on most versions of Windows on which proper support for the specific languages is installed. Some features of HTML Help (full-text search, Keyword Index sorting) will only work properly if the language of the Windows version matches the language of the help file. This applies particularly for Asian languages. For example, all functions of a Chinese HTML Help file will only work correctly on a Chinese version of Windows.

See About H+M's Unicode support 1629 for more details on this.

Configuration > Common Properties > Language Settings:

Language of the help file:	This setting must be set to the language in which your help is written. This is important both for proper sorting in the Keyword Index and proper identification of the language by the system.
Font character set:	This setting must be set to the correct character set to display the language used in your help file. This too is particularly important for proper handling of Unicode-based languages. You must have the proper character set for your language installed for Help+Manual to be able to process and publish the language correctly.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Default font:

This is not the default font of your help project! This option only defines the font used in the TOC and dialog boxes in HTML Help CHM files.

The default is **`MS Sans Serif,8,0`**, which is the font and size that HTML Help is designed for. In Asian languages and other Unicode-based languages you may need to choose an appropriate font for your language instead of MS Sans Serif.

The value 8 defines the font size and should generally not be changed. The value 0 defines the character set. You do not need to change the character set value – Help+Manual does this for you automatically when you publish your project.

Test-publishing Asian languages on non-Asian Windows

Normally, you cannot publish help projects written Asian languages on non-Asian versions of Windows because the necessary language settings don't match. However, if you just want to do a quick test publish and don't have a Windows version in the matching Asian language there is a configuration setting that will allow you to do this.

- Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and activate the option *Tolerant handling of Asian languages*.

Some features may not work correctly in the resulting help file in HTML Help if the languages of your Windows version and the help file don't match (Search, Keyword Index) but you will be able to complete the compilation and view the CHM file, which is sufficient for testing.

To produce a finished CHM for distribution you must publish it on a copy of Windows with a matching system locale.

See also:

International Languages and Unicode 1627 (Reference)
Language Settings 1403 (Project Configuration)

5.3 Importing Data

There are a number of different ways to import data from other formats into Help+Manual. You can "convert" the data you are importing into a new project, merge it into an existing project or import individual documents into individual Help+Manual topics. You can also copy and paste data directly into your topics from Office programs and other applications.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

In addition to this you can also import data from other Help+Manual projects in a number of different ways: You can copy and paste data and topics, "embed" topics from other projects in your current project or import topics and projects.

5.3.1 New project with imported data

If you have existing documentation in other formats you can import it to Help+Manual and create a new project in one easy process. Interactive instructions guide you through each step of the process of importing the data.

Check your settings for importing from other formats

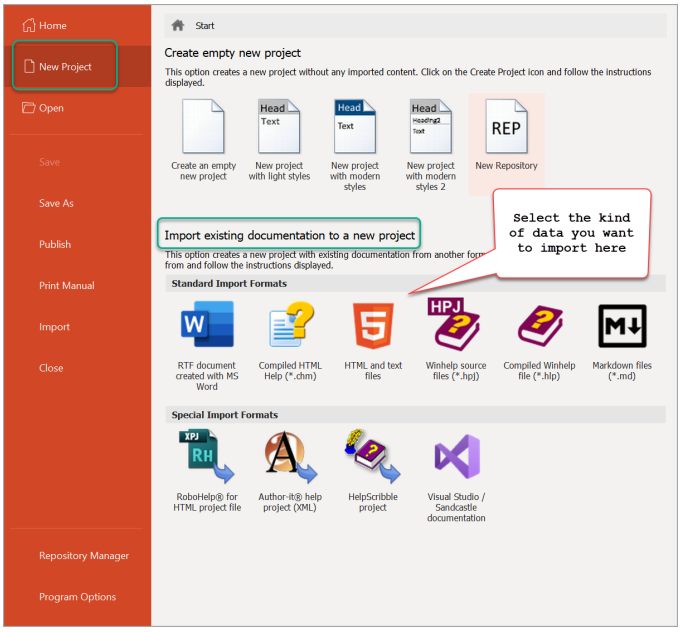
Before importing from any of these formats please check the Settings for importing data 157:

- **MS CHM** files and **HTML** files (check structure for optimum import)
- **AuthorIT** projects (you need to publish your book to XML first)
- **MS Word** files (save as RTF in Word first)
- **MS WinHelp** (use the .HPJ project if possible)
- **Adobe RoboHelp** for HTML (check structure and formatting)
- **Adobe FrameMaker** (save to RTF first 157)
- **MS Sandcastle** (see Importing Sandcastle projects 151 and Source Code Documentation 1125)

Importing data to new projects

1. Select the File menu and click on *New Project*.
2. Select the format you want to import from in the *Import existing documentation to a new project section* in the lower part of the page

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Select the source files, then enter the name, save location, format and other settings for the new project in the same way as for an empty new project 124.
4. If there are additional options click on Continue with Options and set the options. Then click on *Import* to finish.

See Settings for importing data 157 for details on the optimum settings for each data format.

General settings for all formats

See Settings for importing data 157 for full details. The following settings are the same for all formats:

- **Output file:**
  Name and location of the new project.
- **Project file format:**
  Save in a single-file compressed format (**.hmxz**) or uncompressed XML (with **.hmxp** project file, Professional and Floating license versions only). See HMXZ or HMXP? 126 to help you decide which format to use.
- **Project title:**
  The title of your project. This can be changed later.
- **Project language and character set:**
  You can also change these settings later. See International languages setup 143 for details.

See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Settings for importing data 157

5.3.2 Importing Sandcastle projects

Sandcastle is a free Microsoft tool that automatically generates documentation from program source assemblies and XML comment files for Microsoft Visual Studio .NET development projects. The latest version of Sandcastle 2.7.2 from Microsoft is included with Help+Manual, making it possible to generate source code documentation from your .NET projects directly.

See the Source Code Documentation with Sandcastle 1125 chapter for full instructions on using Sandcastle for documenting your .NET source code.

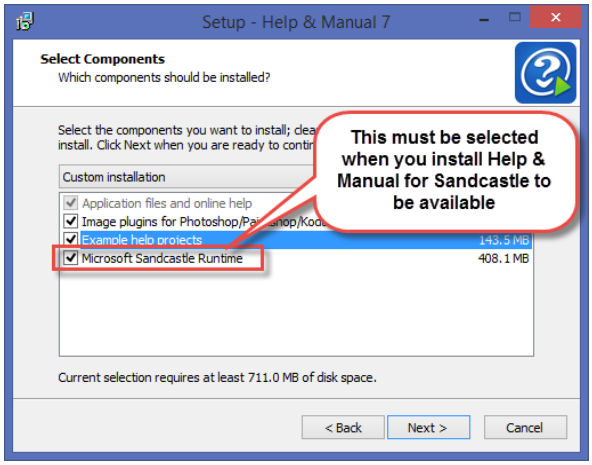
Help+Manual cannot be used with Sandcastle Help File Builder

Please note that you cannot use the independent Sandcastle Help File Builder system or its configuration. Help+Manual actually performs similar tasks to Help File Builder, so it replaces its role in interaction with Sandcastle.

Installing Sandcastle with Help+Manual

Help+Manual's installation includes the latest version of Microsoft Sandcastle. You can use your own Sandcastle installation if you wish, provided it is version 2.4 or later. However, if you wish to do this you must not select the Sandcastle option when installing the program. Help+Manual will always use its own version automatically, and it will then ignore any other installed version. (Help+Manual's version will not interfere with your own installation, if it exists.)

We strongly recommend using the bundled version of Sandcastle included with Help+Manual. It is the latest official Microsoft version and Help+Manual is optimized for it.



For more information about Sandcastle see Microsoft's Sandcastle page:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/vstudio/bb608422.aspx

Preparing your .NET project and comments for import to Help+Manual with Sandcastlel

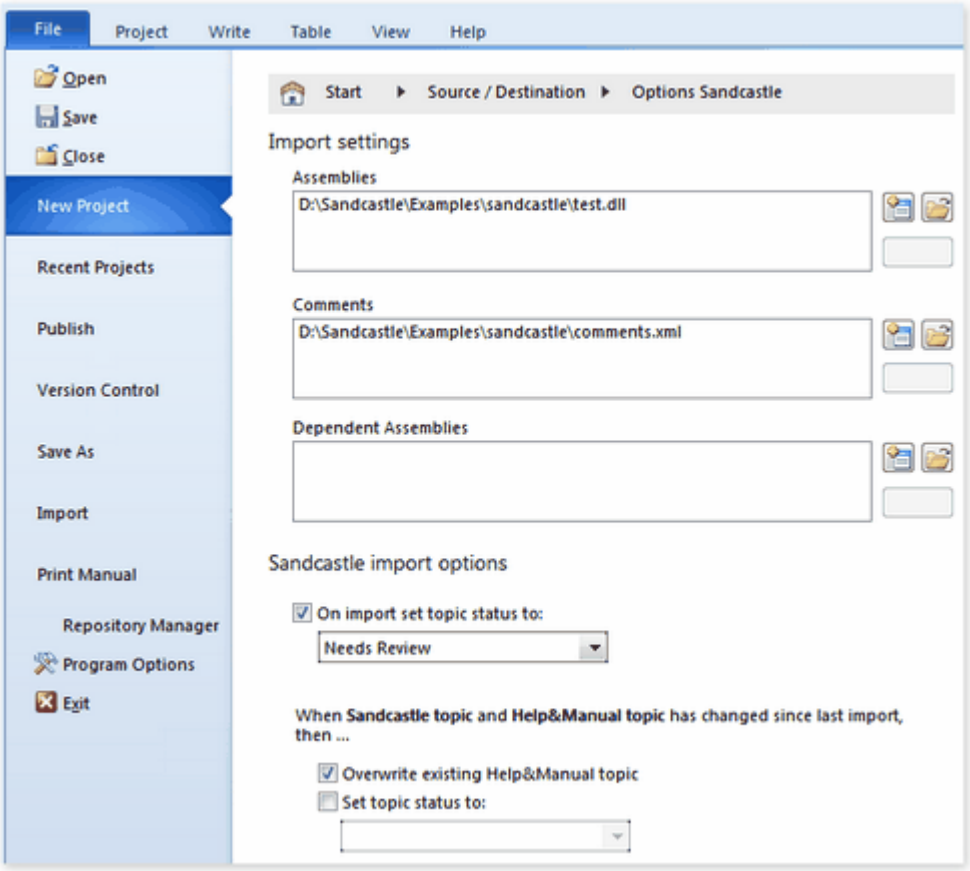
1. Document your source code using triple slash comments and Sandcastle XML tags.
2. Activate the XML documentation file option for your project in Visual Studio in the **Project Properties** > **Build** section. Alternatively you can also compile manually with the documentation switch ***/doc:comments.xml***.
3. Build your .NET project or assemblies to the release version, or the version where the XML documentation file you have configured is exported.

See Configuring Your .NET Project 1127 for detailed instructions explaining how to set up your .NET project and write your comments there.

Importing a Sandcastle project to a new project

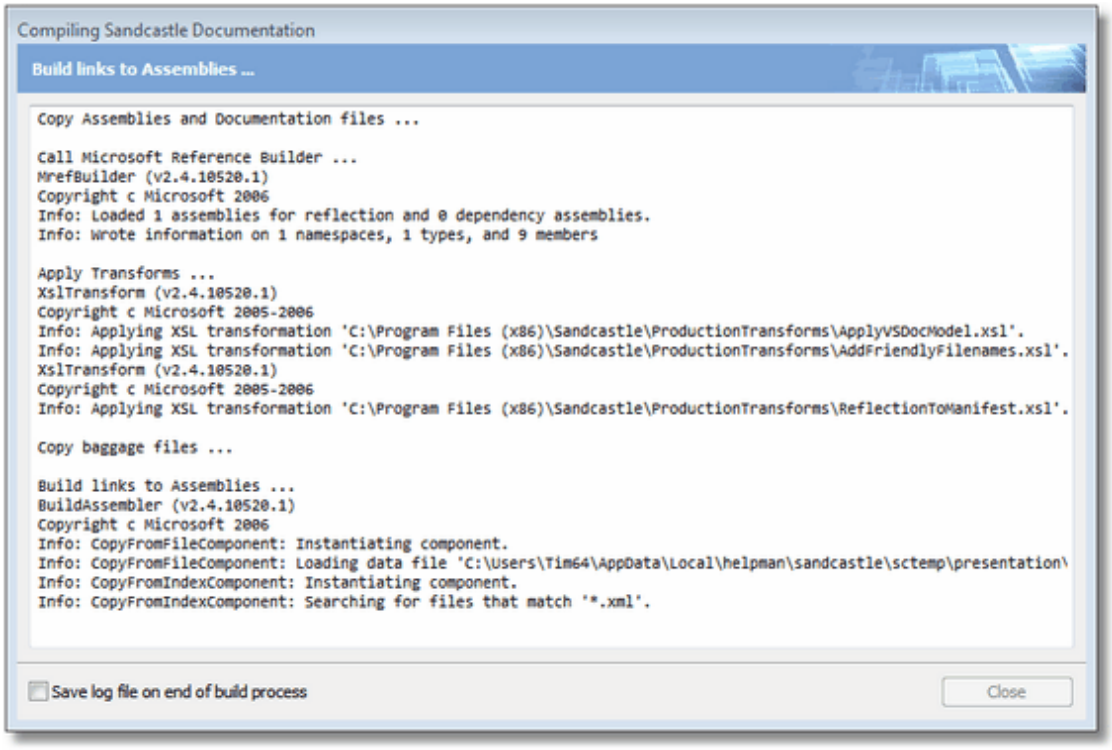
1. Select *New Project* in the **File** menu.
2. Select *Sandcastle documentation file* in the Import existing documentation section in the lower half of the page.
3. Enter the name and path for your new Help+Manual project and configure the other settings as you would for an empty new project 124.
4. Click on *Continue with Options* and select your assemblies, comment files and any dependent assemblies. The comments file is the XML documentation file 1127 you configure in your .NET project. You can choose multiple files in each category. You can also set a topic status to be set for your imported topics.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

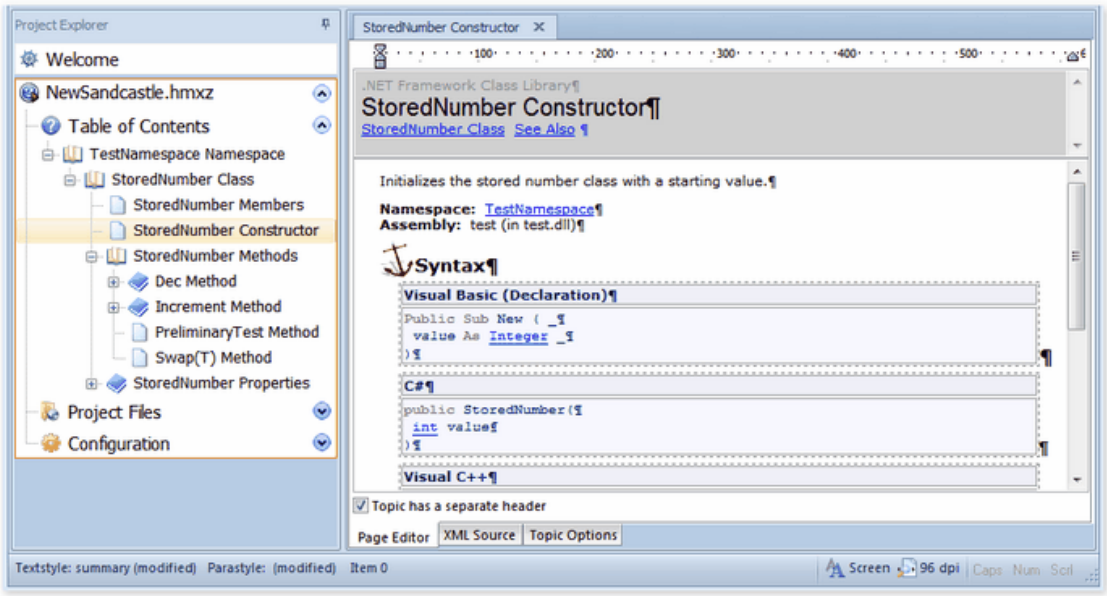


5. Click on *Import*. Help+Manual will then run Sandcastle in the background, generate the project and import it to a Help+Manual project. Depending on the size of your programming project this may take a while. The time this takes depends on Sandcastle and the speed of your computer, not on Help+Manual.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



6. When the process is finished your Sandcastle project will appear in Help+Manual for editing. You can then edit and publish it just like any normal Help+Manual project:



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Updating existing HM projects from your source code

You can also update your source code documentation to the Help+Manual project you created from an earlier version.

Open the Help+Manual project and select *Import* in the **File** menu instead of *New Project*. All the other steps are the same as described above. New topics chapters will be added to the end of the existing TOC. Updates to existing topics and chapters will be handled depending on the conflict management settings you configure for "changed topics". If you opt to overwrite the existing topics the earlier versions will be replaced.

5.3.3 Importing data into existing projects

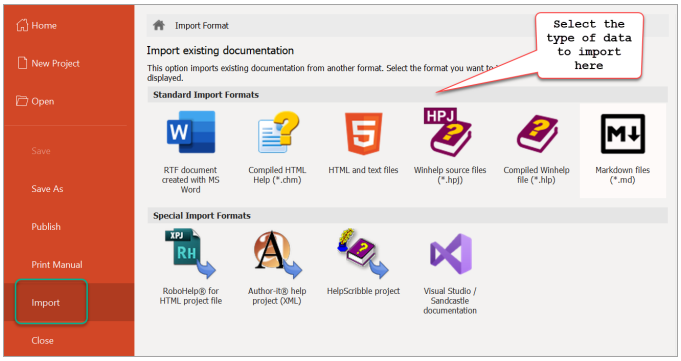
In addition to creating new projects with imported data you can also import documentation from other formats into existing Help+Manual projects.

See Settings for importing data 157 for details on configuring your import settings correctly for importing different types of data.

Productivity Tip
Also see the powerful Snippets 265 function with which you can reuse topics and topic content saved in external files.

Importing external data into existing projects

1. Select the Table of Contents section in the Project Explorer and click on any topic. The imported data will be inserted at the end of the TOC. You can move the imported topics later.
2. Select *Import* in the File menu.



3. Select the format you want to import, then follow the instructions displayed.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See Settings for importing data 157 for details on settings for individual formats.

Importing external data into individual topics

You can also import external data directly into individual topics. Note that you should always create a new topic to do this because importing the data overwrites the current topic. The exception to this is when you use Drag & Drop to insert the contents of an RTF file into the current topic (see further below in this topic.)

1. Create a new empty topic or select a topic that you want to overwrite.
2. Select *File* > *Load Topic from File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and select the file you want to load. You can import HTML, RTF, RVF, TXT files and Help+Manual XML topic files.

If you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can load topics from other projects directly provided the projects are saved in uncompressed XML format. Then you just select them in the /Topics folder of the other project.

For full details on this function see Exporting and importing topics 365 in the Creating and Editing Topics section.

Copying and pasting topics between projects

You can also cut, copy and paste topics directly between projects in the Project Explorer. Just open both projects in the Explorer and then use the Clipboard functions in the Ribbon to cut, copy and paste entire topics and chapters between the Table of Contents sections of the projects. See Moving, cutting and pasting topics 357 for full details.

Inserting RTF file content with Drag & Drop

If you drag an RTF file into the Help+Manual editor window the contents of the file will be inserted directly at the drop position as formatted text.

This currently only works with RTF files and image files, which are inserted directly as images. All other file types are inserted as file links when you drop them.

See also:

Re-using content with snippets 265
Moving, cutting and pasting topics 357

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.3.4 Settings for importing data

Generally the interactive screens displayed when you select *Import* in the File menu provide most of the information you need. However, the additional tips below will help you to choose the settings that will produce the best results with the individual import formats.

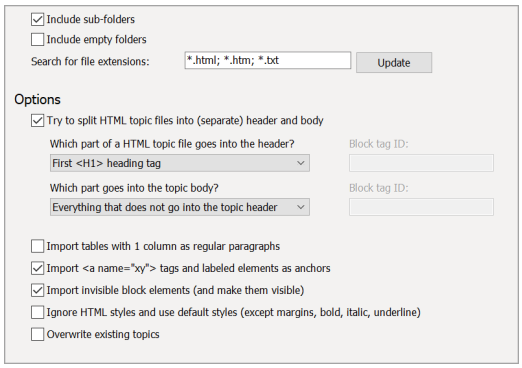
HTML files and compiled HTML Help files (.chm)

The importer needs to know how to deal with the different parts of HTML topic pages. You can improve the import performance with the import options settings.

Converting imported HTML formatting to styles

Provided style classes were used in the original HTML you can globally strip out inline formatting imported from HTML and convert it to style references with the powerful Toolbox utility included in the Premium Pack style pack.

Tip: You can view the HTML source code of topic pages in CHM files by right-clicking in the topic in the Windows CHM viewer and selecting Display Source. This can be useful for identifying the tags and blocks of code you need to filter with these options.



Topic header:
Getting the header information from the **<title>** tag will usually work. If your topics have a separate header block you may need to specify a different tag. If in doubt display the CHM file, right-click on one of its pages and examine the source code with *View Source*.

Topic body:
Specify a **<table>** or ** ** tag with a specific ID only if you know that is used to identify your body content. Otherwise use the default setting.

Ignore internal folders:
Help+Manual does not use internal folders in CHM files, all files are stored on the same level. If the CHM file contains internal folders the folder names will normally be prefixed to the topic IDs of the imported topics to prevent name conflicts. You can turn this option off

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

if you are sure that there are no name conflicts caused by files with the same names stored in different folders.

Single-column tables:
Some topic pages are enclosed in single-cell/single-column tables, which can cause undesirable results when you import them. You can solve this problem with the option for converting such tables to single paragraphs.

Import tags and labeled elements as anchors:
If you you know the HTML files you are importing contain tags and labeled elements with name= attributes that you want to use as anchors you can make sure that they are converted to anchors (jump targets) with this setting.

Import invisible block elements (and make them visible):
Normally block elements hidden with the **`display=none`** attribute are considered to be not part of a page. This setting enables you to import these elements and switches them to visible. (Invisible block elements are not directly supported in Help+Manual).

Ignore HTML styles and use default styles (except margins, bold, italic, underline):
Use this option if you want to import your CHM or HTML files with a "clean slate" for styles and formatting. It will strip out all styles (both CSS and inline styles) and only keep margins, bold, italics and underline. This can be particularly useful for source material that has accumulated a lot of manual formatting over time.

Overwrite existing topics:
This is only displayed when you are importing into an existing Help+Manual project. If you select it, it will overwrite any existing topics in your project with imported topics that have the same IDs. Use with caution!

Popup topics file:
In CHM help popup topics are stored in a special plain-text file inside the CHM. Normally this has a standard name (**`CSHelp.txt`**) but if you know that the file you are importing uses a different name you can select or enter it here.

Integrating imported inline formatting from HTML and CHM

Help+Manual automatically imports and integrates the styles from Word RTF files, but formatted text from HTML must be imported as "manual formatting". This is necessary because HTML formatting cannot be automatically converted cleanly into "text" and "paragraph" styles. Normally, if you want to use styles on imported formatted text you must first create Help+Manual styles on the basis of the imported formatting and then apply the styles to your text.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Converting imported HTML formatting to styles globally with Premium Pack Toolbox

Provided style classes were used in the original HTML you can globally strip out inline formatting imported from HTML and convert it to style references with the powerful Toolbox utility included in the Premium Pack add-on for Help+Manual. If you have or are considering buying the Premium Pack, see Integrating imported formatting globally 1165 for details on this.

Otherwise see the Replacing Formatting and Styles 1143 chapter for instructions.

Markdown files

There are no special settings for importing Markdown files, as the Markdown format is by definition extremely simple. The Markdown flavor (Daring Fireball or Common Mark) is selected automatically on the basis of the content of the file.

A set of standard styles is used to represent the basic Markdown formats.

Winhelp files (compiled .hlp and .hpj project files)

There are no special settings for importing Winhelp files.

You will get much better results if you import Winhelp project source files (**`.hpj`** project file and other accompanying files). Compiled **`.hlp`** files do not contain all the information needed for recreating Winhelp projects.

FrameMaker Projects

Help+Manual does not import Adobe FrameMaker projects directly. However, you can achieve very good results by using FrameMaker's *Save as RTF* function. This provides all the benefits of importing Word files, including integrating your styles in the Help+Manual project stylesheet. In addition to this, FrameMaker also does a great job of exporting its compound graphics to vector-based EMF files, which Help+Manual can handle very well.

So to import a project from FrameMaker, just save it as RTF in FrameMaker, then follow the instructions for importing Word RTF files below.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Word RTF files

There are no special settings in the import wizard for importing RTF files. However, you do need to plan the content of your RTF files in order to get the best results.

Save your Word files in the RTF format with Word before importing

If you have RTF files that were not created with Word, always re-save them to RTF with Word before importing them to Help+Manual.

Automatic topic generation

The importer splits the contents of RTF files into topics automatically if possible, using one of two methods:

Standard Word Heading1 - Heading 9 styles:
If your RTF file uses the standard Word *Heading 1 ... Heading 9* styles each heading with one of these styles will start a new topic. Subtopics will be created automatically on the basis of the heading levels.

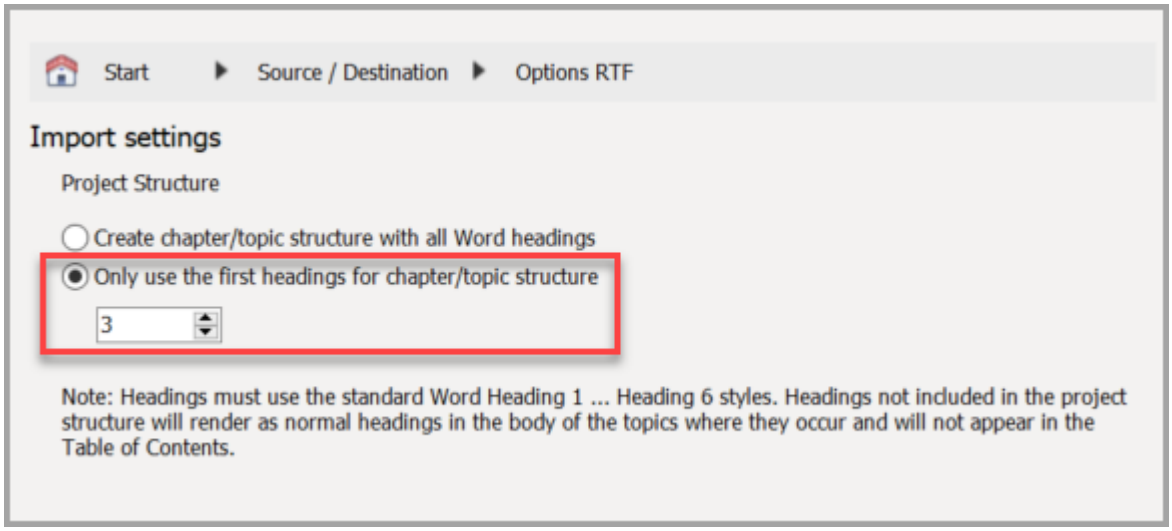
Hard page breaks:
If your file does not use *Heading 1 .. Heading 9* styles new topics are created at hard page breaks. No subtopics are created with this method.

Limiting the depth of chapter creation

You can limit the depth of chapter creation when importing Word documents with excessively complex chapter structures. You do this by specifying the maximum levels that should be converted to chapters and sub-topics in your Help+Manual project. For example, if you specify you only want the first 3 levels as chapters, all sub-topics below level 3 will be included in body of the corresponding topic.

These lower-level topics will not be included in the TOC and their headings will be rendered as normal text sub-headings in the body of the topic, along with their text.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Styles in RTF files

Styles used in RTF files are imported to your Help+Manual project. They remain attached to the text they were applied to in the RTF document and they are also added to your project styles list. If the RTF you are importing to an existing project contains styles that conflict with existing styles in the project a dialog will be displayed asking you whether you want to keep the old styles, the new styles or add a second version of the style with a different name.

You can start using your styles immediately after importing and you can also edit them in **Write > Edit Styles.**

Map styles to imported styles:
This option merges styles from the imported document with styles with the same name in your Help+Manual project.

Hyperlinks in RTF files

Most hyperlinks in RTF files will be converted correctly but in some cases it may not be possible to resolve their targets with 100% certainty. In these cases the links will be shown highlighted in red in the Help+Manual editor so that you can check them and make the necessary correctly.

Graphics in RTF files

Graphics embedded in RTF files do not have names, they only have sequential numbers, starting with 1 in every RTF file. Help+Manual automatically generates sequential names for the graphics files combined with the first 8 letters of the RTF name, or of the project

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

name if it is a WinHelp HPJ project. This ensures that you don't get duplicate file names for different graphics when you import RTF files to different projects.

AuthorIT XML Projects

About AuthorIT importing:

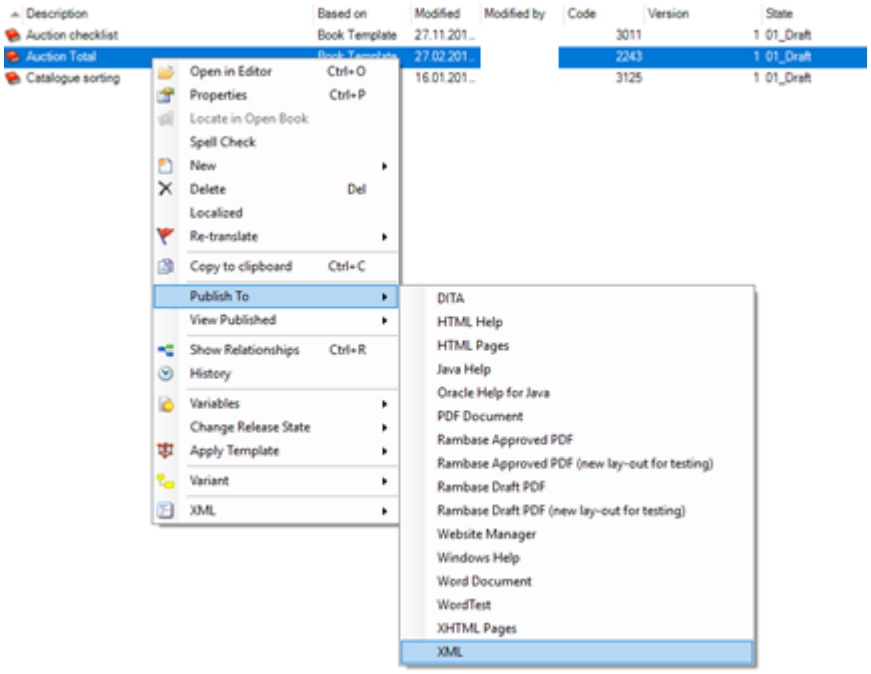
Help+Manual does a very thorough conversion and import of your AuthorIT project. All the following items are imported:

- All topics and snippets
- All "Books" (converted into H+M TOCs)
- Index keywords automatically created by AIT
- Text and paragraph styles (AIT Help styles)
- Hyperlinks to topics and web pages
- Tables
- Variables (3 predefined variables and all user-defined variables)
- Topic status (converted to H+M topic status)
- Build tags (AIT Help, Web and Print tags converted to H+M build tags)
- Graphics with original file names
- Embedded pictures
- "See Also" link lists in topics

First publish your AuthorIT project to XML with the *Publish To* option:

To import an AuthorIT project you first need to publish it to XML using the Publish To option. **This step is essential.** You won't be able to import an Author IT source project directly.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Options you must set in AuthorIT:

These two options must be set as follows in your AuthorIT configuration when you publish to XML for importing to Help+Manual:

- **Export embedded pictures as files:YES**
- **Export linked pictures as files:YES**

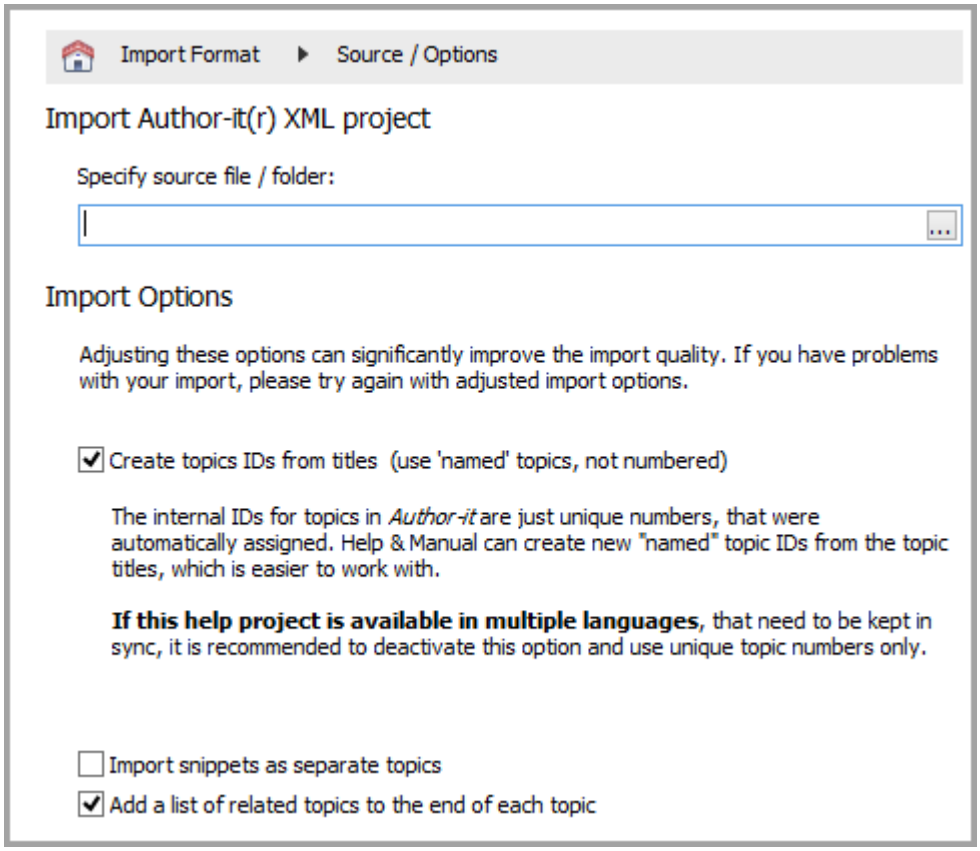
The following option can be activated, but is not required:

- **Include preview of file objects:`optional`**

AuthorIT import options in Help+Manual:

You can then import the XML project created by AuthorIT to Help+Manual. You will be shown these options:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



- **Create topic IDs from titles**
  Recommended! Activate this to make "human-readable" IDs based on the topic titles in your AuthorIT project. Turning this off generates "human-unfriendly" IDs based on the AuthorIT numeric topic IDs. This makes selecting the correct topics for link targets etc. much more difficult if you are a human and not a machine.
- **Import snippets as separate topics**
  By default, your AuthorIT snippets are imported as topic files with the build option "none" so that they are only used as source for snippets and not automatically exported as hidden topics when you publish to formats that support this (CHM, WebHelp, eWriter, VS Help). Activating this option sets their build option to "all builds" instead, so that they have the same status as any other topic without a TOC entry.
- **Add a list of related topics**
  If you activate this option your "Related Topics" lists for each topic are imported along with each topic. Turn it off to exclude these lists.

RoboHelp projects

You can import RoboHelp X5, X6, 7, 8 and 9 projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Here too, the importer needs to know how to deal with the different parts of the HTML topic pages. You can improve the import performance with the import options settings.

Topic header:
Getting the header information from the **<title>** tag will usually work. If your topics have a separate header block you may need to specify a different tag. If in doubt check the HTML source code of the files in your RoboHelp project.

Single-column tables:
Some topic pages are enclosed in single-cell/single-column tables, which can cause undesirable results when you import them. You can solve these problems with the option for converting such tables to single paragraphs.

Graphics files:
The graphics files from the RoboHelp project are not imported to the new project directory. Instead, Help+Manual adds the current location(s) of the graphics files to the image folders list in the *Configuration* > *Common Properties* section of your project. You can move the image files after importing if you want – just change the folder entries in the Image Folders list accordingly after doing so and Help+Manual will then be able to find them.

Integrating imported formatting in your H+M stylesheet

With the exception of RTF files (see above), text imported from external sources is all tagged as "manually formatted" with inline formatting, not with styles. You can integrate this formatting into your Help+Manual stylesheet with the **Create Style from Selection** and **Replace Styles** functions.

Provided style classes were used in the original HTML you can globally strip out inline formatting imported from HTML and convert it to style references with the powerful Toolbox utility included in the Premium Pack style pack.

For instructions see Replacing Formatting and Styles 1143.

5.3.5 Importing & copying topics and XML files

You can import topics and XML topic files to the current topic from the current project, from other Help+Manual projects and from libraries of Help+Manual XML files. You can either overwrite the entire current topic with the external file using Load Topic from File or you can insert the external file in the current topic with the Snippets tool.

You can also copy and paste topics and chapters from other projects in the same way as within your current project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Productivity Tip
Use Snippets to build up a collection of pre-formatted text blocks and topics that you and your team use frequently! Just copy the XML topic files you want to use to a folder for storage.

Importing topics and XML files as snippets

The Snippets tool inserts topics and H+M XML files into your current topic at the cursor position. These topics can be inserted in Copy mode or Link mode. In Link mode the snippet content updates automatically when the source topic or XML file is edited.

The topics can be in your current project, another Help+Manual project (HMXP format, Professional and Floating license versions only) or a directory of H+M XML files.

1. Click in your topic where you want to insert the snippet.
2. Select the Snippet tool in **Write** > **Insert Object.**
3. Choose *From Topic* to insert a topic from the current project or *From File* to insert an external H+M XML file or an XML topic file from another project.
   - *Copy & Paste* inserts a copy of the file that you can then edit.
   - *Linked* creates a live link to the file – changes in the source file or topic are updated automatically.
   - Deselecting *Snippet creates a new paragraph* allows you to insert a snippet as inline text in an existing paragraph.
   - You can also insert XML files from your current project instead of using the *From Topic* mode (HMXP format, Professional and Floating license versions only).
4. Select the topic or file you want to insert and click on OK to insert it.

"Use project search path to locate snippet"

This option adds the location of the snippet file to the project search path 1405 – if you deselect it the path to the snippet is stored with the snippet.

Rather than using snippets from many locations it is better to store all your snippet files in a common location. This will make them easier to manage, particularly if you ever need to move your project or have it translated.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Managing and organizing snippets

You can insert snippets from any location. However, if you use linked snippets from many locations the links will be dead if you move your project or send it to someone by email. You can solve this problem by storing your snippet files together with your project in a special directory. Alternatively, you can store and edit your snippets in their own uncompressed Help+Manual project, or in a special Help+Manual project known as a style repository:

See this topic 265 for more information on working with and managing snippets.

Snippets managed in a snippet folder:

1. Create a folder for your snippets in a location where you can easily transport it together with your project folder.
2. Add the path to the snippets folder to your Project Search Path in your project's *Configuration* > *Common* Properties settings.
3. When you insert a snippet select the *Project Search Path* option to tell Help+Manual to look for the snippet files in the folders listed in the Project Search Path.

When you do this you can always move your snippets folders to any location you like. To get Help+Manual to find the snippets you just need to add the new location to your Project Search Path.

Snippets managed in a project:

Create an uncompressed Help+Manual project using the HMXP format (Pro and Floating license versions only). Then save your snippets directly in the /Topics folder of that project. You can then edit the snippet files in that project in the **Project Files** > **Topic Files** section in the Project Explorer.

Snippets managed in a style repository:

See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for instructions on this option.

Exporting text and topics as snippet files

You can export selected text or the current topic to an external XML file, for example for use as a snippet in a snippet directory.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Export the entire topic:

1. Select the topic you want to export in the Project Explorer (TOC or Topic Files).
2. Select *File* > *Save Topic to File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and choose the save location.

Export selected text:

Select text in the editor – the text can include anything that a topic can contain, i.e. also images, tables, etc.

Select *File* > *Save Snippet* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and choose a save location and a filename.

Formatting and snippets

Formatting with styles:

If the text in snippets is formatted with styles the styles must be defined in the present project. If the styles are not defined the snippets text will be displayed unformatted. If you use standard style names in all your projects your snippets will be reformatted automatically to match the styles of the current project.

Snippets in style repositories come with their own styles:

Style repositories are used as a source for styles for multiple projects. If you use snippets from a style repository the styles used in the repository are automatically imported to your project, so you don't have to worry about the styles issue. See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for details on working with repositories.

Manual formatting:

If the text in your snippets files is manually formatted it will be displayed normally in the current project. It is generally better to use manual formatting if you want the formatting of the snippets to look identical wherever they are used.

Loading entire topics from external files

You can load entire topics from external files. Unlike snippets, loading a topic from a file replaces the entire current topic with the external file. You can load topics from RTF,

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

HTML, TXT and Help+Manual XML topic files.

1. Select the topic you want to overwrite in the Project Explorer (TOC or Topic Files), or create a new empty topic.
2. Select *File* > *Load Topic from File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and select the file you want to load. This will overwrite the current topic with the contents of the selected file!

See Content templates for topics 1016 for information on using Help+Manual XML topic files as content templates for topics.

Merging external HTML files into topics

In HTML-based output formats you can also use the **Insert HTML Code** tool to merge the contents of external HTML files into your topics when you publish your project. These files can be local or accessed via an http URL. This enables you to maintain external files for information that may change and insert the latest version automatically every time you publish.

See Merging HTML files into topics 169 for full details and instructions.

Copying topics and chapters between projects

1. Open both projects in the Project Explorer. Alternatively you can open Help+Manual a second time and open one project in on instance of the program and the other project in the other. This can make it easier to switch between projects.
2. Select the source and target positions in both projects so that you can see them clearly.
3. Use the Copy, Cut and Paste tools in the Ribbon Toolbar to copy and paste topics or chapters. These Clipboard tools are available in both the **Write** and **Project** tabs.

If the pasted topics have the same IDs as topics in the target project H+M will change them automatically. It's advisable to open the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window and check the IDs of all pasted topics after importing them.

See also:

Re-using content with snippets 265
Exporting and importing topics 365
Moving, cutting and pasting topics 357

5.3.6 Merging HTML files into topics

In addition to importing HTML and text files you can also use a command that enables you to merge external HTML files into existing topics at publish time with the HTML Code Object 469 tool. The files can be local or read from a location on the Internet with a URL. This can be very

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

useful if you have material that changes frequently. You can maintain it in an external HTML file and automatically merge the latest version into your project when you publish.

Key Information
This only works in HTML-based output formats. Merged HTML files are not included in PDF, printed manuals and MS Word DOCX output.

Inserting an external HTML file in an existing topic

Merging HTML files injects the entire external HTML file, including its **<head>** section and everything it contains. If you use it to insert an HTML file in the middle of an existing topic, it will also paste in all the information that is normally in the head section of the HTML page. This may work because most browsers are quite forgiving, but it can also cause problems.

Because of this, it is advisable to remove everything in the external file outside the opening and closing **<body>** and **</body>** tags, and those tags as well, when merging into topic pages. Basically, such files should only contain normal HTML code, without the additional sections needed for independent pages.

Step 1: Preparing a full page for insertion inside a topic:

1. Open the external HTML file in an editor.
2. Locate the opening **<body>** tag and delete it and everything that comes before it.
3. Locate the closing **</body>** tag and delete it and everything that comes after it.
4. Save the file with the **`.htm`** or **`.html`** extension.

Step 2: Insert the file with the Code Object tool

See Inserting HTML code objects 469 for instructions.

Replacing a topic with an external file

In some special cases you may want to replace a topic entirely with an external HTML file. It's important to understand that when you to a this you are responsible for the entire layout. You must provide not only the page content but also everything that would normally be in the HTML page template. So you need to provide the **<head>** section and all the settings there, including CSS file references JavaScript file references meta tags and so on.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This method is incompatible with most skins and templates!

This is a method that should only be used in very special cases where you completely understand the HTML code you are using and the results it will produce. It will be incompatible with most skins in templates included with Help+Manual and all Premium Pack skins without exception. In the huge majority of cases the insertion method described above is the only method you should use.

Procedure

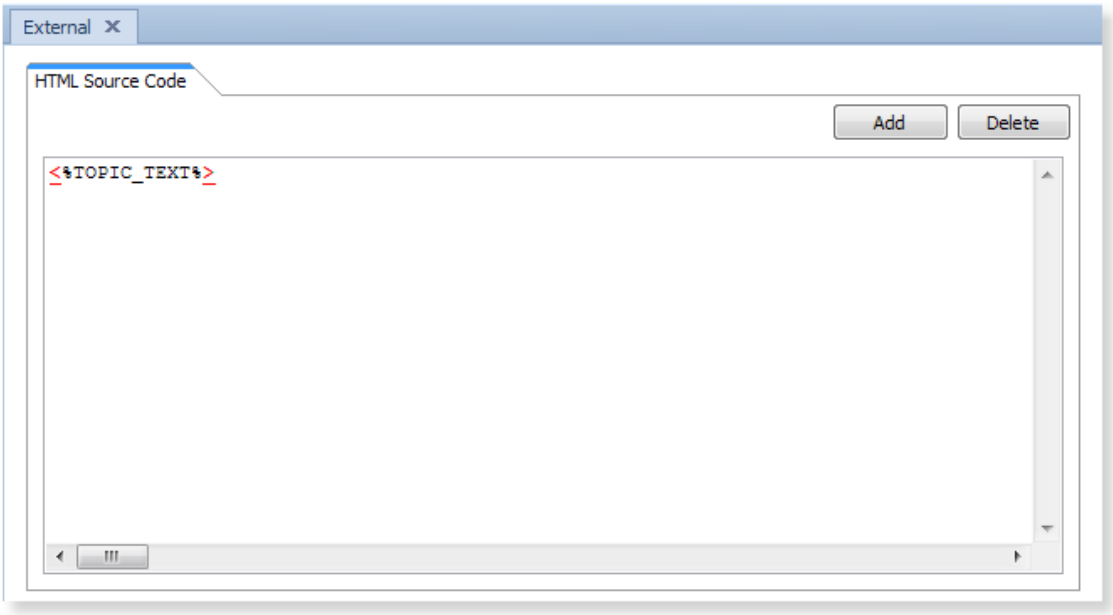
It's important to understand that the **#MERGE** command inserts the entire HTML file it references. Since HTML files are normally complete, with all the header and layout information they need, you don't want the page components that are normally used for Help+Manual topic pages. You need to create a special HTML topic page template that does not contain this information; otherwise you will have two pages in one, nested inside each other.

The solution here is to create an empty HTML topic page template that only contains the variable for inserting the content from your topic page.

Step 1: Create a special HTML page template for merged HTML files

1. In your project, go to **Project Explorer: Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates**, click on *Add* to create a new page template and give the template a descriptive Name like *External*.
2. Select the new template, and in the Source Code tab select all the code and delete everything.
3. Type in the variable **<%TOPIC_TEXT%>** in the Source Code tab, so that this is the only content. It should look like this:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



4. **IF YOU ARE USING A SKIN:**
   If you are using a skin to publish you must repeat the above steps in the skin file as well. Open the **.hmskin** skin file in Help+Manual (select **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the Open dialog) and add your additional HTML page template there as well, with exactly the same contents and the same name.

Step 2: Create the topic with the #MERGE command to insert the file

1. Create an empty topic in the position where you want to insert the file.
2. Select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window, and in the *HTML Page Template:* field select the External template you created in step 1 above.
3. Use the Code Object tool 469 to insert the external file.

See also:

Inserting HTML code objects 469

5.4 Creating Topic Files

Topics are the main components of your project. Each topic is a separate file, which is like a word processor document. These files are stored inside the main project file if you use the single-file .hmxz format and in your project folder if you use the uncompressed .hmxp format. (Help+Manual Basic uses the compressed format only.)

Topic files are managed in the Project Explorer

You manage your topic files and your Table of Contents in the Project Explorer. Before starting with this chapter, please study the chapter Using the Project Explorer 70 – it con-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

tains important information that you need to be familiar with before you start working with topic files.

5.4.1 About topics and the TOC

The text and other content in your projects is organized in "topics". Each topic is stored in a separate file in the Project Files section in the Project Explorer.

Key Information
Creating a new topic in the TOC creates a TOC entry and an associated topic file in the Project Files section. Creating a topic in the Project Files section creates a topic file without a TOC entry.

About topics, TOC entries and topic files

A topic is like a word processing file; it is a document dealing with one subject and it is generally represented by one entry in your Table of Contents (TOC).

Each topic is stored in a separate file stored inside your project. The entries in the TOC are actually separate from your topic files. The TOC entry is really just a link pointing to a topic file.

Creating topics in the TOC:

When you create a topic in the TOC you automatically create a TOC entry and a topic file in the Topic Files section of the Project Explorer. When you click on the TOC entry the topic file is displayed for editing automatically.

Creating topics in the Topic Files section:

If you create a topic in the Topic Files section of your project it will not have a TOC entry. Topics without TOC entries are used for popup topics, topics displayed only by hyperlinks and topics used as snippets 165 (reusable content that you insert in other topics). They are not exported to PDF, ePUB or DOCX output files.

How topics are managed in your projects:

Although your topics are all separate files Help+Manual manages your project as though it was one big file for some functions. For example, you can perform global search and replace operations on all the topics in your project and your formatting styles also apply to all your topics.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Table of Contents (TOC)

The Table of Contents (TOC) in the Project Explorer is a representation of the structure of the TOC in your finished documentation. The TOC is used to organize your project into chapters and sub-chapters. In the Project Explorer it works like an outliner, allowing you to move topics and chapters around and change your structure quickly and easily.

Topics included in the TOC are listed both in the Table of Contents section and in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer. The Project Files section shows all the files in your project, the TOC only shows those files that will actually appear in the table of contents of your documentation. It's important to understand that the topics in the Topic Files section are not duplicates – you are viewing the same topic files in both sections.

See Managing Topic Files and the TOC 342 for information on working with topic files in the Project Explorer.

See also:

Managing Topic Files and the TOC 342

5.4.2 Creating new topics in the TOC

You create a new topics in two places: In your project's *Table of Contents* (TOC) or the *Project Files* section. Creating a new topic in the TOC creates a TOC entry and a topic file and links the TOC entry to the topic file. Creating a new topic in Project Files creates a topic file without a TOC entry.

The instructions below explain how to create topics with TOC entries. See Creating new topics in Topic Files 179 for instructions on creating topics without TOC entries.

Key Information
If you save in compressed single-file mode (*.hmxz*) all your topic files are stored inside your compressed project file and can only be viewed in the Project Explorer. The Basic version of Help+Manual can only save in compressed mode.

How to create a single new topic in the TOC

Normally, you will want your topic files to have entries in your Table of Contents (TOC). Topic files that you create in the TOC section of the Project Explorer automatically have TOC entries.

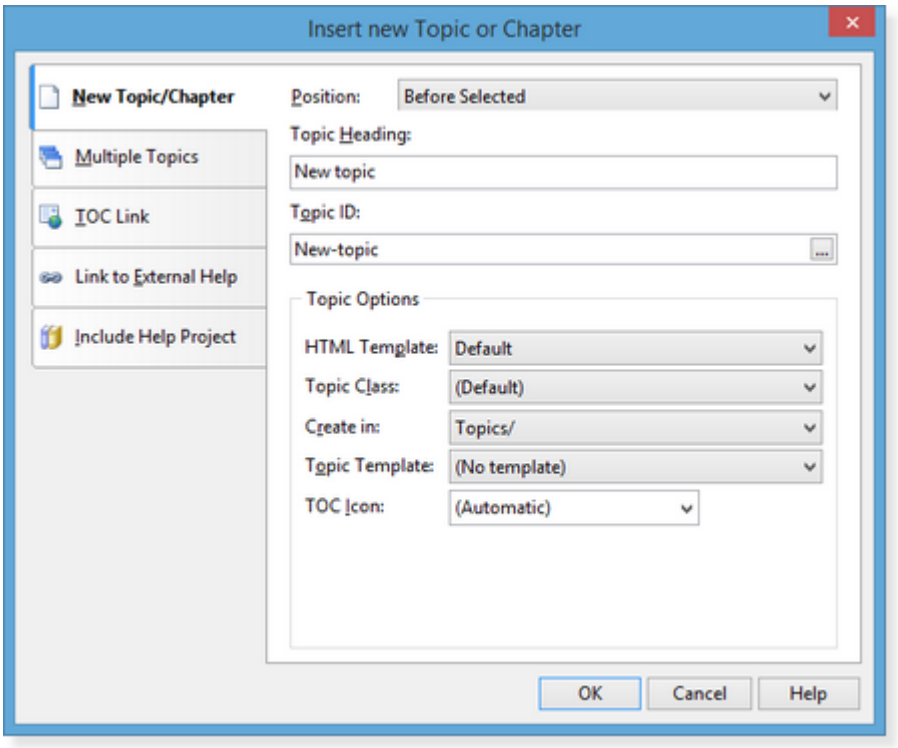
1. Click in the TOC in the Project Explorer at the position where you want to add your new topic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Select **Project** > **Add Topic** and choose an *Add Topic* option ***OR***

   Right-click to display the context menu and then select an *Add Topic* option

3. This displays the Insert New Topic 1298 dialog, select *Topic/Chapter* to create a normal topic with content.:



4. Type your title in the Topic Heading: field (this is the title that appears in the TOC). The Topic ID is generated automatically and is initially based on the caption you enter. You can edit the automatically-generated topic ID if you like – see Topic IDs and context numbers 368 for more details.

   See the Insert New Topic 1298 for details of the settings displayed by *More* . Note that you cannot select *Popup* as the Topic Class when you are adding topics to the TOC. Popups should not have TOC entries so you must create popup topics in the Topic Files 179 section.

5. Click on OK to create the topic.

Initially the header of the topic above the editing area will be identical to the caption. If you edit the caption in the TOC the header will change with the caption. However, if you edit the header this will turn off the "link" between the caption and the header. Any changes made to the caption after this will no longer be reflected in the header.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Creating a topic by Drag & Drop

You can also create a new topic by dragging & dropping text to the Table of Contents (TOC), in the same way that you create hyperlinks:

1. Select the text in a topic that you want to use for the topic caption.
2. Drag the text into the TOC between two topics, in the position where you want the new topic to be inserted.

   A blue line is displayed between the TOC entries in the position where the new topic will be inserted.
3. Let go of the mouse button. A new topic will be created with the selected text as the caption.

TOC Link: Link to web address or an existing topic

This option can create two types of links:

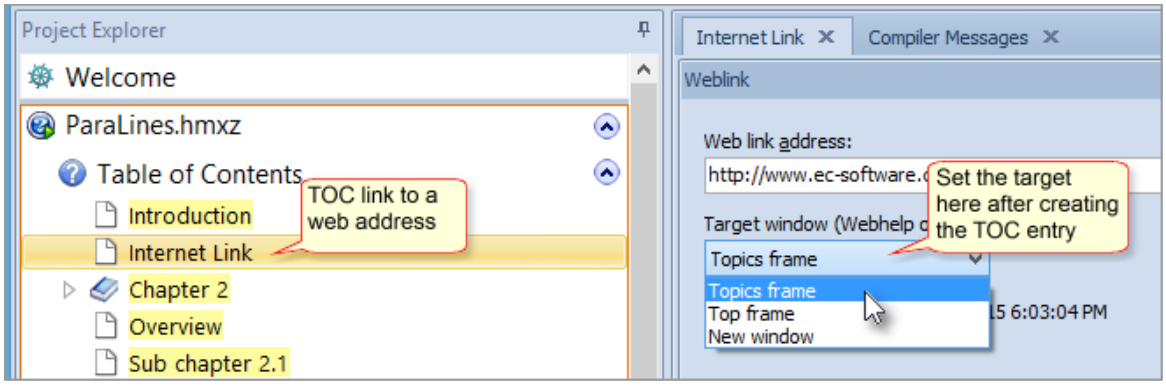
Link to a topic in this project:

Creates an additional link to an existing topic in the current project. See Multiple TOC entries for one topic 371 for more details on this subject.

Link to a web address:

Instead of displaying a topic this displays a web page with the URL you enter here. You must include the **`http://`** prefix if the address, otherwise it won't work.

After creating the TOC entry you can specify the target of the link on the right:



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

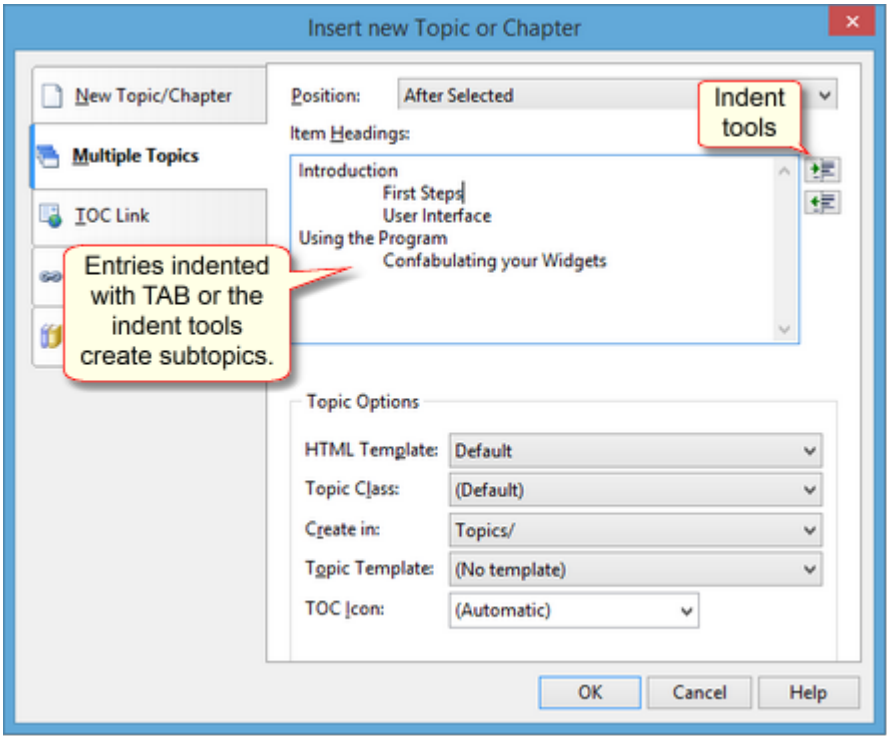
TOC link targets in different output formats:

WebHelp:	Web links in the TOC are no longer recommended for WebHelp. In the future, they will not work in responsive, single-page layouts because there is no topic frame where a web page can be loaded. They will just open in a new window instead. • **Topic frame** displays in the topic frame, if there is one. Otherwise it will open in a new browser page or tab. • **Top frame** replaces the WebHelp entirely with the linked web page. • **New window opens the link in a new browser window or tab.**
HTML Help/CHM:	Web links in the TOC always open in the topic frame in CHM files. The target window setting is ignored.
eWriter Help:	Web links in the TOC are not recommended in eWriter Help. They can be opened in the topic frame but the embedded browser will often not provide good results with external websites. It is much better to put web links in the body of your topics and configure them to open in an external browser window in the eWriter settings 1477.
PDF and Word DOCX:	Web links in the TOC are not supported and are ignored in these formats. The TOC entries are not included in the TOC.
Kindle/Mobi ePUB eBooks	Web links in the TOC are not supported and are ignored in these formats. The TOC entries are not included in the TOC.
Visual Studio Help:	Web links and external links in the TOC are not permitted in these formats. The TOC entries are not included in the TOC.

Creating multiple topics

1. Proceed as described above for creating a new topic.
2. In the Insert New Topic 1298 dialog select the *Multiple Topics* option.
3. Enter captions in the Item Captions editing box. Use the indent tools on the right to indent captions, which makes them sub-topics of the topic above them. The button un-indents captions. You can also use the TAB key to indent entries to turn them into sub-topics.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



4. Click on **OK** to create the topics.

Note that when you use this method the topic IDs are all generated automatically from the topic captions. You can edit the IDs 368 afterwards if you want.

Using templates for new topics

You can use content templates for topics to automatically insert a basic layout, including any content (text, graphics, tables etc.) when you create a new topic. If you have already created one or more topic content templates in your project directory you can select them when you create the topic.

- Select the template you want to use in the *Topic Template:* field.
- Templates will only be defined if you have created them by saving topics in your project directory as XML template files, using the naming syntax `topicname.template.xml`, with the *File* > *Save Topic to File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**

See Content templates for topics 1016 for full details on creating and using topic content templates.

See also:

Insert New Topic 1298 (Reference)
Topic IDs and context numbers 368
Content templates for topics 1016

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.4.3 Creating new topics in Topic Files

When you create a new topic in your project's *Project Files* section you just create a topic file, without an entry in the Table of Contents (TOC). Topics like these are used in electronic help formats for information that is only displayed when the user clicks on a link – for example popup topics and topics displayed in external windows.

Topics without TOC entries are also used for content that you want to insert in multiple locations in your project with Help+Manual's snippets 165 function.

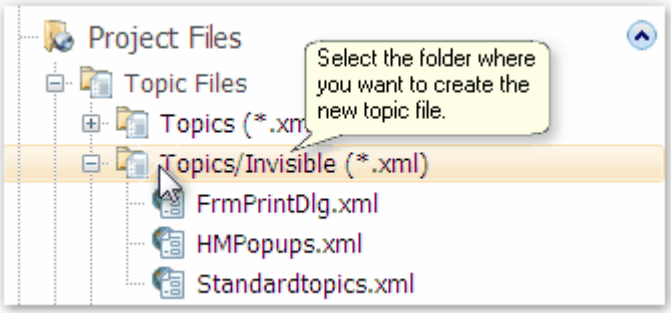
The instructions below explain how to create topics without TOC entries. See Creating new topics in the TOC 174 for instructions on creating topics with TOC entries.

Key Information
If you save in single-file compressed mode (*.hmxz*) all your topic files are stored inside your compressed project file and can only be viewed in the Project Explorer. The Basic version of Help+Manual can only save in compressed mode.

How to create topic files without TOC entries

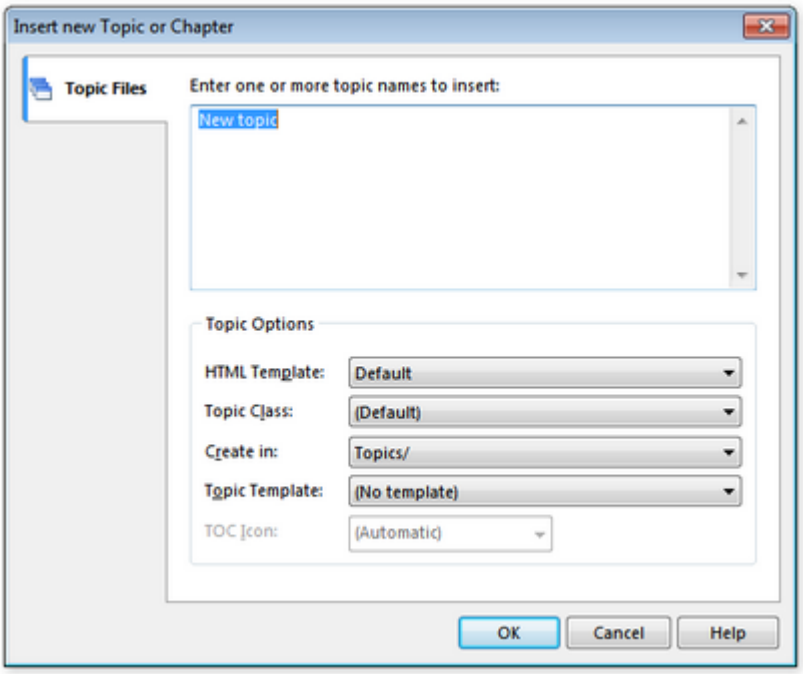
By default, topics with TOC entries are created in the Topics folder in the Topic Files section. It is advisable to create additional folders for topic files without TOC entries to keep them separate. Follow the instructions below to create folders for your topic files.

1. Select *Topic Files* in the *Project Files* section of the Project Explorer, then select the folder where you want to create your new topic file.



2. Select *Add File* > *Add New File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**
3. This displays the Insert New Topic 1298 dialog in file mode:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



4. You can create multiple topic files with this dialog. Type one or more names for the topic files you want to create, one name per line. See Insert New Topic 1298 for details on the options available here (template, class etc).
5. Click on OK to create the new topic file(s).

The file names and topic IDs for the new files will be generated automatically from the names you enter. Spaces in your names will be converted to underscore characters.

How to create new folders for topic files

All your topic files are stored in the Topic Files section of your project, including the topic files with TOC entries that you create in the TOC (which is really a list of links to the files). By default, files with TOC entries are stored in a folder called *Topics*. It is advisable to create additional folders for your files without TOC entries to keep them separate from the TOC topic files.

1. Select *Topic Files* in the *Project Files* section of the Project Explorer.
2. Select *Add File* > *Add New Folder* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**
3. Enter a name for the new folder and click on OK.

You can also access the *Add File/Folder* options by right-clicking in the Topic Files section.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using include options for topics without TOC entries

You can use conditional output include options for topic files in the same way that you can for TOC entries to include or exclude the topic files from your output when you publish. For more details on using include options see Conditions and Customized Output 969.

- Select the file you want to apply include options to in the Explorer and select *Change* > *Include in Builds* in **Project** > **Manage Topics,** then select the options you want to apply.
- Alternatively you can also right-click on the file to edit its include options.

Excluding the source files of snippets:

You should always exclude the source files for snippets 265 (both linked and pasted) from your output using include options. Since the snippets are just copied from the source files you don't want to include the source files themselves in your published output – if you did the user would be able to find them with search, which is not what you want.

How to add a TOC entry to a topic file

Sometimes you may decide that you would like to add a TOC entry to a topic file that does not yet have one. Or you want to add an additional TOC entry for a topic that already has one. You can do this with the TOC Link option in the New Topic dialog.

Method 1: Dragging topic files into the TOC

Dragging a topic file into the TOC from the Topic Files section will also create a new TOC entry for that topic file. It doesn't move anything. It just creates a new TOC entry. You can also do this with multiple files. Use *SHIFT+Click* and *CTRL+Click* to select multiple files, then drag them into the TOC.

Method 2: Creating a new TOC entry as a copy of an existing entry

You can also create a new TOC entry for a topic that already has a TOC entry by holding down the *SHIFT+CTRL* keys and dragging the original TOC entry with the mouse to the position where you want to insert the copy. Instead of moving the original entry this will then create a new TOC entry pointing to the same topic. This only works for topics that already have TOC entries, of course.

Method 3: Use the TOC Link tool

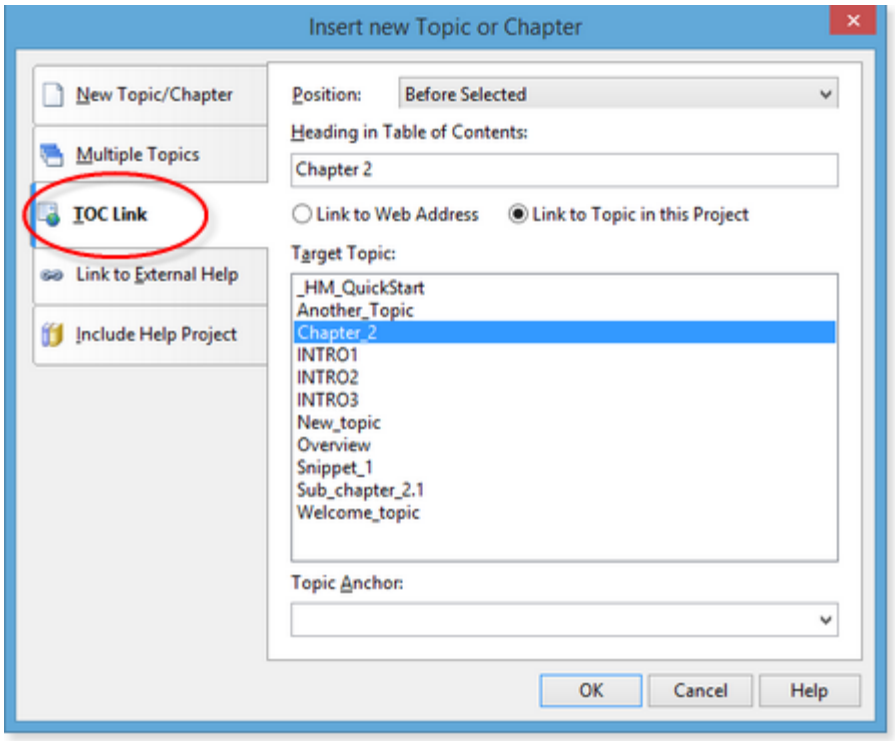
The TOC Link tool in the Insert New Topic dialog creates a new TOC entry for a topic file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that topics can have more than on entry in the TOC, because TOC entries are really just links pointing to topic files. They are not part of the topic.

Tip – locating the topic ID:
You can find the ID of any topic by selecting Topic Options to the left of the editor window and checking the Topic ID: field there.

1. Click in the TOC where you want to insert the new entry and select the *Add Topic* tool in **Project** > **Manage Topics**.
2. Select *TOC Link* on the left and click on *Link to Topic in this Project*.



3. Select the topic ID of the topic you want to link to in the Target Topic: list. You can optionally also select an anchor to scroll to in the Topic Anchor: field if the target topic contains anchors.
4. Click on OK to insert the link.

See Multiple TOC entries for one topic 371 for more details on this subject.

How to delete a TOC entry without deleting the topic file

You can delete a topic's TOC entry without deleting the topic file. This turns a TOC topic into a topic without a TOC entry.

1. Select the topic in the TOC (you can also use *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click* to select multiple topics).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Press DEL or right-click and select *Delete Topic*.
3. In the dialog displayed deselect the *Also delete referred topic files* option and click on *Delete Topics*.

Auto-generating topic files

If your programmer can generate a "map" file containing a list of the topic IDs and context numbers you can automatically generate any missing topics with the Context Tool in the **Project** tab. See Auto-generating topic files 911 for details.

See also:

Insert New Topic 1298 (Reference)
Creating popup topics 207
Organizing invisible topics 375
Using Context-Sensitive Help 892

5.4.4 Creating topics from other sources

In addition to creating new topics into which you enter new content you can also create TOC entries that display content from other sources when the user clicks on the TOC entry.

You can create TOC entries that link to web pages or to topics in other help files that are available when the user views the help.

You can also insert entire Help+Manual projects in your TOC. When you publish your project the external projects are merged with the main project.

Productivity Tip
You can also use Snippets 165 to insert topics and XML files from other sources into existing topics. Snippets can be inserted as editable copies or linked to the source files so that they update automatically when the sources are edited.

Linking a TOC entry to a topic in an external help file

This option does not create a topic file. Instead, it creates a TOC entry that links to a topic in an external HTML Help `.chm` file. This only works in HTML Help output! Such topics will be empty in other output formats and should be excluded from those formats with conditional output 982 options.

1. Select an *Add Topic* option to create a new topic.
2. In the Insert New Topic 1298 dialog select the *Jump to External Help* option.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Use the Browse button in the Help File: field to navigate to the Help+Manual project from which you are generating the help file you want to reference. This must be a **.hmxz** or **.hmxp** project file.
4. Then use the Browse button in the *Topic ID:* field to select the ID of the topic you want to link to.
5. Then click on OK to create the new topic.

Important notes:

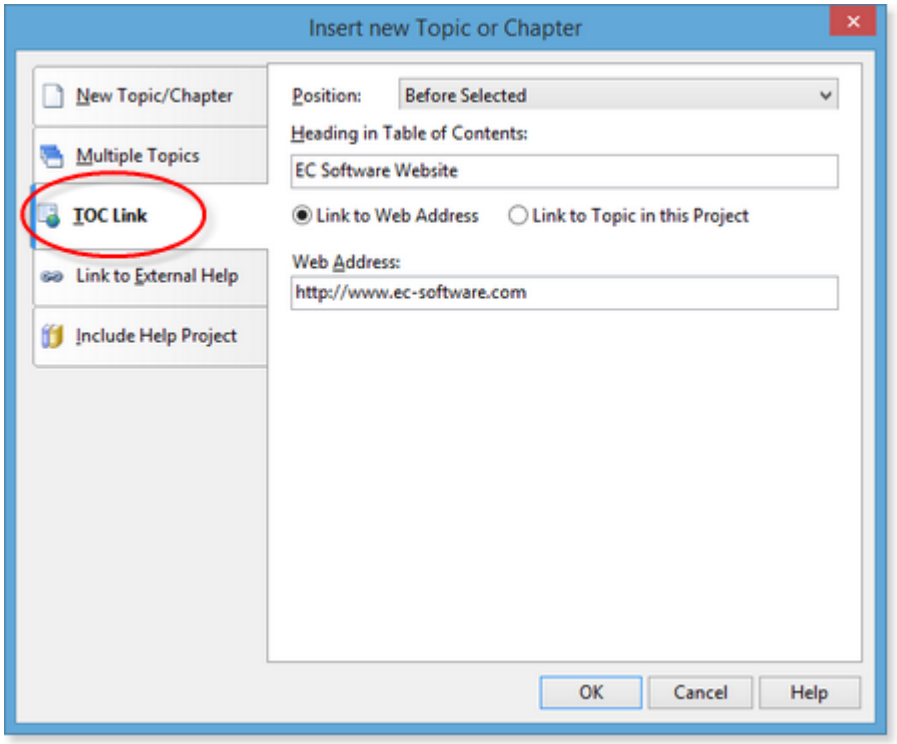
- The name of the Help+Manual project and the name of the referenced CHM help file must match exactly! Help+Manual can only reference the CHM on the basis of the name, so if the project and CHM file name do not match the CHM cannot be found.
- The CHM help file containing the topic you link to must be present in the same directory as the help file containing the link, otherwise the topic will not be displayed. You can only link between between two CHM files!

Linking a TOC entry to a web page

This method only works in HTML-based output formats. You cannot include web pages in your help in PDF files, for example.

1. Select an *Add Topic* option to create a new topic.
2. In the Insert New Topic 1298 dialog, select the *TOC Link* option, then select *Link to Web Address*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



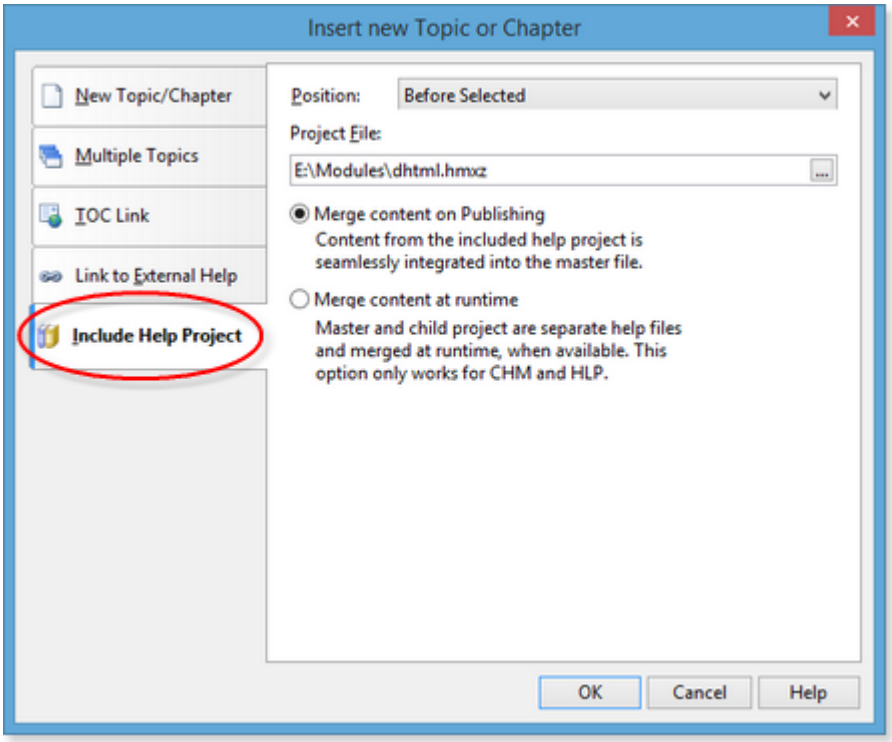
3. Enter the URL of the web page in the *Web Address:* field. You must enter a fully-qualified URL including the `http://` protocol identifier. For example, `http://www.ec.software.com/` will work but `www.helpandmanual.com` will not work.
4. Click on **OK** to create the new topic. The web page will only be displayed in your published output and only when you have an active connection to the Internet.

Inserting an entire Help+Manual project

In addition to topics you can also insert entire Help+Manual projects in the TOC, thus merging the two projects.

1. Select an *Add Topic* option to create a new topic.
2. Select *Include Help Project* in the Insert New Topic 1298 dialog and select the project you want to insert.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Merge content on publishing: If you select this mode the external project's contents will be displayed in the TOC of the current project and can be edited directly. Merged projects are still stored externally and their topics are identified by small green icon in the TOC.

Merge content at runtime: This is for HTML Help only and just inserts a placeholder in the TOC. The projects must be edited and published separately and are only merged when the user views them if the help files are all present in the same folder.

Publishing merged projects:

In most output formats the projects will be merged into one large help system when you publish your output. In HTML Help you can also create separate help files that are displayed in a single Table of Contents when the user opens the main help file. This makes it possible to create different versions of your help just by including or excluding help files in your distribution package.

See Working with Modular Help Systems 1088 for full details.

See also:

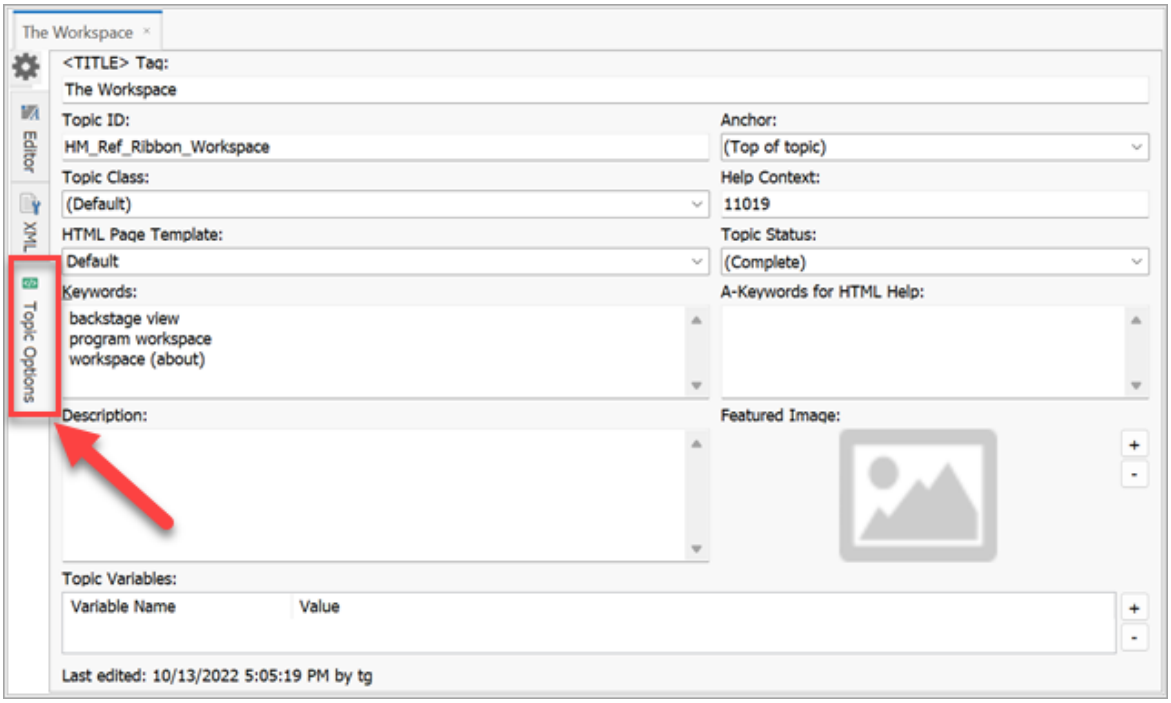
Working with Modular Help Systems 1088

5.4.5 Topic Options

The Topic Options tab is accessible on the left of the main editor window and contains a num-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ber of key settings for the topic currently displayed. It enables you to view and edit a number of settings that are assigned automatically when you create topics, and some additional optional settings.



<TITLE> tag: This is the text inserted in the <TITLE> tag in topic pages in HTML-based output. By default this is the text displayed as the table of contents entry displayed in the Project Explorer on the left. If you edit the TOC entry this text changes automatically, unless you edit this field in Topic Options manually.

If the topic header text in the box above the editor is different from the TOC entry, the TOC entry is shown here and not the topic header text. (Again, only if you didn't edit the title tag text manually.)

Topic ID: The address of the topic. This is used for referencing topics for links etc. and it is also used for generating the file names of HTML files generated for topics in HTML-based output formats.

You can change the topic ID by editing this entry. When you do this, all the references to the topic within your project are updated automatically.

External references to the topic from other projects and other web pages linking to your WebHelp cannot be updated from within

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual. They will become invalid if you change the topic ID and must then be updated.

Anchor: Target of the TOC entry for the topic. Normally this is the top of the topic, but if there are anchors defined in the topic you can select one here. Then the TOC entry will scroll down to the anchor when it is selected.

This option is normally only used for topics with multiple TOC entries 371. Then each entry can link to the appropriate part of the topic. Don't let this possibility tempt you to make excessively long topics – that is generally a bad idea. Normally, it is much better to have a separate document for each topic.

Topic class: There are two possible classes: *Default* and *Popup*. Most topics will be default topics. The popup class can only be selected for topics that don't have TOC entries, because popup topics are not allowed to have TOC entries. See Creating popup topics 207 for details.

Help context: Optional numeric context IDs for use in Microsoft HTML Help/CHM files. You only need these if your programmers are using context IDs for references from your application to the CHM help file. See the chapters on context sensitive help 892 and the Help Context Tool 1241 for more details.

HTML Page Template: This selects the HTML layout template to be used for this topic in HTML-based output formats. Normally this will be the standard *Default* template. You can only select additional templates here if you have defined them yourself 1036.

Topic Status: This just provides another way to select and set the status for the current topic 373 displayed in the table of contents in the Project Explorer on the left. This is design-time only – the status is not exported to your output.

Keywords: The index keywords associated with the topic. You can enter them directly here or centrally with the Index tool 568 (Professional and Floating license versions only).

A-Keywords: These are special "associative" keywords that are only supported in the Microsoft HTML Help/CHM help format. See this topic 579 for more details on this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Description: An optional description of the topic. This has two uses:

1. Source for the description meta tag 1573 for search engine optimization in WebHelp.
2. Future use for alternative table of contents layouts with descriptions and images as well as titles.

Featured image: This allows you to associate an image with the topic that can then be used in topic templates and PDF title pages for chapters.

In HTML templates you can use the TOPIC_PICTURE 1573 variable to insert the images in your templates.

See the help of the Print Manual Designer program for details on how to use the featured images to create title pages for chapters in PDF output.

Topic variables: This table can be used to change the definition of user-defined or global variables for the current topic only. See this topic for details 963.

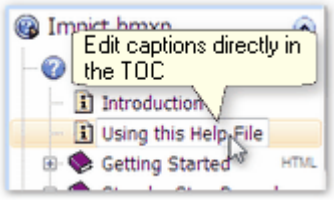
5.4.6 Editing the topic caption and header

The *topic caption* is the title of the topic displayed in the TOC, both in Help+Manual and in your output. For example, captions are displayed as the TOC titles in the Contents pane of the HTML Help viewer and the Contents page of a PDF file.

When you create a new topic the caption text is duplicated in the topic header, which is the title displayed in the editing box above the topic itself. The header is also displayed in your output, for example above the topics in the HTML Help viewer.

How to edit the caption (title) of a topic in the TOC

1. Click on the topic in the TOC.
2. Press **F2** ***or*** click on the **`Edit Caption`** button in **Project** > **Manage Topics**.



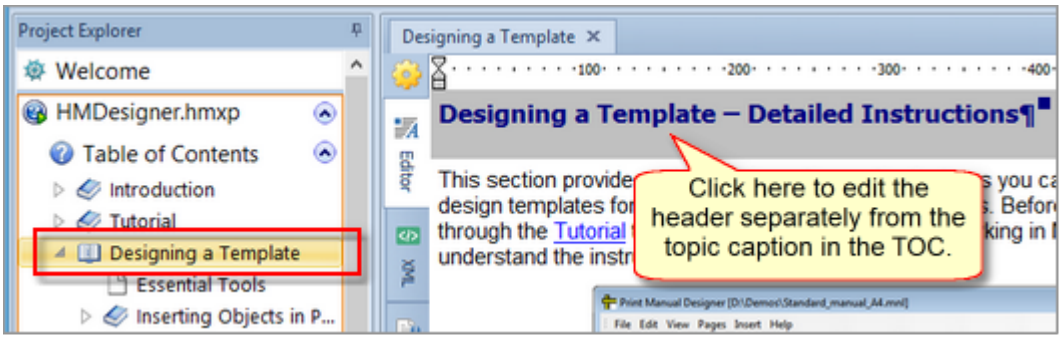
3. Edit the caption and then press **`Enter`** to finish

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Editing the topic header separately

When you create a new topic its caption is automatically duplicated in the topic header. If you only edit the caption the header is also updated automatically so that the caption and the header remain identical. However, if you want you can also make the topic header different – for example so that you have a short caption for the TOC and a longer, more descriptive header.

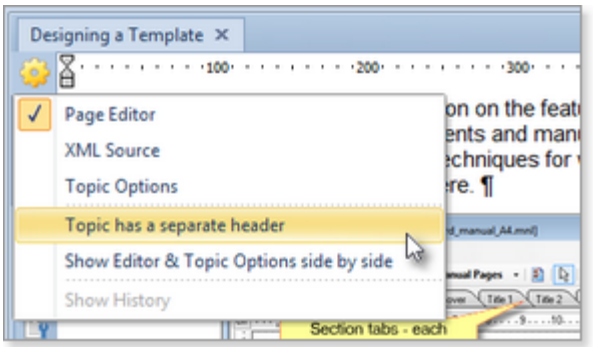
- Click in the header box above the Page Editor end edit the header text. When you do this the header and the caption are no longer linked and can then both be edited separately.



- To "re-link" the caption and the header again just make the text in both identical again. Then the header will automatically be updated when you edit the caption in the TOC.

How to turn off the header

To turn off the header for a topic click open the options menu with the button in the top left corner of the editor and disable the *Topic has a separate header* item in the menu.



This turns off the header in the editor for that topic and will create a topic without a header in your published output.

Warning: Turning off the header deletes any additional content you have added to the header box. If you turn the header on again the box will only contain the standard topic

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

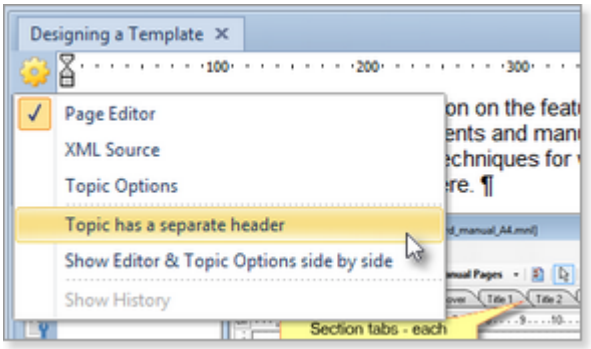
title, taken from the topic's TOC entry. The content will not be lost while you are still editing the current topic (you can restore it by reactivating the checkbox) but once you leave the current topic it will be deleted permanently.

See also:

Topic headers 191

5.4.7 Topic headers

By default, new topics always have a "header", displayed in a separate editing box above the main topic editor. You can turn the header off with the options menu in the top left corner of the editor window if you want. This turns off the header for the current topic.



Initially, this header contains the title of the topic, formatted with the standard *Heading1* style and with the background color set in the HTML topic page template. You can also add other content, including graphics, hyperlinks etc.

Header formatting, background colors and additional content are only supported in electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, eBooks and Visual Studio Help). ePUB eBooks have limited or no support for additional content. In print-style formats (PDF, DOCX, printed manuals) only the plain text from the header is exported when you publish and the formatting is defined separately

How to format the header text and background

Formatting the header text:

By default the header text has the standard *Heading1* style. The easiest way to format your header text is to edit this style in **Write** > **Styles** > **Edit Styles.** Then all new headers will automatically have the selected formatting. You can format headers manually by selecting the text and using the formatting tools in the **Write** tab if you want, but then you must do this separately for every single topic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Setting the header background color:

In most electronic output formats the header background color is defined by the HTML topic page template.

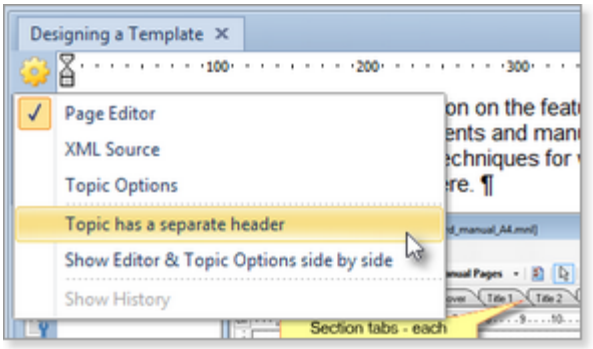
Important: Edit in the skin file if you are using a skin!
If you are using a skin to publish this is defined in the topic page template in the skin file, not the template in your project. Make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder to edit it. Then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to edit in the Open dialog. The template is in the same location as in a normal project file.

In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** and select the *Default* template. Then you can set the background colors for the header and the topic body. The background colors you set in the template are automatically displayed in the editor.

See Background colors and help viewers 142 for more details on this.

How to turn off the header

To turn off the header for a topic deactivate the *Topic has a separate header* option in the options menu at the top left corner of the editor window. This will create a topic without a header in your published output.



Warning: Turning off the header deletes any additional content you have added to the header box. If you turn the header on again the box will only contain the standard topic title, taken from the topic's TOC entry. The content will not be lost while you are still editing the current topic (you can restore it by reactivating the option) but once you leave the current topic it will be deleted permanently.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Additional content in the header

You can insert any content in the topic header box that you would normally insert in the main body of the topic, including graphics, hyperlinks and so on. This content will be published with the header in electronic formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, eBooks and Visual Studio Help) but not in print-style formats (PDF, DOCX, printed manuals).

Note that content added to the header will only be displayed in the current topic. If you want to include the same content in every topic (for example a logo) you need to edit the HTML topic page template and add the content to the header section of the template. See Using HTML Templates 1026 for more details.

If you want to include additional with your headers in PDF and printed manuals you need to add it to the header definitions in the print manual template – see PDF & Printed Manuals 785 for details.

Topic headers in PDF, DOCX and printed manuals

The topic header and its formatting and background color are not exported or used in PDF and printed manuals. In these formats, only the plain text topic title is exported, the formatting is applied with the print manual template for PDF and printed manuals (which use the same PDF templates).

In PDF you can use either the TOC topic title or the text from the topic header (if it is different). This is done by selecting either the <%HEADINGx%> variables in the template for the TOC topic title or the <%HEADINGLONGx%> variables for the text from the header box in your template in Manual Designer.

See PDF & Printed Manuals 785 for details on accessing and editing print manual templates for PDF.

In Word DOCX the heading style from the header are used in the body text of the DOCX document, but the styles of the entries in the TOC at the beginning of the document use the Heading 1 ... Heading 9 styles defined in your DOCX template.

See MS Word DOCX 682 for details on configuring your DOCX output for publishing.

See also:

Background colors and help viewers 142
Using HTML Templates 1026
PDF & Printed Manuals 785

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.4.8 Using help windows for CHM files

The Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) format uses sets of definitions called "help windows" to configure the appearance, size and behavior of the Windows viewer used to display CHM help files. Help window definitions can also be used to display individual topics in external windows.

Changing the definition of the default help window, which is called *Main,* adjusts the help viewer features. You can also define additional "secondary" help window types, which can have different features. These help windows are used for opening specific topics in external windows when you link to them. You do this by specifying a different help window type when you define the hyperlink.

Key Information
Help window settings are only relevant for HTML Help output, where they control the appearance and behavior of the Microsoft CHM viewer.

How to change the features of the help viewers

The definition of the default *Main* help window type controls the size, appearance and controls of the help viewers for HTML Help.

You can change these settings with the *Main* help window definition in **Configuration** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows.** The common settings define the position and size of the help viewer, the *HTML Help Options* tab defines the features and behavior of the help viewer.

See Background colors and help viewers 142 for more details and Help Windows Settings 1452 in the Reference section for information on the individual settings. .

How to create, delete and edit help window types

1. Select **Configuration** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows** > **{WindowName}**
2. *Add* creates a new secondary help window type, *Remove* deletes the current window type (you cannot delete *Main*). For more information see Help Windows 1609 and Help Windows Settings 1452 in the Reference section.
3. Edit the attributes to change the properties.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to display topics in external windows in HTML Help

In HTML Help you can use additional help window definitions to display topics in external windows when they are opened with hyperlinks. Topics can only be displayed in external windows in HTML Help CHM files and the help window settings have no effect in other help formats.

Important Restrictions

Important: Help window types can only be used in hyperlinks.
You cannot directly associate a help window type with an individual topic and you cannot set a topic in the TOC to open in an external window when you click on its TOC entry.

You cannot link open topics from other CHM files in external windows.
Due to restrictions in the Microsoft HTML Help CHM viewer, you can only display topics from the current CHM file in an external window. It does not work when linking to topics in another CHM file.

Procedure:

1. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows** and create at least one secondary help window type definition with *Add*.

   Adjust the settings of the window definition as you want the external window to appear – in addition to the size and position you may want to switch off navigation controls etc. in the help window definition's *HTML Help Options* tab.

2. In the *HTML Help Options* tab activate the option *Links to secondary help windows open a new help window*.
3. When you create a hyperlink to a topic specify the secondary help window type with the *Window:* setting in the link definition.

When the user clicks on the hyperlink the target topic it will now be displayed in an external window in HTML Help, with all the settings defined for the window type in step 1.

Topic and header background colors

The help window definition no longer sets background colors (it only did this in the now obsolete WinHelp format). In current electronic output formats the background colors are controlled by the HTML page template 203 (you cannot set page and header background colors for PDF, DOCX or printed manuals).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See Background colors and help viewers 142 for more information on how to set background colors.

See also:

Help Windows 1609
Help Windows Settings 1452
Using secondary windows 1025
HTML templates 1021

5.4.9 Reusing content with snippets

The **Snippet** tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** enables you to insert the contents of another topic, a Help+Manual XML file or PDF pages 272 at the cursor position.

You can insert topics and files from the current project, from other Help+Manual projects (there are some restrictions in the Basic version of H+M) and directly from Help+Manual XML files. This means that you can build up a library of reusable content that you can access very easily.

You can insert topic and XML snippets in two different modes: Copy and Link. Copy mode is like normal Copy & Paste. It pastes the contents of the topic or file at the cursor position and you can then edit it. Link mode creates a live link to the snippet file. To edit the snippet you must then edit the original topic or file, but then it updates automatically in all the places where you have inserted it, even if you are using it in multiple projects.

Productivity Tip
If you send your project for translation remember to include any linked external snippet files you have referenced, otherwise the translator won't see them!

Snippet storage locations

Rather than using snippets from many locations it is better to store all your snippet files in a common location, for example in a folder inside your project folder. Then add this folder to your project search path. This will make them easier to manage, particularly if you ever need to move your project or have it translated. Alternatively, you can also store them in a Style Repository or their own project. See further below for details on this.

Inserting topics and XML files as snippets

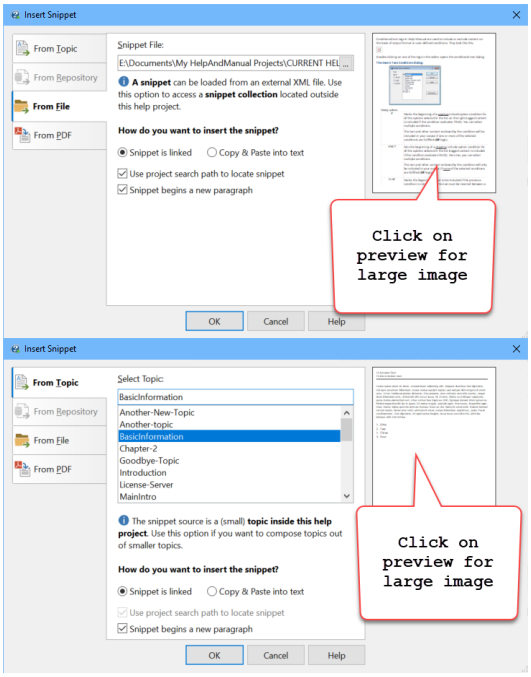
You can insert topics and XML files into your current topic at the cursor position. These topics can be inserted in Copy mode or Link mode. In Link mode the snippet content updates automatically when the source topic or XML file is edited.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The topics can be in your current project, another Help+Manual project or a directory of H+M XML files.

Procedure

1. Click in your topic where you want to insert the snippet.
2. Select the Insert Snippet tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**.
3. Choose *From Topic* to insert a topic from the current project or *From File* to insert an external H+M XML file or a topic from another project.
4. Select the topic or file you want to insert and click on **OK** to insert it.



Options:

- *Copy & Paste* inserts a copy of the file contents that you can then edit.
- *Linked* creates a live link to the file – changes in the source file or topic are updated automatically.
- *Snippet begins a new paragraph* inserts the snippet as a new paragraph. Turn this off to insert the snippet text inline inside an existing paragraph. If the snippet contains paragraphs they will also be inserted, of course!
- *Use project search path to locate snippet* adds the location of the snippet file to the project search path 1405. If you deselect it the absolute path to the snippet is stored with the snippet.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Inserting snippets from a style repository

A style repository is a special kind of Help+Manual project that is used to share styles and snippets between multiple projects. Before using a style repository you need to create it from a Help+Manual project and link it to your current project. See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for instructions.

To insert snippets from a style repository just select the *From Repository* option in the Insert Snippet dialog and then select the topic ID of the snippet you want to insert. All the other options are the same as inserting snippets from topic files in the current project.

The advantage of a style repository is that its styles are also merged with those of your project, so that the styles used for the snippets in the style repository project are also available for use in the project where you are inserting the snippet.

Exporting selected text and topics as snippet files

You can export selected text or the current topic to an external XML file, for example for use as a snippet in a snippet directory.

Export the entire topic:

1. Select the topic you want to export in the Project Explorer (TOC or Topic Files).
2. Select *File* > *Save Topic to File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and choose the save location.

Export selected text:

1. Select text in the editor – the text can include anything that a topic can contain, i.e. also images, tables, etc.
2. Select *File* > *Save Snippet* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and choose a save location and a filename.

If you save in the uncompressed XML format you can also copy the XML files directly from your project directory to other locations in Windows Explorer (Professional and Floating license versions only).

Managing and organizing snippets

You can insert snippets from any location. However, if you use snippets from many locations your linked snippets will not be displayed if you move your project or send it to

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

someone by email. You can solve this problem by storing your snippet files together with your project in a special directory.

1. Create a folder for your snippets in a location where you can easily transport it together with your project folder.
2. Add the path to the snippets folder to your Project Search Path in your project's *Configuration* > *Common* Properties settings.
3. When you insert a snippet select the *Use project search path to locate snippet* option to tell Help+Manual to look for the snippet files in the folders listed in the Project Search Path.

When you do this you can always move your snippets folders to any location you like. To get Help+Manual to find the snippets you just need to add the new location to your project search path 1405.

Managing snippets in a 'snippet project'

By far the easiest way to manage snippets is in a 'snippet project', which is just a normal Help+Manual project saved in uncompressed XML 126 (.hmxp) mode. You then insert your snippets by selecting the XML topic files from the `/Topics` sub-folder of this snippet project. Help+Manual topic files can be used as snippets without restrictions.

Add your styles to the snippet project!

After creating your snippet project it's a good idea to add the paragraph and text styles used in your snippets to the snippet project. You should do this before adding any snippets to the snippet project – if you add them later the styles may not be used properly.

1. Select **Styles** > **Edit Styles** in the **Write** tab.
2. Select *Copy Styles From...* and then select your main Help+Manual project (i.e. the project in which you are going to use the snippets). This will replace all the styles in the snippet project with those from your main project.

Adding new snippets to a snippet project

- Just create a new topic or topic file in the snippet project, just as you would in any other Help+Manual project.

Adding existing snippets to a snippet project

- Move the XML snippet files to the `/Topics` folder of your snippets project in Windows Explorer.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Saving snippets to a snippet project from another project

- Create the snippet as you would normally and save it in the `/Topics` folder of your snippets project.

When you do this you can always move your snippets folders to any location you like. To get Help+Manual to find the snippets you just need to add the new location to your project search path 1405.

Managing snippets in a style repository

You can also manage snippets in special Help+Manual projects called "style repositories". When a style repository is linked to your project all the snippets it contains are automatically displayed for selection in the Insert Snippet dialog.

- In addition to direct access to the snippets, the advantage of a style repository over a normal snippet project is that its styles are merged into the styles of your current project. The snippets using the styles defined in the repository are thus automatically formatted correctly because their styles are directly available.
- The disadvantage of a style repository is that you can only link one repository with any project. However, you can also use both a linked style repository and additional manually-created snippet projects (see above).

See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for full details on how to create style repositories and register and link them to your projects.

Excluding the snippets source files from your published output

When you use topic files from your current project as snippets you will generally want to exclude the source files from your published output. If you don't do this these files will be published and the user will able to find them with Search in formats like HTML Help and WebHelp.

1. Select the entry of the topic file in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer.
2. In **Project** > **Manage Topics** select *Change* > *Include in Builds* and deselect all build options. This will ensure that these topics will never be included when you publish your project.

This is not necessary for snippets inserted from other projects or external XML files, of course!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Editing the contents of snippet files

There are three ways to edit the content of external snippet files in Help+Manual. Which you use depends on whether the snippet contains a small or large amount of text. However, by far the easiest way to manage and edit snippets is to organize them in a 'snippet project' of their own, for which Help+Manual Professional is required (see further above on this page for more details). In addition to this, you can also manage snippets in a style repository project 1076.

Create a snippet project (Professional and Floating license versions only):

See the instructions further above on this page for more details on this.

- Create a new Help+Manual project and save it in an empty folder in uncompressed XML 126 (HMXP) mode. Note that this save option is only available in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual.
- Create new snippet files by creating new topics in the snippet project, or create the snippets in another project and save them to the /Topics folder of the snippets project.
- Add existing snippet files to the 'snippet project' by moving their XML files to the `/Topics` sub-folder in the snippet project folder. The topics will then appear in the Topic Files section of the snippet project. You can create TOC entries for them for easier organization by dragging the topic files into the snippet project TOC from the Topic Files section.

Create a style repository project (Professional and Floating license versions only):

In addition to "normal" snippet projects you can also manage snippets in a "style repository", which is a special kind of Help+Manual project for managing reusable topics and styles. See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for full details on this.

Editing small snippets stored as individual files:

1. Press ENTER a couple of times to create some space in the current topic.
2. Insert the snippet file you want to edit in Copy & Paste mode (see above) and make the necessary changes.
3. Select the edited text and export it as a snippet, overwriting the original snippet file (see above).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Editing larger snippets stored as individual files:

1. Create an empty dummy topic in the TOC.
2. Select *File* > *Load Topic from File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and load the snippet file.
3. Edit the content and then select *File* > *Save Topic to File* and overwrite the original snippet file.

Hyperlinks to anchors in linked snippets

If a linked snippet contains an anchor (jump target) you can link to it from other topics. However, since the snippet file is not really inserted in the current topic you cannot select the anchor from the drop-down list next to the *Target:* field in the Insert Hyperlink 1352 dialog. You need to enter the anchor name manually.

1. Make a note of the name of the anchor you want to link to.
2. Create a normal hyperlink to the topic containing the linked snippet.
3. Double-click on the hyperlink to edit it and type in the name of the anchor in the drop-down list box next to the *Target:* field.
4. Publish your project and test the link to make sure that it works.

You won't have this problem with snippets inserted in Copy mode because the text containing the anchor is inserted in the topic directly.

Checking where a snippet topic is used

You can use the Find Referrers function to check where a topic file is being used as a linked snippet. You can also use the same function to find the location of the linked snippet topic files inserted in the current topic.

This only works for topic files used as snippets in the current project. It won't work across multiple projects or for XML files that are not part of projects.

1. In the Project Explorer select the topic file – either a file containing a linked snippet or a file that you think is being used as a linked snippet.
2. Select *Find* > *Find Referrers* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** (or just right-click and select *Find Referrers*).
3. The sources of linked snippets in the topic are shown as incoming links. Topics in which the topic is used as a linked snippet are shown as outgoing links.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Keywords in snippets

If snippet files are H+M topic files containing index keywords the keywords are imported when you use Link mode. A-keywords are not supported in snippets, however.

Keywords are not imported with snippets in Copy & Paste mode. Small snippets saved from selected text do not include keywords – that is only possible when you save an entire topic as a snippet.

See also:

Multiple TOC entries for one topic 371
Snippets and multiple TOC references 1527
Topic include options 989
Anchors - jump targets 415

5.4.10 Using HTML page templates

In HTML-based output formats the layout of topic pages in your output is defined in an HTML file called an HTML page template.

This template exists in your project but the project version is normally not used because you will almost always publish to these formats using a skin. Then the template used in the skin is used, and this will have been configured appropriately by the skin designer.

If you are designing a skin yourself you can find the template in the same location as described below, but in the **.hmskin** skin file instead of in your project. If you are editing one of the standard skins included with Help+Manual you always need to make a copy of it in your project folder to be able to edit it. You can then open it in Help+Manual by selecting .hmskin as the file type to open in the Open dialog. All the components in skins are in the same locations as in normal Help+Manual projects.

Kindle and ePUB use a special template generated by Help+Manual that is only stored in the project. It is available in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eBooks** > **ePUB + Kindle: Page Template**.

Topic and header background colors

In all HTML-based output formats except ePUB and Kindle eBooks the background colors of the topic and topic header are defined in the HTML page template if you are not using a skin to publish your output.

If you are publishing with a skin, the templates in the skin are used and the templates in the project are ignored.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you are publishing with a skin:

If you are publishing your project with a skin you do not normally need to edit anything. The topic header and body background colors will have been set appropriately by the skin designer. If you design your skin yourself you can edit the background colors in the HTML Page Template in the **.hmskin** skin file the same place as in a project (see below).

If you are not using a skin:

If you are using the templates stored in your project the topic and header background colors are defined in your page template and are also automatically displayed in the Help+Manual editor.

- In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** > **Default** and set the background colors for the topic and topic header.
- If you edit the HTML code of the template manually you can also set the header and background colors manually. The topic background color is set in the <body> tag, the header background color is the background of the main table in the section defined by the <IF_TOPIC_HEADER> condition.

Navigation link texts or buttons

By default every topic in HTML-based output formats has Top, Previous and Next navigation links. These links can be deactivated and edited in the HTML page template and replaced with icons.

If you are publishing with a skin:

If you are publishing your project with a skin you do not normally need to edit anything. The navigation links will have been set appropriately by the skin designer. If you design your skin yourself you can edit the navigation links in the HTML Page Template in the **.hmskin** skin file the same place as in a project (see below).

If you are not using a skin:

If you are using the templates stored in your project the navigation links are defined in your page template.

- In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** > **Default** and edit the settings for the Top, Previous and Next Links in the Simple Template Layout tab.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- If you edit the HTML code of the template directly you are completely free to make any additions you like. For example you could create icon buttons with mouseover effects and so on.

If you use icons for your navigation links it is a good idea to add the icon files to your Baggage Files in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer. This will ensure that the icons are exported correctly when you publish your output.

Disabled Simple Template Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template.

Adding headers and footers to your pages

If you are publishing with a skin:

If you are publishing your project with a skin you do not normally need to edit anything. Any headers and footers will have been set appropriately by the skin designer. If you design your skin yourself you can edit the navigation links in the HTML Page Template in the **`.hmskin`** skin file the same place as in a project (see below).

If you are not using a skin:

You can also add "headers" and "footers" to your HTML page templates to display standard text, icons, logos or links above or below the main body of your text on every topic page.

Simple template layout tab:

1. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** > **Default** and select the Simple Template Layout tab.
2. Insert text for your header or footer in the Text Above Topic or Text Below Topic boxes. You can also use HTML code, CSS formatting and JavaScript.

HTML source code tab:

If you have experience with editing HTML you can also edit the HTML code directly.

1. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** > **Default** and select the HTML Source Code tab.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. The topic content from your project is inserted in the template with the <% TOPIC_TEXT%> variable. Everything directly above this variable is a "header", everything below it is a "footer".

See Using HTML Templates 1026 for more details.

Defining and using different HTML templates for individual topics

By default every topic you create is associated with the *Default* template. You can also create additional HTML page templates with different settings and apply them to individual topics – for example to use different topic and header background colors or different navigation buttons etc. in some topics.

If you are using a skin:

If you are using a skin you must define additional HTML page templates twice: Once in your project and once in the **.hmskin** skin file. The contents of the copy in your project are irrelevant – it only needs to have the correct name, so that you can select it. The second copy in the skin file has the actual content that is used, and it must have exactly the same name as the additional template in your project.

Creating new HTML templates:

1. Open the project (if you are not using a skin) or the **.hmskin** skin file (if you are using a skin) in Help+Manual. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** > **Default** and click on the *Add* button.
2. Enter a name for the template and click OK.
3. Edit the code of the template as you wish.

Applying HTML templates to individual topics:

1. In the Project Explorer select the topic you want to change.
2. Select the Topic Options tab to the left of the main editor window, then select the template in the *HTML Page Template:* field.

See also:

Help window settings 194
Using HTML templates 1026

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.4.11 Creating popup topics

Popups are mini topics used to display a small amount of information in a small "popup" window, which is normally displayed when the user clicks on a link. Popups are used both in the help text itself and in applications, where they are referred to as "field-level popups".

Natively, field-level popups are a special Microsoft technology that is only supported in HTML Help CHM files. However, the responsive skins in the Premium Pack 3 add-on for Help+Manual also add field-level popups for WebHelp.

Topics used as popups should be created in the Project Files section so that they do not have TOC entries. For more details on field-level popups see Using Context-Sensitive Help 892 and Context-Sensitive Help and Popups 1586.

Key Information
You must create popup topics in the Topic Files section, not in the TOC section! You cannot assign the Popup topic class in the TOC.

How to create a popup topic

1. Open the Project Files section In the Project Explorer and click on *Topic Files,* or a subfolder if you have created one and want to use it (see Creating new topics in Topic Files 179 for more details).
2. Click on *Add File* in the **Project** tab to create a new topic.
3. Select *Popup* In the *Topic Class:* field. Note that you cannot select this class when creating topics in the TOC. You can only do this for topics accessed from within the Topic Files section!
4. You must enter a context number if you want to use your popup topics as field-level popups 896 displayed in your application in CHM files without the main help. This is required by the Microsoft HTML Help API for field-level popups and if your popup topics do not have help context numbers they will not be exported to the internal popup text file in the CHM it.

(See the Premium Pack help chapter for details on using field-level popups in WebHelp with Premium Pack 3 skins.)

The *HTML Template* and topic header settings are irrelevant for these topics because popups do not use HTML templates or headers. When you create hyperlinks to popup topics 410 in your help they will automatically be displayed as popups.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See Using Context-Sensitive Help 892 for information on calling popups directly from your application. See this topic 896 for instructions on creating field-level CHM popups displayed in your application.

Configuring your output formats to use popups

How popup topics are handled depends on your output formats. If you want popups in HTML Help CHM files and WebHelp you must activate JavaScript popups, otherwise links to popup topics will be displayed as normal topics.

HTML Help's native plain-text popups are very limited and they are not supported within the main help. You can only use them in field-level popups 896 that are displayed in your application without the main help file. Normal JavaScript popups can be used as field-level popups in WebHelp if you are using the Premium Pack 3 responsive skins.

HTML Help and WebHelp:

In the Project Explorer select **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help/WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**. The settings are at the bottom of the page. The settings are shared for both formats

- **Export popup topics as JavaScript popups**
  This enables JavaScript popups 212 for both HTML Help CHM files and WebHelp. If you want to use popups within your help in these formats you must enable this option. Popup links in the project's topic files will be displayed as JavaScript popups in both formats when this option is activated. If it is turned off, popup links will display the target topics as normal topics. You can still use plain-text field-level popups 896 in your application in HTML Help CHM files because the plain-text popup file is always included in the CHM, even when JavaScript popups are activated.
- **Customize popup appearance**
  Select this to configure the formatting, colors and behavior of your JavaScript popup topics.

JavaScript popups are generated by Help+Manual. They support formatting, links and graphics but they cannot be used as field-level popups. They can only be displayed within your help file by other links in your help file.

Native CHM plain text popups are only available in HTML Help CHM files and can only be used as field-level popups 896 that are displayed directly in your application without the main help. They only support plain text without any formatting, graphics or links. They cannot be

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Popups in eBooks:

Windows eWriter Help files have exactly the same popup support as WebHelp. Popups are not supported in ePUB or Kindle Mobi eBooks.

Controlling the width of popup topics

Controlling popup width in HTML Help field-level popups:

- In HTML Help's plain text popup topics the only way you can control popup width is by entering a hard line break (ENTER) at the end of each line. This popup format is only used in field-level popups 215.

Controlling popup width JavaScript popups:

- In JavaScript popups 212 you can control popup width precisely by entering the entire text of the popup in a single-cell table with a fixed width.
- You must set the width of the single-cell table you use for this to an absolute value in pixels. Select *Size Table Manually* and enter the value in pixels. Don't use percentage values for this!

You can speed up the process by defining a topic content template for your popup topics or using snippets. See Content templates for topics 1016 and Re-using content with snippets 265 for details.

Linking to popup topics to display them

Any link within a project to a topic defined with the *Popup* class will automatically be displayed as a popup in any of the output formats where popups are supported (HTML Help, Windows eWriter Help and WebHelp with JavaScript popups activated). Just create a normal link 410 to the topic. Popups are not supported in ePUB or Kindle eBooks.

Popups in secondary TOCs

When you use popup topics in secondary TOCs the popup topic files your links refer to will not be included automatically as they are when you use the primary TOC. The *All Builds* include option assigned to all topics by default only works automatically in the primary TOC.

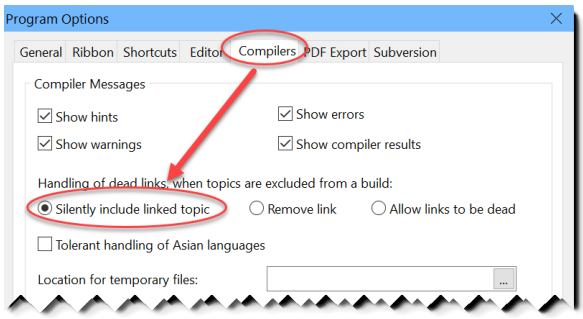
When you are using multiple TOCs in your project and publishing a secondary TOC, any

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

popup topics you link to must be included explicitly. You can do this in two different ways:

Option 1: Dead links handling options

Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and set the dead links handling option to *Silently include linked topic*. This is the simplest solution but it will also automatically include any excluded topic files that you may have referenced with regular topic links. So you should always check your compiler report for topics like these that you may have not wanted to include. You can then handle the links with conditional text 984 to exclude them automatically.

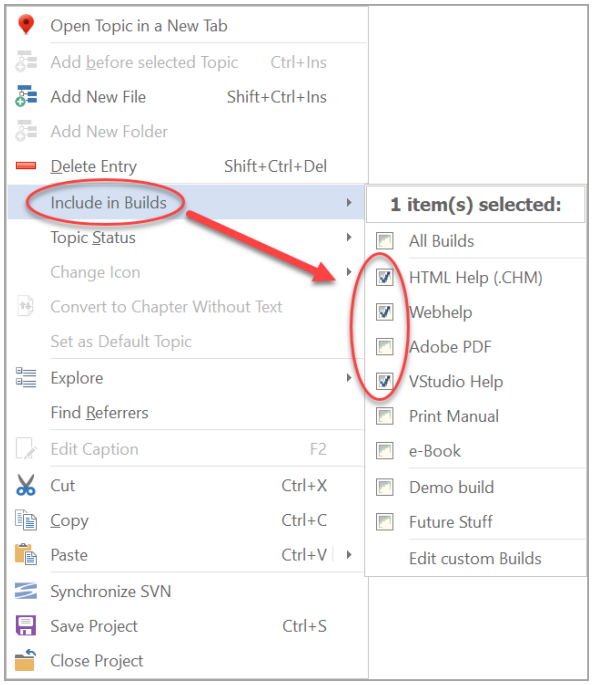


Option 2: Set the build options of your popup topic files

Alternatively you can set the build options of your popup topic files to the output formats that support popups, which are WebHelp, CHM, eWriter, and Visual Studio Help (if you are using that). The eWriter format will be included automatically if you set WebHelp, so generally you will only need to set CHM and WebHelp.

1. Right-click on the popup topic file in Project Files > Topic Files and select Include in Builds in the context menu.
2. Set the include options to WebHelp, CHM and (if necessary) also VSHelp.
3. Repeat for all your poup topic files.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Where popups are supported

Output Format	Supported Popup Types	Where Supported
HTML Help (.CHM):	Plain-text popups integrated in the main help file. Context numbers are required for these popup topics! Formatted JavaScript popups 212 stored in the main help file.	Plain-text popups are only supported as field-level popups in applications. If you want popups in the help text you must activate JavaScript popups. Formatted JavaScript popups can only be used in the help text. They are not supported for context-sensitive help.
Browser-based HTML (.HTM):	Fully-formatted JavaScript popups 212 integrated in the individual HTML files.	JavaScript popups can only be used in help topics. You cannot link to them from your application.
eWriter Help:	Same popup options as WebHelp	Same as WebHelp
ePUB and Kindle Mobi eBooks:	Popups are not supported. Popup links are automatically converted to plain text.	N/A
Adobe PDF and printed user manuals:	Popups are not supported. Popup links are automatically converted to plain text.	N/A
Word DOCX:	Popups are not supported. Popup links are automatically converted to plain text.	N/A

See also:

Using JavaScript popups 212
Using Context-Sensitive Help 892
Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586 (Reference)

5.4.12 Using JavaScript popups

Productivity Tip
You can get more powerful JavaScript popups with the Help+Manual Premium Pack, which also supports field-level popups for WebHelp. See here for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

JavaScript popups are used to display topics as popups in WebHelp and in HTML Help CHM files. They are the only way to display popups in the help in these two formats. If you don't activate JavaScript popups links to popup topics will display as normal topics in both these formats. HTML Help has native plain-text popups, but they are only used for field-level popups 1592 displayed as context help within applications.

If you are using the V3 Responsive skins in the Premium Pack 3 add-on, you can also use JavaScript popups as field-level popups in WebHelp.

Advantages:	JavaScript popups create fully-formatted popups that can contain formatted text (bold, italic, different fonts etc.) and graphics. In HTML Help JavaScript popups are stored inside the main CHM help file so that you only need to distribute one file.
Limitations:	JavaScript popups cannot be used for field-level popups 1592 called from and displayed in applications. They can only be displayed within the help file.

Note that activating JavaScript popups is a global setting for all the popup topics defined in your project.

Using JavaScript popups in HTML Help, WebHelp and eWriter Help

Popups displayed in the help itself in HTML Help CHM files and WebHelp are only possible with JavaScript popups. These popups can also be used in eWriter Help, which can be used as an alternative to CHM files for application help, and for help on Apple MacOS.

This popup technology will work both in the CHM viewer and in all current browsers and should not cause problems with popup blockers. In addition to being blocker-transparent the popups are also activated by the user, which is explicitly permitted by most blockers.

1. In the Project Explorer select **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help/WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options.** WebHelp and HTML Help have separate settings. The JS popup options for WebHelp are also used by eWriter Help.
2. Activate JavaScript popups at the bottom of the page, then click on *Customize JavaScript Popups* to configure your popups. See below for details.
3. Create your popup topic files 207 in the Topic Files section, selecting *Popup* as the Topic Class. You can use all Help+Manual's formatting options, including tables, hyperlinks, formatted text, fonts, graphics, videos and animations. Just don't go overboard – if your popups are too large and contain too many features they will not be very useful!
4. Create normal topic links to your popup topics in your topics. The target topics will automatically be displayed as JavaScript popups when the user clicks on the links in the published help files.

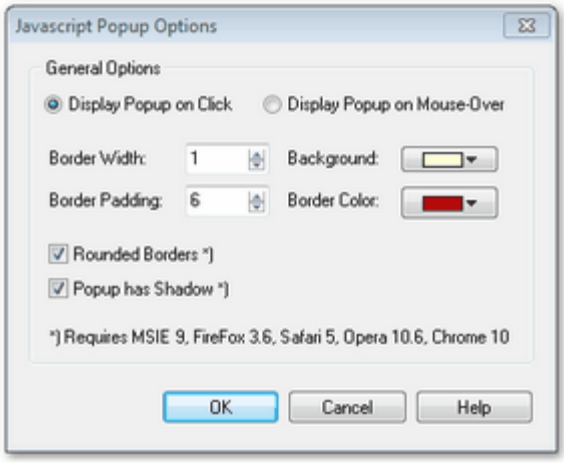
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Configuring JavaScript popup options

JavaScript popups are configurable, with separate settings for WebHelp and HTML Help. The WebHelp settings are also used for eWriter Help.

These settings are ignored for WebHelp project popups and WebHelp field-level popups in the Premium Pack V3 Responsive skins, which use their own integrated design for the popup windows.

1. Activate JavaScript popups in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help/WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**. Note that the settings for HTML Help and WebHelp are separate.
2. Click on *Customize JavaScript Popups* to display the configuration dialog:



Click/mouseover: Displays the popup on user click or mouseover (i.e. as soon as the user moves the mouse pointer over the link). Be careful with using the mouseover option as many users find this intrusive and it may also trigger popup blockers in some browsers.

Border width: Enter 0 for no border, any value above 0 (in pixels) to draw a border around the popup box.

Border padding: The distance between the popup content and the border or edge of the popup (if there is no border) in pixels.

Background: The background color of the popup box.

Border color: The color of the border, if there is one.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Rounded borders and drop shadow:	These effects are only supported by modern browsers: Internet Explorer 9, Firefox 3.6, Opera 10.6, Google Chrome 10 or later.

See also:

Creating popup topics 207
Field-level popups for context help 1592

5.4.13 Using field-level popups

Key Information
Field-level popups must have help context 368 numbers. Field-level popups are only exported if you assign help context numbers to them!

A field-level popup is a popup displayed directly from within your application. They are normally only available for Microsoft HTML Help CHM files.

Field-level popups for WebHelp

In their native form field-level popups are only supported by the Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) format. This is the version described in this topic. However, the responsive skins available in the Premium Pack 3 add-on for Help+Manual also add field-level popups for WebHelp. Their use is explained in the additional help chapter titled Help+Manual Premium Pack added to the main Help+Manual help when you install the Premium Pack. (If you don't have the Premium Pack installed this chapter will just display some introductory material.)

Introduction

In your Help+Manual project, the same popup topics are used for both purposes. When you publish your project the content of the topics are automatically exported to a special text file in the CHM for field-level popups, and to the JavaScript popups file for JavaScript popups.

The plain-text CHM popups are not available within the main CHM file, however. They are only for field-level popups. You can only use JavaScript popups for popups displayed within the CHM file.

- **Normal popup topics** are displayed within the help when the user clicks on a link in a topic, for example to display a definition or an explanation. JavaScript popups must be activated for this to be possible in HTML Help CHM files and WebHelp.
- **Field-level popup topics** are called directly by the application and displayed in little windows of their own. This is done without displaying the rest of the help at all. Only

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the little popup is displayed, and it is closed again as soon as the user clicks on it.

About creating field-level popups:

Field-level popups are only supported in HTML Help CHM files. They are a proprietary Microsoft technology and they are not supported in any other output format.

To create field-level popups the help author needs to perform the following steps:

1. Create popup topics 207 so that you have popups to display.
2. Assign help context numbers 368 to all your popup topics. This is essential because field-level CHM popups must be called by their context numbers. If you don't assign numbers the topics won't be exported to the plain-text field-level popups file!
3. Inform your programmer of the help context numbers and topic IDs and the name of the internal plain text popups file so that they can make the calls. You can use the context tool 1241 to export a list of IDs and context numbers.

The internal popups file is normally called `CSHelp.txt` but you can change its name in the Extended .HHP Settings 1457.

See Implementing context help 1594 for more general information.

If you are writing field-level popups for an application you may have to produce a ***lot*** of popups. You can save yourself a lot of work by generating your field-level popups automatically 911.

Using both field-level popups and JavaScript popups

Only the CHM format's native plain-text popups can be used as field-level popups. If you also want to display popups inside your CHM help file you must activate JavaScript popups 212, otherwise links to popup topics will be displayed as normal topics.

The native plain-text popups used in CHM cannot be used for displaying topics inside the main CHM file, only for field-level popups. (This plain-text file is always exported, even if JavaScript popups are turned off.)

If JavaScript popups are activated, popup links in your project topics will display as JS popups in the HTML Help viewer. However, since the plain-text popups file is also stored in the CHM, calls to this file from your application will also work.

See also:

Creating popup topics 207
Using Context-Sensitive Help 892
IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.5 Editing Topic Files

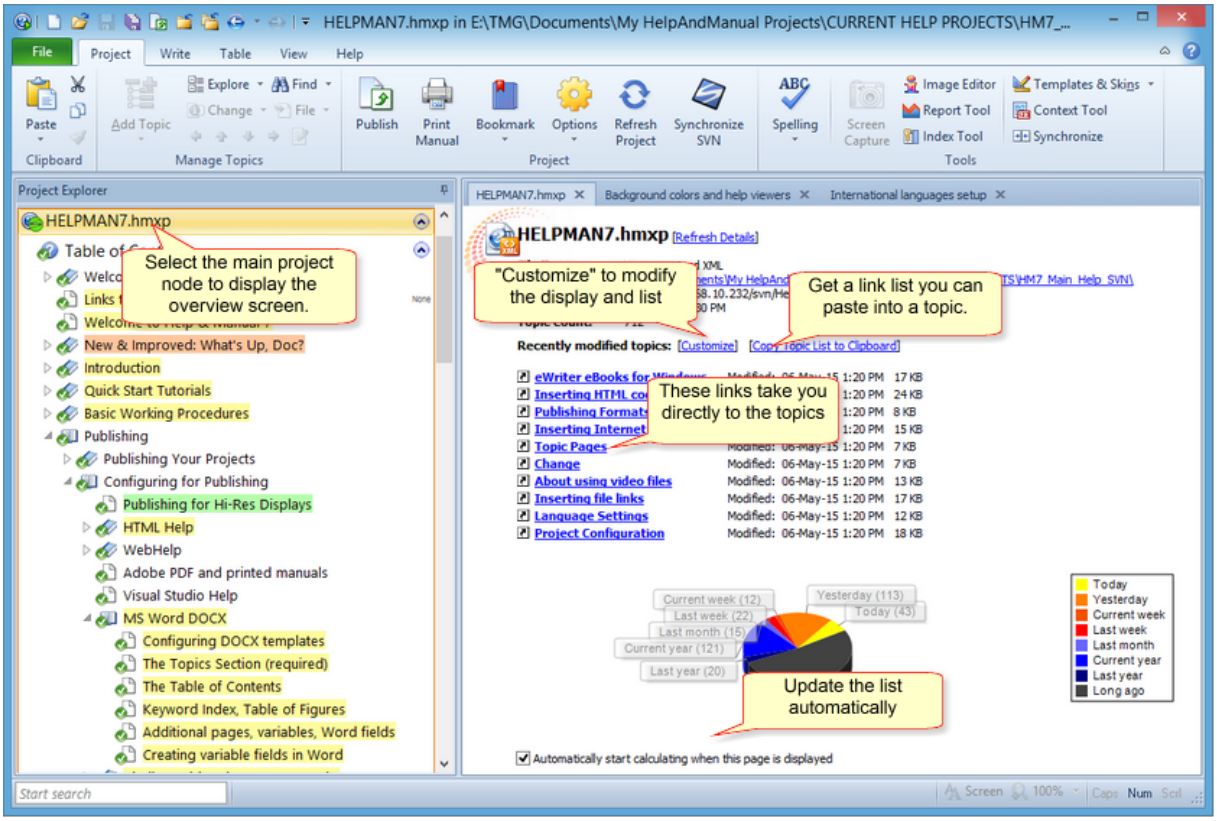
Entering, editing and formatting text in topic files in Help+Manual is very similar to working in a modern word processor like MS Word. If you know how to use a word processor you already have most of the skills you need to edit topics in Help+Manual.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273
Numbered and Bulleted Lists 313
Links and Anchors 409

5.5.1 Recently changed topics

When you are working on a project you will often want to access topics you have edited recently again to continue working on them. Also, when you have updated your documentation you will often want to provide your users with a linked list of topics that have been updated or changed so that they can access them quickly.



Links to recently-edited topics

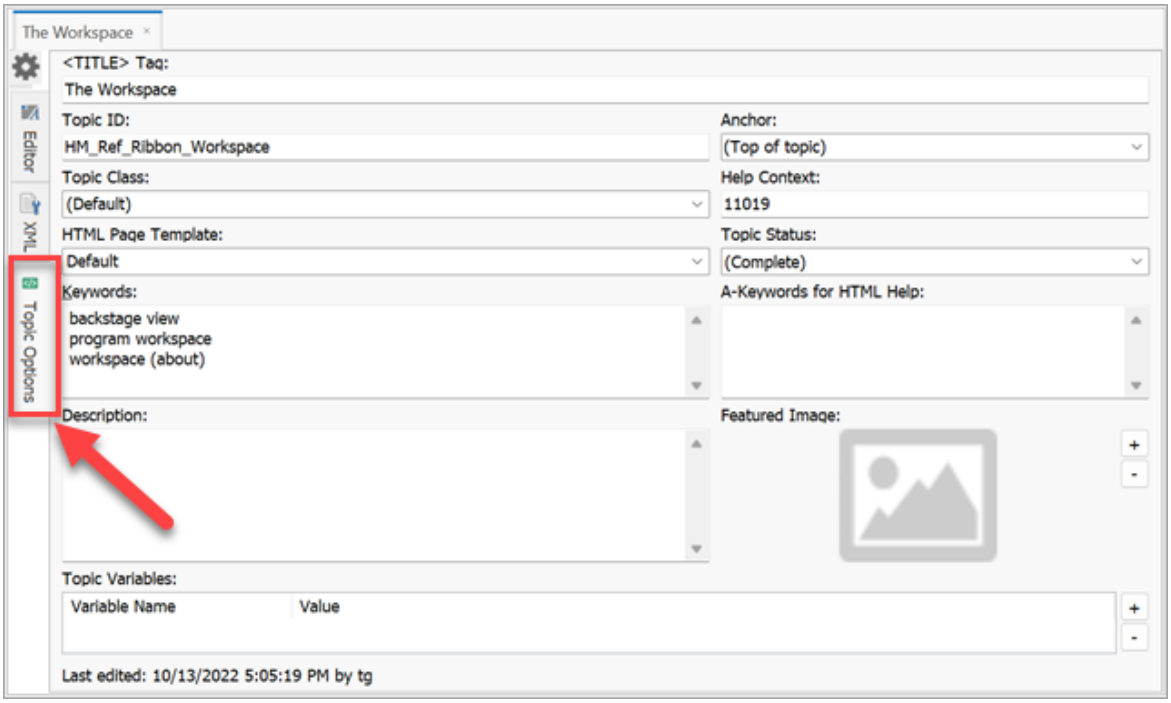
Help+Manual automatically maintains a linked list of all the topics you have edited recently. To access it, just select the project name at the top of the Project Explorer pane on the left side of the Help+Manual window (see screenshot above).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **If you don't see the linked list** click on *Refresh Details* at the top of the screen to display it. Activate the *Automatically start calculating...* checkbox at the bottom of the screen to display the list automatically.
- **To edit recent topics** just click on the links in the list.
- **To get a linked list** of recent topics you can use in your project click on the *Copy Topic List to Clipboard* link. You can then paste this list into any Help+Manual topic.

5.5.2 Topic Options

The Topic Options tab is accessible on the left of the main editor window and contains a number of key settings for the topic currently displayed. It enables you to view and edit a number of settings that are assigned automatically when you create topics, and some additional optional settings.



<TITLE> tag: This is the text inserted in the <TITLE> tag in topic pages in HTML-based output. By default this is the text displayed as the table of contents entry displayed in the Project Explorer on the left. If you edit the TOC entry this text changes automatically, unless you edit this field in Topic Options manually.

If the topic header text in the box above the editor is different from the TOC entry, the TOC entry is shown here and not the topic header text. (Again, only if you didn't edit the title tag text manu-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ally.)

Topic ID: The address of the topic. This is used for referencing topics for links etc. and it is also used for generating the file names of HTML files generated for topics in HTML-based output formats.

You can change the topic ID by editing this entry. When you do this, all the references to the topic within your project are updated automatically.

External references to the topic from other projects and other web pages linking to your WebHelp cannot be updated from within Help+Manual. They will become invalid if you change the topic ID and must then be updated.

Anchor: Target of the TOC entry for the topic. Normally this is the top of the topic, but if there are anchors defined in the topic you can select one here. Then the TOC entry will scroll down to the anchor when it is selected.

This option is normally only used for topics with multiple TOC entries 371. Then each entry can link to the appropriate part of the topic. Don't let this possibility tempt you to make excessively long topics – that is generally a bad idea. Normally, it is much better to have a separate document for each topic.

Topic class: There are two possible classes: *Default* and *Popup*. Most topics will be default topics. The popup class can only be selected for topics that don't have TOC entries, because popup topics are not allowed to have TOC entries. See Creating popup topics 207 for details.

Help context: Optional numeric context IDs for use in Microsoft HTML Help/CHM files. You only need these if your programmers are using context IDs for references from your application to the CHM help file. See the chapters on context sensitive help 892 and the Help Context Tool 1241 for more details.

HTML Page Template: This selects the HTML layout template to be used for this topic in HTML-based output formats. Normally this will be the standard *Default* template. You can only select additional templates here if you have defined them yourself 1036.

Topic Status: This just provides another way to select and set the status for the current topic 373 displayed in the table of contents in the Project Ex-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

plorer on the left. This is design-time only – the status is not exported to your output.

Keywords: The index keywords associated with the topic. You can enter them directly here or centrally with the Index tool 568 (Professional and Floating license versions only).

A-Keywords: These are special "associative" keywords that are only supported in the Microsoft HTML Help/CHM help format. See this topic 579 for more details on this.

Description: An optional description of the topic. This has two uses:

1. Source for the description meta tag 1573 for search engine optimization in WebHelp.
2. Future use for alternative table of contents layouts with descriptions and images as well as titles.

Featured image: This allows you to associate an image with the topic that can then be used in topic templates and PDF title pages for chapters.

In HTML templates you can use the TOPIC_PICTURE 1573 variable to insert the images in your templates.

See the help of the Print Manual Designer program for details on how to use the featured images to create title pages for chapters in PDF output.

Topic variables: This table can be used to change the definition of user-defined or global variables for the current topic only. See this topic for details 963.

5.5.3 Topic History - Previous Versions

Help+Manual can archive every previous version of every topic whenever you save your help project. It can be an alternative to version control systems 848 for individual help authors. It allows you to compare multiple versions of a topic and refer to or revert to a previous version if you find that you or another author has made changes that you want to undo.

Activating topic history

Topic history needs to be activated in each project where you want to use it. You can activate this option in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > Miscellaneous 1411.

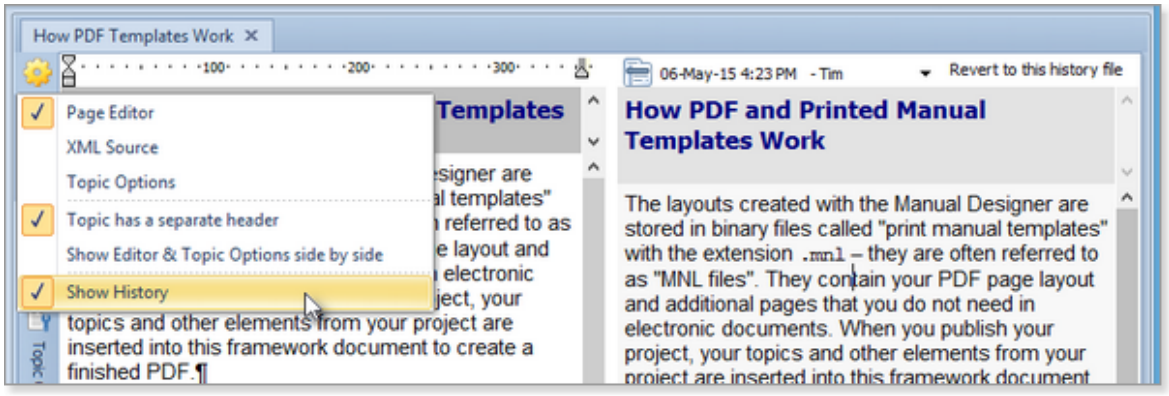
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

IMPORTANT: You cannot use topic history if you are using version control

Note that you cannot activate topic history in projects linked to version control systems. This is also not necessary, because then the entire history of your project is stored in the version control system.

Viewing topic history

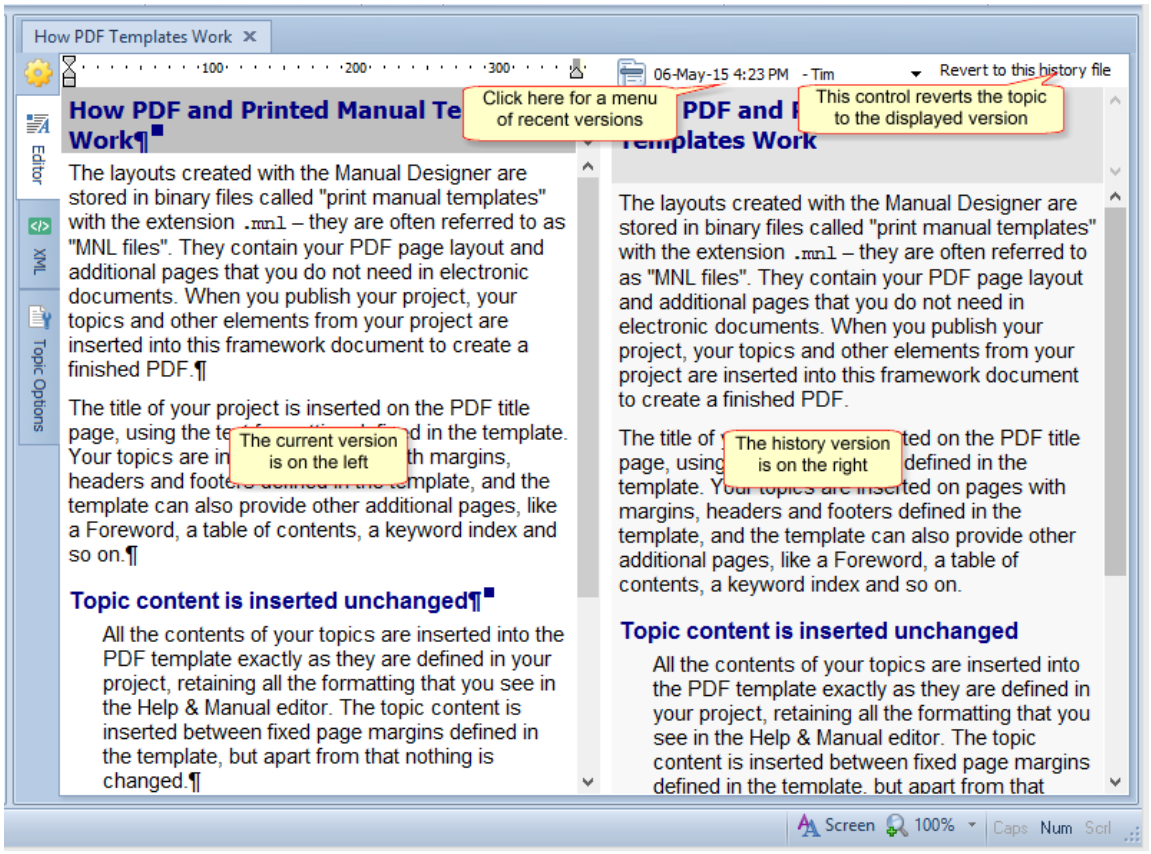
To view and compare previous versions of the current topic select **Show History** in the topic menu in the top left corner of the topic editor window:



Comparing and reverting

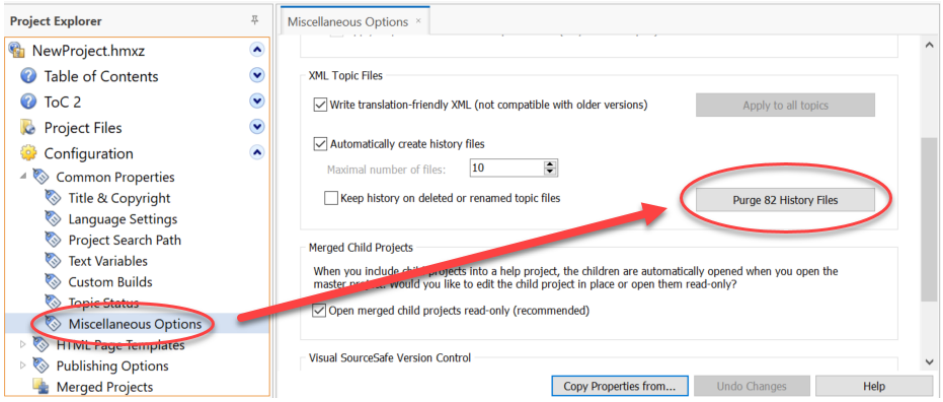
When you display the history you see the previous versions on the right. You can select which version you want to view with the menu above the history display on the left. You can revert the current topic to the displayed history version with the option on the right.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Deleting topic history

You can delete the history of the current project in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous**. For example, if old versions contained sensitive information you may want to delete the history before sending a copy of the project to someone.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.5.4 Word and Character Count

Word count for a single topic:

Select the topic, then select the Word Count tool in **Write** > **Font**.

Word count for the entire project:

Select the Report tool 1212 in the Project tab and choose the *Full Report* option. This will include a word and character count at the end of the report, and individual word counts for each topic.

You can include/exclude topics in/from the entire report and the word count by selecting or deselecting Include Options 969 and the other filtering options in the report dialog (topic classes, topic status, modification date range).

5.5.5 Writing and formatting text

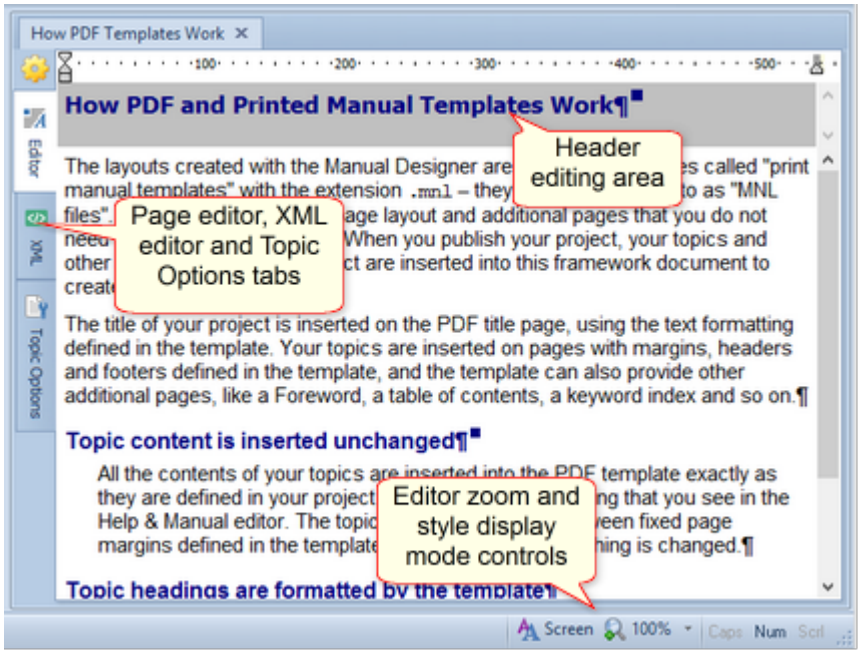
For more detailed information on formatting text see Text Formatting and Styles 273.

The editor tabs and the header box

The editor:

The Help+Manual editor has two or three tabs, depending on the version of Help+Manual you are using:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



- The **Page Editor** tab is where you edit the content of your topic files. This is basically just like a normal word processor. You can enter text, copy and paste, apply styles, insert images etc. You can also use special help authoring features that a word processor does not have.
- The **Topic Options** tab provides access to settings that are saved separately for each individual topic, including index keywords assigned to topics.
- The **XML** tab (Professional and Floating license versions only) allows you to view and edit the XML source code of your topic. If you don't understand what you see here just ignore it!

The topic header area:

The area above the main editor window contains the topic header. This corresponds to the header of topics in help files and supplies the titles of topics for PDF and other printed formats. By default, the header box contains the same text as the topic caption in the Table of Contents but you can add additional text if you like. You can also insert graphics, hyperlinks etc., but such additional content is not used in all output formats.

Multiple topic tabs:

You can edit multiple topics in multiple tabs. Right-click on a topic in the TOC on the left and select *Open Topic in a New Tab* to open an additional tab. This makes it easy to refer to or edit additional topics and not lose your place in the main topic you are working on.

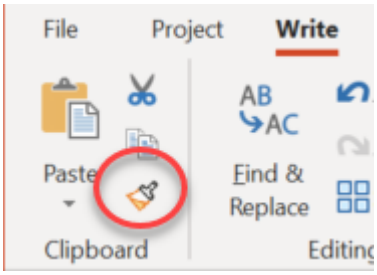
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Editing and formatting tools

The editing and formatting tools are grouped in the **Write** tab of the Ribbon. Many of these tools can also be selected with keyboard shortcuts. Select *Program Options* in the **View** tab of the Ribbon to view and change all available keyboard shortcuts.

Applying formatting and copying, cutting and pasting work in the same way as in any modern word processor.

- To format existing text manually you must first select it and then apply the formatting, using a formatting tool or a style.
- If you select a formatting tool without selecting text (font, bold, underline, color, background color etc.) it will apply from the cursor position onwards if you continue typing.
- To **delete the word** to the left of the editing cursor press **`Ctrl+Backspace`**.
- Use the Format Painter 274 tool in the **Clipboard** group (**Write** and **Project** tabs) to copy formatting. The Format Painter works in the same way as similar tools in word processors. Click once to select and use once, double-click for multiple use, click again or Escape key to turn off.



- See Text Formatting and Styles 273 for detailed information on formatting text and using styles.
- See Special characters, lines and breaks 245 for inserting typographic quotes and other special characters.

Editor zoom and preview mode for screen/print styles and font sizes

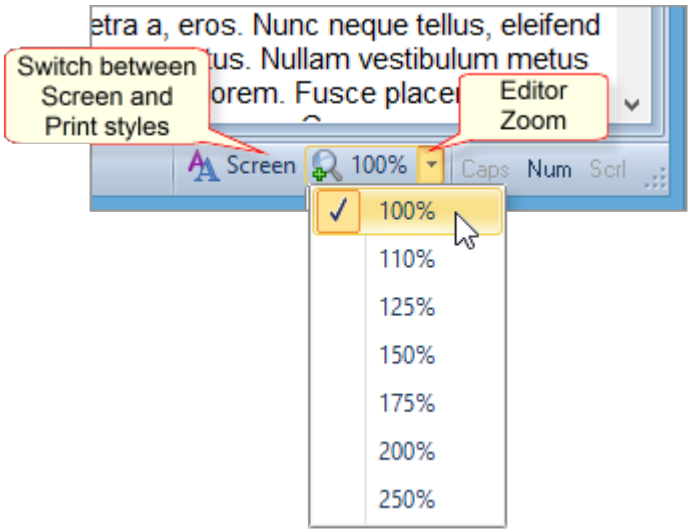
You can zoom the entire contents of the editor quickly with the Zoom control in the status bar below the editor window. This control is also available in the **View** tab in the ribbon toolbar.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can also switch the editor display between the styles defined for electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Visual Studio Help and eWriter Help) print-style help formats (PDF, printed manuals, Word DOCX and ePUB and Kindle Mobi eBooks).

This will only have an effect if you have defined different settings for screen and print output in your style definitions. See Multiple style sets 302 for more information on using different style sets for different output formats.

Display buttons in the status bar:



How to protect text against editing

Sometimes you want to make sure that text will not be changed or translated, particularly when you are working on a project in a team.

- Select the text you want to protect, then click on the Protect Text tool in **Write** > **Font**.

The text will be displayed with shading in the editor to show that it is protected. In the XML file it will also be tagged with a *translate="false"* attribute to inform the translator that you do not want it to be translated.

Navigating in the editor

Zoom editor: Use the Zoom control in the status bar below the editor or in the **View** tab of the ribbon toolbar.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Go to hyperlink:	Hold down **Ctrl** and click on the link (double-clicking on links opens the link editing dialog).
Word left/right:	**Ctrl+Cursor Left/Right**
Next/previous topic:	**Ctrl+Cursor Up/Down**
Other nav. controls:	**PgUp, PgDown, Ctrl+Home, Ctrl+End**
Edit history:	The buttons in the Quick Access Toolbar navigate through the sequence of topics you have edited in the current session.
Double-click, triple click:	A double-click selects a word, a triple-click selects the entire paragraph.
Keyboard shortcuts:	Select **Program Options** in the **View** tab for a full list of all available keyboard shortcuts. You can change the shortcuts and assign your own shortcuts to most of Help+Manual's functions.
Display paragraph marks:	Click on the ¶ tool in **Write** > **Paragraph** or select *Program Options* in the **View** tab and activate *Display paragraph and text marks* in the Editor tab.
Preview Windows large/small fonts settings:	Click on the *96/120 DPI* button in the status bar at the bottom of the program window to emulate Windows' small and large font modes in the editor. This is useful for making sure that your layouts will work correctly with both settings.
Show Screen/Print styles in the editor:	Click on the Screen/Print button in the status bar at the bottom of the program window to switch between the style definitions for screen output (electronic help files) and print style output (PDF, printed manuals, Word DOCX). This will only show any changes if you have actually defined different styles for screen and print output. See Multiple style sets 302 for more details on this subject.

The XML Source editor

This tab is only available in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual and it is designed for advanced users only.

Please don't edit anything in this tab unless you have plenty of experience in XML editing and understand all the code. XML syntax is very strict and unlike HTML not even a single mistake in the code is permitted! If you enter incorrect code Help+Manual will perform a

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

syntax check and delete it automatically (and silently!) when you return to the main editor window.

You can find a detailed reference to the Help+Manual XML syntax in the `Help-man_XML_ref.chm` file in the Help+Manual program directory.

See also

Formatting text manually 274
Text Formatting and Styles 273
Editing XML source code 264

5.5.6 The paragraph end mark

If you're used to working with a word processor like MS Word you will find that editing in Help+Manual is different from a word processor in some ways. It's just as powerful, but the way it stores text formatting is different, and you need to understand this.

The paragraph end mark does not store any formatting!

Word processors like MS Word store paragraph styles and formatting in the paragraph end mark. In word processors like this you can format a paragraph by selecting the end mark and applying formatting. Also, if you delete the paragraph end mark in these word processors the formatting of the entire paragraph will be deleted. This does not happen in Help+Manual.

You cannot select or format the paragraph end mark!

Help+Manual's paragraph end marks don't store anything, they are just carriage returns marking the end of the paragraph. Instead, the formatting is associated with the entire paragraph. Since the paragraph end mark contains neither formatting nor any other information you cannot select it or format it.

Formatting is associated with the text

In Help+Manual formatting is associated directly with the text and the entire paragraph. When you apply formatting to text it is associated with every letter of the text. When you apply a style 96 to a paragraph in it is associated both with the entire paragraph and with every letter of the text it contains.

When you copy text all its formatting goes with it!

You will see this, for example, if you copy a passage of text from one paragraph to another. If you then put your cursor in the copied text and look in the style selector 279 in the toolbar you will find that it still has the attributes of the source paragraph. (You can pre-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

vent this behavior by using the Paste as Text tool in **Write** > **Clipboard** or *Ctrl+Shift+V*.)

Paragraph formatting attributes are only copied if you copy an entire paragraph, including all the text in the paragraph down to the beginning of the next paragraph.

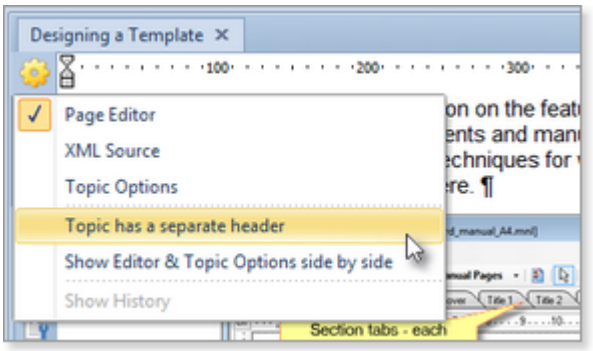
It's a slightly different way of working

Once you get used to it you'll find that it's quite intuitive and also has its advantages. For example, unlike Word you can't accidentally delete the formatting of an entire paragraph by pressing DEL or BACKSPACE. If you ever accidentally join two paragraphs you just need to press ENTER to separate them again. You may need to adjust the paragraph formatting or reapply a style to adjust the paragraph formatting, but that's it.

When paragraphs are joined the program automatically uses the paragraph attributes of the upper paragraph in the text, because a paragraph can't have two sets of paragraph settings.

5.5.7 Topic Headers

By default, new topics always have a "header", displayed in a separate editing box above the main topic editor. You can turn the header off with the options menu in the top left corner of the editor window if you want. This turns off the header for the current topic.



Initially, this header contains the title of the topic, formatted with the standard *Heading1* style and with the background color set in the HTML topic page template. You can also add other content, including graphics, hyperlinks etc.

Header formatting, background colors and additional content are only supported in electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, eBooks and Visual Studio Help). ePUB eBooks have limited or no support for additional content. In print-style formats (PDF, DOCX, printed manuals) only the plain text from the header is exported when you publish and the formatting is defined separately

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to format the header text and background

Formatting the header text:

By default the header text has the standard *Heading1* style. The easiest way to format your header text is to edit this style in **Write** > **Styles** > **Edit Styles.** Then all new headers will automatically have the selected formatting. You can format headers manually by selecting the text and using the formatting tools in the **Write** tab if you want, but then you must do this separately for every single topic.

Setting the header background color:

In most electronic output formats the header background color is defined by the HTML topic page template.

Important: Edit in the skin file if you are using a skin!
If you are using a skin to publish this is defined in the topic page template in the skin file, not the template in your project. Make a copy of the **`.hmskin`** skin file in your project folder to edit it. Then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **`.hmskin`** as the file type to edit in the Open dialog. The template is in the same location as in a normal project file.

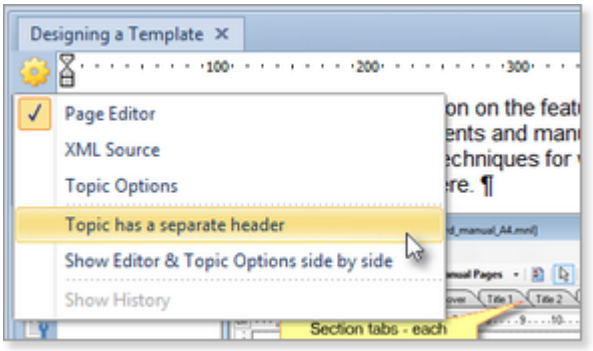
In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** and select the *Default* template. Then you can set the background colors for the header and the topic body. The background colors you set in the template are automatically displayed in the editor.

See Background colors and help viewers 142 for more details on this.

How to turn off the header

To turn off the header for a topic deactivate the *Topic has a separate header* option in the options menu at the top left corner of the editor window. This will create a topic without a header in your published output.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Warning: Turning off the header deletes any additional content you have added to the header box. If you turn the header on again the box will only contain the standard topic title, taken from the topic's TOC entry. The content will not be lost while you are still editing the current topic (you can restore it by reactivating the option) but once you leave the current topic it will be deleted permanently.

Additional content in the header

You can insert any content in the topic header box that you would normally insert in the main body of the topic, including graphics, hyperlinks and so on. This content will be published with the header in electronic formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, eBooks and Visual Studio Help) but not in print-style formats (PDF, DOCX, printed manuals).

Note that content added to the header will only be displayed in the current topic. If you want to include the same content in every topic (for example a logo) you need to edit the HTML topic page template and add the content to the header section of the template. See Using HTML Templates 1026 for more details.

If you want to include additional with your headers in PDF and printed manuals you need to add it to the header definitions in the print manual template – see PDF & Printed Manuals 785 for details.

Topic headers in PDF, DOCX and printed manuals

The topic header and its formatting and background color are not exported or used in PDF and printed manuals. In these formats, only the plain text topic title is exported, the formatting is applied with the print manual template for PDF and printed manuals (which use the same PDF templates).

In PDF you can use either the TOC topic title or the text from the topic header (if it is different). This is done by selecting either the <%HEADINGx%> variables in the template for the TOC topic title or the <%HEADINGLONGx%> variables for the text from the header box

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

in your template in Manual Designer.

See PDF & Printed Manuals 785 for details on accessing and editing print manual templates for PDF.

In Word DOCX the heading style from the header are used in the body text of the DOCX document, but the styles of the entries in the TOC at the beginning of the document use the Heading 1 ... Heading 9 styles defined in your DOCX template.

See MS Word DOCX 682 for details on configuring your DOCX output for publishing.

See also:

Background colors and help viewers 142
Using HTML Templates 1026
PDF & Printed Manuals 785

5.5.8 Selecting text and content

This topic outlines the different ways you can select text and content in the Help+Manual editor. You can use both the mouse and key combinations.

Selecting with the mouse

Select a block of text:	Click and drag. Or click in the editor, hold down **`Shift`** and then click at the end of the text you want to select.
Select a single word:	Click and drag or double-click on the word.
Select a single line:	Click to the left of the line in the margin of the editor.
Select a paragraph:	Triple-click in the paragraph or click and drag from the beginning of the paragraph to the end.
Selecting graphics:	Click once on the graphic.
Hyperlinks:	Click once to select and edit link text, double-click to edit link properties. **`Ctrl+Click`** navigates to the link target topic.
Selecting a table:	Position the mouse pointer just to the left of the table and left-click. For more details see Selecting and formatting cells and tables 525.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Selecting with key combinations

Select by word:	Hold down **Shift+Ctrl** and press right or left cursor arrow.
Select by screen:	Hold down **Shift** and press **PgUp** or **PgDown**.
Select everything:	Press **Ctrl+A** or select **Edit** > **Select All**.
Keyboard shortcuts:	Click on **View** > **Program Options** and then select the *Shortcuts* tab to view and edit all the keyboard shortcuts available in the program.

See also:

Selecting and formatting table cells and tables 525

5.5.9 Copying, cutting and pasting

Copying, cutting and pasting text and other content in Help+Manual is exactly the same as in a modern word processor. Just select what you want to copy and then use the standard cut/copy and paste commands.

See Moving, cutting and pasting topics 357 for details on working with entire topics.

How to cut, copy and paste text and content

First select the text or content you want to copy. You then have two options:

Dragging:

- To move the selected text just drag without pressing any keys.
- To copy the selected text hold down *Ctrl* and drag.

You can use Drag & Drop within topics but not from one topic to another within the same project. This is because dragging selected text onto a topic entry in the TOC creates a link 410 to that entry! To use Drag & Drop between two separate projects you must open the second project in a second instance of Help+Manual.

Using the Copy, Cut and Paste commands:

The Copy, Cut and Paste commands work just as they do in any normal word processor. They are available in several places:

- **Keyboard shortcuts: Ctrl+C** (copy), **Ctrl+X** (cut), **Ctrl+V** (paste)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **Write** and **Project** tabs in the Ribbon (Clipboard group)
- **Context menu:** (right-click)

Copy as plain text

Select the *Paste Text* tool in **Write** > **Clipboard** or press *Shift+Ctrl+V* to copy the contents of the clipboard as text only, without any formatting or styles.

This is useful when you are copying text between paragraphs with different styles or from another application like MS Word.

Paste HTML

The *Paste HTML* tool in **Write** > **Clipboard** converts HTML code in the clipboard to formatted Help+Manual text as you paste.

Copying from MS Word and other Office applications

Copying from and to MS Word:

You can copy and paste fully-formatted text both from and back to MS Word. Virtually all formatting is supported, including tables (but not text boxes).

Copying tables from and to MS Excel:

You can also copy tables directly from and to MS Excel. In some cases you may find that you get better results if you copy via MS Word: First copy the table from Excel to Word, and then from Word to Help+Manual. Similarly, to copy a table from Help+Manual to Excel, copy it to Word first and then to Excel.

Copy as plain text

Select the *Paste as Text* tool in **Write** > **Clipboard** or press *Shift+Ctrl+V* to copy the contents of the clipboard as text only, without any formatting or styles. .

Copying between projects

You can copy, cut and paste text between projects in exactly the same way as within a project. Just open the second project and copy and paste between the two projects. See Using the Project Explorer 70 for help with working in the Project Explorer.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can't use Drag & Drop to copy text from topics between different projects if the projects are both open in the same instance of Help+Manual. However, if you open Help+Manual a second time you can use Drag & Drop between two projects.

Copying project settings between projects:

You can copy Project Configuration 1400 settings from from one project to another. You can copy individual groups of settings or entire settings sections. Note that this will overwrite your current project settings with the new settings!

1. Open the project you want to copy settings ***to.***
2. In the Project Explorer select the *Configuration* section and click inside the section containing the settings you want to copy from another project – for example *Title & Copyright* in Common Properties:
3. Click on *Copy Properties From...* at the bottom of the dialog and select the **`.hmxz`** or **`.hmxp`** project file containing the settings you want to copy.

Warning: This will overwrite your current project settings with the settings that you copy!

4. In the dialog that appears choose *This Page Only* to copy only the settings of the selected page or *Copy Section* to copy all the settings in the current section.

See also:

Moving, cutting and pasting topics 357
Project Configuration 1400

5.5.10 Searching and replacing

The functions for finding and replacing text in Help+Manual are very similar to the comparable functions in word processors, with some additional options for the special requirements of help projects.

In addition to this the program also has powerful functions for locating individual topics by their topic IDs and their context numbers, and for locating "referrers", i.e. topics containing links to the current topic or topics.

Productivity Tip
The Search function is also available in the XML Source editor tab (Professional and Floating license versions only) and all HTML editor windows for HTML templates and other editing windows. Just right-click in these editor windows to access.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to find and replace text

1. Select **Write** > **Editing** > **Find & Replace...** or press **Ctrl+F**.
2. Enter your search text and choose your options. These are self-explanatory and are very similar to all search and replace functions in all modern word processors.

Find where:

Topic Keywords searches for index keywords you have associated with your topics.

Image File Names changes the filenames of graphics file references in your projects so that they refer to files with different names. See below for details.

Captions searches in TOC captions (the *Topic Title* field in the Topic options tab below the main editor window). Note that replacing this text does not change the name of the topic in the TOC or the header in the header box above the editor. Instead, it "uncouples" the topic title attribute from the other two texts, giving it a different value.

Table of Contents searches in the TOC in the Project Explorer (search only, no replace).

Conditional Texts searches and replaces the tag names in conditional text build tags. See Conditional text include options 994 for details on how these tags work and how they are used.

How to find and replace variables and conditional tags

Variables:

Note: This only works for variables that have been typed in manually. You can't use the search function to locate variables inserted with the Variable tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**.

1. Select *Find & Replace* in the **Edit** menu and set the scope of your search (current topic, all topics etc).
2. To search for a variable or replace text with a variable enter:
   `<% + VARIABLENAME + %>`

   For example if your variable is called **DEMOBUILD** you would type:

   `<%DEMOBUILD%>`

When you insert or replace variables with Find and Replace the variables are not highlighted in the topic text. This is exactly the same as typing in variables manually 932 – the variables are still fully functional, they are just not highlighted in the text. (The highlight is

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

just an editing convenience to make the variables easier to see.)

Conditional tags:

1. Select *Find & Replace* in the **Edit** menu and set the scope of your search (current topic, all topics etc).
2. Select *Conditional Texts* as the type of search to perform.
3. Enter the conditional tags you want to search for, including the commas if you are searching for tags with multiple conditions.

   Examples:

   Find what: `CHM,HTML`
   Find what: `USER1`
   Find what: `PDF,NEWBUILD,HTML`

How to find and replace images

Images are referenced with their file names only so you can "replace" them with other images by replacing their file names in your topics. Help+Manual finds the image files by searching through all the folders in your Project Search Path 514 so if the file name you use is in one of those folders Help+Manual will be able to find it.

1. Select **Write** > **Editing** > **Find & Replace...** or press **`Ctrl+F`**.
2. Select *Image File Names* in the *Find Where* section.
3. Enter the exact name of the image file as the search and replacement texts, including the file extension, for example: *main_screen.bmp*.
4. Choose your other options. These are self-explanatory and are very similar to all search and replace functions in all modern word processors.

Tip: Changing image type
You can change the type of image used by searching and replacing the file name extension. For example, if you have replaced all your PNG files with BMP files of the same name, you would just need to replace all instances of **`.png`** in image file names with the **`.bmp`** extension.

How to find topics by ID or context number

1. Select **Project** > **Manage Topics** > **Find** > **Find Topic**
2. Select *Topic ID* or *Help Context Number*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Find topics that link to the current topic

You can find links to the current topic with the *Find Referrers* function, which also shows which topics the current topics links to.

Links to and from the current topic:

- Select **Topics** > **Manage Topics** > **Find** > **Find Referrers**

  OR

- Right-click on a topic in the TOC and select **Find Referrers** in the context menu.

Selecting **Find Referrers** for a chapter in the TOC will display the referrers for all the topics in the chapter. You can also use this function for multiple topics. Just select two or more topics in the TOC before selecting the function. Note that this function will only find links to the current topic or topics in the current project! You cannot use this function to locate links to the topic in other projects or help files.

Finding links in all topics:

- Select **Project** > **Tools** > **Report Tool** and select either *Long Report* or *Full Report* mode.

The report will include lists of all outgoing and ingoing links in all topics in your project.

See also:

Find & Replace 1326 (Reference)
Find Referrers 1306 (Reference)
The Project Reports Tool 1212

5.5.11 Spell checking

In addition to manual spell checking for individual topics, selected text and your entire project you can also use live spell checking (misspelled words are highlighted as you type). You can create your own user dictionaries with lists of special terms for your own projects, auto-correct entries and terms that you want to identify as incorrect even though they are in the main dictionary. User dictionaries can be global for all projects or local for just one project and can be stored anywhere you like.

See The Spell Checker 1220 for full details on configuring the spell checker.

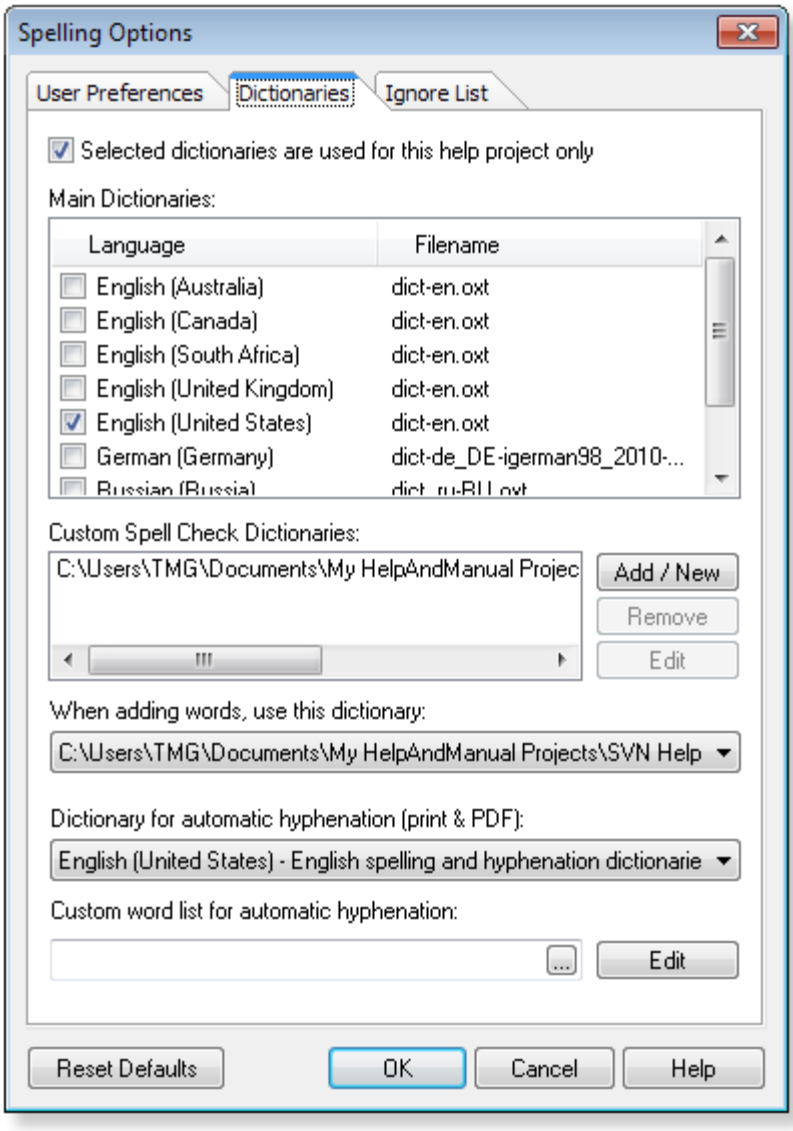
Productivity Tip
Spell checking is supported almost everywhere in Help+Manual where you can enter text. Just right-click to display the context menu or click on the upper half of the *Spelling* tool in the *Project* tab to access.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Selecting the language, user and hyphenation dictionaries

Select the language:

Go to **Project** > **Tools** > **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker** > **Dictionaries** and select the correct dictionary for the language you want to check in the Main Dictionaries section:



You can spell check documents that contain multiple languages by selecting more than one main dictionary. Click on *Download dictionaries...* to download free dictionaries for additional languages. These dictionaries must be stored in the Dictionaries folder in your Help+Manual program directory.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Select the user dictionaries:

All user dictionaries listed in the Custom Dictionaries section will also be used for spell checks. You can store these dictionaries anywhere you want, also on network drives, and multiple users can access the same dictionary at the same time.

Select *When adding words, use this dictionary:* to choose the user dictionary you want to use to store new words.

Hyphenation dictionary is a separate selection:

Note that you need to select the dictionary to be used for automatic hyphenation in PDF and DOCX separately. Note also that there are no configuration options for hyphenation beyond the custom word list with which you can specify how specific words are to be hyphenated, and words that are not to be hyphenated. Beyond that all aspects of hyphenation are controlled by the Open Office hyphenation dictionaries used by Help+Manual.

Styles excluded from spell checking are also excluded from hyphenation

No hyphenation is performed on text formatted with styles that are excluded from spell checking. You can thus disable hyphenation for any text by formatting it with one of the styles you have excluded from spell checking.

See The Spell Checker 1220 for full details on configuring the spell checker.

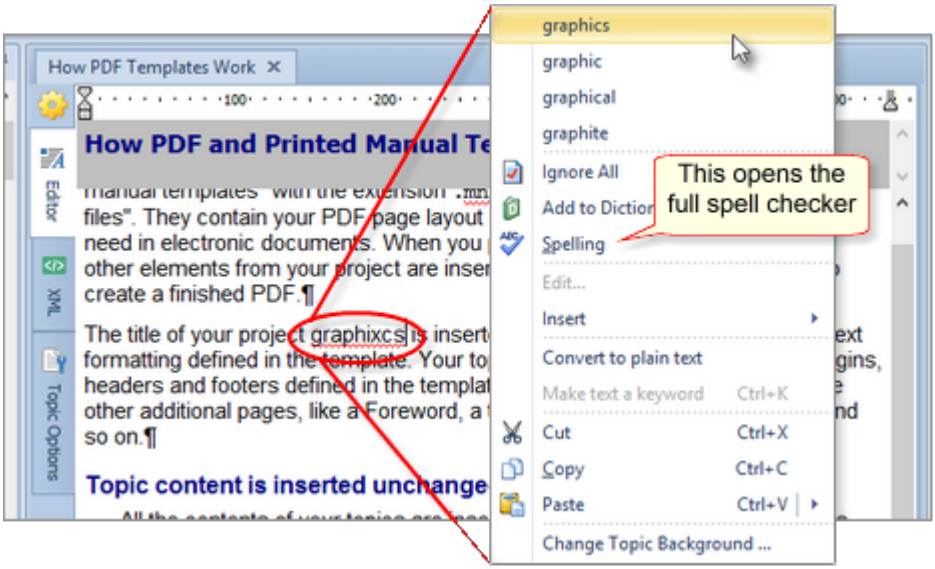
How to use live spell checking

Go to **Tools** > **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker** and activate the *Check spelling as you type* option.

Unknown words are highlighted with a wavy red underline. Right-click on a highlighted word (or click on it and press the context menu key on your keyboard if you have one) to display alternatives.

Select *Spelling* in the context menu to open a full manual spell checker window.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Live spell check does not flag repeated words

Note that the live spell checker does not mark repeated words as errors. This is only marked by the manual spell checker.

Automatic hyphenation is only performed on publishing

Since the source of your topics in the editor is not between fixed margins, hyphenation is only performed when publishing to a fixed-margin format like PDF and DOCX.

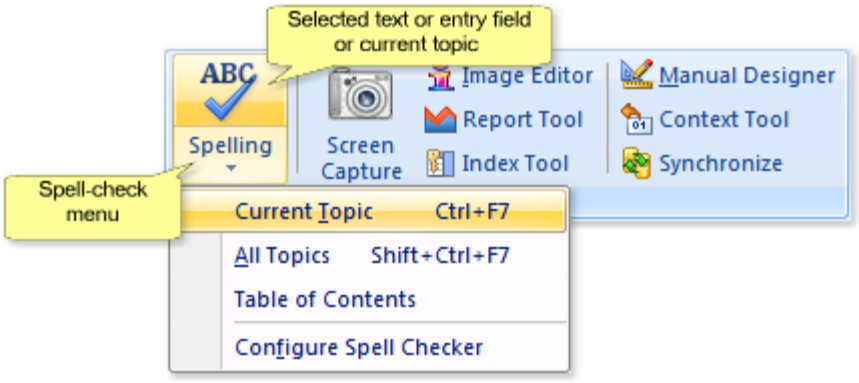
Styles excluded from spell checking are also excluded from hyphenation

No hyphenation is performed on text formatted with styles that are excluded from spell checking. You can thus disable hyphenation for any text by formatting it with one of the styles you have excluded from spell checking.

See The Spell Checker 1220 for full details on how to configure this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to use manual spell checking



Selected text, current topic or current text entry field or window:

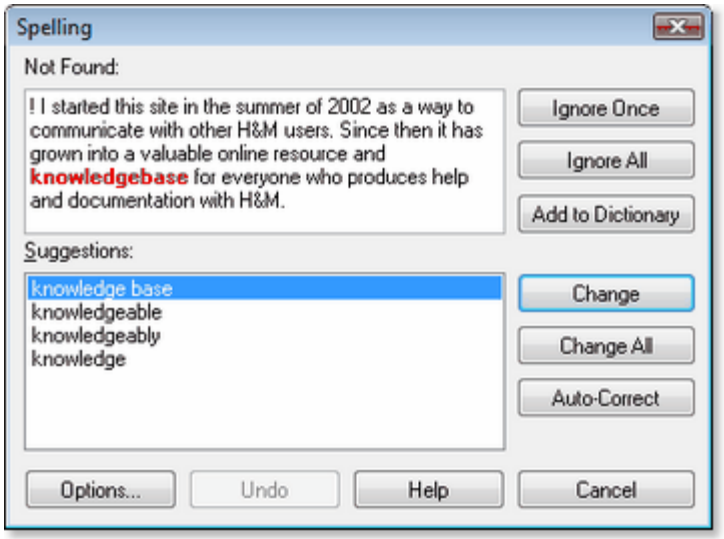
Select text in the editor and click on the top part of the Spelling tool in **Project** > **Tools**.

Current topic, all topics, table of contents:

Click on the top part of the Spelling tool to spell check the current topic.

Click on the bottom part of the Spelling tool and select *Current Topic, All Topics* or *Table of Contents*.

When an unknown word is found the following dialog is displayed:

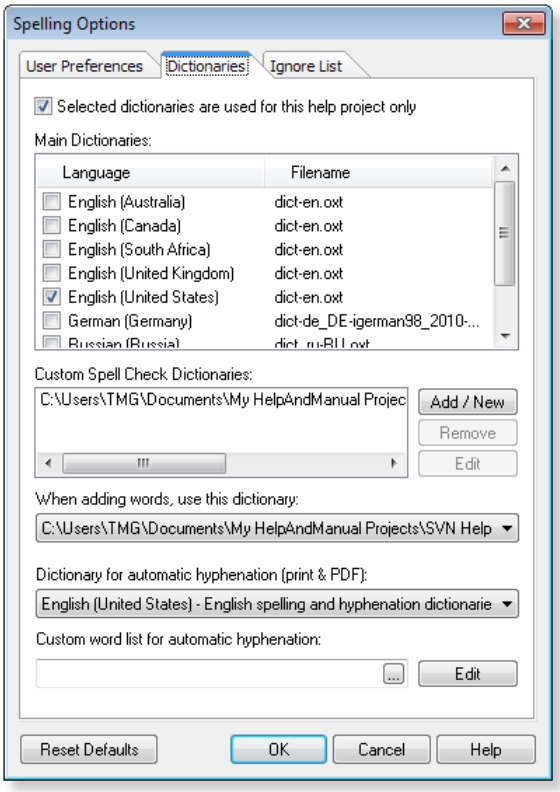


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Ignore Once	Skips this occurrence of the unknown word without correcting it and continues the spell check.
Ignore All	Skips the unknown word and all future occurrences of the word. Applies for the current spell check session only.
Add to Dictionary	Adds the unknown word to the current custom dictionary (see below).
Change	Changes this occurrence of the unknown word and continues with the spell check. You can type a word manually in the text field at the top or click on a word in the **Suggestions:** list.
Change All	Changes both this occurrence and all future occurrences of the unknown word without prompting for confirmation. Applies for the current spell check session only.
Auto-Correct	Adds the unknown word and its replacement to the Auto-Correct list in the current custom user dictionary. When this unknown word is encountered in future manual spell checks it will be corrected automatically without prompting for confirmation.
Options	Direct access to the spell checker configuration options.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Selecting and adding custom (user) dictionaries



The main dictionaries are not editable. However, you can create custom user dictionaries to store your own additional terms. These dictionaries can also store auto-correct word pairs and "excluded" words that you want to always identify as incorrect even if they are in the main dictionary.

See Using custom dictionaries 1228 and Creating and editing custom dictionaries 1226 for full details on this subject.

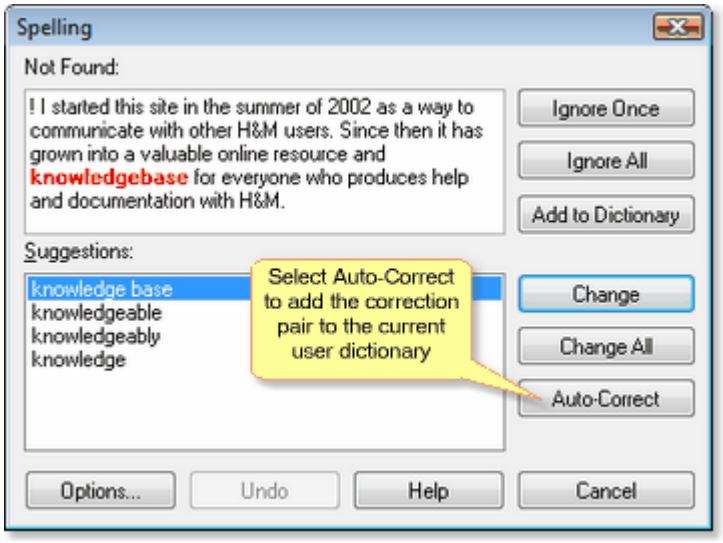
- The standard user dictionary is stored in your *My Documents* folder (called *Documents* in Windows Vista). To use this just select it in the *When adding words, use this dictionary* list at the bottom of the dialog.
- Click on *Add/New* to create a new user dictionary or to select an existing dictionary. You can store your dictionary anywhere you like.
- If you only want to use the selected dictionaries for the current project activate *Selected dictionaries are used for this help project only*. Otherwise your selections will be stored for all projects.

Using Auto-Correct to replace words and abbreviations

The spell checker has an Auto-Correct feature that can be used to automatically replace words with other words when they are encountered in manual spell checks.

1. Set up your user dictionary and enter words you want to correct in the Auto-Correct Pairs (see Creating and editing custom dictionaries 1226 for details).
2. To add new Auto-Correct Pairs during manual spell checks enter the correct word you want to use, then click on Auto-Correct to add the pair to the current user dictionary.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



This word pair will be corrected automatically from now on when you use this dictionary (also in the current session).

See also:

The Spell Checker 1220

5.5.12 Special characters, lines and breaks

Like most modern word processors Help+Manual can also insert special characters not available on the keyboard, horizontal lines and hard page breaks.

Please note that special characters and hard page breaks need to be used with consideration for the limitations of your chosen output format: If the fonts required for the characters are not available on the user's computer the characters will not be displayed.

Page breaks are also inserted in HTML and will work there in browsers that interpret them correctly.

Solving the "characters not available" problem

Symbols and special characters are frequently a problem. Even though they may display fine on your computer, you will have issues if the user does not have the corresponding fonts installed. Either they will see garbage characters, like a square or question mark, or worse, the wrong character. This applies in particular if you use dedicated symbol fonts like Font Awesome or Fontello.

Convert symbol characters to SVG graphics

In both HTML and print (PDF and Word) output, Help+Manual can solve this problem by automatically converting symbol characters to scalable SVG graphics. This display with exactly the same quality as font characters and they have great advantages:

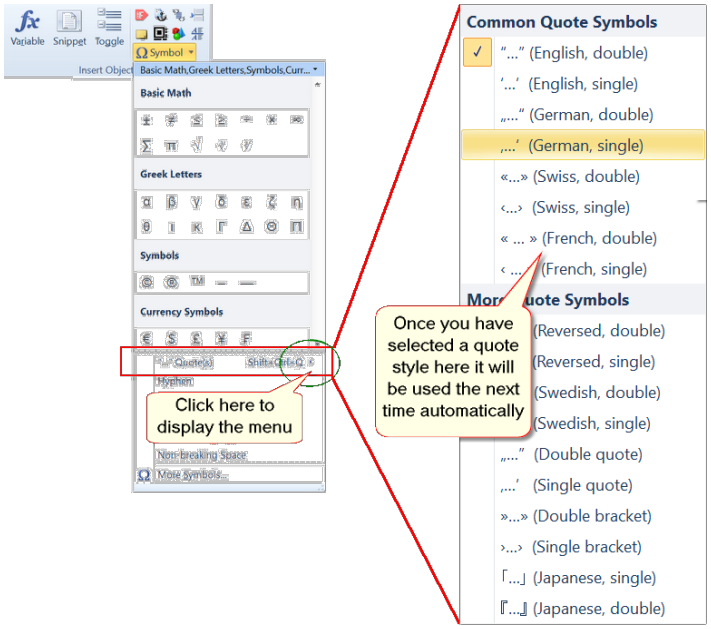
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- They always work. Since the SVG is the character it cannot happen that it will be displayed incorrectly
- The quality is the same as font characters, at all sizes.
- In HTML web fonts are often blocked by security settings and ad blockers. That can't happen with SVG characters.

See Converting symbol fonts to SVG for maximum reliability 251 further below in this topic for details on how to use this feature.

How to insert typographic (curly) quotes

Help+Manual has an intelligent function for inserting typographic/curly quotation marks instead of the standard computer vertical quotes. The main function is accessed in the Symbol tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**:



Selecting the quotes style

First click on the arrow at the right end of the **Quote(s)** entry in the menu and select the style of quotes you want to use. You only need to do this once for any quote style. After that Help+Manual will remember it until you change it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Select text and apply quotes

The easiest way to apply curly quotes is to select the text you want to quote and then select the **c** entry in the menu. The quotes will be applied at the beginning and end of the selected text.

Applying curly quotes singly

Just position the cursor at the beginning of the text and select the **Quote(s)** entry in the menu, then position the cursor at the end of the text and select the entry again. Help+Manual will figure out whether the quote is at the beginning or the end of the quoted text and insert the correct quote character.

Set a keyboard shortcut for curly quotes

If you use quotes a lot you won't want to select the menu every time. Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Shortcuts** and define a keyboard shortcut to the *Insert quotation marks* entry in the **Insert** group. This works both for quoting selected text and inserting quotes singly. It will use the currently defined quotes style.

How to insert special characters

Note that It doesn't make much sense to use characters from a rare font in your WebHelp or HTML Help output, because most users won't have that font installed on their computers. If you use rare fonts in PDF you can embed the font in your output, but this will significantly increase the size of your PDF file. (**Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **Font Embedding**.)

1. Click in the editor in the position where you want to insert the special character.
2. Select **Write** > **Insert Object** > Ω
3. Common special characters can be selected directly in the menu -- or select *More Symbols...* to display more characters and all available fonts.

Keyboard shortcuts for special characters

You can assign keyboard shortcuts to a number of these characters in **View** > **Program Options** > **Shortcuts.**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Keep the Symbol tool open for other characters

You can keep the Symbol tool ("More Symbols") open while you are working to provide quick access to special characters. This is particularly useful if you have defined a custom list of characters – see further below in this topic for details.

Exporting special characters as SVG graphics for consistency

You can configure your project to export symbol characters as scalable SVG graphics for maximum compatibility. See further below for details.

Using dedicated symbol fonts like Font Awesome

In addition to the standard symbol fonts available in Windows, Help+Manual supports the installation of dedicated symbol fonts like the popular Font Awesome and Fontello systems.

Converting the symbols to SVG for maximum compatibility

This section explains how to get and use these fonts. See further below for instructions on activating the option to convert to SVG for maximum compatibility on all output formats.

The standard Font Awesome font is pre-installed!

The standard set of open-source Font Awesome symbols is preinstalled in Help+Manual 9. You can get it by selecting the *FontAwesome* font as described below.

How to get and install additional dedicated symbol fonts

These are standard font files but you choose the character sets you want them to install. You generate them by visiting the website of the font provider (for example Font Awesome or Fontello). You choose the symbols or symbol sets you want to include, then you generate and download the fonts containing your selected symbols.

You ONLY need the desktop fonts!

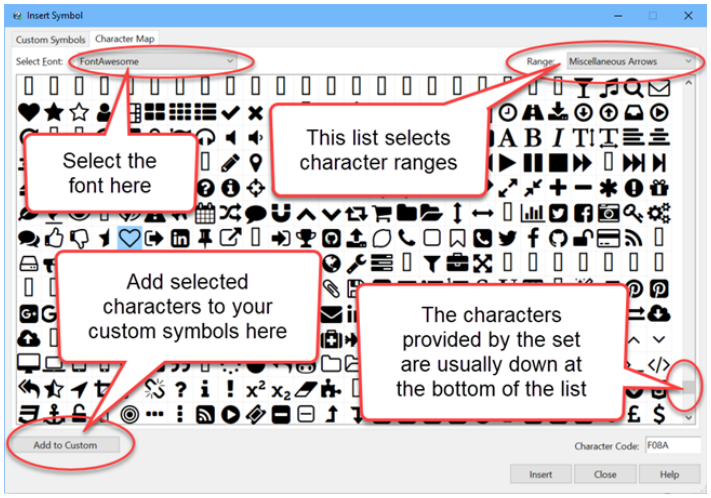
You only need the normal desktop fonts. All the SVG conversion is handled by Help+Manual, so you don't need any of the web font components. How this works varies depending on the font system. For example, Font Awesome has a specific download page for the desktop fonts only. Fontello always downloads a zipped package for web use.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Whichever method, you only need to take the TTF or OTF desktop font files and install them in Windows by double-clicking on the **.ttf** or **.otf** font files.

Using the fonts

To insert symbol characters from these fonts just use the regular **Write** > **Insert Object** > Ω tool, with the *More Symbols* option. When it opens, select the font at the top from the drop-down list:



Set up a keyboard shortcut for the Symbol tool!

If you insert symbols frequently it's a good idea to set up a keyboard shortcut for the Symbols tool. You can do this in **View** > **Program Options** > **Shortcuts**. The tool ("Insert Symbol Character") is in the **Insert** group there.

Keep the Symbol tool open for other characters

You can also keep the Symbol open while you are working to provide quick access to special characters. This is particularly useful if you have defined a custom list of characters – see further below in this topic for details.

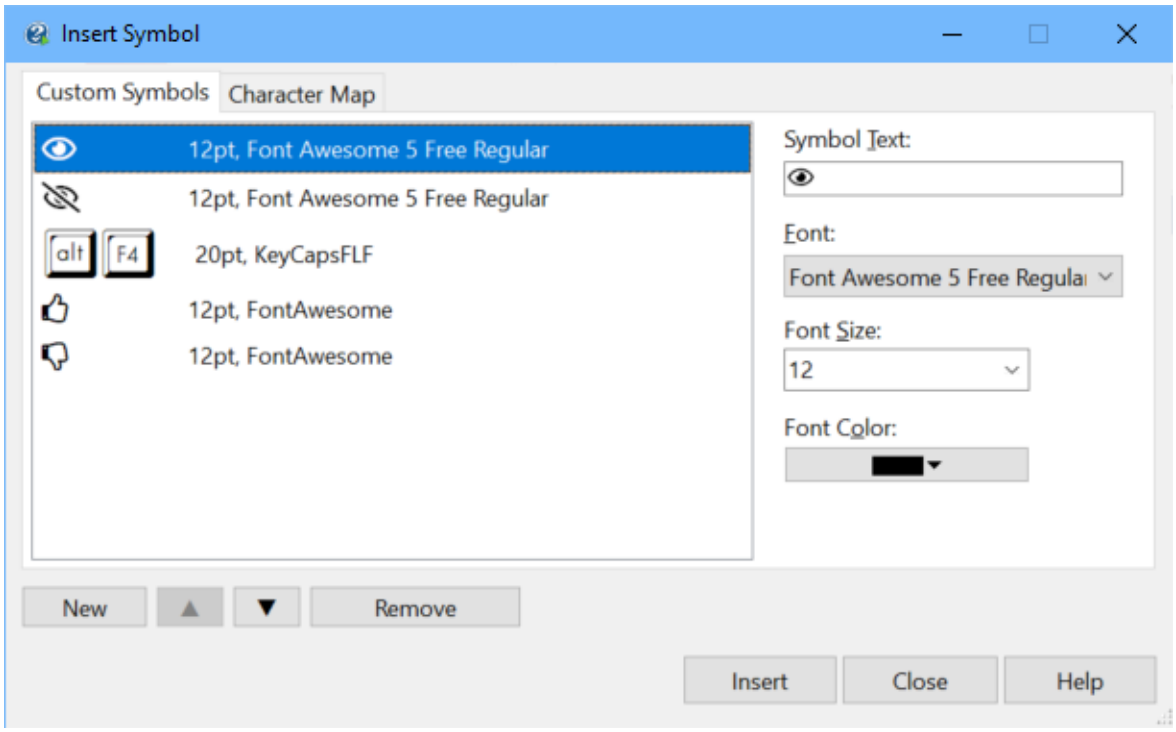
Locating the symbol character set

These dedicated symbol fonts have "reduced" character sets. The actual characters defined in the font only make up a tiny subset of the entire Unicode list. So when you select the font you will initially see the normal characters and symbols at the top of the list. You will usually need to scroll all the way down to the end to find the special symbols that are actually defined in the font.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Custom Symbols tab: Your symbols for reuse

The **Custom Symbols** tab in the **Insert Symbol** tool allows you to store a list of multiple symbols from multiple fonts for quick access. In addition to single symbols you can also store entire symbol sequences here.



Adding symbols to the custom list:

Select a symbol in the **Character Map** tab and click on the **Add to Custom** button at the bottom. Once it is in the custom list you can change the font, font size and font color in the **Custom Symbols** tab.

Creating sequences of symbols:

You can enter sequences of symbols in the **Symbol Text** field. There are a number of ways to do this, depending on the font and the symbols you are using. In all cases you can start by creating a new custom symbol entry with the **New** button on the right.

Fonts with normal characters:
Just type the symbols into the **Symbol Text** field via the keyboard. You can use the **New** button for this to create a new entry, then just type in the **Symbol Text** field.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Symbols for which you know the decimal ALT codes:
Click in the **Symbol Text** field, then hold down the **ALT** key and type in the **ALT** code on the numeric keypad of your computer. For example **ALT+0222** for the Þ symbol.

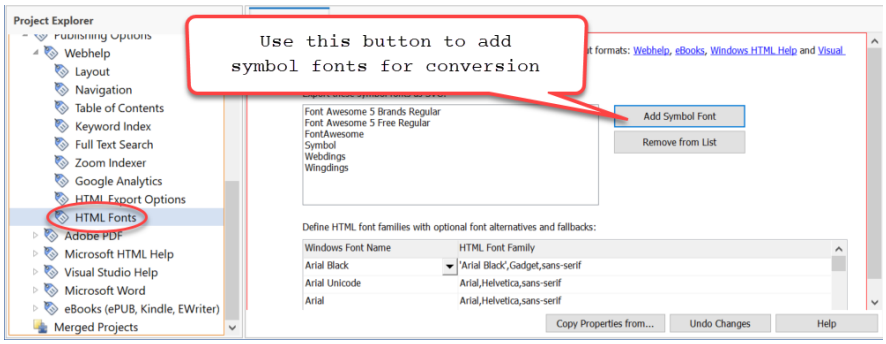
Special symbols you don't have the ALT codes for:
Add the symbols to the custom list via the **Character Map** tab using the **Add to Custom** button, as described further above. Then copy and paste the characters from the Symbol Text: field of one entry to another to build the sequence you want.

Converting symbol fonts to SVG for maximum reliability

Symbols and special characters are frequently a problem, because they often display incorrectly, or are blocked, on your users' computers. This applies in particular if you use dedicated symbol fonts like Font Awesome or Fontello (see further above). You can solve this problem by activating Help+Manual's ability to convert these symbol fonts to SVG graphics on publishing. This looks exactly the same as the symbol font characters and scales with the same quality, but unlike the font version it always works.

Converting to SVG in HTML-based formats (WebHelp, eWriter, ePub, Kindle and CHM)

Open your project in Help+Manual. Then in the Project Explorer on the left, navigate down to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Fonts**. The settings here are also used for CHM, eWriter, ePub, Kindle and Visual Studio Help.



Just hit the **Add Symbol Font** button and add the fonts you want to convert to SVG on publishing. That's it. You can also remove fonts, if necesary.

Converting to SVG in CHM / Microsoft HTML Help:

CHM has access to the same setting in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **HTML Fonts**. (These are the same settings, just accessed in a different location.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Converting to SVG in PDF output

PDF has the same setting for Symbol font SVG conversion, located in **Publishing Options > Adobe PDF > Font Embedding**:

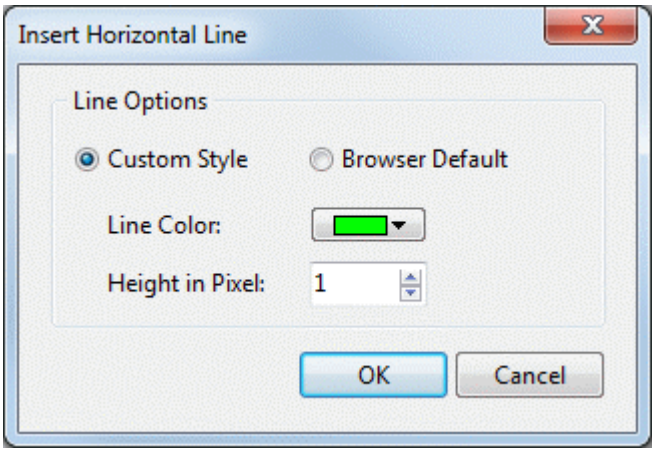
Word DOCX output

Word DOCX output does not currently support this feature. Symbol characters are exported to Word as regular font characters, not SVG, and depend on the fonts being available on the user's computer for correct display.

How to insert horizontal lines

Horizontal lines are inserted in their own paragraph and they are not formattable. They always occupy the entire width of the page or table cell in which they are inserted.

1. Click in the editor in the position where you want to insert the horizontal line.
2. Select **Write > Insert Object >** to insert the line. A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose the line thickness and color.



Selecting *Custom Style* allows you to define the thickness and color of the line yourself. In HTML output this styling information will be inserted as inline CSS in the **HR** line tag. If you prefer the line to be unstyled choose the *Browser Default* option. This will just insert a plain **HR** tag in HTML. This won't affect non-HTML formats like PDF and DOCX.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

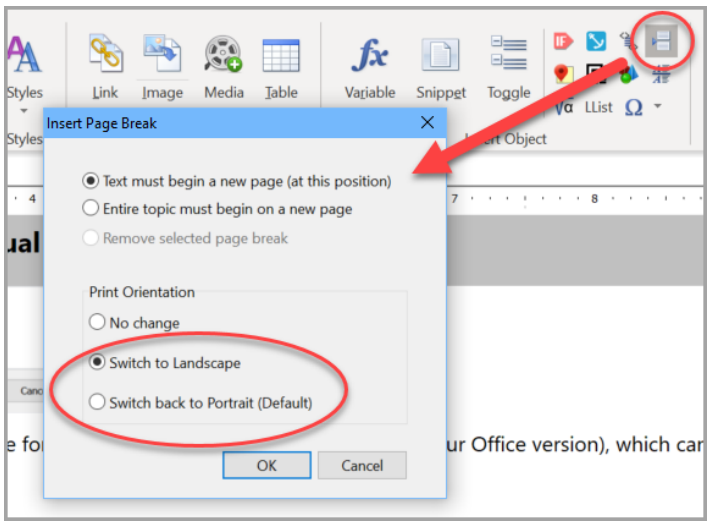
How to insert hard page breaks

Hard page breaks are only used in PDF, printed manuals and Word DOCX. They are ignored in all other formats.

1. Click in the editor in the position where you want to insert the hard page break.
2. Select **Write** > **Insert Object** >

Print orientation: Switch between Landscape & Portrait in PDF

When you insert a page break you can decide whether you want the orientation to switch between landscape and portrait mode in PDF and printed manuals. This enables you to use both landscape and portrait pages within a single document.



Orientation change in PDF and printed manuals only

Note that changing the page orientation is currently only available for PDF and printed manual output. If you want to change the page orientation in Word output you must do this in Word after publishing the Word file from Help+Manual.

See also:

Insert Special Character 1387 (Reference)

5.5.13 Using comments and bookmarks

Comments and bookmarks enable you to annotate your text and create jump markers so that you can quickly access topics or chapters that you need to edit frequently.

Comments and bookmarks are separate. You cannot jump to comments and you cannot add text to bookmarks, other than the label that is the bookmark name. However, they can be as-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

sociated with one another: You can set a configuration option 1267 that will automatically create a bookmark for every comment you enter.

Key Information
Comments and bookmarks are only an editing tool to make working on your project easier. They are not normally exported when you publish your project. However, you can export comments to PDF.

Automatically inserting bookmarks for comments

You can configure Help+Manual to automatically create a topic bookmark for every comment you insert. Open Program Options in the File menu and activate the option *Automatically manage topic bookmarks for every comment*. Then a bookmark with a pin in the Table of Contents will be added for every comment you create. These bookmarks can be viewed and accessed with the Bookmarks tool in the Project tab.

How to insert a comment

You can insert multiple comments in a single topic. If you wish you can also set a configuration option 1267 that automatically creates a bookmark for every new topic you enter.

1. Click in the position in the editor where you want to insert your comment. (You can insert comments both in the topics themselves and in the header.)
2. Select **Write** > **Insert Object** > in the Ribbon.
3. Enter your comment text.
4. Select *Show comment as icon only* if you want to hide its content inside the topic.

Including comments in PDF files as annotations for review

You can include your comments as annotations in PDF output, with a date range to include only comments from a specific time span. This can be a useful option when your project is being reviewed for comments by team members, editors and so on. Then they can see your annotations directly and add their own to the review PDF as well.

To include the comments in the PDF select the comments option displayed in the Publish dialog 798 when you export your PDF file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to insert and delete bookmarks

Bookmarks always link to the top of a topic and you can only manually enter one bookmark per topic. Automatic bookmarks generated for comments (see below) all also link to the top of the topic, even if there are multiple bookmarks for a single topic.

Bookmarked topics are identified with a red "pin" icon in the Table of Contents.

Inserting bookmarks:

1. Select the topic you want to bookmark.
2. Select *Bookmark* > *Bookmark Current Topic* in **Project** > **Project.**
3. Enter a descriptive name for the bookmark and click OK.

Deleting bookmarks:

Select *Bookmark* > *Remove Bookmarks* in **Project** > **Project,** then click on the bookmarks you want to remove.

Inserting automatic bookmarks for comments:

This is a configuration option. Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Editor** and check the option *Automatically manage bookmarks for every comment*. A new bookmark will then be inserted automatically for every comment you create, using the first few words of the comment as the bookmark identifier. See Program Options 1267 for details.

How to jump to bookmarks

- Select **Project** > **Project** > **Bookmark** and select the bookmark want to jump to from the list.

Note that when you jump to a comment or bookmark you are always jumping to the topic containing the bookmark. You cannot jump to the position of a comment within the topic, even if the bookmark was inserted automatically when you created the comment.

How to edit comments

- Double-click on the comment in the editor. If only the pin icon is displayed you must double-click on the lower half of the icon.

OR:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Right-click on the comment in the editor and select *Edit*. Again, note that the clickable area is in the lower half of the pin icon.

Changing the comment's text style:

The appearance of the text in the comment controlled by the standard *Comment* style, which you can edit by selecting **Write** > **Styles** > **Edit Styles.** This is a special style that has quite limited features compared to most other styles. See Caption and comment styles 305 for details on this.

Storing text in comments

You can insert the text from comment a into your topic by right-clicking on it in the editor and selecting *Convert to plain text*. You can "abuse" this feature to use comments as a store for text that you may or may not want to include in your topics – for example for text that is not yet finalized. When you want to insert it just convert the comment to plain text.

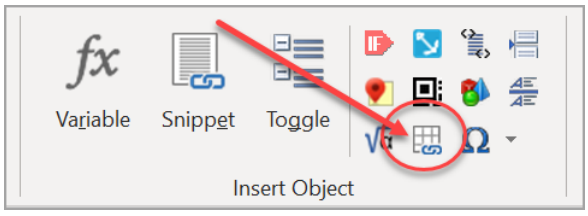
See also:

Graphic caption and comment styles 305

5.5.14 Mini-TOC and Link lists

The Link List tool can automatically create a variety of different lists of hyperlinks to topics and insert them in your topic. These lists are dynamic. This means that they are not created when you insert them, but every time you publish your project. This means that the list is always up to date at the time of publishing.

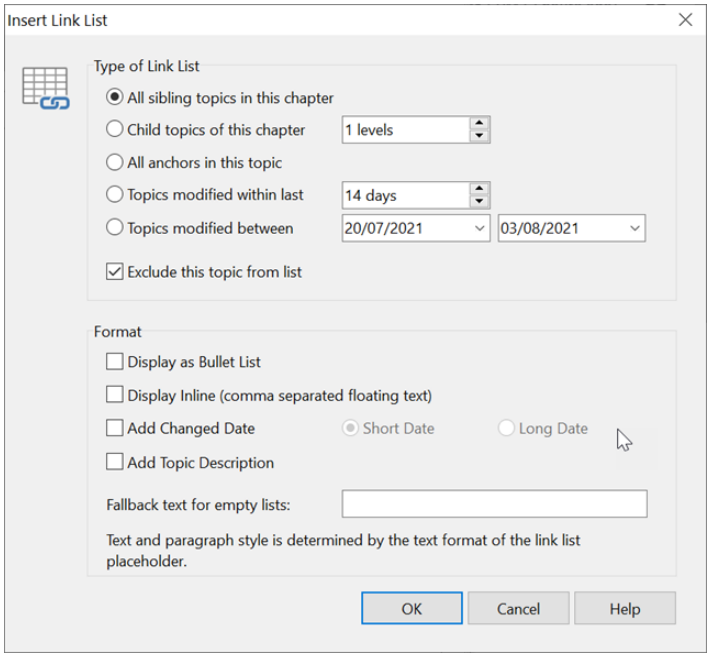
The tool is located in the *Insert Object* section at the right end of the **Write** tab:



How to use the Link List tool

Opening the tool displays this dialog:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Just select the list type (see further below for a reference) and configure your settings:

Dialog settings:

See further below in this topic for a description of the link list types.

Exclude this topic: The current topic is not included in the link list.

Bullet list: Displays the list as a bulleted list. Otherwise it will just be displayed as a series of paragraphs.

Inline: Displays links in a single paragraph, separated by commas.

Changed date: Includes the modification date of the referenced topics, in the selected format.

Topic description: Adds the description of the current topic, if available. This is the optional text that you can enter in the *Description:* box in the Topic Options tab, to the left of the topic editor.

Note that the description is not included if you choose the *Inline* link format.

Fallback text: If a link list happens to be empty, because no links qualify for the specified criteria, this text is inserted instead.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The list is inserted as a placeholder!

Note that the list is not generated when you insert it. You will only see a placeholder in the topic editor. The actual list is generated when you publish your project so that the topics it contains are always up to date.

List types and list formatting

Available list types:

Siblings of this chapter:	Links to all the topics in the current chapter on the same level as the topic in which you are inserting the list. You will generally want to exclude the current topic from this list.
Sub-topics of this chapter:	Includes all the sub-TOC-entries of the current topic, if there are any.
Anchors within this topic:	Links to all anchors in the same topic and creates a Mini-TOC for navigation within the topic. The caption of the link will be all text from the corresponding anchor to the end of the anchor paragraph.
Topics modified within last:	All the topics that have been modified/edited within the last X days. You need to specify the number of days.
Topics modified between:	All topics modified/edited between two specified dates.

List formatting:

The formatting of the list is generated automatically and based on the formatting of the placeholder. The easiest way to achieve this is to apply a paragraph style to the placeholder. Then the list will be formatted with that style. Otherwise just select the placeholder and then format it with the *Font* and *Paragraph* dialogs in the **Write** tab.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Examples

(A) Link list with all siblings in this chapter, excluding self, no date:

Recently changed topics 217
Topic Options 218
Topic History - Previous Versions 220
Word and Character Count 223
Writing and formatting text 223
The paragraph end mark 228
Topic Headers 229
Selecting text and content 232
Copying, cutting and pasting 233
Searching and replacing 235
Spell checking 238
Special characters, lines and breaks 245
Using comments and bookmarks 253
Inserting QR codes 262
Printing topics 263
Editing XML source code 264

(B) Recently changed topics in the entire project, short date:

(C) Topics changed between two specific dates in entire project, bullet list, long date:

- Table Counters, Captions and CSS 535 (Sunday, January 5, 2020)
- Adobe PDF and printed manuals 677 (Saturday, January 4, 2020)
- Special Characters 1387 (Friday, January 3, 2020)
- Featured images for title pages 118 (Thursday, December 19, 2019)
- CHM in Asian Languages 629 (Thursday, December 19, 2019)
- The User Interface 43 (Thursday, December 12, 2019)
- Microsoft HTML Help 1451 (Thursday, November 28, 2019)
- Managing modules in the TOC 1103 (Thursday, November 28, 2019)
- Step 4: Synchronize the new version 1251 (Thursday, November 28, 2019)
- Link lists and See Also links 430 (Wednesday, November 27, 2019)
- The Formula Editor 1232 (Thursday, November 7, 2019)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Screen Capture 1316 (Thursday, November 7, 2019)
- Microsoft help compilers 632 (Thursday, November 7, 2019)
- Selecting and formatting cells and tables 525 (Thursday, October 31, 2019)
- Translation-friendly Tidy XML 1198 (Thursday, October 31, 2019)

(D) Topics changed in entire project between January 1 and October 31, 2019, bullet list, long date:

- Translation-friendly Tidy XML 1198 (Thursday, October 31, 2019)
- Selecting and formatting cells and tables 525 (Thursday, October 31, 2019)
- Reference 1261 (Tuesday, October 22, 2019)
- Importing data 90 (Tuesday, May 14, 2019)
- Links to help from your application 897 (Tuesday, May 14, 2019)
- Creating context-sensitive topics 895 (Tuesday, May 14, 2019)
- Getting help 65 (Tuesday, May 14, 2019)
- Editing topics 94 (Tuesday, May 14, 2019)
- Converting text to tables 531 (Tuesday, March 19, 2019)
- About tables 519 (Tuesday, March 19, 2019)
- Editing and formatting links 455 (Thursday, March 7, 2019)
- Styling imported formatted text 1162 (Wednesday, February 13, 2019)

(E) Link list with all siblings in this chapter, excluding self, as numbered list:

1. Recently changed topics 217
2. Topic Options 218
3. Topic History - Previous Versions 220
4. Word and Character Count 223
5. Writing and formatting text 223
6. The paragraph end mark 228
7. Topic Headers 229
8. Selecting text and content 232
9. Copying, cutting and pasting 233
10. Searching and replacing 235
11. Spell checking 238
12. Special characters, lines and breaks 245

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

13. Using comments and bookmarks 253
14. Inserting QR codes 262
15. Printing topics 263
16. Editing XML source code 264

(F) Link list with all siblings in this chapter, as bullet list/tree, *embedded in another bullet list*:

- This is the static first entry of the list
  - Here are some recently changed topics:
    - Recently changed topics 217
    - Topic Options 218
    - Topic History - Previous Versions 220
    - Word and Character Count 223
    - Writing and formatting text 223
    - The paragraph end mark 228
    - Topic Headers 229
    - Selecting text and content 232
    - Copying, cutting and pasting 233
    - Searching and replacing 235
    - Spell checking 238
    - Special characters, lines and breaks 245
    - Using comments and bookmarks 253
    - Mini-TOC and Link lists 256
    - Inserting QR codes 262
    - Printing topics 263
    - Editing XML source code 264
- The static list continues here

For experts: HTML formatting

Formatting with your own CSS in HTML output

When you publish to HTML-based formats topic links in link lists have an additional CSS class **`hmlinklistitem`**. This is added to the standard **`topiclink`** class, so that topic links in link lists have the class attribute **`class="topiclink hmlinklistitem"`**. You can use this to format topic links in link lists differently from other topic links.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.5.15 Inserting QR codes

The QR Code Tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** inserts a graphical QR code containing text or hyperlinks. These can be scanned by QR code readers in smartphones with cameras, which will then display the text, open the link in phone's browser or create an email with the phone's mail client. This can be very useful in printed material, enabling you to provide live links to web pages or for feedback or a way of directly copying text to the growing number of users with smartphones.

For example, the first QR code below links to a web page, the second one sends an email:

How to insert a QR code in a topic

1. Click in the topic and select the QR Code Tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**.
2. Enter the URL or text you want to encode in the editing box. You must enter the **`http://`** prefix for web links and the **`mailto:`** prefix for email addresses, otherwise they won't work in most QR code readers.

See the QR code tool reference 1381 for details of the settings and controls.

Doing more with QR codes: public APIs

A number of enterprising online companies operates servers with QR code APIs (application programming interfaces) for a wide range of functions. You can use them to create QR codes that will send an SMS, dial a phone number, save contact details to a vCard, save calendar entries and much more. This works by taking the user to the company's server and then performing a function.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you search online you will find quite a lot of these service providers. Make sure that they are trustworthy before using them, however: Since you will be routing your users via the provider's servers, you need to be sure what you are getting them into!

5.5.16 Printing topics

You can print individual topics with the Print Topic tool in **Project > Manage Topics.** The advantage of this over Print User Manual function (File menu menu) is that this function only prints the selected topic or topics. Print User Manual uses a PDF print manual template, which always includes additional elements like the cover and back page, table of contents, index and so on, even when you only print one or more selected topics.

See PDF and Printed Manuals 785 for more details on using these other functions.

How to print the current topic

1. Select the topic you want to print by clicking on it in the TOC.
2. Select the Print Topic tool in **Project > Manage Topics > File.**
3. Select your printer and other settings in the print menu, then select OK to print.

How to print multiple topics

To print multiple topics you need to use the Print User Manual function (File menu menu). If you frequently want to print multiple topics you can set up a special print manual template 803 for this with all the sections except the Topics section disabled. Then you just select this template in the Print User Manual dialog before printing.

1. Select the topics you want to print by clicking on them in the TOC, using *Ctrl+Click* to select topics out of order and *SHIFT+Click* to select continuous blocks of topics.
2. Select the File menu and click on *Print User Manual*.
3. Select the *Selected topics* option in the *Include Options:* box.
4. Select your printer and other settings in the print menu, then select OK to print.

See Printing user manuals 800 for full details on using the Print User Manual function.

See also:

PDF and Printed Manuals 785
Printing user manuals 800

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.5.17 Editing XML source code

As a normal documentation author you do not need to know anything about Help+Manual's XML source code to get all the benefits from using Help+Manual. Familiarity with XML is really only needed for users who want to generate their topic files from their own applications automatically in XML format and for performing complex search and replace operations directly on your project files with an external editor.

If you are used to editing HTML pages you might feel tempted to try to edit the XML code in the XML Source tab to tweak your topic formatting. Because of the absolute strictness of XML, doing this will be more trouble than it is worth in most cases. It is best to use this tab just as a reference when you need to know how your topic formatting is defined in the XML source.

Key Information
XML editing is for experts only. Although XML looks a little like HTML it is actually very different and does not tolerate even the smallest syntax error.

Editing in the XML Source tab

The XML Source tab is a text editor with syntax highlighting. You can copy, cut and paste and both search and spell-checking are supported (right-click in the XML editor window for options).

If you want you can also copy the entire contents of the XML Source to a separate file – this is effectively the same as exporting the topic to an external XML file with Topics > Save Topic to File 365.

You can only edit individual topics in the XML Source tab. To perform global search and replace operations you must edit the source files of your project directly with an external editor capable of performing search and replace operations on multiple files. If you select another topic directly while the XML Source tab is active you will be returned to the Page Editor tab automatically.

Help+Manual's XML format is open and fully documented. Full documentation is available in the file **`Helpman_XML_ref.chm`** which you can find in the Help+Manual program directory.

Editing the XML project files directly

If you use Help+Manual Professional you can save your projects in as uncompressed XML files with an `.hmxp` file as the main project file (this file is also an XML file).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you observe the syntax rules of the Help+Manual XML Language you can edit these files directly, either with a normal text editor or with a specialized XML editor. If you have an editor that supports multiple-file search and replace you can also perform search and replace operations on your entire project that are not possible directly in Help+Manual itself. For example, you can use an editor that supports regular expressions to perform very complex manipulations on the text and the source code.

WARNING: Don't try to edit XML files in word processors like MS Word!

When you save XML files with a word processor they may change the source code and make it unusable in Help+Manual. Some versions of Word will actually change the source code Microsoft's own version of XML. You should always use either a normal text editor or a source code or dedicated XML editor.

Supported XML formats

Help+Manual can only process XML files conforming to the Help+Manual XML Language. These can be produced by Help+Manual itself or generated by other programs that conform to the language schema specifications. Documentation of the Help+Manual XML Language can be found in the Help+Manual program directory (**`Helpman_XML_ref.chm`**). Currently you cannot export or import any other XML formats.

See also:

XML and XML editing 1137

5.6 Re-using content with snippets

The **Snippet** tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** enables you to insert the contents of another topic, a Help+Manual XML file or PDF pages 272 at the cursor position.

You can insert topics and files from the current project, from other Help+Manual projects (there are some restrictions in the Basic version of H+M) and directly from Help+Manual XML files. This means that you can build up a library of reusable content that you can access very easily.

You can insert topic and XML snippets in two different modes: Copy and Link. Copy mode is like normal Copy & Paste. It pastes the contents of the topic or file at the cursor position and you can then edit it. Link mode creates a live link to the snippet file. To edit the snippet you must then edit the original topic or file, but then it updates automatically in all the places where you have inserted it, even if you are using it in multiple projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Productivity Tip
If you send your project for translation remember to include any linked external snippet files you have referenced, otherwise the translator won't see them!

Snippet storage locations

Rather than using snippets from many locations it is better to store all your snippet files in a common location, for example in a folder inside your project folder. Then add this folder to your project search path. This will make them easier to manage, particularly if you ever need to move your project or have it translated. Alternatively, you can also store them in a Style Repository or their own project. See further below for details on this.

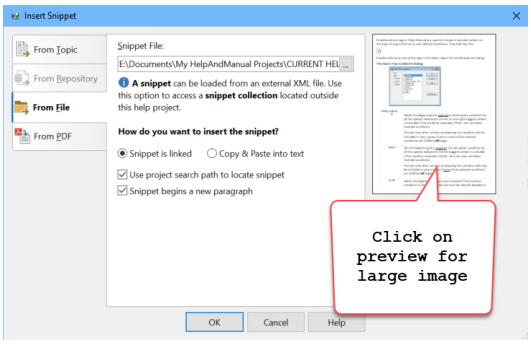
Inserting topics and XML files as snippets

You can insert topics and XML files into your current topic at the cursor position. These topics can be inserted in Copy mode or Link mode. In Link mode the snippet content updates automatically when the source topic or XML file is edited.

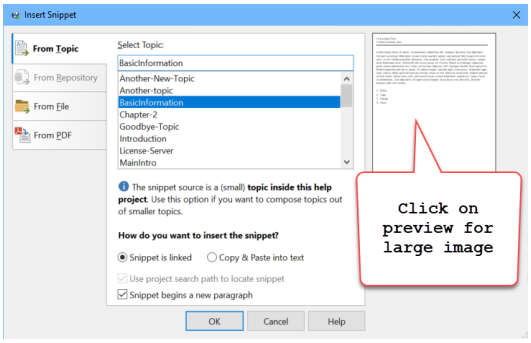
The topics can be in your current project, another Help+Manual project or a directory of H+M XML files.

Procedure

1. Click in your topic where you want to insert the snippet.
2. Select the Insert Snippet tool in **Write** > **Insert Object.**
3. Choose *From Topic* to insert a topic from the current project or *From File* to insert an external H+M XML file or a topic from another project.
4. Select the topic or file you want to insert and click on **OK** to insert it.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Options:

- *Copy & Paste* inserts a copy of the file contents that you can then edit.
- *Linked* creates a live link to the file – changes in the source file or topic are updated automatically.
- *Snippet begins a new paragraph* inserts the snippet as a new paragraph. Turn this off to insert the snippet text inline inside an existing paragraph. If the snippet contains paragraphs they will also be inserted, of course!
- *Use project search path to locate snippet* adds the location of the snippet file to the project search path 1405. If you deselect it the absolute path to the snippet is stored with the snippet.

Inserting snippets from a style repository

A style repository is a special kind of Help+Manual project that is used to share styles and snippets between multiple projects. Before using a style repository you need to create it from a Help+Manual project and link it to your current project. See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for instructions.

To insert snippets from a style repository just select the *From Repository* option in the Insert Snippet dialog and then select the topic ID of the snippet you want to insert. All the other options are the same as inserting snippets from topic files in the current project.

The advantage of a style repository is that its styles are also merged with those of your project, so that the styles used for the snippets in the style repository project are also available for use in the project where you are inserting the snippet.

Exporting selected text and topics as snippet files

You can export selected text or the current topic to an external XML file, for example for use as a snippet in a snippet directory.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Export the entire topic:

1. Select the topic you want to export in the Project Explorer (TOC or Topic Files).
2. Select *File* > *Save Topic to File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and choose the save location.

Export selected text:

1. Select text in the editor – the text can include anything that a topic can contain, i.e. also images, tables, etc.
2. Select *File* > *Save Snippet* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and choose a save location and a filename.

If you save in the uncompressed XML format you can also copy the XML files directly from your project directory to other locations in Windows Explorer (Professional and Floating license versions only).

Managing and organizing snippets

You can insert snippets from any location. However, if you use snippets from many locations your linked snippets will not be displayed if you move your project or send it to someone by email. You can solve this problem by storing your snippet files together with your project in a special directory.

1. Create a folder for your snippets in a location where you can easily transport it together with your project folder.
2. Add the path to the snippets folder to your Project Search Path in your project's *Configuration* > *Common* Properties settings.
3. When you insert a snippet select the *Use project search path to locate snippet* option to tell Help+Manual to look for the snippet files in the folders listed in the Project Search Path.

When you do this you can always move your snippets folders to any location you like. To get Help+Manual to find the snippets you just need to add the new location to your project search path 1405.

Managing snippets in a 'snippet project'

By far the easiest way to manage snippets is in a 'snippet project', which is just a normal Help+Manual project saved in uncompressed XML 126 (.hmxp) mode. You then insert your

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

snippets by selecting the XML topic files from the `/Topics` sub-folder of this snippet project. Help+Manual topic files can be used as snippets without restrictions.

Add your styles to the snippet project!

After creating your snippet project it's a good idea to add the paragraph and text styles used in your snippets to the snippet project. You should do this before adding any snippets to the snippet project – if you add them later the styles may not be used properly.

1. Select **Styles** > **Edit Styles** in the **Write** tab.
2. Select *Copy Styles From...* and then select your main Help+Manual project (i.e. the project in which you are going to use the snippets). This will replace all the styles in the snippet project with those from your main project.

Adding new snippets to a snippet project

- Just create a new topic or topic file in the snippet project, just as you would in any other Help+Manual project.

Adding existing snippets to a snippet project

- Move the XML snippet files to the `/Topics` folder of your snippets project in Windows Explorer.

Saving snippets to a snippet project from another project

- Create the snippet as you would normally and save it in the `/Topics` folder of your snippets project.

When you do this you can always move your snippets folders to any location you like. To get Help+Manual to find the snippets you just need to add the new location to your project search path 1405.

Managing snippets in a style repository

You can also manage snippets in special Help+Manual projects called "style repositories". When a style repository is linked to your project all the snippets it contains are automatically displayed for selection in the Insert Snippet dialog.

- In addition to direct access to the snippets, the advantage of a style repository over a normal snippet project is that its styles are merged into the styles of your current project. The snippets using the styles defined in the repository are thus automatically formatted correctly because their styles are directly available.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- The disadvantage of a style repository is that you can only link one repository with any project. However, you can also use both a linked style repository and additional manually-created snippet projects (see above).

See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for full details on how to create style repositories and register and link them to your projects.

Excluding the snippets source files from your published output

When you use topic files from your current project as snippets you will generally want to exclude the source files from your published output. If you don't do this these files will be published and the user will able to find them with Search in formats like HTML Help and WebHelp.

1. Select the entry of the topic file in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer.
2. In **Project** > **Manage Topics** select *Change* > *Include in Builds* and deselect all build options. This will ensure that these topics will never be included when you publish your project.

This is not necessary for snippets inserted from other projects or external XML files, of course!

Editing the contents of snippet files

There are three ways to edit the content of external snippet files in Help+Manual. Which you use depends on whether the snippet contains a small or large amount of text. However, by far the easiest way to manage and edit snippets is to organize them in a 'snippet project' of their own, for which Help+Manual Professional is required (see further above on this page for more details). In addition to this, you can also manage snippets in a style repository project 1076.

Create a snippet project (Professional and Floating license versions only):

See the instructions further above on this page for more details on this.

- Create a new Help+Manual project and save it in an empty folder in uncompressed XML 126 (HMXP) mode. Note that this save option is only available in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual.
- Create new snippet files by creating new topics in the snippet project, or create the snippets in another project and save them to the /Topics folder of the snippets project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Add existing snippet files to the 'snippet project' by moving their XML files to the `/Topics` sub-folder in the snippet project folder. The topics will then appear in the Topic Files section of the snippet project. You can create TOC entries for them for easier organization by dragging the topic files into the snippet project TOC from the Topic Files section.

Create a style repository project (Professional and Floating license versions only):

In addition to "normal" snippet projects you can also manage snippets in a "style repository", which is a special kind of Help+Manual project for managing reusable topics and styles. See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for full details on this.

Editing small snippets stored as individual files:

1. Press ENTER a couple of times to create some space in the current topic.
2. Insert the snippet file you want to edit in Copy & Paste mode (see above) and make the necessary changes.
3. Select the edited text and export it as a snippet, overwriting the original snippet file (see above).

Editing larger snippets stored as individual files:

1. Create an empty dummy topic in the TOC.
2. Select *File* > *Load Topic from File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and load the snippet file.
3. Edit the content and then select *File* > *Save Topic to File* and overwrite the original snippet file.

Hyperlinks to anchors in linked snippets

If a linked snippet contains an anchor (jump target) you can link to it from other topics. However, since the snippet file is not really inserted in the current topic you cannot select the anchor from the drop-down list next to the *Target:* field in the Insert Hyperlink 1352 dialog. You need to enter the anchor name manually.

1. Make a note of the name of the anchor you want to link to.
2. Create a normal hyperlink to the topic containing the linked snippet.
3. Double-click on the hyperlink to edit it and type in the name of the anchor in the drop-down list box next to the *Target:* field.
4. Publish your project and test the link to make sure that it works.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You won't have this problem with snippets inserted in Copy mode because the text containing the anchor is inserted in the topic directly.

Checking where a snippet topic is used

You can use the Find Referrers function to check where a topic file is being used as a linked snippet. You can also use the same function to find the location of the linked snippet topic files inserted in the current topic.

This only works for topic files used as snippets in the current project. It won't work across multiple projects or for XML files that are not part of projects.

1. In the Project Explorer select the topic file – either a file containing a linked snippet or a file that you think is being used as a linked snippet.
2. Select *Find* > *Find Referrers* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** (or just right-click and select *Find Referrers*).
3. The sources of linked snippets in the topic are shown as incoming links. Topics in which the topic is used as a linked snippet are shown as outgoing links.

Keywords in snippets

If snippet files are H+M topic files containing index keywords the keywords are imported when you use Link mode. A-keywords are not supported in snippets, however.

Keywords are not imported with snippets in Copy & Paste mode. Small snippets saved from selected text do not include keywords – that is only possible when you save an entire topic as a snippet.

See also:

Multiple TOC entries for one topic 371
Snippets and multiple TOC references 1527
Topic include options 989
Anchors - jump targets 415

5.6.1 PDF Snippets

As of Help+Manual 9, you can now insert PDF files as snippets. This function is also available in Print Manual Designer 805 tool for editing your PDF templates, where you can insert PDF pages your PDF template sections.

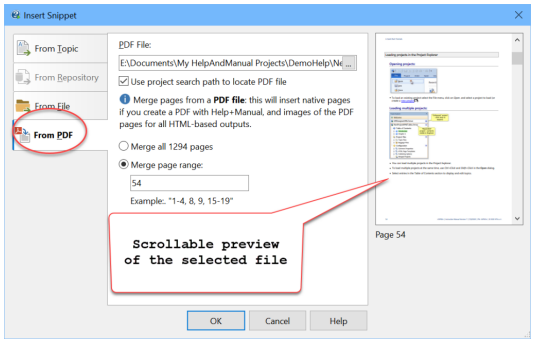
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How PDF snippets are inserted

When you publish to PDF, PDF snippets are inserted as native PDF pages. In HTML formats they are inserted as graphics.

Inserting PDF snippets

The option is available in the **From PDF** tab in the Insert Snippet dialog:



Procedure

1. Click in the topic editor where you want to insert the snippet and select the Snippet Tool.
2. Choose From PDF on the left and navigate to the PDF file with the ... browse button.
3. Choose to insert all the PDF pages or just a page range. Entering a single page number inserts a single page.

5.7 Text Formatting and Styles

Text formatting in Help+Manual works in the same way as in a modern word processor, supporting both manual formatting and formatting with styles. Styles give you full control over your formatting. Changing your style definitions reformats all text formatted with your styles. Once you have got this set up it will save you many hours of unnecessary work. We strongly recommend that you learn about styles and use them!

If you are not familiar with styles please study the chapter Dynamic Styles 1482 in the Reference section before getting started.

Share stylesheets across multiple projects with style repositories

If you manage multiple projects that all need to look the same, check out Help+Manual's powerful style repositories. They allow you to share stylesheets between multiple projects

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

and edit the styles for all of them in the same central location. See the Working with Style Repositories 1076 chapter for details!

See also:

Dynamic Styles 1482 (Reference)

5.7.1 Formatting text manually

Manual formatting in Help+Manual works exactly as it does in a modern word processor. You apply formatting to text manually with the tools in the **Write** tab of the Ribbon, where you can select formatting options for **Font**, **Paragraph** and **Borders and Background**.

Generally, however, you should use styles for formatting your text. Styles are more efficient, create uniform-looking documents and enable you to reformat your entire project quickly just by changing your style definitions. When you are working on a project in a team styles are essential for uniformly-formatted documents

Productivity Tip
You can assign keyboard shortcuts to most manual formatting tools. Select *View* > *Program Options* > *Keyboard Shortcuts* to access the settings.

How to apply manual formatting to text in the editor

There are two ways to apply formatting manually: Select a formatting option and start typing, or select text and then apply a formatting option.

Select a formatting option and start typing:

If you select a formatting option without selecting text first the formatting options you select will apply to all the text you type from that point onwards (unless you move the cursor again). If you press **Enter** to create a new paragraph after applying formatting like this the new paragraph will also have all the formatting attributes you have just applied.

Select text and then apply a formatting option:

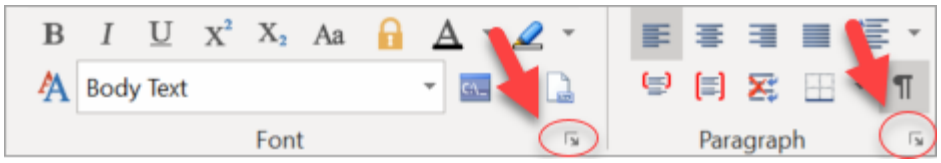
If you select text in the editor and then select formatting options the options will be applied to the selected text and paragraphs. If you then place the cursor directly after the formatted text any new text you type in that position will also have the formatting.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Manual formatting tools

To see what a formatting tool does just position the mouse over it for a second or two and a description will be displayed.

The Font and Paragraph tools:



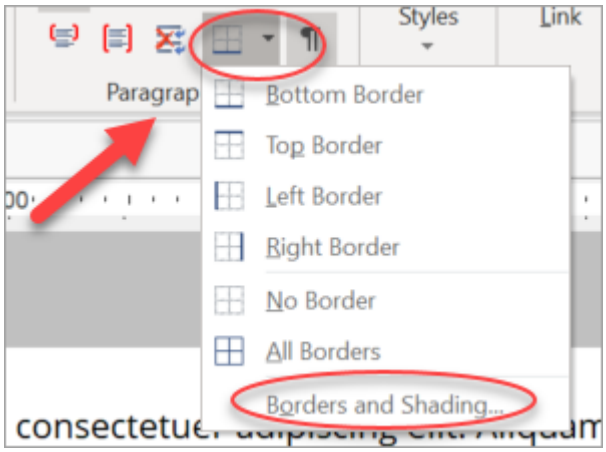
The tools in the **Font** and **Paragraph** groups of the **Write** tab all apply formatting manually in the current position. If text is selected the options are applied to the selected text. If no text is selected the options apply from the cursor position onwards when you start typing.

For more detailed formatting settings you can display the Font 1329, Paragraph 1336 and Borders and Background 1339 dialogs. To display them just click on the little arrow icons at the bottom right of the **Font** and **Paragraph** groups.

Quick access to Paragraph tool:

Right-click in the ruler above the main editor window and select Paragraph to open the paragraph tool. You can also access the program settings for the editor here.

The Borders and Background tool:

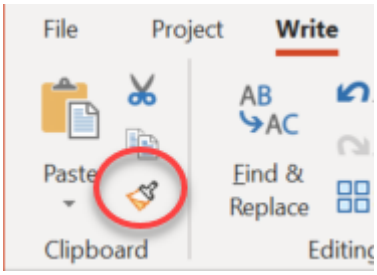


This tool is included in the **Paragraph** group in the **Write** tab. You can display a full dialog of options by clicking on the little arrow next to the Border Tool.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using the Format Painter tool

Use the *Format Painter* tool in the **Clipboard** group (**Write** and **Project** tabs) to copy formatting. The Format Painter works in the same way as similar tools in Word processors.



1. Select text or click in the paragraph whose formatting you want to copy, then click once to use the painter once, or double-click to turn on the painter for multiple use. The mouse pointer changes to a painter symbol.
2. Click in the paragraph or select the text that you want to apply the formatting to.
3. Press ESC or click on the Format Painter tool again to turn it off if necessary.

Converting text to a table

You can convert selected paragraphs to a table. Columns will be created automatically at tab characters in the text. Note that you cannot convert text to a table inside another table.

Context menu: Direct conversion without a dialog

Right-click on the selected text and select *Convert text to a Table* in the context menu. This uses the default table format directly. You can configure the table afterwards with the **Properties** tool in the **Table** tab.

Table tool: Configure the table with a dialog

Select the paragraphs you want to convert and then select the **Table** tool in the **Write** or **Table** tab. Before the table is created the table properties dialog is displayed with which you can configure all table attributes except the number of columns and rows. Those are based on the selected paragraphs and the tab characters they contain.

See also:

Formatting text with styles 292
The Format Menu 1334 (Reference)
Syntax highlighting for program code 310

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.7.2 Quick guide to using styles

If you are new to using styles you should take a little time to learn how to use them. Used properly, dynamic styles give you full control over your project's formatting, enabling you to change the appearance and layout in seconds at any time.

You should define a style for each paragraph type and text format that you plan to use frequently. You can do this as you work and you can change and reorganize your styles whenever you like.

For maximum efficiency only use manual formatting for formats that you are not going to use again. If you later find you want to use the formatting as a style you can always turn it into a style later.

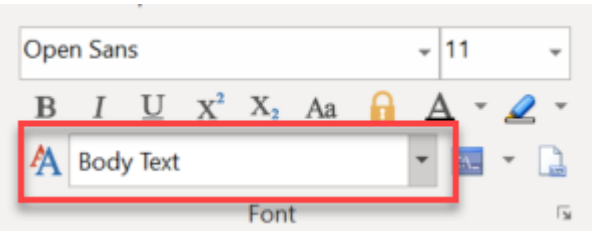
Productivity Tip
You can quickly turn manual formatting into a style by clicking in the formatted text and then selecting *Write* > *Styles* > *Create Style from Selection*.

Share stylesheets across multiple projects with style repositories

If you manage multiple projects that all need to look the same, check out Help+Manual's powerful style repositories. They allow you to share stylesheets between multiple projects and edit the styles for all of them in the same central location. See the Working with Style Repositories 1076 chapter for details!

Applying styles

- To apply a style to a full paragraph just click in the paragraph and select the style in the style selector. Note that this will only work if the paragraph has not been formatted manually. If it has, you must select the entire paragraph to reset the manual formatting with a style.



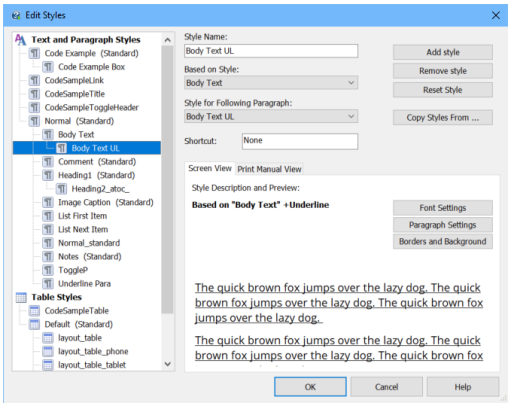
- To apply a style to text select the text and then select the style in the style selector.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **Pre-formatted/manually formatted text:** If you have imported formatted text from other sources you must select it to be able apply styles to it, otherwise the imported formatting has priority – it is treated as manual formatting. After applying a style you just need to click in the paragraph and select a different style to change the style.

Changing an existing style

1. Click in a paragraph or in text formatted with the style you want to change (the style name will be displayed in the style selector in **Write** > **Font**).
2. Select *Styles* > *Edit Style* in the **Write** tab. The style at the cursor is selected for editing automatically.



3. Select *Font Settings*, *Paragraph Settings* and *Borders and Background* to change the style attributes.
4. Define different settings for Print View (PDF, DOCX, printed manuals) and Help View (electronic formats).
5. Define keyboard shortcuts for styles you want to use frequently.

All text formatted with the styles you edit will be changed immediately.

Note that you can set different attributes for electronic help formats (*Help View* tab) and print-style help formats (*Print View* tab). You can also switch between print and help view in the Help+Manual editor by clicking on the *Screen/Print* switch in the status bar below the editor. See Multiple style sets 302 for details.

Defining a new style

1. Select *Styles* > *Edit Style* in the **Write** tab, then select *Add Style* to define a new style.
2. Enter a name for the style and then set its paragraph and font attributes.
3. Don't forget to define a keyboard shortcut for styles that you want to use frequently. This will speed up your work a lot!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that you can set different attributes for electronic help formats (*Help View* tab) and print-style help formats (*Print View* tab). You can also switch between print and help view in the Help+Manual editor by clicking on the *Screen/Print* switch in the status bar below the editor. See Multiple style sets 302 for details.

Changing the formatting in your entire project

If you use styles you can change the formatting in your entire project just by changing the definitions of your styles. This is particularly powerful with the *Normal* style, which is usually the main style used for all body text paragraphs. In addition to this, you will usually base all your other styles on *Normal*, including your heading styles. If you organize your styles like this you can change the font and formatting in your entire project just by editing *Normal*.

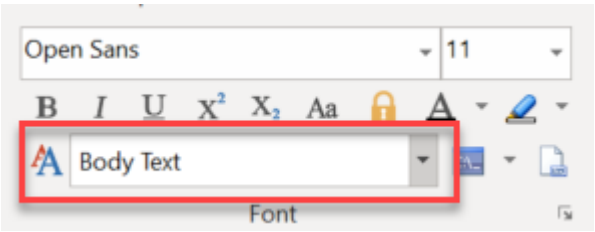
- Follow the instructions above to edit the *Normal* style.
- If you change the font of *Normal* the font will change in all text formatted with *Normal* and with styles based on *Normal*, including heading styles. The font will only not change in those styles in which the font has been changed so that it is not the same as *Normal*.
- All the paragraph, background and border attributes of *Normal* are also "inherited" in the same way by all the other styles based on *Normal*.

See also:

Dynamic Styles 1482 (Reference)

5.7.3 Style display in the Toolbar

The style selector in the Ribbon Toolbar functions as an indicator to identify the style of the current text or paragraph. It displays the paragraph and/or text style at the current cursor position or of the currently selected text. For example, in the screenshot below, the cursor is in a paragraph formatted with a style called *Body Text:*



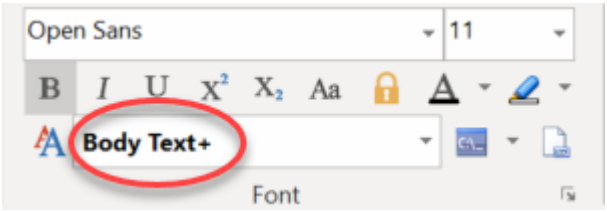
Share stylesheets across multiple projects with style repositories

If you manage multiple projects that all need to look the same, check out Help+Manual's powerful style repositories. They allow you to share stylesheets between multiple projects and edit the styles for all of them in the same central location. See the Working with Style Repositories 1076 chapter for details!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Display for manually-formatted text and text styles

If the cursor or selection is at a position containing manually-applied formatting the style selector shows the name of the style in bold with a **+** sign after it, to indicate additional formatting. For example, here the cursor is in text formatted in bold in a paragraph formatted with the *Normal* style:



Here the cursor is positioned in text with formatting different to the style.

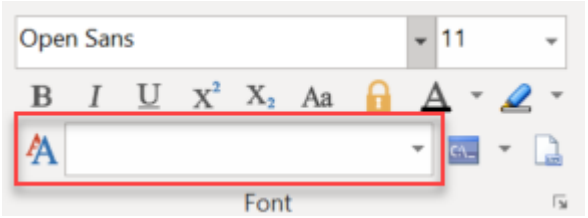
The style name is shown as "**Normal+**" when the cursor is in manually-formatted text . In the rest of the text of the paragraph the style selector display will be "Normal", without the bold highlight and the + sign.

The bold **Stylename+** display is also shown when the cursor is in text within a paragraph formatted with a text style, because this also counts as additional formatting.

Display for no style and imported styles

No style:

If the current paragraph has no style the style selector display will be empty:



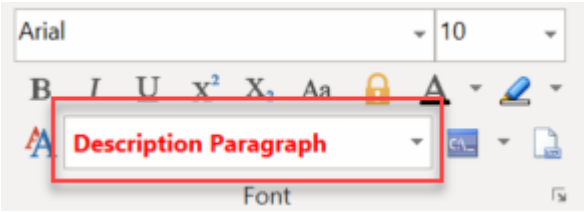
The style selector is empty when the current text has no style.

The style display is also empty when you paste text from Word or another word processor that uses styles. The formatting of the text is imported but the styles with which the text is tagged are not.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Imported styles:

If you paste text containing styles that are not defined in your current project the unknown style will be displayed in red in the style selector.



- See Turning formatting into styles 295 for instructions on how to turn imported styles like these into styles you can use in your project.

See also:

Dynamic Styles 1482 (Reference)
Formatting text with styles 292
Defining styles 281

5.7.4 Defining styles

Help+Manual's dynamic styles are defined and edited by selecting **Styles** > **Edit Styles** in the **Write** tab. The style at the cursor position is automatically selected for editing.

If you have not used dynamic styles in a word processor before please study the chapter on Dynamic Styles 1482 in the **Reference** section before proceeding. This will make using styles much easier for you.

Help and Print style settings: You can define two different sets of attributes for every style: One for electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Visual Studio Help and eBooks) and one for print-style output (PDF, printed manuals and Word DOCX). See Multiple style sets 302 for more details on this.

Share stylesheets across multiple projects with style repositories

If you manage multiple projects that all need to look the same, check out Help+Manual's powerful style repositories. They allow you to share stylesheets between multiple projects and edit the styles for all of them in the same central location. See the Working with Style Repositories 1076 chapter for details!

Topic header styles are NOT used in PDF and DOCX!

It is important to understand that the formatting of the text in the topic header box above the topic editor is handled differently in PDF and DOCX output. The formatting of the main text in the editor is exported to PDF and DOCX and used there. The formatting of

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the topic header is **not** exported – only the plain text is exported and the formatting is defined in the PDF or DOCX template.

This is necessary because in PDF and DOCX you can define different formatting for the headings on different levels. This formatting can only be defined in the template, since you don't have multi-level formatting definitions in your project.

You can't influence header formatting in PDF and DOCX from your project

What this means is that you can't influence the formatting of topic headers or TOC entries in PDF and DOCX from your project. All the header formatting in these two document types is defined in the PDF and DOCX templates, not in your project.

Paragraph styles and text styles

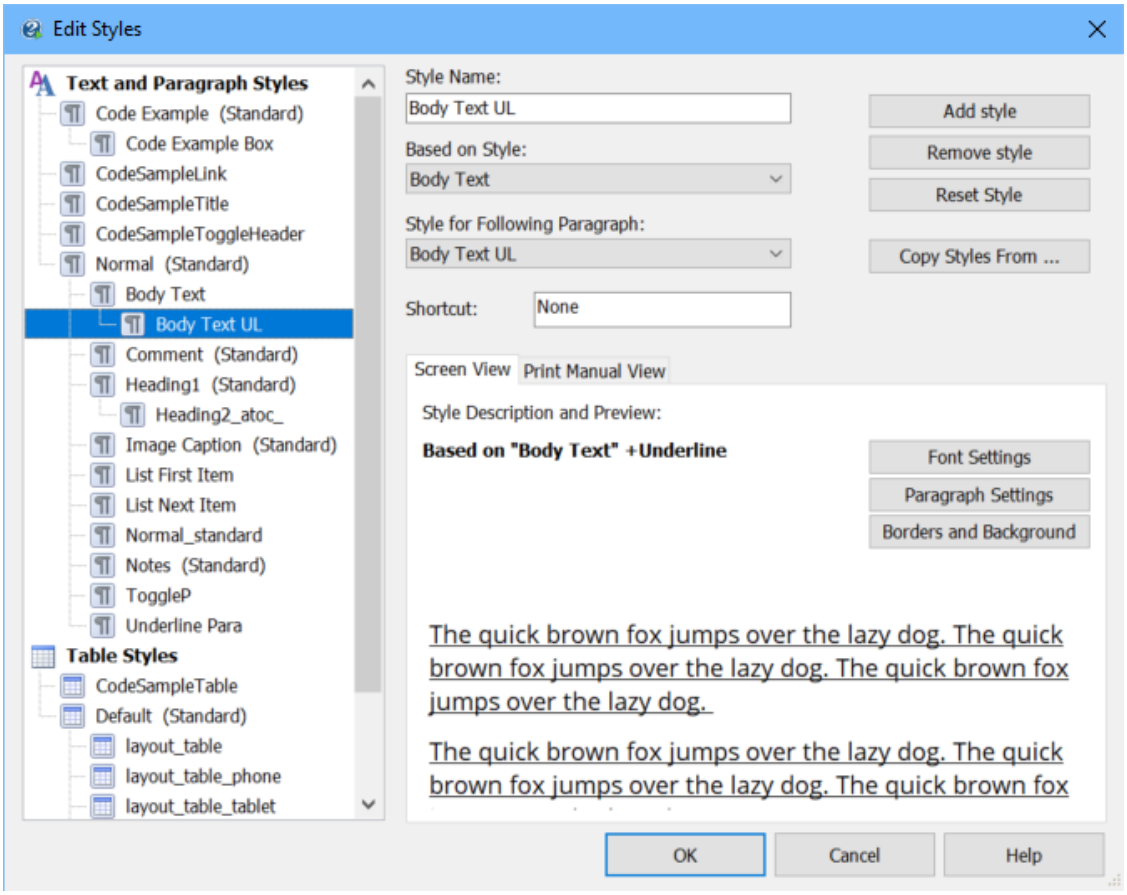
By default, style definitions are "paragraph styles" and always include both text and paragraph attributes (borders and backgrounds are included in the paragraph attributes).

You can also define text-only styles for formatting text within paragraphs. See *Defining a new text style* below for details.

Defining a new paragraph style

1. Select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab to display the Edit Styles dialog.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Select *Add Style* and enter a name for your new style.
3. In the *Based on Style:* field select the style you want to base the new style on. The style will inherit all the attributes of this style. Base paragraph styles on paragraph styles, text styles on text styles. Alternatively, select *(None)* to create a style without a parent.
4. Set the attributes of the style with the *Font Settings*, *Paragraph Settings* and *Borders and Backgrounds* buttons.
5. If you want to create a hotkey combination for selecting the style click in the **Shortcut:** field and press the key combination you want to use. You will be warned if the key combination is already in use.
6. Click on OK to save the new style. It is then available immediately in all the style lists.

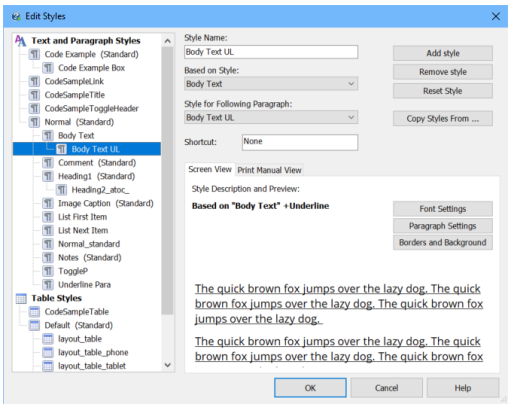
Defining a new text style

A text style is a style that only contains font attributes. See Formatting text with styles 292 for details on how to use text styles.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that you cannot create a text style based on a paragraph style. This also means that you cannot create text styles based on the Normal style because Normal always has paragraph attributes.

1. Select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab.



2. Select *Add Style* and enter a name for your new style.

   It's a good idea to use a prefix in the name of your text styles to identify them clearly. For example, you could use *T_*, so that your text styles would have names like *T_Emphasized,* or *T_ProductNames*.

3. In the *Based on Style:* field select another text style if you want to base the new style on another style. The style will inherit all the attributes of this style. Alternatively, select *(None)* to create a new text style without a parent..
4. Click on *Reset Style* to make absolutely sure that all the non-text attributes of the style are canceled.
5. Click on *Font Settings* and set the attributes of the style.

   Don't select the *Paragraph* or *Borders* buttons – if you do the style will become a paragraph style.

   If you want to create a hotkey shortcut for selecting the style click in the *Shortcut:* field and press the key combination you want to use. You will be warned if the key combination is already in use.

6. Click on OK to save the new style. It is then available immediately in all the style lists (see Formatting text with styles 292 for details).

Different style definitions for screen and print style documentation

Help and Print style settings:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can define two different sets of attributes for every style: One for electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Visual Studio Help and eBooks) and one for print-style output (PDF, printed manuals and Word DOCX).

By default, only the *Screen View* tab in the Edit Styles dialog is activated. If you also activate the *Print Manual View* tab you can define different settings there and they will be used for PDF, DOCX, printed manuals and eBooks.

You can switch the editor display between the two style sets with the **Screen/Print** toggle switch in the status bar below the editor window, next to the **Zoom** control.

See Multiple style sets 302 for more details on this.

Sharing stylesheets between multiple projects

You can share stylesheets between multiple projects and edit them centrally in special projects known as style repositories. You then only need to edit the styles on one place for all the projects linked to the repository.

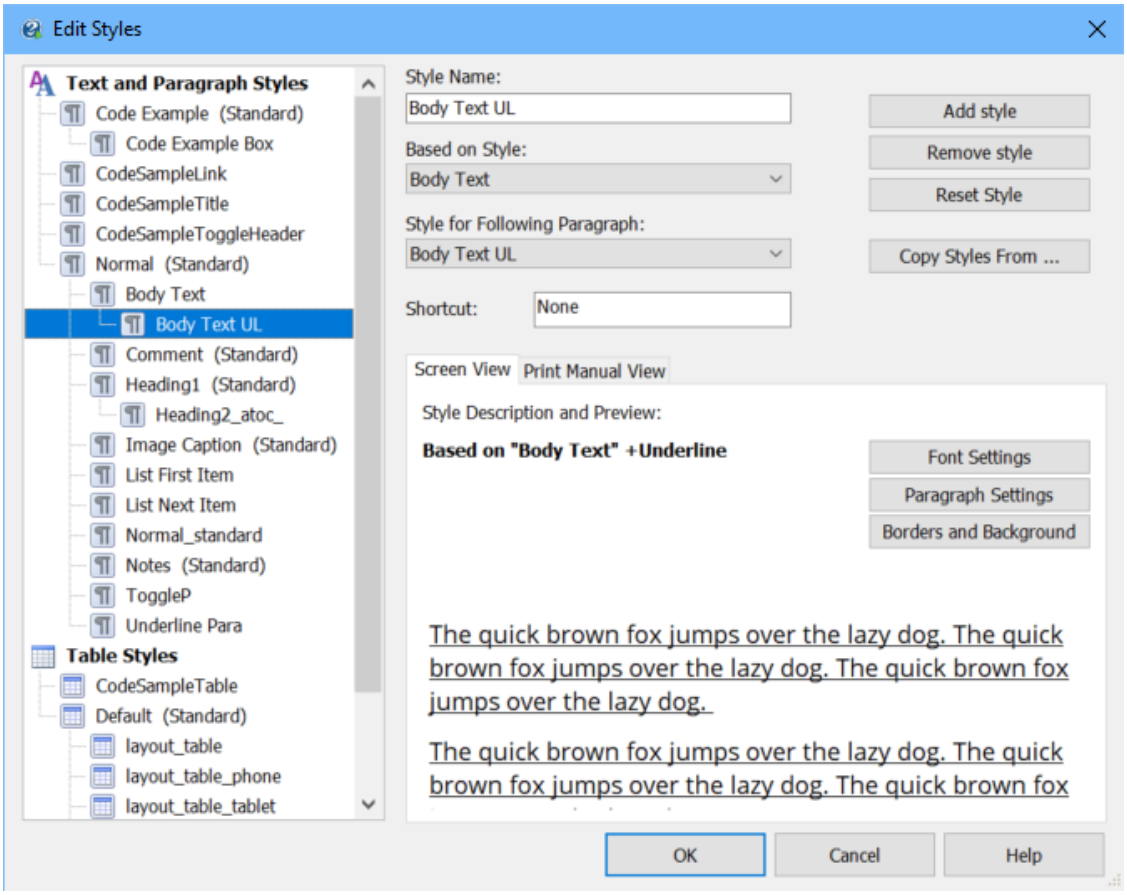
See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for detailed instructions.

Importing styles from another project

This function replaces all the styles of the current project with styles imported from another project. Only use it if you really want to use the styles defined in another project instead of the current project's styles.

1. Select **Styles** > **Edit Styles** in the **Write** tab.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Click on *Copy Styles From...* in the **Edit Styles** dialog and select the project containing the styles you want to copy.

See Copying styles from other projects 306 for full details on this function.

See also:

Formatting text with styles 292
Editing styles 288
Dynamic Styles 1482 (Reference)

5.7.5 HTML fonts and headings

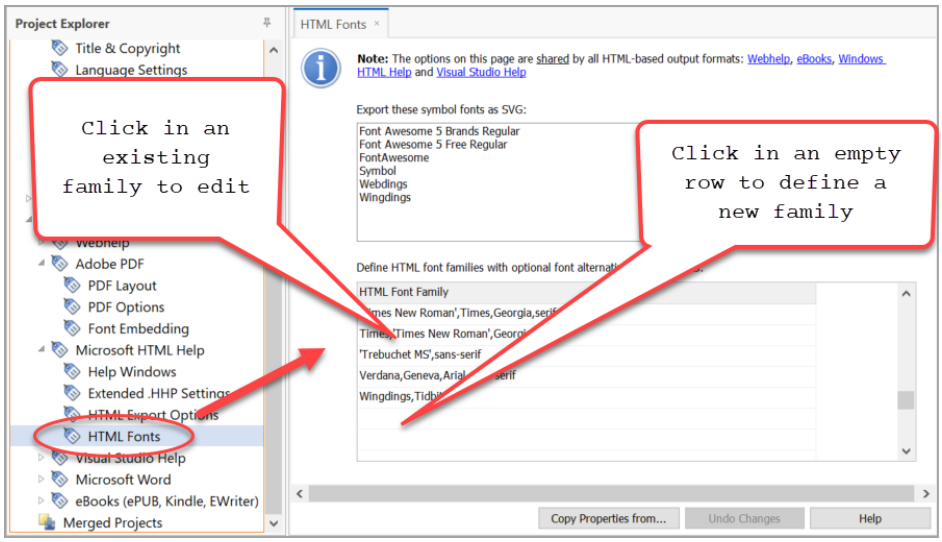
Defining font families for HTML output formats

The fonts you define may not always be present on the user's system or may be restricted by some browsers. To avoid just getting the browser's default font you can define font "families" for the fonts you use. This is a list of alternative fonts that the browser will use instead of your chosen font if it is not available.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The font families settings

The settings for this are in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Fonts**. The same settings are available in the section for Microsoft HTML Help. The fonts you define are global and are used in all HTML output formats (WebHelp, CHM, eWriter, Kindle, ePub and Visual Studio Help).



How to define font families

Help+Manual already has families defined for most common fonts. You can edit the existing families by clicking in the entry. To add a new family just scroll down to the bottom of the list and click in the first empty row.

Rules for font families

- The first entry is the name of the font you are defining the family for.
- Insert a comma after each font name that is followed by another font name.
- All font names that contain spaces **must** be enclosed in **single** quotes.
- The browser will choose the **first** alternative font in the list that is available, so define the family in order of preference.
- Always insert a standard, web-safe font as the last option if you are using fonts that may not be available.

Generating H1 .. H6 styles for WebHelp

When you are targeting WebHelp you want the main headings in your topics to use the standard HTML H1 through H6 heading styles so that search engines like Google will

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

automatically identify the important subjects in your topics. You can achieve this by using Help+Manual's **Heading1...Heading6** style naming convention.

Styles called Heading1 ... Heading6 are exported as H1 .. H6 in HTML

- Getting this to work is simple. Just use styles called **Heading1** through **Heading6** for the headings in your topics that you want to export as **H1** through **H6** in your HTML output.
- The **Heading1** style is a predefined standard style that is automatically used for the text in your topic headers by Help+Manual, so the titles of your topics are always automatically exported as H1 styles in HTML.
- To use **H2** through **H6** headings just define additional styles called **Heading2** through **Heading6** and use them for your sub-headings in your topics. They will then be exported as **H2** through **H6**.

See also:

Using HTML Templates 1026

5.7.6 Editing styles

Whenever you edit a style all the text in your project formatted with the style is updated automatically and immediately. In addition to this any changes you make to styles will automatically be inherited by any other styles based on that style. This makes it possible to make changes to entire families of styles very quickly and easily by editing the parent styles. For example, you can normally change the base font in your entire document by changing the font of the *Normal* style.

Styles Locked?
If the styles in the Edit Styles screen are read-only your project is using a Style Repository and you need to edit the styles there. See here 1076 for instructions.

Share stylesheets across multiple projects with style repositories

If you manage multiple projects that all need to look the same, check out Help+Manual's powerful style repositories. They allow you to share stylesheets between multiple projects and edit the styles for all of them in the same central location. See the Working with Style Repositories 1076 chapter for details!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Topic header styles are NOT used in PDF and DOCX!

It is important to understand that the formatting of the text in the topic header box above the topic editor is handled differently in PDF and DOCX output. The formatting of the main text in the editor is exported to PDF and DOCX and used there. The formatting of the topic header is **not** exported – only the plain text is exported and the formatting is defined in the PDF or DOCX template.

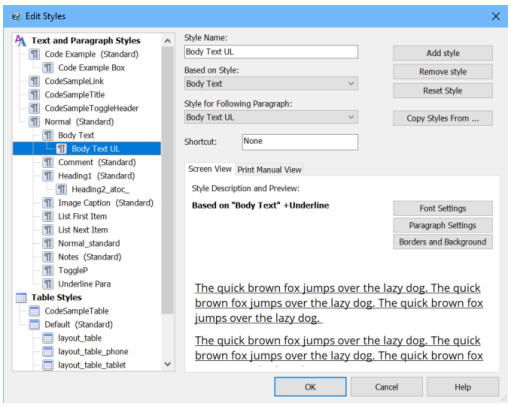
This is necessary because in PDF and DOCX you can define different formatting for the headings on different levels. This formatting can only be defined in the template, since you don't have multi-level formatting definitions in your project.

You can't influence header formatting in PDF and DOCX from your project

What this means is that you can't influence the formatting of topic headers or TOC entries in PDF and DOCX from your project. All the header formatting in these two document types is defined in the PDF and DOCX templates, not in your project.

Defining a new style

1. Select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab, then select *Add Style* to define a new style.

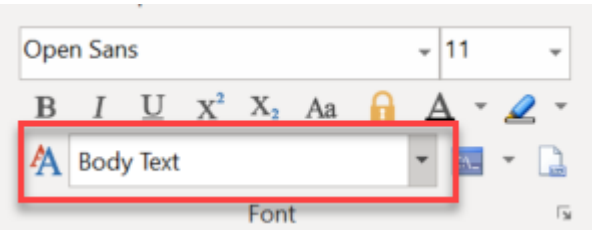


2. Enter a name for the style and then select *Font Settings*, *Paragraph Settings* and *Borders and Background* to change the style attributes. See The Write Tab 1324 for details in the settings in these dialogs.
3. Don't forget to define a keyboard shortcut for styles that you want to use frequently. This will speed up your work a lot!

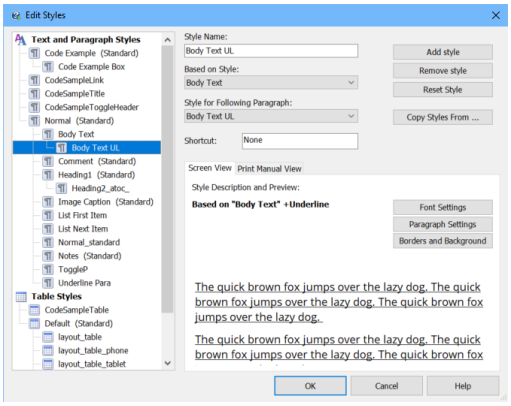
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Editing an existing style

1. Click in a paragraph or in text formatted with the style you want to change (the style name will be displayed in the style selector in **Write** > **Font**).



2. Select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab. The style at the cursor is selected for editing automatically.



3. Select *Font Settings*, *Paragraph Settings* and *Borders and Background* to change the style attributes. See The Write Tab 1324 for details in the settings in these dialogs.
4. Define different settings for Print View (PDF, DOCX, printed manuals) and Help View (electronic formats). See Multiple style sets 302 for more details on these two sets of settings.
5. Define keyboard shortcuts for styles you want to use frequently.

All text formatted with the styles you edit will be changed immediately.

Select *Reset Style* to completely reset all of the style's attributes to the settings of its parent style (the style listed in the **Based on Style:** field). If the style has no parent it will be set to the Help+Manual defaults.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Moving and renaming styles

Change the style's parent:

To change a style's parent select a different parent style in the *Based on Style:* field. Any style attributes that were set explicitly in the style will remain unchanged. All other style attributes will be changed to those of the new parent style.

Eliminate the style's parent:

To eliminate the style's parent just select *(None)* in the *Based on Style:* field. This will prevent the style from inheriting any attributes from any other styles. It will also make the style the first parent in a new style tree. This can be useful under some circumstances. See Style organization strategies 1497 for details.

Rename a style:

Just select the style in the Edit Styles dialog and edit the name. You can change the name of a style whenever you like, it will be updated automatically throughout your project.

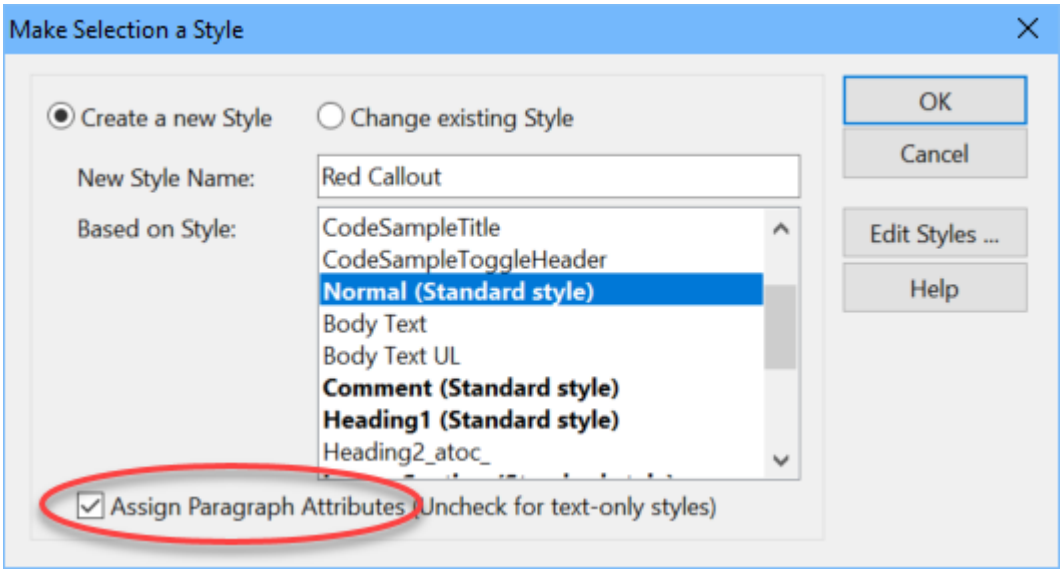
Modifying an existing style on the basis of a selection in the editor

You can also modify a style on the basis of a modified paragraph or text formatted with the style. This is often the easiest way to edit a style because it is much easier to see your formatting in the editor.

1. Use the manual formatting tools to format a paragraph or some text formatted with the style you want to change.
2. Make sure that the cursor is inside the formatted text, then select *Styles* > *Create Style from Selection* in the **Write** tab.

   You don't need to select any text, the cursor must only be inside the formatted text you want to use as a model. If you do select text it should all be formatted in the same way – don't try to create a style based on text with some words formatted in one way and some in another!
3. Select the *Change existing style* option in the dialog displayed. The style at the cursor should be selected automatically. If it isn't close the dialog and check the position of the cursor in the editor.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



The *Assign paragraph attributes* option will be selected automatically for paragraph styles and deselected for text styles. Only change this if you want to change the style type. (See Paragraph and text styles 1491 for details on changing the style type.)

4. Click on OK to apply the changes to the selected style.

See Defining styles 281 for details on using this function to create a new styles.

See also:

Paragraph and text styles 1491

5.7.7 Formatting text with styles

Formatting text with styles couldn't be simpler: You just select your text and select a style, and ***all*** the attributes of that style are applied to the text in one quick operation.

Help+Manual comes with a basic set of standard styles already predefined, so you can start using styles right away, even without defining your own styles. Normally, however, you will want to modify these styles and add styles of your own to create a customized layout and appearance for your project.

See Defining styles 281 for information on defining and editing styles. If you are not yet familiar with styles please study the chapter on Dynamic Styles 1482 in the **Reference** section.

Share stylesheets across multiple projects with style repositories

If you manage multiple projects that all need to look the same, check out Help+Manual's powerful style repositories. They allow you to share stylesheets between multiple projects and edit the styles for all of them in the same central location. See the Working with Style Repositories 1076 chapter for details!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Topic header styles are NOT used in PDF and DOCX!

It is important to understand that the formatting of the text in the topic header box above the topic editor is handled differently in PDF and DOCX output. The formatting of the main text in the editor is exported to PDF and DOCX and used there. The formatting of the topic header is **not** exported – only the plain text is exported and the formatting is defined in the PDF or DOCX template.

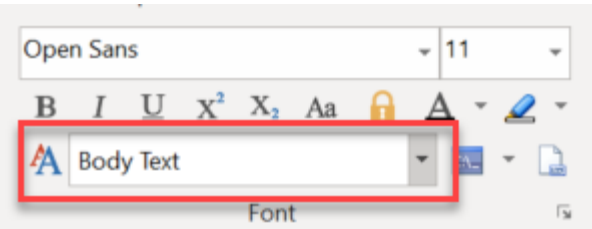
This is necessary because in PDF and DOCX you can define different formatting for the headings on different levels. This formatting can only be defined in the template, since you don't have multi-level formatting definitions in your project.

You can't influence header formatting in PDF and DOCX from your project

What this means is that you can't influence the formatting of topic headers or TOC entries in PDF and DOCX from your project. All the header formatting in these two document types is defined in the PDF and DOCX templates, not in your project.

Applying styles

- To apply a style to a full paragraph just click in the paragraph and select the style in the style selector. You can also select multiple paragraphs and apply styles to all of them. You must select all the text in all the paragraphs to do this – only font attributes are applied to partially-selected paragraphs.



- To apply a style to text select the text and then select the style in the style selector.
- If you have imported formatted text from other sources you must select it to be able apply styles to it, otherwise the imported formatting has priority – it is treated as manual formatting. After applying a style you just need to click in the paragraph and select a different style to change the style.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Paragraph styles and text styles

By default style definitions are paragraph styles and include both text and paragraph attributes (borders and backgrounds are included in the paragraph attributes).

You can also define text-only styles for formatting text within paragraphs. See Defining styles 281 for details, and see below for instructions on how to use text-only styles.

Applying text-only styles

You can also define text-only styles 281 that only set font attributes. Applying these styles is very similar to formatting text manually.

To apply the text style to existing text:
Select the text and then select the style.

To apply the text style to an entire paragraph:
Click anywhere in the paragraph and select the style. The text style attributes will be applied to all the text in the paragraph except manually-formatted text, imported formatted text and text already formatted with other styles.

To type new text with a text style:
First press **Enter** to create a new paragraph. Then select the style and start typing.

How text selection interacts with applying styles

Nothing selected (click in paragraph):

When nothing is selected the style is applied to the entire paragraph with all its attributes (text, paragraph, borders/background).

If the style is a text-only style the text attributes are applied to the entire paragraph.

Manually-formatted text, imported formatted text and text within paragraphs formatted with other styles are all "protected" – they will only be reset if they are selected before applying the style.

Everything selected (all the text in one or more paragraphs):

When everything is selected the style and all its attributes (text, paragraph, borders/background) are applied to all selected paragraphs. All formatting is reset to the style attrib-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

utes, including manually-formatted text, imported formatted text and text within paragraphs formatted with other styles.

If any paragraph is only partially selected then only text attributes will be applied to that paragraph.

Text within a paragraph selected (partial selection):

If you select text within a paragraph then only font attributes of styles will be applied to that text, even if the style also has paragraph attributes.

The standard styles

There are several standard styles that are used automatically for various purposes. For example, when you create a new topic the first paragraph always has the *Normal* style, the topic header above the editing area always has the *Heading1* style and graphics captions always have the *Image Caption* style.

There are a number of other standard styles. They are all identified and displayed in bold in the style editing dialog 1347. You can edit these styles but you cannot delete them or change their names. See The standard styles 1490 for details.

See also:

Defining styles 281

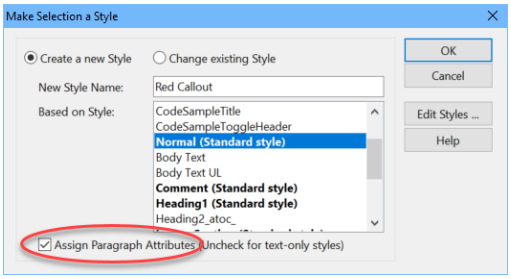
5.7.8 Turning formatting into styles

The easiest way to define a new style is to use some manually-formatted text in the editor as a model. This allows you to see what you are doing much more clearly than when you are setting attributes in the formatting dialogs.

Defining a new paragraph style from a selection

1. Use manual formatting options to format a paragraph so that it looks exactly as you want your style to look.
2. Click in your model paragraph, then select *Styles* > *Create Style from Selection* in the **Write** tab.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

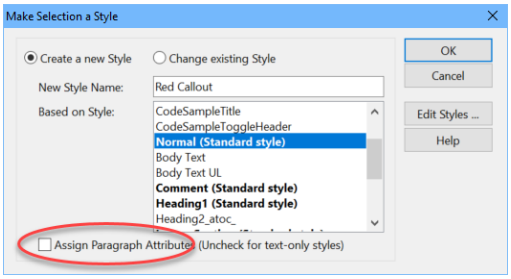


3. Select the *Create a new style* option and enter a name for the new style.
4. If you want the style to have a parent select a style in the *Based on Style:* list. The new style will then inherit all the attributes of the parent style that are not different from the current paragraph in the editor. If you do not want the style to have a parent scroll to the top of the list and select *(None)*.
5. Make sure that the *Assign paragraph attributes* option is checked, then click on **OK** to create the new style.

Defining a new text style from a selection

You can also create new text styles based on text in the editor. The procedure is almost the same as for a paragraph style.

1. Format some text so that it looks exactly as you want your style to look.
2. Click in the formatted text, then select *Styles* > *Create Style from Selection* in the **Write** tab.



3. Select the *Create a New Style* and enter a name for the new style. It is a good idea to enter a prefix to identify it as a text style, for example "***T***_".
4. If you want the style to have a parent select a text style in the *Based on Style:* list. If you use this option the parent style must be another text style. The new style will then inherit all the attributes of the parent style that are not different from the current paragraph in the editor. If you do not want the style to have a parent scroll to the top of the list and select *(None)*.
5. Deselect the *Assign paragraph attributes* option, then click on OK to create the new style.

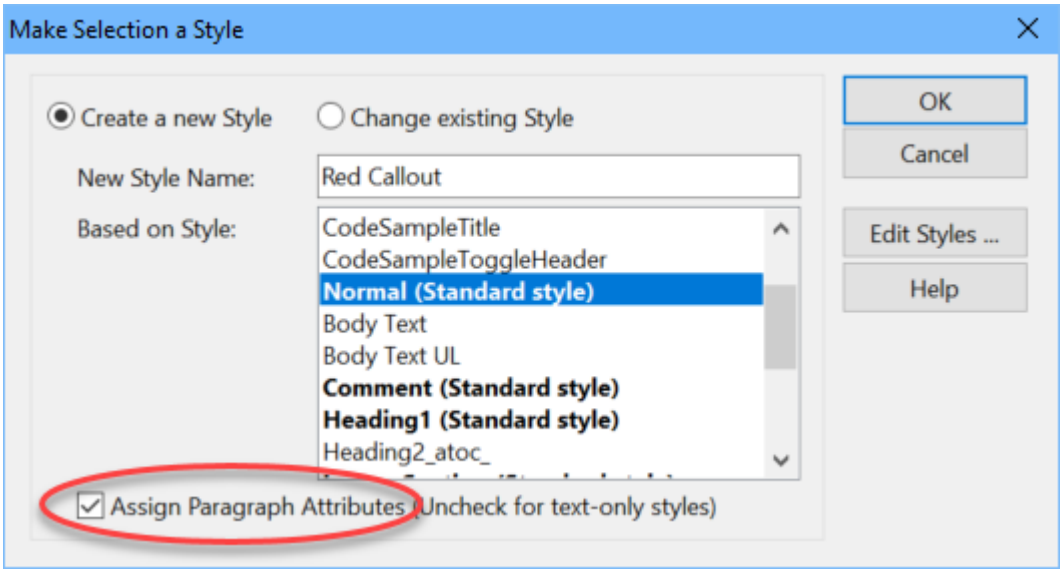
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Modifying an existing style on the basis of a selection in the editor

You can also modify a style on the basis of a modified paragraph or text formatted with the style. This is often the easiest way to edit a style because it is much easier to see your formatting in the editor.

1. Use the manual formatting tools to format a paragraph or some text formatted with the style you want to change.
2. Make sure that the cursor is inside the formatted text, then select *Styles* > *Create Style from Selection* in the **Write** tab.

   You don't need to select any text, the cursor must only be inside the formatted text you want to use as a model. If you do select text it should all be formatted in the same way – don't try to create a style based on text with some words formatted in one way and some in another!
3. Select the *Change existing style* option in the dialog displayed. The style at the cursor should be selected automatically. If it isn't close the dialog and check the position of the cursor in the editor.



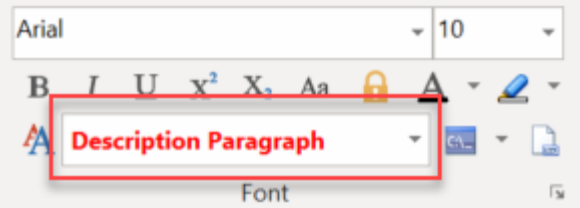
   The *Assign paragraph attributes* option will be selected automatically for paragraph styles and deselected for text styles. Only change this if you want to change the style type. (See Paragraph and text styles 1491 for details on changing the style type.)
4. Click on OK to apply the changes to the selected style.

See Defining styles 281 for details on using this function to create a new styles.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

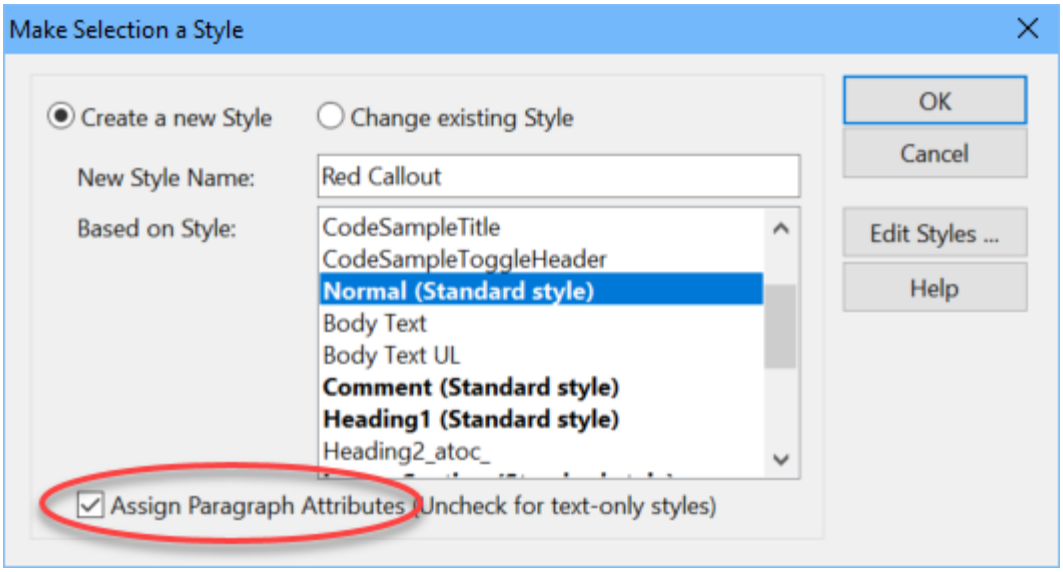
Adding imported styles to the current document

If you paste text from another Help+Manual project containing styles that are not defined in your current project the unknown style will be displayed in red in the style selector. You can convert this to a "known" style with *Create Style from Selection*.



Unknown styles are displayed in red

1. Place the cursor inside the pasted text so that the red style name is shown in the style selector.
2. Select *Styles* > *Create Style from Selection* in the **Write** tab.



3. Select the *Create New Style* option and type the name of the unknown style exactly as it appears in the style selector (the red text)
4. If you want to make the style the child of an existing style select the name of the parent style you want to use in the *Based On Style:* list. The new style will then inherit all common attributes from the parent style.

See also:

Defining styles 281
Editing styles 288

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.7.9 Using indents

Creating indents in a word processor is a trivial task that you hardly even need to think about. In HTML-based formats indents are not quite so straightforward. HTML does not support either tab stops or multiple spaces, so you cannot use them to create indented paragraphs or to format tabular data. (Tabs and multiple spaces wouldn't work in HTML because the page width is dynamic.)

You can use indented paragraphs – Help+Manual will convert them to stable HTML structures when you publish to HTML-based formats. However, you should avoid using tab stops and spaces on their own to create indented effects, because these will not work in HTML-based outputs. You should always use the paragraph indenting functions described below.

For some more background information see Tabs, indents and HTML 1500 in the Reference section.

Key Information
You cannot use the indent tools on single-level bulleted and numbered lists. To change the indent in a list you must first switch off the list with the list tool. In outline numbered lists the indent tools change the list level.

How to indent paragraphs

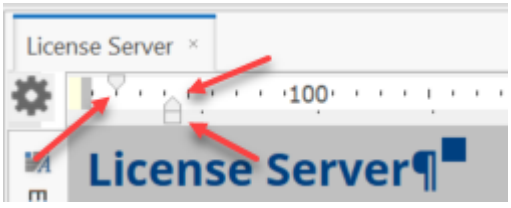
- Use the indent tools in **Write** > **Paragraph** to increase and decrease indents.

  OR:

- Press **Shift+Ctrl** and the + or - key to increase and decrease indents.

  OR:

- Drag the Indent tool in the ruler above the editor. The tool has three parts, which can all be dragged separately: The upper triangle adjusts the first-line indent, the lower triangle adjusts the main paragraph indent and the square box at the bottom adjusts the first line and the paragraph indent together.



OR:

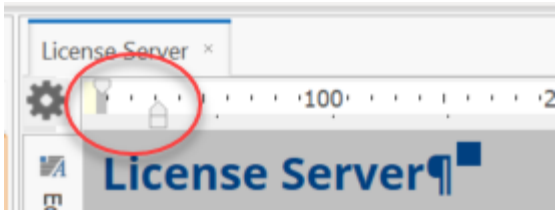
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Select the paragraph dialog icon in **Write** > **Paragraph** and set the indent values manually.

How to create a paragraph with a hanging indent

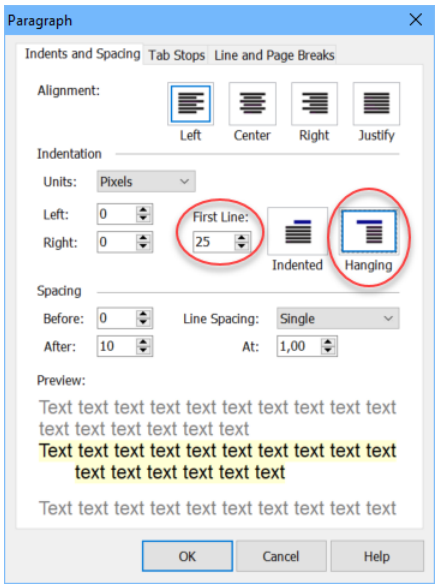
Hanging indents work in all publishing formats, including HTML-based formats where they are converted to stable table structures. Hanging indents are formatted in the editor with a single tab stop between the "hanging" portion and the main paragraph. This is the only place where you should use a tab stop for HTML-based output. Use only one tab and don't add any spaces, otherwise you will get errors in HTML output.

- Use the Indent tool in the Toolbar to define the hanging indent:



OR:

- Select **Format** > **Paragraph** and set the indent values in the Indentation section.



See Tabs, indents and HTML 1500 in the Reference section for more information on hanging indents and how they are converted in HTML-based output.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Negative indents for sidebar effects

You can set negative indents to put part of a paragraph to the left of the normal natural margin of the page. To do this, enter a negative number like **-24** in the *Left:* or *Right:* box for the indents. Alternatively just use the down arrow next to the field to go "down" below zero.

This is mainly useful for output to PDF, DOCX and eBooks when you want to put something like an icon to the left or right of the main body of the text. If you apply a negative indent to the container paragraph of a table, you can put an entire table column to the left or right of the normal margin for a sidebar effect.

Indenting with leading spaces/blanks

In normal text:

Generally you should never indent text with leading spaces, it is much better to use real paragraph indents. In HTML multiple spaces are normally always interpreted as a single space – Help+Manual gets around this by converting multiple spaces to alternating soft and hard space characters. However, this still may not produce the results you need because different browsers can interpret the widths of these different space characters in different ways.

In program code:

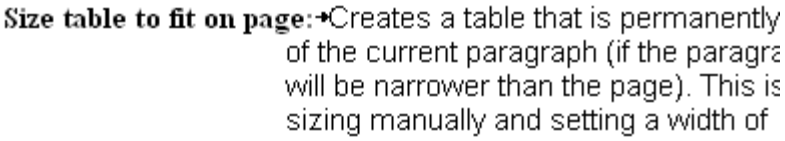
Program code is often automatically indented with leading spaces. To get this to display correctly you just need to turn word wrap off in the paragraph settings of your code examples, either manually or with a style. Then all the spaces will be converted to   hard space entities which will render correctly in all browsers. Paragraphs will not wrap, but you don't want paragraphs to wrap in program code. See Formatting program source code 310 for more details.

Tip: Hanging indents in HTML-based publishing formats

In HTML hanging indents are turned into tables. This means that the left part of the hanging indent will wrap inside the table cell if it is too long to fit. If you are only outputting to HTML-based publishing formats this means you can make the left part of the indent as long as you like because it will wrap in your output.

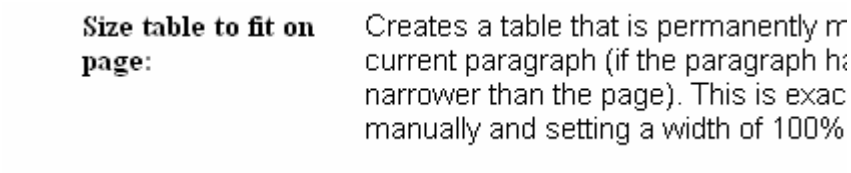
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The indent in the editor:



This shows the paragraph with the overlong text in the editor.

Result in HTML output format:



This shows the output in HTML Help or Webhelp.

You can't use this trick if you are also outputting to PDF, printed manuals or Word DOCX. It only works in HTML-based output!

See also:

Tabs, indents and HTML 1500

5.7.10 Multiple style sets

You can define two different sets of attributes for every style: One for electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Visual Studio Help and eWriter Help) and one for print-style output (PDF, printed manuals, Word DOCX and ePUB and Kindle Mobi eBooks).

Share stylesheets across multiple projects with style repositories

If you manage multiple projects that all need to look the same, check out Help+Manual's powerful style repositories. They allow you to share stylesheets between multiple projects and edit the styles for all of them in the same central location. See the Working with Style Repositories 1076 chapter for details!

Topic header styles are NOT used in PDF and DOCX!

It is important to understand that the formatting of the text in the topic header box above the topic editor is handled differently in PDF and DOCX output. The formatting of the main text in the editor is exported to PDF and DOCX and used there. The formatting of

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the topic header is **not** exported – only the plain text is exported and the formatting is defined in the PDF or DOCX template.

This is necessary because in PDF and DOCX you can define different formatting for the headings on different levels. This formatting can only be defined in the template, since you don't have multi-level formatting definitions in your project.

You can't influence header formatting in PDF and DOCX from your project

What this means is that you can't influence the formatting of topic headers or TOC entries in PDF and DOCX from your project. All the header formatting in these two document types is defined in the PDF and DOCX templates, not in your project.

How to use different fonts for electronic and print output

1. Select **Styles** > **Edit Styles** in the **Write** tab.
2. Select *Normal*, as most other styles are usually based on this style. You will need to edit any styles not based on *Normal* separately).
3. Change the font settings in the Print View and Help View tabs. Deselect *Same options as help view* in the Print View tab to edit the print style settings.
4. Repeat for any styles not based on *Normal* – these are styles that are not shown as "sub-branches" of *Normal* in the style tree.

Completely different style attributes for electronic and print output

You can also create completely different layouts for electronic and print output, with a completely different appearance for all your styles in each format. However remember that you can only redefine the attributes of existing styles for each output format. You cannot have different styles for each format because the styles are attached to your text by name. There is only one list of styles, but each style can have two different definitions.

- Proceed as described above and edit all the style attributes you want to change for each output format – you can define separate font, paragraph, border and background settings for each view.

Print styles are strongly recommended for Kindle Mobi and ePub

If you define print view style attributes they will be used in Kindle Mobi and ePUB eBooks. For technical reasons, eBook files work better when they have their own styles and fonts

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

defined for them specifically. Among other things, it may be sometimes be necessary to define special font names for use in your ePUB eBooks (for example for eBooks aimed at Apple iBooks on iOS devices, which have different standard fonts available). Please see Managing Fonts in ePUB 764 for more details.

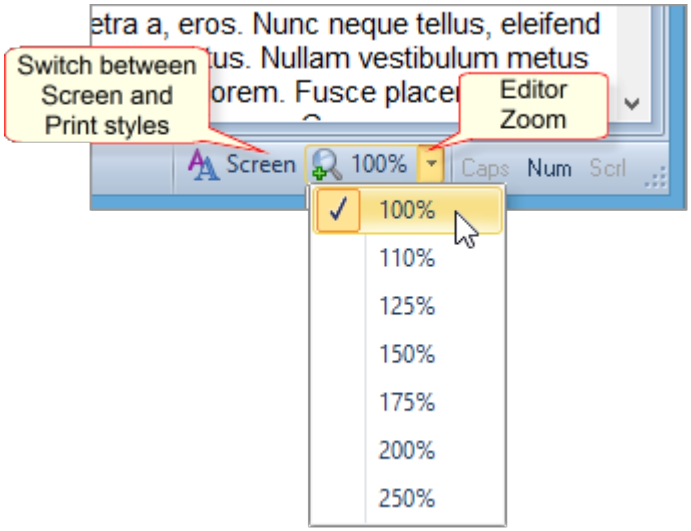
Editor zoom and preview mode for screen/print styles and font sizes

You can zoom the entire contents of the editor quickly with the Zoom control in the status bar below the editor window. This control is also available in the **View** tab in the ribbon toolbar.

You can also switch the editor display between the styles defined for electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Visual Studio Help and eWriter Help) print-style help formats (PDF, printed manuals, Word DOCX and ePUB and Kindle Mobi eBooks).

This will only have an effect if you have defined different settings for screen and print output in your style definitions. See Multiple style sets 302 for more information on using different style sets for different output formats.

Display buttons in the status bar:



See also:

About inheritance in styles 1485
Defining styles 281
Editing styles 288
The Format Menu 1334 (Reference)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.7.11 Image caption and comment styles

Image captions and comments/bookmarks are formatted with two standard styles called *Image Caption* and *Comment*. These styles are applied automatically to all image captions and comments and they are the only styles that these elements can use.

This means that all image captions and all comments/bookmarks in your project will have the same style. You can override these styles and change the formatting of individual captions and comments by applying manual formatting.

Share stylesheets across multiple projects with style repositories

If you manage multiple projects that all need to look the same, check out Help+Manual's powerful style repositories. They allow you to share stylesheets between multiple projects and edit the styles for all of them in the same central location. See the Working with Style Repositories 1076 chapter for details!

Restrictions

- The *Image Caption* and *Comment* styles only have font attributes. If you set paragraph attributes in the style definition they will be ignored.
- All the text in captions and comments has same font attributes. You cannot format individual words differently from the rest of the text.
- Image captions are always centered, comments are always left-aligned. Since the styles do not have paragraph attributes you cannot change these settings.

Editing the caption and comment styles

Select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab, then select the *Comment* or *Image Caption* style in the list and edit its font attributes. (Don't bother editing the paragraph, border or background attributes because these are ignored for these styles.

- See Editing styles 288 for more information.

Formatting caption and comment texts manually

You can also change the formatting of individual captions and comments manually:

- Just click on the graphic or comment in the editor to select it, then select the font attribute you want to apply (bold, underlined, font etc).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

All formatting will be applied to the entire comment or caption text. You cannot apply different formatting to parts of the text. Also remember that you cannot apply paragraph attributes to these texts, they will simply be ignored.

See also:

Editing styles 288
Inserting graphics and screenshots 481
Comments and bookmarks 253

5.7.12 Copying styles from other projects

Once you have created styles in one project you don't need to redefine them when you create a new project. You can copy styles between projects, both individually and as complete collections, which are referred to as "stylesheets".

Note that unlike many word processors, Help+Manual does not store its project stylesheets in separate files. Instead, they are stored in the main project file along with all the other project settings. This is why it is necessary to import them from the project file when you want to copy them, instead of selecting a different stylesheet.

Share stylesheets across multiple projects with style repositories

If you manage multiple projects that all need to look the same, check out Help+Manual's powerful style repositories. They allow you to share stylesheets between multiple projects and edit the styles for all of them in the same central location. See the Working with Style Repositories 1076 chapter for details!

Copying a project stylesheet to an existing project

Note that importing a stylesheet completely replaces the stylesheet of the current project! This is not a merge process: All the styles in the current project will be deleted, even if they do not have the same names as the styles in the source file.

1. Make a backup of your current project and store it in a safe place. (In case you change your mind about deleting the styles in your current project.)
2. Select **Write** > **Styles** > **Edit Styles** and select *Copy Styles From...*.
3. Select the Help+Manual project you want to copy the stylesheet from and click on OK to import and overwrite your stylesheet.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Copying a project stylesheet to a new project

If you are creating a new project the easiest way to copy the stylesheet from an existing project is to use the existing project as a "template" for the new project. Then all the styles of the existing project will be included in the new project automatically, along with all of the project's other settings.

1. Open the project, click on the **File** menu and make a copy of it using *Save As...*
2. Delete all the topic files that you don't want to use in the new project.
3. Check your project settings in the Configuration section in the Project Explorer and update anything that needs to be changed for the new project (project title, copyright dates etc).

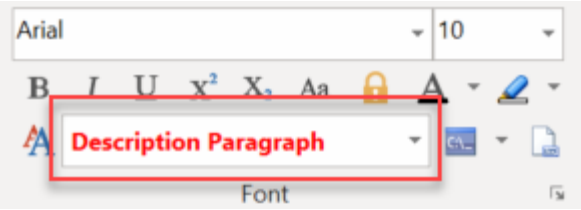
This is by far the quickest way to set up a new project if you wish to continue using the same basic style, appearance and layout.

- See Templates for projects 1008 for details.

Copying individual styles from one project to another

You cannot copy individual styles from other projects directly but it is still possible with this little trick:

1. Open the project you want to copy the style to. We will call this *Project A*.
2. Open the project you want to copy the style from. We will call this *Project B*.
3. In Project B find a paragraph (for paragraph styles) or a piece of text (for text styles) formatted with the style you want to copy. Use copy and paste to copy this paragraph or text to a topic in Project A. If you now click in this text the name of its style will be displayed in red in the style selector, like this:



4. Click anywhere in the copied text and select **Write** > **Styles** > **Create Style from Selection**.

See Turning formatting into styles 295 for full instructions.

See also:

Templates for projects 1008
Defining styles 281
Transforming your output with skins 638

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

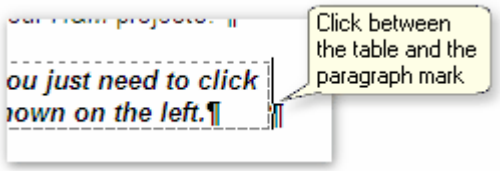
5.7.13 Table styles

Table styles define the formatting of the table itself – the table width and width mode, borders and border style, background colors and so on. They do not define the formatting of the text inside the tables – that must be formatted with styles or the manual formatting tools.

How to align a table with a paragraph style

You can control the alignment of a table by applying a style to the paragraph containing the table – for example to center a fixed-width table or to indent the left and right sides of the table from the margins of the page. Only the paragraph attributes will have an effect, text attributes will be ignored.

1. Click on ¶ in **Write** > **Paragraph** to display paragraph marks (this makes it easier to see what you are doing).



2. Click to the right of the table between the table and its paragraph mark so that you can see the blinking editing cursor between the right margin of the table and the paragraph mark.
3. Select the style you want to apply in the drop-down style list in the Toolbar.

How to apply styles to the contents of tables

If you select all or part of a table and apply text or paragraph styles the styles will be applied to the text in the selected cells inside the table.

- Select text and paragraphs in the table cells and apply styles just as you would in the normal editor. You can also apply styles to multiple paragraphs in multiple cells by selecting the cells and then applying the style.

Note that if you want to apply a style to all the paragraphs in a table you must select the entire table by clicking and dragging inside the table. If you click in the left margin to select the table you will not be able to apply styles because then the table is selected and not its contents.

How to apply a table style to a table

1. Click in the table you want to format.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Select *Properties* in the **Table** tab and then select the table style you want to use and click on OK.

See Working with Tables > Table styles 533 for full details.

How to define a table style

1. Select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab.
2. Click in the *Table Styles* section at the top, then select *Add Style*.
3. Enter a name for the style in the *Style Name:* field.
4. If you want to base the style on another style select the parent style in the *Based on Style:* field.
5. Click on *Modify Layout* to define the attributes of the style. The settings are just the same as the normal table settings 1391, although there are a couple of table settings that cannot be included in table styles.

CSS classes for table styles

When you publish to HTML-based output formats the name of the table style is also the class attribute of the table. For example, if the table style is called demotable it will contain a class attribute like this:

```
<table class="demotable" ...
```

You can use this knowledge to change the formatting of tables with your own additional CSS code in your HTML templates, attaching your rules to the class names.

Giving a table multiple class names

Help+Manual will also allow you to create table styles containing spaces. For example, suppose you create two otherwise identical table styles called "demotable normal" and "demotable highlight". The result in the HTML code would be:

```
<table class="demotable normal" ...
<table class="demotable highlight" ...
```

This effectively gives the tables two classes, which is allowed in CSS. You can then write individual CSS rules for the "normal" and "highlight" classes to be applied to different groups of tables in your output that otherwise have identical formattig.

See also:

Working with Tables 518

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.7.14 Formatting program source code

Examples of program source code are much easier to read if reserved words, comments, identifiers and so on are highlighted as they are in a modern programming editor. Help+Manual's Syntax Highlighting function does this for you. It understands the syntax of a total of 53 different code languages, so yours is almost certainly among them. You can also define up to three different custom formatting sets.

The highlighter is pre-configured with standard formatting for all these languages, but you can change the formatting yourself for every element type in every language to suit your own preferences. (Note that you must do this before applying your formatting. Changing highlighting settings does not change the formatting of code that has already been highlighted.)

How to format program code

1. Paste your program code into your topic and select it.
2. Select the Syntax Highlighter tool in **Write** > **Font** (click on the arrow to the right of the icon to display the menu) then select the language parser you want to use from the list displayed.

➔ If the code language you are using is not displayed select **Customize...** to add it to the menu.

Once you have chosen a language parser it is set as the default until you select a different language. You can then select it directly by clicking on the main **C:** icon of the Syntax Highlighter tool in the Ribbon.

Editing the syntax highlighting style

The syntax highlighter uses a standard style called *Code Example* for the font and paragraph attributes. By default this style is set to Courier New, 8 points, no word wrap and keep paragraph lines together.

You cannot delete or rename this style but you can edit it. Just position the cursor in a piece of text formatted with the syntax highlighter and select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab to open the style editing dialog with the Code Example style selected. See Editing styles 288 for details.

Indenting with leading spaces/blanks

Program code is often automatically indented with leading spaces. To get this to display correctly you just need to turn word wrap off in the paragraph settings of your code ex-

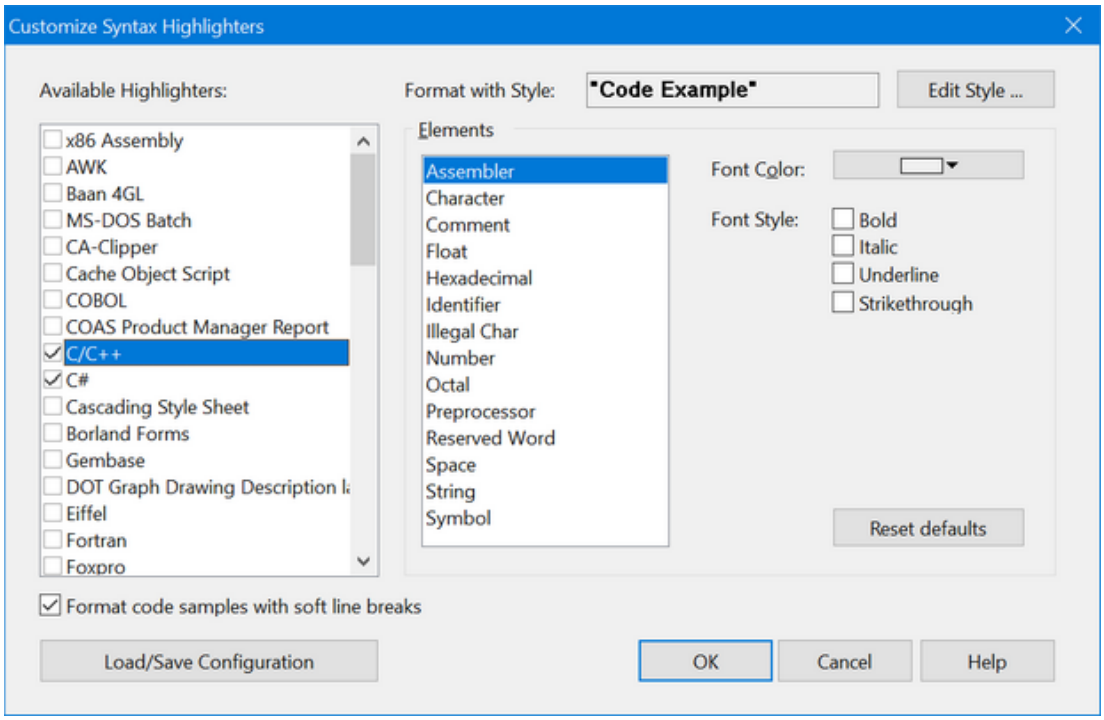
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

amples, either manually or with a style (this is already set correctly in the standard **`Code Example`** style used for syntax highlighting). Then all the spaces will be converted to ` ` hard space entities which will render correctly in all browsers. Paragraphs will not wrap, but you don't want paragraphs to wrap in program code.

In paragraphs with word wrap turned on Help+Manual converts multiple spaces to alternating soft and hard space characters – otherwise browsers would interpret multiple spaces as a single space. However, this will often not render quite right because different browsers interpret the width of these hard/soft space combinations in different ways.

Customizing the syntax highlighter

- Click on the drop-down arrow next to in **Write** > **Font,** then select *Customize...*.



Syntax highlighter settings are not styles!

Note that changing highlighting settings does not change the formatting of code that has already been highlighted. If you change your settings you must select the code again and re-apply the highlighting. Unlike styles, the syntax highlighter only applies inline formatting to selected text.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Font color and style:

You can define the font style and color for the supported elements for each highlighter language. To change the standard syntax highlighting font face click on *Edit Style* and edit the **`Code Example`** style that is used automatically by the syntax highlighter (see above 310).

Restoring the default settings:

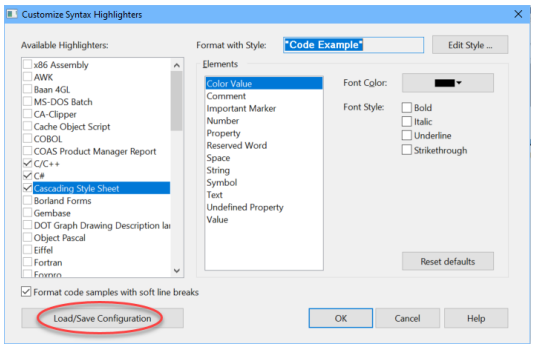
Clicking on *Reset Defaults* restores all the syntax highlighter's settings for the current language to Help+Manual's default values, including the list of reserved words.

Format code samples with soft line breaks:

Uses soft line breaks instead of full paragraph breaks. Use this when you are using background color and border settings for your code samples, then line breaks will not interrupt the background and borders between lines.

Exporting and importing syntax highlighter settings

If you are working in a team on the same project you will want everyone to use the same syntax highlighter settings. You can achieve this with the *Load/Save Configuration* button at the bottom of the **Customize** dialog:



Using Load/Save Configuration

- Click on the Load/Save button to save the current configuration to a file or to load a saved configuration.
- This saves ALL your syntax highlighting settings. It is not possible to save or load only individual settings.
- Loading a configuration replaces ALL the current settings with those stored in the file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

User-defined highlighters

The last three code languages in the list are user-defined. You can use these to describe your own customized highlighting languages, including a list of reserved words that you can load from an external file.

Please see Syntax Highlighting 1331 for a reference to the settings you can configure there.

See also:

Editing styles 288
Syntax Highlighting 1331

5.7.15 Numbered and Bulleted Lists

This chapter describes how to use Help+Manual's tools for creating and managing numbered and bulleted lists.

Important: List formatting cannot be included in style definitions.

The formatting definitions for numbered and bulleted lists are currently still separate from the dynamic styles. You can control text and paragraph formatting of your lists and the list indents 336 with normal text and paragraph styles.

The bullet types, numbering types bullets and numbering used on individual levels in multi-level lists are all controlled by the list definitions stored in the list tools.

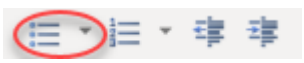
These settings are applied individually to each list with the list tools and they are not dynamic like styles. This means that changing the definition of a list in the list tool has no effect on lists that have already been created. To change a list at the moment, you must always re-apply the list definition. This may change in a future version of Help+Manual.

See also:

Formatting text with styles 292

5.7.15.1 Bulleted lists

To create simple bulleted lists you basically just need to select the tool in the **Write** tab and start typing – or just select the paragraphs you want to turn into a list and then select the tool.



To change the text and paragraph formatting of the list contents you need to apply a style or format the paragraph and text manually. See Formatting lists 334 for details.

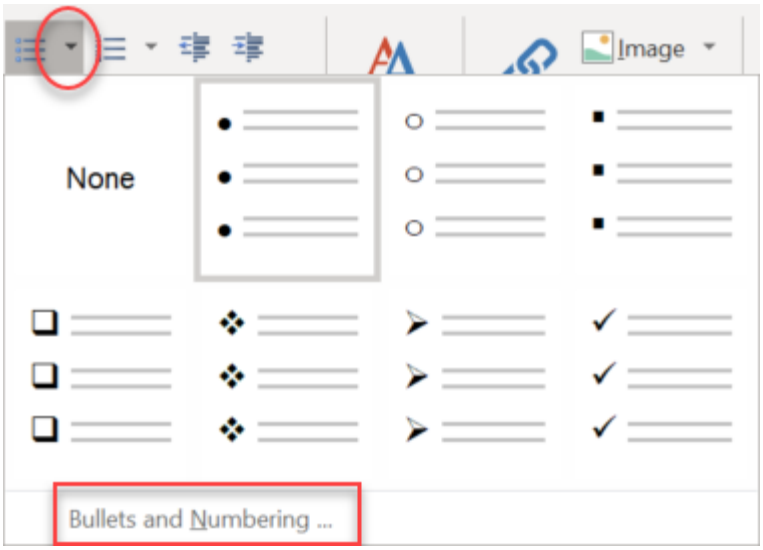
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Key Information
If you activate standard UL/OL lists 341 for HTML output list bullet definitions are ignored. When standard lists are enabled only the default browser bullets are used.

How to make a quick bulleted list

Making a new list:

1. Click in the paragraph where you want to start the list.
2. Select the Bullets tool in the **Write** tab. Clicking on the left of the tool will apply the default bullet template. Clicking on the arrow on the right of the tool displays a quick gallery of available bullet templates:

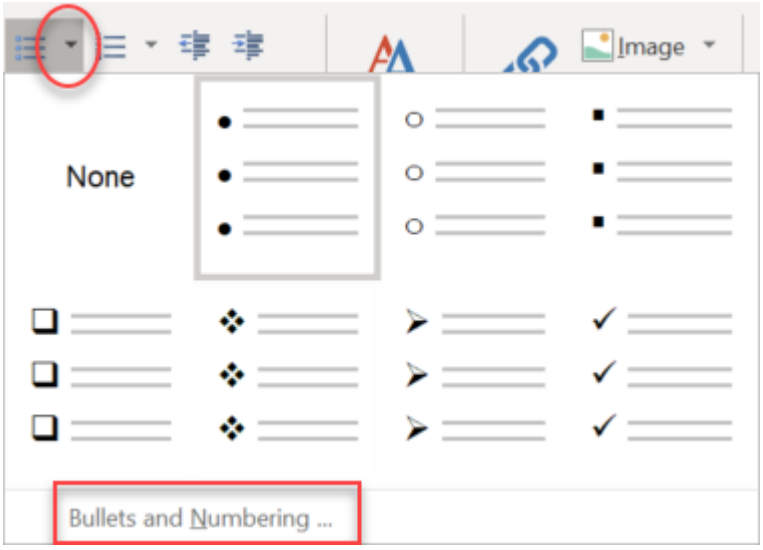


3. Select a template to use and start typing. Alternatively you can also select *Bullets and Numbering* to display the full Bullets and Numbering dialog.
4. Select the Bullets tool again to turn the list off. Pressing **Enter** twice in a list without typing any text also turns the list off.

Turning existing paragraphs into a list:

1. Select the paragraphs you want to turn into a bulleted list.
2. Select the Bullets tool in the **Write** tab. Clicking on the left of the tool will apply the default bullet template. Clicking on the arrow on the right of the tool displays a quick gallery of available bullet templates:

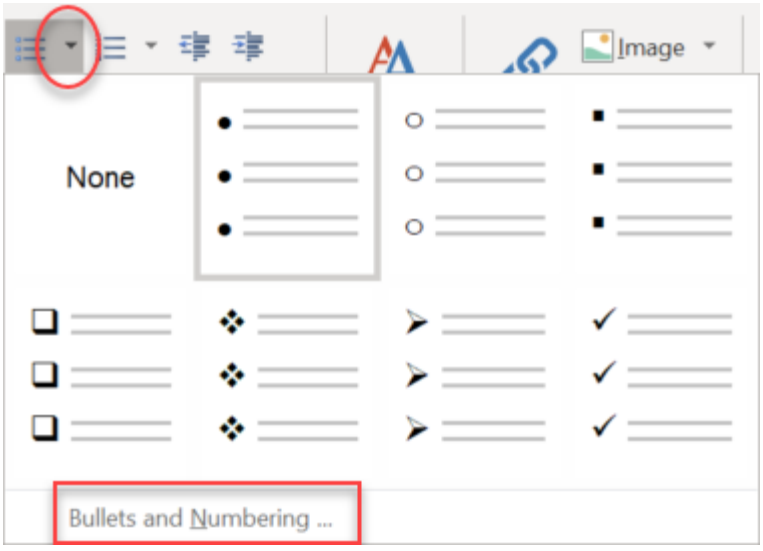
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Select the template you want to apply. Alternatively you can also select *Bullets and Numbering* to display the full Bullets and Numbering dialog.

Changing the bulleted list template

1. Click in the list entry (for a single entry) or select the entire list.
2. Display the quick gallery by clicking on the arrow next to the Bullets tool:



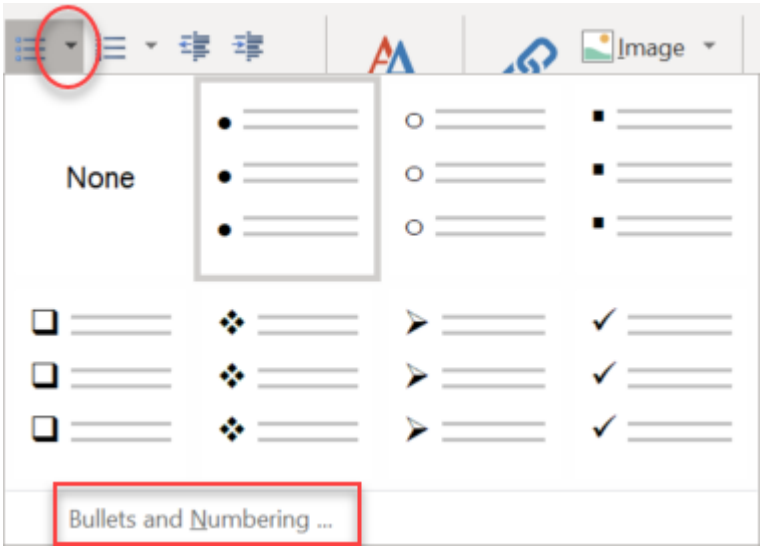
3. Select a different template from the options in the gallery.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

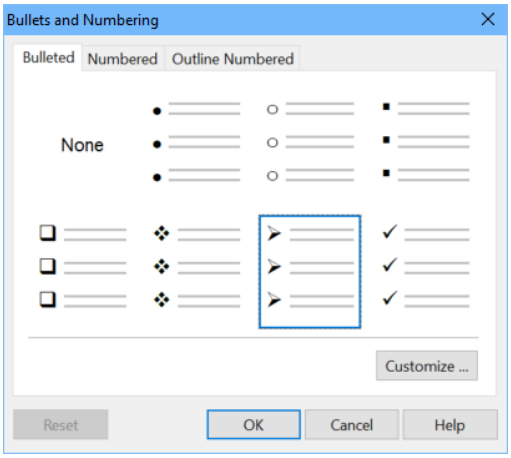
Customizing a bulleted list definition

In bulleted lists you can only change the bullet character with the list definition. All other formatting is handled by the template of the paragraph used for the list. See Formatting lists 334 for details.

1. Click in the list entry (for a single entry) or select the entire list.
2. Display the quick gallery by clicking on the arrow next to the Bullets tool:



3. Select *Bullets and Numbering* below the gallery to display the Bullets and Numbering 1340 formatting dialog:

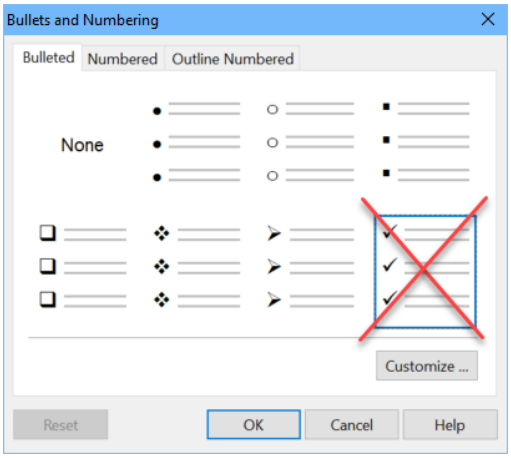


4. Select the bullet template you want to change, then click on *Customize* to edit it. If no template is selected when you select *Customize* the last slot will be used automatically. See Temporary list customization 337 for details.

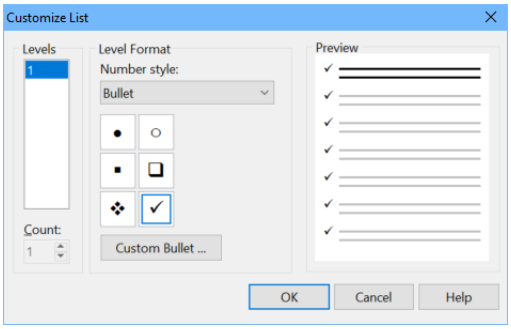
Important: Don't use the last list template for customization you want to store.
The last list template on the bottom right is used for temporary customization of list tem-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

plates that you don't want to save permanently. It will be overwritten by the next temporary customization. See Temporary list customization 337 for details.



5. The *Customize* button displays the customization dialog. Select one of the bullets displayed or click on *Select Bullet* to select a different bullet character.



Inactive settings:

Levels only applies to Outline numbered lists 324 and is inactive here.

List indent:

The list indent is set automatically. To change it you must change the indent of the first paragraph in the list. See Formatting lists 334 for details.

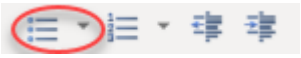
Inserting normal un-bulleted paragraphs in a bulleted list

Sometimes you want to insert a paragraph without a bullet within a bulleted list and have the list continue normally after the paragraph.

1. Create all the text entries of the list with bullets, including the paragraph you want to be un-bulleted.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Click in the paragraph you want to be un-bulleted and select **List Tool** in the Toolbar. This will turn off the bullet for that paragraph. You can also do this for multiple paragraphs.



See also:

Formatting lists 334

5.7.15.2 Numbered lists

To create simple numbered lists you basically just need to select the tool in the **Write** Ribbon and start typing – or just select the paragraphs you want to turn into a list and then select the tool.

To change the text and paragraph formatting of the list contents you need to apply a style or format the paragraph and text manually. For details see Formatting lists 334.

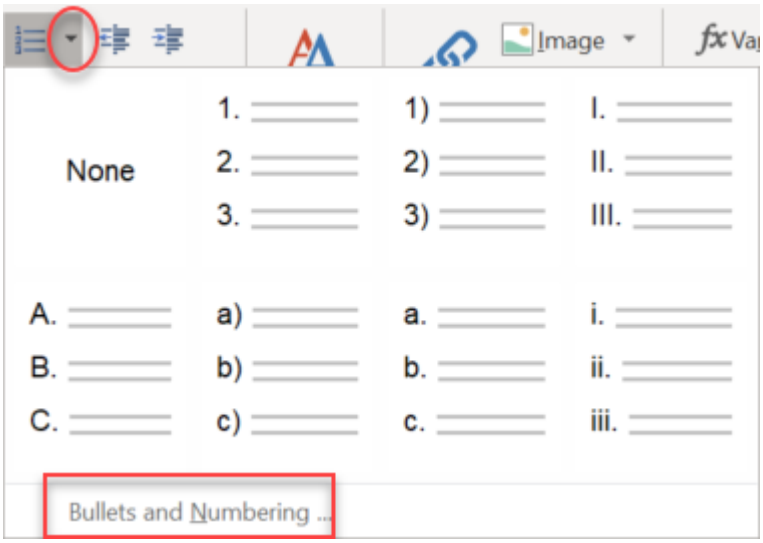
The only thing that is a little tricky at first is inserting un-numbered items within list while maintaining the automatic list numbering. It's easy once you know how – see the instructions below for details!

How to make a quick numbered list

Making a new list:

1. Click in the paragraph where you want to start the list.
2. Select the **Numbered List** tool in the **Write** tab. Clicking on the left of the tool will apply the default numbering template. Clicking on the arrow on the right of the tool displays a quick gallery of available numbering templates:

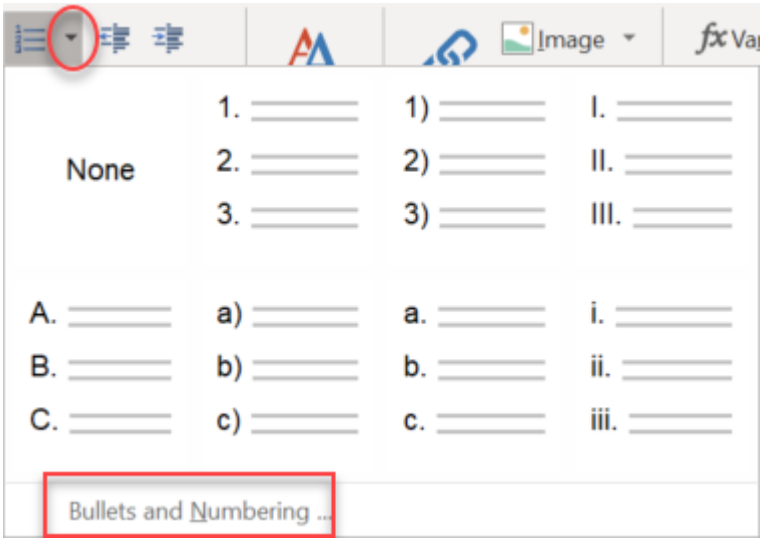
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Select a template to use and start typing. Alternatively you can also select *Bullets and Numbering* to display the full Bullets and Numbering dialog.
4. Select the Numbered List tool again to turn the list off. Pressing **Enter** twice in a list without typing any text also turns the list off.

Turning existing paragraphs into a list:

1. Select the paragraphs you want to turn into a numbered list.
2. Select the **Numbered List** tool in the **Write** tab. Clicking on the left of the tool will apply the default bullet template. Clicking on the arrow on the right of the tool displays a quick gallery of available numbering templates:

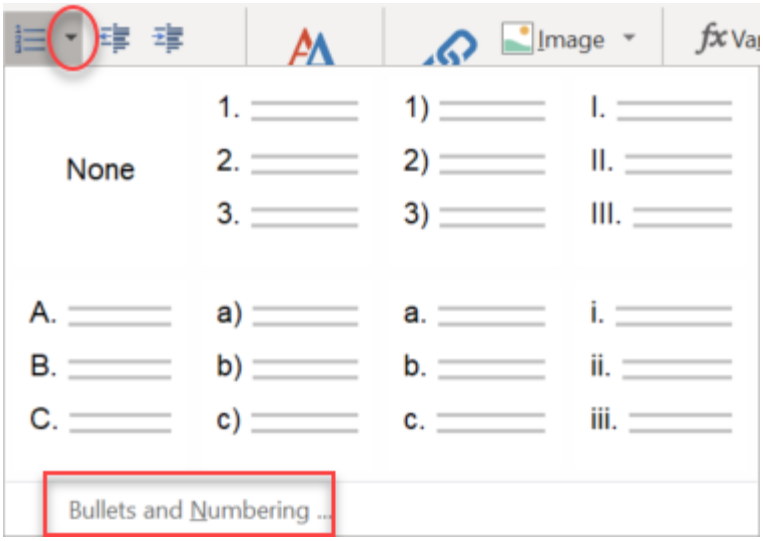


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Select the template you want to apply. Alternatively you can also select *Bullets and Numbering* to display the full Bullets and Numbering dialog.

Changing the numbered list template

1. Click in the list entry (for a single entry) or select the entire list.
2. Display the quick gallery by clicking on the arrow next to the Numbered List tool:



3. Select a different template from the options in the gallery.

Restarting list numbering

Often you will want to reset the numbering of your lists, or set your lists to start with a specific number.

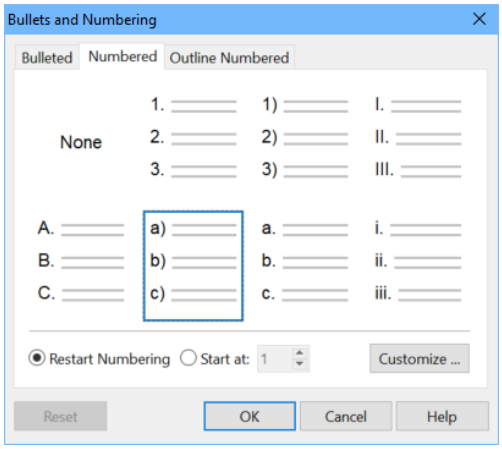
Note 1: You can reset numbering at any point in a list. However, if you reset the numbering anywhere below the first list item, you are actually splitting the list into two lists. The first list ends at the point above the reset numbering, the second list begins with the item where you reset the numbering.

1. Select the items in the list you want to renumber. This will normally be the entire list, but you can also select a section of the list.

   If you want to restart numbering in the middle of a list you must select from the point where you want renumbering to start until the end of the list.If you want to renumber just part of the list, select the list part and turn numbering off and then on again. This will create a second list inside the first list, and the numbering of the first list will "jump over" the second, new list.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Display the quick gallery (see above) and then select **Bullets and Numbering** to display the Bullets and Numbering 1340 formatting dialog and select the Numbered tab:



3. Select *Restart Numbering* to reset the list numbering to start at 1 or *Start at:* to select the number you want to start with.

Restart Numbering splits the current list

Note that *Restart Numbering* creates a new list that begins at the point where the numbering is restarted. If you restart numbering in the middle of a list you are splitting the list into two lists with their own numbering sequences.

Inserting un-numbered paragraphs in a numbered list

Sometimes you want to insert a paragraph without numbering within a numbered list and have the numbering continue normally after the paragraph. This method is easier than re-setting the numbering:

1. Create all the text entries of the list with numbering, including the paragraph you want to be un-numbered.
2. Click in the paragraph you want to be un-numbered and select **List Tool** in the Toolbar. This will turn off numbering for that paragraph and the entries beneath the paragraph will be re-numbered correctly. You can also select multiple paragraphs and turn numbering off for them.

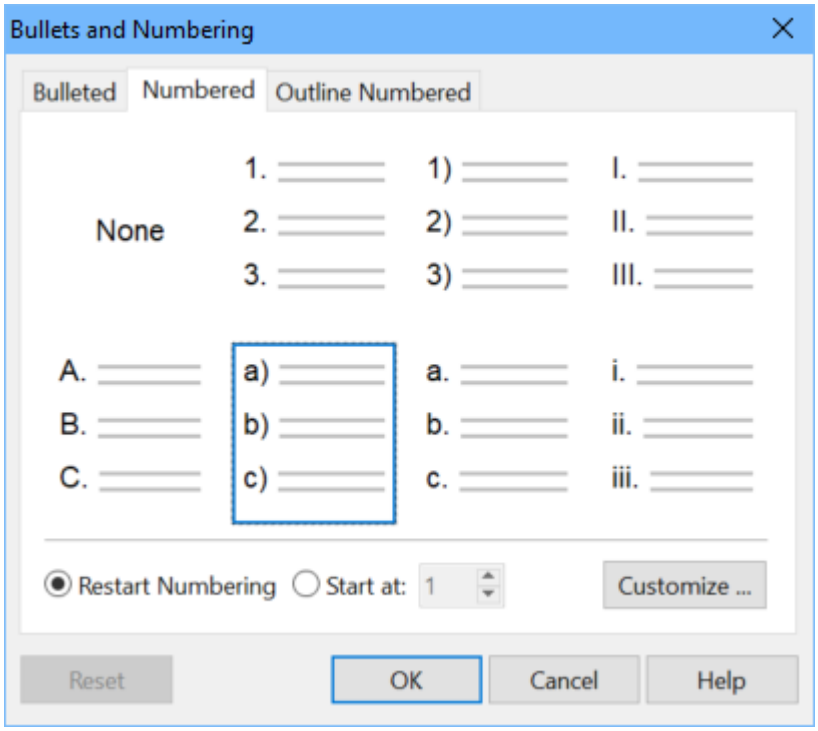
3. Now you can type text or insert a graphic in the un-numbered paragraph.

You can also restart numbering for lists that contain un-numbered paragraphs. After re-setting the numbering (see above) the un-numbered paragraphs will be numbered again. Just select them and click on the numbering tool to switch the numbering off again.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

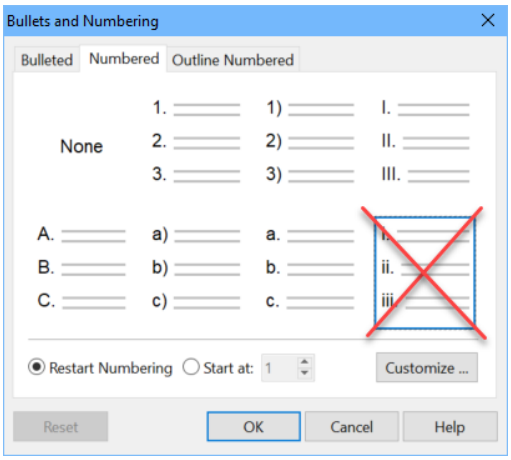
Customizing numbered lists

1. Click in the list entry (for a single entry) or select the entire list.
2. Display the quick gallery (see above) and then select *Bullets and Numbering* to display the Bullets and Numbering 1340 formatting dialog and select the *Numbered* tab:



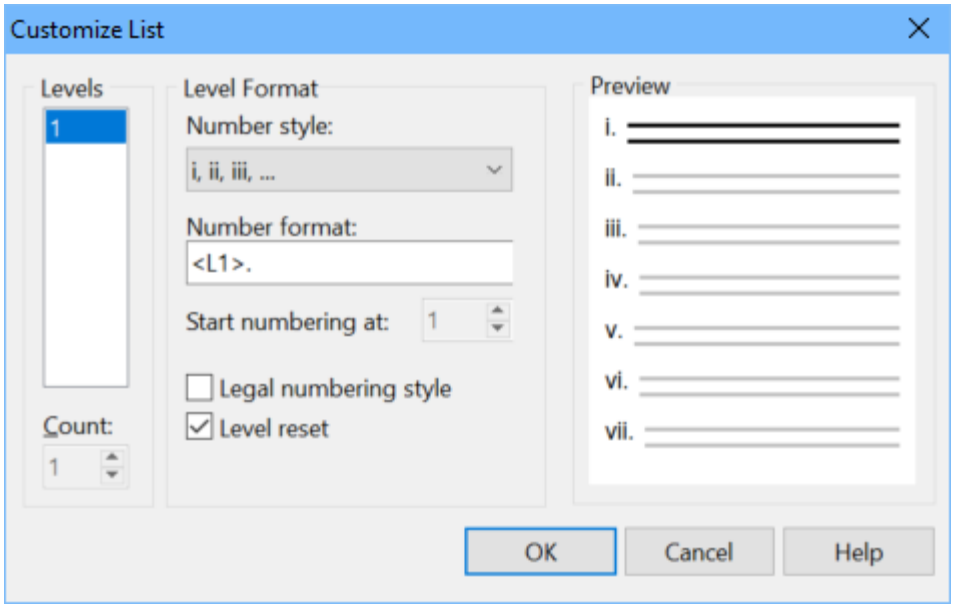
3. Select one of the definitions and click on *Customize* to modify the definition.

Important: Don't use the last list template for customization you want to store.
The last list template on the bottom right is used for temporary customization of list templates that you don't want to save permanently. It will be overwritten by the next temporary customization. See Temporary list customization 337 for details.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

4. The *Customize* button displays this dialog



Inactive settings:

Levels and *Start numbering at:* only apply to Outline numbered lists 324 (the *Start numbering at* setting is for sub-levels).

List indent:

The list indent is set automatically. To change it you must change the indent of the first paragraph in the list. See Formatting lists 334 for details.

Number style:

Just select the style from the list, it will be displayed automatically in the preview on the right.

Number format:

This field allows you to enter characters to be displayed to the left and the right of the number. <**L1**> is the variable that enters the number in the list. Don't change or delete this entry unless you know what effect you want to achieve!

"L" stands for "level" and since there is only one level in a normal numbered list <L1> is the only variable you can use in single-level lists. You can use other level variables (<L2>, <L3> and so on) in Outline numbered lists 324.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Enter the characters you want to display with the list number to the left and right of the <L1> variable.

   Examples:

   (<L1>) will generate: (1), (2), (3)
   [<L1>] **will generate:** [1], [2], [3]
   <L1>. **will generate:** 1., 2., 3.

2. Click on OK to save your changed definition. This overwrites the existing definition.

The *Reset* button in the Gallery resets the predefined lists to the default values. See Formatting lists 334 for information on changing the list indent.

See also:

Formatting lists 334

5.7.15.3 Outline numbered lists

Key Information
If you activate standard UL/OL lists 341 for HTML output list bullet definitions are ignored. When standard HTML lists are enabled only the default browser bullets are used.

Outline numbered lists, or multi-level lists, are pretty much the same as normal numbered lists except that they also support multiple numbering levels and each level can have a different style. This is much easier to demonstrate than to describe:

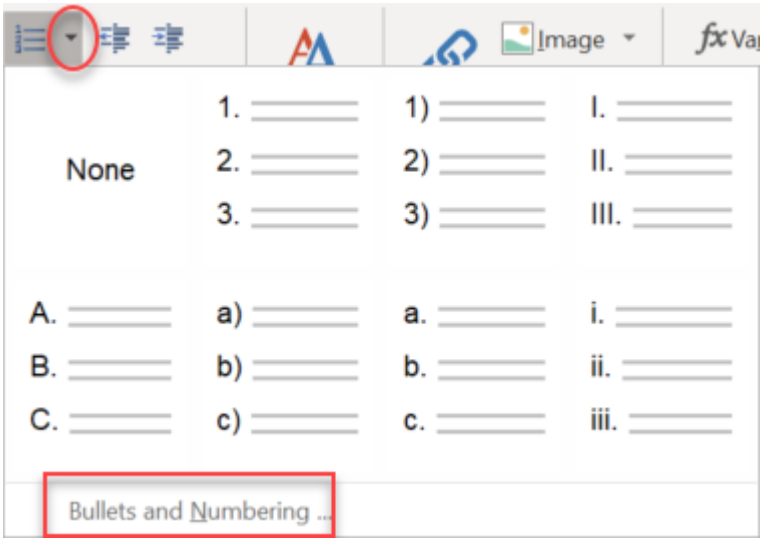
Example of an outline numbered list:

1. This is the first level of an outline numbered list.
   a. The is the second level of the list.
   b. This is another second-level list entry.
2. This is another first-level entry in an outline numbered list.
   a. This is a second-level entry. In this list second-level entries are numbered with *a, b, c*...
   b. This is another second-level entry.
      i) And this is a third-level entry. In this list third-level entries are numbered with *i, ii, iii*...
      ii) This is another third-level entry. You get the general idea...

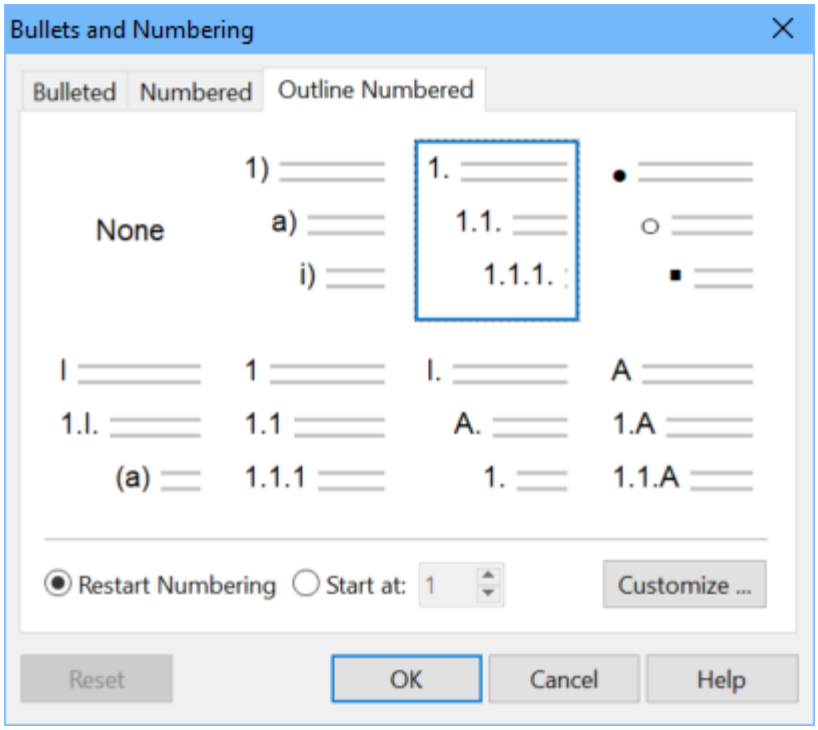
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to make an outline numbered list

1. Click in a paragraph or select the paragraphs you want to turn into a list. Then select the bullets and numbering tool in **Write** > **Paragraph**. Display the quick gallery, then select *Bullets and Numbering* to display the bullets and numbering 1340 formatting dialog.



2. Select the **Outline Numbered** tab and choose the outline list template you want to apply.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Click on **OK** to create the list.

All the items in the list will initially be top-level items. See below for instructions on creating lower-level items.

Tip – turning single-level lists into outline lists:
Selecting the **Numbered List** tool in the Toolbar automatically creates a single-level list. However, using the the **Indent Tools** in **Write** > **Paragraph**. automatically changes the level of the current item, turning the list into a multi-level list.

Numbered List tool:

Indent tools:

Changing item levels

1. Click in the list entry you want to make a lower-level item.
2. Use the **Indent Tools** in **Write** > **Paragraph** to increase or decrease the level of the current item. (When you are not in a list these tools change the normal paragraph indents.)

List indent:

The list indent is set automatically. To change it you must change the indent of the first paragraph in the list. See Formatting lists 334 for details. Note also that in multi-level lists you only have one indent that applies for all items in the list, no matter what level they are on.

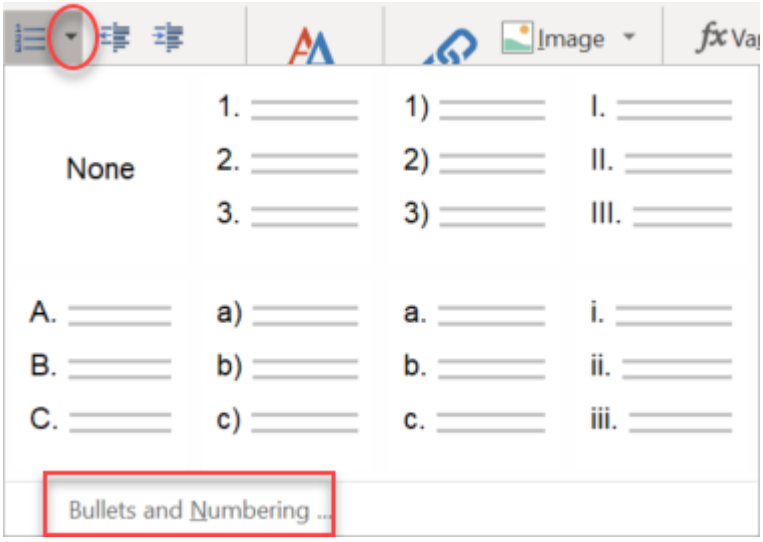
Restarting list numbering

Note 1 – Resetting in the middle of a list:
You can reset numbering at any point in a list. However, if you reset the numbering anywhere below the first list item, you are actually splitting the list into two lists.

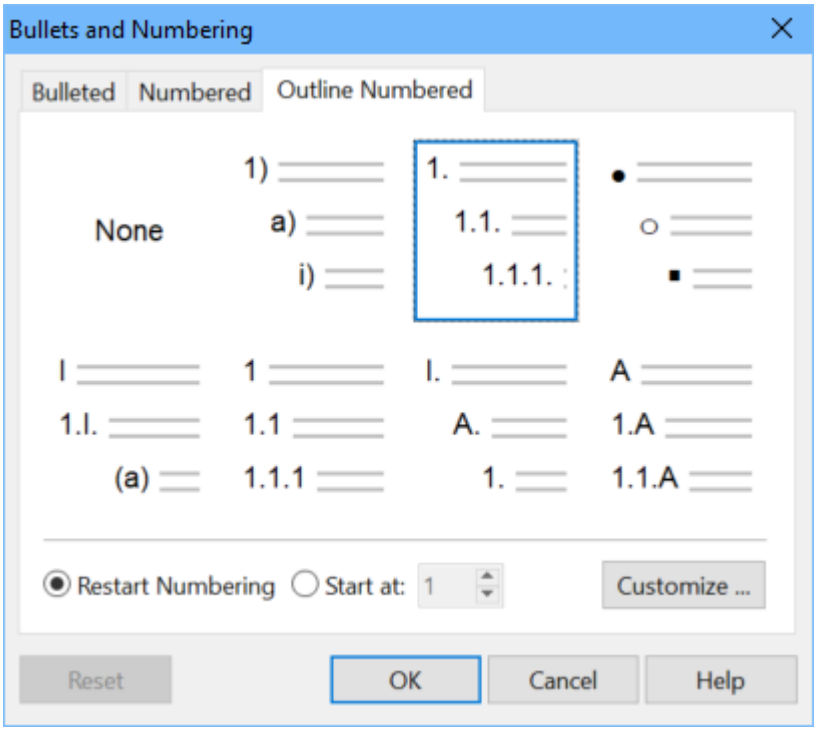
Note 2 – Resetting in the gallery only works on top-level items:
Reset numbering in the gallery only works on the top level of a list. See *Customizing outline numbered list definitions* further below for instructions on resetting the numbering of lower-level entries.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Select the part of the list you want to renumber. This will normally be the entire list, but you can also restart at any point in the list.
2. Select the bullets and numbering tool in **Write** > **Paragraph.** Display the quick gallery, then select *Bullets and Numbering* to display the bullets and numbering 1340 formatting dialog.



3. Select the **Outline Numbered** tab. This is important! If you try to reset numbering of an outline list in the normal **Numbered** tab you will get incorrect results! then select *Restart Numbering* to reset the list numbering to start at 1 or *Start at:* to select the number you want to start with:

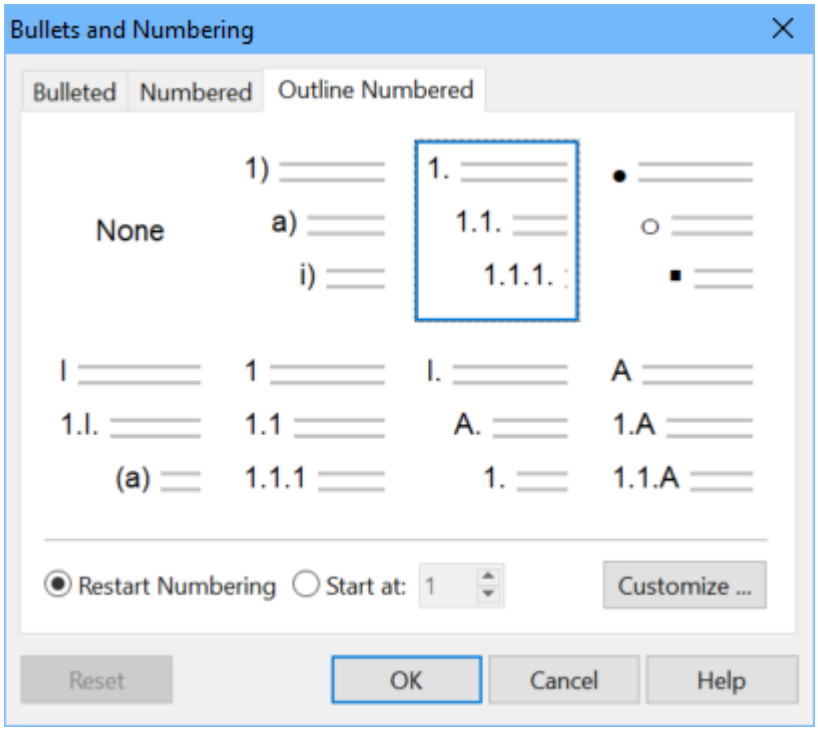


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Selecting different list templates

See Formatting lists 334 for more details on individual list formatting options. It is important to understand that the list templates just define the list bullets or numbering and the levels for outline numbered lists. They are not styles and they do not define the paragraph attributes of the list items, with the exception of the indent.

1. Click in the list entry (for a single entry) or select the entire list. (It does not actually make much sense to change the appearance for a single list entry...)
2. Select **Write > Bullets and Numbering**. to open the Bullets and Numbering dialog and select the Outline Numbered tab:

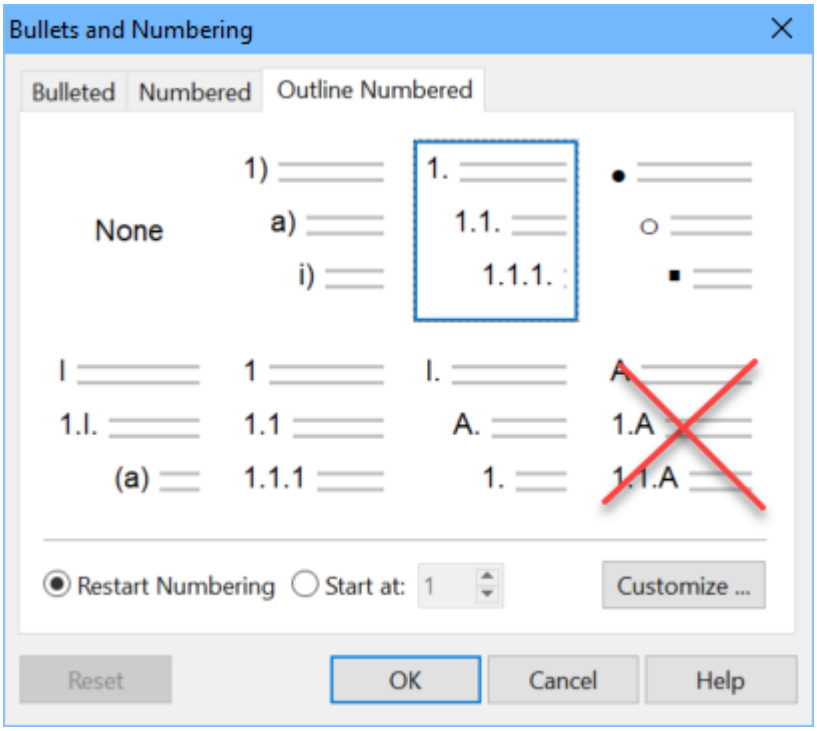


3. Select one of the predefined outline numbered lists from the Gallery and click on **OK**.

   OR select one of the definitions and click on *Customize* to modify the definition.

   Important: Don't use the last list template for customization you want to store. The last list template on the bottom right is used for temporary customization of list templates that you don't want to save permanently. It will be overwritten by the next temporary customization. See Customizing lists 337 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



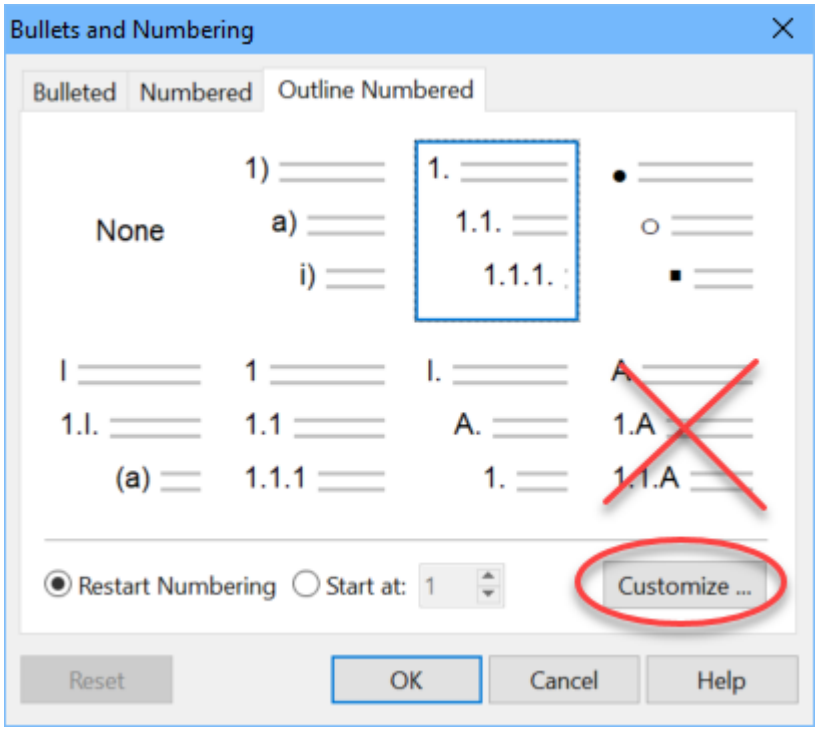
The *Reset* button resets the list definition for the selected style slot. It is only active if the selected slot definition has been customized.

Customizing outline numbered list definitions

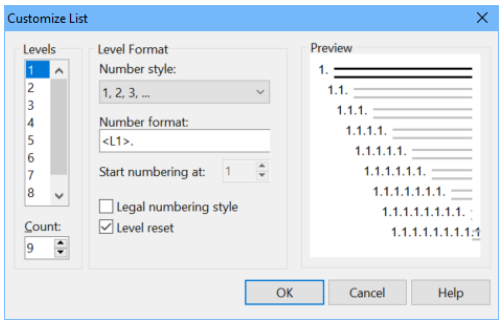
See Formatting lists 334 for more details on individual list formatting options. It is important to understand that the list templates just define the list bullets or numbering and the levels for outline numbered lists. They are not styles and they do not define the paragraph attributes of the list items, with the exception of the indent.

1. Select a list template in the Outline Numbered tab (see above). You can select any of the predefined "slots" for customization except the last one at the bottom right. That one is reserved for temporary customization and will be overwritten the next time temporary customization is performed. See Temporary list customization 337 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Then click on *Customize* to modify the definition. You will see this dialog:



3. Edit the list definitions for each level of your list that you want to change by selecting the level number in the *Levels* box on the left. The results for each level are displayed in the *Preview* box on the right.

   Note that there is a separate definition for each level of your outline numbered list! You must edit all the values for every list level that you want to change.

4. Click on **OK** to save your new outline numbered list definition to the Gallery. This will overwrite the current definition.

Use the RESET button to restore a list template slot

To return a list template slot to the default settings, just select it and click on the *Reset* button in the Outline Numbered tab.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Number style:

You can choose a different numbering style for each level. Select the level from the list on the left, then select the numbering style. The selected style will be displayed automatically in the preview on the right.

Number format:

This field allows you to enter characters to be displayed to the left and the right of the number for each level.

- <L1>, <L2>, <L3> and so on are the variables that enter the numbers in the list for each level. Don't change or delete these entries! Also note that the number of each variable must correspond to the level number. For example, <L1> is for level 1, <L6> for level 6, and so on.
- For each level, enter the characters you want to display with the list number to the left and right of the <Lx> variable.

  Examples:

  (<L1>) will generate: (1), (2), (3)
  [<L1>] will generate: [1], [2], [3]
  <L1>. will generate: 1., 2., 3.

Start numbering at:

This setting allows you to set the number at which numbering is to begin for the current level. The setting is stored separately for each level and must be set for each level.

Legal numbering style:

Activates legal numbering style for outline numbered lists, with all the list numbers at the left margin. Must be set separately for each level of an outline numbered list!

Legal Style:	Normal Style (default):
1. Text	**1.** Text
1.1. Text	**1.1.** Text
1.1.1. Text	**1.1.1.** Text

- You cannot have different indent sizes for individual levels in outline numbered lists. Because of this the legal numbering style is preferable for lists with large numbers of levels otherwise you would have a very large indent for the top level and smaller indents for the lower levels, which does not look so harmonious.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Level reset:

When this is selected the numbering of sub-levels in outline numbered lists always re-starts with 1 or the equivalent. Otherwise the numbering continues from one sub-level to the next. Must be selected separately for each level of the outline numbered list!

With Level Reset (default):	Without Level Reset:
1. Text	**1.** Text
a) Text	**a)** Text
b) Text	**b)** Text
2. Text	**2.** Text
a) Text	**c)** Text
b) Text	**d)** Text

Changing the number of levels:

By default outline numbered lists have 9 levels. You can increase or decrease this number with the Count: setting. The maximum number of levels is 20. Even 9 is actually far too many – lists should never have more than four or five levels at the maximum, otherwise they tend to be confusing for the reader.

Editing multi-level lists with customized templates

If you customize a list, apply it to the list you are working on and then edit the list everything will be normal. You can add new levels to the list in the topic editor window and each new level you add to the list will have the style you defined in the customization dialog. This is because in the background, the list temporarily already has all the levels you defined in the dialog. However, this is only valid for your current session. That leads us to this problem:

Customized list templates don't work when I return to them the next day!

Whoops! You spent time customizing a list template and stored it in one of the available slots in the list dialog. Then you closed your project, returned to it the next day and added some new levels to the list – and they had the wrong formatting! Instead of your definitions in the list template, they seem to have random formatting! What gives???

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The full list template is only stored with the list for the current session

Since list templates in Help+Manual aren't (yet) dynamic, there is no link between the style and the list as there is for paragraph styles. However, when you apply a style to a list, the list temporarily stores the formatting for all the levels in the background. If you add levels to the list, it formats them correctly because it already "knows" how all the levels are supposed to look.

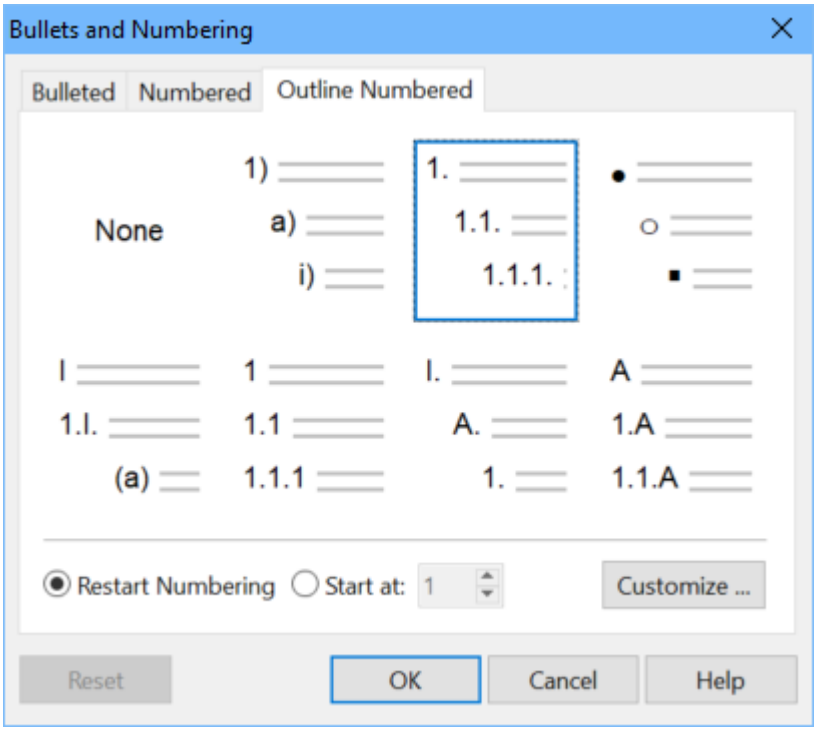
This background information is lost when you save and move to a different topic or close the project, however. When you return and add new levels, Help+Manual will then "guess" what the new levels are supposed to look like, and that is rarely what you defined in the list template.

How to use a stored customized list template in the next editing session

To do this you need to re-activate the background information for the whole list. You do this by re-applying your stored list template.

1. Select or click in the list you want to work on in the editor.
2. Click on the arrow on the right of the **Numbered List** tool in the Toolbar and then select *Bullets and Numbering* at the bottom of the dialog displayed to open the list gallery. The list template belonging to the list will be selected if Help+Manual recognizes it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. If it's not selected, just select the slot where you stored your list definition.

Caution: Temporary List Customization:

If you click on the Customize button when no list template is selected you start a temporary list customization. This will then automatically be stored in the last template (bottom right). You can use this just like the other templates, but it will be overwritten the next time you start a temporary customization. So it's better not to use this for templates you want to reuse. See Temporary list customization 337 for details.

4. If you want to customize the list before applying it click on **Customize** after selecting the template. See *Customizing outline numbered list definitions* above for details. Otherwise, just click on **OK** to apply it to your list. It will then have all the information it needs in the background for all levels for the current editing session.

After this, the list will have all the information from the list template for the current editing session. If you add new levels to the list, or have added them prior to reselecting the template, they will be formatted as they are defined in the list template.

See also:

Numbered lists 318
Formatting lists 334

5.7.15.4 Formatting lists

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

By default lists have their own hidden indent for the numbers or bullets, which is not displayed in the editor ruler. To use your own indent you must apply a style or format the paragraph manually.

List definitions only define the bullet or numbering styles to be used and a standard automatic indent between the number or bullet and the list item. They do not allow you to format indents or to define paragraph formatting, and they are not linked to paragraph styles. It's also important to know that the list formatting templates really are templates, not dynamic styles.

Paragraph formatting and indents can be applied manually or with styles. In addition to this you can also change the appearance of the bullets and numbers (color, bold, italic etc) by applying manual formatting in the list items.

HTML output: Text formatting or list formatting mode?

In HTML-based output formats you can choose to have your lists formatted "as text" or as standard HTML <ol> (numbered) and <ul> (bullets) lists. The setting for this is in the HTML Export Options sections for WebHelp and eBooks 1435 and for CHM and Visual Studio Help 1459.

Lists as text are the default

By default, lists will be formatted as text, using a combination of formatting methods to achieve maximum compatibility across different browsers, browser versions, viewers and platforms. The advantage of this is the the formatting will be as consistent as possible on all these platforms.

Lists as <ol> and <ul> have some restrictions

When you use standard HTML lists Help+Manual generates HTML and CSS styling to make the lists as accurate as possible, but it will sometimes not be as close to what you format in the Help+Manual editor as the text formatting option.

- **The general left indent** of the list is included, but it will not be exact. There is still no CSS formatting that will indent lists the same in all browsers, and this is worse in older browsers.
- **Hanging indents** in lists always revert to the browser's default indent. CSS does not have a definition for the size of the hanging indent part.

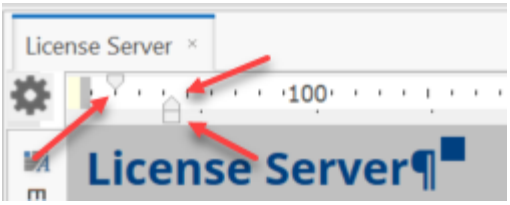
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **Vertical margins** should be correct. By default, browsers typically leave a huge gap between the preceding paragraph and the first list item, because this is the default margin of the browser. Help+Manual corrects this automatically, as far as possible.
- **Simple, single-level numbered lists** are supported with all numbering options: decimal, upper/lower Roman, upper/lower alpha.
- **Numbered lists with level reset** (change numbering at specific list items) are also supported
- **The list numbering format** is always the browser default, which is typically a dot (".") following the number. Brackets, braces and the other formatting options available with Help+Manual's list definitions are only supported with text-based lists.
- **Legal numbering** in lists is not supported.
- **The bullets available in lists** are very limited. Even CSS3 has just 3 bullet symbols: disc, circle and square. If the bullet defined in your Help+Manual topic matches one of the three, the `list-style-type` attribute is exported. If the bullet does not match, the `list-style-type` is left undefined and the browser will apply its default style (usually a disc, circle or square).

How to change list indents

The paragraph settings of lists, including the indent for the bullets or numbers, are controlled by the first item in the list. To change the indent or the paragraph formatting of the entire list you just need to format the first item.

1. Click in the first item in the list.
2. Adjust the indent of the list with the paragraph tool in the ruler above the editor:



You can also adjust list indents by applying an indented paragraph style to the first item in the list. Note that in outline numbered lists you can only set one indent for the entire list, including the lower levels.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Formatting lists manually and with styles

- You can change the paragraph settings of an entire list by formatting the first item of the list manually or with a paragraph style.
- If you also want to apply font settings you must apply styles to all the items in the list.
- Even though the first item controls the entire list, it is good practice to apply your paragraph style to the entire list. Then you won't need to reformat if you ever split the list in two.

How to make bold and colored numbering and bullets

The formatting of bullets and numbering in lists is controlled by the formatting of the last character in the first item of the list.

- To make bold numbering add a space to the end of the first item in the list, select the space and make it bold. The numbering will also be bold if the entire first item is bold, of course.
- You can use the same method to change the color of the numbering or the bullets in the list. Just format a space at the end of the first item with a color – the space is invisible so the color won't show.

See also:

Bulleted lists 313
Numbered lists 318

5.7.15.5 Temporary list customization

The last template on the bottom right in the list gallery for each list type is used for temporary list customization. It works in exactly the same way as the other templates, but it is not stored permanently like the other templates. It is overwritten every time you perform a new temporary customization for the current list type.

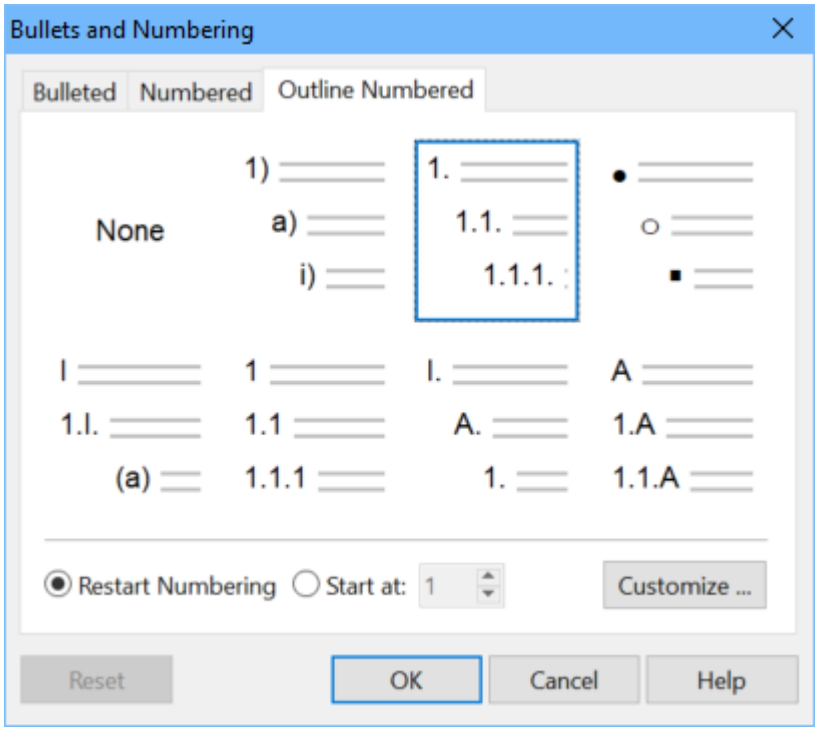
This works because the templates are not dynamically linked to the lists formatted with them. Changing the list template definition does not change existing lists unless you reformat them with the updated template.

You can use this fact to create and format more different list types than the available number of template slots. To reuse a list type that isn't stored in a template you just need to load it into the temporary list template slot. Then you can apply it to other lists.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Customizing known lists

You customize existing lists by selecting or clicking in the list. Then you click on the arrow on the right of the or tool in the Toolbar and then select *Bullets and Numbering* at the bottom of the dialog displayed to open the list gallery. If Help+Manual recognizes the list type it will preselect the template.



This is the normal case. When you customize any list templates except the last one (bottom right) the template is stored in your project and will be available in that project in the future.

Customizing unknown lists

If the list is not known no list template is preselected when you open the gallery. You then have the following choices:

- If you click *Customize* for the unknown list the settings of the currently loaded list will be loaded into the editing dialog. When you save, your changes will be automatically saved in the last, temporary template slot. This is not permanent because it will be overwritten automatically by the next temporary customization.
- If you select any of the other templates before selecting *Customize* the settings from the current list will not be loaded. Instead, you will edit the settings for that template

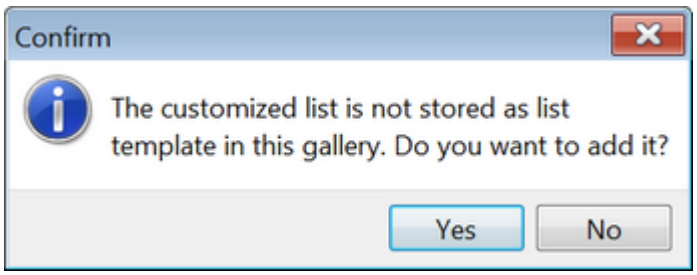
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

and apply them to the current list when you close the dialog. The changes in the template will be stored permanently.

Reusing the formatting of an unknown list as a template

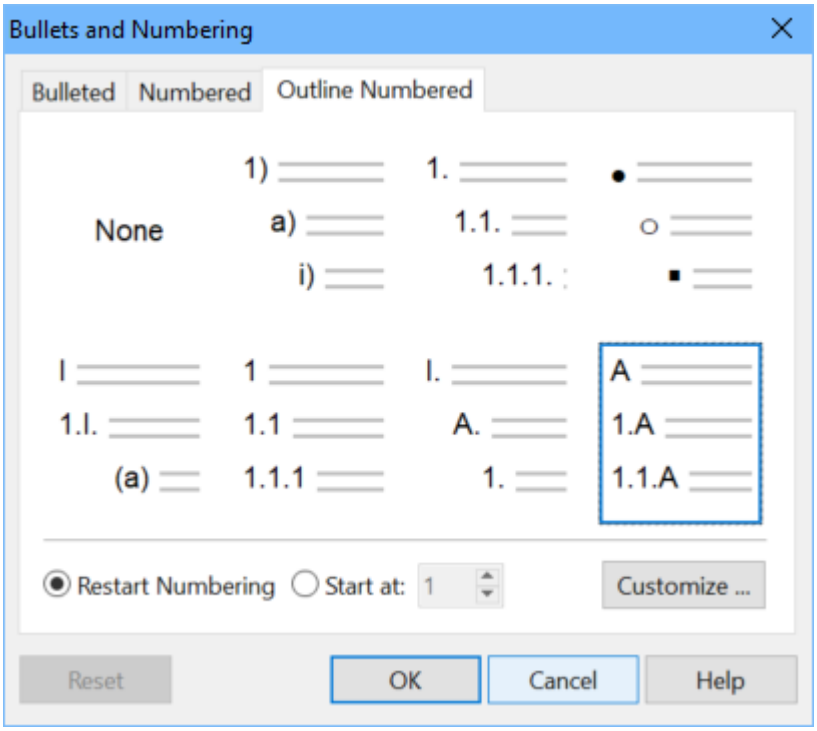
You can use this behavior to reuse the formatting of an unknown list type as a template. You just need to load the list formatting into the temporary template slot. Then it will be available for use until you reuse the slot.

1. Click in the list whose formatting you want to reuse.
2. Then click on the arrow on the right of the **List** tool in the Toolbar and select *Bullets and Numbering* at the bottom of the dialog displayed to open the list gallery.
3. DON'T select any list template! Instead, just click on the *Customize* button.
4. If you want to make any changes, you can. Otherwise, just click directly on **OK**. You will see this dialog:



5. The loaded/customized settings will then be saved in the last template slot, where they can be used just like all the other templates.

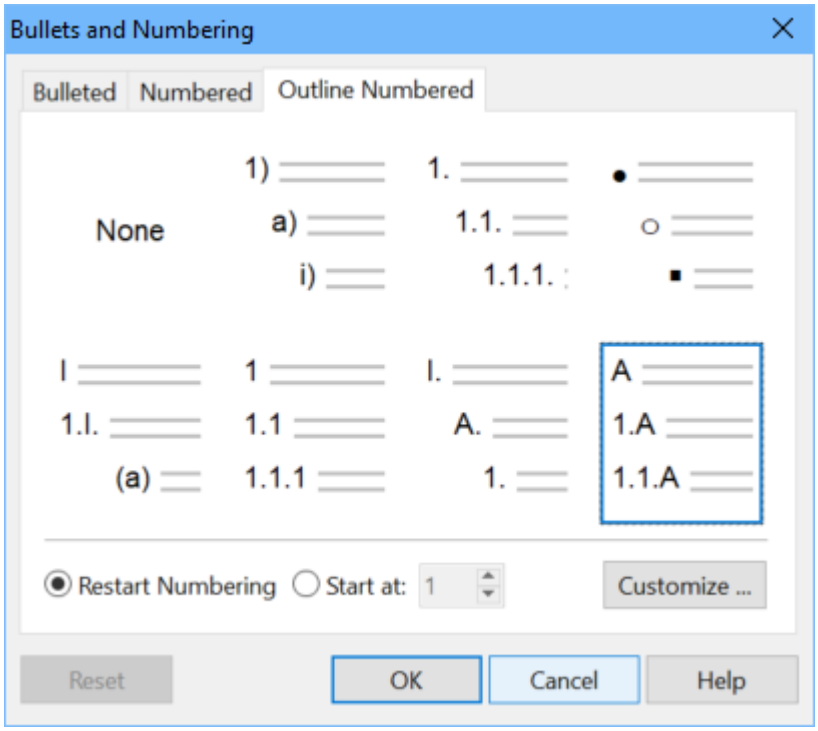
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Creating temporary customization yourself

To create a temporary customization yourself, you just need to select the last template slot (bottom right) and customize that. You can continue to use this template in exactly the same way as all the others. You just need to remember that it will be overwritten the next time you perform a temporary customization. This applies for all list types (Bulleted, Numbered, Outline Numbered).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



5.7.15.6 HTML list output format

By default Help+Manual outputs numbered and bulleted lists with tags formatted as `inline-block` in HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks, Visual Studio Help). This generally produces better results across all browsers than the standard <ul> and <ol> lists generated when you turn the *Export lists as texts* option off in HTML Export Options (see below).

Even HTML Help/CHM, which uses Internet Explorer for HTML rendering, will frequently produce unsatisfactory list formatting if you do not use this option. This applies particularly to more complex lists and the indents used in lists.

Differences between text format and list format lists

Bullets are not specified explicitly in list format (UL)
Since the kind of bullets you can use with <ul> tags is very limited, H+M doesn't even bother to specify them, and it does not use graphics as bullets. It just writes an unnumbered list and lets the browser display it. In the default "export lists as text" mode the bullets are defined specifically and the HTML page will look as close as possible to the list in the editor. There are some limitations in Webhelp, as there is no corresponding Unicode symbol for all the possible bullets, but most bullets should work fine.

List formatting is largely under browser control

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual sets the list indents and basic bullet or number position in list format lists (UL and OL) but it does not try to compensate for differences in the ways that individual browsers manage lists. If you see differences in different browsers this is due to the browsers rendering of the HTML list code, not anything that Help+Manual is doing.

How to choose the HTML list output format

If you want you can configure your project to output lists as standard HTML <OL> and <UL> tags with <LI> list elements. This will produce less attractive formatting and layout in many cases and the appearance will vary greatly from browser to browser. However, it may be necessary for some applications.

- Go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp/HTML Help** > **HTML Export Options** 1435 and deselect the option *Export lists as text*.

Note that there are separate HTML Export Options settings in the **WebHelp** and **HTML Help** configuration sections. The settings in the **HTML Help** section are used for HTML Help/CHM and the two Microsoft Visual Studio Help formats. The settings in the WebHelp section are used for WebHelp and eBooks (ePUB, Kindle and eWriter).

See also:

HTML Export Options 1435

5.8 Managing the TOC & Topic Files

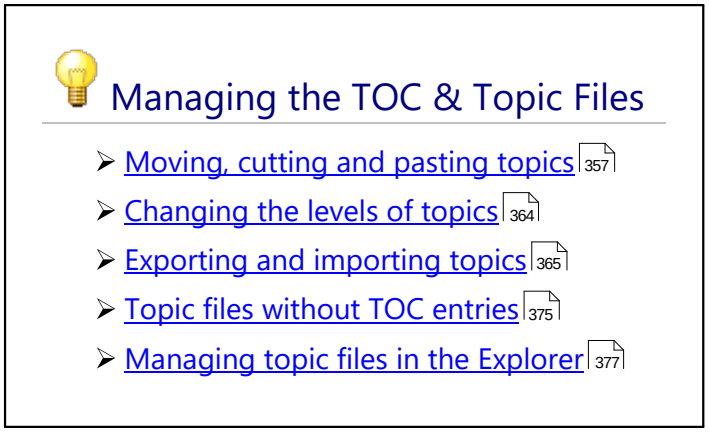
The **Table of Contents** (TOC) and **Project Files** sections in the Project Explorer are much more than just a place to display the contents of your project. They are also a powerful editing tool for manipulating the structure of your project. In the TOC section you can move topics around to change the structure and organization of your project whenever you want.

These sections are also where you will normally create new topics 174. You create topics in the Table of Contents section to include them in your project's TOC. In addition to this, you can also create topics that are not included in the TOC by creating new topic files directly in the Project Files section.

Once you have added topics to the TOC you can manipulate them in many ways. You can move them around, change their names, status and icons, cut and paste them (also between projects) and demote or promote them to change their positions and status in the TOC tree hierarchy.

All these operations can be performed in seconds with the mouse and/or simple keyboard and menu commands.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



5.8.1 Multiple TOCs

Help+Manual's conditional output features can create a wide range of variants of your project for different purposes. However, it is difficult to create versions with TOCs that have very different structures using only conditional output. The multiple TOC feature solves this problem. It allows you to create completely different TOCs with a different structure and different entries for different purposes.

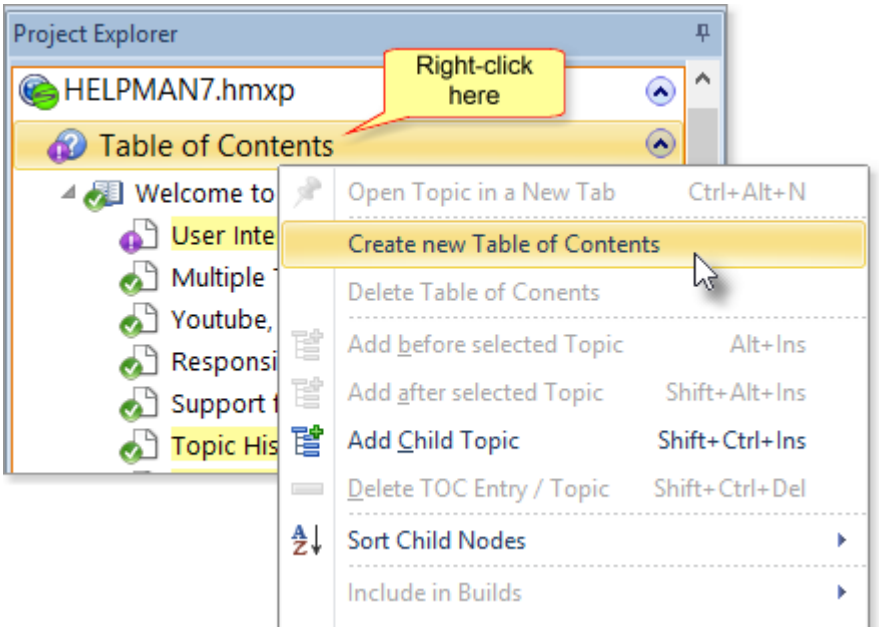
The entries in your additional TOCs can point to the same topic files as in your main TOC. Or they can have their own topic files that only exist in that TOC. When you publish you choose which TOC you want to use, and only the topics referenced by that TOC are exported – in some cases along with topic files linked to in those topics, to prevent dead links.

See Publishing projects with multiple TOCs 629 for details on selecting specific TOCs when you are publishing your projects. Also see the Multiple TOCs tutorial project that you can access directly in the Welcome page at the top of the Project Explorer on the left.

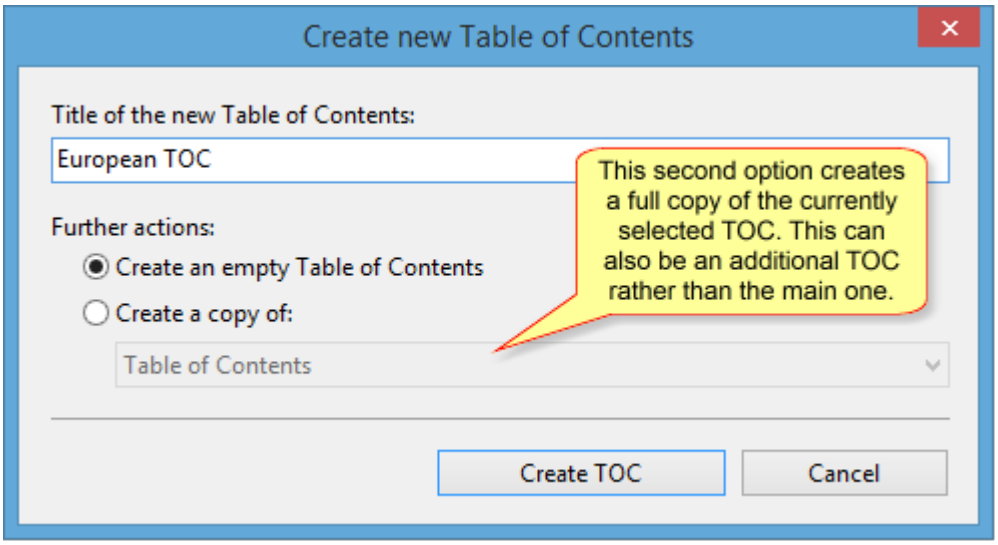
How to create an additional TOC

1. Right-click on the **Table of Contents** entry at the top of the Project Explorer on the left and select *Create new Table of Contents* in the context menu.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

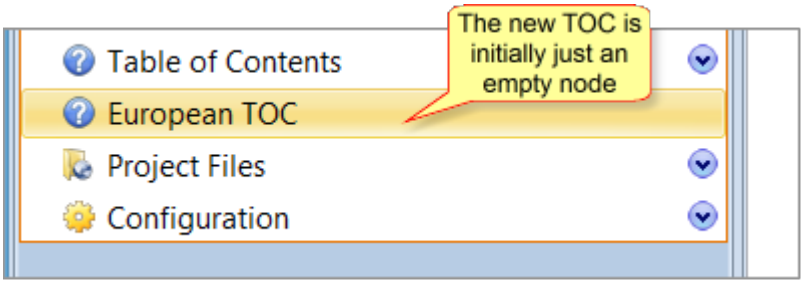


2. This opens the New TOC dialog:



3. Enter a descriptive title for the new TOC and choose whether you want it to be empty or a copy of the current TOC. If this is your first additional TOC you probably want it to be empty rather than a full copy of the entire TOC. Later you may want to make copies of existing additional TOCs that you then edit.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



4. Then create new entries in the new TOC in any of these ways:
   - Drag items from another TOC into the new one (onto the empty node if it doesn't yet have any entries). This does not create new topics. It only creates new references to existing topics.
   - Copy and paste from another TOC.
   - Create new entries with the **Add Topic** tool in the **Project** tab. If you use the *TOC Link* option it creates new entries for existing topics. If you use the *New Topic* option you will create completely new topics.

IMPORTANT: The "main" TOC always includes all topics!

To maintain compatibility with existing projects, the "original" or "main" TOC in your project will always include all topics when you publish with it. If you remove TOC entries from it without explicitly excluding the topic files that no longer have TOC entries (by using build options 989), those files will still all be included in the background in HTML output when you publish with the main TOC. They can then be found by search and the keyword index.

This only applies to CHM, WebHelp, eWriter and Visual Studio Help output. It doesn't apply to PDF, DOCX and eBooks, because there only topics that have TOC entries can ever be included.

Only secondary TOCs automatically exclude the topics for which they do not have TOC entries!

If you want to create an alternative TOC with a reduced or different set of topics, always do this with a secondary TOC, not with your "main" or "original" TOC (the top one). Again: The main TOC is always complete. If there are topic files without TOC entries in the project they will be included in the background when you choose the main TOC unless they have explicit build options that exclude them.

Use build options to to include hidden topics with secondary TOCs

By the same token, topic files without TOC entries will not be included automatically in the background with secondary TOCs. Then, a topic file without an entry in the current TOC will still be excluded even if it is set to "all builds". It will only be included if you explicitly

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

set a specific build option on it and activate that in the include options for the publishing operation.

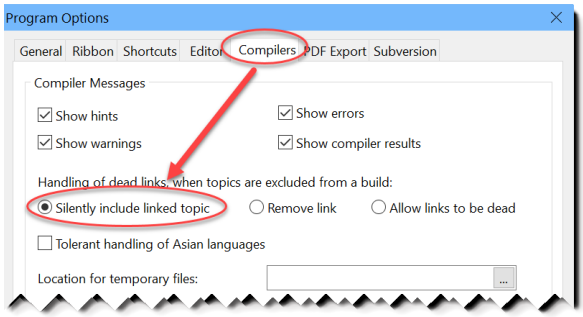
Popups in secondary TOCs

When you use popup topics in secondary TOCs the popup topic files your links refer to will not be included automatically as they are when you use the primary TOC. The *All Builds* include option assigned to all topics by default only works automatically in the primary TOC.

When you are using multiple TOCs in your project and publishing a secondary TOC, any popup topics you link to must be included explicitly. You can do this in two different ways:

Option 1: Dead links handling options

Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and set the dead links handling option to *Silently include linked topic*. This is the simplest solution but it will also automatically include any excluded topic files that you may have referenced with regular topic links. So you should always check your compiler report for topics like these that you may have not wanted to include. You can then handle the links with conditional text 984 to exclude them automatically.

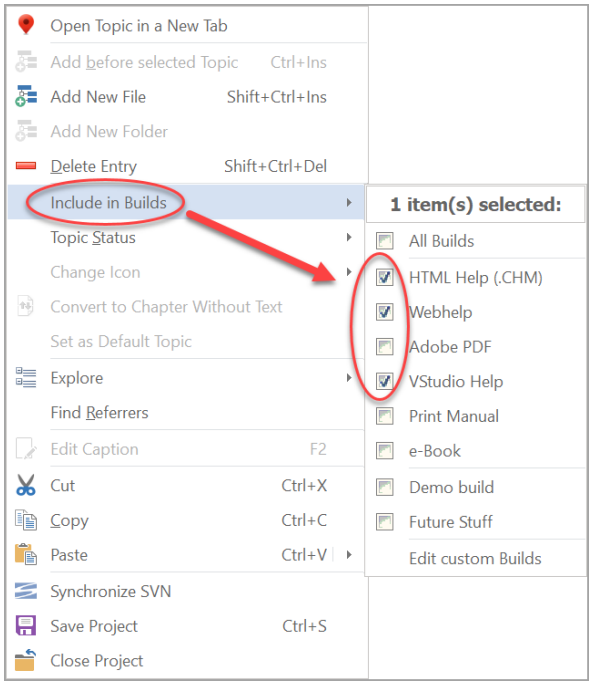


Option 2: Set the build options of your popup topic files

Alternatively you can set the build options of your popup topic files to the output formats that support popups, which are WebHelp, CHM, eWriter, and Visual Studio Help (if you are using that). The eWriter format will be included automatically if you set WebHelp, so generally you will only need to set CHM and WebHelp.

1. Right-click on the popup topic file in Project Files > Topic Files and select Include in Builds in the context menu.
2. Set the include options to WebHelp, CHM and (if necessary) also VSHelp.
3. Repeat for all your poup topic files.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Managing links to excluded topics in additional TOCs

When you create a TOC that is a subset of the main TOC, your topics will often contain links to topics that are not in the new TOC. You need to take steps to deal with these links to ensure that they are not dead and so that they do not accidentally provide access to content you don't want to include in the version with this TOC.

Failsafe: Global options for links to excluded topics

You can set a global option for how links to excluded topics are handled in **View > Program Options > Compilers**. There are three choices:

- **Silently include linked topic**
  In HTML-based output formats this exports the topic file without a TOC entry so that the link displays the topic. In PDF and DOCX this has no effect, because only topics that are in the TOC can be in the document.
- **Remove link**
  This turns the link into plain text. The referenced topic is not exported.
- **Allow links to be dead**
  This leaves the links unchanged in the topics but does not export the linked topic files. So either nothing happens or an error message (404) is displayed when the user clicks on the link. This can be good "protection" if you are managing the links with conditional output, to make sure that the excluded topics are never seen.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use conditional output to replace the links with alternative text

This is basically the same approach you would use for handling the same problem in normal conditional output scenarios where topics are excluded. See this topic 984 for full instructions.

Create conditional output build options for your additional TOCs and apply them to the links to the external topics so with the Conditional Text tool. You can use this method to either remove the references entirely, or replace them with alternative text or alternative links in the version with the additional TOC.

For example, suppose you have a TOC for a specific client. You could create a conditional build option called **CLIENT_B** and then tag the link with it like this:

This inserts the first link if you are not exporting the **CLIENT_B** version and the second link if you are.

Setting the default topic with multiple TOCs

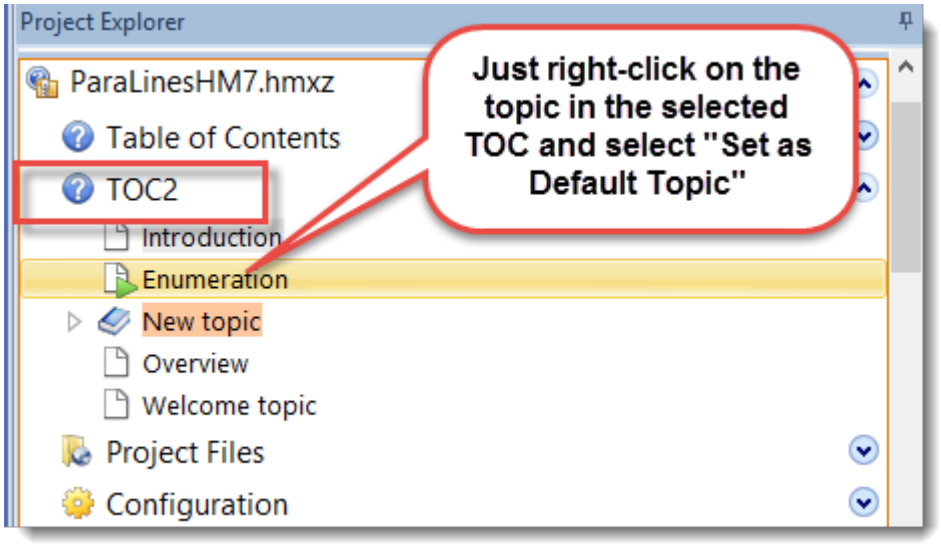
If you are using multiple TOCs in your project you can set a separate default topic for each TOC. Then you will automatically get the correct default topic for that TOC when you use it.

See Setting the default topic 128 for full details on setting and managing the default topic for your project.

Important: The default for secondary TOCs must be set in the TOC
Default topics for secondary TOCs must be set directly in the TOC. The setting in **Configuration > Common Properties > Language Options** is only for the main TOC.

Each TOC you define can have its own default topic. Just right-click on the topic you want to use as the default in the TOC and select "Set as Default Topic" in the context menu.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

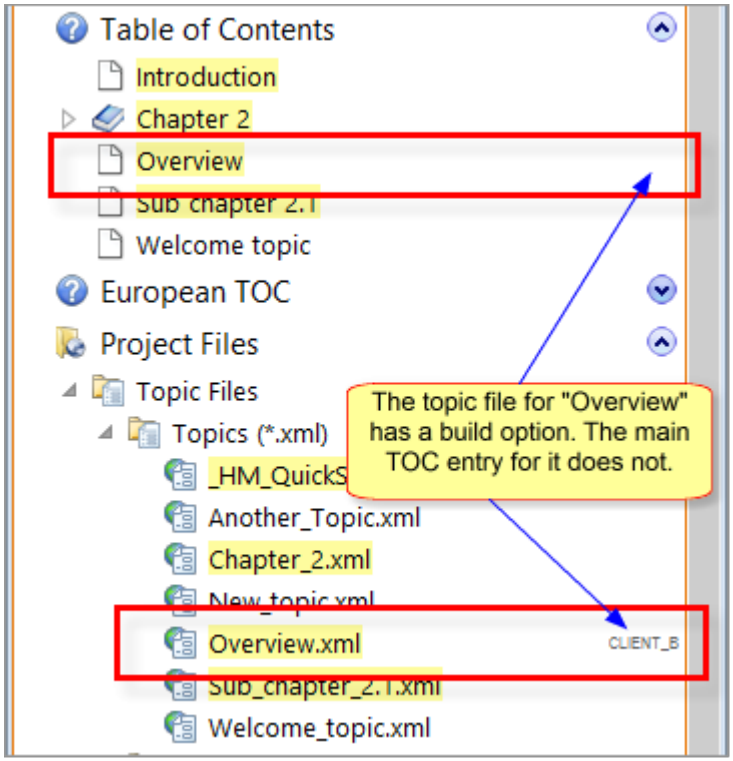


More granular control of output with include options on topic files

In addition to the conditional output tagging inside topics described above, it is also possible to apply include options to the topic files referenced by the links but not to the TOC entries in the main TOC pointing to them. This is possible because TOC entries and topic files are separate items and each can have their own build options.

Consider this example:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



This would allow you to include the *Overview* topic file with your additional TOC by activating the build option **CLIENT_B** in your publishing settings, even if it does not have a TOC entry.

You can do this if you activate the global option "*Allow links to be dead*" to handle the majority of links, but have a few links for which you do want to include the linked topics, for example.

What happens to topics like this in Word and PDF output?

When you then publish the normal TOC that includes the *Overview* entry to PDF or Word you have a logical discrepancy: The TOC entry says to include it, but the topic file include option says to exclude it. That is OK, because in those formats only topics with TOC entries are included and the TOC entry setting then has priority. The topic will thus be included normally.

Topics without TOC entries in additional TOCs

When you use topics without TOC entries 179 in combination with additional TOCs you may need to take additional action to ensure that the topic file is included in your output. An additional TOC acts like an include option for every topic it includes, and by default all other topics can be excluded. Because of this, topic files that are only accessed by hyper-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

links and not by TOC entries may get excluded if you are not careful.

Method 1: Use the compiler option to force inclusion

This is the simplest solution. It tells Help+Manual to automatically include any topic file that is referenced with a link in your project. Just go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and set the *Handling of dead links option* to *Silently include linked topic*. This will include all topic files referenced with hyperlinks, even if they don't have TOC entries. The included topic files will be listed in the compiler report.

Side-effect: This will also include topics that were excluded from the TOC with build options, if there are links to those topics that you have overlooked. Check the compiler report!

Method 2: Use a user-defined include option

Alternatively, you can define an include option 988 with a descriptive name like **NONTOC** or something like that and apply it to the topic file 991 in the Topic Files section. Then you just need to activate that option 983 in the Publish screen when you publish. Then all topics tagged with that option will be included in your output.

Creating TOC entries for "invisible" topics in PDFs

PDF is a special case because only topics with TOC entries can be included in PDF documents. If your project contains "invisible" topics that are normally only displayed with hyperlinks from other topics you must add TOC entries for them to be able to include them in the PDF version of your output. This is very simple to do with the knowledge you now have:

1. Create TOC entries for the "invisible" topics: Either drag the topic file into the TOC or create a "new" topic and select the topic ID of the invisible topic with the ... browse button in the Topic ID: field of the new topic dialog. You might want to organize these TOC entries as one or more special chapters in your TOC.
2. Apply build options to the new TOC entries so that they are only included in the PDF version of your output. See See *Including and excluding TOC entries* above for instructions.

How to "filter" the TOC display by build/include options

You can use include options to "filter" the display of your topics in the TOC and Topic Files section of the Project Explorer. This makes it possible for you to see only the topics that

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

will be included in a specific build, so that you can preview the results of specific build options without publishing your project.

1. Apply build options to one or more topics. If you don't do this filtering will not have any effect! See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for details.
2. Select *Explore* > *Filter* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and set the filter options you want to apply. The filter settings are also available from the right-click menu in the Project Explorer (*Explore* > *Filter*).

   This works both in the TOC and in Topic Files. This only filters entire topics, it does not filter conditional text tagged within your topics.

Important Notes:

- The current build settings of topics are shown in the Project Explorer, next to the topic caption in the TOC. Topics and chapters set to *All Builds* (the default) will always be included, of course – you cannot hide them.
- Filtered topics will be either shown in a different color or hidden completely. This depends on your settings for *When filtering the table of contents...* in **View** > **Program Options** > **General**. See Program Options - General 1261 for details on these settings.

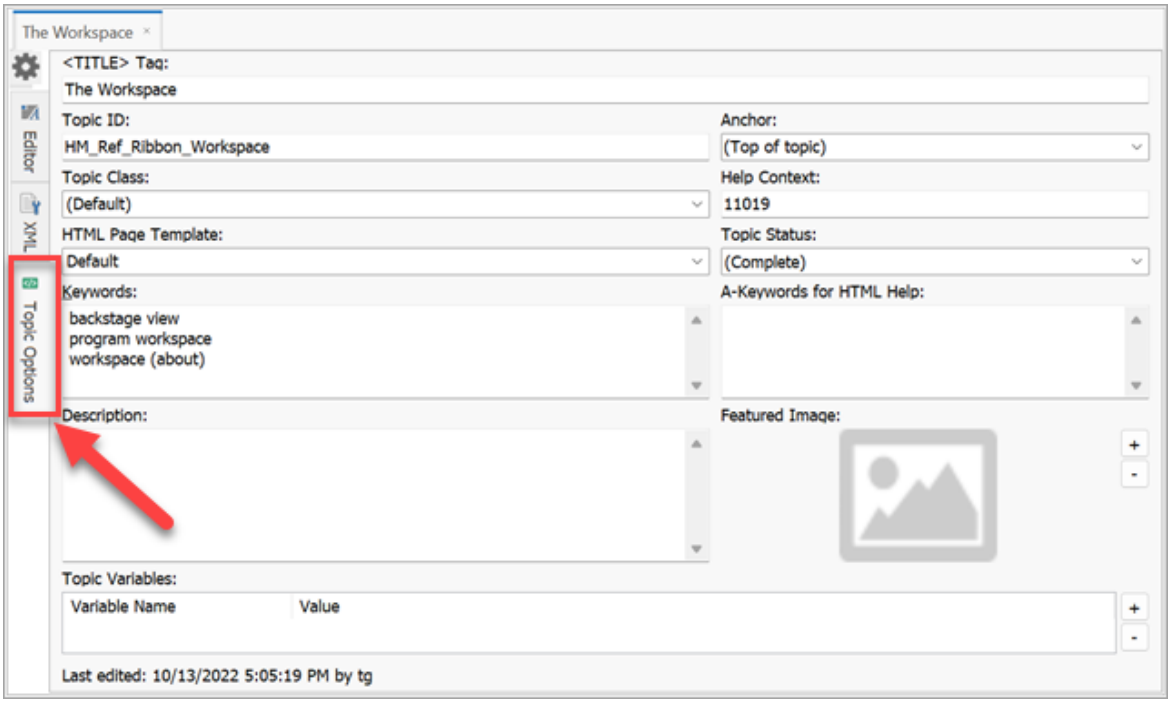
See also:

Preventing dead links 984 (Conditional Output)
Publishing projects with multiple TOCs 629 (Publishing)

5.8.2 Topic Options

The Topic Options tab is accessible on the left of the main editor window and contains a number of key settings for the topic currently displayed. It enables you to view and edit a number of settings that are assigned automatically when you create topics, and some additional optional settings.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



<TITLE> tag: This is the text inserted in the <TITLE> tag in topic pages in HTML-based output. By default this is the text displayed as the table of contents entry displayed in the Project Explorer on the left. If you edit the TOC entry this text changes automatically, unless you edit this field in Topic Options manually.

If the topic header text in the box above the editor is different from the TOC entry, the TOC entry is shown here and not the topic header text. (Again, only if you didn't edit the title tag text manually.)

Topic ID: The address of the topic. This is used for referencing topics for links etc. and it is also used for generating the file names of HTML files generated for topics in HTML-based output formats.

You can change the topic ID by editing this entry. When you do this, all the references to the topic within your project are updated automatically.

External references to the topic from other projects and other web pages linking to your WebHelp cannot be updated from within Help+Manual. They will become invalid if you change the topic ID and must then be updated.

Anchor: Target of the TOC entry for the topic. Normally this is the top of the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

topic, but if there are anchors defined in the topic you can select one here. Then the TOC entry will scroll down to the anchor when it is selected.

This option is normally only used for topics with multiple TOC entries 371. Then each entry can link to the appropriate part of the topic. Don't let this possibility tempt you to make excessively long topics – that is generally a bad idea. Normally, it is much better to have a separate document for each topic.

Topic class: There are two possible classes: *Default* and *Popup*. Most topics will be default topics. The popup class can only be selected for topics that don't have TOC entries, because popup topics are not allowed to have TOC entries. See Creating popup topics 207 for details.

Help context: Optional numeric context IDs for use in Microsoft HTML Help/CHM files. You only need these if your programmers are using context IDs for references from your application to the CHM help file. See the chapters on context sensitive help 892 and the Help Context Tool 1241 for more details.

HTML Page Template: This selects the HTML layout template to be used for this topic in HTML-based output formats. Normally this will be the standard *Default* template. You can only select additional templates here if you have defined them yourself 1036.

Topic Status: This just provides another way to select and set the status for the current topic 373 displayed in the table of contents in the Project Explorer on the left. This is design-time only – the status is not exported to your output.

Keywords: The index keywords associated with the topic. You can enter them directly here or centrally with the Index tool 568 (Professional and Floating license versions only).

A-Keywords: These are special "associative" keywords that are only supported in the Microsoft HTML Help/CHM help format. See this topic 579 for more details on this.

Description: An optional description of the topic. This has two uses:

1. Source for the description meta tag 1573 for search engine optimization in WebHelp.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Future use for alternative table of contents layouts with descriptions and images as well as titles.

Featured image: This allows you to associate an image with the topic that can then be used in topic templates and PDF title pages for chapters.

In HTML templates you can use the TOPIC_PICTURE 1573 variable to insert the images in your templates.

See the help of the Print Manual Designer program for details on how to use the featured images to create title pages for chapters in PDF output.

Topic variables: This table can be used to change the definition of user-defined or global variables for the current topic only. See this topic for details 963.

5.8.3 Topic History - Previous Versions

Help+Manual can archive every previous version of every topic whenever you save your help project. It can be an alternative to version control systems 848 for individual help authors. It allows you to compare multiple versions of a topic and refer to or revert to a previous version if you find that you or another author has made changes that you want to undo.

Activating topic history

Topic history needs to be activated in each project where you want to use it. You can activate this option in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > Miscellaneous 1411.

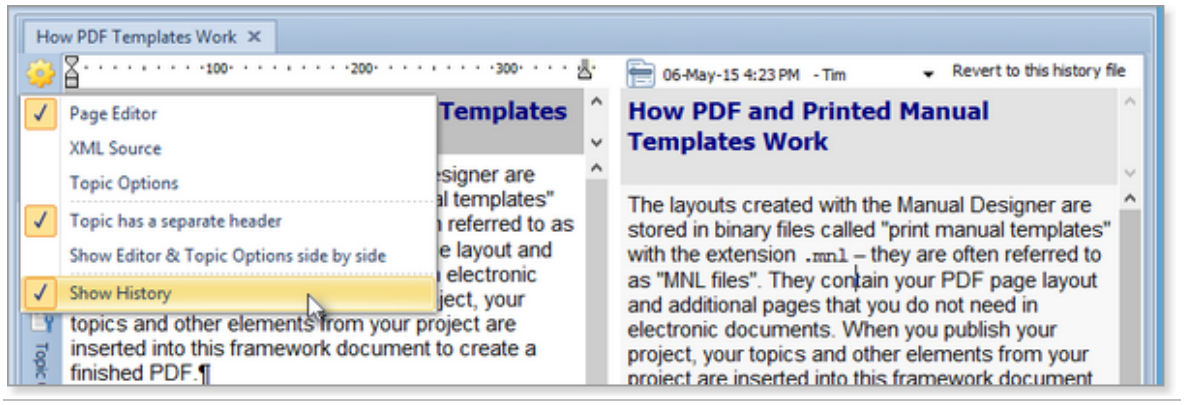
IMPORTANT: You cannot use topic history if you are using version control

Note that you cannot activate topic history in projects linked to version control systems. This is also not necessary, because then the entire history of your project is stored in the version control system.

Viewing topic history

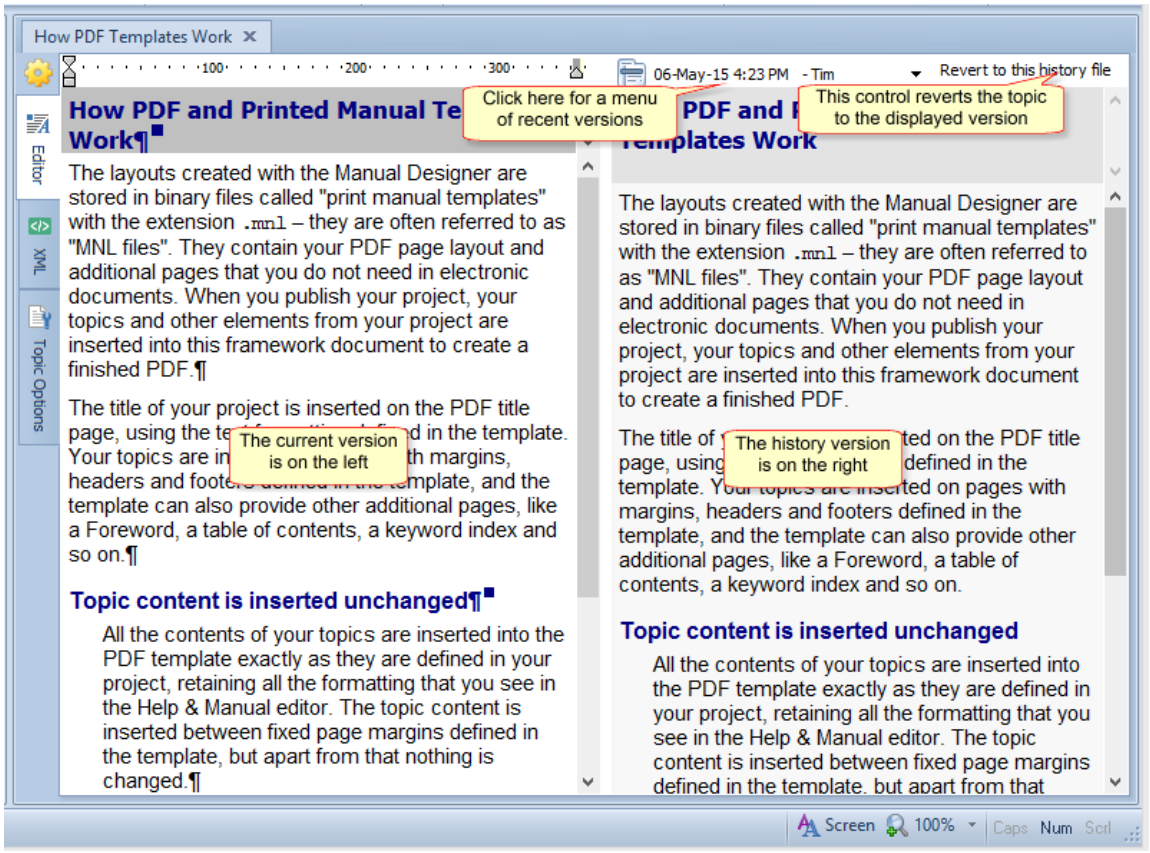
To view and compare previous versions of the current topic select **Show History** in the topic menu in the top left corner of the topic editor window:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Comparing and reverting

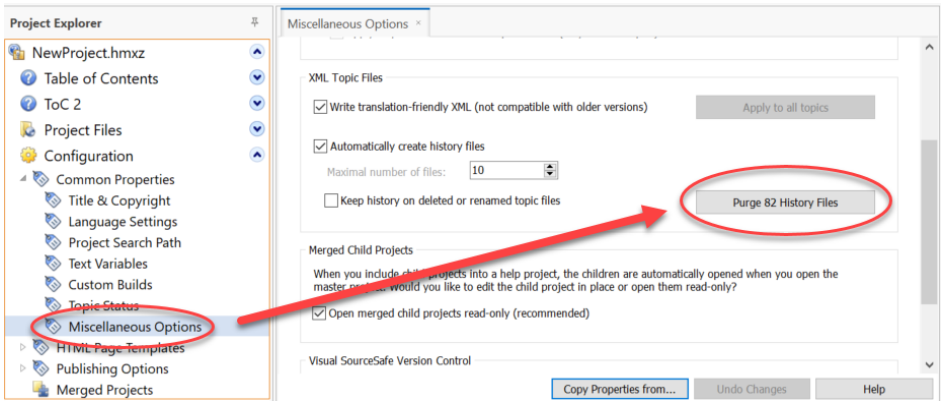
When you display the history you see the previous versions on the right. You can select which version you want to view with the menu above the history display on the left. You can revert the current topic to the displayed history version with the option on the right.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Deleting topic history

You can delete the history of the current project in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous**. For example, if old versions contained sensitive information you may want to delete the history before sending a copy of the project to someone.



5.8.4 Moving, cutting and pasting topics

To change the structure of your project you need to be able to move topics around in the Table of Contents (TOC). You can do this by dragging topics with the mouse or by cutting and pasting. You can also copy, cut and paste between different projects in the Project Explorer.

Note that all these operations must be performed in the Table of Contents section of the Project Explorer. Different rules apply for managing your topic files directly in the Topic Files section – see Managing topic files in the Explorer 377 for details.

Key Information
There is no UNDO in the Table of Contents (TOC) – all changes that you make here are permanent! In addition to deleting TOC entries this also applies to cutting, pasting and moving TOC entries. Use *Explore* > *Disable Drag & Drop* in the Project tab to prevent accidental changes to the TOC.

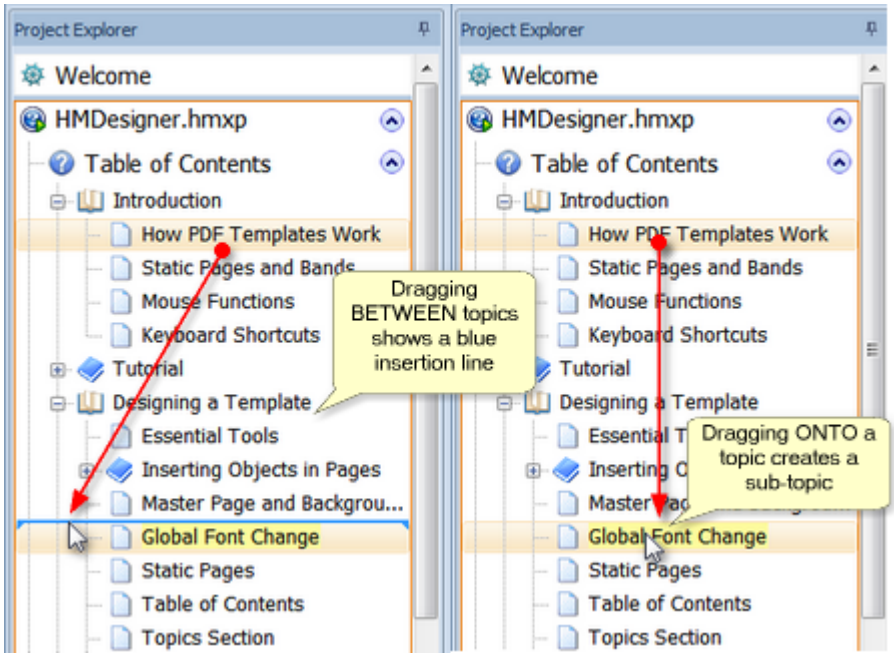
Moving and copying topics with Drag & Drop

Drag & Drop can only be used on single topics. To move or copy multiple topics you must use Cut & Paste. You can perform these operations both within the same project and between multiple projects open at the same time in the Project Explorer.

Move: Select and drag with the left mouse button

Copy: Select, hold down Ctrl and drag with the left mouse button

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



- Select a topic or chapter in the TOC and drag it ***onto*** another TOC entry (target topic is highlighted) to make topic you are dragging the child (sub-topic) of the target topic.
- Select a topic or chapter and drag it ***between*** two other topics (a blue line is displayed between the target topics) to insert the topic you are dragging before/after the target topic. Position the mouse pointer to the right or left of the topic caption to display the blue line.

Note: You can create a second TOC reference 371 to an existing topic by holding down **`Shift+Ctrl`** and dragging a topic in the TOC!

Copying items between multiple TOC

If you have created more than one TOC in your project with the Multiple TOCs 343 option you can copy items between the TOC with the methods described here.

However, there is an important difference: When you copy items between multiple TOC a new topic is never created. The copied item in the second TOC is always a new reference to the existing topic in the other TOC, not a completely new topic.

If you want to create new topics in additional TOCs you must really create a new topic.

Moving topics with the Ribbon tools

The Ribbon tools can only be used on single topics. To move multiple topics you must use Cut & Paste (see below).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Up and Down arrows move topics.

Select the topic you want to move, then select the blue Up or Down arrow in **Project** > **Manage Topics** to move the selected topic up and down one step at a time.

Moving and copying topics with Cut & Paste

You can use Cut & Paste to move and copy multiple topics and chapters at the same time. To select multiple entries use **`Shift+Click`** to select continuous blocks of entries and **`Ctrl+Click`** to select multiple individual entries in different locations.

1. Select a topic or chapter in the TOC or in Topic Files and then use one of the Copy or Cut options:

   Keyboard shortcuts: `Ctrl+C` (copy), **`Ctrl+X`** (cut)
   Ribbon: Clipboard tools
   Context menu (right-click in TOC): `Copy`, **`Cut`**

2. Click on the topic ***after*** which you wish to insert the topic and use one of the Paste options:

   Keyboard shortcuts: `Ctrl+V`
   Ribbon: Clipboard tools
   Context menu (right-click in TOC): `Paste`

When you copy topics "(COPY)" is added to the topic caption in the TOC and "_2" (or _3 etc.) is added to the Topic ID in the to prevent duplicates. See Multiple TOC entries for one topic 371 for an alternative to copying.

Moving and copying topics between projects

You can also copy and move single and multiple topics and chapters between projects:

1. Open the second project in the Project Explorer. See Using the Project Explorer 70 for details. Alternatively, you can also open the second project in a second instance of Help+Manual (just start Help+Manual a second time and open the project there).
2. Follow the instructions above to copy or move topics and chapters.

See also:

Promoting and demoting topics 364
Copying, cutting and pasting 233 (text and content)
Importing topics and merging projects 165

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

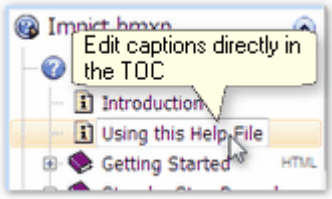
5.8.5 Editing the TOC caption and topic header

The *topic caption* is the title of the topic displayed in the TOC, both in Help+Manual and in your output. For example, captions are displayed as the TOC titles in the Contents pane of the HTML Help viewer and the Contents page of a PDF file.

When you create a new topic the caption text is duplicated in the topic header, which is the title displayed in the editing box above the topic itself. The header is also displayed in your output, for example above the topics in the HTML Help viewer.

How to edit the caption (title) of a topic in the TOC

1. Click on the topic in the TOC.
2. Press **F2** ***or*** click on the **`Edit Caption`** button in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**



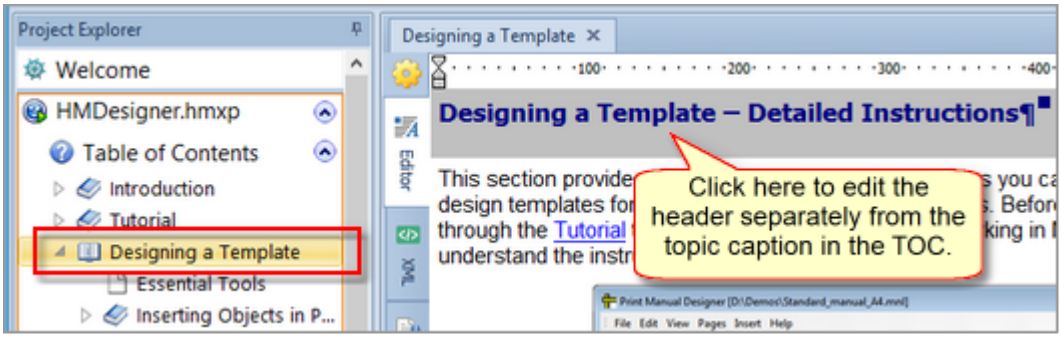
3. Edit the caption and then press **`Enter`** to finish

Editing the topic header separately

When you create a new topic its caption is automatically duplicated in the topic header. If you only edit the caption the header is also updated automatically so that the caption and the header remain identical. However, if you want you can also make the topic header different – for example so that you have a short caption for the TOC and a longer, more descriptive header.

- Click in the header box above the Page Editor end edit the header text. When you do this the header and the caption are no longer linked and can then both be edited separately.

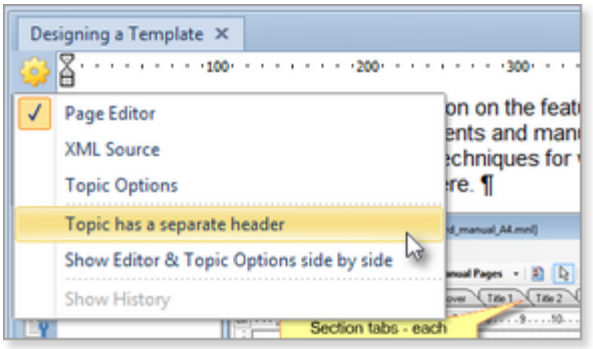
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



- To "re-link" the caption and the header again just make the text in both identical again. Then the header will automatically be updated when you edit the caption in the TOC.

How to turn off the header

To turn off the header for a topic click open the options menu with the button in the top left corner of the editor and disable the *Topic has a separate header* item in the menu.



This turns off the header in the editor for that topic and will create a topic without a header in your published output.

Warning: Turning off the header deletes any additional content you have added to the header box. If you turn the header on again the box will only contain the standard topic title, taken from the topic's TOC entry. The content will not be lost while you are still editing the current topic (you can restore it by reactivating the checkbox) but once you leave the current topic it will be deleted permanently.

See also:

Topic headers 191

5.8.6 Deleting TOC entries and topics

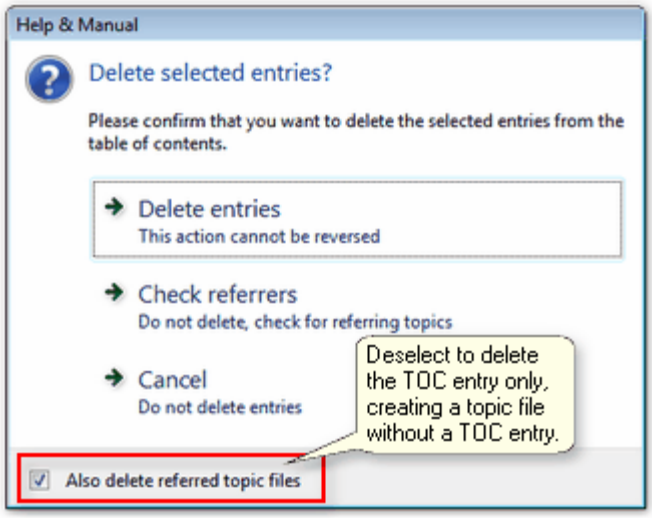
Topics and their TOC entries are two different things. The topic content is actually stored in the topic file, which is stored in the Project Files section of the Explorer. The TOC entry is really just a hyperlink to the topic file, which is stored in the Table of Contents section of the Explorer.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

When you click on a TOC entry, the topic file is displayed in the editor for editing, but this is just for convenience. there are not actually any topic files in the TOC, when you click on a TOC entry and edit the topic you are actually editing the file stored in the Topic Files section.

How to delete TOC entries

1. Select one or more entries in the Table of Contents section in the Project Explorer. You can select multiple entries with *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click*.
2. Press the DEL key or right-click and select Delete Topic. The following dialog is displayed:



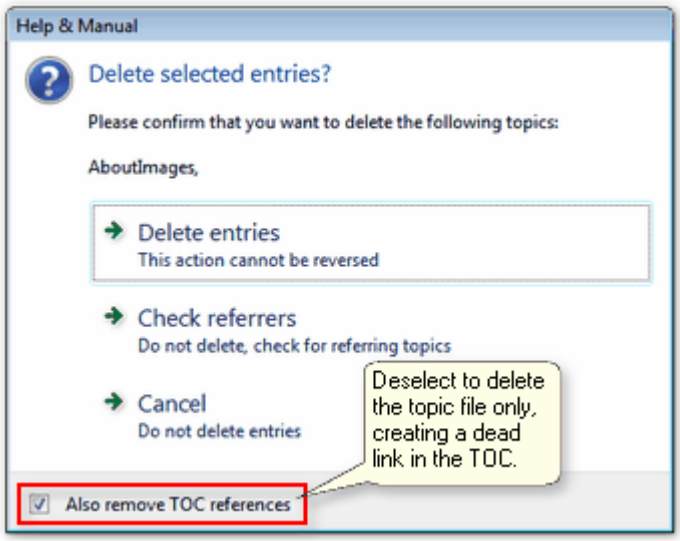
If you deselect the *Also delete referred topic files* option only the TOC entry/entries will be deleted. This will result in topics without TOC entries in the Topic Files section. These topics will not be included at all in print-style output formats like PDF and Word DOCX. In HTML-based formats they will be included and can be displayed with topic links. They will also be included in the search and if they contain index keywords they can also be found in the index. If you want to exclude them you need to use conditional build options 969.

How to delete topic files

Note that topic files can also be deleted together with TOC entries if you delete their entries in the TOC. See above for details.

1. Select one or more entries in the Topic Files section in the Project Explorer. You can select multiple entries with *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click*.
2. Press the DEL key or right-click and select Delete File. The following dialog is displayed:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



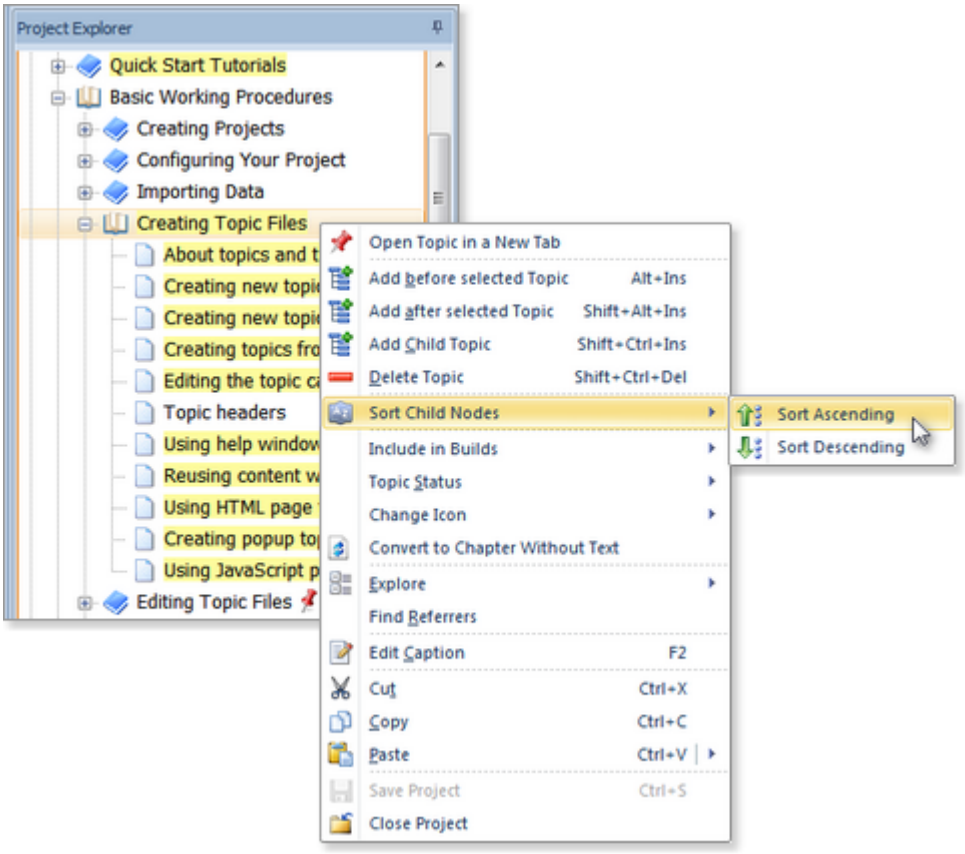
If you deselect the *Also remove TOC references* option only topic files be deleted. This will result in TOC entries without any links to topic files. This is not normally desirable but you may sometimes want to do this to reassign an existing TOC entry to a different topic.

5.8.7 Sorting TOC entries

You can sort entries in the TOC alphabetically with a context menu tool.

1. Select the chapter in the TOC containing the topics you want to sort.
2. Right-click on the chapter and select **Sort Child Nodes** and then *Sort Ascending* or *Sort Descending* to sort the topics in the chapter.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



5.8.8 Changing the levels of topics

The Table of Contents (TOC) in most projects is organized in chapters with sub-chapters. You can change the structure by moving topics around 357 and by changing their levels. Changing the topic level is referred to as "promoting" or "demoting" a topic – promoting a topic moves it to a higher level in the TOC, demoting it moves it to a lower level.

Topics with sub-topics are automatically displayed as "chapters", shown with a book icon in the TOC.

You can also organize topic files in the Topic Files section in folders and sub-folders, but this is for convenience only. It does not have any effect on the structure of your project.

How to promote and demote topics with the Ribbon tools

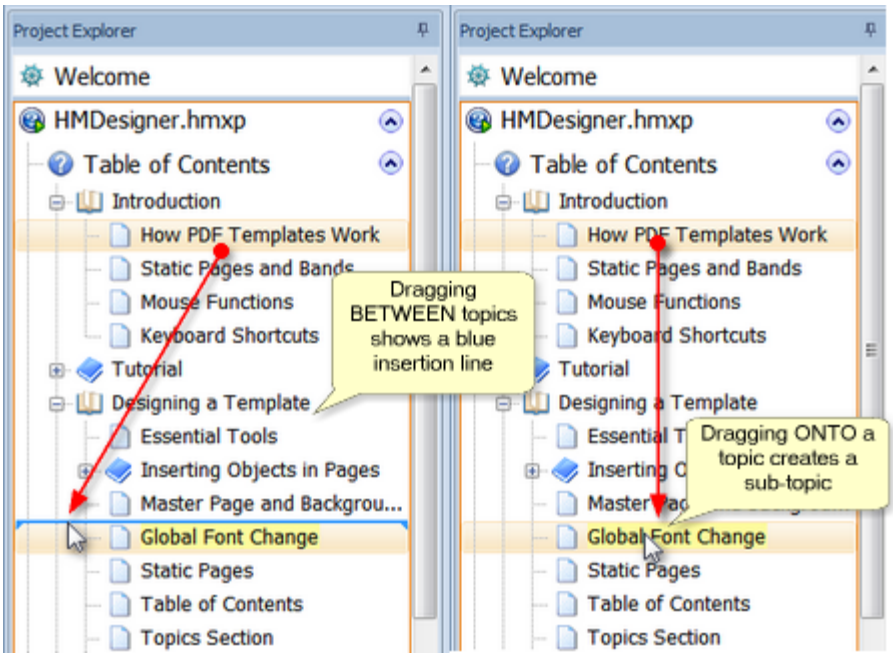
The topic tools in **Project** > **Manage Topics** can be used to move topics up and down in the TOC (Up and Down arrows) and to promote and demote topics (Left and Right arrows). These tools can only be used on single topics.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- The **Promote** button (left arrow) promotes the current topic to the next level by moving it one step to the left.
- The **Demote** button (right arrow) demotes the current topic to the next level by moving it one step to the right.

How to promote and demote topics with the mouse

- Just drag the topic to the new position in the TOC. If you drag ***onto*** another topic it will become the child of the target topic. If you drag ***between*** two topics (position mouse to left of topic icons) it will be inserted between the target topics.



- It is easier to use Cut & Paste 357 to promote and demote topics over large distances in large, complex TOCs.

See also:

Moving, cutting and pasting topics 357

5.8.9 Exporting and importing topics

You can export and import individual topics with the functions in the functions in the *File* menu in **Project > Manage Topics.** You can save topics and select parts of topics to Help+Manual XML files and you can load topics from XML, HTML, RTF and RVF files.

These functions can be used to create a library of reusable content in Help+Manual XML topic files, which can also be used in combination with the Snippets tool 265 and the topic content templates 1016 feature. In addition to XML files you can also load topics from HTML, Word RTF and RVF files.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to export a topic as an external XML or RVF file

This method saves the entire topic file along with its title and any keywords associated with it. Note that you cannot export multiple topics using this method. You can save as a Help+Manual XML file or as an RVF file that can be imported by Help+Manual and some RVF-based (RichView Format) word processors and editors.

1. Select the topic you want to export in the Project Explorer.
2. Select *File* > *Save Topic to File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**
3. Select XML or RVF as the format to be saved.
4. Select the directory where you want to save your topic file and save.

   If you want to use the file as a topic content template 1016 you must save as XML and name the file as follows, replacing "filename" with the name you want to use (the `.template.xml` extension is required):

   `filename.template.xml`

How to export a topic or selected text as a snippet

Topics and selected text can be exported as reusable snippets, which are also saved in XML files. Saving an entire topic as a snippet is exactly the same as saving it with *Save Topic to File* – it also exports the topic title and all the keywords. Saving selected text as a snippet only saves the selected text and does not include any keywords or the topic title.

1. Select the topic you want to export from in the Project Explorer.
2. Select text in the topic if you only want to export part of the topic. You can select any kind of content, including graphics, hyperlinks, toggles etc. If you do not select anything the entire topic will be exported.
3. Select *File* > *Save Snippet* in **Project Manage Topics.**
4. Select the directory where you want to save the snippet and save.

See Re-using content with snippets 265 for more details on working with snippets.

Supported XML formats

Help+Manual can only process XML files conforming to the Help+Manual XML Language. These can be produced by Help+Manual itself or generated by other programs that conform to the language schema specifications. Documentation of the Help+Manual XML Language can be found in the Help+Manual program directory (**`Help-`**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

man_XML_ref.chm). Currently you cannot export or import any other XML formats.

How to import a topic from an external file

This method is for importing individual topics. For instructions on how to import multiple topics from a single Word RTF file see Settings for Importing Data 157.

Note that Importing a topic into an existing topic overwrites the entire contents of the existing topic! If you just want to insert another topic into the current topic use the Snippet Tool 265 instead.

1. Create a new, empty topic in the position in the TOC where you want to import the topic. Click inside the editor window in the new topic.
2. Select *File* > *Load Topic from File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and select the topic file you want to load. You can load XML, HTML, RTF and RVF files.

   You can only import XML files created with Help+Manual or files created with other programs using the Help+Manual XML Language schema. Other XML formats or schemas are not supported. RTF files created by programs other than MS Word or Help+Manual may contain incompatible features. If in doubt re-save the file in Word before importing.
3. Select the topic file you want to load.

How to export topics to the Word DOCX format

To do this you must publish your project using the "selected topics" option. Unlike *Save Topic to File* you can also export multiple topics at the same time with this function. However, remember that DOCX does not support all of Help+Manual's formatting features. If you want to re-import your topics later it is better to save as XML.

1. Select the topic or topics you want to export in the Project Explorer.
2. Select **Publish** in the **Project** tab and select MS Word as the output format.
3. Select *Selected Topics* in the section under the *Include Options:* heading.
4. Use the ... button in the *Output path and file name:* field to select the location and file name for the export.
5. Click on OK to export the topic(s).

See also:

Importing Data 148
Content templates for topics 1016
Publishing your Project 613
Importing topics and merging projects 165

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.8.10 Topic IDs and context numbers

The topic ID is the unique alphanumeric identifier of a topic. It must be unique because it is used to reference the topic for hyperlinks and by programmers accessing the topic from applications.

The help context number is an additional unique topic identifier. Context numbers are optional for making calls to normal topics and required for making calls to field-level popups 896 displayed directly in applications. Most programmers now use normal IDs for calls to topics because they are human-readable, which reduces errors.

You can view and edit topic IDs and help context numbers in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. For more background information see IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600 in the Reference section.

Key Information
Accented characters, special characters and high-ASCII characters are not permitted in IDs. For maximum compatibility with all output formats only use *a..z*, *A..Z*, *0..9* and _ in topic IDs. Topic IDs are never seen by the user.

How to assign and edit topic IDs

Topic IDs are assigned automatically when you create a new topic but you can also edit them at any time. The topic ID is an alphanumeric string that is the address of the topic in the project. It is also used to generate the HTML filename of the topic in all HTML-based output formats.

- When you create a new topic the ID is generated on the basis of the topic caption. You can accept the program's suggestion or edit it. Use descriptive topic IDs, it will make your project much easier to manage. IDs can be up to 255 characters long. (Automatically-generated topic IDs are restricted to 30 characters to prevent accidental creation of excessively long IDs.)
- To edit a topic's ID just select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window and edit the ID in the *Topic ID:* field.

All links and references within your project are updated automatically when you edit the ID. However, you must update any references to the ID from your applications or other help files yourself. You must also update any references in your own manually-written code in HTML templates etc.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to assign and edit context numbers

Help context numbers are only relevant in HTML Help CHM files. They are optional for making calls to normal topics and required for making calls to field-level popups 896 displayed directly in applications. Most programmers now use normal IDs for calls to topics because they are human-readable, which reduces errors.

Value range:
Context numbers are stored as an unsigned 4-byte integer, which means you can enter values between **1** and **4294967295**. This is nearly 4.3 billion, so it should provide you with a reasonable number of context numbers for most normal-sized applications.

Assigning and editing context numbers manually:

- Select the tab and type a help context number in the *Help Context:* field. Edit context numbers in the same way.
- You can assign multiple context numbers to a single topic. To do this just separate the context numbers by commas (no spaces required). You can then reference the same topic with different context numbers.

Assigning context numbers automatically:

- Help+Manual can assign context numbers to new topics automatically. Activate this function for your project in the Project Explorer in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous.**
- If you are working on modular projects make sure that you assign number ranges that will not overlap. Remember, all context numbers must be unique!

Assigning context numbers to entire projects:

- Select the *Context Tool* in **Project** > **Tools** and follow the instructions displayed. See The Help Context Tool 1241 for details.

Assigning help context numbers to anchors

You can also assign help context numbers to anchors 415. This enables programmers to make calls to a specific position within a topic.

- To apply a context number to a new anchor just select **Write** > **Insert Object** > and enter a context number in the **Help Context** field in the **Insert Anchor** dialog.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- To apply context numbers to new anchors automatically activate the anchors option in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous**.

Context numbers in WebHelp

Help context numbers are normally only relevant in HTML Help CHM files. However, Help+Manual will also export them to WebHelp where you can use them to access topics and anchors in topics with references in URLs.

You would not want to use this for new WebHelp, but if you already have context numbers you are using for calls to your CHM files your programmers can also reference the same numbers in WebHelp. See this topic 900 for details.

Descriptive and hierarchical Topic IDs

It's advisable to give topics descriptive IDs, this will make your projects much easier to manage. In addition to this, using a "hierarchical" topic ID naming scheme will keep topics belonging to the same chapters together in lists of topic IDs.

Suppose you have a project called **Widget Editor** with a chapter called **`The Editor`** that contains the topics **`About the Editor`**, **`Editor Controls`** and **`Using the Editor`**. Descriptive, hierarchical IDs for these topics could look something like this:

WE_Editor
WE_Editor_About
WE_Editor_Controls
WE_Editor_Using

Topic ID prefixes

Using a unique topic ID prefix for each project prevents ID conflicts in modular projects 1088. This allows you to use IDs like "introduction" in all your projects without creating duplicates.

If there is even a small chance that you will ever want to combine multiple projects to a single large project you should use ID prefixes. It is best to use a 2 or 3 character project identification prefix separated from the rest of the ID by an underscore, for example:

WE_Editor
WE_Editor_About
WE_Editor_Controls
WE_Editor_Using

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can configure Help+Manual to generate a prefix of your choice automatically for every new topic you create. Just enter the prefix you want to use in the Project Explorer in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous**.

See also:

IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600 (Reference)

5.8.11 Multiple TOC entries for one topic

Normally you only have one item in the Table of contents (TOC) for each topic file. However, there may be some situations where you want to use exactly the same topic in more than one place in the TOC.

You can do this by creating multiple references to an single topic in the TOC. The result is a single TOC topic that can be accessed from multiple positions in the TOC. There is still only one topic, but it is displayed in several different positions within the TOC – for example in different chapters.

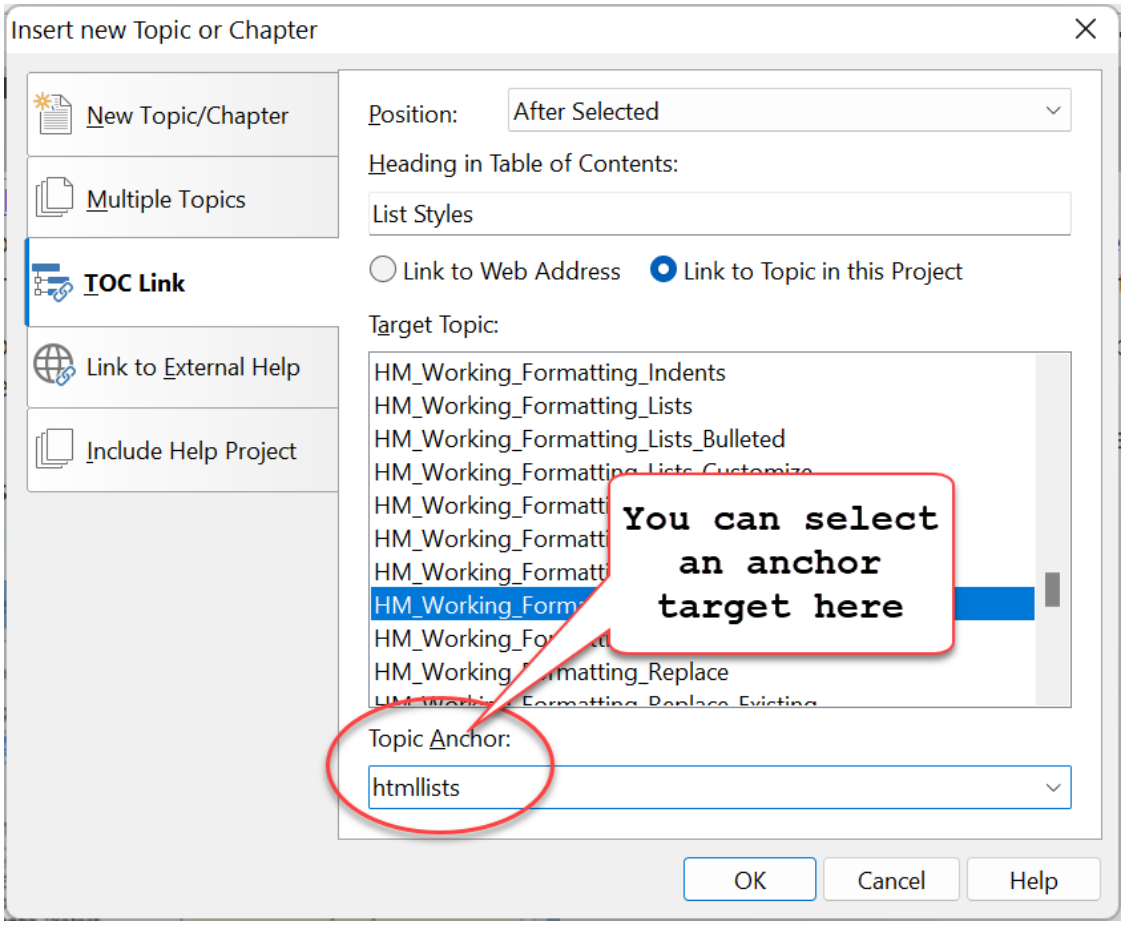
Sometimes it is better to create a copy or to use an embedded topic. See Snippets and multiple TOC references 1527 for more background information.

Key Information
Multiple TOC references are not copies of topics. There is still just one topic file but with two items pointing to it in the TOC. It is like a single room with two doors.

Creating additional topic references with Add Topic

1. Click in the TOC in the position where you want to enter the new TOC item, then select any of the options for creating a new topic 174.
2. When the Insert Topic 1298 dialog is displayed select *TOC Link* on the left. Then select *Link to topic in this project*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Enter a title for the new TOC link in *Heading in Table of Contents:*, then select the ID of the topic you want to link to from the Target Topic: list. You can also select an anchor to scroll to if the topic contains anchors.
4. Click on **OK** to create the new TOC link.

Creating additional topic references with Drag & Drop

1. Click on the topic you want to make an additional reference to in the TOC to select it.
2. Hold down **`Shift+Ctrl`** and drag to the position where you want to create the second reference. Dragging ***onto*** a topic makes the new reference a child (sub-topic) of the target topic. Dragging ***between*** two topics (position mouse to left of topic icons) inserts the reference between the target topics. (See Moving, cutting and pasting topics 357)

Warning for Parallels users on Apple Mac computers:

If you are running Windows in Parallels on an Apple Mac computer this will not work initially. This is because by default Parallels maps the right mouse button to

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Shift+Ctrl+Left Click. You need to re-map this key combination in the Parallels settings to be able to create additional TOC references with Drag & Drop.

Creating TOC entries for "invisible" topics in PDFs

PDF is a special case because only topics with TOC entries can be included in PDF documents. If your project contains "invisible" topics that are normally only displayed with hyperlinks from other topics you must add TOC entries for them to be able to include them in the PDF version of your output. This is very simple to do with the knowledge you now have:

1. Create TOC entries for the "invisible" topics: Either drag the topic file into the TOC or create a "new" topic and select the topic ID of the invisible topic with the ... browse button in the Topic ID: field of the new topic dialog. You might want to organize these TOC entries as one or more special chapters in your TOC.
2. Apply build options to the new TOC entries so that they are only included in the PDF version of your output. See See *Including and excluding TOC entries* above for instructions.

See also:

Using embedded topics 265
Moving, cutting and pasting topics 357

5.8.12 Topic icon, status and timestamps

You can change the standard topic icons displayed in the Table of Contents (TOC). You can also apply a "status color" to topics in the TOC to identify topics that need more work. Every topic file and every TOC entry has a "timestamp" which records when they were last edited.

> **Productivity Tip**
> You can insert the date on which the topic was last edited in the topic with a variable. See Global predefined variables 1561 for details.

How to change the topic icon and status color

1. Select one or more topics in the TOC. Use **Ctrl+Click** and **Shift+Click** to select multiple topics.
2. Select *Change* > *Change Icon / Topic Status...* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** or right-click in the TOC and select **Change Icon / Topic Status...**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Icon: Choose the new icon from the list displayed to select it. Select **`Automatic`** to re-set the default icon.

Status color: Select the status color from the list. The status color is only displayed in the editor, it is not exported when you publish.

HTML Help:
Only supports the icons displayed in the Change Icon list. These are an old set of icons dating from Windows 98 that are still hard-wired into the Microsoft HTML Help CHM viewer

ePUB and Kindle Mobi eBooks:
These formats do not support TOC icons at all.

WebHelp and **Windows eWriter Help:**
These formats allow you to use your own icons. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Navigation** to select your own icon graphics. You can select three graphics: two for the open and closed state of chapters and one for topics that are not chapters. In addition to this, the individual icons from the Help+Manual TOC used in these formats are an updated set that are more modern than the Windows 98 icons still used by the Microsoft HTML Help CHM viewer.

Checking topic and TOC entry timestamps

Every topic file and every TOC entry stores the date and time it was last edited. These timestamps are normally only changed when the topic or TOC entry is actually edited, they are not changed when the project is saved.

Topic file timestamp:

Click on the topic entry in the TOC or Project Files list. The topic file timestamp is displayed in the status bar below the editor.

TOC entry timestamp:

Hover the mouse pointer over the topic entry in the TOC or Project Files list for a second or so. The timestamp is displayed in a popup tooltip along with other information. (Mouseover hints must be activated in *View* > *Program Options* > *General*.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Changing timestamp output for WebHelp:

If you wish, you can change the timestamps for your HTML topic files in WebHelp output to the time the files were published instead of the last time they were edited. This setting is in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**.

5.8.13 Topic files without TOC entries

Most topics have entries in the Table of Contents (TOC). However, sometimes you also need topics that are not included in the TOC. For example, topic files without TOC entries are required for popup topics 207, and they are recommended for topics that are displayed in external windows in HTML Help. You can also use them for topics that are only displayed when the user clicks on a link.

To create a topic file without a TOC entry you just create the file in the Topic Files section of the Project Explorer instead of in the Table of Contents section.

How to create a topic file without a TOC entry

1. In the Project Explorer open the **Project Files** > **Topic Files** section.
2. Select *Add File* > *Add New File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**
3. Enter the name of the topic you want to create. You can create multiple files by entering multiple names, one on each line.
4. Click on *More Options* and select a folder in *Create in:* to create the topic file in a subfolder that you have created in the Topic Files section.
5. Select any other relevant settings for the topic.

Organizing topic files in folders

You can create sub-folders in the Topic Files section to organize your files. It is a good idea to use separate folders for the various different types of topics files that are not included in the TOC to keep them separate from your TOC topic files.

1. Open the *Topic Files* section in the Project Explorer and select the folder that you want to add a new sub-folder to.
2. Select *Add File* > *Add New Folder* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and enter a name for the new folder.

When you create new topics you can then click on *More Options* and select *Create in:* to create the topic file for the new topic in a specific folder.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using status options and include options topic files

You can apply both topic status and include options to topic files in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer. Just right-click on the file in the Explorer and select the options in the context menu, or select the options in the *Change* menu in **Project** > **Manage Topics**.

How to add a TOC entry to a topic file

Sometimes you may decide that you would like to add a TOC entry to a topic file that does not yet have one. Or you want to add an additional TOC entry for a topic that already has one. You can do this with the TOC Link option in the New Topic dialog.

Method 1: Dragging topic files into the TOC

Dragging a topic file into the TOC from the Topic Files section will also create a new TOC entry for that topic file. It doesn't move anything. It just creates a new TOC entry. You can also do this with multiple files. Use *SHIFT+Click* and *CTRL+Click* to select multiple files, then drag them into the TOC.

Method 2: Creating a new TOC entry as a copy of an existing entry

You can also create a new TOC entry for a topic that already has a TOC entry by holding down the *SHIFT+CTRL* keys and dragging the original TOC entry with the mouse to the position where you want to insert the copy. Instead of moving the original entry this will then create a new TOC entry pointing to the same topic. This only works for topics that already have TOC entries, of course.

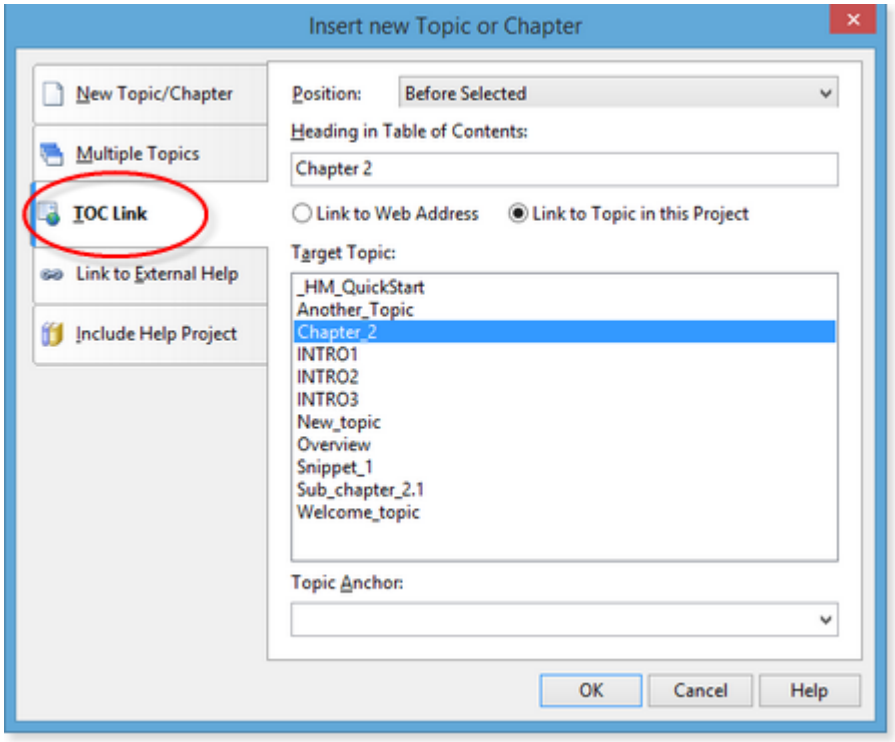
Method 3: Use the TOC Link tool

The TOC Link tool in the Insert New Topic dialog creates a new TOC entry for a topic file. Note that topics can have more than on entry in the TOC, because TOC entries are really just links pointing to topic files. They are not part of the topic.

Tip – locating the topic ID:
You can find the ID of any topic by selecting Topic Options to the left of the editor window and checking the Topic ID: field there.

1. Click in the TOC where you want to insert the new entry and select the *Add Topic* tool in **Project** > **Manage Topics**.
2. Select *TOC Link* on the left and click on *Link to Topic in this Project*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Select the topic ID of the topic you want to link to in the Target Topic: list. You can optionally also select an anchor to scroll to in the Topic Anchor: field if the target topic contains anchors.
4. Click on OK to insert the link.

See Multiple TOC entries for one topic 371 for more details on this subject.

See also:

Creating new topics 174
Promoting and demoting topics 364
Conditions and Customized Output 969.

5.8.14 Managing topic files in the Explorer

When you are working in the Project Files section, the Project Explorer functions as a file manager for your topic files and the folders where they are stored. If you are working in uncompressed XML format (Professional and Floating license versions only, **.hmxp** project file) the files and folders are stored directly on your hard drive. In the compressed single-file **.hmxz** format the files and folders are stored inside the compressed **.hmxz** file, which is actually a normal ZIP archive.

How to "filter" the TOC display by build/include options

You can use include options to "filter" the display of your topics in the TOC and Topic Files

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

section of the Project Explorer. This makes it possible for you to see only the topics that will be included in a specific build, so that you can preview the results of specific build options without publishing your project.

1. Apply build options to one or more topics. If you don't do this filtering will not have any effect! See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for details.
2. Select *Explore* > *Filter* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and set the filter options you want to apply. The filter settings are also available from the right-click menu in the Project Explorer (*Explore* > *Filter*).

   This works both in the TOC and in Topic Files. This only filters entire topics, it does not filter conditional text tagged within your topics.

Important Notes:

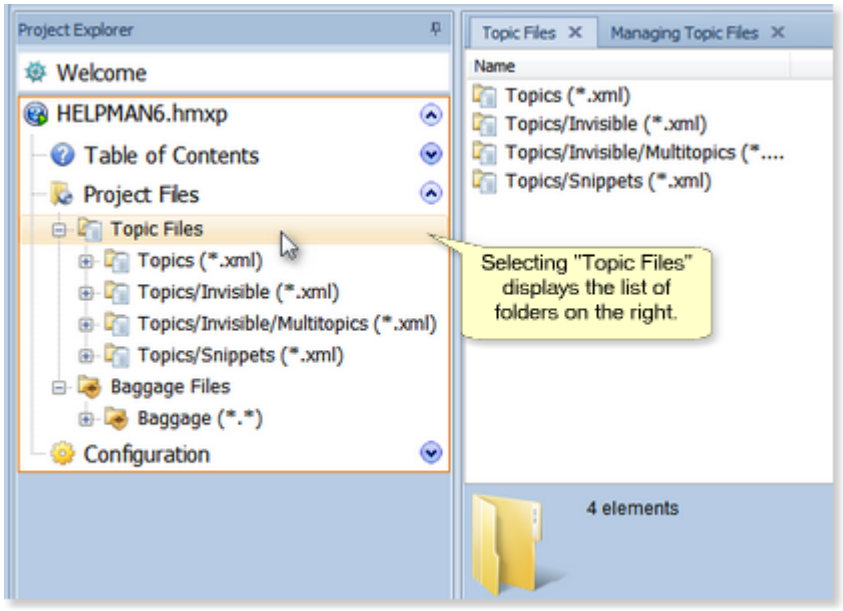
- The current build settings of topics are shown in the Project Explorer, next to the topic caption in the TOC. Topics and chapters set to *All Builds* (the default) will always be included, of course – you cannot hide them.
- Filtered topics will be either shown in a different color or hidden completely. This depends on your settings for *When filtering the table of contents...* in **View** > **Program Options** > **General**. See Program Options - General 1261 for details on these settings.

How to view topic files and folders in the Explorer

Folders:

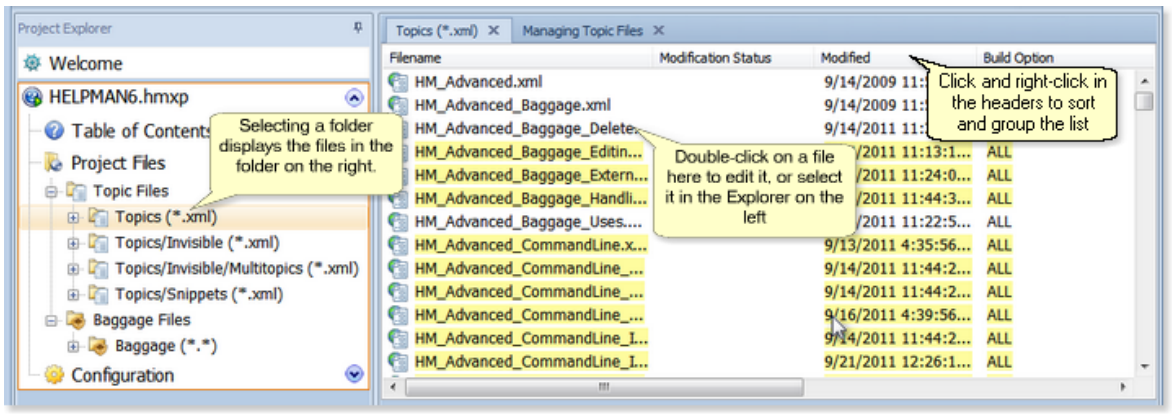
Select *Topic Files* in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer. This will initially display a list of the folders in which your topic files are stored. How many folders are displayed will depend on whether you have created sub-folders:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Files:

Select the *Topics* folder or any other folder in the Topic Files section:



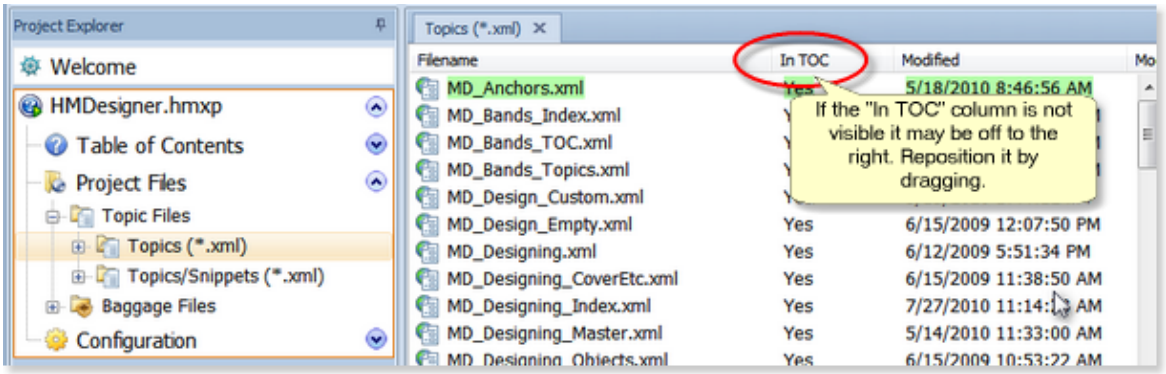
Tip: You can check whether a topic file has a TOC entry with the *In TOC* column above the file list on the right. By default this is the last column on the right so it may not be visible immediately. You can rearrange the columns by dragging them left and right with the mouse.

Checking whether topic files are in the TOC

You can check whether topic files have TOC entries with the *In TOC* column above the file list on the right. You can also sort and group files by this option (see below). In addition to

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

this you can also locate files that do not have TOC entries with the Report Tool in the Project tab.



How to sort and group files in the Project Explorer

You can sort and group files by several different criteria (name, modification status, modification date, build option, topic status). You can combine sorting and grouping: When the files are grouped the sorting options are applied within each group.

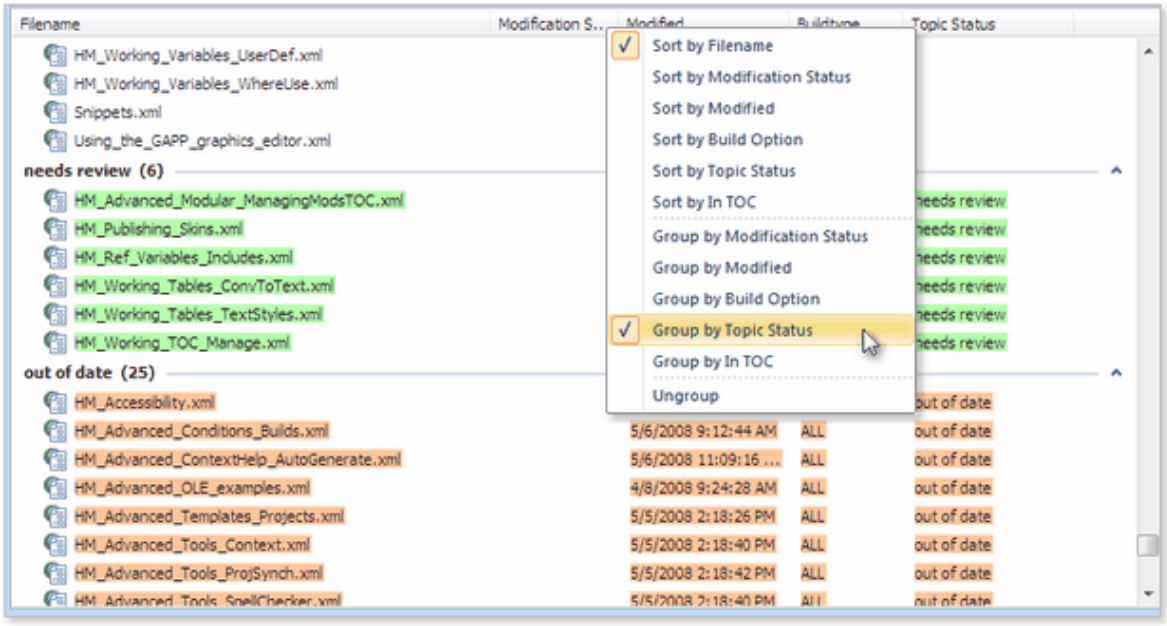
Sorting the files:

Just left-click in the column header you want to sort by. Alternatively you can also right-click in the column header and select the sort option in the context menu.

Grouping the files:

Right-click in the column header and select the group option in the context menu, or select *Ungroup* to return to an ungrouped list.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Creating folders for organizing topic files

You can create additional folders in the Topic Files section to organize your files to make them easier to manage. For example, it is a good idea to keep topic files without TOC entries in separate folders.

All folders must be sub-topics of the main Topics folder

All folders you create must be sub-folders of the main **Topics** folder. You cannot create additional top-level folders on the same level as the **Topics** folder.

Folders must contain at least one topic to appear in the file system

When you create a folder in Help+Manual in an uncompressed HMXP project it is only registered in the project file. It will not be created aS a physical sub-folder in your project folder until you add at least one topic to it. (You won't see the folder in Windows Explorer until it contains one or more topics.)

1. Select the folder in which you want to create your new folder – either the main *Topics* folder or a sub-folder that you have already created.
2. Right-click and select *Add New Folder* in the context menu, or select *Add File* > *Add New Folder* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**
3. Enter the name for the new folder and select **OK**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Moving, deleting and renaming topic files

Cutting and pasting is not possible with topic files in the Topic Files section because you are actually dealing with physical files. (See Moving, cutting and pasting topics 357 for instructions on working with topic entries in the TOC.) However you can move files between folders and delete files in the Topic Files section.

Moving topic files and folders:

To move a topic file from one folder to another just drag it to the new folder with the mouse. You can also move folders in the same way.

Deleting topic files:

Just select the topic file in the Explorer and press DEL or right-click and select *Delete File*.

Renaming topic files:

You cannot rename topic files directly. To rename the topic file you need to edit the Topic ID.

1. Select the topic file in the Explorer.
2. Select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window, edit the Topic ID and save your project to update the Topic Files display.

All references to the topic in the project will be updated automatically. However, since the ID changes any references to the topic from other help projects or elsewhere will no longer work. This includes links to specific topics in WebHelp from other websites, because the topic ID is also the name of the HTML topic file in WebHelp.

You should thus be cautious about renaming topics, particularly topics that get a lot of traffic on your website.

See also:

Moving cutting and pasting topics 357
Using the Project Explorer 70

5.9 Toggles: Expanding Text and Images

This feature enables you to create expanding text and images in your projects with just a few simple clicks. Toggles are powerful and easy to use and they can make your help much more useful and accessible to the user. They make it possible to scan the content of a topic quickly and then click to display only the relevant information.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.9.1 About toggles

There are three different types of toggles:

Expanding section toggles

These toggles create a header with a hidden block of text that is displayed when the user clicks on the header. Here is an example of an expanding section toggle:

Support for toggles in Help+Manual's output formats

HTML Help, WebHelp, eWriter Help and Visual Studio Help

Toggles are fully functional in all these formats. In WebHelp JavaScript must be turned on for the toggles to be operational. If JavaScript is turned off, the toggles are automatically displayed in their expanded state. For eWriter Help JavaScript must be activated in the user's Internet options in Windows, which control the configuration of the Internet Explorer based WebView component in Windows which is used to display HTML files.

PDF, MS Word DOCX and Printed Manuals

In all these static formats toggles are automatically displayed in their expanded state. This is the default setting. However, you can also choose to have them displayed in their collapsed state if you want to do this.

eBooks

Kindle Mobi and ePUB eBooks display toggles as static text and in their expanded state. Image toggles will display the target version of the toggle image in a separate page when the user clicks on it.

Note: The ePUB format does officially support scripting but since virtually no readers implement this support it should never be used in ePUB.

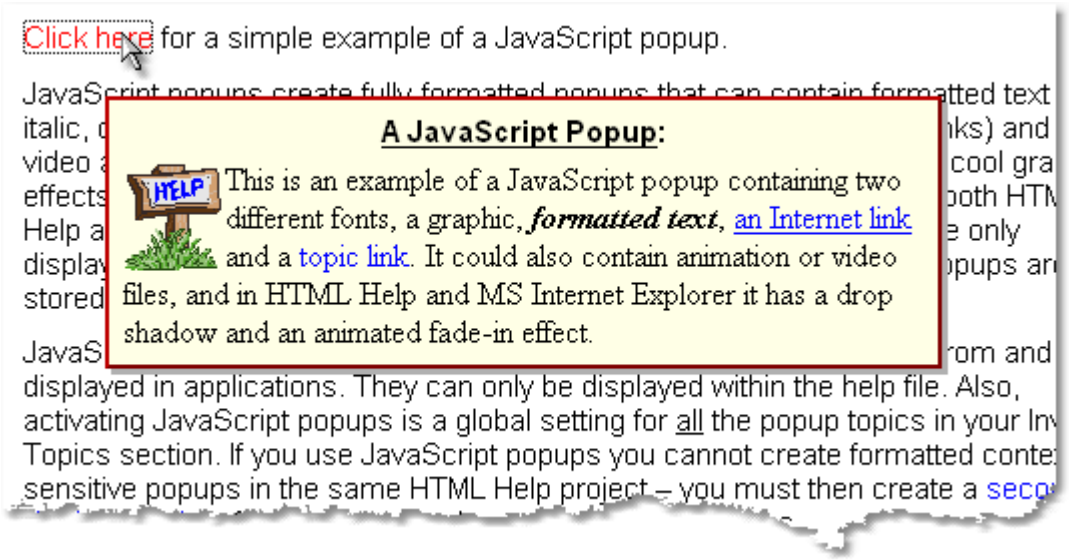
Expanding inline text toggles

These toggles create a link like this *Inline text toggles can be used instead of popups for definitions and other references.* that expands when the user clicks on it to display additional text, that can be formatted in a different way to highlight it. The text is displayed in the flow of the paragraph, as though it had been pasted into the paragraph.

Expanding image toggles

These toggles create a small version of a graphic or other image that expands when the user clicks on it. Here is an example of an expanding image toggle:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Expanding Image Toggle

5.9.2 Expanding section toggles

Expanding sections display text and other content – as much as you like – when the user clicks on the header. There are no restrictions on the content of expanding sections. You can insert anything that you can use in normal topics, including other expanding sections and snippets 265.

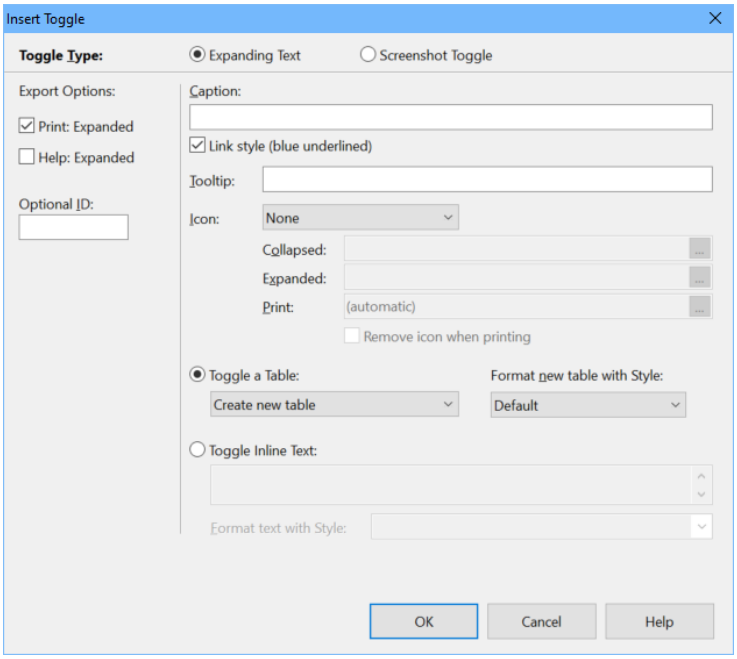
Productivity Tip
Avoid using additional tables inside your expanding section toggles if you also plan to publish to PDF or printed manuals. If you do, page breaks may not work correctly inside the rows containing additional tables.

How to create a new expanding section

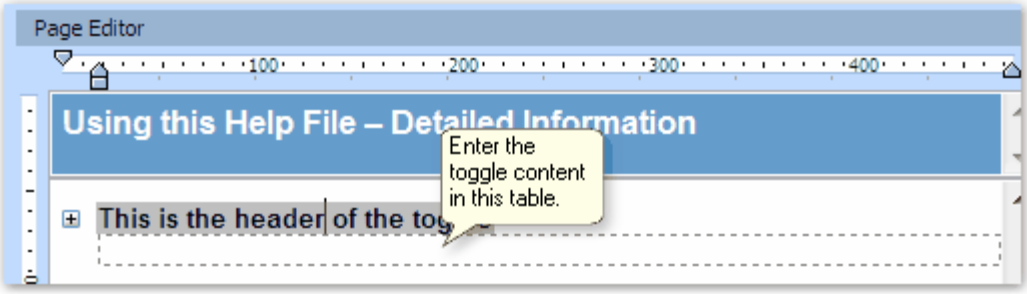
Expanding sections are handled by placing all the text and other content you want to include in the section in a single-cell table. Normally, this table will be created automatically by the Toggle function but you can also use an existing table if you want (see further below).

1. Click in your topic in the place where you want to insert an expanding section toggle. If you want to use existing text as the expanding section header, select it in the editor.
2. Select the Insert Toggle tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** and select the *Expanding Text* option at the top and *Toggle a Table:* in the middle of the dialog (these are the default settings).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Configure the settings in the Insert Toggle dialog 1373 and then click on OK to insert the toggle. This will create the toggle header with an empty, single-cell table below it.



4. Enter or copy the text and other content you want to include in your expanding section in the table. See further below for details on using existing text for expanding sections and expanding existing tables.

   You can have a maximum of one empty paragraph between the expanding section header and its table. If you have two or more empty paragraphs the expanding section will not work!

5. Format the header of your expanding section if you want. You can also use styles on the header paragraph, but you should switch off the "blue underlined" link style in the toggle settings when you do this. See below for more details.

You can adjust the left and right indents of the toggle table by formatting the paragraph containing the table. See below for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using an existing table for the expanding section

Normally, the Toggle Tool will automatically create an empty, single-cell table together with your expanding section header when you create the toggle. However, you can also toggle an existing table.

To do this just follow the instructions above to create a toggle directly above the table you want to "toggle". In the *Toggle a Table:* setting select the option *Toggle the table below this link*. This option will only be displayed if there is actually a table below the paragraph where you are creating the toggle!

When you toggle an existing table you may need to adjust the indents of the toggle and the table. See further below on this page for instructions.

Toggling existing tables with IDs:

Toggle links know which table to toggle by referencing the ID of the table, which is assigned automatically when you publish your output. If you have already assigned an ID to your existing table this ID will be overwritten by the toggle ID. If you want the table to keep its ID you must enter this ID as the toggle ID in the Insert Toggle 1373 dialog. Then it will still be overwritten, but with the correct ID.

Formatting the expanding section headers

By default, the header (caption) of your expanding section either uses the standard hyperlink format or plain formattable text, depending on whether the *Link Style* option is selected in the Insert Toggle 1373 dialog.

Using manual formatting and styles:

If you deselect the *Link Style* option the header initially has the same style as the paragraph in which it is located. You can then apply manual formatting or use a style to format it.

- **To use manual formatting** select the entire toggle header and use the font formatting tools in the Write tab. You must format the entire toggle header in exactly the same way, otherwise you will have breaks in the toggle link.
- **To use a style** just click in the toggle header and select the style you want to use in the Style Selector in **Write > Font.**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using CSS styles in HTML-based output:

Help+Manual exports individual CSS classes for all three toggle types. (The class *drop-down-toggle* is assigned to the toggle headers of expanding sections.)

This means that you can define CSS styles in your HTML template to control both the appearance and behaviour of your toggle links. See Formatting toggle links 399 topic for details.

Note that CSS formatting only works on links when the *Link Style* option is selected in the Insert Toggle 1373 dialog! Otherwise you must format the toggle link manually or with a style (see above).

Adjusting the indents for expanding sections

When you create the expanding section table together with its toggle both are automatically given the same indent. Normally this will be fine and will not need to be changed. However, you may want to use a different indent and if you are using a toggle with an existing table you will probably need to make some adjustments.

Adjusting the indent of the toggle header:

The expanding section toggle header is a normal paragraph with a hanging indent for the toggle icon (if you are using one). Just click anywhere in the toggle and adjust the indent settings 299 as you would for any other paragraph. You can also use a paragraph style 292 to apply the desired indents to the toggle header.

Adjusting the indent of the toggle table:

The table containing the expanding text for the toggle is a normal table. Like any other table, it is effectively a single object in a paragraph that cannot contain any other objects. To adjust the indent of this table you need to adjust the indent settings 299 of the paragraph containing the table. This too can be done with manual formatting or with a style. See Indenting tables 532 for detailed instructions on how to do this.

Using your own icons in the headers

You can also use your own icons in your toggle headers. Just select *Custom Icons* in the *Icon:* field when you are defining or editing your toggle. Then select your icon files for the *Collapsed:* and *Expanded:* icon states in the fields directly below.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- You will probably have to adjust the indents of your toggle and its table manually when you use your own icons (see above).

Suppressing icons or using different icons in PDF, eBooks, DOCX and printed manuals

When expanding text toggles are expanded in print-style output (PDF, DOCX, eBooks, printed manuals) the icon may not be suitable or desirable. You can remove the icon in these outputs by selecting the Remove icon when printing option. Alternatively, you can choose a different icon for these outputs by selecting the *Custom Icons* option and choosing an additional icon in the *Print:* field.

Replacing the standard icons with your own

When you choose one of the standard icon pairs for an expanding text toggle, Help+Manual first looks in your project folder to see if the necessary graphics files are there. If they are not there, it will write copies of the files to your project folder from its internal database.

This means that if you store icons of your own in your project folder using these names they will be used instead of the standard icons. You can also "swap" the open and closed state icons around by renaming the icon files in your project folder.

To replace the standard icon pairs with your own icons:

Just give your icons the names of the standard icon pairs (see below) and store them in your project folder. Help+Manual will not overwrite them and they will be used automatically when you select the corresponding standard icon option (**`Plus/Minus Symbol`**, **`Folder`**, **`Arrow`**).

Standard Icons	Filenames
Plus/Minus Symbol	`hmtoggle_plus0.gif` `hmtoggle_plus1.gif`
Folder	`hmtoggle_folder0.gif` `hmtoggle_folder1.gif`
Arrow	`hmtoggle_arrow0.gif` `hmtoggle_arrow1.gif`

See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Indenting tables 532
Using indents 299
Formatting toggles with CSS 392
Toggle IDs 395
Editing and copying toggles 396

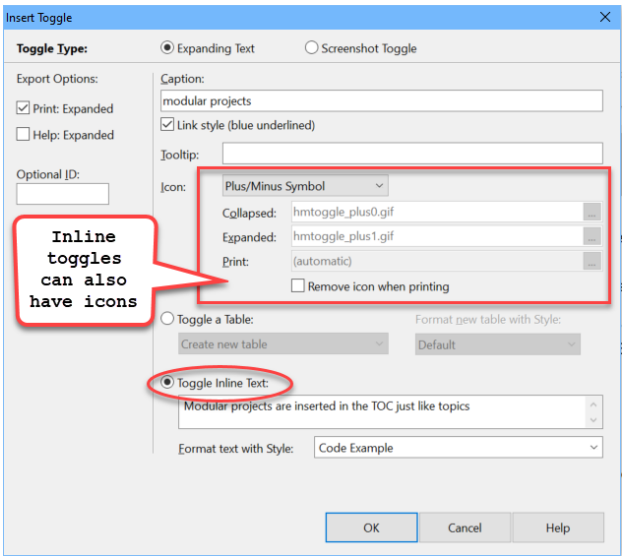
5.9.3 Expanding inline text toggles

When you click on an expanding inline text toggle *This is the expanding text of the inline text toggle. It is formatted with a normal style that has been designed to make the text stand out from the paragraph.* its text is "inserted" in the topic directly after the link, as though it had been pasted into the paragraph. This is ideal for short explanations and definitions that would otherwise disturb the flow of the topic. It is also simpler than using a popup topic and cannot trigger popup blockers in browsers.

How to create an inline text toggle

Making inline text toggles is quick and easy. Basically, you just enter a caption for the link in your topic, your inline text and an optional tooltip and you're done. You can also choose a style to format the inline text.

1. Click in your topic in the place where you want to insert your inline text toggle. If you want to use existing text as the toggle link text select it in the editor first.
2. Select the Insert Toggle tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** and select the *Expanding Text* option at the top and *Toggle Inline Text:* in the lower part of the dialog.



See Insert Toggle 1373 for details on all the settings in the Insert Toggle dialog.

3. Enter a caption (the link text to be displayed) in the *Caption:* field if you did not select text in the editor for the caption.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

4. Optional: If you wish you can also select an open/closed icon to be displayed together with the inline text toggle. This works in the same way as the icons used in expanding section toggles.
5. Enter your inline text in the text entry box directly below the *Toggle Inline Text:* option. You can only enter plain text here. You can enter carriage returns with the Enter key and they will be converted to line breaks in the output.
6. Choose a style for the inline text in the *Format text with style:* field. It is best to define a style that makes the text stand out against the normal text in your topic.
7. Click on OK to insert the toggle, which will be displayed in your topic in the same way as other hyperlinks.

Formatting the text of inline text toggles

The inline text of these toggles can only be formatted with styles. You can only apply a single style to the entire inline text and the style must be selected in the Insert Toggle 1373 dialog. You should define a style that makes the text stand out well against the rest of the text in the paragraph, otherwise the user may be confused after clicking on the toggle because the new text won't be immediately visible.

Toggle icons:

In addition to the standard icons you can also use your own icons in inline text toggle links. Just select *Custom Icons* in the **Icon:** field when you are defining or editing your toggle. Then select your icon files for the *Collapsed:* and *Expanded:* icon states in the fields directly below. You will probably have to adjust the indents of your toggle and its table manually when you use your own icons (see above).

Selecting a style in a new toggle:

Select the style in the *Format text with style:* field. If you need to define a style 281 first just save the toggle and then double-click on the toggle link in the editor later to open the Edit Toggle dialog.

Applying or changing the style in an existing toggle:

Double-click on the toggle link in the editor to open the Edit Toggle dialog, then select the style in the Format text with style field.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Formatting inline toggle links

By default, the link of your inline text toggle is displayed either with the standard hyperlink format or as plain formattable text, depending on whether the *Link style* option is selected in the Insert Toggle 1373 dialog.

Using manual formatting and styles for the toggle links:

If you deselect the *Link style* option the link initially has the same style as the paragraph in which it is located. You can then apply manual formatting to it or use a style to format it.

- **To use manual formatting** select the entire toggle link and use the font formatting tools in the **Write** tab. You must format the entire toggle header in exactly the same way, otherwise you will have breaks in the toggle link.
- **To use a style** select the entire toggle link and then select the style you want to use in the Style Selector in **Write** > **Font.**

Using CSS styles in HTML-based output:

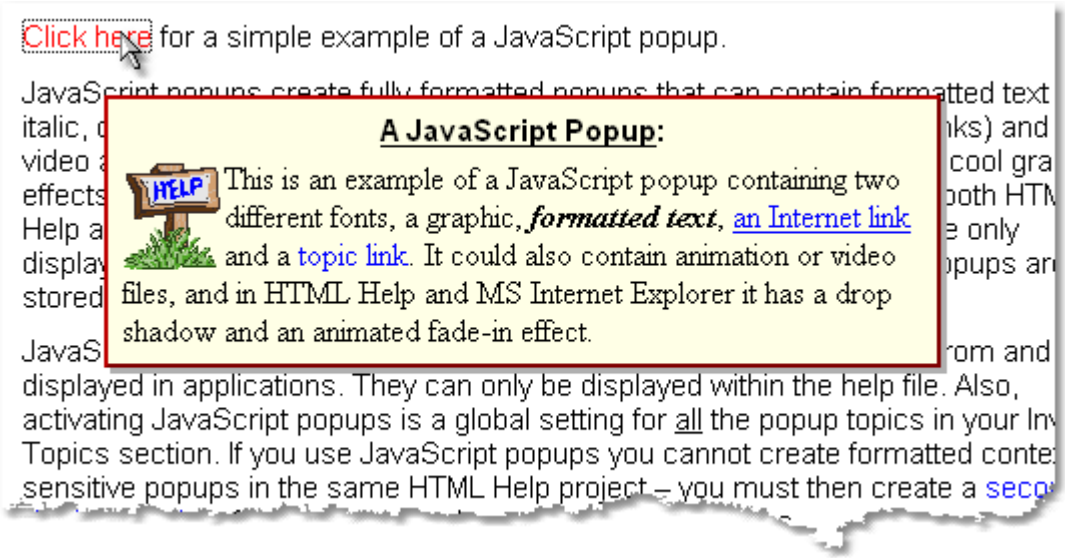
Help+Manual exports individual CSS classes for all three toggle types. This means that you can define CSS styles in your HTML template to control both the appearance and behavior of your toggle links. (The `inline-toggle` class is used for expanding inline text toggles.) See Formatting toggle links 399 for details.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273
Formatting toggles with CSS 392
Toggle IDs 395
Editing and copying toggles 396

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.9.4 Expanding image toggles



Click on the image to collapse it!

Expanding image toggles like the one on the right use a small "display version" of the image that the user can click on to display the full version. This can make your topic pages much easier to read because the larger versions of the image are only displayed when needed.
Help+Manual does all the work for you. You just select the full-size image you want to display and the smaller version is generated automatically.

Use image styles with image toggles

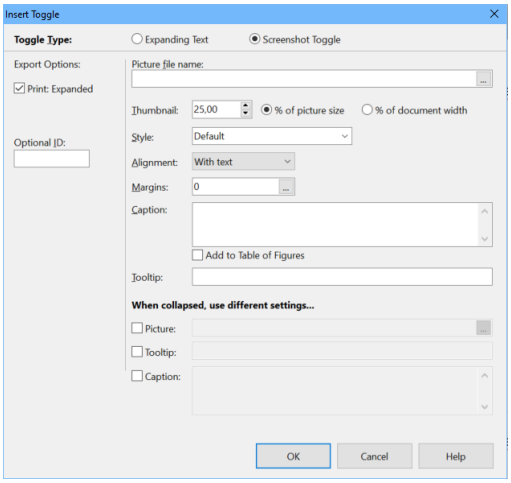
Note that you can apply image styles 492 to the image toggle preview to set a border and a standard width to an entire class of toggles.

How to create an expanding image toggle

To make an expanding image toggle you just select the image you want to use, choose a zoom factor for the thumbnail display version and enter tooltips and/or captions if you want to use them.

1. Click in your topic in the place where you want to insert your expanding image toggle. Don't select any text (it would be deleted when you insert the image toggle).
2. Select the Insert Toggle tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** and select the *Screenshot Toggle* option at the top of the dialog.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



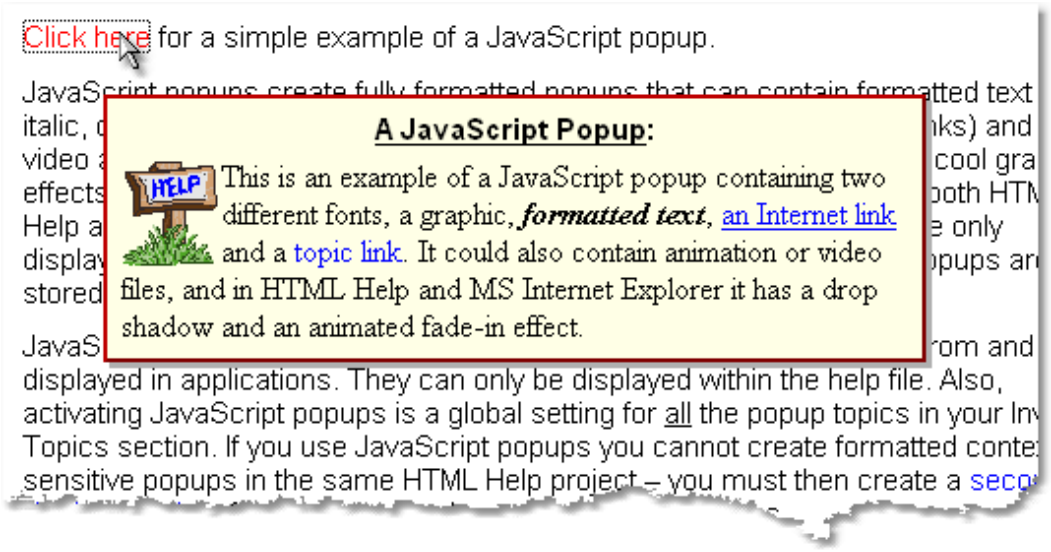
- ***Thumbnail:*** Sets the size of the preview image that the user clicks or taps on to display the full-size image.
- ***% of picture size/document width:*** Makes the size of preview image a percentage of the original image size or of the document width. The second option makes the preview responsive and relative to the width of the current browser window. If the image is in a table the width will be relative to the table cell containing the toggle image.
- ***Style:*** You can apply an image style 492 to the image toggle preview to define a border and a standard width.
- See Insert Toggle 1373 for details on all the settings in the Insert Toggle dialog.

3. Select the image you want to toggle by clicking on the ... browse button in the *Picture file name:* field. This file should be stored in your graphics folder or project folder, just like all the other graphics in your project.
4. Select a zoom factor for the preview version and enter tooltips and captions for the expanded and collapsed versions.
5. Click on **OK** to insert your expanding image toggle.

Using a different image for the preview

You can specify a completely different image for the preview/collapsed state version. For example, you could use a button image that the user clicks on to display a larger image, like this:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



This is the expanded version.

Just select the *Picture:* option beneath *When collapsed, use different settings...* and then select the image you want to use.

When you use this option you are completely responsible for the size and appearance of the collapsed state version. Help+Manual will not apply a zoom factor for you.

You can enter separate captions and tool tips for the preview and the expanded image.

Using SVG images

You can also use vector-based SVG images for image toggles. The procedure is exactly the same as when you use any other image type.

The only difference is that the smaller version of the image is a PNG with alpha transparency instead of an SVG. The SVG image will only be displayed for the full size version.

Converting existing images into toggles

You can convert any image in your project into a toggle image. Just right-click on the image and select *Picture* > *Convert Picture to a Toggle...* The procedure is then the same as for inserting a new image toggle.

Formatting the toggle image with CSS

The CSS class `image-toggle` is automatically applied to the <img> tag for your image toggles. If you know how to use CSS and HTML you can add style definitions for this class

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

to your HTML template to control the formatting of your toggle image. See Formatting toggles with CSS 399 for details.

Before you do this, however, check out Image Styles 492, which cover most of the things you may want to apply to images with CSS, and they also work for PDF and Word.

See also:

Formatting toggles with CSS 399
Toggle IDs 395
Editing and copying toggles 396

5.9.5 Toggle IDs

The toggle ID is optional and we recommend that you leave this field blank in the Insert Toggle 1373 dialog. Then Help+Manual will automatically assign a unique ID to each toggle when you publish your help. If you don't know what HTML IDs are and how they can be used you can ignore the ID field and this topic entirely – you don't need to worry about it.

When you need static, manually-entered IDs

You only need to enter your own ID manually if you plan to access the toggle IDs with your own code after generating your help. The automatically-assigned IDs can change every time you publish (they are based on the sequential order of the toggles on the page) and so you must enter a manual ID if you always want to have the same ID to refer to.

When you use your own IDs you have to make sure that each ID is unique in the current topic. If you use the same ID more than once in the same topic your toggles will not work properly.

Auto-incrementing IDs for cloned and copied toggles

If you make copies of toggles containing manually-entered IDs within the same topic you must change the IDs in the copies, otherwise you will have ID conflicts. Help+Manual automatically flags copied and cloned toggles containing ID conflicts by highlighting them in red, and it will not allow you to manually enter a duplicate ID for a toggle.

If you want to clone toggles, for example by copying or with snippets 265, it can be annoying to have to manually edit the ID for every toggle you enter. You can get around this problem by creating an automatically-incrementing ID with text variables.

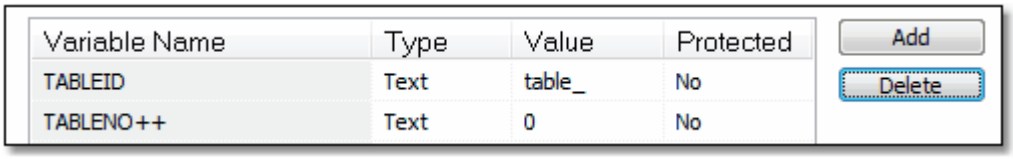
You can't mix text and variables in topic IDs so you need to create two variables to do this.

1. Go to **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables** and create two text variables 919, one for the static part of the ID and one for the incre-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

menting number. The static part can have any name you like, the incrementing number must have two plus characters at the end of its name, for example `TOGGLLENO++`.

2. Let's say the two variables are `TOGGLEID` and `TOGGLENO++`. Now enter any text you like as the text for the `TOGGLEID` variable, for example *mytoggle_*, and a *0* (the number zero) as the text for the `TOGGLENO++` variable, like this (this example shows similar variables for use in tables):



3. Then instead of an ID, type in both variables in the *Optional ID:* field in the Edit/Insert Toggle dialog, like this:
   <%TOGGLEID%><%TOGGLENO++%>

Then every time you insert a copy of the toggle in your project a new unique ID will be generated automatically. The first will be *mytoggle_1,* the second will be *mytoggle_2* and so on.

See also:

Editing and copying toggles 396
Counter variables for numbering 941

5.9.6 Editing and reusing toggles

Toggle links are normal hyperlinks so editing the links is basically just the same as editing any other kind of hyperlink. They can also be copied and moved in the same way as normal text. The toggle content in expanding section toggles is just normal text in a single-cell table and can be edited normally. Note, however, that you must move the link and table of expanding text toggles together! They will not work if you separate them.

The text of inline text toggles is stored in the Edit Toggle dialog and can be edited by double-clicking on the toggle link.

Expanding image toggles can be edited by double-clicking on them.

How to edit toggles

Toggle links and settings:

To edit an expanding section or inline text toggle just double-click on its link in the editor (it looks just like an ordinary hyperlink), or right-click on it and select **Edit** in the context menu. This opens the Edit Toggle 1373 dialog in which you can change all the settings of the toggle.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Toggle contents:

Expanding inline text toggles contain plain text only and must be edited in the Edit Toggle dialog, where you can also apply a style to make the text stand out from the rest of the topic page.

Editing the contents of expanding section toggles is exactly the same as editing normal text in the editor. You just have to be careful that all the text is inside the table and that you never insert more than one empty paragraph between the expanding section's table and its header.

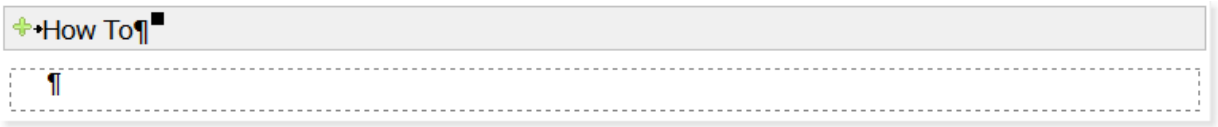
Expanding image toggles:

Just double-click on the toggle in the editor to access its settings.

Reusing formatted toggles with snippets

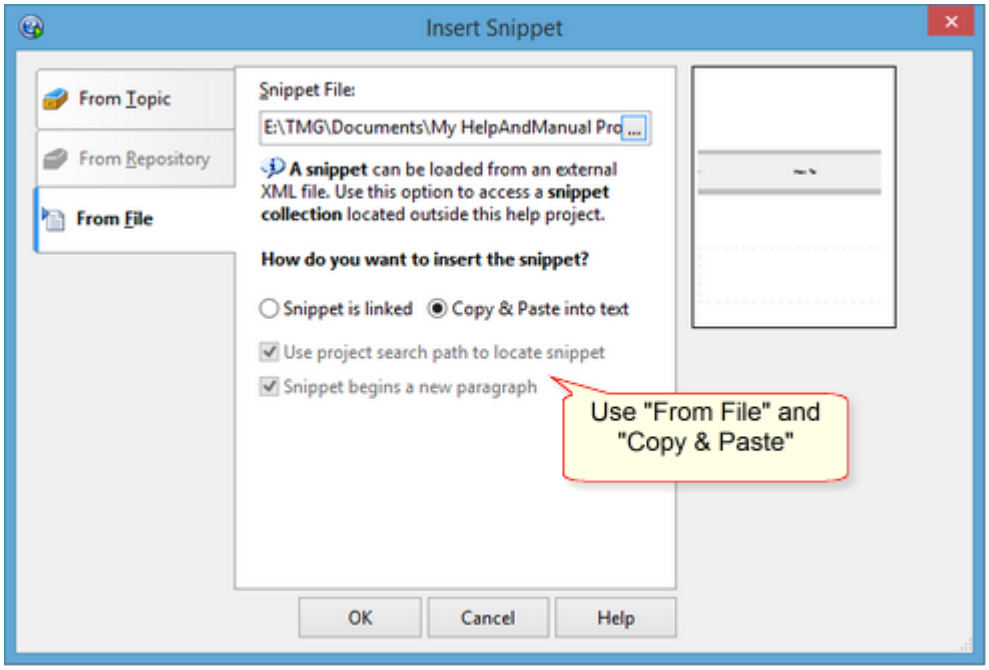
You will often want to use the same type of formatted toggle repeatedly – for example like the toggles used for the individual instructions on this page. Instead of reformatting the entire toggle every time, it is much easier to store a 'blank' toggle as a snippet and just insert it in the editor every time you want to use it.

1. Create the complete toggle you want to reuse with all components, using some dummy text in places where text is necessary. The snippet for the toggles used on this page looks like this, for example:



2. Select the entire item you want to reuse.
3. Select **File** > **Save Snippet** in the **Project** > **Manage Topics** tab and save the snippet in your project folder with a descriptive name.
4. To use the snippet, click in the place where you want to insert a new item, then select the Snippet tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**. Activate the options "From File" and "Copy & paste into text". Then select the snippet and click **OK**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



See this chapter 196 in the help for more details on using snippets:

How to copy toggles

There are no restrictions on copying toggles. The copies will be fully functional, both within the same topic and when you copy them to other topics.

When you copy expanding section toggles you just need to make sure that you copy both the toggle header and the toggle table containing the expanding content, because these are two separate items.

Caution with expanding section toggles to which you have assigned IDs

You only have to be a little careful when you copy toggles in which you have entered the toggle IDs yourself. When the IDs are manually entered they will not be updated automatically. This is OK when you copy a toggle to a different topic but duplicate IDs within the same topic will cause conflicts.

When you copy toggles containing manually-entered IDs within the same topic you should always edit the toggle and update the IDs. (Help+Manual automatically highlights toggles with duplicate ID conflicts in red.)

See also:

Toggle IDs 395

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.9.7 Formatting toggles with CSS

When your help is exported to HTML-based formats the <a> link tags for the text toggles and the <img> tag for the image toggles are exported with CSS classes, which makes it possible to change the appearance and behavior of your toggle links by adding CSS style definitions for these classes to the HTML template for your topic pages.

Following the instructions in this topic requires some experience with writing HTML manually and using CSS styles. If you feel stumped by this we recommend that you get an experienced friend or colleague to help you.

See the Using HTML Templates 1026 and About HTML Templates 1611 chapters more information on using and editing HTML templates.

The CSS class names for the toggle link types

Help+Manual exports CSS classes to the tags used of all three toggle types. The classes are applied three different components of the expanding section drop-down toggles. The expanding inline text toggles and expanding image toggles only have one component each with a class.

You must use the classes directly as properties of the tags that you want to apply them to, otherwise they won't work properly. For example, you must use the syntax `img.image-toggle {}` for defining styles for your image toggles and `a.inline-toggle {}` and `a.dropdown-toggle {}` for defining styles for your text toggle links.

Toggle Type	Class Name	Notes
Expanding section toggles link:	`dropdown-toggle`	This is the class of the **<a>** tag of the link that the user clicks on to activate the toggle: **<a class="dropdown-toggle" href="javas-cript:HMToggle('toggle','TOGGLE0186A1','TOGGLE0186A1_ICON')">...**
Expanding section toggles body:	`dropdown-toggle-body`	This is the class of a DIV element that encloses the actual table containing the toggle. This element also contains the ID of the toggle.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Toggle Type	Class Name	Notes
Expanding section toggles link:	`dropdown-toggle`	This is the class of the **<a>** tag of the link that the user clicks on to activate the toggle: **<a class="dropdown-toggle" href="javas-cript:HMToggle('toggle','TOGGLE0186A1','TOGGLE0186A1_ICON')">...**
		** <table...**
Expanding section toggles icon:	`dropdown-toggle-icon`	Class of the **<img>** tag for the toggle icon, if one is used. It also contains the toggle ID with the suffix *_ICON*. **<img id="TOGGLE0186A1_ICON" class="dropdown-toggle-icon"...**
Expanding inline text toggles:	`inline-toggle`	Class of the <a> tag that the user clicks on to activate the toggle: **<a class="inline-toggle" href="javas-cript:HMToggle('toggle','TOGGLE0186A1')">**
Expanding image toggles:	`image-toggle`	Class of the <img> tag containing the preview image. It is enclosed in an <a> tag without a class or ID that makes the image clickable: ****

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Example of style CSS class definitions for toggles

The following example shows you how to format your toggle links and images with a CSS style definition using the class names listed above. The style definitions are shown inserted in the standard HTML template for topic pages. The toggle styles are shown in blue, the other style definitions are for the other hyperlink types in the help.

Sample CSS Definitions for Toggles

```
<%DOCTYPE%>
<html>
<head>
   <title><%TOPIC_TITLE%></title>
   <meta name="generator" content="Help &amp; Manual" />
   <meta name="keywords" content="<%TOPIC_KEYWORDS%>" />
   <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html;
charset=<%DOCCHARSET%>" />
   <meta http-equiv="Content-Style-Type" con-
tent="text/css" />
   <link type="text/css" href="<%STYLESHEET%>"
rel="stylesheet" />

<style type="text/css">
<!-- These are the normal hyperlink styles -->
  a { color: #0000FF; text-decoration: none }
  a:visited {color: #0000FF }
  a:hover {color: #E4641C; text-decoration: underline }
  a.weblink {color: #0000FF; text-decoration: underline }
  a.weblink:visited {color: #0000FF}
  a.weblink:hover {color: #E4641C }
  a.popuplink {color: #FF0000; text-decoration: none}
  a.popuplink:visited {color: #FF0000}
  a.popuplink:hover {color: #FF0000; text-decoration: un-
derline}
  a.filelink {color: #04BC14; text-decoration: none}
  a.filelink:visited {color: #04BC14}
  a.filelink:hover {color: #04BC14; text-decoration: un-
derline}
<!-- These are the toggle styles -->
  a.dropdown-toggle {color: Navy; text-decoration: none;
font-weight: bold;  font-family: "Times New  Roman",
Times, serif; }
  a.drop-down-toggle:visited {color: Navy; }
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
  a.drop-down-toggle:hover {text-decoration: underline}
  a.inline-toggle {color: Green; text-decoration: none;
font-weight: bold;  font-family: "Times New Roman", Times,
serif;  }
  a.inline-toggle:visited {color: Green; }
  a.inline-toggle:hover {text-decoration: underline}
  img.image-toggle { border: border-width: 2px; border-
color: red; border-style: solid;}
</style>


</head>
<body style="margin: 0px 0px 0px 0px; background: <%
TOPIC_TEXT_BGCOLOR%>;">
....
```

See also:

Using HTML Templates 1026
About HTML Templates 1611

5.9.8 Expand All / Collapse All

You can create special links with which you can allow the user to expand and collapse all the toggles in the current topic with a single click. There are a number of very useful things you can do with this feature. For example, it allows you to write help for both novice and experienced users on the same page. You could then create **More Detail / Less Detail** links in the topic header for switching between the two versions. You can also use it to create a **Print** button that will pre-expand all the toggles in the current topic before it is printed.

How to create Expand All and Collapse All links

1. Click in the place where you want to insert the links, for example in the header of your topic.
2. Select the Link tool in **Write** > **Insert** and select the *Script Link* tab at the left of the dialog and *HTML JavaScript* as the script/macro type.
3. Enter the following code in the *Script:* editing box:

Version for separate links for Expand and Collapse:

Expand All:	Collapse All:
`javascript:HMToggleExpandAll(true)`	`javascript:HMToggleExpandAll(false)`

Version for a single link that alternates between expand and collapse:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Expand/Collapse:
`javascript:HMToggleExpandAll(!HMTogglesAllExpanded)`

Adding Expand All and Collapse All links to all pages

To add **Expand All / Collapse All** links to all your pages you need to insert the necessary code manually in the HTML template for your pages. You will need some experience in editing HTML for this. See The topic page templates 1036 in the Using HTML Templates 1026 chapter for detailed instructions on how to add code to your topic page templates.

- Locate the position in the template where you want to insert your links and then insert the following code (you can change the `title` text to insert your own tooltips, of course):

Expand All:	`<a href="javascript:HMToggleExpandAll(true)" title="Tooltip text">Expand All</a>`
Collapse All:	`<a href="javascript:HMToggleExpandAll(false)" title="Tooltip text">Collapse All</a>`
Expand/Collapse:	`<a href="javascript:HMToggleExpandAll(!HMTogglesAllExpanded)" title="Tooltip text">Expand/Collapse</a>`

Locating the correct position in the template:

The `<%TOPIC_TEXT%>` variable in the HTML template inserts the content of your topic from the editor into the template. This means that everything inserted directly above this variable is inserted directly before the beginning of your normal topic content, everything directly below it is inserted directly after the end of your topic content.

The topic header is in the code between the `<IF_TOPIC_HEADER>` and `</IF_TOPIC_HEADER>` tags. The header components are in a table. You may need to add cells or rows to achieve the effect and positioning you want.

Conditional Expand All and Collapse All

There is a special conditional tag called `<IF_TOGGLES>` that you can use in your HTML templates. This condition only evaluates true if the current topic contains one or more toggles. This means that you can use them to create *Expand All / Collapse All* links that will only be displayed in topics containing toggles.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You use this condition just like any other condition in HTML templates. Just enclose the link code (and any other additional code you are using for the links) in a pair of <IF_TOGGLES> condition tags, like this:

```
<IF_TOGGLES><a href="javascript:HMToggleExpandAll(!HMTogglesAllEx-
panded)" title="Expand/collapse hidden text">Expand/Col-
lapse</a></IF_TOGGLES>
```

Creating a Print button that pre-expands your toggles

You can use the Expand All function to create a Print link for HTML Help and WebHelp that will pre-expand all the toggles in the current topic before printing it. For instructions Printing topics containing toggles 407.

See also:

Using HTML Templates 1026
The topic page templates 1036
About HTML Templates 1611

5.9.9 Toggle troubleshooting

Toggles are generally stable and reliable but since they are based on HTML and JavaScript there are a few things you need to keep in mind when you are using them. Among other things, toggles only work in formats that support both HTML and JavaScript. They are converted to static text in all other formats and they are displayed expanded by default in browsers without JavaScript support or with JavaScript turned off.

Problems with toggle IDs

When you need to enter IDs manually:

The ID field in all three toggle types is optional and we strongly recommend that you leave it blank unless you have a very good reason for using your own IDs – for example if you need to access the IDs with your own program code in the output generated by Help+Manual. If you need to do this you **must** enter your own IDs manually because the automatically-assigned IDs may change every time you publish your output.

If you enter your IDs manually you must make sure that there are no conflicts between them in the same topic. Duplicate IDs in different topics are OK but duplicate IDs within the same topic will cause problems and malfunctions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Toggles don't work or clicking on one toggle "toggles" a different toggle:

This can happen if you have duplicate IDs in the same topic when you are entering your IDs manually. Check all the toggles in the topic for duplicate IDs. Invalid or duplicate IDs will be displayed highlighted in red in the editor.

Problems with expanding section toggles

Clicking on the header doesn't "toggle" the section:

If you don't have duplicate IDs (see above) you have probably entered more than one empty paragraph between the toggle header and the toggle table. You can have one empty paragraph between the two but not more.

Unwanted interaction with other images in the same line as the header:

The toggle header icon is a normal image. If you insert other images directly next to it the toggle may also attempt to toggle those images. You can usually solve these problems by editing the toggle (double-click on the header link) and saving it again with **OK**.

Problems with formatting in toggle links

The toggle link is broken into several individual links:

This happens when you try to format different parts of the link text differently. You can format toggle links but you must format the entire text in exactly the same way, otherwise the link will be broken up.

CSS styles are not applied to the links:

CSS styles 399 will only work if the *Link style* option is checked in the Edit Toggle 1373 dialog. If this option is not checked you must format the links in the editor, either manually or with styles.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Image toggles result in larger output files

This is normal because each image toggle must use two images instead of one. In addition to this you are probably using a larger image for the full-size version than you would normally use. It is thus advisable to use image toggles sparingly and not to use images that are larger than absolutely necessary, even in the full-size versions.

Page break problems in PDFs and printed manuals

Help+Manual can create page breaks within table rows and not just at row boundaries. This means that it is OK to have a large expanding section toggle consisting of just one big table cell with multiple paragraphs of text and other content.

However, page breaks inside tables may not work correctly if you insert tables inside other tables. If you want to be sure your pages will break correctly in PDF don't insert additional tables inside your main toggle tables.

See also:

Formatting toggles with CSS 399
Working with Tables 518

5.9.10 Updating old expanding sections

If you have imported Help+Manual 3 projects with manually-programmed expanding sections you will probably want to replace them with toggles because they are much easier to manage.

How to convert your old expanding sections

The new toggles are not compatible with manually-programmed expanding sections so you need to remove the old expanding sections and replace them with toggles.

Step 1: Remove all the code of the old expanding sections:

1. Check through your HTML template and remove all the code that you added to create your expanding sections.
2. In the Project Explorer check **Project Files** > **Baggage Files** for any files added for your expanding sections and delete them.
3. In the Project Explorer check **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > **Extended .HHP Settings** for any references added for your expanding sections and delete them.
4. For each expanding section in your project delete any manually-inserted plain HTML code blocks in your topics.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Step 2: Create the new expanding section toggles:

1. Create a single-cell table for each expanding section and cut and paste the contents of your expanding section into the table.
2. Position the cursor in an empty paragraph directly above the table.
3. Select the Insert Toggle tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**, then select the *Expanding Text* and *Toggle a Table:* options.
4. In the drop-down box below the *Toggle a Table* option select *Toggle the table below this link* so that the toggle uses the table containing your old expanding section text.

See also:

Expanding section toggles 384

5.9.11 Printing topics containing toggles

You need to do a little planning to make it possible for your users to print topics containing toggles. Of course, this is only necessary in the formats where toggles are "active" – toggle printing is not a problem in formats like PDF and Word DOCX because the toggles are always static in these formats, so their entire contents are always printed (provided you have configured the toggles to be displayed expanded in print mode).

In all formats where dynamic toggles are supported (WebHelp, HTML Help, MS Help 2.0) the toggles are always printed exactly as they are currently displayed. Expanded toggles are printed expanded, collapsed toggles are printed collapsed.

Generally, your users will want to print out the entire contents of the topic, including the contents of all toggles.

Including Expand All and Collapse All links

The simplest method is to provide your user with *Expand All / Collapse All* links in your topic header, as explained in the topic Expand All / Collapse All 402 in this chapter. Then they can click on *Expand All* before they print.

The disadvantage of this method is that you have to explain it to your users. If they miss the explanation it may take them a while to figure out what they need to do, and they may waste a lot of paper in the process.

Creating an auto-expanding Print link

The best solution is a Print link that automatically expands the toggles in the topic. These are created in exactly the same way as an **`Expand All`** link, you just need to add one more small snippet of code to send the topic to the printer after expanding the toggles:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Follow the instructions for creating Expand All links 402 to create a new link in the location where you want to have your Print link.
2. Create the code for the link as follows:

Code for a Script Link:	Code for your HTML template:
`javascript:HMToggleExpandAll(true); print();`	`<a href="javascript:HMToggleExpandAll(true); print();">Print this Topic</a>`

See Expand All/Collapse All 402 for more detailed instructions on creating Print links and buttons.

Print link with an icon instead of a text link

You can also use an icon instead of a text link for the Print function. If you use the Link tool in the Write tab you just need to select *Picture* as the style and then select an appropriate printer icon. If you add the link to your HTML template you need to enter the code manually.

Static icon in the HTML template:

```
<a href="javascript: HMToggleExpandAll(true); print();">
<img name="printbutton" border="0" alt="Print This Topic" title="Print This Topic"
src="print2.gif"></a>
```

Icon with a mouseover function in the HTML template:

```
<a href="javascript: HMToggleExpandAll(true); print();"
onmouseover="document.images.printbutton.src='print1.gif'"
onmouseout="document.images.printbutton.src='print2.gif'">
<img name="printbutton" border="0" alt="Print this Topic" title="Print this Topic"
src="print2.gif"></a>
```

Add your icon images to the Baggage Files 1119 section and replace the image names in the above code with the filename of your own icon.

Excluding the Print link in unsupported formats

If you also plan to generate Windows Exe or ePUB eBooks from your project you must exclude the Print link there because toggles and JavaScript are not supported in eBooks (toggles are always displayed as static text, fully expanded).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **If you use script links** enclose the links in conditional text 994 tags to make sure that they are only included in the output formats where dynamic toggles are supported (HTML Help, WebHelp and MS Help 2.0).
- **If you use links in your HTML templates** enclose the link code in a pair of <IFNOT_EBOOK> </IFNOT_EBOOK> build conditions 1006 to make sure that they are excluded from eBooks. This will work for both Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks.

See also:

Using HTML Templates 1026
The topic page templates 1036
About HTML Templates 1611

5.10 Links, Anchors, Macros, Scripts and HTML

Links, more properly referred to as "hyperlinks", are the main feature that makes electronic help so much more useful and flexible than printed documentation. Hyperlinks allow you to refer directly to related information, creating a non-linear "web" of information that is much better at describing complex programs and processes than linear documentation.

Another subject covered in this section is Help+Manual's function for editing and inserting plain or "inline" HTML code in your help files. If you know how to code HTML you can use this function to add features and formatting with scripts and blocks of code.

5.10.1 Supported hyperlink types

Help+Manual can create several different types of hyperlinks, which are used for linking to different items or providing additional functionality:

Topic links: 410 — These links create "jumps" to other help topics, which can be in the current help project or in other help projects or help files.

Topic anchors: 415 — Anchors are not really links in their own right – they are "targets" for other links. They allow you to create a links that go to specific positions in a topic instead of to the top of the topic.

Internet links: 422 — Links to HTML pages on the World Wide Web or email addresses.

Figure links: 420 — Creates a live reference link to a figure or table counter object, including the current caption and number of the object.

File links: 424 — Links to external files on the user's computer.

Script links: 452 — These are not really hyperlinks in the real sense of the word. Instead of taking the user to another page or topic, clicking on them executes

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

script code that you insert.

Named destinations in PDF: In PDF files, "named destinations" are the equivalent of anchors, i.e. named targets that you can jump to with hyperlinks, like anchors in HTML files. Help+Manual inserts named destinations for a number of targets in the PDFs it creates.

Named destinations are a special case and must always be linked to using file links and a special anchor-like syntax.

See this topic in the help for details on using and linking to named destinations in PDF files.

5.10.2 Inserting topic links

The easiest way to create hyperlink to another topic in your current project is with Drag & Drop – just select text in the editor and drag it onto the topic you want to link to in the Table of Contents.

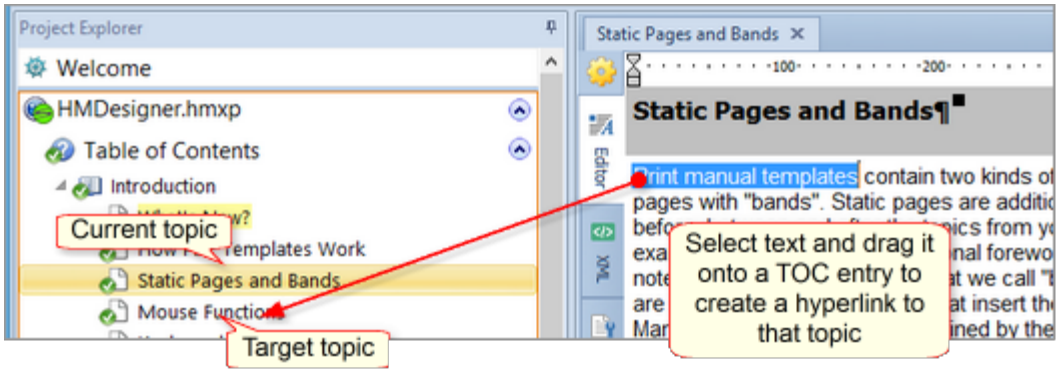
Productivity Tip
You can navigate to the targets of your links within your project by holding down *Ctrl* and clicking on the link.

How to create a topic hyperlink with Drag & Drop

Drag topic text on to the target topic:

This method turns text in your topic into a hyperlink to a selected topic in the TOC.

1. Select the text in your topic that you want to use as the link caption (you can edit this later).



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Drag the selected text onto the topic in the Table of Contents (TOC) that you want to link to and release the mouse button.
3. To view and edit the hyperlink settings double-click on the link to display the Hyperlink 1352 dialog box.

Note:
Be careful to drag the text *onto* the topic. Dragging the text *between* topics creates a new topic with a title and ID based on the selected text.

Drag target topic into the topic text:

This method turns a TOC entry into a hyperlink to that entry in your topic.

1. Click on the target topic in the TOC and hold down the mouse button (if you release the button this won't work).
2. Drag to the position in the current topic where you want to insert the link, then release the button.
3. Double-click on the new hyperlink to open its properties if you want to edit the link text etc.

Links to anchors:

To quickly create a link to an anchor 415 in the current or another topic just create the link with Drag & Drop and then double-click on the link to select the target anchor in the dialog. Select the anchor from the drop-down list next to the *Target:* field (see below for details).

Links to images, tables and captions

You can also link to images 481, tables 520 and caption objectsk 944 for figure and table counters with the same drop-down list next to the *Target:* field. The only requirement is that the target must have an ID.

Links to popup topics:

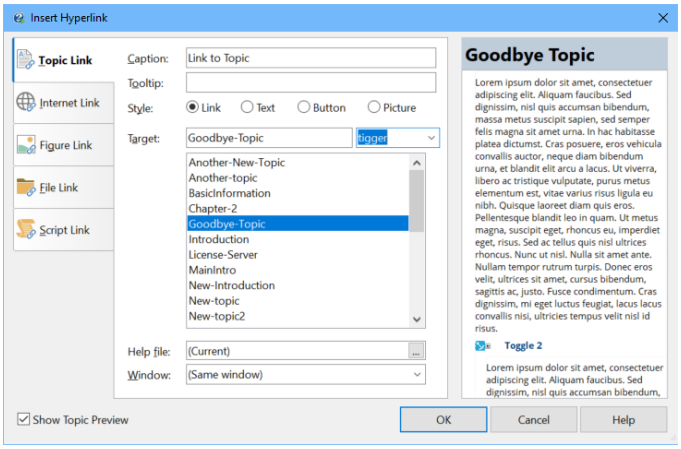
You do not need to do anything special to create a popup link. Links to popup topics 207 in your project automatically open the target topics as popups.

How to create a topic hyperlink manually

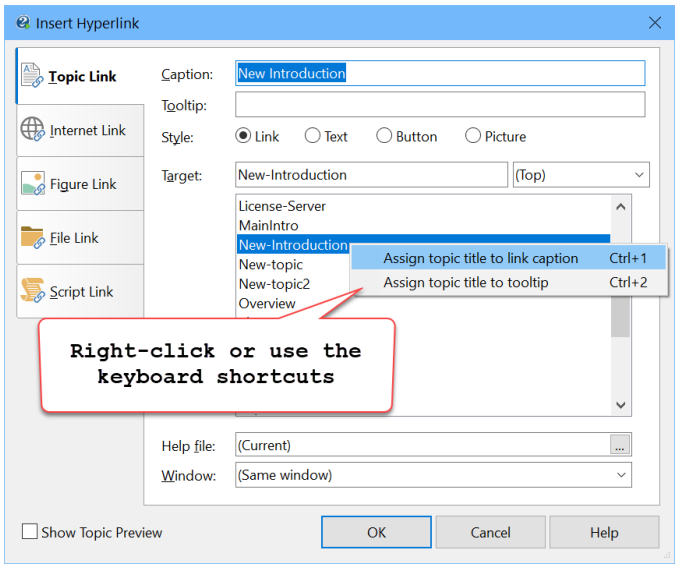
1. Select text in your document if you want to use it as the link. You can also skip this step and enter the caption in the hyperlink dialog.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Open the Insert Hyperlink dialog box. There are two different ways to do this:
   - Press **Ctrl+L**
   - Select the **Link** tool in **Write** > **Insert**



3. Right-click on the target ID to quickly copy the title of the target topic to the Caption (**Ctrl+L**) or Tooltip (**Ctrl+T**) fields:



4. Edit the *Caption:* if necessary and select the link style (standard link, plain text, button or graphic).

   You can type the <%TARGETTITLE%> variable in the *Caption:* field to automatically insert the title of the target topic as the caption. See further below for full instructions.

5. Select the ID of the topic you want to link to from the *Topic ID:* list.

   If the topic contains anchors 415 or images and tables with IDs you can also select them as jump targets from the drop-down list next to the *Target:* field. The link will then jump directly to the position of the anchor in the topic instead of the top of the topic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See The Hyperlink dialog 1352 for details of the other settings in the dialog. See Linking to other projects and help files 457 for details on creating external links.

Links to popup topics:

You do not need to do anything special to create a popup link. Links to popup topics 207 in your project automatically open the target topics as popups.

Automatic hyperlink captions with the <%TARGETTITLE%> variable

When you create topic links you can insert any text you like as the link text (caption). However, you can also insert a special variable that automatically inserts the title of the target topic when you publish your help. The advantage of this is that the link caption will update automatically if the title of the target topic changes.

1. Create a hyperlink using any of the methods described on this page.
2. In the *Caption:* field of the Edit Hyperlink dialog enter the following variable, typing all characters of the variable exactly as shown, including the <% and %> characters:

<%TARGETTITLE%>

Tip: Double-click on a hyperlink in the editor to display the Edit Hyperlink dialog.

Insert page references for links in PDF and printed manuals

In print-style (non-interactive) PDFs and printed manuals links are not active – you can't click in a paper printout. You can configure Help+Manual to automatically insert the page numbers of the targets of topic links in a little icon directly after the link in PDFs and printed manuals.

To activate this, go to **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **PDF** > **PDF Layout** and turn on the option "*Insert Page Referrers*". If you do this, you should also turn on the "*Underline topic links*" option to make the links visible.

How to create multiple topic links with Copy & Paste

This method works with both single and multiple links. If you copy multiple items in the TOC and paste them in the editor the result will be a list of links to the selected topics.

1. Select one or more items in the TOC that you want to link to. Use *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click* to select multiple items.
2. Select *Copy* in the **Clipboard** tools in the Ribbon or press **Ctrl+C**.
3. Click in the editor where you want to insert the links.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

4. Select *Paste* in the **Clipboard** tools the Ribbon or press **Ctrl+V**.

This will insert a list of links to all the items you copied from the TOC.

Opening topics in external windows in CHM

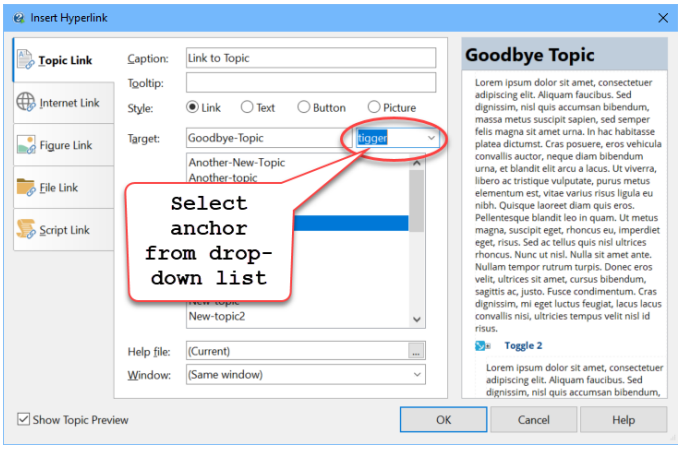
In HTML Help (**.chm**) you can open topics in external windows by specifying a secondary help window type in the link definition. Just select the window type you want to link to in the *Window:* field in the Insert Hyperlink dialog.

See Using help windows 194 for more details.

Linking to anchors in topics

If the target topic contains anchors 415 you can link to an anchor to take the user directly to a point inside the target topic.

- Double-click on the link in the editor to display hyperlink dialog 1352 and select the anchor from the drop-down list next to the *Target:* field.



The procedure is the same when you are creating a new link. Just select the anchor you want to link to from the drop-down list.

Anchors in embedded topics:

If you link to a topic containing an embedded topic any anchors in the embedded topic will not be displayed in the drop-down anchor list. To link to an anchor in an embedded topic make a note of the anchor ID and type it in the drop-down list box next to the *Target:* field manually when you edit the hyperlink.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Topic link compatibility in publishing formats

HTML Help:	Fully functional
Visual Studio Help:	Fully functional.
WebHelp:	Fully functional
Adobe PDF:	Functional if activated in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > PDF Layout 1442.
Windows eWriter, ePUB and Kindle eBooks:	Fully functional
MS Word DOCX:	Fully functional (links in DOCX are activated with **`Ctrl+Click`** in Word)

5.10.3 Anchors - jump targets

Normally, topic links execute jumps to the top of the target topic. However, often you will also want to create jumps to some point inside a topic. This is done with "anchors" (sometimes also referred to as "bookmarks" in books on help). Anchors are named "jump targets" that you insert at any position within a topic so that you can jump to them with a link.

Key Information
Anchors in Help+Manual do not have captions. They are identified by an anchor icon in the editor.

How to insert an anchor

1. Click in the text at the point where you want to insert the anchor (i.e. the position you want to be able to jump to with your links).
2. If you select text the selected text will be copied and used as the anchor ID.
3. Open the Insert Anchor 1369 dialog box. There are two ways to do this:
   - Press **`Ctrl+H`**

     OR

   - Select the anchor tool in **Write** > **Insert**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

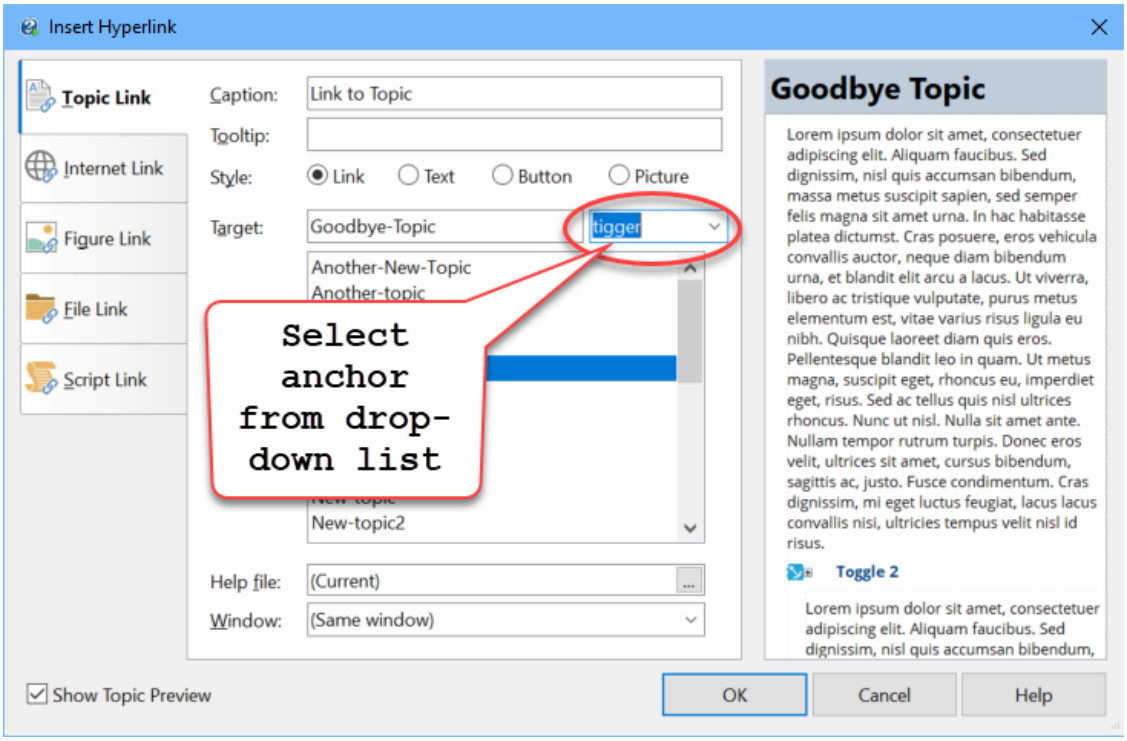
Type in a descriptive ID for the anchor in the *Anchor ID:* field. This will be displayed in the link dialog when you are creating links so it should be easy to identify. You cannot use spaces or special characters.

4. If you want to use a help context number 368 you can type it in manually (this allows you to make calls to anchors from applications). You can also set Help+Manual to assign help context numbers to anchors automatically in **Configuration > Common Properties > Miscellaneous** 1411.
5. Type in any keywords 565 you want to associate with the anchor (see below 415 for details).

Like topic IDs, anchor IDs can be up to 255 characters long. However, since you need to view anchor IDs in dialog boxes it is advisable to keep them relatively short.

How to create a hyperlink to an anchor

1. First create a normal topic link to the topic containing the anchor.
2. Open the Edit Hyperlink 1352 dialog box. Just double-click on the link to open the dialog if it is not already open.
3. Select the anchor ID from the drop-down list to the right of the *Target:* field and click on OK.



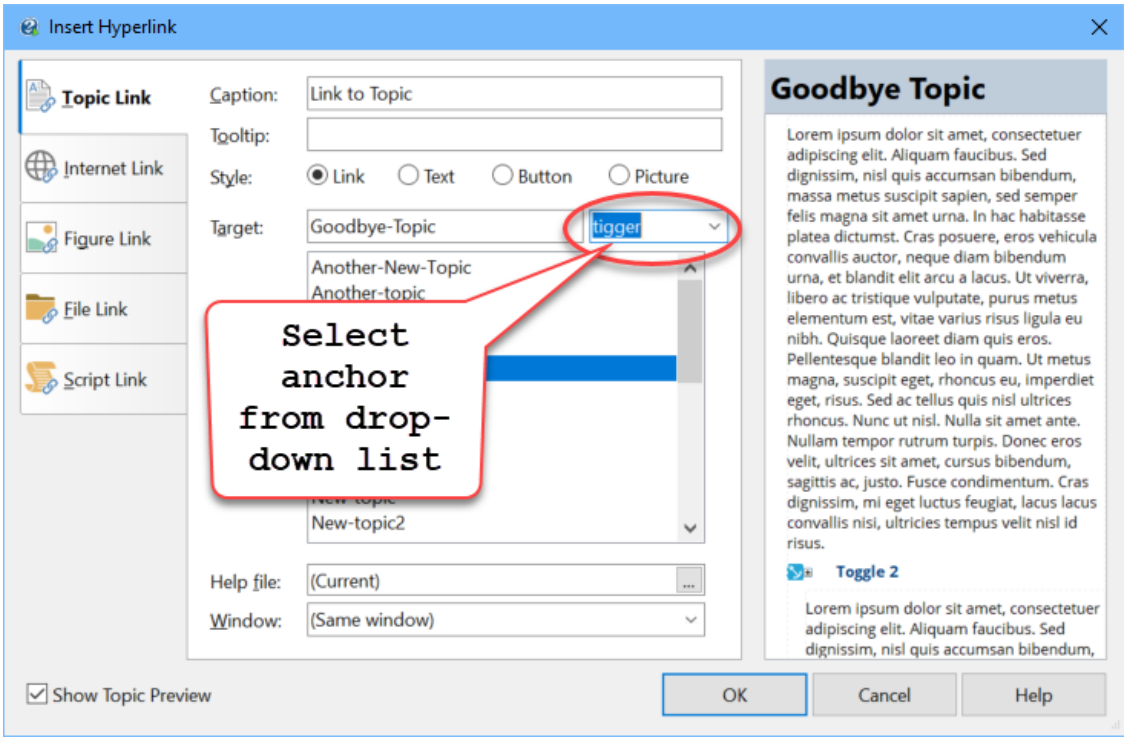
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

To quickly create a link to an anchor in the current or another topic just create the link with Drag & Drop and then double-click on the link to select the target anchor in the dialog.

Linking to an anchor in the current topic

Linking to an anchor in the current topic is simple once you get your head around the concept: Basically, you first need to create a normal topic link to the current topic, in the same way you would if you were linking to a different topic. Then you edit the link and select the anchor.

1. Create a normal topic link 410 to the current topic.
2. Double-click on the link to open its edit dialog.
3. Select the anchor you want to link to in the anchor drop-down list directly next to the *Target:* field.



Links to images, tables and caption objects

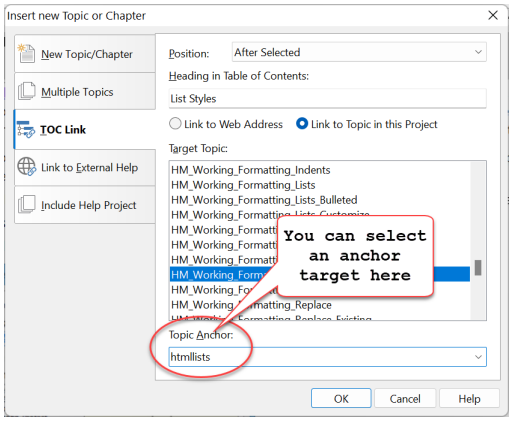
You can also link to images 481, tables 520 and caption objects 944 for figure and table counters, provided they have IDs. Then they are displayed in the anchors drop-down list next to the *Target:* field in the same way as regular anchors.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Creating a TOC entry linked to an anchor in the current topic

You can also create additional TOC entries 371 pointing to the current topic that are linked to an anchor in the topic. Then selecting the TOC entry in the published documentation will take the user to that anchor in the topic. This can be useful to create a "fake chapter" consisting of a single topic. The sub-topics then point to the anchors inserted at the headings for those parts of the topic.

1. Create headings in your topic for the sections and insert anchors at the beginning of each heading or in the paragraph directly above the heading (that leaves an attractive space at the top when the page scrolls to the anchor).
2. Make a note of the Topic ID of the topic, which you can find in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window.
3. Click in the TOC in the position where you want to enter the new TOC item, then select any of the options for creating a new topic 174.
4. When the Insert Topic 1298 dialog is displayed select *TOC Link* on the left. Then select *Link to topic in this project*.



5. Enter a title for the new TOC link in *Heading in Table of Contents:*, then select the ID of the topic you want to link to from the Target Topic: list.
6. Select the anchor you want the new TOC item to point to in the *Topic Anchor* list at the bottom of the dialog.
7. Click on **OK** to create the new TOC link.

Linking to anchors in linked snippets

When you create a hyperlink to a topic containing a linked snippet 265, any anchors stored in the snippet will not be displayed the drop-down anchor list next to the *Target:* field.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

(This does not apply for snippets inserted in Copy mode, of course, which become part of the current topic like normal pasted text.)

1. To link to an anchor in a linked snipped first view the source topic or snippet file and make a note of the anchor IDs you want to link to.
2. Then create the link and type the ID of the anchor you want to link to manually in the drop-down list box next to the *Target:* field.

Linking to anchors in Webhelp pages

You can also create URL links from your application or from other web pages to anchors in WebHelp pages so that users are taken directly to a specific point in a topic when they use your links. The syntax is exactly the same as the standard HTML syntax for URLs containing anchor references:

```
index.html?topicname.htm#anchorname
```

The topic name is simply the Topic ID of the topic, plus the extension `.htm`. The entire URL must be written in lower case because Help+Manual automatically converts all file names to lower case in HTML output for compatibility with Unix and Linux servers.

See Context calls to WebHelp 899 for some more details on this.

Using keywords in anchors

You can also associate index keywords with anchors. Selecting these keywords in the help index will then jump to the anchor instead of the top of the topic. See Keywords and Indexes 565 more information on using keywords and Using keywords with anchors 577 for more information on using keywords in combination with anchors.

- Type the keywords into the *Keywords:* field of the Insert Anchor 1369 dialog. You can enter both main keywords and sub-keywords. Use the TAB key to enter sub-keywords (an indented keyword automatically becomes the sub-keyword of the keyword above it).
- Typing a space or tab in front of a keyword automatically makes it a sub-keyword of the entry directly above it. Only one level of sub-keywords is allowed.

It is possible to have the same keywords in both the topic's keyword list and in one or more anchors in the same topic. However, if you want your index entries to enable jumps to the anchor without confusing the user it is better to avoid this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Editing anchor IDs, "dead" anchor links

You can edit an anchor and its ID by double-clicking on it. However, it is better not to change anchor IDs after creating them. Unlike topic IDs, links to anchor IDs are not updated if you edit them. This means that editing an anchor ID can create dead links and links to "dead" anchors are not highlighted. The link to the page will still work, of course, but the jump to the anchor will not.

How to locate and correct dead anchor links

Dead anchor links are not listed in your project reports 1212. However, you can locate them by publishing to any HTML-based output format (HTML Help, WebHelp, eBooks, Visual Studio Help). The compiler report will list all topics containing links to undefined anchors with links to the topics so that you can edit them and correct the anchor reference.

Tip: If you have the Professional edition of Help+Manual the easiest way to locate an anchor is to search for the anchor ID in the XML Source Code tab. You can then either edit it directly there or switch back to the editor tab and edit it there.

See also:

Inserting topic links 410
Using embedded topics 265

5.10.4 Inserting figure links

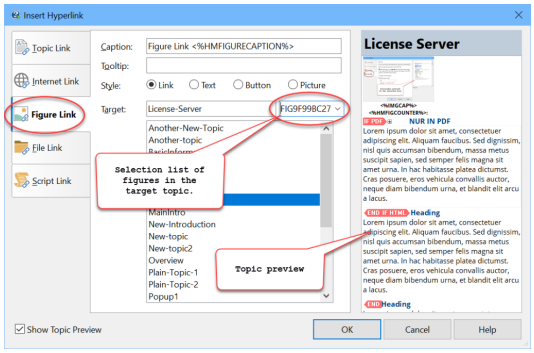
Links and references to images, tables and caption objects

The powerful Figure and Table Counter Variables 944 feature allows you to create automatically numbered images, tables and user-defined caption objects for any other kind of element you want to number and reference in your project. The *Figure Link* option in the **Link Tool** is used to create links to these objects with link text that automatically shows the caption and number of the target object.

How it works

This works in the same way as links to anchors in the topic link tool. Instead of anchors, the dropdown list next to the Target: field shows the figure, table and caption object IDs contained in the target topic. In addition to this, the special **<\%HMFIGURECAPTION%>** variable in the link text can insert the number and caption of the target object.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Procedure

1. Click where you want to insert the link and open the hyperlink tool.
2. Choose *Figure Link* on the left, then select the ID of the topic containing the figure from the list.
3. Select the ID of the figure from the list next to the *Target:* field. You will only see IDs here if the topic contains figures with IDs.
   Tip: The preview on the right scrolls to the item with the selected ID.
4. The **<\%HMFIGURECAPTION%>** variable inserts the caption and counter number of the target item in the link text.

Important configuration option

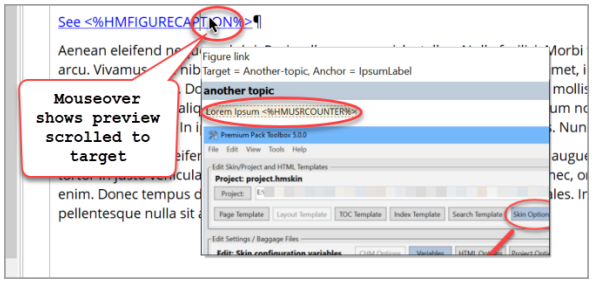
Help+Manual needs to scan the entire project in advance to calculate figure link references to elements that come later in the project than the reference. You can configure this in advance with the *Calculate figure tables* setting in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > Miscellaneous options 1412. If you don't turn this on and Help+Manual finds a figure table reference that needs advance calculation during export, it will stop with an error and ask you to restart. After this, it will be left on for the project until you turn it off.

Note that leaving this on will roughly double the time it takes to publish a project, so turn it off unless you really need it.

Cool tip

If you hover over a figure link in the Help+Manual topic editor for a couple of seconds you will see a preview of the target page scrolled to the target link.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



5.10.5 Inserting Internet links

This function inserts Internet URLs and email links in your help. Internet links are supported in all published help formats. The easiest way to create an Internet link is to type the URL in the editor – Help+Manual will automatically recognize the URL and turn it into an active hyper-link.

Key Information
When inserting web links always include the *http://* or *https://* protocol prefix! Web links without this prefix will almost always fail.

Creating Internet links automatically

- Type a web URL or an email address in your text. Help+Manual will automatically recognize the URL and turn it into an active link. (This function can be deactivated. See Program Options - Editor 1265 for details.)
- Double-click on the link to edit it.
- If you edit the link caption you must replace the `<%LINK_CAPTION%>` variable with the URL that you want to link to, otherwise the link will point to the text you enter in the caption field, which will not work.

If you don't want the address to be a link just right-click on the link and select ***Convert to plain text*** in the context menu.

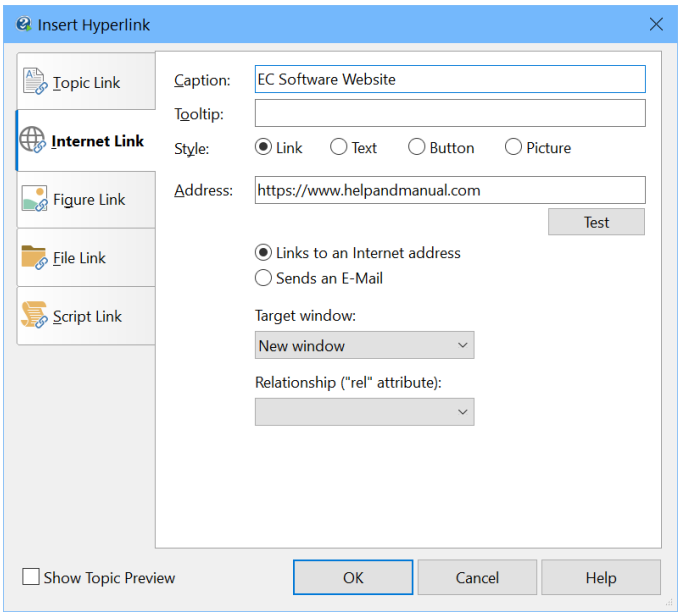
You can turn automatic URL recognition off in **View** > **Program Options** > **Editor**.

How to insert an Internet link manually

1. Select text in your document if you want to use it as the link. You can also skip this step and enter the caption in the hyperlink dialog.
2. Open the Insert Hyperlink dialog box. There are two ways to do this:
   - Press **Ctrl+L**
   - Select the **Link** tool in **Write** > **Insert**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Select the *Internet Link* tab:



4. Select the Email or Internet address option and enter the web page URL or the email address. You must include the *http://* prefix for URLs, otherwise they won't work.

See The Insert Hyperlink dialog 1355 for full details on the settings in the dialog.

Inserting Internet links by Drag & Drop

You can also create web links in topics by Drag & Drop.

Just drag the URL from your browser's address bar and drop it into the editor. In most browsers you do this by dragging the icon next to the address in the address bar.

Help+Manual will then insert a web link to the page, using the title of the page as the link caption.

Links to PDFs from WebHelp and HTML files

Links to named destinations in PDF from Help+Manual WebHelp

When creating links to named destinations in PDF files from WebHelp you can use exactly the same procedure and syntax as for links from PDF files. Create a file link and follow the instructions above.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Links to named destinations in PDF from other HTML files

The syntax is also the same for links to named destinations in other HTML files not generated by Help+Manual. Just create a hyperlink using the same **`pdf_file.pdf#named-dest=xxxx`** and **`pdf_file.pdf#page=yy`** syntax for the **`href`** target of the link as you use in Help+Manual, where **`xxxx`** is the named destination and **`yy`** is the page number.

Internet link compatibility in output formats

HTML Help:	Fully functional
Visual Studio Help:	Fully functional
WebHelp:	Fully functional
Adobe PDF:	Outgoing Internet links functional if activated in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > PDF Layout 1442.
eWriter Help for Windows and MacOS:	Fully functional
ePUB and Kindle eBooks:	Supported in the format but remember that hardware readers may not have Internet access
MS Word DOCX:	Fully functional

5.10.6 Inserting file links

A file link is a link to an executable file (e.g. *notepad.exe*) or to a data file associated with an application (e.g. DOC word processing files or PDF files). Clicking on the link in the help is just like double-clicking on an executable or DOC or PDF file on your desktop or in Windows Explorer. It either starts the executable file or opens the DOC, PDF or other file with the associated application.

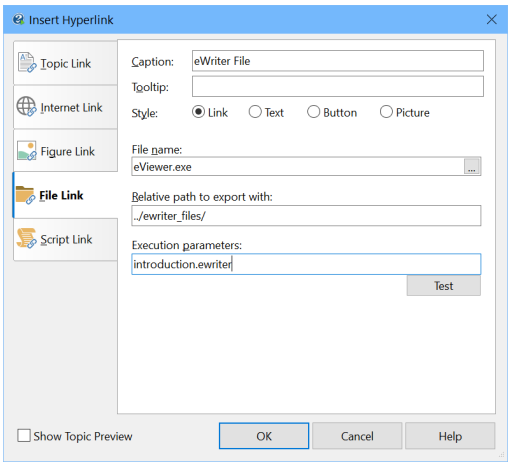
File links are not supported in all output formats! See the compatibility list below for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to insert file links

If you plan to publish to Microsoft HTML Help (CHM), the files you link to must be stored in the same folder as the CHM help file. The Microsoft HTML Help viewer has a bug that makes it unable to access files outside the help file folder.

1. Select text in your document if you want to use it as the link. You can also skip this step and enter the caption in the hyperlink dialog.
2. Open the *Insert Hyperlink* dialog box. There are two ways to do this:
   - Press **`Ctrl+L`**
   - Select the **Link** tool in **Write** > **Insert**
3. Select the *File Link* tab:



4. Enter the filename with extension in the *File Name:* field.
5. Enter any execution parameters associated with the file in the *Execution Parameters:* field, for example the file to be opened by the executable file or any necessary parameters for a data file.
6. Click on *Test* to test the link (the file must be present in your project directory for this to work).

See The Hyperlink dialog 1352 for full details on the settings in the dialog.

Inserting file links with Drag & Drop

If you drag any file that is not a known image format or an RTF file into the Help+Manual editor it will automatically be inserted as a file link.

(Image files will be inserted as images. RTF files are converted to formatted text and their content is inserted.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

File links to page numbers and named destinations in PDF documents

You can create links to both page numbers and "named destinations" in PDF documents. The procedure is the same for links that will be used in PDF files and in WebHelp output.

Named destinations are jump targets that work like anchors. These links will work in PDFs created by Help+Manual and in WebHelp created by Help+Manual, but not in CHM files. The Microsoft CHM viewer does not support the link format needed to jump to destinations in PDF files. A link to a PDF in a CHM file will simply open the PDF at the first page. See Named destinations in PDF 465 for details on the named destinations created in PDFs by Help+Manual and more background information.

Use normal topic links for targets in the current document

Note that named destinations are only needed for links between two different PDF files or from other applications or documents. Use normal topic links to jump to targets within your Help+Manual projects (i.e. from one topic to another). You don't need to use named destinations for this.

Requirements:

- **File Links are required for linking to PDFs:**
  You must use the File Link option for creating links to targets inside PDF files. The Internet Link option will not always work correctly, even in WebHelp.
- **Set the PDF to "interactive" to use named destinations:**
  If the PDF you are linking to is created with Help+Manual it must be generated using the "interactive PDF" option in your PDF settings 1442. Named destinations are only generated for interactive PDF documents.

Linking to named destinations in PDF documents:

You need to create a file link with the destination added to it to link to a destination in a PDF document. Internet links will not work correctly, not even in WebHelp.The syntax is the same for links that are going to be in PDF files and WebHelp files. The links to the PDF files will also work in CHM files, but they will only open the PDF document; they will not jump to the destination in the PDF from a link in a CHM.

Procedure:

1. Follow the instructions for inserting a file link 425 and enter the name of the PDF file you want to link to.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Add **#nameddest=** after the file name, followed by the name of the named destination in all lower case characters. See this topic 465 for details of the named destinations you can jump to.

Examples:

myfile.pdf#nameddest=toc (jumps to the Table of Contents in the PDF)
myfile.pdf#nameddest=welcome_topic (jumps to the topic with the ID Welcome_Topic)
myfile.pdf#nameddest=custom1 (jumps to user-defined template section 1)

Special case: anchors:

Links to named destinations including anchors are a special case. They will only work in links in PDF files, not in links in WebHelp files. If you use a link with an anchor in WebHelp output the link will only open the PDF file at the first page.

Example:

In a PDF file, the following file link will jump to the anchor **testanchor** in the topic with the ID **Welcome_Topic**. In a WebHelp file it will only open the PDF at the first page.

myfile.pdf#nameddest=welcome_topic#testanchor

Linking to a page number in a PDF document:

You need to create a file link with the page number added to it do link to a page number in a PDF document. Internet links will not work correctly, not even in WebHelp.The syntax is the same for links that are going to be in PDF files and WebHelp files. The links to the PDF files will also work in CHM files, but they will only open the PDF document; they will not jump to the page number in the PDF from a link in a CHM.

Important: The page number destinations in PDFs created by Help+Manual start counting at 0, so you must jump to the actual page number minus one. If you are jumping to pages in PDFs created by other tools you can usually jump to the actual page numbers.

1. Follow the instructions for inserting a file link 425 and enter the name of the PDF file you want to link to.
2. Add **#page=** after the file name, followed by the page number:

   myfile.pdf#page=123 (jumps to page 124)
   myfile.pdf#page=0 (jumps to page 1, same as just opening the PDF file

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

without a target)
myfile.pdf#page=11 (jumps to page 12)

Embedding linked files in PDF documents

You can automatically embed files referenced with file links into the PDF file when you export your project to PDF. This makes it possible to distribute additional files with your PDF document without having to use multiple files.

When the user clicks on the link the file will be displayed with the application with which it is associated in Windows. This works for most file types, including other PDF files, documents and images of all kinds and even executable EXE files.

1. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **PDF Layout** and activate the option *File links - embed linked files with the following extensions:*.
2. Make sure that the files you want to link to are stored in one of the folders referenced in your Image Folders 1405 list in your project configuration settings. If you have many folder references place the files in one of the first few folders in the list.
3. Create your file links using the normal procedure.

When you publish your project the files referenced with file links will be physically embedded in the PDF file. You no longer need to distribute these files separately as they are now part of the PDF. This will increase the size of the PDF accordingly, of course.

File link compatibility in output formats

HTML Help: Supported with execution parameters but do not use paths. All external files must be in the same directory as the HTML Help CHM file.

Also, note that links to some types of external files in HTML Help are now restricted in Windows. This is a security feature implemented by Microsoft so you should test all links on properly-configured XP systems before distributing.

Even more severe restrictions apply to HTML Help files accessed across network drives. Here file links will not work at all and HTML Help itself is also severely restricted. See the EC Software website for more details. It may be possible to enable the display of CHM files on network drives but file links will not work in CHM files on network drives.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that the restrictions on CHM files on network drives have become more strict in Windows 7 and Vista, particularly the 64-bit versions. In these 64-bit versions of Windows, the activation options explained on our website will only work with CHM files opened by 64-bit applications. CHM files will not work when opened by 32-bit applications.

WebHelp:

Exported, but behavior depends entirely on the user's browser – a file link in WebHelp is an URL to a file, with all that entails. Relative and absolute paths are supported; relative paths must be relative to the location of the help when it is accessed by the user. No execution parameters (for example, "`wordpad.exe`" on its own is OK but "`wordpad.exe myfile.doc`" will not work).

eWriter Help for Windows and MacOS:

Fully supported, including parameters. You can even link to local executable applications to start them. See this topic 701 for details.

You can use both absolute and relative paths in file links in eWriter Help. However, you are responsible for making sure that the targets of the links actually exist at the time and location where the eWriter help file is viewed! This means that you have to be certain that the files you are linking to will be present in the target location.

This will normally only be the case in a known environment, such as your own corporate network. In most cases, it is advisable to only link to files in the same folder as the eWriter Help file.

ePUB and Kindle eBooks:

File links are not supported.

Visual Studio Help:

File links are explicitly forbidden in Visual Studio Help.

Adobe PDF:

Links to PDFs can include page number references and named destinations (see above). You can link to pages and named destinations in PDFs from PDFs created in Help+Manual, from PDFs created with other tools and from HTML pages created in Help+Manual and other tools. All links to PDF documents created in Help+Manual should use file links. The Internet Link option will not work correctly in some cases.

Links from PDFs created with Help+Manual can be simple file links only, without execution parameters. Links must be activated in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > PDF Layout 1442 to

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

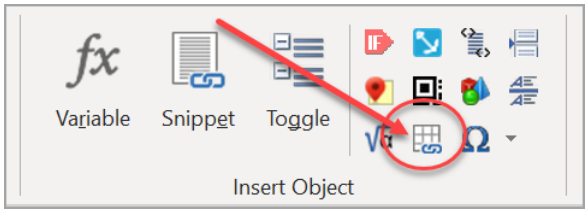
work in PDFs (this also applies for links to named destinations and page numbers in other PDFs).

Word DOCX: Supported but not recommended – users are very likely to move Word DOCX documents around and the links will then be dead. No execution parameters permitted.

5.10.7 Link lists and See Also links

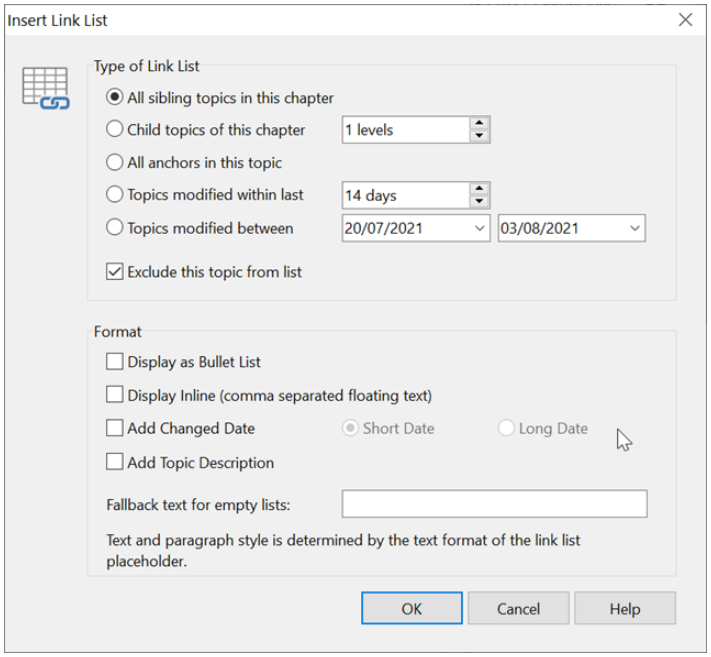
The Link List tool can automatically create a variety of different lists of hyperlinks to topics and insert them in your topic. These lists are dynamic. This means that they are not created when you insert them, but every time you publish your project. This means that the list is always up to date at the time of publishing.

The tool is located in the *Insert Object* section at the right end of the **Write** tab:



How to use the Link List tool

Opening the tool displays this dialog:



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Just select the list type (see further below for a reference) and configure your settings:

Dialog settings:

See further below in this topic for a description of the link list types.

Exclude this topic:	The current topic is not included in the link list.
Bullet list:	Displays the list as a bulleted list. Otherwise it will just be displayed as a series of paragraphs.
Inline:	Displays links in a single paragraph, separated by commas.
Changed date:	Includes the modification date of the referenced topics, in the selected format.
Topic description:	Adds the description of the current topic, if available. This is the optional text that you can enter in the *Description:* box in the Topic Options tab, to the left of the topic editor. Note that the description is not included if you choose the *Inline* link format.
Fallback text:	If a link list happens to be empty, because no links qualify for the specified criteria, this text is inserted instead.

The list is inserted as a placeholder!

Note that the list is not generated when you insert it. You will only see a placeholder in the topic editor. The actual list is generated when you publish your project so that the topics it contains are always up to date.

List types and list formatting

Available list types:

Siblings of this chapter:	Links to all the topics in the current chapter on the same level as the topic in which you are inserting the list. You will generally want to exclude the current topic from this list.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Sub-topics of this chapter:	Includes all the sub-TOC-entries of the current topic, if there are any.
Anchors within this topic:	Links to all anchors in the same topic and creates a Mini-TOC for navigation within the topic. The caption of the link will be all text from the corresponding anchor to the end of the anchor paragraph.
Topics modified within last:	All the topics that have been modified/edited within the last X days. You need to specify the number of days.
Topics modified between:	All topics modified/edited between two specified dates.

List formatting:

The formatting of the list is generated automatically and based on the formatting of the placeholder. The easiest way to achieve this is to apply a paragraph style to the placeholder. Then the list will be formatted with that style. Otherwise just select the placeholder and then format it with the *Font* and *Paragraph* dialogs in the **Write** tab.

Examples

(A) Link list with all siblings in this chapter, excluding self, no date:

Supported hyperlink types 409
Inserting topic links 410
Anchors - jump targets 415
Inserting figure links 420
Inserting Internet links 422
Inserting file links 424
Contextual Links from Applications 435
Linking to PDF files 438
Linking to WebHelp Topics 440
Linking to eWriter topics 444
Inserting script links 452
Editing and formatting links 455
Linking to other projects and help files 457
Preventing dead links 461
Named destinations in PDF 465
Links and secondary windows 469
Inserting HTML code objects 469

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

A-Links and A-Keywords 476

(B) Recently changed topics in the entire project, short date:

(C) Topics changed between two specific dates in entire project, bullet list, long date:

- Table Counters, Captions and CSS 535 (Sunday, January 5, 2020)
- Adobe PDF and printed manuals 677 (Saturday, January 4, 2020)
- Special Characters 1387 (Friday, January 3, 2020)
- CHM in Asian Languages 629 (Thursday, December 19, 2019)
- Featured images for title pages 118 (Thursday, December 19, 2019)
- The User Interface 43 (Thursday, December 12, 2019)
- Step 4: Synchronize the new version 1251 (Thursday, November 28, 2019)
- Managing modules in the TOC 1103 (Thursday, November 28, 2019)
- Microsoft HTML Help 1451 (Thursday, November 28, 2019)
- Microsoft help compilers 632 (Thursday, November 7, 2019)
- The Formula Editor 1232 (Thursday, November 7, 2019)
- Screen Capture 1316 (Thursday, November 7, 2019)
- Selecting and formatting cells and tables 525 (Thursday, October 31, 2019)
- Translation-friendly Tidy XML 1198 (Thursday, October 31, 2019)

(D) Topics changed in entire project between January 1 and October 31, 2019, bullet list, long date:

- Translation-friendly Tidy XML 1198 (Thursday, October 31, 2019)
- Selecting and formatting cells and tables 525 (Thursday, October 31, 2019)
- Reference 1261 (Tuesday, October 22, 2019)
- Importing data 90 (Tuesday, May 14, 2019)
- Links to help from your application 897 (Tuesday, May 14, 2019)
- Creating context-sensitive topics 895 (Tuesday, May 14, 2019)
- Getting help 65 (Tuesday, May 14, 2019)
- Editing topics 94 (Tuesday, May 14, 2019)
- Converting text to tables 531 (Tuesday, March 19, 2019)
- About tables 519 (Tuesday, March 19, 2019)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Editing and formatting links 455 (Thursday, March 7, 2019)
- Styling imported formatted text 1162 (Wednesday, February 13, 2019)

(E) Link list with all siblings in this chapter, excluding self, as numbered list:

1. Supported hyperlink types 409
2. Inserting topic links 410
3. Anchors - jump targets 415
4. Inserting figure links 420
5. Inserting Internet links 422
6. Inserting file links 424
7. Contextual Links from Applications 435
8. Linking to PDF files 438
9. Linking to WebHelp Topics 440
10. Linking to eWriter topics 444
11. Inserting script links 452
12. Editing and formatting links 455
13. Linking to other projects and help files 457
14. Preventing dead links 461
15. Named destinations in PDF 465
16. Links and secondary windows 469
17. Inserting HTML code objects 469
18. A-Links and A-Keywords 476

(F) Link list with all siblings in this chapter, as bullet list/tree, *embedded in another bullet list*:

- This is the static first entry of the list
  - Here are some recently changed topics:
    - Supported hyperlink types 409
    - Inserting topic links 410
    - Anchors - jump targets 415
    - Inserting figure links 420
    - Inserting Internet links 422
    - Inserting file links 424
    - Link lists and See Also links 430

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Contextual Links from Applications 435
- Linking to PDF files 438
- Linking to WebHelp Topics 440
- Linking to eWriter topics 444
- Inserting script links 452
- Editing and formatting links 455
- Linking to other projects and help files 457
- Preventing dead links 461
- Named destinations in PDF 465
- Links and secondary windows 469
- Inserting HTML code objects 469
- A-Links and A-Keywords 476

- The static list continues here

For experts: HTML formatting

Formatting with your own CSS in HTML output

When you publish to HTML-based formats topic links in link lists have an additional CSS class **`hmlinklistitem`**. This is added to the standard **`topiclink`** class, so that topic links in link lists have the class attribute **`class="topiclink hmlinklistitem"`**. You can use this to format topic links in link lists differently from other topic links.

5.10.8 Contextual Links from Applications

Basically "context help" means access to specific help information from within your application or web page. You can create context help links and calls to Help+Manual output in a wide variety of ways.

The options you have for implementing context-sensitive help depend on your output format, because different formats support different ways of making calls to your help files. This topic lists the different types of context help possible in the output formats supported by Help+Manual.

For more details on context-sensitive help, the available context-sensitive help technologies and implementation information for programmers see the Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586 chapter in the Reference section.

Context help links to eWriter Help: Integrated viewer

For instructions on context links to eWriter help, see both Links & Context Help 701 and eWriter for Software Help 731 in the main eWriter Help chapter.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Important: Updates to the eWriter context help interface

Please refer to the above chapters even if you are already familiar with eWriter help from earlier versions. A new calling syntax has been introduced along with the new eViewer 3 and the version for MacOS. the old syntax is still supported, but we still recommend switching to the new syntax for all new help files.

HTML Help (CHM)

This is the standard Microsoft help format for Windows applications. It is used for help installed locally on the user's computer.

Calls to HTML Help CHM files are made using the Microsoft HTML Help API (application programming interface), which is documented in the help file delivered with the free Microsoft HTML Help Workshop compiler and CHM authoring package. For details see Application calls to context-sensitive topics 897.

Making the calls is up to your programmers; each programming language has different methods for doing this. You can download programming tutorials from our website.

Supported context-sensitive help types

- **Calls to specific help topics**
  Display a specific topic in your help, inside the main help window.
- **Calls to anchors in specific help topics**
  Display a specific topic in your help file in the main help window and scroll down to an anchor 415 (jump target) within the topic.
- **Field-level popups**
  Field-level popups 896 are small popup windows displayed in your application. They are read from the help file but the main help window is not opened. Useful for documenting individual fields and controls in your application (thus the name).
- **Training card help**
  Training card help uses the HTML ActiveX control (CHM) to create special interactive links between your help topics and your application. In theory you can use training card help to create interactive tutorials that guide users through steps of doing things in your program. In practice it is so difficult to implement that most developers try it out once and then decide that it is not worth their time. You can insert ActiveX objects for training card help with Help+Manual's **Write** > **Insert Object** > **Plain HTML Code** command (HTML Help).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Internal structure of H+M CHM files

One important thing to know about the CHM files generated by Help+Manual when making calls to them from your applications is that there are no internal folders.

Help+Manual uses a "flat file" directory model inside the CHM, with everything on the root level. This means that all topics and other files inside the CHM can be accessed directly, without any path information. Some programming tips assume the use of folders – for example a folder called "html" for the HTML topic files – and if they also include this path without alternatives in their call examples this will lead to failures. But that is really the only element of H+M CHM files that you need to be aware of.

WebHelp

WebHelp is displayed in a normal web browser like Firefox, Safari, Opera or even Internet Explorer. It is used for help accessed on networks and the Internet. Calls to WebHelp are made with normal URLs. The basic syntax is:

`index.html?topicname.htm#anchorname`

where index.html is the main start page, topicname.htm is the topic ID in all lower case + the extension ".htm" and anchorname is the optional anchor you want to scroll to on the page. See Linking to WebHelp topics 899 for details.

Supported context-sensitive help types

- **Calls to specific help topics**
  Display a specific topic in your help, inside the main help window.
- **Calls to anchors in specific help topics**
  Display a specific topic in your help file in the main help window and scroll down to an anchor 415 (jump target) within the topic.
- **Calls using CHM help context numbers**
  We have also implemented support for help context numbers in WebHelp so that you can use the same numbers you use in your CHM help if necessary. See Linking to WebHelp topics 899 for details.

Field-level popups and topics in V3 Premium Pack skins

When you use the V3 Responsive skins in the Premium Pack add-on you can also display both popups and topics within your own web pages without taking the the user away from the page. The popups and topics are draggable and resizable. The field-level topics include a bar at the top with which the user can redisplay the topic within the entire help if

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

they want to browse further.

Adobe PDF, ePUB and Kindle/Mobi eBooks, Word DOCX

These print-style formats do not support any real context-sensitive help features. In PDF files you can link to anchors called "named destinations 913", but without proper browse buttons in the PDF viewer they are not as flexible as hyperlinks HTML-based formats.

See also:

Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586
Linking to and controlling eWriter help 903
Configuring for publishing - all formats 644

5.10.9 Linking to PDF files

You can create links to both page numbers and "named destinations" in PDF documents. The procedure is the same for links that will be used in PDF files and in WebHelp output.

Named destinations are jump targets that work like anchors. These links will work in PDFs created by Help+Manual and in WebHelp created by Help+Manual, but not in CHM files. The Microsoft CHM viewer does not support the link format needed to jump to destinations in PDF files. A link to a PDF in a CHM file will simply open the PDF at the first page. See Named destinations in PDF 465 for details on the named destinations created in PDFs by Help+Manual and more background information.

Use normal topic links for targets in the current document

Note that named destinations are only needed for links between two different PDF files or from other applications or documents. Use normal topic links to jump to targets within your Help+Manual projects (i.e. from one topic to another). You don't need to use named destinations for this.

Requirements:

- **File Links are required for linking to PDFs:**
  You must use the File Link option for creating links to targets inside PDF files. The Internet Link option will not always work correctly, even in WebHelp.
- **Set the PDF to "interactive" to use named destinations:**
  If the PDF you are linking to is created with Help+Manual it must be generated using the "interactive PDF" option in your PDF settings 1442. Named destinations are only generated for interactive PDF documents.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Linking to named destinations in PDF documents:

You need to create a file link with the destination added to it to link to a destination in a PDF document. Internet links will not work correctly, not even in WebHelp.The syntax is the same for links that are going to be in PDF files and WebHelp files. The links to the PDF files will also work in CHM files, but they will only open the PDF document; they will not jump to the destination in the PDF from a link in a CHM.

Procedure:

1. Follow the instructions for inserting a file link 425 and enter the name of the PDF file you want to link to.
2. Add **#nameddest=** after the file name, followed by the name of the named destination in all lower case characters. See this topic 465 for details of the named destinations you can jump to.

Examples:

myfile.pdf#nameddest=toc (jumps to the Table of Contents in the PDF)
myfile.pdf#nameddest=welcome_topic (jumps to the topic with the ID `Welcome_Topic`)
myfile.pdf#nameddest=custom1 (jumps to user-defined template section 1)

Special case: anchors:

Links to named destinations including anchors are a special case. They will only work in links in PDF files, not in links in WebHelp files. If you use a link with an anchor in WebHelp output the link will only open the PDF file at the first page.

Example:

In a PDF file, the following file link will jump to the anchor **testanchor** in the topic with the ID **Welcome_Topic**. In a WebHelp file it will only open the PDF at the first page.

myfile.pdf#nameddest=welcome_topic#testanchor

Linking to a page number in a PDF document:

You need to create a file link with the page number added to it do link to a page number in a PDF document. Internet links will not work correctly, not even in WebHelp.The syntax

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

is the same for links that are going to be in PDF files and WebHelp files. The links to the PDF files will also work in CHM files, but they will only open the PDF document; they will not jump to the page number in the PDF from a link in a CHM.

Important: The page number destinations in PDFs created by Help+Manual start counting at 0, so you must jump to the actual page number minus one. If you are jumping to pages in PDFs created by other tools you can usually jump to the actual page numbers.

1. Follow the instructions for inserting a file link 425 and enter the name of the PDF file you want to link to.
2. Add **#page=** after the file name, followed by the page number:

   myfile.pdf#page=123 (jumps to page 124)
   myfile.pdf#page=0 (jumps to page 1, same as just opening the PDF file without a target)
   myfile.pdf#page=11 (jumps to page 12)

5.10.10 Linking to WebHelp Topics

You can create context-sensitive calls to WebHelp 1510 (web HTML) from your application or web pages with normal URLs using the syntax explained below. These calls can be made locally, across networks or across the Internet.

Field-level popups are not supported in WebHelp, they can only be implemented with HTML Help (CHM). The JavaScript popups 212 supported in WebHelp can only be used within your help, you cannot make calls to them from your application or web pages.

HM2Go mini server for local WebHelp

If you want your WebHelp to be opened locally without a server (for example WebHelp on CDs and DVDs), Help+Manual has a special mini server that you can distribute with your help for better performance. See HM2Go - mini server for local WebHelp 673 for details.

How to make calls to Webhelp topics

Calls to WebHelp must be normal URLs, made in the same way as any other URL link that opens a browser with a specific web location or local HTML file, using exactly the same syntax:

Calling syntax:

```
index.html?topicname.htm#anchorname
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Different syntax in Premium Pack V3, V4 and V5 skins

Please note that the new V3 skins in the Premium Pack add-on use a simpler, easier URL syntax that only requires you to use `topic.html`. The `index.html?topic.htm` syntax is no longer required for these skins, although it is supported for backward compatibility. They also use a different syntax for references to anchors. See the Premium Pack documentation for full details.

Examples of the standard WebHelp URL syntax:

This example uses the standard file names and extensions and accesses an anchor in the referenced topic:

```
index.html?introduction.htm#gettingstarted
```

The following example shows a call to a project that was published with both a non-standard index file name and a non-standard extension for the topic files (see below). There is no reference to an anchor in this example.

```
help.html?new_features.html
```

Elements of the calls:

index.html	This is the name of the index file of your WebHelp (this is the default, it can be changed in the Publish 1310 dialog when you publish). If you use this on its own it will simply display the help system with the standard home topic.
?topicname.htm	This is the name of the topic you want to display. This is created by combining the topic ID 368 with the extension **.htm**.. This is the default topic extension, you can change it in **Project Configuration > Publishing Options > WebHelp >** HTML Export Options 1435. (These settings are shared with the other HTML-based output formats and can also be accessed in the HTML Help and Visual Studio Help sections.)
#anchorname	Optional. This is the name of an anchor 415 in the topic that you want to jump to.

Using context IDs to link to WebHelp

Normally, context IDs or context numbers 369 are only used in Microsoft CHM/HTML Help

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

files. However, Help+Manual also exports a scripted map file of all the context IDs in your project in your WebHelp output and allows you to link to them with a URL switch, in the same way as you link to normal topic IDs. This makes it easier for programmers who are using context IDs for making their CHM files to remap their calls to WebHelp.

Calling syntax:

```
index.html?contextid=xxxxx
```

Where **xxxxxx** is the context number/context ID. This works both for normal topic context IDs and context IDs attached to anchors. If you are using standard templates or skins the anchor must not be inside hidden text (i.e. not inside a toggle that is not open when the topic is opened). If you are use a Premium Pack skin the ToggleJump feature implemented there allows you to link to anchors inside toggles as well.

Examples:

```
http://www.mydocumentation.com/index.html?contextid=60672
```

That is really all there is to it.

Where this is implemented:

Standard Templates:
The context ID URL switch was added in Help+Manual 6.3. It will work directly if you are using the standard HTML templates in your project, although you may need to reset the Layout template before publishing to get it to work, in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Layout**.

Standard Skins:
Similarly, it has also been implemented in the standard HTML skins provided with Help+Manual. If you are using an earlier edited copy of these skins you will need to get the new version from the /Templates/HTML Skins to be able to use URL switches with context IDs.

Premium Pack Skins:
The Premium Pack skins for Help+Manual 6 and later all support URL switches with context IDs. You just need to make sure you are using version 1.56 or later if you are using the version 1 Premium Pack or 2.20 or later if you are using version 2.

Adding support in your own skins:
Please contact support@ec-software.com if you want to add support for context IDs in URL switches to your own custom skins or templates.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Links to WebHelp topics without the 'index.html' reference

By default, only the topic will be opened if you link to it with the topic name only, i.e. like this:

`topicname.htm`

In all the standard skins, a link will then be displayed automatically above the topic header with which the user can display the full user interface with the TOC.

Automatic reload will stop Google from indexing your WebHelp!

There is a reload feature that will do this automatically when only the topic file is addressed without the `index.html` part of the URL. This is off by default, because Google interprets the automatic reload as an attempt to increase your click count artificially and stops indexing your WebHelp.

Turning on automatic TOC reload for *topic.htm* links

If you don't care about Google indexing your WebHelp, or if you are using the WebHelp on a local intranet server where there is no Google indexing, you can turn the automatic reload feature on:

1. Open the .hmskin file for the skin you are using in Help+Manual.
2. In the Project Explorer on the left, navigate down to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Navigation**.
3. Activate the option "*When a topic is opened outside the navigation frame...*"

Calling only a topic when automatic reload is on:

When the automatic reload option is active you can still call just the topic without the TOC if you want. You do this by leaving out the `index.html` part and adding a simple switch to your URL.

`topicname.htm?toc=0#anchorname` (with an anchor)

`topicname.htm?toc=0` (without an anchor)

Avoid direct calls to the topic file

Direct calls to the **`topic.htm`** file without the **`index.html?`** portion of the URL will only display the topic file by default. There is an reload feature that automatically displays the full user interface for such links but this is off by default because Google doesn't index

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

your site when it is on (see above).

However, even when the automatic reload feature is on, you should try to make sure that all your links to your WebHelp use the full **`index.html?topic.htm`** syntax. The reload feature is convenient, but in addition to creating problems with Google it will also confuse the browser history, so that the user will get unexpected results when they try to navigate with the Back and Next buttons.

It is thus always advisable to use the full call including the index file, using the standard syntax:

```
index.html?introduction.htm#gettingstarted
```

See also:

Creating popup topics 207
Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586
Topic files without TOC entries 375

5.10.11 Linking to eWriter topics

On Windows, eWriter Help is the modern alternative to the obsolete CHM format for local application help. It offers full support for context-sensitive help and file links and combines the benefits of CHM and WebHelp while eliminating many of the disadvantages of both. On MacOS eWriter provides an software help format that is not otherwise available in this integrated form.

This topic provides a quick overview of the link options. For full details see the EWriter for Software Help 731 chapter.

Viewer installation for eWriter as software documentation

When you are using eWriter as software documentation to replace CHM files you need to know where the viewer is so that you can make your calls to it reliably. We recommend installing the standard version of the viewer for this together with your software. See EWriter for Software Help 731 for details.

Each book is opened in a separate instance of the eViewer app

Each book you open has one and only one instance. If you make another call to the same book it will apply to the open instance. You can have multiple books open at the same time. To address the individual books you include the name of the book in your call along with the parameters, as shown below.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Choosing the right file extension for your eWriter files

Use the *.ewriter* file extension for books distributed on their own

You need to use the **.ewriter** extension for eWriter files that are going to be distributed on their own. It is registered with the Windows Store, and when a Windows 10 user who does not have the viewer opens an **.ewriter** file they will be prompted to install the viewer from the Windows store. Users on older versions of Windows can download the Win32 installer from our eWriter page, which will also register the **.ewriter** extension.

Use your own file extension for eWriter used for software documentation

When you are using eWriter for software documentation you want to install the Win32 version of eViewer together with your software and make your calls to it directly. You also don't want to conflict with any other version of the viewer that your user may have installed, so in this case you don't want to use the **.ewriter** extension. Instead, see one of your own.

See URL-style command syntax 739 for full details on this.

EWriter context help links and command line interface

Making calls to eWriter help files from your applications to display topics is very simple. On Windows, you basically just need to call the viewer app with a `shellExecute()` or equivalent function in your programming language, along with the name of the topic file to be viewed and an optional anchor to scroll to.

File extensions of your topic files

The HTML topic files inside eWriter Help can have either the **.htm** or **.html** extension, based on your settings for the topic file extension in your project in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**. However, only these two extensions are permitted. If you set a different extension in your project (for example **.php** or **.asp**), the standard **.htm** extension will be used.

You need to use the correct extension in your context help calls, otherwise the topics will not be found.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Context calls syntax

The syntax for context calls to eWriter Help has been changed with the introduction of the new MacOS eViewer and the updated Windows eViewer. If you have used eWriter for application help in the past the calls with the old syntax in your existing projects will still work. However, we strongly recommend switching to the new integrated URL-style syntax from now on.

Please refer to the eWriter for Software Help 731 chapter for full details and instructions.

Basic New Syntax:

"<viewer app>" "ewriter://<ewriter file>?loadpage=<page in the help>"

Note that when you are using integrated EXE eWriter Help files, the viewer app is the help file itself, so it calls itself when using the new syntax.

Basic Old Syntax (not supported for MacOS):

"<viewer app>" "<page in the help>"

URL examples eViewer app:

"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=index.html"
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm#anchor2"
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=introduction.html?anchor=anchor2 **(Premium Pack)**"

URL examples Windows EXE eWriter file:

"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=index.html"
"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm#anchor2"
"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=introduction.html?anchor=anchor2" **(Premium Pack)**

URL parameters and JavaScript

If your HTML pages include scripts that can evaluate URL parameters (supported in some Premium Pack skins, for example) you can also include parameters to be parsed by your script, like this:

"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=in-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

dex.html?mysetting=xyz&setting2=12"

The HTML location object is fully supported for interpreting URLs you pass to your pages like this. This means you can extract the query portion of the script with `document.location.search`, the hash portion (anchor) with `document.location.hash` and so on.

Linking between eWriter files

If you have multiple eWriter help files installed on your user's computer you may sometimes want to link between them. This will normally only apply when you are using eWriter for software documentation 731.

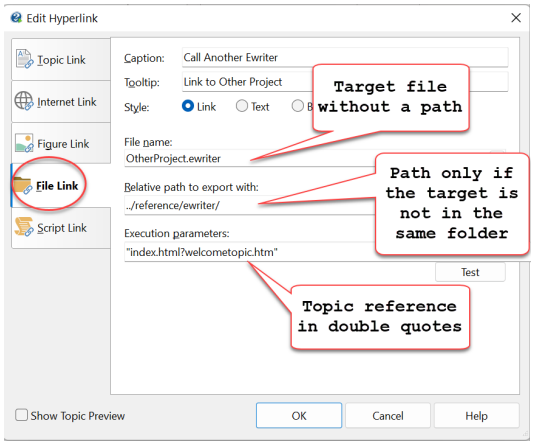
There are several methods you can use for linking between eWriter files. You must always use the **File Link** option for this, not the Internet Link!

Linking between eWriter files when the file association is known

You can use a simple method if you are sure that the **`.ewriter`** extension has been associated with the eViewer application, or if you are using your own extension that you have registered as part of your installation on the user's computer. Then you just need to reference the eWriter file and the topic parameters.

This also works when you have changed the file extension and eViewer name:

Note that this also works if you are using eWriter for software documentation and you have changed both the file extension and the name of your copy of the eViewer application. You just need to link to another eWriter file that has the same extension as the eWriter file containing the link.



File name: The name of the eWriter file you want to link to **without** any path information. Just the file name. You must use the extension that has

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

been registered to the eViewer application on the user's computer. This will be **.ewriter** if you are sure that has been registered, or your own custom extension if you are installing eViewer as part of your software installation and registering the extension yourself.

Relative path: Only include the path to the file here if the target file is not in the same folder as the file containing the link. Despite the name, you can use either a relative or an absolute path.

Important: No quotes around this path, even if it includes spaces!

Execution parameters: The normal WebHelp reference to the topic you want to display in the target file. The syntax depends on the skin type you are using. This parameter **must** be enclosed in double quotes.

Standard Help+Manual skins and older Premium Pack skins:

```
"index.html?topic.html"
```

Premium Pack V3 skins:

```
"topic.html"
```

Topic file extensions

The topic file extension can be **.htm** or **.html**, depending on what you have set in your project. Other extensions are not allowed for eWriter topics.

Anchors and other parameter extensions

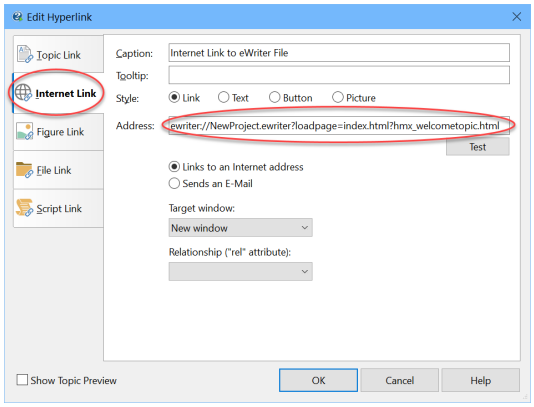
Add these in the execution parameters, inside the double quotes, exactly as you would in WebHelp.

Using an Internet link instead of a File link (required for MacOS)

You can also use an Internet link to link between eWriter Help files, but then you have to use the new syntax with the **ewriter://** prefix. This is also required if you are using eWriter Help on MacOS.

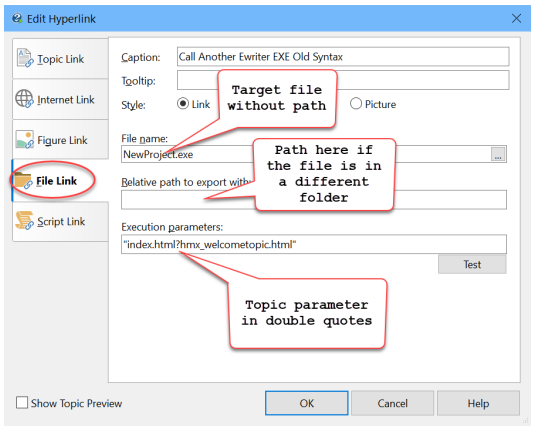
ewriter://NewProject.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?topic_name.html

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Linking between files when you are using the integrated viewer in EXE eWriter books

When you create combined book and viewer files with the EXE extension you always just enter the EXE file as the file to link to and the topic to open as the parameters.



File name: The name of the eWriter EXE file you want to link to **without** any path information. Just the file name.

Relative path: Only include the path to the file here if the target file is not in the same folder as the file containing the link. Despite the name, you can use either a relative or an absolute path.

Important: No quotes around this path, even if it includes spaces!

Execution parameters: The normal WebHelp reference to the topic you want to display in the target file. The syntax depends on the skin type you are using. This parameter **must** be enclosed in double quotes.

Standard Help+Manual skins and older Premium Pack skins:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
"index.html?topic.html"
```

Premium Pack V3 skins:

```
"topic.html"
```

Topic file extensions

The topic file extension can be **.htm** or **.html**, depending on what you have set in your project. Other extensions are not allowed for eWriter topics.

Anchors and other parameter extensions

Add these in the execution parameters, inside the double quotes, exactly as you would in WebHelp.

Calls to EXE eWriter files with the integrated viewer

You can still create the original EXE eWriter files with an integrated viewer if you wish, although we strongly recommend using the separate viewer. You just need to change the output file extension to **.exe** in the Publish screen before publishing. Help+Manual identifies this automatically and then creates an EXE eWriter Help file with an integrated viewer.

Not supported on MacOS

Note that EXE eWriter Help is a Windows format and cannot be used on MacOS. On Macs, you must use the eViewer app and **.ewriter** data files.

Context calls syntax

The calling syntax is the same as with the external viewer, except you call the EXE eWriter Help file instead of the viewer, followed by the parameters. You can use both the old and the new syntax for this.

Old syntax:

```
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?introduction.htm"
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?this_page.htm#anchor"
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?anotherpage.htm"
```

New syntax:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you use the new syntax, you must also include the name of the EXE eWriter Help file after the ewriter:// protocol prefix, so that the file is calling itself:

```
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
introduction.htm"
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
this_page.htm#anchor"
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
anotherpage.htm"
```

Always include the page parameters in quotes, even if there are no spaces. Otherwise you will get Windows errors caused by some of the characters that need to be used.

Links to executable files

If you're used to producing CHM files and WebHelp you don't even think about opening executable EXE program files from your documentation. But with eWriter Help, you can! This is possible both from normal links in topics and from TOC entries.

RESTRICTION: Not supported in the Windows Store version of the viewer!

Windows Store apps are not permitted to invoke executable files from within the program. Because of this, the functions described below are not available in the Windows Store version of the viewer app. However, you can use them if you are installing the standard Windows eViewer app together with your software. See EWriter for Software Help 731 for details.

Current directory status when linking to executable files

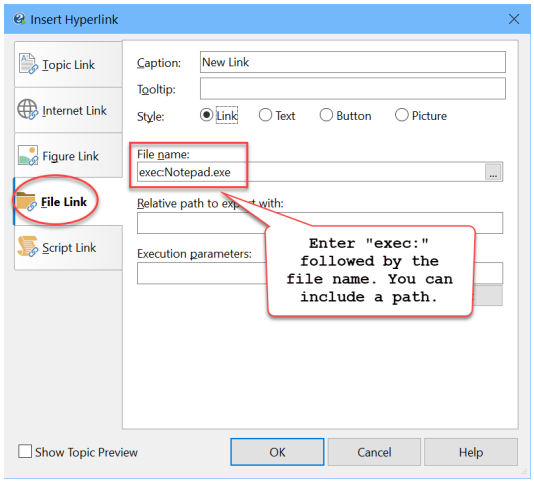
When executing external files, the eWriter viewer explicitly sets the current directory to prevent possible failure of file links using a relative path.

File links to executables in topics

Just create a normal file link to the EXE file and add **exec:** directly before the file name, like this:

```
exec:notepad.exe
exec:../demo_program/widget_maker.exe
```

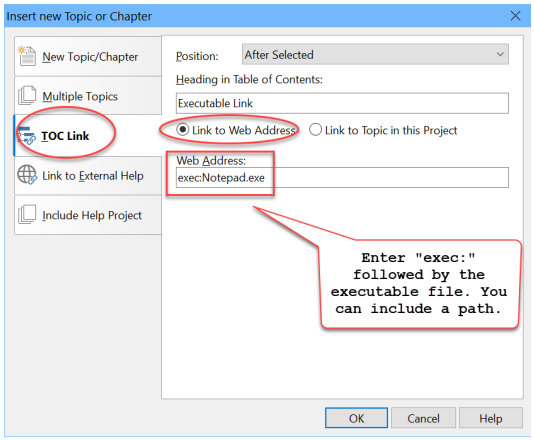

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Links to executables in the TOC

You can also create links to executable files in the TOC of an eWriter Help file. Create a new topic entry and choose the **TOC Link** option, and then *Link to Web Address*. Then enter the target in the *Web Address:* field, using same **`exec:filename.exe`** format as above. Here too, you can include a relative path if necessary.

```
exec:notepad.exe
exec:../demo_program/widget_maker.exe
```



See also:

eWriter Help 696 (publishing information)
eWriter Help 1477 (reference)

5.10.12 Inserting script links

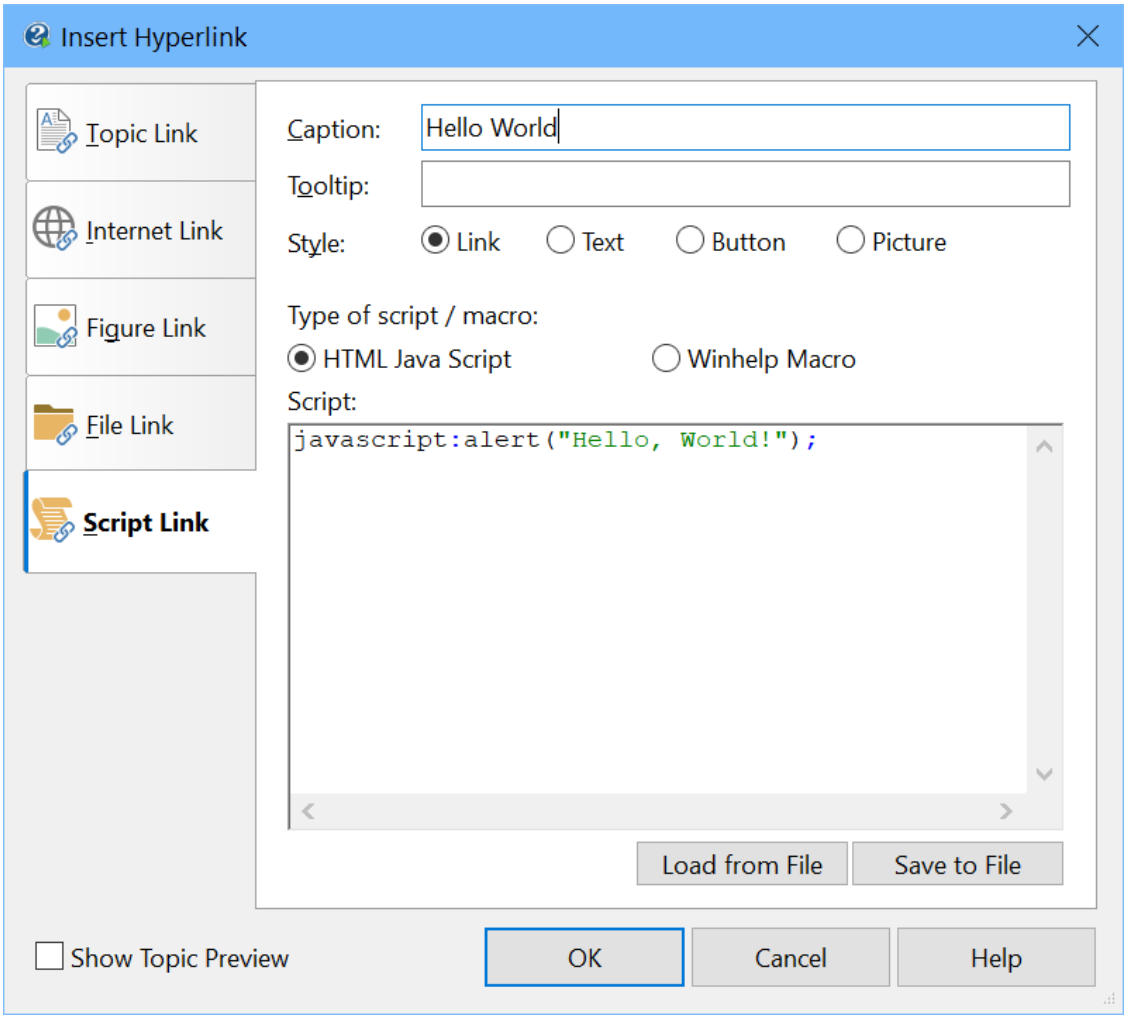
This function inserts a piece of script code that is executed when the user clicks on the link in your help file. Note that scripts are not supported in all output formats – see the compatibility list below for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See Scripts and HTML 1539 in the Reference section for some more background information on scripts and how they are implemented and handled.

How to insert a script link

1. Select text in your document if you want to use it as the link. You don't have to do this: you can enter a completely new caption in the Insert Hyperlink dialog box if you want.
2. Open the *Insert Hyperlink* dialog box. There are two ways to do this:
   - Press **Ctrl+L**
   - Select the **Link** tool in **Write** > **Insert**
3. Select the *Script Link* tab:



4. Select HTML JavaScript or Winhelp Macro and enter your script or macro in the editing field. (Only four Winhelp macros are supported, see below for details.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See The Hyperlink dialog 1352 for full details on the settings in the dialog.

Script implementation

Help+Manual creates script links by inserting the code you type between **<a href="** and **">**. For example, if you type:

```
javascript:alert('Hello World!');
```

The resulting link created in your output will be:

```
<a href="javascript:alert('Hello World!');">Link text</a>
```

This is just a simple example of course, you can place as much code in the script as you want. If you are familiar with JavaScript and HTML you can use this knowledge to create quite complex scripts! You just have to remember that everything you write is inserted between <a href=" and ">. See Scripts, HTML and Macros 1539 in the Reference section for more details.

Winhelp macro implementation and translation

Help+Manual no longer supports the obsolete Winhelp format. However, four Winhelp macros are still supported because they are easier to enter than their HTML Help equivalents. You can use them as shorthand versions for these functions in HTML Help output. Help+Manual automatically converts these four macros into the code required in HTML Help CHM files.

Macros translated in HTML Help:

The following four standard Winhelp macros are automatically translated to their HTML equivalents when you publish to HTML Help.

ALink()	**KLink()**
TCard()	**Close()**

- Note that only keywords are supported as arguments in the `ALink` and `KLink` macros when they are used in HTML Help. All other arguments are ignored.
- See Scripts, HTML and Macros 1539 in the Reference section for full details on how scripts and macros are implemented and handled.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Macro/script link compatibility in output formats

HTML Help:	JavaScript is broadly supported in CHMs. See the MS HTML Help Workshop documentation for details. Four standard Winhelp macros (see above) are translated to their HTML Help equivalents. Do not use paths.
Visual Studio Help:	Same as for HTML Help.
WebHelp:	Scripts are supported but support depends to a great extent on the user's browser, so use the same caution as when using scripting in any HTML pages.
eWriter Help for Windows and MacOS:	Scripts are supported and are executed by the embedded Internet Explorer used to render the pages. When writing scripts remember that you are operating inside an encapsulated browser that is different from the environment of a web page on the Internet or an intranet.
Kindle/Mobie and ePUB eBooks:	Script and macro links are not supported.
Adobe PDF:	Script and macro links are not supported.
Word DOCX:	Script and macro links are not supported.

See also:

Scripts, HTML and Macros 1539
Inserting plain HTML code 469
Using HTML templates 1026
WebHelp 1415 (Project Configuration)

5.10.13 Editing and formatting links

You can edit link captions (the link text) directly just by clicking inside a link text once in the editor and typing. You also have great freedom to format the appearance of your links. The link text can be formatted like normal text provided that you use the same formatting for all the text in the link.

Productivity Tips

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Hold down *Ctrl* and click on a link to navigate to the link target in your project. Double-click on a link to display its editing dialog.

How to edit link captions

You can edit link captions (the text of the link displayed in the editor) in exactly the same way you would edit normal text. Just click once inside the link or move the cursor into the link with the cursor keys and start typing.

Alternatively, you may find it easier to double-click on the link and edit its caption in the Hyperlink dialog 1352.

Link captions at the beginning of a paragraph

If a link caption is at the beginning of a paragraph you can't insert any text before it; all the text you type to the left of the link becomes part of the link. Here is how to solve this problem:

1. Click to the left of the link and press *Enter* to create a new paragraph.
2. Move up to the empty new paragraph, press the space bar (this switches off the link highlighting) then type some text.
3. Click to the right of the new text and press *Delete* to bring the link into the same paragraph.

How to format the link caption

- Select the caption and format it in the same way you would format any other text. Always select the entire caption – applying different formatting to different parts of the caption will split the link in two.
- Note that underlining and color cannot be changed for normal links because they are always blue and underlined.
- For full control over link caption formatting choose the *Text* style in the Link Properties 1352 dialog. You can then format the link manually or by applying a text style. (Double-click on a link in the editor to display this dialog.)
- See the HTML5 & CSS tutorial project in *My Documents\My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples* for instructions on how to style your links with CSS in HTML-based output formats. It is also accessible directly in the Welcome screen that you can access at the top of the Project Explorer on the left.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Turning links back into text, deleting links, [****] links

- Turn a link back into text right-click on the link and select *Convert to plain text* in the context menu.
- To delete a link select the entire link and press Delete. It is best to select the spaces before and after the link, otherwise you may only delete the link caption and create a ghost link (a link without a caption).
- If you create a ghost link it will be displayed as **[****]** in the editor after saving or refreshing the topic. To get rid of it just right-click on it and select *Convert to plain text* in the context menu.

5.10.14 Linking to other projects and help files

By default the target ID list in the Hyperlink dialog displays the IDs of the current project, but you can also link to topics in other projects and in other help files.

Where links to topics in other projects and help files work

If and how links targeting topics in other projects work depend on your output format. Generally they are only relevant in HTML Help CHM files. When you distribute your help the link files must be present in the same directory as the help file containing the link.

CHM files:	Links to other CHM files are supported. You can link via the HM project creating the other CHM file or directly to the other CHM file. If you link via the project the project name and target CHM name must be exactly the same, and the CHM files must all be in the same folder.
WebHelp:	You can link to topics in other WebHelp documentation but not via HM projects. You must use Internet links and enter the correct URL for linking to the other WebHelp at runtime.
PDF files:	You can link to other PDF files with some limitations, but not via the HM project. See this topic 438 for details.
eWriter Help:	You can use the file link and context help capabilities of eWriter Help to link between help files. See this topic 444 for details.
Word DOCX:	You can open other Word files with file links but you cannot link to specific topics or locations in another Word file.

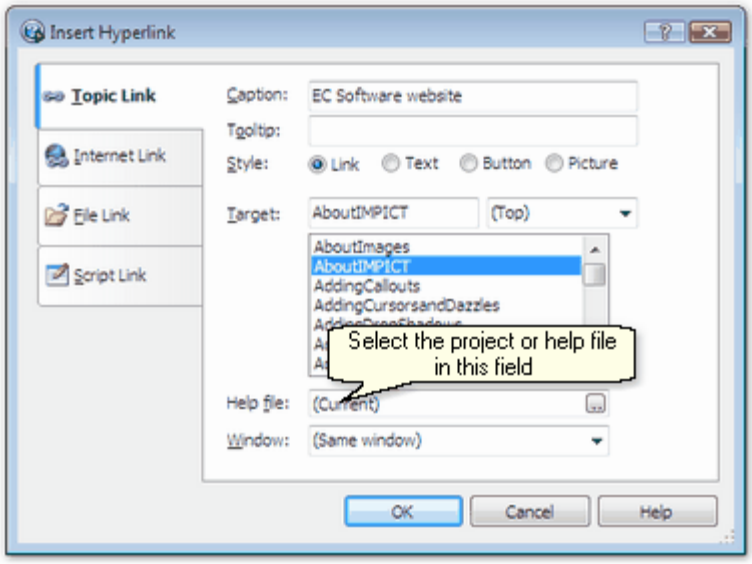
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Kindle/Mobi and ePUB eBooks:	No links between eBooks are supported.
Visual Studio Help:	No links between different Visual Studio Help collections are supported.

How to link to an external project or help file for CHM help systems

This will only work for CHM files and only if the CHM file containing the link and the CHM file you are linking to are both in the same folder. The target topic will be displayed inside the current CHM viewer, without the TOC of the target CHM file.

1. Follow the basic instructions for inserting a normal topic link 410.
2. In the Hyperlink dialog 1352 click on the ... browse button in the *Help File:* field and choose the project or help file containing the topic you want to link to.



+

3. If you choose a Help+Manual project (`.hmxz` or `.hmxp`) the topic IDs of the target project or file will be displayed in the Topic ID list. Choose the topic (and anchor 415 if applicable) you want to link to and click on OK.

If you choose an HTML Help (`.chm`) file you will see the topic filenames with the ***`.htm`*** extensions. These are the same as the IDs in your project, just select in the same way. You won't see the available anchors in the drop-down list when you select a CHM file as the target, but if you know the anchor ID you can type it in in the anchor field, which is fully editable.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Links between modular projects:

When you are linking between modular projects you may need to think about what will happen in situations when the project you are linking to is not present when the user clicks on the link. See Modular Projects 1547 for more information on this and solutions.

Opening a topic in another CHM file in a new viewer instance

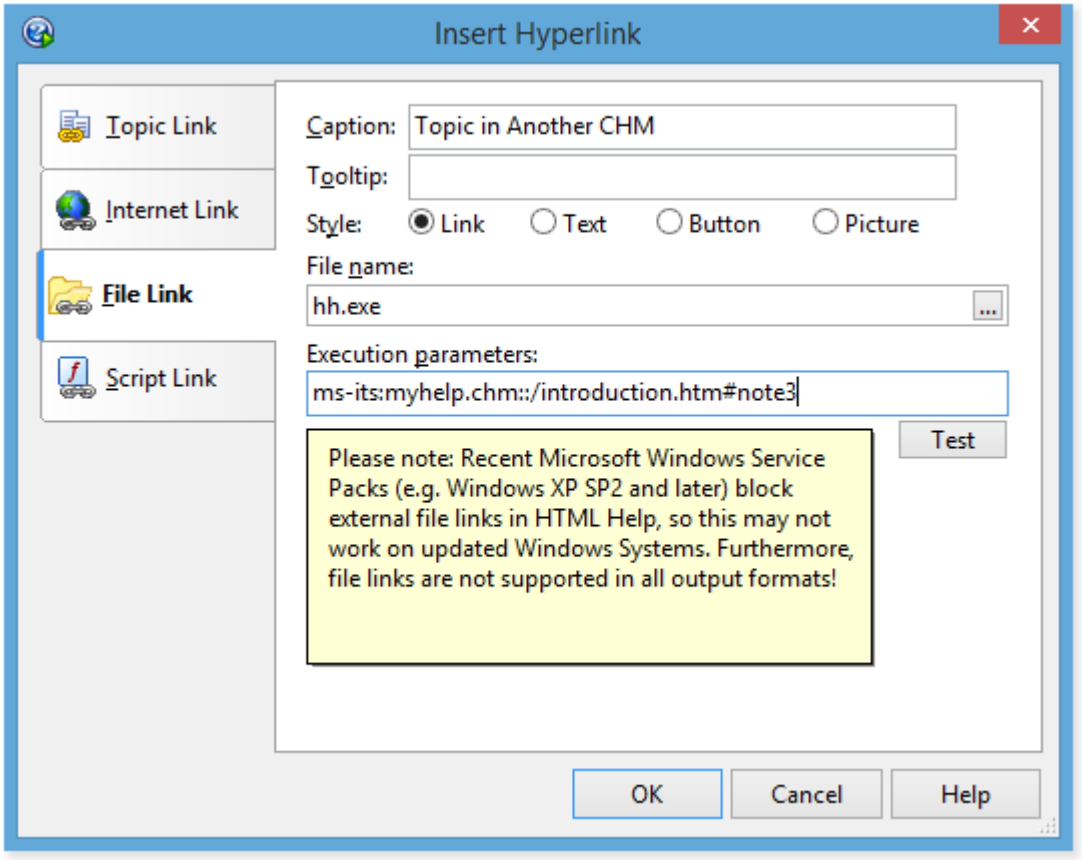
Normally, links to topics in another CHM file will open in the current CHM viewer instance. The user only sees the topic contents, the TOC of the other CHM is not visible. If you want to provide access to the entire TOC of the other CHM you need to open the other CHM in a separate viewer.

To do this, you need to create a file link to the **hh.exe** CHM viewer and insert the name of the CHM file and topic you want to display as parameters:

File name:	**hh.exe**
Execution parameters:	**ms-its:myhelp.chm::/introduction.htm#anchorname**

myhelp.chm is the file you want to open, introduction.htm is the topic ID in lower case + ".htm" and anchorname is an optional anchor to scroll to. Note the **ms-its:** prefix, the **::/** between the CHM file name and the topic file name and the **#** between the topic and the anchor. These are all essential.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Using a help context number instead of the topic ID:

You can also do this with the help context number of a topic or anchor instead of the topic ID. Then you use the same procedure with these execution parameters (12030 is the context number):

File name:	**`hh.exe`**
Execution parameters:	**`-mapid 12030 ms-its:helpfile.chm`**

Linking to topics in other WebHelp (HTML) projects

The situation is a little different when you want to create links between different WebHelp 1510 projects, which are by definition stored in different directories. These are effectively just groups of HTML pages, like any other set of HTML pages on a website. Topic links will not work here because this is really a website, not a help project – you have to use Internet links instead.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Follow the instructions for inserting an Internet link 422 and choose the *Links to an Internet address* option.
2. Enter the URL of the page in the other project in the **Address:** field. You can enter either the absolute address or the relative address (the relative address will depend on the relative positions of the directories on your website, of course):

   Absolute address:

   `http://www.yourdomain.com/subdirectory/index.html?topicname.htm#anchorname`

   Relative address:

   `../subdirectory/index.html?topicname.htm#anchorname`

   Here *index.html* is the index file of your project (this is the default, you can change it in the Publish 1310 dialog when you publish), *topicname.htm* is the name of the topic (topic ID 368 plus .htm) and *anchorname* (optional) is an anchor 415 in the topic you want to link to.

Choosing the window to open the link in:

If you want to display the TOC of the target project in the current browser window select the *Top Frame* option in the *Target window:* field. If you don't do this the topic will overwrite the TOC in a single browser window. Selecting *New Window* opens the topic in a new browser window together with its TOC.

Direct links to topic files:

It is possible to link directly to the topic filename, for example with:

`../subdirectory/topicname.htm`

The entire help with the TOC wills still be displayed automatically when you do this. However, the *Back* and *Next* history buttons in the user's browser will not work properly so it is better to use the full syntax including the `index.html` index file.

See also:

Working with Modular Help Systems 1088

5.10.15 Preventing dead links

Excluding topics from your output can create dead hyperlinks. If there are links to the excluded topics in other topics, those links will not have any targets and will produce errors or do nothing when the user clicks on them. You need to plan your project to prevent this from happening.

Help+Manual has several functions that can help you to prevent and eliminate dead hyper-

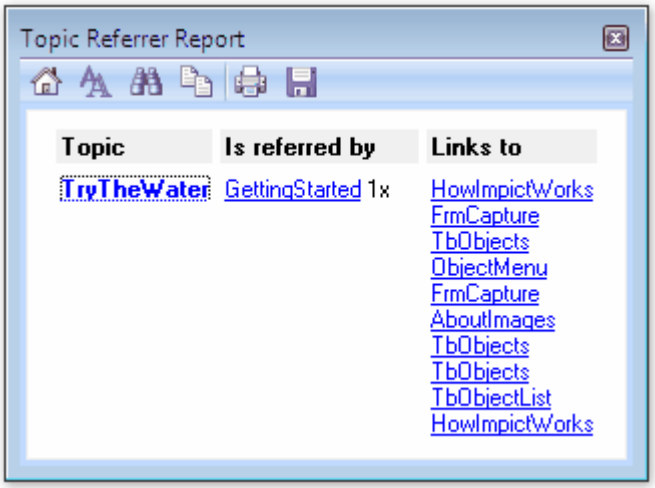
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

links caused by excluding topics. If you use them correctly you can easily locate all potential dead links and automatically replace them with alternative text or links.

How to use Find Referrers to locate potential dead links

Whenever you set an include option to exclude a topic you should always use the *Find Referrers* function to check for any links to the excluded topic in other topics.

1. Select the topic you plan to exclude in the Project Explorer. You can select either a TOC item or a topic file.
2. Right-click on the topic name in the Project Explorer and select *Find Referrers* in the context menu. Alternatively you can also select *Find* > *Find Referrers* in **Project > Manage Topics.**
3. This displays the topic referrer report. Double-click on its title bar to display it in an external window, this makes it easier to use (double-clicking on the title bar again re-docks it to the Help+Manual window):



Links to the topic in other topics are listed in the *Is referred by* column. The *Links to* column only shows topics that the current topic links to, which you don't need to worry about here.

4. Click on the links in the *Is referred by* column to display the topics so that you can use conditional text to eliminate dead links (see below). When you are finished you can return to the current topic by clicking on its link in the *Topic* column.

How to use Conditional Text to replace dead links

When you exclude topics from your published output you do this with include options. You can prevent dead links to the topic by using the exactly the same include options to

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

also exclude the hyperlinks that would be dead. This is then automatic. The hyperlinks will always be excluded whenever the topic they link to is excluded, because they are both controlled by the same include options.

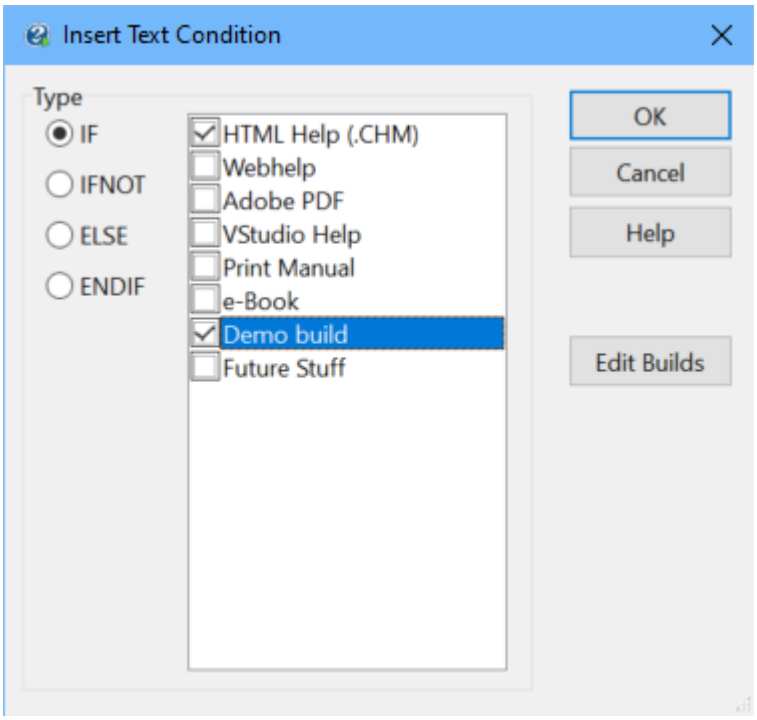
You can also use additional include options to include alternative text or even alternative links whenever the topic is excluded.

1. Use *Find Referrers* (see above) to locate all topics containing links to the topic you want to exclude.
2. Open the topic containing the link that you want to exclude in the editor and locate the link.

   You now need to decide what needs to be excluded and replaced. We will assume that you want to exclude the entire sentence containing the link and replace it with an alternative sentence.

Excluding the link:

3. Select the entire sentence containing the link and select the Conditional Text Tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**.



4. Now select exactly the same include options that you are using to exclude the topic the link points to and click on OK.

   In the example above we have selected *WebHelp* and *Adobe PDF*. This means that the link will only be included when you publish to WebHelp or PDF, it will be excluded

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

from all other formats. Since the options match those set for the topic the link points to it will be excluded whenever the topic is excluded and included when it is included.

Including alternative text and/or links:

5. If you want, you can now write an alternative sentence with or without a link to a different topic and use conditional text to include the alternative text whenever the original text is excluded.

   The easiest way to do this is with *IFNOT*. In the above example we would also select *WebHelp* and *Adobe PDF,* but in combination with *IFNOT* instead of *IF*. This will ensure that the alternative is always included when the original is excluded, and vice versa.

How to set publishing options to manage dead links

These options can be configured in **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers.** They not a "final" solution. They should only be used as a failsafe to handle any dead links you may have accidentally missed when planning your project.

Option 1: *Silently include linked topic*

This option prevents dead links by exporting your excluded topics when you publish if there are any other topics that contain links to them. When this is done no TOC entry is exported for the topic, so it can only be displayed by clicking on the links to it. Don't use this option if the topics you are excluding contain information you don't want a specific user group to see!

All nominally excluded topics that get included by this option will be listed as "implicitly exported" in the compiler report when you publish your project.

Option 2: *Remove links*

This option simply deactivates dead links to topics excluded from your output. The link caption text is still there but it is normal text, no longer a hyperlink. This is definitely safer than Option 1, because it always ensures that excluded content remains excluded. However, depending on the context the plain text in place of the links may be confusing for your users.

All links turned into plain text in this way are listed in the compiler report.

Option 3: *Allow links to be dead*

This option does nothing at all. The links are left in your output and they point to invalid

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

targets. When the user clicks on them either nothing will happen or an error message will be displayed.

5.10.16 Named destinations in PDF

When Help+Manual generates PDF documents it automatically exports a number PDF anchors known as "named destinations" for targets in the document. These destinations are similar to topic anchors 415 in HTML documents. You can use these destinations as targets in hyperlinks to the PDF files.

Key Information
Named destinations are only generated if you generate an interactive PDF 1442 document.

Items exported as named destinations

Topic IDs

Topic IDs are exported as named destinations in all lower case. Links to named destinations are case-sensitive, so you must also use the lower case format in all your links to named destinations in PDFs created by Help+Manual.

For example, if your topic ID is **`Index_Topic`** then the named destination in the PDF will be **`index_topic`**.

Topic anchors

Anchors inserted in your topics are exported together with the topic IDs, also in all lower case letters, using the syntax **`topicid#anchorid`**. The topic ID is always part of the named destination for an anchor, with a pound character (#) between the two.

Links to anchors in PDF only work in PDF links:

Links to named destinations including anchors are a special case. They will only work in links in PDF files, not in links in WebHelp files. If you use a link with an anchor in WebHelp output the link will only open the PDF file at the first page.

Standard PDF template sections

The following named destinations are exported for the standard PDF template sections defined in your print manual template 803. These destinations are exported in all lower case as shown below, and that is also how you must link to them. (The commas are not part of the destinations.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

cover, title1, title2, title3, foreword, toc, topics, endnote1, index, endnote2, backcover

Note that there are no destinations for repeating sections like *Top Level Entry* and *Blank Pages*.

User-defined template sections

User-defined PDF sections created in Manual Designer with the *Insert Page* option in the *Pages* menu are also exported as named destinations. The destinations generated for these sections are called **custom1**, **custom2**, **custom3** and so on – i.e. the word "custom" in all lower case plus the sequential number of the custom page in the order in which the pages were created in the template.

Important note:
The named destinations for user-defined sections are fixed and are assigned in the order in which the user-defined sections are created. The first section you create gets the destination **custom1**, the second section gets **custom2** and so on. The actual order of the custom sections in your template is irrelevant.

Linking to named destinations in PDF documents

You can create links to both page numbers and "named destinations" in PDF documents. The procedure is the same for links that will be used in PDF files and in WebHelp output.

Named destinations are jump targets that work like anchors. These links will work in PDFs created by Help+Manual and in WebHelp created by Help+Manual, but not in CHM files. The Microsoft CHM viewer does not support the link format needed to jump to destinations in PDF files. A link to a PDF in a CHM file will simply open the PDF at the first page. See Named destinations in PDF 465 for details on the named destinations created in PDFs by Help+Manual and more background information.

Use normal topic links for targets in the current document

Note that named destinations are only needed for links between two different PDF files or from other applications or documents. Use normal topic links to jump to targets within your Help+Manual projects (i.e. from one topic to another). You don't need to use named destinations for this.

Requirements:

- **File Links are required for linking to PDFs:**
  You must use the File Link option for creating links to targets inside PDF files. The Internet Link option will not always work correctly, even in WebHelp.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **Set the PDF to "interactive" to use named destinations:**
  If the PDF you are linking to is created with Help+Manual it must be generated using the "interactive PDF" option in your PDF settings 1442. Named destinations are only generated for interactive PDF documents.

Linking to named destinations in PDF documents:

You need to create a file link with the destination added to it to link to a destination in a PDF document. Internet links will not work correctly, not even in WebHelp.The syntax is the same for links that are going to be in PDF files and WebHelp files. The links to the PDF files will also work in CHM files, but they will only open the PDF document; they will not jump to the destination in the PDF from a link in a CHM.

Procedure:

1. Follow the instructions for inserting a file link 425 and enter the name of the PDF file you want to link to.
2. Add **#nameddest=** after the file name, followed by the name of the named destination in all lower case characters. See this topic 465 for details of the named destinations you can jump to.

Examples:

myfile.pdf#nameddest=toc (jumps to the Table of Contents in the PDF)
myfile.pdf#nameddest=welcome_topic (jumps to the topic with the ID `Welcome_Topic`)
myfile.pdf#nameddest=custom1 (jumps to user-defined template section 1)

Special case: anchors:

Links to named destinations including anchors are a special case. They will only work in links in PDF files, not in links in WebHelp files. If you use a link with an anchor in WebHelp output the link will only open the PDF file at the first page.

Example:

In a PDF file, the following file link will jump to the anchor **testanchor** in the topic with the ID **Welcome_Topic**. In a WebHelp file it will only open the PDF at the first page.

myfile.pdf#nameddest=welcome_topic#testanchor

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Linking to a page number in a PDF document:

You need to create a file link with the page number added to it do link to a page number in a PDF document. Internet links will not work correctly, not even in WebHelp.The syntax is the same for links that are going to be in PDF files and WebHelp files. The links to the PDF files will also work in CHM files, but they will only open the PDF document; they will not jump to the page number in the PDF from a link in a CHM.

Important: The page number destinations in PDFs created by Help+Manual start counting at 0, so you must jump to the actual page number minus one. If you are jumping to pages in PDFs created by other tools you can usually jump to the actual page numbers.

1. Follow the instructions for inserting a file link 425 and enter the name of the PDF file you want to link to.
2. Add **#page=** after the file name, followed by the page number:

   myfile.pdf#page=123 (jumps to page 124)
   myfile.pdf#page=0 (jumps to page 1, same as just opening the PDF file without a target)
   myfile.pdf#page=11 (jumps to page 12)

Links to PDFs from WebHelp and HTML files

Links to named destinations in PDF from Help+Manual WebHelp

When creating links to named destinations in PDF files from WebHelp you can use exactly the same procedure and syntax as for links from PDF files. Create a file link and follow the instructions above.

Links to named destinations in PDF from other HTML files

The syntax is also the same for links to named destinations in other HTML files not generated by Help+Manual. Just create a hyperlink using the same **pdf_file.pdf#nameddest=xxxx** and **pdf_file.pdf#page=yy** syntax for the **href** target of the link as you use in Help+Manual, where **xxxx** is the named destination and **yy** is the page number.

Links to PDF from CHM files

You cannot link to named destinations in PDFs from a page in a CHM file. The Microsoft CHM viewer will block all attempts to do this. You can only use a normal file link to open

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the PDF file at the first page. That is the only option available. This is a limitation of the CHM format and the Microsoft CHM viewer. Help+Manual cannot do anything to change this (and the PDF must be in the same folder as the CHM to open at all).

5.10.17 Links and secondary windows

The following information is only relevant for the Microsoft HTML Help CHM format.

Help windows define the features of the Microsoft help viewer for HTML Help and are also used to display individual topics in external windows. When you define a hyperlink to a topic you can include a setting that specifies a secondary help window for opening the topic. This allows you to create links that open topics that would normally open in the TOC in external windows.

See Using help windows 194 for more details.

Opening the target topic in an external window

Preparation:

1. Define at least one secondary help window 194 type.
2. In the window's HTML Help Options 1454 tab select the *Links to secondary help windows open a new help window* option. (This allows external windows in HTML Help.)
3. You will probably also want to use the other options in the HTML Help Options tab to switch off the external windows' control buttons and navigation panel.

Opening target topics in an external window:

Create a hyperlink to a topic, open the Hyperlink dialog 1352 (double-click on the link) and select the secondary window type in the *Window:* field, then click on OK.

See also:

Using help windows 194
Help Windows 1452 (Project Configuration)
Help windows and external windows 1025
Help Windows 1609 (Reference)

5.10.18 Inserting HTML code objects

The Insert HTML Code Object tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** allows you to add special features or formatting to your topic pages with HTML code. For example, you can write dynamic HTML code with JavaScript to add features not available directly in Help+Manual.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This function "injects" HTML code into your topic at the point where you insert it. The code is ***entirely*** your responsibility and is not checked or parsed by Help+Manual in any way, so you need to be familiar with HTML coding.

Productivity Tip
You can resize the HTML code objects in your topics to make their contents visible. You can also the code object editor for editing larger blocks of code.

Where HTML code objects are supported

HTML code objects are supported in all HTML-based output formats. This includes the eWriter Help format, which supports scripting in the same way as WebHelp. You will only find restrictions there in some cases because of the fact that eWriter is a local format like CHM, not a server-based format on the Internet like WebHelp.

The ePUB eBooks standard includes scripting but most ePUB readers do not so it should be avoided as it will hardly ever work,

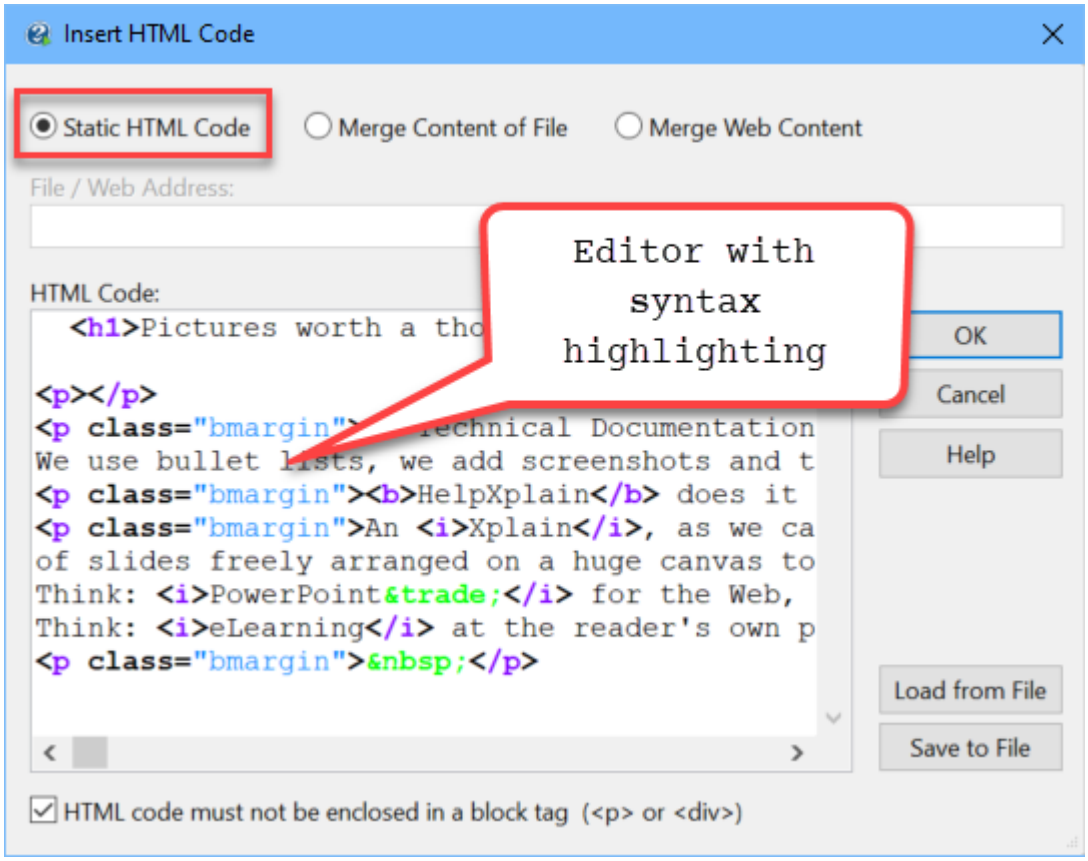
If you want to use this feature in projects that will also be published to formats where it is not supported you need to use Help+Manual's conditional output 969 features to create alternative text for those versions.

Note that the Insert HTML Code Object tool inserts the code directly in the body of your topic. If you want to insert scripts in the <head> section of your topic page you must do so in the HTML template, either directly or by reference. See below for more information on this.

How to insert plain HTML code in a topic

1. Click in the editor at the point where you want to insert the plain HTML code and select the HTML Code Object tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**.
2. Then select the **Static HTML Code** option and enter and edit your code in the HTML Code: box, which includes syntax highlighting for HTML,

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Insert inline code without block tags:
Normally, the HTML code block is inserted in a standard <p> paragraph or layer tag. You can prevent this by activating the *HTML code must not be enclosed in a block tag* option.

3. You can resize the window for easier editing by dragging on the lower right corner.

The *Load from File* and *Save to File* functions allow you to save blocks of code in external text files for reuse.

Referencing external files in plain HTML code

If you reference external files in your plain HTML code you are entirely responsible for making sure that the files are included in your output. Help+Manual does not parse or check the code and it will not do this for you. There are two ways to make sure that referenced files are included in your project:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Method 1: Adding the files to the Baggage Files

This is the simplest solution. The Baggage Files function provides a quick and easy way to integrate external files in your project and make sure that they are available to the compiler and included in your output.

- See Using Baggage Files 1119 for details on using this function.
- See Graphics references 1056 for more details on referencing graphics files. Since graphics files are often large it is not always a good idea to add them to the Baggage.

Method 2: Integrating the files in your output manually

This is not really necessary since it is much easier to add any referenced files to your Baggage. The following instructions are just included for the sake of completeness.

- **In WebHelp** you must manually copy the files to your output directory if you have not added them to the Baggage Files (see above).
- **In HTML Help** you need to tell the HTML Help compiler to add the files to the **.chm** file. Proceed as follows:
  1. Copy the external file(s) to your project folder (the folder containing your **.hmxz** or **.hmxp** project file).
  2. In the Project Explorer open **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > **Extended HHP Settings**.
  3. In the editing box add the following entries, replacing the dummy filenames in the examples with your own files (one file per line):

     ```
     [FILES]
     ..\donald.js
     ..\mickey.asp
     ```

     Don't add a second [FILES] header if one already exists. Enter each external filename on its own line below the [FILES] header and precede it with the **..** relative path reference.

     This example assumes the files are stored in your project directory. (This is necessary because the project is published from a temporary subdirectory in the project directory, so files in the project directory are one level up.) If your files are located anywhere else you need to adjust the ..\ relative path reference accordingly.

Inserting external and online HTML files with a code object

In addition to HTML code and JavaScript, you can also use a code object to merge an entire external HTML file into your page. Here too, this will only work in HTML-based output

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

formats. It will be ignored in other formats. The raw HTML is inserted in the page without conversion and that only works in HTML pages.

How and when the files are inserted

The files are not dynamic content. They are inserted in the HTML of your output pages when the project is compiled and they then become static content and part of the output.

Format of the files to insert

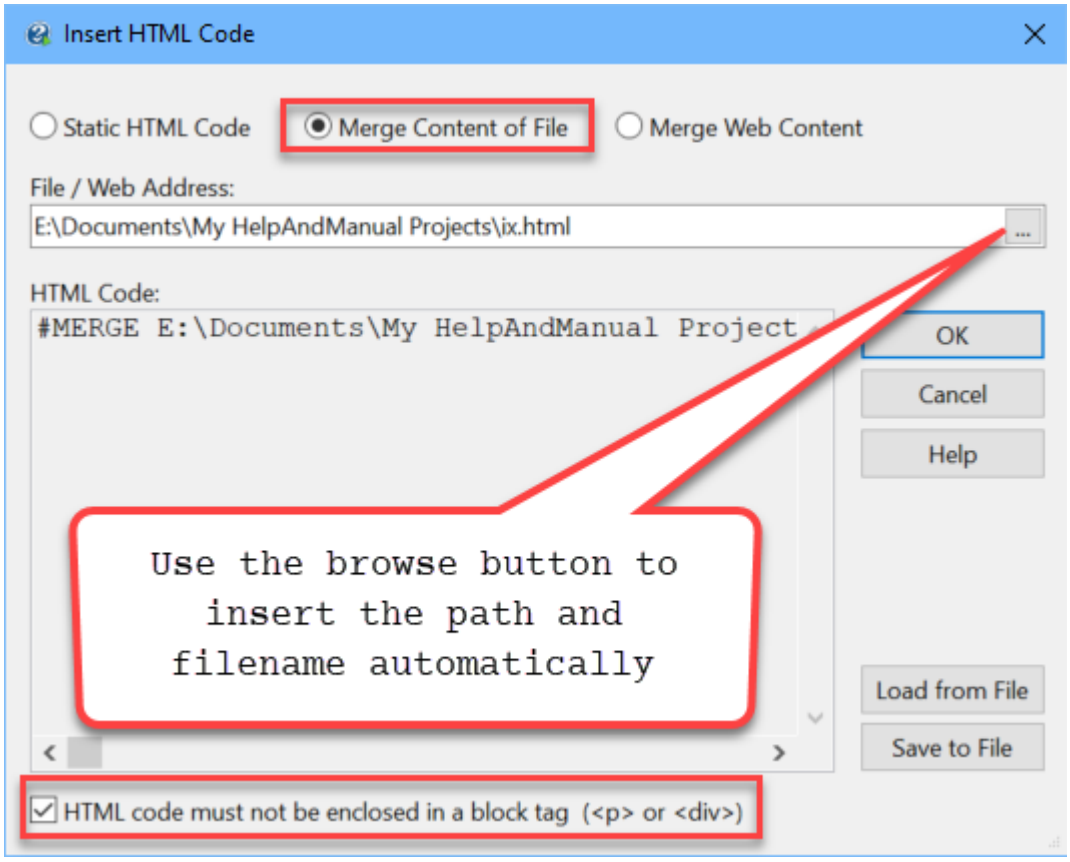
Note that the #MERGE command will insert the entire HTML file. It is thus better to only use files that contain plain HTML code, without any <html>, <head> or <body> structural components. See this topic 169 for more details.

Inserting local files

Select the **Merge Content of File** option and then navigate to the file with the [..] browse button. The **#MERGE** command will be generated and inserted automatically. You can also enter the path and file name manually, if you wish. If you use a relative path it must be relative to the folder containing your project. (You can also reference online files here if you enter the http URL manually.)

Activating the option to prevent the HTML code from being inserted in a block tag is recommended.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Inserting online files

You can also insert online files with the **Merge Web Content** option. Note that this will not work for all files, particularly complex files with many containers or dynamic content. Here too, the files should ideally contain only plain HTML code, without <html>, <head> or <body> sections.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Referencing code in the <head> section

If you reference JavaScript or other script code in your HTML code objects you may want to insert scripts containing the functions to be executed in the <head> section of your HTML topic page that you then reference and run from the code objects inserted in the body of your topics. You can't do this directly in the topic page because this only inserts the code between the <body> and </body> tags in the final HTML page.

The code for the sections of your HTML pages above and below the <body> and </body> tags is provided by your HTML topic page templates, which you can access and edit in the Project Explorer. You can add script code and references to external script files to the <head> section of your pages by editing these templates. By default you have one HTML topic page template called *Default*, which is used for all topics. However, you can create as many different templates as you like and assign them to individual topics in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window.

In addition to this you can use HTML variables that you can redefine in individual topics to add different script and code to the <head> section of every single topic. To do this you insert the variables in your template and then redefine their content for individual topics in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See Using HTML Templates 1026 for general information on how to access and edit your HTML topic page templates. See The power of editable variables 963 for details on how to use HTML variables to insert individual code in your templates on a per-topic basis.

See also:

Inserting script and macro links 452
Using HTML templates 1026
Scripts, HTML and Macros 1539
WebHelp 1415 (Project Configuration)
Using Baggage Files 1119
Graphics References 1056
Extended .HHP Settings 1457

5.10.19 A-Links and A-Keywords

Key Information
Note that A-keywords are a Microsoft help technology that is only supported in the Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) format. A-keywords are irrelevant in all other output formats, including WebHelp.

A-keywords, also known as "A-link keywords", are only used in Microsoft's HTML Help (CHM) format. They are quite similar to normal keywords but they not displayed in the index, they are always "hidden". What use is a keyword that isn't displayed anywhere? There are two major uses for A-keywords: To create "*See also*" lists of related topics and to create links between help files in modular help systems.

See About A-Keywords 1606 for background information.

How to make an automated See Also list with A-keywords

This method creates links that display a list of related topics. It only works in HTML Help CHM files. It will not work an any other output format.

Step 1: Enter the A-keywords

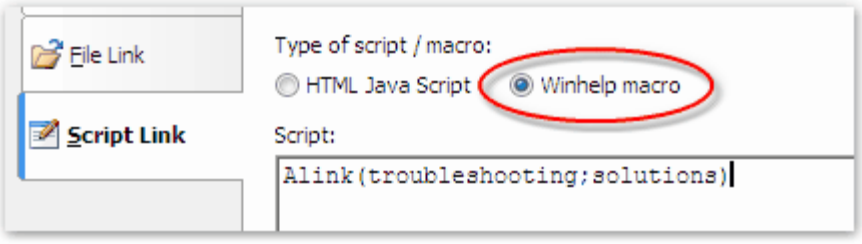
1. Select a topic and select its **Topic Options** tab (top left of the main editor window).
2. Enter one or more keywords in the *A-Keywords:* section, one keyword per line. Note that sub-keywords are not supported with A-keywords!
3. Repeat for all topics you want to "associate" with one another, adding the same A-keyword to each topic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Step 2: Create the link

The link that displays the list of *See also:* topics is created using the Winhelp ALink macro. The syntax of this macro is much simpler than its HTML Help equivalent and so Help+Manual automatically translates it when you output to HTML Help.

1. Select *Insert* > *Link* in **Write** > **Insert** to create a hyperlink.
2. Select the *Script Link* tab in the *Insert Hyperlink* dialog, then select *Winhelp macro* as the type of hyperlink.
3. Enter *Alink()* in the *Script:* field and type the keywords you want to link to between the parentheses. If you enter more than one keyword separate them with semicolon (;) characters, like this:



This example will create a link that displays a list of all topics that contain the A-keywords "troubleshooting" or "solutions".

Note that when you are working in HTML Help you can only enter keywords as the argument for the Winhelp macro. You cannot enter the other parameters for the Winhelp A-Link macro because they are not translated into HTML Help code!

How to link between help modules with A-keywords

Use this method to create links between the help files of modular help systems if there is a possibility that the help files containing the target topics may not be present when the help is viewed. This can happen when you use runtime merging and choose not to include one or more of the help files in your distribution. It can also happen if you are using conditional output to exclude modules from publish-time merged HTML Help and Winhelp projects.

This technique works both in HTML Help and the obsolete Winhelp forma but not in any other formats. Please study Working with Modular Help Systems 1088 before trying to use this method!

Step 1: Prepare the alternative topic in the master project

The alternative topic should be in the master project because this is the only help file that

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

is always present in a runtime-merged modular help system.

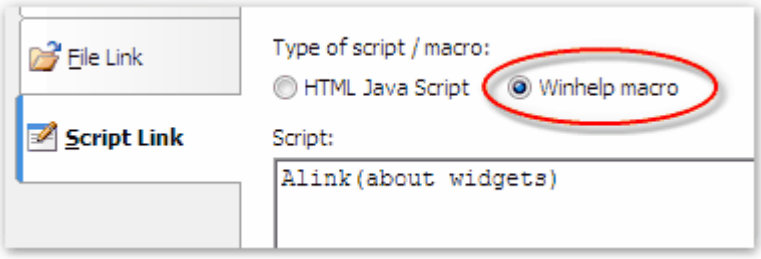
1. Open the master help project and choose or create the alternative topic that you want the user to be able to view when the other help file module containing the target topic is not available.
2. Select this alternative topic, select the tab and enter a unique A-keyword in the *A-Keywords:* field. The A-Keyword must be unique. It should not be used anywhere else in your projects! If it is, all the topics where it is used will be displayed when the A-Link hyperlink is clicked.

Step 2: Prepare the target topic in the child project

1. Open the child project and select the topic you want to link to.
2. Select the tab and enter the same unique A-keyword as above in the *A-Keywords:* field.

Step 3: Create the link

1. Open the project module in which you want to create the link. This can be a master module or another child module.
2. Select *Insert* > *Link* in **Write** > **Insert** to create a hyperlink.
3. Select the *Script Link* tab in the *Insert Hyperlink* dialog, then select *Winhelp macro* as the type of hyperlink.
4. Enter *Alink()* in the *Script:* field and type the keyword between the parentheses. If your keyword is "about widgets" the dialog would look like this:



If the target help file is not present when the user clicks on the link the alternative topic will be displayed automatically. If the target topic is present a dialog will be displayed in which the user can select either the target topic or the alternative topic.

This is just a very simple example to show you how this solution works in principle. In practice you can also make more complex solutions, using more alternative topics and more keywords. If you use multiple keywords remember to separate them with semi-colons, like this:

```
Alink(about widgets;troubleshooting;widget solutions)
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that when you are working in HTML Help you can only enter keywords as the argument for the Winhelp macro. You cannot enter the other parameters for the Winhelp A-Link macro because they are not translated into HTML Help code!

See also:

About A-Keywords 1606 (Reference)
Keywords and Indexes 565

5.11 Using Graphics

Inserting graphics in your topics with Help+Manual couldn't be easier. You just select the *Insert Image* tool in **Write** > **Insert** and choose your graphic file. Graphics can also include captions that are stored together with the graphic.

You can capture and insert screenshots with the integrated screen capture utility and add hotspots to your images with hyperlinks to topics, files, scripts and macros.

See also:

About Graphics in Help+Manual 1529

5.11.1 Supported graphics formats

You can use a large number of different graphics formats directly in Help+Manual. If the format of a graphic you use in your project is not supported in your publishing format Help+Manual converts the file automatically when you publish your project.

Key Information
For most purposes BMP or Impict IPP are the best formats. Help+Manual automatically converts and compresses images as required when you publish and BMP or IPP are the best source formats for this.

Directly supported graphics formats

All the following graphics formats listed below be inserted in your projects directly with the Insert Image 481 tool. Native HTML graphics formats (PNG, GIF, JPG) are published unchanged when you publish to HTML-based output formats. Other formats are converted to one of these formats on the basis of your HTML Export Options 1459 conversion settings in your project configuration settings.

- Standard bitmaps (BMP)
- Compuserve Graphics Interchange Format (GIF)
- SVG vector graphics, including compressed SVGs (**.svgz**)
  (See SVG Graphics 500 and Responsive Images 498 for more information)
- JPEG Graphics (JPG)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Portable Network Graphics (PNG)
- Photoshop images (PSD)
- Paint Shop Pro images (PSP, single-layer only)
- TIFF images (TIF)
- Kodak PhotoCD images (PCD)
- Windows Metafiles (WMF, EMF)
  These are now obsolete formats. Use modern SVG graphics instead. See further below for details on display problems with WMF files.
- Impict graphics (IPP, the special format of Help+Manual's Impict graphics editor)
- Segmented Hyper Graphics (SHG, MRB the Winhelp hotspot graphics format, now obsolete.)

You can also insert unsupported graphics by opening them in a graphics program that supports them and copying them to the Windows clipboard. Then just paste the clipboard contents in the Help+Manual editor and you will be prompted to save in an external file.

Correcting the display of WMF graphics for high-resolution monitors

The now obsolete WMF and EMF vector graphics formats were created long before modern, high-resolution monitors existed. We strongly recommend that you no longer use these obsolete formats. Use modern SVG vector graphics instead.

If no correction is applied, WMF graphics will scale incorrectly on high-res monitors, appearing much larger than they should. EMF Help+Manual corrects this with a program options setting that is on by default. This setting is in

View > Program Options > Editor: Auto-adjust legacy .WMF images for high-resolution displays.

When WMF correction should be on

If you inserted old WMF graphics in old projects the correction prevents them from displaying too large when you switch to a high-resolution monitor. Similarly, it should always be on when users with both high-resolution monitors and standard monitors work on the same project, as it prevents different displays on the different monitors.

When you might want to turn WMF correction off

If you have always worked on a high-resolution monitor and inserted your graphics before correction was available, the introduction of WMF correction will make your images look too small. Turning correction off will return them to normal. However, this display is actually incorrect, and it would be better to turn correction on and adjust the scaling of your

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

graphics instead. Of course, it would be even better to stop using WMF and switch to SVG graphics.

Old SHG graphics containing hotspots

The obsolete.shg format for Winhelp graphics should no longer be used, support for it is only included for backward compatibility. You no longer need to use SHG graphics to add hotspots in your images because you can add hotspots 509 to all graphics formats directly in the Help+Manual editor.

However, if you have old .shg files with hotspots you can use them in your projects directly, provided the hotspots link to valid topic IDs in your project.

IPP graphics containing hotspots from HM3 projects

Hotspots in **.ipp** graphics created with Help+Manual 3 cannot be imported to new projects on their own because they are linked to specific projects. The hotspots will only be imported if the **.ipp** images are imported together with the **.hm3** project for which they were created.

5.11.2 Inserting graphics and screenshots

You can insert graphics in your projects from files stored on your hard disk or with cut & paste. Drag & drop from the desktop or Windows Explorer is not supported.

Note that although cut & paste may be more convenient you may get slightly better image quality when you insert graphics directly from files. This applies particularly to pasting from MS Word, which generally resizes the image very slightly (just a couple of percent) when you copy it via the Windows clipboard.

Graphics as link targets

You can link directly to graphics in topic links 410 in the same way as anchors. You just need to assign an ID to the graphic, then it will be shown as a target in the anchor list in the link tool.

Productivity Tip
When inserting a graphic in a paragraph with text always type a space as the first character after the graphic, this will prevent the image caption style from being applied to the text you type.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to insert one or more graphics from a file

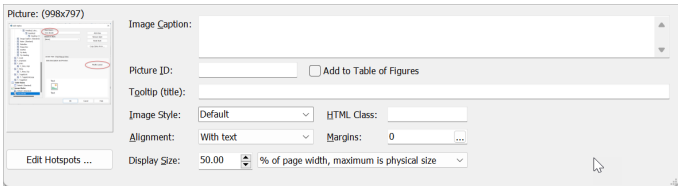
Using Drag & Drop

You can also insert images with Drag & Drop. Just drag the image file into the editor window and drop it where you want to insert it.

Using the Insert Image tool

Note that you can also insert multiple images at the same time. To do this, just select multiple images in the Open dialog. All the settings you choose in the dialog then apply for all the images selected.

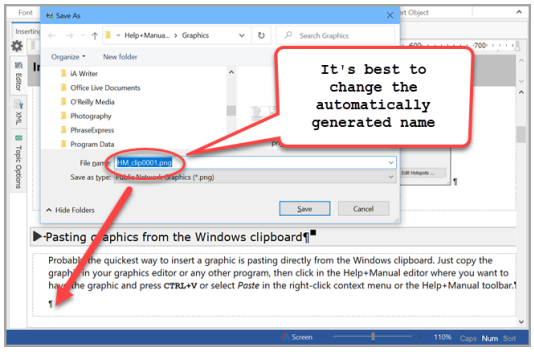
- Click in the editor at the position where you want to insert the graphic.
- Select *Insert* > *Image* in the **Write** tab. displays the Open Image 1359 dialog:



See *Editing image attributes* below for details of all the attributes and what they do.

Pasting graphics from the Windows clipboard

Probably the quickest way to insert a graphic is pasting directly from the Windows clipboard. Just copy the graphic in your graphics editor or any other program, then click in the Help+Manual editor where you want to have the graphic and press **CTRL+V** or select *Paste* in the right-click context menu or the Help+Manual toolbar.



This opens a *Save File* dialog with an automatically-generated filename. You can then choose where you want to save the file and change the name. It's advisable to use a de-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

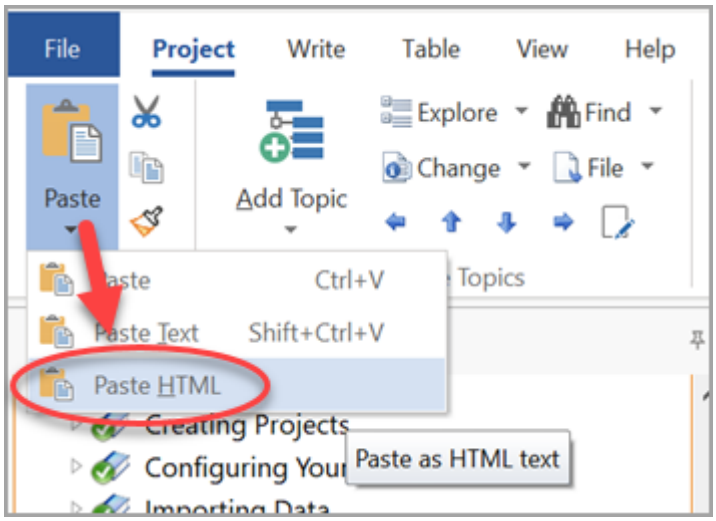
scriptive name instead of the automatic name. For long-term compatibility avoid spaces, accented characters, non-alphanumeric characters and any special characters in the names.

Where to save

If possible, save your graphics in the project's own graphics folder(s), which should be inside the project folder. Then you can move the project around with the entire folder without having to change any settings or manage graphics locations 514.

Pasting transparent PNGs and GIFs

When you paste a graphic stored in a clipboard you will always get a graphic, but when pasting from some applications you may have problems with PNG and GIF files with transparent areas. For example, this will happen if you paste from the Snagit screenshot program. If you experience this, try the *Paste from HTML* option in the Help+Manual **Paste** menu.



These programs only store a non-transparent bitmap in the clipboard, but they also include a snippet of HTML code that links to the actual transparent image that they store on the disk. When you use *Paste HTML* with an image in the clipboard Help+Manual checks for code like this and gets the actual image it references.

Image name not editable when pasting HTML:
You can't change the name of the pasted image directly when you get it via HTML code. This is because Help+Manual needs to copy the actual image that has already been saved to disk. So you need to accept the file name generated by your graphics program when you paste and change it later if necessary.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Methods for updating existing graphics quickly

When working on your documentation you will frequently want to update a graphic image. There are a couple of methods you can use to achieve this quickly and efficiently:

Paste the new image over the old image in the editor

This is the fastest solution if you are replacing the entire graphic with a new or edited version. Note that this only works for single-layer images! If you do this with an Impict IPP image containing multiple layers (objects) all the layers in the original image will be replaced by the pasted image.

1. Select the graphic in your editing program and copy it to the Windows clipboard.
2. Click on the old version of the graphic in the Help+Manual editor to select it.
3. Press CTRL+V to paste your new version over the old version.

This will automatically replace the old version in the editor and the file on the disk with the new version. (You will be prompted to confirm you want to do this).

Edit the image in place

Instead of editing the image in a separate location, use your graphics program to edit the version stored in your project's image folder directly. This is to only way to speed things up for Impict .IPP images with multiple layers, because you can't paste them in with the method described above.

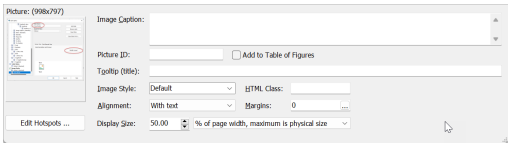
After editing, you can refresh the image in the current topic in Help+Manual in the following ways:

- Right-click on the image in Help+Manual and select **Picture** > **Reload**.
- In the **Project** tab, Select **File** > **Reload Topic** in the Manage Topics section.
- Switch briefly to another topic and back to the topic containing the image.

Editing image attributes, captions etc.

To edit the attributes of an image in the Help+Manual editor just double-click on it with the mouse. This displays the Insert Image dialog again, where you can add or edit all the attributes:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Tip: Align the caption with image styles

You can change the alignment of the image caption (left, center, right) by defining an image style 492.

- ***Image Style*** applies an image style 492 that you have defined. This defines a border and the image dimensions.
- ***Alignment*** can make text wrap around the image with the *Left* or *Right* options.
- ***Padding*** adds empty space around the image (in pixels). You can set values for individual sides with ....
- ***Display Size*** controls the display size of the image on the page. See Responsive Images 496 for more details on how to use these options to optimize your graphics for responsive layouts.
  - **Physical image size** displays the image in its native size.
  - **% of physical image size** scales the image to the percent you define. This is static – the image size does not change with the window size.
  - **% of page with, maximum is physical size** scales the image in relation to the page width or the width of the table cell, if the image is in a table. However, the image never expands beyond its native width. This uses 99.90% as the trigger value, but the result is still 100% of the native width.
  - **Scaled to full page width** scales the image to the size of its container (page or table cell) without limit. The image will expand beyond its native size if necessary.

  Preventing excessive scaling:
  Use the *% of page with, maximum is physical size* setting to prevent "inflated" and "jaggy" images on larger screens. When you using this setting the image will only expand up to its native width but will not zoom further to prevent excessive scaling.
- **Tooltip** is a text displayed when the mouse pointer is over the image.
- **Caption** is displayed below the image (formatted with the Image Caption style) and is included as the ALT attribute in HTML-based image formats. It is required for the Table of Figures function 689 in Word DOCX output (images without captions are not included in the Table of Figures).
- **Add to Table of Figures** inserts a figure counter variable. See Figure and table counters 944 for full details on using this feature.
- **Picture ID** adds an ID that can be used as a link target in topic links 410. It can also serve as a unique reference in HTML and for hyperlink references to the figure counter 944 reference.

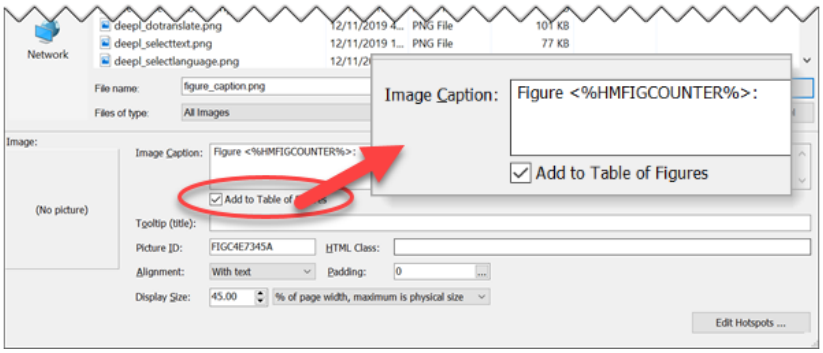
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- ***HTML Class*** add an optional HTML class name to the image for referencing all images with this class in your own CSS and JavaScript code (unlike the ID, which can only be used for a single image in the same topic). You can also add multiple HTML class names separated by spaces if you need to.

You don't need to worry about entering the pixel dimensions of your graphic as you would have to do in an HTML editor. Help+Manual does this automatically.

Numbering images and including them in the table of figures

The *Add to Table of Figures* option in the image dialog automatically inserts a figure counter variable in the caption and includes the image in the internal list for the generation of a table of figures for the project. These tables of figures, tables and other items can be used in both PDF and Word DOCX output. See Figure and table counters 944 for details and full instructions.



Responsive images: relative to page or table cell width

If you set the Display Size in the image dialog to *% of page width* or *scaled to full page width*, the zoom value you enter is relative to the container of the image. This is the page width if the image is inserted directly on the page or the table cell containing the image if the image is in a table.

In HTML output formats this makes the images responsive. This means that the images will automatically scale with the size of the window.

Use image styles for sizing images

Defining an image style 492 allows you to set an absolute or relative width (% of page width) for all images in a class. This ensures that all the images will be displayed with the same width on the page without you having to apply individual settings to each image. You just need to select the style for the image.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Preventing excessive scaling

If the width is defined as any percentage less than 100% (i.e. up to 99.90%), the image will only expand up to its full native width but will not zoom further to prevent excessive scaling. Setting a width of 100% turns this off and allows unlimited scaling. The *% of page width* and *scaled to full page width* options do this for you automatically. The first sets the width to 99.90%, the second sets it to 100%.

Putting responsive images side by side

If you set the image widths to add up to less than 100% you can put multiple responsive images on the same line and they will display side by side. The only exception to this are images with captions: These must be put in tables if you want to display them side by side, because otherwise the caption container will create a new paragraph after every image, even if the images fit on the page side by side.

Responsive images in table cells

Note that when responsive images are in table cells their width is relative to the table cell, not to the page. So you could have three images in a table side by side in three cells, each with a width of 80%, for example. Each image will then be 80% of the width of the cell containing it, leaving 10% space on either side.

Responsive images with captions side by side

When images have captions they have an invisible container around the image that encloses the caption and keeps it with the image. This container always creates a new paragraph in HTML output. To put responsive images with captions side by side you must put them in a table. Otherwise each image will be in a separate paragraph, even if they would actually fit side by side.

Separate padding values for each side

You can set separate padding values for each side of the image by entering multiple values in the *Padding* field. The easiest way to do this is with the popup menu displayed when you click on in the *Padding:* field.

You can set the values manually: For all four sides (1 value), vertical and horizontal sides (2 values) or each side individually (4 values). The values apply in the same way as HTML values, clockwise from the top – i.e. top right bottom left.

Padding setting	Effect

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

10	Sets the same padding value for all four sides of the image,.
10 15	Sets padding to 10 pixels for top and bottom and 15 pixels for left and right
10 25 15 5	Top: 10 pixels, Right: 25 pixels, Bottom: 5 pixels, Left: 15 pixels

HelpXplain slides as static images

If you use the EC Software HelpXplain 550 application for animated screencasts and infographics you can also insert HelpXplain slides as static images. This makes it possible to use HelpXplain as an alternative screenshot editor and create edited screenshots with a more modern look and feel than the older Impict utility.

How to insert a HelpXplain slide

Note that this method always inserts the **first** slide in your HelpXplain `.xplain` file as a static image. So the `.xplain` you use should either contain only one slide or the first slide should be the one you want to use.

- Click in your topic where you want to insert the image.
- Select the **Image** tool in the **Write** tab and select the `.xplain` file containing the slide you want to insert.

That's all there is to it. The first or only slide in the Xplain will be inserted as a static graphic image and will then behave like any other graphic. The same padding, positioning and formatting apply as for other graphics.

Conversion of Xplains for HTML

Xplains are converted to HTML-compatible graphics using the same settings as for all other bitmap files. The settings are in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp/Microsoft HTML Help** > **HTML Export Options**. Your static image Xplains will be converted to PNG, JPG or GIF, depending on your settings there. If you choose the JPG+GIF option they will be converted to JPG, since Xplains are always full-range color images.

Inserting graphics from unsupported formats

You can also insert unsupported graphics formats by opening them in a graphics program that supports them and copying them to the Windows clipboard. Then just paste the clip-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

board contents in the Help+Manual editor. You will be prompted to save in an external file and you can then choose the format you want to save in.

How to insert a graphic with Cut & Paste

- Copy the graphic to the Windows clipboard in the source program.
- Click in the editor at the position where you want to insert the graphic and press *Ctrl+V* or select **Clipboard** > **Paste** in the **Write** tab.
- You will be prompted to save the graphic in an external file.
- Give the image a descriptive name and save it in your project's graphics folder rather than the main project folder.
- To edit the graphic insertion properties double-click on the graphic to reopen the Open Image dialog 1359.

How to format the image caption

- The formatting of the caption text is controlled by a standard style 305 called *Image Caption*. You can change this for the entire project by editing the style 281.
- You can also change the appearance of the caption text by applying font attributes directly. To do this select the graphic in the editor, then select the font attribute you want to apply (bold, underlined, font etc).

Note that you can only format the entire caption text. You cannot apply different font attributes to individual parts of the text. For more details see Image caption and comment styles 305.

See also:

Graphics, Videos and OLE 1529 (Reference)

5.11.3 Positioning graphics

By default, a graphic inserted in Help+Manual is a handled as a single object in a paragraph, essentially the same as a character. This means that if it is alone in its paragraph it can be centered, left-justified and right-justified by adjusting the paragraph formatting settings. In addition to this you can also make text wrap around it to the left or right with the *Alignment:* settings in the Open Image 1359 dialog.

For more complex control over the position of graphics on your page you need to place the graphics in tables 518, in the same way that you would in a HTML page.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to align a graphic without wrapping text around it

You can center graphics on the page or place them on the left or right side of the page with the settings for the paragraph containing the graphic.

1. Click in the paragraph containing the graphic. There shouldn't be any text in the paragraph as the result would not look good in the output.
2. Format the paragraph to position the graphic. For example you can left-justify, center or right-justify the paragraph or add space before and space after to separate the graphic from the paragraphs above and below it. (You can also add space around the graphic with the **Spacing:** setting in the Open Image dialog 1359.

Formatting options:

Use the **Paragraph** tools in the **Write** tab or select the paragraph dialog icon at the bottom right corner of the Paragraph tools group to display the full Paragraph formatting dialog.

Responsive images: relative to page or table cell width

If you set the Display Size in the image dialog to *% of page width* or *scaled to full page width*, the zoom value you enter is relative to the container of the image. This is the page width if the image is inserted directly on the page or the table cell containing the image if the image is in a table.

In HTML output formats this makes the images responsive. This means that the images will automatically scale with the size of the window.

Use image styles for sizing images

Defining an image style 492 allows you to set an absolute or relative width (% of page width) for all images in a class. This ensures that all the images will be displayed with the same width on the page without you having to apply individual settings to each image. You just need to select the style for the image.

Preventing excessive scaling

If the width is defined as any percentage less than 100% (i.e. up to 99.90%), the image will only expand up to its full native width but will not zoom further to prevent excessive scaling. Setting a width of 100% turns this off and allows unlimited scaling. The *% of page width* and *scaled to full page width* options do this for you automatically. The first sets the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

width to 99.90%, the second sets it to 100%.

Putting responsive images side by side

If you set the image widths to add up to less than 100% you can put multiple responsive images on the same line and they will display side by side. The only exception to this are images with captions: These must be put in tables if you want to display them side by side, because otherwise the caption container will create a new paragraph after every image, even if the images fit on the page side by side.

Responsive images in table cells

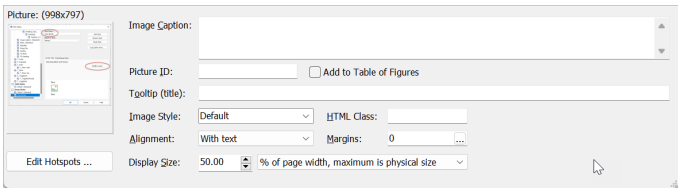
Note that when responsive images are in table cells their width is relative to the table cell, not to the page. So you could have three images in a table side by side in three cells, each with a width of 80%, for example. Each image will then be 80% of the width of the cell containing it, leaving 10% space on either side.

Responsive images with captions side by side

When images have captions they have an invisible container around the image that encloses the caption and keeps it with the image. This container always creates a new paragraph in HTML output. To put responsive images with captions side by side you must put them in a table. Otherwise each image will be in a separate paragraph, even if they would actually fit side by side.

How to wrap text to the left or right of the graphic

1. Double-click on the graphic to re-open the Open Image 1359 dialog.



2. Select *Left of text* or *Right of text* in the *Alignment:* field.
3. Set the *Padding:* value to increase the amount of free space around the image. You can also set separate padding values 487 for each side of the image. To do this quickly just click on the ... button in the *Padding:* field.

The wrapping is displayed in the editor and is supported in all output formats, including PDF.

See also:

About Graphics in Help+Manual 1529

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Working with Tables 518 Help+Manual 1529

5.11.4 Image Styles

You can now define styles for images in the same way as for paragraphs and tables. And just as with paragraphs and tables, changing the image style definition changes the formatting for all images tagged with the style.

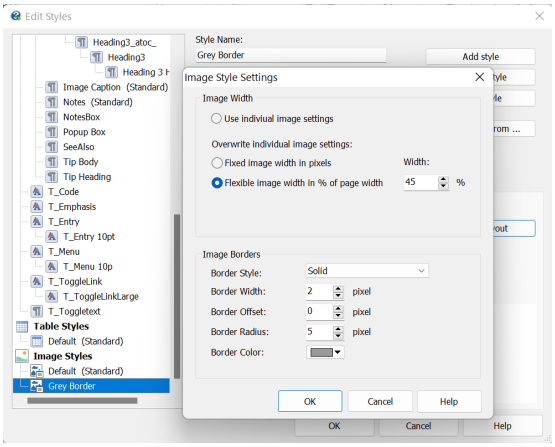


Image styles can also be used for image toggles and video placeholders

Note that image styles can be applied to image toggles 392 and the placeholders for videos and online media 548.

Image style settings

Image styles can include these settings. The width and height settings allow you to create a class of images that match exactly in your output.

Responsive or fixed width:

We recommend always using the responsive width setting (% of page width). This makes your images adjust to the browser or viewer window in HTML formats, or to the page width on publishing in PDF and Word files. In both cases this prevents your images from breaking your layout.

Responsive images in tables:
Note that when an image is in a table the % width is relative to the table cell, not to the page.

Fixed height:

This sets all the images to the same absolute height in pixels. You cannot combine this with a width setting. You must set either the width, or the height.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Borders: Apply a border around all images formatted with the style.

Caption alignment: Align the image caption left, centered or right.

Note on image styles in Word export

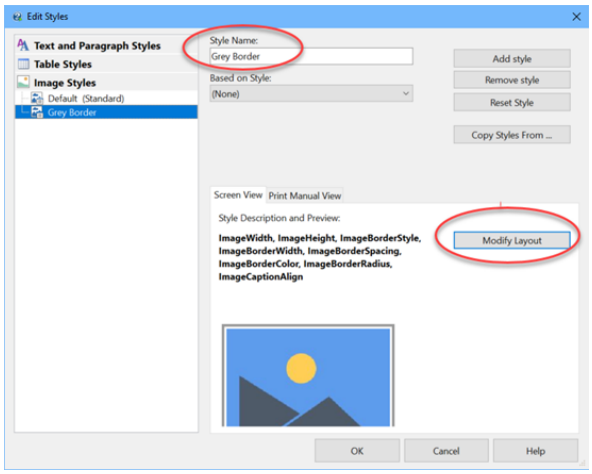
Image styles in Word DOCX export can have borders, but they cannot include rounded corners or an offset between the image and the border. This is a restriction of the style settings available in Word.

Defining an image style

Notes

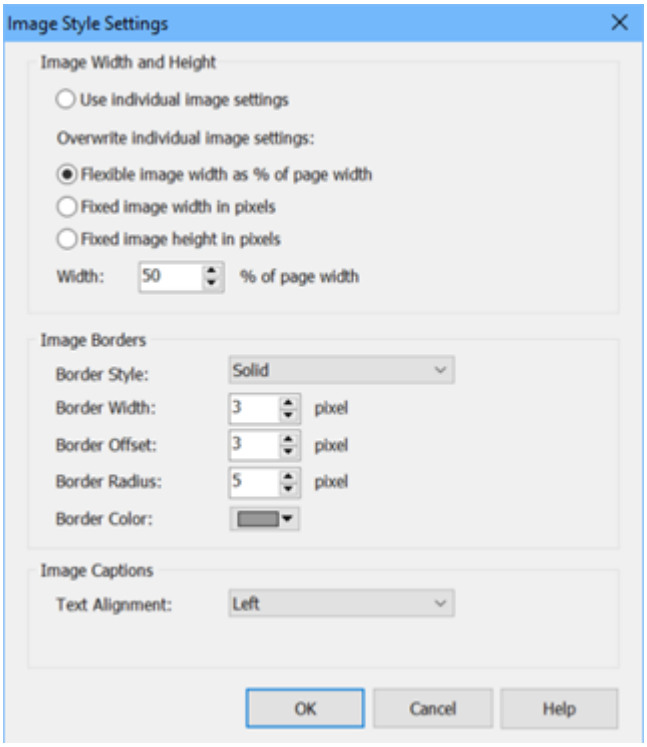
- You can't add style settings to the **Default** image style. This is the standard setting for images and is without additional style attributes.
- Image styles can be based on other image styles or independent. This is the same as with other style types.

Procedure



1. Open **Styles** > **Edit Styles** in the **Write** tab.
2. Locate the **Image Styles** heading and click on **Add Style**.
3. Enter a name and choose whether it is to be based on another style or not. Styles based on other styles inherit any settings you don't change in the parent.
4. Select Modify Layout to define the style settings.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Width or height:

You can define **either** the width **or** the height. The other setting is always automatic.

Percentage width or fixed width:
Percentage is recommended, because it makes the images responsive, adjusting in relation to the width of the current window or page. This is essential for responsive web design for both desktop and mobile devices, and it also ensures that your images won't break PDF and Word layouts.

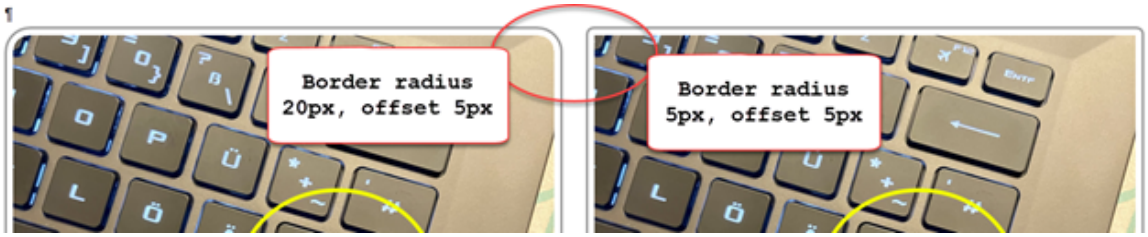
Borders:

You can define the border style (solid, dashed etc.), width and color. Plus the radius, which creates rounded corners, and an offset, for a border offset from the image.

Rounded borders with an offset:

If you use a style with rounded borders and an offset for the border, you will want the rounded corners of the image to match those of the border as closely as possible. For this to work, you need to use a fairly high value for the border radius. In the example below, the 5px radius doesn't match the image, but the 20px radius does.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Caption alignment:

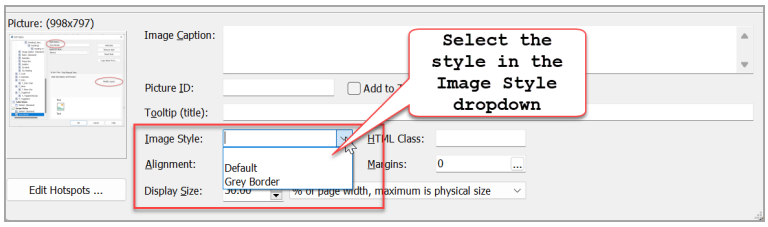
Centered, left or right. The text style for the caption is defined globally with the Image Caption style in the **Text & Paragraph Styles** section.

Applying styles to images

The style setting is in the **Insert/Open Image** dialog displayed when you insert an image. For existing images, just double-click on the image in the topic editor to display it.

Procedure

1. Insert a new image, or double-click on an existing image to display the dialog.
2. Select the style from the Image Style: dropdown list and click on Open to save.

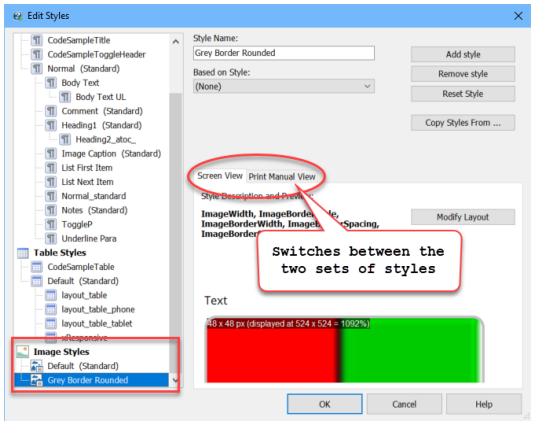


Dual Styles for electronic help and print-style help (PDF etc.)

Screen View and Print View tabs:

You can define two sets of settings for each style: Screen View is for electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp and eWriter Help), Print View is for page-style formats (PDF, Print User Manual, Word DOCX and ePUB eBooks).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



You can switch between the Screen and Print View style settings in the Help+Manual editor by clicking on the Screen/Print button in the status bar at the bottom of the main program window.

5.11.5 Responsive images

Graphics are often a problem in responsive layouts designed to adapt automatically to different device sizes – from desktop monitors to hand-held smartphones. Traditionally, graphics have fixed dimensions that break responsive layouts on screens that are smaller than the graphic.

To solve this problem you need to set the width of your graphics *in percent relative to the page dimensions*. Then the graphic can never be wider than the page. Length is not a problem, because pages can always scroll vertically. However, you never want the page to have to scroll horizontally on mobile devices with fluid layouts.

Maximizing quality for responsive images

The best way to maximize quality for responsive images is to use images that are larger than the intended display size and scale them with the responsive percentage settings. This is particularly important if you are targeting high-resolution devices and monitors, and it also produces better results for zooming and printing in PDF and DOCX documents. The images then have plenty of "reserve resolution" that allows them to display at acceptable sizes on high-resolution displays without being upscaled, which would result in fuzzy or jaggy images.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Making images responsive with the Display Size setting

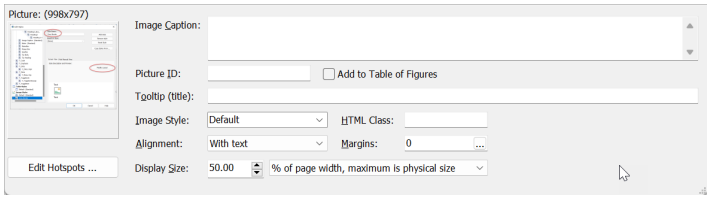
The setting you use for this is Display Size in the Insert Image dialog 481. There are corresponding settings for making images responsive in the image toggle 392 and video dialogs 549 as well, where they control the responsive behavior of the clickable/tappable preview images.

Tip: Use image styles for responsive images

You can set the same responsive width for an entire class of images with image styles 492.

Use an image style instead of setting the same dimensions for every image

If you define an image style 492, you can set the same absolute or relative width for all the images in a class. This ensures they will all be displayed with the same width on the page, and you no longer have to set the dimensions for every image. You just select the style.



The ***Display Size*** setting controls the display size of the image on the page and can make it either static or responsive.

Physical image size:	This is the traditional setting. It display the image at 1:1, in its natural native size. The image is non-responsive and will always force the layout around it to adapt to it. The only exceptions are PDF and DOCX, where Help+Manual will adjust the image width so that it fits on the page or in the table where it is located without breaking your layout.
% of physical image size:	This is also static. It simply resizes the image to display at the percentage of the original size you enter. If this is wider than the device it will still extend beyond the width of the window horizontally.
% of page with, maximum is physical size:	This creates a fully responsive image that will expand to a maximum of its own native size, but not more. If the page or

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	table cell is narrower than the native size the image will be scaled down. This automatically sets the width to 99.90%, which is the value that triggers this behavior.
Scaled to full page width:	This creates a fully responsive image without a maximum size restriction. It will continue to expand to the width of the page or table cell, no matter how wide they are. This is generally not recommended. It can result in fuzzy, jaggy images at larger resolutions.

Responsive SVG images in CHM help and older versions of Internet Explorer

Most browsers handle responsive SVG vector graphics correctly. There are two exceptions: Older versions of Microsoft Internet Explorer and the Microsoft HTML Help/CHM help format. Actually, this is just one exception, because the CHM viewer in Windows uses an older mode of Internet Explorer to render the HTML pages, and Internet Explorer is the problem.

Older versions of Internet Explorer and the CHM help viewer only scale responsive SVG graphics correctly if their internal **<svg>** tag contains correctly configured *width/height* attributes followed by a correctly configured *viewBox* attribute that also contains the default width and height of the graphic. If these three attributes are not all present and correctly configured, the SVG image will remain static and will not scale with the window, even if you insert it with responsive settings.

See SVG Graphics 500 for detailed instructions.

Enabling SVG export in CHM

By default, Help+Manual converts SVG images to PNG in CHM export, for maximum compatibility. If you want vector SVG images in your CHM you need to turn off PNG conversion in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > **HTML Export Options**.

Responsive images in PDF and DOCX

In PDF and DOCX responsive images don't adjust dynamically on viewing, because the page width is always static. The user can zoom the pages on the screen, but that simply

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

adjusting the display of the entire page. The layout does not "reflow" as it does in dynamic formats like WebHelp or CHM.

When you export responsive images to PDF and DOCX, the responsive part happens during the actual publishing operation. Help+Manual adjusts the images to the page width during this process in exactly the same way as the dynamic adjustment that happens when the user adjusts the window width in a web browser. However, since the resulting page width is static, the adjustment is also static and final.

It is still a good idea to insert larger images in PDF and DOCX, however. This gives you better image quality on high-resolution devices and for zooming and printing. In both formats, Help+Manual exports the full original image with a scaling command for its final display. If you use a larger image it will have "reserve capacity" that can be used for better display at different resolutions and printing.

Responsive images: relative to page or table cell width

If you set the Display Size in the image dialog to *% of page width* or *scaled to full page width*, the zoom value you enter is relative to the container of the image. This is the page width if the image is inserted directly on the page or the table cell containing the image if the image is in a table.

In HTML output formats this makes the images responsive. This means that the images will automatically scale with the size of the window.

Use image styles for sizing images

Defining an image style 492 allows you to set an absolute or relative width (% of page width) for all images in a class. This ensures that all the images will be displayed with the same width on the page without you having to apply individual settings to each image. You just need to select the style for the image.

Preventing excessive scaling

If the width is defined as any percentage less than 100% (i.e. up to 99.90%), the image will only expand up to its full native width but will not zoom further to prevent excessive scaling. Setting a width of 100% turns this off and allows unlimited scaling. The *% of page width* and *scaled to full page width* options do this for you automatically. The first sets the width to 99.90%, the second sets it to 100%.

Putting responsive images side by side

If you set the image widths to add up to less than 100% you can put multiple responsive

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

images on the same line and they will display side by side. The only exception to this are images with captions: These must be put in tables if you want to display them side by side, because otherwise the caption container will create a new paragraph after every image, even if the images fit on the page side by side.

Responsive images in table cells

Note that when responsive images are in table cells their width is relative to the table cell, not to the page. So you could have three images in a table side by side in three cells, each with a width of 80%, for example. Each image will then be 80% of the width of the cell containing it, leaving 10% space on either side.

Responsive images with captions side by side

When images have captions they have an invisible container around the image that encloses the caption and keeps it with the image. This container always creates a new paragraph in HTML output. To put responsive images with captions side by side you must put them in a table. Otherwise each image will be in a separate paragraph, even if they would actually fit side by side.

5.11.6 SVG Graphics

Vector-based SVG graphics files are very useful for responsive designs and any other formats where the content may be zoomed because they are compact and can be scaled without any loss of quality. You can insert them directly in your topics just like any other graphics files. How they are supported and handled in individual output formats varies slightly, however.

WebHelp:	Both uncompressed SVG and compressed SVGz graphics are exported directly as the original files in WebHelp. In addition to this, each image has a PNG fallback image that is displayed in older browsers that do not support SVG.
MS HTML Help/CHM: **(Also applies for older versions of Internet Explorer)**	The Microsoft CHM viewer uses an older mode of Internet Explorer to display help pages which is not seamlessly compatible with SVG files. They can only be rendered correctly if certain conditions are fulfilled. Because of this, SVGs are converted to PNG by default when you publish to CHM. If you are sure that your SVG files will work correctly in CHM you can turn this conversion off.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Characteristics of the PNG conversion:

When SVGs are converted to PNG the resulting PNG will have the current display dimensions of the SVG or the original SVG dimensions, whichever are larger.

Enable export of native SVG files to CHM:

By default, Help+Manual converts SVG to PNG for CHM export for maximum compatibility. If you want vector SVGs to be exported natively to CHM you need to turn off PNG conversion in **Configuration > Publishing Options > Microsoft HTML Help > HTML Export Options**.

Compiler warnings for incompatible SVGs

Help+Manual checks for these attributes when you publish to CHM with native SVG support switched on. If it encounters files without the necessary attributes warnings will be displayed in the compiler report.

Conditions for correct rendering of SVG graphics in the CHM viewer

SVG graphics are will be rendered and scaled correctly in the Microsoft CHM viewer if the following conditions are fulfilled:

1) The skin or template includes the following line in the HTML Page Template:

```
<meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=9" />
```

This line is included by default in all of Help+Manual's standard CHM skins and in the CHM skins in the Premium Pack add-on. If this line is missing or if the IE level is set to 8 or lower, the CHM viewer will not support SVG and the SVG graphics will be converted to PNG on export.

2) The SVG file you use contains correctly configured *width*, *height* and *viewBox* attribute

The version of MS Internet Explorer used in the CHM viewer can

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	only scale SVG graphics if the **<svg>** tag in the SVG file contains correctly configured width and height attributes followed by the correctly configured *viewBox* attribute. These attributes should look like this when you view the SVG file in a code or text editor (see further below for instructions): `<svg width="212.16249" height="211.27501" viewBox="0 0 212.16249 211.27501" ...` **Configuring the *width*, *height* and *viewBox* attributes in your SVG images** If your graphic program can configure the *width*, *height* and *viewBox* attributes in the **<svg>** tag in your images you just need to enable those options there. Otherwise you need to edit the **.svg** file in a text/code editor and add the attributes to the **<svg>** tag yourself. (SVG files are actually text files containing vector graphics code.) **Editing the <svg> tag manually** 1. Open the .svg file in a text or code editor (NOT in a word processor!). 2. Locate the **<svg ...** tag, which begins in the first line of the file. 3. Add the *viewBox* attribute after the *width* and *height* attributes, as follows: `<svg width="212.16249" height="211.27501" viewBox="0 0 212.16249 211.27501" ...` 4. The first two values in the *viewBox* attribute are two zeroes separated by a space. This is followed by the width and height values, which should be exactly the same as the values from the *width* and *height* attributes, as shown in the example. 5. Save the SVG file. After this, it should behave responsively in CHM and Internet Explorer.
Word DOCX:	Only the latest version of Word 2016 in the Office 365 edition supports SVG graphics. To ensure maximum compatibility with the very large number of users on other versions, SVG graphics are converted to PNG files for export to Word DOCX.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	When SVGs are converted to PNG the resulting PNG will have the current display dimensions of the SVG or the original SVG dimensions, whichever are larger.
Adobe PDF:	SVG graphics are exported to PDF if possible (if they are not too complex). More complex SVGs will be exported to PNG with alpha transparency, which is supported natively in PDF. When SVGs are converted to PNG the resulting PNG will have a 32-bit color depth and will have the current display dimensions of the SVG or the original SVG dimensions, whichever are larger.
eWriter Help:	Same support as in WebHelp (eWriter is WebHelp in a single file with an embedded viewer).
ePUB and Kindle eBooks:	SVG graphics are supported natively in these formats.

5.11.7 Editing, resizing, PDF, DOCX and hi-res devices

You can edit the properties of a graphic by double-clicking on it. You can also resize your graphics directly in the editor by selecting it and dragging its corners with the mouse or by double-clicking and entering a zoom factor. Although this function is primarily designed for high-resolution printing with PDF files you can use it for all your output formats whenever you need a quick resize. You may obtain slightly better quality if you resize in Impict 1216 or another graphics program, but this feature can be a great time-saver when you are in a hurry.

Editing graphics properties and captions

- Just double-click on any graphic to display the Open Image 1359 dialog where you can edit the caption, alignment, spacing (empty space around the graphic) and hotspots 509 (clickable links in the graphic).
- You can adjust the size of graphics precisely with the *Zoom %* setting in the Open Image dialog. This does not physically resize the image until you publish and in PDF the full image resolution is used (see below).
- You can also edit the properties and hotspots by right-clicking on a graphic and selecting from the *Picture...* options in the context menu.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Resizing graphics in the Help+Manual editor

Note that resizing does not physically change the image file, except in one case in CHM output (see further below). The full original images are always exported, along with a scaling command for the individual output format. If you want smaller image files you need to resize the images physically in a graphics program.

- **Quick resize:** Just click once on the graphic to select it and resize it by dragging the resize handles displayed at the edges. It doesn't matter which handle you drag because the height and width of the graphic are always resized proportionally.
- **Precise resizing:** Double-click on the graphic to display the Image dialog and enter a zoom factor in percent. This also allows you to configure responsive image settings 496.
- **Undo resize:** To return the graphic to its original size just double-click on it to display the Open Image dialog and select the *Autosize* option.

How resized images are processed on publishing

Nothing is actually done to the image when you resize it in the Help+Manual editor. Your original source image file is not changed at all, and is never changed. Any processing is only performed on publishing. How resized images are handled on publishing depends on the output format:

WebHelp, ePUB, Kindle and eWriter: Export images with original dimensions

The images are exported with their original native dimensions when you publish to to these formats. Instead of physically resizing the image, Help+Manual simply adjusts the display size of the image. Modern browsers and eBook viewers do an excellent job of scaling and this provides much better quality for responsive images on high-resolution devices.

HTML Help/CHM: Original images or physical resizing

Help+Manual generates fully scalable pages for CHM output if you activate the setting *Make CHM file compatible with high-resolution monitors* in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > **HTML Export Options**. Then the original images are exported in exactly the same way as for WebHelp, along with a scaling setting. If you turn this option off the images are physically resized to the target dimensions during the publishing process.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

PDF and DOCX: Export images with original dimensions

Images exported to these formats are handled in the same way as WebHelp. The image is exported with its full original dimensions along with a scaling command that controls its display dimensions on the page, in accordance with your image dimensions settings. Here too, this gives you better quality for zooming and printing if you insert an image with native dimensions larger than those of the display dimensions.

Using high-resolution graphics for PDF, DOCX and printing

When you print PDF or DOCX files or view them at above 100% graphics can look "blocky" and "jaggy". You can solve this problem by using larger graphics and resizing them in the Help+Manual editor. Since the images are exported with their original dimensions they then have enough "reserve resolution" for better quality display on high-resolution devices and printers.

Resizing graphics physically with the Impict graphics editor

For the best possible resize quality when using native image dimensions rather than responsive images you can also resize your graphics files physically. You can do this with your own favorite graphics editor, or with Impict, the screenshot enhancement and graphics editor included with Help+Manual, or with any other graphics editor.

However, with the increasing use of high-resolution devices this method is no longer as useful as it used to be. Generally, it is now almost always better to insert larger responsive images that will give you better display quality on these modern devices.

- To edit a graphic in Impict just click on the graphic in the editor to select it and then select *Image Editor* in **Project** > **Tools**.
- Once you have opened the image in Impict you can then resize it by right-clicking on it, selecting *Edit Properties* and then *Quality Resize*.
- After saving the new version in Impict (don't change the filename or location) just select another topic briefly in Help+Manual and then return to the current topic to reload the topic with the modified graphic.

See also:

About Graphics in Help+Manual 1529
Conditions and Customized Output 969

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.11.8 Using the Impict graphics editor

Help+Manual comes with its own powerful graphics program called Impict for editing and enhancing screenshots and other graphics. This editor has a wide range of powerful features for making professional help graphics and screenshots.

How to open a graphic in Impict

- Click once on the graphic in the Help+Manual editor screen to select it, then select *Tools* > *Image Editor* in the **Project** tab.

Impict comes with its own comprehensive help and documentation. Please refer to this for full details on using the program.

Treating IPP images as transparent

By default, IPP images are non-transparent and their background is the solid color that you define for the image canvas in Impict. However, if you wish you can also change a setting in Help+Manual that converts the IPP image background to transparent. Then the canvas background color will be transparent and the image will be exported as a PNG image with an alpha transparent background.

Setting for transparent IPPs

Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Editor** and activate the option *Treat Impict images (*.ipp) as transparent and ignore the background*.

Editable objects and texts in Impict images

The great advantage of Impict is that all effects and objects you add to your images are non-destructive. You can always go back and edit your screenshots later if you need to make changes – you don't need to rebuild the entire screenshot.

Texts in Impict images can be exported to XML files for translation. See the Impict help for details.

For all these features you must save working copies of your images in Impict's own IPP format – you can't save editable objects and texts in standard formats like BMP, GIF or JPG.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.11.9 Using the screen capture function

Help+Manual has an integrated screen capture function that includes most of the functionality you need to make attractive screenshots quickly and efficiently. The function will automatically select windows, controls and menus and you can also select freely-defined rectangular regions of applications or the desktop and fixed size regions.

In addition to simple screenshots you can also make screenshots with a wide variety of different shapes, add shadows and background colors and automatically resize your screenshots with a choice of high-quality scaling filters.

Using the screen capture tool

- Select the *Screen Capture* tool in **Project** > **Tools**. The tool is pretty self-explanatory but for full instructions see Screen Capture 1207 in the **Tools Included with Help+Manual** chapter.

For even more screenshot power try our free TNT utility, which combines screen capture and graphics editing:

TNT Screen Capture Program Page

Making screen captures with Impict

You may want make screen captures for editing, without inserting them in your topic directly. To do this use the screen capture feature in Impict 1216, the specialized graphics editor included with Help+Manual.

Impict's screenshot tool simply captures a plain screenshot without applying any automatic effects. All the effects can be applied inside Impict. The advantage of this is that Impict's effects and objects are non-destructive – you can always go back and make changes later if you save a working copy in Impict's own IPP format.

The texts stored in Impict IPP images can also be exported to XML files for translation.

Screen capture seems to fail with some applications - no red border

On some Windows systems you may experience that the screen capture function doesn't seem to work. When you start the capture you don't see the red border around the windows or elements you want to capture and no captures are made. This is caused by permissions restrictions in your Windows account that are preventing you from capturing elements from applications with different permissions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Solution: Start Help+Manual in Administrator mode

The solution is simple, just start Help+Manual in Administrator mode:

1. Close Help+Manual (or Impict if you started it independently, outside of Help+Manual).
2. Right-click on the program item for starting Help+Manual (or Impict if you are starting it outside of Help+Manual) and select *Run as Administrator* in the context menu.

You will then have maximum permissions, which will also allow you to perform capture functions on all other applications.

See also:

Screen Capture 1207
About Graphics in Help+Manual 1529
The Impict Screenshot Editor 1216

5.11.10 Using graphics as hyperlinks

In addition to standard text links you can also use graphics as hyperlinks 409 in your help project, for all the different supported link types. You can use this feature to turn entire illustrations into clickable links, or to use your own graphical buttons as links.

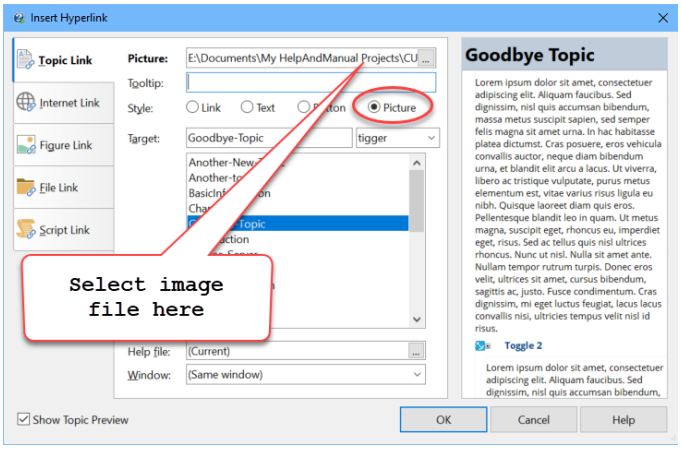
In addition to this you can also add "hotspots" to your graphics, which are clickable regions that can have all the properties that any other link in a Help+Manual can have. See Graphics with hotspots, macros and scripts 509 for details.

How to use a graphic as a link

Note that you cannot turn an existing graphic in your text into a link, you have to edit a link and select a graphic instead of a caption.

1. Create a new hyperlink or double-click on an existing link to edit it.
2. Select the *Picture* option in the *Style:* section of the Hyperlink dialog 1352. The title of the entry field at the top changes to *Picture:*, where you can then specify the graphics file you want to use.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Click on the ... browse button next to the entry field to select your graphic file.
4. Click on OK to close the dialog.

See also:

Inserting Hyperlinks 409

5.11.11 Graphics with hotspots, macros and scripts

Hotspots are active, clickable areas in graphics. Hotspot data is stored separately from the graphics, which makes it possible to add hotspots to all graphics types, not just special hot-spot graphics. All the link types supported in the editor are also supported in hotspots (topic links, Internet links, file links and script links).

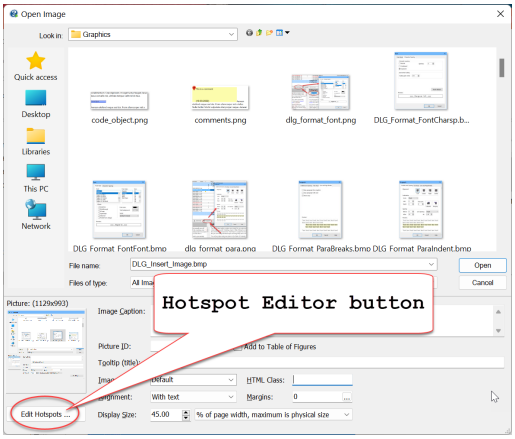
Since the link types are identical to those used in normal topics their settings are only described briefly here. See Links, Anchors, Macros, Scripts and HTML 409 for more information on hyperlinks.

Key Information
Hotspots in graphics are only supported in electronic output formats (HTML Help, Windows eWriter Help, Visual Studio Help and PDF with hyperlinks activated). ePUB eBook readers do not support hotspots.

How to insert and edit a hotspot in a graphic

1. Insert the graphic in your topic.
2. Open the hotspot editor:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

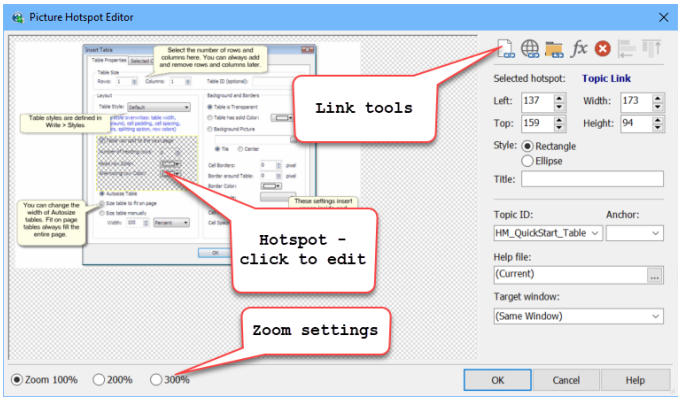


Hotspot editor in the Open Image dialog

- Double-click on the graphic and then click on the *Hotspots...* button

OR

- Right-click on the graphic and select **Picture** > **Edit Hotspots** in the context menu.



3. Click on one of the *Insert Hotspot* tools (this will insert a new hotspot in the top left corner of the graphic). These include tools for Topic Links, Internet Links, File Links and Script Links.
4. Move and resize the hotspot with the mouse and select the hotspot style (**`Rectangle`** or **`Ellipse`**). You can also enter the precise size and position of your hotspot as pixel values.
5. Select and enter the hotspot details. These are exactly the same as for ordinary links in topics.

Editing hotspots:

To edit a hotspot just double-click on the graphic and open the Hotspots editor again.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Linking to popup topics

You don't have to do anything special to create a link to a popup topic. A topic defined as a popup will automatically display as a popup when you link to it, so you just need to create a normal topic link and choose a popup topic as the target.

See Creating popup topics 207 for full instructions on how to create and use popup topics. All the instructions here apply for links in hotspots, which are essentially exactly the same as normal links.

Making the clickable hotspot areas invisible or visible

By default the hotspot area will be made visible in the CHM, WebHelp or eWriter output so that the user can see where it is, and it will also respond on mouseover to indicate that it is active. This is a good solution when your images don't contain areas that are clearly meant to be clicked or tapped.

If you prefer the hotspots to be invisible so that the clickable areas are indicated by your graphics you can turn this feature off. Then the hotspots will be completely invisible and will only change the mouse cursor on mouseover.

For WebHelp and eWriter Help:

In the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**. Disable the option *Highlight hotspots in pictures*.

For HTML Help/CHM help files and Visual Studio Help:

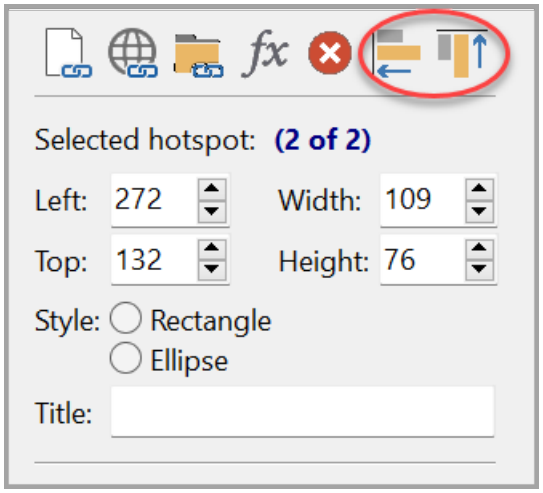
In the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **HTML Export Options**. Disable the option *Highlight hotspots in pictures*.

How to align hotspots precisely

The *Align* buttons arrange all the selected hotspots in a row, aligning them to first hotspot that you select:

1. Use *Shift+Click* to select all the hotspots you want to align. The hotspots will be lined up with the first hotspot you select.
2. Select one of the two *Align* tools to align the hotspots vertically or horizontally.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



The alignment tools are activated when two or more hotspots are selected.

Old IPP and SHG graphics with hotspots

In Help+Manual 3 and earlier, hotspots were stored in Impict IPP graphics files and in files in the standard Microsoft SHG format. If you convert HM3 projects containing these graphics to the current Help+Manual format the hotspots will be converted correctly.

However if you insert old IPP or SHG graphics containing hotspots in a current Help+Manual project the hotspots will not be available. If you want to use hotspots in these graphics you must re-enter them using the hotspot editor following the instructions above.

Hotspot compatibility in publishing formats

HTML Help:	Supported (JavaScript and four standard Winhelp macros 452)
Visual Studio Help:	Same as HTML Help but all external file links are explicitly forbidden in Visual Studio Help.
WebHelp:	Supported (JavaScript but no Winhelp macros, JavaScript support also depends to a great extent on the user's browser, so use with caution)
eWriter for Windows eBooks:	Same as in WebHelp
ePUB eBooks	Hotspots are included in the ePUB specification but most ePUB readers (both hardware and software) do not support them so they

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	should be avoided
Kindle eBooks	Kindle eBooks do not support images with hotspots
Adobe PDF:	Hotspot topic links are supported, no support for script or macro links
Word DOCX:	No support for graphics hotspots.

See also:

Links, Anchors, Macros, Scripts and HTML 409
IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600

5.11.12 Finding and replacing graphics

The Find & Replace function for text can also locate and replace references to graphics files in your entire project. This can be very useful if a graphic that you have used over and over again in your entire project needs to be replaced quickly!

Key Information
This function only replaces the file names in the references to the graphics files in your topics. It does NOT change the actual graphics files or their names!

How to find and replace graphics with Find & Replace

1. Make a note of the exact names of the graphics files you want to find and replace.
2. Select Find & Replace in **Write** > **Editing.**
3. Select the In *Image Filenames* option in the *Find Where* section of the dialog.
4. Use the other options in the dialog to define the scope of your search. See Find & Replace Text 1326 in the **Reference** section for details.

This function only searches for entire graphics file names. Wildcard characters are not supported. This means you must enter the entire name, including the dot and the file extension.

A quicker way to replace graphics files

There is a quicker way to do this if the name of the graphics file you want to replace is not important:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Just overwrite the original graphics file in your project graphics directory with the updated or different graphic, so that the new graphic is in the same location and has the same name as the old graphic.

Help+Manual always checks the size of graphics when it loads them so this also works with graphics that have different dimensions. The two graphics must both have the same format, however! (You cannot use this method to replace a JPG with a GIF graphic, for example.)

See also:

Searching for text, topics and referrers 235
Find & Replace Text 1326
Find Topic 1304
Find Referrers 1306

5.11.13 Managing your graphics

When you add graphics to a project Help+Manual inserts a reference to the graphic file that only contains the name of the file. It finds the graphics by looking in the folders listed in the Project Search Path, which is defined in the Configuration section of your project. The folders here are searched in order and the first file with a matching name is used.

This strategy makes it very easy to organize and move your graphics files – you just need to change the settings in the Project Search Path to let Help+Manual know where to look for the graphics.

It is generally advisable to store your image folders together with your project folder.

Key Information
If you use multiple graphics folders it is very important to avoid duplicate filenames in different image folders! If you have duplicates Help+Manual will only find the first version of the graphics file with a matching name.

Editing the Project Search Path

Help+Manual locates graphics on the disk by searching in the directories listed in the Project Search Path. You do not normally need to add image folders to the path manually. The program does this for you when you insert images from a new folder.

- To edit the Image Folders list manually go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Program Search Path** for your current project in the Project Explorer.
- See Project Search Path 1405 for more details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Moving image files and image folders

You are free to move your image files and image folders whenever you like. Since only the image file names are stored in your project you just need to change the references in the Project Search Path to tell Help+Manual where to look for the files.

1. Move and/or rename the image folders and their contents.
2. Edit the Project Search Path (see above) to remove the old directories and add the new ones. Help+Manual will now find your images in the new location(s).

Splitting and consolidating image folders:

You can also reorganize your image files in any way you like – for example move all your image files to a single folder or to multiple folders in any locations. You just need to tell Help+Manual where to look for the images in the Image Search Path settings.

Moving your projects to different locations

The references in the Project Search Path are actually relative, even though the full paths of all the folders are shown for your information. This means that moving your project is very easy.

- If you save both your project folder and your image folders in the same folder you can move your project without needing to make any changes to the Project Search Path.
- If your image folders and your project folders are in different locations you will need to update your Project Search Path after moving your project folder.

Managing graphics in modular projects

It's always important to avoid duplicate filenames for your graphics. This applies in particular for modular projects, because you will often have separate graphics folders for each project.

Duplicate names across project modules are OK in HTML Help with runtime merging 1552 because then each module is published individually and the correct graphics will be used. However, you need to avoid duplicates in all other formats and in modular projects with publish-time merging 1551 in HTML Help.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use filename prefixes for graphics files in modules

The simplest solution for this problem is to add a unique prefix to the filenames of graphics files used in modules, in the same way that you use prefixes for the topic IDs 1107 in modules. The prefix should be short – two letters and an underline character are usually plenty – and should identify the module.

IDs and CSS classes for graphics

The Insert Image dialog has two optional fields for *Picture ID:* and *HTML Class:*. An ID you enter here will be exported as the *id="your_id"* attribute for the image's <img> tag in HTML-based output formats, and the HTML class is exported as the *class="your_class"* attribute.

Tip: You can enter multiple class names separated by spaces in the HTML Class: field if you need more than one class for the image.

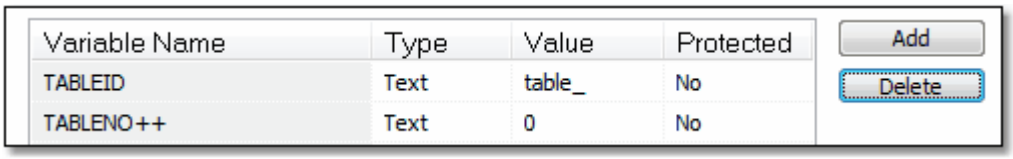
You will not need these features for normal graphics but they are sometimes useful. For example, if you are planning to manipulate your graphics with your own CSS or JavaScript code.

Creating auto-incrementing IDs for cloned copies of images

In HTML an ID always has to be unique, you should never have more than one object on the same page with the same ID. This can be a problem if you are cloning copies of a ready-made image. You can get around this by creating an automatically-incrementing ID with text variables.

You can't mix text and variables in topic IDs so you need to create two variables to do this.

1. Go to **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables** and create two text variables 919, one for the static part of the ID and one for the incrementing number. The static part can have any name you like, the incrementing number must have two plus characters at the end of its name, for example `IMAGENO++`.
2. Let's say the two variables are `IMAGEID` and `IMAGENO++`. Now enter any text you like as the text for the `IMAGEID` variable, for example *myimage_*, and a *0* (the number zero) as the text for the `IMAGEENO++` variable, like this (this example shows similar variables for use in tables):



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Then instead of an ID, type in both variables in the *Picture ID:* field in the Insert Image dialog (or double-click on an image that has already been inserted), like this:
   <%IMAGEID%><%IMAGENO++%>

Then every time you make a copy of the image in your project a new unique ID will be generated automatically. The first will be *myimage_1,* the second will be *myimage_2* and so on.

See also:

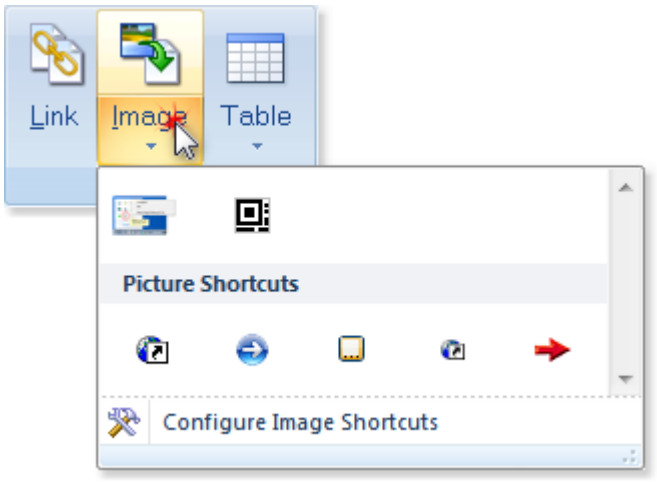
Image Folders 1405
Importing graphics from RTF files 157

5.11.14 Shortcuts for graphics

You probably have some graphics that you use again and again in your project – logos, images of buttons and so on. Help+Manual's "Recent Images" and "Image Shortcuts" functions make accessing images quick and easy. Recent Images shows thumbnails of all the images you have used recently, so that you can click on them to insert them again. Image Shortcuts is a configurable list of graphics that you can select and insert in your projects with a single click.

How to access Recent Images and Image Shortcuts

To display the Image Shortcuts list select the menu icon below the Insert Picture tool in **Write** > **Insert**. The Recent Images selection appears automatically as soon as you have inserted some images in your projects. You must add images to the Image Shortcuts list yourself by selecting *Configure Image Shortcuts*.



Recent Images only appears when you have inserted images

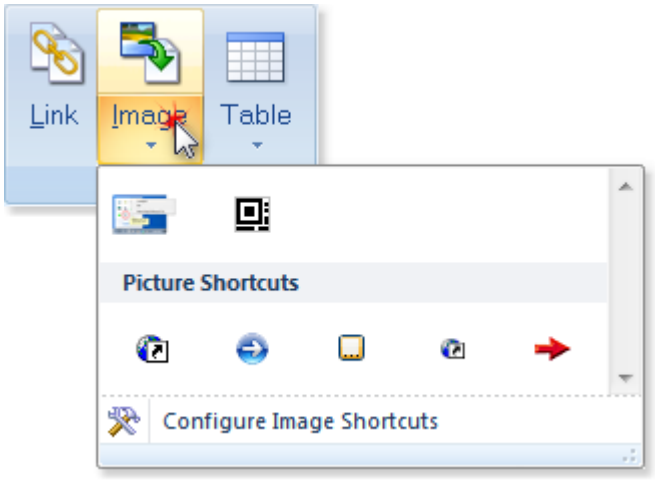
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to use the Image Shortcuts list

Image Shortcuts graphics are not embedded in your project. They are simply links for quick access to frequently-used graphics. This means that you can also use shortcuts for larger images.

Adding images to the list:

1. Click on the dialog icon below the Image tool in **Write** > **Insert** and select *Configure Image Shortcuts:*



2. Select *Add Picture* in the dialog displayed to add a new image to the list.

Inserting images:

Click in the editor in the position where you want to insert the image, then click on the thumbnail image you want to insert in the Picture Shortcuts menu.

Organizing the list:

Use *Add Category* to organize your images in categories, which are also displayed in the menus. Use *Move Up and Move Down* to arrange your images and categories in the list.

See also:

Graphics References 1056

5.12 Working with Tables

Tables in Help+Manual are a little different from what you may be used to if you have only worked with a word processor like MS Word up to now. This is necessary because most of the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

main output formats supported by Help+Manual are more like dynamic HTML pages than the static print-style pages produced by word processors.

Word processor tables are "static" – you define them once and they stay the same. In HTML and similar formats, tables can shrink and grow as the user changes the size of the browser or viewer window. This means that you need to be able to define both tables and table columns with dynamic widths that can change interactively, and you also need to plan the layout of your table content to accommodate this behavior.

This is also important for "static" formats like Word DOCX and PDF, because when you publish your project your tables must fit inside the margins of the page. For this to be possible, the table must be able to adjust to the width of the page when your topic is converted into a PDF or DOCX file.

5.12.1 About tables

Help+Manual supports fully-formatted complex tables. Your tables can have styles, borders, background colors, background images, alternating colors in alternating rows and much more. Tables break automatically at page boundaries in PDF and other print-style output formats, both between rows and within rows.

You can also define styles for tables in the same way as for paragraphs. This allows you to format complex tables in seconds and when you change the style definition all tables formatted with the table style will be updated automatically.

Table tools in the Table tab

You can insert tables with the Table tool in **Write** > **Insert** but all the main tools for manipulating tables are in the **Table** tab of the ribbon. Most of the tools here are self-explanatory – just make selections in your table and select the tools.

Table styles

- Table styles are defined and managed together with paragraph and text styles. To create and edit table styles select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab.
- To apply a style to a table just click in the table and then select **Table** > **Properties** and select the style you want to use.
- You can also select a style when you are defining a new table.

See Table styles 533 for more details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Tables occupy an entire paragraph

A table is inserted as a single paragraph containing a single object (the table). It is not possible to add any more objects to this paragraph. For example, if you type a character in the paragraph before or after the table this will automatically insert a new paragraph. This has two important consequences:

- You can delete an entire table by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** key once.
- You can indent and center tables by applying paragraph formatting to the paragraph containing the table.

Copying and pasting in and between tables

You can copy and paste both the contents of individual cells and of multiple cells. To copy multiple cells select all the cells you want to copy with the mouse and copy to the clip-board. Then click in position where you want to insert and the same number of cells will be overwritten from that point.

Warning: Pasting multiple cells overwrites the target cells!

See also:

Table styles 533

5.12.2 Inserting tables

You can insert new tables with tools in the **Write** and **Table** tabs of the Ribbon. The Table tab provides you with direct access to all the table editing tools.

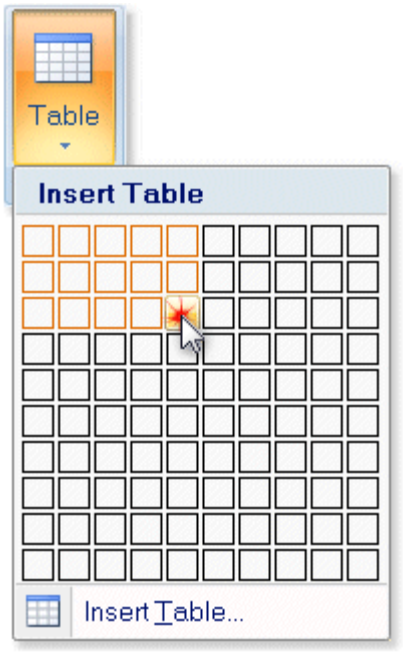
Tables as link targets

You can link directly to tables in topic links 410 in the same way as anchors. You just need to assign an ID to the table, then it will be shown as a target in the anchor list in the link tool.

Key Information
If you set a color for the heading row of a table it will only be displayed if your table has at least one heading row! Check this in Table Properties if your heading row color is not displaying.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to create a new table



1. Select the *Table* tool in **Write** > **Insert**.
2. For a quick table just highlight the number of rows and columns in the table matrix and click to insert the table. For more control click on **Insert Table** to display the Insert Table dialog.
3. Enter the number of rows and columns and choose your formatting options.

For full details see Table Properties 1391 in the **Reference** section.

Choosing the table width options

Column widths are not set when you create the table. Please see Managing column widths 522 and About table and column widths 1502 for details on setting and adjusting the widths of your tables and their columns.

You can choose the following table width options when you insert a table:

Autosize: Creates a table that calculates its size on the basis of the contents of its cells. The absolute width of the table in your output will depend on how you adjust the width of the cells and the content you put in them.

Size table to fit on page: Creates a table that is permanently maximized to the width of the current paragraph (if the paragraph has indents the table will be narrower than the page). This is exactly the same as sizing manually and setting a width of 100%.

Size table manually: Creates a table with a fixed width in percent or pixels. Percentage values are relative to the width of the current paragraph. Setting a value of 100% is exactly the same as *Size table to fit on page*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Setting up tables for printing

Tables can be set to split automatically at page boundaries for PDFs and manual printouts. Note that this function is not supported by the Print Topic tool in the **Topics** tab, which is a very simple print function.

- Select *Table can split to next page* in the Table Properties to ensure that page breaks can be inserted when you output to PDFs and printed manuals.
- Select the *Number of heading rows* that you want repeat on each page as the ongoing header of the table.

If you set a background color for your table header it will only be displayed if you define at least one heading row!

Converting text to a table

You can convert selected paragraphs to a table. Columns will be created automatically at tab characters in the text. Note that you cannot convert text to a table inside another table.

Context menu: Direct conversion without a dialog

Right-click on the selected text and select *Convert text to a Table* in the context menu. This uses the default table format directly. You can configure the table afterwards with the **Properties** tool in the **Table** tab.

Table tool: Configure the table with a dialog

Select the paragraphs you want to convert and then select the **Table** tool in the **Write** or **Table** tab. Before the table is created the table properties dialog is displayed with which you can configure all table attributes except the number of columns and rows. Those are based on the selected paragraphs and the tab characters they contain.

See also:

Table Properties 1391 (Reference)
Managing column widths 522
How table sizing works 1502 (Reference)

5.12.3 Managing column widths

By default, the widths of all columns in tables are "dynamic" – they expand to fit the width of the content they contain and the defined width of the table. After you create a table you can adjust the widths of columns by dragging their borders with the mouse and by setting their widths to absolute or percentage values in the Table Properties dialog.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can also "lock" the widths of columns. This can be necessary if you are using tables as a layout tool and want to have column widths that do not change dynamically when the users adjusts the size of the help viewer window.

How you define your column widths is crucial for how your tables behave in your published output, in particular in formats like PDF and DOCX where the tables must fit inside a fixed page width.

Relationship of column width to table width

The table width is defined when you create the table and can be changed with the *Properties* tool in the **Table** tab. The width can be dynamic or fixed.

In tables with dynamic widths (autosize, percentage widths and 100%/fit to page) you must always have at least one column with a dynamic width that can resize to allow the table to resize. If you do not Help+Manual will make all column widths dynamic in your output and the results may be unexpected.

Setting and changing column widths

To adjust the width of a column you must make its width fixed, otherwise it will expand automatically to fit its content. You do this by dragging the column dividers with the mouse or by changing the settings in the Table Properties dialog.

- **Drag column dividers with the mouse**
  This will lock the width of both affected columns. If you want one of the columns to be dynamic click on the *Lock Column* tool (see below) in the **Table** tab to unlock it again after resizing.
- **Use Table Properties**
  Click in a column or click and drag to select 525 two or more columns. Then select the *Selected Cells* tab in **Table** > **Properties** and enter a width value in percent or pixels.
- **Use the Lock Column tool**
  When working with column widths use the *Lock Column* tool in the **Table** tab while you are working to lock and unlock the widths of columns. It also shows you whether the current column is locked or unlocked.

Column widths in complex tables:

If you merge and split cells in a table you will find that some widths cannot be changed beyond a certain point because the rows and columns no longer extend across the entire height and width of the table. In some cases you may have to use nested tables or multiple tables to achieve the widths you need.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Lock Column tool

The *Lock Column* tool in the **Table** tab sets the width of the selected column or columns to a fixed value in pixels. In locked columns selecting the tool unlocks the column and makes it dynamic again.

You can also access the same function by right-clicking in the column or by setting a fixed width in pixels for *Selected Cells* in **Table** > **Properties**.

Possible and impossible column widths

The column widths you set will only be used if they are possible, otherwise you will have problems in your output:

- If all column widths are in percent their total must be exactly 100%, otherwise they will all be ignored.
- Avoid mixing columns with percentage widths and pixel widths in fixed-width tables. Browsers, particularly the famously competent Microsoft Internet Explorer, will often interpret these "mixed widths" incorrectly.
- If the table width is dynamic ("autosize" or "percent") you must always have at least one dynamic column.

If your column width settings are contradictory or impossible all columns will be made dynamic in your output and the results may be unexpected!

Column widths and PDF/DOCX output

PDF and DOCX files have fixed margins and fixed page widths. This means that your tables and their content must fit inside the margins of your pages in these formats. If they do not fit with the defined column widths Help+Manual will make all the column widths dynamic to force the table to fit. The results may be unexpected!

You should always have at least one dynamic column in your tables to allow the table width to be adjusted to fit on the PDF or DOCX page. Adjustable columns should only contain wrapping text; fixed-width content like graphics or paragraphs with word wrap turned off (for example program code examples) will prevent column width adjustment.

See also:

Table Properties 1391 (Reference)
How table sizing works 1502 (Reference)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.12.4 Editing, copying and pasting in tables

You can edit text in your table cells just as you would on a normal page. There are just a few things you need to be aware of:

- **Each cell is like a separate document**
  Text doesn't flow or continue from one cell to another.
- **Numbered lists cannot span table cells**
  Since each cell is a separate document you can only have numbered lists within a cell. Numbering cannot "continue" from one cell to the next, neither horizontally nor vertically.
- **Cells can have their own height and width settings**
  These settings are applied with the "selected cells" tab in the table options dialog. If the width or height of the text in your output looks different or "off" check the width and height settings of the cell containing it.

Copying and pasting single and multiple cells

You can copy and paste content of both single and multiple cells from one position in a table to another and from one table to another.

If you copy multiple cells the contents of the target cells will be replaced with the copied content. It will overwrite exactly the same number of cells as those copied.

5.12.5 Selecting and formatting cells and tables

In general you can select and format tables and cells just as you would in a normal word processor. However, there are a couple of differences. Also, you need to remember that tables in Help+Manual behave more like dynamic HTML tables than the static tables you may be used to if you have only worked with word processors up to now.

Key Information
Changing the widths of table columns with the mouse always locks the width of both affected columns. Always use the Lock Column tool after changing widths to make columns dynamic again!

Selecting and resizing tables with the mouse

Select entire table: Position the mouse just to left of table and click, or click and drag through the entire table.

OR

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Click in a cell and press **Ctrl+A**. Pressing once selects the current cell, pressing again selects the entire table.

Select single cell: Just click in the cell. Even though it is not highlighted, it is still selected for formatting the cell properties (see below). This does ***not*** select any text that the cell contains, however – this must be selected, formatted and edited just like any other text in the editor.

Select multiple cells: Click and drag.

Select row: Position mouse over left border of table (➡ mouse pointer) and click. Or click and drag through row. Using the click method takes a little practice, the ➡ mouse pointer only appears in a very narrow area.

Select column: Position mouse over top border of table (⬇ mouse pointer) and click. Or click and drag through column. Using the click method takes a little practice, the ⬇ mouse pointer only appears in a very narrow area.

You cannot select a column if the cursor is currently in the top cell of the column. Click in a cell to the left or right of the top cell before selecting using this method!

Resize table: Open the table properties and adjust the width settings. You cannot normally adjust the overall table width with the mouse. Its width will either be defined by the width of its content/columns (autosize) or it will have a fixed or relative width in pixels or percent.

Resize cell width: Drag the cell borders. Note that this "locks" the width of both affected columns. If you only want to have one of the columns with a fixed width you must then use the lock/unlock tool in the **Table** tab to unlock the column that needs to be fluid.

Rotating text in tables

In addition to normal horizontal text you can also rotate the text in individual cells by 90° or 270° to display vertical text oriented to the right or left.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Aliquam faucibus. Sed dignissim, nisl quis accumsan bibendum, massa metus suscipit sapien, sed semper felis magna sit amet urna.	In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Cras posuere, eros vehicula convallis auctor, neque diam bibendum urna, et blandit elit arcu a lacus. Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metus elementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh.
Quisque laoreet diam quis eros. Pellentesque blandit leo in quam. Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus. Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis.	`Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum. Cras dignissim, mi eget luctus feugiat, lacus lacus convallis nisi, ultricies tempus velit nisl id risus.`

How to rotate text

1. Click in the cell where you want to rotate the text.
2. In the **Table** tab select **Text Direction** and then 90° or 270° rotation.

The **Text Direction** options can also restore normal horizontal orientation.

Resizing tables and cells with Table Properties

Note that most of the settings you can enter are not absolute. All widths except pixel values are relative to the output page, which can vary depending on how the user sizes the viewer window (electronic formats) and the size of the printout page (PDF etc). You can only set a minimum height for cells; the actual height is controlled by the cell contents.

1. Select the table or the cells you want to resize (see above).
2. Select **Table** > **Properties** or right-click and select **Table** > **Table Properties**.

- To resize the entire table use the settings in the Table Layout tab.
- Select the Selected Cells tab to adjust the size settings for individual cells.

For details see Table Properties 1391 in the Reference section.

Formatting entire tables and individual cells

Formatting entire table: Right-click in the table and select *Table* > *Properties*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Formatting single cells:	Right-click in the cell and select *Table* > *Properties,* then click on the *Selected Cells* tab.
Formatting multiple cells:	Select the cells, right-click on the selection and select *Table* > *Properties,* then click on the *Selected Cells* tab.

See also:

Table Properties 1391 (Reference)
How table sizing works 1502 (Reference)

5.12.6 Adding, deleting and moving rows and columns

You can add and delete rows and columns in tables both with the Ribbon tools and by changing the number of rows and columns in the table definition in Table Properties.

Key Information
In complex tables with split and merged cells deleting rows and columns may have unexpected results if the row or column you are deleting overlaps merged or split cells.

Adding rows and columns with the Ribbon tools

1. Click in the table at the point where you want to insert new rows or columns.
2. Use the **Rows and Columns** tools in the **Table** tab, or right-click and select the same options from the context menu.

Deleting rows, columns and tables with the Ribbon tools

1. Select the rows or columns you want to delete or click in a cell to delete only the row or column containing that cell.
2. Select **Table** > **Rows and Columns** > **Delete** or right-click and select **Table** > **Delete** and then select what you want to delete (*Rows*, *Columns* or *Table*).

You can also delete an entire table by placing the cursor directly before or after the table and pressing Delete or Backspace.

Moving table rows

1. Click in the row you want to move or select a block of rows.
2. Select *Move Up* or *Move Down* in the the Table tab.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Adding and deleting rows and columns with Table Properties

1. Select **Table** > **Properties** or right-click and select *Table* > *Properties* in the context menu.
2. Adjust the **Rows** and **Columns** settings to increase or delete.

Increasing and decreasing the number of rows and columns in the Table Properties dialog adds or deletes rows or columns in the last positions (right and bottom) of the table.

See also:

Table Properties 1391 (Reference)
How table sizing works 1502 (Reference)

5.12.7 Splitting, merging and unmerging

You can create complex tables by splitting and merging cells both vertically and horizontally. In addition to this you can also nest tables 539 inside one another to create even more complex structures. (To nest a table just insert a new table in the cell of an existing table.)

Splitting tables

1. Click in the table to select it.
2. Click in the row where you want the table to split.
3. In the **Table** tab select **Split - Split Table**. You can change the row number where the table is to split manually if you like.

Note: You can only split tables, you cannot join them.

How to merge cells

1. Select the cells you want to merge (you must select at least two cells).
2. Use the **Merge Cells** tool in the **Table** tab or right-click and select *Table* > *Merge Cells* in the context menu.

You may need to adjust the width of the table or individual columns after merging. Remember to check your column lock settings with the Lock Column tool 522 in the **Table** tab after adjusting widths.

How to split cells

1. Select the cells you want to split. If you just want to split a single cell click inside the cell, it is then selected automatically even though it is not highlighted.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Use the **Split** tool in the **Table** tab or right-click and select *Table* > *Split Cells* in the context menu and choose *Vertically* or *Horizontally* to choose the direction of the split.
3. Enter the number of columns or rows you want to split into (the default is 2).

How to unmerge cells

This function restores the original number of rows and/or columns in the selected cells, basing the number on the original definition of the entire table.

1. Select the cells you want to unmerge. If you just want to unmerge a single cell just click inside the cell, it is then selected automatically even though it is not highlighted.
2. Use the **Unmerge** tool in the **Table** tab or right-click and select **Table** > **Unmerge** in the context menu and then choose **Rows**, **Columns** or **Rows and Columns**.

See also:

Nested tables 539
Managing column widths 522
Table Properties 1391 (Reference)
How table sizing works 1502 (Reference)

5.12.8 Sorting tables

You can sort the content of tables on any column. Basically you just need to click in the table column you want to sort on and then select Sort in the Table tab.

Key Information
Table header rows are never sorted. If you want to change the position of the header rows you need to use the move up/down commands.

Sorting entire tables

1. Click in the column you want to sort on. This will normally be the first column in the table.
2. Select the *Sort* tool in the **Table** tab and then select *Ascending* or *Descending* to select the sort direction.

Sorting a range of rows in a table

You can also sort an individual range of rows in a table.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Select the range of rows in the table you want to sort.
2. Select the *Sort* tool in the **Table** tab and then select *Ascending* or *Descending* to select the sort direction.

Important: When you select a range of rows sorting is always on the first column. You cannot sort a range on any other columns.

5.12.9 Deleting the contents of cells

Selecting cells and pressing Delete just deletes the contents (i.e. text, graphics etc.) of the cells, not the cells themselves. The only exception to this is when you select the entire table. If you do this and press Delete it will delete both the contents and the entire table!

How to delete the contents of cells

1. Select the cells 525 whose contents you want to delete. (Don't select the entire table as this will delete both the contents and the entire table.)
2. Press the Delete key.

Deleting both cells and their contents

This is only possible with entire rows and columns.

1. Select the cells, rows or columns you want to delete.
2. Select the **Delete** tool in the Table tab and choose *Rows* or *Columns* to delete all the cells and their contents.

See also:

Table Properties 1391 (Reference)
How table sizing works 1502 (Reference)

5.12.10 Converting text to tables

You can convert selected paragraphs to a table. Columns will be created automatically at tab characters in the text. Note that you cannot convert text to a table inside another table.

Context menu: Direct conversion without a dialog

Right-click on the selected text and select *Convert text to a Table* in the context menu. This uses the default table format directly. You can configure the table afterwards with the **Properties** tool in the **Table** tab.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Table tool: Configure the table with a dialog

Select the paragraphs you want to convert and then select the **Table** tool in the **Write** or **Table** tab. Before the table is created the table properties dialog is displayed with which you can configure all table attributes except the number of columns and rows. Those are based on the selected paragraphs and the tab characters they contain.

See also:

Selecting and formatting cells and tables 525
Exporting and importing topics 365

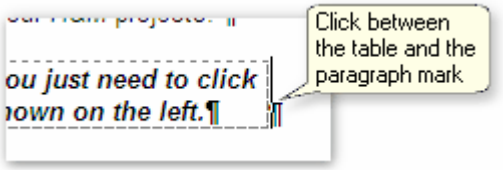
5.12.11 Indenting tables

A table is handled as a single object in a paragraph that is not allowed to contain any other objects. The formatting of the table itself is handled by the table properties but the position and alignment of the table on the page are controlled by the paragraph properties of the paragraph containing the table.

This means that to indent a table you need to adjust the indent settings of the paragraph containing the table. This can be done either with a style or by adjusting the paragraph formatting manually.

How to select the table paragraph for indenting

To indent a table's paragraph you first need to place the cursor between the table and its paragraph mark. Doing this can be a little tricky until you get the hang of it. To make it easier it is better to turn on paragraph marks display in the editor with the ¶ tool in **Write** > **Paragraph**. Then just click directly between the paragraph mark and the end of the table.



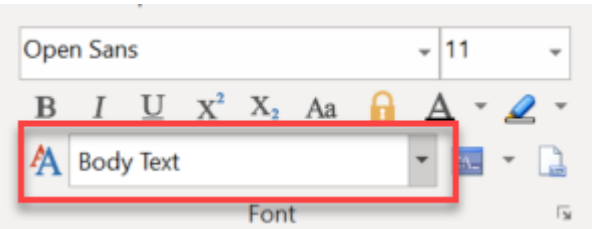
Alternatively, you can just place the cursor at the end of the last cell in the table and then press the right arrow cursor key on your keyboard once, or place the cursor at the beginning of the next paragraph after the table and press the left arrow cursor key once. Both these operations will also position the cursor between the table and its paragraph mark.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Adjusting table indent settings

First position the cursor between the table and its paragraph marker (see above), then adjust the indent settings with a style or manual formatting:

- **To adjust the settings with a style:**
  Create a style (see Text Formatting and Styles 273) with the necessary indent settings, then position the cursor and apply the style by selecting it in the style selector (or by pressing the style's keyboard shortcut if you have defined one).



- **To adjust the settings manually:**
  Position the cursor and then use the paragraph formatting tools to adjust the paragraph settings.

See also:

Selecting and formatting cells and tables 525
Text/paragraph styles in tables 537

5.12.12 Table styles

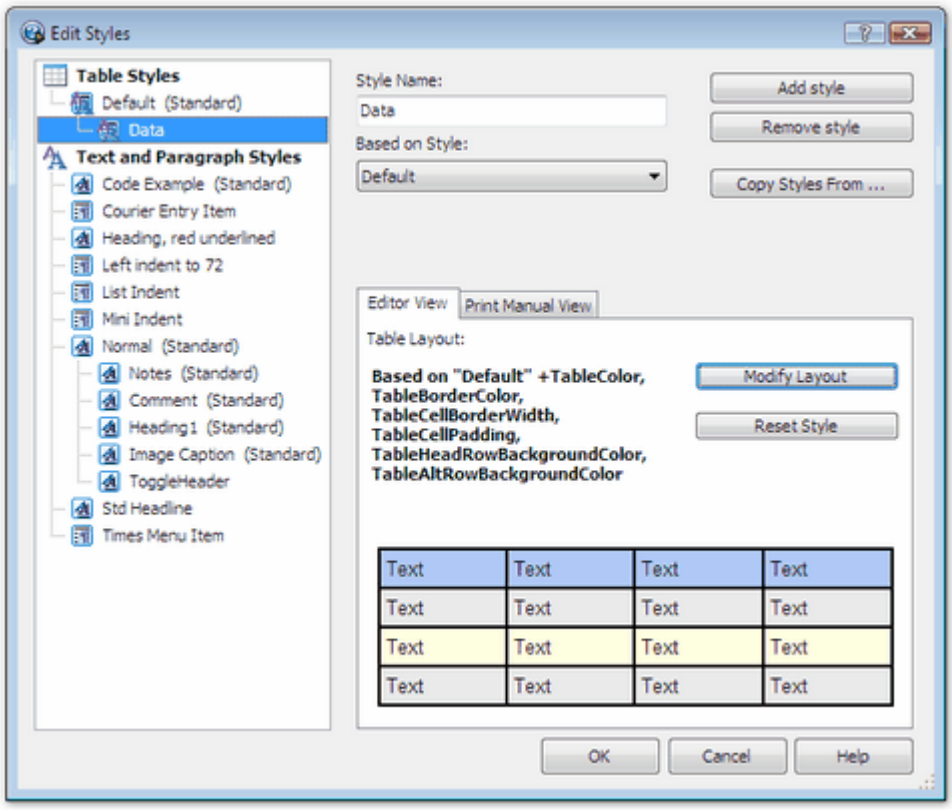
Just as you can define styles for formatting text and paragraphs you can also define styles for tables. Like text and paragraph styles, table styles are dynamic. This means that when you change the style definition all tables in your project formatted with that style change automatically.

Table styles also "inherit" properties from the styles they are based on and this is also dynamic. The "child" style inherits all the properties of the "parent" style. If you change the definition of the parent style all the matching attributes in the child styles will also change. Only attributes that you have explicitly changed in the child styles will remain unchanged.

How to define a new table style

1. Select **Styles** > **Edit Styles** in the **Write** tab.
2. Click in the *Table Styles* section at the top, then select *Add Style*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Enter a name for the style in the *Style Name:* field.

Multiple style names:
If you enter a table style name with one or more spaces in it, the table will have two or more style classes in HTML-based output, which is supported in CSS. The first class name is used by Help+Manual. You can use the additional classes in your own CSS in your HTML templates to define global style rules for only those tables with this class attribute.

4. If you want to base the style on another style select the parent style in the *Based on Style:* field.
5. Click on *Modify Layout* to define the attributes of the style. The settings are just the same as the normal table settings 1391, although there are a couple of table settings that cannot be included in table styles.

The style name is the CSS class of the table

The style name is exported as the class attribute of the **<table>** tag, which you can then reference in your own CSS for your HTML-based output formats.

If you enter a table style name with one or more spaces in it, the table will have two or more style classes in HTML-based output, which is supported in CSS. The first class name

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

is used by Help+Manual. You can use the additional classes in your own CSS in your HTML templates to define global style rules for only those tables with this class attribute.

Creating a new table with a style

1. Click on the Table tool in the **Write** or **Table** tab and select *Insert Table*.
2. Enter the number of rows and columns you want the table to have.
3. Select the style in the *Table Style:* field.
4. Make any manual changes (settings that you want to be different from the style definitions)
5. Click on OK to insert the table.

Note that any properties settings you edit manually in a table formatted with a style will remain unchanged if you change the definition of the table style later. Only attributes controlled by the style will change when you change the style definition!

Applying a table style to an existing table

1. Click inside the table that you want to format.
2. Select *Properties* in the **Table** tab and select the style in the *Table Style:* field.
3. If you want to make any individual changes you can also adjust the settings directly in the Table Properties dialog before you close it.

Note that any properties settings you edit manually in a table formatted with a style will remain unchanged if you change the definition of the table style later. Only attributes controlled by the style will change when you change the style definition!

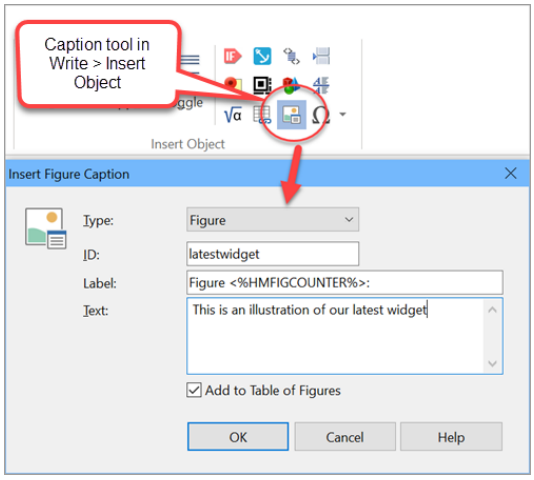
5.12.13 Table Counters, Captions and CSS

You can add IDs for tables that you can use in your own HTML code. In addition to this, the name of the table style is exported to HTML as the table's class attribute.

Table counters and captions, table of tables

You can add captions with counter variables to tables with the caption tool in **Write > Insert Object**:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



This tool inserts captions that are independent from the table, so that they can be inserted above, below or even in the table. They can be included in the tables of figures generated for PDF and Word DOCX output and they can also be referenced with both text references like *See Table xxx* and hyperlinks. See Figure and table counters 944 for details.

Table CSS classes

To give a table a CSS class you just need to define a table style 533 and apply it to the table. The style name is exported as the class attribute of the **<table>** tag.

If you enter a table style name with one or more spaces in it, the table will have two or more style classes in HTML-based output, which is supported in CSS. The first class name is used by Help+Manual. You can use the additional classes in your own CSS in your HTML templates to define global style rules for only those tables with this class attribute.

Table IDs

The table properties dialog has an optional ID field. An ID you enter here will be exported as the <table> tag ID attribute in HTML-based output formats. You will not need this for normal tables but it is sometimes useful. For example, when you use the sortable tables option in the Help+Manual Premium Pack you need to enter a special ID here to identify your table as sortable.

You may also need to use IDs in tables if you are planning to manipulate your tables with your own CSS or JavaScript code and need to address an individual table instead of a class of similar tables, for which you would use a CSS class (see above).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Table ID for table counters and captions

The table ID is **not** used for referencing the counters used for numbering tables and including them in the table of tables. You need to use the ID in the figure caption described in Figure and table counters 944 for that.

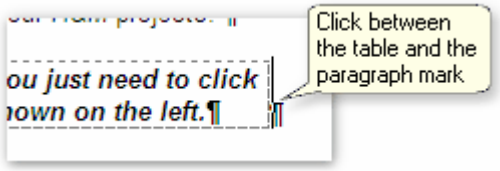
5.12.14 Text/paragraph styles in tables

Table styles define the formatting of the table itself – the table width and width mode, borders and border style, background colors and so on. They do not define the formatting of the text inside the tables – that must be formatted with styles or the manual formatting tools.

How to align a table with a paragraph style

You can control the alignment of a table by applying a style to the paragraph containing the table – for example to center a fixed-width table or to indent the left and right sides of the table from the margins of the page. Only the paragraph attributes will have an effect, text attributes will be ignored.

1. Click on ¶ in **Write** > **Paragraph** to display paragraph marks (this makes it easier to see what you are doing).



2. Click to the right of the table between the table and its paragraph mark so that you can see the blinking editing cursor between the right margin of the table and the paragraph mark.
3. Select the style you want to apply in the drop-down style list in the Toolbar.

How to apply styles to the contents of tables

If you select all or part of a table and apply text or paragraph styles the styles will be applied to the text in the selected cells inside the table.

- Select text and paragraphs in the table cells and apply styles just as you would in the normal editor. You can also apply styles to multiple paragraphs in multiple cells by selecting the cells and then applying the style.

Note that if you want to apply a style to all the paragraphs in a table you must select the entire table by clicking and dragging inside the table. If you click in the left margin to se-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

lect the table you will not be able to apply styles because then the table is selected and not its contents.

How to apply a table style to a table

1. Click in the table you want to format.
2. Select *Properties* in the **Table** tab and then select the table style you want to use and click on OK.

See Working with Tables > Table styles 533 for full details.

How to define a table style

1. Select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab.
2. Click in the *Table Styles* section at the top, then select *Add Style*.
3. Enter a name for the style in the *Style Name:* field.
4. If you want to base the style on another style select the parent style in the *Based on Style:* field.
5. Click on *Modify Layout* to define the attributes of the style. The settings are just the same as the normal table settings 1391, although there are a couple of table settings that cannot be included in table styles.

CSS classes for table styles

When you publish to HTML-based output formats the name of the table style is also the class attribute of the table. For example, if the table style is called demotable it will contain a class attribute like this:

```
<table class="demotable" ...
```

You can use this knowledge to change the formatting of tables with your own additional CSS code in your HTML templates, attaching your rules to the class names.

Giving a table multiple class names

Help+Manual will also allow you to create table styles containing spaces. For example, suppose you create two otherwise identical table styles called "demotable normal" and "demotable highlight". The result in the HTML code would be:

```
<table class="demotable normal" ...
<table class="demotable highlight" ...
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This effectively gives the tables two classes, which is allowed in CSS. You can then write individual CSS rules for the "normal" and "highlight" classes to be applied to different groups of tables in your output that otherwise have identical formattig.

See also:

Table styles 533
Table Properties 1391 (Reference)
How table sizing works 1502 (Reference)
Text Formatting and Styles 273

5.12.15 Nested tables

Help+Manual's table formatting functions are powerful but they do have some limitations. For example, you can only set a background picture for the entire table. Merging and splitting cells in a single table can also place limitations on column width adjustments.

Some of these problems can be solved by using nested tables, i.e. by inserting a second table inside the first table. Then you can apply different table properties to the second table, which can be a single cell, row or column in the "parent" table.

Productivity Tip
Temporarily apply thick colored borders to your nested tables so that you can see where they are while you are working with them. You can do this most easily by defining a table style and applying it temporarily while you are working.

How to insert a nested table

Inserting a nested table is just like inserting any other table. The only difference is where you insert it:

1. Click inside the cell of the table where you want to insert another table.
2. Use any of the standard methods for inserting a new table.

The nested table is a fully independent table in its own right. You can use all the normal table formatting and editing functions on it, including applying a style to its "table paragraph". You just need to keep track of where your nested tables are, which can be tricky.

Warnings and limitations

Don't go overboard with nested tables. It's tempting to use them but it can get too complicated very quickly!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Page breaks in PDF and DOCX output and printed manuals may not work correctly inside table rows containing nested tables, particularly if the tables contain merged cells.

See also:

Table Properties 1391 (Reference)
How table sizing works 1502 (Reference)

5.12.16 Using background graphics

In addition to defining background colors you can also add background graphics to your tables. For example, you can insert a single large graphic behind a table like a "watermark", or you can tile a small graphic to create a repeating pattern or texture as a background for the table.

Productivity Tip
You can apply a background graphic to a single cell of a table by using a single-cell nested table 539 (inserting one table inside another) and applying the background graphic to the nested table.

How to apply a background graphic to a table

1. Click in the table and select *Properties* in the **Table** tab or right-click and select *Table* > *Properties* to display the Table Properties 1391 dialog.
2. In the **Table Layout** tab select the *Background Picture* option.
3. Click on ... and select the graphics file you want to use.
4. Select *Tile* to repeat the graphic in a pattern or *Center* to display the graphic only once, centering it on the center of the table.

Matching the size of graphics to your tables can be tricky with centered images. The most practical solution is to use graphics that have an edge the same color as the page or table background so that you don't have to line up precisely with the edge of the table.

Graphics are normally applied to the entire table. If you want to apply a graphic to a single cell or range of cells you can do this by inserting a nested table 539 and applying the background graphic to the nested table.

See also:

Table Properties 1391 (Reference)
How table sizing works 1502 (Reference)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5.12.17 Handling table borders

When you are defining borders around tables it is important to remember that there are two different "objects" in tables for which you can define borders: The table itself and the cell. Cell borders and table borders have separate settings.

Productivity Tip
If the thickness of your table borders looks off in your PDF output try selecting the screen device as the reference device for PDF output in *View* > *Program Options* > *PDF*.

The relationship between table borders and cell borders

The table border is outside the cell borders. If you set both cell and table borders the resulting border around the table will have the width of the cell borders plus the width of the table border.

- For example, if you set both the cell borders and the table border to a width of 3 pixels the table border will have a width of 6 pixels, like this:

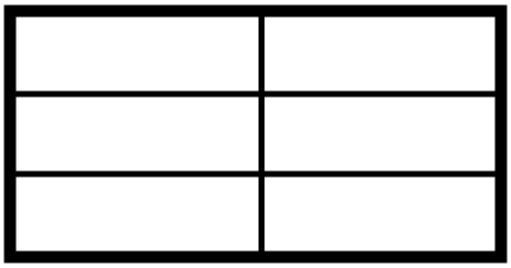


Table border width: 3 pixels
Cell borders width: 3 pixels

- If you want to create a table with borders that are the same as the cell borders just set a width for the cell borders and leave the table border set to 0.

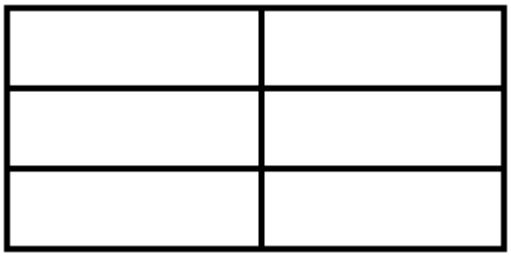


Table border width: 0 pixels
Cell borders width: 3 pixels

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- The following example does the opposite. Here the table border width is set to 3 pixels and the cell border width is set to 0 pixels. The grid lines are visible to show that it is the same table:

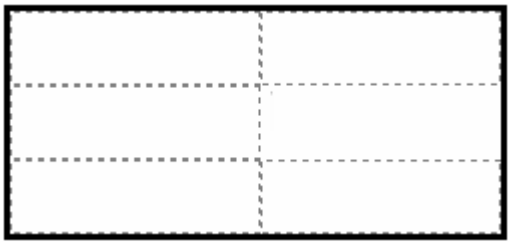


Table border width: 3 pixels
Cell borders width: 0 pixels

Cells with different border settings

You can define different border settings for individual cells and groups of cells. Just select the cells whose borders you want to change, then display the table properties dialog and select the Selected Cells tab.

You cannot define different colors for cell and table borders in a single table. To create one or more cells with different colored borders insert a second table inside the first table and define different border color settings for the two tables. See Nested tables 539 for details.

See also:

Nested tables 539
Table Properties 1391 (Reference)
How table sizing works 1502 (Reference)

5.12.18 Conditional text in tables

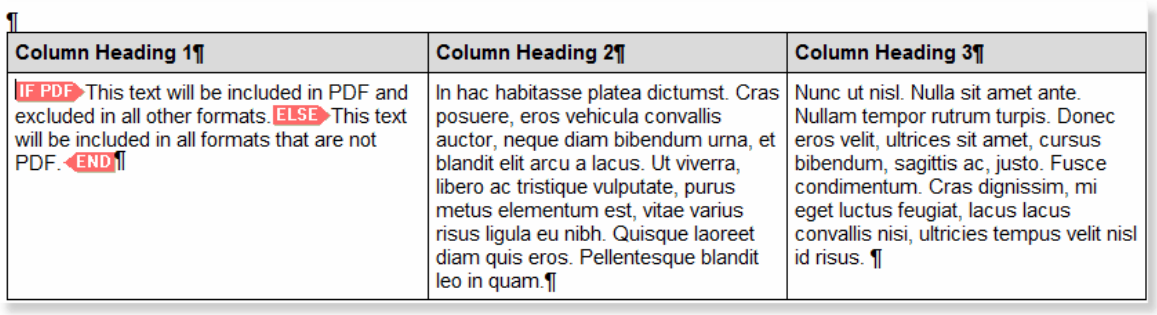
In tables, conditional text tags can be used to include and exclude both text in cells and complete rows or columns in the table. It is important to understand how this works before you start using conditional tags in tables, otherwise you can get unexpected results.

Conditional text inside a single cell

Normal text inside a cell:

If the **IF** and **END** tags are both inside the same cell, conditional text in a cell works exactly the same as in normal text. It simply includes or excludes the tagged content according to the conditions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



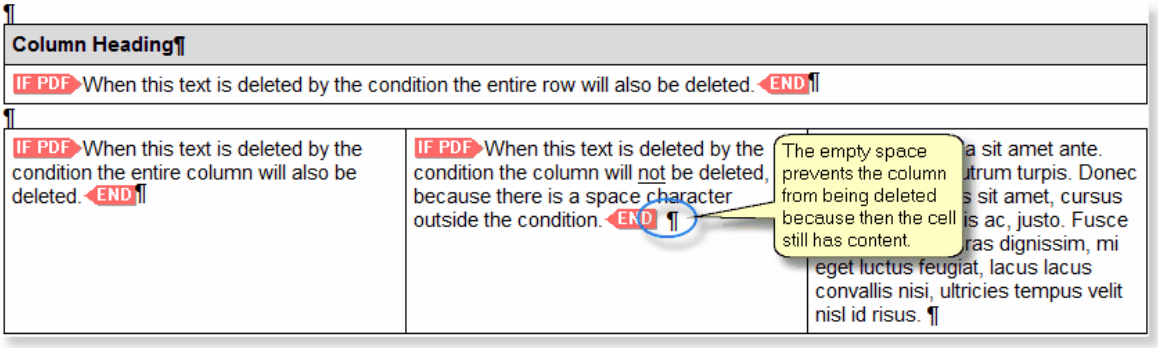
Even if the entire contents of the cell are deleted, nothing happens to the column or row containing the cell if there are also other cells with content in the column or row. (You cannot delete a single cell leaving just an empty space in the table.)

When a condition completely deletes the contents of a cell:

The only exception to this behavior is when conditional tags completely delete the contents of a cell and the cell is the only cell in the current row or column. If that happens, then the row or column will also be deleted. If you want to prevent this and leave an empty cell, make sure that at least one space character remains in the cell.

In the first example below, row 2 of the table will be completely removed from the table unless at least one space (or any other character) is left inside the cell containing the conditional tags.

In the second example, column 1 will be deleted because all the text in the only cell in the column is deleted. Column 2 will not be deleted, because one character is left over, and so the cell still has content.



The key is content: If any content is left in a cell then its row or column cannot be deleted, because the content "protects" the cell, row and column from deletion.

Applying conditions to the content of multiple cells:

If you want to include/exclude the content of multiple cells you must include the **IF** and

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

END conditions inside every cell! If a condition starts in one cell and ends in another cell, then the entire row or column will be deleted. This happens because rows and columns can be deleted using only an **IF** tag, without a closing **END** tag (see further below for details).

Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3
IF PDF If you want to include/exclude the content of multiple cells you must include the **IF** and **END** conditions inside every cell! END	IF PDF If you want to include/exclude the content of multiple cells you must include the **IF** and **END** conditions inside every cell! END	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis.
IF PDF If a condition starts in one cell and ends in another cell, then the whole row or column will be deleted.	In this example, the entire third row of the this table will be deleted, because there is no **END** tag in the first cell. END	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.

Applying conditions to entire rows and columns

To include or exclude an entire row or column you put the **IF** condition right at the beginning of the first cell in the row or column and the **END** condition at the end of the last cell in the row or column:

Column Heading 1	IF PDF Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3
IF PDF To exclude an entire row put the IF condition at the beginning of the first cell and the END condition at the end of the last cell in the row.	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.	**In this example the first row below the heading will be only be included in PDF.** END
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	**In this example, the second column will only be included in PDF.** END	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.

Order of processing and intersecting tags:

When Help+Manual processes your tags, it processes in order from left to right and top to bottom. You need to consider this sometimes when you are excluding both rows and columns with tag conditions that intersect with one another:

Removing intersecting first row and second column:

IF PDF Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3 END
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.	IF PDF **The *IF* tag needs to be in the second row here, because the first row is gone when the column is processed.**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus. END	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Removing intersecting first column and second row:

IF PDF Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.	IF PDF **The *IF* tag needs to be in the second column here, because the first column is gone when the row is processed.**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros. END
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum. END	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.

Applying conditions to multiple rows and columns

If you want to apply conditions to multiple rows and columns you must include separate conditions for every row or column. You cannot start a condition in one row and end it in another!

Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3
IF PDF Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.	**In this example, rows 2 and 3 will both be excluded in formats that are not PDF.**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros. END
IF PDF Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum. END

Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3
IF PDF Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.	**In this example, only row 2 will be excluded from formats that are not PDF.**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum. END

Simplified syntax - leaving out the END tag

When you are tagging rows and columns the **END** tag at the end of the row or column is actually optional. As long as the tags are positioned right at the beginning of the first cell in the row or column, and there is no other END tag anywhere else in the row or column, they will be interpreted as tagging the entire row or column.

For example, these tags will remove row 2 and column 2 in all outputs except PDF:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Column Heading 1¶	IF PDF Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
IF PDF Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.¶	**In this example, row 2 and column 2 will both be excluded in non-PDF formats. The END tags are not needed.¶**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.¶
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	**Even so, it is good practice to put the END tags in as a reminder.¶**	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶

Avoid "orphaned" tags within rows and columns!

You should only use these unterminated tags in the first cell of a row or column (or the cell that becomes the first cell because another row or column has been removed). If you are tagging content in cells inside a row or column the **IF** tag should always be followed by a matching **END** tag inside the same cell. Failing to do so can have unexpected consequences.

Columns and rows with merged cells

How columns and cells with merged cells are handled depends on which row or column the merged cell "belongs" to:

- In rows the merged cell belongs to the first column that intersects the cell.
- In columns merged cell belongs to the first row that intersects the cell.

Column Heading 1¶	Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.¶	**In this example, the contents of this combined cell "belong" to column 2. It will be deleted if column 2 is removed, but not if column 3 is removed.¶**	
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶

Column Heading 1¶	Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.¶	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.¶	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.¶
In this example, this combined cell in the first column "belongs" to row 2. Excluding row 2 will remove all the text in the yellow cells in this row, leaving an empty cell in the remaining row.¶	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.¶	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶
	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.¶	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.¶

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Entire tables

If you want to include or exclude an entire table, always put the **IF** condition before the table and the **END** condition after the table. Excluding all the rows and/or columns in a table will not exclude the table, it will only result in an empty table.

IF PDF¶

Column Heading 1¶	Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
Put the IF and END tags before and after the table to include or exclude an entire table.¶	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.¶	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.¶
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶

END¶

Insoluble problems

There is one situation where you cannot exclude a row or a column with conditional text: This happens when merged cells prevent the first cell of a row or column from being in the first column or first row of the table. There is no way around this – it is just not possible to include/exclude these "partial rows/columns" with conditional text.

It is not possible to include/exclude the 2-column row 4 in this table:

¶

Column Heading 1¶	Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.¶	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.¶	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.¶
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.¶	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶
	IF PDF **This row begins in column 2 as a result of the merged cells in column 1.¶**	**Because of this, it is not possible to exclude/include it with conditional tags.** END¶

For the same reason, it is not possible to include/exclude the 3-row column 2 in this table:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

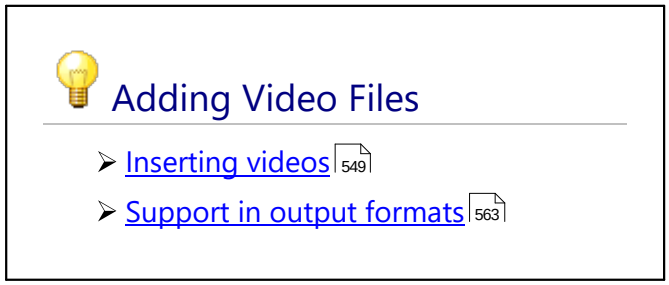
Column Heading 1¶		Column Heading 3¶
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.¶	IF PDF **This column begins in row 2 as a result of the merged cells in row 1.¶**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.¶
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	**Because of this, it is not possible to exclude/include this column with conditional tags.¶**	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶
Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. ¶	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet END¶	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.¶

See also:

Conditional text include options 994

5.13 Videos and Online Media

Help+Manual takes the manual labor out of adding videos and online media like Prezi™ presentations to your help projects. You just click where you want to insert your movie and select the video file. Help+Manual handles everything else for you, including choosing and inserting the correct code for integrating the media files in the various output formats.



Tutorial project for online video and media

We have produced a detailed tutorial project explaining and demonstrating how to insert various kinds of online video and media. You can find it in the **`My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples`** folder in your Documents director. It is also accessible directly in the Welcome screen that you can access at the top of the Project Explorer on the left.

Information on local video file formats

Please see About using video files 1536 for important information on using different video formats in your projects and support for video in the various publishing formats!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

About using video files 1536

5.13.1 Inserting videos and online media

Inserting a video is basically as easy as inserting a graphic. Just click in the editor where you want to insert the video, click on the **Media** tool in **Write** > **Insert**, then select the type of video you want to insert and proceed with the dialog displayed.

Please see About using video files 1536 for important information on using video files in your projects and support for video in the various publishing formats!

Productivity Tip
If you want to be sure that videos play reliably, use online video services for CHM files, MP4 video or online services for WebHelp and M4V or online services for ePUB (Apple iBooks only).

Tutorial project:

For more detailed examples see the Interactive Media tutorial project that you can find in the **My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples** folder in your Documents directory. It is also accessible directly in the Welcome screen available at the top of the Project Explorer on the left.

Adobe Flash discontinued:

Adobe Flash has now been discontinued worldwide and on all platforms, among other things because of its horrendous security performance. Existing Flash videos in projects will still work on platforms that have Flash installed but you can no longer add new Flash content. We **strongly** recommend that you remove all Flash content.

Choosing the right video format for maximum reliability

Video is still quite problematic across different platforms. This is a general problem with digital video that is not specific to Help+Manual. Even though Help+Manual supports a wide range of different video formats only MP4 and online video services can be considered reliable. All other video formats should be avoided if you want to avoid trouble. If you follow the following basic rules your videos will play on the largest possible number of devices and platforms.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

HelpXplain screencasts and infographics:

Animated HelpXplain screencasts and infographics can be inserted in WebHelp, CHM files and eWriter books. In other formats the static preview image for the presentation will be displayed. Note that HelpXplain presentations are only compatible with the CHM format when it is configured to use the Internet Explorer 9 or Edge HTML rendering mode. See Animated HelpXplain presentations 562 for details.

MP4 Video Format:

When you use MP4 videos they should be created with the H.264 video codec and AAC audio. You can use MP3 audio in your videos, but AAC will be more universally compatible. If possible use a

CHM Files:

In CHM files use online video services (YouTube, Vimeo or Prezi) at all possible. All other formats will cause problems for your users, even if they seem to work for you. Also note that Microsoft's outdated CHM viewer does not handle MP4 correctly. Help+Manual manages online video services in CHM so that no online access is required until the user actually starts the video by clicking on the preview image.

WebHelp:

In WebHelp you should now only use either MP4 videos or online video services. Flash video is no longer supported because it has now been disabled worldwide and on all platforms.

EPUB for Apple iBooks:

Use MP4 in the M4V format with an Apple profile or online video services in ePUB eBooks targeting the Apple iBooks eBook reader on the iPad and iPhone. Video files are generally unsupported in ePUB on all other readers.

Inserting animated infographics and screencasts made with HelpXplain

HelpXplain is an exciting new web graphics tool from EC Software, the same company that makes Help+Manual. HelpXplain presentations can run automatically, or they can be interactive tutorials, or even a combination of the two. They are easier to create and more

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

flexible than with tools like PowerPoint, and they can be embedded in any web page just as easily as a YouTube video.

Check the path to HelpXplain

Check the General tab of the Program Options 1261 to make sure that the correct path to the full version of HelpXplain is registered. This makes sure that Help+Manual uses this to compile your HX projects instead of the integrated compiler used for the simple HX screencasts you can make with the screen capture utility. It also enables you to open HX projects directly from within Help+Manual, from the context menu displayed when you right-click on an Xplain in the HM editor.

HelpXplain can also insert static images

See Inserting Graphics and Screenshots 488 to learn how to use HelpXplain to insert static images in Help+Manual.

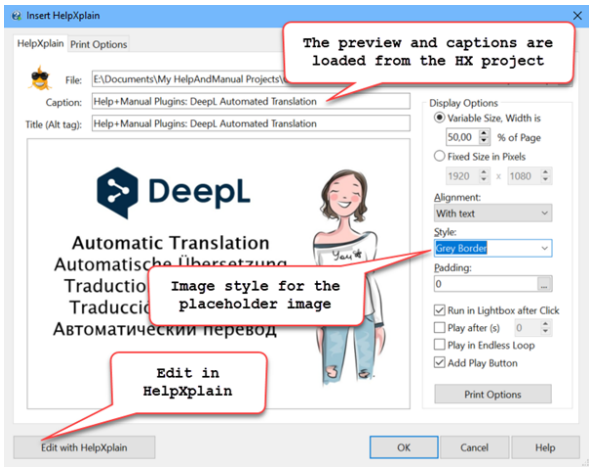
Install HelpXplain and create a screencast or animated infographic

You must have HelpXplain installed on your computer to be able to select an **`.xplain`** project in Help+Manual. A free trial version is available. See Animated HelpXplain presentations 561 for more information and a download link.

How to insert a HelpXplain presentation

This is basically just the same as inserting a regular video.

1. Click in the topic in the place where you want to insert the presentation.
2. Select **Media** > **Insert HelpXplain Presentation** in the **Insert** group in the **Write** tab.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Select your HelpXplain **.xplain** project with the ... Browse button in the **File:** field. The caption, title and preview image defined in the project will be loaded automatically.
4. Set the display options and then click on **OK** to insert.

Variable/Fixed Size: HelpXplain presentations are fully scalable and variable size is generally the best option. The presentation will then adjust itself automatically to fit the current window size.

Alignment: **With text** is the default setting and should be used for most presentations. You can align small presentations to be to the left or right of the text, so that the text wraps around it. This won't work well for normal presentations, however, because they will generally be larger.

Style: Use an image style 492 for the placeholder image.

Padding: Space on the page around the presentation.

Lightbox: Displays the presentation in a lightbox overlay, instead of as part of the page. This can be useful in WebHelp if you don't want the placeholder image to take up too much space.

Play after: Start the presentation as soon automatically after the specified number of seconds.

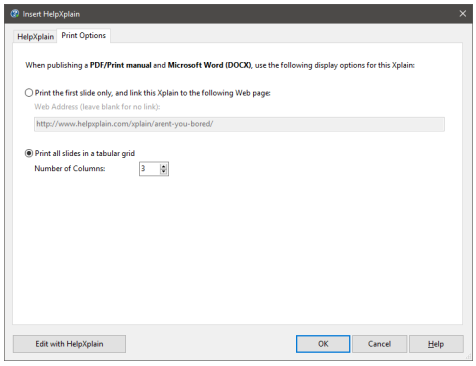
Endless loop: Continue playing the presentation repeatedly.

Play button: Adds a large **Play** button in the middle of the preview image so that the user knows they need to click on it to play.

Print Options

These options control how the Xplain is handled when you publish your project to PDF or Word.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



First slide and link: Prints the first slide in the Xplain as a static image with a link to your website with the active Xplain.

All slides: Prints all the slides in a tabular grid so that they can be viewed statically in the document.

Inserting YouTube and Vimeo videos and Prezi animated presentations

For maximum reliability, online video on video sharing sites like YouTube and Vimeo are the best choice, because they solve all compatibility problems for you. You just upload your video to their site and they present it to every device and browser in a format that works.

Prezi is an online presentation tool, that creates cool presentations with rotation and zoom effects. Although Prezi has a strong focus on creating impressive "presentations", it is also a great tool for illustrating and explaining complex structures and procedures in technical documentation.

Tutorial project:

For more detailed examples see the Interactive Media tutorial project that you can find in the **My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples** folder in your Documents directory. It is also accessible in the Welcome screen at the top of the Project Explorer on the left.

Procedure

The basic procedure for all three online services is the same. However, you must choose the correct dialog for each service so that Help+Manual knows how to handle the media correctly. See the websites of the video providers for details on their services:

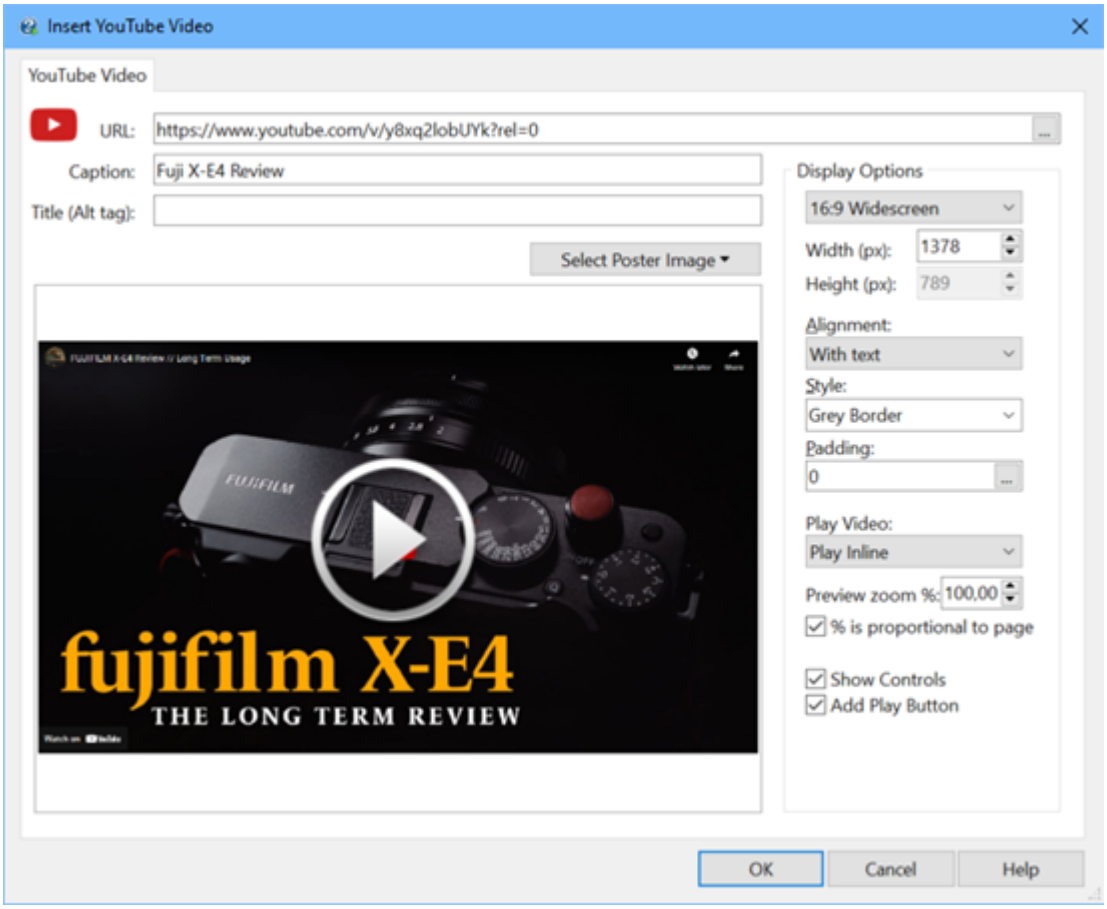
YouTube (mainstream online video)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Vimeo (more specialized online video, generally higher quality)

Prezi (relatively new service for animated demos and presentations)

1. Click in the editor at the point where you want to insert the video.
2. Select the **Media** tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** and select the option for the media type you are inserting. The example below is for YouTube but the dialogs for the other video formats are essentially identical.



3. Click on the ... browse button to browse to the online service so that you can select the media you want to insert. You can then copy and paste or drag the URL of the media from your web browser into the *URL:* field in the dialog.

   Alternatively, you can copy and paste the video URL or drag it from the Address: field of the browser into the URL: field in the Insert Video dialog.
4. After inserting the URL, Use *Select Poster Image* to play the video and select the placeholder graphic to be displayed in the topic. The user starts the video by clicking on this image. See below for issues with the Poster Image function in Vimeo videos.

   Tip: Make sure that the preview window for playing the window is large enough before saving the poster image.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5. Set the video options 1365.
6. Click on OK to insert the movie in your topic.

Internet Explorer warning with Poster Image in Vimeo

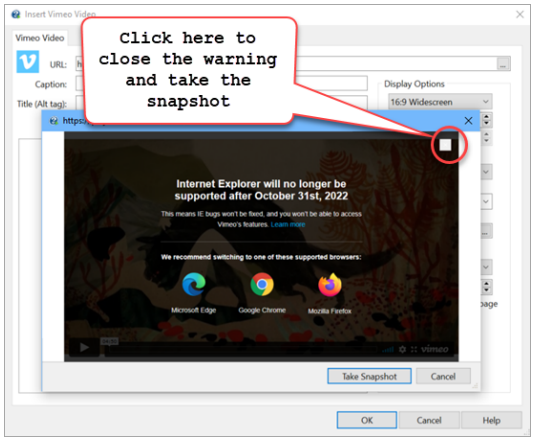
When you use the Poster Image tool in the video dialog with Vimeo videos, you may see a warning about Internet Explorer. This warning is displayed because of the internal Windows component used to play the video in a Window, which is still based on Internet Explorer.

Click away the warning

Vimeo is displaying this because it thinks you are using the Internet Explorer browser to access your site. This is not the case here and the warning can safely be ignored. You just need to click on the square in the upper right corner of the warning to be able to take the snapshot

Or take the snapshot in your browser

Alternatively, you can take the snapshot of the video in your browser. Then save it as a file and insert the file with the *Load Image from File...* option in the Poster Image tool.



Custom web content from other sites

The *Custom Web Content* option in the Media menu makes it possible to integrate a wide range of different media content in your topic pages. Help+Manual handles this by embedding the content in an iFrame on your page.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

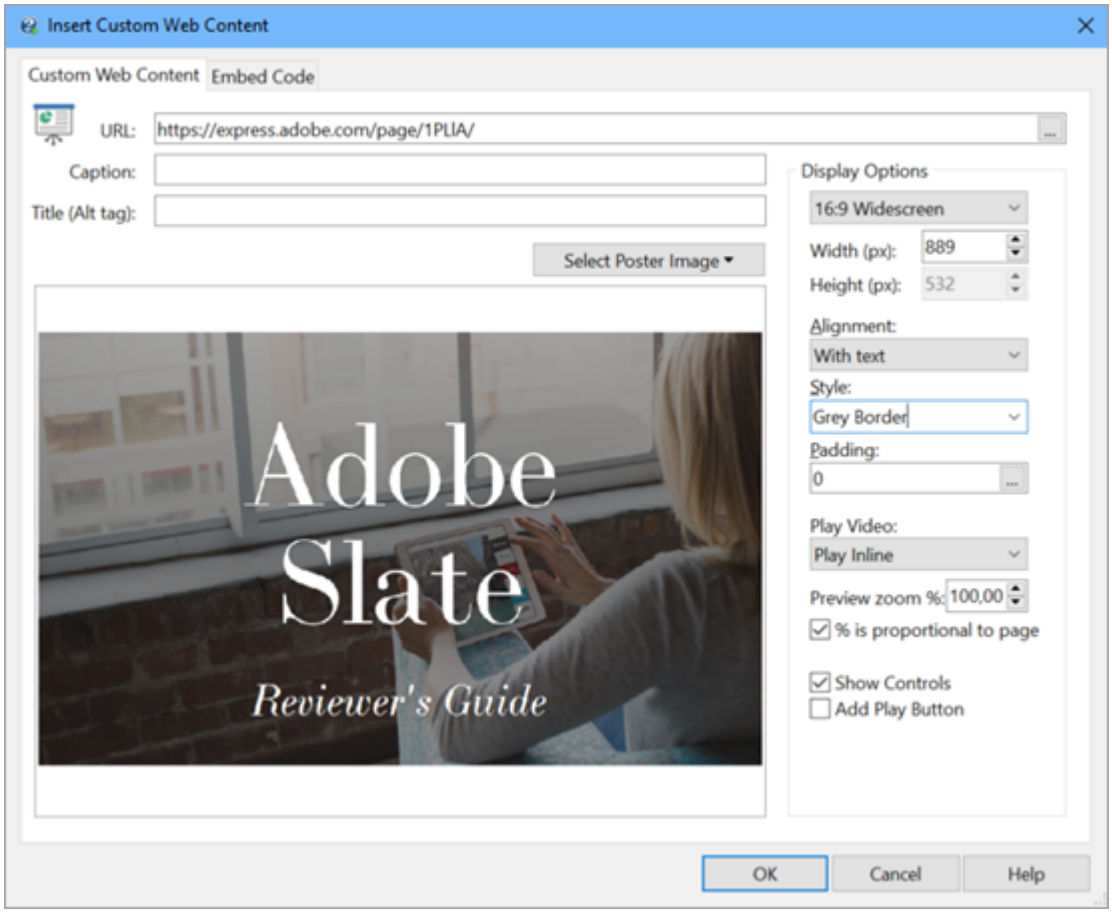
Tutorial project:

For more detailed examples see the Interactive Media tutorial project that you can find in the **My HelpAndManual Projects\Examples** folder in your Documents directory. It is also accessible in the Welcome screen at the top of the Project Explorer on the left.

How to insert custom web content in your topic pages:

Click in the topic where you want to insert the content and choose the *Custom Web Content* option from the **Media** tool in the **Write** tab.

Here too, you basically just need to enter an embed URL to the web page hosting the content. All the other settings are the same as for YouTube, Vimeo and Prezi:



Getting the embed URL:

This is the only thing that can be a little tricky. In some cases, like the Adobe Express example shown above, you will be able to use the direct URL provided by the service. Other

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

sites may provide their own embed code with their own iFrame. You can identify this because it contains an **<iframe>** tag in the code, that will look something like this:

```
<iframe width="800" height="600"
src="//www.thinglink.com/card/573536608976896002" type="text/html" framebor-
der="0" webkitallowfullscreen mozallowfullscreen allowfullscreen
scrolling="no"></iframe>
```

In this case you **don't** want to insert all the embed code. Instead, you need to get the URL from the **src=** attribute of the **<iframe>** tag, along with the dimensions (highlighted in yellow and aqua above).

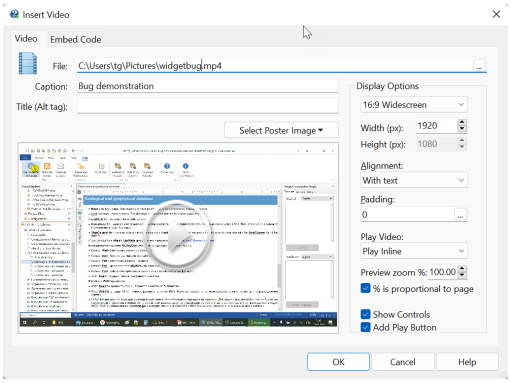
If the **http://** or **https://** prefix is missing from the source as in the example, you need to add it. The URL you would need to use for the ThingLink example would then be:

https://www.thinglink.com/card/573536608976896002

Inserting local video files stored on your computer

These instructions are for inserting a video file stored on your computer. See further below for inserting videos hosted by online video sharing sites like YouTube.

1. Click in the editor at the point where you want to insert the video.
2. Select the **Media** tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** and select the *Local Video* option.



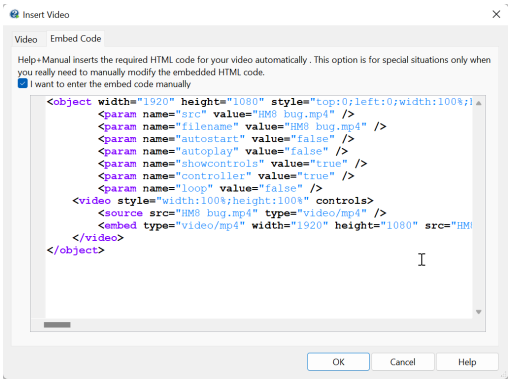
3. Click on the browse button in the *Video File:* field and select the video file. Alternatively you can also drag the video file into the Insert Video dialog.
4. Use *Select Poster Image* to select the placeholder graphic to be displayed in the topic. The user starts the video by clicking on this image.
5. Set the video options 1363.
6. Click on OK to insert the movie in your topic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Editing the embed code manually:

The Embed Code tab allows you to change the embedding code used for local videos if you want.

1. Click on the *Embed Code* tab and select the *I want to enter the embedded HTML code manually* option.



2. This displays the code that would normally be entered automatically.
3. Edit the code or replace it with your own code and click on OK.

Note that you need to be familiar with writing HTML code manually to use this function. Any changes you make are entirely your own responsibility, Help+Manual will not parse or check your code in any way!

If you enter additional file or image references in your code the compiler will not know about the files you are referring to and will not automatically include them in your output. To solve this problem add these external files to the Baggage Section 1119 – then they will be included in your HTML output automatically.

How to insert videos stored online using the Local Video option

If your video files are stored on a web server you can insert the URL of the video in the Local Video dialog instead of the name of the video file. For example, you can use this for video stored in a folder on your own website.

1. Follow the directions for inserting local video (see above).
2. Instead of using the ... browse button to select the video file, manually enter the URL of your video file in the *Video File:* field.

Important:
You must enter the complete URL and the complete file name. Include the http:// prefix and the extension of the file and make sure that upper and lower case are correct. Most web servers are case sensitive.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to embed video from other video sharing sites

You can also embed videos from other video sharing sites but you must do this manually with an HTML code object, not with the Insert Video tool. This means that the video will display and play inline. You cannot use the Insert Video tool's lightbox option when you do this.

1. Visit the video site, select the video you want to embed and get the "embed code". This is usually available with a button labeled "embed". It will normally be enclosed in **<iframe>** or ** ** tags.
2. Click in the editor where you want to insert the embedded video. Then select the *Insert HTML Code Object* tool in **Write** > **Insert**, paste the embed code into the editing box and click on OK.

That's it. This may not always work but you should find that it works fine for most common video sharing sites.

Inserting demo and tutorial videos from Camtasia and Captivate

If you use screen video tools like Techsmith Camtasia or Adobe Captivate to create demos and tutorials there are some extra points you need to consider when inserting the movies they generate. Depending on the output format you choose, these tools sometimes output a whole "package" of files that also include a player. If you want to use the entire package you need to embed the videos manually instead of using the Insert Video tool.

Option 1: Export as a single MP4 file only:
This is the simplest option. Just set your video demo tool to export the movie in the MP4 video format as a single file, with no additional files. Then you can use the Insert Video tool directly.

1. Choose the single-file MP4 format for export in your video demo tool and make sure that you turn off any option for embedding the video in an HTML page or including a player of some kind.
2. Select the MP4 file with the Insert Video tool in Help+Manual. This should be the only file you need to use.

Option 2: Link to the video package with the Custom Web Content option:
This method allows you to use the unchanged video package from Camtasia or Captivate, but you must put it on a separate folder on your web server. You then link to it with the Custom Web Content option in the Media tool.

This is now the preferred method for inserting full Camtasia or Captivate video packages in your projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. In Camtasia or Captivate, export your video package to an empty folder and load the entire contents of the folder to a suitable empty folder on your web server. You must do this before the next step, because you need to be able to link to the page online while you are inserting it.
2. Click in the Help+Manual editor where you want to insert the video, select the Media tool and select the **Custom Web Content** option.
3. Enter the absolute URL to the HTML file in the video package in the **URL:** field, including the **`http://`** or **`https://`** prefix.
4. Click on the **Select Poster Image** button to play the online video and create a poster image. This will only work if the video package is already online on your web server.
5. Configure the other video options as normal and click on **OK** to insert the video.

Option 2: Embed the "video package" manually

This old method is now deprecated and is not recommended because it is no longer necessary. It is more work than including the video package in a separate web folder and linking to it, and it is less reliable.

1. Make sure that you export the video package to an empty folder so that it only contains the files you really need to use.
2. Add all the files except the HTML file exported by the video demo tool to the Baggage Files 1119 section in your Help+Manual project. (The HTML file contains the code you need to insert in your project topic.)
3. Open the HTML file in a text editor, locate the embed code and copy it to the Windows clipboard. This code is usually clearly identified with comments in the HTML file. For example, in Camtasia use the block of code labeled "*Users looking for simple object embed tags can copy and paste the needed tags below*".
4. Click in your Help+Manual topic where you want to insert the video, select the Insert HTML Code Object tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**. Then just paste the copied code into the editing box and click OK.

Converting videos to M4V for iBooks/ePUB

Videos in ePUB eBooks will only play in the Apple iBooks® player on Apple iOS devices (iPad, iPhone and iPod Touch). They may play on some other devices but you shouldn't depend on it.

If you want to insert videos in your iBooks®/ePUB eBooks you must use the M4V format and it must be encoded correctly with an Apple-compatible profile. If you don't use Apple QuickTime directly you can use the excellent free Handbrake tool, which delivers very high quality and comes with all the Apple profiles you need. It has a huge number of settings but you can ignore them. You just need to select the profile for the target device (iPad or iPhone/iPod Touch) and convert the video.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Handbrake website and download: http://handbrake.fr

See also:

About using video files 1536

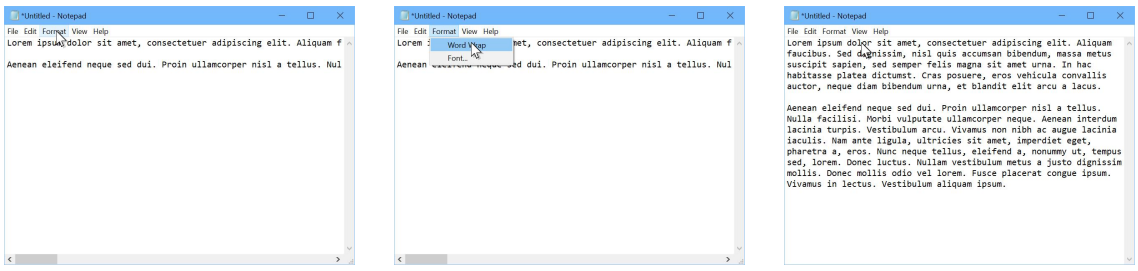
5.13.2 Animated HelpXplain presentations

HelpXplain is a new kind of animated infographics program. It creates animated screencasts that you can embed in simple HTML pages, and they work without Adobe Flash (which is now no longer supported anywhere anyway). Instead, they are based on modern HTML5, CSS3 and JavaScript technologies that work in all browsers on all platforms – especially including mobile platforms.

This means you can use HelpXplain presentations both when you are presenting to an audience yourself, and embedded in your own WebHelp or CHM documentation. And that is something that you definitely can't do with normal presentation tools like PowerPoint or Keynote.

HelpXplain is faster and more effective than HowTo videos

If you've ever tried to create a HowTo video you know how difficult, stressful and time-consuming it is. HelpXplain is different. You can create animated HowTo screencasts of anything on your computer screen that is just as effective as a video. It consists of a series of screenshots with animated transitions that can be edited or corrected at any time. You don't have to redo everything if you make a mistake, you just replace a screenshot and you're done. You don't have the stress of needing to get everything exactly right while making your screencast, and there is no time pressure. You can wait as long as you like between screenshots.



HelpXplain Screencast Example

How does HelpXplain work?

A HelpXplain presentation is basically a single large HTML page, with an optional background. Your "slides" in the presentation can be positioned anywhere on the page. When

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the presentation is viewed the page is zoomed so that each slide fills the browser window. The page then moves, zooms and rotates behind the window to bring the next slide into view. The effect is like a virtual video camera flying over the large presentation and zooming in over the individual slides, one after another.

Visit http://www.HelpXplain.com for a demo and to download the HelpXplain program.

See Inserting videos and online media 550 for instructions on how to insert HelpXplain presentations in your Help+Manual projects.

Adding a reference to HelpXplain so that Help+Manual can find it

Help+Manual compiles HelpXplain presentations in your project automatically when publishing the project. If you have the full version of HelpXplain installed it will use that for doing this, otherwise it uses its own HX compiler. Normally HelpXplain will be found automatically if it is installed. However, to make absolutely sure that the full version is used you can add the reference to it yourself in the Program Options 1261. This also enables you to open HX projects directly from within Help+Manual, from the context menu displayed when you right-click on an Xplain in the HM editor.

You can include HelpXplain slides in print-style output

When you include Xplains (HelpXplain presentations) in your projects you will normally want them to actually run when the user clicks on them. This works fine in CHM, WebHelp and eWriter. But what about formats like Word and PDF, which are like printed pages without dynamic content? There you can opt to include either an image of the first slide that links to the online version, or static images of all the slides displayed in a tabular grid. See the instructions for HelpXplain in Inserting videos and online media 550 for full details.

Configuring your CHM topic page templates for HelpXplain

HelpXplain presentations are fully compatible with CHM help files using any of Help+Manual's current CHM skins or the standard templates in newly-created projects. If you are using an older skin or template, you need to make a small change in the topic page template to ensure compatibility with HelpXplain.

1. Open the Help+Manual project (if you are **not** using a skin) or the **`.hmskin`** file (if you **are** using a skin).
2. Go to Configuration > HTML Page Templates > Default and look in the source code.

If *X-UA-Compatible* meta tags are already there:

If you find the following two lines, or any other version of the `X-UA-Compatible` meta tag:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
<IF_CHM><meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" con-
tent="IE=8" /></IF_CHM>
<IF_HTML><meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" con-
tent="IE=edge" /></IF_HTML>
```

Replace them with this single line:

```
<meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=edge" />
```

If *X-UA-Compatible meta tags* are not already there:

Simply add this single line, together with the other meta tags:

```
<meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=edge" />
```

The final result should be that there is only one `X-UA-Compatible` meta tag, with the content `IE=edge`.

5.13.3 Support in output formats

Support for local video files varies according to the output format you are using. This support is dependent on the output formats themselves, not on the capabilities of Help+Manual.

The bottom line is that if you want to be relatively sure that your movie will play on the user's computer then use online video services for CHM files, MP4 or online video services for WebHelp and M4V for videos in iBooks®/ePUB eBooks (only plays in Apple iBooks®). All other video formats will cause problems on at least some users' systems, even if they seem to be working for you.

Adobe Flash discontinued:

Adobe Flash has now been discontinued worldwide and on all platforms, among other things because of its horrendous security performance. Existing Flash videos in projects will still work on platforms that have Flash installed but you can no longer add new Flash content. We **strongly** recommend that you remove all Flash content.

Video with subtitles using the VTT MIME format

Video in the MP4 format including reference to text files for subtitles in the VTT MIME forum is supported in WebHelp and eWriter. If the subtitle files are available such videos can also be displayed with the subtitles when viewing WebHelp automatically after publishing. (This is achieved with Help+Manual's own HM2Go mini web server.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Support for video files in output formats

HTML Help / CHM:

Flash video is no longer supported worldwide and should be removed from all projects.

HelpXplain presentations are embedded in the CHM file and will play reliably. See Animated HelpXplain presentations 561 for details.

Online video services will play reliably in CHM files. All other video formats will fail to play in CHM files on at least some users' computers. Online video does require an Internet connection, of course. However, Help+Manual inserts the videos so that the connection is only required when the user actually clicks on the video to play it. The iFrame with the video content is not loaded at all until then. When the user clicks, the preview image is replaced with the iFrame.

MP4 video encoded with an Apple profile is the most reliable video format, if you must use local video. Note that the video will not and cannot be embedded in the CHM, as Microsoft now forbids this for all formats.

WebHelp:

Many video formats are theoretically supported, but we strongly recommend using only MP4 or online video services. Flash is no longer supported anywhere and should be removed from all projects if you have used it in the past.

HelpXplain presentations are ideal for WebHelp and will play reliably.

eWriter Exe eBooks:

Same video formats supported in WebHelp, including HelpXplain presentations.

iBooks®/ePUB eBooks:

Only Apple iBooks® supports video in ePUB eBooks reliably and for it to work you must use properly encoded M4V video files created with a tool that supports Apple video profiles, like Apple QuickTime or the excellent free Handbrake tool. No other video or presentation formats are supported in ePUB.

Some other ePUB readers may support video but you shouldn't rely on it yet.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	Some ePUB readers will support dynamic HelpXplain presentations but you shouldn't depend on it. Only use HelpXplain in ePUB if you are certain that all your users will have readers that support it.
Kindle eBooks:	No multimedia support. File links to external media files may work on Kindle apps in tablets and computers, but will fail on the original Kindle readers with e-ink displays.
Adobe PDF:	No multimedia support except as file links to external media files.
Word DOCX:	No multimedia support except as file links to external media files.

See also:

Help Formats 1504 (Reference)

5.14 Keywords and Indexes

Every help file or manual needs a keyword index and Help+Manual makes creating and maintaining a good index much easier than ever before. You can add index keywords to each topic in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. In addition to this you can also add keywords to anchors for even more granular index references.

If you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can use the Index Tool 568 to view and edit the finished index while you work. It enables you to work in the entire index directly as well as entering keywords for individual topics.

Since you can see the results immediately it is very easy to avoid multiple entries that are only slightly different from one another. In addition to this you can produce a much better index because you can refer to the finished index while adding new entries, and you can also navigate directly to the topics associated with index entries by clicking on the entries in the Index Tool.

See also:

IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600 (Reference)

5.14.1 Adding and editing keywords

Each topic in your project can have its own list of "index keywords", each of which will create an index entry in your output. You can add both simple keywords (master keywords) and keywords with sub-entries (child keywords). Only one level of child keywords is supported (this is a restriction imposed by the output formats, not by Help+Manual).

Index generation is automatic. An index will be generated when you publish as soon as you have added one or more keywords to any topic in your project. However, in WebHelp you need to activate the index in the output in your Navigation settings 1420 if you want to include it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Productivity Tip
It is best not to use keywords in popup topics and topics without TOC entries. Clicking on Keyword Index entries will display these topics in the main help viewer and this may confuse the user.

How to add keywords from the topic editor

You can quickly add any word or series of words in the topic editor as a keyword:

- Just select the word or phrase you want to add and press *Ctrl+K*.
- This is the standard keyboard shortcut for this function. You can change it if you like in **View > Program Options > Shortcuts.**

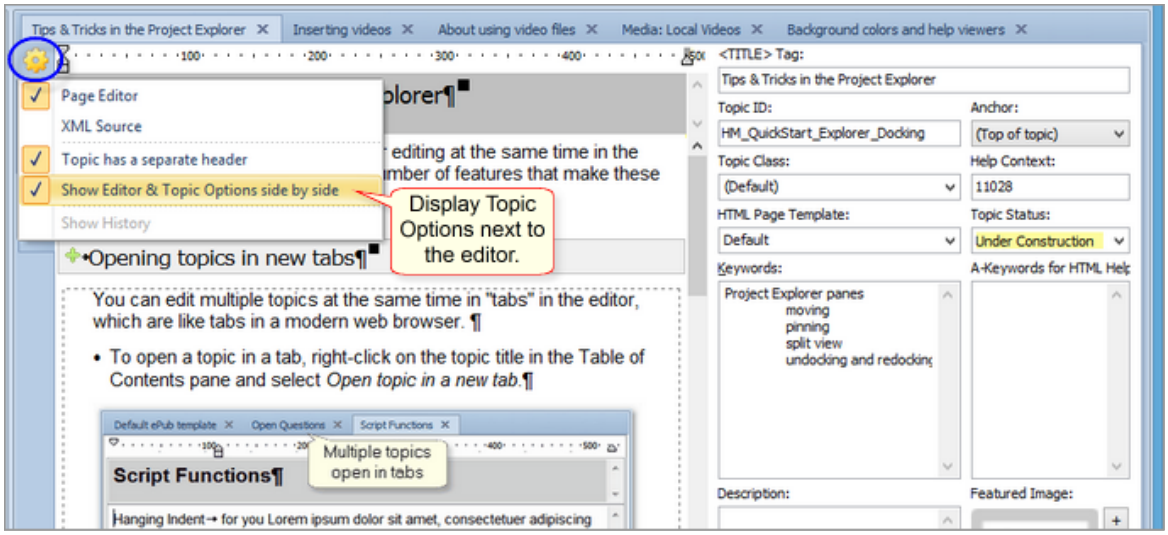
How to add and edit topic keywords

1. Select the topic you want to add a keyword to and select its tab below the editor window.
2. Type your index entries in the *Keywords:* field in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. Enter one keyword per line and press *Enter* after each keyword to create a new line.

Viewing the Topic Options tab and the topic at the same time:

Working with index keywords is easier if you can see the Topic Options tab and the topic content at the same time. To do this select *Show Topic Options side by side* in the topic options menu in the top right corner of the editor. See Tips & Tricks in the Project Explorer 82 for more details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Using the Index tool:

If you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can select the Index Tool 568 in **Project** > **Tools** so that you can see the finished index while you are writing.

How to add and edit topic sub-keywords

You can enter index keywords and sub-keywords in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. Indenting a keyword with the TAB key automatically makes it the sub-keyword of the keyword above it.

1. Proceed as described above for adding keywords.
2. Enter child keywords in the line directly below their master keyword and indent them with the *TAB* key. This will make it the sub-keyword of the keyword directly above it.

You can enter as many child keywords as you like for each master keyword – one per line.

You can only enter one level of child keywords. Child keywords cannot have their own child keywords.

Adding and editing keywords with the Index tool

If you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can also edit the real-time index directly with the Index tool. See Editing the index directly 568 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Finding topics with no keywords

You can locate topics that have no keywords with the Report Tool. Select the Report Tool in the Project tab, then choose Missing Keywords Report in the Report Type: field at the top of the dialog.

See The Project Report Tool 1212 for more details on using the Report Tool.

See also:

Editing the index directly 568
IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600 (Reference)

5.14.2 Editing the index directly

If you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can also edit the real-time index directly with the Index Tool in **Project** > **Tools.** Note that this tool is only available in the Professional and Floating license versions.

This tool enables you to edit keywords in all the topics where they occur simultaneously. You can also add keywords to multiple topics and delete keywords from multiple topics at the same time, in one quick operation.

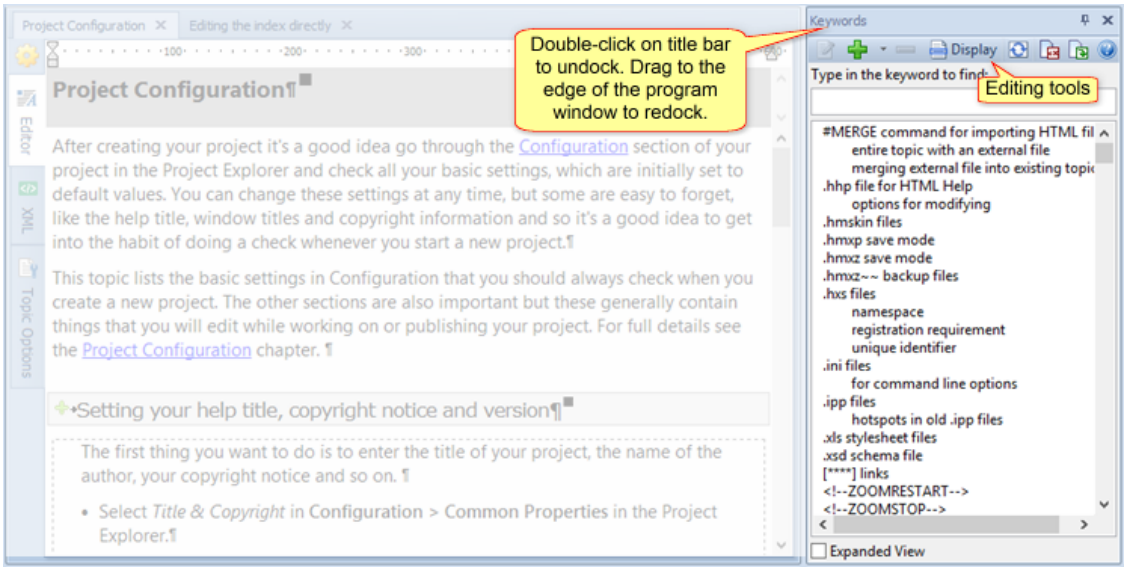
Productivity Tips
Select Expanded View at the bottom of the Index Tool window to display links to the topics containing the index keywords. Double-click on the Index Tool title bar to undock or redock it.

Editing keywords in the Index window

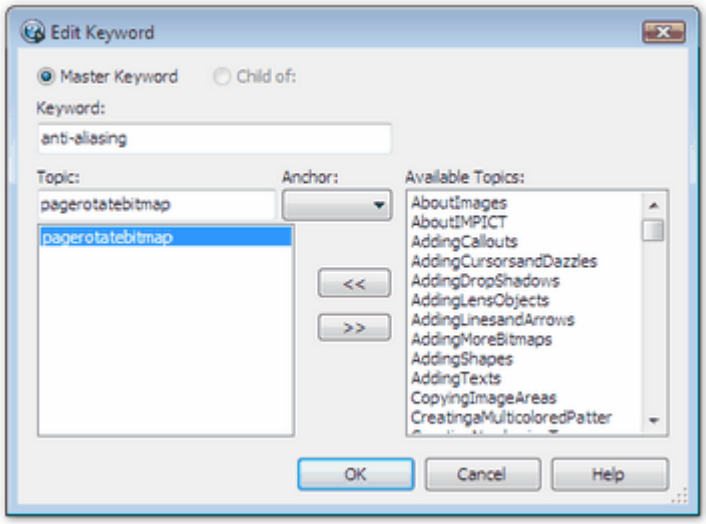
This method allows you to edit keywords in all the topics where they occur simultaneously. Any changes you make to the keyword in this editing dialog updates the keyword in all the topics where it is used.

1. Select the *Index Tool* in **Project** > **Tools**, this displays the index window to the right of the main editor pane.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Select a keyword in the index and then click on the *Edit Keyword* tool in the Index Tool toolbar. You can select a master keyword or a child keyword.



To add the keyword to more topics select the topics on the right and click on **<<**

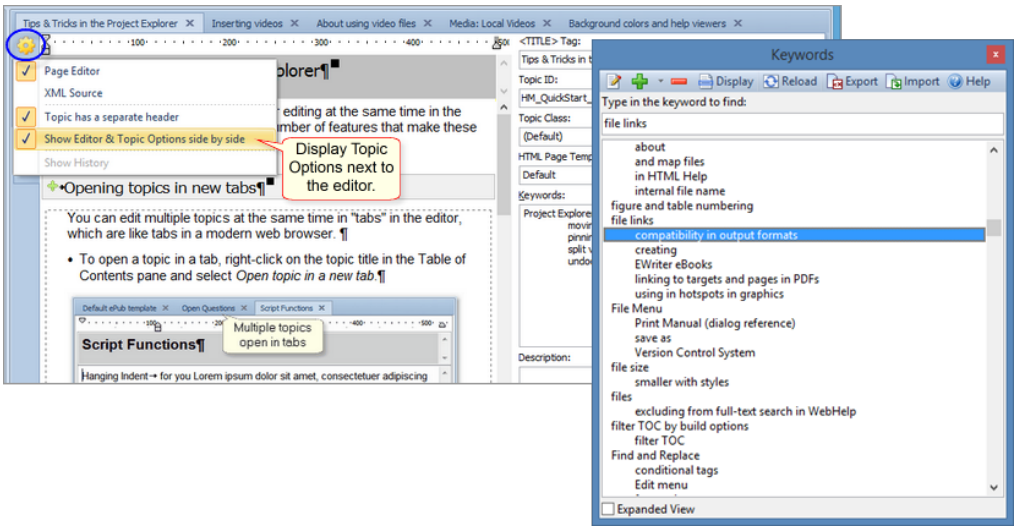
3. Edit the keyword in the *Keyword:* field, then click on OK to save your changes. This will save the modified keyword in all the topics whose IDs are listed in the *Topic:* list on the left.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Viewing Topic Options and the topic at the same time:

Display Topic Options next to the editor window:

Working with index keywords is easier if you can see and the topic content at the same time. You can't undock the Topic Options tab but you can display it next to the editor. To do this activate the *Show Editor & Topic Options side by side* in the options menu at the top left of the editor window.



Undock the Index tool:

Since this can make the editor a little narrow on smaller monitors it can be helpful to undock the Index tool, as shown above. To do this just double-click on the Index tool title bar. You can also get more space when you are working in this mode by pinning the Project Explorer to the left margin so that it collapses automatically when it is not needed.

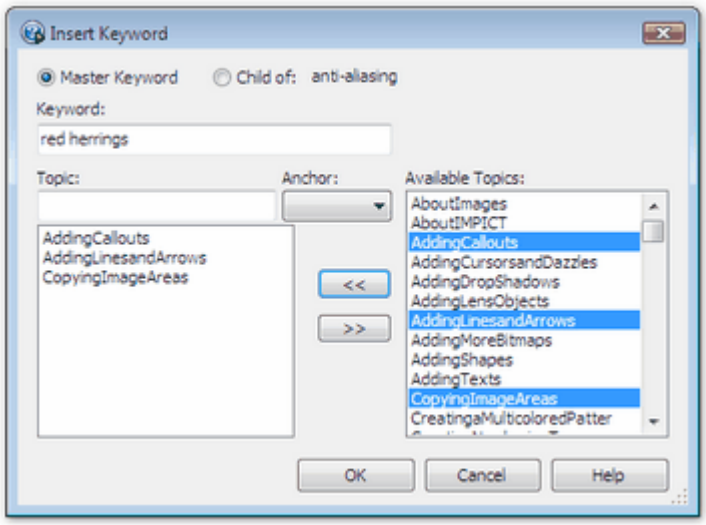
See Tips & Tricks in the Project Explorer 82 for instructions and more details on these features.

How to add new keywords in the Index tool

New master keyword:

1. Select the *Index Tool* in **Project** > **Tools** to display the Index window, then select the *Add Keyword* tool in the Index toolbar.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

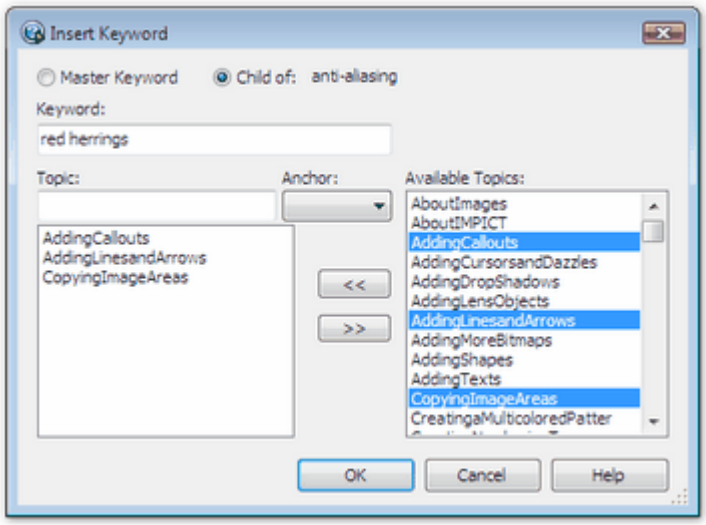


2. Select New Master Keyword and type the keyword in the Keyword: field of the dialog displayed.
3. In the *Available Topics:* list select the topic IDs of the topics you want to use the keyword in. Use *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click* to select multiple IDs.
4. Select << to add the IDs to the Topics list, then click on OK to insert the new keyword in all the selected topics. You can also double-click or drag to the left to add topics to the list.
5. Click on *Reload* in the Index toolbar to redisplay the index.

New child keyword:

1. Select a master keyword in the Index window. The new child keyword will be added to this keyword.
2. Select the *Add Keyword* tool in the Index toolbar and then select *New Child Keyword*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



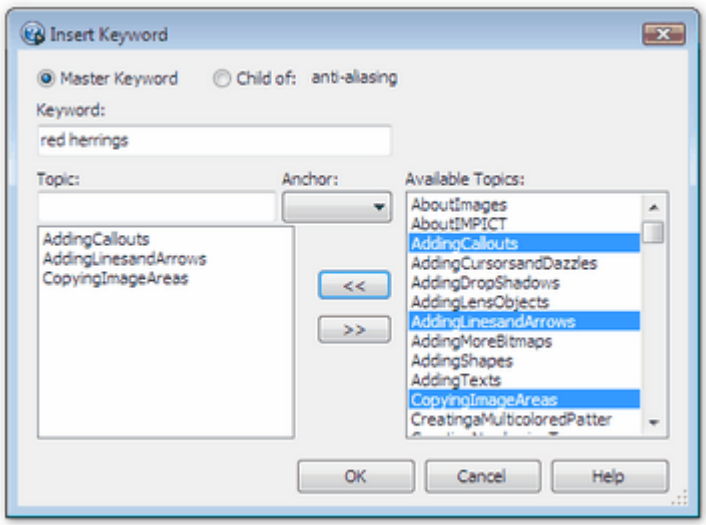
3. Enter the new child keyword in the dialog displayed and press on OK to confirm.

You can use the << button to add the same child keyword to additional topics – just select the topics in the list on the right and add them to the topics list on the left. If the master keyword is not stored in those topics it will be added too.

How to add keywords to additional topics

You can add selected keywords to additional topics or remove keywords from selected topics with the Index window tools.

1. Select the *Index Tool* in **Project** > **Tools** to display the Index window, select a keyword and open the editing dialog with the *Edit Keyword* tool.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. In the *Available Topics:* list select the topic IDs of the topics you want to use the keyword in. Use *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click* to select multiple IDs.
3. Select << to add the IDs to the Topics list, then click on OK to insert the new keyword in all the selected topics. You can also double-click or drag to the left to add topics to the list.

Adding keywords to anchors

If topics contain anchors you can add keywords to the anchors instead of to the main topic.

1. Use any of the methods described above to add or edit a keyword in the Index window.
2. In the Edit Keyword dialog select the topic in the list on the left, then select the anchor in the Anchors: drop-down list in the middle. The keyword will then be assigned to the anchor for this topic instead of to the top of the topic.

Anchors will only be displayed for topics that actually contain anchors. See Anchors - jump targets 415 for more details on how to enter and edit anchors.

Deleting keywords

Warning: Deleting keywords in the Index window deletes the keywords from **all** the topics in which they occur! If you only want to remove keywords from individual topics use the Edit Keyword tool or edit the keywords for the topics directly in the tab.

1. Select the *Index Tool* in **Project** > **Tools** to display the Index window.
2. Click on the Delete Keyword tool in the Index toolbar and confirm the prompt displayed.

See also:

IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600 (Reference)
Anchors - jump targets 415

5.14.3 Find and replace keywords

You can also perform search and replace operations in all the keywords in your project. This is a very useful Help+Manual function that is easy to overlook!

How to find and replace keywords

1. Select *Editing* > *Find and Replace Text* in the **Write** tab.
2. In *Find Where* select *In topic keywords.*

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that **Find and Replace** does not work on keywords attached to anchors 577, but it does work on A-keywords 579.

See also:

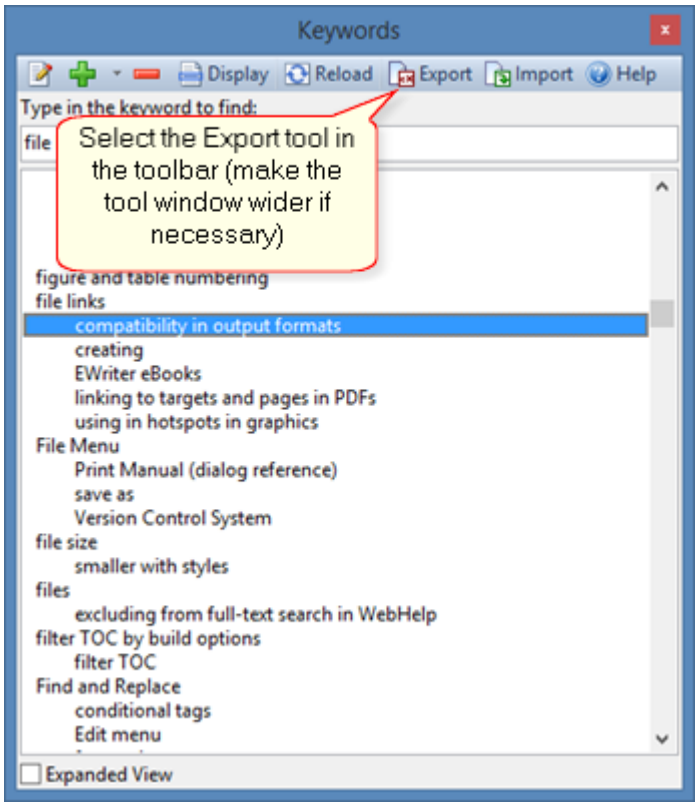
Searching for text, topics and referrers 235
IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600 (Reference)
Using keywords with anchors 577
Using A-keywords 579

5.14.4 Exporting and importing the index

If you are using the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can export the entire keyword index of your project as an XML file for external editing or translation. Then you can re-import the edited file to update the project index. This can either completely replace the existing index or add the new keywords in the file to the existing index.

Exporting the keyword index to an XML file

Activate the Index Tool and select Export in the toolbar at the top:



A save dialog will be saved in which you can choose the name and location of the exported index XML file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Editing or translating the keyword index file

The structure of the exported keyword index file is quite simple, but it's important to know what you can edit and what you should leave untouched:

```
<hmkeyword value=".ipp files" translate="true">
 <hmtopicid value="HM_Working_Graphics_Formats"/>
 <hmtopicid value="HM_Working_Graphics_Hotspots"/>
 <hmsubkeyword value="hotspots in old .ipp files" translate="true">
   <hmtopicid value="HM_Working_Graphics_Formats"/>
   <hmtopicid value="HM_Working_Graphics_Hotspots"/>
 </hmsubkeyword>
</hmkeyword>
```

Each keyword is stored in a **<hmkeyword> </hmkeyword>** tag pair, with the actual keyword in a value attribute. The topics in which the keyword is used are listed inside the tag pair, in **<hmtopicid />** elements. If the keyword has any sub-keywords, these are also enclosed inside the main hmkeyword element, in their own pair of **<hmsubkeyword> ... </hmsubkeyword>** tags that use the same structure, with the topics inside them in **<hmtopicid />** elements .

Normally, you should ONLY edit the *value* attributes!

You should only edit the **value="keyword"** attributes, particularly if you are translating the index. If you change the topic ID references the keywords will be applied to different topics when you import the index.

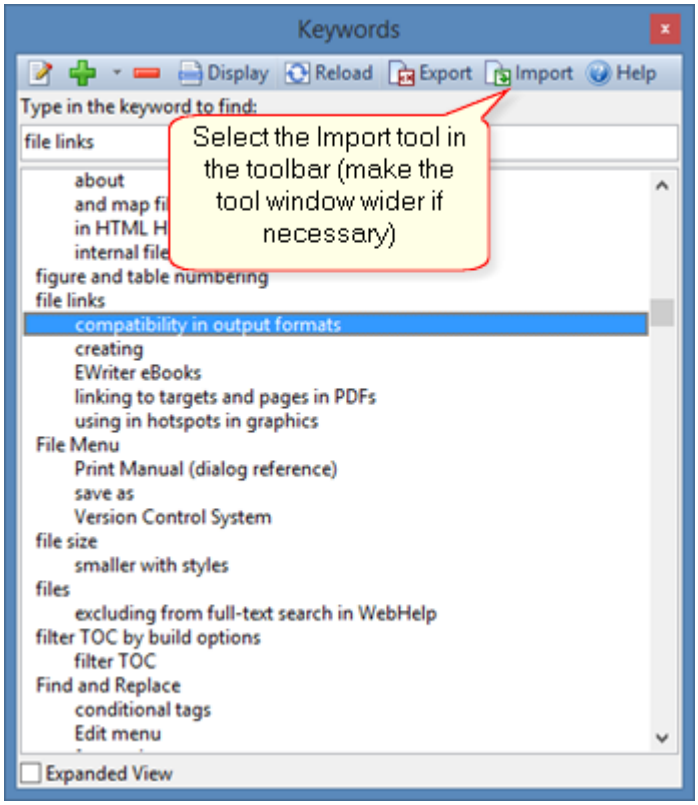
Adding keywords to new topics

If you want to add the keywords to new topics or remove them from existing topics, you can achieve this by adding, removing and changing the **hmtopicid** elements for the corresponding keywords. You can also add new keywords in the same way, so long as you preserve the structure described above. However, make sure that the topic IDs you use actually exist in the project, otherwise you will get errors!

Importing edited and translated index files

To import an edited index file, just select the Import icon in the toolbar of the Index tool:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



You will see a dialog with which you can choose the XML index file to import. You will then be asked if you want to add the new keywords in the index to the current project or to replace the current index with the imported index.

Always select REPLACE for translated indexes!

If you merge a translated index with an existing index you will get index entries in both languages, which you probably don't want. So always select the option to replace the existing index when importing a translated index.

Select Merge/Add to update existing indexes

If you select the merge/add option any keywords in the imported index that are not found in the current index will be added as new keywords. This also includes slightly edited versions of existing keywords, so please do be aware of this!

Correcting import errors

If you make an error and merge an index you wanted to replace there are two ways to correct this:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

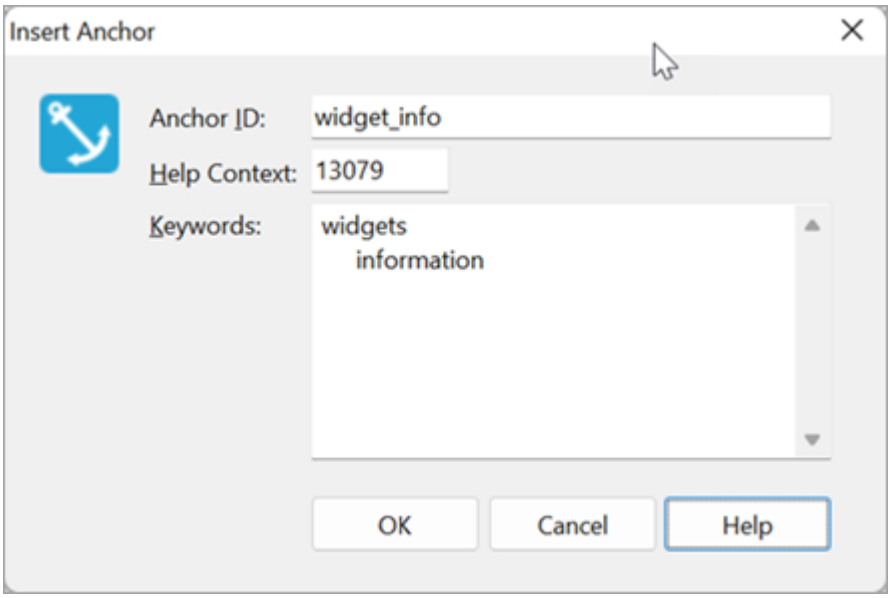
- Re-import the index with the REPLACE option (this will delete any keywords that are not in the imported index)
- Close the Help+Manual project without saving (you need to save before importing the index for this to be possible, of course)

5.14.5 Using keywords with anchors

Normally, clicking on an entry in the index of a help file executes a jump to the top of the topic containing the keyword. However, you can also associate keywords with anchors, which are jump targets in your topics. When an anchor keyword is clicked in the index the user is taken directly to the anchor location in the topic.

How to add keywords to an anchor

1. Select the Insert Anchor tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** to insert a new anchor or double-click on an anchor icon in your topic text to edit an existing anchor.



2. Type the keywords into the *Keywords:* field of the Anchor dialog. You can enter both main keywords and sub-keywords. Use the TAB key to enter sub-keywords (an indented keyword automatically becomes the sub-keyword of the keyword above it).

Same keywords in anchors and Topic Options:

It is possible to have the same keywords in both the topic's Topic Options and in one or more anchors in the same topic. However, if you want your index entries to enable jumps to the anchor without confusing the user it is better to avoid this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that you can also add keywords to anchors by editing the keyword with the Index Tool. See Editing the index directly 568 for details.

Displaying anchor keywords in the Index Tool

Anchor keywords in the Index Tool:

Normally, anchor keywords look exactly the same as other keywords in the Index Tool in **Project > Tools.** To make the anchor keywords visible select *Expanded View* at the bottom of the Index Tool window. The anchors of anchor keywords will then be displayed after their topic IDs, separated from the IDs by a **#** character, like this:

intro_part1#beginners

In the example above *intro_part1* is the topic ID and *beginners* is the anchor name.

Anchor keywords in the Edit Keyword dialog:

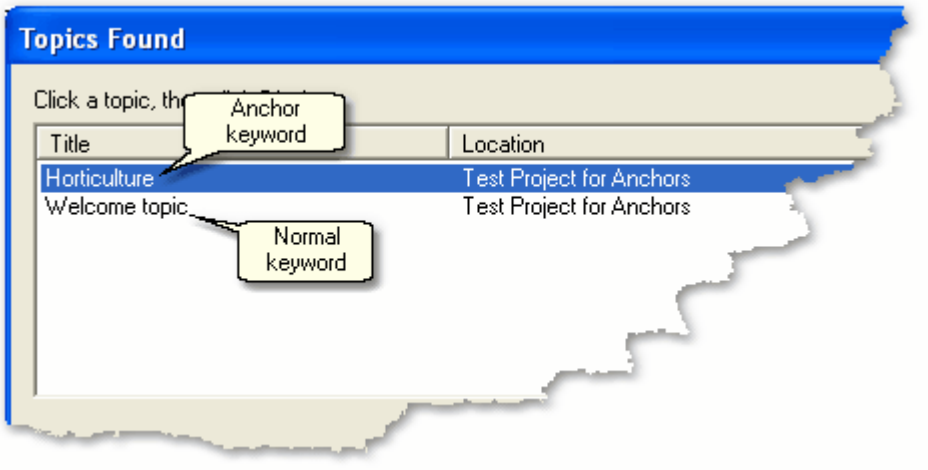
Anchor keywords are always displayed in the **`topic_id#anchorname`** format in the **Edit Keyword** dialog, which is display by selecting the Edit tool in the Index Tool toolbar.

Anchor keyword display in HTML Help

When the user clicks on a keyword found in multiple topics, a dialog is displayed showing the names of the topics in which the keywords are found together with the title of the help project (this is only really relevant for modular projects containing multiple help files).

In HTML Help, however, the keyword text is displayed instead of the name of the topic. This is a restriction of the HTML Help format and cannot be changed.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Both the entries found here refer to the keyword "Horticulture". The first keyword is an anchor keyword, the second is a normal keyword in a topic.

See also:

Editing the Index directly 568
IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600 (Reference)

5.14.6 Using A-keywords

Key Information
Note that A-keywords are a Microsoft help technology that is only supported in the Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) format. A-keywords are irrelevant in all other output formats, including WebHelp.

A-keywords, also known as "A-link keywords", are only used in Microsoft's HTML Help (CHM) format. They are quite similar to normal keywords but they not displayed in the index, they are always "hidden". What use is a keyword that isn't displayed anywhere? There are two major uses for A-keywords: To create "*See also*" lists of related topics and to create links between help files in modular help systems.

See About A-Keywords 1606 for background information.

How to make an automated See Also list with A-keywords

This method creates links that display a list of related topics. It only works in HTML Help CHM files. It will not work an any other output format.

Step 1: Enter the A-keywords

1. Select a topic and select its **Topic Options** tab (top left of the main editor window).

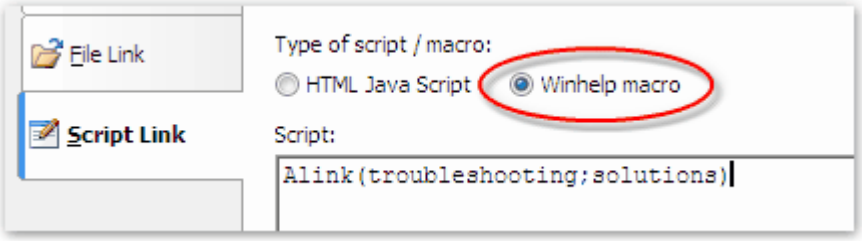
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Enter one or more keywords in the *A-Keywords:* section, one keyword per line. Note that sub-keywords are not supported with A-keywords!
3. Repeat for all topics you want to "associate" with one another, adding the same A-keyword to each topic.

Step 2: Create the link

The link that displays the list of *See also:* topics is created using the Winhelp ALink macro. The syntax of this macro is much simpler than its HTML Help equivalent and so Help+Manual automatically translates it when you output to HTML Help.

1. Select *Insert* > *Link* in **Write** > **Insert** to create a hyperlink.
2. Select the *Script Link* tab in the *Insert Hyperlink* dialog, then select *Winhelp macro* as the type of hyperlink.
3. Enter *Alink()* in the *Script:* field and type the keywords you want to link to between the parentheses. If you enter more than one keyword separate them with semicolon (;) characters, like this:



This example will create a link that displays a list of all topics that contain the A-keywords "troubleshooting" or "solutions".

Note that when you are working in HTML Help you can only enter keywords as the argument for the Winhelp macro. You cannot enter the other parameters for the Winhelp A-Link macro because they are not translated into HTML Help code!

How to link between help modules with A-keywords

Use this method to create links between the help files of modular help systems if there is a possibility that the help files containing the target topics may not be present when the help is viewed. This can happen when you use runtime merging and choose not to include one or more of the help files in your distribution. It can also happen if you are using conditional output to exclude modules from publish-time merged HTML Help and Winhelp projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This technique works both in HTML Help and the obsolete Winhelp forma but not in any other formats. Please study Working with Modular Help Systems 1088 before trying to use this method!

Step 1: Prepare the alternative topic in the master project

The alternative topic should be in the master project because this is the only help file that is always present in a runtime-merged modular help system.

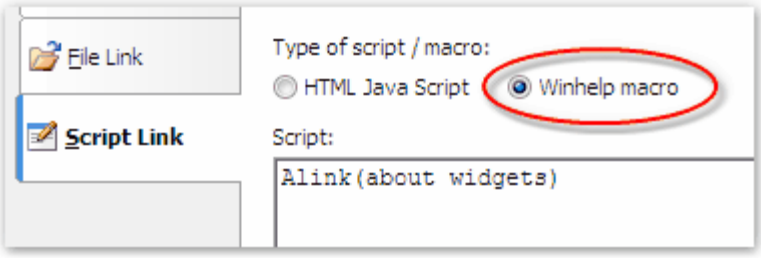
1. Open the master help project and choose or create the alternative topic that you want the user to be able to view when the other help file module containing the target topic is not available.
2. Select this alternative topic, select the tab and enter a unique A-keyword in the *A-Keywords:* field. The A-Keyword must be unique. It should not be used anywhere else in your projects! If it is, all the topics where it is used will be displayed when the A-Link hyperlink is clicked.

Step 2: Prepare the target topic in the child project

1. Open the child project and select the topic you want to link to.
2. Select the tab and enter the same unique A-keyword as above in the *A-Keywords:* field.

Step 3: Create the link

1. Open the project module in which you want to create the link. This can be a master module or another child module.
2. Select *Insert* > *Link* in **Write** > **Insert** to create a hyperlink.
3. Select the *Script Link* tab in the *Insert Hyperlink* dialog, then select *Winhelp macro* as the type of hyperlink.
4. Enter *Alink()* in the *Script:* field and type the keyword between the parentheses. If your keyword is "about widgets" the dialog would look like this:



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If the target help file is not present when the user clicks on the link the alternative topic will be displayed automatically. If the target topic is present a dialog will be displayed in which the user can select either the target topic or the alternative topic.

This is just a very simple example to show you how this solution works in principle. In practice you can also make more complex solutions, using more alternative topics and more keywords. If you use multiple keywords remember to separate them with semi-colons, like this:

```
Alink(about widgets;troubleshooting;widget solutions)
```

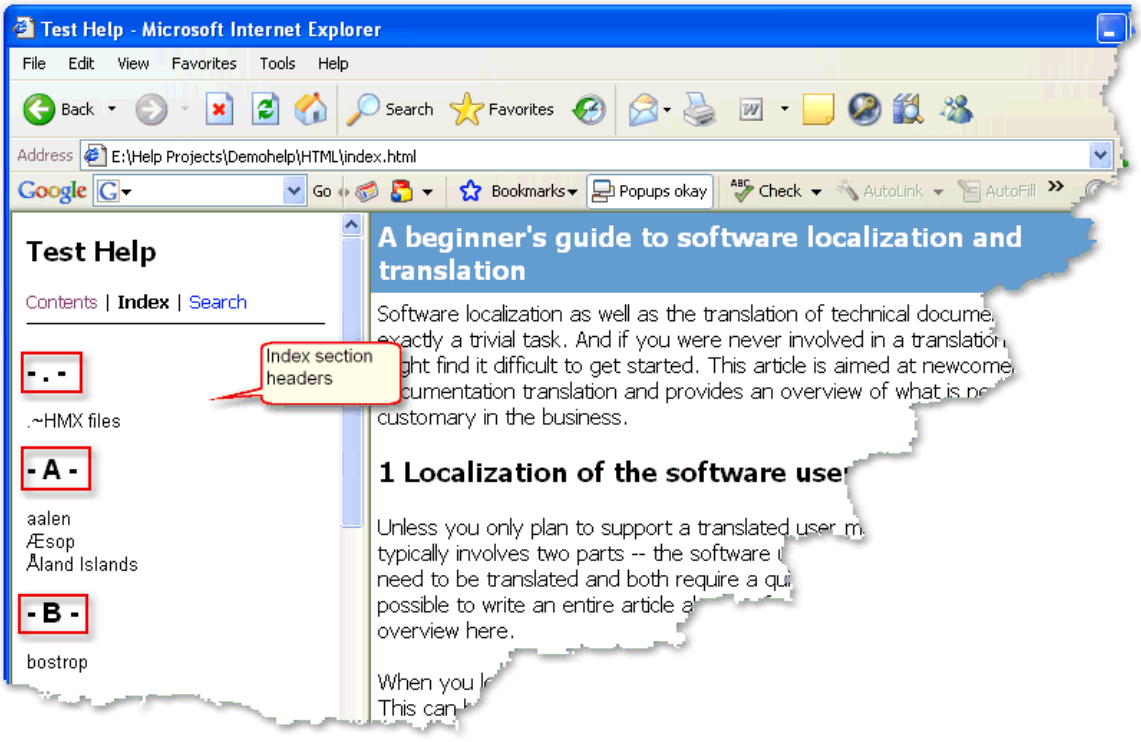
Note that when you are working in HTML Help you can only enter keywords as the argument for the Winhelp macro. You cannot enter the other parameters for the Winhelp A-Link macro because they are not translated into HTML Help code!

See also:

About A-Keywords (Reference)

5.14.7 Index section header separators

When Help+Manual generates keyword indexes in WebHelp and PDF, it automatically adds section headers corresponding to the letter of the alphabet. The keywords are then organized beneath the section headers by letter, which makes them easier for the user to find quickly:



Example of index section headers in Webhelp

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can edit the index section header separators if necessary, for example to add letters for non-English languages.

How to edit the separators for Webhelp and PDF

1. Locate the separators setting for WebHelp or PDF:

   WebHelp:
   In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Keyword Index**.

   PDF:
   Open the print manual template 803 for your project in the Print Manual Designer and select the Keyword Index section. Then select *File* > *Page Options* and choose the *Keyword Index Section* tab.

2. Then edit the list of separators for your own requirements. For example, for German you would enter:
   `A,Ä,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J,K,L,M,N,O,Ö,P,Q,R,S,T,U,Ü,V,W,X,Y,Z`

   Note that you don't need to enter separators for non-alphabetic characters like "**#**" and "**.**". If there are keywords starting with characters like these the section headers for them will be generated automatically and placed at the top of the list.

Adding "letter links" to the separators for Webhelp

It is practical to have "letter links" at top of the index that take you down to the corresponding letter in the index when you click on them:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The "letter links" in the Index

You can create links like these for your own help by adding some code to the HTML template for the WebHelp index. You need some experience with editing HTML manually to do this.

1. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Keyword Index** and select the *HTML Source Code* tab.
2. Locate the <%KEYWORD_INDEX%> variable. This variable inserts the content of your keyword index, so you want to insert your link list directly above it.
3. Insert one or two <br /> line break codes to create some space, then insert one link for each letter in your link list, using the following syntax:
   A

If you want links to keywords beginning with non-alphabetic characters you must also enter lines for them yourself. The result will look something like this:

```
...
<a href="<%HREF_CONTENT_PAGE%>">Contents</a>
<IF_INDEX_PAGE> | <b>Index</b></IF_INDEX_PAGE>
<IF_SEARCH_PAGE> | <a href="<%HREF_SEARCH_PAGE%
>">Search</a></IF_SEARCH_PAGE>
</p><hr size="1" />
<br><a href="#A">A</a>
  <a href="#B">B</a>
  <a href="#C">C</a>
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
  <a href="#D">D</a>
  ...
  <a href="#X">X</a>
  <a href="#Y">Y</a>
  <a href="#Z">Z</a>
<!-- Placeholder for the keyword index - this variable is
REQUIRED! -->
<%KEYWORD_INDEX%>
...
```

See also:

Using HTML templates 1026
About HTML templates 1611

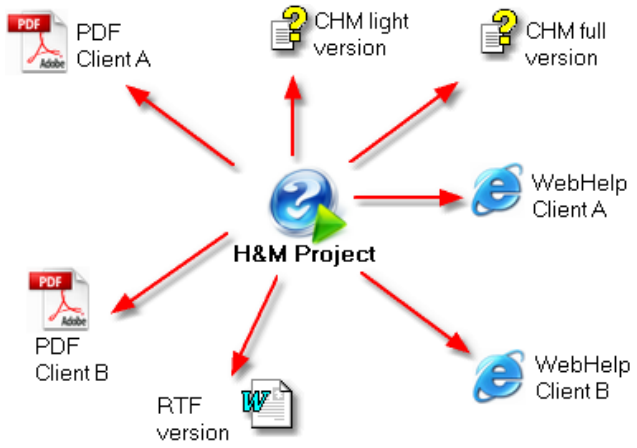
5.15 Single Sourcing

This chapter provides a brief introduction to the basic principles of single sourcing in Help+Manual. For full details on how to maintain different versions of your content and generate different versions of your projects see the following chapters in the help:

- See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for full details on using conditional output to create different versions of your project.
- See Working with Modular Help Systems 1088 to learn how to add entire projects to your project in the same way as topics. You can then include or exclude these projects with conditions in the same way as normal topics.
- See Command Line Options 816 to learn how to automate the process of generating different versions of your project. Once you have got it set up, you can generate multiple versions of your project to multiple destinations in multiple formats with a single click.
- See Publishing 613 for details on preparing your project for output to various formats.
- See Templates in Help+Manual 1007 and Using HTML Templates 1026 for information on the various template types available and what you can do with them.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

What is single sourcing?



You can produce multiple different versions of your project for any number of different purposes. You don't have to maintain multiple projects.

Single sourcing means using a single project to produce multiple versions of your documentation for different purposes.

This can be as simple or as complex as you need. For example, you might just want to produce a CHM and a PDF version of your documentation – the CHM for the online help and the PDF to allow your users to generate a printed version. Or you might want to generate a wide variety of very different versions for different purposes. For example, two versions of the help for a light and full version of your product, or different versions of your documentation with different brandings and content for different clients.

This is all possible from a single project. Each version can contain different topics and different chapters. Individual topics can contain different versions of the the text, different links and different images. Each WebHelp, CHM or PDF version can use a different skins and templates for different brandings and functionality.

This chapter introduces the basic principles of single-sourcing in Help+Manual and how you can use it to streamline multiple versions of your documentation without having to maintain multiple copies of the same text.

5.15.1 One Source - Many Formats

The simplest form of single-sourcing in Help+Manual is publishing exactly the same project to different formats. For example, you might want to publish a CHM version for interactive online help and a simple PDF version that users can use to generate a printed manual. Here

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

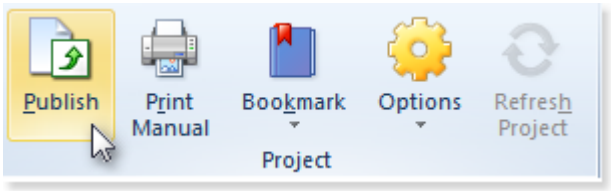
too, you will still need to make small variations in your content to adjust for the different contexts of the different output formats.

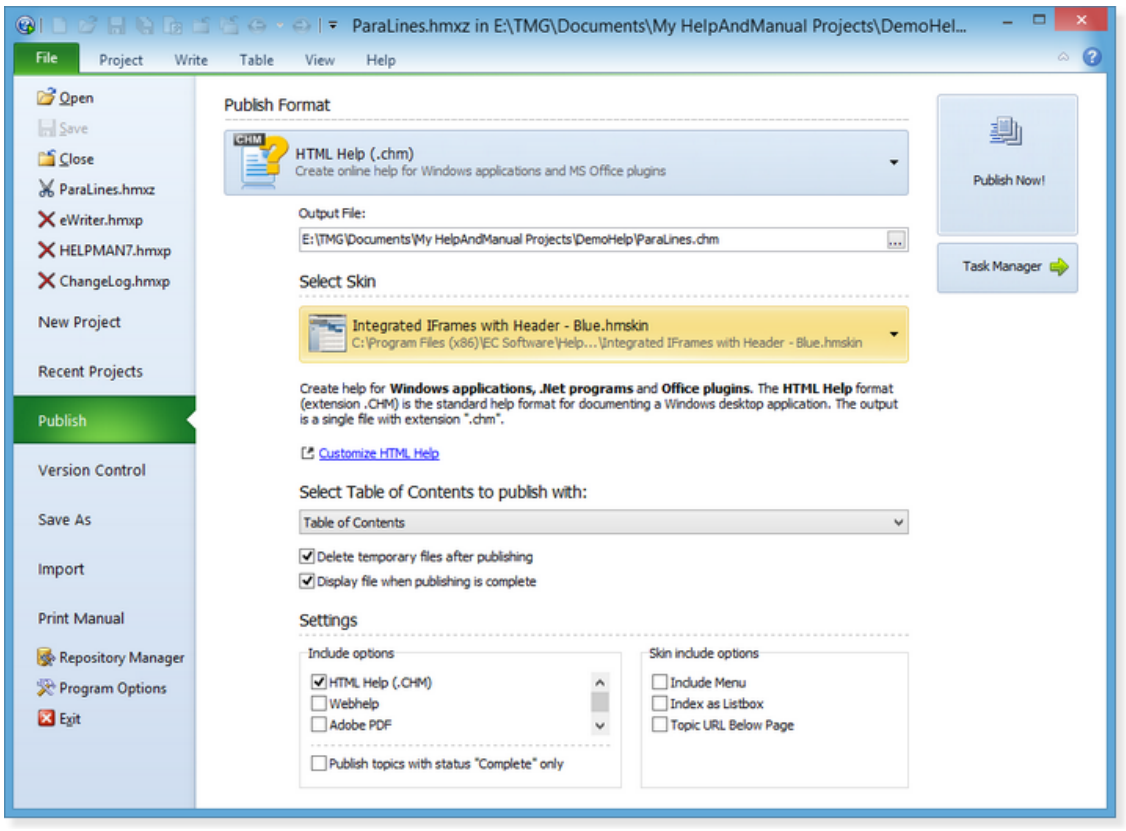
Publishing to a single output format

You can always publish your Help+Manual project to any of the supported formats, at any time. There is no "primary format", and no restriction on what format individual projects can be published to. This is made possible by the XML source format, which can always be used to generate any output format at any time.

The simplest way to publish is to a single output format.

1. Save your project, then select the *Publish* tool in the **Project** tab.





The Publish page

2. Choose the format you want to publish to, configure your output options and select *Publish Now!* to generate your published output.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Check out Publishing your Projects 613 for full details.

Publish to multiple formats in one easy process

You can define publishing "tasks" to publish your project to all the output formats you want to use in a single efficient process. Once you have set up a task it is saved and you then just have to select it to re-publish to all the same formats and locations again.

1. Save your project and select *Publish* in the **Project** tab.
2. Select *Task Manager* to display the Task Manager page. Then:

- Click on *Publish Task* to publish the current project using one of the predefined tasks.

OR

- Click on New Task to create a new publishing task.

OR

- Edit an existing task with the Add and Remove Task Action tools.

See Automating Publishing Jobs 809 for full details.

Adjusting included topics and topic content for different formats

Adjusting included topics:

See Multiple TOCs 592 for more detailed instructions.

1. In the Project Explorer, select the topic you want to include only in one or more specific output formats.
2. Select *Change* > *Include in Builds* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.** This displays a list of available build conditions that you can apply to the topic.
3. Activate the check boxes for all the formats where you want to include the selected topic. The topic will be included in formats you activate in this list. It will be excluded from all ones that are not activated.

Adjusting content in topics:

You do this with the Conditional Text tool, by tagging versions of text for inclusion and exclusion depending on the chosen output format.

For example, you might want to include an active hyperlink in the version designed for CHM but a simple chapter reference in a PDF designed for printing. The tagged text in a topic would look like this (this is a graphical screenshot, not real text):

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

In the example above, the "installation instructions" link will be included in the CHM version and the "chapter 1" text in the PDF version.

1. Select the text or other content (images, multiple paragraphs etc.) you want to include in a specific output format.
2. Select the Conditional Text tool with **Write** > **Insert Object** >
3. Select **IF** and the format you want to include the content in, then click on **OK** to apply the tags.

See Variant Content 589 in this chapter and Conditional text include options 994 for more details on using these functions.

See also:

Variant Content 589
Multiple TOCs 592
Publishing 613
Conditions and Customized Output 969

5.15.2 One Source - Different Versions

Even if you are not publishing versions of your project with different content you will still need slight variations in your output for different output formats. For example, some topics may not be appropriate in both CHM and PDF output, and some references in the text might need to be phrased differently in each format.

In addition to small variations in content and included topics for different output formats, you will sometimes want to produce versions of your project with larger differences. For example, different topics, topics in different order in the TOC and so on. In addition to this you might also want to generate these versions with a different "look and feel" or corporate branding. If you want to publish different versions of the project in the same output format, for example different versions of the same CHM, you need to define your own output conditions.

Defining your own build tags for different versions

You create versions with varying content by tagging content in your topic for inclusion or exclusion using what we refer to as "build options". You can do this both for output format (e.g. include in PDF, exclude in CHM) and for options that you define (e.g. include in DEMO BUILD, exclude for CLIENT JONES).

Tagging content for different output formats is easy, you just need to select the name of the output format, which is predefined. To create different versions of your project in the same format you need to define your own "build options". Once you have defined them, you can use them in exactly the same way as the format tags.

Defining custom build tags:

1. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Custom Builds**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Use *Add* and *Delete* to add and delete include options. When you define a new include option you must enter a "Build ID". This is the actual include option tag and it cannot be changed later. Use short names for the options, like BUILDA, CLIENT2, DEMO and so on.
3. Click in the *Display Text* column to edit the descriptive texts for your include options. These are just informative and do not have any effect on the functioning of the conditions. Keep them relatively short because they must be displayed in selection lists in dialogs, which are generally quite narrow.

All the definitions you enter here are automatically displayed in all locations where include options are used.

Tagging content in topics for inclusion or exclusion

You tag variant content in topics for exclusion or inclusion with the Conditional Text tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**.

For example, you might want to include an active hyperlink in the version designed for CHM but a simple chapter reference in a PDF designed for printing. The tagged text in a topic would look like this:

In the example above, the "installation instructions" link will be included in the CHM version and the "chapter 1" text in the PDF version. You can use your own build tags (see above) in exactly the same way. Then you can include content by activating the tags when you publish and exclude it by deactivating them.

You apply your own user-defined tags like DEM'O and CLIENTA in exactly the same way. They are also displayed in the Conditional Text tool.

Applying the build conditions:

1. Select the text or other content (images, multiple paragraphs etc.) you want to include in a specific output format.
2. Select the Conditional Text tool with **Write** > **Insert Object** > IF
3. Select **If** or I**f Not** and the format you want to include the content in, then click on **OK** to apply the tags.

Publishing your project:

When you publish your project the build tags you define are automatically displayed in the Publish dialog, in the *Include Options:* box. To activate a build tag select its check box, then the content marked with those tags will be included. The format tags (PDF, CHM etc.) are selected automatically, depending on the output format you choose.

See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for full details on using these features.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Tagging topics, chapters and modules for inclusion or exclusion

Just as you apply build options to content in topics with the Conditional Text tool, you can apply the same build options to every item you can include in the TOC. This includes topics, chapters and entire project modules 1088 inserted in modular projects.

Applying the build conditions:

1. In the Project Explorer, select the topic, chapter or module you want to include only in one or more output formats or builds.
2. Select *Change* > *Include in Builds* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.** This displays a list of available build conditions that you can apply to the topic. This menu is also available with a right-click on the item in the TOC.
3. Activate the check boxes for all the formats where you want to include the selected topic, chapter or module. It will be included in formats you activate in this list. It will be excluded from all ones that are not activated.

Adding alternative TOCs to your project

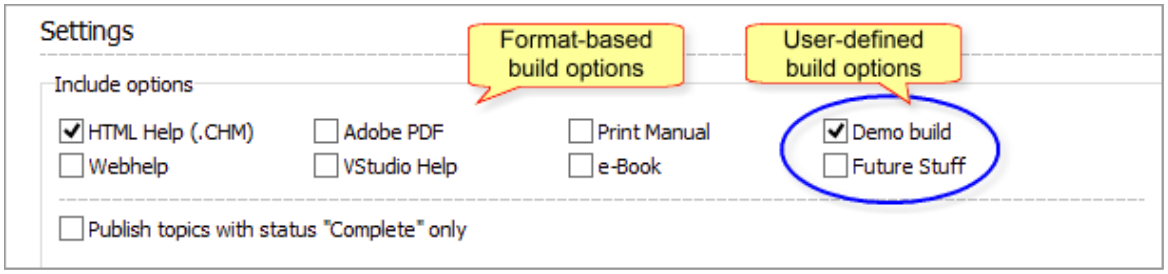
Sometimes just including and excluding individual topics is not enough for an alternative version. You need a completely different TOC structure. That is possible with includes, but very difficult to manage. Instead, you can insert an additional TOC with a different selection of entries organized in a different way. The entries in your additional TOC can point to the same topic files as those in your main TOC. In addition to this, the alternative TOC can also have unique topics of its own that are not used in the main TOC at all.

When you publish your project you can then choose which TOC you want to use. See Multiple TOCs 592 for detailed instructions explaining how to use this powerful feature.

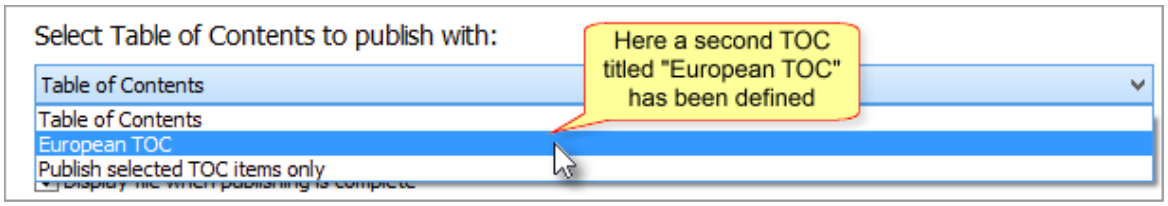
Publishing your project with build options and alternative TOCs

When you publish your project both the format-based build options and your user-defined build options are displayed in the Publish dialog, in the *Include Options:* box. To activate a build tag select its check box. Then the content marked with those tags will be included. The format tags (PDF, CHM etc.) are selected automatically, depending on the output format you choose:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



If you have defined more than one TOC in your project you can also select the TOC you want to use in the Select Table of Contents section:



See Conditions and Customized Output 969 and Multiple TOCs 592 for more detailed instructions on using these features.

See also:

Multiple TOCs 592
Publishing 613
Conditions and Customized Output 969
Working with Modular Help Systems 1088

5.15.3 One Source - Multiple TOCs

Help+Manual's conditional output features can create a wide range of variants of your project for different purposes. However, it is difficult to create versions with TOCs that have very different structures using only conditional output. The multiple TOC feature solves this problem. It allows you to create completely different TOCs with a different structure and different entries for different purposes.

The entries in your additional TOCs can point to the same topic files as in your main TOC. Or they can have their own topic files that only exist in that TOC. When you publish you choose which TOC you want to use, and only the topics referenced by that TOC are exported – in some cases along with topic files linked to in those topics, to prevent dead links.

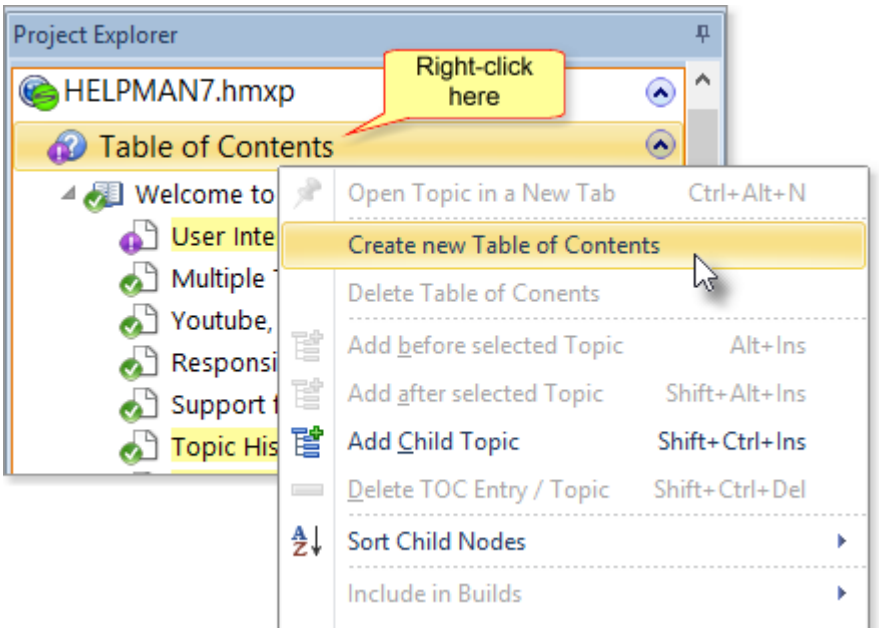
See Publishing projects with multiple TOCs 629 for details on selecting specific TOCs when you are publishing your projects. Also see the Multiple TOCs tutorial project that you can access directly in the Welcome page at the top of the Project Explorer on the left.

How to create an additional TOC

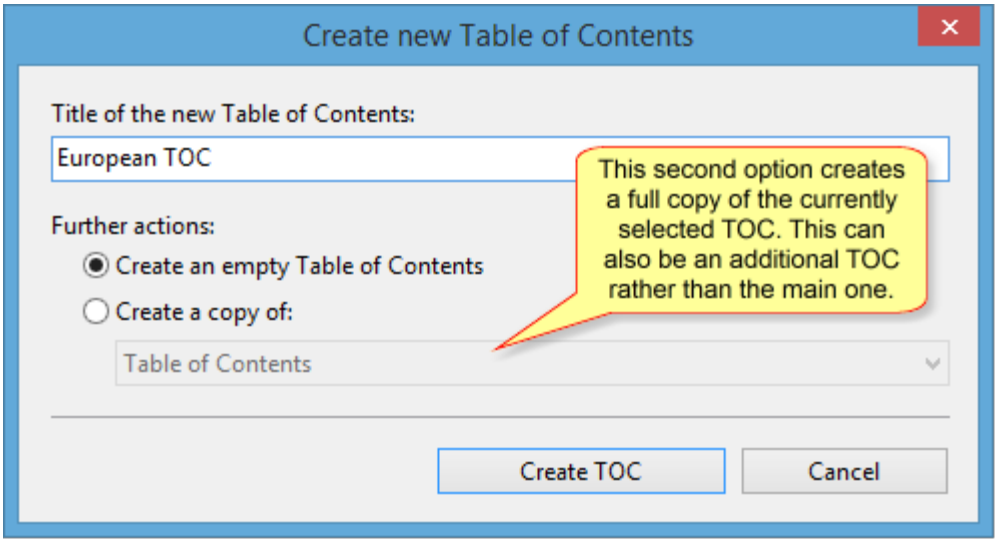
1. Right-click on the **Table of Contents** entry at the top of the Project Explorer on the left

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

and select *Create new Table of Contents* in the context menu.

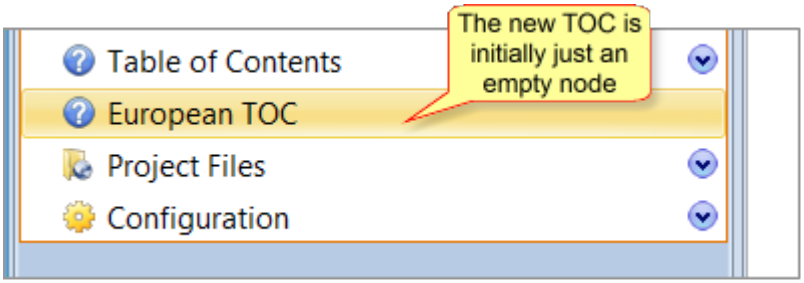


2. This opens the New TOC dialog:



3. Enter a descriptive title for the new TOC and choose whether you want it to be empty or a copy of the current TOC. If this is your first additional TOC you probably want it to be empty rather than a full copy of the entire TOC. Later you may want to make copies of existing additional TOCs that you then edit.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



4. Then create new entries in the new TOC in any of these ways:
   - Drag items from another TOC into the new one (onto the empty node if it doesn't yet have any entries). This does not create new topics. It only creates new references to existing topics.
   - Copy and paste from another TOC.
   - Create new entries with the **Add Topic** tool in the **Project** tab. If you use the *TOC Link* option it creates new entries for existing topics. If you use the *New Topic* option you will create completely new topics.

IMPORTANT: The "main" TOC always includes all topics!

To maintain compatibility with existing projects, the "original" or "main" TOC in your project will always include all topics when you publish with it. If you remove TOC entries from it without explicitly excluding the topic files that no longer have TOC entries (by using build options 989), those files will still all be included in the background in HTML output when you publish with the main TOC. They can then be found by search and the keyword index.

This only applies to CHM, WebHelp, eWriter and Visual Studio Help output. It doesn't apply to PDF, DOCX and eBooks, because there only topics that have TOC entries can ever be included.

Only secondary TOCs automatically exclude the topics for which they do not have TOC entries!

If you want to create an alternative TOC with a reduced or different set of topics, always do this with a secondary TOC, not with your "main" or "original" TOC (the top one). Again: The main TOC is always complete. If there are topic files without TOC entries in the project they will be included in the background when you choose the main TOC unless they have explicit build options that exclude them.

Use build options to to include hidden topics with secondary TOCs

By the same token, topic files without TOC entries will not be included automatically in the background with secondary TOCs. Then, a topic file without an entry in the current TOC will still be excluded even if it is set to "all builds". It will only be included if you explicitly

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

set a specific build option on it and activate that in the include options for the publishing operation.

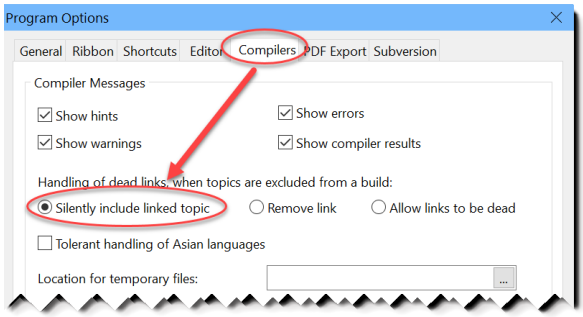
Popups in secondary TOCs

When you use popup topics in secondary TOCs the popup topic files your links refer to will not be included automatically as they are when you use the primary TOC. The *All Builds* include option assigned to all topics by default only works automatically in the primary TOC.

When you are using multiple TOCs in your project and publishing a secondary TOC, any popup topics you link to must be included explicitly. You can do this in two different ways:

Option 1: Dead links handling options

Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and set the dead links handling option to *Silently include linked topic*. This is the simplest solution but it will also automatically include any excluded topic files that you may have referenced with regular topic links. So you should always check your compiler report for topics like these that you may have not wanted to include. You can then handle the links with conditional text 984 to exclude them automatically.

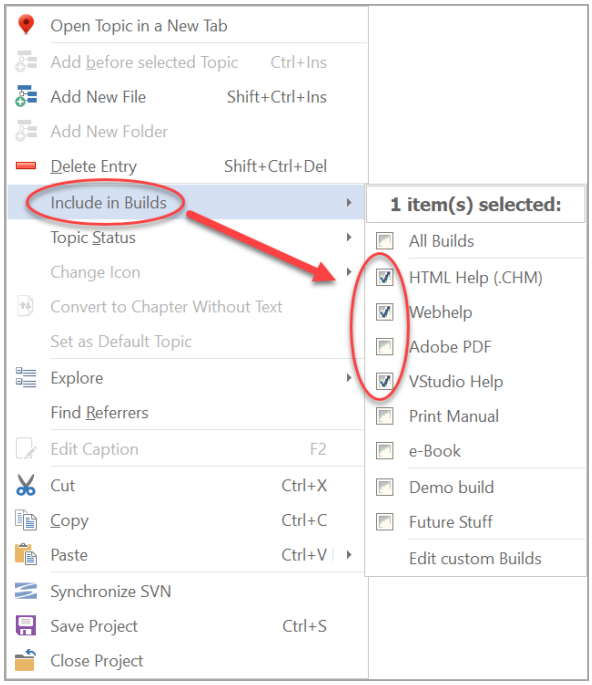


Option 2: Set the build options of your popup topic files

Alternatively you can set the build options of your popup topic files to the output formats that support popups, which are WebHelp, CHM, eWriter, and Visual Studio Help (if you are using that). The eWriter format will be included automatically if you set WebHelp, so generally you will only need to set CHM and WebHelp.

1. Right-click on the popup topic file in Project Files > Topic Files and select Include in Builds in the context menu.
2. Set the include options to WebHelp, CHM and (if necessary) also VSHelp.
3. Repeat for all your poup topic files.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Managing links to excluded topics in additional TOCs

When you create a TOC that is a subset of the main TOC, your topics will often contain links to topics that are not in the new TOC. You need to take steps to deal with these links to ensure that they are not dead and so that they do not accidentally provide access to content you don't want to include in the version with this TOC.

Failsafe: Global options for links to excluded topics

You can set a global option for how links to excluded topics are handled in **View > Program Options > Compilers**. There are three choices:

- **Silently include linked topic**
  In HTML-based output formats this exports the topic file without a TOC entry so that the link displays the topic. In PDF and DOCX this has no effect, because only topics that are in the TOC can be in the document.
- **Remove link**
  This turns the link into plain text. The referenced topic is not exported.
- **Allow links to be dead**
  This leaves the links unchanged in the topics but does not export the linked topic files. So either nothing happens or an error message (404) is displayed when the user clicks on the link. This can be good "protection" if you are managing the links with conditional output, to make sure that the excluded topics are never seen.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use conditional output to replace the links with alternative text

This is basically the same approach you would use for handling the same problem in normal conditional output scenarios where topics are excluded. See this topic 984 for full instructions.

Create conditional output build options for your additional TOCs and apply them to the links to the external topics so with the Conditional Text tool. You can use this method to either remove the references entirely, or replace them with alternative text or alternative links in the version with the additional TOC.

For example, suppose you have a TOC for a specific client. You could create a conditional build option called **CLIENT_B** and then tag the link with it like this:

This inserts the first link if you are not exporting the **CLIENT_B** version and the second link if you are.

Setting the default topic with multiple TOCs

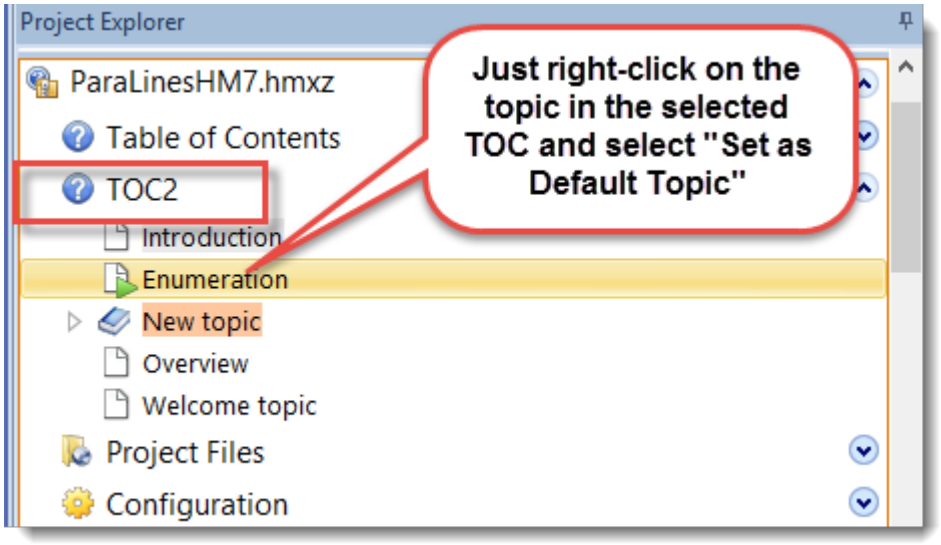
If you are using multiple TOCs in your project you can set a separate default topic for each TOC. Then you will automatically get the correct default topic for that TOC when you use it.

See Setting the default topic 128 for full details on setting and managing the default topic for your project.

Important: The default for secondary TOCs must be set in the TOC
Default topics for secondary TOCs must be set directly in the TOC. The setting in **Configuration > Common Properties > Language Options** is only for the main TOC.

Each TOC you define can have its own default topic. Just right-click on the topic you want to use as the default in the TOC and select "Set as Default Topic" in the context menu.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

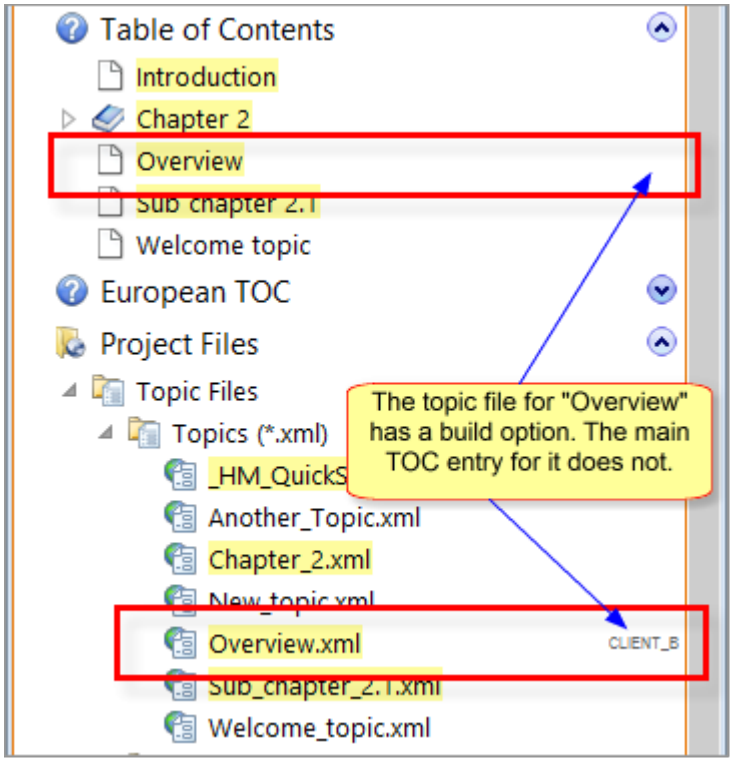


More granular control of output with include options on topic files

In addition to the conditional output tagging inside topics described above, it is also possible to apply include options to the topic files referenced by the links but not to the TOC entries in the main TOC pointing to them. This is possible because TOC entries and topic files are separate items and each can have their own build options.

Consider this example:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



This would allow you to include the *Overview* topic file with your additional TOC by activating the build option **CLIENT_B** in your publishing settings, even if it does not have a TOC entry.

You can do this if you activate the global option "*Allow links to be dead*" to handle the majority of links, but have a few links for which you do want to include the linked topics, for example.

What happens to topics like this in Word and PDF output?

When you then publish the normal TOC that includes the *Overview* entry to PDF or Word you have a logical discrepancy: The TOC entry says to include it, but the topic file include option says to exclude it. That is OK, because in those formats only topics with TOC entries are included and the TOC entry setting then has priority. The topic will thus be included normally.

Topics without TOC entries in additional TOCs

When you use topics without TOC entries 179 in combination with additional TOCs you may need to take additional action to ensure that the topic file is included in your output. An additional TOC acts like an include option for every topic it includes, and by default all other topics can be excluded. Because of this, topic files that are only accessed by hyper-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

links and not by TOC entries may get excluded if you are not careful.

Method 1: Use the compiler option to force inclusion

This is the simplest solution. It tells Help+Manual to automatically include any topic file that is referenced with a link in your project. Just go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and set the *Handling of dead links option* to *Silently include linked topic*. This will include all topic files referenced with hyperlinks, even if they don't have TOC entries. The included topic files will be listed in the compiler report.

Side-effect: This will also include topics that were excluded from the TOC with build options, if there are links to those topics that you have overlooked. Check the compiler report!

Method 2: Use a user-defined include option

Alternatively, you can define an include option 988 with a descriptive name like **NONTOC** or something like that and apply it to the topic file 991 in the Topic Files section. Then you just need to activate that option 983 in the Publish screen when you publish. Then all topics tagged with that option will be included in your output.

Creating TOC entries for "invisible" topics in PDFs

PDF is a special case because only topics with TOC entries can be included in PDF documents. If your project contains "invisible" topics that are normally only displayed with hyperlinks from other topics you must add TOC entries for them to be able to include them in the PDF version of your output. This is very simple to do with the knowledge you now have:

1. Create TOC entries for the "invisible" topics: Either drag the topic file into the TOC or create a "new" topic and select the topic ID of the invisible topic with the ... browse button in the Topic ID: field of the new topic dialog. You might want to organize these TOC entries as one or more special chapters in your TOC.
2. Apply build options to the new TOC entries so that they are only included in the PDF version of your output. See See *Including and excluding TOC entries* above for instructions.

How to "filter" the TOC display by build/include options

You can use include options to "filter" the display of your topics in the TOC and Topic Files section of the Project Explorer. This makes it possible for you to see only the topics that

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

will be included in a specific build, so that you can preview the results of specific build options without publishing your project.

1. Apply build options to one or more topics. If you don't do this filtering will not have any effect! See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for details.
2. Select *Explore* > *Filter* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and set the filter options you want to apply. The filter settings are also available from the right-click menu in the Project Explorer (*Explore* > *Filter*).

   This works both in the TOC and in Topic Files. This only filters entire topics, it does not filter conditional text tagged within your topics.

Important Notes:

- The current build settings of topics are shown in the Project Explorer, next to the topic caption in the TOC. Topics and chapters set to *All Builds* (the default) will always be included, of course – you cannot hide them.
- Filtered topics will be either shown in a different color or hidden completely. This depends on your settings for *When filtering the table of contents...* in **View** > **Program Options** > **General**. See Program Options - General 1261 for details on these settings.

See also:

Preventing dead links 984 (Conditional Output)
Publishing projects with multiple TOCs 629 (Publishing)

5.15.4 Templates and Skins

In addition to varying the content of your output you will often also want to vary the layout and appearance of different versions of your project when you publish it. How you do this and what options are available depends on the output format you are using.

Templates and skins for Webhelp and CHM

The HTML templates 1026 used in WebHelp and CHM are stored in your project and are fully editable. You can have multiple templates for topics stored in a single project but only one version of the templates for the navigation panes (TOC, Index and Search) used in WebHelp. The multiple topic templates are primarily useful for having different layouts for different topics within the same project.

If you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can save all the templates in your project in a "skin" that you can then apply to other projects to change their layout.

Alternative topic page templates:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The HTML topic page templates define the basic layout of your topic pages in HTML-based output formats. When you publish your project the template provides everything in the page except the actual topic content, including headers and footers, any JavaScript functionality and so on. Normally your project only has one topic page template called "Default" and this is used for all topics. You can define additional templates and then assign them to individual topics by selecting the template for the topic in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. See HTML topic page templates 1036 for full details.

If you want to use different topic page templates for individual topics in different versions of your project without using a skin (see below) you need to use snippets:

1. Create the topic itself in the **Project Files** > **Topics** section (not in the TOC). This will create a topic without a TOC entry, which is what we want here because we are only using this topic for copying.
2. Set the build options of the topic to "none" so that the actual file is not included in your output.
3. Create two or more empty topics in the TOC in the positions where you want to have the different versions of your topics.
4. In both topics, insert the topic file created in step 1 as a linked snippet. See Re-using content with snippets 265 for full instructions.
5. In the Topic Options tab of each topic, select the HTML page template that you want to use for that topic.
6. Apply the build options in the TOC to include and exclude the topic versions as required.

Switching template sets with skins:

Normally, you will want to change the entire layout of your project for different purposes. With Help+Manual Professional you can do this with "skins", which save all the HTML templates in your project in a special file that you can apply to any project when you publish it to an HTML-based format. When you do this, all the HTML templates in the project are replaced with those in the skin. The skin can also include variable definitions, Baggage files and text and paragraph styles.

You can also use multiple HTML topic page templates for different topics in skins, provided the project you apply the skin to uses the same template names. For example, if your original project uses HTML topic page templates called *Default*, *PageA* and *PageB* these will be replaced by the versions in the skin if the skin also contains HTML topic page templates called *Default*, *PageA* and *PageB*.

1. Edit the HTML templates in a project to get the layout and effects you want. If you create multiple topic page templates make sure that their names match those used in the projects you want to format with the skin. See Using HTML Templates 1026 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Select Save As... in the File menu and save the project as a skin. The skin can also contain variable definitions, text and paragraph styles and Baggage files. If you include styles, their names must also match those used in the projects you want to format with the skin.
3. When you publish another project to an HTML-based format select the skin created in step 2 by clicking on the **Select Skin** bar in the **Publish** dialog. This will replace the templates, variables, Baggage files and styles in the project with those from the skin.

See Transforming your output with skins 638 for more details.

Templates for PDF files

The layout of your PDF output is defined in special layout files called print manual templates, with the extension **`.mnl`**. You can edit and create these templates with the Manual Designer program included with Help+Manual, which has extensive help and tutorials of its own.

Like skins for HTML-based formats, PDF print manual templates can be selected in the Publish dialog with a single click. This makes it possible to apply a completely different look and feel and/or corporate branding to a document in seconds. In addition to the general page layout, the PDF template defines the front and back cover pages, the layout of the table of contents, additional pages like the Foreword and end notes and intro pages for top level topics, user-defined pages, headers and footers, page and section numbering styles and so on.

See PDF and Printed Manuals 785 for full details and instructions.

Templates for eBooks

Help+Manual can generate two different kinds of eBooks: Windows EXE eBooks and ePUB eBooks. A number of pre-designed layout templates for EXE eBooks are included. Formatting options in ePUB eBooks are quite limited and alternative templates are not an option because the strictness of the ePUB format means that the templates should not be edited.

See the chapters on ePUB eBooks 749 and Windows Exe eBooks 696 in the Publishing section for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Word DOCX documents

Word DOCX is not generally a primary choice as a documentation format. If you want to provide a printable version of your documentation use PDF, if you want to provide an interactive help system use CHM or WebHelp, if you want to provide an eBook use ePUB or Windows EXE eBooks.

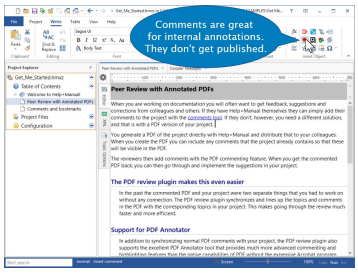
Even so, you can configure the layout of your DOCX output in Help+Manual very extensively with special DOCX template files that you can create and edit directly in MS Word. See the MS Word DOCX 682 publishing chapter for details.

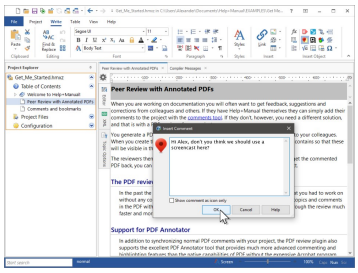
See also:

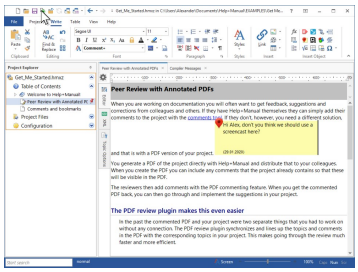
Templates in Help+Manual 1007
Using HTML Templates 1026
Transforming your output with skins 667
Publishing 613
PDF and Printed Manuals 785

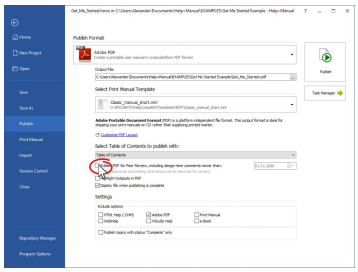
5.16 Peer Review with Annotated PDFs

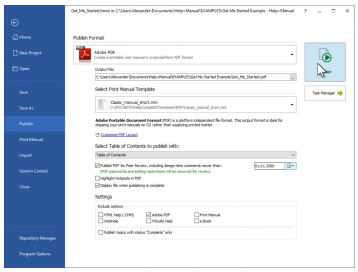
When you are working on documentation you will often want to get feedback, suggestions and corrections from colleagues and others. If they have Help+Manual themselves they can simply add their comments to the project with the comments tool 253. If they don't, however, you need a different solution, and that is with a PDF version of your project.



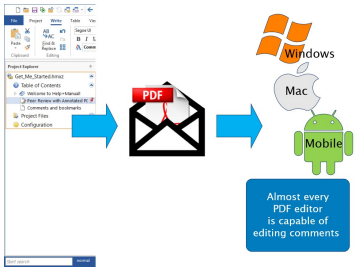


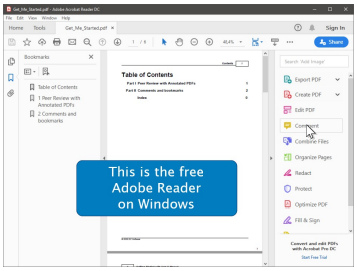


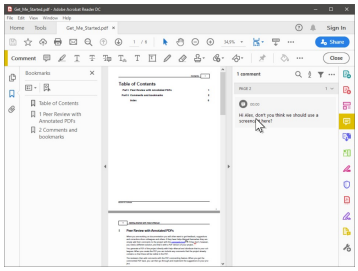


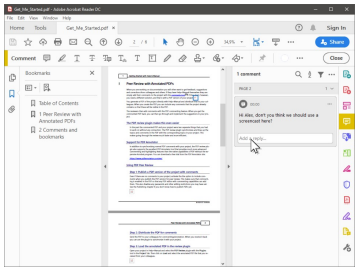


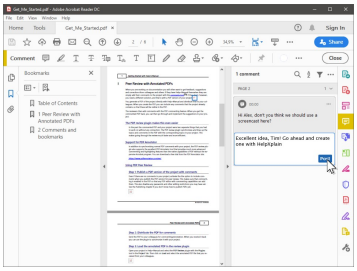
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

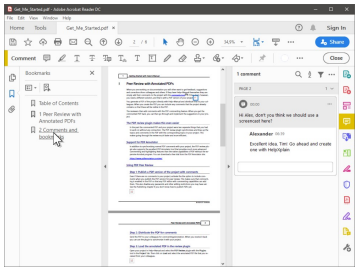


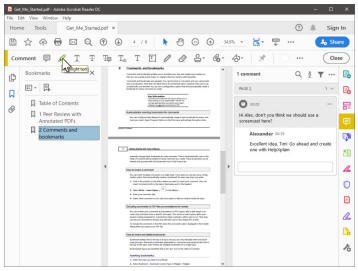


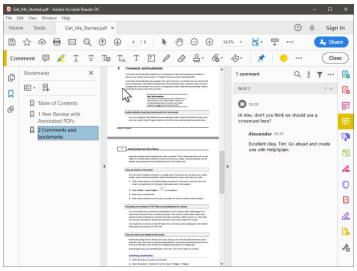


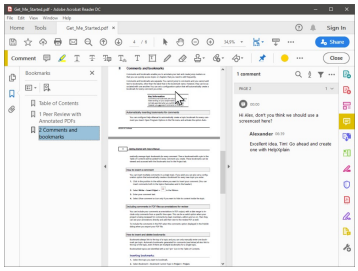


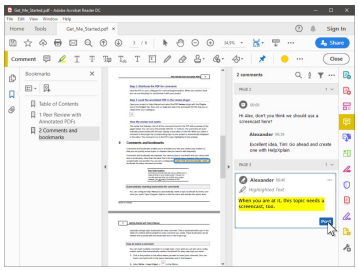


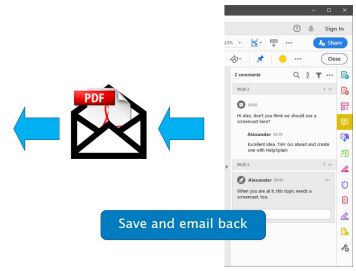


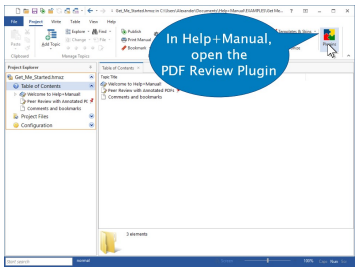


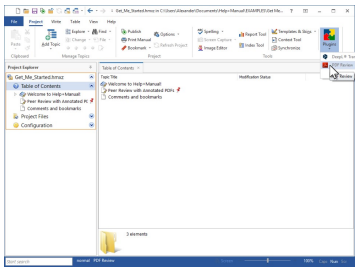


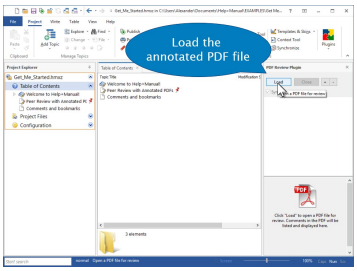


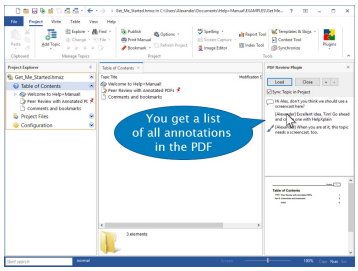




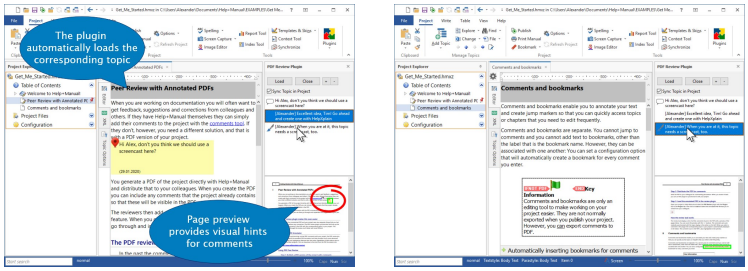








© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



PDF Review Plugin (2 minutes tutorial)

You generate a PDF 785 of the project directly with Help+Manual and distribute that to your colleagues. When you create the PDF you can include any comments that the project already contains so that these will be visible in the PDF.

The reviewers then add comments with the PDF commenting feature. When you get the commented PDF back, you can then go through and implement the suggestions in your project.

The PDF review plugin makes this even easier

In the past the commented PDF and your project were two separate things that you had to work on without any connection. The PDF review plugin synchronizes and lines up the topics and comments in the PDF with the corresponding topics in your project. This makes going through the review much faster and more efficient.

Support for PDF Annotator

In addition to synchronizing normal PDF comments with your project, the PDF review plugin also supports the excellent PDF Annotator tool that provides much more advanced commenting and highlighting features than the native capabilities of PDF without the expensive Acrobat program. You can download a free trial from the PDF Annotator site:

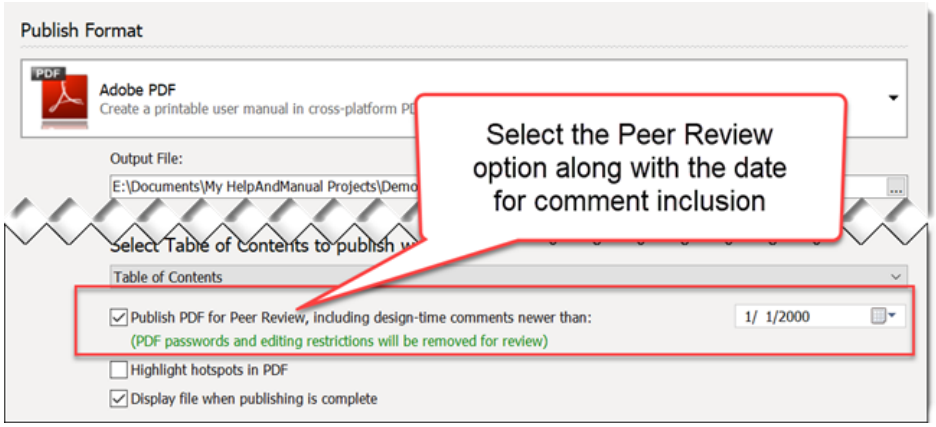
https://www.pdfannotator.com/en/

Using PDF Peer Review

Step 1: Publish a PDF version of the project with comments

Even if there are no comments in your project, activate the the option to include comments when you publish the PDF version for peer review. This makes sure that commenting is enabled in the PDF so that any PDF editor with commenting capabilities can add them. This also disables any passwords and other editing restrictions you may have set. See the Publishing 613 chapter if you don't know how to publish PDFs yet.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



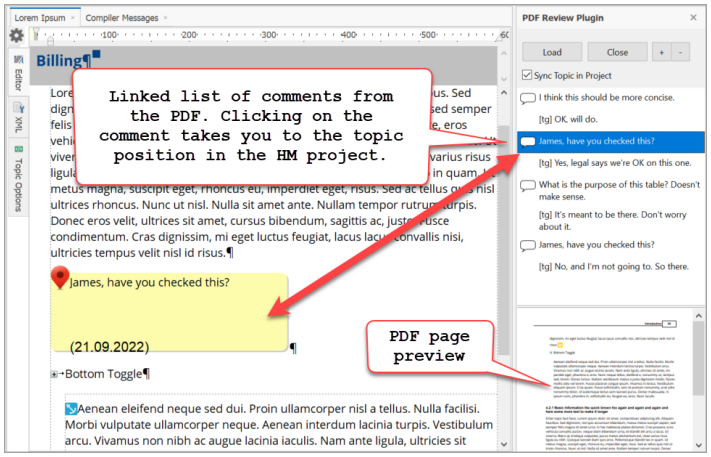
Step 2: Distribute the PDF for comments

Send the PDF to your colleagues for commenting/annotation. When you receive it back you can use the plugin to synchronize it with your project.

Step 3: Load the annotated PDF in the review plugin

Open your project in Help+Manual and select the **PDF Review** plugin with the **Plugins** tool in the **Project** Tab. Then click on **Load** and select the annotated PDF file that you received from your colleagues.

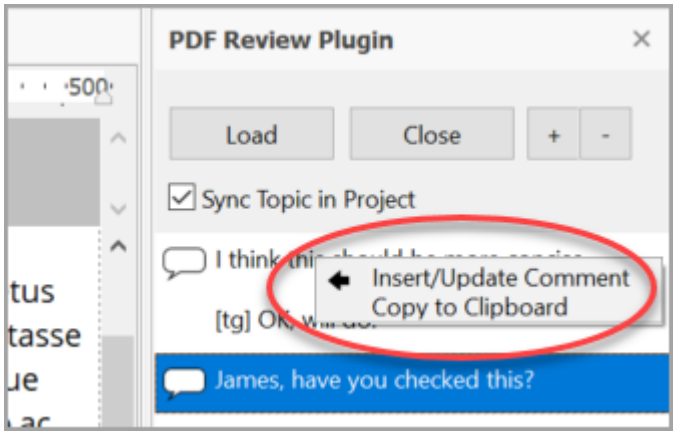
The list of comments in the PDF include answers from your colleagues. All the list items are live links that take you directly to the corresponding comment location in the project topic when you click on them.



Right-click context menu

If you right-click on a comment in the list you get a context menu with which you can copy the comment to the clipboard or update it in your Help+Manual project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



How the review tool works

The review tool displays a list of all the comments found in the PDF with a preview of the pages below. You can zoom the preview with the +/- buttons. The comments are automatically synchronized with the topic display in the editor on the left. When you select a comment in the plugin the corresponding topic in your project is automatically displayed in the editor. The comment icon in the PDF is also highlighted in the preview.

5.17 Backups and Emergencies

As with all computer programs, something will occasionally go wrong while you are working. Your work is the most valuable part of your computer so you really need to be prepared to be able to recover it in case something goes badly wrong on your machine.

CTRL+S is your friend!

People who grew up in the early days of the computer revolution automatically press CTRL+S (save current work) on their computers every couple of minutes, no matter what program they are working. This is still a very good habit than can protect you from losing valuable work. We strongly recommend that you cultivate this "old-fashioned" habit. If you do, you will never need to use the rescue copy feature.

Rescue copy option appears when you can't save your project

If you are unable to save the project for some reason – for example your project is on a network drive and you lose the connection – Help+Manual will automatically offer you a special "Rescue Copy" option.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How the Rescue Copy works

When this option appears you can then save a special new copy of the project so that you don't lose your current changes. This copy will not contain all the topics of the project. It only contains those topics that you changed since the last save.

Help+Manual can't save the full project in a rescue situation, because then it doesn't have access to the main project any more. Instead, it saves YOUR unsaved work from local memory to an additional Help+Manual project.

How to restore from a Rescue Copy

All the text in your Rescue Copy will be the latest version, so to restore to your main project you just need to copy the content of all the topics in the Rescue Copy to the main project:

1. Open both projects (Rescue Copy and original) in Help+Manual. You may find it easier to open Help+Manual twice, with one project in each instance, so that you have two separate windows.
2. Go through the Rescue Copy and in each topic it contains, click in the editor and press CTRL+A and then CTRL+C to select and copy the entire topic.
3. Then click in the corresponding topic in the original, press CTRL+A to select everything and then CTRL+V to replace it with the more recent version from the Rescue Copy.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each topic in the Rescue Copy.

Automatic background backup protects you against catastrophic crashes

While you are working Help+Manual automatically stores your unsaved topics in a backup copy in the background. If the program is ever forced to quit without saving, for example by a Windows or computer crash, or by something that makes Help+Manual itself crash (this is extremely rare), the background copy remains available. When you open the project the next time you have access to it, Help+Manual will offer to restore your unsaved work.

You must accept the restore option the first time it is offered!

If the rescue copy prompt appears, you **must** accept it immediately if you want to restore your work. If you don't, the old backup copy will be deleted and a new one will be created for the current session.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The topic that was open will not be included

The only edited topic that will not be restored will be the one you were working on when the crash happened. Saving this would interrupt your work while you are editing, so this is excluded from the backup copy. So you will lose edits on the last topic you were working on, but only that.

Backup copies with multiple instances of Help+Manual

If you are working on an uncompressed HMXP project it is quite possible have multiple instances of it open in separate instances of Help+Manual on the same computer at the same time, and it is also possible to make different edits in the different instances. Each of these instances will maintain its own backup copy.

If a crash happens in this constellation, you need to open the project in Help+Manual multiple times after the crash, once for each instance that was open. The separate rescue copies will then be restored on after another.

DON'T use DropBox, OneDrive or Google Drive for ongoing backups!

Because of the way Help+Manual works, it is a really bad idea to try to edit projects that are stored in managed cloud folders like DropBox, OneDrive or Google Drive, particularly if you are collaborating on projects with other users. These systems will then create a nightmarish mess of "conflicted copies" of your projects, where it will be difficult or impossible to reassemble your work from all the different versions.

It is fine to back up your projects to managed cloud folders, just don't do active editing on projects in them.

Ongoing backups with third-party solutions

If you are working on your own or in a small group and you are not using a version control system (see below) there are a number of systems that perform ongoing backups of your work in different ways. Ideally, these backups should be in a different location to your computer.

Online backup services

If you have an Internet connection with decent upload speeds it is a good idea to use an online backup service like Backblaze, Carbonite or SugarSync. They make online backups

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

of all your data while you are working and upload your changes as soon as they happen. Since they are remote, the chances of losing both your local copy and your backup is very small.

Alternative backup solutions

You can also use systems like AJC Active Backup, which you purchase once and then configure yourself. You decide where you want to store your backups – it can be on another drive on your computer, an external drive, a network drive or an online location that you have access to. Here too, these systems monitor your files continuously and make backups as soon as you save a new version.

AJC Active Backup is a program created by one of our talented customers. We have no commercial affiliation with AJC, we just think it's a terrific product and an excellent backup solution for Help+Manual projects (ideally uncompressed XML projects in the HMXP format).

Remote backup with version control

One of the most robust backup solutions you can have is a version control system that stores a central copy of your project on a server. In addition to saving your project remotely, it also saves every single change you have ever made, so you have access to all the versions of your project throughout its history, including everything you ever deleted.

Version control is free if you use the excellent Subversion system (SVN), and since it also works via the Internet, it allows multiple authors to collaborate on projects from remote locations. See the chapter on Using Version Control Systems 848 for full details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Publishing

Publish your help project into your chosen output format! A help website, a PDF manual, a Microsoft help file, a Word document or an eBook.

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

6 Publishing

6.1 Publishing Your Projects

To distribute or check your project you need to output it to the help or documentation format you want to use. We refer to this process is as "publishing". When you publish your project Help+Manual translates the XML source code of your project into the selected output format. In some formats it also formats your output using templates that you can create and modify.

This chapter explains how to publish your project to the output formats supported by Help+Manual.

6.1.1 General publishing instructions

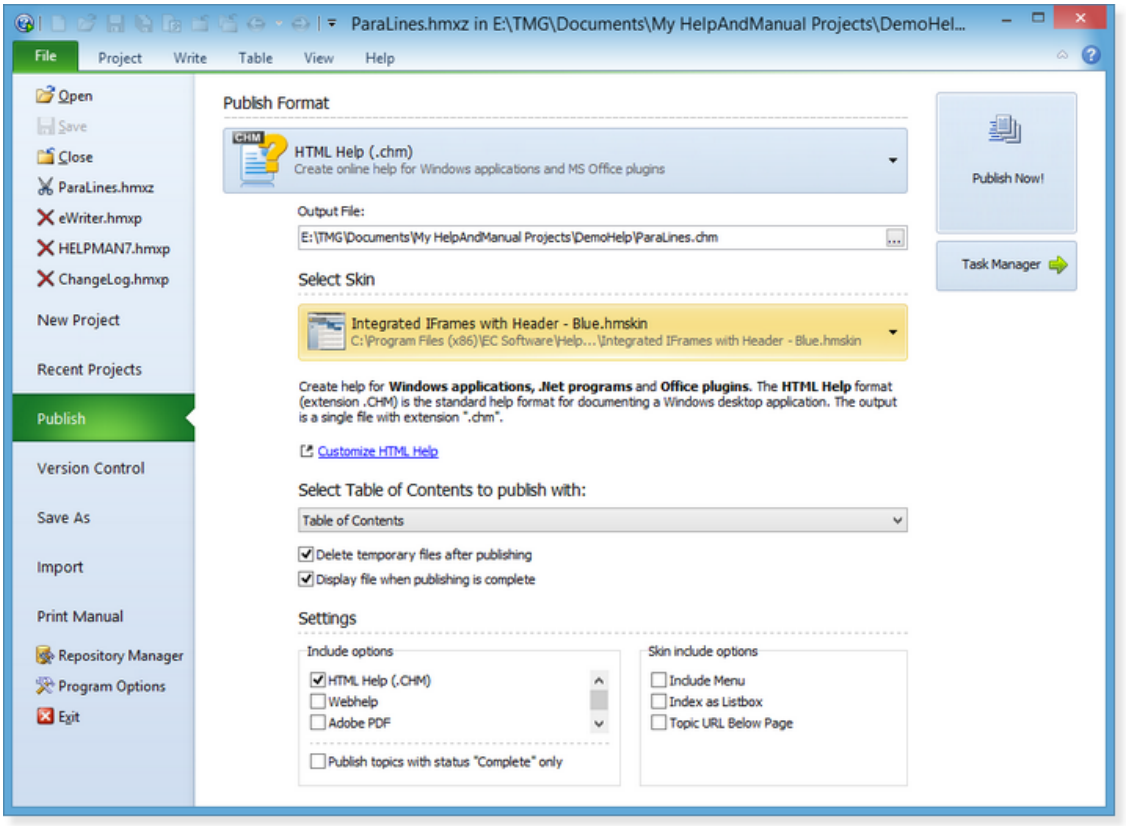
Once you have made all your preparations and set your configuration options 644 for the output format you are using publishing is basically just a question of selecting Publish and choosing the output format.

The instructions in this topic are for publishing your projects to a single output format manually. See Publishing Tasks 809 for instructions on how to automate publishing multiple projects and multiple versions of projects in one "job" that you can repeat at any time.

How to publish your project to one output format

1. Save your project, then select *Publish* in the **Project** tab:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Select the output format from the drop-down list at the top. This will display the options for that format.
   - For details on the options see the reference to the Publish Help Project 1310 dialog.
3. Check the *Output File:* field. You can change the default output folder and the file name if you want. Help+Manual will remember this change next time you publish. However, if you are publishing to WebHelp we strongly recommend that you accept the "index.html" file name as that is the best choice for WebHelp in almost all cases.

   Variables: You can use a variable instead of a file name in the output field. This should be a variable defined globally for the entire project, not a single-topic variable. Don't include the file extension in the variable definition, as that is added automatically by Help+Manual if it is not present in the output field. So you should enter something like:
   `<%OUTPUT_FILE%>.pdf` or **`<%OUTPUT_FILE%>.html`**.
4. Configure your output options, then click on *Publish Now* to publish. This can take a couple of minutes with very large projects.

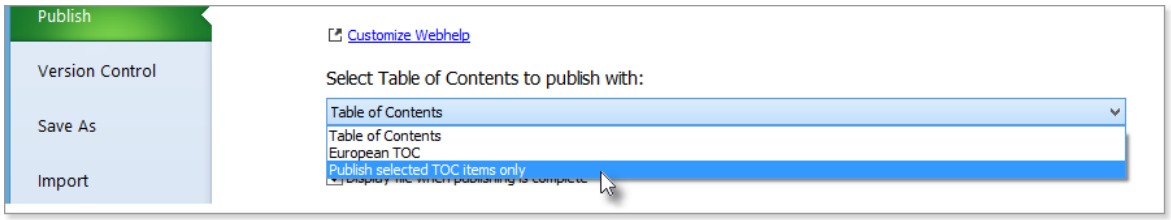
A report on the publish process including any errors and a list of the files and/or folders you need to include when you distribute your help 636 to your users is displayed in a window. This window contains controls with which you can search, copy, print or save the report to an external HTML file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Publishing selected topics only

For test purposes you can publish only the topics that are currently selected in the Table of Contents pane (TOC). If exported topics contain links to topics not included in your output you may want to take steps to handle this. See Preventing dead links 984 for instructions on how to deal with this.

1. Select the topics you want to publish in the TOC pane. You can use *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click* to select multiple topics out of order and sequences of topics. Selecting chapters automatically selects all the chapters' sub-topics.
2. Select *Publish* in the File menu or the **Project** tab.
3. Click on the *Table of Contents* bar and select *Publish selected TOC items only* from the drop-down list:



4. Select your other publish options, then click on *Publish Now* to publish.

Using skins in CHM and WebHelp and templates in PDF and DOCX

CHM and WebHelp output:

In the Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) and WebHelp (HTML) output formats you can apply a completely different layout and appearance to your published output by choosing a "skin" file in the Publish dialog. Skins include everything from your project that defines the general appearance of your output: Your variable definitions, HTML templates, text and table styles and your Baggage Files.

Help+Manual comes with some sample skins in the *\Skins* folder in the Help+Manual program directory. If you have the Professional or Floating license version of the program you can also save your own projects as skins to apply their appearance to other projects without additional formatting.

See Transforming your output with skins 638 for full details.

1. Select *Publish* in the File menu or the Project tab.
2. Then select the skin file you want to apply in the *Select Skin* section and click on *Publish Now* to publish.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See HTML Help 645 and WebHelp 655 for more details on preparing your project for these output formats.

PDF and DOCX output:

PDF and DOCX use templates to publish that define the page layout and other features of the output documents. These are called Word Templates and Print Manual Templates and can be selected directly in the Publish dialog. Here too, you can select from a selection of standard templates included with Help+Manual.

See Adobe PDF and printed manuals 677 and MS Word DOCX 682 for details on preparing your templates for these output formats.

Filtering your output with include options and "Complete" status

Once you have tagged content in your project with include options you can then "filter" your published output when you publish. You do this by selecting or deselecting the checkboxes for the corresponding include options in the Publish settings when you publish. See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for details.

Filtering with include options:

- In the *Include Options:* section at the bottom of the Publish screen, select the options matching the content you want to include in your output.

The topics and content tagged with matching include options in your project will be included ore excluded from your published output depending you your selections. The option for the current output format is activated automatically and should normally always be selected.

Including content tagged for other output formats

You can optionally select the include options for other output formats if you also want to include content that is actually tagged for those formats. For example, when you publish to CHM the CHM include option is selected by default. If you also want to include content that you have actually tagged to be included only in WebHelp you can do that by manually activating the WebHelp checkbox as well.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Filtering by "Complete" status:

This is only relevant if you have actually applied topic status 373 to topics in the TOC. It allows you to exclude all topics that do not have the status "Complete" from your output, thus automatically excluding any topics that are unfinished or require review.

Select the option *Topic Status: Complete Only* below the Include Options box in the Publish dialog.

Special case: Include options for eWriter Help

eWriter Help is a special case, because internally they are classed as both eBooks and WebHelp. Their content is exactly the same as WebHelp and supports nigh on all the formatting and scripting that WebHelp supports. However, they are – or can be – distributed in the same way as eBooks. Because of this, eWriter is the only output format that has two active include options for including and excluding content: both EBOOK (eBooks) and HTML (WebHelp).

If you look at the Include Options box in the Publish dialog when you publish to eWriter you will see that both the WebHelp and the eBook options are selected. This means that an eWriter Help file will normally include any content tagged for either WebHelp or eBooks.

Including content in eWriter Help only

If you want content to be include only in eWriter Help you need to nest two conditions around it, like this:

IF_HTML IF_EBOOK ... END END

Then it will only be included in eWriter Help and nowhere else.

Include options for topics and chapters

Topics and chapters will be included in eWriter Help if they are tagged with either WebHelp or eBook.

Test-publishing Asian languages on non-Asian Windows

Normally, you cannot publish help projects written Asian languages on non-Asian versions of Windows because the necessary language settings don't match. However, if you just want to do a quick test publish and don't have a Windows version in the matching Asian

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

language there is a configuration setting that will allow you to do this.

- Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and activate the option *Tolerant handling of Asian languages*.

Some features may not work correctly in the resulting help file in HTML Help if the languages of your Windows version and the help file don't match (Search, Keyword Index) but you will be able to complete the compilation and view the CHM file, which is sufficient for testing.

To produce a finished CHM for distribution you must publish it on a copy of Windows with a matching system locale.

See also:

Publish Help File 1310 (Reference)
Conditions and Customized Output 969

6.1.2 Publishing instructions by format

The basic publishing procedure in Help+Manual is the same for all output formats: You select Publish, choose the output format and for some formats you choose a layout template or skin option. The only exception is generating a printed manual directly, which uses a different user interface.

The list below lists some individual considerations for each output format.

See Automating Publishing Jobs 809 and Command Line Publishing 816 for details on publishing multiple projects and/or output formats in a single operation.

Using variables in the output file field

You can use a variable instead of a file name in the output field. This should be a variable defined globally for the entire project, not a single-topic variable. Don't include the file extension in the variable definition, as that is added automatically by Help+Manual if it is not present in the output field. So you should enter something like:

<%OUTPUT_FILE%>.pdf or **<%OUTPUT_FILE%>.html**.

Publishing WebHelp (HTML on an intranet or Internet web server)

Use WebHelp to make your documentation accessible on the Internet and local intranets in your company network. It provides a fully interactive interface with a table of contents, keyword index and search and supports dynamic features like expanding sections, popup information windows and videos.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Check that your HTML Export Options are configured for high-resolution devices

You now need to consider high-resolution 4K monitors and devices like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro when you are planning your WebHelp. If you don't do this the text and other elements will often be too small to read on these devices. If you set the configuration options described below Help+Manual will automatically adjust everything else so that it displays correctly on high-resolution displays.

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**.
2. Set *Font Size Encoding* to: `em (1em = 100%)`.
3. The *Font size of style "Normal"* setting is grayed out for ems/rems because it is only used when font encoding is set in percent.

Once the base font encoding is set to ems all elements in your topic files will then automatically be adapted for correct display on both normal and high-resolution devices and monitors.

Select a skin to define your WebHelp layout

Help+Manual projects include standard HTML templates for WebHelp but these are very basic and you will normally want a more attractive layout. To get this you just need to select a skin with the *Select Skin* option in the Publish dialog (see below). Click on the bar below the heading and select one of the skins from the previews displayed. It is generally better to select one of the skins with the word "integrated" in its name.

If you want even more advanced skins, check out the options available in the Help+Manual Premium Pack add-on.

Publish to WebHelp

1. Open and select your project in Help+Manual. Then select **Publish** in the **Project** tab, then click on *Publish Format* at the top of the page and select *WebHelp*.
2. Click on the ... browse button in the *Index page:* field and choose an empty output folder. Leave the *index.html* file name unchanged. This should always be used as the main page for WebHelp.
3. Click on the **Select Skin** bar and select a WebHelp skin.
4. Activate the *Display file when publishing is complete* option so that Help+Manual will open the WebHelp with its integrated web server after publishing so that you can view it.
5. Select **Publish Now!** at the top right to generate and view WebHelp.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Important information for publishing WebHelp

Publishing WebHelp is almost the same as publishing any other format. However, since you are actually creating a website consisting of a large number of individual files there are a couple of additional points you need to bear in mind:

Always publish to an empty folder:
Always publish WebHelp to its own folder, which should preferably be empty. A large WebHelp project can consist of hundreds of files! The program will suggest creating a folder called **\HTML** inside your project directory, which is a good choice.

When you publish to WebHelp you can the use the *Delete all files in output folder* option to clear the output folder before publishing. You don't need to use this during normal working but it is a good idea to select it before creating a build that you are going to distribute.

Clearing the output folder makes sure that no old files for topics that you have deleted are included in your output unnecessarily. In addition to taking up space these files will also be indexed and will appear in the full-text search (see below).

Clearing the output folder is also essential when you change the name of the project, as this changes the names of a number of important files that are components of your WebHelp. If you don't clear the folder the old files will remain in place and may cause problems.

Timestamps and clearing the output folder:
You don't need to worry about the timestamps of your output HTML files when you clear the output folder. The HTML file timestamps are always set to the last time the topic was edited, not the time when the project was published.

Testing WebHelp locally:
Help+Manual activates its own local web server when you publish to WebHelp. This makes it possible to test your WebHelp output with the same functionality as on a web server without having to upload your files to the server. However, note that this server is HTTP only. It does not include support for server-side scripting languages like PHP. If you activate the PHP or ASP versions of WebHelp search 1428 you must use a full web server with PHP or ASP support to test the search functionality.

Testing in other browsers:

If you want to test your WebHelp in other browsers, let it open in your default browser first. Then copy the URL from the Address: bar of your browser and paste it into the Address: bar of the other browser. As long as Help+Manual is still open the integrated web server will be available for the other browser as well.

Full-text search issues:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

When you are publishing the new WebHelp with full-text search 1428 it's important to understand that the search index is not generated from your project files or from the files on your server. It is generated from the HTML files on your local computer, after the HTML files have been generated.

- **If the output directory contains any other HTML files these will be included in the index.**
  To prevent this do not place any other files in the output directory. Since the index is generated locally you can upload other files to your server separately, then they will not be included in the index.
- **Outdated HTML files will be included in the index if you don't delete them.**
  To ensure that the HTML files of outdated topics are not included in the index use the *Delete all files in output folder*option in the Publish dialog to delete the contents of the output directory before publishing. This will not cause problems with the timestamps of topic files that have not been changed – the HTML file timestamps are always set to the last time the topic was edited, not the time when the project was published.
- **PHP and ASP search require a full web server for testing.**
  Help+Manual's local web server activated when you publish does not include server-side scripting support. If you activate the PHP or ASP versions of WebHelp search 1428 you must use a full web server with PHP or ASP support to test the search functionality.

Publishing eWriter Help files

The modern alternative to CHM help files

Help+Manual's eWriter format is the modern alternative to CHM help files for Windows software documentation. It has both a standalone viewer that installs automatically from the Windows Store and a standard Windows viewer that you can install with your software for Windows 7 and earlier. EWriter can be fully skinned with WebHelp skins and supports context-sensitive help.

An eWriter Help file is WebHelp stored in a single file that supports HTML5, CSS3 and JavaScript without restrictions. You can use WebHelp skins for it to get all the layout and formatting options available in WebHelp. At the same time, it supports context help calls from applications in the same way CHM help files. The eWriter format combines the benefits of CHM and WebHelp and eliminates many disadvantages of both. See here 1519 for more information on this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Configuring and using eWriter Help

See the eWriter chapter 696 in the Configuring section for full information on configuring, using and distributing eWriter books. See Links & Context Help 701 and eWriter for Software Help 731 for additional information you will need if you are going to deploy eWriter for your software documentation.

Use the `.ewriter` file extension for files distributed on their own

Use the the standard **`.ewriter`** file extension if you are going to distribute eWriter Help files on their own. This extension is registered in the Windows Store and makes it possible for Windows 10 and 11 users to get the viewer from the Windows Store when they open an eWriter file.

Users on older versions of Windows and MacOS users can get the free installers from our eWriter page:

https://www.helpandmanual.com/ewriter/

Configure your eWriter viewer settings

EWriter books contain settings that configure the viewer's appearance and behavior. Before publishing to eWriter, check out and set up the configuration options. See here 709 for details and instructions. You can configure a main menu and right-click context menu, security and password options, an expiry date for the help file and some other features.

You need to use a WebHelp skin for your output

Since eWriter is really WebHelp, you need to either configure your WebHelp templates in your project or choose one of Help+Manual's ready-to-use skins, or one of the dedicated eWriter skins in the Premium Pack add-on. See here 660 for details on configuring your WebHelp templates and here 667 for more details on skins.

Publish your eWriter Help

1. Open and select your project in Help+Manual. Then select **Publish** in the **Project** tab, then click on *Publish Format* at the top of the page and select *eWriter Help*.
2. Choose an output folder and file name for your eWriter Help file in the *Output File:* field. The extension you give your output file determines the type of eWriter Help file that will be generated:
   a. **Data eWriter Help file:** Use the standard **`.ewriter`** extension or your own custom extension for your software documentation 731.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

b. **Standalone EXE eWriter Help file:** Use the **.exe** extension to generate a standalone eWriter Help file with an integrated viewer. This only works on Windows.

3. Click on the **Select Skin** bar and select a WebHelp skin. If you are selecting an edited skin for the first time you will need to click on the **Open Skin** option at the top of the menu displayed to navigate to the skin file and select it.
4. Look in the **Include Options** box and make sure that both *WebHelp* and *eBook* are selected. Since eWriter combines aspects of both these formats, both these options need to be active.
5. Select **Publish Now!** at the top right to generate the eWriter Help file.

Microsoft HTML Help / CHM

Microsoft CHM files used to be the standard documentation format for user applications on Windows. However, even though they still work in current Windows they are now obsolete. They look as though they belong in the old world of Windows 98, and they do: Microsoft has not developed the CHM system at all since it was released with Windows 98. They have not even fixed any of the many bugs.

The Microsoft CHM viewer doesn't support Unicode or high-resolution displays, and its appearance cannot be changed in any way. It uses a restricted and quirky version of Internet Explorer to render HTML and has problems with modern HTML5, CSS3 and scripting. CHM files are blocked on network drives and can only viewed at all when installed on a local computer drive together with the software that is calling them.

Use the new eWriter format instead of CHM!

If you are not forced to use the obsolete CHM format for some reason, we strongly recommend switching to the eWriter format 696 for local Windows software documentation. It has a viewer that installs automatically from the Windows Store, supports context-sensitive help and is fully skinnable with WebHelp skins.

Make sure you have the Microsoft CHM compiler installed

If you must use CHM, Help+Manual needs this compiler to convert your project output into a CHM file. It is included in the free Microsoft HTML Help Workshop package. If you have not installed HTML Help Workshop yet, see here 632 for instructions and a download link.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Publishing projects in non-Latin languages to CHM

If your project is in a non-Latin language like Chinese, Georgian, or Thai, you need to set language of the System Locale of your Windows system to match that of the project language before publishing. Otherwise the characters used in that language won't be displayed correctly in the published CHM file.

In current Windows versions this is accessed in **Settings** > **Time & Language** > **Region** > **Additional date, time & regional settings**. Then select **Region** in the new dialog that opens and you will find the locale setting in the **Administrative** tab. Alternatively, you can open the Control Panel directly and select the **Region** option. Your user account must have administrator permissions to configure this setting and you must restart Windows after changing this setting to apply it.

See CHM in Non-Latin Languages 629 to learn how to publish multiple projects to different non-Latin languages using CHM without having to restart Windows for each project.

Check that your HTML Export Options are configured for high-resolution devices

The Microsoft CHM Viewer in Windows uses an old HTML rendering engine that has special requirements. Help+Manual can automatically configure your CHM file so that it displays correctly on high-resolution 4K monitors and devices like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro. If you don't do this the text and other elements will often be too small to read on these devices.

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **MS HTML Help** > **HTML Export Options**.
2. Set *Font Size Encoding* to: `pt Points`.
3. Select the checkbox for *Make pixel sizes relative to monitor resolution (4K display compatibility)*

All elements of your CHM file will then automatically be adapted for correct display on both normal and high-resolution devices and monitors.

Publishing your project as a HTML Help/CHM file

1. Open your project in Help+Manual. Then select **Publish** in the **Project** tab, then click on *Publish Format* at the top of the page and select HTML Help (.chm) as the output format.
2. Choose an output folder and file name for your CHM file in the *Output File:* field.
3. Optional: Click on the **Select Skin** bar and select a skin for the topic page layout in your PDF.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that skins can only style the topic frame and page in CHM files. The CHM viewer is a Microsoft component and part of Windows and its appearance cannot be changed. However, you can configure its behavior and features in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help**. See here for a reference to these options 1451.

4. Click on **Publish Now** at the top right to generate your CHM file.

Publishing Microsoft Word DOCX files

Step 1: Publish the project to DOCX

1. Open your project in Help+Manual, select *Publish* in the **Project** tab, then select *Microsoft Word* as the publish format at the top.
2. Select an output location for the DOCX file in the *Output path + filename:* field. Use the ... browse button to select a folder for the output.
3. Click on the Select Word Template bar and select the **.docx** document layout template for your Word DOCX output. See the MS Word DOCX 682 chapter for details on how to set up document layout templates for Word.

Step 2: Activate the TOC, Index and Table of Figures in the DOCX file

These dynamic items are not initialized automatically in Word. When you publish, they are still just placeholders. You need to open the Word file and initialize them to populate them with their contents.

1. Open the new DOCX file in Word and locate the table of contents placeholder.
2. Right-click on the placeholder and select *Update Field* in the context menu to initialize the table of contents. Alternatively select the **References** tab in Word and select the *Update Table* option in the *Table of Contents* section.

Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the Keyword Index and Table of Figures. The *Update Table* commands for these items are in the *Captions* and *Index* sections of the **References** tab in Word.

Publishing an ePUB eBook for iPad and other eBook readers

Make sure you have an ePUB viewer installed for previewing

See this topic 749 for information on getting and installing a free ePUB viewer program.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Configure your ePUB settings

Before publishing an ePUB eBook you need to enter some information that is required to make the eBook valid. So follow the instructions in this topic 761 and configure these settings first. Please also note that some content, large tables and complex formatting are not supported in eBooks. See this topic for details 756.

Publish your ePUB eBook

1. Open your project in Help+Manual. Then select **Publish** in the **Project** tab, then click on *Publish Format* at the top of the page and select ePUB.
2. Choose an output folder and file name for your ePUB eBook in the *Output File:* field.
3. Select **Publish Now!** at the top right to generate the ePUB eBook.

Publishing a Kindle/Mobi eBook for Amazon Kindle eBook readers and apps

Make sure you have an Mobi viewer installed for previewing

See this topic 753 for information on getting and installing a free Mobi viewer program for viewing the eBook on your computer.

Make sure you have the Amazon Kindle eBook compiler installed

You need the Kindle eBook compiler from Amazon to create Mobi/Kindle eBooks with Help+Manual, which automatically uses the compiler to create the Kindle eBook with your project. See this topic 753 for the download link and instructions.

Configure your Mobi settings

Before publishing an Mobi eBook you need to enter some information that is required to make the eBook valid. Mobi/Kindle eBooks share the same settings with ePUB eBooks. So follow the instructions in this topic 761 and configure these settings first. Please also note that some content, large tables and complex formatting are not supported in eBooks. See this topic for details 756.

Publish your Mobi eBook

1. Open and select your project in Help+Manual. Then select **Publish** in the **Project** tab, then click on *Publish Format* at the top of the page and select Kindle/Mobi.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Choose an output folder and file name for your Kindle/Mobi eBook in the *Output File:* field.
3. Select **Publish Now!** at the top right to generate the Mobi eBook.

Publishing an Adobe PDF document

Help+Manual generates PDF documents both with interactive features (hyperlinks, clickable table of contents etc.) and in "plain" form, which is more like a simple representation of a printed page on the screen. Plain PDF documents are ideal for printing. It's a good idea to create one for those users who prefer to print all or part of their documentation, because printed PDFs are always much better than printed topics from other help formats.

Choose and configure a PDF template

In addition to the content from your project's topics, you also need page definitions and additional pages to create a PDF document. In addition to the page margins, headers and footers and page numbers, you will generally also want things like a cover page, a foreword, a print-style table of contents, a keyword index at the end of the document and so on. All these things are defined in a separate document we refer to as a PDF print manual template, which you can select and edit with the Manual Designer tool in the Project tab.

Help+Manual comes with a set of pre-designed PDF templates that you can use right away without editing them. However, you will need to add your own personal information to these templates to use them for production output. See Using PDF templates 803 to learn how to access, edit and choose a PDF template.

Configure the global PDF options in your project

In the Project Explorer, navigate down to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** and examine and change the settings there as necessary. See here 1442 for reference information on all the options available there. See the main PDF and Printed Manuals 785 chapter for more detailed information on PDF.

Publish your project as PDF with the template

1. Open and select your project in Help+Manual. Then select **Publish** in the **Project** tab, then click on *Publish Format* at the top of the page and select PDF as the output format.
2. Choose an output folder and file name for your PDF file in the *Output File:* field.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Click on the **Select Print Manual Template** and select your template. If you are selecting an edited template for the first time you will need to click on the **Open Skin** option at the top of the menu displayed to navigate to the template and select it.
4. Select **Publish Now!** at the top right to generate the PDF file.

Generating a printed manual directly

Choose and configure a PDF template

Help+Manual generates printed manuals by creating a temporary PDF and printing it. You need to choose and prepare a PDF print manual template for printed manuals in the same way as for producing a PDF. Both printed manuals and PDFs can use the same templates. See the instructions for publishing PDFs above for details.

Choose your printing options and print

1. Open and select your project in Help+Manual. Then select **Print Manual** in the **File** menu.
2. Select **Print** or **Preview** at the top left depending on whether you want to print directly or view a preview first.
3. Select the printer and the print manual template at the top, then select your settings for printing. See Printing user manuals 800 for detailed instructions and Print Manual 1290 for a reference to all the available options.
4. Select **Print** or **Preview** at the top right to generate the printout or view the preview.

Publishing MS Visual Studio Help for .NET development projects

Please note that Visual Studio Help 2008 and 2010 (MS Help 2.0 and 3.0) is a special case. Please see the special Visual Studio Help 1464 chapter in the **More Advanced Procedures** section for details.

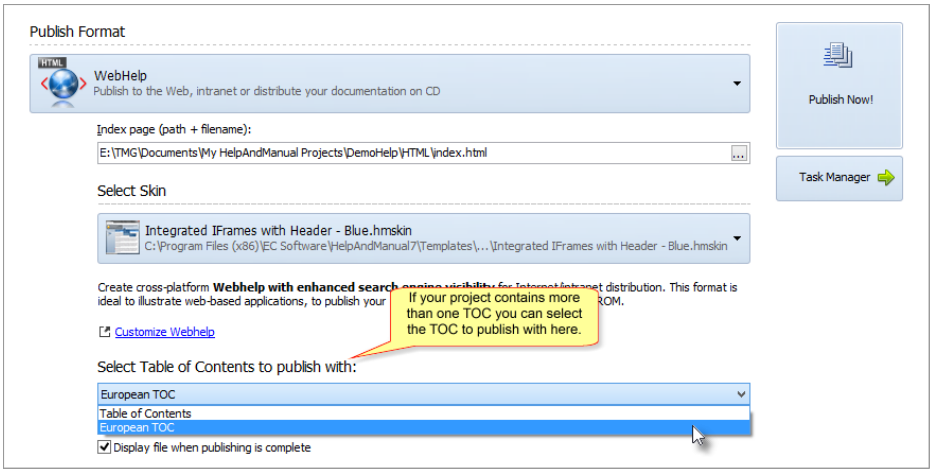
Visual Studio Help is a special help format that is only used for documenting programming components in Visual Studio .NET. It cannot be used for documenting normal application programs and if you are not a VS .NET programmer you don't need to know anything about it!

Support for Visual Studio Help is only available in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.1.3 Publishing projects with multiple TOCs

If you have created a project with more than one TOC you will also want to choose the TOC you want to use in your output when you publish. You can select this directly in the Publish dialog:



Topics included when you publish with a specific TOC

When you select an additional TOC to publish with, all the topics in that TOC will be included. In addition to this, topic files linked to in the TOC may also be included in HTML-based output formats, depending on your settings. See Multiple TOCs 343 for more details on managing this.

Publishing with a selected TOC in tasks and from the command line

Publishing tasks

You can select your additional TOCs in the Publishing Task Manager 809 in the same way as you do when you are publishing manually.

Command line publishing

You can specify additional TOCs in your command line 817 directly with the **/TOC=** switch.

See also:

Multiple TOCs 343

6.1.4 CHM in Asian Languages

The Microsoft HTML Help / CHM help system is very old. It hasn't been updated significantly since it was originally released with Windows 98. In addition to other restrictions, this means

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

that it doesn't support modern Unicode text encoding. It encodes Asian languages like Chinese, Japanese, Korean and Thai using the old "double-byte" system.

CHM needs Windows configuration to publish non-Latin languages

Double-byte encoding works fine, but only with additional support from Windows. You need to have the "system locale" of your Windows system set to the same language as that of the project you are publishing to CHM. If you don't, the entries in the table of contents will only display random characters for many letters and the search won't work.

The problem with multiple output languages

This is just about acceptable if you are only publishing a single CHM to a single Asian or other non-Latin language, even though it is annoying to have to restart Windows to change the locale setting. It becomes a real problem if you have different versions of your projects in different languages. The need to restart Windows for each language makes it impossible to build all your different versions in a single, efficient batch process.

It used to be possible to use Microsoft's "AppLocale" system to solve this problem, because it could change the locale on the fly during a batch process. However, this no longer works. It was only designed for Windows XP and Server 2003, and Microsoft terminated support for it in 2016.

The solution: Windows user accounts for each language

There is a way around the problem: If you set up multiple Windows user accounts, each account can have a different system locale. Also, in a batch file you can execute applications as a different user by using the **runas** directive. So if you set up a Windows account with the corresponding locale for each language you are publishing to, you can then publish multiple non-Latin CHMs correctly from any other account by using **runas** in your batch file to execute the publishing operations under the user account with the correct locale.

Step 1: Set up multiple locale accounts for CHM publishing

You need to set up separate Windows user accounts for each non-Latin language you are going to use for CHM output, and set the system locale for each account to the corresponding non-Latin language. We are going to use Chinese as an example. All these accounts need to be on the computer where the publishing is going to be performed, of course.

1. Create a new Windows user account with a descriptive user name. Let's say this account is going to be **cn_user**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Include a password for the account.
3. Log into the new account and configure the system locale to the Chinese variant you will be using for this documentation. In Windows 10 this is accessed in **Settings** > **Time & Language** > **Region** > **Additional date, time & regional settings**. Then select **Region** in the new dialog that opens and you will find the locale setting in the **Administrative** tab. Alternatively, you can open the Control Panel directly and select the **Region** option.
4. Log out and log back in to your regular account. Then repeat steps 1-3 for each language you want to use.

Step 2: Execute the batch publish operation via runas

Important: If you are not yet familiar with command line and batch publishing please first study the Command Line Publishing 816 chapter.

You are going to need to enter the account password manually the first time you do this, so you start by executing a single command line for each language. After that you can combine the commands for all operations in a single batch file.

You just need to prefix the normal command line with the **runas** directive and its two essential parameters, like this:

```
runas /savecred /user:cn_user "<path>helpman.exe <path>project.hmxz /chm=<path>project.chm"
```

Runas switches:

The **/savecred** switch is needed to save the password so that it will be available for later batches. (There is no way to include the password in the command line.) The **/user:** switch specifies the user account name.

Essential quote characters and escaping

The entire Help+Manual command sequence must be enclosed in double quotes (highlighted above). If your paths or other components require quotes because they include spaces you must escape those quotes with a backslash, like this:

```
runas /savecred /user:cn_user "helpman.exe \"my project.hmxz\" /chm=\"my project.chm\""
```

Run once to save the password

Run each command line once on its own. The console will open and prompt you to enter the password, which you must do blind, without seeing the password text or placeholder

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

characters. The **/savecred** switch will save the credentials so that you don't need to enter the password manually next time.

Repeat this for each language, executing the single command line on its own and entering the password.

Step 3: Combine your command lines to a single batch

Once you have published each CHM once as described above to enter all the passwords you can build a single batch file for all your CHM versions in all languages. Just enter all the command lines in a single **.cmd** or **.bat** file, with each command line on a separate line in the file. Then you can execute the batch file from your regular Windows account and each one will be compiled with the correct locale without you having to change the locale on your computer or restart Windows.

6.1.5 Microsoft help compilers

The Microsoft HTML Help and Visual Studio 2008 Help (MS Help 2.0) formats are generated with free compilers available from Microsoft (Visual Studio Help 2010/MS Help 3.0 does not require a compiler). If you do not have these compilers installed you need to install them before you can publish your projects to these formats.

After installing the help compiler go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and make sure that the path to the compiler files are correct. See Program Options - Compilers 1268 for details.

The HTML Help compiler:

If you are still publishing to the obsolete Microsoft CHM/HTML Help format you need the Microsoft CHM compiler. You can download Microsoft HTML Help Workshop with the HTML Help compiler from the EC Software website here:

https://www.helpandmanual.com/downloads_mscomp.html

Incorrect message displayed during install:

HTML Help Workshop is an ancient program that Microsoft has not updated since it was released with Windows 98. When you install it you will see a confusing message telling you that your computer "already has a newer version of HTML Help". This message is an error in the installer. HTML Help Workshop and the compiler have still been installed correctly. The message just refers to the old components for displaying HTML Help in Windows, which have not been needed since Windows 98.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Check the reference to the compiler after installing:

After installing HTML Help workshop, open Help+Manual and go to **View > Program Options >** Compilers 1268 and make sure that the reference to the CHM compiler points to the location where you just installed HTML Help Workshop.

The Visual Studio Help 2008 / MS Help 2.0 compiler

The HXS format is not a help format for normal user applications and it cannot be displayed at all on most users' normal Windows systems. It can only be used for documenting Visual Studio .NET components, in combination with the Visual Studio 2008 .NET programming package. You will only be able to use this format if you are programming .NET components with Visual Studio 2008.

The MS Help 2.0 compiler tools can be downloaded from Microsoft with the Visual Studio Help Integration Kit, which is also known as the VSHIK, but they cannot be used without the Visual Studio .NET package. You will need to search for the VSHIK on Microsoft's MSDN site as they frequently change the download location for this kit.

Visual Studio Help 2010 / MS Help 3.0 (no compiler required)

The MSHC format is the successor to MS Help 2.0/HXS for Visual Studio 2010. It does not require a compiler, MSHC output is generated directly by Help+Manual. However, it too is only relevant for Visual Studio 2010 .NET programming components. It cannot be used to document normal applications and is not relevant outside of the Visual Studio 2010 programming package.

See also:

Customize - Compilers 1268

6.1.6 Publication checklist

Before publishing and distributing your files there are a few things you should check because they are quite easy to forget:

Title and copyright information:

Have you set the project title, author and copyright information? Settings Here 1402

Help window titles:

Have you set the correct titles for your help window title bars? Settings Here 1452

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Language settings:

Have you set the correct language settings for the language of your project? This is particularly important if you are using languages requiring special Unicode character sets. See International languages setup 143 for details.

Special requirements for ePUB and Kindle Mobi eBooks

General information

The ePUB and Kindle/Mobi eBook formats are excellent platforms but they are also more restrictive than some other formats. They are designed to be more like a book than an electronic document. Also, eBook readers tend to have small pages and large print and the print size can be changed by the user, and so the kind of layout you can achieve on your pages is very limited. This format thus has some special requirements and restrictions.

Please also study the information on ePUB and Kindle eBooks in the Configuring Your Output 749 and Publishing Formats 1513 and Configuration Settings 1472 chapters before proceeding.

Free Calibre viewer program

Before publishing to ePUB and Kindle/Mobi, first visit the Calibre eBook viewer download page and install the free Calibre eBook reader and viewer software. This is essential because without it you will not be able to preview your eBooks automatically after you have created them. There are other readers for Windows, but Calibre is excellent and free and we can recommend it highly. We can no longer recommend Adobe Digital Editions for this purpose.

Get the Kindle compiler with

You need the free Kindle compiler from Amazon to be able to publish Kindle/Mobi eBooks. This compiler is included in the Amazon Kindle Previewer package, which you can download here:

Download the Amazon Kindle Previewer

Important: Do NOT try to install the Kindle Previewer in the Program Files folder!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

> Don't change the default installation location of the Kindle Previewer package! If you do, it will not work correctly and you will get all kinds of errors. Because of the way this Amazon program works, it absolutely needs to be installed in your standard user account directory in the location that Amazon specifies, otherwise it will not have the necessary write permissions while it is running.

Once installed, H+M should find the Kindle compiler automatically. If you have problems, you can set the location automatically in **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers**. The standard location for the compiler is:

Kindle Previewer version 2:

```
C:\Users\YourUserAccount\AppData\Local\Amazon\Kindle Previewer\lib\kindlegen.exe
```

Kindle Previewer version 3:

```
C:\Users\YourUserAccount\AppData\Local\Amazon\Kindle Previewer 3\lib\fc\bin\kindlegen.exe
```

Names of modular projects:

When you are using runtime merging 1096 for CHM files the project filenames and the output filenames of the CHM files must be identical. The references between the child and the master help files are based on the filenames and if project and output filename don't match the references will be invalid.

If you want to change the name of the output file in the Publish dialog you should also change the name of the entire project to match, using **Save As...** in the File menu.

Dead links caused by excluded topics

You may have dead links in your project if you have excluded topics from your output without taking steps to deal with links to the topics that are not present in your output. You can configure Help+Manual to deal with these dead links automatically in two different ways, see Program Options - Compilers 1268 for details.

These automatic options are useful for a quick fix but it is generally better to use conditional text tags to exclude the links and replace them with alternative text when necessary. See Preventing dead links 984 for detailed instructions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Linked snippets:

Are you using linked snippets (snippets linked to topic files or external files)? If the source files are in your current project you need to make sure that they will not be included in your output, otherwise they will be exported too in electronic help formats and the user will be able to find them with Search and the Keyword Index (if the snippet files also contain keywords).

Select the tab of the each source topic and deselect all the options in *Builds which include this topic*. See Re-using content with snippets 265 for details.

Notes and other information you want to exclude:

Does your project contain any author's notes and other "production information" that users shouldn't see? It's a good idea to use Comments & Bookmarks 253 feature for information like this to ensure that it isn't included in the output. You can also exclude information from your output with Conditional Text 994.

See also:

Configuring Your Output 644

6.1.7 Distribution files

When you publish your output a report is displayed in a window with a reminder of the files and/or folders that you need to distribute to your users. Below is a summary checklist of the files you normally need to distribute for each output format supported by Help+Manual.

External files referenced in your project

In addition to the files actually generated when you publish your project, remember that you also need to distribute any external files referenced or linked to in your project – for example PDF files linked to in a CHM help file, which need to be stored in the same folder as the CHM. This is easy to forget.

HTML Help (CHM):

HTML Help is published to a single CHM file containing everything needed for the fully-functional help. You will only need to distribute multiple files if you are creating a modular project 1088 with multiple help files or if you are accessing additional external files in your help, for example with file links 424. If you do access and distribute external files with HTML Help you must store them in the same directory as the CHM file. Links to external files with path information will fail on many (but not all) users' computers because of uncorrected bugs in the Microsoft HTML Help viewer that is an integral part of the Microsoft Windows operating system.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

WebHelp (HTML):

WebHelp is actually a self-contained website. Like any website it consists of a large number of separate files, including HTML files, graphics files, JavaScript files and other files all stored in a single folder. If you have a large help project your WebHelp can easily consist of hundreds of files. You must upload the entire output folder including all the files it contains to your server for WebHelp to work properly! Also, you must upload all the files to the same directory! Do not make any changes to these files. For example, do not edit or change the case of file names.

If you are distributing any additional files with your WebHelp you must add them to the directory manually, or add them to the Baggage Files 1119 in the Project Explorer (then they will be exported automatically).

HM2Go tiny web server for local WebHelp:

If you want your WebHelp to be opened locally without a server (for example WebHelp on CDs and DVDs), Help+Manual has a special mini server that you can distribute with your help for better performance. See HM2Go - mini server for local WebHelp 673 for details.

Adobe PDF:

Adobe PDF output always consists of a single **.pdf** file. It is also possible to embed referenced files 807 in the PDF file.

eBooks:

ePUB eBooks consist of a single file with the **.epub** extension. This file is actually a zip archive that contains the XHTML and XML files that make up the ePUB eBook.

Kindle/Mobi eBooks consist of a single file with the **.mobi** extension. This is also an archive, but has a proprietary Amazon format.

eWriter Help consists of a single data file that can have the extension `.ewriter` or an extension defined by the user. It uses a standalone eViewer viewer that can be installed along with your documentation, or by the user. eWriter Help files with the standard `.ewriter` extension can also be installed by the eViewer application available on the Windows Store, which the user is prompted to install when they double-click on an `.ewriter` file. The eViewer is also available for MacOS.

Optionally, eWriter Help can also be generated in an **.exe** file that contains both the help content and the viewer program needed to display it. This file is completely self-contained and it is the only file you need to distribute. However, it is now deprecated because of the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

increasing security problems involved in distributing documentation in executable files. See eWriter Help 1519 for more details on the benefits of the eWriter format.

MS Word DOCX:

MS Word DOCX is output to a single **.docx** file. If the file contains images the graphics files are embedded directly into it, as they are in Word.

Visual Studio Help 2008 & 2010 (MS Help 2.0/3.0):

Please note that these formats are not designed for general help for user applications! Visual Studio Help is only used to document programming components in Visual Studio .NET. This help format is irrelevant for normal help and documentation applications.

Visual Studio Help 2008 (MS Help 2.0/HXS)
Help 2.0 is normally output to a single, self-contained **.hxs** file. This is the only file you need to distribute. However, you can also choose an option to create both an **.hxs** file and a separate **.hxl** file in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Visual Studio Help** > Namespace & Options 1464.

Visual Studio Help 2010 (MS Help 3.0/MSHC)
Visual Studio Help 2010/MS Help 3.0 consists of a single file with the extension **.mshc**. This is actually a zip archive and it can be unpacked with any zip utility, just like MS Word **.docx** files. The compiled MSHC file must then be installed in Visual Studio with the Visual Studio Help Manager. Please consult the Visual Studio documentation for details.

See also:

Help Formats 1504 (Reference)

6.1.8 Transforming your output with skins

You may already be familiar with the concept of "skins" from other programs: You select a skin file and the appearance and layout of the entire program is transformed in seconds. Help+Manual enables you to do this with your HTML-based output. You can save your entire design with all its HTML templates and relevant HTML settings in a **.hmskin** file. You then select this file when you publish to apply the layout to the current project without changing any of the project's own settings.

Please note that you can only save your own projects as skins if you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual. Basic version users can use skins without limitations and edit existing skins (for example skins from the Help+Manual Plus Packs) but they cannot create new skins from their own projects.

Productivity Tip
Skins can only be used for HTML-based output

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

formats. You can style your PDF files and printed manuals with print manual templates 803, which work in the same way as skins. Word files use DOCX templates 683.

How to use skins - try it now!

1. Open a project of your own, select *Publish* in the **Project** tab, then select WebHelp or HTML Help as the output format.
2. On the Publish page 1310 click on the drop-down menu in the *Select Skin* section and select one of the standard **`.hmskin`** files in the Skins folder in the Help+Manual program directory. You can also select the *Open Skin...* option to select a skin file directly.

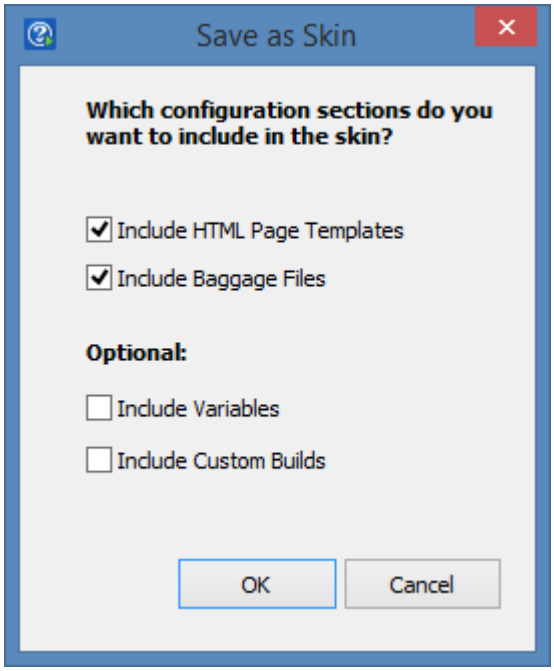
When you publish your output it will have the "look and feel" applied by the skin. You didn't have to do any design work at all! Cool, no?

How to create a skin file

Skin files contain everything you need to style your HTML-based output: Text and table styles, user-defined variables, your Baggage files (template graphics and logos), HTML page templates and all the settings and templates for WebHelp. You can turn any project into a skin file just by saving it as a skin and you can edit skin files in Help+Manual, just like normal projects.

1. Open a project with a design that you want to use for other projects.
2. Select *Save As...* in the File menu and choose the *Skin XML File* option.
3. Choose a place to save the skin, enter a name and save.
4. You will be asked which configuration components of your project you want to include in your skin.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Skin components you can include or exclude when creating a skin

HTML Page Templates:	Should generally always be included. This includes both the templates for topic pages and the various WebHelp HTML templates. Without them, your skin will not replace the HTML templates from your project. In most cases, that would be pretty pointless.
Baggage Files:	Should generally always be included. The Baggage Files 1119 section is the place in your skin where you store your additional JavaScript, CSS and other files for your skin. Putting them there exports them automatically when you publish.
Variables:	Should generally always be included. Having variables in the skin allows you to set up configuration options that you can adjust without having to adjust the source code in your templates or baggage files. Variables can be used in all HTML templates in your skin and in JavaScript and CSS files in your baggage files – they are scanned and replaced by Help+Manual on publishing. All variables you use in your HTML templates and

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	baggage files must be written with the standard **<% VARIABLE_NAME%>** syntax, otherwise they won't be found. You can also use variables from your project (both global and user-defined).
Custom Builds:	Should generally always be included, but delete any custom builds from your project in the skin after creating the skin. Custom builds defined only in the skin are displayed in the additional **Skin Include Options** box displayed in the **Publish** screen. Having custom builds in your skin allows you to create configuration options that can be activated or deactivated on publishing. You can include or exclude code in your HTML templates or in your JavaScript and CSS files in your baggage files with custom builds. For example, suppose you have a custom build called TOPICFOOTER: Include code when your build option is active with: **<IF_TOPICFOOTER>Code you want to include when TOPICFOOTER is selected goes here</IF_TOPICFOOTER>** Include code when your build option is inactive with: **<IF_TOPICFOOTER>Code you want to include when TOPICFOOTER is NOT selected goes here</IF_TOPICFOOTER>** See this topic 1052 for more details.

How to edit skin files

Skin files are actually normal single-file projects with some special limitations. You can open them and edit them like normal projects but you can only edit those components that are included in the skin, everything else is unavailable.

1. Select *Open* in the File menu and then select *Help+Manual skin files (.hmskin)* as the type of file to be opened. (If you don't select this you won't be able to see the skin files!)
2. Select an **.hmskin** file to load and edit. You can find some sample skins in the *Skins* folder in the Help+Manual program directory.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Now you can edit the settings of your skin. This is exactly the same as editing the corresponding sections of normal projects to configure your output.

   Skins have no topics, you can only edit the relevant sections in the **Configuration** and **Baggage Files** sections in the Project Explorer and the text and table styles in **Write > Styles**.

Using include conditions to configure features in skins

> **Key Information**
> Include options in skins must be defined in the skin! Include options defined in normal H+M projects will not be saved in the skin when you save the project as a skin. You must edit the skin file and add the include options you want to use.

For advanced users:

You can use include options 1052 to turn features in skins on and off. This makes it possible for the user to choose features in the skin when they publish their projects because include options stored in skins are loaded into the *Include Options:* box in the Publish dialog when the skin is selected.

For example, suppose you want to give the user the option of having a subtitle underneath the title in the table of contents in your WebHelp output. It would work like this:

1. Define an include option in the skin, let's say it's called OPT_SUBTITLE, and let's also say that we've entered *TOC header subtitle* as the include option description.
2. Add code using the include option to the HTML template for the WebHelp table of contents, for example (you would also have to define the <%SUBTITLE%> variable in this example, of course):

```
<p class="navtitle"><%TITLE%></p>
<IF_OPT_SUBTITLE><p class="nav-subtitle"><%SUBTITLE%></p></IF_OPT_SU
```

3. When the user loads the skin in the Publish dialog the option *[ ] TOC header subtitle* will automatically be loaded from the skin file and displayed in the *Include Options:* box. The header will only be displayed if the user selects this option.

You can take this concept as far as you like: For example, you can use the same include option to change the CSS definitions in the same HTML template so that the formatting will be different depending on whether the subtitle is included or not.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Including a preview image in a skin

When the user selects a skin in the Publish dialog Help+Manual automatically looks for a PNG graphic file called `$HMSKINPREVIEW.PNG` in the skin's Baggage files. If this file is found a thumbnail version of the preview image is displayed in the Publish dialog. The user can then click on this image to display a full-size preview.

1. Create your preview image – this will generally be a screenshot of a help file using your skin – and save it in the PNG format as `$HMSKINPREVIEW.PNG`.
2. Add the PNG preview file to the Baggage Files section of your skin.
3. Select the PNG file in the Baggage Files section, right-click on it, select Include in Builds and deactivate all build options for the file. This will prevent the file from being exported to your published output, where it is not needed.

Using skins to redefine variables and other settings

You don't have to save all your settings in your skin files. For example, it's possible to create a skin that only defines the user variables in your project – you just need to deselect everything except Variables when you save the skin file. Then you can redefine your variables in your entire project by selecting the skin file when you publish your project.

You can do the same with your Baggage files, text and table styles, HTML Page Templates or any combination.

Applying multiple skins in command lines and batch files

When you publish manually you can only select one skin for the project you are publishing. However, when you use Help+Manual's command line options you can specify as many skins as you like one after another.

When you do this the settings in the last skin you specify always have priority for duplicate settings – for example, if you redefine the same variables in two skins the settings in the second skin are those that will be applied.

See Command Line Options 816 and Skins & redefining variables 834 for more information on this.

See also:

The Publish Dialog 1310
Command Line Options 816

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.2 Configuring for Publishing

When your project is finished you will want to output it to one of the output formats 1504 supported by Help+Manual. You can generate all these formats from the same project.

Configurable publishing options

The layout of the content of your topic pages is controlled by what you enter in the editor but there are many other aspects of your output that you can configure individually for different output formats. These options are generally configured with settings in the Configuration 1400 section of your project in the Project Explorer. The layout of your PDF output is controlled by special template files that you can create and edit with the Manual Designer program included with Help+Manual.

The topics in this chapter provide an introduction to configuring the options for each format with references to documentation of the individual settings available for each format.

See Help Formats 1504 for more information on the individual output formats.

See also:

Project Configuration Settings 1400
Help Formats 1504

6.2.1 Publishing for Hi-Res Displays

WebHelp and HTML Help CHM output need a couple of configuration options to optimize them for working on modern high-resolution displays. This will not change the performance on normal displays.

Configuration for HTML Help/CHM files

The Microsoft CHM Viewer in Windows uses an old HTML rendering engine that has special requirements. Help+Manual can automatically configure your CHM file so that it displays correctly on high-resolution 4K monitors and devices like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro. If you don't do this the text and other elements will often be too small to read on these devices.

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **MS HTML Help** > **HTML Export Options**.
2. Set *Font Size Encoding* to: `pt Points`.
3. Select the checkbox for *Make pixel sizes relative to monitor resolution (4K display compatibility)*

All elements of your CHM file will then automatically be adapted for correct display on both normal and high-resolution devices and monitors.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Configuration for WebHelp

You now need to consider high-resolution 4K monitors and devices like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro when you are planning your WebHelp. If you don't do this the text and other elements will often be too small to read on these devices. If you set the configuration options described below Help+Manual will automatically adjust everything else so that it displays correctly on high-resolution displays.

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**.
2. Set *Font Size Encoding* to: `em (1em = 100%)`.
3. The *Font size of style "Normal"* setting is grayed out for ems/rems because it is only used when font encoding is set in percent.

Once the base font encoding is set to ems all elements in your topic files will then automatically be adapted for correct display on both normal and high-resolution devices and monitors.

6.2.2 HTML Help

The appearance and functionality of HTML Help output is controlled by the settings in three Project Configuration sections:

- **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help**
- **Configuration** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows**
- **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates**

Additional WebHelp and HTML information for experts

If you are experienced in creating pages with HTML, CSS and JavaScript please refer to the Using HTML Templates 1026 chapter for information on how you can get the most out of your HTML-based output in Help+Manual.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **`.hmskin`** skin file. Edit-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Settings in the HTML Help section

The settings in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** modify the appearance and functionality of your HTML Help output. The notes below explain what the sections are for, which settings you need to check and where you can find more information.

HTML Export Options:

This section contains some of the most important options for your HTML Help/CHM output. They control how your project is converted to HTML code and you should always check them before publishing a new project for the first time. Changes made here can cause radical differences in the behavior and appearance of your HTML Help output. There are also important settings here that enable your CHM files to display correctly on modern high-resolution devices.

For full details on all the settings in this section see HTML Export Options 1459 in the HTML Help section of the Project Configuration chapter. The options in HTML Export Options in the HTML Help section are also used for the two Microsoft Visual Studio Help formats.

Popup Topics:

The settings for popup topics are included in the HTML Export Options section. For information on creating and using popup topics in HTML Help see Creating popup topics 207 and Using JavaScript popups 212. If you plan on using field-level popups to be displayed in your application also check Using Context-Sensitive Help 892 in the **More Advanced Procedures** section.

Extended .HHP Settings:

Additional settings for the HHP file:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This section is for advanced users who have experience with the manual configuration of HTML Help projects. If you are just getting started with Help+Manual you don't need to worry about it at all. It enables you to add and modify settings in the HHP project configuration file that is fed to the Microsoft HTML Help compiler together with all the other project files.

Context-sensitive application help
This is the internal file name of the popup topics file used for field-level popups that can be displayed in Windows applications without opening the main help file. If you wish, you can change the name of this file here. See this topic for details 215.

Window styles of the table of contents:
These additional options adjust the appearance and behavior of the TOC in the Microsoft HTML Help viewer:

Display plus/minus icons:
Activates or deactivates the +/- icons displayed to the left of closed/open chapter icons ("books") in the HTML Help viewer's TOC.

Draw lines between items:
When this is activated fine dotted lines are displayed between related items in the TOC, making it easier see which topic belongs to which chapter in complex TOCs.

Track selection (mouseover effect):
When this is activated an underline is displayed below topic entries in the TOC when the user moves the mouse over them. This makes it easier to be sure which topic you are going to click on.

Only expand a single heading:
When the user selects a new chapter any other chapters on the same level in the TOC that are open will be closed automatically. This is useful for complex help documents with lots of chapters, because it is easier to navigate in the TOC if you do not have multiple chapters open.

If this is a child file merged at run time:
This setting specifies what happens when the user opens the compiled help file directly if it is part of a modular help system. See Working with Modular Help Systems 1088 for more information on this subject.

Make CHM files scale correctly on hi-res monitors

The Microsoft CHM Viewer in Windows uses an old HTML rendering engine that has special requirements. Help+Manual can automatically configure your CHM file so that it displays correctly on high-resolution 4K monitors and devices like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro. If you don't do this the text and other elements will often be too small to read on these devices.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration > Publishing Options > MS HTML Help > HTML Export Options**.
2. Set *Font Size Encoding* to: `pt Points`.
3. Select the checkbox for *Make pixel sizes relative to monitor resolution (4K display compatibility)*

All elements of your CHM file will then automatically be adapted for correct display on both normal and high-resolution devices and monitors.

See Publishing for Hi-Res Displays 644 for more details.

Settings in the Help Windows section

In addition to the settings in the **HTML Help** section, the configuration and appearance of your HTML Help output is also controlled by the settings in **Configuration > Microsoft HTML Help > Help Windows**. In particular, the HTML Help Options 1454 tab configures the features of the Microsoft help viewer used to display your HTML Help CHM file.

See Help Windows 650 for some more information on this subject.

Publishing and testing Asian language HTML Help

Match the System Locale to your output language

If you are not using a version of Windows matching your Asian language you must set the system locale to the correct language, otherwise the HTML Help compiler will not work properly because it is not a Unicode program; it needs support from Windows to be able to handle these character sets correctly. To do this open the International settings in the Windows Control Panel. The setting is in the Advanced tab. In Windows XP it is called "Language for non-Unicode programs", in later versions of Windows it is called System Locale.

You need to restart Windows after changing the locale.

Quick tests with the "Tolerant handling of Asian languages" setting

If you just want to do a quick compile of an Asian project without having to reset the System Locale and restart Windows there is a setting you can use to be able to view the output quickly:

View > Program Options > Compilers > Tolerant Handling of Asian Languages

This option is only for testing. It will create an Asian CHM that can be viewed correctly, but the keyword index and full-text search will not work correctly. To produce a production

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

CHM for distribution you must publish it on a copy of Windows with the system locale set to the matching language.

Excluding topics from search in CHM

As in WebHelp, you can exclude topics from the search in CHM by adding an underscore to the beginning of the topic ID. However, for this to work in CHM you must also activate an additional option for CHM in the HTML Export Options 1461.

Important note for context help:
When you activate this option for CHM, the extension of the topic file is changed from **`.htm`** to **`.xhtm`**. You need to remember this for your context calls made to the internal topic HTML file in the CHM file.

To exclude topics from the search:

1. Add an underscore to the beginning of the topic's topic ID in the Topic Options tab. For example, to include a topic with the ID *Introduction* from the search change the ID to *_Introduction*. (Note that you will then also have to change the addresses of any existing calls to your topic from your application!)
2. Go to the HTML Export Options 1461 and activate the option *Exclude topics from CHM search if ID starts with an underscore*.
3. If you have any context help calls to the topic in your CHM file from your application change the call to the new ID and file extension. For example, if the ID is **`_Introduction_Topic`** the new HTML file name to make the call to will be **`_introduction_topic.xhtm`**

Settings in the HTML Page Templates section

This section provides access to the HTML templates used in all HTML-based output formats. These templates define the layout of the HTML pages into which the text from your topics is inserted.

Publishing with a skin uses the skin template

Normally, you will publish you project to CHM with a skin. When you select a skin the fully-configured HTML template from the skin is used instead of the template in the project and you don't need to concern yourself with it at all. If you want to change the appearance of the page when using a skin you need to edit the template in the skin, not in your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

About HTML page templates in CHM output

In HTML Help/CHM files, the HTML page template is the only HTML template used in your output. It defines the layout of the HTML pages displayed as topics in the MS HTML Help/CHM Viewer. This viewer is a standard Windows component. It can be configured to a certain extent in the Help Windows 650 settings.

Editing HTML templates directly requires experience with editing HTML code. If you are just getting started with Help+Manual it is recommended that you only use the *Simple Template Layout* tab. This allows you to use the default template while you are getting used to using the program.

For full details on all the settings in this section see Topic Pages 1413 in the HTML Help section of the Project Configuration chapter.

For information on using and editing HTML templates see the Templates and Secondary Windows 1007 and Using HTML Templates 1026 chapters in the Reference section.

See also:

Project Configuration - HTML Help 1451
Output Formats - HTML Help 1506

6.2.2.1 Help Windows

In Microsoft HTML Help CHM files only the actual topic pages can be "styled" by Help+Manual. The CHM Viewer itself is a standard Windows component that is only configurable to a very small extent.

The configurable features of the help viewer are controlled by the help window definitions in **Configuration** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows** in the Project Explorer.

For details on the individual settings see Help Windows 1452 in the **Project Configuration** chapter. For more information on help windows and what they are for see Help Windows 1609 in the **Reference** section.

What the help window definitions define

- In HTML Help the help window settings define the appearance and functions of the help viewer, including the controls displayed in the viewer, the text displayed in the viewer title bar and how secondary and external windows 1025 are handled.
- The help window settings also define the initial size and position of the HTML Help viewer and secondary windows displayed as external windows (if you are using them).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Default and user-defined help windows

By default only one default help window type called *Main* is defined. This is the standard window type used for all topics. The settings for *Main* control the appearance and behavior of the main help viewer in HTML Help.

Windows other than Main are only used to open topics in external windows 1025 when you link to them. This is done by specifying the secondary window type in the *Window:* field in the Insert Hyperlink dialog.

See also:

Using help windows 194
Templates and Secondary Windows 1007
Help Windows 1452 (Project Configuration)
Help Windows 1609 (Reference)

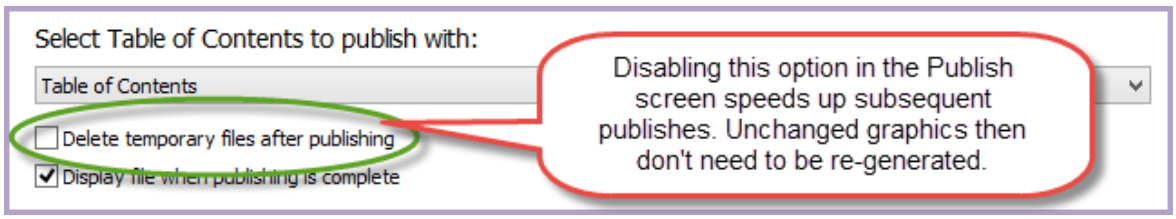
6.2.2.2 Optimize Publish Speed

When you are publishing this format Help+Manual generates a temporary folder for the intermediate source files that are used to create the final output. These are all the files that go into your final documentation, including the graphics. You can optimize publishing speed for large projects by changing the location of these temporary files and whether they are deleted or not between publishing operations.

Similarly, optimizing the location of your output folder and the project itself can also speed up publication by reducing the time required to write all the necessary files.

Not deleting the temporary files can speed up subsequent publishes

If you disable the option for deleting the temporary files after publishing this can sometimes quite significantly speed up subsequent publish operations for the same project. This is because the graphics that have not changed in the project no longer need to be re-generated. This effect will be particularly pronounced if you have a lot of graphics in your project that you have resized in the HM editor.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Should you use a RAM drive?

A RAM drive is a virtual, volatile hard disk created in the computer's memory that provides maximum access speeds. Its contents disappear when you shut down or restart your computer, so it may not provide the benefits of not deleting your temporary files (see above) between sessions. Also, this means that RAM drives should never be used as your output folder, because their contents disappear much too easily.

If you use one it must be large enough to accommodate all the files you write while publishing and you need to be very careful that it does not fill up completely while you are publishing, otherwise you will get errors. Instructions for how to do this go beyond the scope of this documentation. Generally you will need a special software utility to set up a RAM drive.

Never use RAM drives for your output folder!

This is important, so we're going to repeat it: The contents of RAM drives disappear as soon as you shut down or restart your computer. So you should only ever use them for temporary files, never for your output folders!

A RAM drive can improve performance if you only have spinning hard disks

RAM drives are much faster than spinning hard drives so if you don't have an SSD it can be worth it to set up a RAM drive for your temporary publishing files, if you have enough memory. However, an even better solution is to get a modern SSD because that will radically improve the performance of your entire system.

Don't bother with a RAM drive if you have a fast SSD

RAM drives are much faster than spinning hard drives but only marginally faster than SSDs for Help+Manual publishing. If you have a fast SSD, setting up a RAM drive will almost never provide a noticeable improvement, so it is not worth the effort then.

Optimize the locations of your project, temp files and output folders

Optimizing the locations of your project, temporary files and output folders can all speed up publishing.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Best solution all round: Everything on a fast local SSD

For the fastest possible publishing speed your project, temporary files folder and output folder should all be on a fast local SSD on the computer where Help+Manual is running. Then there are no network transfers during publishing and everything can run at maximum speed.

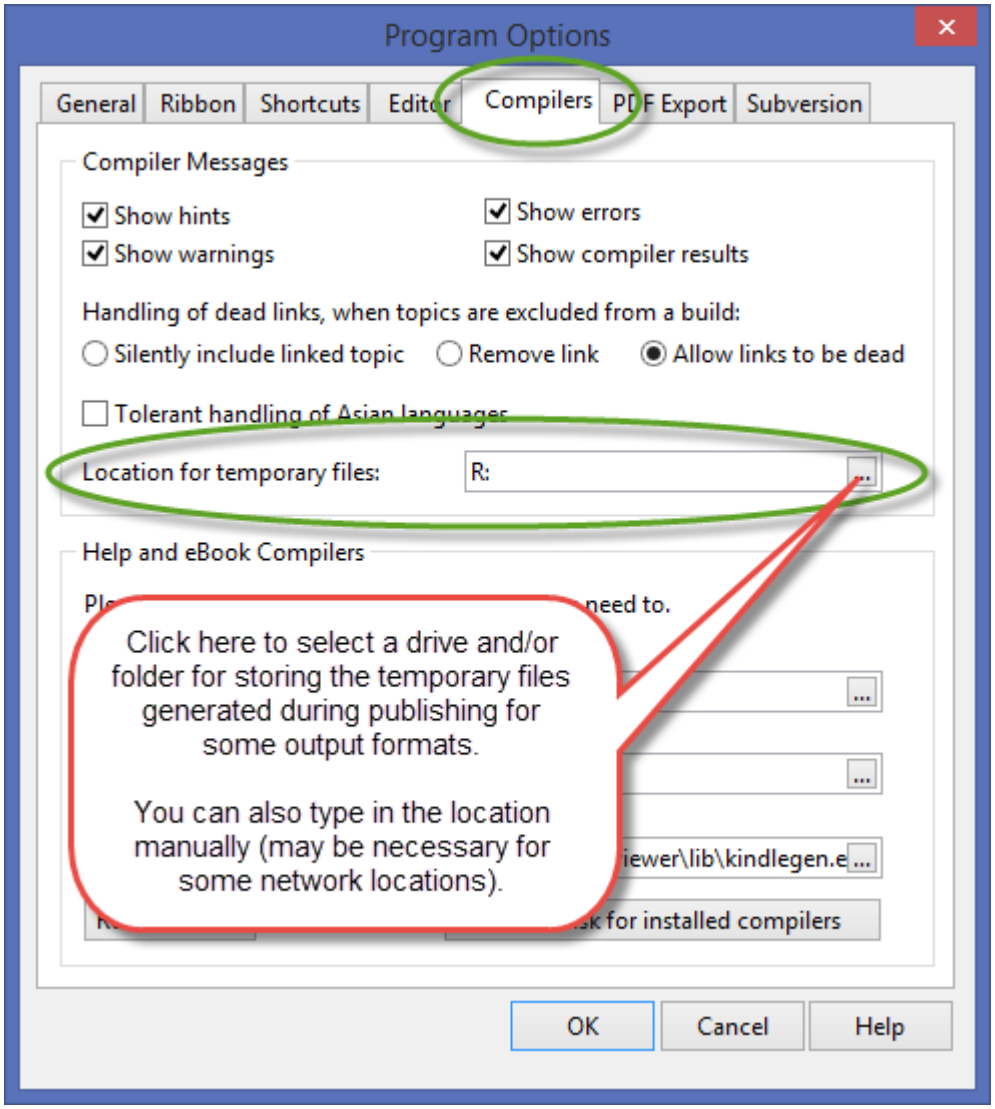
Best solution for network projects: Temporary files on a fast local SSD

If you are working on a collaborative project then it must be on a network drive. In this case you can still improve performance a lot by putting your temporary files on a fast local SSD on the computer where Help+Manual is running to publish the project. Having the output folder on the local drive will also improve performance, but not as much as having the temporary files there.

How to change the temp files folder location

You can find the setting in the Compilers section of the main program options, in **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers**. The setting applies to all output formats that use temporary files before (CHM, ePUB, Kindle, eWriter, Visual Studio help). The temporary files are written in sub-folders with names based on the project name and the output format.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Exclude your output and temp files folders from your virus checker

On current Windows systems interactive virus checking is performed on every file being written and can significantly increase the time it takes to generate your published output. Excluding your output folder and temp files folder from virus checking can speed up publication of large projects very significantly.

First set up a specific folder where your temporary files will be written (see above). If possible, also set up a folder where you always write your output files. This can contain multiple sub-folders for your different output requirements. Then you can configure your virus checker to exclude these folders from checking.

The instructions below explain how to do this for Windows' own integrated Windows De-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

fender or Security Essentials virus checking. If you are using a commercial solution you will need to consult your virus checker's documentation to learn how to exclude folders from checking. Note that commercial virus checkers often slow down your system much more than Windows' own solution.

Excluding your output and temp folders from Windows Defender or Windows Security Essentials

1. Open Windows Defender (or Security Essentials on older versions of Windows).
2. Select the **Settings** tab and then on the left select *Excluded files and locations*.
3. Click on the **Browse** button on the right and select the folder you want to exclude.
4. Click on the **Add** button to add the selected folder to the exclusions, then select the option at the bottom of the dialog to save your settings.

6.2.3 WebHelp

The appearance and functionality of WebHelp output is controlled by the options in two sections in your Project Configuration:

- **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates**
- **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp**

Additional WebHelp and HTML information for experts

If you are experienced in creating pages with HTML, CSS and JavaScript please refer to the Using HTML Templates 1026 chapter for information on how you can get the most out of your HTML-based output in Help+Manual.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **`.hmskin`** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **`.hmskin`** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **`.hmskin`** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Different appearance in different browsers

It is unavoidable that your WebHelp output will look slightly different depending on the browser used to view it. HTML Help and Visual Studio Help are proprietary Microsoft formats that use Microsoft help viewers to display them, and your output in these formats will always closely resemble your source in the Help+Manual editor.

This is not possible in WebHelp. The HTML code generated is the best possible compromise between the many quirks of all the browsers now in use and compliance with the current standards for XHTML, HTML and CSS.

Unfortunately, no browser is really compliant with all the standards. In addition to this, individual browsers often interpret the same rules and formatting tags differently.

Configuring WebHelp for modern high-resolution devices

You now need to consider high-resolution 4K monitors and devices like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro when you are planning your WebHelp. If you don't do this the text and other elements will often be too small to read on these devices. If you set the configuration options described below Help+Manual will automatically adjust everything else so that it displays correctly on high-resolution displays.

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**.
2. Set *Font Size Encoding* to: `em (1em = 100%)`.
3. Set Font size of style "Normal" to about 82% for 10pt base font type and about 88% for 11pt base font type. Adjust as necessary depending on the appearance of your output.

You need to set the percentage for Normal because ems are a relative value. The default font size on all browsers is 16 pixels, which is generally too large for normal body text in documentation. Compare the Help+Manual editor with the output on your browser to adjust the percentage to the correct value for your documentation.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Once the base font encoding is set to ems all elements in your topic files will then automatically be adapted for correct display on both normal and high-resolution devices and monitors.

Settings in the WebHelp section

Edit in the skin if you are using a skin

All these sections must be edited in the **`.hmskin`** skin file if you are publishing with a skin. When you use a skin, the HTML templates and settings in the skin replace those in your project. Usually, when you are using a skin, you don't need to edit anything because it has all already been set up by the designer.

Sections:

The most important sections are **Layout**, **Navigation** and **HTML Export Options**. Always at least check the settings in these sections before publishing a new project.

The Layout section:
The options in this section control the layout of your WebHelp.

Integrated:
This uses current HTML5-based templates. The flexible layout uses modern iFrames instead of the old, deprecated frameset. Recommended for most projects. As in the classic 3-frame layout (see below), you can use the header frame as container for the header of your website or any other web content.

No Frames:
This option is only for users who want to manage all their help topic files themselves. It does not create an integrated help system. The TOC file is used as the main `index.html` file and topics selected in the TOC display in the same page as the TOC.

Classic 2 Frames:
This generates the old frameset-based 2-frame layout used in previous versions of Help+Manual. It is provided mainly for users who want to continue using their own old customized templates.

Classic 3 Frames:
This generates the old frameset-based 3-frame layout used in previous versions of Help+Manual. Here too, it is provided mainly for users who want to continue using their own old customized templates. The top frame can be used as a container for the header of your website or any other web page.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Single Page Responsive:
This is only displayed when editing a skin. It is a special output format for responsive WebHelp that will work across multiple device platforms (desktop, tablets and smartphones). Currently, it will NOT "just work" if you just select it. It requires extensive JavaScript and CSS programming on the part of the author because all the special scripting and CSS for this is not generated automatically. The scripts and CSS must all be included manually in a skin using this mode. Currently, this format is only used in the V3 Responsive skins in the Premium Pack 3 add-on.

The Navigation section:
The options in this section control how Help+Manual generates the navigation for your WebHelp. Most of the options should be self-explanatory. For full details see Navigation 1420 in the Project Configuration chapter.

If you want a Keyword Index and Full-text Search tabs in your WebHelp you must activate these features here!

You can automatically generate an XML site map file 1423 that will be read by search engines to improve search engine performance when scanning your WebHelp. Note that topics with IDs beginning with an underscore character (_) are excluded from the site map because they are also excluded from full-text search.

The Table of Contents, Keyword Index and Full Text Search sections:
These sections configure the Contents, Index and Search tabs of your WebHelp output. In addition to this you can also edit the HTML templates that are used for generating these tabs. Editing HTML templates directly requires experience with editing HTML code. If you are just getting started with Help+Manual it is recommended that you only use the default settings in the Simple Template Layout tab.

Note that the Full-text Search feature for WebHelp is only available in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual, which include a royalty-free license for the integrated Zoom web search engine from Wrensoft.

For full details on all the settings in these sections see WebHelp 1415 in the Publishing Options chapter. For full details on using and editing HTML templates see Using HTML Templates 1026 and Templates and Secondary Windows 1007. See Publishing 613 for an important note on publishing WebHelp with full-text search.

The HTML Export Options section:
This section contains some of the most important options for your WebHelp output. They control how your project is converted to HTML code and how popup topics are managed and you should always check them before publishing a new project for the first time. Changes made here can cause radical differences in the behavior and appearance of your HTML Help output.

For full details on all the settings in this section see HTML Export Options 1459 in the HTML Help section of the Project Configuration chapter.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This is a shared section! The options in HTML Export Options are used for all HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks and Visual Studio Help). The settings of these options are the same for all these formats. You cannot enter different settings for the individual output formats.

The Google Analytics section (Professional Edition only):
This section activates Google Analytics for your WebHelp system.

For full details on Google Analytics see the overview page 666 and the step by step instructions page 1433.

Settings in the HTML Page Templates section

Edit in the skin if you are using a skin

HTML page templates must be edited in the **.hmskin** skin file if you are publishing with a skin. When you use a skin, the HTML templates and settings in the skin replace those in your project. Usually, when you are using a skin, you don't need to edit anything because it has all already been set up by the designer.

About HTML page templates

This section provides access to the HTML templates used in all HTML-based output formats except ePUB and Kindle eBooks (which use special templates accessible in the eBooks configuration sections). These templates define the layout of the HTML pages into which the text from your topics is inserted.

Editing HTML templates directly requires experience with editing HTML code. If you are just getting started with Help+Manual it is recommended that you only use the *Simple Template Layout* tab. This allows you to use the default template while you are getting used to using the program.

For full details on all the settings in this section see Topic Pages 1413 in the HTML Help section of the Project Configuration chapter.

For information on using and editing HTML templates see the Templates and Secondary Windows 1007 and Using HTML Templates 1026 chapters in the Reference section.

See also:

Publishing Options - WebHelp 1415
Output Formats - WebHelp 1510

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.2.3.1 Layout and templates

The options in this section define the layout of your WebHelp. You can use a standard two-pane layout that directly emulates the HTML Help viewer, a three-pane layout that allows you to integrate your own website's header page in the top frame or a "no frames, no scripts" option for manual integration.

Layout settings location:

Configuration > Publishing Options > WebHelp > Layout

Edit in the skin if you are using a skin

Everything in these templates must be edited in the **`.hmskin`** skin file if you are publishing with a skin. When you use a skin, the HTML templates and settings in the skin replace those in your project. Usually, when you are using a skin, you don't need to edit anything because it has all already been set up by the designer.

If you want to create your own skin you can turn your project into a skin with *Save As...* in the **File** menu. Then you can edit it as a skin and use the layout you create with other projects as well.

Using a skin instead of configuration your layout yourself

Instead of choosing and setting up your layout yourself you can just choose one of the "skins" provided with Help+Manual. To do this just select one of the available skins with the *Select Skin* option in the Publish page and select one of the available skins.

See Transforming your output with skins 638 for full details.

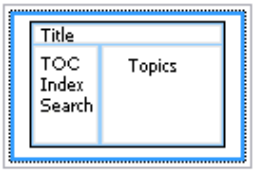
Choosing your layout mode

There are four different layout modes to choose from: *Integrated*, which is a modern layout using HTML5 and iFrames; *No Frames*, which uses the TOC as the main `index.html` file; and the two *Classic* versions with 2-frame and 3-frame layouts using a traditional HTML4 frameset.

We generally recommend using the Integrated version. The No Frames version is designed for specialists who want to handle the integration of their WebHelp pages themselves. The Classic versions are mainly provided for backward compatibility with old projects and are equivalent to the old standard layouts in Help+Manual 5 and earlier versions.

Integrated: HTML5 and iFrames for a modern fluid layout

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Integrated

This layout is HTML5-based with modern iFrames instead of the deprecated HTML4 frameset as containers for the navigation and topic pages. It also has a container at the top for the title of the project and any other content from your website that you want to put there.

Settings:
When you select the Integrated layout option you can define the background color, borders and frame dimensions in the Simple Options tab.

Header content:
By default, the *Header HTML Content:* field only contains the title of the project. You can add any additional HTML that you want to put here to integrate the WebHelp with your own website.

Single Page with JS: Responsive WebHelp 3 for the future
This a special output format for responsive WebHelp that will work across multiple device platforms (desktop, tablets and smartphones). Currently, it will NOT "work" if you just select it. It requires extensive JavaScript and CSS programming on the part of the author because all the special scripting and CSS for this is not generated automatically. The scripts and CSS must all be included manually in a skin using this mode. It will be documented in future updates when our own responsive WebHelp skins have been released.

No frames: Choose for fully manual website integration

No frames

This option removes completely disables the layout page. Instead , the Table of Contents 1044 page is used as the main `index.html` page. Items clicked in the Table of Contents then display in the same page.

This is designed for authors who want to integrate their WebHelp usage themselves. It is ideal for small-screen devices like smartphones and small tablet computers.

Tip: When using this layout, set `index.html` as the target of the *Top* navigation link in theHTML topic page template 1044 and change its caption to "Contents". Then users will be able to switch back to the contents easily after viewing pages.

Classic two frames: For legacy projects

Classic 2 frames

This option uses a traditional HTML4 frameset with two vertical frames, one for the navigation pages on the left and one for the topic pages on the right. It is the equivalent of the standard layout in Help+Manual 5 and before.

Settings:
You can turn on a border between the frames and set the width of the navigation pane on the left in the Simple Options tab. Values below 100 are interpreted as percent, values above 100 as pixels.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Classic three frames: For legacy projects with website integration in the top frame

Classic 3 frames

This option uses a traditional HTML4 frameset with the same two vertical frames as the 2-frame layout, plus a horizontal frame at the top for your website title, banner etc. It is the equivalent of the standard 3-frame layout in Help+Manual 5 and before.

Settings:
In addition to the borders and navigation frame width you can also define the height and content of the head frame. You can either insert the HTML code yourself in the editing box, or reference an HTML file you want to load in the frame. See below for details.

Content of the header box in Integrated mode

The Integrated layout includes a header box above the navigation and topic panes that normally just contains the title of the project, which is inserted with the `<p>Help+Manual - User Help</p>` code in the *Header HTML Content:* editing box. You can add any additional HTML code of your own that you like here, including references to logo images etc.

Note: The header box is not a frame

The header box is a normal `<div>` element on the page, not a frame or an iFrame, so you cannot load external files into it with normal means. You must actually insert the code you want to use into the box.

Content of the head frame in Classic 3-frame mode

When you choose Classic 3-frame mode you have two options for inserting your own top frame: You can either insert a reference to an existing web page that you want to load into the top frame or you can enter the HTML code for the top frame directly in the Layout dialog.

Inserting a reference to an existing web page:
Choose the option **`Head frame loads external file:`** and enter the name of the HTML file you want to load into the top frame.

- Help+Manual does **not** copy this file for you! You must make sure that the file and all the files it references (graphics etc.) are copied to the correct location on your server.
- The HTML file does not have to be stored in the same directory as your help. If it is located somewhere else you must include the correct relative or absolute path to the HTML file in the dialog together with the filename.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Entering your own code in the Layout dialog:

Select the *Edit HTML Code* tab and edit the code manually in the editor box that activates when you choose this option. You should have experience with manual HTML code editing to do this!

- When you use this option the head frame HTML file is generated automatically and copied to your output folder together with the rest of your help.
- You can reference graphics files and other external files in your code in the same way as you would in the other HTML template files. See Using HTML Templates 1026 for details.

Table of Contents, Index and Search templates

The Layout template defines the basic layout of the user interface for WebHelp. The actual content is stored in additional pages that are dynamically displayed inside the layout page, which defines the positions in which the additional pages are displayed. These are the pages for the table of contents, the keyword index, the full text search option and the actual topic content.

All these pages also have templates that you can edit, if you are experienced in HTML and CSS. You don't need to do this, however. Your project automatically comes with pre-defined standard templates that provide a very basic but fully functional WebHelp layout with table of contents, search and keyword index.

Skins are the easiest way to advanced WebHelp layout

You can create a more advanced layout yourself by editing the templates, but the easiest way is to use a pre-defined "skin". These skins are special Help+Manual projects that contain all the WebHelp settings and templates to provide an attractive and more functional layout. You select them in a one-click process when you publish your project. See here 667 for details.

Texts in the page templates

These templates contain user interface texts that you may want to edit. These include texts for the navigation buttons (Next / Previous) and the texts for the links in the navigation pane for switching between the Contents, Index and Search panes.

Locations of the Topic Page, Table of Contents, Index and Search templates

Topic pages:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Configuration > HTML Page Templates > Default

Table of Contents, Index and Search:

Configuration > Publishing Options > WebHelp:

- **Table of Contents**
- **Keyword Index**
- **Full Text Search**

See also:

Layout 1415 (Reference)
HTML template variables 1577 (Reference)
Transforming your output with skins 638
Using HTML Templates 1026
Templates and Secondary Windows 1007

6.2.3.2 Full text search enhancements

There are a couple of manual settings and switches you can use to change the way that full-text search works in WebHelp. These aren't absolutely essential but they can be useful for advanced users to fine-tune search performance.

For full details on all the standard search configuration settings please refer to Full Text Search 1428 in the Publishing Options chapter.

Get better performance and phrasal searches

By default WebHelp is generated with the client-side JavaScript search platform for full-text search. This works fine for small projects and has the advantage that it also works locally. However, for larger projects and additional features like phrasal searching (the ability to search for an exact phrase in quotes) it is better to use the server-side PHP or ASP search platform.

This requires support for PHP or ASP on your web server. Also, it cannot be tested locally – if you try to open WebHelp configured for ASP or PHP search locally you will only see a plage of source code when you select search.

See this topic 1428 for details on how to configure PHP or ASP search.

Excluding topics and files from the search index:

HTML files with names beginning with an underscore (**_myfile.htm**) are not indexed for searching. You can use this knowledge to exclude both topics and other files from your Browser Help search index (i.e. files not generated by Help+Manual). This will also exclude

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

topics from CHM search if you activate the corresponding option for CHM in the HTML Export Options 1461.

- **To exclude topics from the search:** Add an underscore to the beginning of the topic's topic ID in the Topic Options tab. For example, to exclude a topic with the ID *Introduction* from the search change the ID to *_Introduction*. (Note that you will then also have to change the addresses of any existing calls to your topic from your application!)
- **To exclude additional files from the search:** Just add an underscore to the beginning of the file name. For example, change *myfile.html* to *_myfile.html*.

Make use of index keywords!

In WebHelp, the full-text search includes the index keywords associated with topics in the search. This means that you can enhance your search by adding keywords to topics that users might search for, even though they are not included directly in the text of the topic. This can significantly enhance the usefulness of your searches.

See the Keywords and Indexes 565 chapter to learn about how to add index keywords to your topics.

Excluding page components from the search index:

Out of the box the full-text search feature in WebHelp indexes everything in the page, including all the text in the header. When the user executes a search the header text gets displayed at the beginning of the "excerpt" for each topic displayed in the list of search results.

You can change this with two switches that turn indexing on and off in your HTML templates. These can be used to exclude the both the header itself and the header information from the index, which means that the excerpts will begin with the actual text of your topics. Here's how to do it:

Edit in the skin if you are using a skin

Everything in these templates must be edited in the `.hmskin` skin file if you are publishing with a skin. When you use a skin, the HTML templates and settings in the skin replace those in your project. Usually, when you are using a skin, you don't need to edit anything because it has all already been set up by the designer.

Procedure:

1. Go to **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** > **Default**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Select the **"HTML Source Code"** tab.
3. Enter <!--ZOOMSTOP--> on a single line of its own directly before the beginning of the header code, (directly before the <IF_TOPIC_HEADER> switch), like this:
```
<!--ZOOMSTOP-->
<IF_TOPIC_HEADER>
```
4. Enter <!--ZOOMRESTART--> on a single line of its own directly before the <%TOPIC_TEXT%> variable, like this:
```
<!--ZOOMRESTART-->
<%TOPIC_TEXT%>
```
5. Repeat steps 1-4 for the other templates in the HTML Page Templates section if you have created any other custom templates.

That's it. When you recompile everything in the header will be excluded from the index and the excerpts. You can also exclude parts of individual topics from the search index. To do this just use the Insert - HTML Code function to insert the stop and start switches before and after the text you want to exclude.

See also:

The Search template for Browser Help 1046 (Using HTML Templates)
Full Text Search 1428 (Configuration Options)

6.2.3.3 Profiling WebHelp with Google Analytics

A help system is only as good as your users can find the information they are looking for. To measure the effectiveness of your WebHelp system and improve it where necessary, it makes sense to track usage so that you can see what your users are searching for and finding.

Help+Manual Professional and Floating have integrated support for Google Analytics to accomplish this goal in a few easy steps. (Please note that this feature is not available in the Basic version of Help+Manual.)

See this topic 1433 for instructions on setting up your WebHelp for profiling with Google Analytics.

Important: Use Google Analytics 4 — Universal Analytics is being closed down

Note that the older Universal Analytics from Google with the **UA-xxxxxxx-x** tracking IDs is now deprecated and is going to be completely closed down at the end of June 2023. Help+Manual 9 and Premium Pack 5 both have full support for the new Google Analytics 4 (GA4) with the new **G-xxxxxxxxxx** ID format, and you should switch to it immediately. Among other things, in the default configuration, Google claims that it is now compliant with the European Union's GDPR legislation. This is disputed by some parties, but it is definitely more compliant than Universal Analytics.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Available information

By integrating Google Analytics, you can track how the content of your WebHelp system is used and measure its effectiveness. Tracking includes:

General usage

How many visitors are viewing your help? How long are they reading your topics? Which topics are they reading? Google Analytics delivers detailed statistics on the number of visitors, page views, viewing time, visitor origin and referring pages.

Topics viewed and viewing paths

Learn which help topics are viewed more frequently and which ones are less popular. Viewing paths tell you, how your users are navigating through your help system and what they are reading next.

Entry pages and links to external pages

See the most popular entry pages, where users arrive in your WebHelp system. Find out, where they go when they click on links to other sites.

Full-text search and index terms

What terms are your users searching for? Which results did they follow? Which search terms are missing? In addition to full-text search terms, Help+Manual's integrated GA solution also reports use of the keyword index and lists the most popular keywords.

External links

External links are links in your WebHelp system that lead the user away from your site. Clicks on external links as well as file downloads are tracked separately as events in Google Analytics.

See also:

Preparing your WebHelp project for Google Analytics 1433
Full Text Search 1428 (Configuration Options)

6.2.3.4 Transforming your output with skins

You may already be familiar with the concept of "skins" from other programs: You select a skin file and the appearance and layout of the entire program is transformed in seconds. Help+Manual enables you to do this with your HTML-based output. You can save your entire design with all its HTML templates and relevant HTML settings in a **`.hmskin`** file. You then se-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

lect this file when you publish to apply the layout to the current project without changing any of the project's own settings.

Please note that you can only save your own projects as skins if you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual. Basic version users can use skins without limitations and edit existing skins (for example skins from the Help+Manual Plus Packs) but they cannot create new skins from their own projects.

Productivity Tip
Skins can only be used for HTML-based output formats. You can style your PDF files and printed manuals with print manual templates 803, which work in the same way as skins. Word files use DOCX templates 683.

How to use skins - try it now!

1. Open a project of your own, select *Publish* in the **Project** tab, then select WebHelp or HTML Help as the output format.
2. On the Publish page 1310 click on the drop-down menu in the *Select Skin* section and select one of the standard **`.hmskin`** files in the Skins folder in the Help+Manual program directory. You can also select the *Open Skin...* option to select a skin file directly.

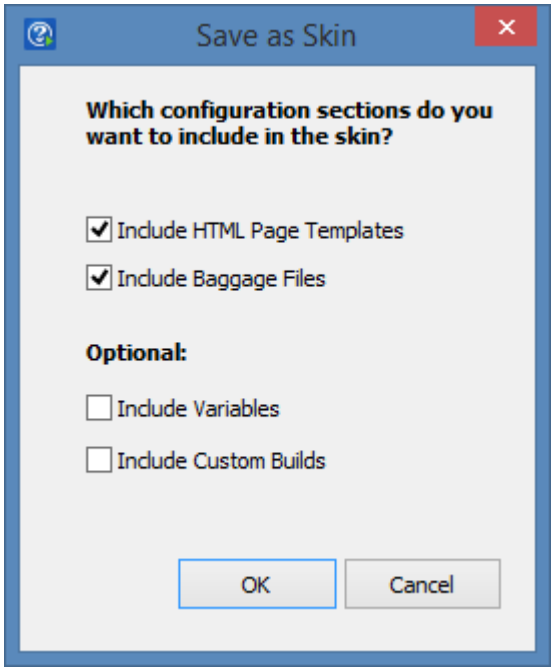
When you publish your output it will have the "look and feel" applied by the skin. You didn't have to do any design work at all! Cool, no?

How to create a skin file

Skin files contain everything you need to style your HTML-based output: Text and table styles, user-defined variables, your Baggage files (template graphics and logos), HTML page templates and all the settings and templates for WebHelp. You can turn any project into a skin file just by saving it as a skin and you can edit skin files in Help+Manual, just like normal projects.

1. Open a project with a design that you want to use for other projects.
2. Select *Save As...* in the File menu and choose the *Skin XML File* option.
3. Choose a place to save the skin, enter a name and save.
4. You will be asked which configuration components of your project you want to include in your skin.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Skin components you can include or exclude when creating a skin

HTML Page Templates:	Should generally always be included. This includes both the templates for topic pages and the various WebHelp HTML templates. Without them, your skin will not replace the HTML templates from your project. In most cases, that would be pretty pointless.
Baggage Files:	Should generally always be included. The Baggage Files 1119 section is the place in your skin where you store your additional JavaScript, CSS and other files for your skin. Putting them there exports them automatically when you publish.
Variables:	Should generally always be included. Having variables in the skin allows you to set up configuration options that you can adjust without having to adjust the source code in your templates or baggage files. Variables can be used in all HTML templates in your skin and in JavaScript and CSS files in your baggage files – they are scanned and replaced by Help+Manual on publishing. All variables you use in your HTML templates and

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	baggage files must be written with the standard **<% VARIABLE_NAME%>** syntax, otherwise they won't be found. You can also use variables from your project (both global and user-defined).
Custom Builds:	Should generally always be included, but delete any custom builds from your project in the skin after creating the skin. Custom builds defined only in the skin are displayed in the additional **Skin Include Options** box displayed in the **Publish** screen. Having custom builds in your skin allows you to create configuration options that can be activated or deactivated on publishing. You can include or exclude code in your HTML templates or in your JavaScript and CSS files in your baggage files with custom builds. For example, suppose you have a custom build called TOPICFOOTER: Include code when your build option is active with: **<IF_TOPICFOOTER>Code you want to include when TOPICFOOTER is selected goes here</IF_TOPICFOOTER>** Include code when your build option is inactive with: **<IF_TOPICFOOTER>Code you want to include when TOPICFOOTER is NOT selected goes here</IF_TOPICFOOTER>** See this topic 1052 for more details.

How to edit skin files

Skin files are actually normal single-file projects with some special limitations. You can open them and edit them like normal projects but you can only edit those components that are included in the skin, everything else is unavailable.

1. Select *Open* in the File menu and then select *Help+Manual skin files (.hmskin)* as the type of file to be opened. (If you don't select this you won't be able to see the skin files!)
2. Select an **.hmskin** file to load and edit. You can find some sample skins in the *Skins* folder in the Help+Manual program directory.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Now you can edit the settings of your skin. This is exactly the same as editing the corresponding sections of normal projects to configure your output.

   Skins have no topics, you can only edit the relevant sections in the **Configuration** and **Baggage Files** sections in the Project Explorer and the text and table styles in **Write > Styles**.

Using include conditions to configure features in skins

> **Key Information**
> Include options in skins must be defined in the skin! Include options defined in normal H+M projects will not be saved in the skin when you save the project as a skin. You must edit the skin file and add the include options you want to use.

For advanced users:

You can use include options 1052 to turn features in skins on and off. This makes it possible for the user to choose features in the skin when they publish their projects because include options stored in skins are loaded into the *Include Options:* box in the Publish dialog when the skin is selected.

For example, suppose you want to give the user the option of having a subtitle underneath the title in the table of contents in your WebHelp output. It would work like this:

1. Define an include option in the skin, let's say it's called OPT_SUBTITLE, and let's also say that we've entered *TOC header subtitle* as the include option description.
2. Add code using the include option to the HTML template for the WebHelp table of contents, for example (you would also have to define the <%SUBTITLE%> variable in this example, of course):

```
<p class="navtitle"><%TITLE%></p>
<IF_OPT_SUBTITLE><p class="nav-subtitle"><%SUBTITLE%></p></IF_OPT_SU
```

3. When the user loads the skin in the Publish dialog the option *[ ] TOC header subtitle* will automatically be loaded from the skin file and displayed in the *Include Options:* box. The header will only be displayed if the user selects this option.

You can take this concept as far as you like: For example, you can use the same include option to change the CSS definitions in the same HTML template so that the formatting will be different depending on whether the subtitle is included or not.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Including a preview image in a skin

When the user selects a skin in the Publish dialog Help+Manual automatically looks for a PNG graphic file called `$HMSKINPREVIEW.PNG` in the skin's Baggage files. If this file is found a thumbnail version of the preview image is displayed in the Publish dialog. The user can then click on this image to display a full-size preview.

1. Create your preview image – this will generally be a screenshot of a help file using your skin – and save it in the PNG format as `$HMSKINPREVIEW.PNG`.
2. Add the PNG preview file to the Baggage Files section of your skin.
3. Select the PNG file in the Baggage Files section, right-click on it, select Include in Builds and deactivate all build options for the file. This will prevent the file from being exported to your published output, where it is not needed.

Using skins to redefine variables and other settings

You don't have to save all your settings in your skin files. For example, it's possible to create a skin that only defines the user variables in your project – you just need to deselect everything except Variables when you save the skin file. Then you can redefine your variables in your entire project by selecting the skin file when you publish your project.

You can do the same with your Baggage files, text and table styles, HTML Page Templates or any combination.

Applying multiple skins in command lines and batch files

When you publish manually you can only select one skin for the project you are publishing. However, when you use Help+Manual's command line options you can specify as many skins as you like one after another.

When you do this the settings in the last skin you specify always have priority for duplicate settings – for example, if you redefine the same variables in two skins the settings in the second skin are those that will be applied.

See Command Line Options 816 and Skins & redefining variables 834 for more information on this.

See also:

The Publish Dialog 1310
Command Line Options 816

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.2.3.5 HM2Go - mini server for local WebHelp

You are probably all too familiar with the annoying yellow warning bar in that appears in Internet Explorer when you open WebHelp files directly on your own computer. Google Chrome also has problems with local WebHelp files, although they display fine in Chrome online. Without a web server environment, browsers like Internet Explorer and Chrome are unable to confirm the security of active features in HTML files and they block them to be on the safe side.

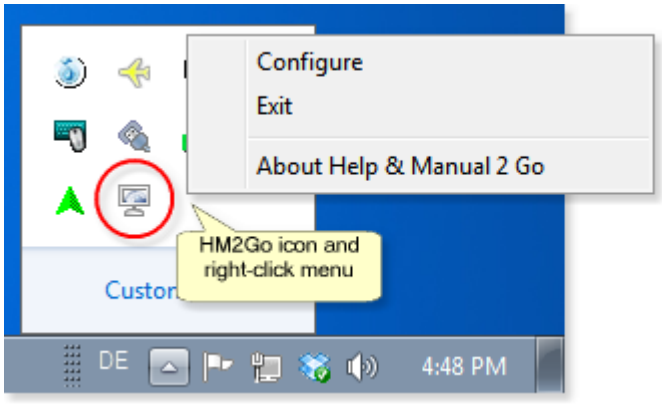
HM2Go is a tiny server you can distribute with your help

Help+Manual 2 Go (HM2Go) is a tiny server in a single 1.5mb EXE file. When you open your WebHelp output automatically after publishing it, Help+Manual opens it in HM2Go so that all browsers display it correctly.

If you are distributing WebHelp for local viewing you can install HM2Go and be sure that the help will display properly, even if it opens in browsers with defective local HTML handling like IE and Chrome. HM2Go is royalty-free and very easy to deploy and works both on hard disks and on removable media like CDs and DVDs. There are just two switches in the command line:

Using HM2Go for testing your WebHelp after publishing

The HM2Go server is started automatically if you activate the option for displaying your help output in the Publish page 613 (*Display file when publishing is complete*). Once it is running you will see its icon in the system tray notification area in the Windows Taskbar, with options for exiting and configuring:



Configuring HM2Go locally:

Just right-click on the HM2Go taskbar icon and select *Configure*. You can set the port it uses and the timeout after which it will exit automatically if it is not used for the number

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

of minutes you specify. The standard port is 80 and you will only need to change this if you are already running another web server on your computer. A good range of ports that are guaranteed to be free is from 8805 - 8872. Any number between those values is generally safe to use. The port and timeout settings will be saved and used the next time HM2Go is started.

Opening HTML pages with HM2Go when it is running:

Once HM2Go is running you can open any local HTML pages (for example your WebHelp) with it by entering its IP address in the address field of your web browser. If you have changed the port you also need to enter the port number. The normal address with the standard port (80) is **http://127.0.0.1** , and you just need to add the absolute path to the file you want to open after it like this:

http://127.0.0.1/D:/Documents/My+HelpAndManual+Projects/Demo-help/HTML/index.html

Use plus (**+**) characters instead of spaces.

If you have changed the port address to anything except 80 you need to include the port number in the URL, directly after the IP address and preceded by a colon, like this:

http://127.0.0.1:8810/D:/Documents/My+HelpAndManual+Projects/Demo-help/HTML/index.html

Relative paths in the browser URL:

In addition to the absolute URL shown in the examples above, you can also use a relative URL for accessing the help. The path is always relative to the location of the HM2GO.EXE file when it is started. For example, if the help is in a sub-folder called HELP in the folder where the HM2GO.EXE program file is stored and started, you can also use this URL:

http://127.0.0.1:8810/HTML/index.html

Distributing HM2Go with your own WebHelp

HM2Go can be distributed with your own WebHelp and used to display it with the user's default web browser, avoiding all problems normally associated with opening WebHelp locally without a server. This also works with WebHelp distributed on CDs and DVDs. It will run fine directly from the CD/DVD.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to get the HM2Go program file:

If you are using Help+Manual the **HM2Go.exe** file is located in the Help+Manual program directory. Just copy it from there to use it. All you need is this single EXE file. It is easiest to save it in the same folder as your WebHelp files to use it.

If you are using HM2Go as a stand-along solution you can get it from the EC Software website here, where you can also always download the latest version:

HM2GO download page

Command line syntax and options for starting HM2Go

The basic syntax for starting HM2GO is:

```
HM2Go.exe /P:xxxx /T:xx /PRJ:xxxx.html
```

The /P= switch is the port number, the /T= switch specifies the number of minutes until HM2Go exits automatically if it is not used and the /PRJ= switch specifies the HTML file you want to open. Your command line will normally look like this:

```
HM2GO.EXE /P:8810 /T:0 /PRJ:index.html
```

It is best not to use the default web server port (80) in case the user already has a local web server installed. A good range of ports that are guaranteed to be free is from 8805 - 8872. Any number between those values is generally safe to use. Set the timeout to 0 to prevent the server from exiting automatically unless you have a specific reason for setting an explicit timeout value.

The **/PRJ:** switch is not absolutely required. You can also enter:

```
HM2GO.EXE "index.html" /P:8810 /T:0 /PRJ:index.html
```

Absolute and relative paths:

You can also use an absolute or relative path for the location of the WebHelp file to open. Relative paths are always relative to the location of the HM2GO.EXE file, not to the location of the current folder or the batch file!

Relative path with the help in a folder called "help" below the HM2GO.EXE folder:

```
HM2GO.EXE /P:8810 /T:0 /PRJ:help/index.html
```

Absolute path, only possible when you know the drive letter:

```
@echo off
start /B HM2GO.EXE /P:8810 /T:0 /PRJ:D:/projects/help/in-
dex.html
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Starting HM2Go in a batch file:

If you start HM2Go with a batch file you don't want the command console window to open visibly. To prevent this, use the `start /B` command, this example assumes that HM2GO and the help are in the same folder:

```
@echo off
start /B HM2GO.EXE /P:8810 /T:0 /PRJ:index.html
```

HM2Go on CDs and DVDs

The best way to use HM2Go on a CD or DVD is to design the disc with a program that creates an interactive menu for your disc content so that the user can start the help by clicking a button. You can also create a simple autorun disc (see below), but many users turn off autorun for optical discs nowadays because of security considerations, so these may not always work.

All you need for a produced disc is to store HM2Go.exe in the same folder with all your WebHelp files and enter the command line options outlined above to start the help. You can also make context-sensitive calls 899 to topics in the WebHelp: You just need to prefix the address with the IP and the port number you have configured for HM2Go, for example:

```
http://127.0.0.1:8810/index.html?introduction.htm#beginners
```

HM2Go on an auto-starting CD or DVD:

To install HM2Go with your WebHelp on an auto-starting CD or DVD you just need to burn the WebHelp files and the `HM2Go.exe` file to the CD or DVD together with an icon file to be displayed for the disc in Windows Explorer and a text file called `autorun.inf`. The minimum contents of autorun.inf are the following lines:

```
[autorun]
open=HM2GO.EXE /P:8810 /T:0 /PRJ:index.html
icon=youricon.ico
```

Here too, you can make context-sensitive help calls to topics in the WebHelp as shown above for produced discs. You can find lots of tutorials for creating more complex autorun discs online, but it is really better to use a tool for creating "produced" discs with proper menus where the user starts the help by clicking a menu button.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Relative paths on CDs and DVDs:

You can also use relative paths for accessing the help in commands and links on CDs and DVDs. Here too, the path is always relative to the location of the HME2GO.EXE program when it is started. So these commands and links will also work:

```
[autorun]
open=HM2GO.EXE /P:8810 /T:0 /PRJ:HELP/index.html
icon=youricon.ico
```

```
http://127.0.0.1:8810/HELP/index.html?introduction.htm#begin-
ners
```

The relative http:// URL will only work after HM2GO has been started to establish its relative location, of course.

6.2.4 Adobe PDF and printed manuals

The appearance and functionality of Adobe PDF output is controlled by the settings and tools in the following locations:

- **Project** > **Tools** > **Manual Designer** (for editing Print Manual Templates)
- **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF**
- **View** > **Program Options** > **PDF Export**

Settings for printed manuals

Manuals printed with *Print Manual* in the File menu are also generated with Adobe PDF. However, the configuration options in the Configuration section of the Project Explorer do not apply here. Printed manuals are configured entirely with Print Manual Templates (see below) and the settings in the Print Manual dialog.

For more information see PDF and Printed Manuals 785.

Introduction to PDF and printed manual formatting in Manual Designer

Here are some brief pointers on some of the most common things you will want to do to format your template in the Manual Designer program. For full details press F1 in Manual Designer to view its detailed documentation.

Note that the same templates are used for PDF and printed manuals. Printed manuals are generated by creating a temporary PDF file, printing it and then deleting it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Accessing and editing PDF templates

All the layout information for PDF is stored in the PDF template you use to generate your PDF output, which is edited with the Help Manual Designer program included with Help+Manual. You start it by selecting the **Templates & Skins** > **Manual Designer** option the **Project** tab in the main Help+Manual program.

Once you have a template open in Manual Designer, press F1 to view the separate help file of Manual Designer. This file includes a tutorial that guides you through the basic steps. Here are a few pointers for key issues that crop up often (these instructions are for Manual Designer):

Ready-to-use templates you can start with:

The standard templates you can start with are stored in the **`/Templates/PDF`** sub-folder in the Help+Manual program folder. You cannot edit anything there (that is why we put the originals there, so they don't get changed). You need to make a copy of the template you want to edit in your project folder and edit it there. You can do this in Manual Designer if you want – open the template, then select *Save As...* in the **File** menu to make the copy.

Selecting edited PDF templates:

When you publish, select PDF as your output format in the Publish dialog, then select your edited template with the Print Manual Template option in the Publish page.

Turning sections on and off in PDF templates:

Open the template in Manual Designer and select the tab corresponding to the section you want to activate or deactivate. Then select *Page Options* in the **Pages** menu and turn the "Print Section" option on or off to activate or deactivate the section.

Page size:

Select the **Master (Background)** section, then select *Page Options* in the **Pages** menu to select the paper side and Portrait or Landscape orientation. You can only have one page orientation for the entire PDF document.

Margins:

Select any section other than "Master" and open the *Page Options* in the **Pages** menu. Set the margins and click on the option "Apply margins to all sections" to set the margins for

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the entire document. You can then change the margins for other individual sections if you need. Use the "Flip Margins" option to adjust the margin settings to mirror images for left and right pages in layouts that have different margins for left and right.

Page numbers:

Page numbers are included by default in all the standard PDF templates included with Help+Manual. You can edit or remove them as you like. To remove them just delete the elements on the pages that insert them. If you remove page numbering from the pages you will also want to remove the page number references from the table of contents in the Table of Contents section.

See the Manual Designer help for details on how to configure page numbering.

Headings of topics and in the table of contents:

These are edited and styled in the Topics and Table of Contents sections in the PDF template. Each section shows six levels of headings, which represent the six levels of topics supported in PDF. You can adjust the style of headings on each level by formatting the placeholder text items containing the heading variables accordingly.

Page headers and footers:

The easiest way to have them in exactly the same place on the page in your entire project is to put them in the "Master Page" section and then activate the Master Page as the background for the page in all the other sections (in **Pages** > **Page Options** for each section). You put text objects in the top/bottom margins and use the available variables for inserting things like the title of the project, page number etc. (see the help for details).

For headers or footers containing the title of the current top-level chapter you need to turn off the Master page in the Topics section and manually insert header or footer objects there, because the topic title variables will only be valid in that section. You insert the **`Publishing`** variable to insert the name of the current top-level topic title.

ONLY TOP-LEVEL HEADINGS IN HEADERS AND FOOTERS: You can only insert the top-level topic title in the header or footer. If you insert variables for lower levels you will get errors, because those levels do not exist on all pages. Only the **`Publishing`** variable is always valid.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

TOC and topic heading numbering:

Numbering for these items is set in the Table of Contents and Topics sections of the template. For details see the "Table of Contents" and "Topics Section" chapters in the "Designing a Template" section in the Manual Designer help.

Adding new elements on the page and editing elements on the page:

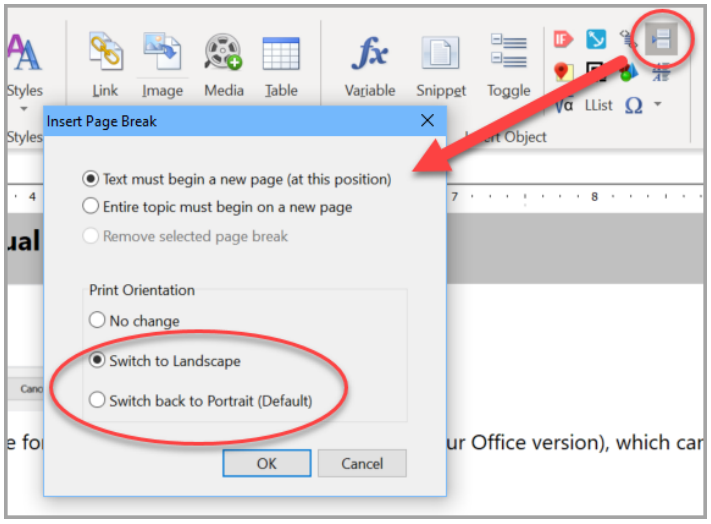
To add a new element select a tool in the toolbar and click or drag on the page in approximately the position where you want to insert it. Double-click on an element on the page to edit it.

Setting page breaks:

You can set whether each section of the PDF starts on a new page in the Page Options for the section. You can set page breaks for each topic level in the Page Options for the Topics section. These options are in the page breaks table at the bottom of the Page Options dialog.

Manual page breaks and switching between portrait and landscape

When you insert a manual page break in Help+Manual with the page break tool you can decide whether you want the orientation to switch between landscape and portrait mode. This enables you to use both landscape and portrait pages within a single document.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Print Manual Designer

The appearance and layout of your PDF output is controlled by template files with the extension **.mnl** called Print Manual Templates. These templates are edited with an editor called the Print Manual Designer 1217, which is included with Help+Manual.

When you open the Print Manual Designer the last template used to publish the current project you are editing in Help+Manual will be opened automatically, if there is one.

Print manual templates control much more than the appearance of your PDF page. They can also be used to add cover pages, introductions, a keyword index and many other features.

- To select a print manual template for PDF output just select it in the Publish page with the Print Manual Template option when you are publishing your project. Help+Manual will remember this selection the next time you publish the project.
- The print manual template for printed manuals is selected directly in the dialog displayed when you select *Print Manual* in the File menu.
- For details see the PDF and Printed Manuals 785 chapter, the section on the Print Manual Designer 1217 in the Tools chapter and the separate help and documentation of the Print Manual Designer program itself.

Settings in the Adobe PDF section

The three groups of options in **Project Explorer** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** 1442 control the basic functionality of your Adobe PDF output.

PDF Layout:

These options are critical for PDF output and should always be checked before generating PDF from your project for the first time. This is where you select the print manual template file that defines the entire appearance and content of your PDF document. The *Output Style* setting specifies whether you want to create an interactive PDF for on-screen viewing or a document-style PDF for printing.

See PDF Layout 1442 and PDF and Printed Manuals 785 for details.

PDF Options:

These options 1446 are not quite so crucial but they can make a big difference to how your PDF document functions. They should always be checked before publishing a PDF or distributing it to your users.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See PDF Options 1446 for details.

Font Embedding:

The options in this section can significantly effect the size of your PDF output file, and whether your users see your files with the same fonts that you chose when you produced the document. How you configure these options is particularly important for languages requiring full Unicode character sets, like Russian, Greek and many Asian languages.

See Font Embedding 1447 for details.

Printer driver for generating Adobe PDF

Help+Manual uses a printer driver to generate PDF documents. This will normally be your screen device or your default printer. If your PDF output is OK you don't need to change this but if you experience problems you may need to install an additional standard printer driver for PDF conversion.

See Customize - PDF Export 1271 for details.

See also:

Output Formats - Adobe PDF 1523
Customize - PDF Export 1271
The Print Manual Designer 1217

6.2.5 MS Word DOCX

MS Word DOCX output can be an alternative to PDF output for some needs. Help+Manual generates DOCX by combining the output content from the topics in your project with flexible external templates stored in Word DOCX files.

Publishing your project as Word DOCX

Publishing your project as DOCX is similar to publishing as PDF: You select Publish, select Word DOCX as the output format, select the template you want to use for your layout and click Publish. See Publishing instructions 618 for more details on this procedure.

Configuring and customizing DOCX templates in Word

Help+Manual comes with a set of standard templates for Word output. These templates are themselves standard Word DOCX files that you can edit and customize directly in Word.

If you select one without editing it you will get a DOCX document using the layout defined in that template. If any of the variables used in the template are defined in your

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

project you will see those items in the output (project title, author etc). Other fields used in the template will not yet be filled, because they need to be configured directly in the template – for example, fields for your company name, address and so on.

- **See the following topics in this chapter for instructions.**

Changing DOCX layout after publishing

You can change the styles and text formatting of Help+Manual's DOCX output in Word after publishing but it's best not to try to change the layout as this will often result in layout problems.

Why? Like PDF, Word documents represent static documents rather than fluid pages like HTML pages displayed in a browser. When you publish to DOCX, Help+Manual automatically formats the content from your project topics to fit the layout defined in your DOCX template.

If you change the document layout after publishing then you will often find that the content no longer fits in the layout. Instead, you should modify the DOCX template and republish the document from Help+Manual.

See also:

Project Configuration - Word DOCX 1472
Output Formats - Word DOCX 1525

6.2.5.1 Configuring DOCX templates

Follow this basic procedure to configure a Word DOCX template for your project:

1. Copy the template file you want to use to your project folder, with a new name if you want. You can find the source templates in the **/Templates/Word** folder in the Help+Manual program directory.
2. Open the copy in Word and edit it as described below.
3. Save it and select it when you publish your project as Word DOCX.

A DOCX template is a normal DOCX file that you can edit directly in Word, just like any other Word file. However, it has some special components and variables that you must use to enable you to create DOCX output from your Help+Manual projects.

These templates contain one required section that is essential for creating a DOCX file from your project and a some additional optional sections. You can also add your own pages.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

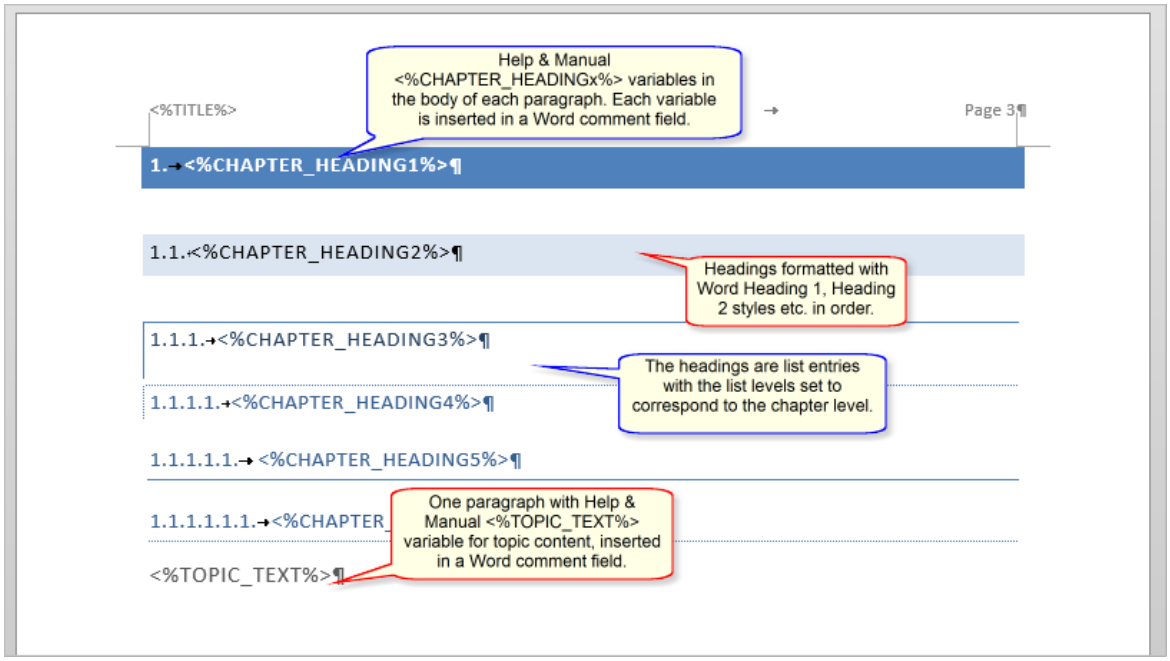
Orientation change in PDF and printed manuals only

Note that changing the page orientation with the page breaks tool 245 is currently only available for PDF and printed manual output. If you want to change the page orientation in Word output you must do this in Word after publishing the Word file from Help+Manual.

6.2.5.2 The Topics Section (required)

This section required and it is the key to your DOCX template. It defines the layout of your topic pages, the formatting of the topic headings, using Word styles defined in the template, and contains the "placeholder" variable that inserts the content from your project's topics when the DOCX file is generated with the template.

If you open one of the DOCX templates included with Help+Manual in Word you will find the Topics section page directly after the Table of Contents / Contents page. It will look some-thing like this:



Example of the Topics section

This section begins with up to nine heading paragraphs, formatted successively with Word's standard *Heading 1* ... *Heading 9* styles (Word allows a maximum of 9 heading levels). This is followed by a single special paragraph with a variable that inserts the content of your Help+Manual project topics in the template when you publish.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How it works

When you publish to DOCX with the template, Help+Manual locates the page in the template with the heading and topic content definitions. It then generates the topics in the DOCX document as follows:

1. Get the topic heading text without formatting from the current topic.
2. Find the matching topic heading level in the Topics section in the template.
3. Replace the variable in the heading with the topic heading text from the topic and update the heading numbering if necessary.
4. Insert the pre-formatted topic content from the project directly below the heading.
5. Proceed to the next topic.

Heading paragraphs

Format heading paragraphs with Heading 1, Heading 2 etc.

The heading paragraphs are formatted in order with Word's *Heading 1*, *Heading 2*, *Heading 3* etc. styles. The formatting of each heading is defined in the Word style definition in the template document. The topic headings are formatted entirely by the template. Only the plain text of the headings comes from the project. Any heading formatting used in the project is not used here.

Don't format the heading items manually. Always change the definitions of the standard Word *Heading 1* ... *Heading 9* styles to format these items.

Format the headings as list items if you want numbered topic headings

To provide heading numbering, each heading paragraph must be formatted as a list item. Each item must be set to the list level corresponding to its topic heading level. So the top item is *Heading 1* and list level 1, the third item is Heading 3 and list level 3, and so on. The numbering formatting is defined in the Word list definition.

Variables for inserting the topic heading text in the headings

The body of each template heading paragraph contains the Help+Manual **<%CHAPTER_HEADINGx%>** variable matching the corresponding level and inserted in a Word comment field 694. So you enter **<%CHAPTER_HEADING1%>** on level 1, **<%CHAPTER_HEADING4%>** on level 4 and so on.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Topics without headings

If you do not include the heading formatting placeholders in this page the topics will be exported without headings.

Topic text item (inserts the topic content)

The topic text variable inserts the topic content

The content from your project's topics is inserted in the template by the **<%TOPIC_TEXT%>** variable, which must be inserted in a Word comment field 694. This item must be in a single paragraph following directly after the last heading variable. It only needs to be entered once. Help+Manual will then use it to insert your topic content under the appropriate heading.

Formatting of the topic text paragraph

Any left and right indents applied to the topic text paragraph will define the left and right margins for all the content inserted from your project. This allows you to indent the entire topic content on the page.

All other formatting of this paragraph is ignored – the formatting of your topic content is defined in your project.

Page layout, page numbering, headers and footers etc.

All these items are normal Word components. Set them up as you would in a normal Word document. Enter Help+Manual variables anywhere you like, using Word comment fields 694 to contain the variables.

Use Word's page number variables, not Help+Manual's!

6.2.5.3 The Table of Contents

The table of contents is a normal Word table of contents field, just like the ones you insert in your normal Word documents. You insert it where you want it to appear in relation to the topics from your project. This will usually be directly before them.

You generate and format the table of contents field in Word with the usual table of contents tools. The numbering, dot leaders, styles etc. are all defined in Word. The DOCX templates included with Help+Manual already have TOC fields defined. You can reformat or replace these as you like.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Refer to the Word documentation for full details on inserting and formatting the Table of Contents field.

Items included in the Table of Contents automatically

Heading 1 ... Heading 9 styles are included as topic headings

Your Table of Contents field in the DOCX template must be configured to include the standard headings formatted with the standard Word *Heading 1* ... *Heading 9* styles in the table of contents. This is the Word default and all the DOCX templates included with Help+Manual are configured for this. The headings of your topics are included automatically because they are defined with these styles in the Topics section 684.

Section headings from the template use styles that are included

In the DOCX templates included with Help+Manual, the headings of the sections (Contents, Keyword Index, Table of Figures) are formatted with styles that are configured to be included in the table of contents.

Headings from other template pages

Standard section headings in the DOCX templates

In the DOCX templates included with Help+Manual, the headings of the sections (Contents, Keyword Index, Table of Figures) are formatted with styles that are configured to be included in the table of contents.

Including your own headings in the TOC with "Heading 1"

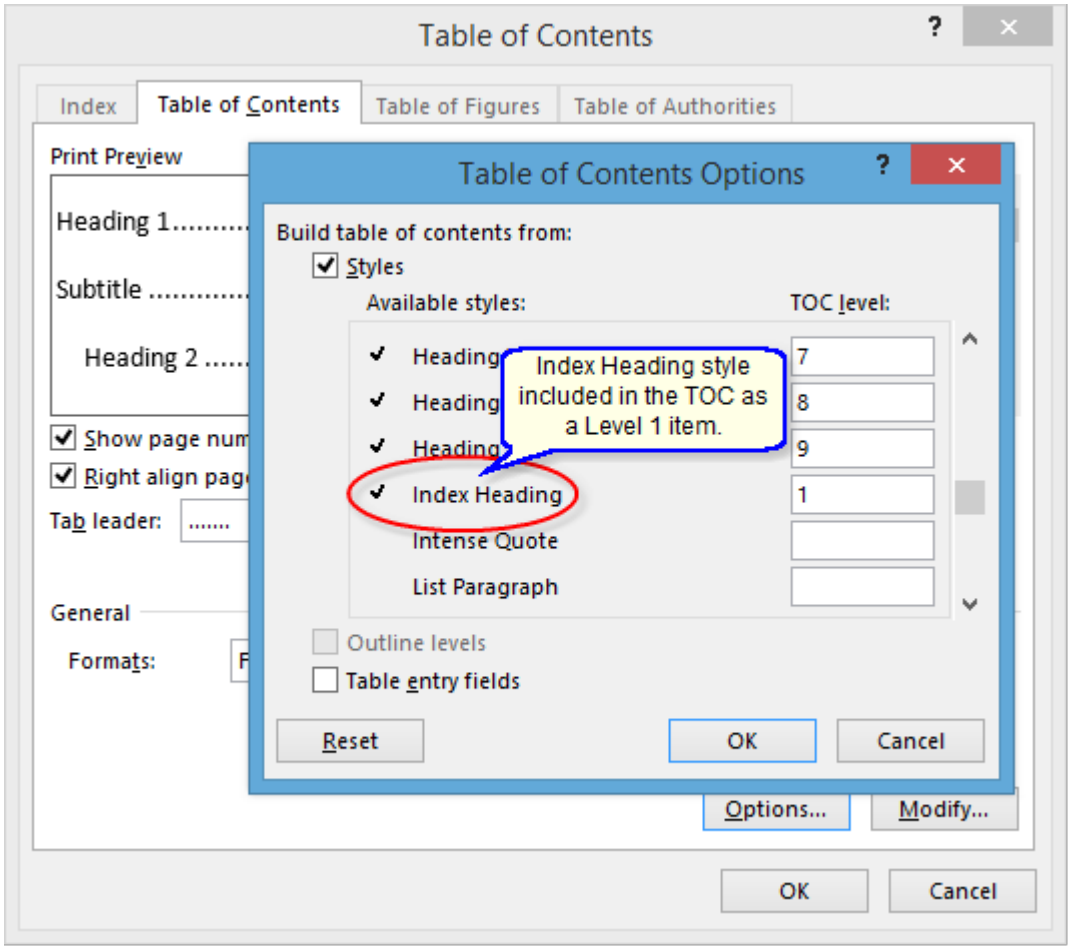
The simplest way include headings from other template pages in the table of contents is to format them with the *Heading 1* style. You won't want to use lower-level styles for this since these pages are all "top-level" pages.

Adding your own styles to the TOC

Alternatively, you can edit the Table of Contents field in Word to include any other styles used in the template as level 1 items in the TOC.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

To include sections like the Keyword Index and Table of Figures 689 in the TOC, just format their headings with a style defined in your DOCX template and then edit the Table of Contents field options in Word to include that style as a Level 1 item.



Don't try to enter chapter heading variables!

You will see the Help+Manual **<%CHAPTER_HEADINGx%>** variables displayed in the TOC field in the DOCX template but you don't need to enter them there. They are imported automatically from the topic headings defined in the Topics Section 684, and you only need to actually enter these variables there.

Page layout, page numbering, headers and footers etc.

All these items are normal Word components. Set them up as you would in a normal Word document. Enter Help+Manual variables anywhere you like, using Word comment fields 694 to contain the variables.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use Word's page number variables, not Help+Manual's!

6.2.5.4 Keyword Index, Table of Figures

Just like the table of contents, the keyword index and table of figures items are standard Word fields, which are inserted just as you would insert them in any other Word document where you want to include a keyword index or table of figures. Refer to the Word documentation for instructions on how to insert and format them. Look for the documentation on "Index" and "Table of Figures".

Adding a Keyword Index section

1. Create a page in the DOCX template for the keyword index. There is no required location, but you will want it to be after the Topics Section 684.
2. If you want to include the index in the table of contents, create a header using a style that you have included as a level 1 item in the Table of Contents 686 field.
3. Click in the position where you want the index to appear. Then select **Quick Parts** > **Field** in the **Text** section of the **Insert** tab in Word.
4. Select the *Index* item in the *Field names:* box, click on *Index...* to adjust the index options and then on **OK** to insert the field.

Adding a Table of Figures section

A table of figures is a list of the captions of all the images in your project with references to their page numbers.

Note that some of the DOCX templates included with Help+Manual already come with a table of figures pre-configured. So check it in a template you're using first by editing it in Word, before you try to create one yourself.

Step 1: Enter captions for all the images you want to include in the Table of Figures

Captions are required for the Table of Figures, because the captions are the entries in the table. You enter them in the topic editor 484 by double-clicking on the image in the editor.

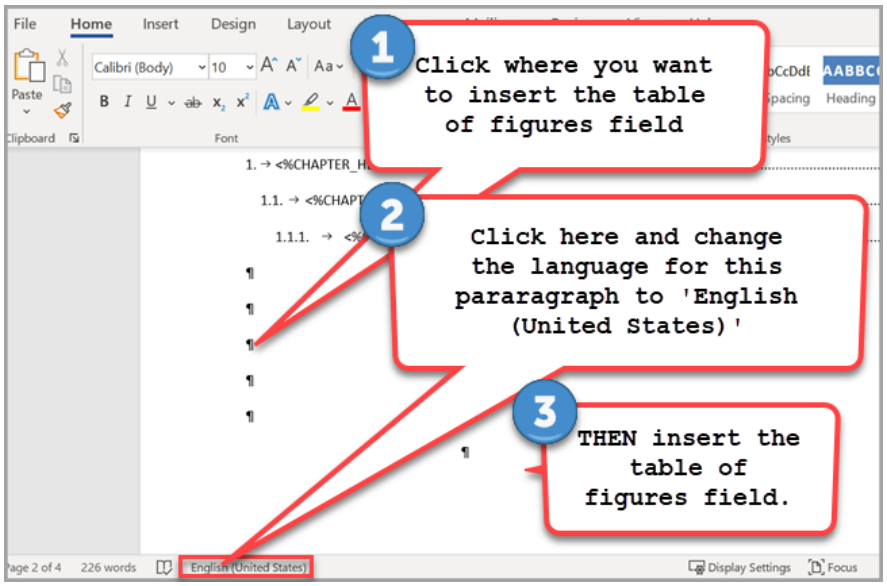
Step 2: Set the language for the table field to 'English (United States)'

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Step 3: Create the table of figures entry in your DOCX template

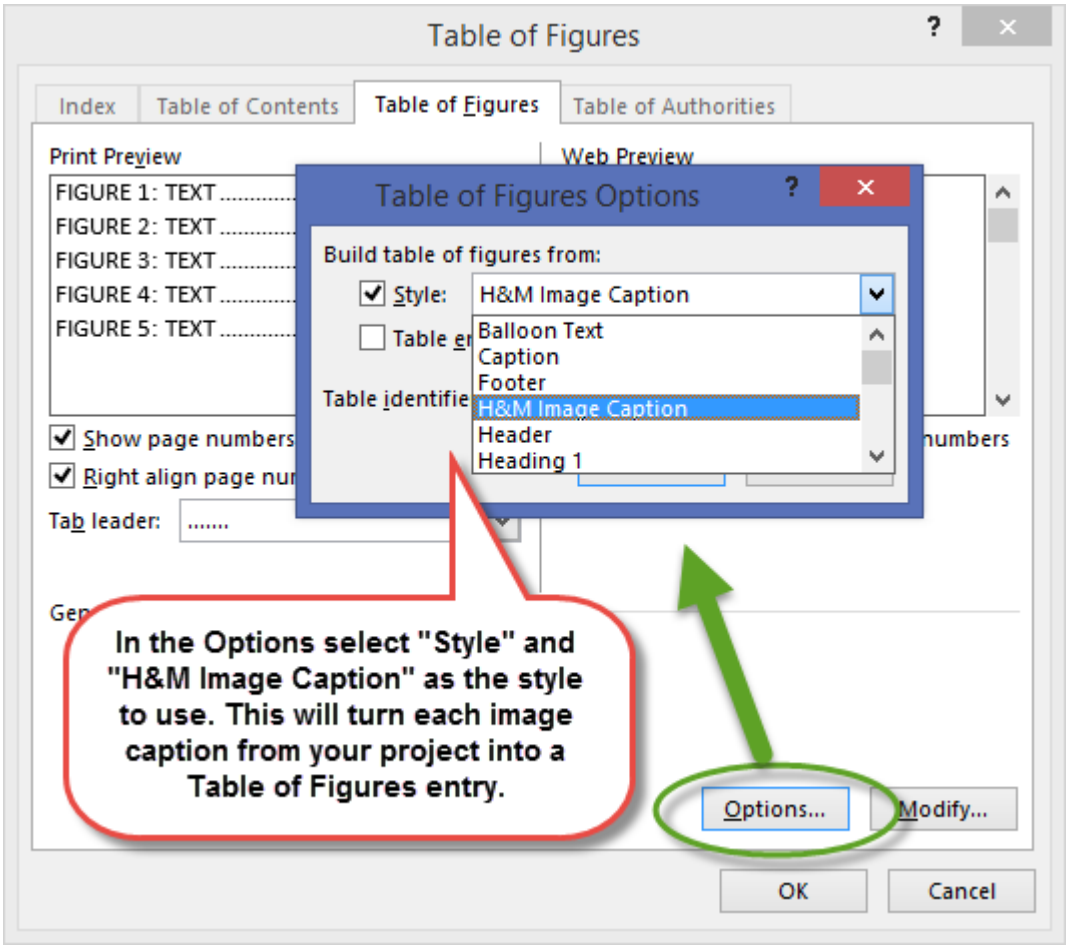
1. Create a page in the DOCX template for the Table of Figures. There is no required location, you can place it before or after the Topics Section 684 as you please.
2. If you want to include an entry for the Table of Figures in the TOC, create a header using a style that you have included as a level 1 item in the Table of Contents 686 field.
3. Click in the position where you want the Table of Figures to appear.
4. If your document language is set to anything other than English you need to set the language for the paragraph that will contain the Table of Figures field to *English (United States)*. If you don't do this Word will not be able to find the figure number references in the captions in the Help+Manual text.

This will **not** affect the language of the label text in the generated Table of Figures. For example, if the label text for the figures in your project are in German or French, they will still appear in German or French in the generated table with this setting!



5. Then select the **References** tab in Word and click on **Insert Table of Figures** in the Captions section.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Word Table of Figures dialog

6. Select the *Options...* item in the Word Table of Figures dialog and then select Style as the source for the Table of Figures. (This will only be present if you use one of the existing Help+Manual DOCX templates as your starting point.) Then select *H+M Image Caption* as the style to use. You can configure everything else as you please, of course. Consult the Word documentation for further details.

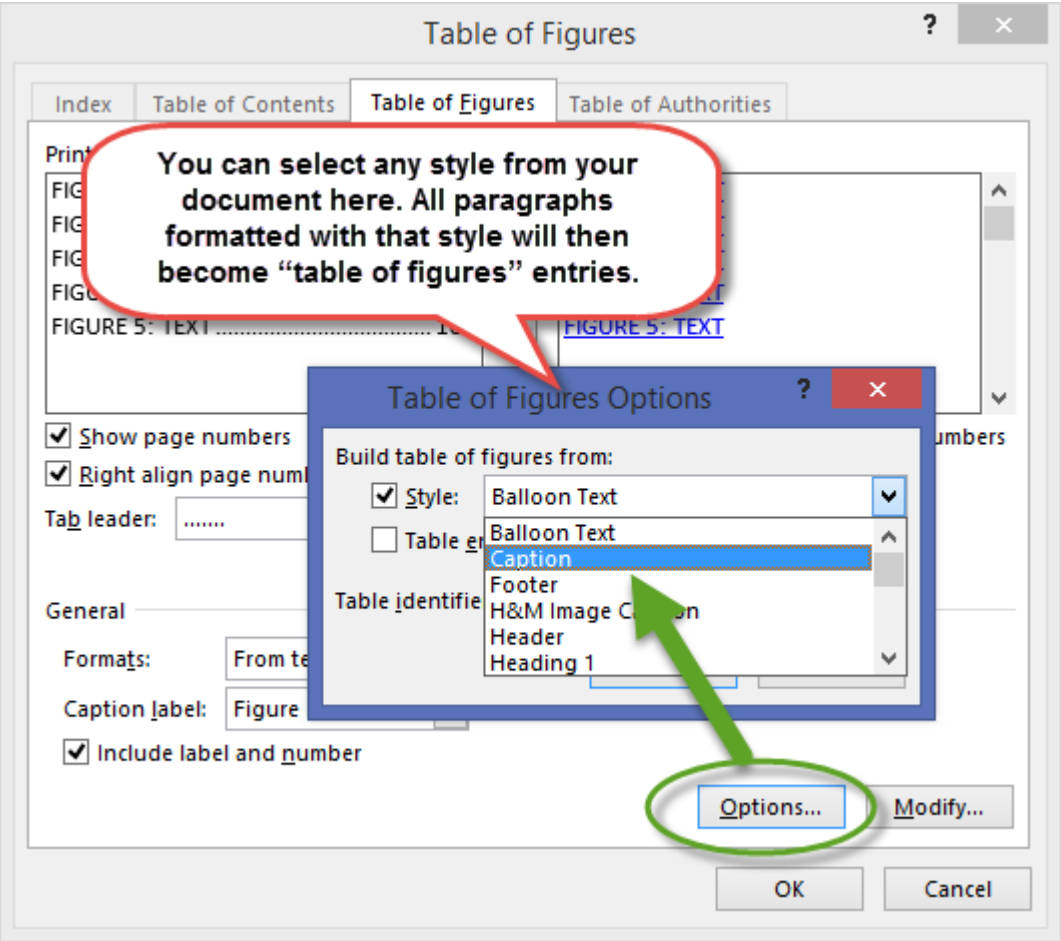
Adding a Table of Figures or a Table of Tables after publishing

Since a table of figures is a normal Word element it is quite possible to add one after you have published your DOCX file. You just add it in Word in the same way that you would in any other Word document.

Doing this can have an advantage, because it allows you to use a style to select the text for the table of figures instead of the image captions. When you define the table of figures in your template you can't use a style because the styles from your project are not present there.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Since all paragraphs formatted with the selected style will become your "table of figures "entries you can use this for making tables of other items as well. For example, you can create a table of tables by creating captions for your tables formatted with a specific style. You then add a table of figures in Word after generating the final Word DOCX document, select the style used for your table captions and generate your table of tables.



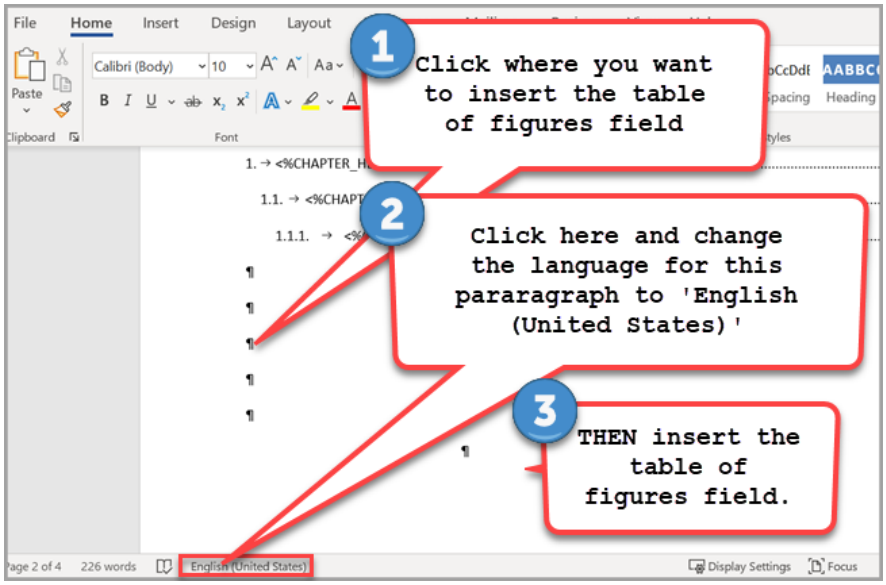
The Word table of figures dialog

Set the language of the insertion paragraph to 'English (United States)'

If your document language is set to anything other than English you need to set the language for the paragraph that will contain the Table of Figures field to *English (United States)*. If you don't do this Word will not be able to find the figure number references in the captions in the Help+Manual text.

This will **not** affect the language of the label text in the generated Table of Figures. For example, if the label text for the figures in your project are in German or French, they will still appear in German or French in the generated table with this setting!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Page layout, page numbering, headers and footers etc.

All these items are normal Word components. Set them up as you would in a normal Word document. Enter Help+Manual variables anywhere you like, using Word comment fields 694 to contain the variables.

Use Word's page number variables, not Help+Manual's!

6.2.5.5 Additional pages, variables, Word fields

You can add any number of additional pages to your DOCX template. They will be included in your published DOCX documents together with the content from your project. You can customize these pages automatically on publishing by including Help+Manual's global variables and your own user-defined variables anywhere in the template.

How to create additional pages

You can add additional pages and content anywhere in the template by creating pages in Word, just as you would for any normal Word document. Just don't add additional content to the special Topics Source section 683.

Where your additional pages will be inserted in the output

The pages that come after the Topics Source section will come after all the topics in your project. The pages that come before the Topics Source section will come before all the topics in your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using Help+Manual variables in your template

You can use Help+Manual variables anywhere in DOCX templates. They will be resolved to their current values when you publish your project to DOCX with the template.

You must enter variables as Word fields

Unlike PDF templates, you cannot just type the variable name directly into the text of your content in a DOCX template. You must enter Help+Manual variables in Word fields. See Creating variable fields in Word 694 for instructions.

Special DOCX template variables:

There are 11 special variables used in DOCX templates. They are all only used in the Topics Source section 683. These variables must also all be entered in Word comment fields 694, otherwise they will not work correctly.

- **The <%CHAPTER_HEADING1%> ... <%CHAPTER_HEADING10%> variables**
  These are used for the chapter heading items in the Topic Source section. The table of contents item gets the chapter headings from the chapter heading items automatically. You don't need to add variables for this to the table of contents item.
- **The <%TOPIC_TEXT%> variable**
  This is used in the Topics Source section as the placeholder that inserts the content from your project topics into the template to generate the finished DOCX file. It must be entered in a comment filed.

Page layout, page numbering, headers and footers etc.

All these items are normal Word components. Set them up as you would in a normal Word document. Enter Help+Manual variables anywhere you like, using Word comment fields 694 to contain the variables.

Use Word's page number variables, not Help+Manual's!

6.2.5.6 Creating variable fields in Word

You can't just type in Help+Manual variables as plain text as you can in a PDF template. To use Help+Manual variables in your Word DOCX templates you need to enter the variable in a Word field.

You can enter Help+Manual variables in any Word fields that get resolved to text. Help+Manual will find them and replace them with the variable value when you publish with the DOCX template. However, there are a two field types that you will probably find most useful: Comment fields and document properties.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Comment fields

These fields are best for inserting variables inside paragraphs or other items. Don't confuse them with the Word comments feature! That is for peer review and is completely different – variables entered in Word comments won't work.

To enter a comment field with a Help+Manual variable in Word:

1. Open the DOCX template in Word and click in the place where you want to insert the variable.
2. Select the **Insert** tab in Word, then in the **Text** group select **Quick Parts** > **Field** to open the Field dialog.
3. Select *Comments* in the **Field names:** box, then type in the Help+Manual variable in the **New comment:** box, using the format **<%VARIABLE_NAME%>**.

Document properties fields

You can see examples of these fields in some of the standard DOCX templates included with Help+Manual. They are used for the Title, Author, Year, Abstract and Company Information items displayed on the cover page, for example.

To enter a document properties field with a Help+Manual variable in Word:

1. Open the DOCX template in Word and click in the place where you want to insert the variable.
2. Select the **Insert** tab in Word, then in the **Text** group select **Quick Parts** > **Document Property** and then the property you want to insert.
3. This inserts the property item as a box on the page containing a field. Then type in the Help+Manual variable in the empty field, using the format **<%VARIABLE_NAME%>**.

6.2.5.7 About the Word Macros

When you publish your project to Word and open the DOCX file for the first time in Word, you will see a security warning with a button saying "Enable Content". Clicking on this will automatically generate the Table of Contents and Keyword Index in your project, and any table of figures and other Word fields if they are present.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

There are no macros in your DOCX file!

This feature is only a convenience to allow you to quickly generate the TOC and index the first time you open your Word file. There are no macros stored in the DOCX file itself. They are stored in a separate file called **`$helpman-word-helper-macros.dotm`**, that is generated together with the Word file. The macro warning you see comes from this helper document.

Distributing your DOCX without macros

You can easily distribute your finished DOCX file without macros: Just distribute it on its own, without the **`.dotm`** helper file. This will not trigger any warnings, because the generated DOCX is entirely static, without any macros.

Generating the TOC and index without the macros

Since the macros are only a convenience it is easy to generate the TOC and keyword index without them. If you don't want to use the macros button or your company security restrictions don't permit it, just ignore it. Then in the Word document press **Ctrl+A** to select the entire document, followed by **F9** to update all the fields and generate your elements. Then the document is ready to go.

6.2.6 eWriter Help

An eWriter Help file is WebHelp stored in a single file. It is a modern alternative to the obsolete CHM help format for documenting software applications on Windows, and can now also be used for application help on MacOS. The eWriter format combines the benefits of CHM and WebHelp, eliminating many disadvantages of both and providing unique security features. It uses the operating system's own HTML rendering engine to display the content, with full support for CSS3, HTML5, JavaScript and media.

Deploying eWriter Help for software documentation

If you are going to deploy eWriter Help files for your own software documentation you need to install the eViewer app along with your application and consider some issues regarding making your calls to your files and choosing the best file extensions. Please see EWriter for Software Help 731 for details on this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The eViewer viewer apps

On Windows 10 and 11, users are automatically prompted to get the eViewer app from the Windows Store when they try to open an **.ewriter** file. Downloadable installers for 32-bit and 64-bit versions are also available. See The eWriter Viewer Apps 719 for details.

How eWriter Help works

An eWriter Help file is essentially a single-file package for WebHelp with added support for context-sensitive help and security. The content of an eWriter Help file is normal WebHelp, with full support for Help+Manual's WebHelp skins. This means that eWriter has the same formatting, scripting and layout capabilities as WebHelp, and is just as skinnable. You can choose a WebHelp skin for it, in the same way as you would for WebHelp, or dedicated eWriter skins if you are using the Premium Pack add-on.

All the layout is the same as in WebHelp, as defined in the WebHelp skin. This includes the table of contents, keyword index, search and so on.

The standalone eWriter Creator application

In addition to the integrated eWriter support in Help+Manual we have also produced a standalone eWriter Creator application that you can use to package any folder of HTML files into an eWriter Help file or a CHM file.

Note that all the navigation within eBooks packaged with the standalone application must be included in your HTML source! The eWriter viewer does not and cannot add things like a table of contents or Next/Previous navigation links.

You can get eWriter Creator from the eWriter web page.

6.2.6.1 Changes in the new version

If you have used eWriter in earlier versions of Help+Manual, please check the following list of changes for the Windows version of eWriter Help and the eViewer application. The configuration options have been simplified and the syntax for making context help calls to your eWriter Help files has been modified for consistency across the Windows and MacOS versions.

If you are new to eWriter you can skip this page. All the information you need is in the rest of the chapter.

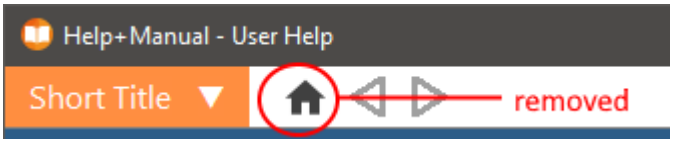
What's new in the Windows version

Note that your old syntax for making calls to your eWriter Help files is still supported. However, we recommend switching to the new syntax for maximum future compatibility.

- New Open Menu 727

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- New URL-style command line interface 739
- Old context help syntax: still supported
- The viewer dimensions and position presets are deprecated (see below)
- The toolbar has updated icons and is visible by default
- The home button on the toolbar has been removed



- The eViewer application now comes with a choice of 6 user interfaceI languages 729 and you can edit the text strings for additional languages.

Deprecated features in the Windows version

- **Save last position to registry**
  Previous versions of eViewer had a configurable option in Help+Manual to save the last window position and size to the Windows registry. The window position was then stored for each eWriter Help file. The new version automatically saves the last window position and size 728 set by the user. The values are stored globally for all **`.ewriter`** files and individually for each eWriter **`.exe`** file, if you use that format.

  If you distribute your own copy of eViewer with your software, the stored window position affects your copy only, not any other installations of eViewer on the same computer.

  You can overwrite the remembered window position with the defpos 745 command line parameter. This parameter affects the first call to an **`.ewriter`** file only. Subsequent calls (if the **`.ewriter`** file has already been opened) will not change the window position at runtime.
- **Kiosk mode**
  Previous versions of eViewer had a configurable project option in Help+Manual to make the resulting **`.ewriter`** file switch to kiosk mode (a borderless full-screen display mode) when it was opened. The new version of eViewer ignores this option in **`.ewriter`** files. If you wish to use kiosk mode you must now use the command line interface 739 and the defpos 745 parameter.
- **Window width and height**
  You can now only specify the initial starting dimensions for eViewer, which will only be used the very first time a help file is opened. After that, the last dimensions used by the user are stored and used the next time the help is opened. You can overwrite the remembered window position with the defpos 745 command line parameter.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **Maximized eViewer window**
  This is no longer available as a project option in Help+Manual. The eViewer window will now only open maximized if it was maximized the last time the user closed it.
- **Window is centered on screen**
  This too is no longer available as a project option in Help+Manual. The eViewer window position now depends on the position it was in the last time the user closed it.
- **Window is sizable**
  The eViewer window is now always sizable, except when kiosk mode is activated via the command line.al

6.2.6.2 Compared to CHM and WebHelp

As an alternative to CHM

Help+Manual's eWriter format is a fully viable replacement for the obsolete CHM format for software help. On Windows 10 and 11 users are automatically prompted to get the eViewer viewer app from the Microsoft Store when they open an `.ewriter` file. Developers just need to include the single-file eViewer application with their application and documentation.

As an alternative to WebHelp

EWriter, which is really local WebHelp in a single file, can be a good alternative to WebHelp for developers who need to install their documentation together with their applications. WebHelp can be preferable when it can be installed on your Internet or intranet web server. Then you can update your documentation at any time without having to redistribute to all your users.

EWriter vs. CHM vs. WebHelp — Feature for Feature

Feature	EWriter	CHM	WebHelp
Compact compressed single file format	Yes	Yes	No, all HTML, CSS, JS and graphics files separate
TOC, Keyword Index, Full Text Search	Yes	Yes	Yes
Context-sensitive help for desktop applications	Yes	Yes	Yes, via regular browser URLs

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Feature	EWriter	CHM	WebHelp
Local deployment without a web server	Yes	Yes	No, web server required
Full customization / scripting of entire user interface	Yes	No, topic pane only Fixed, dated design	Yes
Support for high-resolution displays	Yes	No, tiny icons	Yes
Support for Unicode	Yes	No, obsolete double-byte text encoding	Yes
Viewable without additional software	Yes, as standalone EXE. Or with auto-installing viewer app.	Yes, viewer included in Windows	Yes, web browser
Windows API	No	Yes	No
Command line interface	Yes, single-instance help window	Yes	No, only URLs
Cross platform	Windows and MacOS	No, blocked by Windows	Yes, any platform
All calls open in same window	Yes	Yes	No, each call from an app opens a new browser tab or window
Works on network drives	Yes	No	Yes (web server)
Deploy on Internet	No	No	Yes

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Feature	EWriter	CHM	WebHelp
Update without redistributing	No	No	Yes

6.2.6.3 Links & Context Help

On Windows, eWriter Help is the modern alternative to the obsolete CHM format for local application help. It offers full support for context-sensitive help and file links and combines the benefits of CHM and WebHelp while eliminating many of the disadvantages of both. On MacOS eWriter provides an software help format that is not otherwise available in this integrated form.

This topic provides a quick overview of the link options. For full details see the EWriter for Software Help 731 chapter.

Viewer installation for eWriter as software documentation

When you are using eWriter as software documentation to replace CHM files you need to know where the viewer is so that you can make your calls to it reliably. We recommend installing the standard version of the viewer for this together with your software. See EWriter for Software Help 731 for details.

Each book is opened in a separate instance of the eViewer app

Each book you open has one and only one instance. If you make another call to the same book it will apply to the open instance. You can have multiple books open at the same time. To address the individual books you include the name of the book in your call along with the parameters, as shown below.

Choosing the right file extension for your eWriter files

Use the *.ewriter* file extension for books distributed on their own

You need to use the **`.ewriter`** extension for eWriter files that are going to be distributed on their own. It is registered with the Windows Store, and when a Windows 10 user who does not have the viewer opens an **`.ewriter`** file they will be prompted to install the viewer from the Windows store. Users on older versions of Windows can download the Win32 installer from our eWriter page, which will also register the **`.ewriter`** extension.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use your own file extension for eWriter used for software documentation

When you are using eWriter for software documentation you want to install the Win32 version of eViewer together with your software and make your calls to it directly. You also don't want to conflict with any other version of the viewer that your user may have installed, so in this case you don't want to use the **.ewriter** extension. Instead, see one of your own.

See URL-style command syntax 739 for full details on this.

EWriter context help links and command line interface

Making calls to eWriter help files from your applications to display topics is very simple. On Windows, you basically just need to call the viewer app with a `shellExecute()` or equivalent function in your programming language, along with the name of the topic file to be viewed and an optional anchor to scroll to.

File extensions of your topic files

The HTML topic files inside eWriter Help can have either the **.htm** or **.html** extension, based on your settings for the topic file extension in your project in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**. However, only these two extensions are permitted. If you set a different extension in your project (for example **.php** or **.asp**), the standard **.htm** extension will be used.

You need to use the correct extension in your context help calls, otherwise the topics will not be found.

Context calls syntax

The syntax for context calls to eWriter Help has been changed with the introduction of the new MacOS eViewer and the updated Windows eViewer. If you have used eWriter for application help in the past the calls with the old syntax in your existing projects will still work. However, we strongly recommend switching to the new integrated URL-style syntax from now on.

Please refer to the eWriter for Software Help 731 chapter for full details and instructions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Basic New Syntax:

"<viewer app>" "ewriter://<ewriter file>?loadpage=<page in the help>"

Note that when you are using integrated EXE eWriter Help files, the viewer app is the help file itself, so it calls itself when using the new syntax.

Basic Old Syntax (not supported for MacOS):

"<viewer app>" "<page in the help>"

URL examples eViewer app:

"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=index.html"
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm#anchor2"
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=introduction.html?anchor=anchor2 **(Premium Pack)**"

URL examples Windows EXE eWriter file:

"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=index.html"
"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm#anchor2"
"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=introduction.html?anchor=anchor2" **(Premium Pack)**

URL parameters and JavaScript

If your HTML pages include scripts that can evaluate URL parameters (supported in some Premium Pack skins, for example) you can also include parameters to be parsed by your script, like this:

"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?mysetting=xyz&setting2=12"

The HTML location object is fully supported for interpreting URLs you pass to your pages like this. This means you can extract the query portion of the script with `document.location.search`, the hash portion (anchor) with `document.location.hash` and so on.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Linking between eWriter files

If you have multiple eWriter help files installed on your user's computer you may sometimes want to link between them. This will normally only apply when you are using eWriter for software documentation 731.

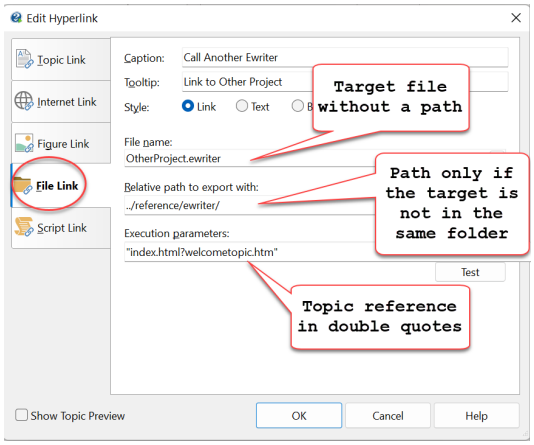
There are several methods you can use for linking between eWriter files. You must always use the **File Link** option for this, not the Internet Link!

Linking between eWriter files when the file association is known

You can use a simple method if you are sure that the **.ewriter** extension has been associated with the eViewer application, or if you are using your own extension that you have registered as part of your installation on the user's computer. Then you just need to reference the eWriter file and the topic parameters.

This also works when you have changed the file extension and eViewer name:

Note that this also works if you are using eWriter for software documentation and you have changed both the file extension and the name of your copy of the eViewer application. You just need to link to another eWriter file that has the same extension as the eWriter file containing the link.



File name: The name of the eWriter file you want to link to **without** any path information. Just the file name. You must use the extension that has been registered to the eViewer application on the user's computer. This will be **.ewriter** if you are sure that has been registered, or your own custom extension if you are installing eViewer as part of your software installation and registering the extension yourself.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Relative path: Only include the path to the file here if the target file is not in the same folder as the file containing the link. Despite the name, you can use either a relative or an absolute path.

Important: No quotes around this path, even if it includes spaces!

Execution parameters: The normal WebHelp reference to the topic you want to display in the target file. The syntax depends on the skin type you are using. This parameter **must** be enclosed in double quotes.

Standard Help+Manual skins and older Premium Pack skins:

```
"index.html?topic.html"
```

Premium Pack V3 skins:

```
"topic.html"
```

Topic file extensions

The topic file extension can be **`.htm`** or **`.html`**, depending on what you have set in your project. Other extensions are not allowed for eWriter topics.

Anchors and other parameter extensions

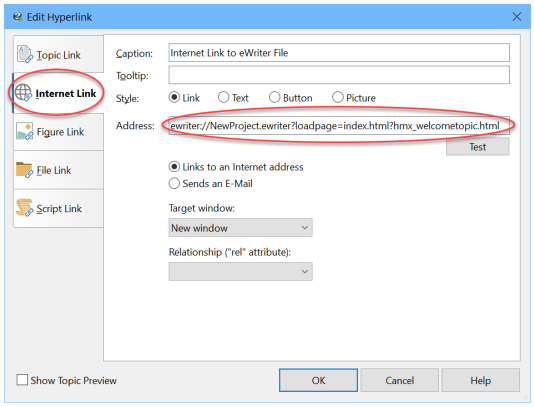
Add these in the execution parameters, inside the double quotes, exactly as you would in WebHelp.

Using an Internet link instead of a File link (required for MacOS)

You can also use an Internet link to link between eWriter Help files, but then you have to use the new syntax with the **`ewriter://`** prefix. This is also required if you are using eWriter Help on MacOS.

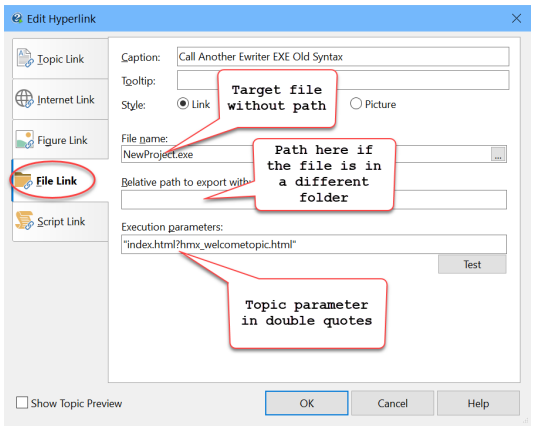
`ewriter://NewProject.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?topic_name.html`

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Linking between files when you are using the integrated viewer in EXE eWriter books

When you create combined book and viewer files with the EXE extension you always just enter the EXE file as the file to link to and the topic to open as the parameters.



File name: The name of the eWriter EXE file you want to link to **without** any path information. Just the file name.

Relative path: Only include the path to the file here if the target file is not in the same folder as the file containing the link. Despite the name, you can use either a relative or an absolute path.

Important: No quotes around this path, even if it includes spaces!

Execution parameters: The normal WebHelp reference to the topic you want to display in the target file. The syntax depends on the skin type you are using. This parameter **must** be enclosed in double quotes.

Standard Help+Manual skins and older Premium Pack skins:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
"index.html?topic.html"
```

Premium Pack V3 skins:

```
"topic.html"
```

Topic file extensions

The topic file extension can be **.htm** or **.html**, depending on what you have set in your project. Other extensions are not allowed for eWriter topics.

Anchors and other parameter extensions

Add these in the execution parameters, inside the double quotes, exactly as you would in WebHelp.

Calls to EXE eWriter files with the integrated viewer

You can still create the original EXE eWriter files with an integrated viewer if you wish, although we strongly recommend using the separate viewer. You just need to change the output file extension to **.exe** in the Publish screen before publishing. Help+Manual identifies this automatically and then creates an EXE eWriter Help file with an integrated viewer.

Not supported on MacOS

Note that EXE eWriter Help is a Windows format and cannot be used on MacOS. On Macs, you must use the eViewer app and **.ewriter** data files.

Context calls syntax

The calling syntax is the same as with the external viewer, except you call the EXE eWriter Help file instead of the viewer, followed by the parameters. You can use both the old and the new syntax for this.

Old syntax:

```
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?introduction.htm"
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?this_page.htm#anchor"
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?anotherpage.htm"
```

New syntax:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you use the new syntax, you must also include the name of the EXE eWriter Help file after the ewriter:// protocol prefix, so that the file is calling itself:

```
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
introduction.htm"
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
this_page.htm#anchor"
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
anotherpage.htm"
```

Always include the page parameters in quotes, even if there are no spaces. Otherwise you will get Windows errors caused by some of the characters that need to be used.

Links to executable files

If you're used to producing CHM files and WebHelp you don't even think about opening executable EXE program files from your documentation. But with eWriter Help, you can! This is possible both from normal links in topics and from TOC entries.

RESTRICTION: Not supported in the Windows Store version of the viewer!

Windows Store apps are not permitted to invoke executable files from within the program. Because of this, the functions described below are not available in the Windows Store version of the viewer app. However, you can use them if you are installing the standard Windows eViewer app together with your software. See EWriter for Software Help 731 for details.

Current directory status when linking to executable files

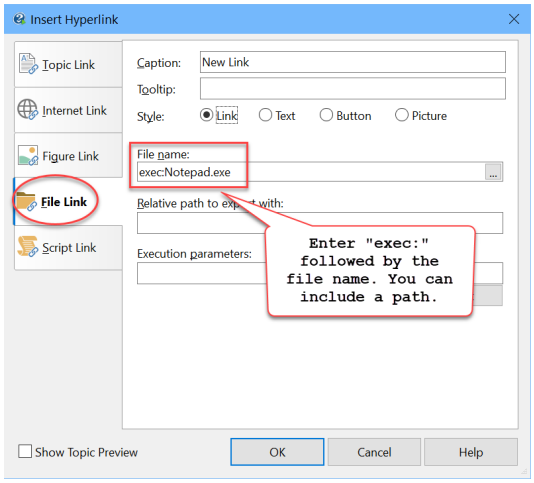
When executing external files, the eWriter viewer explicitly sets the current directory to prevent possible failure of file links using a relative path.

File links to executables in topics

Just create a normal file link to the EXE file and add **exec:** directly before the file name, like this:

```
exec:notepad.exe
exec:../demo_program/widget_maker.exe
```

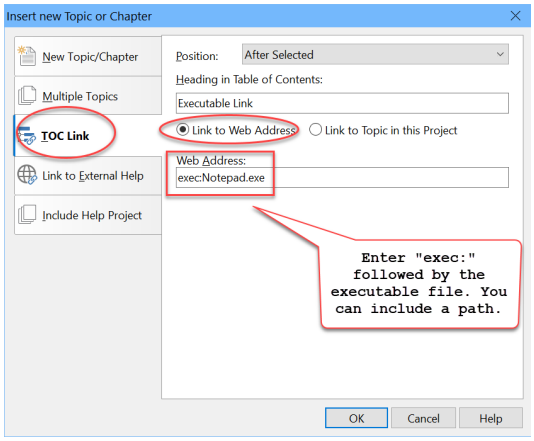

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Links to executables in the TOC

You can also create links to executable files in the TOC of an eWriter Help file. Create a new topic entry and choose the **TOC Link** option, and then *Link to Web Address*. Then enter the target in the *Web Address:* field, using same **`exec:filename.exe`** format as above. Here too, you can include a relative path if necessary.

```
exec:notepad.exe
exec:../demo_program/widget_maker.exe
```



6.2.6.4 Project and viewer configuration

Configuring your project content

eWriter Help is essentially the same as WebHelp. There are just a couple of considerations 710 you need to bear in mind when targeting this format.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Viewer configuration

Each eWriter Help file contains the information for custom configuration of the viewer. These settings are found in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eWriter Help**. There are separate sections for General Settings 711 and the App Menus 714.

6.2.6.4.1 Project content

General information

eWriter Help is regular WebHelp packaged in a single file and displayed with special viewer app. Any layout that works in WebHelp should work in eWriter Help. You can use the same skins, or dedicated eWriter skins from the Premium Pack add-on.

WebHelp features that are unavailable in eWriter

There are some WebHelp features you can't use in eWriter, mainly because there is no web server.

- **PHP and ASP search**
  You can only use the JavaScript search platform in the search options. There is no web server, and thus there can be no PHP or ASP support.
- **External windows**
  Don't try to open external windows with JavaScript code in eWriter Help.

File extensions of your topic files

The HTML topic files inside eWriter Help can have either the **.htm** or **.html** extension, based on your settings for the topic file extension in your project in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**. However, only these two extensions are permitted. If you set a different extension in your project (for example **.php** or **.asp**), the standard **.htm** extension will be used.

Links to other web pages

It is best to configure the eWriter viewer 711 to open any links to Web pages in the user's default browser instead of in the viewer. There are no browser tabs in the eWriter viewer. If you don't set the default browser option, links to other web pages that are set to open in a new window will replace your WebHelp interface.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.2.6.4.2 General Settings

The settings for the appearance and features of the viewer app are stored in each eWriter Help file. You configure them in your project.

Look in the Project Explorer on the left while your project is open and navigate down to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eWriter Help**. There are two tabs of settings, **Visual Appearance** and **Menus and Translation**. See the next topic for the settings in the second tab.

The Visual Appearance and Security Settings

The settings in this section control the appearance of the eWriter Help viewer, an icon and logo and some security options

Zoom +/- Keys
In your finished eWriter Help file, pressing the CTRL+[Plus] and CTRL+[Minus] keys will zoom the eViewer display in and out

Window title

The eViewer window title displays the title of the help file/project. This is a static display that does not change with the current topic. The previous per-topic display is no longer supported. The behavior now matches other formats, including CHM, PDF and so on, which all have static window titles.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Options

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

eViewer Window:

These settings define the size of the eWriter viewer window when the user first opens it. Once the user has adjusted the size this setting is ignored. You can also set the size and the position of the window on the first call from your software with the defpos command 701 in your call to the viewer. This command will be ignored if you use it in subsequent calls once the viewer has been opened.

The dimensions use virtual pixels that adapt automatically to the resolution of the user's monitor.

Custom Icon (Windows only):

Choose an **.ico** format icon file to be displayed for your help file in Windows Explorer. This setting is ignored on the MacOS version.

Logo:

Optional logo image with an optional URL to a web page. This is displayed in the title bar of the eViewer on the right, next to the Print icon.

Copy and print options:

Restrict the ability of the user to copy or print content.

Important – copy/print restriction requires a custom context menu!

In order to be able to restrict copying and printing you must activate a custom context menu 1480 in the General Settings page. If you don't do this the embedded browser engine provides copying and printing facilities that cannot be disabled by the eWriter viewer.

Require Admin mode:

Windows EXE files only

The user can only view the help file from an Administrator Windows account. This is only for integrated EXE eWriter Help files with the viewer and the book in a single file.

Open external links in default browser:

When this is selected, links to external web pages open in the user's default web browser.

This is recommended, because otherwise the external pages will open in the viewer, replacing the current help entirely. Also, the embedded browser may not provide desirable functionality for normal web pages that often need to navigate elsewhere.

Password:

Password required to open the help file and text

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.2.6.4.3 App Menus

The settings for the appearance and features of the viewer app are stored in each eWriter Help file. You configure them in your project.

Look in the Project Explorer on the left while your project is open and navigate down to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eWriter Help**. There are two tabs of settings, **Visual Appearance** and **Menus and Translation**. See the previous topic for the settings in the first tab.

Menus and Translation Settings

The functions in this tab allow you to enable and customize the two types of menus that can be displayed in the eViewer: An application menu to be displayed at the top left corner of the viewer, and a context menu to be displayed when the user right-clicks in a topic page.

Zoom +/- Keys
In your finished eWriter Help file pressing the CTRL+[Plus] and CTRL+[Minus] keys will zoom the eViewer display in and out

Activating and deactivating menus

Select the check boxes above the menu types to include or exclude the menus from your Help file.

Changes since the previous version

Application menu and context (right-click) menu

Application Menu

This is the menu accessed in the top left corner of the eWriter viewer window. The title is always displayed, so you need to configure it even when you turn the menu itself off. When the eViewer is opened on its own without an eWriter Help file, it displays "**eViewer**".

No menu entries: Application menu button is displayed without an arrow and with the short title of the project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Menu entries:	Menu button includes a drop-down arrow for opening the menu.
Command line:	The contents of the menu can be affected by command line switches if you are calling eWriter Help from your application. See EWriter for Software Help 731 for full details.

Context menu (required for disabling copying and printing!)

This is the menu displayed when the user right-clicks in an eWriter book. If you don't activate this the right-click menu of the embedded web browser engine is used.

Disabling copying and printing:
Note that you can only disable copying and printing (see General Settings 1477) if the custom context menu is enabled, because this replaces the browser's context menu. The embedded browser's context menu automatically supports copying and printing and this cannot be disabled by the eWriter viewer if it has not been replaced by a custom context menu.

Configuring and customizing menus

- **Existing menu items:** Click in the demo menu to select an item or position in the menu. Then click on the entry type on the right and configure it with the options displayed.
- **New items:** Click in the menu where you want to insert the item and select Add or Insert. Then define the menu type and configure it.
- **Moving items:** Select the item and use the four move buttons to move it around. The < and > buttons are only active for items below submenu items.
- **Deleting and resetting:** The **Delete** button removes the current item. The Reset button restores all menus to the default settings, deleting any custom menus.

Entry types

Command	A number of standard commands supported by the viewer. They include commands for navigation, selecting and copying text, printing pages and closing the viewer. **The :home command is no longer available** This command is deprecated in the new version of eViewer and if you add it, or if it is already configured from an earlier version, it will not be displayed in your eWriter Help file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Page link	A link to a topic page in your help file. You can select the page from a drop-down list of all the pages in your source folder. The field can also be edited manually. This enables you to use this feature when compiling a modular project made up of multiple projects to eWriter. Then you just need to manually enter the topic ID of the topic you want to link to in any of the projects that are going to be published to the eWriter book.
Web link	A link to an external web page. • Enter the full URL, including the **`http://`** or **`https://`** prefix. • Pages will open in the Help file viewer or the user's default browser, depending on the setting in the General Settings screen.
Execute external file:	Creates an entry that runs a program or opens an external document. Enter the name and path to the file and any additional execution parameters you wish to use.
Sub-menus and dividers:	These entries create sub-menu headings and dividers to organize your menus. After creating a sub-menu you can move other entries into the sub-menu with the four move buttons (up / down / left / right).
Caption:	The captions displayed in the menus. Add a an ampersand (&) character before the letter that you want to be active for the keyboard shortcut for the menu option.

6.2.6.5 Publishing eWriter Help

This topic covers the basic procedure for generating eWriter Help files. See the main Publishing 613 sections for general publishing instructions.

Formatting eWriter Help

The eWriter Help format is WebHelp packaged in a single file. See the formatting sections in the WebHelp chapter 655 for details on how to skin and format your content. Note that if you are using Premium Pack skins you should choose the dedicated eWriter skins instead of the WebHelp skins.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Choice of two eWriter Help formats

You can generate eWriter Help as a data-only file, or as a standalone EXE file with an integrated viewer. The EXE version is for Windows only. The data version can be used on both Windows and MacOS with the separate eViewer viewer application.

Data eWriter help files

This is now the preferred format. The eViewer application is easily available for both Windows and MacOS and the data version can be distributed easily without any security concerns, even by email. Windows 10 and 11 users who don't have the viewer are automatically prompted to install the Windows Store eWriter Viewer when they try to open an **`.ewriter`** book file.

To generate a data version you just give your output file the standard **`.ewriter`** extension, or a custom extension if you are using eWriter Help for your software documentation 731.

EXE eWriter with viewer and help in a single file

This format is practical because all you need is a single file that the user opens on Windows with a regular double-click. You can also use it for software documentation as it includes full support for context help calls. However, it works on Windows only and is difficult to distribute because users will be warned about the dangers of downloading EXE files. You also need to digitally sign the EXE files with your own code signing certificate to distribute them safely.

To generate the EXE version, just change the extension of the output file to **`.exe`** in the **Publish** screen and Help+Manual will generate an EXE eWriter Help file. However, the new method with the universal standalone viewer is almost always preferable.

Procedure

1. Open and select your project in Help+Manual. Then select **Publish** in the **Project** tab, then click on *Publish Format* at the top of the page and select *eWriter Help*.
2. Choose an output folder and file name for your eWriter Help file in the *Output File:* field. The extension you give your output file determines the type of eWriter Help file that will be generated:
   a. **Data eWriter Help file:** Use the standard **`.ewriter`** extension or your own custom extension for your software documentation 731.
   b. **Standalone EXE eWriter Help file:** Use the **`.exe`** extension to generate a standalone eWriter Help file with an integrated viewer. This only works on Windows.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Click on the **Select Skin** bar and select a WebHelp skin. If you are selecting an edited skin for the first time you will need to click on the **Open Skin** option at the top of the menu displayed to navigate to the skin file and select it.
4. Look in the **Include Options** box and make sure that both *WebHelp* and *eBook* are selected. Since eWriter combines aspects of both these formats, both these options need to be active.
5. Select **Publish Now!** at the top right to generate the eWriter Help file.

6.2.6.6 Distributing eWriter Help

You have the following options for distributing eWriter Help and making sure that your readers and users have the necessary viewer.

If you are using eWriter Help for application documentation

In this case you need to install the eViewer application along with your own application and eWriter Help documentation files. Alternatively, you can also use standalone EXE eWriter files on Windows that combine the viewer and the help in a single file. In both cases, see EWriter for Software Help 731 for instructions.

Distributing eWriter Help files for users to read directly

If you are not going to be calling your eWriter documentation from your own software, you need to make sure that your users will be able to view it. There are several ways to achieve this:

Use the *.ewriter* extension for Windows users

This is the best option. You can distribute the files without security issues, even by email, and Windows 10 and 11 users will be automatically prompted to install eViewer from the Windows Store if they don't already have it. Once installed, all **`.ewriter`** files will automatically open in the viewer.

Provide links to the installers for MacOS and Windows

MacOS users always need to install the app, and some Windows users may not want to use the Windows Store. You need to direct these users to the installer downloads on the eWriter web page:

https://www.helpandmanual.com/ewriter/

Here too, you need to create eWriter Help files with the standard .ewriter extension so that they open automatically in eViewer.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Standalone EXE eWriter Help files for Windows

The standalone EXE format combining the viewer and the documentation in a single file is convenient, because it is all the user needs. However, it only works on Windows and there are serious distribution problems. You cannot send files like this by email, and many users will mistrust EXE files. Also, you need to sign the file with a code-signing certificate, otherwise the user will have to click away a scary Windows message saying that it might be malware.

Sending eWriter Help files by email

This is not a problem with data eWriter Help files. You can just mail **`.ewriter`** files as regular attachments.The books are compact, neutral, compressed data packages that should not raise any red flags in AV and mail server filters, including those that examine the contents of zips and other archives.

Distributing eWriter EXE help files

The EXE books are the original all-in-one option that combine the viewer and the book in a single file. This is not really very practical nowadays, because downloading EXE files is almost always problematic. It also increases the size of every eBook by around 4 megabytes. Even so, there may still be some situations in which you prefer to distribute your eWriter books in this format. For example, it is quite possible to use EXE eBooks as integrated help files for software, as they support the same context references from your application as the separate viewer application.

EXE eWriter Help files should be signed

If you do decide to distribute EXE eBooks you must sign them digitally yourself. Our viewer is signed digitally by us, but as soon as you combine it with your documentation data, the checksum of the file changes and the signature is no longer valid. You need a code signing certificate, which you will already have anyway if your are a software developer.

6.2.6.7 The eViewer Apps

If you are not going to use the standalone EXE format, which is Windows-only and no longer recommended, you need the eViewer app for displaying eWriter Help. This is available in three different versions for Windows and one version for MacOS.

Available eViewer versions

You can find the eWriter web page for all downloads here:
https://www.helpandmanual.com/ewriter/

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

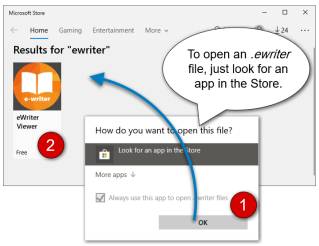
Windows Store app:

Windows 10 and 11 users are prompted to download this when they open an eWriter Help file with the **`.ewriter`** extension. This is recommended for eWriter files that you distribute directly for the users to read on their computers.

Once the Windows Store app is installed, **`.ewriter`** files open with it automatically.

Windows Store location:

https://www.microsoft.com/de-at/p/ewriter-viewer/9mzd18c6288w



Prompt to download the Store app

32-bit and 64-bit versions of *eViewer.exe*:

This is the regular Windows version of eViewer. It is available in three locations:

- Installers for end users on the eWriter web page
- Included in the Developer Package on the eWriter web page
- Included as the regular **`eViewer.exe`** in the Help+Manual program directory

MacOS version:

This is available in two locations:

- In the Developer Package on the eWriter web page
- As an installer for end users on the eWriter web page

The eViewer developer package

This is recommended if you are creating application help with eWriter. It includes the Windows and MacOS versions of the eViewer application, a package installer for the MacOS version, documentation, and test applications for both Windows and MacOS, with an installer for the MacOS version.

Download it on the eWriter web page, where you can find it under the **eWriter as Application Help** heading.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Windows and MacOS installation

The Windows executables are ready to run. You just need to include the eViewer.exe file and make your calls to it.

The **\MACOS64\eViewer.pkg** included in the developer package installs the MacOS version of eViewer.

Requirements and capabilities

Windows version

- Windows 7 or higher
- 32 and 64 bit executables
- Compatible with all eWriter Help data files created with Help+Manual and HelpXplain, including old versions
- Customization in Help+Manual (eViewer app menu, app button color, book icon)
- Command line interface for application help 731
- Tester application in the developer package to simulate application help calls
- 6 ready-to-use UI languages, text strings editable for additional languages

MacOS version

- MacOS 11.0 Big Sur or later
- Universal binary for Intel and Apple Silicon (M1, M2 and later)
- Compatible with all eWriter Help files created with Help+Manual and HelpXplain, including old versions
- Customization in Help+Manual (eViewer app menu)
- Command line interface for application help 731
- Tester application in the developer package to simulate application help calls
- 6 ready-to-use UI languages, text strings editable for additional languages

6.2.6.7.1 Differences Windows/Mac

The tables below list the differences between eViewer on Windows and MacOS that are important when you are using eWriter Help for software documentation.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

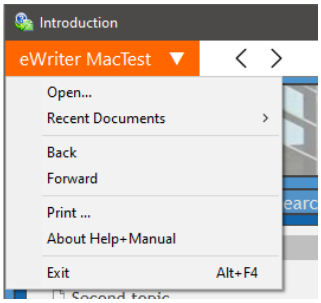
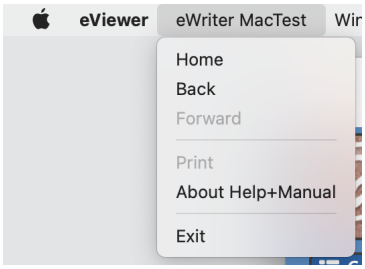
Technical differences

	Windows	MacOS
Window management	Single instance by app policy, creates a separate window per .ewriter file	Single instance by OS policy, creates a separate window per .ewriter file
Command line interface	`eviewer.exe "ewriter://urlstring"` `eviewer.exe <file-name> /param /param`	`eviewer.app --args "ewriter://urlstring"`
Call by custom URL scheme	No URL scheme registered	Automatically registers **`ewriter://`** Different URL schemes can be configured by modifying Info.plist 725.
URL string must use protocol	URL string must start with `ewriter://`	URL string must start with the protocol the executable has been registered for. Default: `ewriter://`
Registered file extensions	No file type registered The regular eViewer installer registers the extension `.ewriter`. The EXE itself does not.	Automatically registers `.ewriter`. Different file associations can be configured by modifying Info.plist 725.
Open menu 727 **dialog accepts file types**	Dialog accepts `.ewriter` files only (this is a hard-coded resource string inside the EXE).	Dialog accepts the file type(s) the executable has been registered for. Default: `.ewriter`
Drag & drop of files into eViewer window	Accepts any file and attempts to open it	Accepts the file type(s) the executable has been registered for. Default: `.ewriter`

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	Windows	MacOS
Patch for distribution	No, executables can be distributed unchanged.	Yes, registered URL scheme must be changed 725 by the developer.
Viewer size	4.7 MB (32 bit) and 6.8 MB (64 bit)	35 MB (includes universal binaries)

Visual and Functional differences

	Windows	MacOS
Custom app menu	Displayed as a drop-down menu in the application. 	Displayed as secondary menu item next to the app name. 
App button background and text color customizable	Yes	Not applicable
Custom right-click menu	Yes, right-click on the internal web browser displays a custom popup menu instead of the browser's default menu.	No, the custom right-click menu is not used in the MacOS version.
Book icon customizable	Displayed as icon for the viewer window	Not applicable, there is no icon per window on MacOS
Self-contained eWriter files	Yes, Windows executable containing both viewer and the documentation (.exe file)	No
Context-sensitive help	By command line parameter	By command line parameter

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	Windows	MacOS
Password protection	Yes	Yes
Expiration date for eWriter files	Yes	Yes
Kiosk mode	By command line parameter	By command line parameter
Custom UI translations	Yes	Yes

6.2.6.7.2 Installation & configuration

See the The eViewer Apps 719 for information and the link to get the Developer Package with all the necessary viewer components. Among other things, this package contains the redistributable executables for both Windows and MacOS.

`\MACOS\eViewer.pkg`
Redistributable eViewer installation package for MacOS.

The viewer is a universal binary for both MacOS 64 Bit (Intel) and MacOS 64 Bit (ARM). The viewer requires MacOS 11 Big Sur or later.

`\WIN32\eViewer.exe`
Redistributable 32-bit eViewer for Windows. No installation required.

Requires Windows 7 or higher, either 32 or 64 bit.

`\WIN64\eViewer.exe`
Redistributable 64-bit eViewer for Windows. No installation required.

Requires 64-bit Windows 7 or higher.

Windows installation

The Windows executables in this package are ready to be distributed. No special installation is required.

1. Make a copy of the 32- or 64-bit eViewer.exe and optionally rename the file.
2. Deploy the renamed file along with your software.
3. For localized distributions, supply a custom language file 729
4. For application online help use the URL-style command line syntax 739.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Don't register the *.ewriter* extension

We recommend that you don't register the **`.ewriter`** extension as part of your installation. Instead, always make your calls explicitly to your installed copy of the eViewer app and your own help files. This guarantees that you are using the same viewer that was up to date when you generated your help.

Consider using a different extension for your own help files

It is also a good idea to change the extension of your help files to your own version. If you do this, you can register **your** extension to **your** installed version of the eViewer application so that your users can open your help files themselves by double-clicking on them.

Then you don't get any conflicts if the user gets **`.ewriter`** files from somewhere else. If they open **`.ewriter`** files on Windows 10 and 11 they will get the Windows Store version of eViewer automatically (and that extension is required for the Store viewer), and that then doesn't create any conflicts: The **`.ewriter`** extension is always used for the Store version and your application always opens your help files with your installed version of the viewer.

MacOS installation and configuration

The MacOS installation package is not ready to be distributed. You need to configure it for installation with your software first.

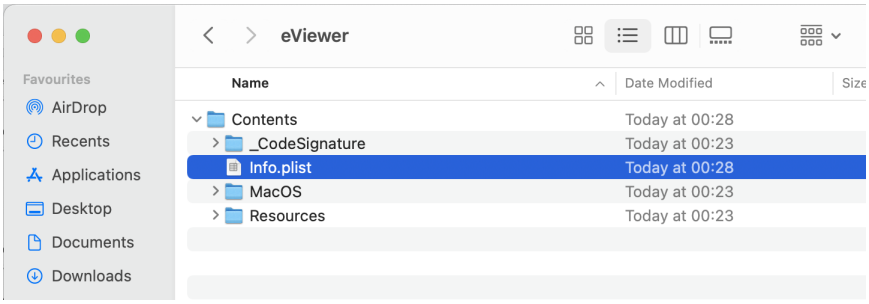
When you distribute a copy of the MacOS eViewer, you **must change the custom URL scheme** that the app registers. Custom URL schemes are global on MacOS and if multiple apps register the *same* URL scheme, there is no mechanism for the operating system to decide which app to call for this scheme.

Procedure:

1. Make a copy of `eViewer.app` and **rename the file**.
2. **Change the URL schemes** for the renamed viewer app:
   a. Open the package content in Finder (CTRL+Click ➔ Show package content)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

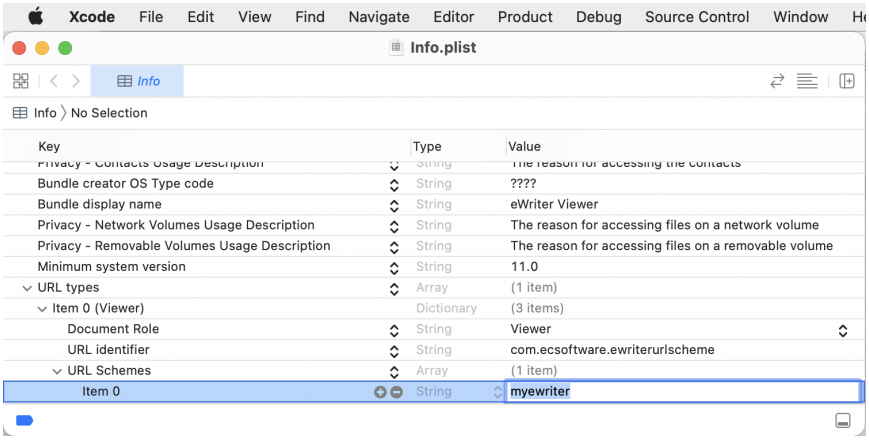
b. Inside the package, locate the `/Contents` folder and the file `Info.plist`



c. Open `Info.plist` with **XCode**

d. Navigate to **URL Types ➔ Item 0 ➔ URL Schemes ➔ Item 0**

e. Change the URL name from "**`ewriter`**" to your **own unique identifier**. You must use this custom URL scheme in the URL-style command syntax 739. For more information please refer to Defining a custom URL scheme on developer.apple.com.



f. Now this is a good opportunity to **change the registered file extension** as well, just in case you are using a different file extension than "*.ewriter*". Navigate to **Document Types ➔ Item 0 ➔ Document Extensions ➔ Item 0** and enter your custom file extension:

3. Deploy the renamed app package along with your software.
4. For localized distributions, supply a custom language file 729
5. For application online help use the URL-style command line syntax 739.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.2.6.7.3 Open menu entry

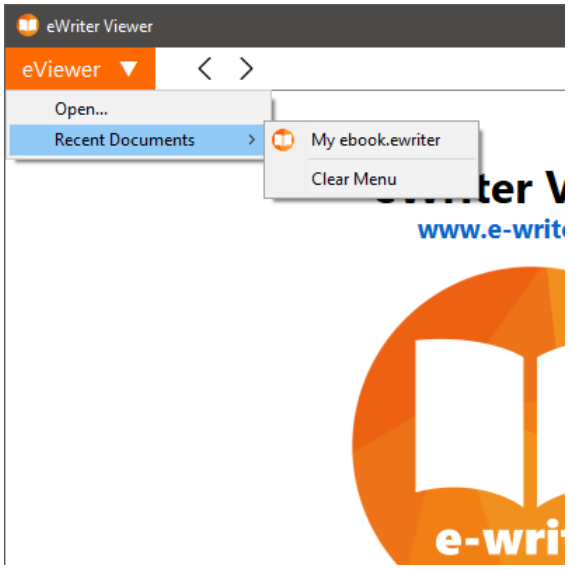
By default, eViewer 3 has **Open** and **Recent Documents** entries in the application menu. The **Open** item displays a file dialog that lets the user choose an *.ewriter* file to open. This file extension is hard-coded and cannot be changed.

If you distribute a custom version of the viewer for application online help you may also use a different file extension for your eWriter Help files. The **Open** item in the menu would then be redundant. If this is the case, you just need to rename the viewer to hide this menu item automatically.

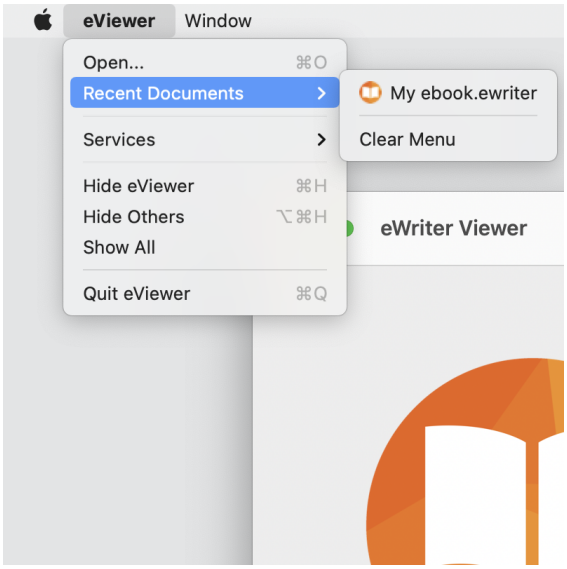
When eViewer shows an Open item in the application menu

- The Open menu is displayed by the original eViewer – that is, the executable is named "**`eViewer.exe`**" (Windows) or "**`eViewer.app`**" (MacOS).
- If you rename the executable for re-distribution, it hides the menu by default. (This is automatic, based on the internal resource string in the application itself.)
- Standalone Windows eWriter EXE eWriter Help files (executable with HTML data on board) hide this menu item by default, since they don't "open" other eWriter files.
- This behavior can be overwritten at runtime with the openmenu 747 command parameter.

Original eViewer



Open menu on Windows



Open menu on MacOS

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Renamed eViewer executable

Open menu hidden on Windows

Open menu hidden on MacOS

6.2.6.7.4 User data storage

The viewer stores its state data in local INI files. The storage folder used for this depends on the OS. The file name is based on the name of viewer executable. You can have *custom eViewer deployments* installed in the same folder. To enable this, the INI files are named as an MD5 hash of the executable.

Example of an state data file name:

```
eViewer107e80d67e78231fdbc518c8ff7d6723.ini
```

File contents:

- Owner (the application that created the file)
- Window position and maximized state
- Recently opened .ewriter files

Windows data storage location

```
C:\Users\<WINDOWSUSERNAME>\AppData\Local\com.ecsoftware.eviewer\
```

MacOS data storage location

```
/Users/<MACUSERNAME>/Library/Application Support/com.ecsoft-
ware.eviewer/
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.2.6.7.5 Localization

The eWriter Viewer is a multi-language application. It switches the display language automatically based on the global user preferences in Windows or MacOS. In practice, this only affects a few strings, because the optional menu included with an `.ewriter` file always displays the language it was designed in.

Auto-localized items

- Open 727 menu
- Recent documents 727 menu
- Captions and mouse hints for user interaction buttons:
  `Back`
  `Forward`
  `Print`
- Error messages

Integrated Languages

The viewer currently has the following languages integrated in the application:
English, French, German, Italian, Russian and ***Spanish***.

For all other system languages, the viewer defaults to English. There is no user preference option to actively switch the display language.

Adding your own languages

You can add a custom translation by supplying a separate language file. This language file is not used by the *standard eViewer installer*. However, you can supply it with a custom distribution 724.

To add a custom translation, create a text file called "`<eviewerexename>.lang`" in the application folder. The file must reside next to the executable, have the same name as the executable and the extension "`.lang`".

For the MacOS version, you can also place the language file inside the application package, in the `/Contents/Resource` folder.

Windows

```
<path>\eViewer.exe
<path>\eViewer.lang
<path>\MyRenamedViewer.exe
<path>\MyRenamedViewer.lang
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

MacOS

Outside the package:
```
<path>/eViewer.app
<path>/eViewer.lang
<path>/MyRenamedViewer.app
<path>/MyRenamedViewer.lang
```

Inside the package:
```
<path>/eViewer.app
<path>/eViewer.app/Contents/Resources/eViewer.lang
<path>/MyRenamedViewer.app
<path>/MyRenamedViewer.app/Contents/Resources/MyRenamedViewer.lang
```

Contents of the .lang File

This language file is a simple text file with UTF-8 encoding. We also recommend using the byte order mark (BOM). Every translatable string is defined by a constant, an equal sign and the translation string. Translation strings must not include line breaks. To add line breaks in longer translation strings, such as error messages, insert a TAB character.

You don't have to include all items in the language file. The viewer will automatically use the standard English value for items that are not included.

The %s placeholders:
Note that some string names include an "%s" placeholder in the name and the text, for example the name ERR_OPENINVALID%s. You must always include the "%s" placeholder, and names that contain one or more of these placeholders **must** have the same number of them in the translation string. The "%s" is is used for internal string formatting.

The & Alt key markers:
Similarly, texts used in menus have a **&** marker before the letter to be used as the ALT key keyboard shortcut. You should include this marker in your own texts in front of the letter to be used for your shortcut.

Example of a .lang file:

```
BACK=&Back
FORWARD=&Forward
ZOOMOUT=Zoom &Out
ZOOMIN=Zoom &In
PRINT=&Print
OPEN=Open...
OPENRECENT=Recent Documents
CLEARRECENT=Clear Menu
CLICKTOOPEN=Click on the logo to open an .ewriter book
CLEARCACHE=Clear browser cache and reload page?
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
EWRITERFILEFILTER%s=eWriter Books|%s
ERR_FILENOTFOUND%s=Cannot open "%s"! → File not found.
ERR_OPENINVALID%s=Cannot open "%s"!  → This file is damaged or has
an invalid format.
ERR_EXPIRED%s=Cannot open "%s"!  → This file has expired.
ERR_PASSWORDFAILURE%s=Cannot open "%s".  → Wrong password!
```

As you can see, there are really very few needed strings.

6.2.6.8 EWriter for Software Help

To use eWriter help files for documenting your own software you must do two things:

- Install the eViewer executable 719 together with your application
- Make your help calls directly to the version you installed

There are also some important file extension and other registration steps you need to take, particularly for MacOS. See Installation & Configuration 724 in **The eViewer Apps** chapter for details.

6.2.6.8.1 Links & Context Help

On Windows, eWriter Help is the modern alternative to the obsolete CHM format for local application help. It offers full support for context-sensitive help and file links and combines the benefits of CHM and WebHelp while eliminating many of the disadvantages of both. On MacOS eWriter provides an software help format that is not otherwise available in this integrated form.

This topic provides a quick overview of the link options. For full details see the EWriter for Software Help 731 chapter.

Viewer installation for eWriter as software documentation

When you are using eWriter as software documentation to replace CHM files you need to know where the viewer is so that you can make your calls to it reliably. We recommend installing the standard version of the viewer for this together with your software. See EWriter for Software Help 731 for details.

Each book is opened in a separate instance of the eViewer app

Each book you open has one and only one instance. If you make another call to the same book it will apply to the open instance. You can have multiple books open at the same time. To address the individual books you include the name of the book in your call along with the parameters, as shown below.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Choosing the right file extension for your eWriter files

Use the *.ewriter* file extension for books distributed on their own

You need to use the **.ewriter** extension for eWriter files that are going to be distributed on their own. It is registered with the Windows Store, and when a Windows 10 user who does not have the viewer opens an **.ewriter** file they will be prompted to install the viewer from the Windows store. Users on older versions of Windows can download the Win32 installer from our eWriter page, which will also register the **.ewriter** extension.

Use your own file extension for eWriter used for software documentation

When you are using eWriter for software documentation you want to install the Win32 version of eViewer together with your software and make your calls to it directly. You also don't want to conflict with any other version of the viewer that your user may have installed, so in this case you don't want to use the **.ewriter** extension. Instead, see one of your own.

See URL-style command syntax 739 for full details on this.

EWriter context help links and command line interface

Making calls to eWriter help files from your applications to display topics is very simple. On Windows, you basically just need to call the viewer app with a `shellExecute()` or equivalent function in your programming language, along with the name of the topic file to be viewed and an optional anchor to scroll to.

File extensions of your topic files

The HTML topic files inside eWriter Help can have either the **.htm** or **.html** extension, based on your settings for the topic file extension in your project in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**. However, only these two extensions are permitted. If you set a different extension in your project (for example **.php** or **.asp**), the standard **.htm** extension will be used.

You need to use the correct extension in your context help calls, otherwise the topics will not be found.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Context calls syntax

The syntax for context calls to eWriter Help has been changed with the introduction of the new MacOS eViewer and the updated Windows eViewer. If you have used eWriter for application help in the past the calls with the old syntax in your existing projects will still work. However, we strongly recommend switching to the new integrated URL-style syntax from now on.

Please refer to the eWriter for Software Help 731 chapter for full details and instructions.

Basic New Syntax:

```
"<viewer app>" "ewriter://<ewriter file>?loadpage=<page in the help>"
```

Note that when you are using integrated EXE eWriter Help files, the viewer app is the help file itself, so it calls itself when using the new syntax.

Basic Old Syntax (not supported for MacOS):

```
"<viewer app>" "<page in the help>"
```

URL examples eViewer app:

```
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=index.html"
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm#anchor2"
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=introduction.html?anchor=anchor2 (Premium Pack)"
```

URL examples Windows EXE eWriter file:

```
"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=index.html"
"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm#anchor2"
"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=introduction.html?anchor=anchor2" (Premium Pack)
```

URL parameters and JavaScript

If your HTML pages include scripts that can evaluate URL parameters (supported in some Premium Pack skins, for example) you can also include parameters to be parsed by your script, like this:

```
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=in-
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

dex.html?mysetting=xyz&setting2=12"

The HTML location object is fully supported for interpreting URLs you pass to your pages like this. This means you can extract the query portion of the script with `document.location.search`, the hash portion (anchor) with `document.location.hash` and so on.

Linking between eWriter files

If you have multiple eWriter help files installed on your user's computer you may sometimes want to link between them. This will normally only apply when you are using eWriter for software documentation 731.

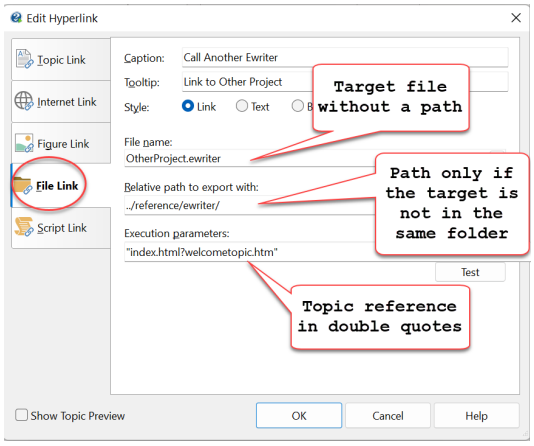
There are several methods you can use for linking between eWriter files. You must always use the **File Link** option for this, not the Internet Link!

Linking between eWriter files when the file association is known

You can use a simple method if you are sure that the **`.ewriter`** extension has been associated with the eViewer application, or if you are using your own extension that you have registered as part of your installation on the user's computer. Then you just need to reference the eWriter file and the topic parameters.

This also works when you have changed the file extension and eViewer name:

Note that this also works if you are using eWriter for software documentation and you have changed both the file extension and the name of your copy of the eViewer application. You just need to link to another eWriter file that has the same extension as the eWriter file containing the link.



File name: The name of the eWriter file you want to link to **without** any path information. Just the file name. You must use the extension that has

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

been registered to the eViewer application on the user's computer. This will be **.ewriter** if you are sure that has been registered, or your own custom extension if you are installing eViewer as part of your software installation and registering the extension yourself.

Relative path: Only include the path to the file here if the target file is not in the same folder as the file containing the link. Despite the name, you can use either a relative or an absolute path.

Important: No quotes around this path, even if it includes spaces!

Execution parameters: The normal WebHelp reference to the topic you want to display in the target file. The syntax depends on the skin type you are using. This parameter **must** be enclosed in double quotes.

Standard Help+Manual skins and older Premium Pack skins:

```
"index.html?topic.html"
```

Premium Pack V3 skins:

```
"topic.html"
```

Topic file extensions

The topic file extension can be **.htm** or **.html**, depending on what you have set in your project. Other extensions are not allowed for eWriter topics.

Anchors and other parameter extensions

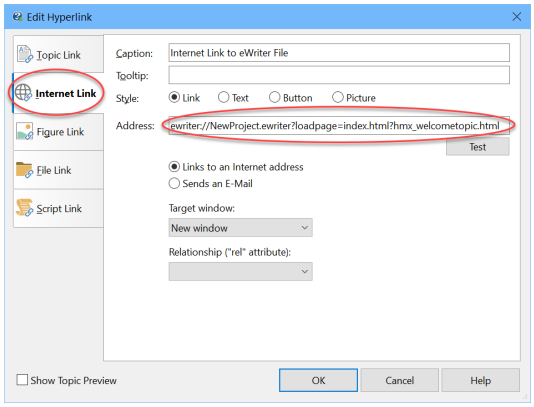
Add these in the execution parameters, inside the double quotes, exactly as you would in WebHelp.

Using an Internet link instead of a File link (required for MacOS)

You can also use an Internet link to link between eWriter Help files, but then you have to use the new syntax with the **ewriter://** prefix. This is also required if you are using eWriter Help on MacOS.

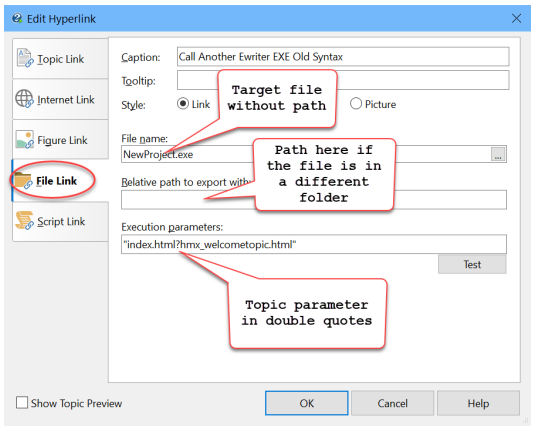
ewriter://NewProject.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?topic_name.html

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Linking between files when you are using the integrated viewer in EXE eWriter books

When you create combined book and viewer files with the EXE extension you always just enter the EXE file as the file to link to and the topic to open as the parameters.



File name: The name of the eWriter EXE file you want to link to **without** any path information. Just the file name.

Relative path: Only include the path to the file here if the target file is not in the same folder as the file containing the link. Despite the name, you can use either a relative or an absolute path.

Important: No quotes around this path, even if it includes spaces!

Execution parameters: The normal WebHelp reference to the topic you want to display in the target file. The syntax depends on the skin type you are using. This parameter **must** be enclosed in double quotes.

Standard Help+Manual skins and older Premium Pack skins:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
"index.html?topic.html"
```

Premium Pack V3 skins:

```
"topic.html"
```

Topic file extensions

The topic file extension can be **.htm** or **.html**, depending on what you have set in your project. Other extensions are not allowed for eWriter topics.

Anchors and other parameter extensions

Add these in the execution parameters, inside the double quotes, exactly as you would in WebHelp.

Calls to EXE eWriter files with the integrated viewer

You can still create the original EXE eWriter files with an integrated viewer if you wish, although we strongly recommend using the separate viewer. You just need to change the output file extension to **.exe** in the Publish screen before publishing. Help+Manual identifies this automatically and then creates an EXE eWriter Help file with an integrated viewer.

Not supported on MacOS

Note that EXE eWriter Help is a Windows format and cannot be used on MacOS. On Macs, you must use the eViewer app and **.ewriter** data files.

Context calls syntax

The calling syntax is the same as with the external viewer, except you call the EXE eWriter Help file instead of the viewer, followed by the parameters. You can use both the old and the new syntax for this.

Old syntax:

```
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?introduction.htm"
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?this_page.htm#anchor"
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?anotherpage.htm"
```

New syntax:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you use the new syntax, you must also include the name of the EXE eWriter Help file after the ewriter:// protocol prefix, so that the file is calling itself:

```
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
introduction.htm"
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
this_page.htm#anchor"
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
anotherpage.htm"
```

Always include the page parameters in quotes, even if there are no spaces. Otherwise you will get Windows errors caused by some of the characters that need to be used.

Links to executable files

If you're used to producing CHM files and WebHelp you don't even think about opening executable EXE program files from your documentation. But with eWriter Help, you can! This is possible both from normal links in topics and from TOC entries.

RESTRICTION: Not supported in the Windows Store version of the viewer!

Windows Store apps are not permitted to invoke executable files from within the program. Because of this, the functions described below are not available in the Windows Store version of the viewer app. However, you can use them if you are installing the standard Windows eViewer app together with your software. See EWriter for Software Help 731 for details.

Current directory status when linking to executable files

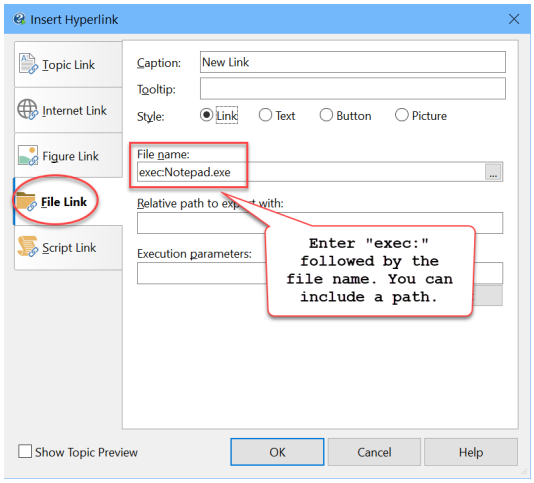
When executing external files, the eWriter viewer explicitly sets the current directory to prevent possible failure of file links using a relative path.

File links to executables in topics

Just create a normal file link to the EXE file and add **exec:** directly before the file name, like this:

```
exec:notepad.exe
exec:../demo_program/widget_maker.exe
```

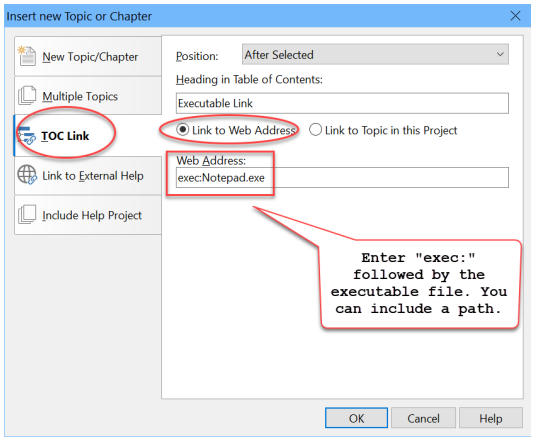

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Links to executables in the TOC

You can also create links to executable files in the TOC of an eWriter Help file. Create a new topic entry and choose the **TOC Link** option, and then *Link to Web Address*. Then enter the target in the *Web Address:* field, using same **`exec:filename.exe`** format as above. Here too, you can include a relative path if necessary.

```
exec:notepad.exe
exec:../demo_program/widget_maker.exe
```



6.2.6.8.2 URL-style command syntax

To unify the Windows and MacOS platforms, we have implemented the same URL-style command syntax in both versions of eViewer. The syntax is identical, but the calling conventions are slightly different because of the different platforms.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How context help works on Windows and MacOS

How context help calls work on Windows

On Windows, you can call an executable with command line parameters. Multiple calls to the same executable will normally start multiple instances of the program. However, this is prevented by the eViewer application. It always displays just one instance of the viewer for the same help file, even when you make multiple calls to it.

How context help calls work on MacOS

On MacOS, when an application is opened by another program, it is possible to specify command line parameters as well. But only once. Because of the general single-instance policy on MacOS, a subsequent call to the same executable does not create a new instance. Instead, it brings the running instance into foreground. At this point, the already running application does not receive the (different) command line parameters after the --args command line switch.

All is not lost, however, because MacOS also makes it pretty simple to register a custom URL scheme 725 for an app, which can be used both to open your app and pass commands to a running instance.

Differences between standard HM skins and frameless Premium Pack skins

The references for topic files in your call URLs are slightly different for standard Help+Manual skins and frameless Premium Pack skins. With the standard skins you need to call both the layout page (**index.html**) and the topic page (**topic.htm** or **topic_id.html**, depending on what you set as your topic extension in your project).

Standard skins:

```
ewriter://<path>my_doc.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?topic.htm#anchor_id
```

Premium Pack V3, V4 and V5 skins

```
ewriter://<path>my_doc.ewriter?loadpage=topic_id.html?anchor=anchor_id
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Basic URL command syntax

The URL command combines 3 parts: a) the protocol, b) the domain which is our ewriter file and c) the optional command parameters as the URL query part.

The URL is preceded by the viewer reference

All examples are the argument. They must always be preceded by a reference eViewer app or the eWriter EXE file name if you are using that format on Windows. When using standalone Windows EXE files the file is both the viewer and the target and calls itself.

You can use two ? separators in the same URL

Note that you use the **?** character after the **index.html** reference as the first separator, even though it also comes after the eWriter Help file name. This is because the URL is actually two combined URLs that are split internally by the viewer.

Protocol	Domain (eWriter data file)	Query (Command parameters)
ewriter://	<path>my_doc.ewriter	loadpage=topic.html defpos=50,50

Resulting URL (Windows):
ewriter://c:\users\username\documents\my_doc.ewriter?loadpage=**index.html?topic.htm**&defpos=50,50
ewriter://c:\users\username\documents\my_doc.ewriter?loadpage=**topic.html**&defpos=50,50

Resulting URL (MacOS):
ewriter:///Users/username/documents/my_doc.ewriter?loadpage=**index.html?topic.htm**&defpos=50,50
ewriter:///Users/username/documents/my_doc.ewriter?loadpage=**topic.html**&defpos=50,50

Making calls on Windows

Calls on Windows with eViewer.exe and data help files

The calling convention on Windows is:

Open: `eViewer.exe "urlstring"`

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note:
The protocol for the Windows version is always `ewriter://`, even if the app has been renamed. This is possible because the protocol cannot create conflicts on Windows.

Examples:

```
eViewer.exe "ewriter://c:\users\username\documents\my_e-book.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?topic.htm&defpos=50,50"
```

```
Myviewer.exe "ewriter://c:\users\username\documents\my_e-book.ewriter?loadpage=topic.html&defpos=50,50"
```

Escaping (percent encoding) URLs:

The URL can be escaped (percent encoded) on Windows. When served in quotes as a command line string, the URL is technically a simple string and eViewer.exe will take it at face value, even if it is not escaped. Escaped URLs will be unescaped internally. See How to escape a URL 743 below.

Calls on Windows with integrated EXE help files

On Windows you can also create eWriter Help files as a standalone EXE with an integrated viewer. The calling syntax for these files is exactly the same, with the difference that the file calls itself. This is because the file is both the viewer and the help file. So it looks like this:

```
<path>\widgets_intro.exe "ewriter://<path>\widgets_intro.exe?loadpage=index.html?topic.htm&defpos=50,50"
```

```
<path>\advanced_version.exe "ewriter://<path>\advanced_version.exe?loadpage=topic.html&defpos=50,50"
```

Making calls on MacOS

MacOS

The calling convention on MacOS is two-fold. You can use the command line (but only once) and you can also optionally open the custom URL directly:

Open: `eViewer.app --args "urlstring"`
Open: `"urlstring"`

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note:
You must use the same protocol on MacOS that you modified in the installer's `Info.plist`. See Installation & Configuration 725.

If the protocol doesn't work immediately after modification, start the app with a double click. This should be sufficient to register the custom URL scheme on the Mac.

Examples:

(a) Command line arguments

```
eViewer.app --args "ewriter:///Users/username/documents/my_e-book.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?topic.htm&defpos=50,50"
Myviewer.app --args "myprotocol:///Users/username/documents/my_e-book.ewriter?loadpage=topic.html&defpos=50,50"
```

(b) Custom URL scheme

```
"ewriter:///Users/username/documents/my_ebook.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?topic.htm&defpos=50,50"
"myprotocol:///Users/username/documents/my_ebook.ewriter?loadpage=topic.html&defpos=50,50"
```

The URL ***must be escaped with percent encoding*** on MacOS. It will work unescaped when served in quotes as a command line string, but the direct call to a custom URL scheme requires a properly escaped URL.

How to escape your calling URLs with percent encoding

A URL is a single string without spaces. It is made up of a *protocol*, a *domain* and trailing *query strings*. No spaces are allowed in the *domain* or the *query strings*. The domain and query strings are separated by a question mark (?). Multiple query strings are separated by an ampersand (&). For detailed information, see the W3C website HTML URL Encoding Reference.

To serve the URL string correctly, we must at least escape all spaces in the entire URL and the question marks within parameters:

Char	Escaped string
(space)	%20
?	%3F

Raw:

```
"ewriter://c:\users\user name\my documents\my ebook.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?topic.html&defpos=50,50"
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Escaped:
`"ewriter://c:\users\user%20name\my%20documents\my%20ebook.ewriter?loadpage=index.html%3Ftopic.html&defpos=50,50"`

6.2.6.8.2.1 loadpage

The `loadpage` parameter opens and displays a specific HTML page from the eWriter file by page name. The format of this string depends on the contents of the *.ewriter* file.

For *.ewriter* books created with Help+Manual, the parameter is typically `index.html`, followed by a question mark and the topic page, or it is the topic page directly. Which version is appropriate, depends on the Webhelp skin used for compilation. Please refer to the Help+Manual online help for details.

Rule of thumb

Use `index.html?topicpage.html` for older skins and bare-bone skins (because these skins implement frames and "index.html" is always the top frame).

Use `topicpage.html` for frameless Premium Pack skins (V3, V4, V5).

When using standalone EXE eWriter Help files for Windows the file is both the viewer and the target. The viewer thus calls itself. Otherwise the syntax is exactly the same.

Value	Example

Topic page in the help file	`loadpage=index.html`
	`loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm#anchor2`
	`loadpage=introduction.html?anchor=anchor2` **(Premium Pack)**

Note:
All examples are the argument. They must always be preceded by the eViewer app or the eWriter EXE file name if you are using that format on Windows. When using standalone Windows EXE files the file is both the viewer and the target and calls itself.

URL examples eViewer app:
`ewriter://<path+filename>?loadpage=index.html`
`ewriter://<path+filename>?loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm#anchor2`
`ewriter://<path+filename>?loadpage=introduction.html?anchor=anchor2`
(Premium Pack)

URL examples Windows EXE eWriter file:
`ewriter://<path+EXEfilename>?loadpage=index.html`
`ewriter://<path+EXEfilename>?loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm#anchor2`

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

`ewriter://<path+EXEfilename>?loadpage=introduction.html?anchor=anchor2`
(Premium Pack)

6.2.6.8.2.2 loadcontext

The `loadcontext` parameter opens and displays a particular HTML page from the eWriter file by help context number, if the *.ewriter* book supports it.

All *.ewriter* books created by Help+Manual that have the "*Enable command line interface*" export option activated (default) include a list of help context numbers and can be called with this parameter.

When using standalone EXE eWriter Help files for Windows the file is both the viewer and the target. The viewer thus calls itself. Otherwise the syntax is exactly the same.

Value	Example
Help context number	`loadcontext=1000`

Note:
All examples are the argument. They must always be preceded by the eViewer app or the eWriter EXE file name if you are using that format on Windows. When using standalone Windows EXE files the file is both the viewer and the target and calls itself.

URL example eViewer app:
`ewriter://<path+filename>?loadcontext=1234`

URL example Windows EXE eWriter file:
`ewriter://<path+EXEfilename>?loadcontext=1234`

6.2.6.8.2.3 defpos

Sets the position and size of the viewer window. This parameter affects the first call to an *.ewriter* file only. Subsequent calls (if the *.ewriter* file has been opened already) will not change the window position at runtime.

Windows

Pixel values are absolute physical pixels. On high resolution displays, you must take the system DPI into account, because *eViewer.exe* is DPI-aware. The *stayontop* option applies to the Windows version only.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

MacOS

Pixel values are logical pixels that map to the default size of a non-retina display. The values may be increased by MacOS depending on the display type and user settings. The *stayontop* option is ignored, there is no equivalent for this on MacOS.

Values	Example
left,top	defpos=50,50 Creates the eViewer window at 50/50 pixels of the screen. Window size is initialized from the default position specified in the eWriter file and remembered after the user has viewed this file once.
left,top,width,height	defpos=50,50,800,400 Creates the eViewer window at 50/50 pixels of the screen, with a width of 800 and a height of 400 pixels.
left,top,width,height, stayontop **Note:** stayontop is only valid on Windows	defpos=50,50,800,400,stayontop Creates a stay-on-top eViewer window at 50/50 pixels of the screen, with a width of 800 and a height of 400 pixels. defpos=50,50,stayontop Creates a stay-on-top eViewer window at 50/50 pixels of the screen, default width and height. defpos=stayontop Creates a stay-on-top eViewer window, default size and position.
kioskmode	defpos=kioskmode Switches the eViewer app into full-screen kiosk mode (window size and position does not apply). **Note:** In kiosk mode, the user has no visual controls to modify the window dimensions. Kiosk mode can only be exited by pressing **ALT+F4** (Windows) or **CMD+Q** (MacOS).

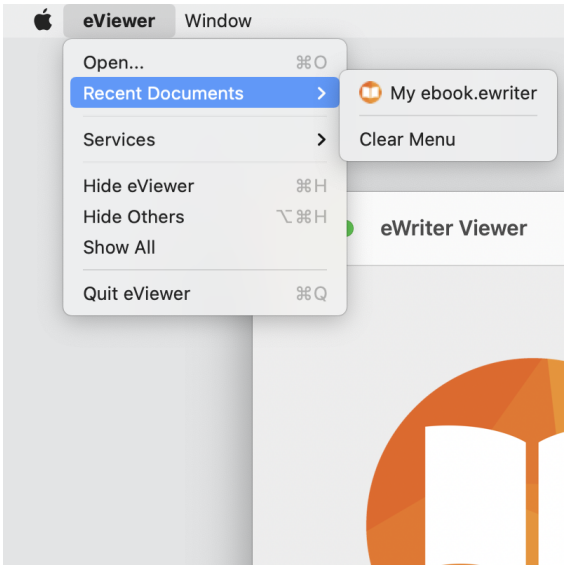
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note:
All examples are the argument. They must always be preceded by the eViewer app or the eWriter EXE file name if you are using that format on Windows. When using standalone Windows EXE files the file is both the viewer and the target and calls itself.

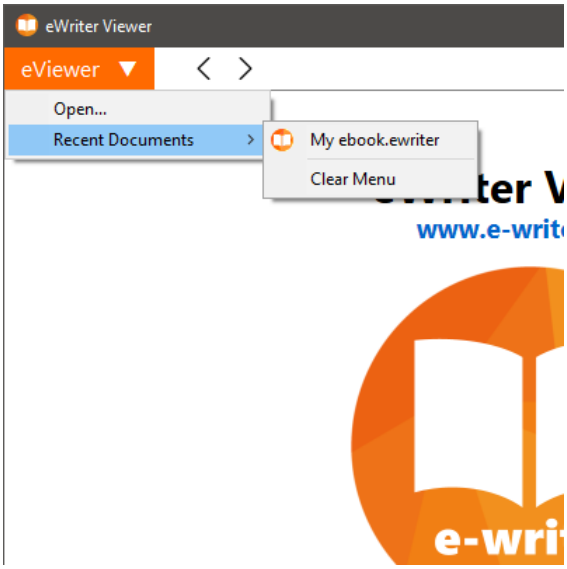
URL examples eViewer app:
```
ewriter://<path+filename>?defpos=50,50,700,900,stayontop
ewriter://<path+filename>?defpos=50,50
ewriter://<path+filename>?defpos=kioskmode
```

6.2.6.8.2.4 openmenu

Shows or hides the general menu items Open 727 and Recent Documents 727.



Open menu shown on MacOS



Open menu on Windows

Value	Example
`true` `false`	openmenu=`true` (default for the original "eViewer.app" and "eViewer.exe") openmenu=`false` (default for renamed executables)

Note:
All examples are the argument. They must always be preceded by the eViewer app or the eWriter EXE file name if you are using that format on Windows. When using standalone Windows EXE files the file is both the viewer and the target and calls itself.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

URL example eViewer app:
`ewriter://<path+filename>?openmenu=false`

6.2.6.8.2.5 pw

Sets the password preset to open a password-protected eWriter file.

When opening a password-protected eWriter file, the user is normally prompted to enter the password. This command line switch passes the password directly to the file so that the user is not prompted to enter it.

Important security warning:
Submitting the password for a protected ebook as command line parameter is not secure. The command line password may be hidden for an average user but tech-savvy users can easily find it.

Value	Example
password	`pw=mypassword`

Note:
All examples are the argument. They must always be preceded by the eViewer app or the eWriter EXE file name if you are using that format on Windows. When using standalone Windows EXE files the file is both the viewer and the target and calls itself.

URL example eViewer app:
`ewriter://<path+filename>?pw=mypassword`

6.2.6.8.2.6 close

Closes the window of this eWriter file (if called with a file name) or closes the viewer instance with all windows (if called without a file name)

Note:
`Close` is the only command that does note require a file name. However, you must still include the "?" query separator.

Value	Example
(none)	`close`

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note:
All examples are the argument. They must always be preceded by the eViewer app or the eWriter EXE file name if you are using that format on Windows. When using standalone Windows EXE files the file is both the viewer and the target and calls itself.

URL example eViewer app:
`ewriter://<path+filename>?close`
`ewriter://?close`

URL example Windows EXE eWriter file:

`ewriter://<path+EXEfilename>?close`

6.2.6.8.2.7 JavaScript

URL parameters and JavaScript

If your HTML pages include scripts that can evaluate URL parameters (supported in some Premium Pack skins, for example) you can also include parameters to be parsed by your script, like this:

eViewer app:
`ewriter://<path+filename>?loadpage=index.html?mysetting=xyz`
`ewriter://<path+filename>?loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm&mysetting=xyz#anchor2`
`ewriter://<path+filename>?loadpage=introduction.html?mysetting=xyz&anchor=anchor2` **(Premium Pack)**

Windows EXE eWriter file:
`ewriter://<path+EXEfilename>?loadpage=index.html?mysetting=xyz`
`ewriter://<path+EXEfilename>?loadpage=index.html?introduction.htm&mysetting=xyz#anchor2`
`ewriter://<path+EXEfilename>?loadpage=introduction.html?mysetting=xyz&anchor=anchor2` **(Premium Pack)**

The HTML location object is fully supported for interpreting URLs you pass to your pages like this. This means you can extract the query portion of the script with `document.location.search`, the hash portion (anchor) with `document.location.hash` and so on.

6.2.7 Kindle/Mobi and ePUB 3.0 eBooks

The standard ePUB and Amazon Kindle/Mobi eBook formats are so similar internally that we group them together. Almost all their configuration settings are identical, and because of this they can be configured with the same settings in your project's Configuration sections.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Standard ePUB eBooks

ePUB eBooks 749 are a standard, generic and open eBook format that is supported by many software readers on all computer platforms and hardware devices, including the Apple iBooks® eBook reader on the iPad, iPhone and iPod Touch, Sony Reader and many others 769. ePUB eBooks are cross-platform and a huge number of eBooks are already available in this format.

Amazon Kindle/Mobi eBooks

Kindle/Mobi is the proprietary format used for Amazon Kindle eBooks, which can be read on the Amazon Kindle hardware eBook readers and a wide variety of Amazon Kindle apps on different platforms. Internally, this format is really just a minor variant of the universal ePUB format. However, Kindle eBooks are packaged in a proprietary Amazon binary format instead of in a normal ZIP file like standard ePUB. There are just a few formatting and configuration changes that need to be made and these are handled automatically by Help+Manual.

See also:

Publishing Formats - Kindle and ePUB eBooks 1513
ePUB resources 769

6.2.7.1 Standard ePUB 3.0 eBooks

Key Information
Keep your eBook projects simple. Avoid complex layouts and formatting, only use simple tables and don't use invisible topics. Only *a..z, A..Z, 0..9* and _ are permitted in topic IDs in eBooks!

About ePUB 3.0

The ePUB 3.0 format introduced in Help+Manual 9 is fully backwards compatible with ePUB 2.0. Even older ePUB readers can open and display an ePUB 3.0 eBook. There is no break in versions or any minimum requirement. However, ePUB 3.0 offers more freedom in page design.

Help+Manual now has additional formatting settings for ePUB. This includes an editable Table of Contents template and an editable HTML page template. These are similar to the corresponding templates in WebHelp, but you should be aware that the formatting options in eBooks are still quite limited compared to HTML web pages. Avoid complex layout and formatting. Large and complex tables and tables containing images should be considered to be toxic, because they will almost always destroy your layout.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Install Calibre or Adobe Digital Editions for local testing

Before generating ePUB eBooks you need to install a viewer for previewing the results on your Windows machine. There are currently only two viewer programs that provide good results for this on Windows: The free Calibre program and Digital Editions from Adobe.

We now strongly recommend using Calibre. It is an excellent tool and supports a wide range of different eBook formats very well, including both ePUB and the Amazon Kindle/Mobi 753 format that you can now also generate with Help+Manual. Adobe Digital Editions only supports ePUB and is rather dated and limited compared to Calibre. Also, Digital Editions was recently found to be spying on users and collecting their data without telling them.

Calibre download page

If you want to use Adobe Digital Editions it is also free and you can get it here:

Adobe Digital Editions download page

If you plan to target other readers and devices you may also want to get those for testing, of course. See ePUB Resources 1517 for more information and sources.

Styles, font faces and variable font size

Styles used in ePUB
Most of the style settings in your project will be used in ePUB eBooks with the exception of the font face (see below). If you have separate style settings defined for screen and print view 1348 then the print view settings will be used in ePUB.

You can't choose your font faces for most readers
Apple iBooks® and many other eBook readers use their own font faces and may ignore the font settings in your project. Your text will be displayed using the font setting in the reader. Some eBook readers allow the users to change fonts for their viewing pleasure, but you have no control over that.

Some readers support font embedding
Adobe Digital Editions and some other eBook readers will display your font faces if you embed them in the reader. However, this makes your ePUB files much bigger and you must have permission to distribute the fonts from the font copyright holders! See Managing Fonts in eBooks 764 for details.

Variable font size
Users want to be able to change the font size in the reader. To make this possible you must set your font size encoding to either ***percent*** or ***ems*** in **Project Explorer** > **Configur-**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ation > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**. Setting the font size encoding to pixels or points will make the fonts fixed size in some readers, which is not what you want in ePUB.

HTML page template for ePUB

Usually, you don't need to make any changes to the HTML page template for ePUB output. It is already set up for maximum compatibility with Apple iBooks® and a wide range of other eBook readers with ePUB support.

Edit the ePUB page template at your own risk:

If you want to make adjustments to the template you can edit it in **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eBooks** > **ePUB: Page Template**. However, do edit it unless you are familiar with the ePUB requirements, which are very strict.

Viewing and editing the source files of ePub eBooks

The ePUB eBook standard is open, free and fully documented in the International Digital Publishing Forum. Help+Manual produces standard ePUB source files that you can also edit and process manually and with other programs for editing and producing ePUB.

Accessing the source files:

When you publish to ePUB the source files are automatically written to a new folder in your project folder called:

~tmpepub

If you turn off the *Delete temporary files after publishing* option in the Publish dialog page you can edit these files directly with any text editor provided you observe the OPF specifications for ePUB eBooks. However, note that Apple iBooks® is extremely quirky, so get information on its requirements before trying to create iBooks® ePubs yourself!

Making an ePUB file from the source files:

An ePUB eBook is actually a normal zip archive with the extension **`.epub`** instead of the normal **`.zip`** extension. After editing your ePUB source files you can create a valid ePUB eBook by copying the contents of the `~tmpepub` folder to a zip archive and then changing the extension to **`.epub`**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Important: Make sure that the sub-folders are included in the zip archive! Some zip programs will store all the files in the zip without internal folders if you are not careful.

6.2.7.2 Amazon Kindle/Mobi eBooks

The Amazon Kindle/Mobi format is the proprietary eBook format used for the Amazon Kindle platform. Internally it is almost identical to ePUB, but it is packaged in a proprietary binary container instead of in a standard Zip archive like ePUB.

Since the actual format of Kindle/Mobi is so similar to ePUB, the two formats share the same basic settings. You can configure these settings in **Project Explorer: Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eBooks.**

Install the Amazon Kindle Previewer to get the Kindle compiler

You need the free Kindle compiler from Amazon to be able to publish Kindle/Mobi eBooks. This compiler is included in the Amazon Kindle Previewer package, which you can download here:

Download the Amazon Kindle Previewer

Important: Do NOT try to install the Kindle Previewer in the Program Files folder!

Don't change the default installation location of the Kindle Previewer package! If you do, it will not work correctly and you will get all kinds of errors. Because of the way this Amazon program works, it absolutely needs to be installed in your Windows user account directory in the location Amazon specifies, otherwise it will not have the necessary write permissions while it is running.

Once installed, H+M should find the Kindle compiler automatically. If you have problems, you can set the location automatically in **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers**. The standard location for the compiler is:

Kindle Previewer version 2:

```
C:\Users\YourUserAccount\AppData\Local\Amazon\Kindle Previewer\lib\kindlegen.exe
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Kindle Previewer version 3:

```
C:\Users\YourUserAccount\AppData\Local\Amazon\Kindle Previewer
3\lib\fc\bin
```

Install Calibre for local testing

Before generating ePUB eBooks you need to install a viewer for previewing the results on your Windows machine. The free Calibre program is currently the only solution that can be recommended for Kindle/Mobi books on Windows.

Calibre is an excellent tool and supports a wide range of different eBook formats very well, including both ePUB and Kindle/Mobi.

Calibre download page

Formatting restrictions in the Kindle app on iOS

At the time of writing, the iOS Amazon Kindle app for the Apple iPad and iPhone is inferior to other software and hardware Kindle applications in many ways. Since so many users read Kindle books on these devices you need to be aware of these restrictions and avoid formatting that will result in ugly or incorrect layout on these devices.

Lists only support plain black round bullets and simple numbering

No other bullets will be displayed in lists on the iOS Kindle app and multi-level lists with changing numbering and bullet formats will be displayed as an unpredictable mess. It is best to use only simple bullet lists, and simple numbered lists. Also, numbered lists should not contain more than 9 items, because the indents will look incorrect as soon as the list switches from single to double digits.

Indents are ignored entirely

Indented paragraphs are not possible in Kindle eBooks displayed on the iOS version of the Kindle app. They will simply be ignored by the reader.

Table column widths and vertical alignment are ignored

If you use tables in your Kindle eBook any column widths you set will be ignored. Vertical alignment settings for tables are also ignored. Instead, all alignment is automatically set to

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

middle. The result is that the text in table cells with less text is centered vertically instead of starting at the top or bottom of the cell. There is currently no way to change this.

Restrictions on the Kindle app for Windows Phone

At the time of writing, the restrictions in the Kindle app for Windows Phone are particularly extreme. Formatting is very limited and unpredictable and it is not possible for Windows Phone users to load Kindle books onto their phones themselves. This is only possible via the Kindle store.

If you want to target Windows Phone users we strongly recommend that you avoid the Kindle/Mobi format. Use standard ePUB instead, so that your users can load their eBooks themselves with a third-party eBook app.

Styles, font faces and variable font size

Styles used in Mobi
Most of the style settings in your project will be used in Mobi eBooks with the exception of the font face (see below). If you have separate style settings defined for screen and print view 1348 then the print view settings will be used in Mobi.

Your font face choice is not final
The Kindle readers allow users to select the font they want to display their book in. You have no control over that.

Mobi supports font embedding
You can embed your fonts in your Mobi books, but this may not be worth the trouble since users can change the display font anyway. Embedding fonts makes your eBook files much bigger and you must have permission to distribute the fonts from the font copyright holders as well.

Variable font size
Users want to be able to change the font size in the reader. To make this possible you must set your font size encoding to either ***percent*** or ***ems*** in **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options** (these options are also used in eBooks).

Viewing and editing the source files of Mobi eBooks

Help+Manual produces standard Mobi source files that you can also edit and process manually and with other programs for editing and producing Mobi eBooks.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Accessing the source files:

When you publish to Mobi the source files are automatically written to a new folder in your project folder called:

~tmpmobi

If you turn off the *Delete temporary files after publishing* option in the Publish dialog page you can view and edit these files directly with any text editor or a program that supports editing the source of Kindle/Mobi eBooks. Note that the specifications for Kindle eBooks are very strict, so familiarize yourself with them in detail before proceeding.

See also: *(ePUB suggestions and settings shared with Mobi)*

Formatting recommendations 756
ePUB settings 760
Managing Fonts in ePUB 764

6.2.7.3 Formatting recommendations

Keep your layout and formatting as simple as possible! Kindle and ePUB eBooks are really designed to behave like books, not like electronic documents. They are not designed to support the dynamic features you may take for granted in other types of electronic documents.

Avoid complex formatting, no scripting or dynamic features

Support for XHTML and CSS is limited and often quirky. Scripting can be considered to be not available. Keep everything as simple as possible.

Think book, not website!

Image and video size and use restrictions

Images:

Keep images relatively small and don't insert them in tables. It is a good idea to use the *Zoom is proportional to document width* property in the **Insert Image** dialog to size the image automatically relative to the eBook viewer page.

Videos:

Videos are only supported on iOS, and will not work in eBooks on any other platform. Apple recommends a maximum of not more than 11 megabytes of images per chapter for acceptable performance, particularly on the iPad 1. Images with more than two million pixels (width x height) are not guaranteed to display in iBooks®, and they would also be much too big to display normally on any eBook reader, including relatively large readers like the iPad..

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you want to show a large video put it on YouTube and embed it with the YouTube option 553, then the iPad will switch to the YouTube app automatically and open the video there. Videos will not work on any other ePUB reader.

Remember that most eBook readers have a very narrow effective page width, so if you want images to be visible they should be placed directly on the page in paragraphs of their own. They should also not be too high, because tall images will force page breaks and leave ugly gaps in your pages.

Caution with images in tables
Generally, it is better to avoid images in tables entirely. It is much better to put every image directly on the page in a paragraph of its own. It is much easier for an image in a table to break your layout than an image on the page. This applies particularly to tables with more than one column.

Restrictions and requirements for topics

Topics designed for ePUB and Kindle/Mobi have the following requirements and restrictions:

- Regular text is OK.
- Formatted text is OK.
- Font management requires special consideration – see Managing Fonts 764.
- Internal topic links only – no file links or script links.
- External HTTP links are supported but they won't work on hardware readers without web access!
- All image formats supported in H+M can be used, images are converted according to your HTML Export options 1435 settings if possible, but conformity with eBooks requirements have priority.
- Simple tables only. If possible, avoid tables entirely. No nested tables, no fixed-width tables, no complex tables, no tables with background images.
- No JavaScript, no manual page breaks.
- Video is only supported in Apple iBooks®. Consider it to be not available in any other reader, so only include videos if you in eBooks designed exclusively for iBooks.
- Hotspots in images are not supported by any ePUB readers.

Restrictions and requirements for the TOC

The TOC in ePUB and Kindle/Mobi has the following restrictions and requirements:

- Normal topics entries and chapter entries that are topics (chapters with text) are OK.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Topic entries with anchor references are OK (a TOC entry that links to an anchor in a topic).
- TOC entries that are chapters without text are not recommended. The TOC entry will point to the first topic of the chapter.
- No TOC entries that link to external help files or web pages.

No special characters in topic IDs

These eBooks are special compressed formats with internal file systems taht only support 7-bit characters in the internal file names. Make sure that your topic IDs only use *a..z, A..Z, 0..9* and _, no other characters. This is also general good practice to avoid possible problems in all project types.

No topics without TOC entries (invisible topics)!

This requirement is the same as in PDF. Only topics that have TOC entries will be included in your eBook output. All topics without TOC entries are ignored and will not be included in your eBook.

6.2.7.4 Cover pictures with title and author

Because of the way that the ePUB and Kindle formats work, your book cover can only contain a picture. There is no reliable facility for including text on top of the picture and any text added would not be displayed in the eBook preview in the library section of the eBook reader.

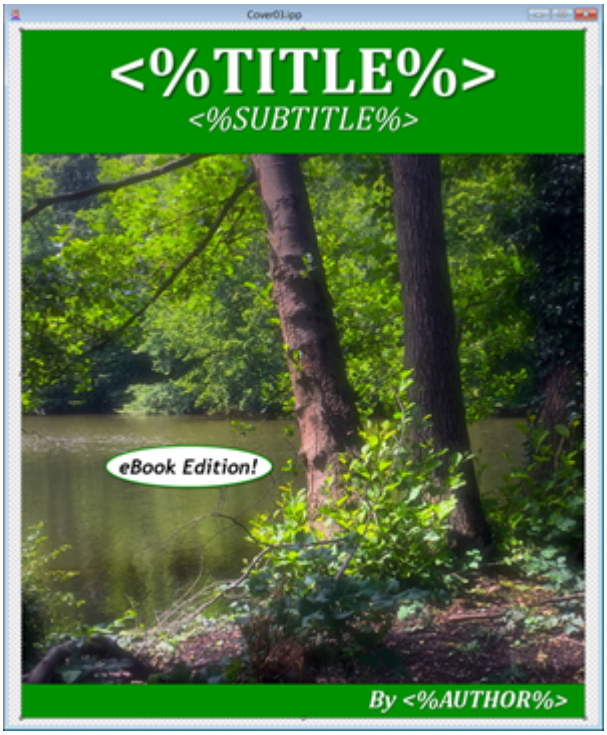
ePUB and Kindle covers and TOC tutorial project

You can find a tutorial project with ready-to-use IPP cover image templates and templates for your eBook TOC in the *Examples\ePub Covers* folder in your *My HelpAndManual Projects* directory.

Variables in IPP cover images are converted automatically when you publish

You can solve this problem by using IPP images made with Help+Manual's Impict image editor, because Help+Manual will automatically convert variables in text objects in the image when you publish the eBook. For example, you can insert variables like **<%TITLE%>** and **<%AUTHOR%>** in text objects in the IPP image. You can also insert user-defined variables, like the **<%SUBTITLE%>** entry shown in the example below.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



How to create an IPP cover with variables

Basically, you just need to select an IPP image created with Impict as the cover of your book. If the text objects in the image contain variables Help+Manual will automatically convert them before exporting the cover to the finished eBook as a PNG image.

Optimum dimensions and size for eBook covers

Originally, there were strict limitations on the size of eBook cover images. This has now changed and you can use quite high resolution images, within reasonable limits. As a guideline, Amazon now sets 1,000 pixels as the *minimum* dimension of the short (horizontal) side of the cover image for Kindle eBooks.

Do a Google image search for "eBook covers" to see some typical examples.

Procedure

1. Choose your cover image, load it in Impict 506 and save it using Impict's .IPP image format. This is necessary to make the text objects and variables available to Help+Manual so that it can exchange them while publishing.
2. Add Text objects and type in the variables you want Help+Manual to replace when you publish the book, using the **<%VARIABLE_NAME%>** syntax. For example, **<%**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

TITLE%> and **<%AUTHOR%>** will insert the project title and author name from the Title and Copyright settings in the Configuration section of your project.

3. You can use the Impict tools to make the cover more attractive. For example, you can insert filled shapes behind the text objects to make the text stand out against the background, and you can add shadow effects to the text.
4. Choose the .IPP file as the cover image in your eBook settings, in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eBooks** > **ePUB+Kindle: General Settings**.

6.2.7.5 eBook settings and templates

The basic configuration settings for ePUB listed below can be found here:

- **Project Explorer: Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eBooks (ePUB, Kindle, eWriter)** > **ePUB+Kindle: General Settings**

In addition to this, the shared HTML Export Options 1435 settings in the Publishing Options Settings for WebHelp are also used for eBooks.

ePUB and Kindle covers and TOC tutorial project

You can find a tutorial project with ready-to-use IPP cover image templates and templates for your eBook TOC in the *Examples\ePub Covers* folder in your *My HelpAndManual Projects* directory.

Relevant settings in HTML Export Options

Most of the settings in HTML Export Options 1435 are used for eBooks but the following settings require special comments:

Font size encoding: Always set this to **percent** or **ems**! If you do not do this the user will not be able to adjust the font size on many ePUB eBook readers. It is also advisable to set the font size for Normal to 100% of the browser's default font. Other values may have unexpected results on some readers.

Export lists as text: This should generally be on to get the most consistent list formatting across different eBook readers and devices.

Popups: Irrelevant for eBooks, no popups are available.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ePUB+Kindle eBook settings

Cover pictures

Just click and select an image to add front and/or back cover pictures. You must use an HTML-compatible format (JPG, PNG or GIF).

Configuration options

The only fields that are absolutely required are the book ID (UID), which is the unique identifier for your eBook, and the title, without which your eBook will not display its title properly in readers. Most of the other options are recommended, however.

You can use text variables 917 in all the fields listed below.

Book ID: *Required!*	Also referred to as the UID. This is the unique identifier of your eBook, so you should attempt to make it genuinely unique to avoid confusion with other available publications. You can use any alphanumeric text string here – for example your web address plus the name of the book.
URI: *Optional but recommended*	A web link, for example to a page with information about the book on your website. It's a good idea to include this as eBook readers often have online access. Always include the `http://` prefix with the URI, plain `www.` addresses will probably fail!
ISBN: *Optional, recommended if you have one*	If your book has an ISBN code then enter it here.
Book Title: *Technically optional but required for proper display of book title in readers*	The title of your eBook. You can use the `<\%TITLE%>` variable to insert the title of your project here.
Subject: *Optional but recommended*	A short description of your eBook's subject matter.
Description: *Optional, generally helpful*	A longer description of your eBook.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Author: *Optional but recommended*	The author of your eBook. If you have entered the author of your project in your Common Properties you can insert the <%AUTHOR%> variable here to use the same text string automatically.
File Author as: *Optional*	An additional attribute for the author that shows explicitly how the author is to be filed officially. For example, you might enter `Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr.` for *Author* and `King, Martin Luther Jr.` for *File As*.
Publisher: *Optional but recommended*	The publisher (i.e. your company) of the eBook.
Copyright: *Optional but recommended*	Your copyright notice. You can use the <\%COPYRIGHT%> variable to insert the standard copyright notice stored in your project.
Relation: *Optional*	Relation information for your eBook, this can be an URI (weblink, the new term for URLs) or other information. This is defined as an "auxiliary resource and its relationship to the publication".
Embed fonts:	Embeds the fonts used in your project in the eBook. See below for more details on this.
Export HelpXplain slide shows as interactive HTML:	If your project contains a HelpXplain slide show activating this option will export it with full interactivity instead of as a static image.Only use this option if you are certain that the eBook readers you are targeting will support it. Most readers have very limited HTML5 and CSS3 support. s

Font embedding

You can embed fonts used in your ePUB and Kindle eBooks. This is required for languages with special character sets on some readers, including Adobe Digital Editions. Apple iBooks does not require font embedding for special characters, but you may wish to embed fonts to get more control over your book's appearance.

Kindle does not display embedded fonts by default

Note that Kindle readers and apps do not user your embedded fonts by default. The user must activate them in the device's or reader's font settings and must know that the setting

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

is available. If your layout depends on a specific font you need to be aware that that font will **not** be displayed by default on Kindle devices and apps!

Font rights, eBook size

Embedding fonts can make your eBook considerably larger and you must have permission from the font copyright holder to distribute the fonts you embed.

See Managing Fonts in eBooks 764 for full details.

Table of Contents template for Kindle and ePUB

You can view and edit the Kindle and ePUB table of contents template in your project configuration settings in this location:

Project Explorer > Configuration > Publishing Options > eBooks > ePUB+Kindle: Table of Contents

This works in the same way as the templates in WebHelp: The template provides the basic page layout and Help+Manual inserts the pre-formatted content into it.

Usually, you don't need to make any changes to the Table of Contents template for eBook output. It is already set up for maximum compatibility.

Edit the page template at your own risk:

If you want to make adjustments to the template you can edit it. However, please only do this if you are familiar with the eBook requirements, which are very strict. If something goes wrong, just click on the **Reset Defaults** button to get the original standard template back.

HTML page template for Kindle and ePUB

You can view and edit the Kindle and ePUB page template in your project configuration settings in this location:

Project Explorer > Configuration > Publishing Options > eBooks > ePUB+Kindle: Page Template

This works in the same way as the templates in WebHelp: The template provides the basic page layout and Help+Manual inserts the pre-formatted content into it using the corresponding variables.

Usually, you don't need to make any changes to the page template for ePUB output. It is already set up for maximum compatibility with eBooks. Remember that eBook pages are

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

very simple, and that adding any kind of additional layout is more likely to cause problems than be helpful.

Edit the page template at your own risk:

If you want to make adjustments to the template you can edit it. However, please only do this if you are familiar with the eBook requirements, which are very strict. If something goes wrong, just click on the **Reset Defaults** button to get the original standard template back.

6.2.7.6 Managing Fonts in eBooks

Be warned that fonts in ePUB and Kindle eBooks are a tricky subject. The majority of eBook readers and apps actually prefer to allow the user to set the base font, rather than the author. Many, including Apple iBooks®, will let the user change the base font displayed even if you set it yourself. The fonts available on eBook readers are also often limited and different from those available on computers.

Key Information
Always set font size encoding to **percent** or **ems** for in HTML Export Options 760 for eBooks. Otherwise the user will not be able to adjust font size on many devices.

Font embedding: background and issues

The only way to get any control at all over the fonts in your ePUB and Kindle/Mobi eBooks is to embed the fonts you use in your eBooks. Help+Manual can do this in a way that is accepted universally, even by the famously picky Apple iBooks® reader. However, this will increase the size of your eBooks and there are copyright issues. Also, the Kindle apps and devices will **not** display the fonts you set by default! The user must activate "publisher fonts" in the settings and must know that this is possible. This means that if your layout depends on specific fonts, it will fail initially on Kindle devices and readers.

You may decide that it is better to let the reader control your fonts. Given the current situation, this is probably the only really sane solution.

You must have copyright permission for embedded fonts

Most fonts are copyrighted and you can only embed and distribute them in your eBooks if you have permission from the copyright holders. This can be time-consuming and expensive. We recommend using free OpenType fonts, that eliminate this problem. See below for sources.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Font embedding is required for non-English languages on some readers

Adobe Digital Editions and some other ePUB readers require embedded fonts for all non-English languages requiring special character sets. This does not apply to Apple iBooks® and Kindle readers and apps, but if you are publishing non-English languages for other readers you must embed your fonts for correct character display. As a general rule of thumb, always test your books on all the devices and readers where you expect them to be read before releasing them.

iOS devices only know their own fonts

Apple iBooks® on iOS devices can handle multiple languages very well. However, they only have their own special fonts available, and their names are different from those of most standard fonts. You can target these fonts directly in Help+Manual (see below) but then you may get unexpected font displays on other readers that do not have the same Apple fonts installed. However, there are enough fonts in the Apple list with matching names so that you can get reasonably good cross-platform results without embedding fonts if you are only use these fonts (see below).

Unicode fonts are required

Unicode is an absolute requirement for ePUB so you must use Unicode fonts. Do not try to embed non-Unicode fonts, it will almost certainly not work and can produce disastrous results.

There is no universal solution

At the moment, whatever you do will be a compromise. Basically, you just have to accept that full control over your fonts on all target devices is not possible at the moment, even with font embedding. And if you embed your fonts you need to deal with the problems associated with embedding.

Use "Print View" style settings

No matter which fonts you decide to use in your eBooks, we urge you to activate and use "Print View" style settings in the projects that you publish to eBooks. This will allow you to set different fonts and other style settings for your eBooks and for your normal electronic help formats like WebHelp and CHM.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

These settings are used for eBooks in the same way as for Word and PDF output and they make it possible to target fonts that do not exist on your Windows computer (for example the special fonts that are only installed on Apple iOS devices).

See Multiple style sets 302 for information and instructions.

Fonts on Apple iOS devices (iPad etc.)

Apple iOS devices have their own fonts and most of their names will not match the fonts available on your Windows computer. If you want to use your own fonts you must activate font embedding and make sure that you have copyright permission to distribute them or use free OpenType fonts (see below). Or you can target the fonts used on iOS directly or you can just use your own standard Windows fonts and let the iOS device and the user choose the fonts to be displayed.

Option 1: Use standard Windows fonts

This is the simplest solution and it hands over font control to the iOS devices. Set your standard fonts to normal Windows fonts like Arial and Times New Roman and don't turn on font embedding in your ePUB publishing options 761. Apple iBooks will then use its own fonts and the user will be able to change the fonts as they please. This is generally a good idea for your base font (the font used for the majority of your body text) and it has the added advantage of working on all ePUB readers. You can still target specific iOS fonts for special styles if you like.

Option 2: Target the iOS fonts directly

If you use this option you must use the "Print View" style settings (see above) because it means entering the names of fonts not installed on your Windows machine. Manually enter the names of the iOS fonts (see below for a list) in your style definitions to target them.

Don't turn on font embedding! Targeting iOS fonts directly is not possible if you turn on font embedding. If you do, Help+Manual will automatically embed its own free OpenType Unicode fonts for all fonts that are not found when the ePUB is published.

Option 3: Embed your fonts

Use this option for full control. If you do this all the fonts you use must be available on your Windows machine. Help+Manual will replace any fonts not found with its own OpenType Unicode alternatives.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The fonts you use should either be free fonts or fonts for which you have distribution permission. See below for sources for free OpenType Unicode fonts.

Set your fonts in your "Print View" styles (see above) and activate font embedding in your ePUB publishing settings.

Fonts on Adobe Digital Editions and similar readers

Adobe Digital Editions and similar readers only have the absolute minimum of fonts on board and they do not access the fonts installed on the computer on which they are running. Also, the included fonts only work for English. If you want to use special fonts or display languages other than English (or languages that use the English alphabet) you must embed your fonts when you are targeting these readers.

The fonts you use should either be free fonts or fonts for which you have distribution permission. See below for sources for free OpenType Unicode fonts.

Set your fonts in your "Print View" styles (see above) and activate font embedding in your ePUB publishing settings.

List of iOS fonts and sources for free OpenType fonts

List of iOS fonts

This website lists the fonts currently available on Apple iOS devices and their names. If you want to target these fonts in your Print View style settings you must enter the font names exactly as listed here. For example, "*AmericanTypewriter*" will work but "*American Typewriter*" will probably not!

List of fonts on iOS devices

Sources for free OpenType fonts

The Unifont website is a great resource for locating and downloading free Unicode OpenType fonts that you can use without fear of copyright infringement problems:

http://www.unifont.org/fontguide/

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.2.7.7 Distributing ePUB and Kindle eBooks

Distributing ePUB eBooks directly

Distributing ePUB eBooks is very simple. You can normally distribute them directly to your customers or users, even if you are targeting Apple iOS/iBooks devices. Unlike iOS apps, you do not have to distribute eBooks through the Apple store, known as the iBookstore. Users can install your eBooks directly on their iPad, iPhone or iPod Touch with the free Apple iTunes program. The same applies to most other ePUB eBook readers, although you should always check for the specific stores or devices you are targeting.

Easiest distribution method for unprotected ePUB and Kindle books: Via QR code

Put the eBook file online and post the URL to the file as a QR code, which can be generated by Help+Manual. Users then scan the QR code with their device camera and the book is downloaded and loaded automatically by the Kindle app (except on Windows Phone). This works for ePUB eBooks and unprotected Kindle/Mobi books for viewing with Kindle apps, except on Windows Phone devices. Kindle hardware readers can only load eBooks via USB or from the Kindle store.

If you want to add Digital Rights Management (DRM) to ePUB

Just like digital music, digital eBook sales are generally more successful if you don't annoy your honest customers with DRM (digital rights management / copy protection).

If you must add DRM to ePUB books you will need to go through a service provider to do this, as it is a complex and expensive process.

Service providers recommended by Adobe

Distributing Kindle books through the Kindle store

You can submit the Kindle/Mobi books generated by Help+Manual directly to the Kindle Direct Publishing program for distribution via the Kindle store. Get started on this Amazon page for information and instructions:

Amazon Kindle Direct Publishing

If you want to distribute through the Apple iBookstore

If for some reason you want to or must publish through the Apple iBookstore be warned that it is a complex process that may be expensive. Some authors have found that they do not have full control over where and how their books are made available. Here too, it is

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

recommended that you go through an ePUB service provider, which Apple refers to as "aggregators".

Apple iBookstore FAQ for eBook publishing

iBookstore aggregators approved by Apple

6.2.7.8 ePUB resources

This page contains a selection of hardware, software and information resources relating to the ePUB format and ePUB eBooks. It is not necessarily complete, but it is a good starting-point.

Reference reader devices and readers for testing

Apple iBooks

The only reference eBook reader for iBooks is the Apple iPad, with the iBooks app installed from the Apple App Store. If you want to distribute your eBooks for iOS devices you must have access to a physical iPad for testing. You will also need access to an iPhone or iPod Touch if you expect your books to be read on these smaller devices. You can install ePUB eBooks on these devices with Apple iTunes. Just connect the device to your computer and drag the ePUB file onto the iPad entry in the iTunes window.

Other hardware readers

It's a good idea to have access to the physical hardware readers you are targeting for testing. Some have more limited capabilities than others.

Software readers - get Adobe Digital Editions

The reference software reader is the free Adobe Digital Editions. Before trying to create ePUB eBooks you should download this free reader from Adobe and install it. If you don't do this you won't be able to view your ePUB eBooks on your Windows computer after creating them with Help+Manual. ADE generally provides a good idea of how your eBook is going to look on software readers.

Up-to-date resources list on Wikipedia

The most up-to-date list of ePUB resources is available on this page on Wikipedia:

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/EPUB

Hardware devices supporting ePub eBooks

The following hardware readers currently support ePUB eBooks, either directly or with free additional software. The most notably absent device on this list at the moment is the Amazon Kindle, which still uses its own closed proprietary format. However, it is rumored that ePUB support for the Kindle is in the works and due to be released in the near future.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Dedicated hardware ePUB and eBook readers
There are now a wide range of hardware ePUB and eBook readers on market. See the Comparison of e-readers on Wikipedia for a good list of the currently available devices and their capabilities.

Apple iPad, iPhone and iPod Touch
All these devices support ePUB directly with the iBooks® eBook reader integrated in their iOS operating system. Help+Manual ePUB eBooks are fully compatible with Apple iBooks®. There are also other eBook readers for iOS available in the Apple iTunes App Store.

Android smartphones and tablets
A wide variety of ePUB readers are available for Android.

Other mobile phones and smartphones
Many other mobile devices also support ePUB eBooks.

Software readers for ePub eBooks

Software readers for ePUB eBooks are already available on many platforms. The following list only includes the known software-based readers that support the ePUB format at the time of writing – others may already be available.

The reference software reader is Adobe Digital Editions used to be a good choice but it is now no longer supported so well and it has been involved in controversies regarding Adobe's use of user data. For general testing on Windows, Mac OS and Linux we now recommend the Calibre eBook Reader.

Calibre eBook Reader (*Windows, Apple Mac OS, Linux)*
This free program is now the software ePUB reader with the best support for ePUB and we strongly recommend that you install it for testing your ePUB books.

Other software eBook readers
There is now such a large number of software-based eBook readers for all current systems that it would be impossible to make any recommendations here. You will need to check current reviews for the best readers for the system you want to use. For testing your own eBooks, however, we can warmly recommend Calibre.

Online resources for ePub eBooks

Melody Simmons eBook Indie Covers
Excellent site for everything related to eBook covers and cover images.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

International Digital Publishing Forum
This is main home page for ePUB and everything relating to the ePUB format. This is also where you can find full specifications of the open ePUB format.

Project Gutenberg
A huge number of free eBooks in all categories, including both classics and new books.

Feedbooks
Free classics in ePUB format.

Snee
Free children's picture books in ePUB format

See also:

Output Formats - eBooks 1519
Publishing Options - eBooks 1472

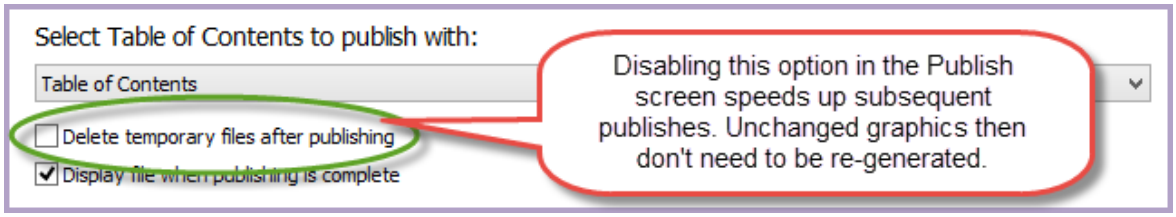
6.2.7.9 Optimize Publish Speed

When you are publishing this format Help+Manual generates a temporary folder for the intermediate source files that are used to create the final output. These are all the files that go into your final documentation, including the graphics. You can optimize publishing speed for large projects by changing the location of these temporary files and whether they are deleted or not between publishing operations.

Similarly, optimizing the location of your output folder and the project itself can also speed up publication by reducing the time required to write all the necessary files.

Not deleting the temporary files can speed up subsequent publishes

If you disable the option for deleting the temporary files after publishing this can sometimes quite significantly speed up subsequent publish operations for the same project. This is because the graphics that have not changed in the project no longer need to be re-generated. This effect will be particularly pronounced if you have a lot of graphics in your project that you have resized in the HM editor.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Should you use a RAM drive?

A RAM drive is a virtual, volatile hard disk created in the computer's memory that provides maximum access speeds. Its contents disappear when you shut down or restart your computer, so it may not provide the benefits of not deleting your temporary files (see above) between sessions. Also, this means that RAM drives should never be used as your output folder, because their contents disappear much too easily.

If you use one it must be large enough to accommodate all the files you write while publishing and you need to be very careful that it does not fill up completely while you are publishing, otherwise you will get errors. Instructions for how to do this go beyond the scope of this documentation. Generally you will need a special software utility to set up a RAM drive.

Never use RAM drives for your output folder!

This is important, so we're going to repeat it: The contents of RAM drives disappear as soon as you shut down or restart your computer. So you should only ever use them for temporary files, never for your output folders!

A RAM drive can improve performance if you only have spinning hard disks

RAM drives are much faster than spinning hard drives so if you don't have an SSD it can be worth it to set up a RAM drive for your temporary publishing files, if you have enough memory. However, an even better solution is to get a modern SSD because that will radically improve the performance of your entire system.

Don't bother with a RAM drive if you have a fast SSD

RAM drives are much faster than spinning hard drives but only marginally faster than SSDs for Help+Manual publishing. If you have a fast SSD, setting up a RAM drive will almost never provide a noticeable improvement, so it is not worth the effort then.

Optimize the locations of your project, temp files and output folders

Optimizing the locations of your project, temporary files and output folders can all speed up publishing.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Best solution all round: Everything on a fast local SSD

For the fastest possible publishing speed your project, temporary files folder and output folder should all be on a fast local SSD on the computer where Help+Manual is running. Then there are no network transfers during publishing and everything can run at maximum speed.

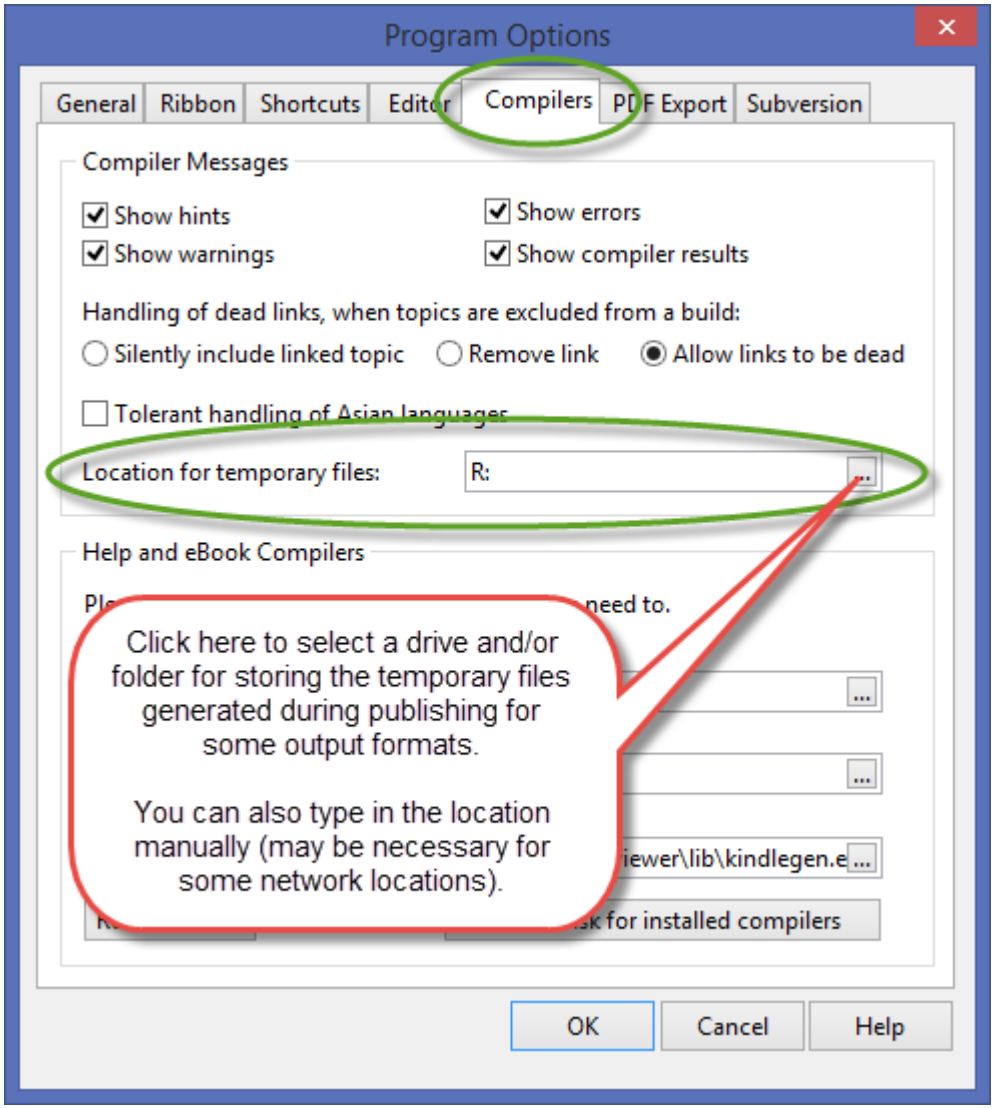
Best solution for network projects: Temporary files on a fast local SSD

If you are working on a collaborative project then it must be on a network drive. In this case you can still improve performance a lot by putting your temporary files on a fast local SSD on the computer where Help+Manual is running to publish the project. Having the output folder on the local drive will also improve performance, but not as much as having the temporary files there.

How to change the temp files folder location

You can find the setting in the Compilers section of the main program options, in **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers**. The setting applies to all output formats that use temporary files before (CHM, ePUB, Kindle, eWriter, Visual Studio help). The temporary files are written in sub-folders with names based on the project name and the output format.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Exclude your output and temp files folders from your virus checker

On current Windows systems interactive virus checking is performed on every file being written and can significantly increase the time it takes to generate your published output. Excluding your output folder and temp files folder from virus checking can speed up publication of large projects very significantly.

First set up a specific folder where your temporary files will be written (see above). If possible, also set up a folder where you always write your output files. This can contain multiple sub-folders for your different output requirements. Then you can configure your virus checker to exclude these folders from checking.

The instructions below explain how to do this for Windows' own integrated Windows De-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

fender or Security Essentials virus checking. If you are using a commercial solution you will need to consult your virus checker's documentation to learn how to exclude folders from checking. Note that commercial virus checkers often slow down your system much more than Windows' own solution.

Excluding your output and temp folders from Windows Defender or Windows Security Essentials

1. Open Windows Defender (or Security Essentials on older versions of Windows).
2. Select the **Settings** tab and then on the left select *Excluded files and locations*.
3. Click on the **Browse** button on the right and select the folder you want to exclude.
4. Click on the **Add** button to add the selected folder to the exclusions, then select the option at the bottom of the dialog to save your settings.

6.2.8 Visual Studio Help

Visual Studio Help is available in two versions, Visual Studio Help 2008 and 2010, which are also known as MS Help 2.0 and MS Help 3.0, respectively. Originally, each of these help formats was announced as the upcoming the successor to HTML Help. However, in both cases Microsoft then backpedaled and it now seems clear that they are not going to be released as help formats for normal user applications.

About configuring Visual Studio Help output:

The two Visual Studio Help formats are only relevant for documenting programming components within the Visual Studio .NET environment. If this does not apply to you please don't worry about this help format. It cannot be used for any other purpose.

Please refer to the special Visual Studio Help 1132 chapter in the **More Advanced Procedures** section for details on working with Visual Studio Help in Help+Manual.

See also:

Visual Studio Help 1464 (Advanced Procedures)
Visual Studio Help 1464 (Configuration Options)
Visual Studio Help 1525 (Reference)

6.2.8.1 Optimize Publish Speed

When you are publishing this format Help+Manual generates a temporary folder for the intermediate source files that are used to create the final output. These are all the files that go into your final documentation, including the graphics. You can optimize publishing speed for large projects by changing the location of these temporary files and whether they are deleted or not between publishing operations.

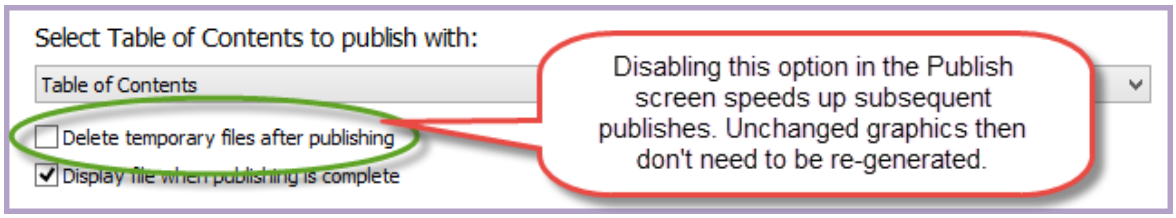
Similarly, optimizing the location of your output folder and the project itself can also speed

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

up publication by reducing the time required to write all the necessary files.

Not deleting the temporary files can speed up subsequent publishes

If you disable the option for deleting the temporary files after publishing this can sometimes quite significantly speed up subsequent publish operations for the same project. This is because the graphics that have not changed in the project no longer need to be re-generated. This effect will be particularly pronounced if you have a lot of graphics in your project that you have resized in the HM editor.



Should you use a RAM drive?

A RAM drive is a virtual, volatile hard disk created in the computer's memory that provides maximum access speeds. Its contents disappear when you shut down or restart your computer, so it may not provide the benefits of not deleting your temporary files (see above) between sessions. Also, this means that RAM drives should never be used as your output folder, because their contents disappear much too easily.

If you use one it must be large enough to accommodate all the files you write while publishing and you need to be very careful that it does not fill up completely while you are publishing, otherwise you will get errors. Instructions for how to do this go beyond the scope of this documentation. Generally you will need a special software utility to set up a RAM drive.

Never use RAM drives for your output folder!

This is important, so we're going to repeat it: The contents of RAM drives disappear as soon as you shut down or restart your computer. So you should only ever use them for temporary files, never for your output folders!

A RAM drive can improve performance if you only have spinning hard disks

RAM drives are much faster than spinning hard drives so if you don't have an SSD it can

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

be worth it to set up a RAM drive for your temporary publishing files, if you have enough memory. However, an even better solution is to get a modern SSD because that will radically improve the performance of your entire system.

Don't bother with a RAM drive if you have a fast SSD

RAM drives are much faster than spinning hard drives but only marginally faster than SSDs for Help+Manual publishing. If you have a fast SSD, setting up a RAM drive will almost never provide a noticeable improvement, so it is not worth the effort then.

Optimize the locations of your project, temp files and output folders

Optimizing the locations of your project, temporary files and output folders can all speed up publishing.

Best solution all round: Everything on a fast local SSD

For the fastest possible publishing speed your project, temporary files folder and output folder should all be on a fast local SSD on the computer where Help+Manual is running. Then there are no network transfers during publishing and everything can run at maximum speed.

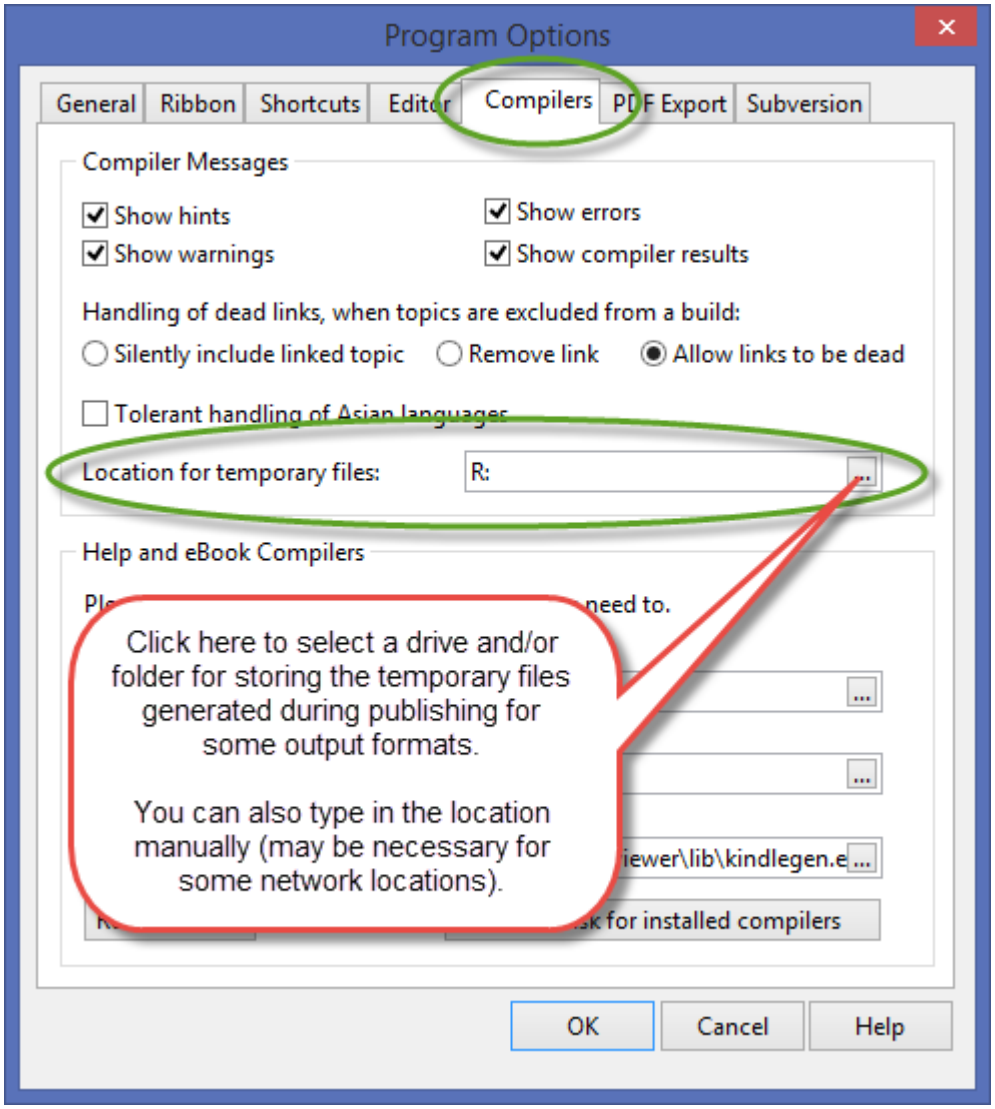
Best solution for network projects: Temporary files on a fast local SSD

If you are working on a collaborative project then it must be on a network drive. In this case you can still improve performance a lot by putting your temporary files on a fast local SSD on the computer where Help+Manual is running to publish the project. Having the output folder on the local drive will also improve performance, but not as much as having the temporary files there.

How to change the temp files folder location

You can find the setting in the Compilers section of the main program options, in **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers**. The setting applies to all output formats that use temporary files before (CHM, ePUB, Kindle, eWriter, Visual Studio help). The temporary files are written in sub-folders with names based on the project name and the output format.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Exclude your output and temp files folders from your virus checker

On current Windows systems interactive virus checking is performed on every file being written and can significantly increase the time it takes to generate your published output. Excluding your output folder and temp files folder from virus checking can speed up publication of large projects very significantly.

First set up a specific folder where your temporary files will be written (see above). If possible, also set up a folder where you always write your output files. This can contain multiple sub-folders for your different output requirements. Then you can configure your virus checker to exclude these folders from checking.

The instructions below explain how to do this for Windows' own integrated Windows De-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

fender or Security Essentials virus checking. If you are using a commercial solution you will need to consult your virus checker's documentation to learn how to exclude folders from checking. Note that commercial virus checkers often slow down your system much more than Windows' own solution.

Excluding your output and temp folders from Windows Defender or Windows Security Essentials

1. Open Windows Defender (or Security Essentials on older versions of Windows).
2. Select the **Settings** tab and then on the left select *Excluded files and locations*.
3. Click on the **Browse** button on the right and select the folder you want to exclude.
4. Click on the **Add** button to add the selected folder to the exclusions, then select the option at the bottom of the dialog to save your settings.

6.3 Testing and Statistics

Testing your help project is just as important as testing your application. You should publish your project 613 regularly, view the output, test its interaction with your application 892 and also use Help+Manual's tools and features for checking your project for help bugs.

In addition to invalid macros and scripts 452 (which you are responsible for checking yourself) help bugs can include dead and inappropriate links, missing graphics and inappropriate index keywords.

6.3.1 Tools for finding help bugs

Help+Manual includes a number of tools and features that help you to find "help bugs" in your project:

Project reports

The Report Tool 780 gives you a comprehensive overview of the current state of your project, allowing you to check topics, links, graphics and other elements.

Testing links and missing graphics

You can test links 781 directly in the Help+Manual editor. Dead and invalid links are highlighted automatically in the editor. Missing graphics are immediately visible, highlighted as a big red X.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Searching for topics and referrers

There are a number of different ways to search for topics and referrers 782 by text, topic IDs and help context numbers. Referrers are other topics that refer to the current topic, and checking them can sometimes be useful.

Checking keywords

The Index Tool 568 is very useful for checking and managing the keywords in your project. Among other things, it enables you to immediately see and eliminate duplicate keywords with variant spellings and formats.

6.3.2 Using the Report Tool

The Project Reports tool can generate reports with varying degrees of detail on your entire project, chapters or even individual topics. You can also generate reports on topics modified between specific dates, topics associated with specific help window types 194 and topics with a specified status 373. For details see The Report Tool 1212.

Information you can get with the Report Tool

- **Word and character count** for both individual topics and the entire project (Full Report mode only)
- **Topic details of all topics**, including titles, topic IDs, help context numbers, inclusion options and date edited
- **Keywords in all topics**, listed by topic
- **All hyperlinks**, both to and from topics, listed by topic
- **All topic anchors**, listed by topic, including anchor keywords and context numbers
- **All images used**, listed by topic
- **Topics without index keywords**
- **Topics without TOC entries**
- **Unused images** found in the project's image folders
- **Detailed project statistics**, including the number of topics with topic type, number of keywords with keyword type, number of links and hotspots with types (including scripts and macros) and the number of images with names and list of where they are referenced.

See also:

The Report Tool 1212

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.3.3 Word and Character Count

Word count for a single topic:

Select the topic, then select the Word Count tool in **Write** > **Font**.

Word count for the entire project:

Select the Report tool 1212 in the Project tab and choose the *Full Report* option. This will include a word and character count at the end of the report, and individual word counts for each topic.

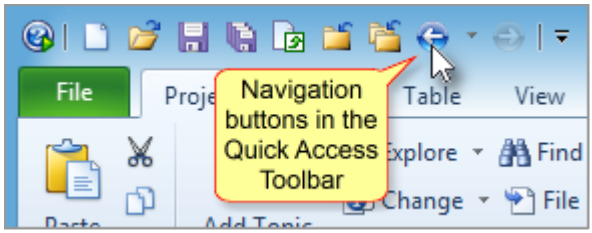
You can include/exclude topics in/from the entire report and the word count by selecting or deselecting Include Options 969 and the other filtering options in the report dialog (topic classes, topic status, modification date range).

6.3.4 Testing links and missing graphics

All links and graphics inserted in your projects incorporate dynamic validity checking features. Dead links to other topics in your project are automatically highlighted in red and a popup explanation is displayed when you position the mouse over them if the mouseover hints feature is enabled in **File** > **Program Options** > **General.** Missing images are clearly indicated by a square graphic with a red **X** in the middle.

How to test links in the editor

- Hold down **`Ctrl`** and click on the link to visit the topic to which the link points.
- In addition to topic links you can also use this feature to test Internet links and file links and to display the source topics of linked snippets 265.



- Use the Back button in the Quick Access Toolbar and the History button between the Back and Next buttons to return to the topic you were editing before testing the link.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Dead links and graphics in the editor

Dead links to other topics in your project and missing graphics are clearly identified in the editor, you can't miss them. Dead links are highlighted in red, missing graphics files are shown as a square with a big red **X** in the middle. Note that the mouseover popup information for dead links is only displayed if this feature is activated in **View** > **Program Options** > **General.**

Links to external targets:

Links to external targets (outside your project) and other help projects cannot be checked by Help+Manual. You are responsible for checking these yourself.

Locating dead links and graphics with the Report Tool

You can generate a full list of dead links and missing graphics in all or part of your project with the Report Tool 1212, which is accessed in **Project** > **Tools** .

See also:

The Report Tool 1212

6.3.5 Searching for topics and referrers

When you are testing your project you will often want to find topics and check links to and from your topics. Help+Manual includes several tools that make this a quick and easy process. In addition to the search functions described here you can also use the Report Tool 1212 to generate detailed reports on your project with full lists of topics, links, graphics and other details.

The functions for finding and replacing text in Help+Manual are very similar to the comparable functions in word processors, with some additional options for the special requirements of help projects.

In addition to this the program also has powerful functions for locating individual topics by their topic IDs and their context numbers, and for locating "referrers", i.e. topics containing links to the current topic or topics.

Productivity Tip
The Search function is also available in the XML Source editor tab (Professional and Floating license versions only) and all HTML editor windows for HTML templates and other editing windows. Just right-click in these editor windows to access.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to find and replace text

1. Select **Write** > **Editing** > **Find & Replace...** or press **Ctrl+F**.
2. Enter your search text and choose your options. These are self-explanatory and are very similar to all search and replace functions in all modern word processors.

Find where:

Topic Keywords searches for index keywords you have associated with your topics.

Image File Names changes the filenames of graphics file references in your projects so that they refer to files with different names. See below for details.

Captions searches in TOC captions (the *Topic Title* field in the Topic options tab below the main editor window). Note that replacing this text does not change the name of the topic in the TOC or the header in the header box above the editor. Instead, it "uncouples" the topic title attribute from the other two texts, giving it a different value.

Table of Contents searches in the TOC in the Project Explorer (search only, no replace).

Conditional Texts searches and replaces the tag names in conditional text build tags. See Conditional text include options 994 for details on how these tags work and how they are used.

How to find and replace variables and conditional tags

Variables:

Note: This only works for variables that have been typed in manually. You can't use the search function to locate variables inserted with the Variable tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**.

1. Select *Find & Replace* in the **Edit** menu and set the scope of your search (current topic, all topics etc).
2. To search for a variable or replace text with a variable enter:
   `<% + VARIABLENAME + %>`

   For example if your variable is called **DEMOBUILD** you would type:

   `<%DEMOBUILD%>`

When you insert or replace variables with Find and Replace the variables are not highlighted in the topic text. This is exactly the same as typing in variables manually 932 – the variables are still fully functional, they are just not highlighted in the text. (The highlight is

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

just an editing convenience to make the variables easier to see.)

Conditional tags:

1. Select *Find & Replace* in the **Edit** menu and set the scope of your search (current topic, all topics etc).
2. Select *Conditional Texts* as the type of search to perform.
3. Enter the conditional tags you want to search for, including the commas if you are searching for tags with multiple conditions.

   Examples:

   Find what: `CHM,HTML`
   Find what: `USER1`
   Find what: `PDF,NEWBUILD,HTML`

How to find and replace images

Images are referenced with their file names only so you can "replace" them with other images by replacing their file names in your topics. Help+Manual finds the image files by searching through all the folders in your Project Search Path 514 so if the file name you use is in one of those folders Help+Manual will be able to find it.

1. Select **Write** > **Editing** > **Find & Replace...** or press **`Ctrl+F`**.
2. Select *Image File Names* in the *Find Where* section.
3. Enter the exact name of the image file as the search and replacement texts, including the file extension, for example: *main_screen.bmp*.
4. Choose your other options. These are self-explanatory and are very similar to all search and replace functions in all modern word processors.

Tip: Changing image type
You can change the type of image used by searching and replacing the file name extension. For example, if you have replaced all your PNG files with BMP files of the same name, you would just need to replace all instances of **`.png`** in image file names with the **`.bmp`** extension.

How to find topics by ID or context number

1. Select **Project** > **Manage Topics** > **Find** > **Find Topic**
2. Select *Topic ID* or *Help Context Number*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Find topics that link to the current topic

You can find links to the current topic with the *Find Referrers* function, which also shows which topics the current topics links to.

Links to and from the current topic:

- Select **Topics** > **Manage Topics** > **Find** > **Find Referrers**

  OR

- Right-click on a topic in the TOC and select **Find Referrers** in the context menu.

Selecting **Find Referrers** for a chapter in the TOC will display the referrers for all the topics in the chapter. You can also use this function for multiple topics. Just select two or more topics in the TOC before selecting the function. Note that this function will only find links to the current topic or topics in the current project! You cannot use this function to locate links to the topic in other projects or help files.

Finding links in all topics:

- Select **Project** > **Tools** > **Report Tool** and select either *Long Report* or *Full Report* mode.

The report will include lists of all outgoing and ingoing links in all topics in your project.

See also:

Find & Replace 1326 (Reference)
Find Referrers 1306 (Reference)
The Project Reports Tool 1212

6.3.6 Testing keywords

The Index Tool provides a preview of your finished index and it is also fully editable, allowing you to edit and correct keywords in all the topics where they occur at the same time.

The *Find and Replace Text* function in **Write** > **Editing** also works on keywords. You can locate and replace keywords in your entire project in a just a few seconds.

See also:

Keywords and Indexes 565
Editing the index directly 568
Searching for text, topics and referrers 235

6.4 PDF and Printed Manuals

In addition to publishing electronic help formats, Help+Manual can also generate fully-formatted user manuals, which can be printed directly or output as Adobe PDF files for distribution so that users can print their own manuals. Printed manuals are generated by creating a

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

temporary PDF file and then printing it, providing all the formatting options that are also available for PDF.

See also:

The Adobe PDF format 1523
Using PDF templates 803

6.4.1 About PDF output

Print manual templates

The layout of PDF files and printed manuals is defined in template files with the extension **.mnl** that are referred to as "print manual templates". These templates are edited with a program called the Print Manual Designer, which is included with Help+Manual.

You can create multiple print manual templates and use them to change the formatting and layout of your PDF files in seconds. this is similar to the skins 638 available for HTML-based output formats.

See Using PDF templates 803 for more details.

Additional pages and components in PDF files

In addition to the layout (margins etc), your print manual templates can also add a number of additional optional pages to your PDF documents that normal help files do not contain. These can include front and back cover pages, a print-style table of contents, a foreword, "intro" pages for your top-level chapters, pages of notes at the beginning or end of the document and so on.

You can also create your own addition pages in your templates, insert "snippet" objects that load text from external files or from topics in your Help+Manual project and create multi-column layouts.

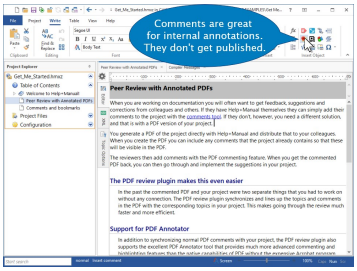
In addition to this, PDF documents have layout components that you do not need in electronic help: Headers and footers with page and section numbers, margin settings, formatted headings in the TOC and above topics and so on.

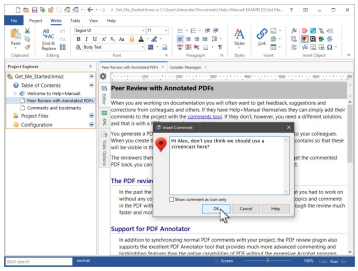
All these features are created and edited in your print manual templates which you can edit with the Print Manual Designer.

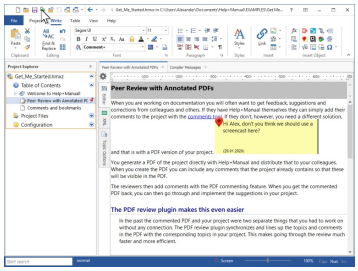
6.4.2 Peer review with annotated PDFs

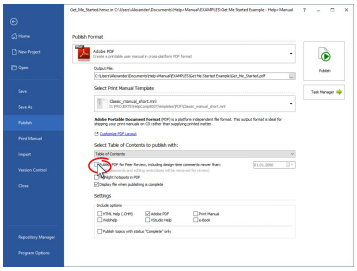
When you are working on documentation you will often want to get feedback, suggestions and corrections from colleagues and others. If they have Help+Manual themselves they can simply add their comments to the project with the comments tool 253. If they don't, however, you need a different solution, and that is with a PDF version of your project.

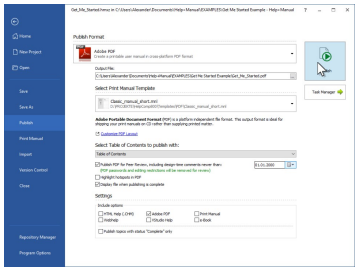
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

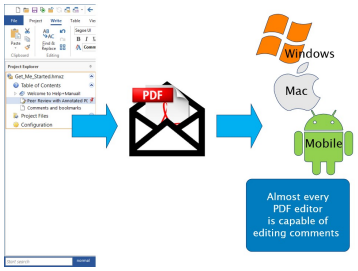


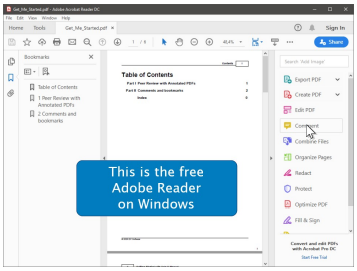


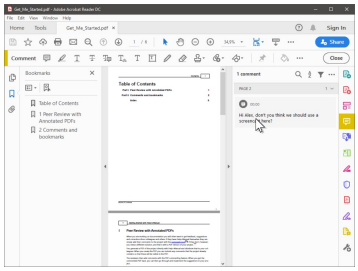


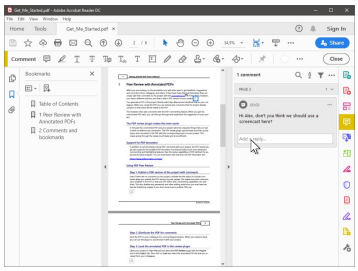


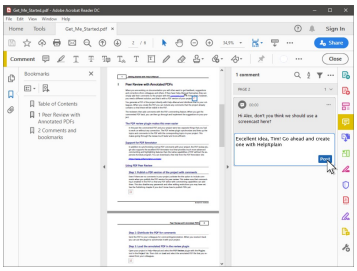


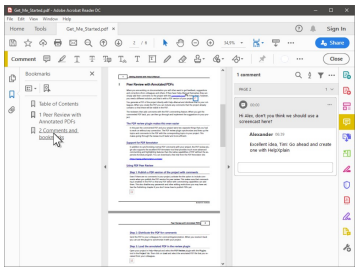


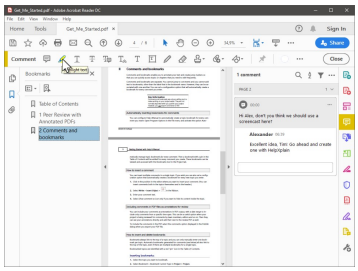


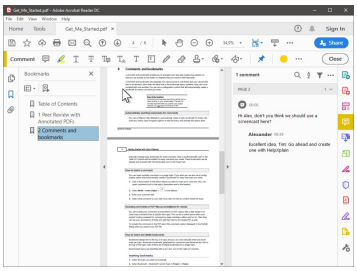


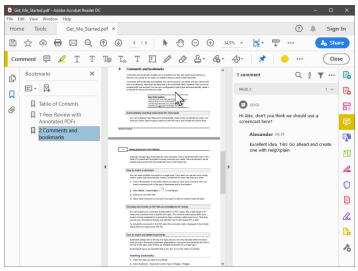




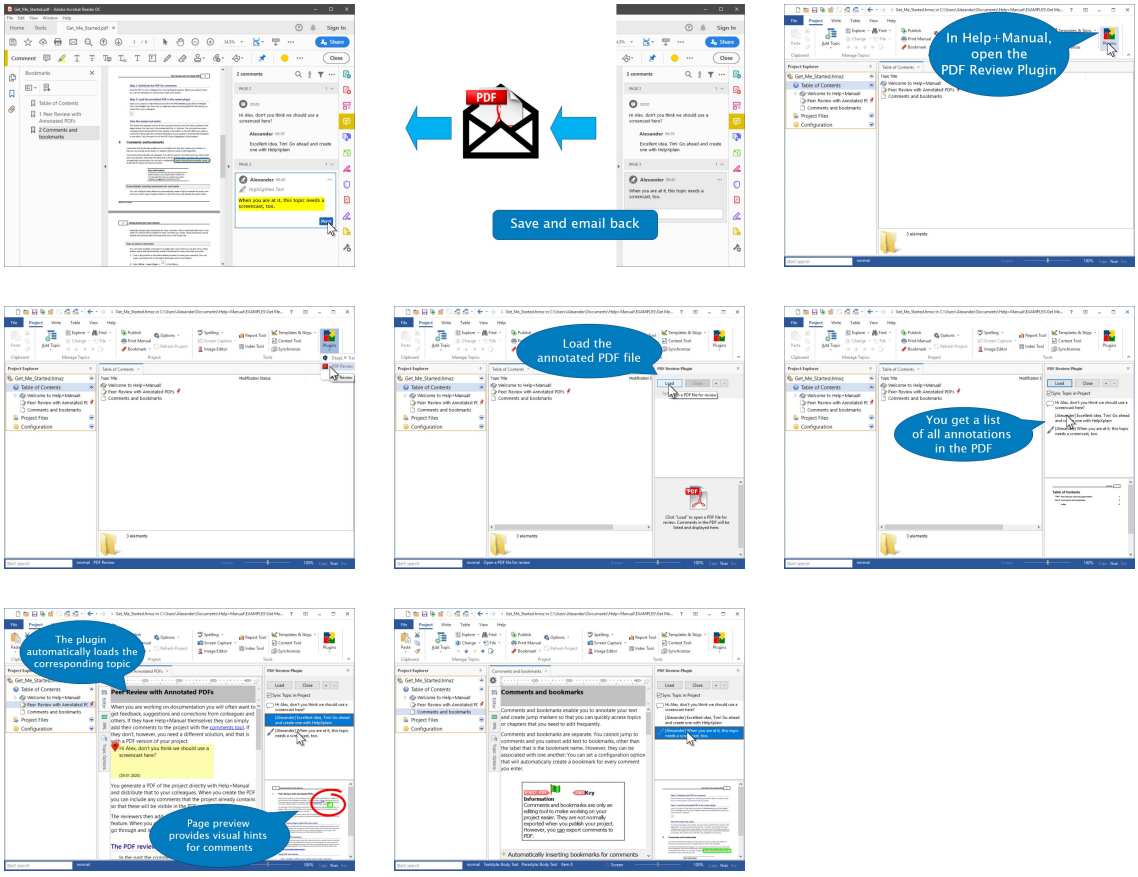








© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



PDF Review Plugin (2 minutes tutorial)

You generate a PDF 785 of the project directly with Help+Manual and distribute that to your colleagues. When you create the PDF you can include any comments that the project already contains so that these will be visible in the PDF.

The reviewers then add comments with the PDF commenting feature. When you get the commented PDF back, you can then go through and implement the suggestions in your project.

The PDF review plugin makes this even easier

In the past the commented PDF and your project were two separate things that you had to work on without any connection. The PDF review plugin synchronizes and lines up the topics and comments in the PDF with the corresponding topics in your project. This makes going through the review much faster and more efficient.

Support for PDF Annotator

In addition to synchronizing normal PDF comments with your project, the PDF review plu-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

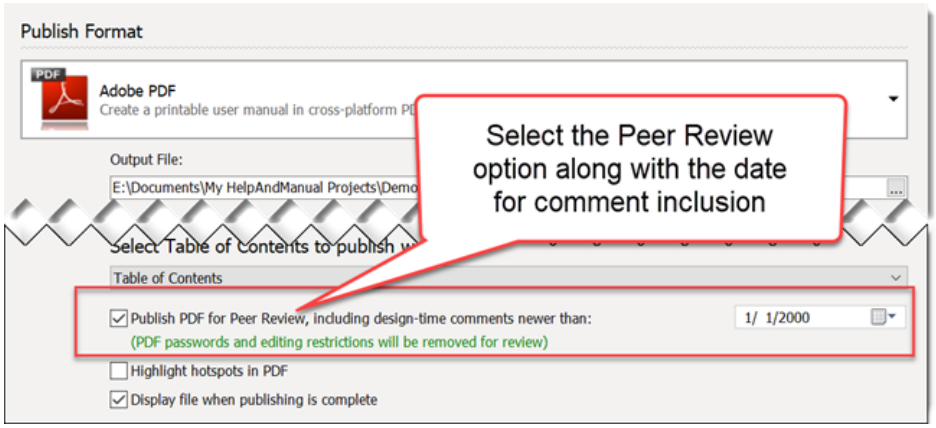
gin also supports the excellent PDF Annotator tool that provides much more advanced commenting and highlighting features than the native capabilities of PDF without the expensive Acrobat program. You can download a free trial from the PDF Annotator site:

https://www.pdfannotator.com/en/

Using PDF Peer Review

Step 1: Publish a PDF version of the project with comments

Even if there are no comments in your project, activate the the option to include comments when you publish the PDF version for peer review. This makes sure that commenting is enabled in the PDF so that any PDF editor with commenting capabilities can add them. This also disables any passwords and other editing restrictions you may have set. See the Publishing 613 chapter if you don't know how to publish PDFs yet.



Step 2: Distribute the PDF for comments

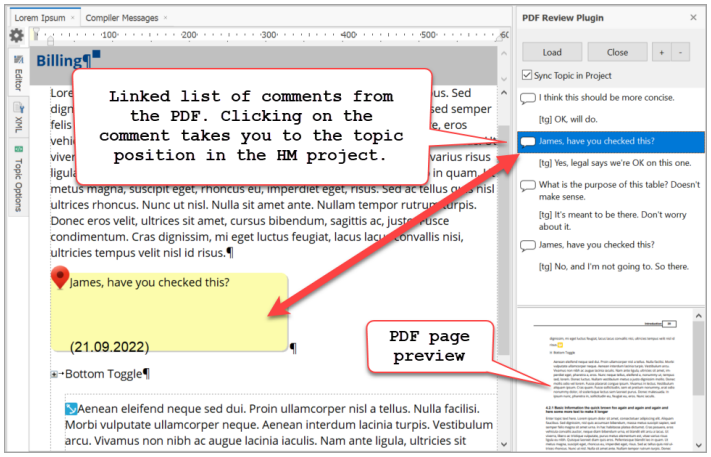
Send the PDF to your colleagues for commenting/annotation. When you receive it back you can use the plugin to synchronize it with your project.

Step 3: Load the annotated PDF in the review plugin

Open your project in Help+Manual and select the **PDF Review** plugin with the **Plugins** tool in the **Project** Tab. Then click on **Load** and select the annotated PDF file that you received from your colleagues.

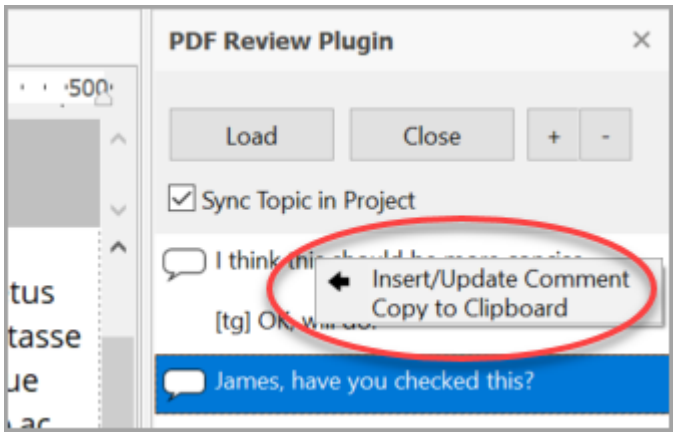
The list of comments in the PDF include answers from your colleagues. All the list items are live links that take you directly to the corresponding comment location in the project topic when you click on them.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Right-click context menu

If you right-click on a comment in the list you get a context menu with which you can copy the comment to the clipboard or update it in your Help+Manual project.



How the review tool works

The review tool displays a list of all the comments found in the PDF with a preview of the pages below. You can zoom the preview with the +/- buttons. The comments are automatically synchronized with the topic display in the editor on the left. When you select a comment in the plugin the corresponding topic in your project is automatically displayed in the editor. The comment icon in the PDF is also highlighted in the preview.

6.4.3 Topic headings

The formatting of your topic headings in your Help+Manual project is ignored in PDF. This is one of the key things to understand when generating PDFs in Help+Manual. Only the plain text of your topic headings is exported to the PDF document (the full formatting and layout of the body of the topics are included, of course). The formatting of the headings is defined in your print manual template 803, where you also define the layout of your PDF file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How topics and headings are exported to PDF

- **Topic content:**
  When you publish to PDF the entire content of your topic files is exported to PDF with all its formatting and layout as you define it in the Help+Manual editor. Only the margins are set in the print manual template because there are no margins in the H+M editor, which is designed primarily for electronic documentation formats.
- **Topic headings:**
  The text of your topic headings are exported from your project as plain, unformatted text. No other content from the header box is imported (i.e. no graphics, hyperlinks etc). The formatting, positioning, spacing and layout of the topic headings are defined in the print manual template. You can use either the topic caption from the Table of Contents (TOC) or the topic header from the header box above the H+M editor for your topic headings. This is useful because it allows you to use longer (heading) or shorter (caption) versions of the heading texts as necessary.

How topic heading texts are inserted in your PDF documents

Your topic heading texts are inserted in the Table of Contents and Topics sections of your print manual templates using variables. The **`Publishing`** ... variables insert the headings from the TOC captions for topics in the TOC levels 1-6, the **`Publishing`** ... **`Publishing`** variables (Topics section only) insert the headings from the heading box above the H+M editor.

For more details see the help of the Print Manual Designer program.

Creating TOC entries for "invisible" topics in PDFs

PDF is a special case because only topics with TOC entries can be included in PDF documents. If your project contains "invisible" topics that are normally only displayed with hyperlinks from other topics you must add TOC entries for them to be able to include them in the PDF version of your output. This is very simple to do with the knowledge you now have:

1. Create TOC entries for the "invisible" topics: Either drag the topic file into the TOC or create a "new" topic and select the topic ID of the invisible topic with the ... browse button in the Topic ID: field of the new topic dialog. You might want to organize these TOC entries as one or more special chapters in your TOC.
2. Apply build options to the new TOC entries so that they are only included in the PDF version of your output. See See *Including and excluding TOC entries* above for instruc-

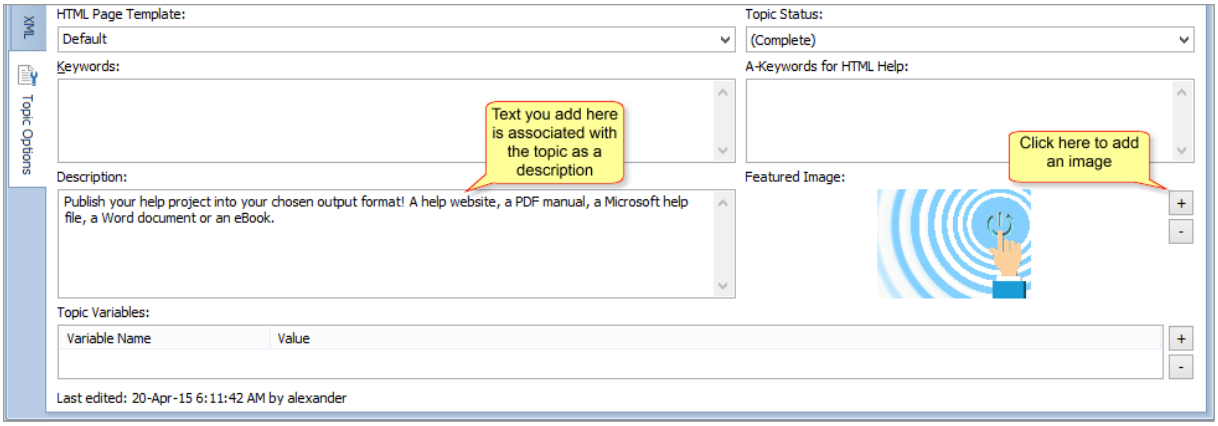
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

tions.

6.4.4 Title page images

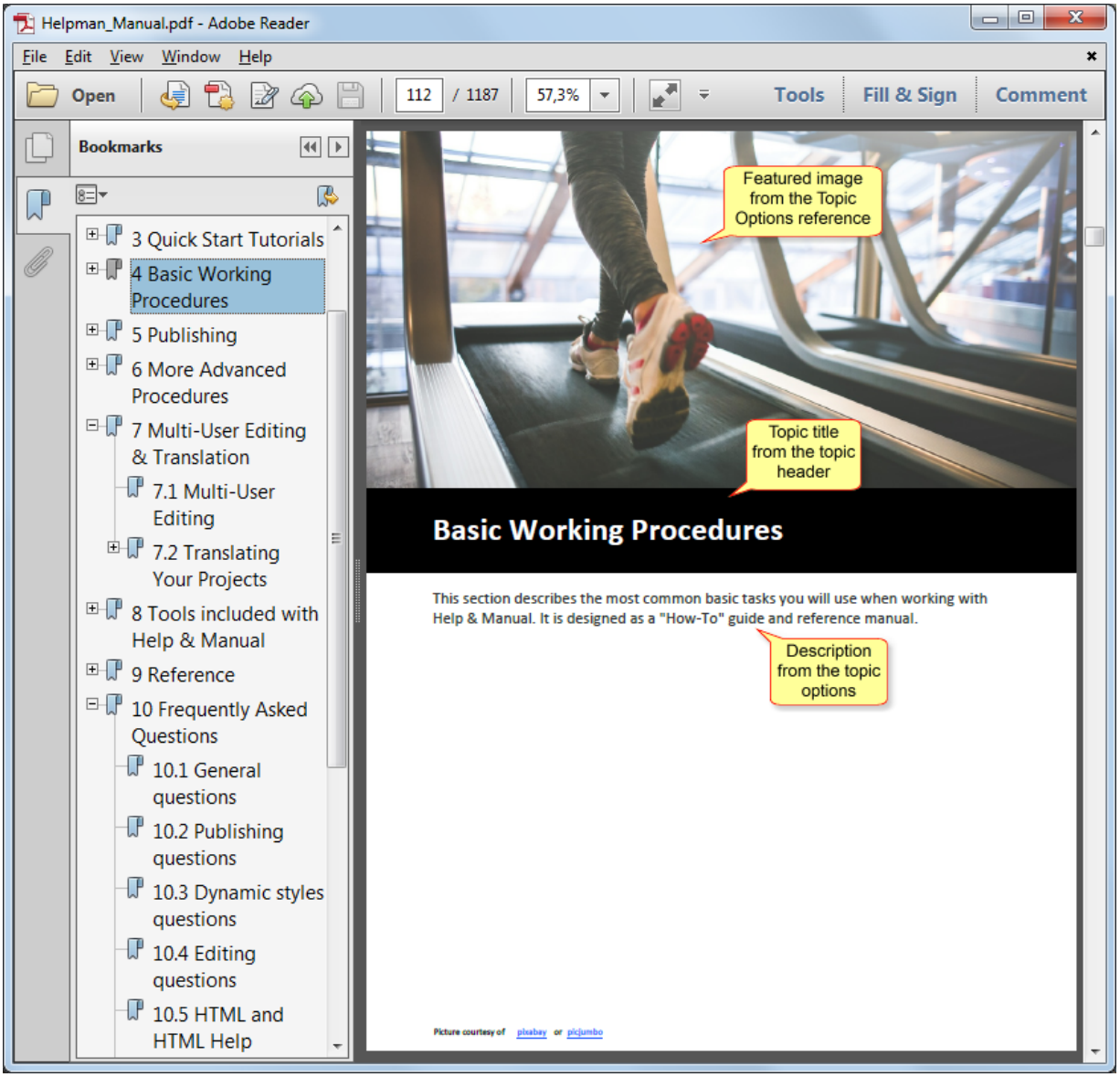
You implement this feature by editing your PDF template with the Manual Designer 805 program. Once you have become familiar with the Designer, see **Designing a Template > Top Level Intro Pages** in the Manual Designer help (F1) to learn how to make the kind of title pages shown further below.

You can associate both a graphic image and a description with any topic in your project in the Topic Options tab that you can select to the left of the main editor window.



You can add these for any topic but for PDF output they are only relevant for top-level topics. You can configure your PDF template to use them for title pages for the main sections of your project with an image and a description, like this:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



6.4.5 Named destinations

When Help+Manual generates PDF documents it automatically exports a number PDF anchors known as "named destinations" for targets in the document. These destinations are similar to topic anchors 415 in HTML documents. You can use these destinations as targets in hyperlinks to the PDF files.

Key Information
Named destinations are only generated if you generate an interactive PDF 1442 document.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Items exported as named destinations

Topic IDs

Topic IDs are exported as named destinations in all lower case. Links to named destinations are case-sensitive, so you must also use the lower case format in all your links to named destinations in PDFs created by Help+Manual.

For example, if your topic ID is **`Index_Topic`** then the named destination in the PDF will be **`index_topic`**.

Topic anchors

Anchors inserted in your topics are exported together with the topic IDs, also in all lower case letters, using the syntax **`topicid#anchorid`**. The topic ID is always part of the named destination for an anchor, with a pound character (#) between the two.

Links to anchors in PDF only work in PDF links:

Links to named destinations including anchors are a special case. They will only work in links in PDF files, not in links in WebHelp files. If you use a link with an anchor in WebHelp output the link will only open the PDF file at the first page.

Standard PDF template sections

The following named destinations are exported for the standard PDF template sections defined in your print manual template 803. These destinations are exported in all lower case as shown below, and that is also how you must link to them. (The commas are not part of the destinations.)

`cover, title1, title2, title3, foreword, toc, topics, endnote1, index, endnote2, backcover`

Note that there are no destinations for repeating sections like *Top Level Entry* and *Blank Pages*.

User-defined template sections

User-defined PDF sections created in Manual Designer with the *Insert Page* option in the *Pages* menu are also exported as named destinations. The destinations generated for these sections are called **`custom1`**, **`custom2`**, **`custom3`** and so on – i.e. the word "custom" in all lower case plus the sequential number of the custom page in the order in which the pages were created in the template.

Important note:
The named destinations for user-defined sections are fixed and are assigned in the order in which the user-defined sections are created. The first section you create gets the destination **`custom1`**, the second section gets **`custom2`** and so on. The actual order of the cus-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

tom sections in your template is irrelevant.

Linking to named destinations in PDF documents

You can create links to both page numbers and "named destinations" in PDF documents. The procedure is the same for links that will be used in PDF files and in WebHelp output.

Named destinations are jump targets that work like anchors. These links will work in PDFs created by Help+Manual and in WebHelp created by Help+Manual, but not in CHM files. The Microsoft CHM viewer does not support the link format needed to jump to destinations in PDF files. A link to a PDF in a CHM file will simply open the PDF at the first page. See Named destinations in PDF 465 for details on the named destinations created in PDFs by Help+Manual and more background information.

Use normal topic links for targets in the current document

Note that named destinations are only needed for links between two different PDF files or from other applications or documents. Use normal topic links to jump to targets within your Help+Manual projects (i.e. from one topic to another). You don't need to use named destinations for this.

Requirements:

- **File Links are required for linking to PDFs:**
  You must use the File Link option for creating links to targets inside PDF files. The Internet Link option will not always work correctly, even in WebHelp.
- **Set the PDF to "interactive" to use named destinations:**
  If the PDF you are linking to is created with Help+Manual it must be generated using the "interactive PDF" option in your PDF settings 1442. Named destinations are only generated for interactive PDF documents.

Linking to named destinations in PDF documents:

You need to create a file link with the destination added to it to link to a destination in a PDF document. Internet links will not work correctly, not even in WebHelp.The syntax is the same for links that are going to be in PDF files and WebHelp files. The links to the PDF files will also work in CHM files, but they will only open the PDF document; they will not jump to the destination in the PDF from a link in a CHM.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Procedure:

1. Follow the instructions for inserting a file link 425 and enter the name of the PDF file you want to link to.
2. Add **#nameddest=** after the file name, followed by the name of the named destination in all lower case characters. See this topic 465 for details of the named destinations you can jump to.

Examples:

myfile.pdf#nameddest=toc (jumps to the Table of Contents in the PDF)
myfile.pdf#nameddest=welcome_topic (jumps to the topic with the ID Welcome_Topic)
myfile.pdf#nameddest=custom1 (jumps to user-defined template section 1)

Special case: anchors:

Links to named destinations including anchors are a special case. They will only work in links in PDF files, not in links in WebHelp files. If you use a link with an anchor in WebHelp output the link will only open the PDF file at the first page.

Example:

In a PDF file, the following file link will jump to the anchor **testanchor** in the topic with the ID **Welcome_Topic**. In a WebHelp file it will only open the PDF at the first page.

myfile.pdf#nameddest=welcome_topic#testanchor

Linking to a page number in a PDF document:

You need to create a file link with the page number added to it do link to a page number in a PDF document. Internet links will not work correctly, not even in WebHelp.The syntax is the same for links that are going to be in PDF files and WebHelp files. The links to the PDF files will also work in CHM files, but they will only open the PDF document; they will not jump to the page number in the PDF from a link in a CHM.

Important: The page number destinations in PDFs created by Help+Manual start counting at 0, so you must jump to the actual page number minus one. If you are jumping to pages in PDFs created by other tools you can usually jump to the actual page numbers.

1. Follow the instructions for inserting a file link 425 and enter the name of the PDF file you want to link to.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Add **#page=** after the file name, followed by the page number:

   myfile.pdf#page=123 (jumps to page 124)
   myfile.pdf#page=0 (jumps to page 1, same as just opening the PDF file without a target)
   myfile.pdf#page=11 (jumps to page 12)

Links to PDFs from WebHelp and HTML files

Links to named destinations in PDF from Help+Manual WebHelp

When creating links to named destinations in PDF files from WebHelp you can use exactly the same procedure and syntax as for links from PDF files. Create a file link and follow the instructions above.

Links to named destinations in PDF from other HTML files

The syntax is also the same for links to named destinations in other HTML files not generated by Help+Manual. Just create a hyperlink using the same **pdf_file.pdf#named-dest=xxxx** and **pdf_file.pdf#page=yy** syntax for the **href** target of the link as you use in Help+Manual, where **xxxx** is the named destination and **yy** is the page number.

Links to PDF from CHM files

You cannot link to named destinations in PDFs from a page in a CHM file. The Microsoft CHM viewer will block all attempts to do this. You can only use a normal file link to open the PDF file at the first page. That is the only option available. This is a limitation of the CHM format and the Microsoft CHM viewer. Help+Manual cannot do anything to change this (and the PDF must be in the same folder as the CHM to open at all).

6.4.6 Graphics in PDF

There are a couple of areas where PDF handles graphics a little differently than other output formats.

Fitting images on the page

Help+Manual will always try to fit everything you put in your topics within the margins of the PDF page if possible. Images in tables will be scaled to fit in the table cell containing them and images on the page will be scaled to fit on the page.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you want to avoid this scaling effect you need to plan your images so that they are small enough to fit in their containers without scaling (table or page).

Higher-quality images for better zooming and scaling

When you scale an image in the Help+Manual editor it is normally physically resized when you publish it to an output format in Help+Manual. This is handled differently in PDF. Scaled images are not resized. Instead, Help+Manual exports the full original image file with a scaling command. The image is thus displayed at the correct size relative to the page in the PDF viewer, but you get better quality when the user zooms the viewer and images will also have better quality in printouts of the PDF page.

Doing this also increases the size of the PDF file, of course, because the larger images are stored in larger files. You can reduce the impact of this by using SVG vector images where possible, because these scale to large sizes at full quality without needing more data in the file.

PNG with transparency and SVG vector images

Normal bitmap graphics are converted to compressed BMP images in PDF output. PNG images and SVG vector graphics are supported natively and will be included in the PDF as original PNG and SVG files if possible.

PNG with alpha transparency

PNG images with transparency will now show what is beneath them in the transparent areas instead of a simulated white background.

SVG vector images support depends on image complexity

SVG images are tested for their complexity. If they contain gradients, which cannot be reproduced in PDF, the SVG image is exported as a bitmap. If there are no complex gradients, H+M renders the SVG natively.

6.4.7 Publishing PDF files

Before you generate a PDF file you will probably want to modify one of the standard print manual templates 803 supplied with Help+Manual for your own needs. These standard templates provide a basic framework for your user manuals and PDF documents but they contain a number of elements which you will want to change, like the contents of the cover page and introduction and so on.

Key Information

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

A maximum of 6 TOC levels are supported in PDF files. If you have more levels than this, they will be displayed on the same level of the print-style TOC. Levels below level 6 will not have headings in the body of your text.

Step 1: Prepare your print manual template

Follow the instructions in Using PDF templates 803 to create or edit a PDF print manual template.

Once you have created a personalized print manual template you can use it as often as you like, both for your current project and for other projects.

It's a good idea to store your edited template in your project directory. This keeps all the files associated with your project together and makes your project more portable.

Step 2: Configure your PDF settings

Open your project and go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** 1442 in the Project Explorer to configure the export settings for Adobe PDF.

See Adobe PDF settings 1442 in the Reference section for details on the other available settings.

A printer driver is needed for PDF output:

Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **PDF Export** 1271 and check your reference device for PDF output.

If you are not using EMF or WMF graphics you can get good results by setting the screen device. Otherwise you need to use a printer driver, which does not have to be the driver for a printer physically connected to your computer.

If you experience any problems with your PDF output they may be caused by proprietary printer drivers. If this happens try installing a standard driver for a common printer like a LaserJet or a DeskJet from the Windows CD. Then select this driver as your reference device in the PDF Export tab. You can also achieve excellent results with the Microsoft XPS Document Writer driver included with Windows 7 and Vista.

Embedding fonts in your PDF output file:

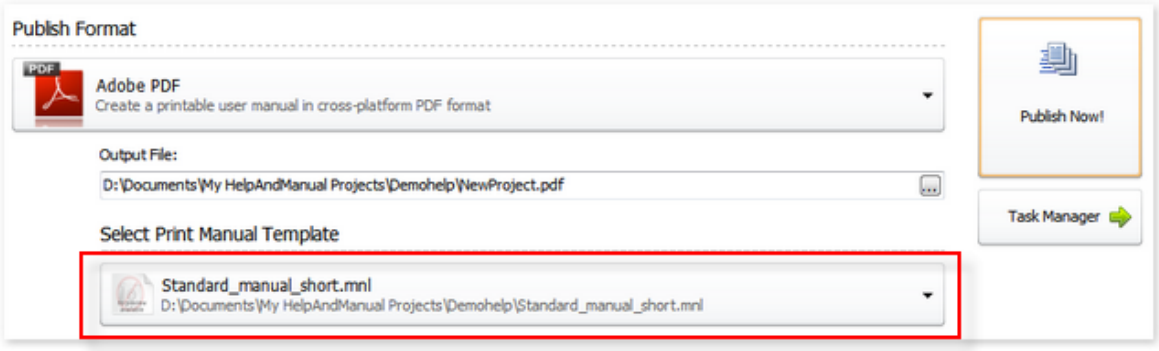
If you use rare fonts in your project you should make sure that those fonts are embedded in your PDF file, otherwise they will not be displayed on computers where they are not installed. However, note that this can significantly increase the size of your PDF file (particularly on Windows 7 and Vista!).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

By default, Help+Manual automatically embeds all fonts except a list of standard fonts. To check this exclusion list go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF Output** > Font Embedding 1447.

Step 3: Publish your PDF

1. Select **Project** > **Publish** 1310, and select Adobe PDF as your publishing format.
2. Choose whether you wish to publish comments 253 as annotations in the PDF. This is useful if you are sending a PDF for a review of your project and you want your comments to be available.
3. Select your PDF template 803 in the Publish settings, then just click Publish Now to generate your PDF.



See Publishing Your Projects 613 for more details on publishing.

See also:

Publishing Your Projects 613
Using PDF templates 803
Conditions and Customized Output 969
PDF Questions 1641 (FAQ)

6.4.8 Printing user manuals

The Print Manual feature in Help+Manual generates the printout by creating a temporary PDF file and printing it. This means that preparing a printed manual is essentially the same process as preparing for generating a PDF file. You use the same configuration options and the same print manual templates for defining the layout of your printout.

Before you print a user manual you will probably want to modify one of the standard print manual templates 803 supplied with Help+Manual for your own needs. These standard templates provide a basic framework for your user manuals and PDF documents but they contain a number of elements which you will want to change, like the content of the cover page and introduction and so on.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Key Information
A maximum of 6 TOC levels are supported in printed manuals. If you have more levels than this (which is not recommended) they will all be displayed on the same level of the published TOC. Levels below level 6 will not have headings in the body of your text.

Step 1: Prepare your print manual template

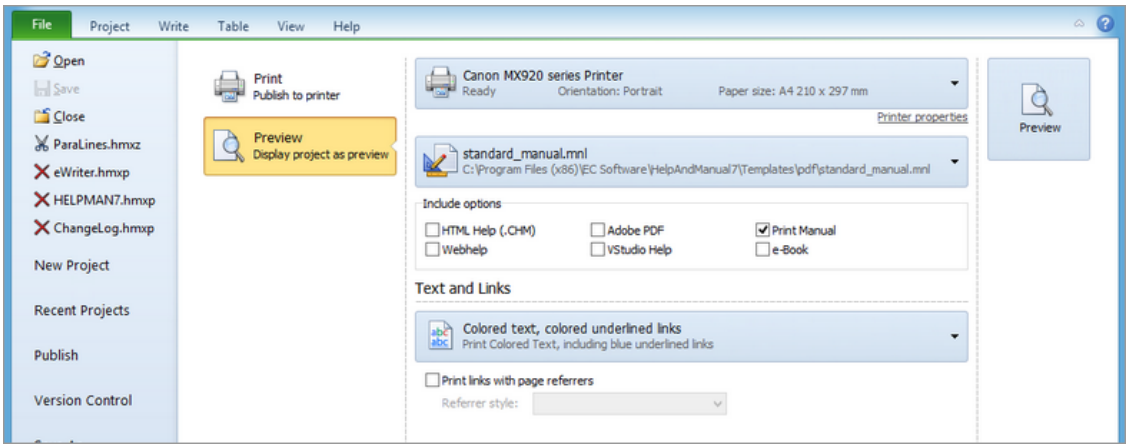
Follow the instructions in Using PDF templates 803 to create or edit a PDF print manual template.

Once you have created a personalized print manual template you can use it as often as you like, both for your current project and for other projects.

It's a good idea to store your edited template in your project directory. This keeps all the files associated with your project together and makes your project more portable.

Step 2: Use Print Preview to check your user manual

1. Select *Print Manual* in the File menu and then select *Preview*.



Print Preview

2. Select the printer you want to use at the top of the page (the printer driver is needed to generate the preview).
3. Select the print manual template you prepared in Step 1 in the field below the printer selection. Use *Open Template...* to select the template file, which has the extension **`.mnl`**. A set of standard templates can be found in the *\Templates\pdf* folder in the Help+Manual program directory.
4. Select any Include Options appropriate for your manual. The default selection here is *Print Manual* and you will not need to change this unless you have made use of in-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

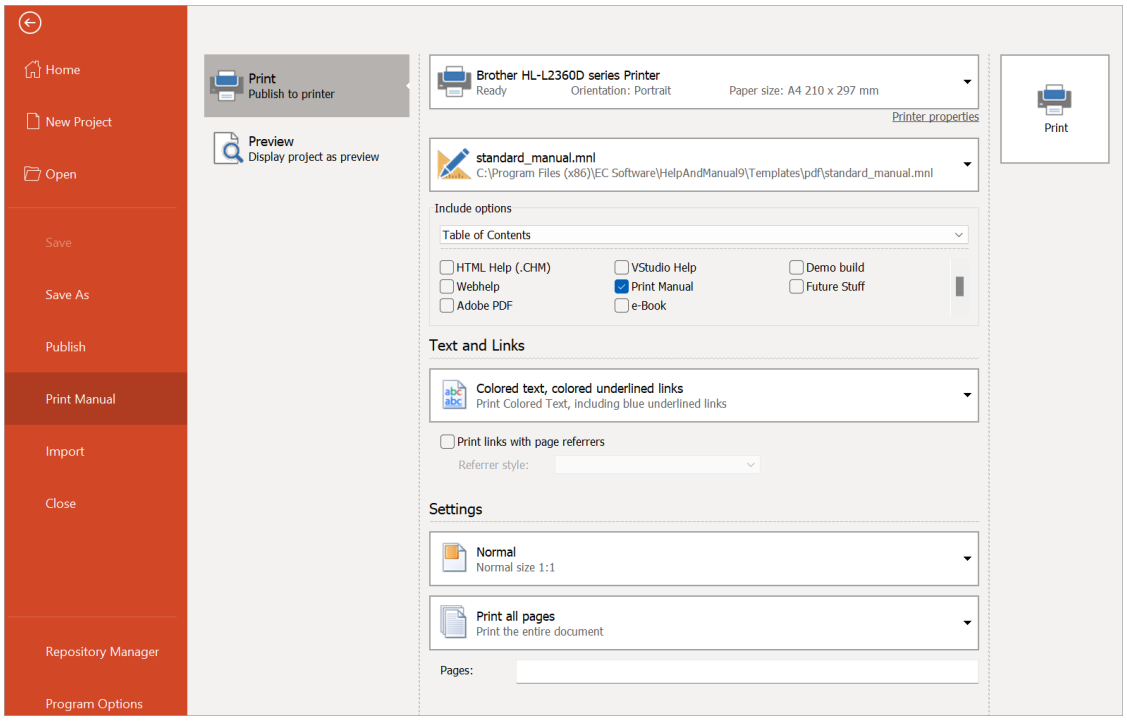
clude options in your project. (See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for more details on include options and how to use them.)

5. Set the other options in the dialog as you would like to have them, then click on *Preview* on the right to display the print preview.

You can jump to individual pages in the preview by entering page numbers in the box at the top of the preview widow.

Step 3: Print your user manual

1. Open your project and select *Print Manual* in the File menu, and make sure that *Print* is selected in the page displayed.



Print

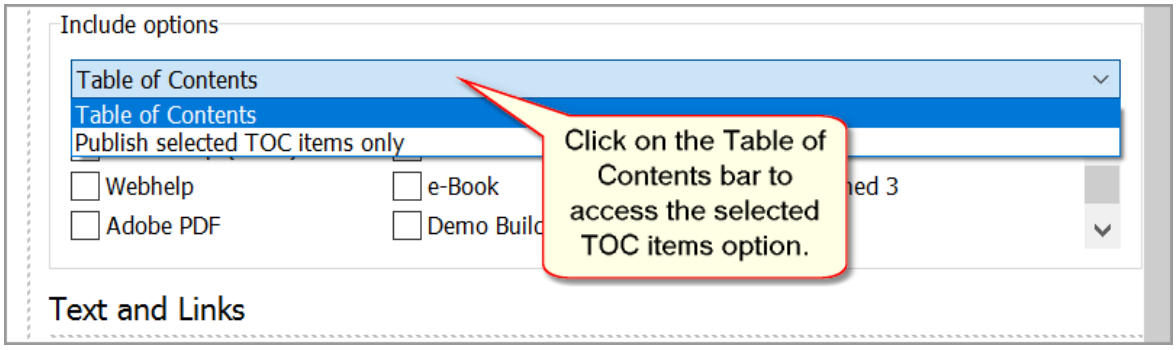
2. Select the printer you want to use at the top of the page.
3. Select the print manual template you prepared in Step 1 in the field below the printer selection. Use *Open Template...* to select the template file, which has the extension **`.mnl`**. A set of standard templates can be found in the *\Templates\pdf* folder in the Help+Manual program directory.
4. Select any Include Options appropriate for your manual. The default selection here is *Print Manual* and you will not need to change this unless you have made use of include options in your project. (See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for more details on include options and how to use them.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5. Set the other options in the dialog as you would like to have them, then click on OK to print.

Printing or previewing selected topics only

1. If you only want to print or preview individual chapters or topics select them first in the TOC with the mouse. Use *Ctrl+Click* and Shift+Click to select multiple topics.
2. Then follow the instructions above, click on the *Table of Contents* bar above the *Include Options* box in the **Print Manual** page and select the *Publish selected TOC items only* option in the drop-down menu.



When you use this method the cover page, TOC and other additional pages defined in your print manual template will also be generated. To prevent this just make a copy of the template and edit it to disable all sections except the Topics section. Then use this "topics-only" template for generating your "quick output".

See also:

Printing topics 263
Print Manual 1290 (dialog reference)

6.4.9 Using PDF templates

The layout of Help+Manual's PDF and print manual output is controlled by template files called "print manual templates" with the extension **`.mnl`** that do much more than just define the appearance of your pages. These templates can also add front and back covers, multiple title pages at the beginning, an introduction, a formatted table of contents, title pages for individual chapters, graphics, headers and footers, a formatted index and multiple endnotes pages. You can also define your own additional pages and insert topics from your project or external files with a "snippets" function.

All the global variables and user-defined variables from your project file can be used in your print manual templates. Since the templates are external files you can use them in multiple projects, applying them to your output just as you apply skins 638 to HTML-based output formats.

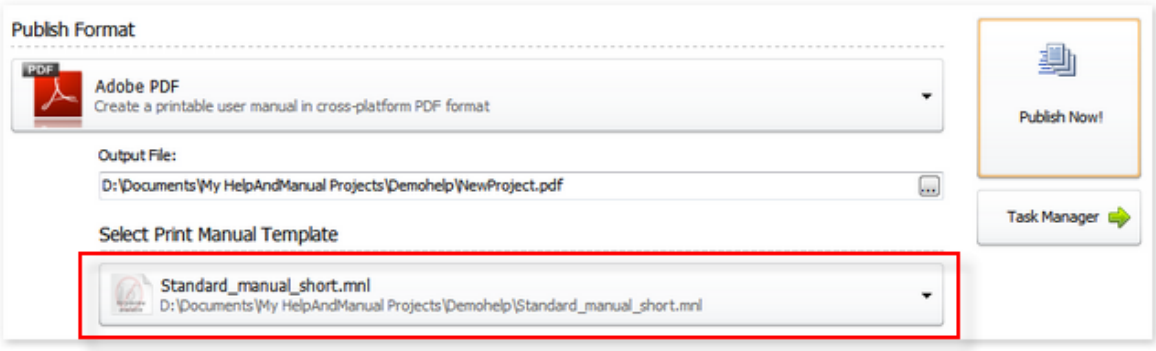
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to select a print manual template

You can select separate templates for PDF output and printed manuals.

Selecting a print manual template for PDF output:

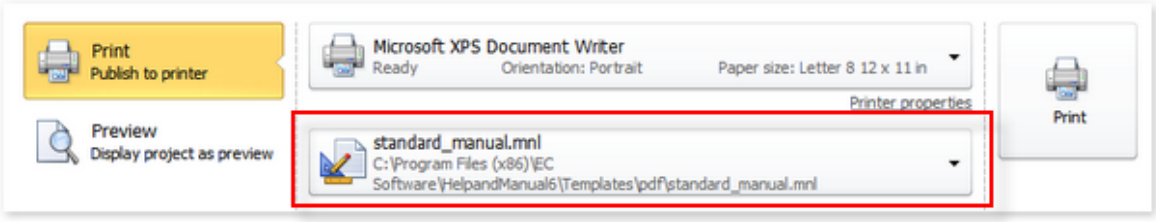
1. Select *Publish* in the Project menu, then select PDF as your publishing format.



2. Click on the dropdown area shown above to select the template you want to use.

Selecting a print manual template for printing a user manual:

1. Select the File menu and click on Print User Manual 1290.



2. Click on the dropdown area shown above to select the template you want to use.

How to edit a print manual template

- Select **Project** > **Tools** > Manual Designer 1217 to open the Print Manual Designer. Then select **File** > **Open** in the Designer to open the template for editing. You can find a selection of standard templates that you can edit in the `\Templates\pdf` folder in the Help+Manual program directory.
- When you open the Manual Designer it will automatically load the last PDF template used for the current Help+Manual project, if there is one.

The Print Manual Designer is a separate program with its own documentation. See the help in the Designer for details on how to use it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Location of the standard print manual templates

Help+Manual comes with a selection of standard print manual templates that are stored in the `\Templates\pdf` subdirectory in the Help+Manual program directory. These templates have the file extension **`.mnl`**.

See also:

Templates and Secondary Windows 1007

6.4.10 The Print Manual Designer

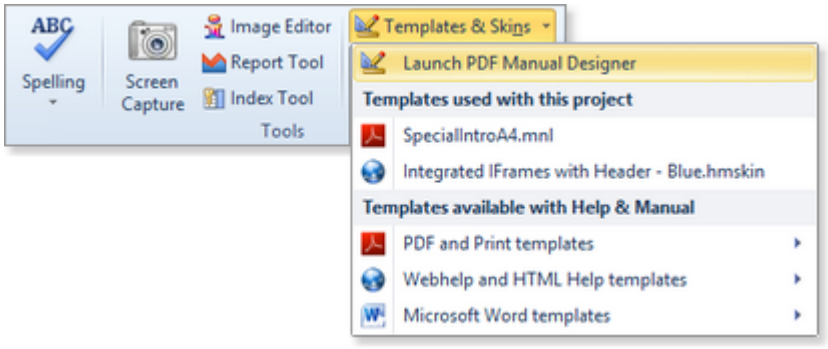
The Print Manual Designer is a separate program used for editing the **`.mnl`** print manual template files that define the layout and appearance of your published PDF files and printed manuals.

In addition to defining the layout of your PDF pages, you can also add additional pages and content not included in your project, including cover and back cover pages, an introduction, a formatted table of contents, title pages for individual chapters, headers and footers, a formatted index and multiple endnotes pages. You can also add your own custom pages and insert topics from your project and external Help+Manual XML files.

The Print Manual Designer has its own help so this topic only describes the basic procedures for opening templates for editing and selecting them in your projects. Print manual template files have the extension **`.mnl`**.

How to start the Print Manual Designer

- Select **Templates & Skins** > **Launch PDF Manual Designer** in **Project** > **Tools.**



If a PDF template has already been used with the current project you can select it directly in the menu and load it into Manual Designer.

If you have not yet used a PDF template you should start with one of the standard templates included with Help+Manual. It is generally easier to edit an existing template, because all the necessary objects have already been added and you just need to modify

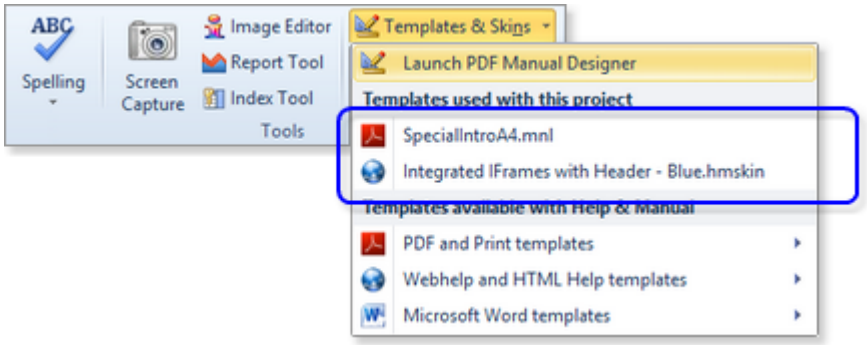
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

them. The standard templates can be found in the `\Templates\pdf` folder in the Help+Manual program directory, which is normally `C:\Program Files\EC Software\HelpAndManual8.`

You will need to make a copy of any standard template you load from the Help+Manual program directory storage to be able to edit it. To do this, select *Save As...* in the **File** menu and save it in your project folder.

How to edit a print manual template associated with your project

If PDF templates have already been used with the current project they are listed in the Templates & Skins menu. You can select one of the templates directly in the menu and it will be opened with Manual Designer.



Note that you can use different templates for PDF and print manual output.

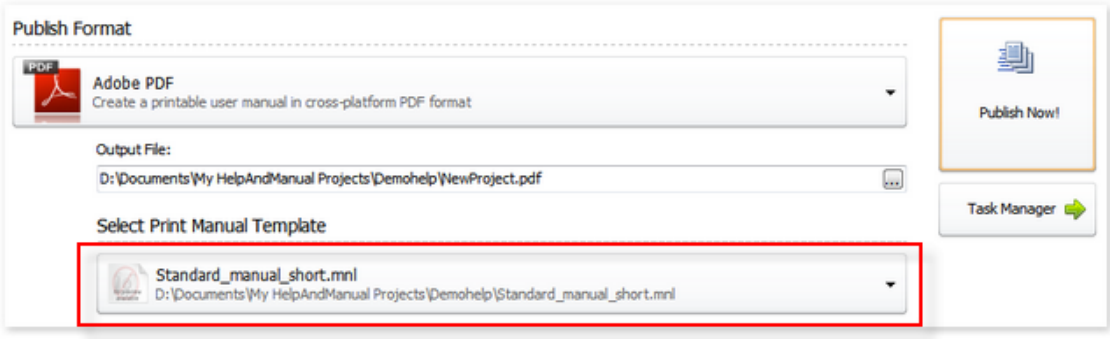
How to assign a print manual template to your project

You select the template to be used with your project in the Publish settings when you are publishing your project. Once you have made a selection there Help+Manual will remember the setting the next time you publish your project to PDF.

Selecting a template for Adobe PDF output:

1. Select *Publish* in the File menu and then select PDF as your publishing format.

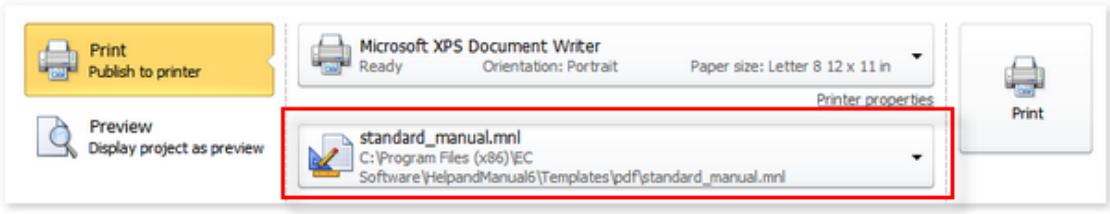
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Select the PDF template you want to use by clicking on the drop-down area shown above.

Selecting a template for printed manuals:

1. Open your project, click on the File menu and select *Print Manual*.



2. Select the PDF template you want to use by clicking on the drop-down area shown above.

See also:

PDF and Printed Manuals 785
PDF and print manual templates 1019
Adobe PDF 1523
Printed manuals 1524

6.4.11 Embedding files in PDFs

You can automatically embed files referenced with file links into the PDF file when you export your project to PDF. This makes it possible to distribute additional files with your PDF document without having to use multiple files.

When the user clicks on the link the file will be displayed with the application with which it is associated in Windows. This works for most file types, including other PDF files, documents and images of all kinds and even executable EXE files.

1. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **PDF Layout** and activate the option *File links - embed linked files with the following extensions:*.
2. Make sure that the files you want to link to are stored in one of the folders referenced in your Image Folders 1405 list in your project configuration settings. If you have many

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

folder references place the files in one of the first few folders in the list.

3. Create your file links using the normal procedure.

When you publish your project the files referenced with file links will be physically embedded in the PDF file. You no longer need to distribute these files separately as they are now part of the PDF. This will increase the size of the PDF accordingly, of course.

See also:

Inserting file links 424

6.4.12 Fonts & font embedding

If you are using Western languages with the Latin character set you will generally not have any problems with font rendering in your PDF files, unless the fonts you use in your project are not installed on the user's computer. If that is likely, you should embed the fonts in the PDF document with the settings in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **Font Embedding**. See Font Embedding 1447 for details.

Text looks strange with incorrect spacing

If the text in your PDF looks strange, with some characters displayed incorrectly and odd spacing between the characters the culprit is most probably the printer driver used to generate the PDF document. To fix this, go to **View** > **Program Options** > **PDF** and select a different driver for your PDF output.

On current versions of Windows you will generally get good results with the *Microsoft XPS Document Writer* driver, which is always present. Customized drivers from printer manufacturers often cause problems, however. If you experience this, try installing one of the standard printer drivers included with Windows. To do this, just add a new printer in the Windows Control Panel, then choose that printer as your PDF reference driver in Help+Manual. You don't have to have the physical printer to be able to do this. Any recent DeskJet or LaserJet driver from the standard list will generally produce good results, and the Brother HL series laser printer drivers are also generally good.

Problems with symbol and bullet characters

PDF often has problems with the handling of bullet and symbol characters from some fonts and character sets. Help+Manual avoids this problem by inserting these characters as glyphs, which are small graphics. This option is on by default but in some rare cases it may cause different problems – for example when you are later trying to convert your PDF to something else with a different program. If you need to, you can switch this option off in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **Font Embedding**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Settings for Asian languages and other special character sets

If you are publishing a project that requires fonts with special character sets, for example for Asian languages, Russian or Greek, you may need to configure some special settings in the font embedding section of your project. See Font Embedding 1447 for details.

Use fonts that contain all the characters you are using

If you are using any kind of special characters it is very important that the font you choose to display them includes those characters. This is usually the case with modern Unicode fonts, but custom fonts often have limited character sets. Your PDF may look OK when such a font is used, but you may find that the file then becomes very large and the text cannot be selected or searched. This is because of the missing characters — when this happens, all the characters (not just the missing ones) have to be replaced with little graphics to make up for the missing support in the font. This takes up a lot of space and cannot be searched like normal text.

Use separate fonts for different languages in the same project

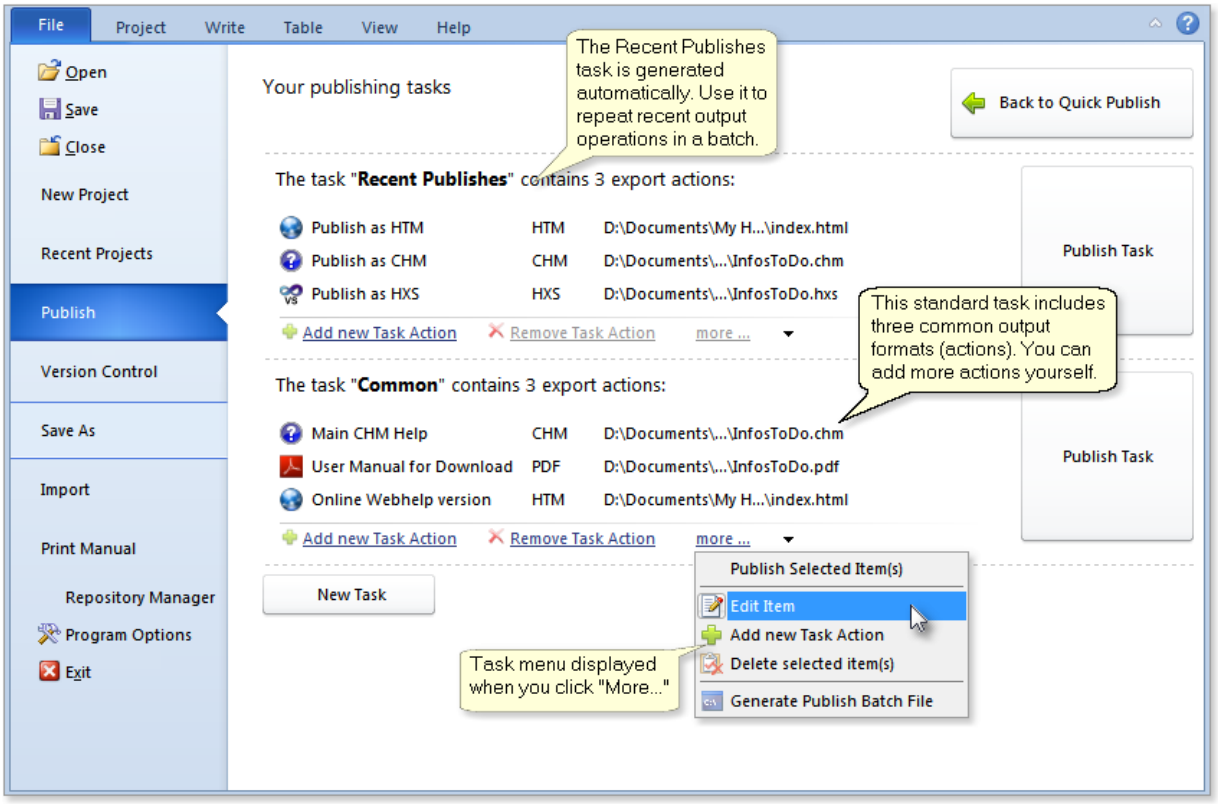
If you are mixing languages with the Latin character set and other languages in a single project, particularly Asian languages, it is generally advisable to use separate fonts for each language. Here too, it is essential to make sure that the fonts you use actually contain all the characters you are using in your text. A single missing character in the font can cause the text to all be rendered as glyphs (graphics), resulting in the problems described above.

See Font Embedding 1447 for detailed recommendations on this subject.

6.5 Automating Publishing Jobs

In addition to publishing your project to a single output format, you can also define "publishing tasks" with a list of multiple output formats and versions of your project. Once you have got a task set up, you just need to select it to perform all the predefined publishing operations in one automated process. You can also generate batch files from tasks that you can then integrate in your own automated software build processes. You can do this manually with the command line options 816, but it is much easier to generate the batch files automatically with the Publishing Task Manager.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



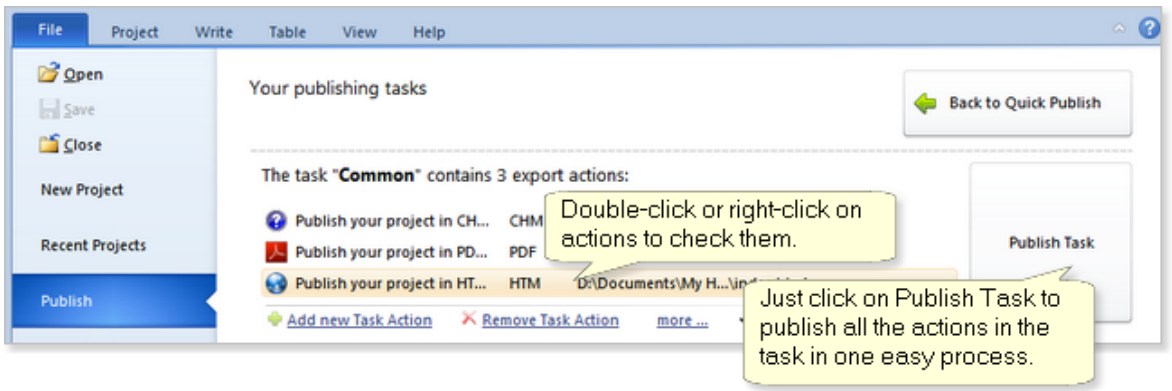
Publish multiple versions and formats with the Task Manager

Professional and Floating license versions only

Please note that support for publishing tasks is only included in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. The task-based publishing interface is not available in the Basic version.

6.5.1 Using publishing tasks

To open the Publishing Task Manager select *Publish* in the File Menu, then click on *Task Manager* at the upper right to show the Task Manager page. Help+Manual includes a ready-made publishing task called "Common" for the three most common output formats.



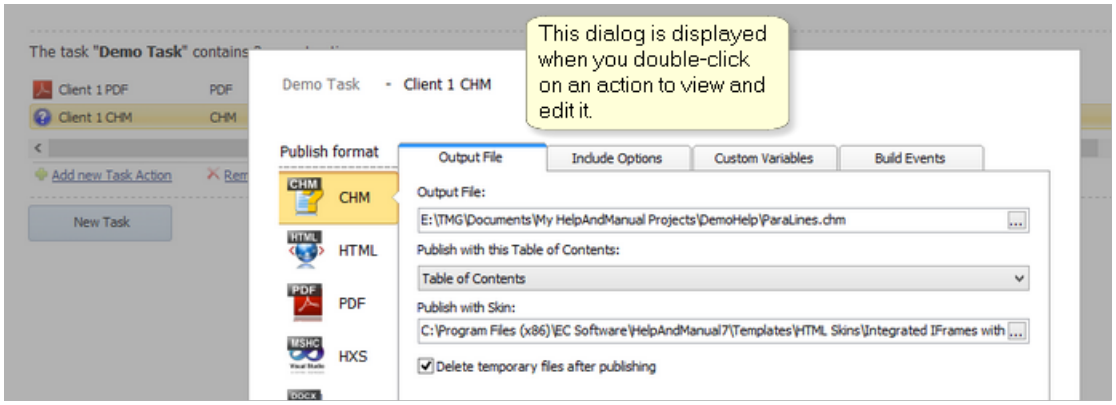
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

A publishing task consists of a list of "actions". Each action is one publishing operation for your project. The action definition includes the output format (CHM, WebHelp, PDF etc.) and the output file name and path, whether you want to delete the temporary files and display the finished help automatically and the include options for conditional output 616. In addition to this, the actions can also include a list of variables you want to redefine for this specific task.

For full instructions, see Creating and editing tasks 812.

How to publish all the actions in a task

1. Double-click on each action in the task and check at least the output file name and path. If you want, you can also set include options and redefine some variables in your project as well.



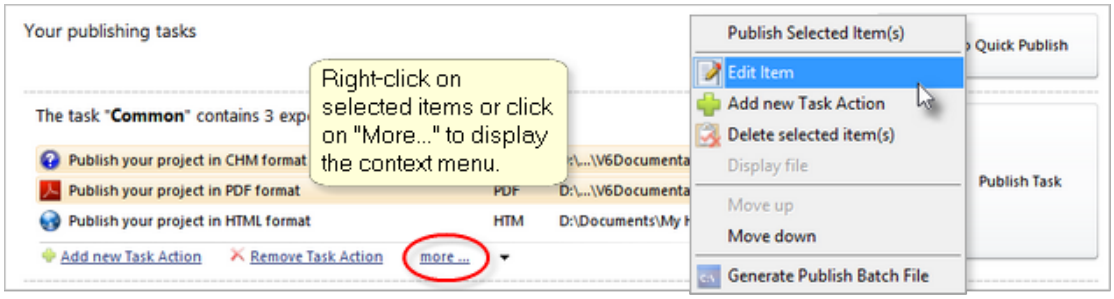
2. Close the action editing dialog and click on *Publish Task* to finish. Help+Manual will then perform all the publishing task actions one after another.
3. There is no step 3, you're finished!

How to publish individual actions in a task

If you want, you can also publish just individual actions in a task instead of all of them.

1. Select the actions you want to publish in the task. If you want to select more than one action use *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click*.
2. Right click on the selected items or click on *More...* to display the context menu:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Select *Publish Selected Items* to publish.

Repeat recent manual publishes with "Recent Publishes"

If you are in a hurry you can repeat recent manual publish operations with the "Recent Publishes" task, which is generated automatically by Help+Manual. You will only see this task if you have published the current project manually at least once.

You can repeat all the publish operations stored in Recent Publishes unchanged, publish individual actions (see above) or edit the actions to change them before publishing.

Don't try to permanently save actions in Recent Publishes. They will be overwritten by your next manual publish operations!

6.5.2 Creating and editing tasks

Creating and editing publishing tasks is quite similar to publishing a project. Almost all the settings and procedures are really identical. The only difference is that instead of publishing directly, you are saving the publishing instructions to be used again later.

Productivity Tip
Before you start trying to create publishing tasks you should be familiar with manual publishing. Learn to use conditional output 969 and variables 917 on their own before trying to use them in publishing tasks.

How to create publishing tasks and actions

A publishing task is a group of publishing operations that are all performed together. A publishing action is a single publishing operation within a publishing task. You can have more than one action for the same output format in a single task if you want. For example, a task might include three different PDF versions of your project, using different templates and with different content.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

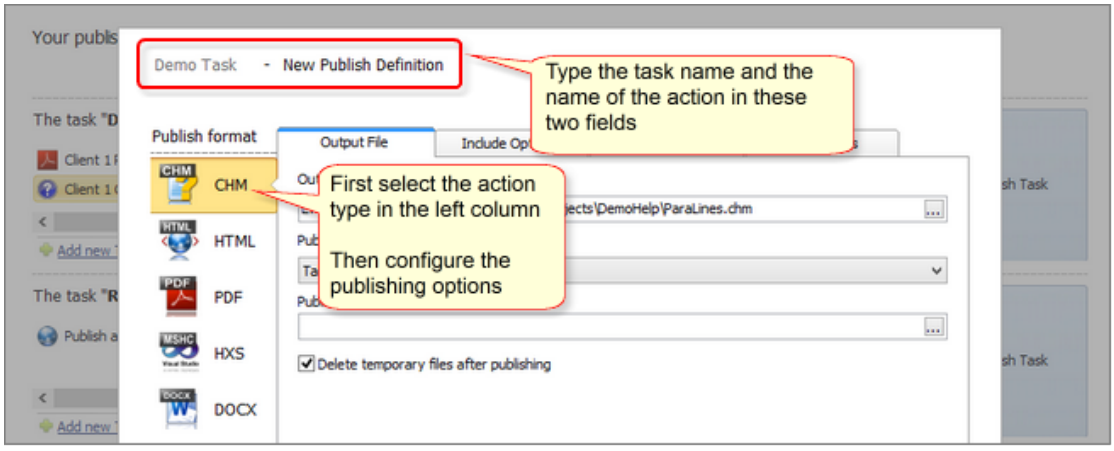
Using variables in the output file field

You can use a variable instead of a file name in the output field. This should be a variable defined globally for the entire project, not a single-topic variable. Don't include the file extension in the variable definition, as that is added automatically by Help+Manual if it is not present in the output field. So you should enter something like:

<%OUTPUT_FILE%>.pdf or **<%OUTPUT_FILE%>.html**.

Creating a task:

1. Open the Publishing Task Manager and click on the New Task button at the bottom of the task list. This opens the task editing dialog:



2. Type the name of the task in the left box of the top and the name of the first action in the right box.
3. A new task must always have at least one action. Select the action type on the left, then set up your publishing output path/file and options just as you would for normal manual publishing. You can also use Include Options 616 for publishing different versions of your project. See further below for information on setting up custom variables.
4. Click on **OK** to create the task.

Adding more actions:

To add a new action just click on the "Add New Task Action" item directly below the task. This displays the same dialog as above, in which you can select the task type and define its output options and settings.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to edit and rename actions

Opening the action for editing:

To edit an action in a task just double-click on the action or right-click on it and select Edit Action in the context menu. All the editing operations are the same as for creating a task.

Renaming actions:

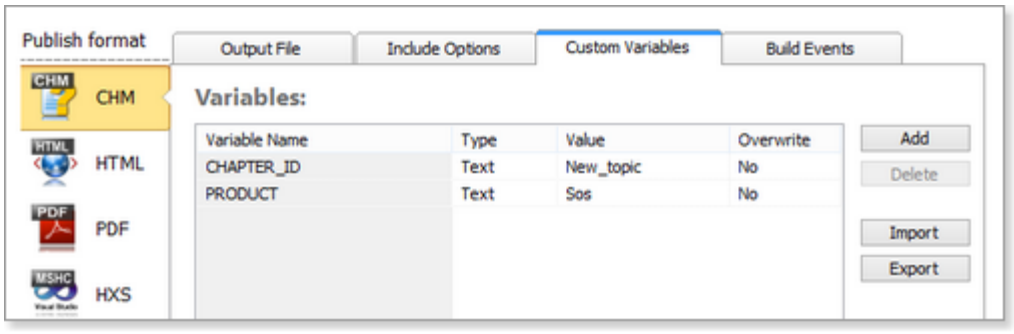
To rename an action open it for editing and click in the action name box at the top of the edit action dialog. Note that you can only rename actions, you cannot rename tasks after creating them!

How to use custom variables in publishing actions

Until the Publishing Task Manager became available you could only redefine variables with command line publishing. You needed to define an external variable definition file and refer to it in a command line. Now you can redefine the values of any variables in your project for individual publishing actions to individualize each publishing output as you want. For example, if the product name referred to is different in two versions of your documentation, you can redefine your PRODUCTNAME variable (or whatever you have called it).

Redefining just a few variables manually:

1. Make a note of the variable names you want to redefine.
2. Open the action for editing and select the *Custom Variables* tab.



3. Click on *Add* and enter the name of the variable you want to redefine.
4. Select the variable type (HTML or Text) and enter its value, just as you would when defining a user variable 919.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Redefining a large number of variables from a list:

You can also import an edited list of variable definitions. The easiest way to do this is to first export the variables stored in your project to a text file and edit their definitions there. Then you can import the edited file in one easy operation.

1. In the Project Explorer, go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables** and use the *Export* button to export your variables to a text file. See User-defined variables 919 for more information on working with variables.
2. Edit the list of variables in a text editor. You can remove variables from the list by deleting their definition lines and change the variable definitions, but don't try to change the variable names.
3. Open the publishing action for editing, select *Custom Variables* and use the *Import* button to import the edited variables list.

Tip: You can also use the *Export* button to export an edited list of variables from the action for use in other actions!

Build events: Programs to execute before and after publishing

The *Build Events* tab allows you to define programs to be executed before and after publishing. For example, you might define a pre-processor that you have programmed yourself to change the content of your project before it is published, or a digital signing tool to sign your output after it has been published.

Adding build events:

Use the *Add* button in the *Build Events* tab to add events.

Name:	The name of the event shown in the Publishing Task Manager. This can be anything you like.
Command:	The command to be executed. If the path is not in your Windows path variable you need to include the path relative to file to be executed.
Parameters:	Any optional parameters for the command.

Exit codes:

If you set an event before publishing Help+Manual waits for exit code 0 from the last build event before starting. Any program, script or batch file you execute before publish-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ing must deliver a valid exit code when it closes, otherwise Help+Manual will not proceed with the publishing process.

Programs and utilities need to deliver a valid exit code on closing. If you are using a batch file you should always terminate it with the following line to make certain that you have a valid exit code:

```
EXIT /B %ERRORLEVEL%
```

Help+Manual will only proceed if it registers and exit code of 0 from the build event. Anything else is interpreted as an error and publishing will not proceed.

6.6 Command Line Publishing

Help+Manual has a full command line publishing interface that supports conditional include options, batch and INI files, skins and variable definitions. This make it possible to fully automate your publication process. The command line interface runs as a console-only process that does not open the main Help+Manual program. It returns standard exit codes that can be captured and processed by your batch files.

Generally, you will only need to use the command line interface for particularly complex publishing tasks and for integration into your regular software build process. If you just want to generate multiple versions and output formats in a single process it is easier to use the Publishing Task Manager 809. You can also use the Publishing Task Manager to auto-generate batch files that you can use in your own automated build processes. Publishing tasks created with the Task Manager can also be called via the command line interface as well, using the /TSK= switch.

License management for batch/build server operation

If you are going to run command line/batch publishing operations with Help+Manual from other users on your network you need to register your license for build server operation. This can be done with any Professional or Floating license version.

Command line batch activation for headless servers

Before using your machine as a build server you need to activate your license for batch use with the following command line call:

```
<path>HELPMAN.EXE /lic:XXXXXXXXXXXXX
```

Where XXXXXXXXXXXXX is your license key. The server must have an Internet connection when you do this. Upon successful activation, the digital license key for build server use is saved in the Help+Manual program directory on the headless server. You only need to do

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

this once. After this you can run normal batch operations on the licensed computer from anywhere in your local network.

6.6.1 H+M command line syntax

This syntax guide for the main Help+Manual program is a quick reference for users familiar with using the Windows command line. For detailed instructions see the other topics in this chapter.

Paths in the command line

The syntax examples all assume that you are entering the command lines in the Help+Manual program directory, which is normally **C:\Program Files\EC Software\HelpAndManual8**. To get the same effect you can also add the Help+Manual program directory to your Windows PATH environment variable so that you can use the HELPMAN.EXE file without adding a path to it.

When you do this you must only enter a path for the project file argument (`project.hmxz` in the syntax guide). All the other file name arguments automatically use this path so you don't need to enter a path for them if they are stored in the project directory. You must enter path information for all files stored in any other location. You can use relative paths if you want – they are then relative to the project directory.

Help+Manual (helpman.exe) command line syntax:		
`HELPMAN.EXE "<Path>\project.hmxz" /<format> /<other switches> ...` ***Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.***		
HELPMAN.EXE	Single option, use once only	The Help+Manual program file.
<Path>	Single option, use once once only	The path to the project file, e.g. `"F:\Projects\Help Project\project.hmx"`. Always enclose this and the project file name in quotes if they contain spaces. This path is used automatically for all other file arguments for which you do not enter paths.
project.hmxz / project.hmxp	Single option, use once only	The project file you want to open. This must always come

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual (helpman.exe) command line syntax:

```
HELPMAN.EXE "<Path>\project.hmxz" /<format> /<other switches> ...
```

Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.

		directly after the Help+Manual program file name.

/<format>	Multiple option, use once per output format, followed by the local options for that output	The output format switch. This must always be the first switch entered after the project file name. The other switches listed below can be used in any order but they must come after the output format switch.
		Switches:
		/CHM (HTML Help)
		/HTML (WebHelp)
		/HXS (VS Help 2008 / MS Help 2.0 and VS Help 2010 / MS Help 3.0)
		/PDF (Adobe PDF)
		/DOCX (Word DOCX)
		/EPUB (iBooks/ePUB eBook)
		/MOBI (Amazon Kindle Mobi eBook)
		/EBOOK (eWriter Help) OR **/EXE** (eWriter Help)
		eWriter Help:
		eWriter Help files are created with an integrated viewer if you use the **.exe** extension and as a book only if you use any other extension. For clarity, you should always specify the output file name and extension for this format in your batch jobs. See here 719.
		Examples:
		`/EXE=testproject.exe`
		`/EBOOK="newbook.ewriter"`
		`/EXE="F:\Final Build\testproject.ewriter"`
		Visual Studio Help:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual (helpman.exe) command line syntax:		
HELPMAN.EXE "<Path>\project.hmxz" /<format> /<other switches> ... ***Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.***		

		There is just one switch for both formats (.HXS and .MSHC). Which format is generated depends on the file extension you specify for the output file (**.hxs** or **.mxhc**).
		Output file name and path:
		You can also specify the output file name and path. If you don't specify it, the values used when you last published to the specified format will be used.
		Examples:
		`/CHM=testproject.chm`
		`/HTML="F:\Final Build\index.html"`

/I=<include options>	Local option, use once per output format option, after the format option. Always use this if your project uses format-based build options!	Corresponds to the include options set in the Make Help File & Run 1310 dialog. User-defined options 988 are also supported. Use upper case only, separate options with commas and don't type any spaces between individual options. If you don't specify the **/I** switch the program will use the last include options used when you last published to the specified format. **Important:** These options do not select the output format! **Format include options:** **ALL** All builds and user-defined options "true". **CHM** (HTML Help) **HTML** (WebHelp) **HXS** (VS Help 2008 / MS Help 2.0 and VS Help 2010 / MS Help 3.0)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual (helpman.exe) command line syntax:		
HELPMAN.EXE "<Path>\project.hmxz" /<format> /<other switches> ... ***Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.***		

		PDF (Adobe PDF)
		PRINT (Word DOCX and RTF)
		EBOOK (Windows Exe or ePUB eBook)
		Examples:
		`/I=CHM,MYBUILD`
		`/I=HTML,HXS,DEMOVERSION`
		You should always use this switch to specify the valid output format if your project uses format based build options (conditional text or TOC include options). Otherwise the build options may not work correctly!
		For the same reason, when you use the **/I** switch you should also always include the format you are exporting to.
		You can use your user-defined include options in exactly the same way as the format include options.

/E=<exclude options>	Local option, use once per output format option, after the format option. Can be used on its own or in combination with and after the /I= include switch, to negate individual options.	This is the reversed version of the /I= include switch. It excludes content tagged with the specified build options instead of including it. **Purpose:** The /E= switch negates any existing includes set with the /I= switch, overriding all other switches for the affected content. This is useful if you want to exclude some individual items that have multiple build options applied. For example, suppose you have multiple topics tagged with CLIENTA and some of those

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual (helpman.exe) command line syntax:		
HELPMAN.EXE "<Path>\project.hmxz" /<format> /<other switches> ... ***Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.***		
		topics are also tagged with BETA. To include all the CLIENTA content that are not also tagged with BETA you would use this switch combination: **Example:** `/I=HTML,CLIENTA /E=BETA` This will exclude all content tagged with the BETA build, no matter what other build options are included.
/TOC=<TOC Name>	Selects the TOC to be used for publishing in projects in which multiple TOCs 343 have been defined. **IMPORTANT:** Can only be used once in a single command line, because your output can only use one TOC.	**Syntax example:** `/TOC="Demo Version TOC"` Note the quotes around TOC names containing spaces!
/TSK=<task:action>	Special option to execute a publishing task. Can be used multiple times in a single command line to execute multiple tasks. For better clarity use on its own command line within a batch file	Call a publishing task 809 defined in your project. Syntax: `/TSK="Task Name:Action Name"` If you only enter the task name on its own (no : character!) all the actions in the task will be executed. If you include an action name separated by the : character only that action will be executed. To execute multiple tasks or actions use /TSK= multiple

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual (helpman.exe) command line syntax:		
HELPMAN.EXE "<Path>\project.hmxz" /<format> /<other switches> ... ***Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.***		
	not combined with other switches. HELPMAN.EXE + Project + /TSK + /TSK..	times in the command line with one task or task+action per instance. Copy and paste the task and action names from *File > Publish > Task Manager*. Use the "Generate Publish Batch File" in the Task Manager to generate examples.

/V=<filename>	Local option, can only be used once per output format option, after the format option.
	Use skins with the /O= switch if you want to apply multiple files for redefining variables to the same output. To redefine variables only with skins the skins should be saved with variables only.
		Redefines some or all of the variables in your project with a list of variables in an external text file. You do not need to enter a path if the file is stored in the project directory. Use quotes if the path or filename contain spaces.
		Data file format:
		`TITLE=Widget Editor V2.8`
		`EDITORS=John and Jane Doe`
		`COPYRIGHT=Widgets Inc., all rights reserved`
		One line per definition, no quotes, no spaces on either side of the = sign.
		Command line usage examples:
		`/V=variables.txt`
		`/V="F:\Data Sources\variables.txt"`

/O=<filename>	Local option, can be used multiple times per output format option, after the format option. The last file used has priority.	Apply a project skin 638 to the project when publishing. Enter the name of the .hmskin file for the filename argument. Overwrites all variables, settings and HTML templates in the project with those defined in the skin file. You can use this switch multiple times, specifying multiple skins. If the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual (helpman.exe) command line syntax:		
HELPMAN.EXE "<Path>\project.hmxz" /<format> /<other switches> ... ***Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.***		
		same attributes are defined in more than one skin the last skin in the command line always has priority. Note that the use of `.hmskin` skins is intended for HTML output only. If you use them for other output formats you will only get the settings that can actually be edited in them in Help+Manual.
/S=complete	Local option, use once per output format option, after the format option	Only includes topics and chapters with the status "complete" in your published output. All topics with any other status are excluded. Only the status "complete" is supported for this switch.
/Template=<filename>	Local option, use once per output format option, after the format option	Specifies the name of the PDF or DOCX template file. Include the path and use quotes if the path or file name contain spaces. Only supported for PDF and DOCX output. You do not need to enter a path if the file is stored in the project directory. If you don't specify this switch the program uses the template selected for PDF or DOCX in your publishing options 1442.
~~/noclose~~	Deprecated as of version 5.3, no longer has any effect.	In earlier versions this switch left Help+Manual open after publishing was completed. As of version 5.3 only a console is opened in command line mode, the main program is never opened and so this switch is deprecated. Using it will not

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual (helpman.exe) command line syntax:		
HELPMAN.EXE "<Path>\project.hmxz" /<format> /<other switches> ... ***Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.***		
		cause an error, but it also won't do anything.
/keeptemp	Global option, insert after the first format option for which you wish it to apply	Don't delete the temporary source directories and files generated when publishing HTML Help, Apple iBooks®/ePUB, Kindle/Mobi, EWRiter and Visual Studio Help.
/L=<compiler log file>	Global option, insert after the first format option for which you wish it to apply	Outputs the compiler log to the specified text file. If you don't enter a path the file is stored in the project directory. Use quotes if the path or filename contain spaces. If you use multiple output format 830 options or .INI files 837 you can enter this switch after the last output format switch to log the error messages for all output formats. If you do not use this switch no log will be written, even if errors occur. If you want to see the errors you must either include a pause command in your batch to keep the console open or specify a log file with /L.
/stdout	Global option. Must be the SECOND command line parameter, directly after the project file reference.	Directs command output to STDOUT instead of creating a new console. Should only be used in batch files.
/debug	Global option, use once per command line after all the format options	Display a message window before outputting showing the batch commands and whether they have been recognized properly. Use for

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual (helpman.exe) command line syntax:		
HELPMAN.EXE "<Path>\project.hmxz" /<format> /<other switches> ... ***Always enclose all paths and filenames containing spaces in quotes.***		
		troubleshooting if your command line doesn't work as expected. **Warning:** Don't use */debug* in normal batch build processes. It opens a modal window and will interrupt the automated process.

6.6.2 Exit codes

When the command line console closes it issues a standard exit code that you can use to control further batch processing if you are integrating Help+Manual output in your automated build process.

Note that a log file is not generated automatically, even if errors occur and the console will normally close automatically after the process finishes.

- **If you want to create a log** you must explicitly specify this with the `/L=<logfile>` switch in your command line. Log files are not generated automatically.
- **If you want to be able to read the console messages** you must include a `pause` instruction at the end of your batch file to keep the console window open. (This is only possible with a batch file, not with direct entry in the command line console.)

Exit code	Meaning
0	No errors, compilation completed correctly
1	General critical error, compilation could not be finished, aborted
2	One or more warnings, see log file or console output for details
3	One or more non-critical errors, see log file or console output for details

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.6.3 Basic command line options

This topic describes the basic command line options available and how to use them by entering the commands manually from a command line prompt. See INI and batch files 837 for details on how to automate the process and for information on using more complex sequences of commands.

See Syntax reference 817 for details of all the command line switches and arguments available.

Paths in the command line

The examples all assume that you are entering the command lines in the Help+Manual program directory. When you do this you must only enter a path for the project file. All the other file name arguments automatically use this path so you don't need to enter a path for them if they are stored in the project directory.

However, you must enter path information for all files stored in any other location. You can use relative paths if you want – they are then relative to the project directory.

If you store your batch files in the project directory then you only need to enter the path to the HELPMAN.EXE program (or you can add HELPMAN.EXE to your system PATH variable and then you don't need to enter a path for that either).

Basic syntax – opening a project from the command line

This is the simplest possible command. It just starts Help+Manual and loads the specified project file. This is rather pointless on its own but it illustrates how the command line is used.

- Switch to the Help+Manual program directory and enter the following command, replacing **`F:\My Projects\`** with the path to your project file and **`projectfile.hmxz`** with your project file name, which can be an **`.hmxp`** or an **`.hmxz`** file:
  `HELPMAN.EXE "F:\My Projects\projectfile.hmxz"`
- Note the use of quotes! Since the project path contains a space it must be enclosed in quotes. The same applies for any file names in the command line that contain spaces.

Compiling a project from the command line

To publish a project from the command you just need to add an additional command known as a "switch" to specify the output format you want to use. The following example compiles the project to an HTML Help CHM file, using the last output location and file name you used when you published manually.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See the Syntax reference 817 for details of the available output format switches.

```
HELPMAN.EXE "F:\My Projects\projectfile.hmxz" /CHM
```

The output format switch must always be the first switch after the project file name. All the other switches can come in any order but they must be after the output format switch. The only exception here is the /TSK switch for publishing predefined publishing tasks, which can be used on its own without any other switches. See Output to multiple formats 830 for details.

Note the use of quotes! All paths and file names that contain spaces must be enclosed in quotes.

Compiling a project to a different location and file name

To publish a project to a different location and file name just add them to the output format switch with an equals sign:

```
HELPMAN.EXE "F:\My Projects\projectfile.hmxz" /CHM="F:\My Pro-
jects\Help\WidgetHelp.chm"
```

If you don't enter the output filename and path the last values used when publishing manually from Help+Manual will be used.

Note the use of quotes! All paths and file names that contain spaces must be enclosed in quotes.

Compiling to PDF with a specific PDF print manual template

The following examples generate PDF files with an explicitly-specified print manual template. 1019 The first example assumes that the print manual template is stored in the project directory. The second example gets the template from the **\Templates\Pdf** folder in the Help+Manual program directory.

Example 1:

```
HELPMAN.EXE "D:\Help Project\MyHelp.hmxz" /PDF=widget.pdf /Tem-
plate=a4_template.mnl
```

Example 2:

```
HELPMAN.EXE "D:\Help Project\MyHelp.hmxz" /PDF=widget.pdf /Tem-
plate="C:\Program Files\EC Software\HelpAndManual8Tem-
plates\Pdf\widget.mnl"
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.6.4 Using include options

You can use conditional output include options in the command line. These options control what is included in your published output on the basis of the selected output format or user-defined include option conditions. Setting them is equivalent to setting the include options in the Publish 1310 dialog when you publish manually.

Specifying include options is optional. If you don't specify this switch Help+Manual will use the default include options, which are the options you used the last time you published to the current output format manually.

See the Syntax reference 817 for details on all the available switches and parameters.

Key Information
Note that include options do not select the output format! Include options only control what is included in or excluded from your project, not the output format of your project.

How to use include options

When you use this switch you should always ***also*** specify an include option for the current output format as the first option. If you leave out the **/I=** switch the include options set the last time you published the project manually will be used.

Add the **/I=** include options switch ***after*** the output format switch. Follow it with all the include options you want to use, separated by commas. Don't use quotes or spaces (a space would identify a new switch).

Examples:

```
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widgeth-
elp.hmxz /CHM /I=CHM,FINALBUILD,USVERSION
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widgethelp.hmxp /CHM /I=CHM,PDF,DEMO
```

Both these examples output to HTML Help files (**CHM**). Note that the **CHM** include option is included in both cases. The output format itself should always be included as the first include option.

The second example also includes items specifically tagged for PDF in the HTML Help output, which would normally only be included when you publish to PDF.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Negating includes with exclude options

Normally, include options operate with OR logic. This means that if content is tagged with multiple include options only ONE of those options needs to evaluate as true to include the content. Sometimes, however, you may also want to exclude content on the basis of a single option, no matter what other options the content is tagged with. This is not possible when publishing directly from Help+Manual, but you can do it with command line publishing with the **/E=** exclude switch.

For example, suppose you have a project with a large number of topics intended only for Client A, which you tag with a build option you have called CLIENTA. In addition to this, you have also defined a build option called BETA, which you use for some content that is not yet final. Your project includes the following three topics, with these build option tags:

Topic A: CLIENTA
Topic B: CLIENTA
Topic C: CLIENTA,BETA

If you only use **/I=** include options there is no way to include all the normal CLIENTA topics but exclude Topic C, which is also tagged with BETA. Due to the OR logic, activating CLIENTA as an include option would also include Topic C, because only one option needs to be true to include the content.

You solve this problem by adding the **/E=** exclude switch with the BETA build, as follows:

```
/I=HTML,CLIENTA /E=BETA
```

The above switches in your command line will include Topic A and Topic B, but will exclude topic C.

Output format and user-defined include options

Output format include options (i.e. for the output formats supported by Help+Manual) and user-defined include options are both used in exactly the same way. Just type the options after the **/I=** switch, separated by commas. The examples below show the user-defined options in red.

Examples:

```
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widgeth-
elp.hmxz /CHM /I=CHM,FINALBUILD,USVERSION
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widgethelp.hmxp /CHM /I=CHM,PDF,DEMO
```

See also:

Conditions and Customized Output 969

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

6.6.5 Output to multiple formats

You can generate output to multiple formats with the command line, either by calling publishing tasks defined in the Task Manager or by defining the output formats directly. You can also achieve this with multiple command lines stored and executed with INI and batch files 837.

Syntax for executing publishing tasks in the command line:

```
HELPMAN.EXE <path>\projectfile.hmxz /TSK="taskname:action-
name" /TSK="taskname:actionname"...
```

Syntax for selecting multiple formats directly in the command line:

```
HELPMAN.EXE <path>\project-
file.hmxz /<format1> /<switches> /<format2> /<switches> ...
```

Each format switch must be directly followed by all the switches you want to apply to that format. Each format must have its own set of switches, they are not applied to multiple formats.

Using publishing tasks in the command line

The easiest way to publish to multiple output formats from the command line is to call predefined publishing tasks created with the Publishing Task Manager using the /TSK= switch. See Automating Publishing Jobs 809 for full instructions on using the Task Manager.

Calling tasks in batch and INI files

Technically, it is possible to include the /TSK= switch as just one switch among many in a single command line. However, there is no real benefit to this and it makes your batch files more difficult to read and debug.

Unlike other switches, the /TSK= switch can be used on its own. All you need is `HM Program + Project File + /TSK`. For clarity, it is really better to call this switch on its own on a single command line.

The switch can be used in INI files in the same way as other switches. Just use the syntax:

```
TSK=taskname:actionname
```

As always with INI files, don't use any quotes around the components of the line.

Create task command lines with the Task Manager:

You can generate command lines for single and multiple actions from the Task Manager. Just select the actions in a task, the select the Generate Publish Batch File option to create a batch file. You can the copy the command line from that file to use it in your own manually-created batch files.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Although it is possible to mix the /TSK= switch with other switches it is easier to manage if you call publishing tasks on individual lines of their own. Unlike other switches, all you need for this switch is the HELPMAN.EXE filename, the project filename and the /TSK= switch with the task and action names.

Publishing all the actions in a task:

To publish all the actions in a task just include the task name on its own, like this:

```
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widgets.hmxp /TSK="Daily Build"
```

Publishing single actions in a task:

To publish a single actions in a task add the name of the action after the name of the task, separated by a colon (:) character:

```
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widgets.hmxp /TSK="Daily Build:Full CHM Output"
```

Publishing multiple selected actions in a task:

To publish a multiple (but not all) actions in a task use the /TSK= switch multiple times, once for each action. Alternatively, you can also write separate command lines for each action if you like. The result will be the same.

```
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widgets.hmxp /TSK="Daily Build:Full CHM Output" /TSK="Daily Build:Full HTML Output"
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Switches reference for multiple format output

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Local and Global Switches for Multiple Output

Local switches

The following switches are "local". They must be applied to each output format individually by inserting them after the format switch for which they should apply and before the next format switch.

/I=<include options>	The include options you want to use for the output format.
/Template=<template>	The PDF template to be used for PDF output (only for PDF output).
/V=<filename>	This switch specifies an external file to redefine the values of variables in your project file. It can only be used once per output format. See Redefining Variables 834 for more information.
/O=<filename>	**This switch specifies an external *.hm-skin* HTML skin file to apply to your output. Can be used multiple times per output format. The last skin use has priority for properties that also exist in the previous skins.**
/S=complete	**Only output topics with the status "complete".**

Global switches

These switches can only be used once per command line and they apply from the point in the command line at which they are inserted.

/keeptemp	Doesn't delete the temporary directories and source files generated for HTML Help, Visual Studio Help and Apple iBooks®/ePUB output.
/E=<compiler log file>	Outputs the compiler log to the specified file.
/debug	Displays debug information for each output format before publishing.

If you have multiple output formats in a single command line you must insert these switches directly after the first output format to apply them to all output formats. To apply them only to some output formats insert the switches after the first output format for which you wish them to apply.

Examples:

```
1) helpman.exe project.hmxz /CHM /keeptemp /EPUB
```

 are, all rights reserved

Multiple output format command line examples

Example 1:

The following example compiles a project file to HTML Help and PDF, using conditional output include options for the HTML Help file and selecting a specific PDF print manual template for the PDF output file. The template is assumed to be in the project directory; if it is stored somewhere else you must include its path.

```
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widget.hmxz /CHM=widgeth-
elp.chm /I=CHM,DEMO /PDF=manual.pdf /Template=manual.mnl
```

Example 2:

The following example compiles to CHM and WebHelp using include options.

```
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widget.hmxp /CHM=D:\CHM\wid-
get.chm /I=CHM,FINAL /HTML=D:\HTML\index.html /I=HTML,FINAL
```

See also:

.INI and batch files 837

6.6.6 Skins & redefining variables

You can also apply project skins and redefine some or all of your variables from the command line. Note that creating user-defined skins is only possible with the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. You can use existing skins with the Basic version but you cannot save or edit your own skins.

Skins are applied with the **/O=** switch and can completely restyle your entire project, including the user-defined variables. What the skin does depends what you store in the skin file – it is also possible to store only variables in a skin. The **variables file** method is applied with the **/V=** switch and only redefines variables.

When you are outputting to multiple formats you must enter separate **/O=** and **/V=** switches for each output format for which you wish to redefine the variables. See Output to multiple formats 830 and .INI and batch files 837 for details.

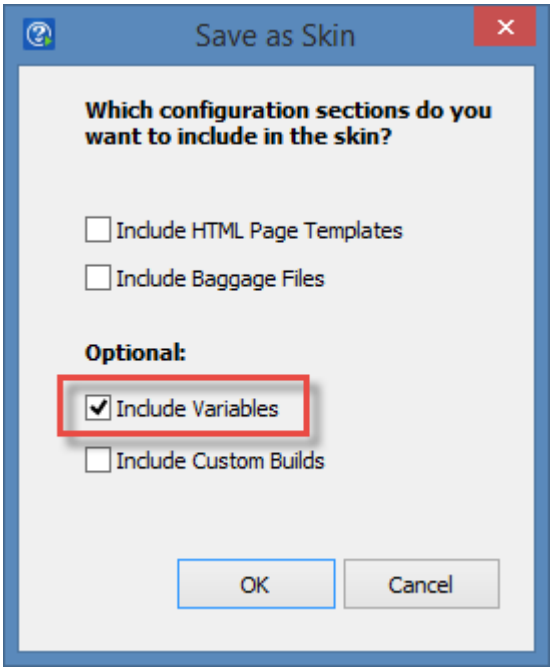
Applying project skins with the /O= switch

The easiest way to redefine user-defined variables in your entire project is with skins, which can also apply an entirely new design to your project. In addition to user-defined variables skins can also include your HTML page templates, your Baggage files and your text and table styles. What is included depends on what you save with the skin file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Save a project skin file (preferably in your project folder) and edit it with the values you want to use. See Transforming your output with skins 638 for full details.

   IMPORTANT: To create a skin for redefining variables only, you can save a skin that only contains variables. To do this select ONLY the variables option in the dialog displayed when saving the project as a skin. Leave all the other options unselected:



2. Reference the skin file in your command line with the **/O**= switch.

If the file is stored in your project directory you don't need to enter a path for the variables file because the path to the project file is used automatically. If it is stored anywhere else you must enter a path. (You can enter either absolute paths or relative paths relative to the project directory.)

Examples:

```
HELPMAN.EXE "D:\Project Files\Widget Help\Myproject.hmxp" /O=de-
moversion.hmskin
HELPMAN.EXE "D:\Project Files\Widget Help\Myproject.hmxz" /O="D:
\Data Files\lightversion.hmskin"
```

Remember, if any paths or file names contain spaces you must enclose them in quotes!

Multiple skins:

You can specify multiple skins for the same output format in a single command line. If the same attributes are defined in more than one skin the attributes from the last skin in the command line will overwrite those used in the previous skins.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you want to specify skins for separate output formats you must do so separately for each output format.

Redefining variables with the /V= switch

This method only redefines variables. You can also combine the two methods in any order – if the skin file and the variables file both redefine the same variables the last file in the command line has priority. You can redefine both TEXT and HTML variables. The variable type will be maintained when you redefine it.

Important: Unlike the **/O=** switch for skins, the **/V=** switch for a variables text file can only be used once per output format. If you use it more than once only the last reference will be used. The others will be ignored.

Step one: Create a file with the new definitions

1. Create a new plain-text file and enter each variable you want to redefine with its new value on a separate line using the following syntax. You don't have to redefine all the variables. Only those included in the file will be affected.

   ```
   VARIABLENAME1=The new value of variable 1
   VARIABLENAME2=<a href="https://www.helpandmanual.com/">EC Software Website</a>
   VARIABLENAME3=The new value of variable 3
   ```

   Don't enter the **<%** and **%>** tags for the variable names in this file and don't insert quotes around the variable value strings. Don't enter tabs or spaces to the left or right of the = signs.

   Be careful to enter HTML code for HTML variables and text for text variables. If you enter HTML code for text variables the code will be interpreted as plain text.

2. Save the file with the **.txt** extension in your project directory.

Step 2: Publish your project with the /V= switch

Add the **/V=** switch with the name of the variables file created in Step 1 to the command line. If the file is stored in your project directory you don't need to enter a path for the variables file because the path to the project file is used automatically. If it is stored anywhere else you must enter a path. (You can enter either absolute paths or relative paths relative to the project directory.)

Examples:

```
HELPMAN.EXE "D:\Project Files\Widget Help\Myproject.hmxz" /V="D:
\Data Files\variables.txt"
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
HELPMAN.EXE "D:\Project Files\Widget Help\Mypro-
ject.hmxp" /CHM=Myproject.chm /V=variables.txt /PDF=Mypro-
ject.pdf /V=variablespdf.txt
```

In the second example, different variables files are used for two different output formats created in the same command line.

Remember, if any paths or file names contain spaces you must enclose them in quotes!

See also:

Using Variables 917
Using Skins 1010

6.6.7 INI and batch files

As you have probably already realized, command lines can get quite long and complex, particularly if you use them to generate multiple output formats to different locations simultaneously. You can solve this problem with configuration files called INI files that contain all the parameters you want to process, including output to as many different formats as you want.

If you combine this with a batch file in the Help+Manual program directory and create a shortcut to this file on your desktop you can automate the entire process and publish to multiple output formats with complex options for each format with a single mouse click.

Using batch files

Creating batch files for multiple command lines is very simple:

1. Just use a text editor (not a word processor!!) to create a plain text file with the extension **.cmd** or **.bat** (CMD is the more modern format).
2. Enter each command line exactly as you would in the command console, one command on each line.
3. Save the batch file and double-click it to execute it.

If you are not familiar with Windows batch files you can find plenty of information about how to use them online.

Using publishing tasks in the command line

The easiest way to publish to multiple output formats from the command line is to call predefined publishing tasks created with the Publishing Task Manager using the /TSK= switch. See Automating Publishing Jobs 809 for full instructions on using the Task Manager.

Calling tasks in batch and INI files

Technically, it is possible to include the /TSK= switch as just one switch among many in a single command line. However, there is no real benefit to this and it makes your batch files more difficult to read and debug.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Unlike other switches, the /TSK= switch can be used on its own. All you need is HM Program + Project File + /TSK. For clarity, it is really better to call this switch on its own on a single command line.

The switch can be used in INI files in the same way as other switches. Just use the syntax:

TSK=taskname:actionname

As always with INI files, don't use any quotes around the components of the line.

Create task command lines with the Task Manager:
You can generate command lines for single and multiple actions from the Task Manager. Just select the actions in a task, the select the Generate Publish Batch File option to create a batch file. You can the copy the command line from that file to use it in your own manually-created batch files.

Although it is possible to mix the /TSK= switch with other switches it is easier to manage if you call publishing tasks on individual lines of their own. Unlike other switches, all you need for this switch is the HELPMAN.EXE filename, the project filename and the /TSK= switch with the task and action names.

Publishing all the actions in a task:

To publish all the actions in a task just include the task name on its own, like this:

```
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widgets.hmxp /TSK="Daily Build"
```

Publishing single actions in a task:

To publish a single actions in a task add the name of the action after the name of the task, separated by a colon (:) character:

```
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widgets.hmxp /TSK="Daily Build:Full CHM Output"
```

Publishing multiple selected actions in a task:

To publish a multiple (but not all) actions in a task use the /TSK= switch multiple times, once for each action. Alternatively, you can also write separate command lines for each action if you like. The result will be the same.

```
HELPMAN.EXE D:\Projects\widgets.hmxp /TSK="Daily Build:Full CHM Output" /TSK="Daily Build:Full HTML Output"
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to create an .INI file

Use a text editor to create a plain text file with the extension `.ini` (for example **`batchoutput.ini`**) in the project directory of the project you want to publish.

- The INI file contains all the switches and parameters that come ***after*** the project file name, with one switch or parameter per line. They must be entered in exactly the same order as you would enter them on the command line. That means the output format switch always comes first, followed by all the other switches.
- The rules for multiple output 830 The rules for multiple output 830 are also the same as on the command line. First the first output format switch followed by its switches, then the next output format switch followed by ***its*** switches, and so on.
- The switches you can use in the INI file are exactly the same as the command line switches. However, they must all be entered on a single line and they are not preceded by a slash.
- Unlike command lines, you must not use quotes in INI files, even if your arguments contain spaces! This is very important!
- You can enter comments if you want. Comments must be entered on a single line and preceded by a semicolon character (**;**).

Example:

```
CHM=F:\Project Files\Help Project\Help\WidgetHelp.chm
I=CHM,FINALBUILD
KEEPTEMP
; This line is a comment
PDF=F:\Project Files\Help Project\PDF\WidgetHelp.pdf
I=PDF,FINALBUILD
Template=usletter.mnl
TSK=Special
L=F:\Project Files\Help Project\Logs\publishlog.txt
```

What this example INI file does:

Note that the INI file only includes all the options that would normally come after the Help+Manual program file name and the project file name in the command line. The program file and project file must still be included in the command line, or in a batch file.

- The first line publishes to HTML Help with a specific output directory and file name. Specifying the output explicitly allows you to publish to other destinations manually in Help+Manual without worrying about changing the destination of the .INI The first line publishes to HTML Help with a specific output directory and file name. Specifying the output explicitly allows you to publish to other destinations manually in Help+Manual

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

without worrying about changing the destination of the **.INI** file output. (Every time you publish manually you automatically reset the default output destination.)

- The **I=CHM,FINALBUILD** include options switch includes everything tagged with the user-defined option FINALBUILD. Since you have specified a user-defined option you must also specify CHM to ensure that any items specifically tagged for HTML Help are also included. KEEPTEMP tells Help+Manual not to delete the temporary source files used to generate the HTML Help output.
- Then the same project is output to PDF, also with a specific output directory and file-name. The include options are the same, but with PDF instead of CHM to include the appropriate topics in addition to everything tagged with **FINALBUILD**.
- The **Template=usletter.mnl** line specifies the PDF print manual template 1019 to be used for the output. Since no path is specified this is assumed to be in the project directory. If it is stored in any other location you must include a path.
- The **TSK=Special** line additionally executes a publishing task defined in the Publishing Task Manager 809. This can include a large number of publishing operations and is effectively like calling an additional batch file with all that it contains.
- Finally, the **L=** parameter stores all the messages associated with the publish operation in a log file in a specified location. If no path had been included this file would have been stored in the project directory.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Switches reference for multiple format output

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Local and Global Switches for Multiple Format Output

Local switches:

The following switches are "local". In `.INI` files They must be applied to each output format individually by inserting them after the format switch for which they should apply and before the next format switch.

I=<include options>	The include options you want to use for the output format.
TEMPLATE=<PDF template>	The PDF template to be used for PDF output (only for PDF output).
V=<filename>	This switch specifies an external file to redefine the values of variables in your project file. This can only be used once per output format.
O=<filename>	This switch specifies a **`.hmskin`** skin file to be applied to the output. This can be used multiple times per output format. If you specify more than one skin the definitions and elements in the last skin referenced will be used for any elements defined in all skins.
S=complete	This switch specifies that only topics with the status "complete" are to be included in the output.

Global switches:

These switches can only be used once per .INI file and they apply from the point in the .INI file at which they are inserted:

KEEPTEMP	Doesn't delete the temporary directories and source files generated for HTML Help, Apple iBooks®/ePUB and Visual Studio Help output.
L=<log file>	Outputs the publication log to the specified file.
DEBUG	Displays debug information for each output format before publishing.
~~NOCLOSE~~	**No longer required or supported. This switch is deprecated because command line execution now runs in console mode only and Help+Manual is not opened at all.**

If you have multiple output formats in a single .INI file you must insert these switches directly after the first output format to apply them to all output

are, all rights reserved

How to use the INI file from the command line

To use an INI file just specify it as the first and only parameter after the project file name in the command line. If it is stored in the project directory you don't need to specify a path for it. If it is stored anywhere else you must specify a path.

As usual, the example assumes that you are working from the Help+Manual program directory.

Example:

```
HELPMAN.EXE "D:\Help Project\Widget\WidgetHelp.hmxp" batchoutput.ini
```

This starts Help+Manual, opens **WidgetHelp.hmxp** and then executes all the commands specified by the switches and parameters contained in **batchoutput.ini.**

How to use the INI file from a batch file

You can take this one step further and automate the process completely by putting the command line (or lines!) with the reference to the **.INI** file in a batch file. Then you can create a shortcut to the batch file and perform the entire complex output process by double-clicking on the shortcut. Here's how:

- Create a plain text file with the extension **.bat** or **.cmd** (for example batchoutput.bat) and store it in the Help+Manual program directory. Then you only need to enter the path to the project file, since all other parameters automatically use the path of the project directory.
- Enter each command line you want to execute on a separate line in the file, as shown in the example below.
- Finally, create a shortcut to the batch file. The most convenient location for this is normally on your desktop, but it can be anywhere you like. Then double-clicking on the shortcut will execute the batch file, which will use the settings in the specified INI file (or files) to perform all the operations you have specified.

Batch file example:

```
@ECHO OFF
HELPMAN.EXE "D:\Help Project\Widget\WidgetHelp.hmxp" batchoutput.ini
HELPMAN.EXE "D:\Help Project\Widget Two\WidgetTwoHelp.hmxz" batchtwo.ini
```

The @ECHO OFF command suppresses the output to the command console. It is not really required, it is just customary to use it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You will normally only want to use one command line with an ***.INI*** file per batch file, but there is nothing to prevent you from including as many as you like. They will all be processed one after another when you call the batch file.

Remember to store each ***.INI*** file in its own project directory – i.e. in the directory in which its associated ***.hmxz*** or **.hmxp** project file is stored.

See also:

Output to multiple formats 830

6.6.8 Temp files location

In a number of output formats temporary files are generated as source for the final output format (CHM, ePUB, Kindle, eWriter, Visual Studio Help). By default, these files are written to a folder inside the project folder, but you can change this location if you like. Doing this can speed up the publishing process, particularly if your project is accessed on a network drive by the instance of Help+Manual performing the publishing operation. Publishing will be much faster if the temporary files are created on a fast SSD drive on the same computer where Help+Manual is running.

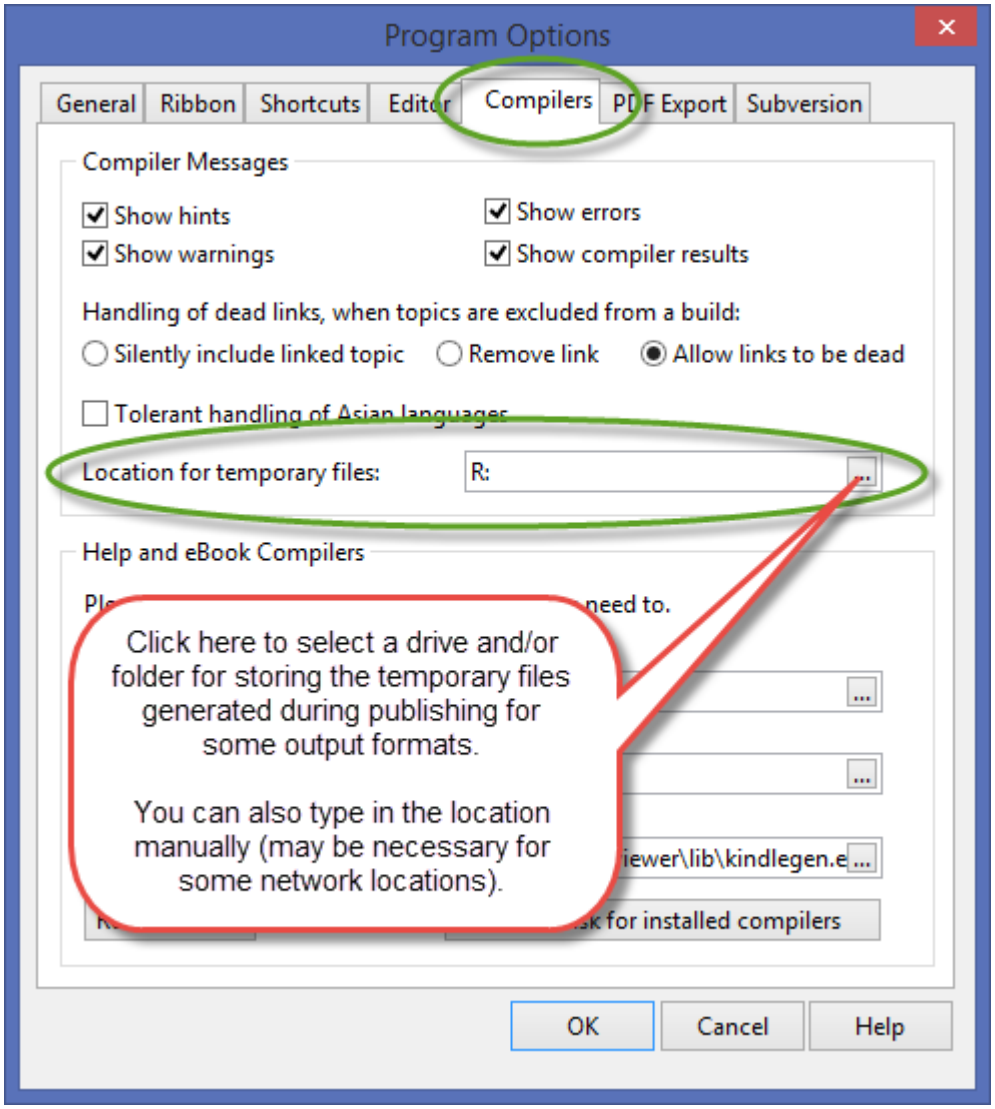
The temporary files folder is a global program setting that will also be used in command line operations once it has been set in the Program Options.

See Optimize Publish Speed 651 for more details on folder locations and publishing speed. The referred topic is for CHM output but the same principles apply for all output formats where temporary files are generated.

How to change the temp files folder location

You can find the setting in the Compilers section of the main program options, in **View > Program Options > Compilers**. The setting applies to all output formats that use temporary files before (CHM, ePUB, Kindle, eWriter, Visual Studio help). The temporary files are written in sub-folders with names based on the project name and the output format.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



6.6.9 Publishing from your application

If you follow the rules and syntax of the Help+Manual XML Language you can generate Help+Manual projects directly from your application and publish them to any supported output format without ever opening Help+Manual.

This can be useful for producing things like automated program code documentation for which you do not need to edit the project in Help+Manual. Of course, you can also edit the projects you generate from your application manually with Help+Manual later if you want.

Note that Help+Manual Professional is required for this because the Basic version create uncompressed XML project files and its publishing capabilities for some of the features supported are also limited.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Generating projects programmatically

To write topics and projects directly, either from your application or manually, you need to follow the rules and syntax of the Help+Manual XML Language, which are documented in detail in the file `Helpman_XML_ref.chm.` This file can be found in the Help+Manual program directory.

The best way to get started is to work through this tutorial on the Help+Manual User forum:

Creating Content from Scratch with XML

You need to be a forum member to access this section. Registration is free and without any obligations, just click on *Register* in the forum header and follow the instructions displayed.

Auto-publishing after you generate

After generating your project from your application you can then publish it automatically with batch commands, following the instructions in the other topics in this chapter. You don't need to open Help+Manual to do this – provided you don't want to edit the content before publishing the entire process can be fully automated.

Note that this is only possible if you create an entire XML project, including a full, valid **`.hmxp`** project file. You cannot publish individual XML topic files programmatically with this method.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

More Advanced Procedures

Unleash the power of Help+Manual! This chapter really goes into details and explains the nuts and bolts that every documentation professional should know about.

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

7 More Advanced Procedures

7.1 Using Version Control Systems

Key Information
Active support for VCS is only available in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual and is only possible with projects saved in uncompressed XML/HMXP. Single-file HMXZ projects are binary and cannot be linked to VCS repositories.

Version control systems enable multiple authors to collaborate on the same project from any location. They do this by linking a local copy of the project on your computer with a central master copy that everyone synchronizes with. This copy can be local or online. In addition to collaboration, version control provides a full backup of every change in your project, allowing you to revert to or recover earlier versions if necessary.

If you save your projects in uncompressed XML 126 (recommended anyway and also required for multi-user editing) you can integrate them directly in your Git, Subversion, or other version control repository.

Advantages

- Offline editing – you don't need a network connection to work on your project
- Collaboration on projects from any location
- Ongoing backups and revert to earlier versions

Collaborating on projects without version control

If all your users are on the same local network you can collaborate on the same project directly, without version control. See Multi-User Editing 1171 for details.

7.1.1 Introduction

Before using Help+Manual with a version control system (VCS) it's important to understand how your project is linked to the VCS database and how the two interact. The following introduction will make it easier to use the VCS support functions because it will enable you to understand what is actually happening when you use them.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Local working copy – central master copy

When you use version control there are two copies of your project: A local copy on your own computer, which is the project you are actually working on, and the master copy that you and all your colleagues synchronize with. The master copy is referred to as the repository. Your local copy is linked to the master copy and your changes are synchronized with the master copy so that other users also have access to them.

Your local copy is completely local. You don't need a network connection to work on it. But you do need a network connection to synchronize with the master copy.

Synchronize before and after work

Once your local working copy is set up and linked to the master copy, you synchronize with the master copy before and after each working session:

1. Open the project and synchronize with the Version Control tool in the Project tab. This updates your working copy with all the latest changes added by your colleagues.
2. Make your changes to the project.
3. When you are finished, synchronize again to add your changes to the master copy.

Avoid conflicts: Coordinate with your colleagues

If two authors work on the same text at the same time, you may get a conflict that you need to resolve with the tools provided by the version control system. You will generally be presented with a side-by-side view where you must choose which version of each change you want to keep, "yours" or "theirs".

These conflicts can be eliminated or kept to a minimum if you coordinate with your colleagues. Just let each other know in advance which texts each of you is going to be working on.

Warning: Extreme caution with deleting topics and changing topic IDs

Always coordinate with your colleagues before deleting topics or changing topic IDs when working under version control!

The most critical thing you can do when collaborating via version control is to delete a topic, or change a topic ID. (For the version control system, changing a topic ID is also a deletion, combined with the creation of a new topic.) The worst scenario is if one user deletes a topic and synchronizes, and another user then edits that topic and tries to syn-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

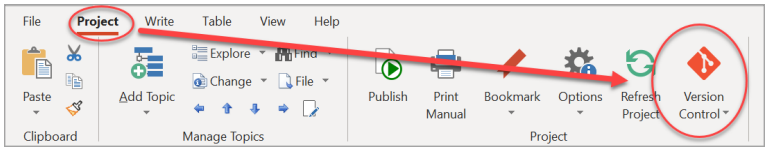
chronize. That creates a deep conflict that the system administrator would have to resolve directly with the version control system tools.

See also:

Multi-User Editing 1171

7.1.2 Syncing Your Project

Once you have configured version control and set up your local working copy, using version control couldn't be simpler. You just work on the local working copy of your project and select the Version Control tool when you want to synchronize with the central repository on the server. You only need a network connection for synchronization. All your work on the project can be carried out offline.



See the separate instructions for SVN and Git to learn how to get everything up and running.

Synchronize both before and after working!

You should always synchronize before you start working, to make sure that you have all the latest changes added to the repository by your colleagues.

Then synchronize again at the end of your working session to add your changes to the central repository.

Synchronize often, coordinate with your colleagues

It is best to synchronize after every working session, even if your work is not 100% complete. Frequent synchronization makes conflicts with your colleagues' work less likely.

Also, it is advisable to coordinate with your colleagues on who is working on what part of the project. This is particularly important if you are going to make major structural changes, like deleting or moving topics and chapters and creating new topics. Good communication can eliminate time-wasting conflicts.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.1.3 Supported Version Control Systems

Supported systems

Git and Subversion

Help+Manual's version control interface comes with pre-configured scripts for synchronizing with both Git and Subversion. In addition to this, there is also an option for syncing with any other version control system that supports scripted access.

Integrated Team Foundation Server and Visual Source Safe support has been removed

As of Help+Manual 9, we have removed the integrated support for the sunsetted Team Foundation Server. Even Microsoft is now switching to Git for their own version control needs, and this is reflected in their purchase of the GitHub platform. If you absolutely must continue using TFS, you will need to use the Custom Version Control 889 option and set up scripted synchronization with your TFS repository.

Support for Visual Source Safe has also been removed. This legacy system is now completely obsolete and should no longer be used.

Custom version control interface

Help+Manual's interface to version control is fully scripted and open, which means you can configure it yourself to synchronize with any VCS that supports scripted access. You can also reconfigure the scripts for Git and Subversion yourself, for example to include user names and passwords in the parameters passed to the system.

About Git

Originally called "git" (all lower case), Git was developed by Linus Torvalds, the creator of Linux, and is now the premier version control system worldwide. It is extremely reliable and amazingly fast. It is a peer-to-peer system that does not require server software. Every user has the entire repository, and thus every user could be the central repository that everyone else synchronizes with.

In practice, you will put a central copy of the repository on a server. Then all your users will synchronize with that. You can host it yourself, or use excellent free services like GitHub and Bitbucket.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

About Subversion

The older Subversion is still an excellent system, but it has some disadvantages compared to Git. The main one is that it is a centralized system requiring installation of both client software on the user's computer and a full server installation with the repository on the central server. Users don't have a copy of the repository, just references to it. This means that the central repository is a potential single point of failure, unlike Git where every user has a full copy of the entire repository.

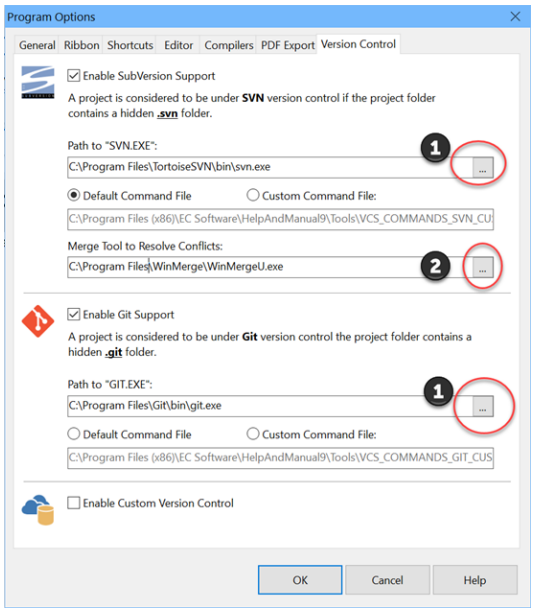
Because of this, there are fewer public hosting options for Subversion than for Git, and they tend to be more expensive. Quite a few web hosting providers support Subversion, but in many cases you will have to manage and configure the server installation yourself.

7.1.4 Configuration in Help+Manual

Before using version control, you also need to activate it for the system you are using in Help+Manual.

Activating and configuring version control in Help+Manual

Select **Program Options** in the **View** tab and then the **Version Control** tab. Then activate support for the system you are using and make sure that the link to the main VCS program is correct. (See Scripts and Customization 889 for details on the **Custom VCS** option.)



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Subversion:

(1) Link to the Tortoise **svn.exe** program in the **\bin** sub-folder of the Tortoise SVN program folder.

(2) Add the path to your merge tool for SVN here. See Configuring a Merge Tool 884 for details.

Git:

(1) Link to the **git.exe** program in the **\bin** sub-folder of the Git program folder.

Scripts:

Use the standard scripts without any changes to get started.

The "Custom Version Control" option

This option enables you to add another version control system not natively supported in Help+Manual. You will need to understand the scripting interface to this system and configure the script template 889 for it with the necessary commands before you start to use it.

7.1.5 Using Git

Git is now the leading version control system worldwide. It was developed by Linus Torvalds, who also created Linux. It is extremely reliable, fast, and secure, and much more flexible than previous systems. Microsoft has now switched to Git for version control for their own software development, moving away from their own Team Foundation Server (TFS) system.

Choose Git if you don't yet have version control

If you are not yet using a version control system, we strongly recommend using Git because it offers the best handling of Help+Manual projects. Microsoft's TFS is now sunsetted and it has always been difficult to manage. SVN is still excellent, but more and more users are switching to Git and its days are numbered. The number of available SVN distributions is dwindling fast, and organizations like Collabnet that used to provide SVN distributions and services have exited the market.

Simple Git management

Despite its great popularity, Git also has a reputation for being complicated and nerdy, and only accessible to Unix developers who spend 48 hours a day at their keyboards. It **can** be like that, because it has a literally huge range of capabilities and functions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

However, there are now excellent tools for managing projects under Git, which we will introduce to you here, and the functions you need for managing and synchronizing Help+Manual projects are simple and straightforward.

All possibilities available for experts

At the same time as offering simple Git management, Help+Manual makes it possible for Git experts to configure the Git integration in any way they want. The scripts for interacting with Git are open and fully editable. See Scripts and Customization 889 for details.

7.1.5.1 Git Components

Unlike SVN, Git is a so-called "peer-to-peer" system. There is no server. Instead, every single Git user has a full copy of the entire repository. Theoretically, any Git user could also be your central repository. However, that is generally impractical and can be complicated. Instead, most people will find it easiest to use an online hosting service like the excellent free GitHub.

Install Git on your computer

Every user needs to install Git

You need to get the official Git for Windows from the central Git site. There are a number of choices you need to make while installing. See this guide on phoenixNAP for good recommendations.

Important settings while installing

For working with Help+Manual, there are some important settings you should make while installing Git:

- **Set "main" as your default initial branch**
  By default, Git will want to set "master" as the initial branch. However, most people now use "main", and this is also how Help+Manual is set up. So select the option to override the default branch name and change it to "main".
- **Git from the command line and also from 3rd-party software**
  This option is essential for integration with Help+Manual and must be selected.
- **Checkout Windows-style line endings**
  This should be selected for work with Git in Windows and Help+Manual.

All the other settings can be left as their defaults.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

After installing: set your user name in Git

You need to set a user name that will be associated with you when you synchronize your projects with the Git repository. Follow the instructions on this GitHub page:

How to set your Git user name

Tip: If you are going to be using a service like GitHub, this name can be the same as your GitHub user name, but does not have to be.

After installing: Set your Git email address if you won't be using GitHub

If you're going to be using GitHub, your email address will be set there. Otherwise, follow these instructions for setting the address for Git:

How to set your Git email address

Important: If you do set your email address here, it **must** match your GitHub email address.

Get a Git GUI (graphical user interface)

You also need to install a "GUI", or graphical user interface, for managing your projects in Git outside of Help+Manual. Administrators will need this for turning Help+Manual projects into repositories and uploading them to the central repository. Regular users will need the GUI for downloading their working copies with the URL provided by the administrator.

Recommendation: GitHub Desktop

Even if you are not using GitHub for hosting your projects, we recommend using the free GitHub Desktop program as your management tool, unless you already have another solution. It works fine with other repositories, and even with your own repositories hosted on your own server and accessed via SSH or https.

If you don't already have a Git solution, we also recommend using the free GitHub for hosting your repositories. See GitHub & GitHub Desktop 856 for instructions.

DON'T use the "Git GUI" included with the Git software

The very basic "Git GUI" included with the Git installation is problematic for regular users and should not be used unless you are already familiar with it. Among other things, it will

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

not create functional working copies from the central repository without additional manual configuration of the working copy after creating it.

List of available Git GUIs

See this page for a list of available Git GUI programs with descriptions.

7.1.5.2 GitHub & GitHub Desktop

Since Git is peer-to-peer, you can actually host your central repository anywhere that all your users can access it. However, if you don't already have a Git solution, we strongly recommend using the free GitHub, which is now owned and managed by Microsoft. It is reliable and easy to use, and provides the excellent GitHub Desktop program for creating your local working copies and external management.

GitHub benefits

GitHub is managed by Microsoft, which now also uses Git for its own code management. However, it was originally an open source development and even before being taken over by Microsoft it was firmly established as the leading site for hosting projects managed under Git, both privately and publicly.

GitHub is the result of the same development philosophy as Git itself, and it is just as reliable as the entire Git system. It is completely free for most needs, and highly accessible internationally, with excellent transfer speeds. It can be used both publicly and privately, and it is very easy to give users access to the projects hosted there when needed.

GitHub Desktop: An excellent Git GUI, not just for GitHub

The free GitHub Desktop program is an excellent, multi-purpose Git GUI that can be used for managing Git repositories hosted anywhere, not just on GitHub. If you don't already have another solution we recommend it.

In this documentation, all Git GUI operations are described for GitHub Desktop. However, the basic principles are the same for all Git GUIs, so if you are using a different system the instructions should be easily transferable.

All users: Set up a GitHub account and install GitHub Desktop

Set up GIT first

If you have not already done so, download and install Git on your computer. See Git Components 854 for instructions.

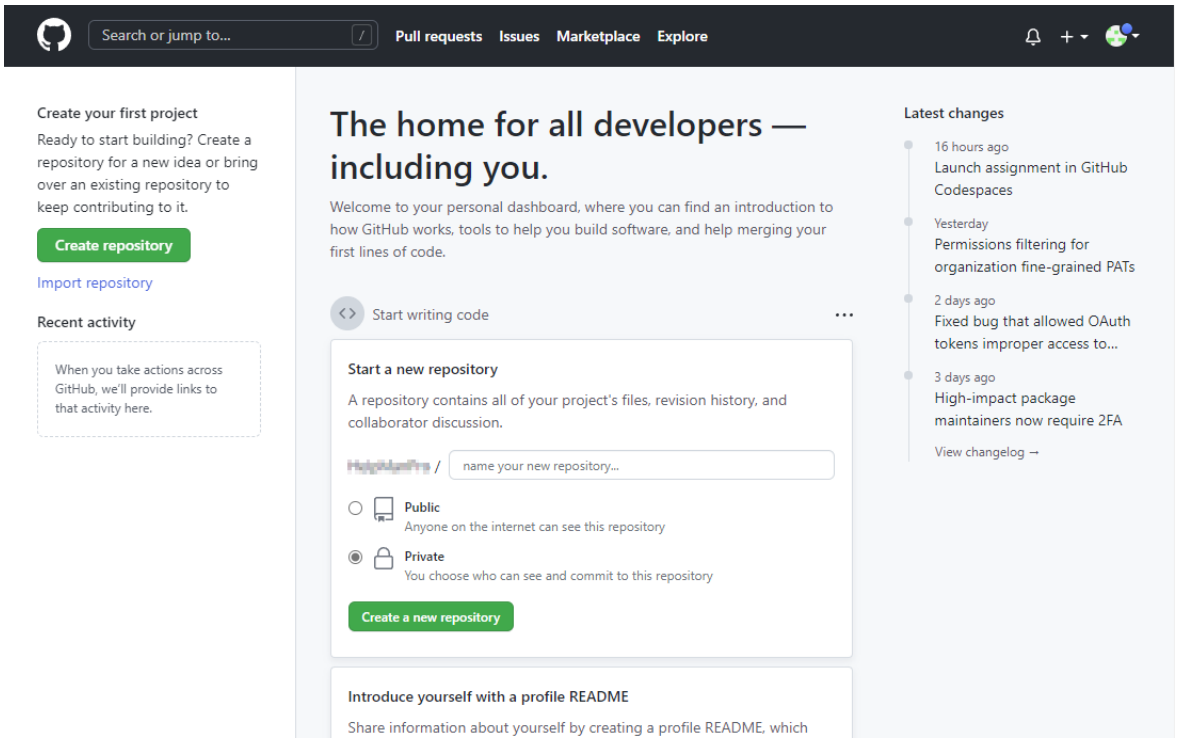
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Set up a GitHub account

Setting up a GitHub account couldn't be easier. Just visit https://github.com/ and click the **Sign Up** button.

- Choose your user name carefully, because that will also be used in the addresses of your projects on GitHub.
- The list of interests is only to direct you to various paid plans, so it doesn't really matter what you select there at first.
- Choose the free plan to get started. You can consider other plans later.

When you're done you'll be taken to your new home page on GitHub:



Download and install the GitHub Desktop Git GUI

You are going to need GitHub Desktop for most of the operations described here, so download and install that now:

https://desktop.github.com/

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Sign in to your account with GitHub Desktop

After installing, you need to sign in to your GitHub account with GitHub desktop. You will then be asked to continue to your browser, where you will authorize GitHub Desktop to access your account.

Administrators: Create a HM project repository and upload it to GitHub

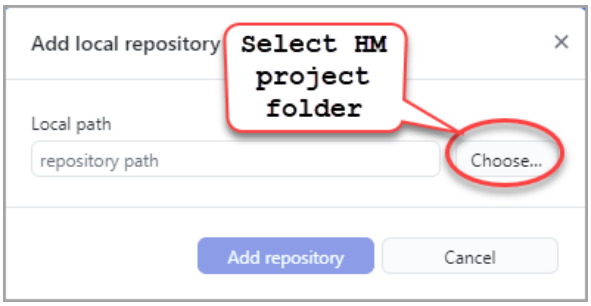
To work with Help+Manual in GitHub, you first need to turn the project your team wants to collaborate on into a Git repository and upload it to GitHub.

Warning: Don't use the *New Repository...* option

If you use the *New Repository...* option for this in GitHub Desktop, it will create an empty repository folder **inside** your Help+Manual project folder, which is not what you want.

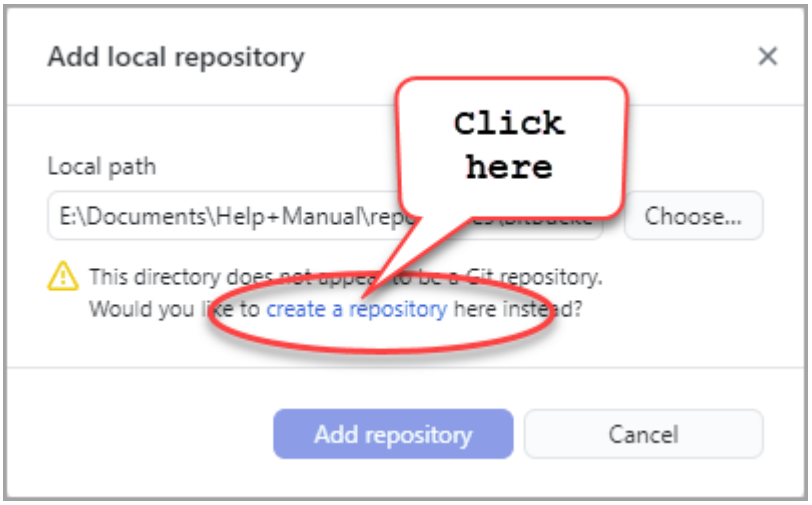
Initialize a HM project as a Git repository

1. Open GitHub Desktop and select *Add Local Repository* in the **File** menu. This dialog opens:

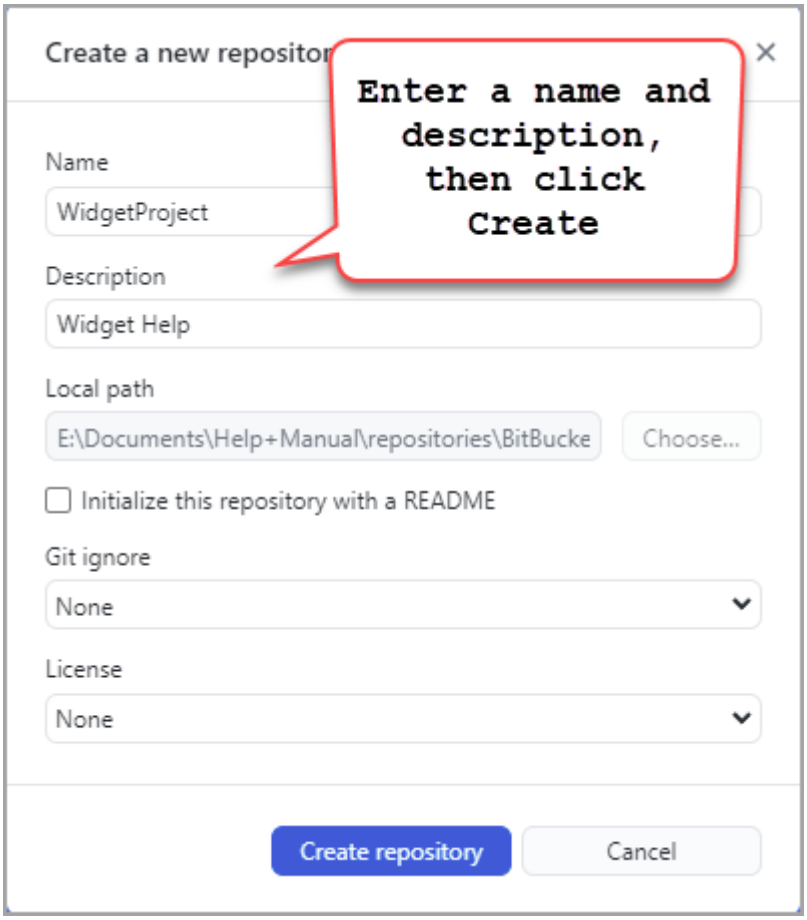


2. Click **Choose...** and select the Help+Manual project folder you want to initialize as a repository. GitHub Desktop will tell you it's not a repository:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Click on the link in the text shown above to get this dialog:



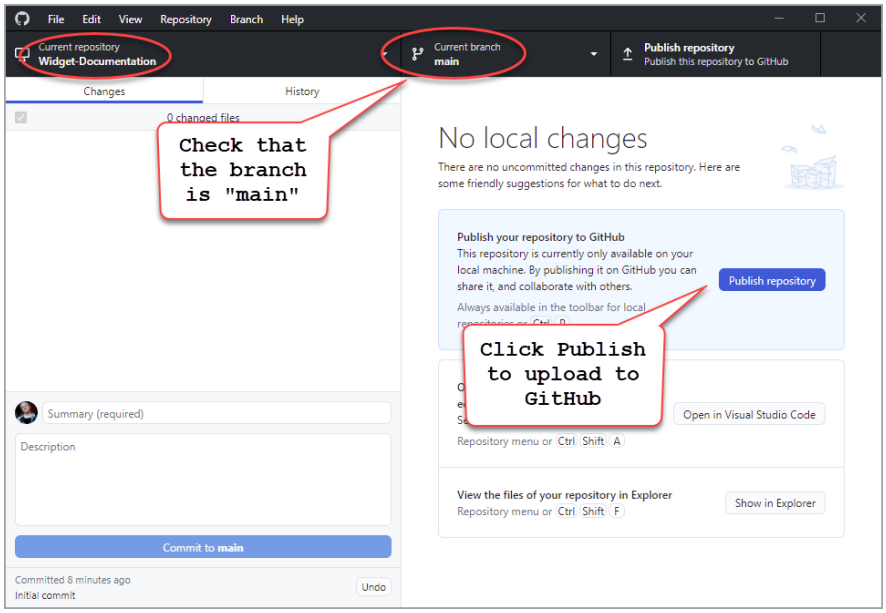
4. The path cannot be changed now. Just enter a name and description and click on **Create** to initialize the project as a Git repository.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

GitHub Desktop will apply the settings and create the **.git** sub-folder containing all the repository data. Never touch or edit anything in this folder.

Upload the repository to GitHub

Once you have created the repository, this screen will be displayed in GitHub Desktop:



Procedure

1. Check that the branch shown at the top is "main", which is required for Help+Manual. If it isn't, this means you missed an important step in your Git installation. To change this, open an administrator command console and enter the following command to correct this:

   ```
   git config --global init.defaultBranch main
   ```

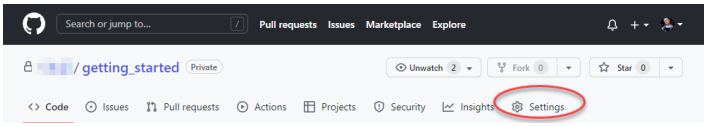
2. Enter a summary and description at the lower left.
3. Click on **Publish Repository** to upload to GitHub.

Adminstrators: Invite users to collaborate on the repository

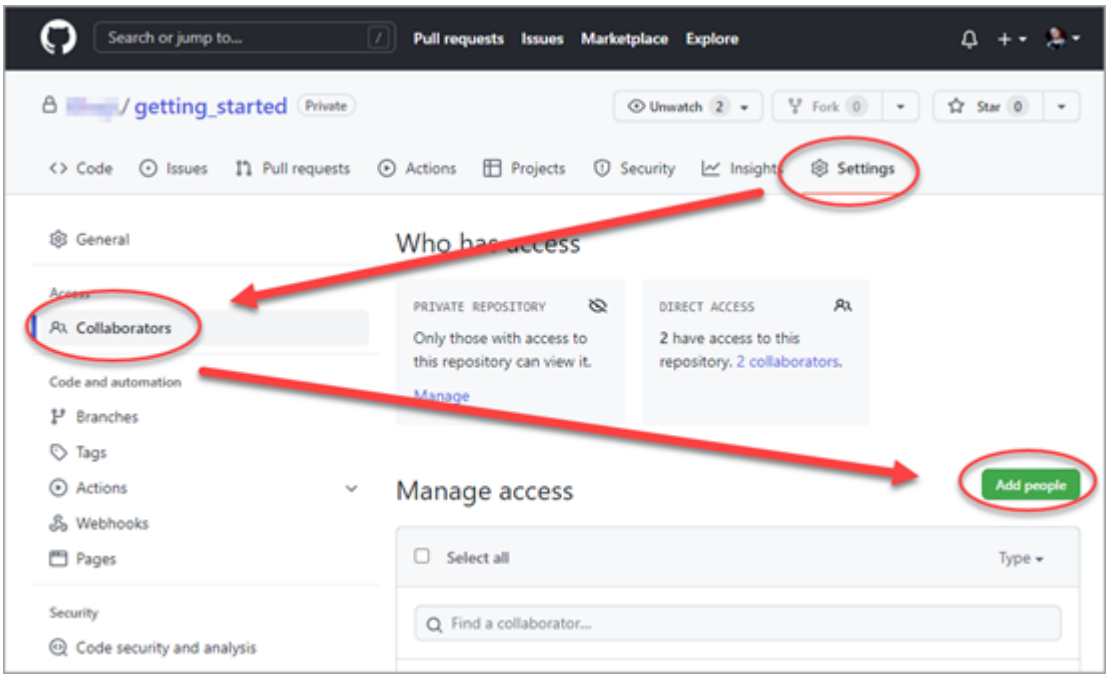
To be able to access the repository, your users need to have their own GitHub accounts and you need to add them as collaborators by sending them an invitation. You will need the GitHub user names of the users you want to invite.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Log into your GitHub account in your web browser and select the project repository from the list on the left. Then click on the Settings link in the bar above the project details:



2. Then select **Collaborators** on the left and the green **Add People** button on the right:

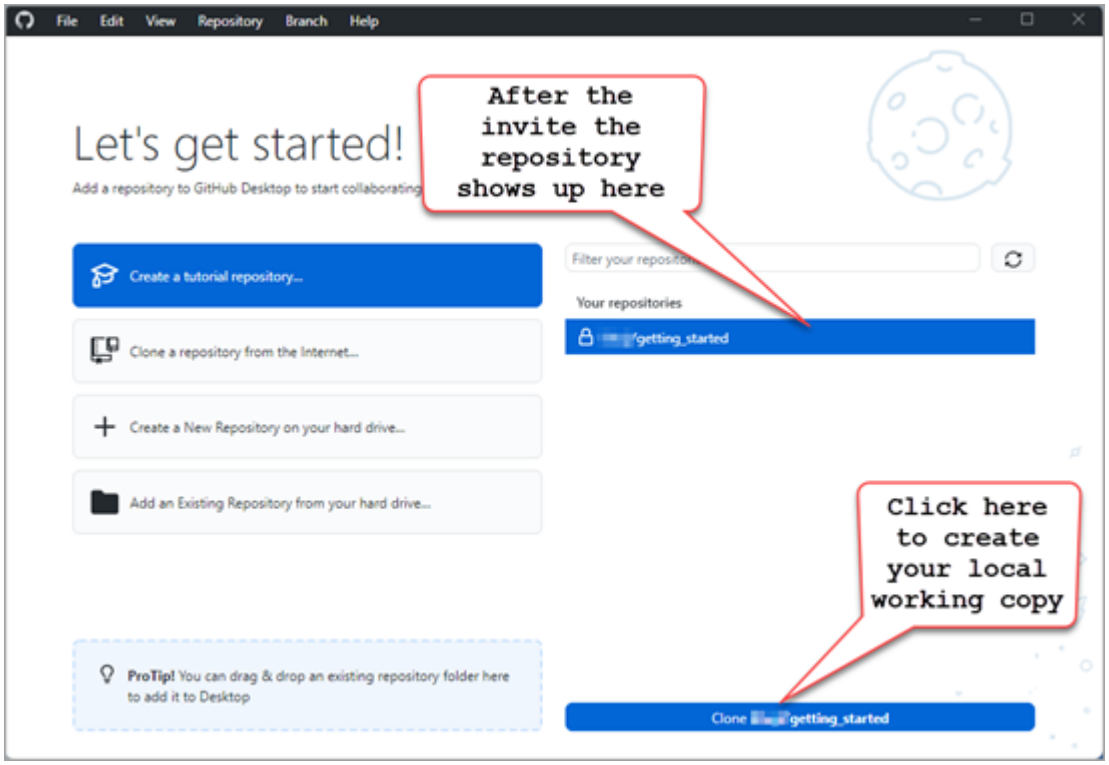


3. Enter the user name in the dialog displayed and confirm the invitation. The user will then have 7 days to confirm.

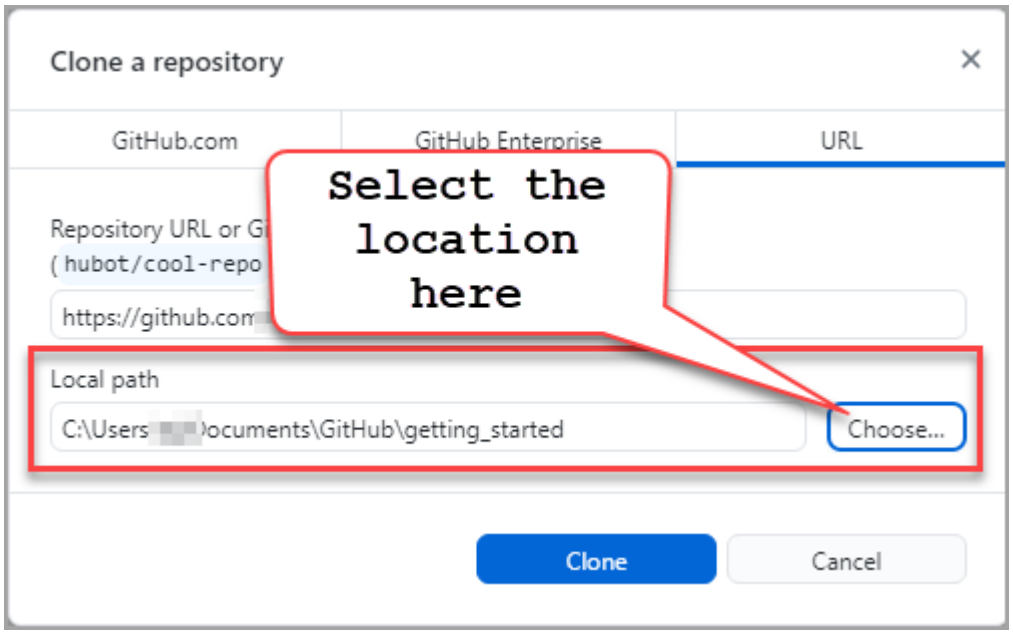
Users: Download a local working copy with GitHub Desktop

Once you have confirmed your administrator's invitation to collaborate on the project via the repository you can download your local working copy with GitHub desktop. The repository you have been invited to will show up in the GitHub Desktop window:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Click on the **Clone** button at the bottom right and choose a location for your local copy. It must be in a directory where you have full read and write permissions.



Then just click on **Clone** to create the working copy. You can then work in the project in Help+Manual.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.1.5.3 Other Hosting Options

There are many other Git hosting solutions available, but none of them are as user-friendly as GitHub, mainly because most of them are focused on programmers. In addition to this, you can also easily host your Git repositories on your own Internet server, because no server-side software is required. Even so, this does require a fair amount of command line configuration.

This topic provides details on setting up your own Git server for administrators who want to do this. It also includes details on BitBucket as an alternative to GitHub as an example of what less user-friendly hosting solutions can be like.

Important: Always create "main" as your default repository branch

No matter what method you use for setting up and managing your Git repositories, it is important that you always configure them to use "main" as their default branch. All the Help+Manual Git scripts use this branch and they will fail if you use the older "master" branch instead.

Admins: Git hosting with BitBucket

BitBucket is also an excellent and reliable free Git hosting service. Unfortunately, it is also less user-friendly than GitHub for non-programmers. The most critical problem for Help+Manual users is that you can't use GitHub Desktop for uploading your local projects to BitBucket, and the SourceTree Git GUI that is linked to BitBucket is not something that we can recommend for technical writers who are not software developers

However, if you are an administrator and need to use BitBucket for some reason, here is a brief summary of what you need to know for using it to host Help+Manual projects.

Important: Git user name and email address

Your Git user name and email address 854 must match your BitBucket credentials.

Getting your local Help+Manual repository onto BitBucket

The only reliable way to do this is manually via the command line. There are instructions for "migrating repositories to BitBucket" with the SourceTree tool, but they are for the Mac version only and assume the repository is already linked to a remote host like GitHub.

1. First, create an application password for your BitBucket repository, following the instructions here. You MUST copy and store the generated password when it is shown to you. It will never be accessible again.

   https://support.atlassian.com/bitbucket-cloud/docs/create-an-app-password/

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Initialize your local Help+Manual project as a Git repository. You can do this with GitHub Desktop, as described in GitHub & GitHub Desktop 856, or via the command line in the project folder:

```
git init -b main
git add -A
git commit -m "First Commit"
```

3. Then create an empty repository on BitBucket and get its URL. You can then link and upload the local Help+Manual repository to the BitBucket repository with the following commands. The first time you do this you will be asked for your BitBucket app password:

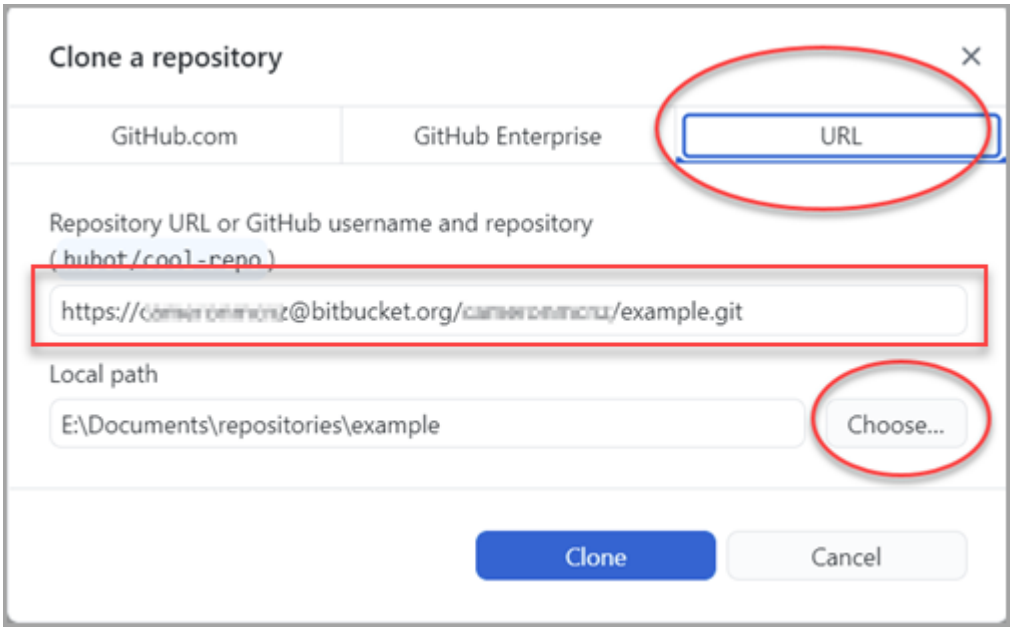
```
git remote add source https://username@bitbucket.org/username/reponame.git
git push -u -f https://username@bitbucket.org/username/reponame.git main
```

Then you're done.

Getting users to download their local working copies

This can be done with GitHub Desktop, but the users will also need a BitBucket account and the BitBucket application password (see above).

1. First, give the user access to the repository on BitBucket.
2. Get the URL of the repository on BitBucket and provide it to the user.
3. User: Open GitHub Desktop and select *Clone Repository* in the **File** menu.



4. Select the **URL** tab, then paste the BitBucket URL in the central field and choose the local path to an empty folder in the lower field.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

5. Click **Clone** to create the working copy. You will have to enter your BitBucket user name and the application password.

Once this is done, the user can work on the project normally in Help+Manual 871. It can also be administered with GitHub Desktop, of course.

Admins: Git hosting on your own server

Git requires no server-side software. All you need to do to have a central repository on your server is initialize a Help+Manual project as a Git repository, save it on your server and provide secure access for your users. If you are familiar with operations like this, this is really the easiest way to get Git set up for your users.

Absolute prerequisite: Key pair SSH access or other transparent access

Help+Manual cannot stop for password entry during synchronization and it would also be infuriating for users. This means that if you are going to host on your own server, the access must be via SSH and you must install public/private SSH key pairs for each user, or another transparent access mechanism. Whatever method you use, users must be able to access the repository folders without stopping for login entry, and SSH key pairs are generally the best and safest method. This is required so that Help+Manual can synchronize to the server folder transparently and silently.

This is not something we can describe here. See this Microsoft article if you need information to get started.

Step 1: Create a directory for your git repositories on your server

Log into your server with SSH (or edit directly on the server) and create a folder in the location where you want to store all your Git repositories. This should also be a location where you are giving your users access with SSH key pairs.

Let's assume that the directory is going to be called **`git`** and that it's going to be on the root level. You will need to modify the paths in the examples below if yours is different, of course.

The path to the folder will then be:

`~/git`

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

if the folder is in the root of the home directory of the account you are logging into (assumed in the examples below) or just

/git

if it is in the actual root of the server.

Step 2: Create a "bare" repository from the Help+Manual project and install it on the server

The server copy does not actually need the Help+Manual project files. It only needs the **.git** folder from the project folder containing the repository. Then you can store multiple repositories in the same folder on your server. (Remember, every Git user has the entire repository). This is referred to as a "bare" repository.

First you need to initialize the Help+Manual project as a Git repository. Enter the following commands in the Help+Manual project folder in PowerShell or a Command Console:

```
git init -b main
git add -A
git commit -m "First Commit"
```

Next you need to create the bare repository with a name in another folder. Let's assume it's going to be called **temp**, on the same level as the project folder, and that the project repository is going to be called **widget_help**. You do this with the following command:

```
git clone --bare .git '../temp/widget_help.git'
```

This copies the **.git** folder from your Help+Manual project folder to the **temp** folder as a bare repository called **widget_help.git**.

The bare repository must have a name – i.e not just **.git** – as well as being bare, so that you can put multiple repositories in the same folder on your server.

Next you need to copy the bare repository to your Git repository folder on your server with SCP. Windows 10 and above now come with SCP built in, so you should be able to do this from the command console. If it doesn't work there, use PowerShell.

Switch to the folder containing the bare copy you made in the last step and enter this command, replacing the file and folder names and your SSH user name and domain with your own values:

```
scp -r widget_help.git sshuser@domain:~/git
```

Explanation:

- **sshuser** is your SSH user name
- **domain** is your server's domain

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **~/git** is the path to the repository folder on the server from the login location

Finally, log in to the server with SSH and enter the following commands to switch to the repository folder and initialize the repository on the server for shared access. You will need to adjust the path to the one of your own repository folder on the server, of course.

```
cd ./git/widget_help.git
git init --bare --shared
```

Your server repository is now ready.

Step 2: Enable users to download their local working copies

Once you have given your users SSH access to the repository folder with key pairs they are already authorized for the repository, so you don't need the additional invite step that is necessary for GitHub or BitBucket. You just need to give the user the SSH user name URL they need to clone the repository themselves or do it in GitHub Desktop if they are afraid of the command line.

SSH user name URL for the users

You give each user their SSH user name URL for the repository, which will be:

sshuser@domain:~/git/widget_help.git .

- **sshuser** is the user's SSH user name
- **domain** is your server's domain
- **~/git** is the path to the repository folder on the server from the user's login location
- The dot (**.**) at the end is important. It prevents an additional sub-folder from being created in the user's folder

Method 1: Command Line

User: Open a command console, switch to the empty folder where you want to install your local working copy of the project and enter the command (remember to include the dot at the end):

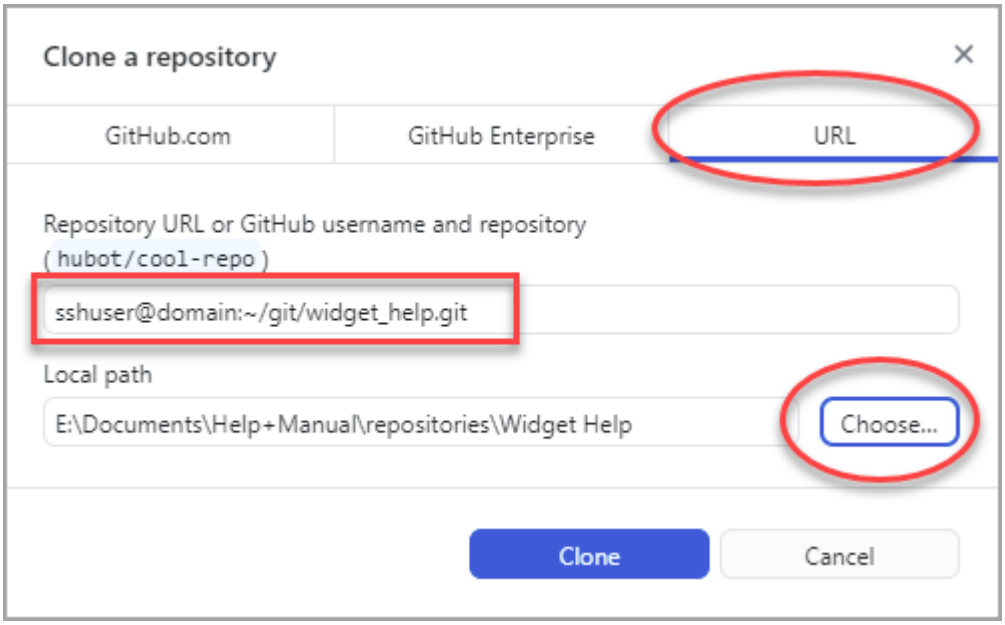
```
git clone sshuser@domain:~/git/widget_help.git .
```

Replace **sshuser@domain:~/git/widget_help.git** with the user name URL provided by your administrator for the repository.

Method 2: GitHub Desktop

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Open GitHub Desktop and select *Clone Repository* in the **File** menu.



2. Select the URL tab, enter your SSH user name URL in the central field and choose your empty folder for your local working copy with the **Choose** button.

3. Then just click on **Clone** to clone your local working copy.

Once this is done, you can work on the project normally in Help+Manual 871.

7.1.5.4 Configuring a Merge Tool

Occasionally, you and a colleague will both make changes to the same text in the same topic at the same time. This will only happen if you really both edit the same sentence in different ways. Changes in different locations in the same project or even the same topic will be merged silently by Git, but may still create contradictions in the meaning of your text, so you really always need to coordinate with colleagues before working on the same topics.

You need a "merge tool" to handle conflicts

When conflicts occur, you need to be able to see your version of the text and the conflicting version and choose which one you want to save to the repository. This is done in a "merge tool", which shows you the versions side by side.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use WinMerge or Beyond Compare

There are two solutions we can recommend for this: The free WinMerge tool or the paid Beyond Compare tool in the Pro version. Both are excellent, and it is really up to you which one you use.

Configuring WinMerge as a merge tool

The free WinMerge tool is a well-maintained and outstanding solution for comparing and merging the contents of files and folders. It is fully aware of both SVN and Git and can be used as a merge tool for both systems.

Step 1: Download and install WinMerge

Download WinMerge and install it.

Step 2: Configure Git for WinMerge

Although WinMerge understands Git conflict files, it does not come with an integrated configuration for optimal performance. You need to add some lines to the Git configuration file for optimum performance, and to tell Git that you want to use WinMerge.

In a text editor like Notepad or Notepad++, open the file **.gitconfig** ,which you can find in the following location:

C:\Users\<username>\.gitconfig

If there are any [mergetool.., [merge.., [difftool.. or [diff.. entries similar to those shown below, you need to delete them. However, check with your administrator first before doing this. Otherwise just copy and paste the following lines to the end of the **.gitconfig** file and save it.

```
[mergetool]
    prompt = false
    keepBackup = true
    keepTemporaries = false
[merge]
    tool = winmerge
[mergetool "winmerge"]
    name = OneMerge
    trustExitCode = true
    cmd = "'C:/Program Files/WinMerge/WinMergeU.exe'" -u -e -fm -wl -dl
\"Local\" -wr -dr \"Remote\" \"./$LOCAL\" \"./$BASE\" \"./$REMOTE\" -o
\"./$MERGED\"
[diff]
    tool = winmerge
[difftool "winmerge"]
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
    name = WinMerge
    trustExitCode = true
    cmd = "'C:/Program Files/WinMerge/WinMergeU.exe'" -u -e \"./$LOCAL\"
\"./$REMOTE\"
```

Configuring Beyond Compare Pro as a merge tool

Beyond Compare is the leading paid diffing and merging program for Windows. Like WinMerge, it is also fully aware of both SVN and Git and can be used as a merge tool for both systems.

Important: Pro version required

You must have the Pro version of Beyond Compare for this, as other versions do not support the required 3-way compare for conflict resolution.

Warning: Only recommended if you are familiar with version control or Beyond Compare

Beyond Compare is a great tool, but its 3-pane merge tool interface may be less easy to understand for normal users. We only recommend using it if you are already use Beyond Compare regularly and/or are intimately familiar with diffing and merging in version control systems. Otherwise, please use the free WinMerge, which is generally easier to manage.

Configuring Beyond Compare Pro as your Git merge tool

In a text editor like Notepad or Notepad++, open the file **.gitconfig** ,which you can find in the following location:

C:\Users\<username>\.gitconfig

If there are any [mergetool.., [merge.., [difftool.. or [diff.. entries similar to those shown below, you need to delete them. However, check with your administrator first before doing this. Otherwise just copy and paste the following lines to the end of the **.gitconfig** file and save it.

```
[mergetool]
    prompt = false
    keepBackup = false
    keepTemporaries = false
[merge]
      tool = bc
[mergetool "bc"]
      path = c:/Program Files/Beyond Compare 4/bcomp.exe
[diff]
      tool = bc
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
[difftool "bc"]
      path = c:/Program Files/Beyond Compare 4/bcomp.exe
```

Note: This will configure Beyond Compare Pro as both your merge tool and your diffing tool.

Older Git versions:

For older versions of Git before 2.2, replace "bc" in the references above with "bc3".

7.1.5.5 Using Git in Help+Manual

Once you have configured Help+Manual 852 for Git and set up the Git components 854 and got your local working copy, you can basically just edit normally. The only difference is that you need to synchronize with the repository copy before and after work.

Communicate with your colleagues

The most important part of work with version control is to make sure that you and your colleagues don't edit the same things at the same time. If you do, you will have to waste time resolving conflicts. It is particularly important to make sure that everyone knows when one of you deletes a topic or changes its ID. Editing a topic that another user has already deleted or renamed can cause serious conflicts that can only be resolved centrally by the administrator.

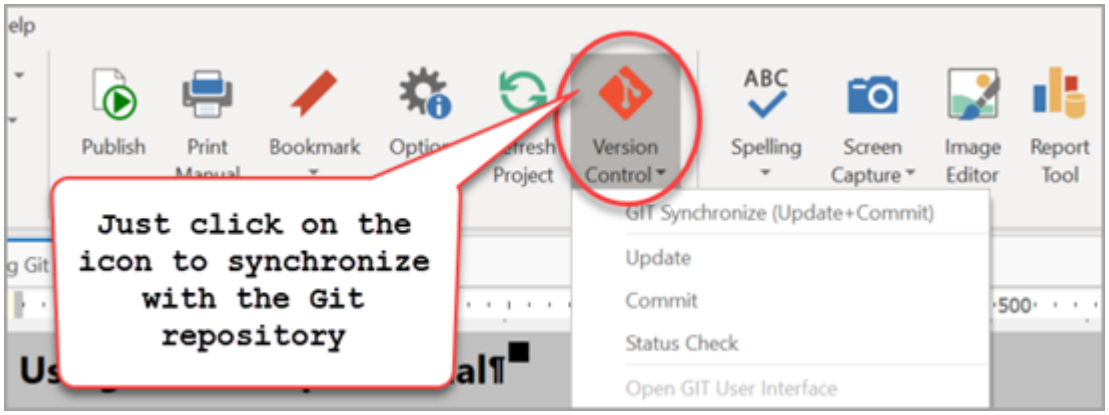
- Always be clear about who is going to be working on what today.
- Always inform everyone before you delete a topic, change its ID or make any other structural changes in the project.

Synchronize before and after work

Always synchronize with the repository before you start work to get the latest changes, and after finishing work to add your changes to the repository. Those are the only times you need a connection to the repository. All your other work can be performed offline.

Once your project is set up for Git, Help+Manual will display the Git tool in the Project toolbar. To synchronize your project with the SVN repository you just need to click this tool.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



The submenu offers a number of individual options, but you won't normally need these. Clicking on the main tool will both download new changes **from** the repository and upload your changes **to** the repository. So you just need to do this before starting work to get the latest changes from your colleagues and after you finish work to add your own changes.

Dealing with conflicts

If conflicts are found while synchronizing, the conflicted file will be opened in your merge tool 868 so that you can choose which version of the conflict to keep. The merge tool provides a 3-way comparison of the XML source of the conflicted topic, showing the original server version, your version and your colleague's conflicting version.

Resolving conflicts in WinMerge

When a conflict is registered, the WinMerge window will pop up automatically showing the conflicts.

Procedure

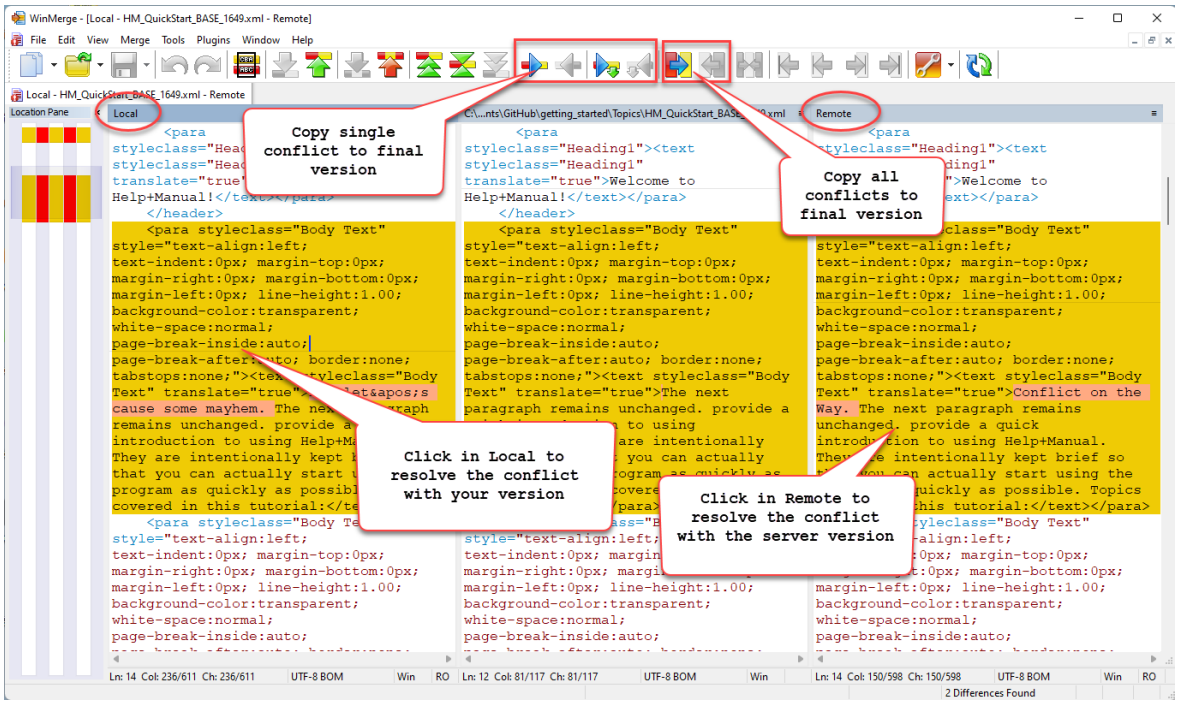
Tip: To make conflict editing easier in WinMerge, open the **View** menu and activate *Wrap Lines*, and optionally also *Toolbar* > *Big Icons*.

1. Choose which versions of the conflicts to keep.
2. Save with the blue **Save** tool.
3. Press **Escape** to close WinMerge. If there are more conflicts it will pop up again with the next conflict.
4. Repeat 1-3 until all conflicts are resolved.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Resolving conflicts in WinMerge

In the WinMerge conflict resolution screen, your version is on the left (**Local**), your colleague's version is on the right (Remote) and the earlier version on server is in the middle column. You can copy your version or your colleague's version onto the central server pane with the buttons in the toolbar.



Procedure:

- You need to choose which version you want to keep before you can save. You can do this for individual conflicts or for all conflicts.
- If you want to use **REMOTE** (your colleague) for all conflicts, click in any of the conflicts in the **Remote** column, then click the **Copy All** button (see above), and then the blue **Save** button.
- If you want to use **LOCAL** (you) for all conflicts, click in any of the conflicts in the **Local** column, then click the **Copy All** button (see above), and then the blue **Save** button.
- To resolve individual conflicts, click in the highlighted conflict in the column you want to use (**LOCAL** or **REMOTE**)and select one of the two **Copy Right/Left** buttons (see above). The buttons with the green arrows move to the next conflict after copying.

When you have checked all conflicts and selected **Save**, press **Escape** to close WinMerge. If there are more conflicts it will open again automatically until all conflicts have been resolved.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Resolving conflicts in Beyond Compare Pro

Beyond Compare Pro 868 can also be used as your Git merge tool, and is actually already prec-onfigured to do so. It is an excellent tool, its 3-pane merge interface is designed with programmers in mind and can be confusing and difficult to understand for normal users. If you are not already familiar with Beyond Compare Pro and/or with merging and diffing in version control systems we recommend that you use the free WinMerge instead.

Resolving conflicts

When a conflict is registered, the WinMerge window will pop up automatically showing the conflicts.

Basic Procedure

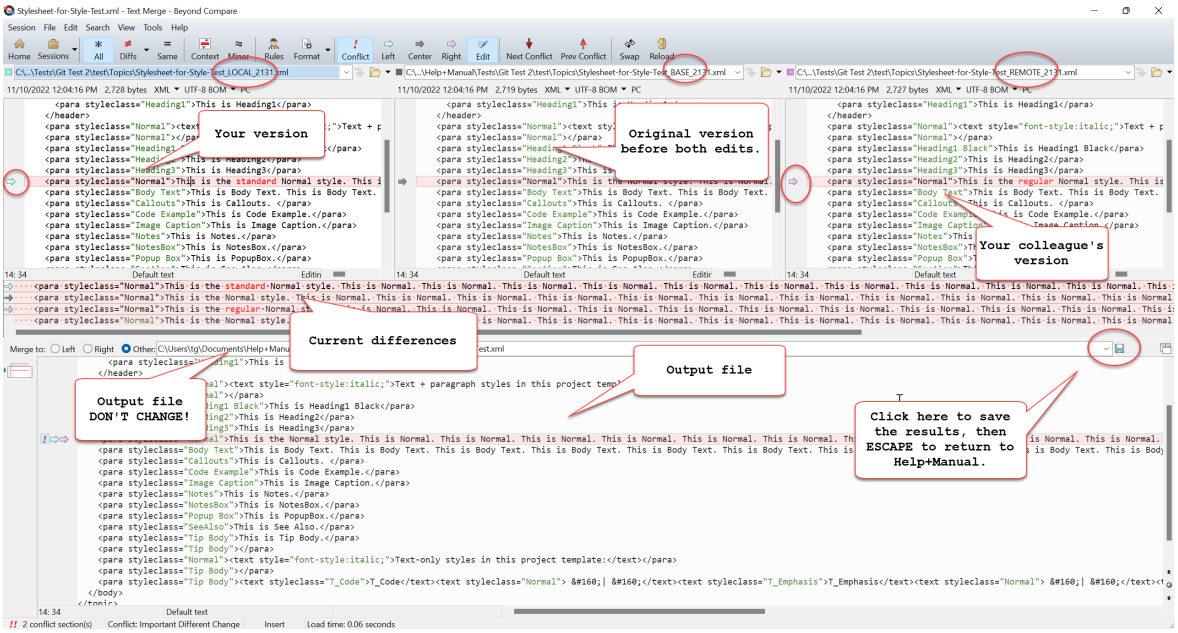
1. Choose which versions of the conflicts to keep.
2. Click the small blue **Save** tool.
3. Press **Escape** to close Beyond Compare. If there are more conflicts it will pop up again with the next conflict.
4. Repeat 1-3 until all conflicts are resolved.

Resolving conflicts in Beyond Compare

The BeyondCompare conflict resolution screen has three basic sections:

- **The top row** shows your version of the conflict file in the left column (**LOCAL**), your colleague's version in the right column (**REMOTE**) and the original version before both edits in the non-editable center column (**BASE**).
- **The middle row** shows the differences between the current selected conflict lines above one another (first three lines) and the selected output version (bottom line).
- **The bottom row** shows the resolution/output file that will be merged with the repository.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



How it works – don't change the output file!!!

The result that is going to be committed to the Git repository is shown in the large bottom pane. **DO NOT CHANGE THIS FILE!!!!** For example, don't click on the **Left** or **Right** buttons or select a different file from the drop-down list. This is very important!!! If you make any changes to the automatic setting of the output file the synchronization process in Help+Manual will hang and you will need to clean up the results manually.

For each conflict shown in the file (pink highlights) you must choose whether you want to use your version (left) or your colleague's version (right).

Conflict resolution steps

1. Click in the highlighted conflict in either the left or the right pane.
2. Click on **Left** or **Right** in the toolbar at the top to transfer either your version (**Left**) or your colleague's version (**Right**) to the final version (large bottom pane). You can also click on the little arrows to the left of each conflict instead.
3. Proceed to the next conflict and repeat.
4. When you are finished, click on the blue **Save** icon at the right-hand end of the output file field to save and confirm the output file.
5. Press **ESCAPE** to close Beyond Compare. If there are any more conflicts it will re-open with the next conflict file. Repeat 1-5 until all conflicts have been processed.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.1.6 Using Subversion (SVN)

Subversion (SVN) used to be the preeminent open source version control system, but it is rapidly being replaced by Git. If you are already using SVN, by all means stay with it. It's still an excellent and reliable system, provided you have an SVN server.

However, you should also know that Subversion is on the way out. There are now fewer maintained SVN distributions and hosting solutions, because the world is switching to Git. If you are just getting started, we strongly recommend choosing Git. It is now firmly established as the leading system, with excellent free hosting solutions for your central repository like GitHub and Bitbucket.

About Subversion

Unlike Git, which is peer-to-peer, SVN uses a client-server architecture. There are always two software components: The server software that manages the central master copy of your project, and the client software on the user's computers, which manages the synchronization with the central master copy.

Because of this, working with SVN requires a server configured to run the SVN server software. There are a number of different weays to get this set up, depending on your facilities and requirements. See SVN Components 877 for details.

Changes for SVN users in Help+Manual 9

Use the latest versions of SVN and Tortoise SVN

Help+Manual 9 now integrates with SVN via the standard command line interface, via fully editable scripts 889. This eliminates the need to have the runtime components provided by client packages like Tortoise SVN and Collabnet. Because of this, you can now always uses the latest SVN server system and install the latest version of Tortoise SVN. You also no longer need to install the additional runtime components from Collabnet, which has closed down its SVN operations.

You now need to get your working copy outside of Help+Manual

It is not currently possible to create local working copies via the command line interface from within Help+Manual. You need to do this outside of Help+Manual. See the guides in this chapter for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

External conflict editing

Similarly, you now need to set up an external tool for editing conflicts. We recommend the excellent free WinMerge program, which comes with full support for SVN. Here too, see this guide for details.

Status icons are no longer displayed in the TOC

Finally, command line integration with SVN cannot support the status icons that used to be displayed in the Table of Contents within Help+Manual.

7.1.6.1 SVN Components

The SVN system always has two components: a server and a client. The server manages the central master copy of your projects in a database that is referred to as the "repository". The client software installed on each user's computer manages the local copy of the project that the user works on, and synchronizes it with the master copy on the server.

This synchronization is not continuous: Users would generally synchronize once before working, to get the latest changes from the central repository, and once after working, to add their changes to the repository.

Server component: The main Subversion distribution

The Subversion server manages your central project storage repository and is normally installed on a central server computer, which can be accessed via your local network or the Internet. It can be installed on the same computer where you do your work, but that is not recommended.

Your SVN server does not have to be a Windows computer. There are versions available for Linux, Unix and Mac OS X servers as well as for Windows, and you should use those if your central server is already on one of those platforms. See here for a central list of SVN server distributions, but note that support for SVN is becoming less widespread and some of the sources listed may no longer be in service. In particular, all the Collabnet offerings are no longer available and their links point to a different company with no SVN support.

If you are running a Windows server we currently recommend the Visual SVN distribution, which is free for commercial use for up to 15 users and provides easily configurable and secure local and remote access via https://.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Client component: the SVN client software

This is the software that each user installs on their computer to communicate with the SVN server. It provides the interface that Help+Manual interacts with and some clients also include integration in Windows Explorer so that you can perform operations there directly. The best clients are also free and open source.

Please use Tortoise SVN as your Subversion client

There are a number of SVN clients for Windows, but we strongly recommend using Tortoise SVN. This will ensure maximum compatibility and minimum problems.

See this guide for a more detailed introduction to Tortoise SVN.

7.1.6.2 Setting up SVN

This topic outlines the steps you need to perform to get started with SVN. This is just a basic guide to show you the components you need to install and where you need to install them. It does not replace the installation instructions for the individual components. If you do not feel comfortable with installing components like this yourself please get help from an experienced friend or colleague or your system administrator. Also, please take the time to study and follow the instructions for the versions you are installing.

SVN hosting solutions

Although the number of SVN distributions is now very much reduced because of the fading popularity of the system, there are still a lot of paid and free hosting solutions for SVN. In addition to this, some Internet service providers also include SVN as an either optional or standard part of some of their packages.

We can't recommend any specific services for this, but ask around and you will find plenty.

SVN on an inexpensive NAS unit

One of the best and easiest ways to get an SVN server in a small office is to purchase an inexpensive NAS (Network Attached Storage) unit from a company like Synology. These units have SVN server packages that can be installed with a few simple clicks, making them very easy to set up and maintain. In addition to this, you get the added benefits of a central backup solution with protection against hard drive failure, because they are designed to protect your data even if individual drives fail.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Check that the individual unit supports SVN

Some models don't support the SVN package. Check that it is supported before purchasing.

Use an Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)!

Always use an uninterruptible power supply unit with battery backup on the unit where the SVN server is installed. The one thing that servers and NAS units generally cannot handle is power failures! For example, the UPS units from APC are inexpensive, very reliable and have plug-and-play support for leading NAS vendors like Synology.

Server installations: Installing SVN and the SVN client

This is the standard installation for authors working in teams. You install the main SVN component on a server computer and the client software on each author's own local computer. The repository (database) containing the master copy of your project is stored and managed on the server. The local copies that the authors work on are stored on each author's own computer and synchronized with the master copy in the repository on the server.

1. Install and configure an SVN distribution (this is the server component) on a server computer on your network.
2. Install an SVN client on all the computers using Help+Manual. We strongly recommend using Tortoise SVN because it provides the best support for Help+Manual and excellent integration in the Windows Explorer interface.
3. Add your project(s) to the SVN repository and have each author working on the project create a local working copy from the master copy in the repository. See Setting up Your HM Projects 879 for details.

One-person installations: Install Tortoise SVN only

If you are one author working on your own you can also get all the benefits of SVN on your local computer. If you want, you can go the full Monty and install the full version of SVN server on your local computer and link to that with the client. However, there is a simpler method, because the Tortoise SVN client package actually includes full SVN functionality for local use.

7.1.6.3 Setting up your Projects

To manage a project in Subversion you need to perform the following tasks:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **Set up a repository** for the project on your Subversion server. This is the only task you must perform with the server software. If you are working in a company this will generally be done for you by your system administrator.
- **Add your Help+Manual project** to the new server repository. This task can be performed in the Tortoise SVN client.
- **Check out working copies:** You and each user must then "check out" (download) a working copy of the project from the server repository to a folder on their local computer. This too can be performed with the Tortoise SVN client.

Admin: Set up a repository for the project on your SVN server

Theoretically, you can have manage multiple projects in sub-folders of a single repository, and then just provide the URLs to the specific folder for each project to your users. However, we generally recommend creating a separate repository for each project. This is more secure, and if anything ever happens to the repository then it only affects one project, not all of them.

Setting up the repository on your SVN server

This is generally a task for the system administrator, who should take the time to familiarize themselves with the management of their SVN server software. If you have an SVN hosting provider, they will provide tools for doing this task. We currently recommend the Visual SVN distribution, which is free for commercial use for up to 15 users and provides easily configurable and secure local and remote access via https://.

Choosing your repository structure – branching considerations

If you are only going to host a single HM project in each repository and not do any branching, you can just create an empty repository folder and load your HM project into it directly. If you don't know what branching is, this is what you should do.

If you do plan on doing branching, then you will already know how you want to set this up. Note that branching is not supported from within Help+Manual. You will need to set up the branching yourself and then have your users check out and synchronize working copies of the branch they should be working on.

Get the URL for your users — local and remote access

Once you have set up the repository you will need the URL for you and your users to be able to access the repository and synchronize with it. This URL will generally be provided by your SVN server software, for example Visual SVN.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Admin: Add your Help+Manual project to the repository

Once your repository is set up and you have its URL, you can add the Help+Manual project to be hosted on it using the Tortoise SVN client. Your project should be in the uncompressed HMXP format. All the image files and other external files it uses should be stored in sub-folders of the project folder. Otherwise they won't be accessible to all users.

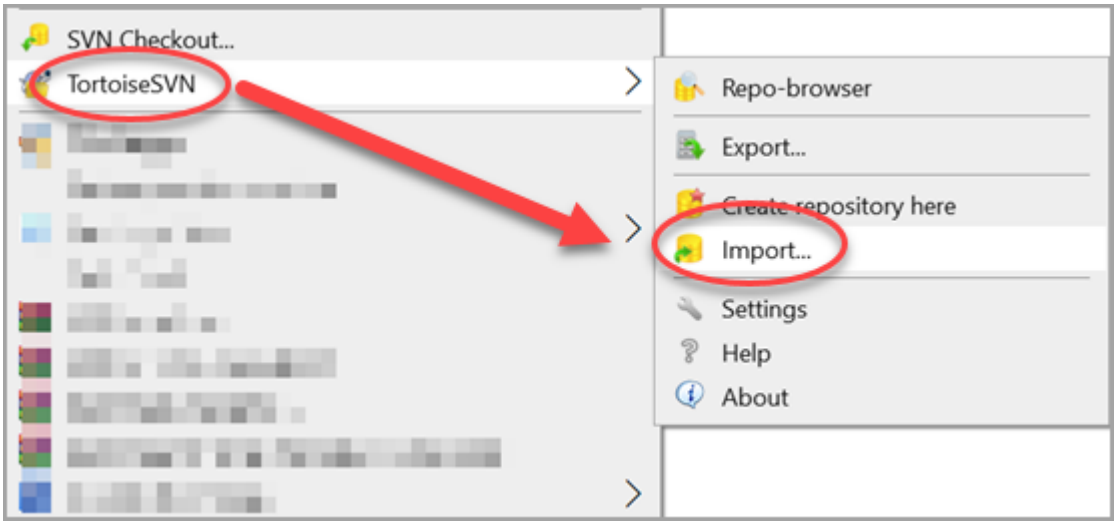
Preparation

These instructions are for the Tortoise SVN client, which we recommend. So install the latest version of Tortoise SVN on your computer, and on the computers of all users who are going to be working on the project via SVN.

Tortoise SVN works through integration in Windows Explorer, so all the following steps are performed from within Windows Explorer.

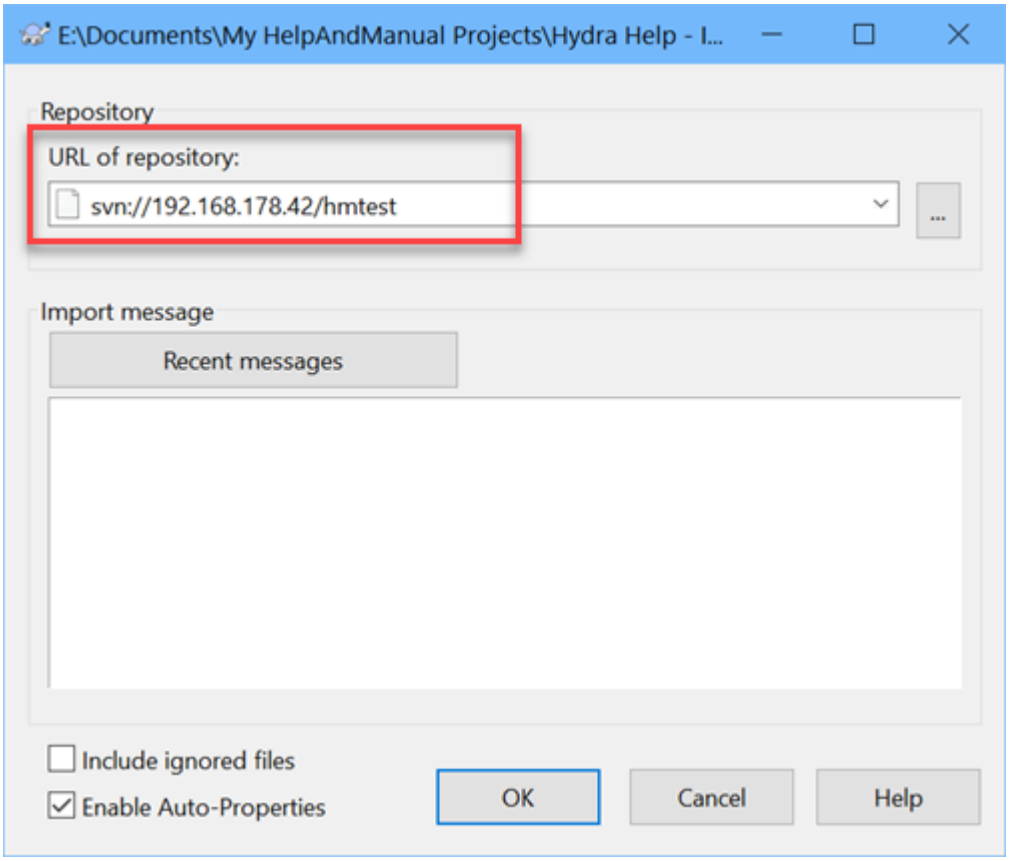
Procedure

1. Right-click on the project folder in Windows Explorer and Select **Tortoise SVN** > **Import** in the context menu.



2. Enter the URL of your repository in the dialog displayed. The prefix may be svn:// or https://, depending on the configuration of your SVN server.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Click on **OK**. You may be asked to enter the user name and password for the repository. Then all the project files and folders will be uploaded to the repository. This can take a while, depending on the speed if your connection.

That is it. Your repository is now ready to be used.

User: Check out local working copies from the repository

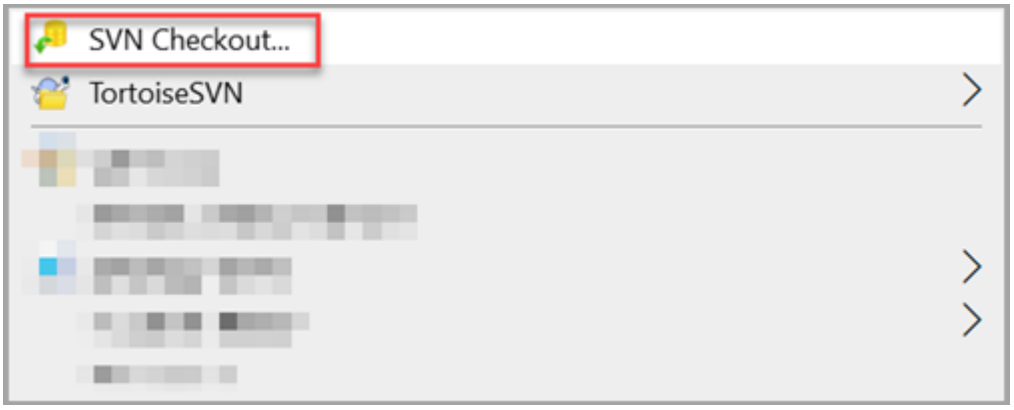
Once the repository is set up, the final step is for each user to check out a local working copy from the repository. This is automatically linked to the copy in the repository, so that each user's work can be synchronized with the central copy. This operation is also performed with the Tortoise SVN client in Windows Explorer.

Each user must install the current version of Tortoise SVN on their computers, both to be able to check out the working copy and to synchronize it with the repository in their daily work.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

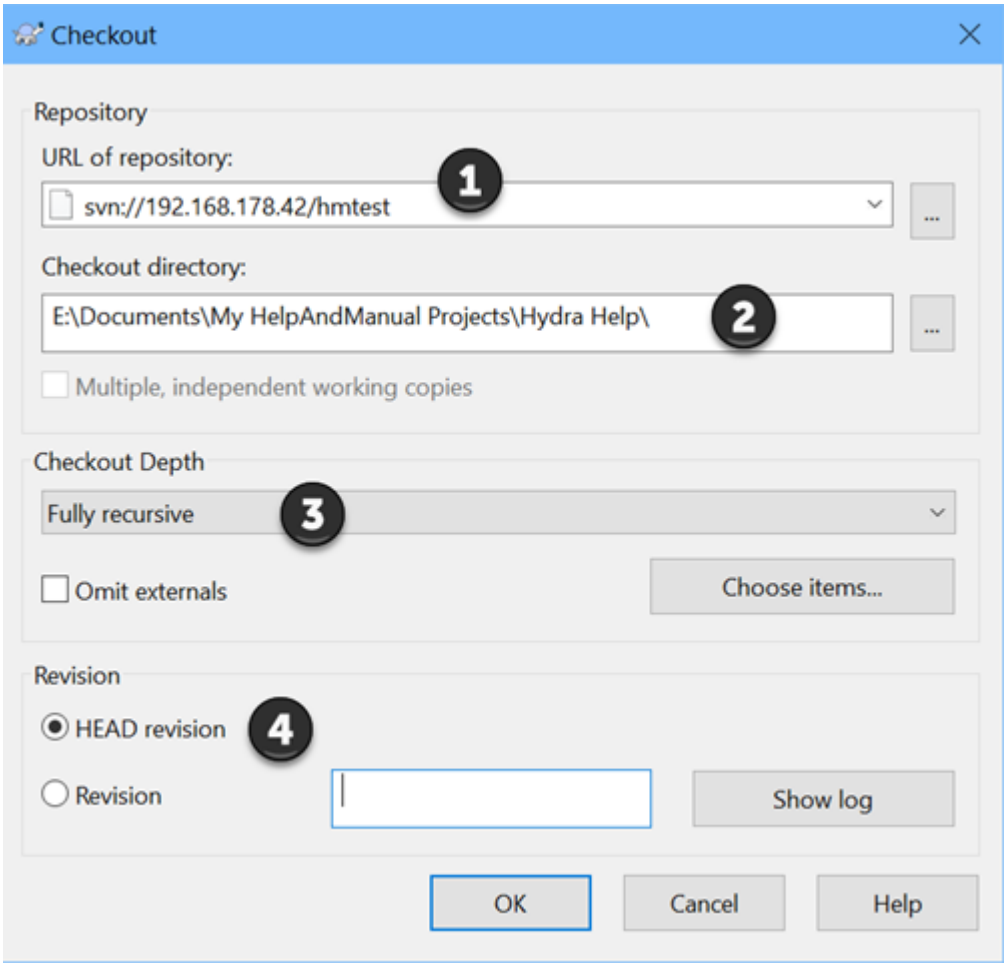
Procedure

1. Create an empty folder for the working copy. This must be in a location where the user has full read and write permissions.
2. Right-click on the folder in Windows Explorer and select SVN Checkout in the context menu:



3. This dialog is displayed:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



4. Enter the URL of the repository in **(1)**. The prefix may be *svn://* or *https://*, depending on your server. Check that the correct target folder is displayed in **(2)**. Leave the Checkout Depth to Fully recursive **(3)** and make sure that HEAD revision **(4)** is checked. Then click on **OK**.

This will download the project and a sub-folder called **.svn** to the working copy directory. This folder should never be touched or opened, as it is managed entirely by SVN.

Then you are done and can start editing and synchronizing 886 the local working copy in Help+Manual.

7.1.6.4 Configuring a Merge Tool

Occasionally, you and a colleague will both make changes to the same text in the same topic at the same time. This will only happen if you really both edit the same sentence in different ways. Changes in different locations in the same project or even the same topic will be merged silently by SVN, but may still create contradictions in the meaning of your text, so you really always need to coordinate with colleagues before working on the same topics.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You need a "merge tool" to handle conflicts

When conflicts occur, you need to be able to see your version of the text and the conflicting version and choose which one you want to save to the repository. This is done in a "merge tool", which shows you the versions side by side. Unfortunately, even though Tortoise SVN is an outstanding SVN client, its merge tool is not intuitive enough for normal users working in a program like Help+Manual.

Use WinMerge or Beyond Compare

There are two solutions we can recommend: The free WinMerge tool or the paid Beyond Compare tool in the Pro version. Both are excellent, and it is really up to you which one you use.

Configuring WinMerge as a merge tool

The free WinMerge tool is a well-maintained and outstanding solution for comparing and merging the contents of files and folders. It is fully aware of both SVN and Git and can be used as a merge tool for both systems.

Step 1: Download and install WinMerge

Download WinMerge and run it to install it. Select "Custom installation" and make sure that you install all the listed components. Select these options when they are offered:

- **Integrate with Tortoise SVN**
- **Register WinMerge as a 3-way merge tool**
  If this option is shown select it and:
  Select *Merge at right pane*
  Disable *Auto-merge at startup time*

Note: The WinMerge setup may also offer the more practical *Merge at center pane* option. However, at the time of writing this doesn't work for its SVN integration and the merging is always set to the right pane. This documentation thus only covers the right-pane merging method.

Step 2: Add the path to WinMerge in Help+Manual

Open **View** > **Program Options Version** > **Control** and configure the path to the **`WinMergeU.exe`** program in the *Merge Tool to Resolve Conflicts* field. WinMerge will then be opened automatically to resolve conflicts encountered when synchronizing with the SVN repository. See Using SVN in Help+Manual 886 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Beyond Compare cannot be used as a merge tool for SVN

Unfortunately, Beyond Compare cannot currently be used as a merge tool for SVN. This is because calling BC as a 3-pane merge tool requires additional information about each individual conflict file and all the additional temporary files that cannot be accessed automatically when processing all the files in a batch.

We recommend using the free WinMerge as your merge tool for SVN. See above for details.

7.1.6.5 Using SVN in Help+Manual

Once you have configured Help+Manual 852 for SVN and set up the SVN components 877 and saved your local working copy 879, you can basically just edit normally. The only difference is that you need to synchronize with the repository copy before and after work.

Communicate with your colleagues

The most important part of work with version control is to make sure that you and your colleagues don't edit the same things at the same time. If you do, you will have to waste time resolving conflicts. It is particularly important to make sure that everyone knows when one of you deletes a topic or changes its ID. Editing a topic that another user has already deleted or renamed can cause serious conflicts that can only be resolved centrally by the administrator.

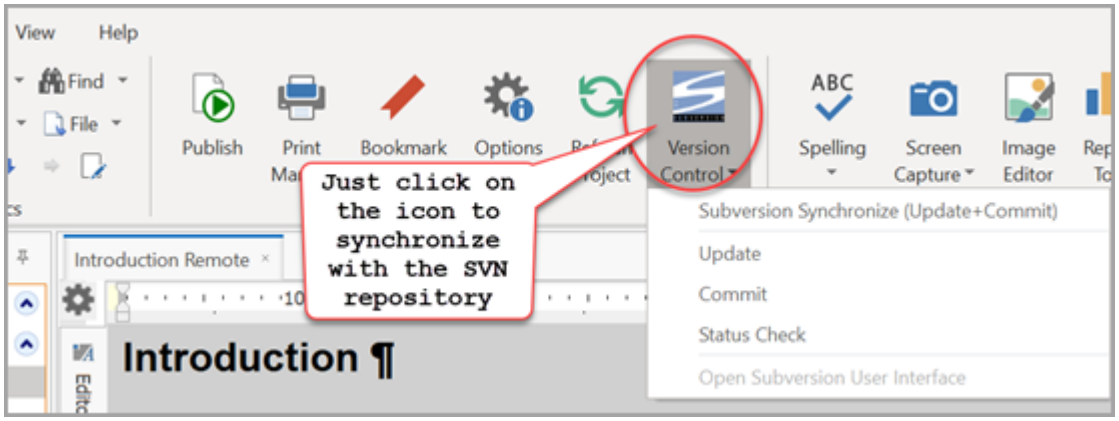
- Always be clear about who is going to be working on what today.
- Always inform everyone before you delete a topic, change its ID or make any other structural changes in the project.

Synchronize before and after work

Always synchronize with the repository before you start work to get the latest changes, and after finishing work to add your changes to the repository. Those are the only times you need a connection to the repository. All your other work can be performed offline.

Once your project is set up for SVN, Help+Manual will display the SVN tool in the Project toolbar. To synchronize your project with the SVN repository you just need to click this tool.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



The submenu offers a number of individual options, but you won't normally need these. Clicking on the main tool will both download new changes **from** the repository and upload your changes **to** the repository. So you just need to do this before starting work to get the latest changes from your colleagues and after you finish work to add your own changes.

Dealing with conflicts

If conflicts are found while synchronizing, the conflicted file will be opened in your merge tool 884 so that you can choose which version of the conflict to keep. The merge tool provides a 3-way comparison of the XML source of the conflicted topic, showing the original server version, your version and your colleague's conflicting version.

Resolving conflicts in WinMerge

When a conflict is registered, the WinMerge window will pop up automatically showing the conflicts.

Procedure

1. Choose which versions of the conflicts to keep.
2. Save with the blue **Save** tool.
3. Close WinMerge. If there are more conflicts it will pop up again with the next conflict.
4. Repeat 1-3 until all conflicts are resolved.

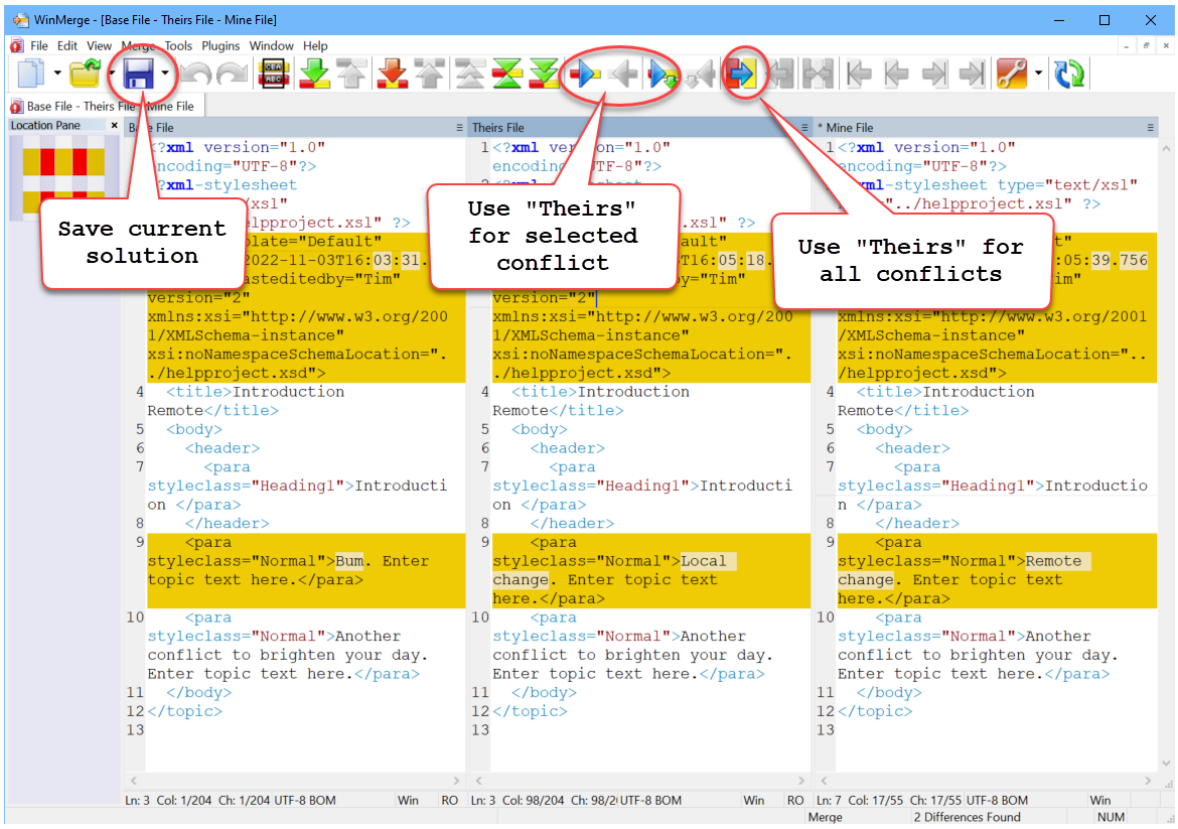
After resolving

If you choose **YOUR** version for any conflict resolutions you must select the SVN tool in the Help+Manual toolbar again to synchronize your confirmed version with the main repository.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Resolving conflicts in WinMerge

The WinMerge conflict resolution screen looks like this:



Procedure:

- By default, **YOUR** version is the accepted solution ("Mine" in the column heading). If you just do nothing and save with the blue **Save** tool, **YOUR** version will overwrite all the conflicts in the file.
- If you want to use **THEIRS** for all conflicts, just click the **Copy All** button (see above) and then the blue **Save** button.
- To use **THEIRS** for individual conflicts, click in the highlighted conflict and select one of the two **Copy Right** buttons (see above). The rightmost button moves to the next conflict after copying.

When you have checked all conflicts and selected **Save**, close WinMerge. If there are more conflicts it will open again automatically until all conflicts have been resolved.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Synchronize again after resolving!

If you have kept any of **YOUR** versions of the conflicts you must synchronize again after resolving to finalize sending your changes to the repository.

Beyond Compare cannot be used as a merge tool for SVN

Unfortunately, Beyond Compare cannot currently be used as a merge tool for SVN. This is because calling BC as a 3-pane merge tool requires additional information about each individual conflict file and all the additional temporary files that cannot be accessed automatically when processing all the files in a batch.

We recommend using the free WinMerge as your merge tool for SVN. See above for details.

7.1.7 Scripts and Customization

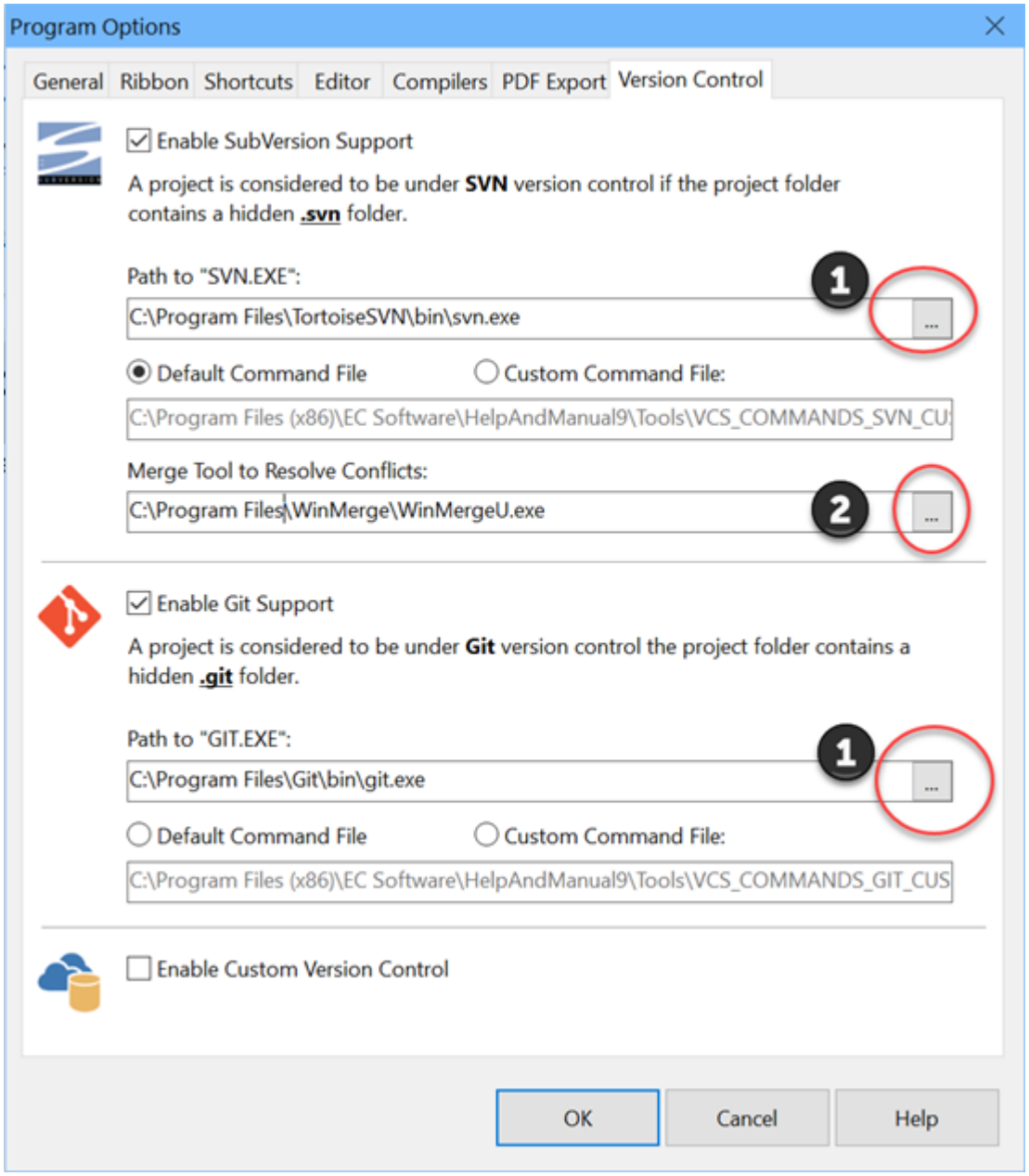
This section is for users familiar with the scripting interface of their version control system. If you are unsure of how this works, please don't try to edit the scripts as this could cause serious problems.

Note that you cannot create repositories or download local working copies of your project from your repository from within Help+Manual. Those are tasks that must be performed with your version control software. See the sections on Git and SVN for details.

If you are familiar with scripting and the API of your VCS, reading the scripts should be pretty self-explanatory.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Location of the scripts



The scripts referenced in the Version Control setting in the Program Options are stored in the **\Tools** sub-folder in the Help+Manual program folder. They are editable, but we strongly recommend making a copy and using the Custom Command File option to refer to your version instead of changing the original.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Basic operation of the Git and SVN scripts

The Git and SVN scripts are called by Help+Manual with the following syntax:

```
script_name [GET|SYNC|CHECKOUT|CHECKIN|STATUS] "vcs_exe_path"
"projectfolder"
```

On opening, control jumps to the section specified by the command, executes all the operations there on the project folder with the VCS executable, and then exits.

You should have sections for all the possible commands in your script (`get|sync|checkout|checkin|status`), since those commands can always be issued by Help+Manual.

The Git script uses "main" as the default branch

Note that the Git script uses "main" as the default branch for your repository. If this is different in your case, you need to change the branch reference in the script.

Custom command script

This script is an empty template. You need to add all your own operations under the respective command labels. The way it is called also differs from the scripts for Git and SVN in that Help+Manual itself does not call the VCS executable. This means that you need to include that in your own commands under the individual labels.

```
script_name [GET|SYNC|CHECKOUT|CHECKIN|STATUS] "projectfolder"
```

For example, if you are using **`tf.exe`** for Team Foundation Server, and you have added its path to your Windows environment variables, your sync section could look liked this (the %3 variable inserts your project folder path):

```
:sync
%3tf get
%3tf add /recursive
GOTO eof
```

7.1.8 Backups

Backups

If your VCS system is managed correctly, you don't need to make backups of your local copy of your VCS project because the version control system is your backup. The entire backup strategy is handled by the VCS system, with incremental backups that allow you to return to earlier versions of your topics and projects if necessary. You just need to make

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

sure that your VCS repository is backed up as well, so that you do not lose everything it contains if disaster strikes in the location where the repository is stored.

The history function

The history function 220 is disabled automatically for projects under version control. If you wish, you can delete the history folder inside the project folder of your working copy so that old history files don't end up in your repository.

Making manual local backups

You can make manual local backups of your project with the *Save As..* option in the File menu. This will create an unlinked copy of your project that is not connected to the VCS. DON'T continue editing on this project when you do this, however! If you do, your edits will no longer be part of the version linked to the VCS repository.

7.2 Using Context-Sensitive Help

Context-sensitive help is used in software applications, both standalone applications and web applications. It is defined as help relevant to what the user is currently doing in your application. For example, if the user presses F1 or clicks on a Help button in a dialog, they would see a help topic describing that dialog – that is context-sensitive help.

Implementing context-sensitive help takes a little work up front but it will bring considerable benefits for you in the long run because it will make your product easier to understand for your users.

The options you have for implementing context-sensitive help depend on your output format, because different formats support different ways of making calls to your help files.

See also:

Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586 (Reference)
IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600 (Reference)
Creating popup topics 207
Creating topics without TOC entries 179
Organizing invisible topics 375

7.2.1 Context help support by output format

Basically "context help" means access to specific help information from within your application or web page. You can create context help links and calls to Help+Manual output in a wide variety of ways.

The options you have for implementing context-sensitive help depend on your output format, because different formats support different ways of making calls to your help files. This topic

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

lists the different types of context help possible in the output formats supported by Help+Manual.

For more details on context-sensitive help, the available context-sensitive help technologies and implementation information for programmers see the Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586 chapter in the Reference section.

Context help links to eWriter Help: Integrated viewer

For instructions on context links to eWriter help, see both Links & Context Help 701 and eWriter for Software Help 731 in the main eWriter Help chapter.

Important: Updates to the eWriter context help interface

Please refer to the above chapters even if you are already familiar with eWriter help from earlier versions. A new calling syntax has been introduced along with the new eViewer 3 and the version for MacOS. the old syntax is still supported, but we still recommend switching to the new syntax for all new help files.

HTML Help (CHM)

This is the standard Microsoft help format for Windows applications. It is used for help installed locally on the user's computer.

Calls to HTML Help CHM files are made using the Microsoft HTML Help API (application programming interface), which is documented in the help file delivered with the free Microsoft HTML Help Workshop compiler and CHM authoring package. For details see Application calls to context-sensitive topics 897.

Making the calls is up to your programmers; each programming language has different methods for doing this. You can download programming tutorials from our website.

Supported context-sensitive help types

- **Calls to specific help topics**
  Display a specific topic in your help, inside the main help window.
- **Calls to anchors in specific help topics**
  Display a specific topic in your help file in the main help window and scroll down to an anchor 415 (jump target) within the topic.
- **Field-level popups**
  Field-level popups 896 are small popup windows displayed in your application. They are

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

read from the help file but the main help window is not opened. Useful for documenting individual fields and controls in your application (thus the name).

- **Training card help**
  Training card help uses the HTML ActiveX control (CHM) to create special interactive links between your help topics and your application. In theory you can use training card help to create interactive tutorials that guide users through steps of doing things in your program. In practice it is so difficult to implement that most developers try it out once and then decide that it is not worth their time. You can insert ActiveX objects for training card help with Help+Manual's **Write** > **Insert Object** > **Plain HTML Code** command (HTML Help).

Internal structure of H+M CHM files

One important thing to know about the CHM files generated by Help+Manual when making calls to them from your applications is that there are no internal folders.

Help+Manual uses a "flat file" directory model inside the CHM, with everything on the root level. This means that all topics and other files inside the CHM can be accessed directly, without any path information. Some programming tips assume the use of folders – for example a folder called "html" for the HTML topic files – and if they also include this path without alternatives in their call examples this will lead to failures. But that is really the only element of H+M CHM files that you need to be aware of.

WebHelp

WebHelp is displayed in a normal web browser like Firefox, Safari, Opera or even Internet Explorer. It is used for help accessed on networks and the Internet. Calls to WebHelp are made with normal URLs. The basic syntax is:

`index.html?topicname.htm#anchorname`

where index.html is the main start page, topicname.htm is the topic ID in all lower case + the extension ".htm" and anchorname is the optional anchor you want to scroll to on the page. See Linking to WebHelp topics 899 for details.

Supported context-sensitive help types

- **Calls to specific help topics**
  Display a specific topic in your help, inside the main help window.
- **Calls to anchors in specific help topics**
  Display a specific topic in your help file in the main help window and scroll down to an anchor 415 (jump target) within the topic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **Calls using CHM help context numbers**
  We have also implemented support for help context numbers in WebHelp so that you can use the same numbers you use in your CHM help if necessary. See Linking to WebHelp topics 899 for details.

Field-level popups and topics in V3 Premium Pack skins

When you use the V3 Responsive skins in the Premium Pack add-on you can also display both popups and topics within your own web pages without taking the the user away from the page. The popups and topics are draggable and resizable. The field-level topics include a bar at the top with which the user can redisplay the topic within the entire help if they want to browse further.

Adobe PDF, ePUB and Kindle/Mobi eBooks, Word DOCX

These print-style formats do not support any real context-sensitive help features. In PDF files you can link to anchors called "named destinations 913", but without proper browse buttons in the PDF viewer they are not as flexible as hyperlinks HTML-based formats.

See also:

Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586
Linking to and controlling eWriter help 903
Configuring for publishing - all formats 644

7.2.2 Creating context-sensitive topics

Context-sensitive help displays topics relevant to what the user is currently doing in an application. Normally, this will open the main help viewer and show the relevant topic. The Microsoft HTML Help CHM format supports a technology called "field-level popups", which are displayed directly in your application, not in the main help window. Field-level popups are only supported in Microsoft HTML Help CHM files. JavaScript popups cannot be used as field-level popups.

As the help author you don't need to do anything special to create normal context-sensitive topics. They are simply normal TOC topics and normal popup topics. They become "context-sensitive" when they are called directly from the application. What makes field-level popup topics a little different is the fact that they are called on their own, without the help viewer, but when the same popup topics are called within the help they behave the same as other popup topics. The difference is in the way the topics are called, not in the way they are created.

For more background information see the Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586 chapter in the **Reference** section.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to create a normal context-sensitive topic

Normal context-sensitive topics are simply normal topics in the TOC. Just follow the instructions in Creating new topics 174 to create a new topic in the TOC.

These topics become context-sensitive topics when they are called directly from the application. How this is done depends on the programming language and your output format. For details see Application calls to context-sensitive topics 897.

How to create and use field-level popup topics

Field-level popup topics are simply normal popup topics. Just follow the instructions in Creating popup topics 207 to create and edit popup topics.

Requirements for field-level popups:

CHM only: Field-level popup topics are only supported in Microsoft HTML Help CHM files. All the popup topics you create with help context numbers are always exported to the CHM file in plain text form, even if JavaScript popups 212 are activated. If you activate JavaScript popups, all popup links in your topics will display as JavaScript popups in the CHM viewer, but you can still activate the plain text version as field-level popups.

Add context numbers: Plain text popup topics used in HTML Help must have help context numbers 368! This is required by the Microsoft HTML Help API for popups and if your popup topics do not have help context numbers they will not be exported to the internal popup text file in the CHM.

No formatting or graphics: Plain text popups are really plain text only. Any formatting, graphics, tables etc. will be stripped when they are displayed as field-level popups. Take care to make your popup content comprehensible as plain text.

Changing the name of the internal field-level popups file in the CHM:

By default, the internal field-level popup file is called `CSHelp.txt`. You can change this in **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > **Extended .HHP Settings**. See Extended .HHP Settings 1457 for details.

Using field-level popups:

To use field-level popups your programmers must call the popup topic inside the help file from your application, using the appropriate API calls for HTML Help. The syntax of these

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

calls depends on your programming language. You can download tutorials for most current languages from our website. SeeApplication calls to context-sensitive topics 897 for more details.

Auto-generating your popup topics from a map file:

If your programmers provide you with a "map file" of the topic IDs and context numbers for the elements in the program that need to be documented you can also generate your field-level popup topics automatically! See Auto-generating context-sensitive topics 911 for details.

See also:

Creating popup topics 207
Auto-generating field-level popups 911
Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586
Organizing invisible topics 375

7.2.3 Links to help from your application

Making the calls to your context-sensitive topics is basically a job for the programmer, not the help author (you may be both, of course). In the help itself there is no difference between context-sensitive topics and popups and normal topics and popups – the difference is how they are called from the application.

The HTML Help CHM files and Visual Studio Help files generated by Help+Manual are fully standard-compliant so you can use all the standard procedures for linking to and calling context-sensitive topics.

Context calls to WebHelp are made with regular URLs. For details see Application calls to WebHelp 899.

Internal structure of H+M CHM files

One important thing to know about the CHM files generated by Help+Manual when making calls to them from your applications is that there are no internal folders.

We use a "flat file" directory model inside the CHM, with everything on the root level. This means that all topics and other files inside the CHM can be accessed directly, without any path information. Some programming tips assume the use of folders -- for example a folder called "html" for the HTML topic files, and if they also include this path without alternatives in their call examples this will lead to failures. But that is really the only element of H+M CHM files that you need to be aware of.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Calls to normal topics in the TOC

These are normal topic calls that open the main help viewer at the topic you are making the call to. See your programming language's documentation for making calls to the help format you are using.

See Application calls to WebHelp 899 for details of the URL syntax for making calls to WebHelp topics.

Calls to HTML Help popups

Application calls to HTML Help field-level popups are made using the popup interface of the Microsoft HTML Help API. The syntax for these calls depends on the programming language you are using. See the section on tutorials and resources for programmers below.

Application calls to HTML Help popups can only be made if you use HTML Help's own plain-text popup format, in which the popup texts are stored in a special plain-text file inside the CHM file.This option is activated in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > **Popup Topics** in the Project Explorer, where you can also specify the name of the text file to be generated.

Plain text popup topics used in HTML Help must have context numbers! This is required by the Microsoft HTML Help API for popups and if your popup topics do not have help context numbers they will not be exported to the internal popup text file in the CHM.

Tutorials and resources for programmers

- The HTML Help API is fully documented in the help of the free Microsoft HTML Help compiler (HTML Help Workshop).
- Tutorials for interfacing between your help and your application in the most major programming languages are available on the tutorials page at the EC Software website.
- A free set of tools for interfacing to help and context-sensitive help in older versions of Borland Delphi and Borland C++ is also available at the website, on the Delphi resources page. This is not needed in Delphi 2005 and later, which include integrated support for interfacing with HTML Help.
- The following websites are also highly recommended as good sources of up-to-date information on interfacing with help files from your application:

  The MS Help Wiki
  Helpware Group Help Knowledge Base
  MSDN HTML Help Reference

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The HTML Help Center

See also:

Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586 (Reference)

7.2.4 Linking to WebHelp topics

You can create context-sensitive calls to WebHelp 1510 (web HTML) from your application or web pages with normal URLs using the syntax explained below. These calls can be made locally, across networks or across the Internet.

Field-level popups are not supported in WebHelp, they can only be implemented with HTML Help (CHM). The JavaScript popups 212 supported in WebHelp can only be used within your help, you cannot make calls to them from your application or web pages.

HM2Go mini server for local WebHelp

If you want your WebHelp to be opened locally without a server (for example WebHelp on CDs and DVDs), Help+Manual has a special mini server that you can distribute with your help for better performance. See HM2Go - mini server for local WebHelp 673 for details.

How to make calls to Webhelp topics

Calls to WebHelp must be normal URLs, made in the same way as any other URL link that opens a browser with a specific web location or local HTML file, using exactly the same syntax:

Calling syntax:

`index.html?topicname.htm#anchorname`

Different syntax in Premium Pack V3, V4 and V5 skins

Please note that the new V3 skins in the Premium Pack add-on use a simpler, easier URL syntax that only requires you to use `topic.html`. The `index.html?topic.htm` syntax is no longer required for these skins, although it is supported for backward compatibility. They also use a different syntax for references to anchors. See the Premium Pack documentation for full details.

Examples of the standard WebHelp URL syntax:

This example uses the standard file names and extensions and accesses an anchor in the referenced topic:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
index.html?introduction.htm#gettingstarted
```

The following example shows a call to a project that was published with both a non-standard index file name and a non-standard extension for the topic files (see below). There is no reference to an anchor in this example.

```
help.html?new_features.html
```

Elements of the calls:

index.html	This is the name of the index file of your WebHelp (this is the default, it can be changed in the Publish 1310 dialog when you publish). If you use this on its own it will simply display the help system with the standard home topic.
?topicname.htm	This is the name of the topic you want to display. This is created by combining the topic ID 368 with the extension **.htm**.. This is the default topic extension, you can change it in **Project Configuration > Publishing Options > WebHelp > HTML Export Options** 1435. (These settings are shared with the other HTML-based output formats and can also be accessed in the HTML Help and Visual Studio Help sections.)
#anchorname	Optional. This is the name of an anchor 415 in the topic that you want to jump to.

Using context IDs to link to WebHelp

Normally, context IDs or context numbers 369 are only used in Microsoft CHM/HTML Help files. However, Help+Manual also exports a scripted map file of all the context IDs in your project in your WebHelp output and allows you to link to them with a URL switch, in the same way as you link to normal topic IDs. This makes it easier for programmers who are using context IDs for making their CHM files to remap their calls to WebHelp.

Calling syntax:

```
index.html?contextid=xxxxx
```

Where **xxxxxx** is the context number/context ID. This works both for normal topic context IDs and context IDs attached to anchors. If you are using standard templates or skins the anchor must not be inside hidden text (i.e. not inside a toggle that is not open when the topic is opened). If you are use a Premium Pack skin the ToggleJump feature implemented there allows you to link to anchors inside toggles as well.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Examples:

```
http://www.mydocumentation.com/index.html?contextid=60672
```

That is really all there is to it.

Where this is implemented:

Standard Templates:
The context ID URL switch was added in Help+Manual 6.3. It will work directly if you are using the standard HTML templates in your project, although you may need to reset the Layout template before publishing to get it to work, in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Layout**.

Standard Skins:
Similarly, it has also been implemented in the standard HTML skins provided with Help+Manual. If you are using an earlier edited copy of these skins you will need to get the new version from the /Templates/HTML Skins to be able to use URL switches with context IDs.

Premium Pack Skins:
The Premium Pack skins for Help+Manual 6 and later all support URL switches with context IDs. You just need to make sure you are using version 1.56 or later if you are using the version 1 Premium Pack or 2.20 or later if you are using version 2.

Adding support in your own skins:
Please contact support@ec-software.com if you want to add support for context IDs in URL switches to your own custom skins or templates.

Links to WebHelp topics without the 'index.html' reference

By default, only the topic will be opened if you link to it with the topic name only, i.e. like this:

```
topicname.htm
```

In all the standard skins, a link will then be displayed automatically above the topic header with which the user can display the full user interface with the TOC.

Automatic reload will stop Google from indexing your WebHelp!

There is a reload feature that will do this automatically when only the topic file is addressed without the `index.html` part of the URL. This is off by default, because Google interprets the automatic reload as an attempt to increase your click count artificially and

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

stops indexing your WebHelp.

Turning on automatic TOC reload for *topic.htm* links

If you don't care about Google indexing your WebHelp, or if you are using the WebHelp on a local intranet server where there is no Google indexing, you can turn the automatic reload feature on:

1. Open the .hmskin file for the skin you are using in Help+Manual.
2. In the Project Explorer on the left, navigate down to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Navigation**.
3. Activate the option "*When a topic is opened outside the navigation frame...*"

Calling only a topic when automatic reload is on:

When the automatic reload option is active you can still call just the topic without the TOC if you want. You do this by leaving out the `index.html` part and adding a simple switch to your URL.

`topicname.htm?toc=0#anchorname` (with an anchor)

`topicname.htm?toc=0` (without an anchor)

Avoid direct calls to the topic file

Direct calls to the **`topic.htm`** file without the **`index.html?`** portion of the URL will only display the topic file by default. There is an reload feature that automatically displays the full user interface for such links but this is off by default because Google doesn't index your site when it is on (see above).

However, even when the automatic reload feature is on, you should try to make sure that all your links to your WebHelp use the full **`index.html?topic.htm`** syntax. The reload feature is convenient, but in addition to creating problems with Google it will also confuse the browser history, so that the user will get unexpected results when they try to navigate with the Back and Next buttons.

It is thus always advisable to use the full call including the index file, using the standard syntax:

`index.html?introduction.htm#gettingstarted`

See also:

Creating popup topics 207
Context-Sensitive Help & Popups 1586
Topic files without TOC entries 375

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.2.5 Linking to and controlling eWriter help

On Windows, eWriter Help is the modern alternative to the obsolete CHM format for local application help. It offers full support for context-sensitive help and file links and combines the benefits of CHM and WebHelp while eliminating many of the disadvantages of both. On MacOS eWriter provides an software help format that is not otherwise available in this integrated form.

This topic provides a quick overview of the link options. For full details see the EWriter for Software Help 731 chapter.

Viewer installation for eWriter as software documentation

When you are using eWriter as software documentation to replace CHM files you need to know where the viewer is so that you can make your calls to it reliably. We recommend installing the standard version of the viewer for this together with your software. See EWriter for Software Help 731 for details.

Each book is opened in a separate instance of the eViewer app

Each book you open has one and only one instance. If you make another call to the same book it will apply to the open instance. You can have multiple books open at the same time. To address the individual books you include the name of the book in your call along with the parameters, as shown below.

Choosing the right file extension for your eWriter files

Use the *.ewriter* file extension for books distributed on their own

You need to use the **`.ewriter`** extension for eWriter files that are going to be distributed on their own. It is registered with the Windows Store, and when a Windows 10 user who does not have the viewer opens an **`.ewriter`** file they will be prompted to install the viewer from the Windows store. Users on older versions of Windows can download the Win32 installer from our eWriter page, which will also register the **`.ewriter`** extension.

Use your own file extension for eWriter used for software documentation

When you are using eWriter for software documentation you want to install the Win32 version of eViewer together with your software and make your calls to it directly. You also don't want to conflict with any other version of the viewer that your user may have installed, so in this case you don't want to use the **`.ewriter`** extension. Instead, see one of

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

your own.

See URL-style command syntax 739 for full details on this.

EWriter context help links and command line interface

Making calls to eWriter help files from your applications to display topics is very simple. On Windows, you basically just need to call the viewer app with a `shellExecute()` or equivalent function in your programming language, along with the name of the topic file to be viewed and an optional anchor to scroll to.

File extensions of your topic files

The HTML topic files inside eWriter Help can have either the **.htm** or **.html** extension, based on your settings for the topic file extension in your project in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**. However, only these two extensions are permitted. If you set a different extension in your project (for example **.php** or **.asp**), the standard **.htm** extension will be used.

You need to use the correct extension in your context help calls, otherwise the topics will not be found.

Context calls syntax

The syntax for context calls to eWriter Help has been changed with the introduction of the new MacOS eViewer and the updated Windows eViewer. If you have used eWriter for application help in the past the calls with the old syntax in your existing projects will still work. However, we strongly recommend switching to the new integrated URL-style syntax from now on.

Please refer to the eWriter for Software Help 731 chapter for full details and instructions.

Basic New Syntax:

```
"<viewer app>" "ewriter://<ewriter file>?loadpage=<page in the help>"
```

Note that when you are using integrated EXE eWriter Help files, the viewer app is the help file itself, so it calls itself when using the new syntax.

Basic Old Syntax (not supported for MacOS):

```
"<viewer app>" "<page in the help>"
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

URL examples eViewer app:

```
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=in-
dex.html"
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=in-
dex.html?introduction.htm#anchor2"
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=in-
troduction.html?anchor=anchor2 (Premium Pack)"
```

URL examples Windows EXE eWriter file:

```
"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=index.html"
"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=index.html?
introduction.htm#anchor2"
"<path>MyHelp.exe" "ewriter://<path>MyHelp.exe?loadpage=introduc-
tion.html?anchor=anchor2" (Premium Pack)
```

URL parameters and JavaScript

If your HTML pages include scripts that can evaluate URL parameters (supported in some Premium Pack skins, for example) you can also include parameters to be parsed by your script, like this:

```
"<path>eViewer.exe" "ewriter://<path>my_help.ewriter?loadpage=in-
dex.html?mysetting=xyz&setting2=12"
```

The HTML location object is fully supported for interpreting URLs you pass to your pages like this. This means you can extract the query portion of the script with `document.location.search`, the hash portion (anchor) with `document.location.hash` and so on.

Linking between eWriter files

If you have multiple eWriter help files installed on your user's computer you may sometimes want to link between them. This will normally only apply when you are using eWriter for software documentation 731.

There are several methods you can use for linking between eWriter files. You must always use the **File Link** option for this, not the Internet Link!

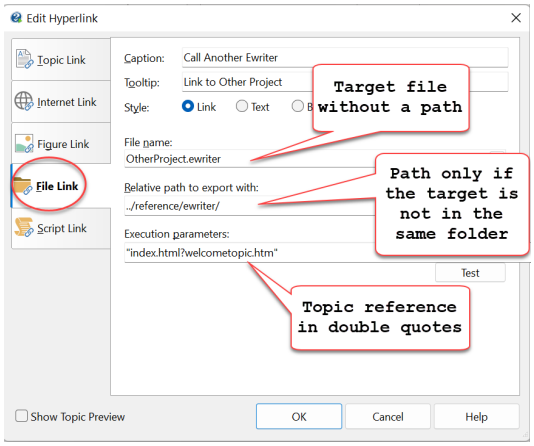
Linking between eWriter files when the file association is known

You can use a simple method if you are sure that the **`.ewriter`** extension has been associated with the eViewer application, or if you are using your own extension that you have registered as part of your installation on the user's computer. Then you just need to reference the eWriter file and the topic parameters.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This also works when you have changed the file extension and eViewer name:

Note that this also works if you are using eWriter for software documentation and you have changed both the file extension and the name of your copy of the eViewer application. You just need to link to another eWriter file that has the same extension as the eWriter file containing the link.



File name: The name of the eWriter file you want to link to **without** any path information. Just the file name. You must use the extension that has been registered to the eViewer application on the user's computer. This will be **`.ewriter`** if you are sure that has been registered, or your own custom extension if you are installing eViewer as part of your software installation and registering the extension yourself.

Relative path: Only include the path to the file here if the target file is not in the same folder as the file containing the link. Despite the name, you can use either a relative or an absolute path.

Important: No quotes around this path, even if it includes spaces!

Execution parameters: The normal WebHelp reference to the topic you want to display in the target file. The syntax depends on the skin type you are using. This parameter **must** be enclosed in double quotes.

Standard Help+Manual skins and older Premium Pack skins:

`"index.html?topic.html"`

Premium Pack V3 skins:

`"topic.html"`

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Topic file extensions

The topic file extension can be **.htm** or **.html**, depending on what you have set in your project. Other extensions are not allowed for eWriter topics.

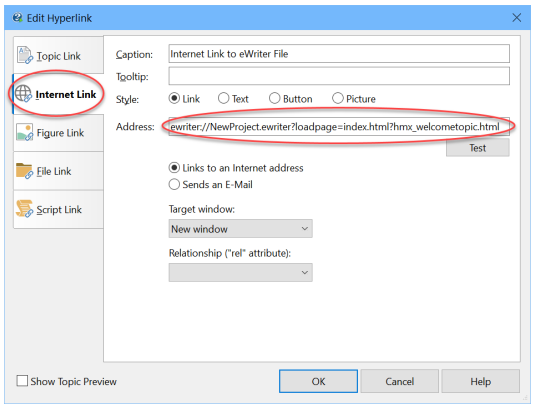
Anchors and other parameter extensions

Add these in the execution parameters, inside the double quotes, exactly as you would in WebHelp.

Using an Internet link instead of a File link (required for MacOS)

You can also use an Internet link to link between eWriter Help files, but then you have to use the new syntax with the **ewriter://** prefix. This is also required if you are using eWriter Help on MacOS.

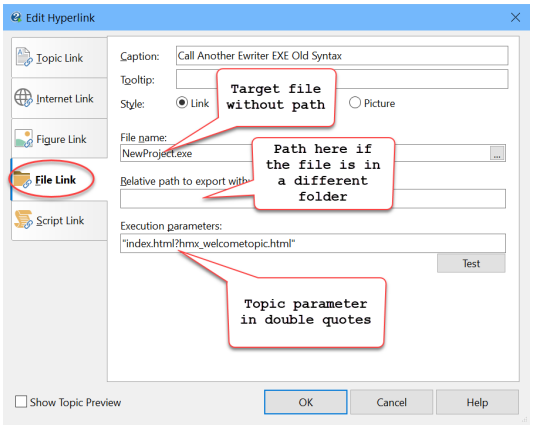
ewriter://NewProject.ewriter?loadpage=index.html?topic_name.html



Linking between files when you are using the integrated viewer in EXE eWriter books

When you create combined book and viewer files with the EXE extension you always just enter the EXE file as the file to link to and the topic to open as the parameters.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



File name: The name of the eWriter EXE file you want to link to **without** any path information. Just the file name.

Relative path: Only include the path to the file here if the target file is not in the same folder as the file containing the link. Despite the name, you can use either a relative or an absolute path.

Important: No quotes around this path, even if it includes spaces!

Execution parameters: The normal WebHelp reference to the topic you want to display in the target file. The syntax depends on the skin type you are using. This parameter **must** be enclosed in double quotes.

Standard Help+Manual skins and older Premium Pack skins:

```
"index.html?topic.html"
```

Premium Pack V3 skins:

```
"topic.html"
```

Topic file extensions

The topic file extension can be **`.htm`** or **`.html`**, depending on what you have set in your project. Other extensions are not allowed for eWriter topics.

Anchors and other parameter extensions

Add these in the execution parameters, inside the double quotes, exactly as you would in WebHelp.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Calls to EXE eWriter files with the integrated viewer

You can still create the original EXE eWriter files with an integrated viewer if you wish, although we strongly recommend using the separate viewer. You just need to change the output file extension to **.exe** in the Publish screen before publishing. Help+Manual identifies this automatically and then creates an EXE eWriter Help file with an integrated viewer.

Not supported on MacOS

Note that EXE eWriter Help is a Windows format and cannot be used on MacOS. On Macs, you must use the eViewer app and **.ewriter** data files.

Context calls syntax

The calling syntax is the same as with the external viewer, except you call the EXE eWriter Help file instead of the viewer, followed by the parameters. You can use both the old and the new syntax for this.

Old syntax:

```
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?introduction.htm"
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?this_page.htm#anchor"
<path>my_ebook.exe "index.html?anotherpage.htm"
```

New syntax:

If you use the new syntax, you must also include the name of the EXE eWriter Help file after the ewriter:// protocol prefix, so that the file is calling itself:

```
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
introduction.htm"
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
this_page.htm#anchor"
<path>my_ebook.exe "ewriter://my_ebook.exe?loadpage=index.html?
anotherpage.htm"
```

Always include the page parameters in quotes, even if there are no spaces. Otherwise you will get Windows errors caused by some of the characters that need to be used.

Links to executable files

If you're used to producing CHM files and WebHelp you don't even think about opening executable EXE program files from your documentation. But with eWriter Help, you can!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This is possible both from normal links in topics and from TOC entries.

RESTRICTION: Not supported in the Windows Store version of the viewer!

Windows Store apps are not permitted to invoke executable files from within the program. Because of this, the functions described below are not available in the Windows Store version of the viewer app. However, you can use them if you are installing the standard Windows eViewer app together with your software. See EWriter for Software Help 731 for details.

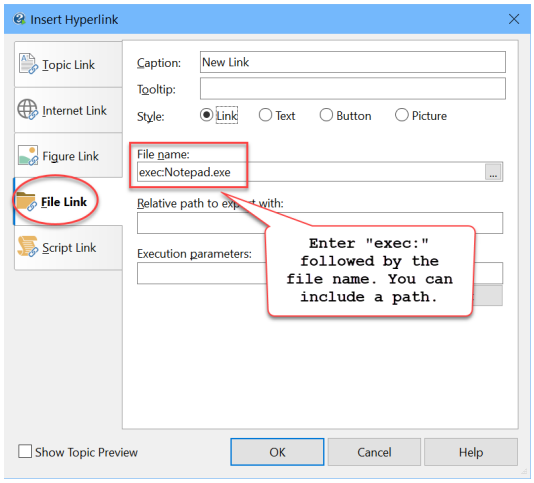
Current directory status when linking to executable files

When executing external files, the eWriter viewer explicitly sets the current directory to prevent possible failure of file links using a relative path.

File links to executables in topics

Just create a normal file link to the EXE file and add **`exec:`** directly before the file name, like this:

```
exec:notepad.exe
exec:../demo_program/widget_maker.exe
```

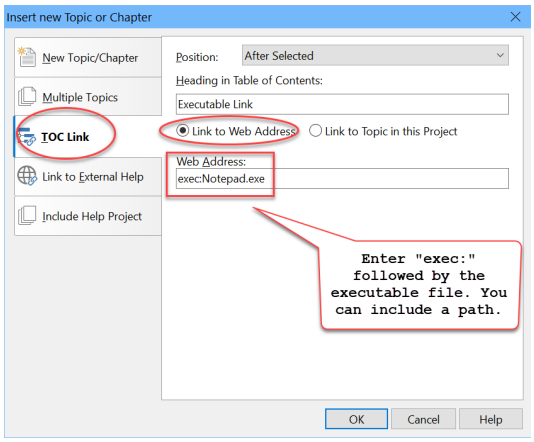


Links to executables in the TOC

You can also create links to executable files in the TOC of an eWriter Help file. Create a new topic entry and choose the **TOC Link** option, and then *Link to Web Address*. Then enter the target in the *Web Address:* field, using same **`exec:filename.exe`** format as above. Here too, you can include a relative path if necessary.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
exec:notepad.exe
exec:../demo_program/widget_maker.exe
```



See also:

eWriter Help 696

7.2.6 Auto-generating topics for context help

Complex applications have a lot of components and controls and if you document them all with context-sensitive topics this means you need to create a ***lot*** of topics. This can be a very tedious task and it's also easy to make mistakes, because it means entering hundreds of context numbers and topic IDs that may not have very descriptive names.

Help+Manual can do all this work for you with the help of map files 1598, which are simple text files containing lists of the topic IDs and help context numbers to be used for documenting the controls in the program. These files can be provided by the programmers (they can be generated by most modern programming languages). They have a standard format and syntax and Help+Manual can use them both to apply missing help context numbers to existing topics and to generate missing topics with the necessary IDs and help context numbers.

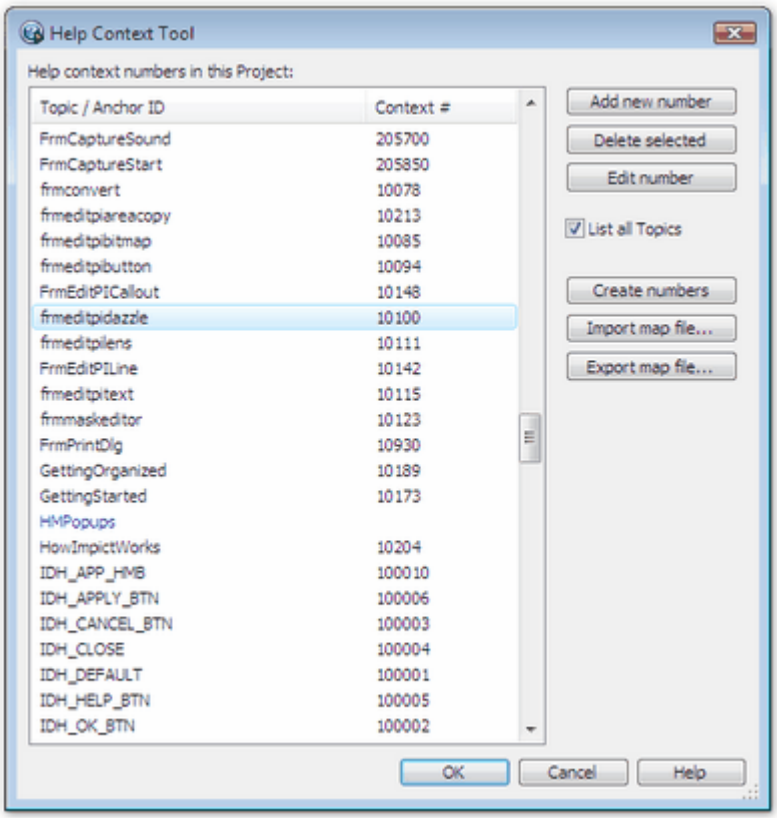
How to auto-generate your topic files with the map file

1. Obtain the map file from the programmers and make sure that it only contains the topics you want to use.

   Plain text popup topics used in HTML Help must have context numbers so make sure you include context numbers in your map file! This is required by the Microsoft HTML Help API for popups and if your popup topics do not have help context numbers they will not be exported to the internal popup text file in the CHM.

2. Open your project (you might want to make a backup first) and select **Project** > **Tools** > **Context Tool**:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Click on *Import map file...* and select the map file. A dialog will be displayed asking you whether you want to merge or replace the existing numbers

   Replace:
   This deletes ALL context numbers in the current project and replaces them with the numbers from the map file.

   Merge:
   This only replaces the context numbers for topics with matching IDs. All other topics are left unchanged.

Auto-generating topics:

When you import a map file any topic IDs in the file that don't exist in your project will be listed in red in the Context Tool editing box. When you click on OK the tool will ask you if you want to create topic files for these IDs.

If you say yes the files will be created in the Topic Files section, without TOC entries. If you want to create TOC entries for the new topics you must do this manually. 179

See also:

About map files 1598
The Help Context Tool 1241

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.2.7 Named destinations in PDF

When Help+Manual generates PDF documents it automatically exports a number PDF anchors known as "named destinations" for targets in the document. These destinations are similar to topic anchors 415 in HTML documents. You can use these destinations as targets in hyperlinks to the PDF files.

Key Information
Named destinations are only generated if you generate an interactive PDF 1442 document.

Items exported as named destinations

Topic IDs

Topic IDs are exported as named destinations in all lower case. Links to named destinations are case-sensitive, so you must also use the lower case format in all your links to named destinations in PDFs created by Help+Manual.

For example, if your topic ID is **`Index_Topic`** then the named destination in the PDF will be **`index_topic`**.

Topic anchors

Anchors inserted in your topics are exported together with the topic IDs, also in all lower case letters, using the syntax **`topicid#anchorid`**. The topic ID is always part of the named destination for an anchor, with a pound character (#) between the two.

Links to anchors in PDF only work in PDF links:

Links to named destinations including anchors are a special case. They will only work in links in PDF files, not in links in WebHelp files. If you use a link with an anchor in WebHelp output the link will only open the PDF file at the first page.

Standard PDF template sections

The following named destinations are exported for the standard PDF template sections defined in your print manual template 803. These destinations are exported in all lower case as shown below, and that is also how you must link to them. (The commas are not part of the destinations.)

`cover, title1, title2, title3, foreword, toc, topics, endnote1, index, endnote2, backcover`

Note that there are no destinations for repeating sections like *Top Level Entry* and *Blank Pages*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

User-defined template sections

User-defined PDF sections created in Manual Designer with the *Insert Page* option in the *Pages* menu are also exported as named destinations. The destinations generated for these sections are called **`custom1`**, **`custom2`**, **`custom3`** and so on – i.e. the word "custom" in all lower case plus the sequential number of the custom page in the order in which the pages were created in the template.

Important note:
The named destinations for user-defined sections are fixed and are assigned in the order in which the user-defined sections are created. The first section you create gets the destination **`custom1`**, the second section gets **`custom2`** and so on. The actual order of the custom sections in your template is irrelevant.

Linking to named destinations in PDF documents

You can create links to both page numbers and "named destinations" in PDF documents. The procedure is the same for links that will be used in PDF files and in WebHelp output.

Named destinations are jump targets that work like anchors. These links will work in PDFs created by Help+Manual and in WebHelp created by Help+Manual, but not in CHM files. The Microsoft CHM viewer does not support the link format needed to jump to destinations in PDF files. A link to a PDF in a CHM file will simply open the PDF at the first page. See Named destinations in PDF 465 for details on the named destinations created in PDFs by Help+Manual and more background information.

Use normal topic links for targets in the current document

Note that named destinations are only needed for links between two different PDF files or from other applications or documents. Use normal topic links to jump to targets within your Help+Manual projects (i.e. from one topic to another). You don't need to use named destinations for this.

Requirements:

- **File Links are required for linking to PDFs:**
  You must use the File Link option for creating links to targets inside PDF files. The Internet Link option will not always work correctly, even in WebHelp.
- **Set the PDF to "interactive" to use named destinations:**
  If the PDF you are linking to is created with Help+Manual it must be generated using the "interactive PDF" option in your PDF settings 1442. Named destinations are only generated for interactive PDF documents.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Linking to named destinations in PDF documents:

You need to create a file link with the destination added to it to link to a destination in a PDF document. Internet links will not work correctly, not even in WebHelp.The syntax is the same for links that are going to be in PDF files and WebHelp files. The links to the PDF files will also work in CHM files, but they will only open the PDF document; they will not jump to the destination in the PDF from a link in a CHM.

Procedure:

1. Follow the instructions for inserting a file link 425 and enter the name of the PDF file you want to link to.
2. Add **#nameddest=** after the file name, followed by the name of the named destination in all lower case characters. See this topic 465 for details of the named destinations you can jump to.

Examples:

myfile.pdf#nameddest=toc (jumps to the Table of Contents in the PDF)
myfile.pdf#nameddest=welcome_topic (jumps to the topic with the ID `Welcome_Topic`)
myfile.pdf#nameddest=custom1 (jumps to user-defined template section 1)

Special case: anchors:

Links to named destinations including anchors are a special case. They will only work in links in PDF files, not in links in WebHelp files. If you use a link with an anchor in WebHelp output the link will only open the PDF file at the first page.

Example:

In a PDF file, the following file link will jump to the anchor **testanchor** in the topic with the ID **Welcome_Topic**. In a WebHelp file it will only open the PDF at the first page.

myfile.pdf#nameddest=welcome_topic#testanchor

Linking to a page number in a PDF document:

You need to create a file link with the page number added to it do link to a page number in a PDF document. Internet links will not work correctly, not even in WebHelp.The syntax

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

is the same for links that are going to be in PDF files and WebHelp files. The links to the PDF files will also work in CHM files, but they will only open the PDF document; they will not jump to the page number in the PDF from a link in a CHM.

Important: The page number destinations in PDFs created by Help+Manual start counting at 0, so you must jump to the actual page number minus one. If you are jumping to pages in PDFs created by other tools you can usually jump to the actual page numbers.

1. Follow the instructions for inserting a file link 425 and enter the name of the PDF file you want to link to.
2. Add **#page=** after the file name, followed by the page number:

   myfile.pdf#page=123 (jumps to page 124)
   myfile.pdf#page=0 (jumps to page 1, same as just opening the PDF file without a target)
   myfile.pdf#page=11 (jumps to page 12)

Links to PDFs from WebHelp and HTML files

Links to named destinations in PDF from Help+Manual WebHelp

When creating links to named destinations in PDF files from WebHelp you can use exactly the same procedure and syntax as for links from PDF files. Create a file link and follow the instructions above.

Links to named destinations in PDF from other HTML files

The syntax is also the same for links to named destinations in other HTML files not generated by Help+Manual. Just create a hyperlink using the same **pdf_file.pdf#nameddest=xxxx** and **pdf_file.pdf#page=yy** syntax for the **href** target of the link as you use in Help+Manual, where **xxxx** is the named destination and **yy** is the page number.

Links to PDF from CHM files

You cannot link to named destinations in PDFs from a page in a CHM file. The Microsoft CHM viewer will block all attempts to do this. You can only use a normal file link to open the PDF file at the first page. That is the only option available. This is a limitation of the CHM format and the Microsoft CHM viewer. Help+Manual cannot do anything to change this (and the PDF must be in the same folder as the CHM to open at all).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.3 Using Variables

Variables are used to insert text that may change in your output when you publish your project. They are ideal for things like program names and version numbers. To update, you just need to edit the variable definition and recompile. Predefined variables make it easy to insert things like the current date, the title of your help project and so on.

Variables have no effective length limit. You are unlikely to be able to enter more than 2 gigabytes of text in the variable definition fields. User-defined variables can contain either plain text or HTML code. This allows you to use variables to insert HTML code in your HTML templates. Help+Manual supports both a wide selection of predefined variables and user-defined variables.

You can set different values for variables in individual topics and redefine some or all of your variables with a list of values stored in an external text file when you publish your project.

See also:

Variables in HTML templates 1049
Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)

7.3.1 Where you can use variables

The following table provides a quick reference showing where you can use which kinds of variables.

You can use both HTML variables and plain text variables in all locations. However, whether or not it makes sense to use HTML variables in all locations depends on the code you use, of course! In output formats not based on HTML (PDF, DOCX, printed manuals) the text portion of the variables will be extracted automatically.

Location:	Supported variables:
Topic text and headers	**Plain-text variables:** Global predefined variables and user-defined variables inserted with the Text Variable tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**: <%VARIABLE_NAME%> Note that variables typed in manually are not highlighted in the editor and double-clicking on them will not open the variable selection list.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	HTML variables: HTML variables inserted in these locations will only insert the text portion of the HTML code. For example, if the variable contains: EC Software Website only "EC Software Website" will be inserted. All the HTML code (blue) will be stripped out. If there is no plain-text portion nothing will be inserted.
TOC, keywords, image captions, link captions, macros in macro links	**Plain-text variables:** Global predefined variables and user-defined variables inserted manually by typing the variable names using the syntax <%VARIABLE_NAME%>. **HTML variables:** In these locations only the plain-text portion of HTML variable values will be inserted (see example above). If there is no plain-text portion nothing will be inserted.
HTML code objects and scripts in script links	**Plain-text variables:** Global predefined variables and user-defined variables can be used in code objects and script link scripts directly. The variables must inserted manually by typing the variable names using the standard syntax <%VARIABLE_NAME%>. **HTML variables:** HTML variables will generally work as expected in these locations, inserting the full HTML code stored in the variable. You can also use most of the exclusive HTML template variables 1569 here, with a couple of logical exceptions:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	HTML template variable exceptions: The following HTML template variables can't be used in code objects because they can only be evaluated when they are used directly in the HTML template: DOCTYPE, GAACCOUNT
HTML templates	**Plain-text variables:** Global predefined variables, user-defined variables and special HTML template variables inserted manually by typing the variable names. **HTML variables:** You can use HTML variables without restriction in HTML templates. The HTML code stored in the variable will be inserted in the in the template. You can also use HTML template variables 1569 as part of the value of the HTML variable.
PDF templates edited with Manual Designer	**Plain-text variables:** Global predefined variables, user-defined variables and special PDF template variables inserted manually by typing the variable names. **HTML variables:** HTML variables will only insert the plain-text portion of the variable value in PDF templates. If there is no plain-text portion nothing will be inserted.

See also:

Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)

7.3.2 User-defined variables

You can define any number of your own variables to use in your project. These user-defined variables are stored with your project, which means that they are only available to the project

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

in which they are defined. However, you can transfer variables between projects with the *Export* and *Import* functions (see below).

User-defined variables can be used almost everywhere in your projects: In topics and headers, the Table of Contents, keywords, image captions, link captions, macros, scripts, HTML code objects, HTML templates and PDF templates. See the other topics in this section for details on using variables in these locations.

See Inserting variables in topics 932 and Inserting variables in other locations 934 for details on how to use variables in your projects.

Plain-text variables and HTML variables

You can define two different types of variables: Text variables and HTML variables. Both types have no effective length limit (theoretically you could enter up to 2 gigabytes of text). See The power of editable variables 963 for more details on using HTML variables.

Plain-text variables:

Plain-text variables contain text only. The text is inserted as plain text wherever you use the variable. You can use them anywhere where variables are supported.

HTML variables:

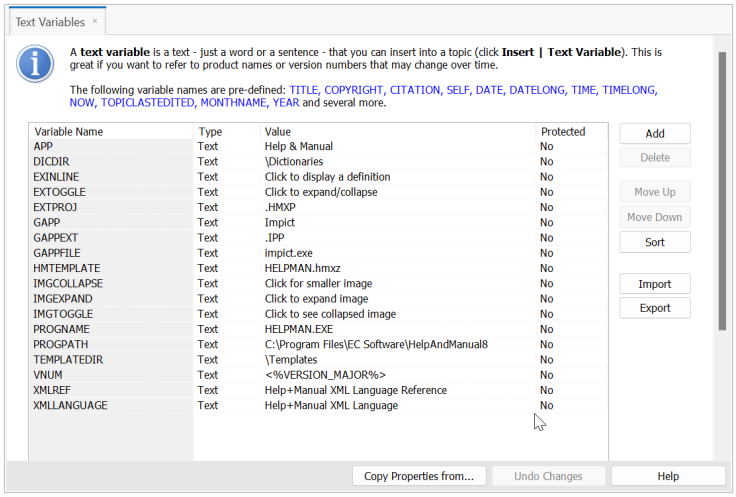
HTML variables contain HTML code. They are designed primarily for use in HTML templates and HTML code objects. If you use an HTML variable anywhere else (for example in a topic in the Help+Manual editor) only any plain text portion of the variable value will be inserted (i.e. text outside of any HTML tags. If there is no plain text portion nothing will be inserted.

Important: Unlike plain text variables, you cannot nest HTML variables (variable as part of the variable value). It is also not possible to nest a plain text variable inside an HTML variable

How to define a variable

1. In the Project Manager go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables**.
2. Select *Add*, enter the name for your variable and click on *OK*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



You don't need to worry about case, the variable name will be converted to all upper case automatically.

3. Select *HTML* or *Text* in the *Type* column. HTML Variables can contain HTML, JavaScript and CSS code in addition to normal text.
4. If you want to protect the variable against accidental editing select *Yes* in the *Protected* column. The values of protected variables are shown grayed out.
5. Click in the *Value* column next to your new variable and enter the text or HTML code.

There is effectively no limit to the amount of text you can enter – you are unlikely to be able to enter more than 2 gigabytes of text in the Value column!

Variable name syntax

Exactly the same variable name syntax is used for variables in all parts of your projects:

`<%VARIABLENAME%>`

- Since you can also type variables manually in topic text and topic headers it is important to observe this syntax! The variable name VARIABLENAME must be in all upper case and it must be enclosed between opening and closing <% and %> tags.
- Spaces are allowed in variable names because the beginning and end of the variable are clearly defined by the <% and %> tags. For example:

`<%VARIABLE NAME WITH SPACES%>`

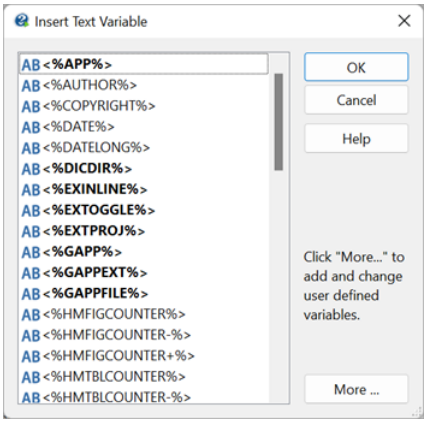
How to edit user-defined variables

- In the Project Manager go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables**.

OR:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Double-click on a variable in the editor and select *More...* to go the Text Variables configuration screen.



The second option only works with variables entered with **Insert** > **Text Variable**. Variables typed in manually are not highlighted and you cannot display the variables list by double-clicking on them.

Importing and exporting your user-defined variables

You can use these features to copy variables between projects and to define variables in a text editor and then load them into your project. (This can be easier than defining a lot of long variables directly in Help+Manual.)

Exporting user-defined variables:

1. In the Project Manager go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables.**
2. Select to *Export* your project variables to a text file.

Importing user-defined variables from a file:

1. Use an editor like Windows Notepad to create a list of variables in a plain text file, using the following syntax:

   ```
   VARIABLENAME1=Variable value
   MYVARIABLE=another variable value
   ```

   One variable per line, variable name all in capital letters, no spaces on either side of the = character, no quotes. You can also enter HTML code for HTML variables, of course.

2. Import the variables with the *Import* button in the Text Variables section in your Project Configuration.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. If your list includes HTML variables you must manually change the type of the variables to HTML after importing, otherwise the code will be interpreted as plain text.

Use the **Export** function (see above) to see an example of the necessary format and the syntax of the file.

Importing user-defined variables from another project:

You can also import all the user-defined variables from another Help+Manual project. To do this just click on *Copy properties from...* at the bottom of the Text Variables editing window and select the project you want to import the variables from. This will overwrite the variables in the current project.

If you want to merge the variables from another project you must export them to a text file and then import them from the text file (see above).

See also:

Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)

7.3.3 Global predefined variables

There are a large number of global predefined variables that you can use to insert items that you may want to change, for example the title of the project, the copyright note, the date and time in various formats and the date and time at which the current topic was last edited.

Some of the predefined variables have automatic values, others take their values from the Configuration section of your project. See Global predefined variables 1561 for a list of the available variables, what they do and where they get their values.

See Inserting variables in topics 932 and Inserting variables in other locations 934 for details on how to use variables in your projects.

Where you can use global predefined variables

Help+Manual's global predefined variables can be used almost everywhere in your projects: In topics and headers, the Table of Contents, keywords, image captions, link captions, macros, scripts, HTML code objects, HTML templates and PDF templates.

You cannot use HTML code in global variables:

Note that all global variables are plain-text variables so you cannot use them to insert HTML code. Even if you create an HTML variable and use it as the value of a global variable only the plain-text portion of the variable will be inserted.

See Inserting variables in topics 932 and Inserting variables in other locations 934 for details on how to use variables of all kinds in all these locations.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable name syntax

Exactly the same variable name syntax is used for variables in all parts of your projects:

<%VARIABLENAME%>

Since you can also type variables manually in topic text and topic headers it is important to observe this syntax! The variable name VARIABLENAME must be in all upper case and it must be enclosed between opening and closing <% and %> tags.

See also:

Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)
Global predefined variables 1561 (Reference with list of variables)
Date and time variables 937

7.3.4 Editing, formatting and disabling variables

This topic describes how to edit variables in the Help+Manual editor, how to format the content of variables in your output (i.e. with bold text or text styles) and how to disable variables so that the variable name is displayed in your output instead of the content of the variable.

HTML variables and plain text variables

You can create user-defined variables in two modes: As plain text or as HTML code. If you set the variable to HTML mode you can include any HTML code, JavaScript and CSS you like as long as the syntax is correct. You are responsible for this – no syntax checking is performed!

HTML variables will only insert the full HTML code in HTML templates and HTML code objects. In other locations only the plain-text portion of the variable value will be inserted. If there is no plain-text portion nothing will be inserted.

Nested text variables - variable as value of another variable

You can "nest" text variables, i.e. you can use one variable as part or all of the value of another variable. To do this just type in the variable name in the value field of the other variable, using the standard variable name syntax <%VARIABLENAME%> (spaces are allowed).

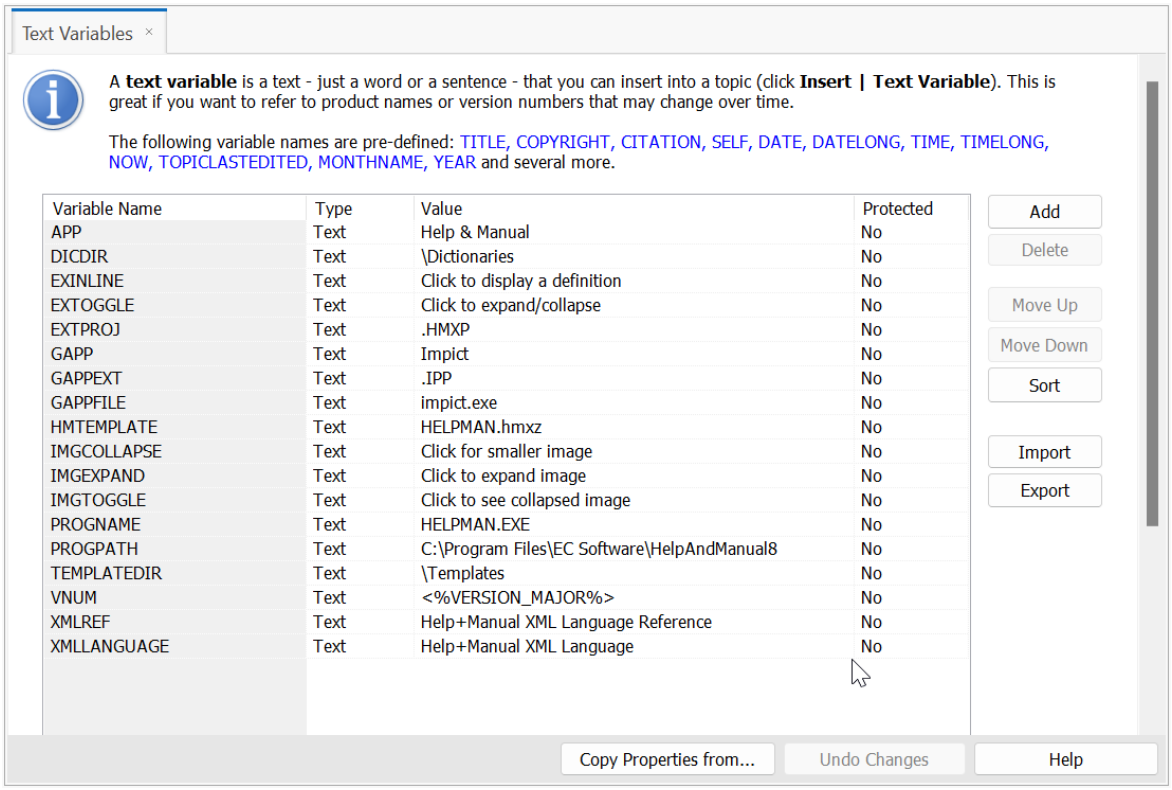
Nesting is not allowed in HTML variables:

Unlike plain text variables, you cannot nest HTML variables. Nesting is not supported at all in HTML variables: It is also not possible to nest a plain text variable inside an HTML variable, or an HTML variable inside a plain text variable.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

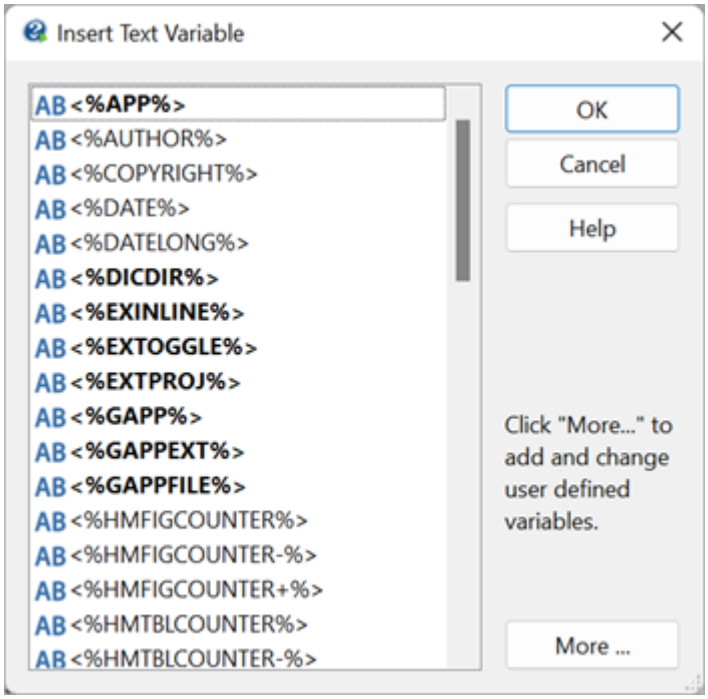
How to edit the values of variables

In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables** and edit the values of the variables in the list. If the variable value is grayed out it is protected and you must first unprotect it by setting the protected switch to *No* in the Protected column.



You can also double-click on a highlighted button variable in the editor and then select *More...* to display the variable editing window. (This is not possible with manually-typed variables without a button highlight.)

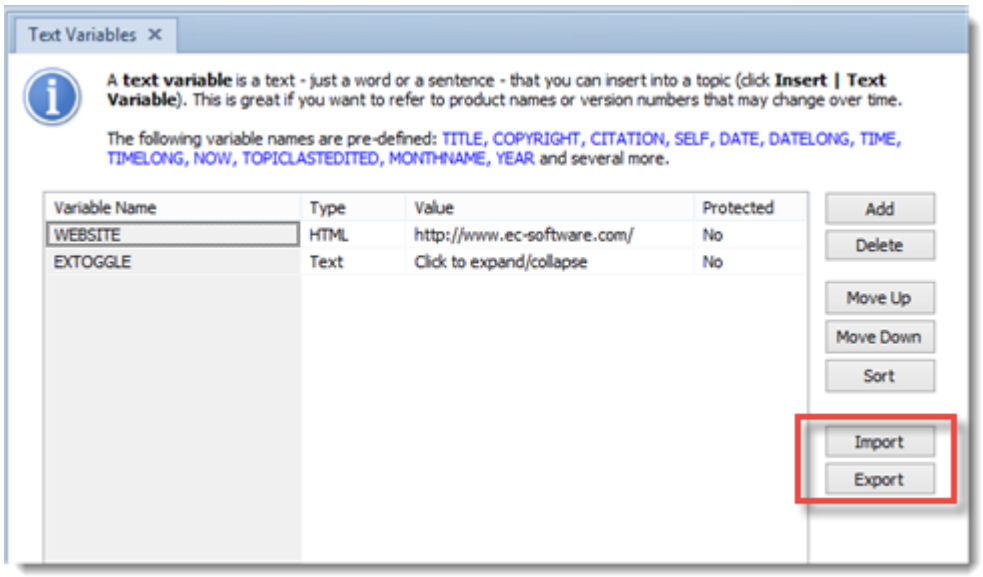
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Importing, exporting, sorting and managing your variables

Importing and exporting:

The **Import** and **Export** buttons next to the variables list allow you to save your variables to a file and load variable definitions saved in a file.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Export exports the current variable list to a text file, using the standard INI format. (You can use this to get a full example of the format if you like.) This only includes your user-defined variables. Help+Manual's own predefined variables are not exported. It also does not include the Type (HTML or Text) or Protected attributes.

Import imports a list of variables and corresponding values from a plain text file using the standard INI format, adding them to the project's variable list. You must set the variable type (HTML or Text) manually after importing the list. The file must be be a plain text file, and it must be encoded in the UTF8 format if it includes any accented or special characters. The type cannot be stored with the list. When you import you can choose to merge the imported list with your existing variables or replace all the existing variables completely.

Syntax: `VARIABLENAME=Variable value`

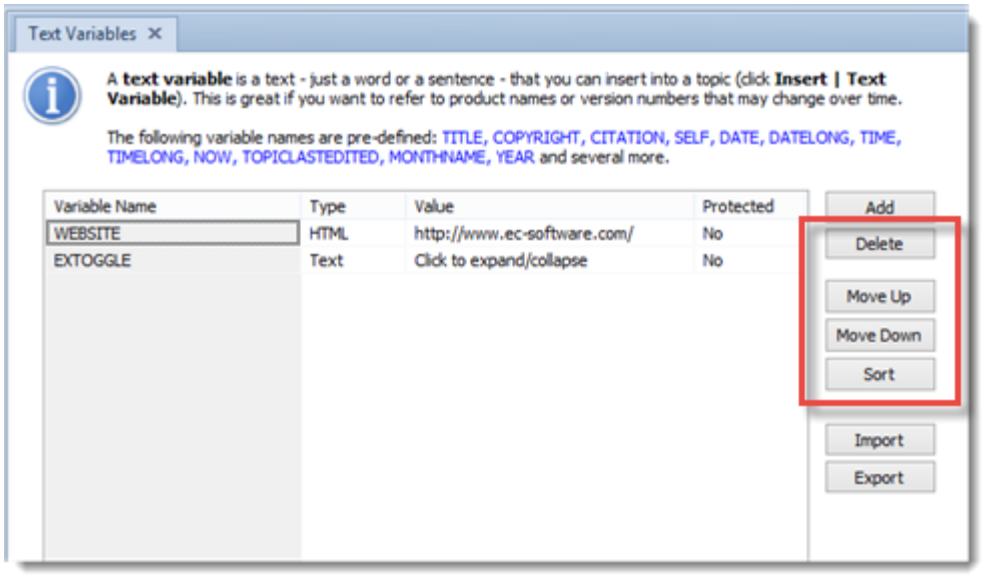
You can get an example of a variable list by using **Export**. Enter one variable per line without spaces on either side of the = sign and with a hard carriage return at the end of each line.

Example:

```
PRODNAME=Widget Confabulator 3
PRODUCT PATH=\Application\Widget\Program
WEBSITE=<a href="http://www.acmecoyote.com/">Acme Coyote Products</a>
CURRENT LOCATION=Bombay, India
```

Deleting, Moving and Sorting:

The **Delete**, **Move** and **Sort** buttons are for managing and organizing your variables list:



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can select multiple variables for moving and deleting with **SHIFT+Click** and **CTRL+Click**. This also works for multiple individual variables with unselected variables between them.

The **Sort** button sorts the variables list alphabetically.

How to edit the names of variables in topics

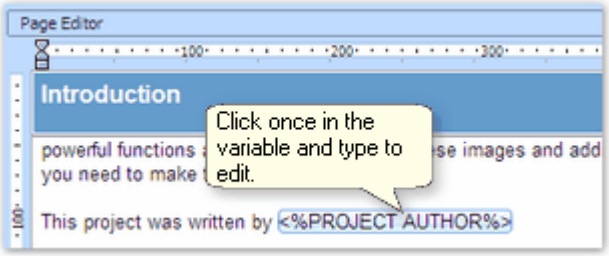
You cannot edit the names of variables in your variable definitions – they are fixed there and to "edit" the name you need to create a new variable with the desired new name. This section is about editing the names of variables that you have inserted in the topics in your project.

Variables in your project are actually always just plain text variable names identified by the tag delimiters **<%** and **%>**. When you use the **Insert** > **Text Variable** function the variables are displayed as highlighted buttons for easy identification and you can double-click on them to display the variables list, but this is just for convenience.

You can also type in variables manually. The clickable highlight is just an editing convenience to make the variables easier to see and use.

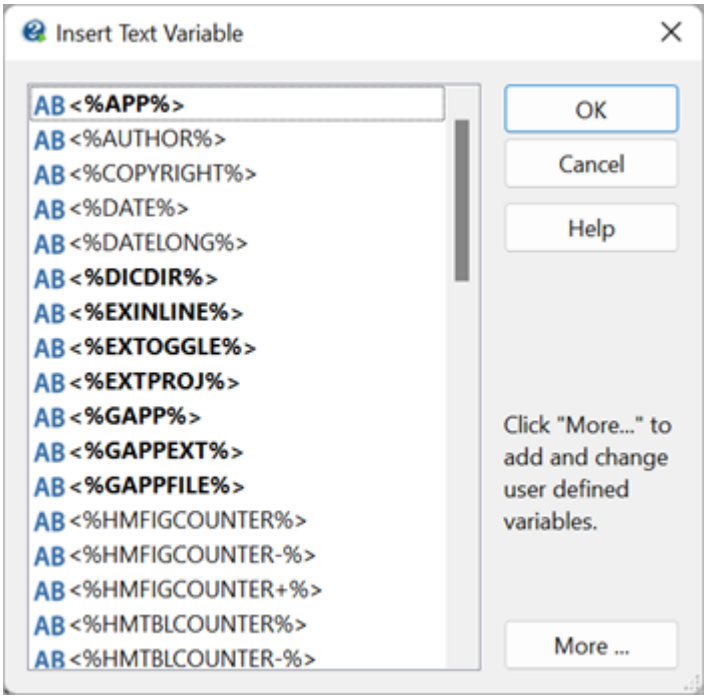
Editing the names of variables inserted with the Variable tool:

- To edit a variable name just click once inside the highlighted variable name and type. (If you change the variable to one that does not exist it will not work, of course...)



- **To display the variables list** double-click on the highlighted variable in the editor. If you then select a different variable from the list it will replace the original variable in the editor.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Editing the names of variables typed manually:

Variables typed manually are normal text and their names can be edited normally. They cannot be highlighted and you cannot double-click on them to display the variables list.

Highlighted variables at the beginning of a paragraph:

If a highlighted variable is at the beginning of a paragraph you can't insert any text before it; all the text you type to the left of the variable will also be highlighted. Here is how to solve this problem:

1. Click to the left of the variable and press Enter to create a new paragraph.
2. Press the space bar followed by Backspace and type your text.
3. Click to the right of the new text and press Delete to bring the variable up into the same paragraph.

If you type text instead of pressing the space bar it will be highlighted as a variable. To correct this just right-click on the highlight and select *Convert to plain text*.

How to use formatting and styles with variables

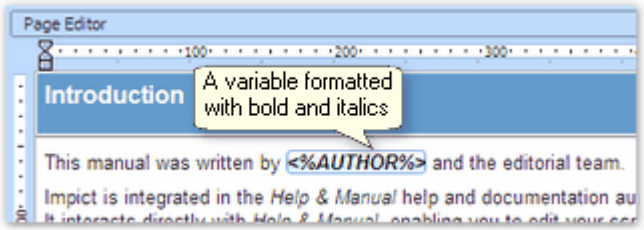
The values of variables are stored as plain text, without any formatting information. However, you can easily turn the content of variables into formatted text with bold, under-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

line or styles in your output by formatting the variable name in the Help+Manual editor.

Formatting variables manually:

1. Select the variable in the editor so that the entire variable is highlighted. This is the same for both variables typed manually and variables inserted with the Text Variable tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**.



Formatting the variable formats the variable contents in your published output.

Be careful to select the entire variable – if you only format part of the variable it can no longer be identified correctly by the compiler!

2. Use the formatting options in **Write** > **Font** to format the variable. For example, if you format the variable with bold and italic the variable's value will be bold and italic in your output.

Formatting variables with styles:

If you include variables in paragraphs that use paragraph and font styles you don't need to do anything – the variables' values will automatically be formatted like the rest of the text in the paragraph.

If you have defined text-only styles (see Defining styles 281) you can apply them to variables:

1. Select the variable in the editor so that the entire variable is highlighted (this is the same for both variables typed manually and variables inserted with **Insert** > **Text Variable**).

   Here too, be extremely careful to select the entire variable – if you only format part of the variable it can no longer be identified correctly by the compiler!

2. Apply your text-only style by selecting it in the style selector in the Toolbar, pressing the hotkey combination you have defined for the style or by selecting **Format** > **Format with Style**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to disable variables

Sometimes you may want to include the variables themselves rather than their values in your output. For example, this was necessary in this help in all the places where examples of the variables are displayed – if we had not disabled the variables here the values of the variables would have been displayed and the examples wouldn't have made much sense!

- To disable variables just type a \ backslash character between the opening **<%** tag delimiter and the variable name. This works in exactly the same way for all variables anywhere in your project. It also works both for the green highlighted variables inserted with **Insert** > **Text Variable** and variables typed in manually.
- Note that you only need to disable variables that are actually defined in the place where you are using them. You don't need to use the backslash character to disable undefined variables or for variables that are not supported where you are using them. For example, if you type the special HTML template variables 1569 in a topic the variable names will always be displayed in the output because they are not defined there.
- To also include the backslash character as shown in the examples below just type two backslash characters!

Examples:

<%\MONTHNAME%>	To enter the backslash in highlighted variables just click inside the variable and start typing.
<%\TIMELONG%> <%\NOW%> <%\AUTHOR%>	All the examples on the left were typed with two backslashes inside the variable to show how they are entered in the editor. With a single backslash you would simply see the variable name in the output.
<%TOPIC_TEXT%> <%FANTASY_VARIABLE%>	These two examples were entered without backslashes. They do not need to be disabled because they are not supported in normal topics – the first is a HTML template variable, the second is simply undefined.

How to disable the variable highlight

The highlight displayed for variables inserted with **Insert** > **Text Variable** uses the same system as the highlighting used for hyperlinks. You can turn the highlight off by right-clicking on the variable and selecting *Convert to plain text* in the context menu displayed.

The variable will still work when you do this, but it is then just like a manually-typed variable. You can no longer-double click on it to display the variables list.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This is not reversible! You can undo it with *Ctrl+Z* or Undo in **Write** > **Editing** directly after making the change but later you cannot convert an non-highlighted variable to a highlighted one. The only alternative is to re-enter the variable with **Insert** > **Text Variable**.

See also:

Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)

7.3.5 Inserting variables in topics and headers

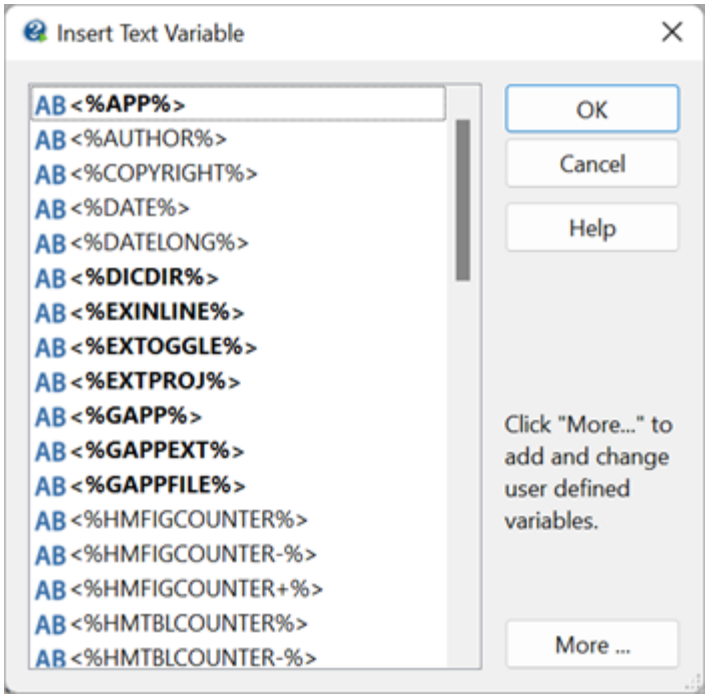
You can use both Help+Manual's predefined variables and your own user-defined variables in your topics and topic headers. These are all displayed automatically in the Insert Text Variable 1370 dialog so you don't need to refer to a list to use them.

If you use HTML variables in your topics and headers only the plain-text portion of the variable value will be inserted. If the variable does not contain a plain-text portion (text outside of any HTML tags) nothing will be inserted.

How to insert and edit variables with the Variables Tool

The procedure is identical for predefined variables and user-defined variables. They are all displayed together in the same dialog:

1. Click in the editor where you want to insert the variable, either in the text or the topic header above the text.
2. Select **Write** > **Insert Object** > or press *Ctrl+T*.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Select the variable you want to use from the list and click on **OK** (or just double-click on the variable in the list).

Variables inserted with this method are displayed with a button-style highlight like this: <%\MONTHNAME%> This is only to make the variable easier to see in the editor. Variables typed in manually (see below) are also fully functional.See Variables and Conditional Output 1558 for lists of the available predefined variables and what they do.

Editing highlighted variables:

Double-clicking on a variable opens the Insert Variable 1370 dialog with which you can change the variable to a different variable or access the Edit Variables dialog by clicking on *More...*

How to type in variables manually

Variables can also be typed in manually in topics and headers. They are evaluated automatically when you publish your output and work in exactly the same way as variables entered with the Insert Variable dialog.

- Just type in the variable exactly as it appears in the variable list. Use all upper-case characters, and enclose the variable name in **<%** and **%>** tag delimiters. Spaces are permitted in variable names.
- **Example:** This sentence contains a <%USER_DEFINED_VARIABLE%> typed in manually.

Variables inserted with this method are not highlighted in the topic text and you cannot double-click on them to open the Edit Variables dialog. Also, if you make a mistake when you type the name of a variable it won't work!

Date and time formatting in variables

A number of the predefined variables in Help+Manual enter the current date or time or the date or time associated with an item in your project. Normally these variables will automatically use the date and time format set in your Windows configuration. In addition to this they also automatically use the current language set in your project for words in the time and date, if applicable.

However, the **<%NOW%>**, **<%TOPICLASTEDITED%>** and **<%DATE%>** variables also support the use of a "format string" with which you can define the entire date and time format to be displayed. You define the format by adding the format string to the variable in parentheses like this:

<%NOW(dddd, mmmm d, yyyy)%>

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See Date and time variables 1565 for details of the syntax.

Note that this only works with these three variables. If you add format strings to any other variables the variable will no longer work. Also, you can only use this option by editing variables in the Help+Manual editor. You cannot use the date and time formatting syntax in variable definitions.

See also:

Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)
Where you can use variables 917
Editing, formatting and disabling variables 924
Date and time variables 937

7.3.6 Inserting variables in other project locations

You can also use all the global predefined variables and your own user-defined variables in the captions in the Table of Contents, keywords, image captions, link captions, macros and scripts, HTML code objects, HTML templates, PDF print manual templates and text entry fields in your project's Configuration section.

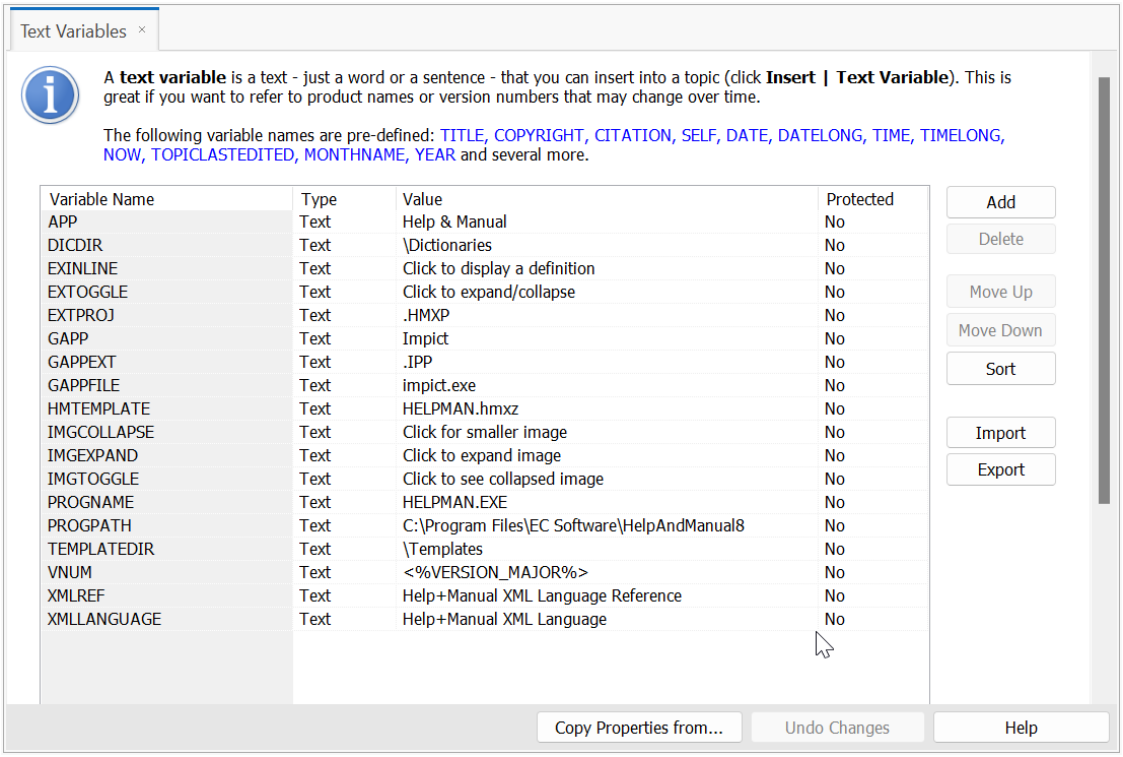
There is one difference, however: In all these locations you cannot use the **Write** > **Insert Object** > tool, you must type the variables in manually.

If you use HTML variables anywhere except in HTML templates and HTML code objects only the plain-text portion of the variable value will be inserted. If the variable does not contain a plain-text portion nothing will be inserted.

How to display available variables

- Go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables** in the Project Explorer to view and edit your user-defined variables.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



- See global predefined variables 1561 for a list of the available predefined variables.

How to use variables in the TOC

1. In the Project Explorer, click on the TOC entry you want to edit and press **F2** to activate caption editing.
2. The variable insertion dialog used in topics is not available here! Type in the variable exactly as it appears in the variable list.

Examples:

`<%DATELONG%>`	A predefined variable (the date in long format)
`<%MYPROJECT%>`	A user-defined variable

How to use variables in keywords

Text variables are supported both in normal index keywords and in A-keywords.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- The procedure here is exactly the same: Just type in the variable, entering it exactly as it is listed, complete with the opening <% tag and the closing %> tag.

See Keywords and Indexes 565 for details on editing and using keywords.

How to use variables in image captions

1. Double-click on the graphic in the editor to open its properties dialog.
2. Type in the variable in the *Image Caption* field, entering it exactly as it is listed, complete with the opening <% tag and the closing %> tag.

How to use variables in link captions

You can also use text variables in link captions, i.e. the texts of hyperlinks shown in your topics. You can edit these directly, just by clicking once in the caption and typing, but it is still a little easier to double-click on the link to edit it in its properties dialog.

1. Double-click on the link to display the Hyperlink dialog 1352.
2. Type in the variable in the *Caption:* field, entering it exactly as it is listed, complete with the opening <% tag and the closing %> tag.

How to use variables in macros and scripts

You can also use text variables in macros and scripts inserted in macro and script links and graphics hotspots.

HTML variables are supported in scripts.

- Just follow the instructions for inserting macros and scripts in macro and script links 452 and graphics hotspots 509 and type the variable in the *Script:* editing field in the place where you want to use it, entering it exactly as it is listed, complete with the opening <% tag and the closing %> tag.

How to use text variables in HTML code objects

Both text variables and HTML variables are also supported in HTML code objects 469 inserted with tool in **Write** > **Insert Object.**

- Here too, just type in the variable in the code object using the standard syntax and the opening and closing <% and %> tags around the variable name (spaces are permitted in

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

variable names). The variables will be parsed and replaced automatically when you publish your project.

Remember that no syntax checking is performed on the contents of HTML code objects; you are entirely responsible for the proper syntax and structure of your HTML code!

Important: You cannot use HTML template variables 1569 in HTML code objects because the code objects are parsed together with the topic content, before it is inserted in the template.

See The power of editable variables 963 for some powerful additional features available with HTML variables!

Date and time formatting in variables

A number of the predefined variables in Help+Manual enter the current date or time or the date or time associated with an item in your project. Normally these variables will automatically use the date and time format set in your Windows configuration. In addition to this they also automatically use the current language set in your project for words in the time and date, if applicable.

However, the **<%NOW%>**, **<%TOPICLASTEDITED%>** and **<%DATE%>** variables also support the use of a "format string" with which you can define the entire date and time format to be displayed. You define the format by adding the format string to the variable in parentheses like this:

```
<%NOW(dddd, mmmm d, yyyy)%>
```

See Date and time variables 1565 for details of the syntax.

Note that this only works with these three variables. If you add format strings to any other variables the variable will no longer work. Also, you can only use this option by editing variables in the Help+Manual editor. You cannot use the date and time formatting syntax in variable definitions.

See also:

Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)
Date and time variables 937

7.3.7 Date and time variables

Key Information
You can only format the date and time with these four variables that support formatting strings..

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual supports a number of variables for inserting the date and/or time. Some of these support special formatting strings with which you have full control over how the date and time elements are displayed.

Language of the date and time entries

The date and time entries created by these variables will use the language setting of your Help+Manual project.

Languages with nominative or genitive date forms

Variables that include time can only write the month names in the nominative form for these languages, because that is all that Windows allows in combination with the time. If you need the genitive form use <%DATELONG%> or <%DATE%>, which both write the genitive form, and combine them with a separate time variable. The variables <%NOW%> and <%TOPICLASTEDITED%> both write the nominative form, because they also include the time.

All date and time variables

The variables shown in red also support formatting strings (see further below for details).

<%NOW%>:	Inserts the current date and time. Returns the month in nominative form in applicable languages. Supports a formatting string (see further below for details).
<%DATE%>:	The current date in short format, without the time. Returns the month in genitive form in applicable languages. Supports a formatting string (see further below for details).
<%\DATELONG%>:	The current date in long format, without the time. This also includes long month names, in the genitive form in applicable languages.
<%TIME%>:	The current time in short format.
<%TIMELONG%>:	The current time in long format.
<%MONTHNAME%>:	The current month in long format (i.e. February, not Feb or 2).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

<%YEAR%>:	The current year in 4-digit format.
<%TOPICLASTEDITED%>:	The date and time when the topic containing the variable was last edited in short format. Supports a formatting string (see further below for details). Uses the nominative form for applicable languages.
<%TOPICLASTEDITEDTIME%>:	The time when the topic containing the variable was last edited.

How to use formatting strings in the supported variables

To use this feature you insert the **<%NOW%>** , **<%DATE%>** or **<%TOPICLASTEDITED%>** variable in your project, either manually or with the Insert Variable tool, and then manually type a format string in parentheses inside the variable name in the Help+Manual editor:

```
<%NOW(format string)%>
<%DATE(format string)%>
<%TOPICLASTEDITED(format string)%>
```

Position and syntax of the format string:

The format string must be inserted in parentheses between last letter of the variable name and the closing **%>** characters of the variable tag. The string can contain both "specifiers" that define the date and time format and normal text. Normal text must be enclosed in double quotes.

Specifiers may be written in upper or lower case, the result will be the same.

Examples:

```
<%NOW("This topic was published on " dddd, mmmm d, yyyy, " at "
hh:mm AM/PM)%>
<%TOPICLASTEDITED("This topic was last modified on " dddd, mmmm d,
yyyy, " at " hh:mm AM/PM)%>
```

Example result: *This topic was last modified on Tuesday, January 3, 2013, at 12:22 PM*

The text within the quotes will be inserted exactly as it is written. Any spaces required must be included within the quotes and the quotes must be separated from the specifiers by spaces.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Date and time format specifiers

Specifier	Function
" text " ' text '	Anything enclosed in single or double quotes is inserted unchanged as plain text and does not affect formatting.
. and ,	You can include periods and commas in the formatting string with the specifiers, these characters to not need to be quoted.
c	Displays the date using the standard Windows short date format, followed by the time using the standard Windows long time format. The time is not displayed if the fractional part of the DateTime value is zero.
d	Displays the day of the month as a number without a leading zero (1-31).
dd	Displays the day of the month as a number with a leading zero (01-31).
ddd	Displays the day as an abbreviation (Sun-Sat) using the standard Windows strings for short day names.
dddd	Displays the day as a full name (Sunday-Saturday) using the standard Windows strings for full day names.
ddddd	Displays the date using the standard Windows short date format.
dddddd	Displays the date using the standard Windows long date format.
m	Displays the month as a number without a leading zero (1-12). If the **m** specifier immediately follows an **h** or **hh** specifier, the minute rather than the month is displayed.
mm	Displays the month as a number with a leading zero (01-12). If the **mm** specifier immediately follows an **h** or **hh** specifier, the minute rather than the month is displayed.
mmm	Displays the month as an abbreviation (Jan-Dec) using the standard Windows values for short month names.
mmmm	Displays the month as a full name (January-December) using the standard Windows values for long month names.
yy	Displays the year as a two-digit number (00-99).
yyyy	Displays the year as a four-digit number (0000-9999).
h	Displays the hour without a leading zero (0-23).
hh	Displays the hour with a leading zero (00-23).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

n	Displays the minute without a leading zero (0-59).
nn	Displays the minute with a leading zero (00-59).
s	Displays the second without a leading zero (0-59).
ss	Displays the second with a leading zero (00-59).
z	Displays the millisecond without a leading zero (0-999).
zzz	Displays the millisecond with a leading zero (000-999).
t	Displays the time using the standard Windows short time format.
tt	Displays the time using the standard Windows long time format.
am/pm	Uses the 12-hour clock for the preceding h or hh specifier, and displays 'am' for any hour before noon, and 'pm' for any hour after noon. The **am/pm** specifier can use lower, upper, or mixed case, and the result is displayed accordingly.
ampm	Uses the 12-hour clock for the preceding h or hh specifier, and displays the contents of the Windows *TimeAMString* global variable for any hour before noon, and the contents of the *TimePMString* global variable for any hour after noon.
/	Displays the date separator set in your Windows configuration.
:	Displays the time separator set in your Windows configuration.

See also:

Using Variables 917

7.3.8 Counter variables for numbering

You can use counter variables to number anything in your project that needs consecutive numbering, such as illustrations and so on. There are two kinds of counter variables: User-defined counter variables, which cannot be referenced, and two special predefined counter variables for numbered figures and tables, which can be referenced. With these two variables you can use references like "See Fig. X" or "See Table Y", both in plain text and in hyperlinks.

Important resriction: Counter variables are not supported in the TOC

Because of the way that counter variables are processed, you can only use them in the body of your topic texts. If you use them in the table of contents (TOC) the counters will be incorrect. This is because the TOC is processed separately from the topic files. Since the counter variables can only be incremented when they are processed, this means that all counter variables in the TOC will be processed, and then the counter variables in the top-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ics. This means that it is impossible for the count to proceed logically from a variable in the TOC to the same variable in one of the topics.

You might then assume that you can use counter variables in the TOC if they are only used there, but that also won't work. The reason for this is that in some circumstances it is quite possible for the TOC to be processed multiple times when you publish your project. If this happens, the values of the variables will be incremented every time the TOC is processed.

7.3.8.1 User-defined counters

You can define as many user counter variables as you like and you can define the starting number to be used for each variable, which makes it possible to use the variables across multiple projects. User-defined counter variables cannot be referenced. They simply provide consecutive automatic numbering, with no additional functionality.

Key Information
If you use a counter variable inside topic or image captions you must only use it in topic or image captions. If you also use it in normal topic text the numbering will be wrong. (Variables in captions are evaluated in a separate pass when you publish.)

Restrictions of user-defined counter variables

Counter variables are simple counters that cannot be referenced

User-defined variables are quite simple. They will provide you with continuous numbering but that is all. You cannot "refer" to them with variables in references like "*See Figure XX*". See Figure and table counters 944 for instructions on how to create referencing counters for figures and tables.

Counter variables are not supported in the TOC

Because of the way that counter variables are processed, you can only use them in the body of your topic texts. If you use them in the table of contents (TOC) the counters will be incorrect. This is because the TOC is processed separately from the topic files. Since the counter variables can only be incremented when they are processed, this means that all counter variables in the TOC will be processed, and then the counter variables in the topics. This means that it is impossible for the count to proceed logically from a variable in the TOC to the same variable in one of the topics.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You might then assume that you can use counter variables in the TOC if they are only used there, but that also won't work. The reason for this is that in some circumstances it is quite possible for the TOC to be processed multiple times when you publish your project. If this happens, the values of the variables will be incremented every time the TOC is processed.

How to define user counter variables

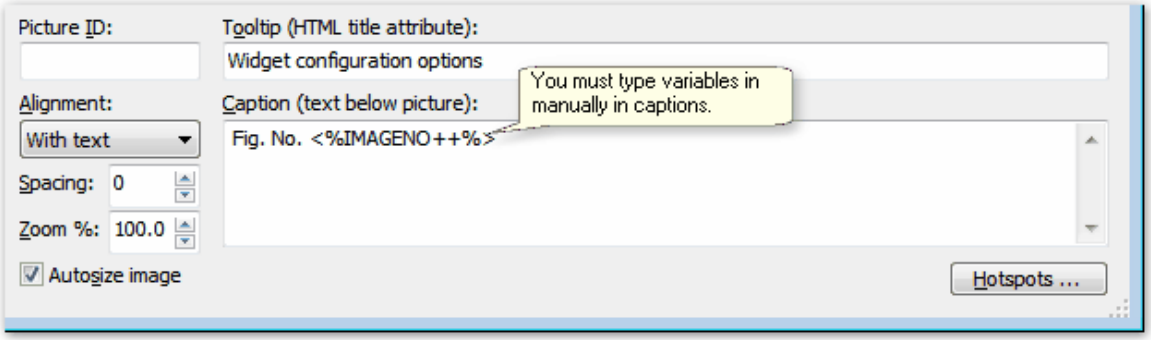
User counter variables are identified by two **++** characters at the end of the variable name. Otherwise counter variables can have any name you like, just like normal user-defined variables.

Every time Help+Manual encounters the variable in a project it increases its value by 1. This means if you want to start with 1 you must enter "0" as the variable's initial value when you define it. If you want to start with 10 you must enter "9" and so on (without the quotes).

1. Define a text variable with two **+** characters at the end of its name, for example `ITEM++`, `VIEW++` and so on.
2. Set the value of the variable to **0** if you want to start counting at 1, to **89** if you want to start counting with 90 and so on. (Always one less than the number you want to use, the value is always incremented whenever the variable is used.)

How to use counter variables

Just insert the variable in the place where you want the count to be displayed. Each time you use the same variable the variable's last value will be increased by 1. For example, to number your images just type the counter variable in the image caption field of the Insert Image dialog with appropriate text, for example



*The Insert Image dialog (select **Write > Insert > Image**, or double-click an existing image to display)*

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

User variables in image captions:

User-defined variables cannot be referenced. Use the special figure and table counter variables 944 for creating numbered figures and tables that you can reference in other places in your text.

If you do use user counter variables in image captions it's important to know that they are evaluated in a separate pass when you publish. This means that if you use a counter variable in an image caption you must never use the same variable anywhere else in the current project. You can only use that variable in image captions. If you also use the variable in other locations the count will be incorrect.

Using counter variables in modular projects

You can use these variables in modular projects. You just need to reset the starting value of the variables in your child projects if you are using runtime merging in HTML Help.

Publish time merging:

If you are using publish time merging you just need to define the variable in the master project and then use it throughout all your projects. Publish time merging is the only available option for all formats except HTML Help. In HTML Help you can choose either publish time merging or runtime merging,

Runtime merging in HTML Help:

If you are using runtime merging for your HTML Help output you must define the correct starting values for each variable in the child projects. To do this you need to check the final value in the preceding project and set the starting value to that value.

For example, if the final value of your IMAGENO++ variable in Project A is 63 you need to define the value of IMAGENO++ in Project B as 63. Then the value will be incremented correctly to 64 the first time you use the variable in Project B.

See also:

Working with Modular Help Systems 1088

7.3.8.2 Figure and table counters

In addition to simple user-defined counters, Help+Manual also supports specialized figure and table counters and an additional related user counter. These allow you to create numbered tables of figures and tables in your projects and to include cross-references to the individual figures and tables.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

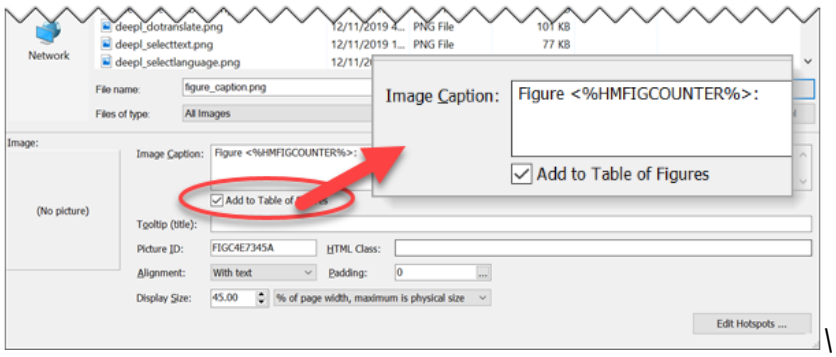
Introduction to figure and table counters

Figure and table counters can be referenced

You can link to and reference figure and table counters with the Figure Link 420 option in the Hyperlink Tool. This is also explained further below on this page.

Figure counters in image dialogs

Figure counters can be integrated in image references (both static images and image toggles). The options for this are included in the normal image and toggle insertion dialogs.

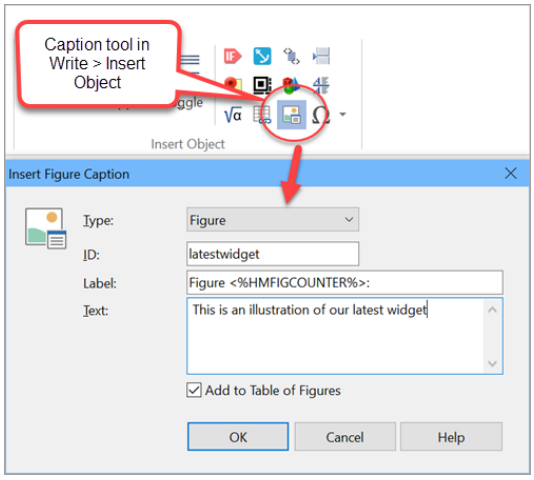


The `Figure <%HMFIGCOUNTER%>:` entry is created automatically when you activate the *Add to Table of Figures* option. If you edit the `Figure` text your edit will be used the next time you use the dialog. See further below in this topic to learn how to use these captions.

Figure and table counters in "figure caption" objects

In addition to the integrated image references you can also create special "figure caption" objects with the **Caption** tool. In addition to images, these captions can also be used for tables (which don't have their own captions) and for your own custom captions for anything else you like. The **Caption** tool is located in **Write** > **Insert Object**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Here too, the `Figure <%HMFIGCOUNTER%>:` entry is created automatically when you activate the *Add to Table of Figures* option. If you edit the `Figure` text your edit will be used the next time you use the dialog.

These captions are very flexible. They allow you to create numbered references to any class of items in your project, not just tables and images. For example, you could create a numbered list of equations or quotations or anything else you like. See further below in this topic to learn how to use them.

The variables used:

There are three variables used for figure and table counters.

Counter Variable	Where incremented
<%HMFIGCOUNTER%>	• In an image with the option *"Add to Table of Figures"* • In a toggle image with the option *"Add to Table of Figures"* • In a figure caption of type "Figure" with the option *"Add to Table of Figures"*
<%HMTBLCOUNTER%>	• In a figure caption of type "Table" with the option "Add to Table of Figures"
<%HMUSRCOUNTER%>	• In a figure caption of type "User" with the option "Add to Table of Figures"

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Smart incrementation

The incrementation of these counter variables is "smart". Their values are only increased in the locations listed above. If you insert them in the body text of your project or anywhere else except these "incrementing locations" their values will **not** be incremented. This makes it much easier to insert references to your figures, tables and other listed items than in the past.

Important: The old figure and table counter variables are deprecated!

The <%HMFIGURECOUNTER%> and <%HMTABLECOUNTER%> variables introduced in Help+Manual 7 will still work, but they are deprecated and no longer documented. If you have used them in your projects you don't need to replace them immediately. However, support for them will be removed in the future, so in the long run you should replace them with the new counter variables described below. Also, any new counters you add should use the new variables.

The old variables don't support tables of figures and tables

Note that the old variables won't be used in the new tables of figures and tables (see further below in this topic for details). You need to update to the new variables for that.

No automatic conversion

Unfortunately, it was not possible to include automatic conversion for the old figure and table counters. The differences are simply too great. To update existing counters you need to delete the old ones and create the new ones as described below.

Limitations of the figure and table counter variables

Before Help+Manual 9, referencing these counter variables had to be done manually and this was subject to a number of limitations. These restrictions have now been removed with the new figure link tool. See further below for basic instructions and on the Figure Link 420 page for full details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

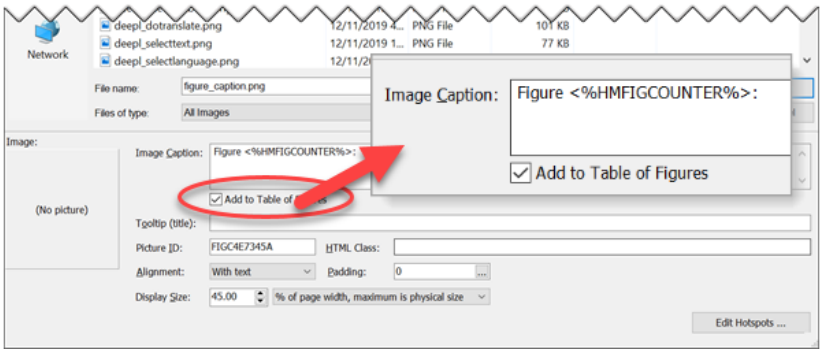
Counter variables are not supported in the TOC

Because of the way that counter variables are processed, you can only use them in the body of your topic texts. If you use them in the table of contents (TOC) the counters will be incorrect. This is because the TOC is processed separately from the topic files.

You might then assume that you can use counter variables in the TOC if they are only used there, but that also won't work. The reason for this is that in some circumstances it is quite possible for the TOC to be processed multiple times when you publish your project. If this happens, the values of the variables will be incremented every time the TOC is processed.

Using figure counters in image and image toggle dialogs

Images that you insert with the image tool 481 and image toggles inserted with the toggle tool 392 are both classed as figures in your project. You can number them sequentially with the figure counter, which you can activate in the normal dialog for inserting the image or toggle. The option for doing this looks the same in both dialogs – this example shows the image dialog:



Activating the figure counter for an image or image toggle

You do this while inserting an image or toggle, or by double-clicking on an existing image or image toggle to display its dialog. Just activate the *Add to Table of Figures* checkbox. This automatically inserts the text `Figure </%HMFIGCOUNTER%>` in the caption field.

The Picture ID

The *Picture ID:* field is important for links and references to the caption (see further below). A unique ID is generated automatically when you insert an image. You can edit this if you want to make it more "human readable", and this is generally recommended – it's a

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

lot easier to know what you are linking to when the ID is *widgetexample* instead of *FIG58500E9A*. Unaccented letters and numbers only, no spaces.

Important: IDs must be unique in the current topic. If you use the same ID more than once in a topic your references will not work correctly.

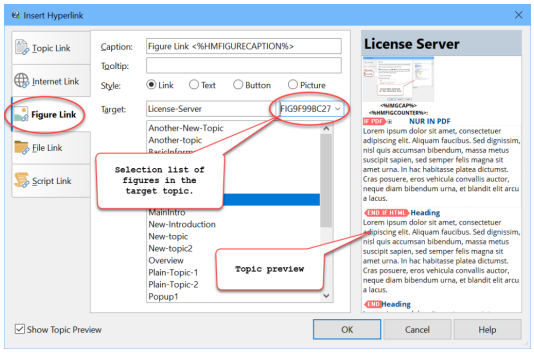
Editing the caption

If you want a different word instead of `Figure` just edit it. Help+Manual will then remember this and use your edit in the next caption. You can then add the normal caption for the image after the : character. That is all there is to it.

Links and references to figures and tables

You can link to figures, tables and caption objects that contain IDs using the Figure Link 420 option in the regular hyperlink tool. This works the same way as linking to an anchor in a topic. In addition to this, it can insert a reference to the target with its caption and number.

Limitation: The only limitation of this function is that it must be an active link. You can't currently create a reference that is just plain text.



Procedure

1. Click where you want to insert the link and open the hyperlink tool.
2. Choose *Figure Link* on the left, then select the ID of the topic containing the figure from the list.
3. Select the ID of the figure from the list next to the *Target:* field. You will only see IDs here if the topic contains figures with IDs.
   Tip: The preview on the right scrolls to the item with the selected ID.
4. The <\%HMFIGURECAPTION%> variable inserts the caption and counter number of the target item in the link text.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Resetting counters and adding chapter references

Resetting the counter

If you don't change anything the figure counter will number your figures consecutively throughout your entire project. If you want to reset the counter, for example to count from 1 in every chapter, you can do this by adding an = sign and the starting value for the counter, like this:

<%HMFIGCOUNTER=12%> (resets the figure counter to 12)
<%HMFIGCOUNTER=1%> (resets the figure counter to 1)

Adding chapter references

In addition to resetting the counter you can also include a manual chapter reference in the counter. There just needs to be a non-numeric character before the actual number you are resetting the counter to:

<%HMFIGCOUNTER=3-12%> (resets the figure counter to 3-12)
<%HMFIGCOUNTER=II.1%> (resets the figure counter to II.1)

You only need to make this entry in the first instance of the variable where it is used. After that it will be used automatically until you reset it again. If you are numbering like this you need to include a reset like this in the first figure reference at the beginning of each chapter.

Chapter references in the counters are NOT automatic!

Important: Note that you can't use automatic chapter references! In the examples above the "3" and "II" references will **not** increment automatically. You need to change them at the beginning of each chapter when you reset the figure counter.

Using figure captions for images, tables and other elements

Figure captions are the most flexible kind of captions. They are not physically linked to anything; they are just a special caption with a counter reference in the body of your topic text. This means you can insert them anywhere in your topics to create captions for images, tables and any other numbered elements you want to use, list and reference in your projects. They are created with the Caption tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

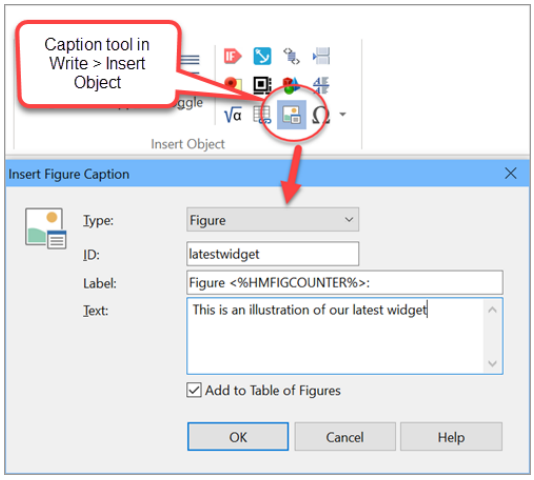
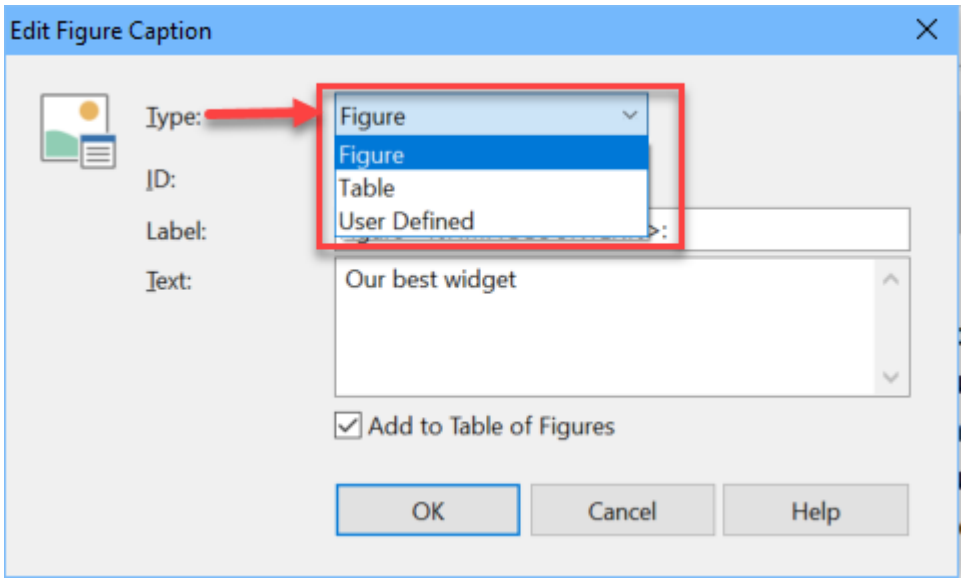


Figure captions are independent elements

The figure caption is an independent element. When you create a reference to it you are referring to the caption, not to the element it is captioning. This means you can position your caption anywhere you want: above or below an image or table or other element, or even inside the table you want it to caption.

Three figure caption types

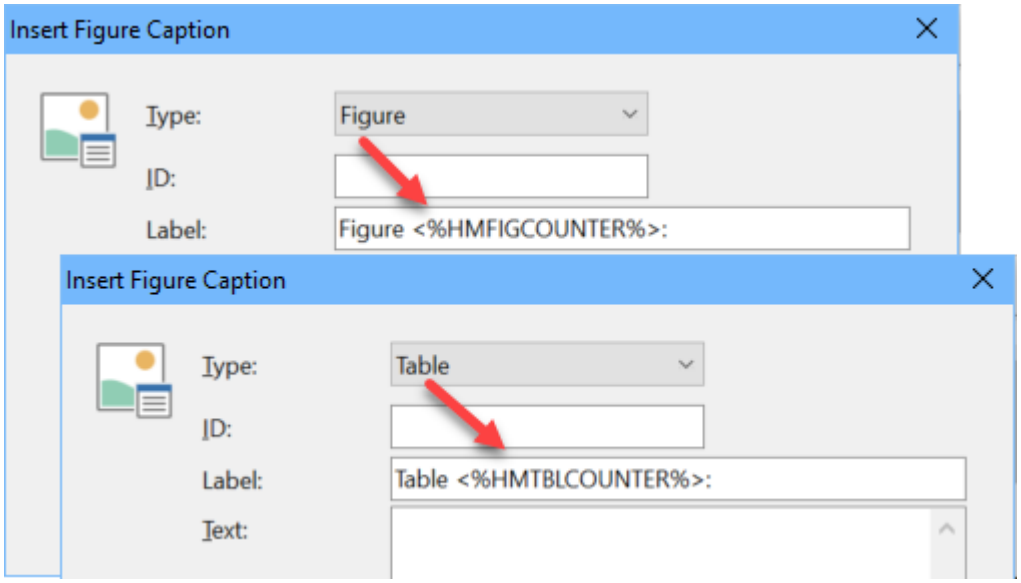
You can select between three different figure caption types in the caption tool, corresponding to the three counter variables used for the tables of figures: *Figure*, *Table* and *User Defined*. You



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Automatic variable selection

When you select the caption type, the corresponding variable is inserted in the *Label:* field automatically, along with the default label:



Editing the label

If you want a different word instead of `Figure` or `Table` or the standard user text, just edit it. Help+Manual will then remember this and use your edit in the next caption for that caption type. You can then add the normal caption for the image in the *Text:* field. That is all there is to it.

The ID

The *ID:* field is important for links and references to the caption (see further below). If you want to link to your figure captions you need to include an ID. The ID must be unique in the current topic, otherwise links to the captions won't work. Unaccented letters and numbers only, no spaces.

Important: IDs must be unique in the current topic. If you use the same ID more than once in a topic your references will not work correctly.

The caption text:

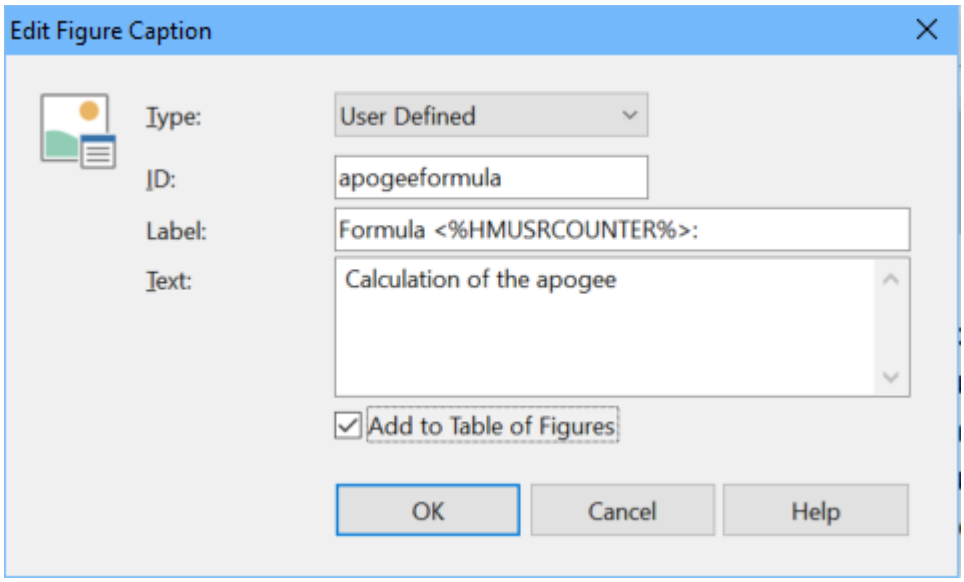
The text in the *Text:* field is the rest of the caption, which is displayed after the : character. An inserted caption then looks like this:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Figure <%HMFIGCOUNTER%>: The current state of widget development¶

The user counter in figure captions

The *User Defined* option is only available in figure captions and works in exactly the same way as the other two counter variables. It makes it possible for you to include both a counter and a table of figures for a third class of items. For example, if your project includes formulas you could use it for numbering the formulas and labeling them with captions that you can refer to:



Everything else works in exactly the same way as the figure and table counters in the figure captions. See further above for details.

References to figure and table counters

References to these three special figure, table and user counters all work in the same way. The most important things to know are where and how these "smart" counters are automatically incremented, and that the counters are **not** incremented when you use them in your body text.

Where the variables are incremented automatically:

Counter Variable	Where incremented
<%HMFIGCOUNTER%>	• In an image with the option *"Add to Table of Figures"*

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Counter Variable	Where incremented
	• In a toggle image with the option *"Add to Table of Figures"* • In a figure caption of type "Figure" with the option *"Add to Table of Figures"*
<%HMTBLCOUNTER%>	• In a figure caption of type "Table" with the option "Add to Table of Figures"
<%HMUSRCOUNTER%>	• In a figure caption of type "User" with the option "Add to Table of Figures"

Smart incrementation

The values are **only** incremented automatically in the locations listed above. If you insert the same variables in the body text of your project or anywhere else except these "incrementing locations" their values will **not** be incremented. This makes possible to insert references to them in your body text without having to adjust their values manually.

When references need to be adjusted

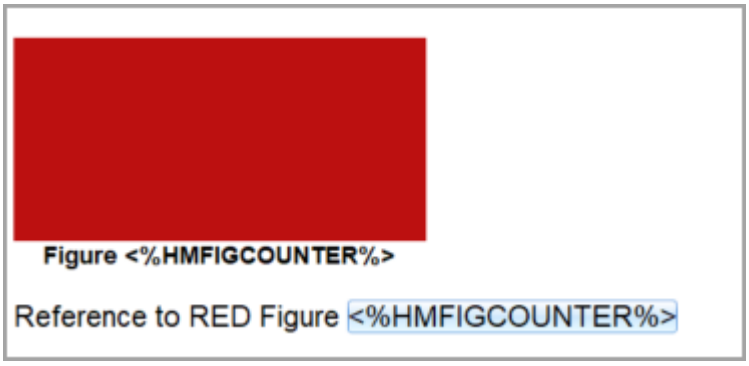
If you insert a reference to a figure or table counter directly **after** the figure or table, you can just insert the counter variable directly. In that position it will have the same value as the counter in the figure or table. In some cases, however, you need to adjust the values because of the position of the reference. This is done with the **+** (plus) and **-** (minus) versions of the variables — see further below for instructions on using these.

Referencing a figure counter AFTER the counter:

Direct reference to a single figure or table

This is the simplest case. If the reference comes after the counter in one of the incrementing positions, before it is used again for another figure or table, it will always have the same value as the counter.

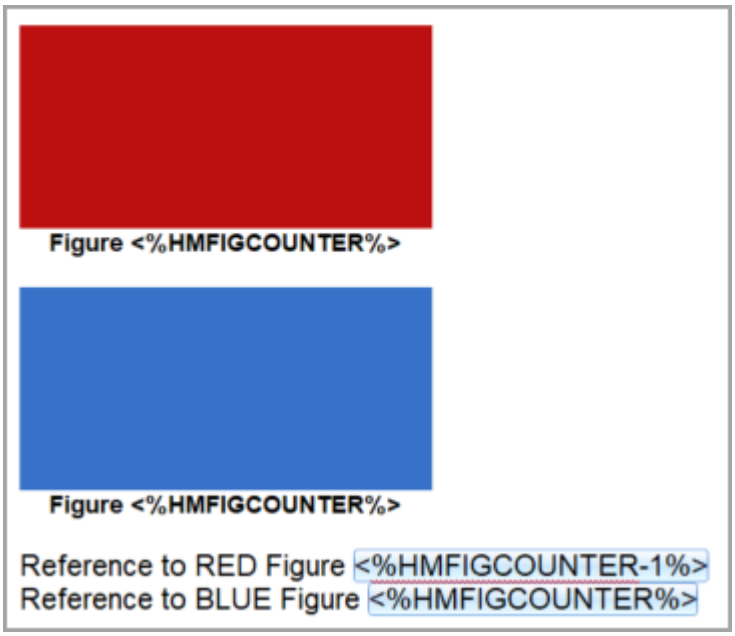
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



The copy of the variable in the text will have the same value as the variable in the figure caption, whatever that is.

Reference to multiple figures or tables

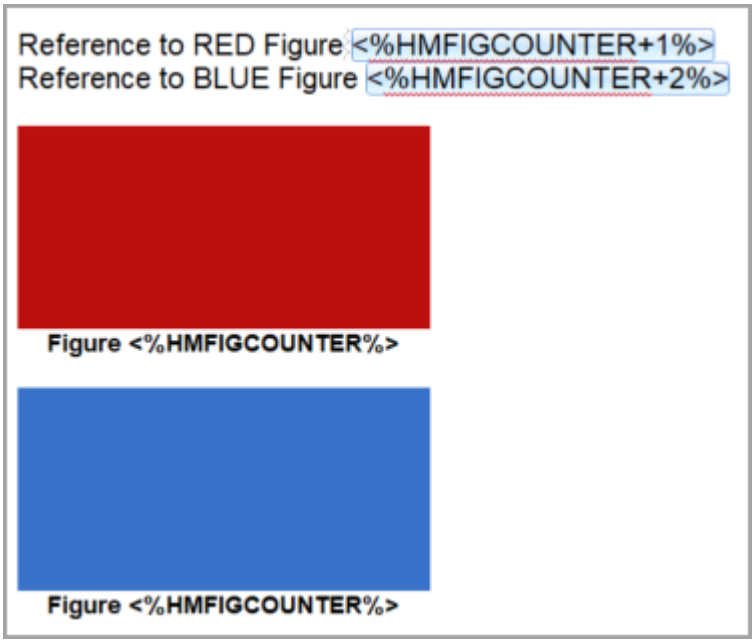
In the following example you need to adjust the value of the reference to the RED figure with a **-1** version of the variable (see further below in this topic for instructions). This is necessary because the counter has already been incremented again in the caption of the BLUE figure. The reference to the BLUE figure comes directly after the figure, so its reference does not need to be changed.



Referencing a figure counter BEFORE the counter

If you want to insert a reference to a figure or table counter BEFORE the figure or table, you need to increase the value of the reference to match the incremented counter, like this:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



The reference to the RED figure needs to be increased by 1, because the value of the counter variable will be 1 higher than in the text. The reference to the BLUE variable needs to be increased by 2, because the counter variable is 2 higher than in the body text position.

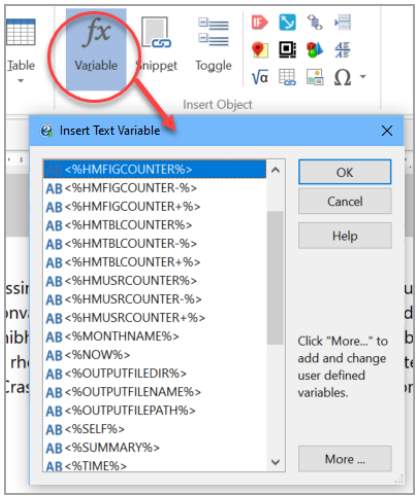
Using + and - variables to adjust references

When you need to adjust the value of references to figure and table counters, you do this with the "plus" and "minus" versions of the counter variables:

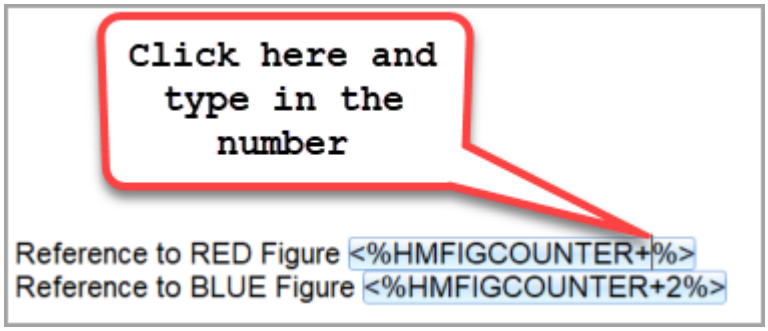
Regular Version	Plus Version	Minus Version
<%HMFIGCOUNTER%>	**<%HMFIGCOUNTER+%>**	**<%HMFIGCOUNTER-%>**
<%HMTBLCOUNTER%>	**<%HMTBLCOUNTER+%>**	**<%HMTBLCOUNTER-%>**
<%HMUSRCOUNTER%>	**<%HMUSRCOUNTER+%>**	**<%HMUSRCOUNTER-%>**

You can either type these variables in manually or insert them with the **Variable** tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



You then insert the values by clicking in the variable and adding the appropriate number between the plus or minus sign and the **%** character:



Generating the tables of figures

In addition to automatic numbering of your images, tables and other elements, these counters can also be used to generate three tables with lists of all your numbered figures and their locations in your project:

- Table of figures (the <%HMFIGCOUNTER%> variable)
- Table of tables (the <%HMTBLCOUNTER%> variable)
- Table of user elements (the <%HMUSRCOUNTER%> variable)

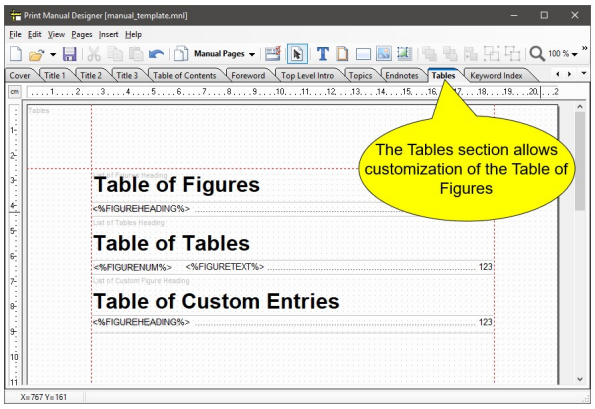
Where the tables of figures are available

These tables can currently be generated in PDF and Word DOCX output. The tables will include all entries for which you have activated the *Add to table of figures* option.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Support in PDF

The tables of figures are configured in the Tables section in the print manual template, which you edit in Manual Designer 805. All entries in your project with the *Add to Table of Figures* option will be listed in these tables if you have this section configured and activated in Manual Designer:



There are a number of bands and variables that you can use there. For full details see **Designing a Template** > **Tables Section** in the Manual Designer help (F1 in Manual Designer).

Support in Word DOCX

In Word you just need to configure the standard Table of Figures and Table of Tables sections in your Word template, edited in Word. Here too, all the entries in your project with the *Add to Table of Figures* option activated will be listed in these tables in your Word output. See Keyword Index, Table of Figures 689 in the Word chapter for details on setting this up.

7.3.9 Find and replace variables

You find and replace text variables in exactly the same way as you would find and replace normal text. You can replace variables with variables, normal text with variables and variables with normal text.

How to find and replace variables

1. Select Find & Replace 235 in the **Edit** menu.
2. To search for a variable or replace text with a variable enter:
   `<% + VARIABLENAME + %>`

   For example if your variable is called **DEMOBUILD** you would type:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

<%DEMOBUILD%>

When you insert or replace variables with Find and Replace the variables are not highlighted in the topic text. This is exactly the same as typing in variables manually 932 – the variables are still fully functional, they are just not highlighted in the text. (The highlight is just an editing convenience to make the variables easier to see.)

See also:

Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)

7.3.10 Variables in HTML templates

The HTML templates that generate the pages in Help+Manual's HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks and Visual Studio Help) make extensive use of variables. You can use all global predefined variables and all your user-defined variables in your HTML templates

There are also a number of special predefined variables for use in these templates only. For details on these variables and how to use them see Variables in HTML templates 1049.

User-defined variables in HTML templates and skins

In WebHelp, all your user-defined variables are exported as JavaScript variables in a **.js** file called **hmvariables.js**. This file combines both the user variables defined in your project and those defined in your WebHelp skin, if you are using one. If the same variable is defined both in your project and your skin the definition in the skin takes precedence and gets exported to the **.js** file.

You can make these variables available for use in your scripts in your templates by loading this file prior to referencing the variables, like this:

```
<script src="hmvariables.js"></script>
```

The variables are stored in an object called **hmConfigVariables** and the variables themselves are stored in all upper case. So if you have a variable called PROJECTVERSION you would reference it as:

```
hmConfigVariables.PROJECTVERSION
```

The values are always strings. If you want to use the values as numbers, Boolean values etc. you need to convert them before using them.

HTML variables in HTML templates and skins

HTML variables are primarily designed for use in HTML templates and HTML code objects – you can use them in other locations but then only the text portion of the variable value will be inserted.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The code stored in the HTML variable must make sense in the template, of course, you are entirely responsible for that!

Don't edit HTML templates if you don't understand HTML!

Any changes you make to the HTML templates are not checked for plausibility or syntax errors. You are entirely responsible for all the code you enter and all the changes you make. Making changes to the template code without knowing what you are doing can cause serious errors and malfunctions.

See also:

Using HTML Templates 1026
Variables in HTML templates 1049
Conditional output in HTML templates 1052
The power of editable variables 963
Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference, lists of available variables and conditions)

7.3.11 Redefining variables

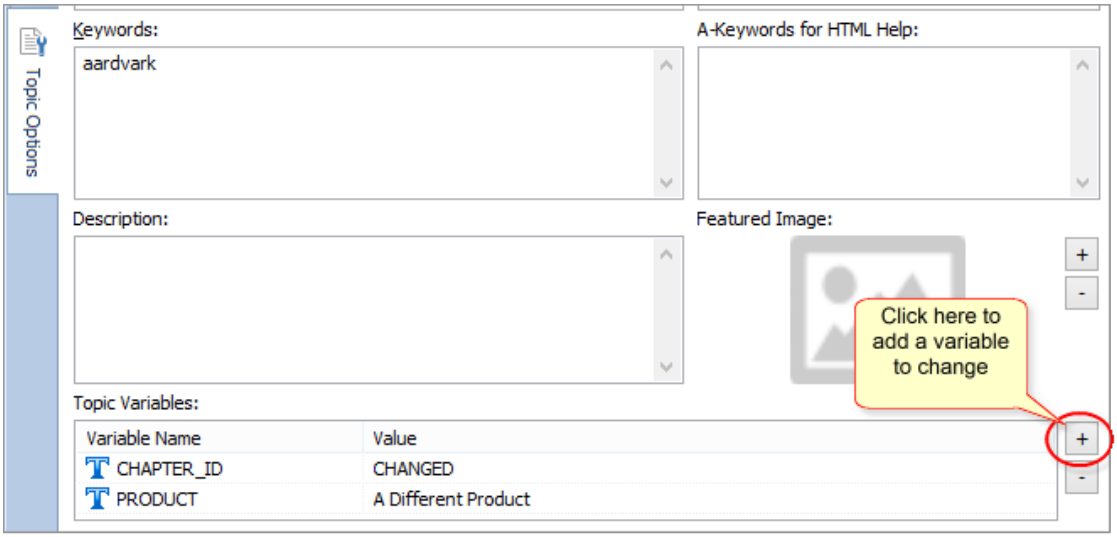
You can always change the definitions of your variables individually in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables** in the Project Explorer. In addition to this you can set different values for specific variables in individual topics. When you publish your project you can also redefine some or all of the variables in your entire project with a project skin or a variable definitions file.

How to redefine variables in individual topics

If you want a variable to have a different value in individual topics you can redefine it in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window when the topic is selected. Note that this is only possible with user-defined variables. You cannot define Help+Manual's standard variables with this feature.

1. Select the topic in the Project Explorer, then select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Click on the **+** button next to the *Topic Variables* box at the bottom of the window.
3. Select the variable you want to redefine and click OK, this adds the variable to the Topic Variables list.
4. Click in the *Value* field and enter a new value. The values you enter here will only be used in the current topic.

See The power of editable variables 963 for more information on the kind of things you can do with this feature.

How to redefine some or all variables when you publish

When you publish your project you can redefine some or all of the variables in the entire project in two different ways: With "skins" and with the command line compilation feature.

Redefining variables with publishing tasks

The Publishing Task Manager makes it possible to define "tasks" to publish your project to multiple output formats and destinations in a single integrated operation. In addition to this you can also redefine the variables in your project when you publish the task with a list of alternative variable definitions. See Publishing to multiple formats 809 for instructions.

Redefining your variables with skins:

Note that you can also assign skins to publishing tasks 809.

1. Create a project skin (only possible with Help+Manual Professional) containing the alternative definitions of your variables (and anything else you want to change in your

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

project). If you only want to redefine your variables you can create a skin that only contains your variable definitions. See Transforming Your Output with Skins 638 for more details.

2. When you publish your project 613 to an HTML-based output format select the skin file in the Publish 1310 dialog.

Note that skins can't be selected in the Publish dialog in non-HTML formats – you need to use command line publishing (see below) for those formats where skins are not directly available.

Redefining your variables from the command line:

You can also create a simple text file containing a list of definitions of the variables you want to change. You can then specify this file in the command line to redefine all the variables in your project with the values in the file.

In addition to this you can also specify a project skin file in the command line, to apply a completely different appearance to the entire project as well as redefining the variables.

For more details on the procedure for redefining variables see Skins & redefining variables 834 in the Command Line chapter and Transforming Your Output with Skins 638.

See also:

Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)
Transforming Your Output with Skins 638
Command Line Options 816
Skins & redefining variables 834

7.3.12 Variables in style repositories

If you define variables in a style repository 1076 they will also appear and be available in the projects to which the repository is linked. When you link the repository, all the variables in the repository that do not exist in the project are copied to the project. Variables that already exist in the projects are left unchanged; their values do not update with different values from the repository.

At present, this is really just a convenience for sharing variables to multiple projects. The values of the variables are not dynamically linked, even if the styles are. The values of the variables in your projects will NOT update when their values are changed in the repository. This is the same as existing variables in the project, which are not updated with the values of repository variables when you link a repository.

The only way to force the values of a variable in a project to update with a changed value in the repository is to delete the variable in the project. Then the variable will appear again with the new value from the linked repository the next time the project is loaded. However, this is not really very practical, because you would need to do this for all the variables in all your projects every time you change the values of the variables in the repository.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.3.13 The power of editable variables

Help+Manual's variables have several features that make them extremely powerful and flexible:

- **You can define variables as HTML variables or as plain-text variables**
- **You can redefine user variables on a per-topic basis**
- **You can redefine user variables for your entire project with publishing tasks**

These features are particularly powerful when you are generating HTML-based output. For example, you can perform search engine optimization on a per-topic basis and you can add individual JavaScript code to the HTML templates of every topic. We are sure that you will come up with additional uses for this powerful feature – experiment!

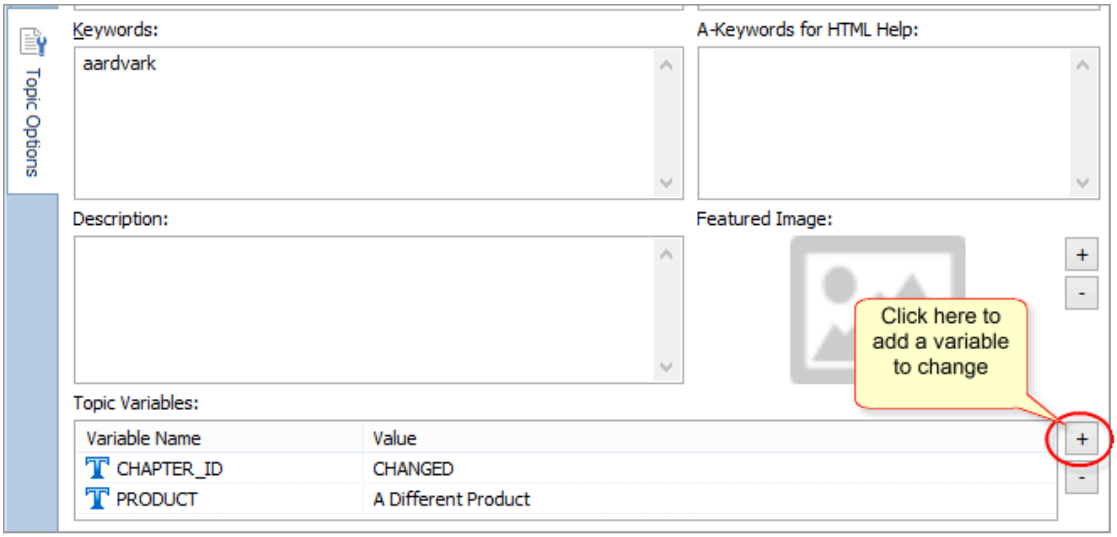
Key Information
HTML variables only insert HTML code in HTML templates and HTML code objects. If you insert an HTML variable in the body of your topic only the text portion of the variable value will be used.

How to redefine variable in individual topics

Only redefine user-defined variables with this method. Although redefining global variables can sometimes work, this is not guaranteed and it should generally be avoided. Instead of redefining a global variable, define a user variable for your chosen purpose and insert the global variable as the original definition of the user variable. Then you can redefine the user variable when necessary.

1. Define an HTML or plain-text variable.
2. Insert the variable in a topic, an HTML template or an HTML code object.
3. Select a topic in the Project Explorer, select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window and redefine the variable in the Topic Variables table – just click on the **+** button, select the variable you want to redefine and then enter a new value for it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Tip: You can insert multiple variables at the same time by selecting them with SHIFT+Click and CTRL+Click in the list displayed when you click on the **+** button.

The value you enter for the variable in the Topic Options tab will only be used in the current topic.

Redefining variables in publishing tasks

When you publish your project with publishing tasks you can also redefine any user-defined variables in your project for individual tasks. See Automating Publishing Jobs 809 for full details on working with tasks. See Redefining variables 960 for full details on the various methods available for redefining variables.

1. Define a publish task with one or more publishing actions for the output format(s) and destination(s) you want to create.
2. Double-click on the publishing action in the task list to edit it and select the Custom Variables tab.
3. Edit the values of the variables you want to change.

Per-topic redefinitions have priority over publishing redefinitions!
Variables redefined in publishing tasks will not change variables that you have already redefined in individual topics. Since the per-topic redefinition is always evaluated last, it always has priority.

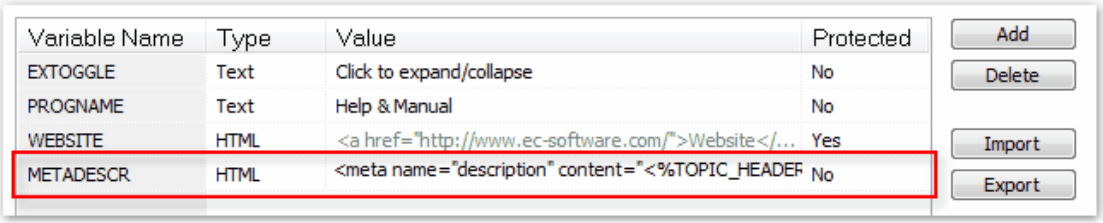
How to do per-topic search engine optimization

All your topic keywords are automatically included in your topic page head section in a `<meta>` keywords tag. However you may want to add additional meta information your-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

self to fine-tune your site's search engine performance. You can do this with editable HTML variables. This simple example shows you how to do this.

1. Define an HTML variable and enter the HTML code for your meta tag as the variable's value, for example:
   ```
   <meta name="description" content="<%TOPIC_HEADER_TEXT%>" />
   ```



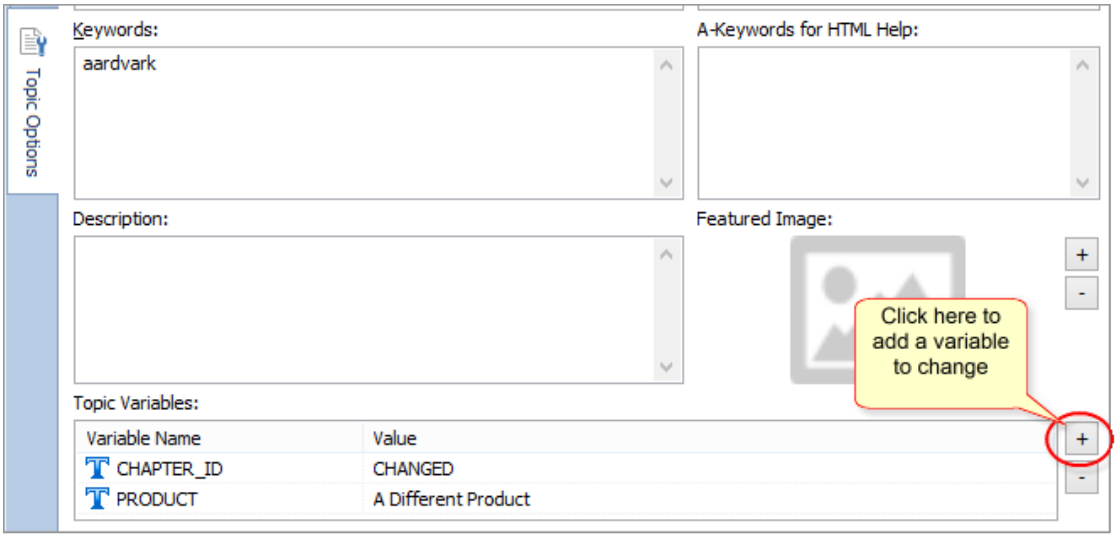
   Using the <%TOPIC_HEADER_TEXT%> variable as the default value for the *content* attribute means that you won't have to edit the description for every single topic, just for the topics where you want to include additional information in the description.

2. Insert the variable in the <head> section of your HTML topic page template in the position where you want to insert the meta tag (see Using HTML Templates 1026 for details). Let's assume you have called the variable <%METADSCR%>:
   ```
   <head>
   <title><%TOPIC_TITLE%></title>
   <meta name="generator" content="Help &amp; Manual" />
   <%METADSCR%>
   ...
   ```

   If you do nothing else every topic will now contain the text from the topic header as the meta description text. Next you want to redefine this text for individual topics.

3. In the Project Explorer select the topic for which you want to redefine the meta tag. Select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window, click on **+**, select the <%METADSCR%> variable from the list and then enter the new code that you want to insert. That's it. (Using words defined as keywords in the description is often helpful.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



This is a very simple example that just demonstrates the basic principle. Variables are so flexible that you can find a number of different ways of doing this: For example, instead of using an HTML variable for the entire line of code you could define <%METADSCR%> as a plain-text variable, enter <%TOPIC_HEADER_TEXT%> as its value and use it like this:

```
<meta name="description" content="<%METADSCR%>" />
```

If you do nothing the topic header text is still inserted as the description. To redefine the content for individual topics you then just need to enter the new description text, not the entire line of code.

How to insert individual script code in topics

When you add your own JavaScript functions to your topics it is generally good practice to add the functions to the <head> section of your HTML page template and call the functions from within the topic with HTML code objects 469 inserted in the topic. If you need different code functions in individual topics you can achieve this with editable variables.

Variables containing the actual code:

This assumes that you are going to insert the entire body of your JavaScript code in the <head> section of your HTML topic page template.

1. Define an HTML variable and paste your entire JavaScript code block in as the variable value, including the opening and closing <script> tags if appropriate.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can insert as much code as you like but it cannot include line breaks so you must use semicolons to terminate all statements and then remove all line breaks in your editor with search and replace before copying and pasting.

2. Insert the variable in the appropriate position in your HTML topic page template (see Using HTML Templates 1026 for details). For example, suppose you want to add a block of code with a variable called <%JS_USERPOLL%>:

```
<meta http-equiv="Content-Style-Type" content="text/css" />
<link type="text/css" href="<%STYLESHEET%>" rel="stylesheet" />
<%JS_USERPOLL%>
</head>
```

3. To redefine the code for an individual topic select the topic in the Project Explorer and select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. Then click on **+**, select the <%JS_USERPOLL%> variable from the list and paste in the new code that you want to insert as the new variable value. That's it.

Of course, you could also use variables within your JavaScript code to replace just part of the code on a per-topic basis.

Variables containing a reference to a .js file:

This assumes your code is contained in an external **.js** file that you are referencing in your HTML topic page template.

1. Save the different versions of your JavaScript code in text files with the extension **.js** and add all the files to your Baggage Files 1119 to ensure that they will be exported correctly when you publish your project.
2. Define a plain-text variable and enter the name of the main JavaScript file (the one that will be used in most topics) as the variable value.
3. Add the include reference to your HTML topic page template (see Using HTML Templates 1026 for details) and use the variable instead of the name of the JavaScript file . For example, suppose the variable is called <%JS_FUNCS%>:

```
<meta http-equiv="Content-Style-Type" content="text/css" />
<link type="text/css" href="<%STYLESHEET%>" rel="stylesheet" />
<script type="text/javascript" src="<%JS_FUNCS%>"></script>
</head>
```

4. To select a different JavaScript file for an individual topic select the topic in the Project Explorer and select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. Then click on **+**, select the <%JS_FUNCS%> variable from the list and enter the name of the alternative JavaScript file as the new variable value. That's it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Redefining the <title> tag and template variables

The <title> tag:

You can redefine the current topic's `<title>` tag directly in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window, in the *<TITLE> Tag:* field. The contents of this field are normally the same as the topic caption from the Table of Contents but if you edit it here the edited version will be inserted in the `<title>` tag in your HTML-based output, and this too can be useful for search engine optimization.

Other redefinable template variables:

Note that you can also redefine a number of HTML template variables on a per-topic basis with the Topic Variables section in . For example you can also redefine `<%TOPIC_TITLE%>` (normally returns the TOC caption of the topic), `<%TOPIC_TITLE_PATH%>` (the path to the current topic in the TOC of the project) and `<%TOPIC_HEADER_TEXT%>` (the text from the header box above the editor).

See HTML template variables 1569 in the Reference section for more details of the specialized HTML template variables available.

How to redefine all your variables

You can also take redefining variables a step further: You can redefine all the variables in your entire project when you publish with a project skin or variable definition file.

For full details on this see Transforming your output with skins 638 and Skins & redefining variables 834. The skins method can be used from the Publish dialog and it can also apply a completely different layout and style to your entire project. The variable definition file method can only be used from the command line but it can also be used to redefine global variables, which is not possible with the skin method.

See also:

Redefining variables 960
Transforming your output with skins 638
Skins & redefining variables 834
HTML template variables 1569 (reference)

7.3.14 Variables in PDF templates

You can use all predefined global variables and your user-defined variables in text objects in your PDF templates.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

In addition to this there are large number of special predefined variables for use in PDF templates only. These are described in the help of the Print Manual Designer program used to edit the PDF templates that control the formatting of your PDF output and printed manuals.

To start this program look in the **Project** > **Tools** tab and then select the **Manual Designer** option under the **Templates & Skins** heading. If you have already used a print manual template with the current project you will be able to open it directly in Manual Designer from this menu.

How to use text variables in PDF print manual templates

Just type the variable into the text of the text object. Always type the variables exactly as listed, complete with the opening <% tag and the closing %> tag – for example <%TITLE%> or <%VERSION%>.

- For more details see the help included with the Print Manual Designer program.
- HTML variables will work without modification in PDF documents but they will only insert the plain-text portion of the variable value – if there is no plain-text portion nothing will be inserted.

See also:

PDF and print manual templates 1019
PDF and Printed Manuals 785

7.4 Conditions and Customized Output

There are many situations where you may want to generate different output versions of your projects with different content. You might need different versions of your documentation for light and professional versions of a program, or specific products might have different names in different versions.

It is also often necessary to change your content to adapt it to the output format. For example, some texts that are suitable in the electronic HTML Help version of the help might not make sense or might need to be expressed or formatted differently in the PDF print version.

See also:

Using Variables 917
Variables and Conditional Output 1558
Conditional output in HTML templates 1052

7.4.1 How conditional output works

Help+Manual projects are made up of chapters, topics and the content of topics. You can use conditional output to include or exclude content on all these levels: Entire chapters, topics or specific content within topics. You do this by "tagging" chapters, topics and content with conditions known as "include conditions" or "build conditions". Then when you publish your pro-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ject you select or deselect the matching tags in the Publish dialog 1310 to include or exclude the tagged content.

This is a two-step process, which is outlined below. For full details please study the rest of this chapter.

Step 1: Tag your content with include conditions

This step identifies the content you want to include or exclude when you publish. You can tag the content with format conditions (PDF, CHM, HTML etc.) or user-defined conditions (for example DEMOBUILD, BILLS_VERSION, FUTURE_FUNCTIONS).

Tagging content in topics

This is done with the IF Conditional Text Tool in **Write** > **Insert Object.** This tool places "conditional text" tags at the beginning and end of the content you want to include or exclude, using an IF ... END syntax. For example `IF_PDF ..... END`, or `IF_PDF,HTML,CHM ... END` and so on

Tagging topics and chapters

This is done with the *Change* > *Include in Builds* settings in **Project** > **Manage Topics.** These settings can also be accessed by right-clicking on topics in the Table of Contents or Topic Files sections of the Project Explorer.

Note that if you tag a chapter with build conditions the tags will not be set for all the chapter's sub-topics. You need to multi-select all the topics for which you want to apply conditions.

Step 2: Select the include options when you publish

When you publish your project you then select or deselect the available include options in the Publish dialog. Format conditions are selected automatically, so if you are publishing to PDF all content tagged with IF_PDF will be included in your output.

User-defined conditions must be selected manually: For example, to include all content identified with DEMOBUILD you need to select the DEMOBUILD option in the Publish dialog, and to exclude it from your output you deselect it.

7.4.2 Multiple TOCs

Help+Manual's conditional output features can create a wide range of variants of your project for different purposes. However, it is difficult to create versions with TOCs that have very different structures using only conditional output. The multiple TOC feature solves this problem. It allows you to create completely different TOCs with a different structure and different

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

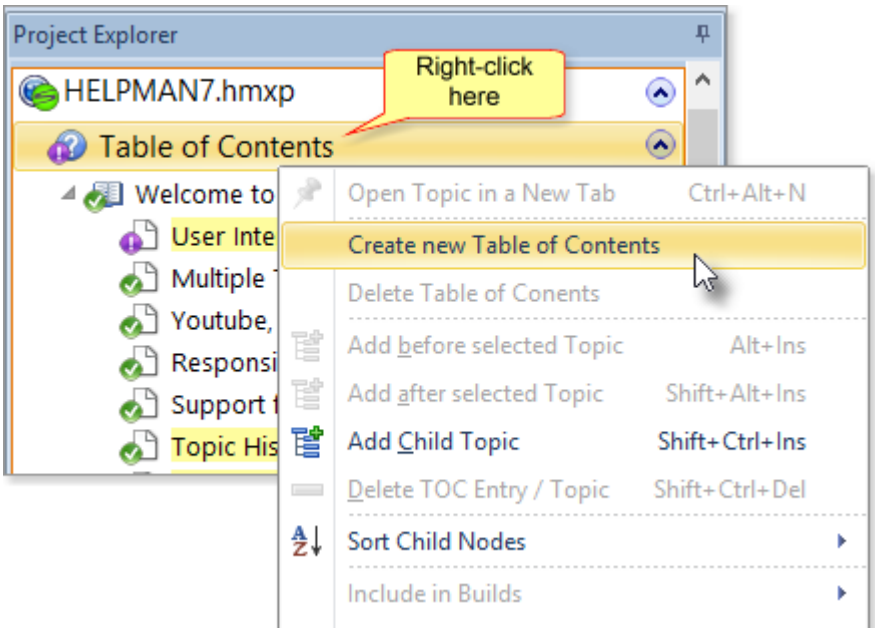
entries for different purposes.

The entries in your additional TOCs can point to the same topic files as in your main TOC. Or they can have their own topic files that only exist in that TOC. When you publish you choose which TOC you want to use, and only the topics referenced by that TOC are exported – in some cases along with topic files linked to in those topics, to prevent dead links.

See Publishing projects with multiple TOCs 629 for details on selecting specific TOCs when you are publishing your projects. Also see the Multiple TOCs tutorial project that you can access directly in the Welcome page at the top of the Project Explorer on the left.

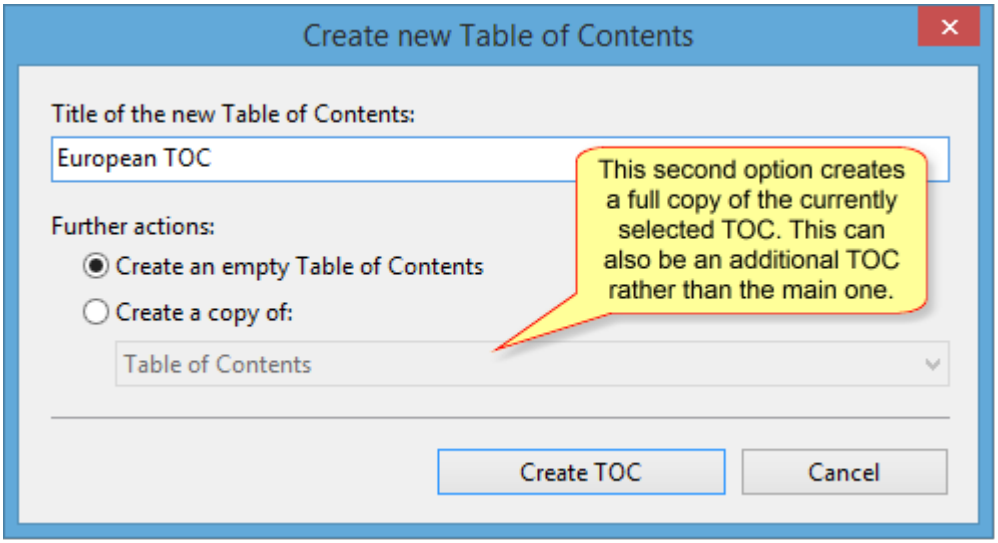
How to create an additional TOC

1. Right-click on the **Table of Contents** entry at the top of the Project Explorer on the left and select *Create new Table of Contents* in the context menu.

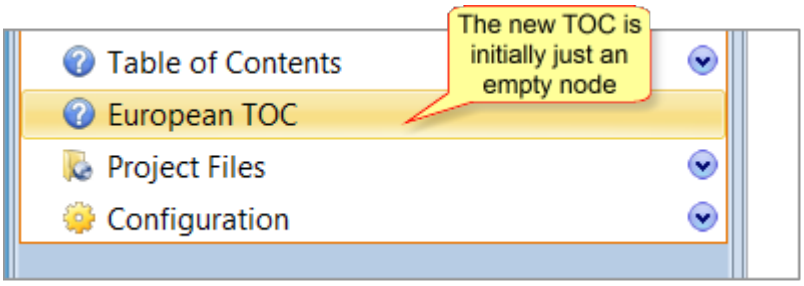


2. This opens the New TOC dialog:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Enter a descriptive title for the new TOC and choose whether you want it to be empty or a copy of the current TOC. If this is your first additional TOC you probably want it to be empty rather than a full copy of the entire TOC. Later you may want to make copies of existing additional TOCs that you then edit.



4. Then create new entries in the new TOC in any of these ways:
   - Drag items from another TOC into the new one (onto the empty node if it doesn't yet have any entries). This does not create new topics. It only creates new references to existing topics.
   - Copy and paste from another TOC.
   - Create new entries with the **Add Topic** tool in the **Project** tab. If you use the *TOC Link* option it creates new entries for existing topics. If you use the *New Topic* option you will create completely new topics.

IMPORTANT: The "main" TOC always includes all topics!

To maintain compatibility with existing projects, the "original" or "main" TOC in your project will always include all topics when you publish with it. If you remove TOC entries from it without explicitly excluding the topic files that no longer have TOC entries (by using build options 989), those files will still all be included in the background in HTML output

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

when you publish with the main TOC. They can then be found by search and the keyword index.

This only applies to CHM, WebHelp, eWriter and Visual Studio Help output. It doesn't apply to PDF, DOCX and eBooks, because there only topics that have TOC entries can ever be included.

Only secondary TOCs automatically exclude the topics for which they do not have TOC entries!

If you want to create an alternative TOC with a reduced or different set of topics, always do this with a secondary TOC, not with your "main" or "original" TOC (the top one). Again: The main TOC is always complete. If there are topic files without TOC entries in the project they will be included in the background when you choose the main TOC unless they have explicit build options that exclude them.

Use build options to to include hidden topics with secondary TOCs

By the same token, topic files without TOC entries will not be included automatically in the background with secondary TOCs. Then, a topic file without an entry in the current TOC will still be excluded even if it is set to "all builds". It will only be included if you explicitly set a specific build option on it and activate that in the include options for the publishing operation.

Popups in secondary TOCs

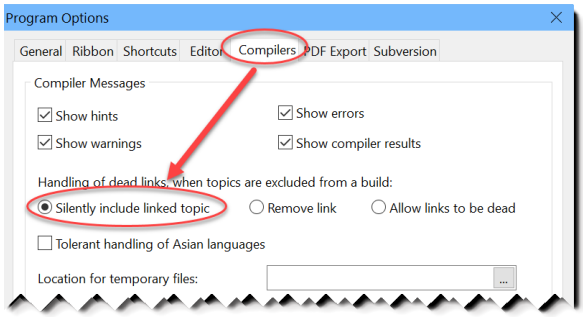
When you use popup topics in secondary TOCs the popup topic files your links refer to will not be included automatically as they are when you use the primary TOC. The *All Builds* include option assigned to all topics by default only works automatically in the primary TOC.

When you are using multiple TOCs in your project and publishing a secondary TOC, any popup topics you link to must be included explicitly. You can do this in two different ways:

Option 1: Dead links handling options

Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and set the dead links handling option to *Silently include linked topic*. This is the simplest solution but it will also automatically include any excluded topic files that you may have referenced with regular topic links. So you should always check your compiler report for topics like these that you may have not wanted to include. You can then handle the links with conditional text 984 to exclude them automatically.

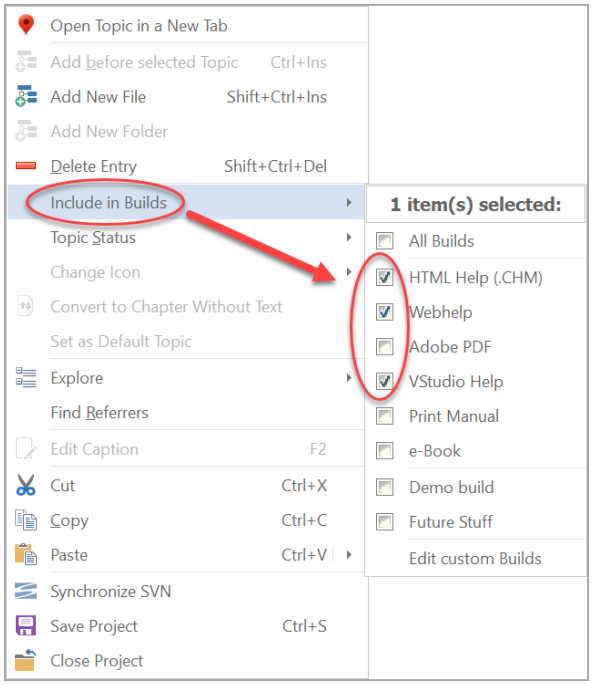
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Option 2: Set the build options of your popup topic files

Alternatively you can set the build options of your popup topic files to the output formats that support popups, which are WebHelp, CHM, eWriter, and Visual Studio Help (if you are using that). The eWriter format will be included automatically if you set WebHelp, so generally you will only need to set CHM and WebHelp.

1. Right-click on the popup topic file in Project Files > Topic Files and select Include in Builds in the context menu.
2. Set the include options to WebHelp, CHM and (if necessary) also VSHelp.
3. Repeat for all your poup topic files.



Managing links to excluded topics in additional TOCs

When you create a TOC that is a subset of the main TOC, your topics will often contain

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

links to topics that are not in the new TOC. You need to take steps to deal with these links to ensure that they are not dead and so that they do not accidentally provide access to content you don't want to include in the version with this TOC.

Failsafe: Global options for links to excluded topics

You can set a global option for how links to excluded topics are handled in **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers**. There are three choices:

- **Silently include linked topic**
  In HTML-based output formats this exports the topic file without a TOC entry so that the link displays the topic. In PDF and DOCX this has no effect, because only topics that are in the TOC can be in the document.
- **Remove link**
  This turns the link into plain text. The referenced topic is not exported.
- **Allow links to be dead**
  This leaves the links unchanged in the topics but does not export the linked topic files. So either nothing happens or an error message (404) is displayed when the user clicks on the link. This can be good "protection" if you are managing the links with conditional output, to make sure that the excluded topics are never seen.

Use conditional output to replace the links with alternative text

This is basically the same approach you would use for handling the same problem in normal conditional output scenarios where topics are excluded. See this topic 984 for full instructions.

Create conditional output build options for your additional TOCs and apply them to the links to the external topics so with the Conditional Text tool. You can use this method to either remove the references entirely, or replace them with alternative text or alternative links in the version with the additional TOC.

For example, suppose you have a TOC for a specific client. You could create a conditional build option called **CLIENT_B** and then tag the link with it like this:

This inserts the first link if you are not exporting the **CLIENT_B** version and the second link if you are.

Setting the default topic with multiple TOCs

If you are using multiple TOCs in your project you can set a separate default topic for each

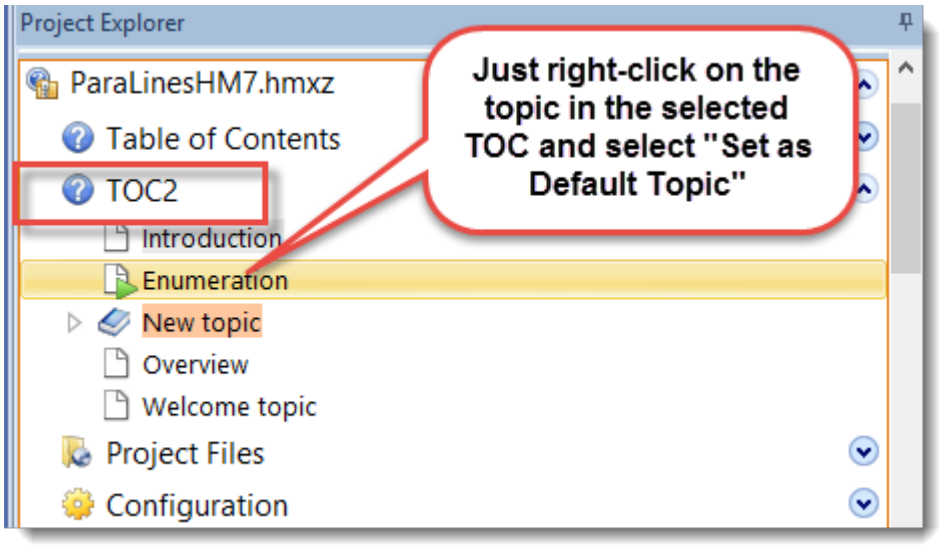
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

TOC. Then you will automatically get the correct default topic for that TOC when you use it.

See Setting the default topic for full details on setting and managing the default topic for your project.

Important: The default for secondary TOCs must be set in the TOC
Default topics for secondary TOCs must be set directly in the TOC. The setting in **Configuration > Common Properties > Language Options** is only for the main TOC.

Each TOC you define can have its own default topic. Just right-click on the topic you want to use as the default in the TOC and select "Set as Default Topic" in the context menu.

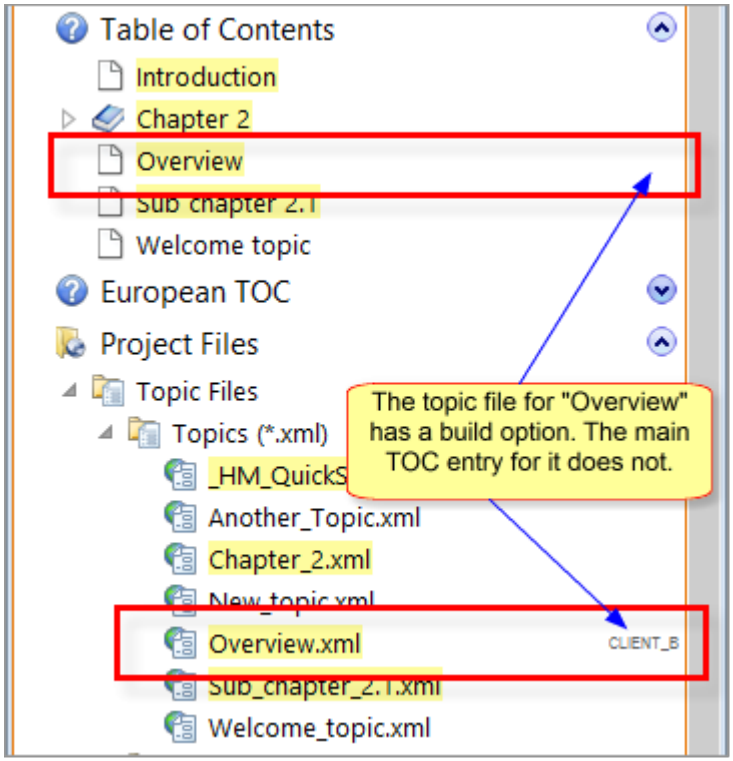


More granular control of output with include options on topic files

In addition to the conditional output tagging inside topics described above, it is also possible to apply include options to the topic files referenced by the links but not to the TOC entries in the main TOC pointing to them. This is possible because TOC entries and topic files are separate items and each can have their own build options.

Consider this example:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



This would allow you to include the *Overview* topic file with your additional TOC by activating the build option **CLIENT_B** in your publishing settings, even if it does not have a TOC entry.

You can do this if you activate the global option "*Allow links to be dead*" to handle the majority of links, but have a few links for which you do want to include the linked topics, for example.

What happens to topics like this in Word and PDF output?

When you then publish the normal TOC that includes the *Overview* entry to PDF or Word you have a logical discrepancy: The TOC entry says to include it, but the topic file include option says to exclude it. That is OK, because in those formats only topics with TOC entries are included and the TOC entry setting then has priority. The topic will thus be included normally.

Topics without TOC entries in additional TOCs

When you use topics without TOC entries 179 in combination with additional TOCs you may need to take additional action to ensure that the topic file is included in your output. An additional TOC acts like an include option for every topic it includes, and by default all other topics can be excluded. Because of this, topic files that are only accessed by hyper-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

links and not by TOC entries may get excluded if you are not careful.

Method 1: Use the compiler option to force inclusion

This is the simplest solution. It tells Help+Manual to automatically include any topic file that is referenced with a link in your project. Just go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and set the *Handling of dead links option* to *Silently include linked topic*. This will include all topic files referenced with hyperlinks, even if they don't have TOC entries. The included topic files will be listed in the compiler report.

Side-effect: This will also include topics that were excluded from the TOC with build options, if there are links to those topics that you have overlooked. Check the compiler report!

Method 2: Use a user-defined include option

Alternatively, you can define an include option 988 with a descriptive name like **NONTOC** or something like that and apply it to the topic file 991 in the Topic Files section. Then you just need to activate that option 983 in the Publish screen when you publish. Then all topics tagged with that option will be included in your output.

Creating TOC entries for "invisible" topics in PDFs

PDF is a special case because only topics with TOC entries can be included in PDF documents. If your project contains "invisible" topics that are normally only displayed with hyperlinks from other topics you must add TOC entries for them to be able to include them in the PDF version of your output. This is very simple to do with the knowledge you now have:

1. Create TOC entries for the "invisible" topics: Either drag the topic file into the TOC or create a "new" topic and select the topic ID of the invisible topic with the ... browse button in the Topic ID: field of the new topic dialog. You might want to organize these TOC entries as one or more special chapters in your TOC.
2. Apply build options to the new TOC entries so that they are only included in the PDF version of your output. See See *Including and excluding TOC entries* above for instructions.

How to "filter" the TOC display by build/include options

You can use include options to "filter" the display of your topics in the TOC and Topic Files section of the Project Explorer. This makes it possible for you to see only the topics that

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

will be included in a specific build, so that you can preview the results of specific build options without publishing your project.

1. Apply build options to one or more topics. If you don't do this filtering will not have any effect! See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for details.
2. Select *Explore* > *Filter* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and set the filter options you want to apply. The filter settings are also available from the right-click menu in the Project Explorer (*Explore* > *Filter*).

   This works both in the TOC and in Topic Files. This only filters entire topics, it does not filter conditional text tagged within your topics.

Important Notes:

- The current build settings of topics are shown in the Project Explorer, next to the topic caption in the TOC. Topics and chapters set to *All Builds* (the default) will always be included, of course – you cannot hide them.
- Filtered topics will be either shown in a different color or hidden completely. This depends on your settings for *When filtering the table of contents...* in **View** > **Program Options** > **General**. See Program Options - General 1261 for details on these settings.

See also:

Preventing dead links 984 (Conditional Output)
Publishing projects with multiple TOCs 629 (Publishing)

7.4.3 About include options

Using include options gives you very fine control over what you include and exclude in your published output. You can "tag" chapters, topics and content within your topics with include options.

When you generate your output you then select the corresponding include options in the Publish 1310 options to include or exclude the items tagged with those options from your published output.

Including/excluding topics and content – "Include in Builds" and the Conditional Text tool

You can tag both topics and content within topics with include options. Different methods are used in each case.

- Topics are tagged with *Change* > *Include in Builds* in **Project** > **Manage Topics**.
- Content is tagged with the IF Conditional Text tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Format include options and user-defined include options

There are two different kinds of include options, those based on your publishing format and those defined by the user. The format-based options are used to create different versions on the basis of your output format – for example alternative text for the PDF version. The user-defined options are used to create fundamentally different versions of your project – for example for different versions of your product or for different customer groups.

Format-based include options:

These include options are predefined. They correspond to the output formats supported by Help+Manual. For example, if you tag an item or topic content with the HTML Help option it will only be included when you publish to HTML Help. However, they are not absolutely fixed to the output format: It is quite possible to include content tagged for CHM in another format if you want at publish time. You just have to activate the CHM include option in the **Publish** page.

You can optionally select the include options for other output formats if you also want to include content that is actually tagged for those formats. For example, when you publish to CHM the CHM include option is selected by default. If you also want to include content that you have actually tagged to be included only in WebHelp you can do that by manually activating the WebHelp checkbox as well.

User-defined include options:

These include options are conditions that you define yourself. you can define as many of them as you want. you can tag text and topics with them in exactly the same way as with the format-based options. they are defined in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Custom Builds**.

When you tag content with a user-defined include option it will only be included in your output if you activate the corresponding option in the Publish 1310 options. Otherwise it will be excluded.

Special case: Include options for eWriter Help

eWriter Help is a special case, because internally they are classed as both eBooks and WebHelp. Their content is exactly the same as WebHelp and supports nigh on all the formatting and scripting that WebHelp supports. However, they are – or can be – distributed in the same way as eBooks. Because of this, eWriter is the only output format that has two

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

active include options for including and excluding content: both EBOOK (eBooks) and HTML (WebHelp).

If you look at the Include Options box in the Publish dialog when you publish to eWriter you will see that both the WebHelp and the eBook options are selected. This means that an eWriter Help file will normally include any content tagged for either WebHelp or eBooks.

Including content in eWriter Help only

If you want content to be include only in eWriter Help you need to nest two conditions around it, like this:

IF_HTML IF_EBOOK ... END END

Then it will only be included in eWriter Help and nowhere else.

Include options for topics and chapters

Topics and chapters will be included in eWriter Help if they are tagged with either WebHelp or eBook.

Other conditional output features

In addition to include options you can also control and vary your output with alternative TOCs 970, variables 917, HTML template conditions 1006, and modular projects 1088.

For more background information see the Variables & Conditional Output 1558 chapter in the reference section and the Working with Modular Help Systems 1088 chapter.

Important: Include options use OR logic

It is crucial to understand is that conditions use OR logic. This means that only one condition needs to evaluate true to include or exclude the content it refers to. If multiple conditions are true the corresponding content will also be included but only one condition is needed to enable inclusion.

This means you need to be careful with tagging using multiple conditions. For example, if you tag a topic for both CHM (HTML Help) and TEST_BUILD you will never be able to exclude that topic from your HTML Help output, because the CHM tag will always include it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Topics and chapters:

- By default, all new topics are tagged with the option *ALL Builds*. This means that they will always be included.
- If you tag a topic with a format condition (e.g. CHM) that topic will only be included in that output format.
- If you tag a topic with a format condition (e.g. CHM) and a user-defined condition (e.g. TEST_BUILD) that topic will always be included in the matching output format. In addition to that, it will also be included in any other output formats when you activate the corresponding include option in the Publish 1310 options.
- IFNOT simply reverses the logic – IFNOT CHM includes content in all formats except HTML Help.

Content in topics

- By default all topic content is included in all output unless it is explicitly excluded with conditional text tags.
- Tagging content with a format condition only includes that content in that output format.
- Tagging content with a user-defined condition only includes that content when the matching condition is activated in the Publish 1310 options.
- Here too, IFNOT reverses the logic – IFNOT HTML includes the tagged content in all formats except WebHelp.

7.4.4 Using conditional output

Conditional output works in the same way on all the levels where it is supported: You mark a part of your project (text, graphic, topic, chapter etc.) with a condition, referred to as an "include option" or "build option", and then choose whether you want to apply the condition when you publish your project.

Productivity Tip
You can search and replace conditional text tags. Just select "Conditional Texts" in the "Find where:" field when you search. See Searching 235 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Step 1: Tag topics or content with conditions

Tag a topic or chapter

1. Select the topic or chapter in the TOC in the Project Explorer.
2. Select *Change* > *Include in Builds* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and select the conditions you want to apply. (You can also access these options by right-clicking on a topic in the Project Explorer.)
3. If you are excluding a topic right-click on the topic entry in the TOC and select *Check Referrers* to see whether any other topics link to the topic you want to exclude. If so, you need to use the Conditional Text tool (see below) to exclude any links to the topic and replace them with alternative text when the topic they link to is excluded.

When you tag chapters their sub-topics will not be tagged with the same conditions automatically – you need to use multi-select to tag multiple topics at the same time. See Topic include options 989 for full details.

Tag content in a topic

1. Select the text you want to tag in the editor.
2. Select the Conditional Text tool with **Write** > **Insert Object** > IF and choose the options you want to apply.

See Conditional text include options for full details 994. Also, there are additional features for conditional text in tables. See Conditional text in tables 996 for details.

Step 2: Activate the condition when you publish

Remember that include options use OR logic! The content will be included if one or more of the selected include options applies when you publish.

Publishing to single formats and destinations:

When you publish your project select the include options that you want to apply in the Publish 1310 options. You can choose to apply individual options, combinations of options, all options or no options for every publish run. See Publishing to one format 613 for details.

Include options based on output format are activated automatically when you select that format. For example, when you publish to HTML Help the **HTML Help** include option is activated.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Publishing to multiple formats and destinations:

You can also apply include options to publishing tasks when you are publishing to multiple destinations and output formats. You can define individual include options for each publishing action in your publishing tasks. See Automating Publishing Jobs 809 for details.

How to "filter" the TOC display by build/include options

You can use include options to "filter" the display of your topics in the TOC and Topic Files section of the Project Explorer. This makes it possible for you to see only the topics that will be included in a specific build, so that you can preview the results of specific build options without publishing your project.

1. Apply build options to one or more topics. If you don't do this filtering will not have any effect! See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for details.
2. Select *Explore* > *Filter* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and set the filter options you want to apply. The filter settings are also available from the right-click menu in the Project Explorer (*Explore* > *Filter*).

   This works both in the TOC and in Topic Files. This only filters entire topics, it does not filter conditional text tagged within your topics.

Important Notes:

- The current build settings of topics are shown in the Project Explorer, next to the topic caption in the TOC. Topics and chapters set to *All Builds* (the default) will always be included, of course – you cannot hide them.
- Filtered topics will be either shown in a different color or hidden completely. This depends on your settings for *When filtering the table of contents...* in **View** > **Program Options** > **General**. See Program Options - General 1261 for details on these settings.

See also:

Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)
Publishing Your Projects 613
Managing topics in the Explorer 377

7.4.5 Preventing dead links

Excluding topics from your output can create dead hyperlinks. If there are links to the excluded topics in other topics, those links will not have any targets and will produce errors or do nothing when the user clicks on them. You need to plan your project to prevent this from happening.

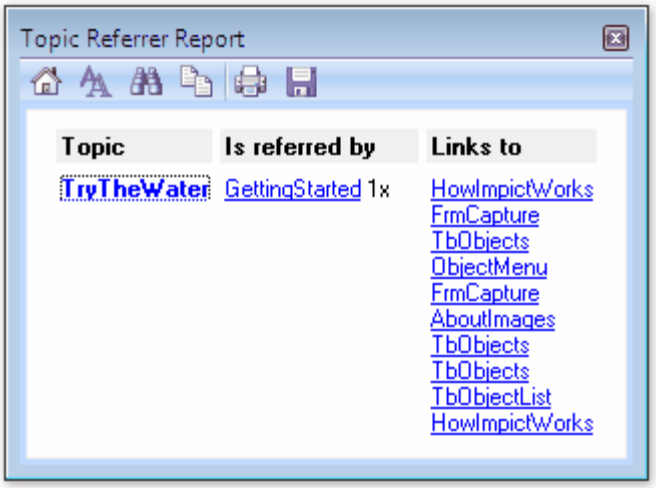
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual has several functions that can help you to prevent and eliminate dead hyperlinks caused by excluding topics. If you use them correctly you can easily locate all potential dead links and automatically replace them with alternative text or links.

How to use Find Referrers to locate potential dead links

Whenever you set an include option to exclude a topic you should always use the *Find Referrers* function to check for any links to the excluded topic in other topics.

1. Select the topic you plan to exclude in the Project Explorer. You can select either a TOC item or a topic file.
2. Right-click on the topic name in the Project Explorer and select *Find Referrers* in the context menu. Alternatively you can also select *Find* > *Find Referrers* in **Project > Manage Topics.**
3. This displays the topic referrer report. Double-click on its title bar to display it in an external window, this makes it easier to use (double-clicking on the title bar again redocks it to the Help+Manual window):



Links to the topic in other topics are listed in the *Is referred by* column. The *Links to* column only shows topics that the current topic links to, which you don't need to worry about here.

4. Click on the links in the *Is referred by* column to display the topics so that you can use conditional text to eliminate dead links (see below). When you are finished you can return to the current topic by clicking on its link in the *Topic* column.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to use Conditional Text to replace dead links

When you exclude topics from your published output you do this with include options. You can prevent dead links to the topic by using the exactly the same include options to also exclude the hyperlinks that would be dead. This is then automatic. The hyperlinks will always be excluded whenever the topic they link to is excluded, because they are both controlled by the same include options.

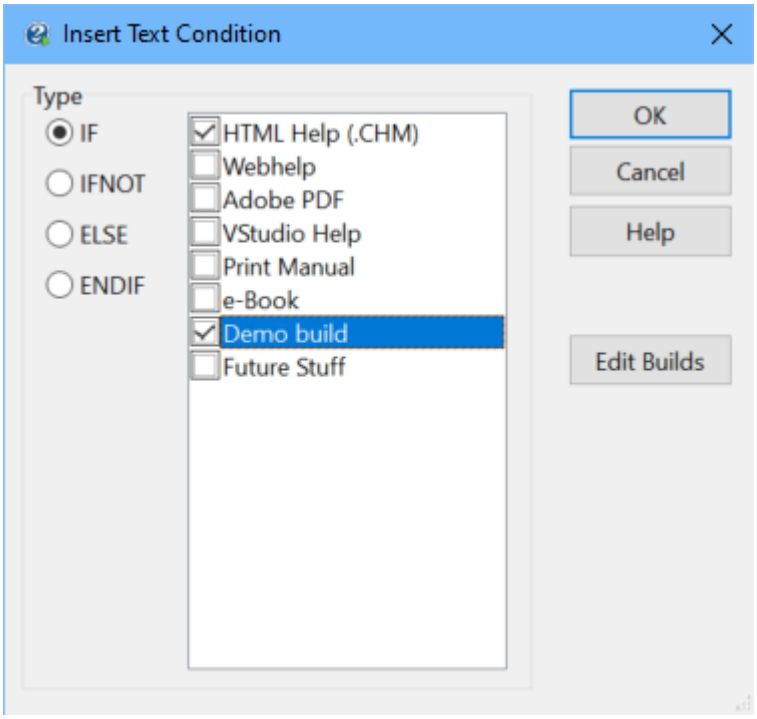
You can also use additional include options to include alternative text or even alternative links whenever the topic is excluded.

1. Use *Find Referrers* (see above) to locate all topics containing links to the topic you want to exclude.
2. Open the topic containing the link that you want to exclude in the editor and locate the link.

   You now need to decide what needs to be excluded and replaced. We will assume that you want to exclude the entire sentence containing the link and replace it with an alternative sentence.

Excluding the link:

3. Select the entire sentence containing the link and select the Conditional Text Tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

4. Now select exactly the same include options that you are using to exclude the topic the link points to and click on OK.

   In the example above we have selected *WebHelp* and *Adobe PDF*. This means that the link will only be included when you publish to WebHelp or PDF, it will be excluded from all other formats. Since the options match those set for the topic the link points to it will be excluded whenever the topic is excluded and included when it is included.

Including alternative text and/or links:

5. If you want, you can now write an alternative sentence with or without a link to a different topic and use conditional text to include the alternative text whenever the original text is excluded.

   The easiest way to do this is with *IFNOT*. In the above example we would also select *WebHelp* and *Adobe PDF,* but in combination with *IFNOT* instead of *IF*. This will ensure that the alternative is always included when the original is excluded, and vice versa.

How to set publishing options to manage dead links

These options can be configured in **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers.** They not a "final" solution. They should only be used as a failsafe to handle any dead links you may have accidentally missed when planning your project.

Option 1: *Silently include linked topic*

This option prevents dead links by exporting your excluded topics when you publish if there are any other topics that contain links to them. When this is done no TOC entry is exported for the topic, so it can only be displayed by clicking on the links to it. Don't use this option if the topics you are excluding contain information you don't want a specific user group to see!

All nominally excluded topics that get included by this option will be listed as "implicitly exported" in the compiler report when you publish your project.

Option 2: *Remove links*

This option simply deactivates dead links to topics excluded from your output. The link caption text is still there but it is normal text, no longer a hyperlink. This is definitely safer than Option 1, because it always ensures that excluded content remains excluded. However, depending on the context the plain text in place of the links may be confusing for your users.

All links turned into plain text in this way are listed in the compiler report.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Option 3: *Allow links to be dead*

This option does nothing at all. The links are left in your output and they point to invalid targets. When the user clicks on them either nothing will happen or an error message will be displayed.

7.4.6 Defining include options

There are two kinds of include options (also known as build conditions): Output format include options and user-defined include options. Output format options are used to include or exclude content in specific output formats (HTML Help, PDF etc). User-defined options are used to create different versions of your project in any output format. In both cases you select or deselect the include options you want to apply when you publish your project.

Both types of include options are displayed in the same lists and are accessed in the same way. For details see the other topics in this chapter.

How to define your own include options

An include option or "custom build" condition is basically just a named tag with which you can identify topics or content in your topics. Once you have tagged your content you can then include or exclude it with the corresponding include options that you can activate and deactivate in the Publish 1310 settings.

1. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Custom Builds**.
2. Use *Add* and *Delete* to add and delete include options. When you define a new include option you must enter a "Build ID". This is the actual include option tag and it cannot be changed later. (Changing it would break existing conditions in your project.)
3. Click in the *Display Text* column to edit the descriptive texts for your include options. These are just informative and do not have any effect on the functioning of the conditions. Keep them short because they must be displayed in selection lists in dialogs, which are generally quite narrow.
4. All the definitions you enter here are automatically displayed in all locations where include options are used.

See also:

Conditions and Customized Output 969
Conditional text include options 994
Topic include options 989

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.4.7 Topic include options

Topic include options are used to include or exclude entire topics or chapters from your output on the basis of one or more conditions. When you apply topic includes to a chapter you can include or exclude all the chapter's sub-topics with a single setting.

Separate TOC entry and topic file include options

Your TOC entries and topic files are actually two separate items: The TOC entries are connected to the topic files by a kind of hyperlink. The TOC entry and the topic files also have separate include options. If you work in the TOC you will normally not need to think about this because the matching include options for the associated topic files will be set automatically.

However, the situation is different if you have multiple TOC entries 371 for the same topic in the TOC. Then you need to think about what happens when you set different include options for TOC entries linked to the same topic file.

Please see Topic entry and topic file include options 1584 for more information, also on setting include options for topic files directly.

How to set topic include options in the TOC

1. Select the topic or chapter you want to include or exclude by clicking on its entry in the Table of Contents (TOC). You can select multiple topics and chapters with *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click*.
2. Select the topic in the TOC, then select *Change* > *Include in Builds* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and select the conditions you want to apply. You can select multiple options.

   You can also access these options by right-clicking on a topic in the Project Explorer.
3. Select *Find* > *Referrers* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** to make sure that there are no links to the topic that will be dead in the output if the topic is excluded.

   If you wish, you can include such topics 1268 in your output automatically to prevent dead links.

- *ALL BUILDS* is the default. Selecting it deselects all other options.
- Assigning include options to a chapter does not automatically assign the selected options to the sub-topics and other chapters it contains. You must use multi select (*Shift+Click* and *Ctrl+Click*) to apply include options to multiple topics and chapters. If you exclude a chapter without excluding its subtopics the TOC entries for the sub-topics

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

will not be included (they have nowhere to go) but the topic files will, and it will be possible for users to find them with Search and in the Index.

- You can't include a topic that has a parent without including its parent as well. If you have inconsistent build options like this an option is displayed in the right-click menu with which you can correct it, by applying the missing options to the parent chapter.
- If you exclude all the sub-topics of a chapter and include the chapter topic the chapter will be converted to a normal topic when you publish.

How include options are applied to sub-topics

Including/excluding a chapter does not include/exclude its sub-topics

Include options you apply to a chapter are not automatically applied to sub-topics. You must use multi select (Shift+Click and Ctrl+Click) to apply include options to multiple topics and chapters. If you exclude a chapter without excluding its subtopics the TOC entries for the sub-topics will not be included (they have nowhere to go) but the topic files will, and it will be possible for users to find them with Search and in the Index.

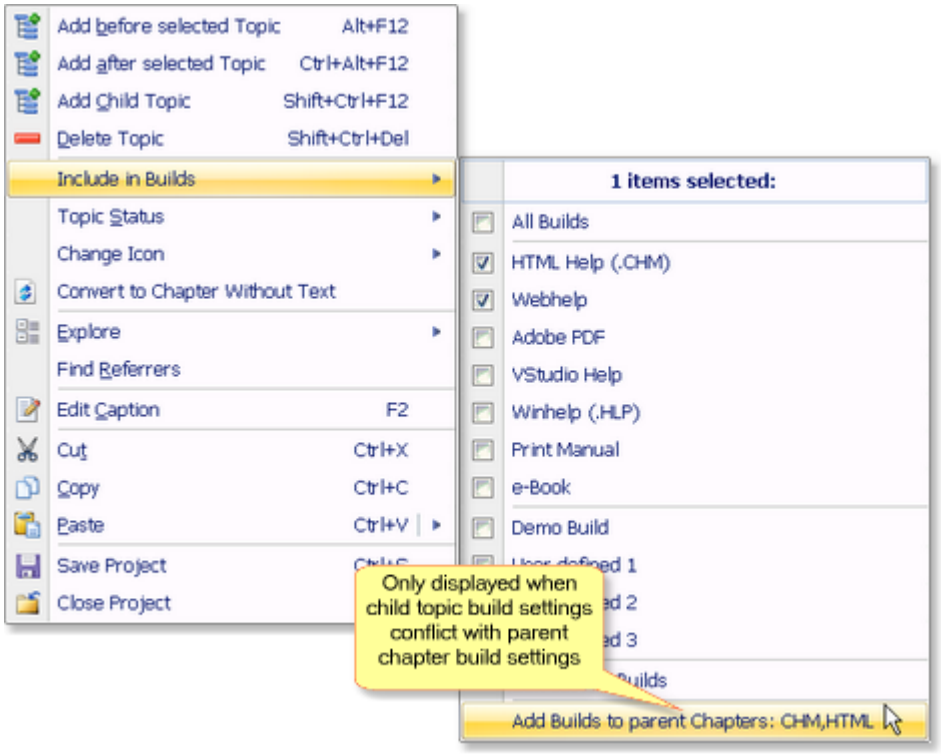
Excluding all a chapter's sub-topics

If you exclude all of a chapter's sub-topics this will not exclude the chapter. If a chapter no longer has any sub-topics it is no longer a chapter – it will be automatically converted to a normal topic when you publish your project.

Excluding parent chapters and including their children:

This creates a conflict situation – since the parent is excluded the children cannot be included. To correct it right-click on the one of the child topics and select the option for adding the missing build options to the parent. This tool is also available in **Project** > **Change** > **Include in Builds** and is only displayed when there is such a conflict.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



How to set topic include options in the Topic Files section

You should generally set and change include options for topics in the TOC, then the options for the associated topic files will be set automatically. However, for topics without TOC entries you must set the include options directly in Topic Files, in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer. Just select the topic file and then set the include options in exactly the same way as for a TOC entry

Important: Setting topic file include options does ***not*** automatically set the corresponding include options for any linked TOC entries. You should always work directly in the TOC for topics that have TOC entries unless you have a specific reason for wanting to set the options for the topic files only.

See Topic entry and topic file include options 1584 for more background information.

Checking for and correcting links from other topics

When you exclude topics from your output it is important to make sure that there are no links to the excluded topic from other topics in your project. If there are, the links will be dead in your output – when the user clicks on them either nothing will happen or an error will be displayed (this depends on the output format).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See Preventing dead links 984 for a more detailed discussion of this subject and strategies for dealing with the problem efficiently.

Checking for dead links

1. Right-click on the TOC entry of the topic you want to exclude and select *Find Referrers* in the context menu.
2. If any links to the current topic are listed click on the links to jump to the topics containing the links so that you can correct them.

Correcting dead links with conditional text

You can use the same condition that you are using to exclude the topic to simultaneously exclude the links to the topic. You just need to enclose the links in conditional text 994 tags using the same condition that you used to exclude the topic.

For example, if you want the topic to only be included in HTML Help output you would tag all the links to the topic with an `IF CHM` conditional text condition to match the HTML Help setting in Builds which include this topic. The procedure is similar for user-defined conditions.

Inserting alternative text to replace the excluded links

In addition to excluding the links you can also use conditional text 994 tags to include alternative text to replace the links that are being excluded. For example, if the topic is only to be included in HTML Help you might use an **`ELSE`** or an **`IFNOT CHM`** condition to include the alternative text in all other formats, or an **`IF PDF`** condition to show the alternative text in the PDF version. Here too, the procedure is similar for user-defined conditions.

Topics without TOC entries in additional TOCs

When you use topics without TOC entries 179 in combination with additional TOCs you may need to take additional action to ensure that the topic file is included in your output. An additional TOC acts like an include option for every topic it includes, and by default all other topics can be excluded. Because of this, topic files that are only accessed by hyperlinks and not by TOC entries may get excluded if you are not careful.

Method 1: Use the compiler option to force inclusion

This is the simplest solution. It tells Help+Manual to automatically include any topic file

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

that is referenced with a link in your project. Just go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and set the *Handling of dead links option* to *Silently include linked topic*. This will include all topic files referenced with hyperlinks, even if they don't have TOC entries. The included topic files will be listed in the compiler report.

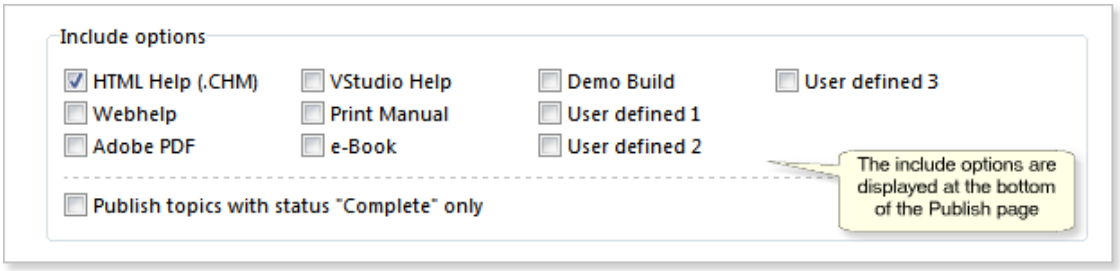
Side-effect: This will also include topics that were excluded from the TOC with build options, if there are links to those topics that you have overlooked. Check the compiler report!

Method 2: Use a user-defined include option

Alternatively, you can define an include option 988 with a descriptive name like **NONTOC** or something like that and apply it to the topic file 991 in the Topic Files section. Then you just need to activate that option 983 in the Publish screen when you publish. Then all topics tagged with that option will be included in your output.

How to apply include options when you publish

1. Select *Publish* in the **Project** tab or the File menu.
2. Select your output format, then check the options in the *Include Options:* setting in the Publish 1310 settings.



3. Select the options you want to apply from the list by checking the boxes next to the names in the **Include Options** section on the right.

   All topics whose include options match the options selected here will be included in your output. Topics whose options don't match will be excluded.

4. Check the other settings in the dialog and click OK to publish.

The include option for the current output format is always selected automatically but it is only relevant for topics not tagged with `ALL BUILDS`. Any other include options must be selected manually.

See also:

Conditions and Customized Output 969
Topic entry and topic file include options 1584

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Preventing dead links 984
Defining include options 988
Topic include options 989
Command Line Options 816

7.4.8 Conditional text include options

Conditional text include options are used to include or exclude specific passages of text and other items within a topic on the basis of one or more conditions.

See Conditional text in tables 996 to learn how to use conditional text in tables, where they have additional capabilities for tagging rows and columns. See Command Line Options 816 for details on how to use these options from the command line and in batch files.

Method 1: Select text first

This is the fastest and easiest way because it automatically inserts the condition tags at the beginning and end of the text and other content you want to tag. If you want to use an **ELSE** tag as well you must still insert it manually, however (see further below).

1. Select the text or items you want to include or exclude in the editor.
2. Select **Write** > **Insert Object** >
3. In the dialog displayed select:

   IF to include the selection if the condition is *True* when you publish (e.g. include text in CHM output)

   IFNOT to include the selection if the condition is *False* when you publish (e.g. include text in all outputs except CHM)
4. Select all the conditions you want to apply by checking the boxes next to their names. You can apply multiple conditions in a single conditional text tag.
5. Click on **OK**. The beginning and end of the conditional text block are marked by orange tags in your text.

Method 2: Setting the IF and ENDIF tags manually

When you use this method you must insert the **IF**, **ENDIF** and **ELSE** (if used) tags separately, selecting the Conditional Text tool once for each individual tag.

1. Click in the position where you want the text condition to begin.
2. Select **Write** > **Insert Object** >
3. In the dialog displayed select:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

IF to include the selection if the condition is *True* when you publish (e.g. include text in CHM output)

IFNOT to include the selection if the condition is *False* when you publish (e.g. include text in all outputs except CHM)

4. Select all the conditions you want to apply by checking the boxes next to their names. You can apply multiple conditions in a single conditional text tag.
5. Click on **OK** to insert the tag.
6. Click in the position where you want the text condition to end.
7. Select the Conditional Text tool again and insert the **ENDIF** condition.

Nesting include tags

You can nest conditional text blocks but do this with caution, it is easy to get confused with complex conditions and to produce unexpected results.

Nested tags are evaluated starting with the outer tags. Evaluation stops as soon as a condition evaluates as false, effectively creating AND logic. For example:

IF_CHM IF_DEMOBUILD content content content content **ENDIF ENDIF**

In the above example the content will only be included if the output format is CHM and **DEMOBUILD** is selected in the Publish settings.

Using the ELSE condition

The **ELSE** condition can be used to provide an alternative text to be displayed if your main condition is not fulfilled. It is inserted as a single tag between a pair of **IF/ENDIF** or **IFNOT/ENDIF** tags. The **ELSE** condition is not associated with any include options. It simply provides an alternative block of content to be included if the previous conditions do are not evaluate as true when you publish.

- Just click in the position in the text where you want to insert the **ELSE** condition, select **Write** > **Insert Object** > , and then select **ELSE**.

If the main condition evaluates **True** when you publish then everything between the **IF** tag and the **ELSE** tag is output. If the main condition evaluates **False** when you publish then everything between the **ELSE** tag and the **ENDIF** tag is exported.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Example:

The following condition will output TEXT 1 if the output format is HTML Help (**CHM**), otherwise it will output TEXT 2:

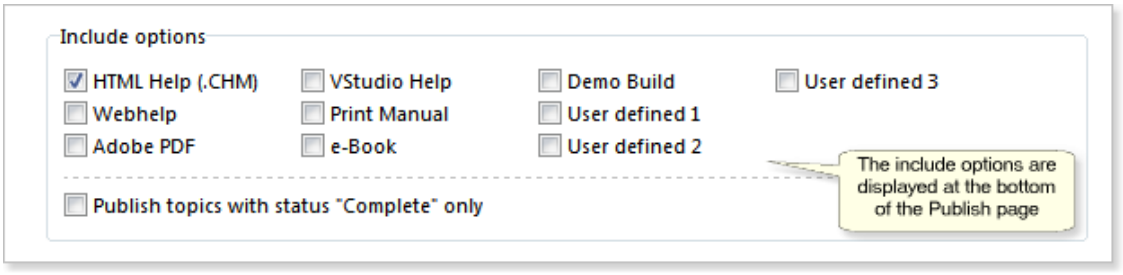
IF_CHM Text 1 **ELSE** Text 2 **ENDIF**

How to edit text conditions

Double-click on the orange text condition tag in your text to display the Text Condition dialog, or right-click on the tag and select *Edit*.

How to apply include options when you publish

1. Select *Publish* in the **Project** tab or the File menu.
2. Select your output format, then activate the include options as required in the Publish 1310 settings.



   All content tagged with conditional text include options matching the Include Options selected here will be included or excluded in your output, depending on whether you used `IF` or `IFNOT`.

3. Check the other settings and then click on *Publish Now* to publish.

See also:

Conditions and Customized Output 969
Defining include options 988
Topic include options 989
Command Line Options 816

7.4.9 Conditional text in tables

In tables, conditional text tags can be used to include and exclude both text in cells and complete rows or columns in the table. It is important to understand how this works before you start using conditional tags in tables, otherwise you can get unexpected results.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Conditional text inside a single cell

Normal text inside a cell:

If the **IF** and **END** tags are both inside the same cell, conditional text in a cell works exactly the same as in normal text. It simply includes or excludes the tagged content according to the conditions.

Column Heading 1¶	Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
IF PDF This text will be included in PDF and excluded in all other formats. ELSE This text will be included in all formats that are not PDF. END¶	In hac habitasse platea dictumst. Cras posuere, eros vehicula convallis auctor, neque diam bibendum urna, et blandit elit arcu a lacus. Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metus elementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros. Pellentesque blandit leo in quam.¶	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum. Cras dignissim, mi eget luctus feugiat, lacus lacus convallis nisi, ultricies tempus velit nisl id risus. ¶

Even if the entire contents of the cell are deleted, nothing happens to the column or row containing the cell if there are also other cells with content in the column or row. (You cannot delete a single cell leaving just an empty space in the table.)

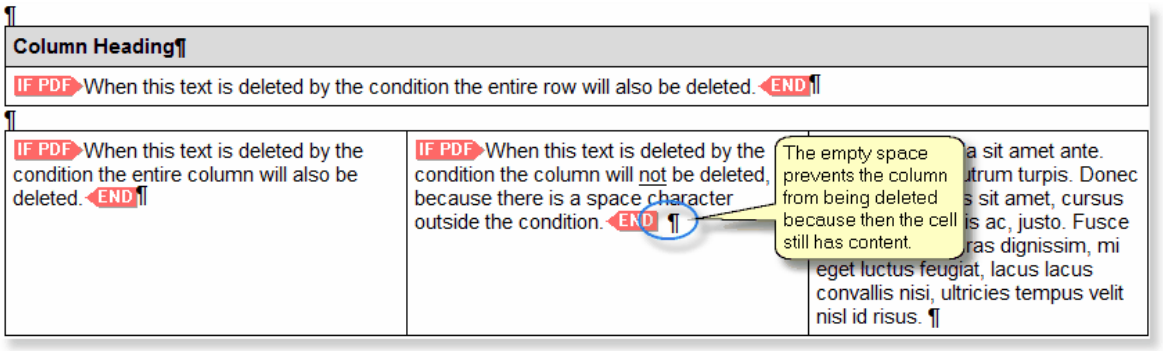
When a condition completely deletes the contents of a cell:

The only exception to this behavior is when conditional tags completely delete the contents of a cell and the cell is the only cell in the current row or column. If that happens, then the row or column will also be deleted. If you want to prevent this and leave an empty cell, make sure that at least one space character remains in the cell.

In the first example below, row 2 of the table will be completely removed from the table unless at least one space (or any other character) is left inside the cell containing the conditional tags.

In the second example, column 1 will be deleted because all the text in the only cell in the column is deleted. Column 2 will not be deleted, because one character is left over, and so the cell still has content.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



The key is content: If any content is left in a cell then its row or column cannot be deleted, because the content "protects" the cell, row and column from deletion.

Applying conditions to the content of multiple cells:

If you want to include/exclude the content of multiple cells you must include the **IF** and **END** conditions inside every cell! If a condition starts in one cell and ends in another cell, then the entire row or column will be deleted. This happens because rows and columns can be deleted using only an **IF** tag, without a closing **END** tag (see further below for details).

Column Heading 1¶	Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
IF PDF If you want to include/exclude the content of multiple cells you must include the **IF** and **END** conditions inside every cell! END¶	IF PDF If you want to include/exclude the content of multiple cells you must include the **IF** and **END** conditions inside every cell! END¶	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. ¶
IF PDF If a condition starts in one cell and ends in another cell, then the whole row or column will be deleted.¶	In this example, the entire third row of the this table will be deleted, because there is no **END** tag in the first cell. END¶	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶

Applying conditions to entire rows and columns

To include or exclude an entire row or column you put the **IF** condition right at the beginning of the first cell in the row or column and the **END** condition at the end of the last cell in the row or column:

Column Heading 1¶	IF PDF Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
IF PDF To exclude an entire row put the IF condition at the beginning of the first cell and the END condition at the end of the last cell in the row.¶	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. ¶	**In this example the first row below the heading will be only be included in PDF.** END¶
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	**In this example, the second column will only be included in PDF.** END¶	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Order of processing and intersecting tags:

When Help+Manual processes your tags, it processes in order from left to right and top to bottom. You need to consider this sometimes when you are excluding both rows and columns with tag conditions that intersect with one another:

Removing intersecting first row and second column:

IF PDF Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3 END
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.	IF PDF **The *IF* tag needs to be in the second row here, because the first row is gone when the column is processed.**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus. END	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.

Removing intersecting first column and second row:

IF PDF Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.	IF PDF **The *IF* tag needs to be in the second column here, because the first column is gone when the row is processed.**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros. END
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum. END	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.

Applying conditions to multiple rows and columns

If you want to apply conditions to multiple rows and columns you must include separate conditions for every row or column. You cannot start a condition in one row and end it in another!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Column Heading 1¶	Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
IF PDF Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.¶	**In this example, rows 2 and 3 will both be excluded in formats that are not PDF.¶**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros. END¶
IF PDF Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.¶	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum. END¶

Column Heading 1¶	Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
IF PDF Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.¶	**In this example, only row 2 will be excluded from formats that are not PDF.¶**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.¶
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.¶	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum. END¶

Simplified syntax - leaving out the END tag

When you are tagging rows and columns the **END** tag at the end of the row or column is actually optional. As long as the tags are positioned right at the beginning of the first cell in the row or column, and there is no other END tag anywhere else in the row or column, they will be interpreted as tagging the entire row or column.

For example, these tags will remove row 2 and column 2 in all outputs except PDF:

Column Heading 1¶	IF PDF Column Heading 2¶	Column Heading 3¶
IF PDF Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.¶	**In this example, row 2 and column 2 will both be excluded in non-PDF formats. The END tags are not needed.¶**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.¶
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶	**Even so, it is good practice to put the END tags in as a reminder.¶**	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.¶

Avoid "orphaned" tags within rows and columns!

You should only use these unterminated tags in the first cell of a row or column (or the cell that becomes the first cell because another row or column has been removed). If you are tagging content in cells inside a row or column the **IF** tag should always be followed by a matching **END** tag inside the same cell. Failing to do so can have unexpected consequences.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Columns and rows with merged cells

How columns and cells with merged cells are handled depends on which row or column the merged cell "belongs" to:

- In rows the merged cell belongs to the first column that intersects the cell.
- In columns merged cell belongs to the first row that intersects the cell.

Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.	**In this example, the contents of this combined cell "belong" to column 2. It will be deleted if column 2 is removed, but not if column 3 is removed.**	
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.

Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.
In this example, this combined cell in the first column "belongs" to row 2. Excluding row 2 will remove all the text in the yellow cells in this row, leaving an empty cell in the remaining row.	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.
	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.

Entire tables

If you want to include or exclude an entire table, always put the **IF** condition before the table and the **END** condition after the table. Excluding all the rows and/or columns in a table will not exclude the table, it will only result in an empty table.

IF PDF

Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3
Put the IF and END tags before and after the table to include or exclude an entire table.	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.

END

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Insoluble problems

There is one situation where you cannot exclude a row or a column with conditional text: This happens when merged cells prevent the first cell of a row or column from being in the first column or first row of the table. There is no way around this – it is just not possible to include/exclude these "partial rows/columns" with conditional text.

It is not possible to include/exclude the 2-column row 4 in this table:

Column Heading 1	Column Heading 2	Column Heading 3
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet.	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.
	IF PDF This row begins in column 2 as a result of the merged cells in column 1.	**Because of this, it is not possible to exclude/include it with conditional tags. END**

For the same reason, it is not possible to include/exclude the 3-row column 2 in this table:

Column Heading 1		Column Heading 3
Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo.	**IF PDF This column begins in row 2 as a result of the merged cells in row 1.**	Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh. Quisque laoreet diam quis eros.
Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.	**Because of this, it is not possible to exclude/include this column with conditional tags.**	Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet, cursus bibendum, sagittis ac, justo. Fusce condimentum.
Ut viverra, libero ac tristique vulputate, purus metuselementum est, vitae varius risus ligula eu nibh.	Nunc ut nisl. Nulla sit amet ante. Nullam tempor rutrum turpis. Donec eros velit, ultrices sit amet END	Ut metus magna, suscipit eget, rhoncus eu, imperdiet eget, risus. Sed ac tellus quis nisl ultrices rhoncus.

See also:

Conditional text include options 994

7.4.10 Modular projects include options

You can "merge" additional Help+Manual projects ("modules") into your current project by inserting them in your Table of Contents, in the same way as inserting a new topic. This also makes it possible to use conditional output include options on entire modules in the same way as on individual topics.

Modules are inserted in the TOC in the same way as topics, so you can apply include options to entire modules in the same way as to topics. A module include option can include or exclude an entire project with its entire directory tree, all its chapters, sub-chapters and topics

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

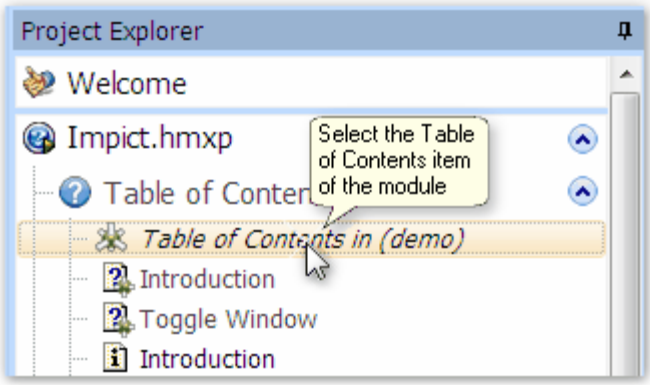
and all its invisible topics as well. If the module also has child modules a single module include option will include or exclude the module with all its children.

Modules can also have their own include options in all the chapters and topics in the module. These will also be evaluated and applied when you publish the entire modular project.

See Working with Modular Help Systems 1088 for details on creating and using modular projects.

How to set include options for modules

In a project containing child modules select the child module you want to include or exclude by clicking on its *Table of Contents* entry in the TOC of the master project.



Including or excluding entire modules:

1. Select *Change* > *Include in Builds* the **Project** > **Manage Topics**.
2. Select all the options you want to apply by clicking in the boxes next to the options' names. You can select multiple options.

Including or excluding module topics and chapters:

Just select the chapters inside the module and apply include options as you would for normal topics and chapters. You can also use conditional text 994 include options for content inside the chapters in the normal way. (Editing for child projects 1093 needs to be activated for this to be possible.)

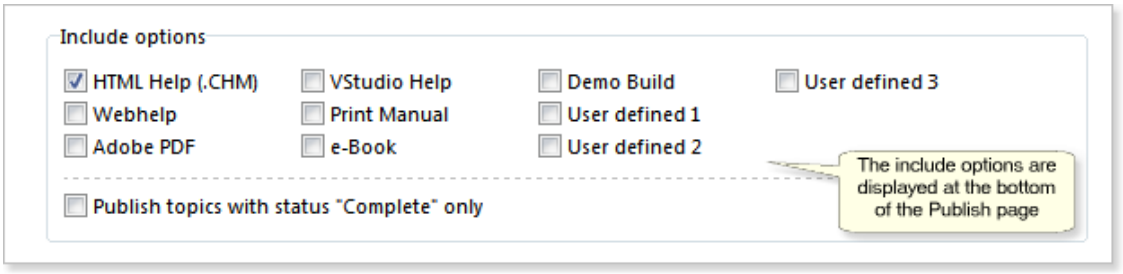
Before excluding, a module generate a project report 1212 to make sure that excluding the module will not create any dead links. (Links with targets in other help files and projects are listed in the reports.) You can get around this problem by creating links between modules with A-keywords 579.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to apply include options when you compile

The include option for the current output format is always selected automatically. Any other include options must be selected manually. However, if you select user-defined include options you must always also select at least the option for the current output format.

1. Select *Publish* in the File menu or in the **Project** tab.



   All modules whose Include Options match the Include Options selected here will be included in your output.

2. Select your publishing options 1310, then click on *Publish Now* to publish.

See also:

Working with Modular Help Systems 1088
Defining include options 988

7.4.11 Redefining variables

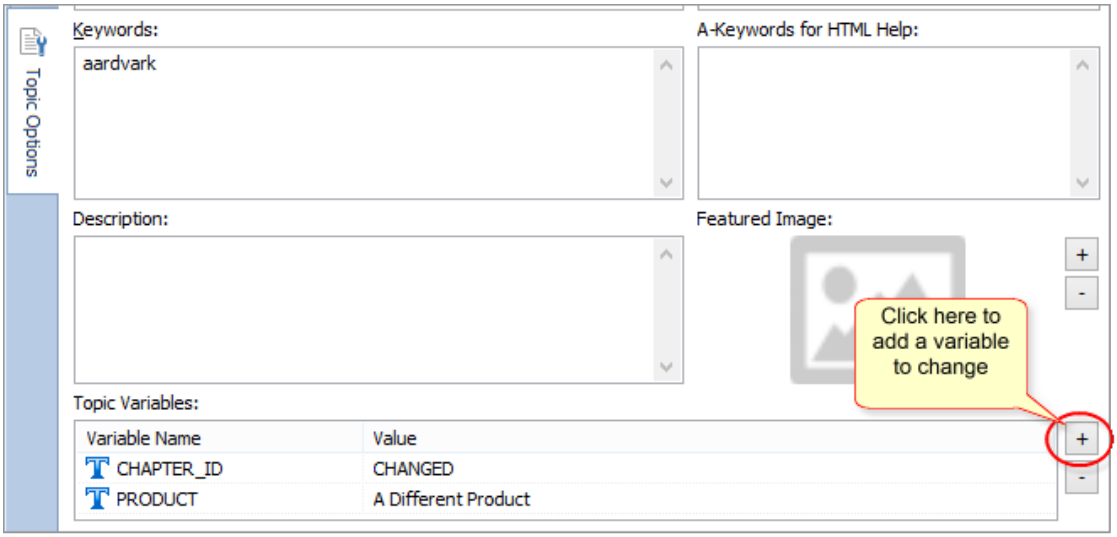
You can always change the definitions of your variables individually in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables** in the Project Explorer. In addition to this you can set different values for specific variables in individual topics. When you publish your project you can also redefine some or all of the variables in your entire project with a project skin or a variable definitions file.

How to redefine variables in individual topics

If you want a variable to have a different value in individual topics you can redefine it in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window when the topic is selected. Note that this is only possible with user-defined variables. You cannot define Help+Manual's standard variables with this feature.

1. Select the topic in the Project Explorer, then select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Click on the **+** button next to the *Topic Variables* box at the bottom of the window.
3. Select the variable you want to redefine and click OK, this adds the variable to the Topic Variables list.
4. Click in the *Value* field and enter a new value. The values you enter here will only be used in the current topic.

See The power of editable variables 963 for more information on the kind of things you can do with this feature.

How to redefine some or all variables when you publish

When you publish your project you can redefine some or all of the variables in the entire project in two different ways: With "skins" and with the command line compilation feature.

Redefining variables with publishing tasks

The Publishing Task Manager makes it possible to define "tasks" to publish your project to multiple output formats and destinations in a single integrated operation. In addition to this you can also redefine the variables in your project when you publish the task with a list of alternative variable definitions. See Publishing to multiple formats 809 for instructions.

Redefining your variables with skins:

Note that you can also assign skins to publishing tasks 809.

1. Create a project skin (only possible with Help+Manual Professional) containing the alternative definitions of your variables (and anything else you want to change in your

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

project). If you only want to redefine your variables you can create a skin that only contains your variable definitions. See Transforming Your Output with Skins 638 for more details.

2. When you publish your project 613 to an HTML-based output format select the skin file in the Publish 1310 dialog.

Note that skins can't be selected in the Publish dialog in non-HTML formats – you need to use command line publishing (see below) for those formats where skins are not directly available.

Redefining your variables from the command line:

You can also create a simple text file containing a list of definitions of the variables you want to change. You can then specify this file in the command line to redefine all the variables in your project with the values in the file.

In addition to this you can also specify a project skin file in the command line, to apply a completely different appearance to the entire project as well as redefining the variables.

For more details on the procedure for redefining variables see Skins & redefining variables 834 in the Command Line chapter and Transforming Your Output with Skins 638.

See also:

Variables and Conditional Output 1558 (Reference)
Transforming Your Output with Skins 638
Command Line Options 816
Skins & redefining variables 834

7.4.12 HTML template conditions

Key Information
The ELSE condition is not available in HTML templates.

Conditional output and variables are also supported in your project's HTML templates. You can use all the same include conditions in HTML templates that you can use in your topics with the Conditional Text tool. In addition to this there are also a number of special predefined conditional switches that are available in HTML templates only.

For details see Conditional output 1052 in the chapter on using HTML templates.

See also:

Using HTML Templates 1026
Conditional output in HTML templates 1052
HTML template output conditions 1577 (reference list)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.5 Templates in Help+Manual

Templates are like an empty framework for topics, projects, PDF files and printed manuals. They are used to define the layout and appearance of these objects and to include text and other elements that the objects always or usually contain so that you don't have to enter them manually every time.

See also:

Help Windows 1609

7.5.1 Template types

The following template types are used in Help+Manual:

Project templates: A project template is an empty project that stores all the settings you want to use in a project, including all your Project Configuration settings, text styles, HTML templates and so on. Project templates can also include topic content that you want to use in every new project.

HTML skins: Skins are applied when you publish to HTML-based output. They apply a complete pre-designed layout to your project with a single click. You can save and edit your own skins or used predefined ones. Skins can only be created with the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. You can use existing skins with the Basic version but you cannot save or edit your own skins.

Topic content templates: Topic content templates are entire topics and can include everything that a topic can include. They can be loaded manually, or automatically when you create a new topic.

Print manual templates: (PDF and printed manuals) These templates define the layout and appearance of your PDF output and printed manuals. They are created and edited with the Print Manual Designer, a separate program included with Help+Manual.

DOCX templates These work in a similar way to PDF templates, but for Word DOCX output. They are special Word DOCX files with predefined content that Help+Manual combines with the output from your project to create a DOCX file with a predefined layout.

HTML templates: These templates define the layout, general appearance and features of your topic pages in Help+Manual's HTML-based output formats. They are included in every project but they

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

are generally not used there because HTML output formats are almost always published with HTML skins 1010. Skins contain exactly the same templates. They replace the project templates when you publish with them.

The topic page templates for your topics can be viewed and edited with the Project Explorer in the **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** section.

The additional HTML templates for the various components of WebHelp (TOC, Index, Search, frameset) can be viewed and edited in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp**.

7.5.2 Templates for projects

A help project template is simply an entire Help+Manual project with all its settings, including all your styles and all the settings and items in the Project Explorer. A project template can include topics with content but it does not have to. If you have topics that you always use (for example terms and conditions, introductions and so on) you may want to include them.

The difference between HTML skins and project templates

Unlike HTML skins 1010, project templates are used as a model for new projects. You can also apply project templates to existing projects but this is a little more complicated (see below).

Skins are applied when you publish and do not affect the settings in your current project, the settings in project templates become an integral part of your project.

How to create a project template from an existing project

This is generally the easiest way to create a project template because then you don't have to go through all the project settings.

1. Create a backup copy of the project you want to use as a template and open the backup.
2. Delete all the topics you don't want to include in the template and edit any topics that you do want to include so that they do not contain any unnecessary text or other items.
3. Select *Save As* in the File menu and save the edited project in a safe place. You don't have to use a special format, a project template is exactly the same as a normal Help+Manual project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to use a template to create a new project

Make a copy of the template project and edit:

Just make a copy of the template project file or project folder (if you are using uncompressed XML format), rename the **.hmxz** (compressed) or **.hmxp** (uncompressed) file and start editing. That is all there is to it.

How to apply a template to an existing project

You can also apply project templates to existing projects. However, this cannot be done in one process, you need to choose the parts of the template you want to apply.

Step 1: Apply the template stylesheet

1. Open the project you want to apply the template to and select *Styles* > *Edit Styles* in the **Write** tab.
2. Click on the *Copy Styles From...* and then select the project file you want to copy the stylesheet from.

Note that this will **overwrite** all the styles in your existing project!

Step 2: Apply the Project Configuration settings

All the other settings in your projects are stored in the Configuration 1400 section in the Project Explorer. You must import the properties here section by section:

1. Select the **Configuration** section of your project in the Project Explorer.
2. Select a section that you want to copy and click on the *Copy Properties From...* button at the bottom of the screen. Then select the project you want to copy the properties from.

   You will be asked whether you want to copy the properties from just the current subsection or from the entire section (for example: just the Image Folders section of Common Properties or the entire Common Properties section).

   Note that this will **overwrite** all the settings in your existing project!
3. Repeat for all the template sections you want to copy.

If you want to copy the complete template import all the **Common Properties** and **HTML Page Templates** sections, plus all the **Publishing Options** sections for any output formats you are using.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Step 3: Import the Baggage Files

If your original project also contains Baggage Files 1119 you should import those to the new project as well.

1. Select the *Baggage Files* section in the Project Explorer.
2. Select *Add File* > *Add New File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and select the Help+Manual project you want to import the Baggage files from.
3. You will be asked if you want to import the Baggage Files from the selected project. Confirm to import the files.

Using our examples to create your own project

Do you like the appearance of the Help+Manual help? In case you do we've included the complete source project used to create this help you are reading now. It is stored in the *Examples\HelpAndManual6* folder in your *Documents* directory **.**

We have also included the custom skin we used to create the CHM and WebHelp versions of this help, and you are welcome to use that too. The skin is called **`HM6-OnlineHelp-Webhelp+CHM.hmskin`** and you can select it directly with the *Select Skin* option in the **Publish** dialog. It is stored the `\Templates\HTML Skins` folder in the Help+Manual program directory, along with all the other skins we provide for your use.

Creating a project based on the Help+Manual help:

Open our help project in Help+Manual and make a copy of it in a new folder with *Save As...* in the **File** menu. Then just delete all the topics and go through the Configuration sections in the Project Explorer to change the details necessary for your own help, like the title and so on.

Using our styles etc. in your own projects:

Follow the instructions for applying project templates to existing projects (see above) and copy the styles, Configuration sections and Baggage files from our help project – or any other project you want to use as a model.

See also:

Creating Projects 124
Creating and Editing Topics 172

7.5.3 HTML Skins

You may already be familiar with the concept of "skins" from other programs: You select a skin file and the appearance and layout of the entire program is transformed in seconds.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual enables you to do this with your HTML-based output. You can save your entire design with all its HTML templates and relevant HTML settings in a **.hmskin** file. You then select this file when you publish to apply the layout to the current project without changing any of the project's own settings.

Please note that you can only save your own projects as skins if you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual. Basic version users can use skins without limitations and edit existing skins (for example skins from the Help+Manual Plus Packs) but they cannot create new skins from their own projects.

Productivity Tip
Skins can only be used for HTML-based output formats. You can style your PDF files and printed manuals with print manual templates 803, which work in the same way as skins. Word files use DOCX templates 683.

How to use skins - try it now!

1. Open a project of your own, select *Publish* in the **Project** tab, then select WebHelp or HTML Help as the output format.
2. On the Publish page 1310 click on the drop-down menu in the *Select Skin* section and select one of the standard **.hmskin** files in the Skins folder in the Help+Manual program directory. You can also select the *Open Skin...* option to select a skin file directly.

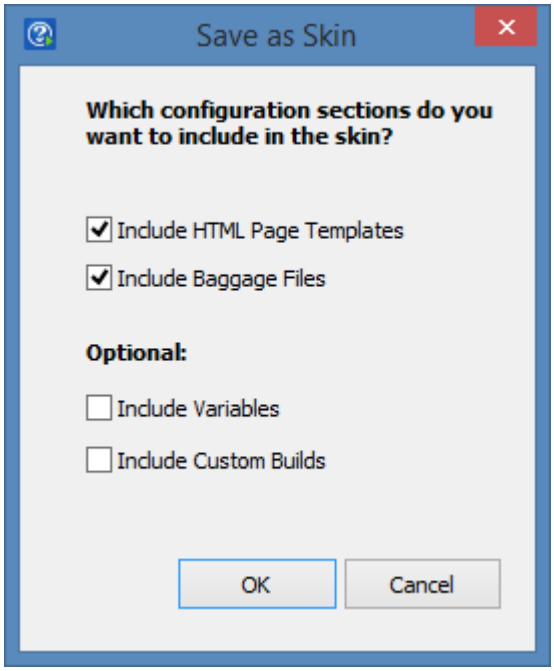
When you publish your output it will have the "look and feel" applied by the skin. You didn't have to do any design work at all! Cool, no?

How to create a skin file

Skin files contain everything you need to style your HTML-based output: Text and table styles, user-defined variables, your Baggage files (template graphics and logos), HTML page templates and all the settings and templates for WebHelp. You can turn any project into a skin file just by saving it as a skin and you can edit skin files in Help+Manual, just like normal projects.

1. Open a project with a design that you want to use for other projects.
2. Select *Save As...* in the File menu and choose the *Skin XML File* option.
3. Choose a place to save the skin, enter a name and save.
4. You will be asked which configuration components of your project you want to include in your skin.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Skin components you can include or exclude when creating a skin

HTML Page Templates:	Should generally always be included. This includes both the templates for topic pages and the various WebHelp HTML templates. Without them, your skin will not replace the HTML templates from your project. In most cases, that would be pretty pointless.
Baggage Files:	Should generally always be included. The Baggage Files 1119 section is the place in your skin where you store your additional JavaScript, CSS and other files for your skin. Putting them there exports them automatically when you publish.
Variables:	Should generally always be included. Having variables in the skin allows you to set up configuration options that you can adjust without having to adjust the source code in your templates or baggage files. Variables can be used in all HTML templates in your skin and in JavaScript and CSS files in your baggage files – they are scanned and replaced by Help+Manual on publishing. All variables you use in your HTML templates and

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	baggage files must be written with the standard **<% VARIABLE_NAME%>** syntax, otherwise they won't be found. You can also use variables from your project (both global and user-defined).
Custom Builds:	Should generally always be included, but delete any custom builds from your project in the skin after creating the skin. Custom builds defined only in the skin are displayed in the additional **Skin Include Options** box displayed in the **Publish** screen. Having custom builds in your skin allows you to create configuration options that can be activated or deactivated on publishing. You can include or exclude code in your HTML templates or in your JavaScript and CSS files in your baggage files with custom builds. For example, suppose you have a custom build called TOPICFOOTER: Include code when your build option is active with: **<IF_TOPICFOOTER>Code you want to include when TOPICFOOTER is selected goes here</IF_TOPICFOOTER>** Include code when your build option is inactive with: **<IF_TOPICFOOTER>Code you want to include when TOPICFOOTER is NOT selected goes here</IF_TOPICFOOTER>** See this topic 1052 for more details.

How to edit skin files

Skin files are actually normal single-file projects with some special limitations. You can open them and edit them like normal projects but you can only edit those components that are included in the skin, everything else is unavailable.

1. Select *Open* in the File menu and then select *Help+Manual skin files (.hmskin)* as the type of file to be opened. (If you don't select this you won't be able to see the skin files!)
2. Select an **.hmskin** file to load and edit. You can find some sample skins in the *Skins* folder in the Help+Manual program directory.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Now you can edit the settings of your skin. This is exactly the same as editing the corresponding sections of normal projects to configure your output.

   Skins have no topics, you can only edit the relevant sections in the **Configuration** and **Baggage Files** sections in the Project Explorer and the text and table styles in **Write > Styles**.

Using include conditions to configure features in skins

> **Key Information**
> Include options in skins must be defined in the skin! Include options defined in normal H+M projects will not be saved in the skin when you save the project as a skin. You must edit the skin file and add the include options you want to use.

For advanced users:

You can use include options 1052 to turn features in skins on and off. This makes it possible for the user to choose features in the skin when they publish their projects because include options stored in skins are loaded into the *Include Options:* box in the Publish dialog when the skin is selected.

For example, suppose you want to give the user the option of having a subtitle underneath the title in the table of contents in your WebHelp output. It would work like this:

1. Define an include option in the skin, let's say it's called OPT_SUBTITLE, and let's also say that we've entered *TOC header subtitle* as the include option description.
2. Add code using the include option to the HTML template for the WebHelp table of contents, for example (you would also have to define the <%SUBTITLE%> variable in this example, of course):

```
<p class="navtitle"><%TITLE%></p>
<IF_OPT_SUBTITLE><p class="nav-subtitle"><%SUBTITLE%></p></IF_OPT_SU
```

3. When the user loads the skin in the Publish dialog the option *[ ] TOC header subtitle* will automatically be loaded from the skin file and displayed in the *Include Options:* box. The header will only be displayed if the user selects this option.

You can take this concept as far as you like: For example, you can use the same include option to change the CSS definitions in the same HTML template so that the formatting will be different depending on whether the subtitle is included or not.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Including a preview image in a skin

When the user selects a skin in the Publish dialog Help+Manual automatically looks for a PNG graphic file called `$HMSKINPREVIEW.PNG` in the skin's Baggage files. If this file is found a thumbnail version of the preview image is displayed in the Publish dialog. The user can then click on this image to display a full-size preview.

1. Create your preview image – this will generally be a screenshot of a help file using your skin – and save it in the PNG format as `$HMSKINPREVIEW.PNG`.
2. Add the PNG preview file to the Baggage Files section of your skin.
3. Select the PNG file in the Baggage Files section, right-click on it, select Include in Builds and deactivate all build options for the file. This will prevent the file from being exported to your published output, where it is not needed.

Using skins to redefine variables and other settings

You don't have to save all your settings in your skin files. For example, it's possible to create a skin that only defines the user variables in your project – you just need to deselect everything except Variables when you save the skin file. Then you can redefine your variables in your entire project by selecting the skin file when you publish your project.

You can do the same with your Baggage files, text and table styles, HTML Page Templates or any combination.

Applying multiple skins in command lines and batch files

When you publish manually you can only select one skin for the project you are publishing. However, when you use Help+Manual's command line options you can specify as many skins as you like one after another.

When you do this the settings in the last skin you specify always have priority for duplicate settings – for example, if you redefine the same variables in two skins the settings in the second skin are those that will be applied.

See Command Line Options 816 and Skins & redefining variables 834 for more information on this.

See also:

The Publish Dialog 1310
Command Line Options 816

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.5.4 Content templates for topics

A topic content template is an XML file containing the "framework" of a topic – it is used to create topics with repetitive content, for example identical tables and headings and so on.

Topic content templates can contain everything that a topic can contain, including tables, formatted text, graphics, links and so on. You can create as many content templates as you like and load them with you create topics with standard layout that you use repeatedly. You can also create content templates that are loaded automatically when you create new topics.

How to create a topic content template

1. Create a new topic. The topic ID is irrelevant because you are going to delete the topic as soon as you have saved the template.
2. Edit the topic and add everything that you want to have in the template. You can use all the features that you can use in a normal topic, including tables, graphics, formatted text, hyperlinks and so on.
3. Enter the topic header (in the area above the editor, not in the TOC) exactly as you want it to appear in the topic. See the instructions below for automatically inserting the TOC caption in the header.
4. Select *File* > *Save Topic to File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and save the topic as an XML file in the project folder, using the following naming syntax:
   `filename.template.xml`

   The `.template.` part of the name is essential, it identifies the XML file as a template. Templates must be stored in the current project directory and must use this naming syntax. If you call the template `default.template.xml` it will be selected automatically for new topics (see further below for details).

   Examples:

   `intro.template.xml`
   `functiondocs.template.xml`
   `standarddocs.template.xml`
   `default.template.xml` (will be autoselected for new topics)
5. Delete the topic you have just created if you don't want to use it in your project now.

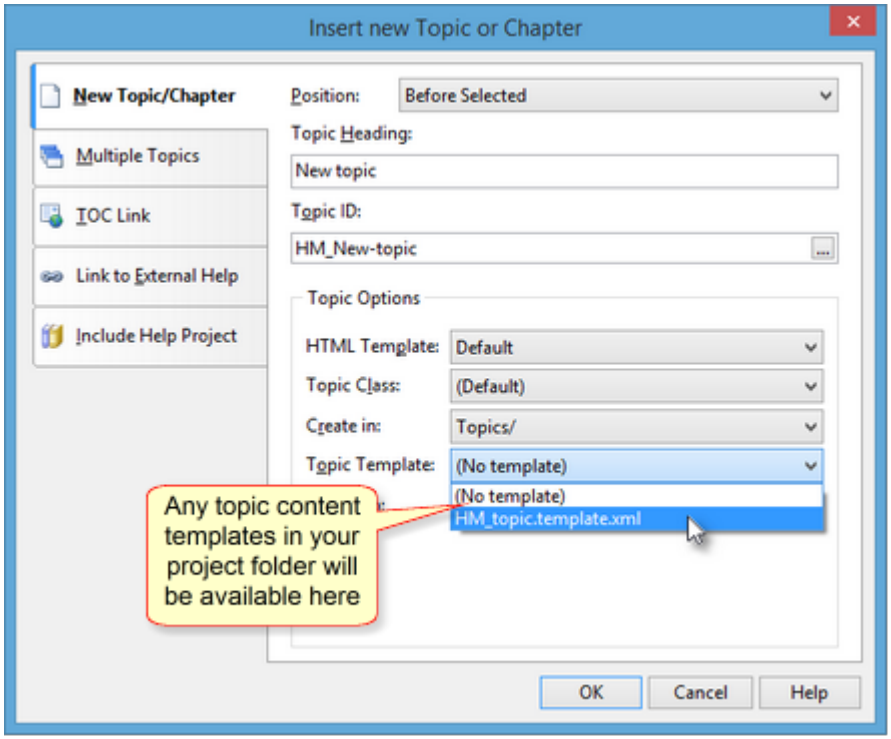
How to use topic content templates

To create a new topic with a template:

1. Choose one of the *Add Topic* options in the **Project** tab to create a new topic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Select the template in the *Topic Template:* field of the *Insert New Topic or Chapter* dialog.



Note that the template will only appear in the *Topic Template:* field for selection if it is stored in your project directory using the **`filename.template.xml`** naming syntax (see above for details).

To load a template into an empty topic:

1. Create an empty topic.
2. Select *File* > *Load Topic from File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and select the template file you want to load.

Don't try to load a template into an existing topic, this will overwrite the entire contents of the topic!

Insert the TOC caption in the topic header

When you create topic templates to use for creating new topics you can include a special variable in the header that will automatically insert the topic caption (the title of the topic you enter in the Add Topic dialog) in the header of the topic. If you don't use this variable the template will be loaded with the header saved with the topic.

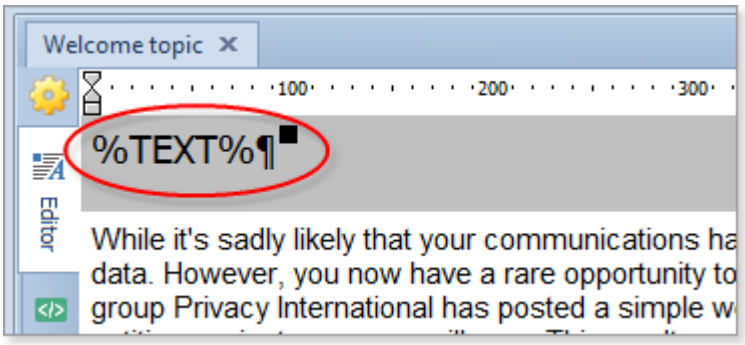
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You also need to insert this variable in the Title Tag: field in the Topic Options tab on the left of the editor window so that the header text of your topic is used there as well – otherwise the header text stored with the content template file will be used.

1. Delete the header of the template topic (in the area above the editor, not in the TOC) and replace it with the following variable:

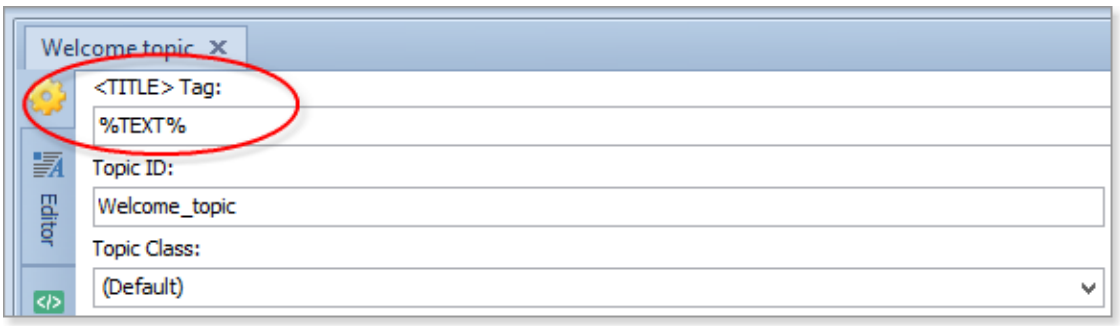
   %TEXT%

2. Type in the variable ***manually*** exactly as shown, using all upper case. Only enter **%** and **%** before and after the variable name. This is the only variable that does not use **<%** and **%>** tags.



   You can also include other text and elements in the header, including graphics. Only the variable is replaced when a new topic is created.

3. Select the Topic Options tab on the left of the editor window and type the same **%TEXT%** variable in the *<TITLE> Tag:* field:



This variable only works when you create a new topic with a content template file. The **%TEXT%** variable is not translated when you load the template into a empty topic with *File > Load Topic from File* in **Project > Manage Topics**.

Setting up an automatic template for new topics

In addition to templates that you can select manually for new topics you can also create a topic content template with a special name that will get selected automatically for every

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

new topic. Just follow the instructions above for creating topic templates and save the template in your project folder (the same folder where your `.hmxp` or `.hmxz` project file is stored) with the following name:

`default.template.xml`

If this template exists in your project folder it will be preselected automatically when you create a new topic. If you want to change it you can still select a different template from the list in the new topic dialog. Otherwise clicking on OK will create the new topic with the standard template.

Topic content templates for topic styles

If you frequently use topics with different standard styles you could create a separate template for topics with each set of styles already preset in the topic header and body. Then you just need to select the appropriate template when you create a new topic (see above).

See also:

Creating new topics 174
Exporting and importing topics 365

7.5.5 PDF and printed manual templates

The layout of Help+Manual's PDF and print manual output is controlled by template files called "print manual templates" with the extension **`.mnl`** that do much more than just define the appearance of your pages. These templates can also add front and back covers, multiple title pages at the beginning, an introduction, a formatted table of contents, title pages for individual chapters, graphics, headers and footers, a formatted index and multiple endnotes pages. You can also define your own additional pages and insert topics from your project or external files with a "snippets" function.

All the global variables and user-defined variables from your project file can be used in your print manual templates. Since the templates are external files you can use them in multiple projects, applying them to your output just as you apply skins 638 to HTML-based output formats.

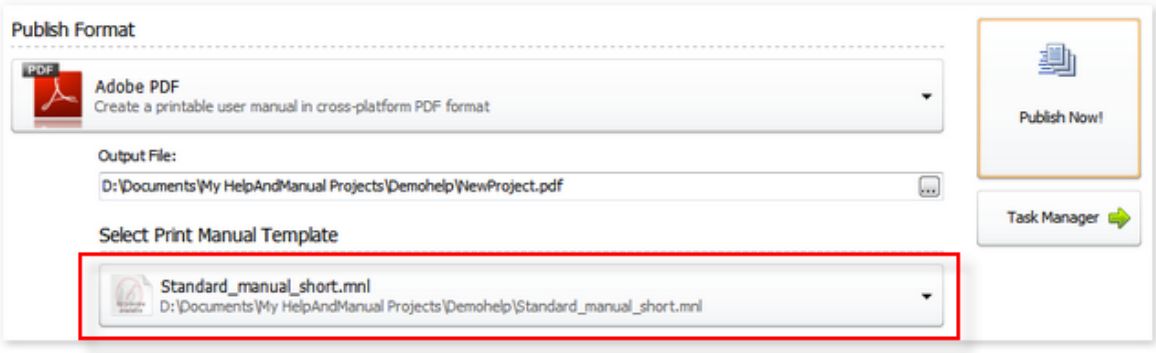
How to select a print manual template

You can select separate templates for PDF output and printed manuals.

Selecting a print manual template for PDF output:

1. Select *Publish* in the Project menu, then select PDF as your publishing format.

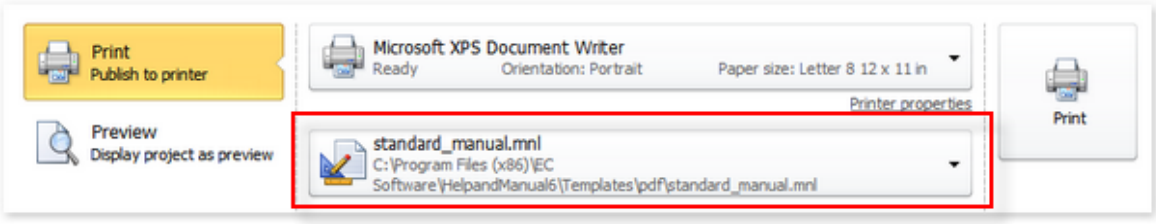
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Click on the dropdown area shown above to select the template you want to use.

Selecting a print manual template for printing a user manual:

1. Select the File menu and click on Print User Manual 1290.



2. Click on the dropdown area shown above to select the template you want to use.

How to edit a print manual template

- Select **Project** > **Tools** > Manual Designer 1217 to open the Print Manual Designer. Then select **File** > **Open** in the Designer to open the template for editing. You can find a selection of standard templates that you can edit in the `\Templates\pdf` folder in the Help+Manual program directory.
- When you open the Manual Designer it will automatically load the last PDF template used for the current Help+Manual project, if there is one.

The Print Manual Designer is a separate program with its own documentation. See the help in the Designer for details on how to use it.

Location of the standard print manual templates

Help+Manual comes with a selection of standard print manual templates that are stored in the `\Templates\pdf` subdirectory in the Help+Manual program directory. These templates have the file extension **`.mnl`**.

See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

PDF and Printed Manuals 785

7.5.6 Word DOCX templates

Help+Manual comes with a set of standard templates for Word output. These templates are themselves standard Word DOCX files that you can edit and customize directly in Word. They are stored in the Help+Manual program folder, in **/Templates/Word**.

If you select one without editing it when publishing your project to Word DOCX you will get a DOCX document using the layout defined in that template. If any of the variables used in the template are defined in your project you will see those items in the output (project title, author etc). Other fields used in the template will not yet be filled, because they need to be configured directly in the template – for example, fields for your company name, address and so on.

See this chapter 682 for full details on using and configuring DOCX templates.

7.5.7 HTML templates

HTML templates are used to define the layout of all Help+Manual's HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, eBooks and Visual Studio Help). In topic pages, what you enter in the editor defines the content, the templates define the framework in which your content is presented. The HTML templates are stored together with your project.

The same HTML topic page templates are used for the topic pages in all three formats. In addition to this there are also separate templates for the frameset file and the Table of Contents and Keyword Index frames used in WebHelp, where they emulate the HTML Help viewer user interface.

You don't normally need to think about HTML templates

For normal work with Help+Manual you don't have to think about what HTML templates contain and how to edit them. That is all handled in the background by the program. A simple style editor is provided that allows you to modify the basic layout of your pages in the associated output formats without having to edit the HTML code directly.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Accessing and editing the HTML templates

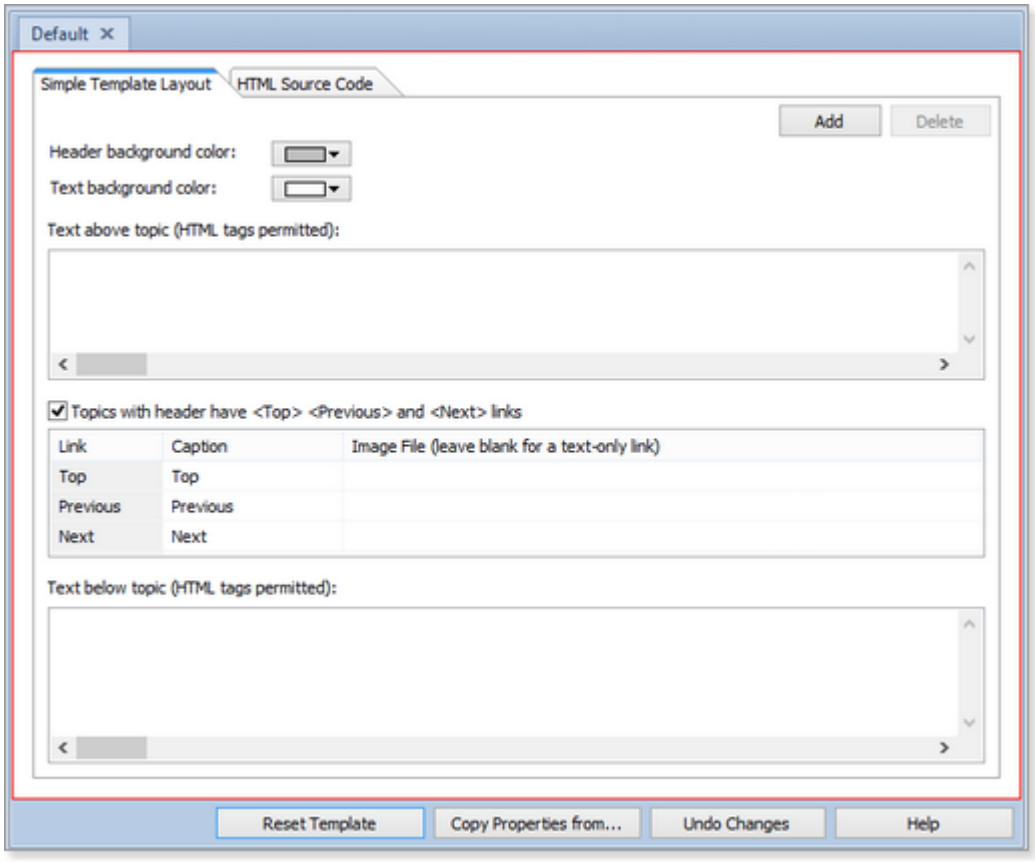
For everyday work you can adjust the settings of your HTML templates just as you would adjust any of the other output settings in your Project Configuration 1400 settings. The simple style editor hides the HTML code with a point-and-click interface.

The HTML topic page template:

In most projects and skins there is just one HTML topic page template called *Default*, which is assigned to all new topics automatically. It can be viewed and edited in the Configuration section of your project or skin in the Project Explorer, in **Configuration > HTML Page Templates,** where you can also create new templates.

Among other things, the HTML topic page template defines the background colors of your topic and topic header in HTML-based output formats and the Top, Previous and Next navigation links displayed in the topic header in these formats.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



The *Simple Template Layout* tab provides most of the functions you will normally need, see this topic 203 for some basic instructions. This tab is disabled when code in the Source Code tab has been edited.

The *HTML Source Code* tab allows you to edit all the source code of the template and even completely replace it with your own code.

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

The HTML templates for WebHelp components:

There are also additional HTML templates for WebHelp, which define the layout frameset, TOC, Search, and Index components of the WebHelp user interface. These are accessed in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp.** See HTML Output and HTML Templates 1026 for full details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Setting the background colors of topics and headers

The background colors of topics and headers are set in the HTML page template for all HTML-based formats. Background colors are not used in DOCX, PDF and printed manuals. Here too, the backgrounds are defined in your project if you are not using a skin and in the **.hmskin** skin file if you are.

See Background colors and help viewers 142 for details on how to set the background colors in the HTML page template.

Doing more with HTML templates

If you are familiar with writing HTML, Help+Manual's HTML templates are a very powerful tool that gives you a great deal of control over the appearance of your output pages in all HTML-based formats.

If you feel like getting under the hood and finding out what you can do with HTML templates, have a look at the HTML Output and HTML Templates 1026 chapter in the More Advanced Procedures section.

See also:

WebHelp settings 1415
Using HTML Templates 1026

7.5.8 eWriter Help Templates

eWriter Help files really WebHelp packaged in a single file together with an integrated viewer. The topic page layout is defined by the same HTML page templates that are used for the topic pages of HTML Help and WebHelp. The Layout, TOC, Keyword Index and Search pages are defined by the same templates used for WebHelp. Normally, you will use a WebHelp skin to publish eWriter Help.

See eWriter Help 696 in the Publishing chapter for full details.

See also:

eWriter Help settings 1477

7.5.9 Page templates for ePUB and Kindle eBooks

The topic pages in ePUB and Kindle/Mobi eBooks use a special HTML page template that is pre-generated by Help+Manual. This is necessary because these eBook formats have special requirements and strict specifications that need to be observed to produce valid books.

You can edit the source code of the combined ePUB/Kindle template in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eBooks** > **ePUB + Kindle: Page Template**. However, please only do this if you are familiar with the eBooks specification. It is quite easy to create output that looks OK

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

when you view it locally but creates problems later. It may be rejected by the eBook distribution platform because it doesn't "validate", or it may display incorrectly on some devices.

7.5.10 Using secondary windows in CHM help

Secondary windows are only relevant in Microsoft HTML Help CHM files. They are used to display individual topics in external windows.

> **Productivity Tip**
> Avoid using hyperlinks in secondary windows. Although an external window is a full instance of the help viewer hyperlinks between it and the main help can quickly get very confusing for the user.

How to display topics in external windows in HTML Help

In HTML Help you can use additional help window definitions to display topics in external windows when they are opened with hyperlinks. Topics can only be displayed in external windows in HTML Help CHM files and the help window settings have no effect in other help formats.

Important Restrictions

Important: Help window types can only be used in hyperlinks.
You cannot directly associate a help window type with an individual topic and you cannot set a topic in the TOC to open in an external window when you click on its TOC entry.

You cannot link open topics from other CHM files in external windows.
Due to restrictions in the Microsoft HTML Help CHM viewer, you can only display topics from the current CHM file in an external window. It does not work when linking to topics in another CHM file.

Procedure:

1. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows** and create at least one secondary help window type definition with *Add*.

   Adjust the settings of the window definition as you want the external window to appear – in addition to the size and position you may want to switch off navigation controls etc. in the help window definition's *HTML Help Options* tab.

2. In the *HTML Help Options* tab activate the option *Links to secondary help windows open a new help window*.
3. When you create a hyperlink to a topic specify the secondary help window type with

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the *Window:* setting in the link definition.

When the user clicks on the hyperlink the target topic it will now be displayed in an external window in HTML Help, with all the settings defined for the window type in step 1.

See also:

Help Windows 1609
Using help windows 194
Links and secondary windows 469
HTML templates 1021
Using HTML Templates 1026

7.6 HTML Output and HTML Templates

HTML templates are used to define the topic layout of all Help+Manual's HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks and Visual Studio Help). What you enter in the editor defines the content of your topics, the templates define the framework in which your content is presented. The HTML templates are stored together with your project.

In addition to this there is an additional set of HTML templates for the special components of WebHelp output (TOC, Index, Search, frameset).

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

HTML templates 1611 (Reference)
Help Windows 1609 (Reference)
Templates and Secondary Windows 1007
Using help windows 194

7.6.1 Font Size Units & Dimensions in HTML

In HTML, the units used for font sizes and dimensions now more important than ever before. With the introduction of high-resolution 4K monitors and portable devices with super high resolution screens like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro series, content on the screen must scale correctly to be attractive and legible.

Help+Manual now handles this automatically. You basically just need to select the correct font size units for your output formats and Help+Manual will automatically adjust all the other dimensions on your pages accordingly so that they scale correctly on high-resolution devices and also look correct on older, "normal" devices.

These settings are made in the HTML Export Options section of your project (they are not available in skins, only in your project). There are separate sections for WebHelp and HTML Help/CHM. The WebHelp settings are also used for eBooks (eWriter, ePUB and Kindle/Mobi) and the CHM settings are shared with the Visual Studio Help output formats.

Setting the correct units for hi-res devices for WebHelp output

You now need to consider high-resolution 4K monitors and devices like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro when you are planning your WebHelp. If you don't do this the text and other elements will often be too small to read on these devices. If you set the configuration options described below Help+Manual will automatically adjust everything else so that it displays correctly on high-resolution displays.

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**.
2. Set *Font Size Encoding* to: `em (1em = 100%)`.
3. The *Font size of style* "*Normal*" setting is grayed out for ems/rems because it is only used when font encoding is set in percent.

Once the base font encoding is set to ems all elements in your topic files will then automatically be adapted for correct display on both normal and high-resolution devices and monitors.

Setting the correct units for hi-res devices for CHM output

The Microsoft CHM Viewer in Windows uses an old HTML rendering engine that has spe-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

cial requirements. Help+Manual can automatically configure your CHM file so that it displays correctly on high-resolution 4K monitors and devices like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro. If you don't do this the text and other elements will often be too small to read on these devices.

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **MS HTML Help** > **HTML Export Options**.
2. Set *Font Size Encoding* to: `pt Points`.
3. Select the checkbox for *Make pixel sizes relative to monitor resolution (4K display compatibility)*

All elements of your CHM file will then automatically be adapted for correct display on both normal and high-resolution devices and monitors.

7.6.2 Types of HTML templates

There are two categories of HTML templates: The HTML topic page templates that define your topic pages in all HTML-based output formats and an additional group of HTML templates used to define the additional components of WebHelp output, which are also used for eWriter Help.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **`.hmskin`** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **`.hmskin`** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **`.hmskin`** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

HTML topic page templates:

These are the templates for your topics and they are used for all HTML-based output formats. They define everything in your topic pages except the topic content. They are stored in **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates.**

Additional templates for WebHelp:

In addition to this there are also separate templates for the main index.html page 1043 and the Table of Contents 1044, Keyword Index 1045 and Full-text Search 1046 pages used in WebHelp to emulate the HTML Help viewer user interface. These templates are stored in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp**.

Special script and CSS components information for experts:

If you are experienced in HTML, CSS and JavaScript coding please refer to Script and CSS components for experts 1063. This topic contains important information on how the references to important script and other components in the templates are managed and how you can manipulate them.

Which HTML templates are used where and when...

The WebHelp Layout template contents depend on the layout option chosen

The contents of the layout template change depending on whether you choose "*Integrated*", "*Classic 2 Frames*" or "*Classic 3 Frames*" in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Layout**. In the Integrated version, HTML5 is used and the topic and navigation pages are loaded in modern iFrames. The Classic versions use a traditional frameset (now deprecated) and load the topic and navigation pages into conventional frames. The same JavaScript files are used in all three versions, however.

The "No Frames" option disables the Layout template

The layout template is not used at all if you choose the "*No Frames*" option. Then the Table of Contents template is set as the main `index.html` file and the contents of the layout template are irrelevant for your output because the template is not present.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

HTML Topic Page templates are (almost) always used.

The topic page templates in **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** are used by almost all HTML-based output formats (CHM, WebHelp, eWriter Help and Visual Studio Help 2008 and 2010).

Exception: ePUB and Kindle/Mobi
The ePUB and Kindle/Mobi eBook formats us a special template stored in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eBooks** > **ePUB + Kindle: Page Template**. This template can also be edited there, but please only change it if you are familiar with the eBook specifications.

The WebHelp Table of Contents, Index and Search templates

The contents of the WebHelp Table of Contents, Index and Search templates define three separate pages for these functions. They are loaded into the navigation frame in WebHelp and eWriter Help when they are displayed. Some skins load them in the background so that they are always present and can be switched to without reloading.

Templates in the "No Frames" Layout Option

If you choose the "*No Frames*" option, the Layout template is disabled and is not used. Instead, the TOC template is used as the main `index.html` file.

7.6.3 Editing HTML templates

All the various HTML templates used in your projects can be edited directly in the Configuration section of your project where they are stored. Help+Manual has an integrated HTML code editor with syntax highlighting, search and replace and spell checking.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **`.hmskin`** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Editing HTML templates requires familiarity with HTML:

You must be familiar with manual HTML coding to edit the HTML templates yourself. Your code is also entirely your own responsibility – it is not syntax-checked in any way by Help+Manual. Only delete or change code in the standard templates if you really understand what you are doing, otherwise you may experience unexpected errors and malfunctions in your output!

When making code changes it is good practice to publish regularly to test the results of your changes, otherwise it can be difficult to localize and identify the changes that are causing a specific problem.

Template locations

HTML template storage location:

All your HTML templates are stored in the main project XML file, inside CDATA sections. If you are working in uncompressed XML (HMXP mode) this is the file with the name of the project and the extension **.hmxp.** This is an XML file that can be edited directly with a text or XML editor, but it is actually much easier to access the templates directly in Help+Manual, where you have a code editor with syntax highlighting.

If you are using the compressed HMXZ format the project file containing the templates is called **project.hmxp** and it is stored inside the HMXZ file, which is really just a zip archive that you can unpack with any zip utility. Again, however, it is much easier to edit the templates directly in Help+Manual.

Topic page templates location:

In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** to edit the templates for your topics. By default there is just one template called *Default* that is used for all topics. However, you can define additional templates and assign them to individual

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

topics in Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window, in the *HTML Page Template:* field.

These templates are used for all HTML-based output formats. The same templates are used for all formats, you cannot define different templates for specific output formats.

WebHelp templates location:

In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** to edit the additional templates for the help frameset (Layout), Table of Contents, Keyword Index and Search panes in your WebHelp output.

How to create new HTML templates

Topic page templates:

You can create as many topic page templates for your HTML output as you like and assign them to individual topics so that selected topics can use different layouts or include different features. Just go to **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** > **Default** and click on *Add* to create a new template. See HTML topic page templates 1036 for full details and instructions.

Using multiple topic page templates in skins:

You can create multiple topic page templates in skins. However, to be able to use them you must also create additional page templates with exactly the same names in all the projects you use with the skins. This is necessary so that you can select the template name in the Topic Options tab to associate it with individual topics. The contents of the additional templates in the project are irrelevant because they are not used. You only need the names so that you can make the association with the topics.

WebHelp templates:

Unlike topic page templates, each project only has one copy each of the templates used for the main index page (the page containing the frames or iFrames into which navigation and topic pages are loaded) and the table of contents, keyword index and full-text search pages. You can edit these HTML pages in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp**, but if you want to create alternative versions you need to save your project as a skin 1010. You can then edit the templates in the skin separately from the project and apply the template versions in the skin to any project when you publish it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

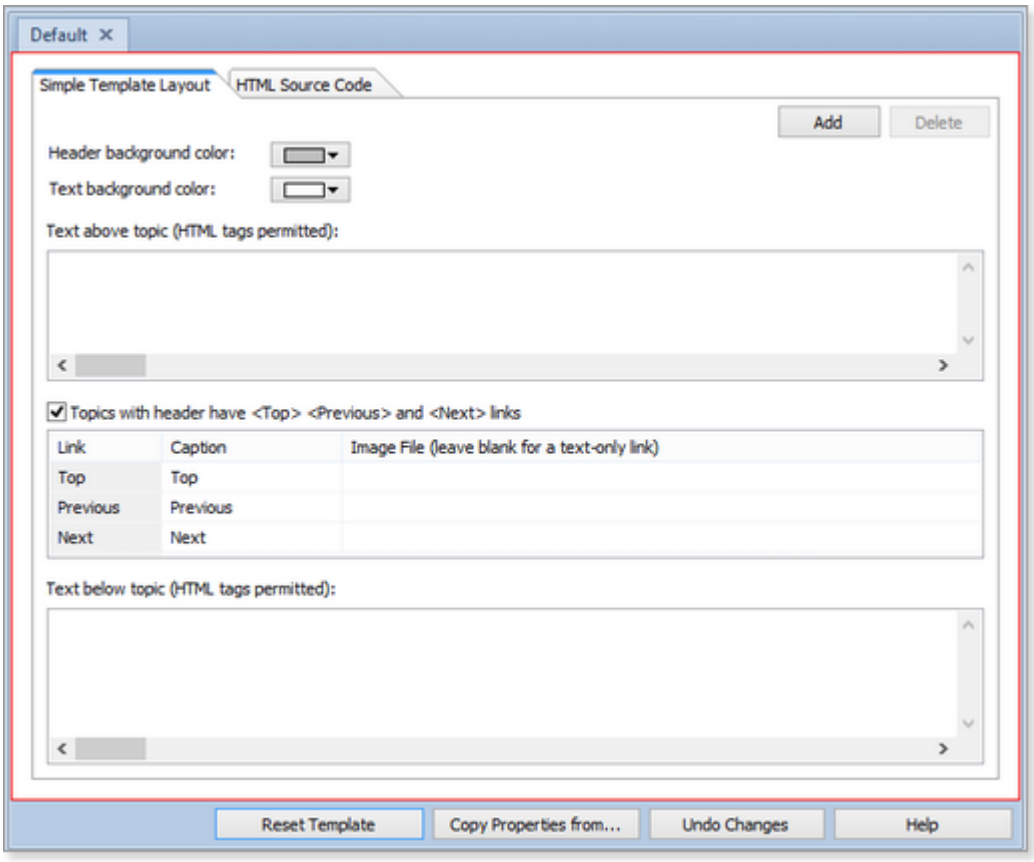
How to edit HTML templates

All the templates have two editing modes, in two tabs. In the simple mode tab you can make a number of changes without actually having to edit the HTML code directly. This is recommended for most users. The HTML source code tab gives you direct access to all the code of the template – you should only use this option if you have experience with editing HTML and CSS code.

Simple editing mode:

Note that the Simple Template Layout tab is only available for the standard *Default* template. All additional topic page templates you create can only be edited in HTML Source Code mode.

1. Select the template you want to edit then select the *Simple Template Layout* tab in the editor window.



2. Make your changes and additions, then save your project to save your changes.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

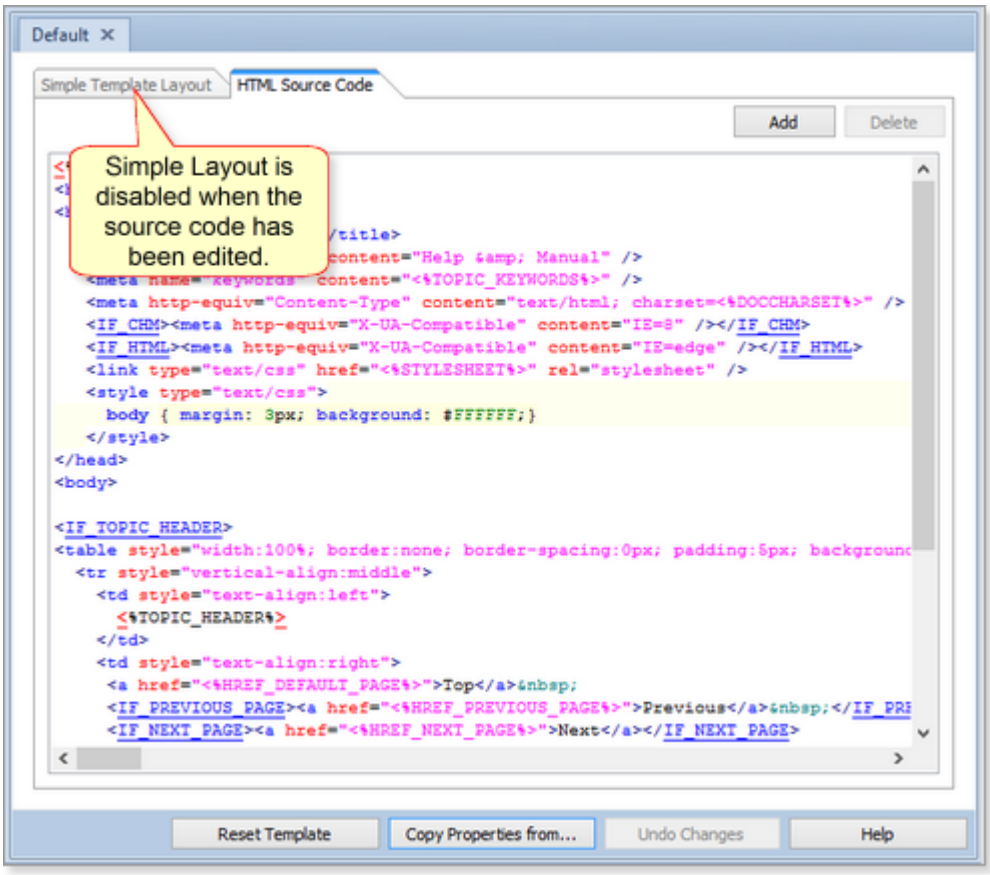
See HTML Page Templates 1413 and WebHelp 1415 in the Reference section for details on the settings for each template type.

Editing the HTML code:

Note that user-created HTML page templates can only be edited in HTML Source Code mode.

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

1. Select the template you want to edit then select the *Edit HTML Code* tab in the editor window.



2. Edit the template in the editor window displayed. The editor supports syntax highlighting to make editing easier. See the other sections in this chapter for details on the contents of the different template types.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

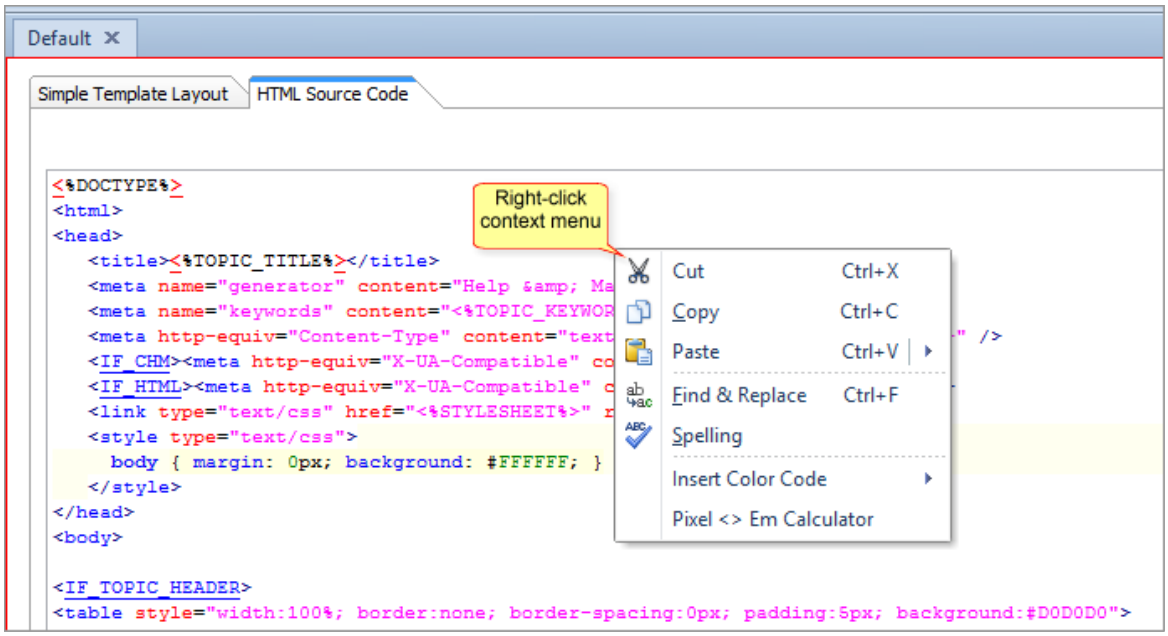
3. When you are finished save your project to store your changes.

The changes will be applied immediately but most of them may only be visible in your published output. However, any background colors you set for your topic body and header will be displayed in the editor directly.

The source code editor for templates

The HTML template source code window is a basic HTML code editor with syntax high-lighting that makes it easy to see the different components of your template code.

In addition to all the normal editing functions it also has a number of additional features available in the right-click context menu:



In addition to standard editing features there are two useful tools:

Insert Color Code:

Displays a color picker and inserts the color value as a standard HTML hex triplet (e.g. `#ffffff` for white).

Pixel < > Em Calculator:

Converts values between pixels and ems. This is very useful when you are converting tradi-tional pixel-based layouts to responsive ems-based layouts.

Important: Ems are relative!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Ems is actually a relative value. When converting between pixels and ems you need to enter the base font percentage value first. This percentage represents the size of your base font relative to the base font of most browsers, which is 16 pixels.

For example, if your main body text font is 11 points, that is equivalent to 15 pixels. To get the same base font size in your output in the majority of browsers you need to set the base font percentage to 95%, and that will then be equal to 1 em within the context of your project.

See also:

Templates and Secondary Windows 1007
Help Windows 1609 (Reference)

7.6.4 HTML topic page templates

The HTML topic page templates are used to define the layout and behavior of topic pages in all HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, eWriter Help and Visual Studio Help). Only ePUB eBooks use a special internal template that cannot be edited.

By default there is just one template called *Default* which is assigned to new topics automatically. However, you can define as many different templates as you like.

You can assign a different template to any topic in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. Just select the template you want to use in the drop-down list in the *HTML Page Template:* field.

See Editing HTML templates 1030 for details on how to edit templates.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Template location

Configuration > **HTML Page Templates**

Creating and using new HTML page templates

By default there is only one HTML page template called "Default", which is used for all topics by default (duh...). However, you can create as many new templates as you like and apply them to individual topics.

Creating a new HTML page template:

1. Go to **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** and select the *Default* template entry.
2. Click on the Add button at the top left and enter a descriptive name for your new template.
3. The new template is created with the standard default template code, which you can then edit. Note that the following variables are all required:

<%DOCTYPE%>	Enters the HTML page doctype declaration. If you prefer to use your own specific doctype declaration you can use it instead but you must use either the doctype variable or a valid doctype declaration.
<%TOPIC_KEYWORDS%>	The meta tag with this variable is required if you want your index keywords to be included in the topic for search engines.
<%DOCCHARSET%>	The language/charset of the document. The meta tag with this variable is required, an error will be displayed if it is not present.
<%STYLESHEET%>	Inserts the reference to the CSS style sheet generated by Help+Manual. No access to the Help+Manual styles is possible without this reference.
<%TOPIC_HEADER%>	Inserts the topic header. Required if you want your topic to have a header.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

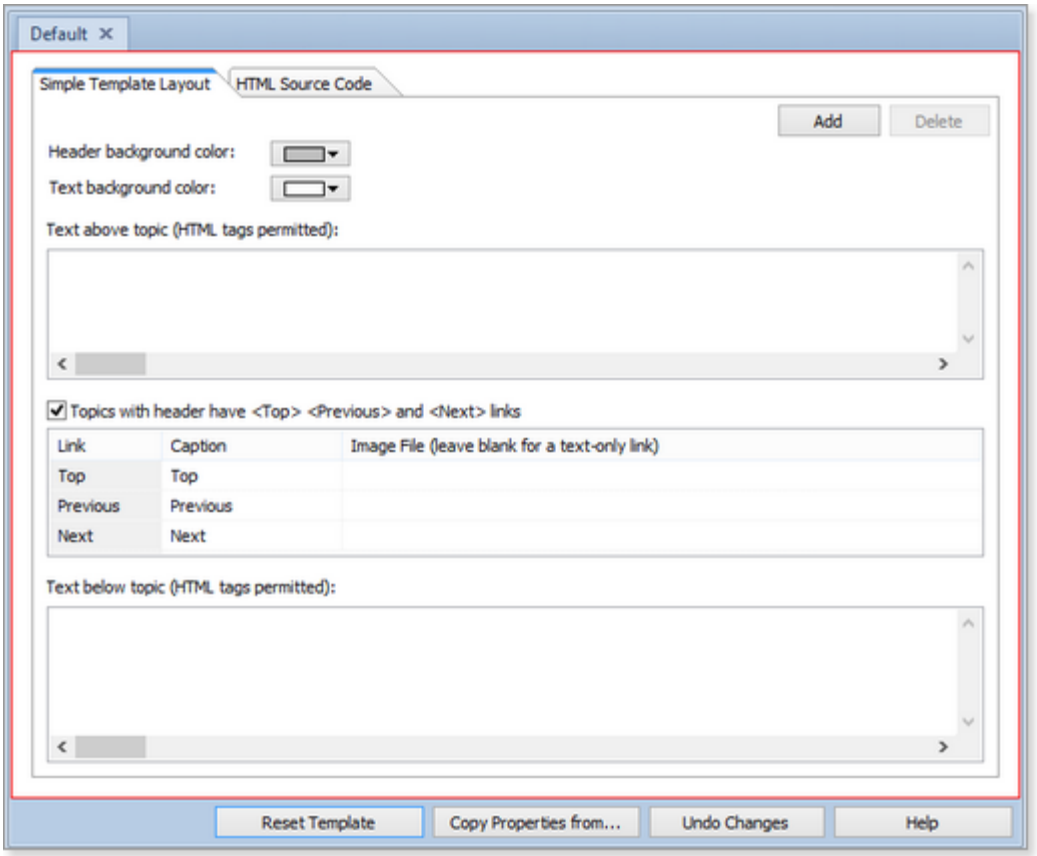
<%TOPIC_TEXT%>	Inserts the topic content in the template. Required, your topic will not have any content without this variable.

Using your custom HTML page templates:

1. Select the topic where you want to use your own template.
2. Select the **Topic Options** tab on the left of the Help+Manual editor window.
3. Select your own template in the *HTML Page Template:* field.

Simple Template Layout tab

This tab is only available for the standard Default topic page template. All user-defined templates can only be edited in the HTML Source Code tab.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Disabled Simple Layout tab:

The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template.

Background colors:

These settings set the background colors for your topic header and body. The colors will be shown in the Help+Manual editor.

Text above topic:

Everything you enter in this box is inserted at the top of every topic, before your topic text. Effectively, this adds a header to your topics (beneath the actual topic header containing the topic title). This text is only shown in your output, not in the Help+Manual editor.

You can enter HTML tags here to format the text, including references to images.

Topics with headers have <Top>, <Previous> and <Next> links:

This allows you to activate navigation links in your topic headers, either as simple text links or is a graphical icons. To insert an icon click in the *Image File* column, click on the Browse button and select the file.

Image files must be located in one of the folders listed in your Project Search Path settings in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Project Search Path.**

Text below topic:

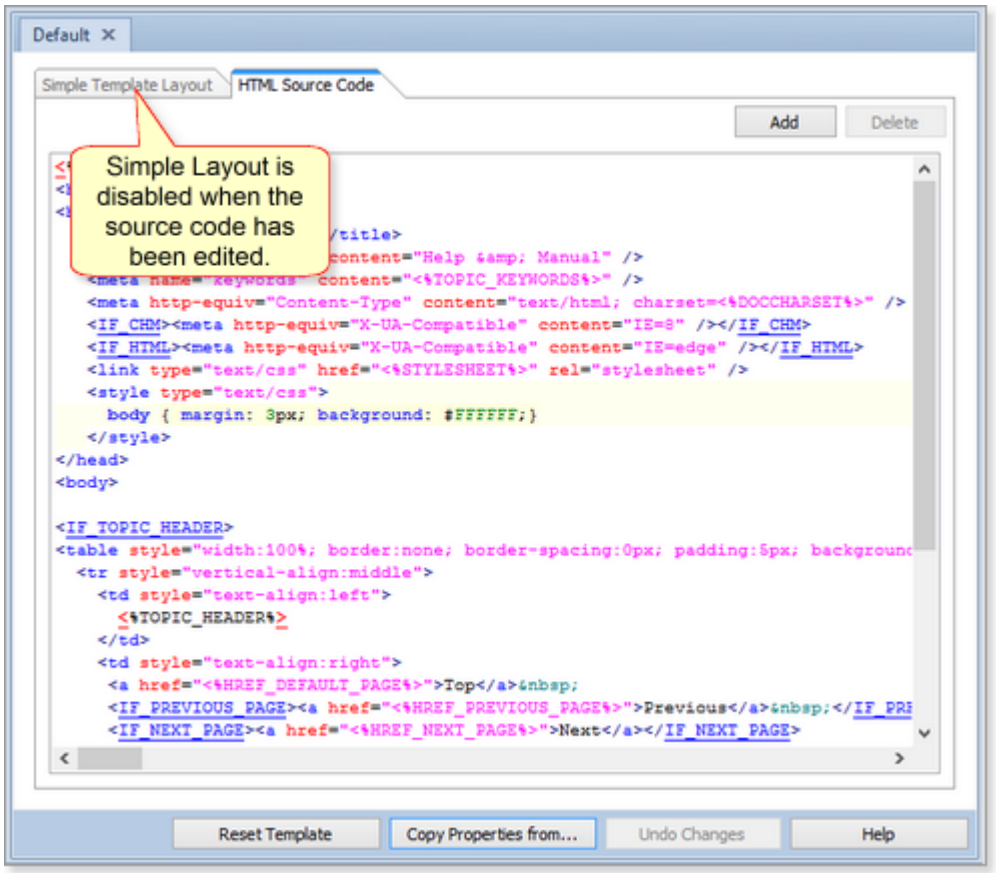
Everything you enter in this box is inserted at the bottom of every topic, after your topic text. Effectively, this adds a footer to your topics. This text is only shown in your output, not in the Help+Manual editor.

Here too, you can enter HTML tags here to format the text, including references to images.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

HTML Source Code tab

This tab gives you full access to the HTML code of the template file. Editing HTML templates directly requires experience with editing HTML code. If you are just getting started with Help+Manual it is advisable to only use the Simple Template Layout tab. This allows you to use the default template while you are getting used to the program.



For full details on all the settings in this section see HTML Page Templates 1413 in the Reference section.

Structure of topic page templates

Topic content:

The most important thing to know about topic page templates is that your final HTML pages are made by combining code of the template with the contents of the topics edited in Help+Manual. In HTML terms, the content from the editor is everything between the <body> and </body> tags, the HTML template provides everything else.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The content of your topic is inserted in the template at publish time by the variable <% TOPIC_TEXT%> in the template. When you publish, the HTML page is created by replacing this variable in the template with the content of the current topic.

The topic header:

The topic header is also generated by the template. It is created by the code between the <IF_TOPIC_HEADER> and </IF_TOPIC_HEADER> conditions. (These condition tags are always stripped out before your project is published. The output code contains no proprietary tags.)

You can add material to the header on every topic page by adding text, links images etc. between these condition tags. The contents of the header box from the editor is inserted with the variable <%TOPIC_HEADER%>.

Creating "headers" and "footers":

You can create "headers" and "footers" in the body of your topic by editing the HTML template and adding material above and below the <%TOPIC_TEXT%> variable. Everything above this variable will be a header, everything below it will be a footer. This can also be done in the Simple Template Layout tab, which provides text entry boxes for this purpose.

Breadcrumb trail navigation links

The <%TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS%> variable can be used to create a "breadcrumb trail" of navigation links to the topics above the current topic in the TOC tree. This can be useful for showing the user where they are.

For example, if the current topic is *The Editor* in the sequence *Introduction* > *About the Program* > *User Interface* > *The Editor,* inserting the <%TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS%> variable would create this series of links in your output (note that the current topic is not included):

Introduction > About the Program > User Interface

The links are active, i.e. clicking on them will take the user to the referenced topics. For example, this feature is used to create the breadcrumb trail of links above the headers in the HTML Help and WebHelp versions of this help.

How to insert a breadcrumb trail:

These instructions show you how to insert a breadcrumb trail at the top of the topic text, directly below the header.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Select the *Default* template in **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** and locate the following code:

```
<!-- Placeholder for topic body. -->
<table width="100%" border="0" cellspacing="0" cellpadding="5">
<tr valign="top"><td align="left">
<%TOPIC_TEXT%>
</td></tr></table>
```

2. Add the following code (highlighted in blue):

```
<!-- Placeholder for topic body. -->
<table width="100%" border="0" cellspacing="0" cellpadding="5">
<tr valign="top"><td align="left">
<IF_TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS><p style="font-size: 8pt; margin-bottom: 15px">
<%TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS%> &gt; <%TOPIC_TITLE%></p></IF_TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS>
<%TOPIC_TEXT%>
</td></tr></table>
```

The <IF_TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS> condition ensures that the trail is only inserted where it is relevant. (The breadcrumbs variable is empty in top-level topics and in all topics in the Invisible Topics section.)

If you want you can also use <IFNOT_TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS> to insert alternative content to be displayed in top-level topics.

Note that the title of the current topic is not included in the <%TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS%> variable because it may not be needed if the topic title is visible directly above the breadcrumb trail. In our example we have included the current topic title with the <%TOPIC_TITLE%> variable to show how it is done. (The > code inserts the > character, which could otherwise be misinterpreted by some browsers.)

For more details on variables and output conditions in HTML templates see HTML template variables 1569 and HTML template output conditions 1577.

Breadcrumb trail without active links:

If you need to create a breadcrumb trail without active links you can do this with the <%TOPIC_TITLE_PATH%> variable. This is almost the same as the breadcrumbs variable but it creates no links and also includes the title of the current topic. See HTML Template Variables 1569 for details.

Navigation links to parent chapter

Have you tried clicking the green "home" button in the header of this help? Instead of taking the user rigidly to the default page of the help it automatically links to the parent chapter of the current topic, if there is one. If the current topic doesn't have a parent chapter (for example if its top chapter is a chapter without text) the link will automatically take the user to the project's default topic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can do this with the variable <%HREF_PARENT_CHAPTER%> 1569. Just use this variable instead of the <%HREF_DEFAULT_PAGE%> variable in your topic page template. Everything is automatic – when you publish the correct links are generated automatically to the parent chapter or the default topic, depending on whether a parent chapter is available or not.

See also:

Editing HTML templates 1030
Script and CSS components for experts 1063
HTML template variables 1569
HTML template output conditions 1577
Variables 1049
Conditional output 1052
Help Windows 1609

7.6.5 The Layout template for WebHelp

The layout template is usually the source code of the main `index.html` file for your WebHelp. It defines the traditional frameset (*Classic* layout options for legacy WebHelp) or modern iFrames (*Integrated* option) into which the topic and navigation pages are loaded. Basically it only provides the external framework and tells the browser which files to load into which frames. This means that you should not normally have any reason to edit it.

If you choose the *No Frames* option this template is not used at all. Then, the table of contents 1044 page is used as the main `index.html` file.

This template is highly specialized and should only be edited if you have advanced HTML editing skills. It is essential for the proper functioning of the entire navigation system in WebHelp and editing errors you make here can easily make your help unusable.

See Editing HTML templates 1030 for details on how to edit templates and Script and CSS components for experts 1063 for more details on the content of the template.

Template location

Configuration > Publishing Options > WebHelp > Layout

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

See also:

Editing HTML templates 1030
HTML template variables 1569
HTML template output conditions 1577
Variables 1049
Conditional output 1052
Script and CSS components for experts 1063

7.6.6 The TOC template for WebHelp

This HTML template is only used in WebHelp. It generates the Table of Contents (TOC) pane in the frame layout that emulates the appearance and functionality of the HTML Help viewer in a normal browser.

Be particularly careful when editing this template! The TOC template is an integral part of the dynamic TOC of your WebHelp output. Its code is essential for the proper functioning of the help.

When you publish the actual table of contents for your project is inserted in the TOC page by the <%TABLE_OF_CONTENTS%> variable.

See Editing HTML templates 1030 for details on how to edit templates and Script and CSS components for experts 1063 for more details on its contents.

Template location

Configuration > Publishing Options > WebHelp > Table of Contents

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to We-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

bHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Script links for expanding and collapsing the TOC

You can use the following code to create links that will allow the user to expand and collapse the entire TOC with a single click:

In the TOC or topic page template pages:

```
<a href="javascript:parent.fullexpand()">Expand the TOC</a>
<a href="javascript:parent.fullcollapse()">Collapse the TOC</a>
```

In the main layout template page, or in the TOC page if "No Frames" is selected:

```
<a href="javascript:fullexpand()">Expand the TOC</a>
<a href="javascript:fullcollapse()">Collapse the TOC</a>
```

See also:

Editing HTML templates 1030
Variables 1049
Conditional output 1052
Help Windows 1609
Script and CSS components for experts 1063

7.6.7 The Keyword Index template for WebHelp

This HTML template is only used for WebHelp. It generates the keyword index pane within the frame layout that emulates the appearance and functionality of the HTML Help viewer in a normal browser.

The keyword index template is an integral part of the help viewer generated by Help+Manual for WebHelp. Its code is essential for the proper functioning of the index. Please be extremely

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

careful when you are editing this template. If you don't understand what a piece of code is for it's better to leave it alone!

When you publish the actual keyword index is inserted in the Index page by the <% KEYWORD_INDEX%> variable.

See Editing HTML templates 1030 for details on how to edit templates and Script and CSS components for experts 1063 for more information on the contents of the template.

Template location

Configuration > Publishing Options > WebHelp > Full Text Search

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

See also:

Editing HTML templates 1030
Variables in HTML templates 1049
Conditional output in HTML templates 1052
Script and CSS components for experts 1063

7.6.8 The Search template for WebHelp

This HTML template is only used in WebHelp and is only active if you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual, which include a bundled, royalty-free license for the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Wrensoft Zoom web search engine necessary for full-text search in WebHelp. It generates the Search pane in the frame layout that emulates the appearance and functionality of the HTML Help viewer in a normal browser.

The Search template is an integral part of the full-text search function in the WebHelp output. Its code is essential for the proper functioning of the search function. Please be extremely careful when you are editing this template – if you don't understand what a piece of code is for it's better to leave it alone!

The standard search script is inserted in the Search page by the <%SEARCH_SCRIPT%> variable. You can't edit this script but you can configure all the text used in the script and other features. See Full Text Search 1428 in the reference section for details on the configuration options for Search.

See Editing HTML templates 1030 for details on how to edit templates and Script and CSS components for experts 1063 for more information on the template contents.

Template location

Configuration > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Full Text Search**

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

See also:

Editing HTML templates 1030

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Script and CSS components for experts 1063
Variables 1049
Conditional output 1052
Help Windows 1609

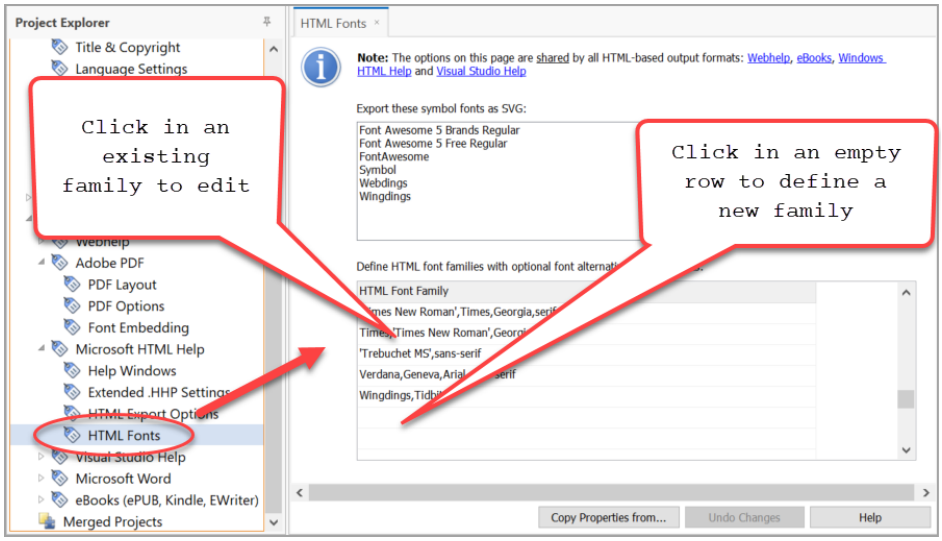
7.6.9 HTML font families and headings

Defining font families for HTML output formats

The fonts you define may not always be present on the user's system or may be restricted by some browsers. To avoid just getting the browser's default font you can define font "families" for the fonts you use. This is a list of alternative fonts that the browser will use instead of your chosen font if it is not available.

The font families settings

The settings for this are in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Fonts**. The same settings are available in the section for Microsoft HTML Help. The fonts you define are global and are used in all HTML output formats (WebHelp, CHM, eWriter, Kindle, ePub and Visual Studio Help).



How to define font families

Help+Manual already has families defined for most common fonts. You can edit the existing families by clicking in the entry. To add a new family just scroll down to the bottom of the list and click in the first empty row.

Rules for font families

- The first entry is the name of the font you are defining the family for.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Insert a comma after each font name that is followed by another font name.
- All font names that contain spaces **must** be enclosed in **single** quotes.
- The browser will choose the **first** alternative font in the list that is available, so define the family in order of preference.
- Always insert a standard, web-safe font as the last option if you are using fonts that may not be available.

Generating H1 .. H6 styles for WebHelp

When you are targeting WebHelp you want the main headings in your topics to use the standard HTML H1 through H6 heading styles so that search engines like Google will automatically identify the important subjects in your topics. You can achieve this by using Help+Manual's **`Heading1...Heading6`** style naming convention.

Styles called Heading1 ... Heading6 are exported as H1 .. H6 in HTML

- Getting this to work is simple. Just use styles called **`Heading1`** through **`Heading6`** for the headings in your topics that you want to export as **`H1`** through **`H6`** in your HTML output.
- The **`Heading1`** style is a predefined standard style that is automatically used for the text in your topic headers by Help+Manual, so the titles of your topics are always automatically exported as H1 styles in HTML.
- To use **`H2`** through **`H6`** headings just define additional styles called **`Heading2`** through **`Heading6`** and use them for your sub-headings in your topics. They will then be exported as **`H2`** through **`H6`**.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273

7.6.10 Variables in HTML templates

You can use all global predefined variables and user-defined variables in all HTML templates. In addition to this there are a number of special HTML template variables, which are only relevant in HTML templates.

User-defined variables from your projects and skins are exported to a JavaScript object for reference in your scripts. See below for details.

In addition to these variables you can also use predefined and user-defined conditional switches to include or exclude content on the basis of conditions. This is particularly useful for variables, which are often only relevant in certain contexts. For details see Conditional output in HTML templates 1052.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Key Information
When you are using a skin 1010 remember that variables can be stored either in your project or in the skin. However, if you create variables with the same name in both the project and the skin, the value defined in the skin will be used.

Variables reference

More information on the variables and conditions that you can use in HTML templates can be found in the following locations:

- List of global predefined variables 1561
- List of HTML template variables 1569
- Creating user-defined variables 919
- List of HTML template output conditions 1577

How to use user-defined variables in HTML templates

You can use all your user-defined variables in HTML templates, including HTML variables for inserting HTML code. Just type in the variable in the position where you want to use it in the standard format, complete with the opening **<%** tag and the closing **%>** tag.

Example:

```
...
<br /><br />
</IF_TOPIC_HEADER>
<br /><hr />
By: <%HELPAUTHOR%>
<br /><hr />
<%TOPIC_TEXT%>
</body>
</html>
```

The above example inserts the contents of the user-defined variable between horizontal rules above the topic text on every page.

User-defined variables in your own scripts

In WebHelp, all your user-defined variables are exported as JavaScript variables in a **.js** file called **hmvariables.js**. This file combines both the user variables defined in your project and those defined in your WebHelp skin, if you are using one. If the same variable is defined both in your project and your skin the definition in the skin takes precedence and gets exported to the **.js** file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can make these variables available for use in your scripts in your templates by loading this file prior to referencing the variables, like this:

```
<script src="hmvariables.js"></script>
```

The variables are stored in an object called **hmConfigVariables** and the variables themselves are stored in all upper case. So if you have a variable called PROJECTVERSION you would reference it as:

```
hmConfigVariables.PROJECTVERSION
```

The values are always strings. If you want to use the values as numbers, Boolean values etc. you need to convert them before using them.

How to use predefined variables in HTML templates

You can use both the global variables and the special HTML template variables. They are used just in the same way as user-defined variables. Just type them into the template in the position where you want to use them. Always type the variables *exactly* as shown in the variable lists, complete with the opening **<%** tag and the closing **%>** tag.

Example:

```
...
<%TOPIC_TEXT%>
<IF_HTML>
<br><br><hr><center>Page URL:
<a href="http://www.domain.com/help/index.html?
<%HREF_CURRENT_PAGE%>" target="top">http://www.domain.com/help/index.html?
<%HREF_CURRENT_PAGE%></a></center>
</IF_HTML>
...
```

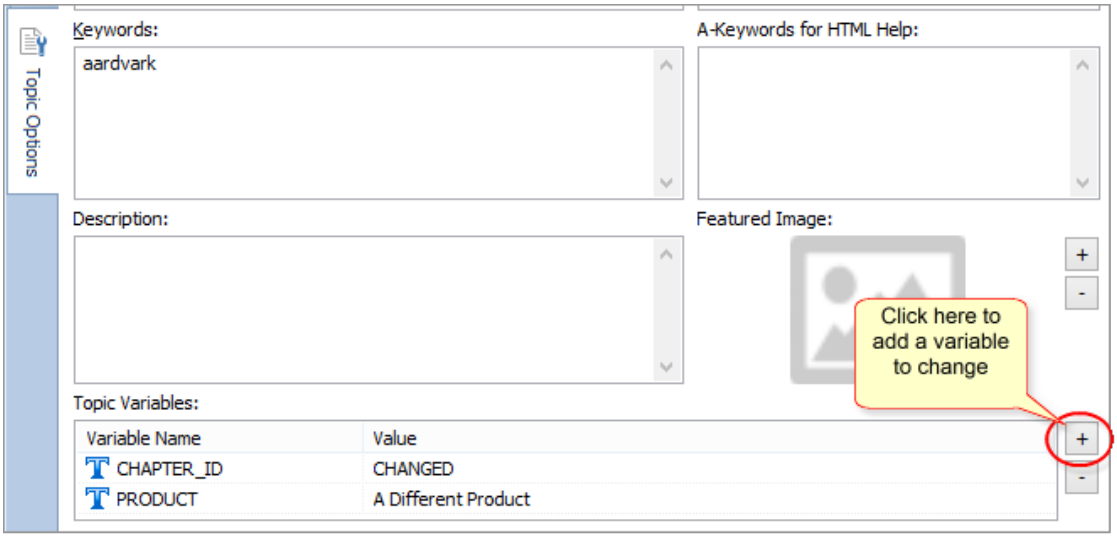
The above example inserts the web URL of the current page at the bottom of every topic page in WebHelp. (This makes it easy for support staff to give users the address of specific help topics in the online version of your help.)

Using editable variables in HTML templates

You can redefine both global and user variables in individual topics, by assigning a new value to the variable for the topic in Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. This is particularly useful for HTML templates because it enables you to insert individual code and text in your templates for on a per-topic basis. For example, you can reference different versions of JavaScript files in individual topics or insert individual texts in the head section of the page for search engine optimization.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Use your user-defined or global variables normally in your HTML template. (This is particularly useful for HTML variables!).
2. Select the topic where you want the variable to have a different value. Select the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window and add the variable and its new value in the Topic Variables section.



See The power of editable variables 963 for more detailed instructions.

See also:

Editing HTML templates 1030
Global predefined variables 1561 (reference list)
HTML template variables 1569 (reference list)
Conditional output in HTML templates 1052
The power of editable variables 963

7.6.11 Conditional output in HTML templates

You can use all of Help+Manual's standard conditional output options in HTML templates, both your user-defined include options 988 and options based on the current output format. In addition to this there are a few special conditional switches which are only for use in WebHelp output, because they are only relevant there. See the lists below for details.

These conditions are used to enclose blocks of HTML code in your template that you want to include in the output only if the condition is fulfilled. The condition tags themselves are never included in your output code, they are always stripped from the code before publishing.

Conditions based on the output format are only relevant in the HTML topic page templates 1036 which are used in HTML Help, WebHelp, Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks and Visual Studio Help. The TOC, search and keyword index templates are only used in WebHelp so it does not make sense to use format-based conditions there since the output format is always WebHelp.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Conditional output reference

For more information on the available output conditions, variables and how to use them see the following topics:

- List of HTML template output conditions 1577
- Defining your own include options 988
- List of global predefined variables 1561
- List of HTML template variables 1569
- Creating user-defined variables 919

Template conditional tags are hard-wired to the output format

Conditional tags in HTML templates look very similar to the conditions you use for content in your project. However, there is one very important difference: In templates, the true/false status of the conditions is hard-wired to the output format and cannot be changed.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

In the Publish screen you can include content tagged for other output formats than the one you are currently publishing to by activating the checkboxes for those formats manually. This has no effect on the conditional tags in your templates, however. This is very important, because in templates you will often want to exclude code that would cause errors in some output formats. If this wasn't the case, including content tagged for WebHelp in a CHM file the Publish screen could cause serious errors if that also included template code tagged exclusively for WebHelp in a CHM file.

How to use include options in HTML templates

Like most HTML tags each condition has an opening tag and a corresponding closing tag, using the same **</** syntax to identify the closing tag as all regular tags. Simply enclose the code you want to include conditionally between the two tags.

Note that the ELSE condition is not available in HTML templates.

Examples:

```
<IF_TOPIC_HEADER>
<font size="3">This text only appears in the topic if the topic has a
<b>header</b>.<br><br>
It will not be included in popup topics, which never have a header, or in topics
assigned
help window types defined without a header.</font>
</IF_TOPIC_HEADER>

<IFNOT_PREVIOUS_PAGE>This text will only be displayed in
the very first topic in your help.</IFNOT_PREVIOUS_PAGE>

<IF_NEXT_PAGE>
<a href="<%HREF_NEXT_PAGE%>">Click here to jump to the next topic</a>
</IF_NEXT_PAGE>
```

The last example only displays the link if there is a next topic to jump to.

How to use user-defined conditions

Basically this is exactly the same as using the predefined include options, you just have to use the following syntax rules to create your conditional switches from the names of your include options in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > Custom Builds 1410:

Syntax:

Opening tag:	< + IF_ + OPTION + >
Closing tag:	</ + IF_ + OPTION + >
NOT version:	< + IFNOT_ + OPTION + >

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

NOT closing tag: `</ + IFNOT_ + OPTION + >`

Examples:

This example shows how to use the user-defined include options ALPHABUILD and BETABUILD:

```
<IF_ALPHABUILD>
This text will be included if ALPHABUILD is selected in the Include Options in
the
Make Help File & Run dialog.
</IF_ALPHABUILD>
<IFNOT_BETABUILD>
This text will be excluded if BETABUILD is selected in the Include Options in
the
Make Help File & Run dialog.
</IFNOT_BETABUILD>
```

Using multiple conditions with OR or AND logic in HTML templates

If you want to allow for multiple conditions with OR or AND logic in your HTML templates you can do this as well.

Multiple conditions with AND logic

If you want to include content in a template only if multiple conditions are all true, you just need to nest the condition tags. Then the content inside the conditions will only be included if all the tags in the nesting chain are true. For example, suppose you want to include some code only if the output is a CHM file and the user-defined option CLIENT1 are both true:

```
<IF_CHM><IF_CLIENT1>
This text will only be included if both CHM and CLIENT1 are true.
</IF_CLIENT1></IF_CHM>
```

The order is irrelevant, but you must be careful not to "cross" the end tags. In the example above, both CLIENT1 tags must be inside the CHM tags.

Multiple conditions with OR logic

If you want to include content in a template if any one of multiple conditions is true you can include multiple conditions inside a single tag, separated by the | character.

Important:
Note that this does not work with **IFNOT** conditions, only with **IF** conditions!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
<IF_CHM|HTML|CLIENT1>
This text will be included if any one or more of the 3 conditions is true.
</IF_CHM|HTML|CLIENT1>
```

Here too, the order is irrelevant, but you should use the same order in the start and end tags.

See also:

HTML template output conditions 1577 (reference list)
Editing HTML templates 1030
Variables in HTML templates 1049

7.6.12 Graphics references in HTML templates

You can reference external graphics in HTML templates. Help+Manual parses the template code for image references and automatically includes the graphics in your output.

In addition to this you can also embed graphics in your project by adding them to the Baggage Files. 1119 Baggage graphics are always exported automatically when you publish and they can be referenced without any path information in all HTML-based output formats. See below for details.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Supported graphics types and how to reference them

Graphics types:

You can use any image types supported in HTML pages. This will generally be JPG, GIF, PNG and SVG images. Note that SVG images have restrictions in the CHM format. See here for details 498.

Referencing graphics stored in your project folder and search path:

Graphics files stored in your project folder and in folders listed in your project search path 1405 can be referenced in the supported tags (see below) without any path information, like this:

```
<img src="logo23.jpg" width="200" height="42" />
```

The files will be located and exported with your published output automatically.

Referencing graphics with other tags:

If you use other tags to reference your graphics you must add the graphics to your Baggage Files or copy them to your output folder manually to ensure that they are exported (see below).

Referencing graphics stored in other locations:

If your graphics files are stored elsewhere you must include an absolute or relative path to the current location of the graphics files in your template code. Here too, this feature is only supported for certain tags (see further below on this page for details). For example:

```
<img src="../source files/graphics/logo23.jpg" width="200"
height="42" />
```

If you use absolute paths it is advisable to use UNC path syntax, for example:

```
<img src="\\?\C:\Users\Robert\Desktop\Source Images\image7.jpg" />
<img src="\\MainServer\HelpStuff\Graphics\image10.jpg" />
```

When you publish Help+Manual will locate the files using the path you enter and then strip the path in the published files and export the files with your output. The resulting code in the three examples above would look like this:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
<img src="logo23.jpg" width="200" height="42" />
<img src="image7.jpg" />
<img src="\image10.jpg" />
```

Where to store your source graphics files:

If you store the referenced external graphic files in the project directory (i.e. in the same directory as the **.hmxz** or **.hmxp** project file) or reference the files with paths to their location at publish time in your code they will be exported automatically. Alternatively you can add the files to your project's Baggage Files – see below for instructions.

Supported HTML image reference tags

Images referenced in your templates and stored in your project folder will only be found and exported automatically when they are referenced in the HTML tags listed below.

All other image tags and attributes are ignored. If you reference graphics in your templates in any other way you should add the images to the Baggage Files (see below) or copy them to your output folder manually to ensure that they will be exported. This also includes the variant images for mouseover buttons as they are not referenced with the tags listed above!

Automatically Parsed Tags	Supported Attributes
<body>	Images referenced with the background="" attribute. ***OR*** Images referenced within the style="" attribute using the syntax **style="background: #FFFFFF url(image.jpg)"** (this can be combined with other style elements, of course)
<img>	Images referenced with the src="" attribute
<table>	Images referenced with the background="" attribute ***OR*** Images referenced within the style="" attribute using the syntax **style="background: #FFFFFF url(image.jpg)"**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

(this can be combined with other style elements, of course)

Adding graphics to your project's Baggage Files

The easiest way to ensure that graphics files and other files referenced in your HTML templates are located and exported correctly is to add them to your project's "Baggage" in **Project Files** > **Baggage Files** in the Project Explorer. Then you can use any tag references you like and you don't need to worry about whether the files will be exported and integrated in your output.

All files in the Baggage Files section are integrated in your project automatically and can be referenced in your template code without any path information.

See Using Baggage Files 1119 for more information and instructions.

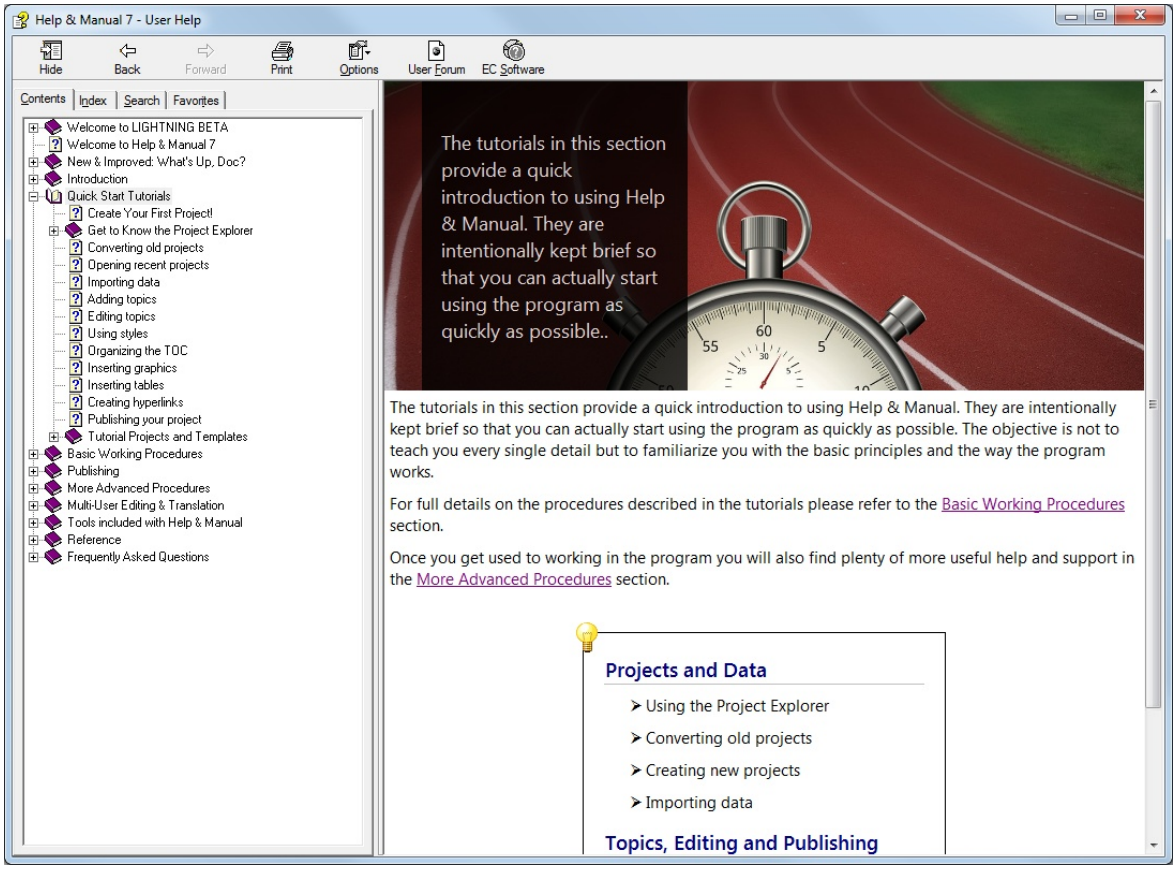
See also:

Graphics in HTML templates 1613 (Reference)
Editing HTML templates 1030
Variables in HTML templates 1049
Conditional output in HTML templates 1052
Using Baggage Files 1119

7.6.13 Featured images for chapter titles

The *Featured Image* and *Description* settings in the Topic Options tab associate individual graphic images and descriptions with any topic. You can reference the description text and the image with variables in your HTML page templates to display the description text and the image together with the topic content. For example, you can display a title image with an overlaid description as used in Help+Manual's own online help, as shown below:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



The featured image and description are used to replace the topic heading in the main top-level chapters

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Variables and include conditions for description and featured image

You insert and control the description and images with two variables and one pair of include conditions:

<%TOPIC_PICTURE%>	This inserts the file name of the topic image for the current topic so that you can display it in your template. You use it in an image tag, like this: `<img src="<%TOPIC_PICTURE%>"/>` Image file names must be HTML-compatible! No spaces, accented characters, non-ASCII characters or non-alphanumeric characters allowed! The associated image is exported automatically. You don't need to add any path information, because the image is always accessible directly with its name.
<%TOPIC_DESCRIPTION%>:	Inserts the topic description text as plain text. When you are inserting it in a template you will need to include it in an appropriate HTML tag, for example a paragraph tag: `<p><%TOPIC_DESCRIPTION%></p>`

<IF_TOPIC_PICTURE> ... </IF_TOPIC_PICTURE>
 	
<IFNOT_TOPIC_PICTURE> ... </IFNOT_TOPIC_PICTURE>
	These conditions make it possible to include or exclude HTML template content based on whether the current topic has an associated featured image. For example, you will usually only want to use title images for top-level chapters, and the normal topic header in normal topics with no associated images.
	`<IF_TOPIC_PICTURE>`
	`Code for the title image version goes here...`
	`</IF_TOPIC_PICTURE><IFNOT_TOPIC_PICTURE>`
	`Code for the normal header version goes here....`

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	</IFNOT_TOPIC_PICTURE>

7.6.14 Referencing external files

With the exception of a limited number of graphics references 1056, external files you reference in your template code are not automatically exported with your project because Help+Manual does not know about them. There are two ways to solve this problem:

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Add the files to your project's Baggage

The easiest way to ensure that graphics files and other files referenced in your HTML templates are located and exported correctly is to add them to your project's "Baggage" in **Project Files** > **Baggage Files** in the Project Explorer. Then you can use any tag references you like and you don't need to worry about whether the files will be exported and integrated in your output.

All files in the Baggage Files section are integrated in your project automatically and can be referenced in your template code without any path information.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See Using Baggage Files 1119 for more information and instructions.

Manually integrate the files in your output

In WebHelp you must manually copy the files to your output directory if you have not added them to the Baggage (see above). The only exception to this are image files referenced in supported tags, 1056 which are exported automatically.

In HTML Help you need to tell the compiler to include the files in the CHM file. Proceed as follows:

1. Copy the external file(s) to your project directory (the directory containing your **.hmxz** or **.hmxp** project file).
2. In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > **Extended .HHP Settings** 1457.
3. In the *Additional Settings* editing box add the following entries:

```
[FILES]
..\functions.js
..\updatelist.txt
```

Don't add a second [FILES] header if one already exists. Enter each external filename on its own line below the [FILES] header and precede it with the **..** relative path reference. This relative path reference is necessary because the project is published from a temporary subdirectory in the project directory, so files in the project directory are one level up. If your files are stored elsewhere you need to adjust the path accordingly.

See also:

Using Baggage Files 1119

7.6.15 Script and CSS components for experts

This topic is only relevant for users with extensive HTML, CSS and JavaScript coding experience. It explains how the standard script and other references are managed in the various templates and how you can manipulate them for your own needs.

Key Information
Note that all these instructions also apply for templates in skin files 638. Skins contain the same templates as normal projects, in the same locations.

Script components used in the templates

Help+Manual uses the jQuery JavaScript framework in CHM and WebHelp output for more efficient JavaScript coding and effects. The compressed version of the latest jQuery

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

script file is exported and referenced automatically in the templates. There are also additional CSS script files included by Help+Manual for layout and dynamic functions. If you are familiar with HTML, CSS and JavaScript coding, you can change the positions of the references to these files, leave them out entirely or write your own modified versions of the style definitions and functions they contain.

Which HTML templates are used where and when...

The WebHelp Layout template contents depend on the layout option chosen

The contents of the layout template change depending on whether you choose "*Integrated*", "*Classic 2 Frames*" or "*Classic 3 Frames*" in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Layout**. In the Integrated version, HTML5 is used and the topic and navigation pages are loaded in modern iFrames. The Classic versions use a traditional frameset (now deprecated) and load the topic and navigation pages into conventional frames. The same JavaScript files are used in all three versions, however.

The "No Frames" option disables the Layout template

The layout template is not used at all if you choose the "*No Frames*" option. Then the Table of Contents template is set as the main `index.html` file and the contents of the layout template are irrelevant for your output because the template is not present.

HTML Topic Page templates are (almost) always used.

The topic page templates in **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** are used by almost all HTML-based output formats (CHM, WebHelp, eWriter Help and Visual Studio Help 2008 and 2010).

Exception: ePUB and Kindle/Mobi
The ePUB and Kindle/Mobi eBook formats us a special template stored in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eBooks** > **ePUB + Kindle: Page Template**. This template can also be edited there, but please only change it if you are familiar with the eBook specifications.

The WebHelp Table of Contents, Index and Search templates

The contents of the WebHelp Table of Contents, Index and Search templates define three separate pages for these functions. They are loaded into the navigation frame in WebHelp and eWriter Help when they are displayed. Some skins load them in the background so that they are always present and can be switched to without reloading.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Templates in the "No Frames" Layout Option

If you choose the "*No Frames*" option, the Layout template is disabled and is not used. Instead, the TOC template is used as the main `index.html` file.

Switches: Turn off inline CSS in the TOC, disable UI redirect script, export keyword index as list box

There are some additional special switches and options you can use to get more control over your HTML output in WebHelp.

Turn off inline CSS in the TOC
Normally, Help+Manual writes a certain amount of inline CSS style code in the TOC elements so that our own scripts can manage the functionality of the TOC better. However, you can turn this off completely if you want full control over the TOC formatting for your own purposes.

To do this you just need to insert the following special comment anywhere in the <head> section of the TOC template 1044 page:

<!--HM_NO_INLINE_CSS-->

Insert it exactly as shown above, with no spaces and on a single line of its own. This will export the entire TOC tree without any inline CSS styling.

Redirect topics to full WebHelp UI

Redirecting topics to the full WebHelp user interface

Search engines will usually only link to WebHelp topics by the topic name, instead of using the full **`index.html?topic.htm`** syntax. You can activate an automatic redirect to show the full WebHelp user interface when this happens. Open your project (if you are not using a skin) or the **`.hmskin`** skin file (if you are using a skin) in Help+Manual. Then in the Project Explorer on the left go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Navigation**. Locate the option "*When a topic is loaded outside the navigation frame, force it to reload the navigation frame*" and turn it ON.

Google will not index WebHelp using automatic redirects from the topic to the full WebHelp UI

In the past, Help+Manual automatically activated this option. Unfortunately, Google now interprets redirects like this as "duplicate content" and does not index any of the WebHelp topic pages on a site that does this. This option is now turned off by default and you should not activate it if you want to be indexed by Google.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Alternative option in standard and Premium Pack skins

The standard WebHelp skins included with Help+Manual and the Premium Pack skins now have a solution for this problem. When a page is opened on its own an automatic link above the topic header is shown that the user can click on to open the full user interface. This does not trigger the problem with Google.

Export the keyword index as a list box

Normally the keyword index is exported as a combination of and <table> elements and the formatting is handled automatically by Help+Manual. If you want to control it entirely yourself you can insert a switch that will tell Help+Manual to export the keyword index as a list box (<select> element with <option> elements). Note that when you do this you must also provide your own JavaScript and CSS code for managing the index! On its own, the list box is as dead as a doornail!

To do this you just need to insert the following special comment anywhere in the <head> section of the Keyword Index 1045 template page:

```
<!--HM_KEYWORD_INDEX_AS_LIST-->
```

Insert it exactly as shown above, with no spaces and on a single line of its own. This will export the keyword index and its contents as a list box that you can style and manage as you like.

Script and CSS components in the WebHelp Layout template (for index.html)

The template in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Layout** defines the main **index.html** file in your WebHelp output if you are using one of the integrated layout options. If you choose the *No Frames* option the Table of Contents template is used for the main **index.html** file and the contents of the Layout template are not used at all. This template is then not relevant.

CSS components:

The CSS stylesheet generated from the styles defined in your project is referenced in the Layout template with this line of code:

```
<link type="text/css" href="<%STYLESHEET%>" rel="stylesheet" />
```

This reference is not strictly required in the layout template and you may be able to remove it if none of your project styles are referenced in the template. If you want to redefine or extend any styles referenced there simply place an include for your own stylesheet or your own inline style code directly after this reference. Store your .css

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

stylesheet file in the Baggage Files 1119 section of your project, then it will be exported automatically.

In addition to this there is inline CSS code for the components of the layout file itself. You can edit this if you want, but the results are entirely your responsibility.

Referenced script files:

The following three files are referenced in index.html file.

jquery.js	The jQuery script file containing all the jQuery functions.
helpman_settings.js:	Settings and configuration variables used by Help+Manual's scripts.
helpman_navigation.js	Functions used in the main layout page for the table of contents and dynamic layout features.

Changing the positions of the main script files

The three script files (**`jquery.js`**, **`helpman_settings.js`** and **`helpman_navigation.js`**) can be inserted as a block using the following special script include with the <%NAVIGATION_SCRIPT%> variable for the source .

```
<script type="text/javascript" src="<%NAVIGATION_SCRIPT%>"></script>
```

To control the position of all three files together just place the above line in the place where you want them to appear. If you want to control them individually do not use the above line or the <%NAVIGATION_SCRIPT%> variable. Instead, add the lines individually in the places where you want them to appear.

```
<script type="text/javascript" src="jquery.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="helpman_settings.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="helpman_navigation.js"></script>
```

If you don't use the <%NAVIGATION_SCRIPT%> variable Help+Manual will not insert any of these lines automatically. So you can exclude any of the files in this template by not using the variable and leaving out the include of the file you don't want to use.

Don't try to use both the <%NAVIGATION_SCRIPT%> variable and the explicit includes! If you do, you will get double entries!

Using your own version of jQuery

If you want to use a different version of jQuery for any reason, you can. Just save it in the Baggage Files section of your project and make sure that the file is called **`jquery.js`**,

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

then it will overwrite the version exported by Help+Manual. If you want you can also include your own version with a different name and reference it in your own include line.

Redefining functions in the scripts

If you want to redefine any of the functions in the existing scripts just define your own versions in scripts added inline or with includes after Help+Manual's own versions, referencing Help+Manual's scripts explicitly as shown above so that they come first. If you use a script file rather than inline code put it in your Baggage Files section, then it will be exported automatically.

Use the variable syntax without the "var" identifier (you're redefining functions that already exist!) to redefine any functions, like this:

```
functionName = function(arg1, arg2, ...) {
your code here...
}
```

Script and CSS components in the HTML topic page template

The template(s) (you can define multiple page templates 1037) in **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** define(s) the HTML pages into which the rendered contents of your topics are inserted when you publish your project to an HTML-based output format. This is CHM, WebHelp, EXE eBooks and Visual Studio Help 2008 and 2010 but not Apple iBooks/ePUB. The ePUB output uses a special hard-wired template that cannot be edited.

CSS components:

The CSS stylesheet generated from the styles defined in your project is referenced in the HTML topic page template with this line of code:

```
<link type="text/css" href="<%STYLESHEET%>" rel="stylesheet" />
```

This reference is essential for the proper formatting of your topic content as designed in the Help+Manual editor! If you want to redefine or extend any styles referenced there simply place an include for your own stylesheet or your own inline style code directly after this reference. Store your .css stylesheet file in the Baggage Files 1119 section of your project, then it will be exported automatically.

Referenced script files:

The following four files are referenced in topic page templates.

jquery.js	The jQuery script file containing all the jQuery functions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

helpman_settings.js:	Settings and configuration variables used by Help+Manual's scripts.
helpman_topicinit.js	Functions used to initialize the topic pages and provide additional functionality there.
highlight.js	This file is used by the Wrensoft Zoom full-text search engine for WebHelp to provide highlighting for the search results if you have activated highlighting. It is inserted and referenced automatically and you can't change its position. It should be considered to be hard-wired and off limits.

Changing the positions of the main script files

If the template does not already contain includes for the main script files (**`jquery.js`**, **`helpman_settings.js`** and **`helpman_topicinit.js`**) the include lines are inserted automatically. If you want to change the positions of the main script files you just need to insert the include lines in the template yourself in the position where you want them to appear. For example, you may want to make sure that the jQuery reference comes before some functions of your own that include jQuery:

```
<script type="text/javascript" src="jquery.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="helpman_settings.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="helpman_topicinit.js"></script>
```

If these includes appear anywhere in the <head> section Help+Manual will not insert its own versions.

Using your own version of jQuery

If you want to use a different version of jQuery for any reason, you can. Just save it in the Baggage Files section of your project and make sure that the file is called **`jquery.js`**, then it will overwrite the version exported by Help+Manual. Also, any include whose `src=` attribute starts with the characters "jquery" will also prevent Help+Manual from writing its own include line for jQuery, so if you want you can also include a version with a different name.

Redefining functions in the scripts

If you want to redefine any of the functions in the existing scripts just define your own versions in scripts added inline or with includes after Help+Manual's own versions, referencing Help+Manual's scripts explicitly as shown above so that they come first. If you use a script file rather than inline code put it in your Baggage Files section, then it will be exported automatically.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use the variable syntax without the "var" identifier (you're redefining functions that already exist!) to redefine any functions, like this:

```
functionName = function(arg1, arg2, ...) {
your code here...
}
```

Script and CSS components in the WebHelp TOC template

The template in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Table of Contents** defines the contents of the table of contents page in WebHelp.

Without frames, the TOC is the main page

This page is used in two different ways, depending on which layout option you choose in the Layout template. If you choose "*Integrated*" or "*Classic 2-Frame*" or "*Classic 3-Frame*" the TOC page is loaded into an iFrame or conventional frame in the main `index.html` page defined by the layout template. If you choose "No Frames" the layout template is not used and the TOC page is used as the main `index.html` page. The page contains script that checks whether it is in a frame or being opened on its own.

CSS components:

The CSS stylesheet generated from the styles defined in your project is referenced in the HTML topic page template with this line of code:

```
<link type="text/css" href="<%STYLESHEET%>" rel="stylesheet" />
```

This reference is not strictly required in the TOC template and you may be able to remove it if none of your project styles are referenced in the template. If you want to redefine or extend any styles referenced there simply place an include for your own stylesheet or your own inline style code directly after this reference. Store your .css stylesheet file in the Baggage Files 1119 section of your project, then it will be exported automatically.

Special CSS components for the TOC list:

The actual CSS that controls the layout of the TOC itself is only used in this page and it is thus inserted as inline code. The first lines simply define the text formatting of the text levels (six levels are defined – you should not normally need more than 4 levels in your TOC if you want your users to actually read your documentation). This is then followed by this extremely important block of code:

```
/* TOC LIST CSS */
#toc    { padding: 0; margin: 0; }
#toc li { margin-top: 2px; }
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
#toc ul { padding-left:0; }
/* TOC LIST CSS */
```

You can adjust the spacing and positioning of the individual entries in the TOC with padding and margin values in these CSS lines.

Referenced script files:

The TOC is a special case when it comes to script file references. In the frame-based layout options (*Integrated* and the *Classic* frame layouts) all the TOC manipulation is performed from the main layout page. There are calls to functions in the TOC, but they reference scripts in the parent layout page. There are thus no direct includes for the jQuery and other script files in this page.

If the TOC is opened on its own without the layout page (*No Frames* option, or the user opens the TOC directly) the initialization script in the TOC page identifies this and loads the following three scripts dynamically:

jquery.js	The jQuery script file containing all the jQuery functions.
helpman_settings.js:	Settings and configuration variables used by Help+Manual's scripts.
helpman_navigation.js	Functions used to initialize the topic pages and provide additional functionality there.

Loading the main script files yourself

If for any reason you want to reference any of the main script files yourself you can do this with standard includes entered in the template code:

```
<script type="text/javascript" src="jquery.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="helpman_settings.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="helpman_navigation.js"></script>
```

If you do this, Help+Manual will automatically remove the dynamic load options for the script files you reference from the code it generates. You are most likely to need to do this with jQuery, if you want to use your own jQuery functions within the TOC page, for which you will need an instance of jQuery inside the page's own namespace. But you may also want to have access to the variables in the settings file or force a specific position for the navigation file in the template code for cases where the TOC is loaded on its own.

Doing this will not interfere with the functioning of Help+Manual's own TOC code. If the parent layout page is present, the navigation functions in the layout page's instance of the script will still be used automatically.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using your own version of jQuery

If you want to use a different version of jQuery for any reason, you can. Just save it in the Baggage Files section of your project and make sure that the file is called **`jquery.js`**, then it will overwrite the version exported by Help+Manual. Also, any include whose `src=` attribute starts with the characters "jquery" will also prevent Help+Manual from writing its own dynamic load line for jQuery, so if you want you can also include a version with a different name.

Redefining functions in the scripts

If you want to redefine any of the functions in the existing scripts just define your own versions in scripts added inline or with includes after Help+Manual's own versions, referencing Help+Manual's scripts explicitly as shown above so that they come first. If you use a script file rather than inline code put it in your Baggage Files section, then it will be exported automatically.

Use the variable syntax without the "var" identifier (you're redefining functions that already exist!) to redefine any functions, like this:

```
functionName = function(arg1, arg2, ...) {
your code here...
}
```

Script components in the WebHelp Keyword Index template

The template in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Keyword Index** defines the contents of the Keyword Index pane file in your WebHelp output. If you are using the integrated layout option the page is loaded into the navigation pane iFrame when the user views the Index (or into the navigation pane frame if you are using one of the classic layouts).

CSS components:

The CSS stylesheet generated from the styles defined in your project is referenced in the HTML topic page template with this line of code:

```
<link type="text/css" href="<%STYLESHEET%>" rel="stylesheet" />
```

This reference is not strictly required in the index template and you may be able to remove it if none of your project styles are referenced in the template. If you want to redefine or extend any styles referenced there simply place an include for your own stylesheet or your own inline style code directly after this reference. Store your .css

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

stylesheet file in the Baggage Files 1119 section of your project, then it will be exported automatically.

In addition to this there is inline style code that defines how the components of the keyword index are displayed. You can edit these styles if you wish to achieve your own results.

Referenced script files:

The following two files are referenced in keyword index template.

jquery.js	The jQuery script file containing all the jQuery functions.
helpman_settings.js:	Settings and configuration variables used by Help+Manual's scripts.

Changing the positions of the script files

The script files (**jquery.js**, and **helpman_settings.js**) are inserted automatically at the end of the <head> section if they are not referenced explicitly in the template code. If you want to change the positions of the includes just add the following explicitly in the places where you want them to appear. Help+Manual will then not add them automatically.

```
<script type="text/javascript" src="jquery.js"></script>
<script type="text/javascript" src="helpman_settings.js"></script>
```

Using your own version of jQuery

If you want to use a different version of jQuery for any reason, you can. Just save it in the Baggage Files section of your project and make sure that the file is called **jquery.js**, then it will overwrite the version exported by Help+Manual. If you want you can also include your own version with a different name and reference it in your own include line. As long as the src= attribute begins with the characters "jquery" Help+Manual will identify it as a jQuery include.

Redefining functions in the scripts

If you want to redefine any of the functions in the existing scripts just define your own versions in scripts added inline or with includes after Help+Manual's own versions, referencing Help+Manual's scripts explicitly as shown above so that they come first. If you use a script file rather than inline code put it in your Baggage Files section, then it will be exported automatically.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use the variable syntax without the "var" identifier (the functions already exist!) to redefine existing functions, like this:

```
functionName = function(arg1, arg2, ...) {
your code here...
}
```

Script components in the WebHelp Full Text Search template

The template in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Full Text Search** defines the contents of the Full Text Search pane file in your WebHelp output. If you are using the integrated layout option the page is loaded into the navigation pane iFrame when the user views the Search (or into the navigation pane frame if you are using one of the classic layouts).

CSS Components:

The CSS stylesheet generated from the styles defined in your project is referenced in the HTML topic page template with this line of code:

```
<link type="text/css" href="<%STYLESHEET%>" rel="stylesheet" />
```

This reference is not strictly required in the search template and you may be able to remove it if none of your project styles are referenced in the template. If you want to redefine or extend any styles referenced there simply place an include for your own stylesheet or your own inline style code directly after this reference. Store your .css stylesheet file in the Baggage Files 1119 section of your project, then it will be exported automatically.

In addition to this there is inline style code that defines how the components of the search components are displayed. You can edit these styles if you wish to achieve your own results. Do so with care, because the search components are quite finicky.

Tip: If you find that you are unable to get line spacing to do what you want in the search components this is because the Wrensoft Zoom search engine is doing quite a bit of line spacing with hard <br /> tags. The only way to deal with this is to analyze the generated code with a tool like Firebug and use JavaScript to remove these hard breaks on the fly.

Referenced script files:

jQuery is not used by default in the Search page. Also, the entire "script" package is inserted by the <%SEARCH_SCRIPT%> variable and all its components should normally be in the same place. If you leave this variable out you must do everything manually. The following two files are referenced in keyword index template.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

zoom_search.js	The Wrensoft Zoom search engine script.
helpman_settings.js:	Settings and configuration variables used by Help+Manual's scripts (may also contain search settings).

Changing the position of the script files

Normally you would only change the position of the entire search script block by adjusting the position of the <%SEARCH_SCRIPT%> variable. If you want to leave it out for any reason you should study the normal output carefully and insert everything manually.

7.6.16 Troubleshooting

When you edit HTML templates manually Help+Manual does not verify the code in any way. You are entirely responsible for checking and testing the code you write. It is a always good idea to back up your template in an external text file before editing.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Back up your template before editing

You can always revert to the standard default template with the Reset Defaults button (see below), but you should make backups of working versions of your own edited templates before you make more changes. Reverting to the default template overwrites the entire template with the standard version – it does not return you to your own previous version.

Copy the entire contents of the template, paste it to an editor and save it in an external file. Then if anything goes wrong you can always paste the original version from the saved file back into the template editing window.

Test your output regularly

Sooner or later, editing your HTML templates will cause errors in your output. This cannot be avoided and it happens to the best of us.

If you make a lot of different changes before testing your output it can be very difficult to localize which change is causing the problem. To avoid this kind of frustration you should always make changes gradually, one step at a time. After each change, publish and test your output before proceeding to the next change. Then you will always know which change is causing the problem and it will be much easier to correct.

In WebHelp you can also edit your output files directly to avoid the publishing step. However, doing this can be a little tricky because you always need to remember to copy every change back into your project before proceeding.

If something goes wrong revert to the default template

You can always restore the default template. Just select *Reset* in the template editing screen.

However, this will completely replace your version of the template with the standard version, so you will also lose any earlier changes you may have made to it. If you have not already done so, make a backup of your own version before reverting to the default

See also:

Editing HTML templates 1030

7.7 Working with Style Repositories

Terminology Warning!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Don't confuse "style repositories" with the repositories used in version control systems 848!

A style repository is a special uncompressed Help+Manual project that you use to share stylesm snippets and to a certain extent also variables between multiple projects. This is an excellent way to ensure that your styles are standardized across multiple projects. It is also a good way to make sure that everyone uses the same standard formatting when you are working on a project in a team 1171.

Ideally, you should edit the styles for all the projects in the style repository, not in the individual projects. So if you only have individual projects with their own styles it is really more practical to work without a repository.

Professional and Floating license versions only

Please note that support for style repositories is only included in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. Style repositories are not available in the Basic version.

Differences between a style repository project and a normal project

A style repository is quite similar to a normal uncompressed HMXP project. The main difference is that it does not have a table of contents, because you never publish a repository project directly. It is a storage place for the text and paragraph styles used in other projects, allowing you to share the same set of styles between multiple projects.

Topic files in style repositories can be shared as snippets

A style repository can also contain topic files, which are available as snippets to all the projects that are linked to the repository. Since the snippets use the styles in the style repository, and the repository styles are available in all the projects using the repository, the formatting of the snippets is always correct. You don't need to worry about having matching styles in your own project, because the styles are already there.

Variables in style repositories are shared ONCE

If you define variables in your style repository they will also appear in the projects to which the repository is linked. However, the values of the variables are not dynamically linked, even if the styles are. The values of the variables in your projects will **NOT** update when their values are changed in the repository.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.7.1 Creating and using style repositories

You can create a style repository from any Help+Manual project. You just need to select *Save As...* in the File menu and then select *Save as Repository* as the project type to save. You need to save to an empty folder, just as you do for a normal uncompressed HMXP project. After saving you need to "register" the style repository with the Repository Manager, which makes it available for use in your projects.

> **Productivity Tip**
> The objective should be to edit your repository styles in the style repository, not in the projects linked to the style repository. This ensures consistency across all projects using the style repository.

The purpose of creating a style repository is primarily to have a standard set of paragraph and text styles that you can share between multiple projects. The style repository links and imports these styles to the projects where it is used, and you can update the styles for all the projects by editing the styles in the style repository.

Step 1: Create a style repository directly or from a project

You can create a style repository directly, or from a project. If you already have a project containing the styles and/or topics you want to use in the repository then it's easiest to create the repository from the project. Otherwise you can just create a new, empty repository.

Repository save location must be accessible to all authors

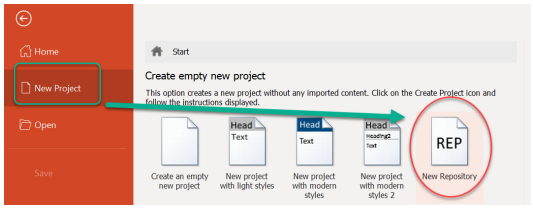
It's important to save the style repository directly to the location where you are going to use it, because the it is registered automatically when you save it. If you need to change the registration later you can do this with the Repository Manager (see further below).

The folder where you save the style repository should be accessible for all authors who are going to work on projects that will use the style repository, so you may want to save it on a network drive. The connection to the style repository is a "live" link. It is accessed actively while you are working on your projects because the project is using the styles from the style repository.

Creating a new repository directly

1. Select the **New Project** option and then choose *Repository* as the project type to create.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

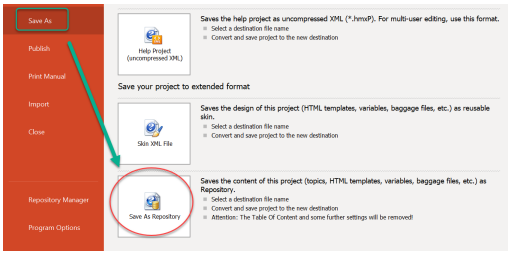


Note that saving the project as a style repository removes the Table of Contents from the project. The topic files in the style repository are only accessible in the **Project Files** > **Topic Files** section.

Creating a repository from an existing project

You can use the *Save as...* option in the **File** menu to save an existing project as a repository. This can also be used to create copies of existing repositories.

1. Choose the project containing the topics and/or styles you want to use in your repository.
2. Select *Save As...* in the File menu and choose *Save as Repository* as the save option. Choose an empty folder to save the style repository in. If the style repository is going to be used in team projects it should be saved on a network drive where all team members have access.



Note that saving the project as a style repository removes the Table of Contents from the project. The topic files in the style repository are only accessible in the **Project Files** > **Topic Files** section.

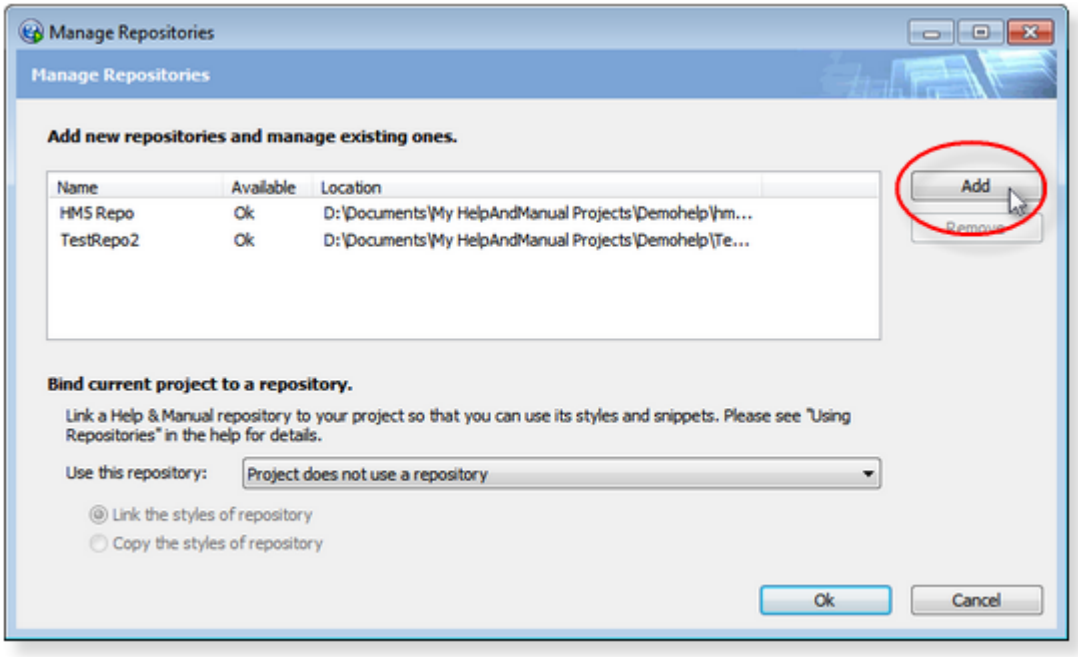
Step 2: Register the style repository with the Repository Manager

This step is not necessary on the computer that created the style repository, because saving a repository automatically registers that repository with that copy of Help+Manual.

Every other author who is going to use the style repository needs to perform this step in their copy of Help+Manual to make the repository available for their projects. The style repository must be registered with the Help+Manual program, not with the project.

1. In the Project Explorer, select the *Repository Manager* in the File menu to open the Repository Manager:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



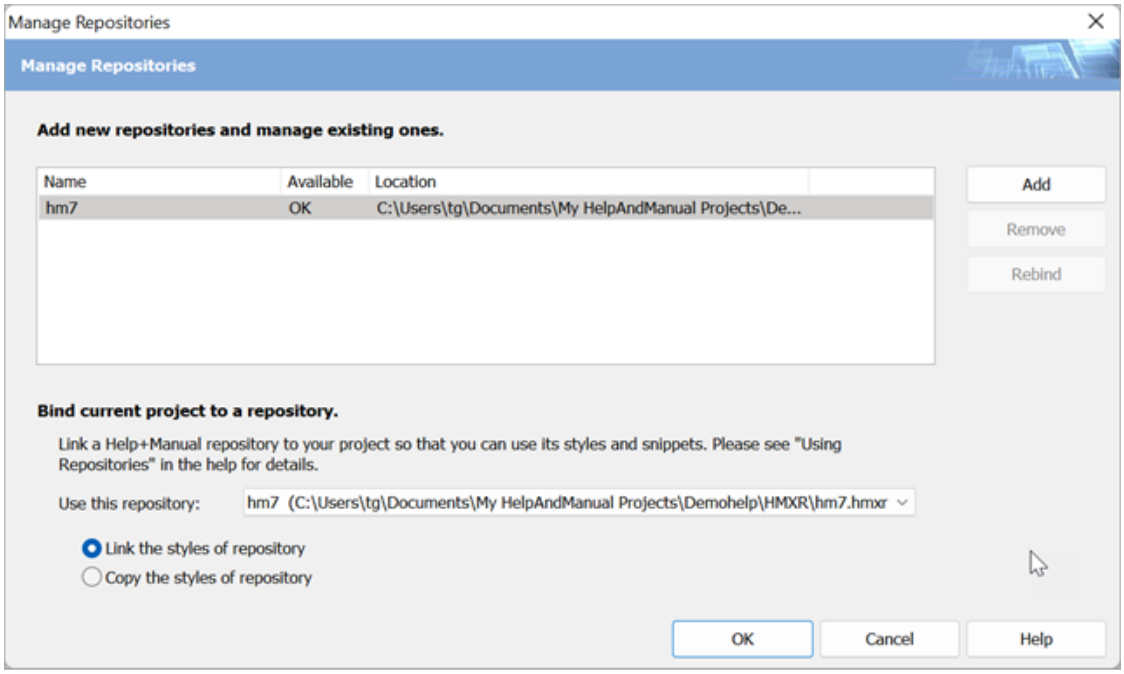
2. Click on the **Add** button and select the style repository that you want to register.

See Repository Manager 1293 for more details.

Step 3: Attach the style repository to your project

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and select *Repository Manager* in the **File** menu.
2. Select the style repository you want to use in the *Use this Repository* drop-down list.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Select *Link* or *Copy* mode for your styles:

Link repository styles: This is the standard option. The style repository's styles are used in your project but they are not editable in your project. You can only edit the styles in the style repository, not in the project.

Use this option for standardizing your styles with the style repository as the only styles source.

Copy repository styles: This option links the style repository styles to your project but also allows you edit them in the project, creating local variants of the central repository styles.

Use this option if you just want to use the style repository as a starting-point for a project.

Important Notes:

Using a style repository overwrites existing styles!
Attaching a style repository to a project automatically overwrites all styles in the project with the style repository styles that have the same names, in both Link and Copy mode! Unique styles will remain unchanged, but all styles with matching names will be replaced with the style repository styles. This is not reversible – only styles unique to the style repository can be removed when you unlink the repository – so make backups before experimenting!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can only link one style repository to a project!
Since a style repository is a designed as a control center for styles you can only link one style repository to a project. Multiple repositories would not make sense, because then you would have conflicts between the styles.

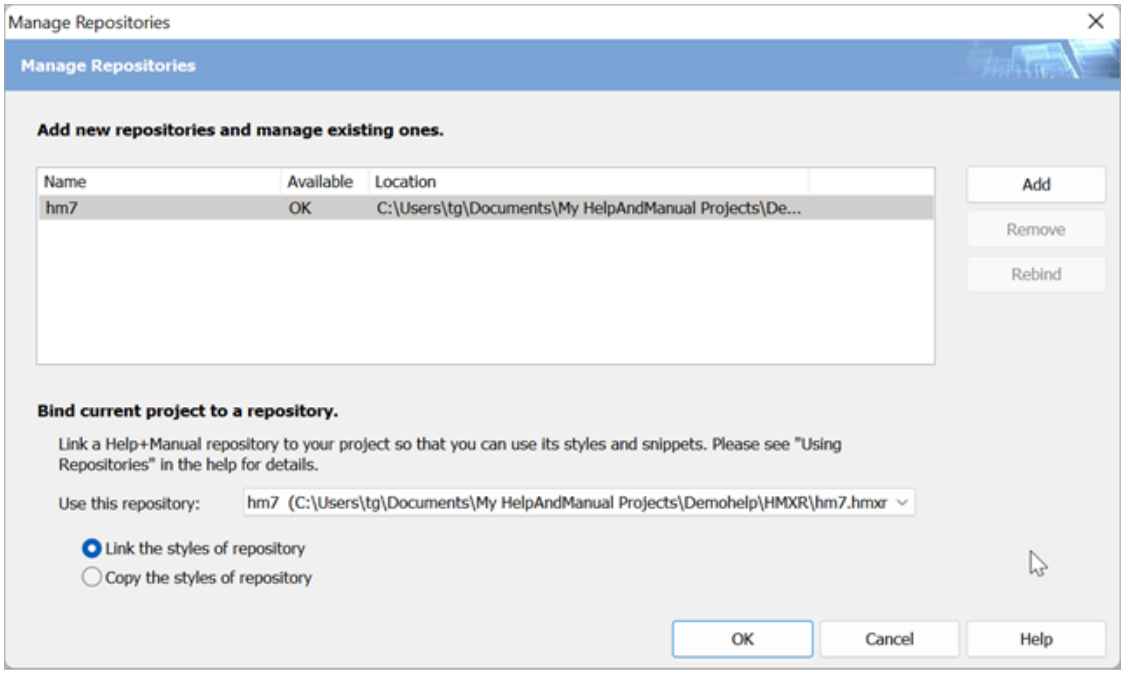
Unlinking a style repository from your project and switching repositories

You can also "unlink" a style repository from a project if you want to remove its association and its unique styles. You can also switch from one style repository to another.

Important note: When you unlink a style repository any standard or existing styles that were changed by importing the repository styles will not be switched back to their original settings.

Unlinking a style repository:

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and select *Repository Manager* in the **File** menu.



2. Select *Project does not use a repository* in the **Use this repository:** drop-down list, then click on **OK**.
3. The resolve styles dialog 1295 will be displayed in which you can choose which repository styles you want to keep or remove. By default, all the unique repository styles will be removed from the project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Switching style repositories:

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and select *Repository Manager* in the **File** menu.
2. Select the style repository you want to switch to and click on **OK**.
3. Here too, a dialog will be displayed in which you can choose which repository styles you want to keep or remove.

See also:

Repository Manager 1293

7.7.2 Styles in style repositories

The primary purpose of a style repository is to have a common source of styles for multiple projects. It makes it possible for you to edit the styles of multiple projects in a single location. You can also share snippets 1086 with a style repository, but the styles are the "glue" that the repository uses to keep your projects synchronized.

In a nutshell: You can use style repositories to import styles to your projects and to share styles with multiple projects so that you are sure that you are using the same styles in all your related projects. You can also lock repository styles so that all team members working on a project can only use the predefined styles, because the styles can only be edited in the style repository project.

Additional settings in style repositories

In addition to styles and snippets, you can also share some other settings with style repositories:

Topic ID Prefix

This is the prefix that is automatically added to new topic IDs. If this is defined in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous Options** in the style repository project it will be used in all projects linked to the repository.

Editing styles centrally in the style repository

When you link a style repository to your project its styles are imported to the project and they are also linked to the project. When the styles are updated in the style repository the changes are reflected in all the projects that use the repository. To get maximum benefits from this, you should always only edit the styles in the repository. You can prevent accidental editing by selecting Link mode 1080 for your styles when you associate the style repository with the proejct.

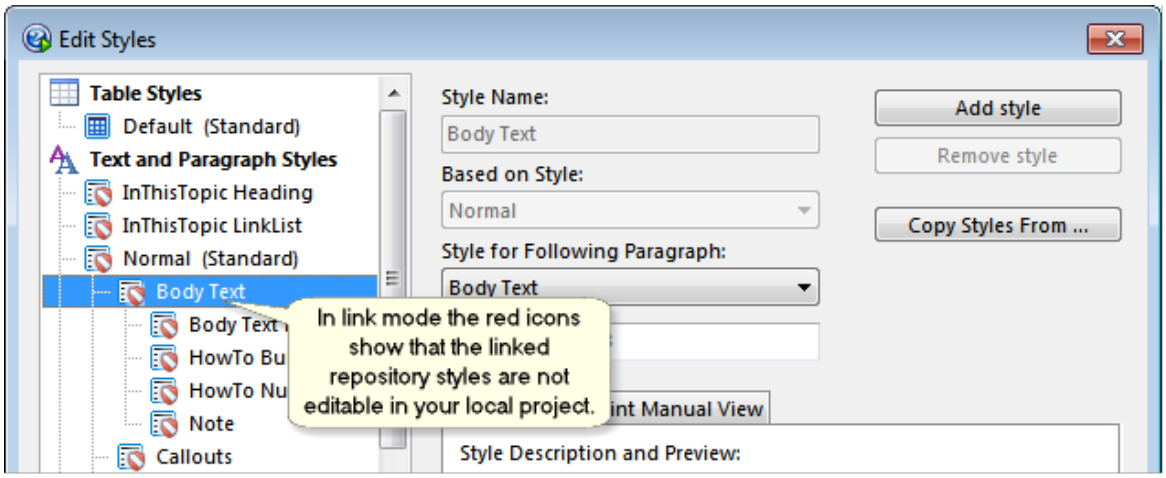
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Select *Open* in the File menu and select **`.hmxr`** as the file type to open.
2. Open the style repository project and edit your styles just as you would in a normal Help+Manual project. The changes will be reflected in the projects using the style repository the next time you open the projects.
3. If the project is open when you edit the style repository please close and re-open the project to refresh the styles from the repository.

Editing styles in your local project

Link mode: Styles not editable locally

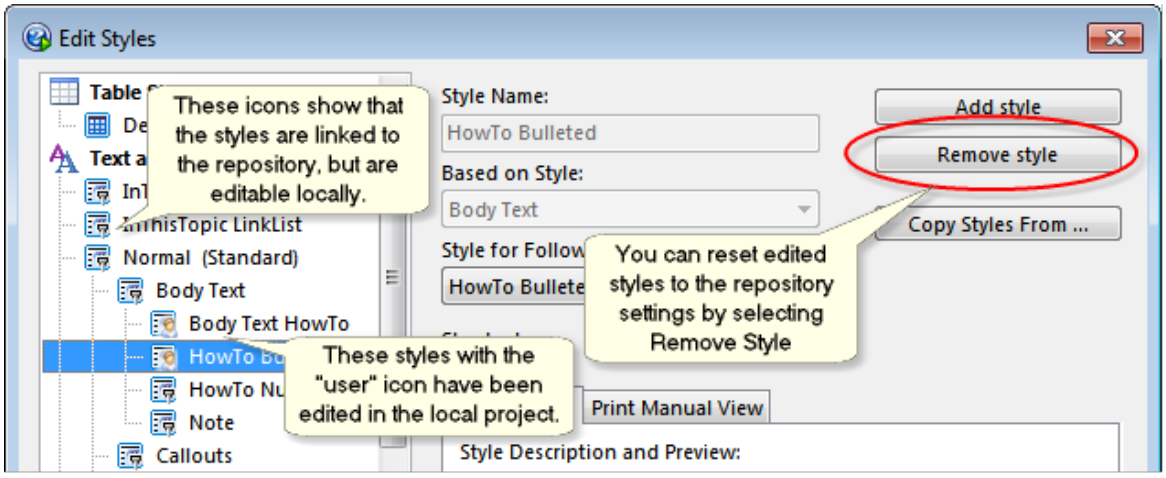
When the repository styles are connected to your project in Link mode 1080 you cannot edit them in your local project. When you open Edit Styles 1347 this is indicated by red shield icons on the styles:



Copy mode: Styles editable locally

When the repository styles are connected to your project in Copy mode 1080 you can edit them in your local project. When you open Edit Styles 1347 this is indicated by little "key" icons on the styles:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



When you have edited a style locally this is shown by a "User" icon, as shown above. The edited local settings are then used instead of the style settings in the style repository. However, your styles are still linked to the style repository! Any settings you haven't changed in the local project will be taken from the style repository and will be updated if you edit the styles in the repository.

Resetting locally edited styles:

To reset a locally-edited style just select it in the style editing dialog and click on *Remove Style*. Then it will revert back to the version in the style repository and the User icon will be removed.

Switching between Copy and Link mode for styles:

You can switch between Copy and Link mode 1080 by changing the setting in the Repository Manager.

Editing a project when the style repository is not available

Sometimes you may need to edit a project when the style repository it is linked to is not available. That is fine, because full copies of all the styles from the repository are stored in your project when you link it to the repository. This only works for style repositories associated with your project in Link mode 1080.

You will not see changes someone else makes to the repository styles while you are working in this way, of course, but they will update as soon as the style repository is available again – for example when you are back in the office and your laptop is connected to the office network where the style repository is stored.

See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Repository Manager 1293

7.7.3 Snippets in style repositories

In addition to styles, a style repository can also contain topic files. These files are automatically available to all projects linked to the style repository as snippets. They can be inserted directly with the Insert Snippet tool 1382, with the special *From Repository* section.

Since the repository styles are also available in all linked projects, all the snippets contained in the style repository will be formatted the same in all the linked projects where they are used. In addition to this, the style repository provides an easy, centralized place to edit the snippets. Just as with the repository styles, editing the topic files in the style repository automatically updates the content of the snippets in all projects where they are used.

This only applies when you link the snippets, of course! If you insert the snippets in paste mode they become part of the target topic and later changes to the source will not have any effect.

Using and editing style repository snippets

Using style repository snippets:

- Topics stored in a style repository are available automatically as snippets as soon as the repository is linked to a project. To insert a snippet from the linked style repository just select the snippet tool and use the *From Repository* option to access the repository snippets. See Re-using content with snippets 265 for details.

Editing style repository snippets:

To edit the snippets in the style repository you need to open the repository and edit the topic files there.

1. Select Open in the File menu and select **`.hmxr`** as the file type to open.
2. Open the style repository project and edit the topic files just as you would in a normal Help+Manual project. Note that style repositories don't have a table of contents. You need to edit the files in the **Project Files** > **Topic Files** section.

Editing a project when the style repository is not available

Sometimes you may need to edit a project when the style repository it is linked to is not available. When you do this your linked snippets will not be visible because the link is "live". You will just see entries in your topics showing that the snippets cannot be found. They will become visible again as soon as the style repository is available again – for ex-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ample when you are back in the office and your laptop is connected to the office network where the style repository is stored.

What you can't do is insert new snippets from the style repository when the repository is not available. After all, it's not available...

See also:

Repository Manager 1293

7.7.4 Variables and build options

If you define variables and custom build options 988 in a style repository they will also appear and be available in the projects to which the repository is linked.

When you link the repository, all the variables and custom build options in the repository that do not exist in the project are copied to the project. Variables with the same names as those in the repository that already exist in the project are skipped and left unchanged; their values do not update with different values from the repository.

Similarly, any custom build options defined in the repository will be copied to the project when it is linked.

Variables and build options are not linked like styles

At present, this is really just a convenience for sharing variables to multiple projects. It is a simple copy operation performed when the repository is linked to the project. The values of the variables are not dynamically linked in the same way as the styles. The values of the variables in your projects will NOT update when their values are changed in the repository, and the variables will not be removed from the project if you delete them in the repository. Similarly, the values in the repository will not change if you edit the variables in the project.

In the same way, build options imported from a repository are not linked to the repository in any way. Deleting them or changing their descriptions in the repository does not have any effect on the versions in the project. Similarly, deleting them or editing their descriptions in the project will not have any effect on the versions in the repository.

Updating variable values from a repository

The only way to force the values of a variable in a project to update with a changed value in the repository is to delete the variable in the project. Then the variable will appear again with the new value from the linked repository the next time the project is loaded.

So to update your repository variables you need to delete them in your project and reload the project. You can select and delete multiple variables with CTRL+Click (individual variables) and SHIFT+Click (blocks of variables).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This is admittedly not all that practical, because you need to do this for all the variables in all your projects every time you change the values of the variables in the repository. In a future major release of Help+Manual we plan to make repository variables dynamically linked as well.

7.8 Working with Modular Help Systems

A modular help system is a help system that consists of multiple Help+Manual projects that can be published as a single project. This can make it easier to manage large projects.

In addition to this, it may sometimes be practical to break up projects into modules when you are working in a team, even though it is also possible for all team members to work in the same project together in Help+Manual Professional. For example, individual team members may want to work on their parts of the project on their laptops.

See Modular Projects 1547 in the Reference section for some more background information on modular help systems.

See also:

Modular Projects 1547 (Reference)

7.8.1 Support in output formats

Modular projects in HTML Help (CHM)

In and HTML Help (CHM) you can create genuinely modular help systems, in which your output consists of multiple help files that are all displayed in a single Table of Contents (TOC). This makes it possible to create different versions of your help simply by including or excluding help file modules from your distribution package: Modules that are not there are excluded from the TOC automatically.

Master projects in runtime HTML Help (CHM) projects

In modular HTML Help (CHM) projects in which the child projects are merged in runtime mode 1096, the master project must contain at least one topic and the default topic must be set in the master project. If you don't do this you will get an error opening the main CHM and the indexes of the child CHMs won't be available.

Modular projects in other output formats

You can also use Help+Manual's modular project features in other output formats. However, here the advantages of using modular projects is only available during the editing stage. The output is always a single integrated help system. It is effectively the same as publishing your help from one large project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.8.2 Creating and editing modular projects

Creating a modular project is just as easy as adding a topic to a project. Once you have added the child project its TOC is displayed as part of the current project's TOC and you can edit it directly if you turn off read-only mode (see below).

When you publish the master project the entire TOC of the child project is inserted in the master TOC at the point where you insert the child project in the master TOC tree.

See Modular Projects 1547 in the Reference section for some more background information on modular help systems.

> **Productivity Tip**
> By default child modules are inserted in read-only mode. This is recommended for multi-user editing, otherwise all topics in child projects will be locked for all users. You can turn off read-only mode in *Configuration* > *Common Properties* > *Miscellaneous*.

How to create a master project

A master project is a normal Help+Manual project. The only thing that makes it a "master" is the fact that it contains child projects. You can create either an "empty" master project or a master project with content:

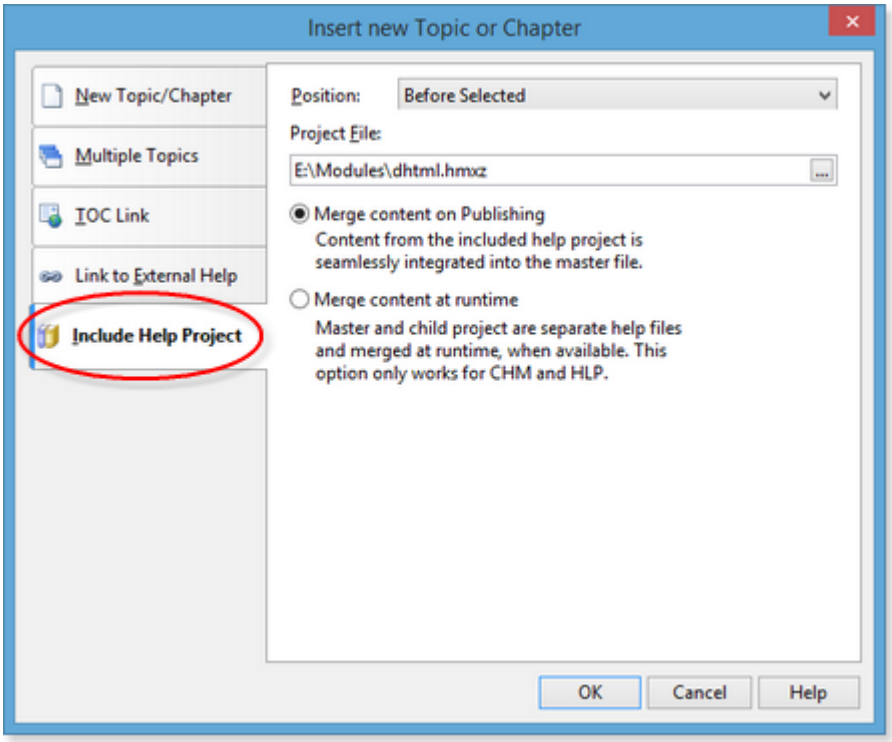
- **An empty master project** is a project without any topics of its own. It is simply a framework for handling your child projects, and all the items in its TOC are child projects.
- **A master project with content** also has its own topics. Your child projects are inserted in the TOC along with the master project's own topics.

This distinction is actually a little arbitrary. You can always add topics to the master project at any time, even if it is empty when you start. The only thing you need to remember is that the master project's own topics will ***always*** be included in the output.

How to add child projects

1. Click at the point in the master project's TOC where you want to insert the child project (module).
2. Select *Add Topic* in **Project** > **Managing Topics** and then select the *Include Help Project* option.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



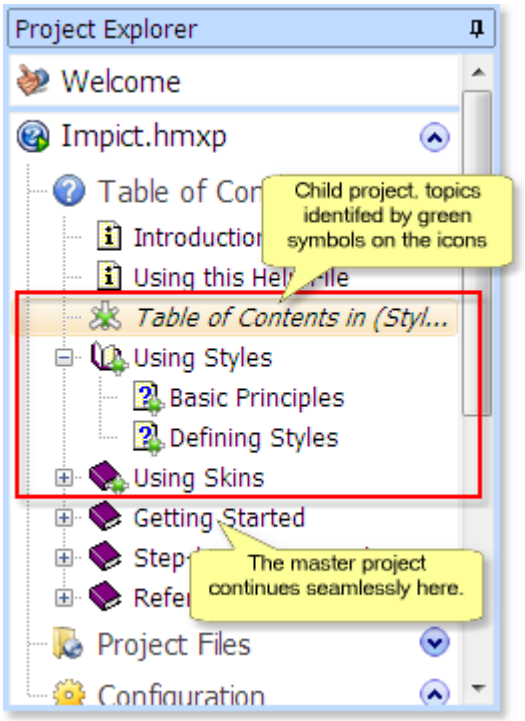
3. In the *Project File:* field click on the ... Browse button and select the **.hmxz** or **.hmxp** project file you want to include.

   Merge content on publishing: If you select this mode the external project's contents will be displayed in the TOC of the current project and can be edited directly if you turn off read-only mode (see below). Merged projects are still stored externally and their topics are identified by small green icon in the TOC.

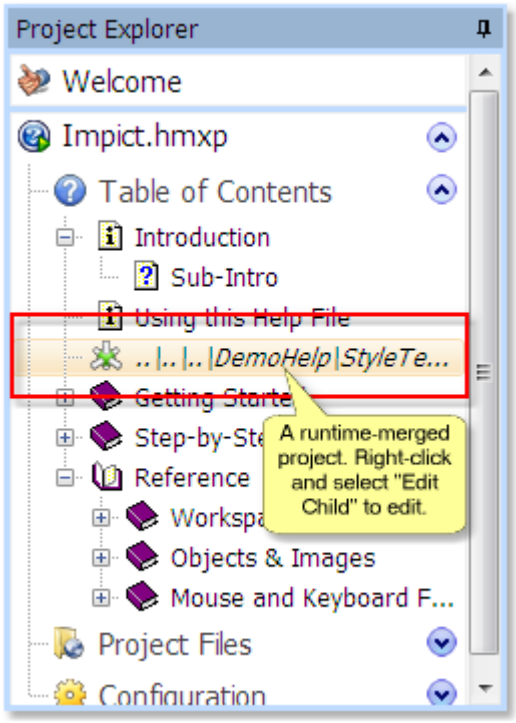
   Merge content at runtime: This is for HTML Help only and just inserts a placeholder in the TOC. The projects must be edited and published separately and are only merged when the user views them if the help files are all present in the same folder.

4. Click on OK to insert the child project in the TOC.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Display for a project inserted with publish time merging



Display for a project inserted with runtime merging

The "Merged Projects" section and modular projects not included in the TOC

When you are merging your modules on publishing it is possible to include an entire project module in your publishing output without including it in the TOC. In supported output formats all the topics of the module will then be present, but only accessible via hyperlinks in your other topics, and the full-text search and keyword index (CHM, WebHelp, eWriter, VS Help).

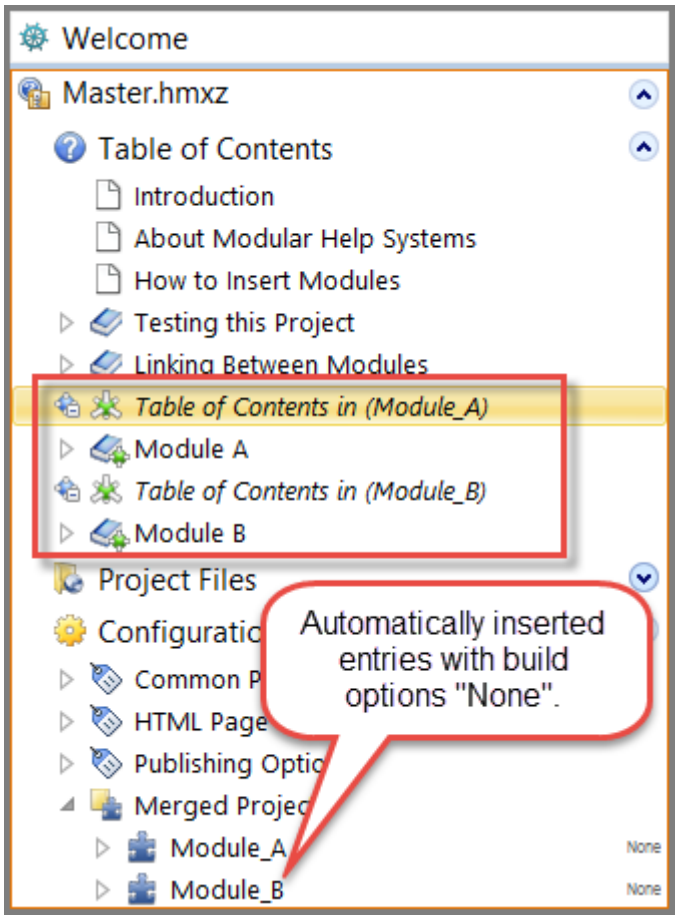
How this works

This is the same as including a single topic without a TOC entry by creating it directly in the **Project Files** > **Topic Files** section in the Project Explorer, or by deleting its TOC entry without deleting the associated topic file. The only difference is that this then applies for all the topics in the project module.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Merged Projects section in Configuration

When you add a child module in the TOC using the publish-time merge method, Help+Manual automatically creates an entry for it down in **Configuration** > **Merged Projects**:



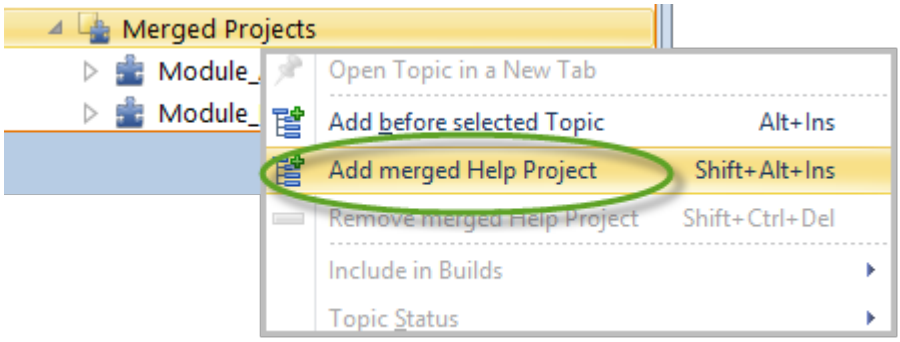
These entries are similar to the entries for topic files in the **Project Files** > **Topic Files** section. Just as the TOC entries for normal topics point to the topic files in the Topic Files section, the entries for project modules in the TOC point to topic files of the projects in the Merged Projects section.

The entries in Merged Projects are automatically given the build option *None* so that their contents are not included in your output when you exclude them from the TOC:

How to include a "hidden" child project in your output

Here too, the method is similar to including a topic without a TOC entry. Instead of adding the module to the TOC, you just right-click on the **Merged Projects** and select *Add Merged Help Project* in the context menu displayed.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Change the include options to include the project's topics

When you insert a project module like this its include options will initially be set to *None*. To include its topics in your output you need to right-click on its entry in **Merged Projects** and set its include options in the **Include in Builds** context menu so as to include its topics in the output formats where you want this to happen.

Using multiple TOCs with modular projects

You can also use additional TOCs in your master project in order to create alternative outputs using different combinations of modules and native topics from the master project. You just need to create an additional TOC and insert references to the child modules there.

See Multiple TOCs 343 for details on how to create and manage additional TOCs.

How to edit the child project

Saving child projects separately

When you select *Save As..* in a modular project Help+Manual always saves the master project. You must edit child projects separately if you want to save copies of them.

Publish time merging:

If you choose publish merging the project will immediately be displayed as part of your project's TOC and you can edit its topics directly, as though they were part of the current project. The topics of merged projects are identified with green icons on the TOC entries.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Read-only mode:

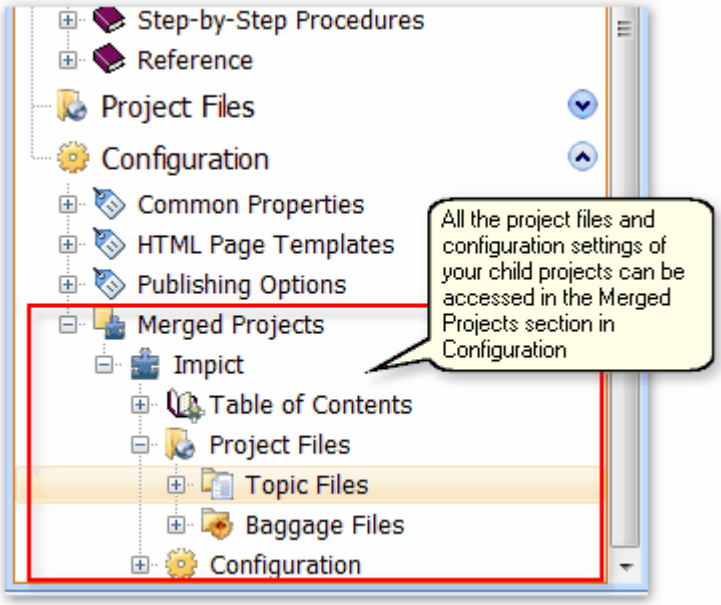
By default the project will be inserted in read-only mode to prevent accidental changes. You can activate editing in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous.** If you are using multi-user editing you should leave read-only mode ON, otherwise all the topics of child projects will be locked for all other users as long as you have the master project open.

Runtime merging:

If you choose runtime merging a placeholder is inserted in the TOC in the position in which the child project will be inserted. You can edit the child project by right-clicking on the placeholder and selecting *Edit Child Project*.

How to access a child project's files and configuration settings

Even when the TOC of the your child project is visible in the master TOC you cannot see all the child's Topic Files and Configuration settings directly. Only the topics with TOC entries are actually displayed in the master TOC. You can access topic files without TOC entries and the child's configuration settings in the Merged Projects section in the Project Explorer:



This section is located right at the bottom of the Configuration section. Note that like the TOC, the files and settings of merged projects are only shown for projects inserted in publish-time merging mode. Runtime-merged projects are just placeholders and are not really

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

part of your project, they must be opened and edited separately.

How to change the merge method

The merge method for HTML Help (CHM) is selected when you insert the child project. To change it you must remove the child project from the TOC and re-insert it with the other merge method.

1. Select the main module item in the Project Explorer and press DELETE or select *Add Topic* > *Delete* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**
2. Insert the same module again, selecting the other merge method.

Note that merge options are only relevant for HTML Help (CHM). In all other output formats the master and child projects are always published together as one large help project, which is the equivalent of publish time merging.

Setting a global help window for runtime merging

When using runtime merging it is advisable to define a global "window name" for all the projects in the modular help system. This improves the performance of links to your help from your applications. When you define a global help window, all calls to the help system will open in the same CHM help viewer. Without a global window, you will get additional help viewers opening when calls are made first to one module and then to another.

The global help window option is set in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows** 1453. You need to set the same global window name in all projects in the modular help system, including the master project.

If you use this option the global help window name **must** begin with **`$global_`**, followed by an identifier consisting only of alphabetic characters. You must use the **same** global name in all the projects.

Examples of valid global window names:

```
$global_main_mycompany
$global_widgethelp
```

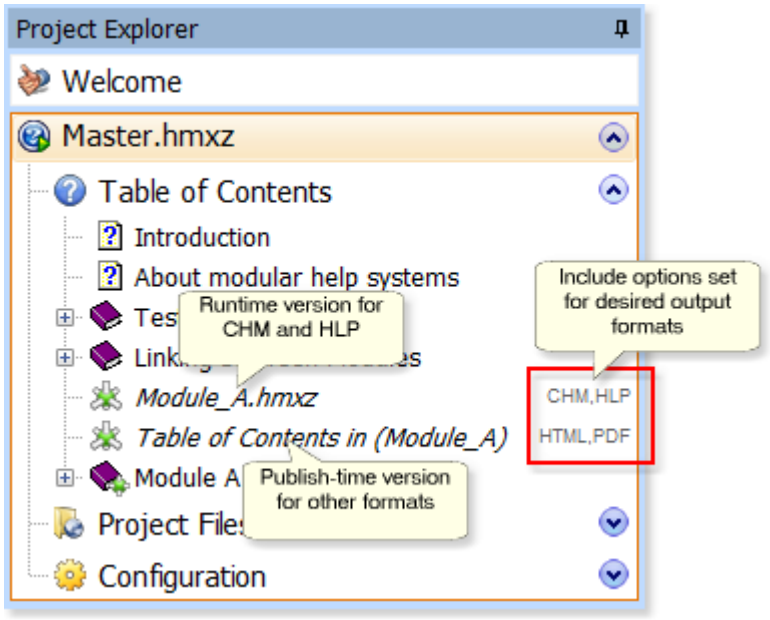
Important – make sure your window name is unique!

Don't use the standard $global_main name! If you do it is quite possible that some other software on the user's computer will also be using that name and then your help could open in their help window!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Exporting runtime modules to other formats

When you insert a module in runtime mode it will only be published to HTML Help (CHM). If you want to publish the same module to other formats you must insert it in your TOC a second time in publish-time mode. When you do this you should also set the include options for each version so that the correct version gets published automatically depending on the output format you choose:



Setting the include options:

Just right-click on the main module "node" (spiky green icon) in the TOC, select Include in Builds in the context menu and then set the include options appropriately. Make sure that you set the options so that it is not possible to export both versions together!

You can also access the include options in *Manage Topics* > *Change* in the **Project** tab. See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for more details on using include options.

See also:

Modular Projects 1547 (Reference)

7.8.3 Merge methods for CHM

In Microsoft HTML Help CHM files you can create genuine modular projects with separate help files that are displayed in a single TOC. This is called "runtime merging". Alternatively, you can also combine all your modules to one large help file, just like the output from a single project. This is called "publish-time merging".

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Choosing the merge method is only relevant for HTML Help. All other output formats use publish-time merging only, merging all the modules in your project to create output that is exactly the same as output generated from a single project.

See Runtime and publish time merging 1551 in the Reference section for full details of the capabilities of these two different output methods for modular projects in HTML Help.

Master projects in runtime HTML Help (CHM) projects

In modular HTML Help (CHM) projects in which the child projects are merged in runtime mode 1096, the master project must contain at least one topic and the default topic must be set in the master project. If you don't do this you will get an error opening the main CHM and the indexes of the child CHMs won't be available. (This is caused by uncorrected bugs in the Microsoft HTML Help system.)

How to choose and change the merge method

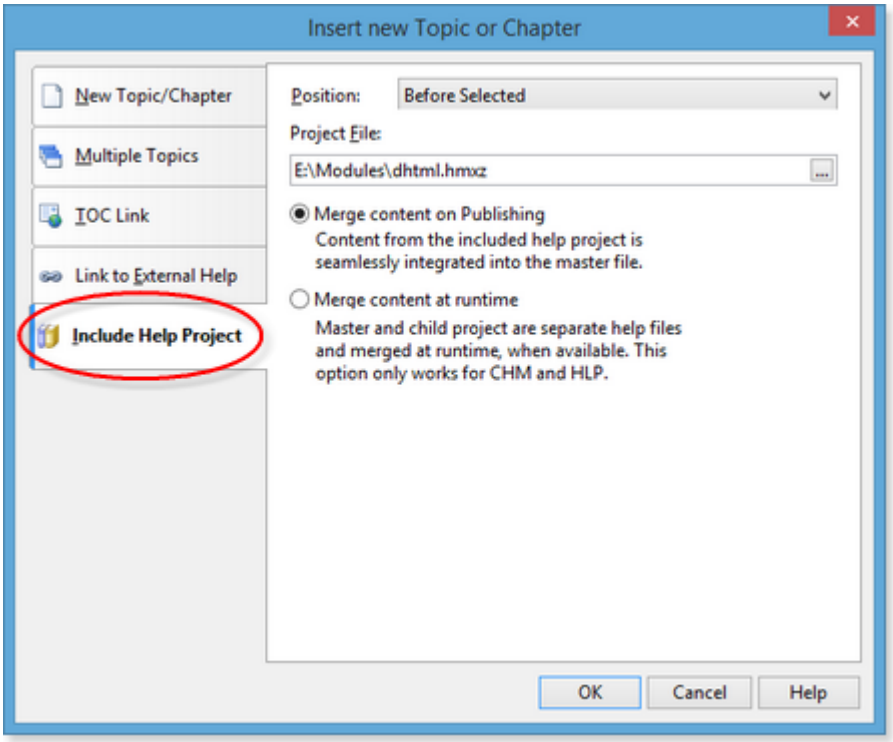
You can set the merge method separately for every child project you insert. You choose the merge method when you insert the child project.

Important: The project filenames and the output filenames CHM files must be identical. The references between the child and the master help files are based on the filenames and if project and output filename don't match the references will be invalid.

Choosing the merge method while inserting a child project:

- Select *Merge content on publishing* or *Merge content at runtime* when you are inserting the child project 1089 in your master project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Changing the merge method after inserting the child project:

To change the merge method just remove the module from the TOC and re-insert it with the other merge method. You cannot change the merge method of a module without removing it from the TOC first.

1. Select the main module item in the Project Explorer and press DELETE or select *Add Topic* > *Delete* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.** This does not delete the project on the disk, it only removes it from the TOC of the master.
2. Insert the same module again, selecting the other merge method.

Setting a global help window for runtime merging

When using runtime merging it is advisable to define a global "window name" for all the projects in the modular help system. This improves the performance of links to your help from your applications. When you define a global help window, all calls to the help system will open in the same CHM help viewer. Without a global window, you will get additional help viewers opening when calls are made first to one module and then to another.

The global help window option is set in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > Help Windows 1453. You need to set the same global window name in all projects in the modular help system, including the master project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you use this option the global help window name **must** begin with **`$global_`**, followed by an identifier consisting only of alphabetic characters. You must use the **same** global name in all the projects.

Examples of valid global window names:

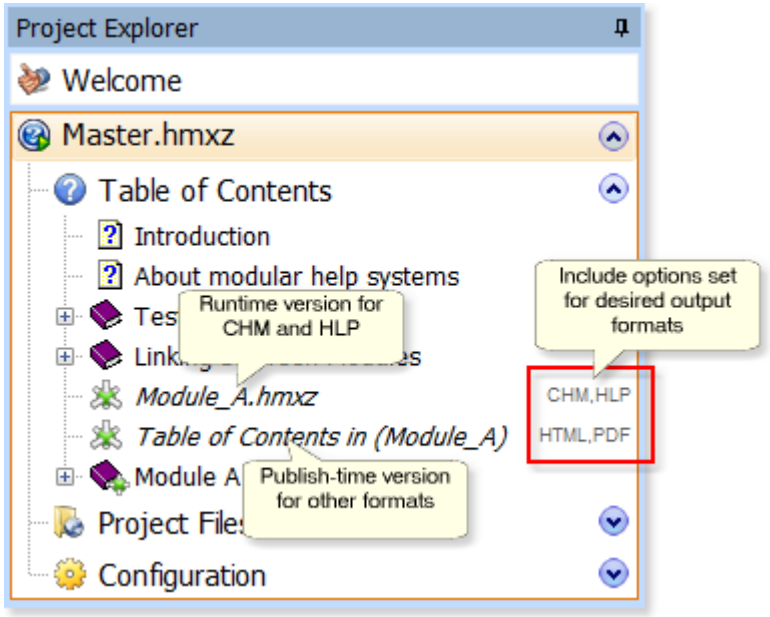
```
$global_main_mycompany
$global_widgethelp
```

Important – make sure your window name is unique!

Don't use the standard $global_main name! If you do it is quite possible that some other software on the user's computer will also be using that name and then your help could open in their help window!

Publishing runtime modules to other formats

When you insert a module in runtime mode it will only be published to HTML Help (CHM). If you want to publish the same module to other formats you must insert it in your TOC a second time in publish-time mode. When you do this you should also set the include options for each version so that the correct version gets published automatically depending on the output format you choose:



Setting the include options:

Just right-click on the main module "node" (spiky green icon) in the TOC, select Include in Builds in the context menu and then set the include options appropriately. Make sure that you set the options so that it is not possible to export both versions together!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can also access the include options in *Manage Topics* > *Change* in the **Project** tab. See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for more details on using include options.

Additional merge options for HTML Help

In HTML Help you can specify what happens when the user tries to open the child CHM module directly instead of the master module.

1. Open the **Configuration** section of the child module in the Project Explorer and select **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > **Extended .HHP Settings.**
2. In the section *If this is a child file, merged at run time* select the Table of Contents you want to open when the user opens the file directly.

If you select the master file TOC option opening the child file will be exactly the same as opening the master file – the entire integrated TOC of the master file will be displayed. Otherwise the child file will open on its own, just like any other HTML Help file.

See also:

Modular Projects 1547 (Reference)

7.8.4 Links and search in runtime CHM

When you create runtime-merged modular CHM help systems there are two key issues that you need to consider for the proper integration of the modules:

- **How to manage calls to topics in the child CHM modules**
- **How to ensure that search works in all the CHM modules**

Managing calls to topics in the child CHM modules

The Microsoft CHM system cannot automatically route your help calls through the master module to the child modules. When you call a topic in a child module you have to make the call to that CHM file, in exactly the same way as if it were a normal, independent CHM. There is no problem there. You just need to know that you make the calls to the child CHM module directly and it will work.

However, if you don't configure the CHM correctly, a call to the child CHM will only open that CHM. The user won't see the TOC of the merged CHM system, and that isn't what you want. You need to tell the CHM viewer that you want the full TOC from the master.

1. Open the child module project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate down to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Extended .HHP Options**.
2. On the lower right, check the settings under the heading *If this is a child file merged at runt time...*

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Select *Table of contents of the master file:* and enter the name of the master CHM that is going to be used in your runtime modular help system. This file name should not contain any spaces.
4. Repeat this for all the projects for your CHM child modules.

Ensuring that search works for all the runtime modules

When the user opens the help from the master module, either directly or with a call from your software, search will always include all the modules in the runtime help system. This is because Help+Manual automatically includes references to all the available child modules in the master, and if they are there then they will be searched.

This cannot be done automatically in the child modules. They are just independent help files, and normally they don't and can't know anything about the other modules. If you make a call to a child file the search will then only be performed in that file's topics unless you tell the CHM system that you also want to search in the other modules.

Like displaying the TOC of the master, this is also something that you configure in the Extended .HHP Options:

1. Open the child module project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate down to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Extended .HHP Options**.
2. In the Additional settings for the HHP file: box enter this heading on the first line (see screenshot below):

   ```
   [MERGE FILES]
   ```

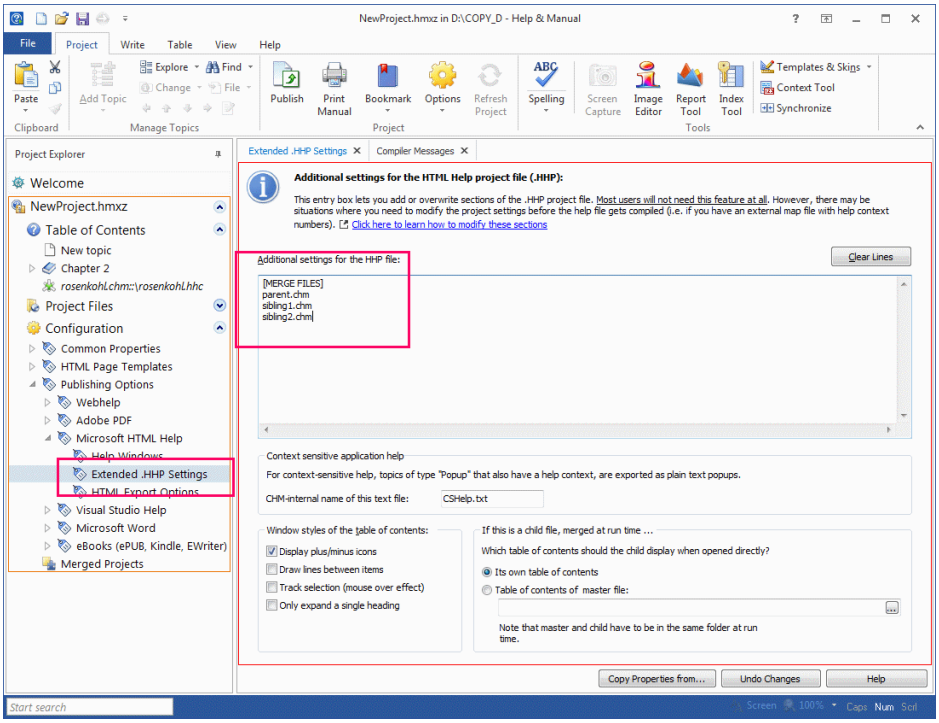
3. Then enter the names of all the other CHM files in the modular runtime system, including the master file. Enter one file on each line, like this:

   ```
   [MERGE FILES]
   master_file.chm
   module1.chm
   module2.chm
   ```

4. Repeat steps 1-3 for all the projects for your CHM child modules.

Note: Always include all the modules that might ever be used in the runtime help system. It is fine for modules that are not present to be listed. If they are not found they will just be skipped without an error.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Setting a global help window for runtime merging

When using runtime merging it is advisable to define a global "window name" for all the projects in the modular help system. This improves the performance of links to your help from your applications. When you define a global help window, all calls to the help system will open in the same CHM help viewer. Without a global window, you will get additional help viewers opening when calls are made first to one module and then to another.

The global help window option is set in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > Help Windows 1453. You need to set the same global window name in all projects in the modular help system, including the master project.

If you use this option the global help window name **must** begin with **`$global_`**, followed by an identifier consisting only of alphabetic characters. You must use the **same** global name in all the projects.

Examples of valid global window names:

```
$global_main_mycompany
$global_widgethelp
```

Important – make sure your window name is unique!

Don't use the standard $global_main name! If you do it is quite possible that some other software on the user's computer will also be using that name and then your help could open in their help window!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.8.5 Managing modules in the TOC

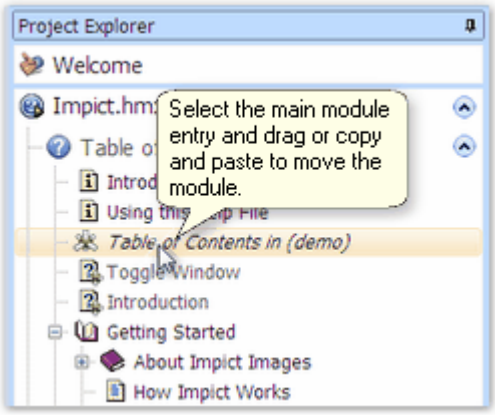
You can manage module entries in the Table of Contents (TOC) in exactly the same way as regular TOC items.

Moving module entries

You can move module entries and change their level in exactly the same way as any other TOC entries.

To move a module entry:

Modules can be moved around in the TOC in the same way as ordinary topics. You just need to select the main module node in order to be able to manipulate it like a topic entry:



Select the main module entry in the TOC with the mouse and drag it, or use the normal copy and paste methods to move by copying and pasting.

- Select the entry and use cut and paste.
- Use the and buttons in **Write** > **Manage Topics**.

To change the level a module entry:

Select the entry and click on the Promote and Demote buttons in **Write** > **Manage Topics**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

To delete a module entry:

Select the entry and press DELETE, or select *Add Topic* > *Delete* in **Write** > **Manage Topics.** (This does not delete the module project, it just removes the module entry from the current TOC.)

Using multiple TOCs with modular projects

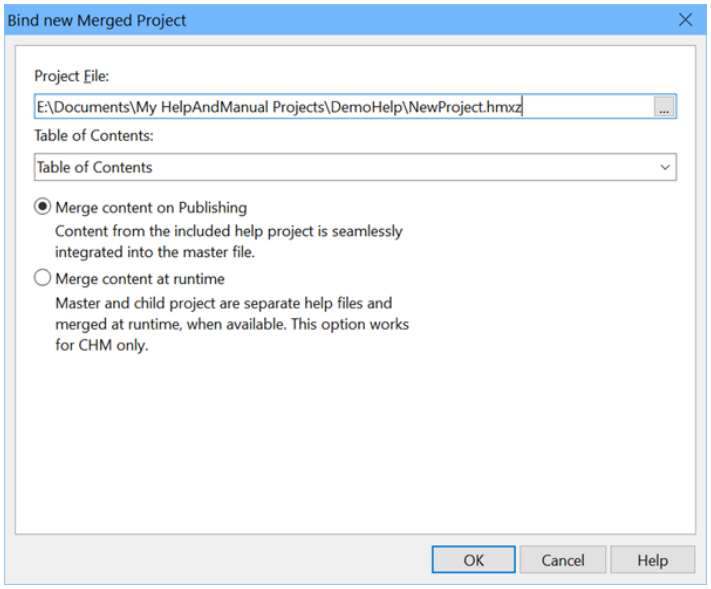
You can also use additional TOCs in your master project in order to create alternative outputs using different combinations of modules and native topics from the master project. You just need to create an additional TOC and insert references to the child modules there.

See Multiple TOCs 343 for details on how to create and manage additional TOCs.

Replacing modules

You can easily replace one module with another one if you need to, without deleting it first.

1. Select the module in the TOC.
2. On the right under the module reference, select the **Bind to another project** button. This displays a simple dialog:



3. Select the new project you want to insert in the *Project File:* field. If it contains multiple TOCs you can select the TOC to insert.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

4. Select the merge method (Publishing / Runtime) and click on OK to replace the existing module reference.

Forbidden: copying modules, second copies of modules, circular module references

Copying modules:

"Copying" modules is not possible because they are really only references to entire help projects. Also, you cannot copy modules within the same project because duplicate module references are forbidden. If you want to insert the same module in a second project you must do this directly.

Duplicate modules:

Similarly, you cannot insert a second copy of a module entry within the same project. This is not allowed because it would cause irreconcilable conflicts because of the duplicate topic IDs and context numbers it would create.

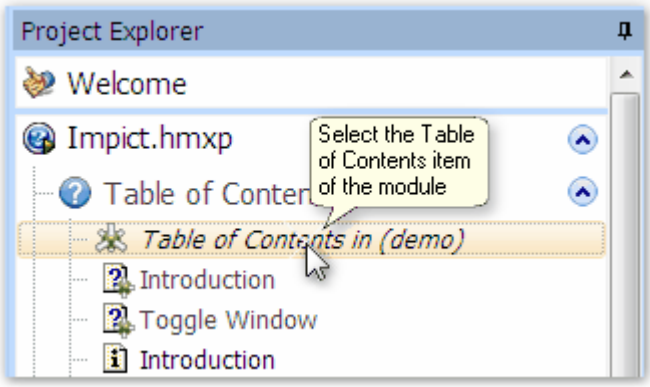
Circular module references:

This is something you need to be aware of yourself because Help+Manual cannot prevent it automatically and it can cause serious errors. A circular reference is a module that contains another module that then contains the first module. For example, suppose Project A contains Project B as a module. If you then open Project B on its own and try to insert Project A as a module the results in your output can be both unpredictable and unpleasant. Don't do it.

Using include options on your modules

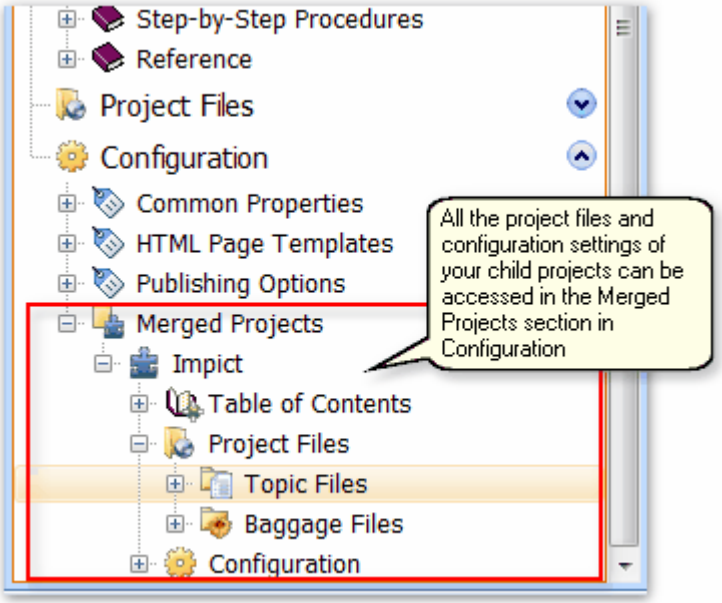
You can use conditional output include options on entire modules in the same way as you can on individual topics. To do this select the main module entry in the TOC and then select **Project** > **Change** > **Include in Builds** to select the include options for the module. You can also access the include options by right-clicking on the main module entry in the TOC. See Modular projects include options 1002 for full details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



How to access a child project's files and configuration settings

Even when the TOC of the your child project is visible in the master TOC you cannot see all the child's Topic Files and Configuration settings directly. Only the topics with TOC entries are actually displayed in the master TOC. You can access topic files without TOC entries and the child's configuration settings in the Merged Projects section in the Project Explorer:



This section is located right at the bottom of the Configuration section. Note that like the TOC, the files and settings of merged projects are only shown for projects inserted in publish-time merging mode. Runtime-merged projects are just placeholders and are not really part of your project, they must be opened and edited separately.

See also:

Modular Projects 1547 (Reference, more background information)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.8.6 Managing graphics in modules

It's always important to avoid duplicate filenames for your graphics because of the way Help+Manual manages graphics and locates your graphics files 514. This applies in particular for modular projects, because you will often have separate graphics folders for each project.

Duplicate names are OK if you use runtime merging 1552 because then each module is published individually and the correct graphics will be used. However, if you use publish time merging 1551 Help+Manual will only find the first instance of any duplicates as it searches through the graphics folders to locate the correct files.

Use filename prefixes for graphics files in modules

- The simplest solution for this problem is to add a unique prefix to the filenames of graphics files used in modules, in the same way that you use prefixes for the topic IDs 1107 in modules.
- The prefix should be short – two letters and an underline character are usually plenty – and should identify the module.

See also:

Managing your graphics 514

7.8.7 Managing IDs and context numbers

In modular projects you also have to devote some thought and planning to topic IDs and context numbers 1600. Modules are separate projects and Help+Manual can only prevent conflicts caused by duplicate IDs and context numbers within a single project. This means ***you*** are responsible for making sure that you do not have duplicates in the modules you are going to include in your help system.

When you need to avoid duplicates

Duplicates are forbidden in publish time merging 1551, which is the only available merge mode for all output formats except HTML Help (CHM). Duplicate topic IDs and help context numbers in modules merged at publish time will cause link failures and other errors because they are all in the same output help file.

Duplicate topic IDs and help context numbers are actually not a problem in CHM projects merged at runtime. Since the output consists of separate help files there are no conflicts and all links will work normally. However, it is still a good idea to avoid duplicates within projects because then you can always switch to publish time merging without any problems if you need to.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to avoid duplicate topic IDs

Help+Manual has a feature that makes preventing duplicate topic IDs very easy. In each project you can automatically add a unique prefix to your topic IDs when you create a new topic. Then even topics with the same basic ID will actually be different. For example, with an auto-prefix the ID *Introduction* could be *Master_Introduction* in one project and *Mod1_Introduction* in another project.

1. Go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > Miscellaneous 1411.
2. Enter a prefix for your topic IDs in the *Topic ID Prefix:* field. It's helpful to add an underline character after the prefix, this makes the IDs easier to read in the various ID lists displayed in Help+Manual. For example, the topics in this help file all use the prefix `HM_`.
3. Repeat for each project you want to include in your modular help system.

If you assign a unique prefix to each project used in your help system and make sure that it is used for all modules you won't have any problems with ID conflicts.

How to avoid duplicate help context numbers

Since you can't add prefixes to help context numbers you have to avoid conflicts here by assigning a predefined range of numbers to each project in your help system. This is effectively the same as a prefix, you just have to make sure the ranges are far enough apart so that they can never overlap.

1. Choose a range of numbers for each of your modules. Make sure that the range is large enough to avoid overlaps even if you add a lot more topics to your project than you initially expect to use! Help context numbers can have a value of `1 – 4294967295` (unsigned 4-byte integer) so there are plenty of ranges to choose from.
2. Go to **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > Miscellaneous 1411.
3. Enter the starting number for the range assigned for the current project in the *Start with:* field.
4. Enter a reasonable number for the *Increment by:* value. This should be large enough to allow you to add topics between existing topics but small enough so that you won't go out of your assigned context number range even if you add a lot of topics to your project.
5. Repeat for every project you want to include in your modular help system.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to set up existing projects to avoid conflicts

The above methods are fine for new projects. However, when you want to include existing projects in a modular help system you may already have duplicates conflicts that you need to deal with.

1. Check your projects to see whether the context number ranges and IDs used have potential conflicts. The Project Reports 1212 tool can be a helpful aid here.
2. Use the Help Context Tool 1241 to assign new context numbers to your individual modules.

   Remember that when you change help context numbers your programmers must also change the corresponding calls to your topics made from your application!
3. Edit your topic IDs to eliminate the conflicts. Introduce a prefix naming scheme for IDs with a different prefix for each module. This must be done manually. You cannot search and replace topic IDs in the Help+Manual editor.
4. After doing this use the Help Context Tool 1241 and the Project Reports 1212 tool to export lists of the new context numbers and topic IDs for your programmers.
5. Check whether any scripts 452 or plain HTML code objects 469 inserted in your project contain references to the old topic IDs. These are not updated automatically and need to be checked. The same applies to any links to the old IDs from other projects and help files.

Changing IDs and context numbers globally

The operations described below are only possible with the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual and are for advanced users only. If you don't feel comfortable with editing source code directly you should not try this. Even if you do, please make a backup copy of your entire project folder before starting!

Note that the risk of damaging your project when you do this is relatively high because it is easy to make mistakes, particularly if you are performing multiple replaces without a manual check for every instance. You have been warned!

Adding prefixes to topic IDs globally:

You need a tool that can rename multiple files and a text editor that can perform search and replace on multiple files for this operation. Without these tools it would be just as fast to edit your topic IDs manually.

1. If your project is not already saved in uncompressed XML format select *Save As...* in the File menu and save it in an empty folder with the *Help Project (uncompressed XML)*

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

option. This will create a directory of plain-text XML files that contain all the components of your project.

2. Using your multiple file renaming tool rename the topic files in the *Topics* folder to add the prefix you want to have to the filenames – the topic IDs are the topic filenames.
3. Open the table of contents file in the *Maps* folder and add the prefix to all the topic IDs in the *href*= attributes so that the match the new filenames created in step 2 – make sure that upper and lower case match. This is necessary to make the TOC entries point to the new topic filenames.
4. Open the *.hmxp* project file in a text editor and locate the section between the `<helpcontext-numbers>` tags. Add the prefix to all the topic IDs in the *href*= attributes that assign the help context numbers to specific topics so that the entries match the filenames created in step 2. (This will only be necessary if help context numbers are defined in your project.)
5. With your multi-file search and replace tool search all the topic files in the *Topics* folder for ***type*="*topiclink*" *href*="** and add your prefix after the ***href*="** – you must search for this entire string, otherwise you will add prefixes to file links, Internet links and script links as well, and that would break them.

   Warning:
   Doing this will break links to topics that are not in the current project and you will need to repair them afterwards. Broken links are highlighted in red. If you have a lot of cross-project topic links you may not want to do this.

Changing context numbers globally:

You can also use the same method to change your context numbers globally. Here you just need to add new number to the beginning of all existing context numbers to "shift" them into a different range. You can do this by editing the *.hmxp* project file, which is where the context numbers are stored:

1. Save in uncompressed XML mode and open the *.hmxp* project file in a text editor.
2. Locate the section between the `<helpcontext-numbers>` tags and add the "shift" number to the beginning of all the context numbers. That's it.

See also:

Modular Projects 1547 (Reference)
IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600 (Reference)

7.8.8 Creating links between modules

How you create links between modules depends to a great extent on whether you use runtime or publish time merging. If you use publish time merging all the modules are always present so you can use normal topic links. If you use runtime merging for CHM files (it is only

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

supported in CHM) you should use the A-link method (see below) for all links to modules which might not be present at runtime.

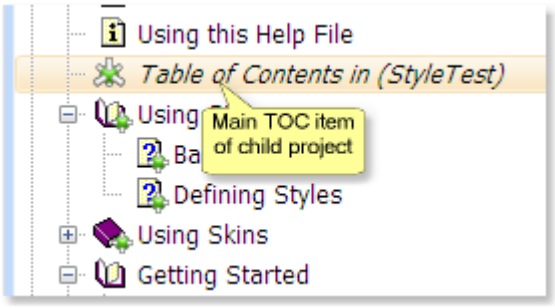
Basic principles

- Remember that runtime merging is only possible in HTML Help (CHM) help files. All other formats use only publish time merging.
- Even with runtime merging, links from child modules to the master module are always OK because the master module is always present.
- It is better to use A-links for all links from the master to child modules and between child modules for runtime merging projects. Then you can always be sure that you will not have problems if you ever need to leave a module out.
- External windows cannot be used across module boundaries in modular help with HTML Help. You cannot make a link that opens a topic from another help file in an external window. This is a restriction of HTML Help.

How to create normal links between topics in different modules

In modular projects you can create normal links between topics in different modules in almost exactly the same way as between topics within a normal project. You just have to bear in mind that the help file containing the target of the link ***must*** be present at runtime (when the help is viewed), otherwise the link will be dead and the user will get an error message.

1. Select the topic in which you want to insert the link – topics in child modules are identified in the Project Explorer with spiky green icons on their TOC entries:



Display for a module configured for publish time merging

If your child module is configured for runtime merging you cannot edit its topics in the TOC – then you must right-click on the module entry and select *Edit Child* in the context menu to edit its topics.

2. Proceed as you normally would for inserting a topic hyperlink.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. In the Hyperlink dialog 1352 click on the ... browse button in the *Help File:* field and choose the project or published help file containing the topic you want to link to. (It is always preferable to choose a project rather than a compiled help file if possible.)

   Never try to create links between different output formats. This will not work!

4. If you choose a project (**.hmxz, .hmxp**) or HTML Help (**.chm**) file the topic IDs of the external project or help file will now be displayed in the Topic ID list. Choose the topic (and anchor 415 if applicable) you want to link to and click on OK.

5. Remember that this link depends on the presence of the target help file. If there is any chance that the target file may not be there at runtime don't link to it, or use the A-link method described below.

Setting a global help window for runtime merging

When using runtime merging it is advisable to define a global "window name" for all the projects in the modular help system. This improves the performance of links to your help from your applications. When you define a global help window, all calls to the help system will open in the same CHM help viewer. Without a global window, you will get additional help viewers opening when calls are made first to one module and then to another.

The global help window option is set in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > Help Windows 1453. You need to set the same global window name in all projects in the modular help system, including the master project.

If you use this option the global help window name **must** begin with **$global_**, followed by an identifier consisting only of alphabetic characters. You must use the **same** global name in all the projects.

Examples of valid global window names:

```
$global_main_mycompany
$global_widgethelp
```

Important – make sure your window name is unique!

Don't use the standard $global_main name! If you do it is quite possible that some other software on the user's computer will also be using that name and then your help could open in their help window!

How to use A-links to create links between modules

Use this method to create links between modules when you are not sure whether the module containing the link target will be present at runtime or not. It creates a link that points to both the main target topic and to an alternative topic in the master help module.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If the main target is present the user can select it from the dialog. If it is not present the alternative topic is displayed automatically.

This method only works in HTML Help (the A-link macro is translated automatically when you publish to HTML Help). Use it for creating links between the help files of modular help systems if there is a possibility that the help files containing the target topics may not be present at runtime. This can happen when you use runtime merging and choose not to include one or more of the help files in your distribution.

Step 1: Prepare the alternative topic in the master project

The alternative topic should be in the master project because this is the only help file that is always present in a runtime-merged modular help system.

1. Open the master help project and choose or create the alternative topic that you want the user to be able to view when the other help file module containing the target topic is not available. This can be any topic including a topic in the Topic Files section that does not have a TOC entry.
2. Select this alternative topic in the Project Explorer, display its tab and enter a unique A-keyword in its A-Keywords: field.

Step 2: Prepare the target topic in the child project

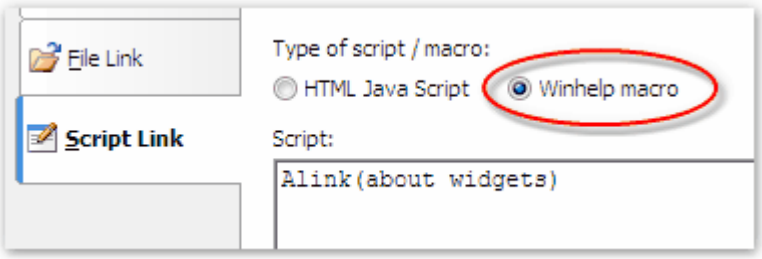
1. Select the topic you want to link to in the child project.
2. Display the topic's tab and enter the same A-keyword as above in its *A-Keywords:* field.

   This A-keyword should only be used in these two topics. If you use it in any other topics in any module these topics will also be displayed in the link list.

Step 3: Create the link

1. Open the module in which you want to create the link. This can be a master module or another child module.
2. Select the topic where you want to create the link and open the Insert Hyperlink dialog.
3. Select the Script Link option on the left, then select *Winhelp macro*.
4. Enter *Alink()* in the Script: field and type the keyword between the parentheses. If your keyword is "about widgets" the dialog would look like this:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



If the target help file is not present when the user clicks on the link the alternative topic will be displayed automatically. If the target topic is present a dialog will be displayed in which the user can select either the target topic or the alternative topic.

This is just a very simple example to show you how this solution works in principle. In practice you can also make more complex solutions, using more alternative topics and more keywords. If you use multiple keywords remember to separate them with semi-colons, like this:

```
Alink(about widgets;troubleshooting;widget solutions)
```

See also:

Using A-keywords 579
About A-keywords 1606
Creating a modular project 1089
Modular Projects 1547 (Reference)

7.8.9 Publishing modular projects

When you are publishing modular projects to HTML Help the procedure you use depends on the merging method 1096 you are using for your child modules. If you are using runtime merging you must publish all the child projects separately, they are not published automatically when you publish the master project.

All other output formats only use publish time merging.

Generating output with publish time merging

When you use publish time merging all the child modules of the master module are combined automatically. You only need to publish the master file, all child modules are included in a single publish run.

In HTML Help publish time merging is an option 1096 that you can select for each module in your master project.

In all other formats publish time merging is always used for all modules. All modules will always be published together with the main project as one large project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

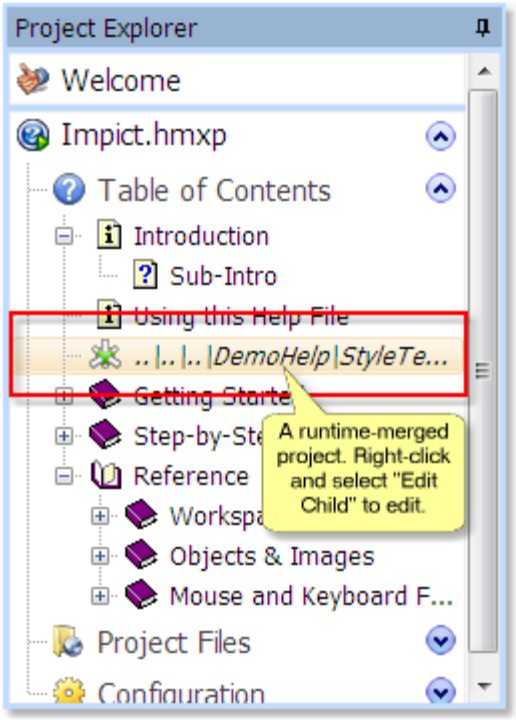
Generating CHM help systems with runtime merging

Runtime merging is only possible in HTML Help. It is irrelevant for all other output formats. Runtime merging is an option 1096 that you can select for each module in your master project.

Important: The project filenames and the output filenames of the CHM files must be identical. The references between the child and the master help files are based on the filenames and if project and output filename don't match the references will be invalid.

Child modules configured for runtime merging must be published individually, they are not published automatically when you publish the master module!

1. Check your master project for child projects configured for runtime merging. They are easy to identify because their contents are not displayed as part of the master project's TOC.



Display for a project inserted with runtime merging

2. Right-click on the runtime modules, select *Edit Child* in the context menu to open the child projects, then select the child projects in the Project Explorer and publish them.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If any of your child modules contain their own child modules configured for runtime merging these must also be published separately.

3. Publish the master module.
4. Copy all the published help files to the same directory if you have not published them to the same directory.

Settings controlled by the master project in publish time merging

When you use publish time merging almost everything is controlled by the master project. The settings of the child projects are ignored and replaced by the settings of the master project. However, if settings in the child projects are unique and not duplicated in the master then they will be used:

Project search paths:	Project search paths defined in the child projects that are not defined in the master project are added to the end of the master project's list of paths. When inserting a graphic or a snippet file Help+Manual then searches through all the paths in order and inserts the first file it finds with a matching name. This means you must be careful not to use files with duplicate names in your child projects.
User-defined variables:	If child projects contain user-defined variables with names that are not used in the master project the definitions in the child projects will be used. However, if the master project contains variables with identical names then the definitions from the master project will be used.
Custom include options:	If a child project contains user-defined include options 988 not defined in the master project they are available in publish time merging.
HTML topic page templates:	The HTML topic page templates 1036 of the master project replace all child project templates that have the same names. For example, this means that the *Default* template from the master project template is always used in all child modules, replacing any template changes that may have been made in the child projects. If child projects contain HTML page template definitions with names not used for templates in the master project then these HTML page templates will be used in the child projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

For example, if you have defined an HTML page template called *Secondary* in your child module it will be used in the child module if there is no HTML page template called *Secondary* in the master module.

However, if the master module contains a template called *Secondary* then the master's version will be used in the child module as well and the version defined in the child module will be ignored.

Baggage files: Baggage files in the master project have priority over Baggage files with the same name in child projects. See Baggage handling 1124 for further details.

See also:

Publishing Your Projects 613
Modular Projects 1547 (Reference)
Baggage file handling 1124

7.8.10 Multiple WebHelp projects

Like all other output formats except CHM, WebHelp only supports publish-time merging. When you publish a project containing child modules to WebHelp all the child projects are always published to a single HTML directory with a single index file and Table of Contents (TOC).

However, sometimes you may still want to set up a larger WebHelp project with a modular structure, using a separate directory and index file for each module. When you do this the WebHelp help systems in the separate output directories are referred to as "collections".

How to set up a "modular" Webhelp project

To do this you must create and edit completely separate projects. Do not use a master-child structure. Your project modules must be independent of each other.

Publishing and uploading to your server:

When you publish your "modular" WebHelp projects each project must be published to a separate folder. In the same way, when you upload the projects to your server you must store them in separate folders. If you upload them all to the same folder you will probably overwrite some files, resulting in errors.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Restrictions with "modular" Webhelp projects

There are some important restrictions and also some important points you need to observe when working with collections and the links between them.

- These are not real modular projects. You cannot insert the child modules in a master Help+Manual project. If you did this all the modules would automatically be integrated in a single output folder, which is not what you want here. Separate "modules" must be opened and published as separate projects.
- You can link between collections but you cannot merge their TOCs.
- You cannot create links to the target topics in the project files of the other projects because Help+Manual cannot manage links between collections across directory boundaries. You must use Internet links 422, inserting the correct URLs and/or paths between your planned directory locations yourself.

Compiling projects to separate HTML directories

- Open each project and publish it separately, to a separate directory. A WebHelp project like this in its own directory is called a "collection".
- Make sure that you manually enter a different output directory for each project in the **Index Page:** field of the Publish 1310 dialog. It is good to check this to make absolutely sure that you are not publishing everything to the same directory.

Creating links between Webhelp projects

Do not try to use normal topic links for hyperlinks between WebHelp projects output to separate directories. This will not work! Use Internet links 422 (see below for syntax).

In the *Target window:* field of the Hyperlink dialog 1352 select:

Same as referring topic:	Opens the target topic in the current window. The TOC of the current collection will continue to be displayed. You will not see the TOC of the collection containing the target topic.
Top frame:	Opens the target topic in the current window with the TOC of the target collection. The TOC of the current collection will no longer be displayed.
New window:	Opens the target topic in a new window together with its own TOC. The current window remains open.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Syntax for links between collections

The standard syntax for links between collections is as follows:

`index.html?topic_id.htm#anchor`

Use lower case:	The names and extensions of ***all*** the files generated for WebHelp are all lower case, even if the topic IDs used to generate the file names contain upper case characters (all file names are automatically "down-cased" when you publish). This is very important – if you use upper-case characters your links will fail on all Unix and Linux servers and many other systems!
index.html	This is the index file of the target project and it should ***always*** be included in the links. Even though linking directly to the topic file may seem to work the browser history may not be stored properly, making it impossible for the user to return to the original topic by using the browser's **`Back`** button. By default the index file of WebHelp has the extension **`.html`** unless you enter a different extension in the **Index Page:** field of the Publish 1310 dialog.
?topic_id.htm	The **?** character is necessary between the index file and the topic filename. Each topic is stored in a separate file and the file name is generated by converting all characters to lower case and adding **`.htm`** to the topic's topic ID. 368 For example, if the topic ID is **`HM_Intro`** then the topic file name would be **`hm_intro.htm.`**
#anchor	This is optional and links to an anchor 415 in the target topic.

See also:

WebHelp 1510

7.9 Using Baggage Files

The *Project Files* > *Baggage Files* section in the Project Explorer enables you to add a collection of small, frequently-used files to your project. The entries in the Baggage Files section are not links or references, they become a physical part of your project.

These files are stored together with your project files and they are always accessible, even if you delete the original source files. If you use the single-file **`.hmxz`** format your baggage files are stored inside your project file. In the uncompressed **`.hmxp`** XML format (Professional and Floating license versions only) they are stored in the Baggage folder inside your project folder.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.9.1 Uses for Baggage Files

There are two main uses for the Baggage Files section: For files of your own referenced in your HTML code and scripts and as a storage area for small, frequently-used graphics you want to keep with your project, particularly those used in your HTML templates (for example logos, buttons etc).

Integrating files referenced in HTML code and scripts:

There are a number of functions in Help+Manual that allow you to insert your own inline HTML code in your output or to modify the HTML code generated by the program. These include HTML Code Object Tool 469, the HTML code editing function of the Insert Video Tool 548, all the HTML editing functions for HTML templates 1026 and the code you enter in scripts and macros 452.

If you want to reference graphics files and other files in this code Help+Manual normally has no way of knowing that these files exist or that you want them to be exported with your project when you publish. The Baggage Files section provides a quick and elegant way of solving this problem.

All files that you add to your project as Baggage are automatically exported when you publish your output and can be referenced in your HTML code by name only, without any additional path information.

Frequently-used graphics

You can also use the Baggage Files section for storing small, frequently-used graphics files – for example custom icons used for your Table of Contents in WebHelp output or logo images that you use frequently. Once you have added them to the Baggage you can delete any graphics files used in your project from other locations. Help+Manual always looks for files in the Baggage first, so if they are there they will be found, for all output formats.

This is a useful way of keeping the files associated with your project together but it should generally only be used for relatively small files. This applies particularly if you are using the single-file **.hmxz** format, because all your Baggage files are stored inside the .hmxz file together with all the other project components. (The Basic version of Help+Manual only supports the **.hmxz** format .)

Graphics storage location in HMXP projects

When you are working in single-file HMXZ mode we don't recommend storing large numbers of large files like graphics in your Baggage. If you do, you will bloat the project files and this may slow down editing because the entire contents of the HMXZ must be loaded

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

into memory when it is opened. However, you don't have this problem in HMXP projects because the contents of the Baggage are just files on disks.

Storing your graphics in your Baggage in HMXP projects can be practical if you are saving your projects in a Version Control System 848 (VCS). If you do this, then your graphics are automatically saved to the VCS repository because they are an integrated part of your project. Since graphics can take up a lot of space in the repository you may or may not want to do this, but it is available as an option if you want it.

7.9.2 Adding and referencing files

All files you add to the Baggage Files section are automatically included/exported in your HTML-based output. This is the best way to include files referenced in manually-edited code in your projects. You can reference all files in the Baggage section directly in your code. You don't have to add any path information because the files are always available on the same directory level as the other help files. All necessary copying and references are handled automatically by Help+Manual. (This is why Help+Manual uses a flat-file model without sub-folders in its CHM and WebHelp output, by the way: easier referencing in your code.)

You can use Baggage files for files referenced in the code entered with Insert > HTML Code 469, the HTML code editing function of the Insert Video Tool 548, all the HTML editing functions for HTML templates 1026 and the code you enter in scripts and macros 452.

Adding files to the Baggage section

Files you place in the Baggage section become part of your project and are always available. They do not have to be loaded from any external directory – you can even delete the original files after adding them to your Baggage.

1. In the Project Explorer, select **Project Files** > **Baggage Files**.
2. In the Ribbon select *Add File* > *Add New File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics**.
3. Select the file you want to add and click on OK. The file will be added to the Baggage list and will become part of your project.

Note that you can use include options 1124 for Baggage files!

Referencing Baggage files in your HTML code

Baggage files are always directly accessible for your code and they are always in the same directory as the other files in your output. This also applies in HTML Help: Here, the Baggage files are in the same internal "virtual directory" inside the CHM file as all the other files in your HTML Help system.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Baggage files can be referenced directly without any path information because they are always stored on the same directory level as the other help files. Just enter the name of the file as it is shown in the list in the Baggage section.

See also:

Inserting plain HTML code 469
Videos and Online Media 548
Using HTML Templates 1026
Inserting script and macro links 452

7.9.3 Removing, exporting and importing

Removing and exporting files stored in the Baggage section are generally quite straightforward operations but there are a couple of points you need to bear in mind. You can also import the baggage files from other projects.

Removing and exporting Baggage files

Removing Baggage files:

1. Go to **Project Files** > **Baggage Files** in the Project Explorer and select the Baggage file you want to remove.
2. Press DELETE or select *Add File* > *Delete Entry* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**

Note that this physically deletes the selected file from your project. If you want to keep a copy of it export it first before deleting it (see below).

Exporting Baggage files:

This saves a copy of the selected Baggage file in a new location (for example to back up the file before removing it from your project).

1. Go to **Project Files** > **Baggage Files** in the Project Explorer and select the Baggage file you want to export.
2. Select *Save Baggage File As...* button in the lower right corner of the Help+Manual window.

Importing Baggage files from other projects

You can import all the Baggage files from another Help+Manual project to the current project.

Files with duplicate names will be overwritten when you do this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

1. Select the *Baggage Files* section in the Project Explorer.
2. Select *Add File* > *Add New File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** and select the Help+Manual you want to import the Baggage files from.
3. You will be asked if you want to import the Baggage files from the selected project. Confirm to import the files.

Renaming Baggage files

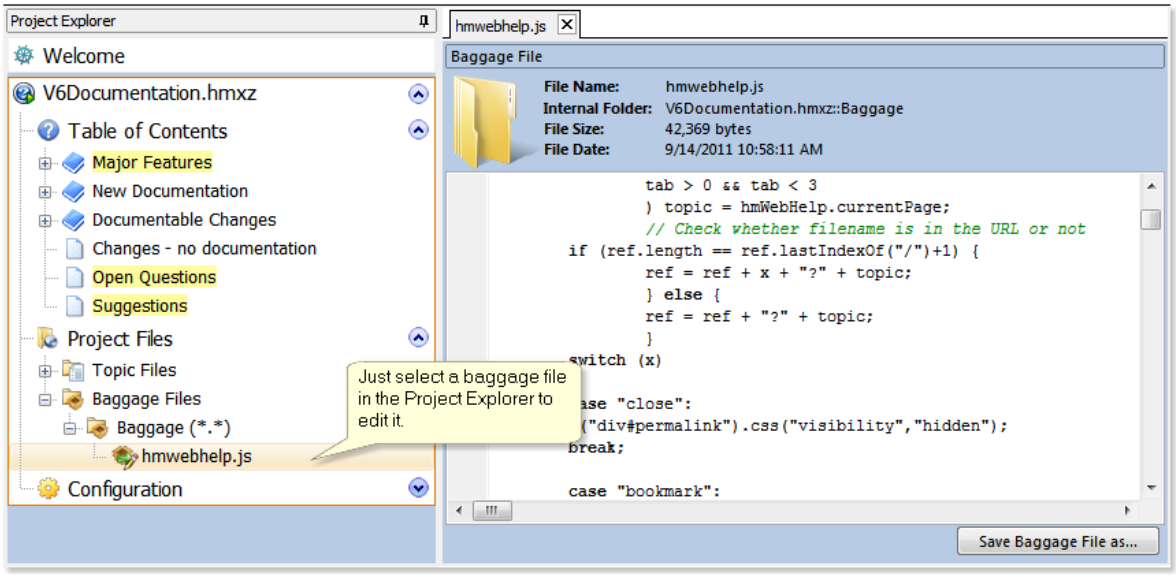
You cannot rename Baggage files directly in Help+Manual. To rename a Baggage file remove it from the Baggage list (see above), rename the original file and then add it to the Baggage list again.

Warning: Do not attempt to rename Baggage files on the disk in Windows Explorer, doing this will cause errors in your project!

7.9.4 Editing Baggage Files

You can edit text files in the Baggage directly. Help+Manual includes an integrated source code editor with basic syntax highlighting for most of the common languages that you are likely to use in your Baggage Files. This makes it possible to perform quick edits on the files without having to export and re-import them.

To edit, select the file in **Project Files** > **Baggage Files** > **Baggage** and it will be automatically opened in the editor on the right. You can open a Search and Replace dialog with **CTRL+F**.



Editing Baggage files

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.9.5 Baggage handling

This topic summarizes how Baggage files are handled by Help+Manual. This information will help you to understand how Baggage works.

Where and how Baggage files are used

Graphics in the Baggage section can be used for all output formats. If you use graphics formats not directly supported by the output format they will be converted automatically when you publish, just like the other graphics in your project.

For example, BMP files will be converted to a format compatible with HTML in HTML-based output formats. References to the BMP files in your topics will be adjusted automatically but references to BMP files in your own HTML code will fail – they would have failed anyway because BMP is not supported in HTML.

Non-graphics files in the Baggage section are only relevant for HTML-based formats. They are ignored in all other formats.

Using include options with Baggage files

You can use conditional output include options on Baggage files just as you can on topics. This makes it possible to explicitly include or exclude individual Baggage files in or from specific output formats or builds.

1. Select the Baggage file in the Project Explorer.
2. Right-click on the Baggage file and select Include in Builds in the context menu.
   OR: Select *Change* > *Include in Builds* in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**
3. Select the build options you want to apply to the file.

Baggage graphics files have priority

Baggage graphics files have priority over graphics files stored in the folders in your project search path 1405. If a graphics file in the Baggage section has the same name as a file on the project search path the Baggage version will always be used in the output.

This means you must take care to avoid duplicate file names in your graphics folders and the Baggage section, otherwise the versions in your graphics folders will be "invisible" to the program when you generate your output. (In any case it is better to use the Image Shortcuts 517 function for graphics than Baggage.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Size of the Baggage section

Since Baggage files are physically stored as part of your project they should only be used for a small collection small files. Use the Image Shortcuts 517 function for frequently-used graphics files.

This is particularly important when you are saving in the single-file **.hmxz** format, which is the only format supported by the Basic version of Help+Manual. Adding a large number of large files to your Baggage will significantly inflate the size of the **.hmxz** project file, which may cause problems on slower computers with less memory.

Baggage files in modular projects

The Baggage files from project modules are also merged in your output when you are using publish-time merging. If individual modules contain Baggage files with the same names Help+Manual always uses the first Baggage file encountered and ignores all other Baggage files. This means that Baggage files in the master module always have priority, followed by the child modules in the order in which they are processed.

For example, if both the master module and the child modules contain Baggage files called `redarrow.gif` and `functions.js` the versions of the files in the master will project be used in the entire project, both in the master module's topics and in the child module's topics. The versions in the child modules will be ignored.

If two child modules contain different versions of a file with the same name the first version encountered will be used in the topics of both modules and the other version will be ignored.

To make sure that Baggage files in child modules are used in the child module you must make sure that their names are unique and not used in any other modules, including the master module.

See also:

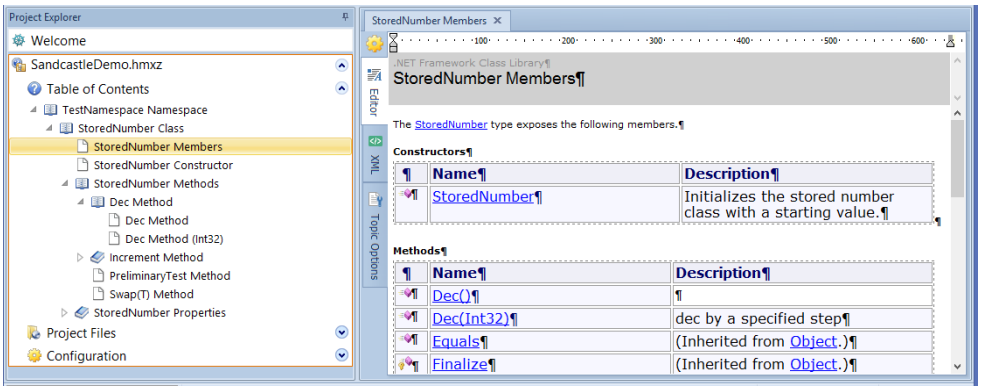
Working with Modular Help Systems 1088

7.10 Source Code Documentation

Help+Manual includes and integrates the latest version of Microsoft Sandcastle, making it possible for you to generate source code documentation for your .NET development projects directly. You just need to follow some simple rules for commenting and make a single configuration change in your Visual Studio project. Then you can convert the assembly structures and your comments directly into a pre-formatted Help+Manual documentation project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Unlike the standalone version of Sandcastle, which generates non-editable CHM files directly, this allows you to edit the project in any way you like and publish to all the formats supported by Help+Manual—not just CHM but PDF, WebHelp, Visual Studio Help and so on.



The Sandcastle import option automatically creates a pre-formatted, pre-structured Help+Manual project from your source code

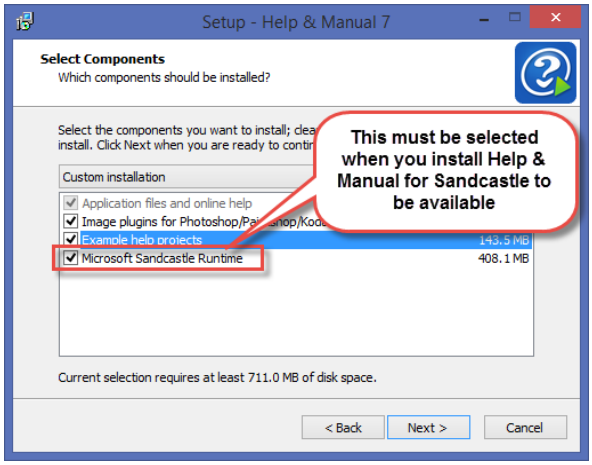
7.10.1 About MS Sandcastle

Sandcastle is a free Microsoft tool that automatically generates documentation from program source assemblies and XML comment files for Microsoft Visual Studio .NET development projects. If you are already using Sandcastle and have it installed on your computer Help+Manual supports it from version 2.4 and above. However, we strongly recommend installing the runtime version bundled with Help+Manual. It is the latest official version from Microsoft and will be used automatically once it is installed.

Use the Sandcastle version included with Help+Manual

Help+Manual comes with the latest official version of Sandcastle from Microsoft. You just need to select the Sandcastle option when you install Help+Manual to get it. We strongly recommend using the bundled version. It is the latest available and Help+Manual is optimized for interaction with this version. It will not interfere with your own Sandcastle installation if you have one, but once it is installed Help+Manual will only use this version and will ignore your version.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



If you didn't install Sandcastle with Help+Manual just run the latest installer again and select the option shown above. For more background information about Sandcastle see Microsoft's Sandcastle page.

You don't need (and can't use) Sandcastle Help File Builder with Help+Manual!

Microsoft is no longer releasing new versions of Sandcastle (but that doesn't prevent it from working just fine). There is now an independent project called Sandcastle Help File Builder, developed and maintained on Codeplex by Eric Woodruff. You don't need to use Sandcastle Help File Builder with Help+Manual, and it is also not possible to do so. It is not needed because Help+Manual performs the tasks that HFB performs, interfacing with Sandcastle and generating the output.

You are free to use Help File Builder with your Sandcastle installation independently of Help+Manual, of course. You just don't need it and can't use it for generating Sandcastle source code documentation from your .NET projects with Help+Manual.

7.10.2 Configuring Your .NET Project

You need to do two things to set up your .NET project for source code documentation with Help+Manual and Sandcastle:

1. Comment your code
2. Set one configuration option in the project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Commenting your code

Basic procedure:

To create documentation for your code you need to insert XML elements in special comment fields, which you identify by using triple slashes instead of the usual double slashes. Insert these comment fields in the source code directly before the code block to which the comments refer, like this:

```
/// <summary>
/// The summary generally comes first. This summary would be
/// for the class level documentation. </summary>
/// <remarks>
/// You can use the remarks tag for longer comments</remarks>
public class WidgetConfabulator : TestInterface
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Store for the realname property.</summary>
    private string _realname = null;

    /// <summary>
    /// The class constructor. </summary>
    public WidgetConfabulator()
    {
        // This is a normal comment with two slashes and no XML tags
        // and will NOT be included in the documentation
    }
}
```

When you compile with comments file option activated (see below) the XML documentation file used by Sandcastle will generated from the XML tags in your triple-slash comments.

Sandcastle XML Comments Guide

For full details on the XML comments supported by Sandcastle see the comprehensive Sandcastle XML Comments guide maintained by Eric Woodruff, the originator and manager of the Sandcastle Help File Builder project:

Sandcastle XML Comments Guide

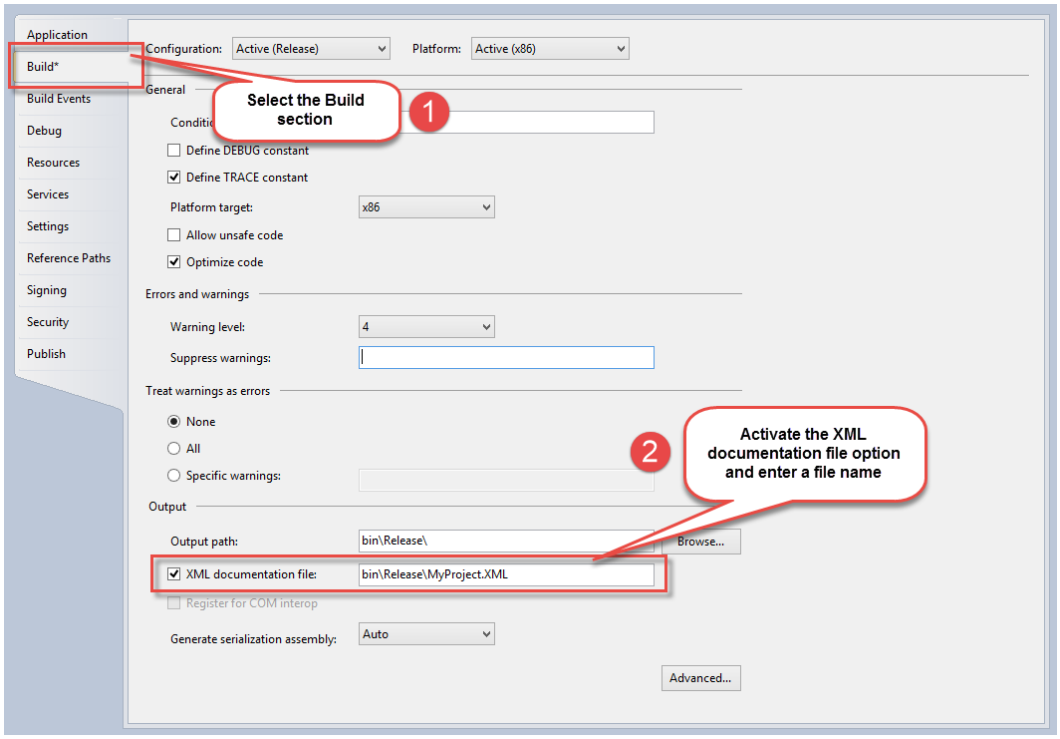
Important warning: There are a some tags and elements described in the guide that are only supported by Sandcastle Help File Builder. These are identified in the guide and they should not be used with projects that you are going to document with Help+Manual without Help File Builder (which you can't use with Help+Manual, because HM then performs the function of Help File Builder).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Activating XML documentation file generation in your Visual Studio project

The other requirement is to configure your project in Visual Studio so that it will generate the XML documentation file from your Sandcastle comments and XML tags. To do this open your development project in Visual Studio and go to the **Project Properties** > **Build** section. Scroll down to the **Output** heading, enable the the *XML documentation file* option and enter a suitable name for it.

Alternatively you can also compile your assemblies with the documentation switch and the comments file name: **`/doc:comments.xml`**



7.10.3 Importing from Visual Studio

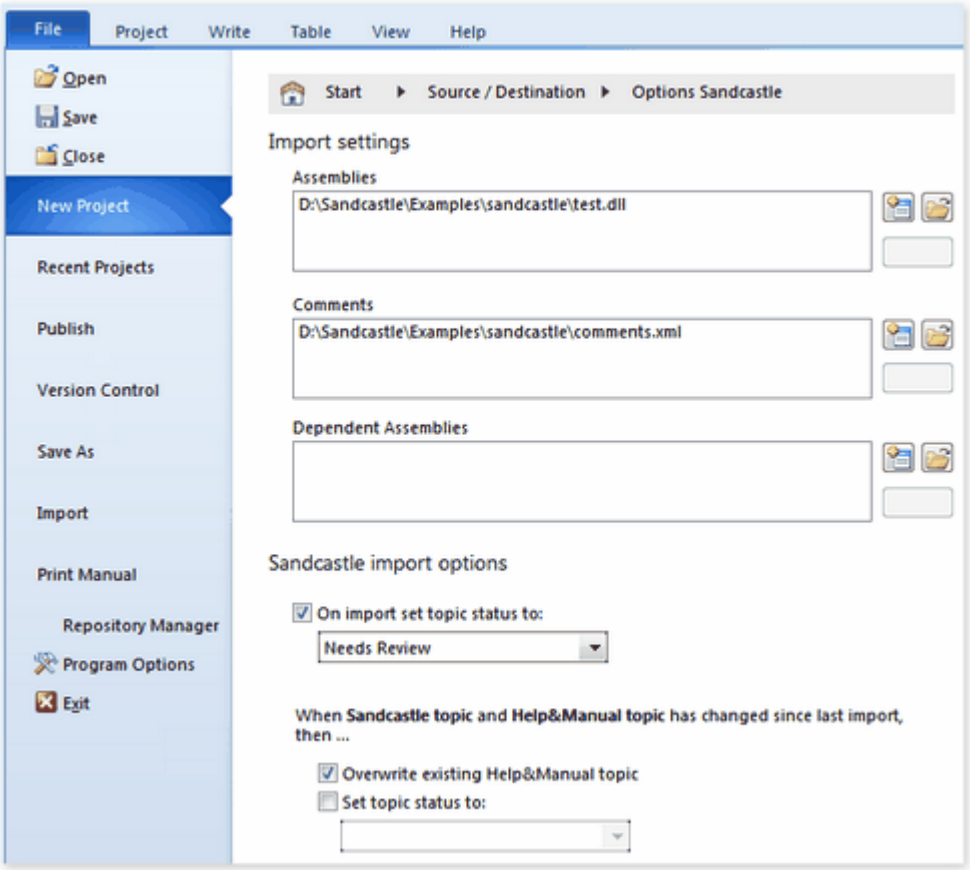
To get your documentation from your .NET project into Help+Manual you just need to import it with the Sandcastle option. You can do this either by creating a completely new Help+Manual project, or you can add it to an existing project. Once you have created a project for your .NET documentation you can also update it by re-importing into the same project again.

Importing from your .NET project to a new Help+Manual project

1. Select *New Project* in the **File** menu.

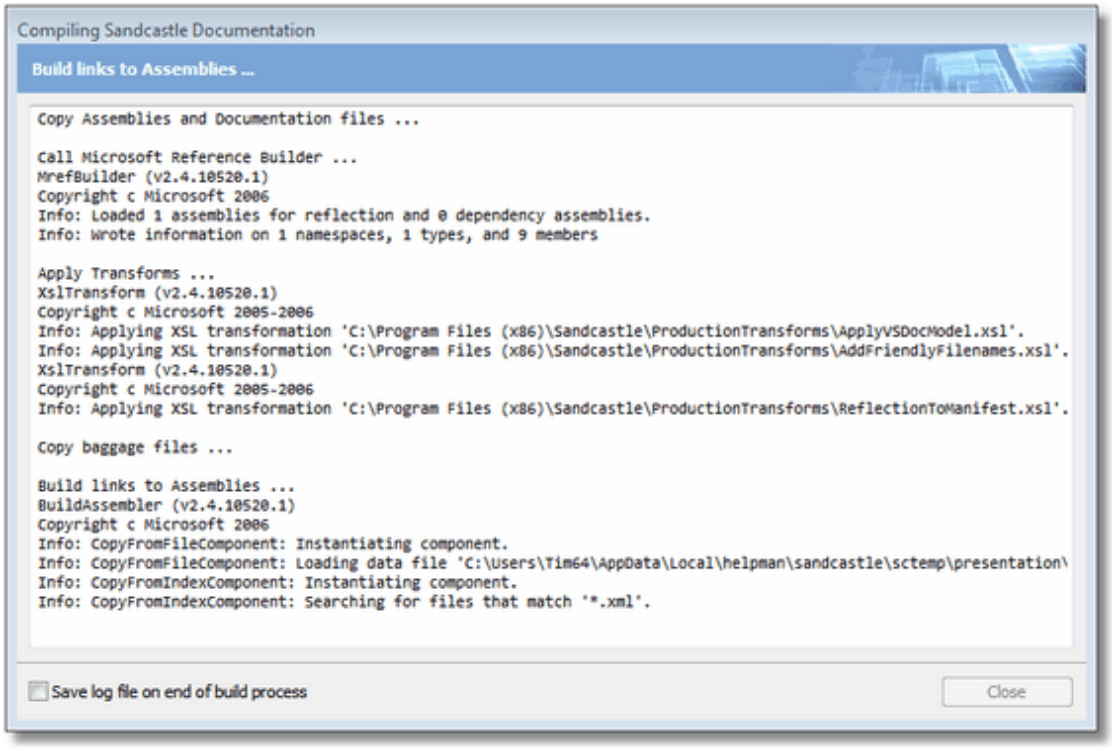
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Select *Sandcastle documentation file* in the Import existing documentation section in the lower half of the page.
3. Enter the name and path for your new Help+Manual project and configure the other settings as you would for an empty new project 124.
4. Click on *Continue with Options* and select your assemblies, comment files and any dependent assemblies. The comments file is the XML documentation file 1127 you configure in your .NET project. You can choose multiple files in each category. You can also set a topic status to be set for your imported topics.

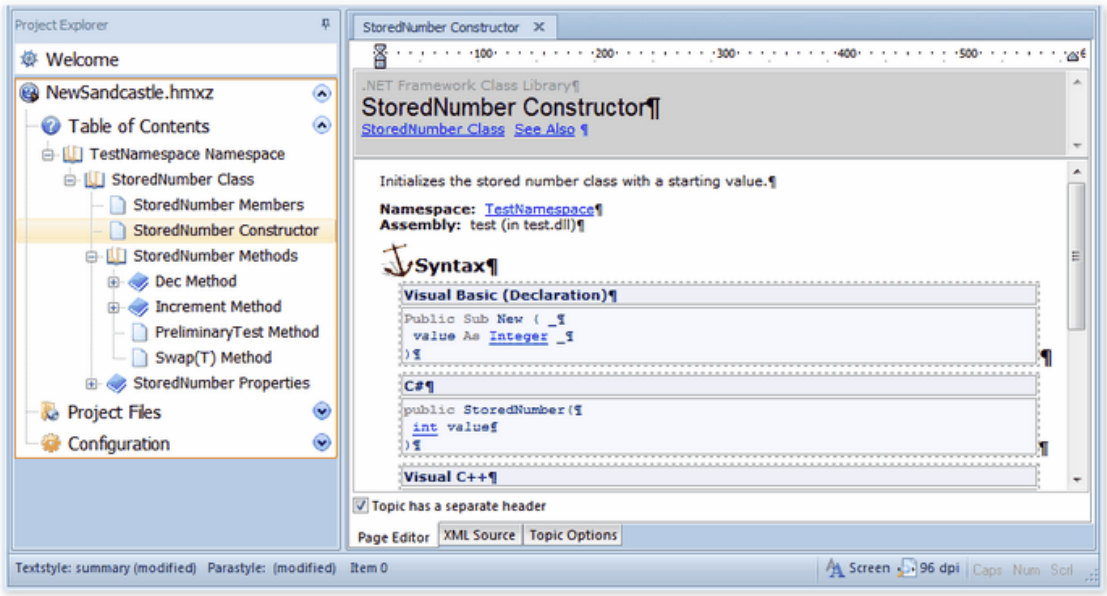


5. Click on *Import*. Help+Manual will then run Sandcastle in the background, generate the project and import it to a Help+Manual project. Depending on the size of your programming project this may take a while. The time this takes depends on Sandcastle and the speed of your computer, not on Help+Manual.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



6. When the process is finished your Sandcastle project will appear in Help+Manual for editing. You can then edit and publish it just like any normal Help+Manual project:



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Updating existing HM projects from your source code

You can also update your source code documentation to the Help+Manual project you created from an earlier version.

Open the Help+Manual project and select *Import* in the **File** menu instead of *New Project*. All the other steps are the same as described above. New topics chapters will be added to the end of the existing TOC. Updates to existing topics and chapters will be handled depending on the conflict management settings you configure for "changed topics". If you opt to overwrite the existing topics the earlier versions will be replaced.

7.11 Visual Studio Help

Visual Studio Help is available in two versions, Visual Studio Help 2008 and 2010, which are also known as MS Help 2.0 and MS Help 3.0, respectively. Originally, each of these help formats was announced as the upcoming the successor to HTML Help. However, in both cases Microsoft then backpedaled and it now seems clear that they are not going to be released as help formats for normal user applications.

These formats are only relevant for documenting Visual Studio .NET programming components within the Microsoft Visual Studio programming environment. They cannot be used for documenting normal application programs.

This section just provides a brief introduction to publishing Visual Studio Help with Help+Manual. If you want to use Visual Studio Help you need to be experienced in VS.NET programming. It will not be of any use to you otherwise. In addition to this you should also study the relevant documentation in the Visual Studio package and the Visual Studio Help Integration Kit/VSHIK (for version 2.0, check the MSDN site for details).

You can find an excellent introduction to both versions of Visual Studio Help on the Helpware.net website.

Support for Visual Studio Help (both formats) is only included in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual.

See also:

Visual Studio Help 1525 (Help Formats)
Visual Studio Help 1464 (Project Configuration)

7.11.1 Requirements and limitations

Both Visual Studio Help formats – Help 2.0/HXS and Help 3.0/MSHC – are irrelevant for normal help and documentation purposes. You cannot view or use them unless you have the Visual Studio .NET programming package installed and you cannot even create Visual Studio

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2008 without Visual Studio. You cannot use Visual Studio Help to document normal application programs.

Limitations of Visual Studio Help

Surprisingly for a help format that was touted as the best thing since sliced bread, the features and capabilities of both the Visual Studio Help formats are actually considerably more limited than those of either the obsolete Winhelp format or HTML Help, the formats both versions of VS Help were originally supposed to replace.

Many common features of Microsoft's earlier help formats are not available in Visual Studio Help. For example, window types 194 are not supported at all, nor are links to external files. Links to external videos are also taboo in Visual Studio Help. The only external links that are permitted are web URLs with absolute addresses.

What you need to publish and view Visual Studio Help 2008

To publish Help 2.0 you need Visual Studio 2002 or later and the Visual Studio Help Integration Kit (VSHIK), which can be downloaded from the Microsoft website (check the MSDN site for details). Both these packages must be installed to publish Help 2.0 with Help+Manual.

After installing the Help 2.0 compiler go to **View** > **Program Options** > Compilers 1268 in Help+Manual and make sure that the correct path is entered to the compiler executable.

To view Help 2.0 documentation you only need Microsoft Visual Studio 2002 or later, the VSHIK does not have to be installed. Unlike HTML Help there is no standalone version of the Help 2.0 viewer. If you don't have MS Visual Studio installed you can't view Help 2.0.

The MS Help 2.0 compiler:

The MS Help 2.0 compiler is part of the Visual Studio Help Integration Kit (VSHIK), which you must download from the Microsoft website in the correct version for your version of Visual Studio .NET. Unlike the HTML Help and Winhelp compilers it is not a standalone compiler system. It can only be used in combination with Visual Studio .NET, which you will have if you are programming Visual Studio .NET components. If you are not programming Visual Studio .NET components you don't need it. Got it?

The Visual Studio Help Integration Kit:

This package is available directly from the Microsoft website. Unfortunately, the download location has been changing quite frequently recently so you will need to search for it on

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the MSDN site yourself – any download link we could provide here would probably be obsolete again by the time you read this.

What you need to publish and view Visual Studio Help 2010

Unlike Visual Studio Help 2008, the new MS Help 3.0/MSHC format does not require a special compiler. It is really just a zip archive with the extension **.mshc**, containing XHTML topic files and configuration files. Help+Manual can generate MSHC files directly without any assistance from other software.

There is also no special viewer for Help 3.0, although Rob Chandler has produced a very nice one. The default viewer for MSHC help files is your default browser, but this only works if Visual Studio 2010 is installed, because it provides the necessary software for making the help contents available to the browser.

See also:

Visual Studio Help 1525 (Reference)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.11.2 About publishing VS Help

Required settings

In Help+Manual you can enter these settings in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Visual Studio Help** > Namespace & Options 1464.

Visual Studio Help 2008 (HXS)

The Help 2.0 compiler requires a "namespace" and a "unique identifier" (also referred to as a "Unique Title ID" in the documentation). Both must be entered otherwise the compiler will quit with an error message. (The namespace is used to call the help viewer, the unique identifier is like a Topic ID for the entire help file.)

Visual Studio Help 2010 (MSHC)

The Help 3.0 format only has three required settings: The vendor name (the company that owns the book and packages), the product name (the name of your product) and the book name (the name of your book). The fourth required setting is the locale, but that is inserted automatically by Help+Manual on the basis of the language setting in your project.

Note that in MS Help 3.0 a "package" is a single MSHC help file. A "book" is a group of packages that you install together. A package can belong to more than one book.

Registration is required for VS help files

Unlike HTML Help CHM files you cannot just copy a Visual Studio Help HSX or MSHC file to your disk and then click on it to start it. It must be installed and registered first.

Visual Studio Help 2008 (HXS)

When you publish HXS files with Help+Manual they are installed and registered automatically on your development machine so that you can view them there. However, when you distribute your files you must configure the MS Installer to do this. See the documentation of the installer and your Microsoft Visual Studio package for details.

Visual Studio Help 2010 (MSHC)

Visual Studio Help 2010 MSHC files must be installed with the Visual Studio Help Manager. Please see the VS documentation for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Referencing files in your HTML topic templates

If you reference any additional files in your HTML topic templates 1036 you must add them to the Baggage Section 1119 in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer. MS Help 2 does not have anything like an **.HHP** file with which you can tell the compiler to include additional files. (Yet another surprising limitation compared to Microsoft's other earlier help formats.)

If you add files to the Baggage Section they will be included in your published output automatically.

"Do not compile" option for debugging Visual Studio Help 2008 files

Note this option only applies to Visual Studio Help 2008/MS Help 2.0.

Help+Manual supports two different compile options for Visual Studio Help. Normally you will compile a finished HXS file, which will then be automatically registered on your local development computer and opened. If this does not work properly there is also a debugging option called *Do not compile, open with VStudio* in the Publish 613 dialog.

- If you select the *Do not compile* option Help+Manual generates a Visual Studio Help Project file with the extension `.HWProj` in the temporary output directory. This is a small XML file that acts as a wrapper for Visual Studio.
- When you select this option the temporary output directory (in your project directory) is not deleted after you compile the project. After publishing you can then use the `.HWProj` file to open and compile the project file directly in VS.Net, using the debugging options available there.

Calls to register and view .HXS files

The following two calls are just brief examples. For full details please refer to the documentation of VS.NET and the VSHIK!

Manual registration of an *.HXS* file:

```
"C:\Program Files\Microsoft Help 2.0 SDK\hxreg" -n Namespace -i
UniqueID -c MyHelpfile.HXS
```

Call to view an *.HXS* file:

```
"C:\Program Files\Common Files\Microsoft Shared\Help\dex-
plore.exe" /helpcol ms-help://ECSoftware
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

As you can see there is no file name in the call. In the above example *ECSoftware* is the Namespace. The viewer will only find the file if it has been registered correctly.

See also:

Visual Studio Help 1525 (Reference)
Publishing Your Projects 613

7.12 XML and XML editing

XML is only relevant at all if you are using the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual. The Basic version does not have an XML editing tab in the Editor window and can only save in the compressed, single-file **.hmxz** format in which you do not have access to the XML source files of your project. (The Basic version can edit uncompressed XML projects however, so that it can be used as a translation editor.)

Working directly with the XML source code is something for advanced users only. You do not have to know anything at all about XML to work with Help+Manual.

7.12.1 XML Editing

There are basically two ways to edit the Help+Manual's XML source code: In the source code editor for topics, which you can find in the XML tab on the left the main editor window, and by editing the actual source of your project files directly with an external XML editor.

Editing the XML source files

To access the XML source files you need to save in the uncompressed **.hmxp** format. You can then edit all the source files with any normal text editor or a dedicated XML editor.

If you want to make any changes to the code you must observe the rules and syntax of the Help+Manual XML Language, which is open and fully documented in the Help+Manual XML Language Reference help file you can find in the Help+Manual program directory.

The `helpproject.xsd` XML schema file is automatically saved with every Help+Manual project, in the project folder. It is used to check the well-formedness and syntax of all the XML in the project files. Do not make any changes to this schema. Help+Manual depends on it being the way it is, and any changes must be supported and integrated in the program itself.

Editing in the XML Source tab

You can edit the source code of the current topic directly in the XML Source tab behind the main editor window. This tab contains a simple code editor with syntax highlighting,

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

word wrap and search and replace features. The code you enter is automatically parsed and checked for syntax and well-formedness. It will only be accepted if it does not contain any errors.

Note that you can only edit one topic at a time in the XML Source tab. If you want to edit multiple topics you must use an external editor with multi-topic capabilities and edit the source files directly.

Search and spell checking are both available in the XML editor – just right-click in the editor to access these features.

Complex search and replace with XML

Once you have gained an understanding of the basic principles of the XML syntax you can perform complex search and replace operations on the XML source code that would not be possible in the Help+Manual editor.

To do this you will need an editor that can perform search and replace operations on multiple files in multiple folders. If you are not using a dedicated XML editor a very good and inexpensive tool for this is FAR HTML from Helpware, which also has an excellent complex search and replace tool that is easier to use than regular expressions.

Alternatively, if you feel comfortable with regular expressions for complex text processing you can use "grep" utilities like PowerGREP from JG Software, which is one of the best tools available for this. JG also has a great tool for generating and testing regular expressions called RegEx Buddy. PowerGREP can also work on compressed **.hmxz** projects, because you can set it up to read and edit the contents of zip archives. You just need to tell it that files with the .hmxz extension are zip archives.

WYSIWYG previews in browsers and XML editors

Help+Manual projects are saved with an XSL stylesheet for WYSIWYG previews in web browsers and XML editors. Because of the way XML works this doesn't provide WYSIWYG editing in XML editors, but it does give you an idea of how the page will eventually look.

7.12.2 Generating H+M XML

If you follow the rules of the Help+Manual XML Language you can also create topics, chapters and entire projects directly yourself, either manually or programmatically from your application. For example you can set up your application to generate documentation projects and topics, which you can than either edit in Help+Manual or publish directly 845 from the command line without ever having to open Help+Manual yourself. Then you would be using Help+Manual as a compiler for your documentation.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual XML schema documentation

The XML schema and language used in Help+Manual is fully documented in the Help+Manual XML Language Reference help file that you can find in the Help+Manual program folder. In addition to the schema and XML tag documentation, this help file also contains a tutorial explaining how to create Help+Manual projects and topic files yourself.

This tutorial provides a basic skeleton for a fully-functional Help+Manual project. You can use this as a template to create the XML with your own application. The chapter explains the most important settings that you will want to change in the XML (such as project title, language, search path) and the basic structure of project and topic files.

Creating projects and topics

The tutorial contains basic skeletons for project and topic files, which are really very simple. In this form you should be up and running within 5 minutes or so. For example, the source of a topic file is really just a few lines of code:

```
<topic>
 <title>Welcome topic</title>
 <body>
   <header><para styleclass="Heading1">Welcome topic</para></header>
   <para styleclass="Normal">Enter topic text here.</para>
   <para styleclass="Normal">Enter more topic text here.</para>
 </body>
</topic>
```

More complex topic content

Creating topics with images, links and formatted text is a bit more challenging, but it's still pretty simple. The easiest way to get the code you need is to write some sample text in a topic in Help+Manual, then switch to the XML code editor and examine the source.

When you are creating topics from scratch you will find you can omit many of the optional parameters that the XML schema defines. Try remove everything from the XML code that is extraneous to the content you want, then switch back to the WYSIWYG editor. You will notice that even a very basic XML structure will work fine.

7.13 Using OLE Objects

OLE (Object Linking and Embedding) objects are active links in your project to documents created and edited in other applications. This enables you to insert formatted objects that you cannot create directly in the Help+Manual editor, such as formulas created in the MS Equation Editor.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

OLE objects can be inserted as links to external files (recommended) or as links to objects that are actually embedded in your project file. Embedded objects are stored with your project and will increase its size.

When your help file is published, OLE objects are converted into static bitmap graphics. The advantage of OLE over screenshots is that the objects remain editable. Double-clicking on an OLE object in the Help+Manual editor opens it for editing in its associated program.

Please see About using OLE objects 1538 in the **Reference** section for some important additional information.

See also:

Insert OLE Object 1385
About using OLE objects 1538

7.13.1 Inserting OLE objects

OLE stands for "Object Linking and Embedding". It is a Windows technology that allows you to link or embed documents and files from other programs into your current document. Instead of importing the external document you just link to it, enabling you to update the external document if necessary without making a new copy.

Note that OLE objects are actually controlled by the OLE server of the associated application, not by Help+Manual. Whether and how the object is editable depends on the server and if the function fails it is due to the server, not to Help+Manual.

When you publish your content all OLE objects are converted to bitmap graphics. This means that you can only use document types that can be converted to static graphics.

Key Information
OLE objects are only "live" while you are working in the Help+Manual editor! When you publish your output they are always converted to bitmap graphics. This is necessary because the output formats do not support live OLE objects.

How to insert an external file as an OLE object

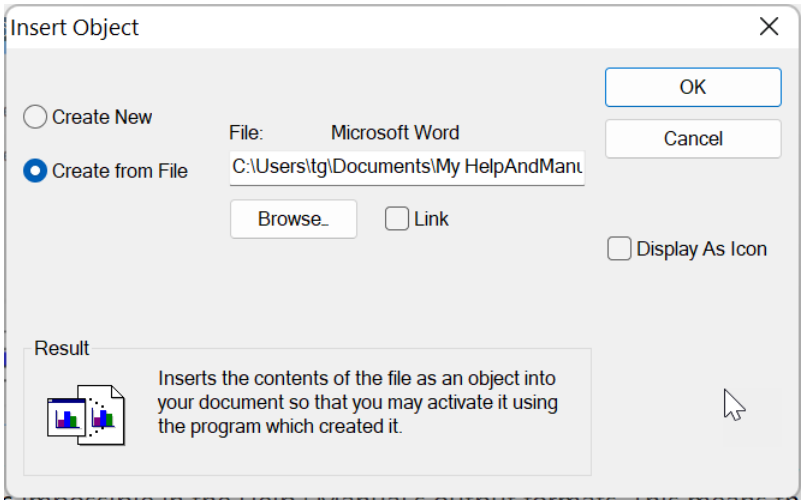
Linking is always preferable to embedding. Embedded OLE objects inflate your project files and cannot be edited outside Help+Manual. Linked objects are normal documents and can be edited directly with the associated application.

Inserting a OLE link to an external file:

1. Select the OLE Object Tool in **Write** > **Insert Object.**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Select the *Create from File* option in the dialog displayed.



3. Use the *Browse* button to select the file you want to insert. The file does not have to be in your project directory. Remember that only objects that can be displayed as static graphics are supported.
4. Select the *Link* check box. This inserts a link to the external file instead of embedding the file in your project. If you deselect this check box the object will be embedded instead of being linked.
5. Select *Display as Icon* if you only want to display a placeholder icon for the object in the Help+Manual editor. If you deselect this option you can preview and size the object in the editor.
6. Click on OK to insert the OLE object.

Embedding an OLE copy of an external file in your project:

- Proceed exactly as described above but deselect the *Link* check box in Step 4. This will make a copy of the external file and physically embed it in your Help+Manual project.

Note that when an OLE object is embedded editing the external file will not change the copy in your project! To edit the embedded OLE object you must double-click on the object in the Help+Manual editor.

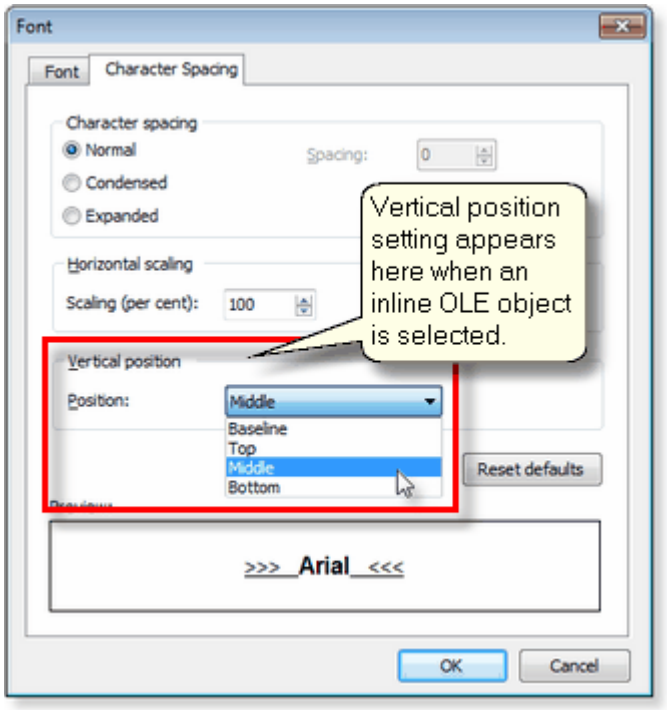
Vertical alignment for small inline OLE objects

When you are inserting small OLE objects like math formulas inline in text you will want to control their vertical alignment so that they flow better with the text. You can do this with a setting in the Font dialog that will appear when an OLE object is selected.

1. Create and insert your OLE object, for example a math formula.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

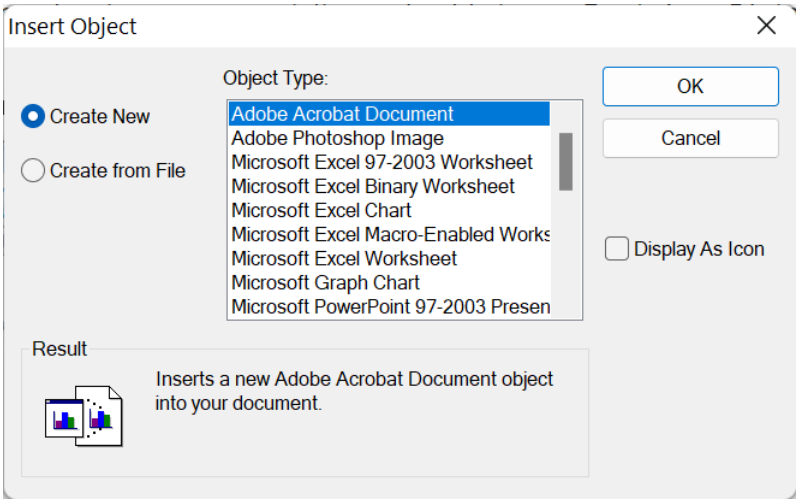
2. Click once on the object to select it and then open the Font dialog by clicking on the little "open" icon on the lower right corner of **Font** in the **Write** tab.
3. You can now adjust the vertical alignment of the OLE object with the setting in the character spacing tab:



How to embed a new OLE object in your project

The *Create New* option always embeds the resulting object in your project. It is preferable to use *Create from File* to ensure that the OLE object is stored as an external file.

1. Select the OLE Object Tool in **Write** > **Insert Object.**



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Select *Create New* in the dialog displayed, then select the application in the **Object Type** list.

   Remember that only OLE objects that can be displayed as static graphics are supported.

3. Select *Display as Icon* to display the OLE object as a small icon link. Otherwise a graphical image of the object will be inserted in your topic.
4. Click on OK to open the external application to create the object.

Important:
When you create an OLE object in this way the file you create with your external application is physically embedded in your Help+Manual project, it is not stored as an external file. This type of OLE object can only be edited from within your Help+Manual project.

How to edit OLE objects

All OLE objects:

To edit an OLE object with the application that created it just double-click on the object in the Help+Manual editor. Or right-click on the object and select *Edit* or *Open*.This method works both for OLE objects that are embedded in your project file and OLE objects inserted as links to external files.

OLE objects inserted as links:

When you insert an OLE object as a link (see above for details) you can also edit it by editing the external file with the application associated with it directly.

Deleting OLE objects:

Place the cursor before or after the OLE object and press *Backspace* or *Delete*.

See also:

Insert OLE Object 1385
About using OLE objects 1538

7.14 Replacing Formatting and Styles

The *Styles* > *Replace Styles* function in the **Write** tab is a global search and replace function for replacing either font attributes or paragraph attributes. This can be quite a useful aid when you are importing formatted text from some external sources.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Converting imported HTML formatting to styles globally with Premium Pack Toolbox

Help+Manual automatically imports and integrates the styles from Word RTF files, but formatted text from HTML must be imported as "manual formatting". This is necessary because HTML formatting cannot be automatically converted cleanly into "text" and "paragraph" styles. Normally, if you want to use styles on imported formatted text you must first create Help+Manual styles on the basis of the imported formatting and then apply the styles to your text – either manually or with Replace Styles.

Provided style classes were used in the original HTML you can globally strip out inline formatting imported from HTML and convert it to style references with the powerful Toolbox utility included in the Premium Pack style pack. If you have or are considering buying the Premium Pack, see Integrating imported formatting globally 1165 for details on this.

Otherwise see the instructions in this chapter, starting with Introduction to style replacement 1144.

See also:

Importing Data 148
Text Formatting and Styles 273
Dynamic Styles 1482

7.14.1 Introduction to style replacement

Before you start using this function, please read through the following explanations carefully. They will make it much easier to use this function effectively.

If you are an experienced computer user you will probably find that you will be able to use the function after reading this section only. If you require more information continue to the next chapters and follow the instructions provided there.

Font and paragraph attributes are separate

The first important thing to understand when you are using this function is that font attributes and paragraph attributes are internally separate. In Help+Manual the two sets of attributes are combined in paragraph styles. However, every paragraph style actually has two sets of attributes with the same name: one set of font attributes and one set of paragraph attributes.

For this reason the *Replace Styles* dialog has two modes, which must be used separately: One mode for the font attributes and one mode for the paragraph attributes.

Since paragraph styles consist of both font and paragraph attributes this means that you must always perform two passes with *Replace Styles* to apply paragraph styles: One to re-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

place the font attributes and one to replace the paragraph attributes. Since paragraph attributes are sometimes not "unique" – many different paragraph styles may share the same paragraph settings – you may find it easier to apply paragraph styles manually in some cases.

ALL the search attributes must match

The search is performed for all the attributes in the left column (*Search for Format/Style:*). All the replacement or removal operations are only performed on text that returns a perfect match for all the options in the left column.

This also applies for the operations defined by the *Inline Formatting* replacement settings in the right column (Remove inline formatting etc). The operations will only be performed on text that matches the search arguments in the left column perfectly!

Current formatting is preselected automatically

When you open the *Replace Styles* dialog the search settings in the left column are set to the attributes of the text at the current cursor position. If you perform your search without changing anything in the left column, any operations you choose in the right column will only be performed on text that precisely matches the text attributes at the current cursor position. This includes both the style name (which is just one attribute among many) and all the other attributes.

For example, if the cursor is in the normal text of a paragraph styled with *StyleA*, any operations will only be performed on text styled with *StyleA*. Text within *StyleA* text with different formatting will be ignored and will remain unchanged, unless you use a "fuzzy" search (see below).

The style name is just one attribute among many

Remember that the name of a style is just one attribute among many – setting the style name in the search column on the left just searches for text associated with that style name. It too can be switched to *(Any)* to create a fuzzy search, and doing this does not change any of the other attributes.

Changing the style name at the top of the column does not change any of the other attributes, it only changes the style name.

So you can search for the same attributes in combination with the style name (to find a style that has already been applied) or without the style name (to find text that you want to restyle or integrate in an existing style).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Explicit searches and fuzzy searches

The search is precise for attributes in the left column that are specified explicitly. The search is "fuzzy" for attributes that are specified as *(Any)*.

For example, if you want to include inline-formatted text that has a different font in your search you must set the *Font Face* setting in the left column to *(Any)*. Then the search will find both text matching the main style and text with a different font.

The same applies in the same way to all other attributes.

Inline formatting is only changed if it matches

The *Remove inline formatting* options in the right column are only performed on inline formatted text that precisely matches the settings in the left column.

Example:

For example, suppose you want to remove all manually-applied italics from your body text, which is Arial 11 points. You use several different body text styles and you want to remove manually-applied italics from all of them. You need the following settings:

	Left Column	Right Column
Font Style Name:	*(any text)*	*(keep style name)*
		Remove inline formatting
Font Face:	*Arial*	*(Use style attributes)*
Font Size:	*11*	*(Use style attributes)*
Font Style	*Italic*	
All other settings	*(any)*	*(Use style attributes)*

This will remove all manually-applied *Italic* formatting on any *Arial 11* text with any style, but it will not remove any other inline formatting because only Arial 11 Italic matches the search.

If you change *(any text)* to *Normal* for the Font Style Name in the left column then only formatting in paragraphs formatted with *Normal* will be changed.

See also:

Importing Data 148
Text Formatting and Styles 273
Dynamic Styles 1482

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

7.14.2 Font attributes - styled text

The methods described below only work for text already formatted with Help+Manual styles. See the topic on unstyled text 1147 for instructions on how to deal with texts that do not yet have styles applied.

Before you try to follow these instructions, please study the Introduction to style replacement 1144 for an explanation of how the *Replace Styles* function works. This will make it much easier for you to use this feature.

Replacing one existing font style with another – exact search

This is the most straightforward operation. It simply takes texts formatted with one style and applies a different style to them. The exact search replaces only text formatted with the named style. Any inline-formatted text within text formatted with the target style will be protected, as will any text formatted with other styles.

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics**

   If you only want to replace styles in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click*. Select the topic containing the example of the style you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Click in styled text in the editor, then select Replace Styles and Font Styles**

   Click inside some text formatted with the style you want to replace, then select *Styles > Replace Styles* in the **Write** tab. Then select the *Font Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

3. **Leave all left column attributes unchanged**

   All the formatting attributes of the current style are displayed in the left column and the style name is displayed at the top of the left column. Don't change any of the left-column font attribute settings – the attributes must all match exactly for an exact search.

4. **Select the new style in the right column**

   Select the new style you want to apply from the drop-down list directly below the *Change to Format/Style:* heading on the right. If you need to create the style first, select *Edit Styles*.

5. **Leave inline formatting settings unchanged**

   Leave the option *Remove inline formatting* activated. This will only replace inline formatting matching the settings in the left column, so any manually-formatted text

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

with different attributes will be protected. When you are performing an exact search this option is effectively inactive.

6. **Click on Replace Styles to execute**

   A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose where you want to replace: In the entire project, the main topics, the invisible topics or selected topics only. You can also perform a test run to check how many styles would be found and replaced before actually applying the changes.

   Note that any changes in the current topic will only be visible in the editor after you close the *Replace Styles* dialog.

Replacing one existing font style with another - fuzzy search

This method allows you to extend the scope of your search, so that in addition to finding text that exactly matches your style you can also apply the target style to other texts. For example, it allows you to also reset inline-formatted texts within your search text.

Fuzzy searches only seem complicated at first, they are actually quite simple. If you have trouble try out the examples at the bottom of the instructions, they will help demonstrate how it works.

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics**

   If you only want to replace styles in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click*. Select the topic containing the example of the style you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Select a style in the editor, then select Replace Styles and Font mode**

   Click inside some text formatted with the style you want to replace, then select **Format > Replace Styles.** Then select the *Font Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

3. **Set selected left-column attributes to (Any)**

   All the formatting attributes of the current style are displayed in the left column and the style name is displayed at the top of the left column.

Examples:

Suppose you know that the text whose styles you want to replace contains sub-texts formatted with a different font that you want to reset. To do this you need to set the Font Face attribute to *(Any)*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you also want to reset text formatted with a different size you must also set the Font Size attribute to *(Any)*.

If you also want to reset text formatted with bold or italics you must set the Font Styles attribute to (Any).

The same principle applies to all the attributes in the list. To match any differences from the standard style settings you need to set the attributes for those differences to (Any). You can even do this for the style name, but be careful – this may reset more texts than you expect!

4. **Select the new style in the right column**

   Select the new style you want to apply from the drop-down list directly below the *Change to Format/Style:* heading on the right. If you need to create the style first, select *Edit Styles*.

5. **Adjust the inline formatting settings for the desired result**

   As soon as you have activated fuzzy options in the search with *(Any)* settings you can also start to find manually-applied formatting within your texts, i.e. formatting that does not match the standard style settings. This makes the *Inline Formatting:* options relevant.

"Remove inline formatting" resets all matching texts:

This option will reset all inline-formatted texts that match the search settings in the left-hand column to the settings of the target style selected.

Any texts that don't match the search settings will not be reset. This means that you can "protect" texts formatted in certain ways by choosing your search settings carefully. The best way to learn how to do this is to experiment with some test texts.

"Remove except B/I/U/Color" protects these attributes:

The second option "protects" bold, italic, underlined and colored text. This allows you to be a little less careful with your left column settings and still protect these formatting styles, which are very frequently applied manually.

"Custom Settings" lets you choose for yourself

This option gives you full control over the target formatting, in the same way that the individual settings in the left hand column let you control the search settings.

By default all the attributes are set to *Use style attributes*. To change the output formatting just change any of the settings.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Important: Note that using this option will create new inline formatting within the styled text!

6. **Click on Replace Styles to execute**

   A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose where you want to replace: In the entire project, the main topics, the invisible topics or selected topics only. You can also perform a test run to check how many styles would be found and replaced before actually applying the changes.

   Note that any changes in the current topic will only be visible in the editor after you close the **Replace Styles** dialog.

Examples of fuzzy searches

Objective:	***Search for* settings:**	***Change to* settings:**
Replace one style with another. Leave manually-applied bold, italics, and underlining within the text intact.	• **Font Style Name** set to the name of the source style • **Font Styles** and **Underline** set to ***(Any)*** • All other attributes unchanged	• **Font Style Name** set to target style • **Inline Formatting** set to ***Remove except B/I/U/Color***
Replace one style with another. Change manually-formatted text with a different font to the target font, leaving all manually-applied bold, italics, underlining and text color within the target text intact.	• **Font Style Name** set to the name of the source style • **Font Face**, **Font Styles**, **Underline** and **Text Color** set to ***(Any)*** • All other attributes unchanged	• **Font Style Name** set to target style. • **Inline Formatting** set to ***Remove except B/I/U/Color***
Replace one style with another and reset all manually-applied formatting, including bold, italics, underlining and color.	• **Font Style Name** set to the name of the source style • All other attributes set to ***(Any)***	• **Font Style Name** set to target style • **Inline Formatting** set to ***Remove inline formatting***

See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Importing Data 148
Text Formatting and Styles 273
Dynamic Styles 1482

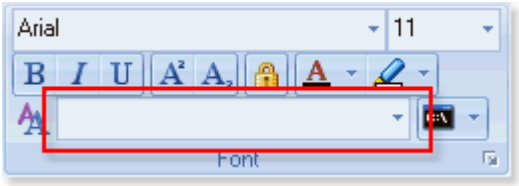
7.14.3 Font attributes - unstyled text

The instructions below explain how to use Replace Styles to apply formatting to text that does not have any Help+Manual styles applied to it. See the topic on styled text 1147 for information on how to reformat text that already has Help+Manual styles applied to it.

Before you try to follow these instructions, please study the Introduction to style replacement 1144 for an explanation of how the *Replace Styles* function works. This will make it much easier for you to use this feature.

Applying font attribute styles to unstyled text

Unstyled text is text that does not have any Help+Manual style applied to it. This is visible in the style selector in the **Write** > **Font** section of the Ribbon – when it is blank instead of displaying a style the text at the current cursor position is unstyled.



The style selector looks like this when the cursor is on unstyled text

Basically you proceed exactly as you would for performing an exact or fuzzy search for styled text. 1147 When you click in unstyled text before selecting the Replace Styles function the *Font Style Name* field in the left column of the Replace Styles dialog automatically displays *(Unstyled text only)*.

All the other settings and procedures are exactly the same. This is because the only difference between styled and unstyled text is that styled text has a style name assigned to it. Remember: the style name is just one attribute among many.

For more details see the example in Styling imported text 1162.

Reformatting manually-formatted text with styles

Frequently you will format certain texts in a different way to highlight them or make them easier to identify. For example, you might format the names of menu items using a different font and italics. The objective here is to apply named styles to these texts, so that you can later change the formatting of all of them just by changing the style definition.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You will most frequently need to do this with imported formatted text – for example from RTF, CHM or HTML files – where all the formatting is always imported as manual formatting.

This is a two-step process: First you need to create a style on the basis of the manual formatting, then you need to use Replace Styles to apply this style to all the examples of that formatting in your project. After you do this you can then change the formatting of all these texts just by editing the style definition.

Step 1: Create a new style on the basis of the formatting

1. Select an example of the text you want to use as the model for the style (click in the text or select it).
2. Select *Styles* > *Create Style from Selection* in the **Write** tab and create a new text style 281 on the basis of the formatting.

This example creates a text style because it is assumed you are applying style to text within paragraphs. You can also use the same approach for creating paragraph styles, but then you must also apply the paragraph format 1154 to the text as well in a second operation.

Step 2: Apply the style to all the texts with matching formatting

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics**

   If you only want to replace styles in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click*. Select the topic containing the example of the style you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Click in the formatted text in the editor, then select Replace Styles and Font mode**

   Click inside the example of the text you want to style, then select *Styles* > *Replace Styles* in the **Write** tab. Then select the *Font Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

3. **Select (Any text) for the Font Style Name**

   If a style name is displayed in the *Font Style Name:* field in the left column change it to *(Any text)*. This is particularly important if you have selected the text with which you just created the new style: Since the text you want to style does not yet have the style name it will not be found unless you make this change.

   Leave all other settings in the left column unchanged!

4. **Select the name of the style you created in the right column**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Select the name of the new style you just created in the *Change to Format/Style* column. Leave all other settings in this column unchanged. The inline formatting settings are irrelevant because you are performing an exact search.

5. **Click on Replace Styles to execute**

   A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose where you want to replace: In the entire project, the main topics, the invisible topics or selected topics only. You can also perform a test run to check how many styles would be found and replaced before actually applying the changes.

   Note that any changes in the current topic will only be visible in the editor after you close the Replace Styles dialog.

Reformatting manually-formatted text without using styles

Sometimes you may just want to quickly replace one kind of formatting in your document with another kind of formatting, without using styles at all. You do this by switching off the style names in the search and target fields and then replacing the formatting.

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics**

   If you only want to reformat text in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click*. Select the topic containing the example of the formatting you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Click in the formatted text in the editor, then select Replace Styles and Font mode**

   Click inside some text with the formatting you want to change, then select *Styles* > *Replace Styles* in the **Write** tab. Then select the *Font Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

   Leave the settings in the left column as they are or change them, depending on the formatting you want to change.

3. **Change the Font Style Name: setting in the left column to (Any text)**

   This will find all instances of the text formatted in exactly this way, no matter whether it has a style or not. You can also use the option *(Unstyled text only)* if you only want to find text that has no style applied to it. You may need to perform the search twice, once with each option, to get all the matching text.)

4. **Select the target style name setting**

   In the *Font Style Name:* field in the right column select either *(Keep style name)* or *(Remove style name)*. The first option will keep any style name explicitly assigned to the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

reformatted text, applying the new formatting as manual (inline) formatting. The second option will remove any explicit style name, so that the text is manually formatted only – it will then have the style name of the paragraph surrounding it.

5. **Select Custom Settings: in the right column**

   Then manually select all the attributes that you want to apply to the text. All the settings you leave set to *(Use style attributes)* in the right column will remain unchanged.

6. **Click on Replace Styles to execute**

   A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose where you want to replace: In the entire project, the main topics, the invisible topics or selected topics only. You can also perform a test run to check how many styles would be found and replaced before actually applying the changes.

   Note that any changes in the current topic will only be visible in the editor after you close the *Replace Styles* dialog.

Turning styles into manually-formatted text

This is just a variation on reformatting manually-formatted text without using styles. Basically all you need to do is follow the instructions for reformatting manually formatted text (see above) with the following two changes:

1. Select the name of the style you want to remove in the left column.
2. Select *(Remove style name)* in the right column.

7.14.4 Paragraph attributes - styled text

The methods described below only work for paragraphs already formatted with Help+Manual styles. See the topic on unstyled paragraphs 1158 for instructions on how to deal with paragraphs that do not yet have styles applied.

Before you try to follow these instructions, please study the Introduction to style replacement 1144 for an explanation of how the *Replace Styles* function works. This will make it much easier for you to use this feature.

Replacing one paragraph style with another – exact search

This is the most straightforward operation. It simply takes paragraphs formatted with one style and applies a different style to them. Exact search replaces only the styles of paragraphs formatted with the named style. Any inline-formatted text within text formatted with the target style will be protected, as will any text formatted with other styles.

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you only want to replace styles in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click.* Select the topic containing the example of the style you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Click in a styled paragraph in the editor, then select Replace Styles and Paragraph mode**

   Click inside a paragraph formatted with the style you want to replace, then select *Styles* > *Replace Styles* in the **Write** tab. Then select the *Paragraph Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

3. **Leave all left column attributes unchanged**

   All the formatting attributes of the current style are displayed in the left column (*Search for Format/Style*)and the style name is displayed at the top of the left column. Don't change any of the left-column paragraph attribute settings – the attributes must all match exactly for an exact search.

4. **Select the new style in the right column**

   Select the new style you want to apply from the drop-down list directly below the *Change to Format/Style:* heading on the right. If you need to create the style first, select *Edit Styles*.

5. **Leave the inline formatting settings unchanged**

   Leave the option *Remove inline formatting* activated. This will only replace inline paragraph formatting matching the settings in the left column, so any manually-applied paragraph attributes will be protected. When you are performing an exact search this option is effectively inactive.

   Important: The target style will not be applied at all to paragraphs that do not have precisely matching attributes. If you also want the style to be applied to "modified" versions of the paragraphs you must use a "fuzzy" search (see below).

6. **Click on Replace Styles to execute**

   A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose where you want to replace: In the entire project, the main topics, the invisible topics or selected topics only. You can also perform a test run to check how many styles would be found and replaced before actually applying the changes.

   Note that any changes in the current topic will only be visible in the editor after you close the *Replace Styles* dialog.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Replacing one paragraph style with another - fuzzy search

This method allows you to extend the scope of your search, so that in addition to finding paragraphs that exactly match your style you can also apply the target style to other paragraphs. You will probably want to do this, because most texts will contain paragraphs with additional manual indents and so on.

Fuzzy searches only seem complicated at first, they are actually quite simple. If you have trouble try the examples at the bottom of the instructions, they will help demonstrate how it works.

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics**

   If you only want to replace styles in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click*. Select the topic containing the example of the style you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Click in a styled paragraph the editor, then select Replace Styles and Paragraph mode**

   Click inside some text formatted with the style you want to replace, then select *Styles > Replace Styles* in the **Write** tab. Then select the *Paragraph Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

3. ***Set selected left-column attributes to (Any)***

   All the formatting attributes of the current style are displayed in the left column and the style name is displayed at the top of the left column.

   For example, suppose you know that you have manually changed the indent of some of the paragraphs formatted with the current style. To include these paragraphs in the search set the Left Indent and/or Right Indent attributes to *(Any)*.

   The same applies for all the other settings. It is the same principle: If you know that you have manually changed any settings in paragraphs formatted with the current style you must set those settings to *(Any)* to include the manually-altered paragraphs in the search.

4. **Select the new style in the right column**

   Select the new paragraph style you want to apply from the drop-down list directly below the *Change to Format/Style:* heading on the right. If you need to create the style first, select *Edit Styles*.

5. **Adjust the inline formatting settings for the desired result**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

As soon as you have activated fuzzy options in the search by including *(Any)* for search options can also start to find manually-applied paragraph formatting that does not match the standard style settings. This makes the Inline Formatting: options relevant.

"Remove inline formatting" resets all matching paragraph settings

This option will reset all manually-applied paragraph settings that match the search settings in the left-hand column to the settings of the target style selected.

Any texts that don't match the search settings will not be reset. This means that the target style will not be applied to paragraphs with settings that don't match your combination of exact and fuzzy search options.

"Remove except Alignment+Indent" protects these attributes

The second option "protects" alignment and indenting from being reset by the target style. This allows you to be a little less careful with your left column settings and still protect these formatting styles.

"Custom Settings" lets you choose for yourself

This option gives you full control over the target formatting, in the same way that the individual settings in the left hand column let you control the search settings.

By default all the attributes are set to Use style attributes. To change the output formatting just change any of the settings.

Note that using this option will result in paragraphs with additional manually-applied formatting

6. **Click on Replace Styles to execute**

   A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose where you want to replace: In the entire project, the main topics, the invisible topics or selected topics only. You can also perform a test run to check how many styles would be found and replaced before actually applying the changes.

   Note that any changes in the current topic will only be visible in the editor after you close the *Replace Styles* dialog.

Examples of fuzzy searches

Objective:	***Search for* settings:**	***Change to* settings:**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Replace one paragraph style with another. Include paragraphs with manually-modified indents in the search.	• **Left Indent** and/or **Right Indent** set to **(Any)** or ***(Any value <> 0)*** • All other attributes unchanged, including **Para Style Name**	• **Para Style Name** set to target paragraph style name • **Inline Formatting** set to ***Remove except Alignment+Indent***
Replace one paragraph style with another. Include paragraphs with manually-modified indents and manually-modified alignment in the search.	• **Left Indent** and/or **Right Indent** set to **(Any)** or ***(Any value <> 0)***, **Alignment** set to ***(Any)***. • All other attributes unchanged, including **Para Style Name**	• **Para Style Name** set to target paragraph style name • **Inline Formatting** set to ***Remove except Alignment+Indent***
Replace one paragraph style with another and reset all manually-applied paragraph formatting, including alignments and indents.	• All attributes unchanged, including the style name.	• **Para Style Name** set to target style. • **Inline Formatting** set to ***Remove inline formatting***

See also:

Importing Data 148
Text Formatting and Styles 273
Dynamic Styles 1482

7.14.5 Paragraph attributes - unstyled text

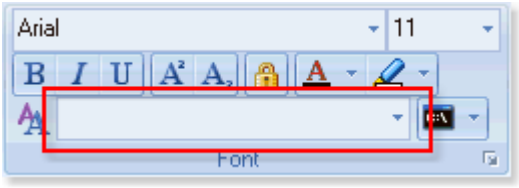
The instructions below explain how to use Replace Styles to apply formatting to paragraphs that do not have any Help+Manual styles applied to them. See the topic on styled paragraphs 1154 for information on how to reformat paragraphs that already have Help+Manual styles applied to them.

Before you try to follow these instructions, please study the Introduction to style replacement 1144 for an explanation of how the *Replace Styles* function works. This will make it much easier for you to use this feature.

Applying paragraph styles to imported and other unstyled text

Unstyled paragraphs are paragraphs that do not have any Help+Manual styles applied to them. This is visible in the style selector in the Ribbon – when it is blank instead of displaying a style the text at the current cursor position is unstyled.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



The style selector looks like this when the cursor is on unstyled text

Basically you proceed exactly as you would for performing an exact or fuzzy search for styled paragraphs. When you click in an unstyled paragraph before selecting the *Replace Styles* function the *Para Style Name* field in the left column of the *Replace Styles* dialog displays *(Unstyled text only)*.

If the *Para Style Name* field is not set to *(Unstyled text only)* already you must change it to this setting to make sure that the search finds paragraphs with no styles applied. All the other settings and procedures are exactly the same. This is because the only difference between styled and unstyled text is that styled text has a style name assigned to it. Remember: the style name is just one attribute among many.

For more details see the example in Styling imported text 1162.

Reformatting manually-formatted paragraphs with styles

Frequently you will manually format some paragraphs in a different way from other paragraphs in your project. After a while you may decide that there are enough of these paragraphs to define a style for them. The following instructions explain how to use *Replace Styles* to achieve this.

This is a two-step process: First you need to create a style on the basis of the manual formatting, then you need to use *Replace Styles* to apply this style to all the matching paragraphs in your project. After you do this you can then change the formatting of all these paragraphs just by editing the style definition.

Step 1: Create a new style on the basis of the formatting

1. Click in the paragraph that you want to use as the model for the style.
2. Select *Styles* > *Create Style from Selection* in the **Write** tab and create a new paragraph style 281 on the basis of the formatting.

   The font attributes of the new paragraph style will be set automatically. You can then use Font Styles mode in a second pass to apply the font styles to your target text.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Step 2: Apply the style to all the texts with matching formatting

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics.**

   If you only want to replace styles in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click*. Select the topic containing the example of the style you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Select a paragraph in the editor, then select Replace Styles and Paragraph mode.**

   Click inside the example of the paragraph you want to style, then select *Styles* > *Replace Styles* in the **Write** tab. Then select the *Paragraph Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

3. **Select (Any text) for the Para Style Name.**

   If a style name is displayed in the *Para Style Name:* field in the left column change it to *(Any text)*. This will ensure that all paragraphs with matching attributes will be found.

   Leave all other settings in the left column unchanged!

4. **Select the name of the paragraph style you just created in the right column.**

   Select the name of the new style you just created in the Change to Format/Style column. Leave all other settings in this column unchanged. The inline formatting settings are irrelevant because you are performing an exact search.

5. **Click on Replace Styles to execute.**

   A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose where you want to replace: In the entire project, the main topics, the invisible topics or selected topics only. You can also perform a test run to check how many styles would be found and replaced before actually applying the changes.

   Note that any changes in the current topic will only be visible in the editor after you close the Replace Styles dialog.

Reformatting manually-formatted paragraphs without styles

Sometimes you may just want to quickly replace one kind of paragraph formatting in your document with another kind of formatting, without using styles at all. You do this by switching off the style names in the search and target fields and then replacing the formatting.

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics.**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you only want to reformat paragraphs in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click*. Select the topic containing the example of the formatting you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Select a paragraph in the editor, then select Replace Styles and Paragraph mode.**

   Click inside a paragraph with the formatting you want to change, then select *Styles* > *Replace Styles* in the **Write** tab. Then select the *Paragraph Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

   Leave the settings in the left column as they are or change them, depending on the formatting you want to change.

3. **Change the Para Style Name: setting in the left column to (Any text).**

   This will find all instances of the paragraph formatted in exactly this way. You can also use the option *(Unstyled text only)* if you only want to find paragraphs that has no style applied to it. (You may need to perform the search twice, once with each option, to get all the matching paragraphs.)

4. **Select the target style name setting.**

   In the *Para Style Name:* field in the right column select either *(Keep style name)* or *(Remove style name)*. The first option will keep any style name explicitly assigned to the reformatted paragraph. The second option will remove any explicit style name, so that the resulting paragraph is manually formatted only.

5. **Select Custom Settings: in the right column.**

   Then manually select all the attributes that you want to apply to the text. All the attributes you leave set to *(Use style attributes)* will remain unchanged.

6. **Click on Replace Styles to execute.**

   A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose where you want to replace: In the entire project, the main topics, the invisible topics or selected topics only. You can also perform a test run to check how many styles would be found and replaced before actually applying the changes.

   Note that any changes in the current topic will only be visible in the editor after you close the Replace Styles dialog.

Turning styled paragraphs into manually-formatted paragraphs

This is just a variation on reformatting manually-formatted paragraphs without using styles. Basically all you need to do is follow the instructions for reformatting manually

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

formatted paragraphs 1154 with the following two changes:

1. Select the name of the style you want to remove in the left column.
2. Select *(Remove style name)* in the right column.

7.14.6 Styling imported formatted text

When you import Word RTF files the styles used in the file are retained and automatically added to your project styles, which you can access and edit in **Write > Edit Styles.**

The situation is different when you import formatted text from other sources like CHM or HTML files. Then the formatting is retained but the text does not have any styles. Effectively, it is all manually formatted. You can use the Replace Styles function to integrate this formatting into the stylesheet of your project, either by applying existing styles or by creating new styles and applying them.

This topic illustrates this by walking you through the steps of a typical example. For details on how to perform the individual operations see the topics in this chapter on replacing font and paragraph styles and formatting.

Tip: Converting imported HTML formatting with Premium Pack Toolbox

Provided style classes were used in the original HTML you can globally strip out inline formatting imported from HTML and convert it to style references with the powerful Toolbox utility included in the Premium Pack style pack. See Integrating imported formatting with Toolbox 1165 for details.

Example: Applying the Normal style to imported body text

Let's assume that you want to apply the **`Normal`** style to all your imported unstyled body text. At the same time you also want to apply named styles to inline-formatted text within your body text, some of which has different font settings to that of the body text (for example menu names and other items formatted with different fonts etc).

Step 1: Setting up the styles

If you want to use the style of the imported text in your project you first need to use formatting from your imported text as a model to update your project's style definitions.

1. **Update the *Normal* style on the basis of the imported text.**
   Click in a plain area of the imported body text and select *Styles> Create Style from Selection* in the **Write** tab. Then select *Change existing style,* select *Normal* in the style list and activate *Assign paragraph attributes.*

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. **Update or create text styles for additional formatting.**
   If special formatting is used for text within other paragraphs click in examples of this formatting in your imported text. Then use *Styles> Create Style from Selection* in the **Write** tab to update or create a new text styles for this formatting. Repeat for all different formatting types used within paragraphs.

   See Defining styles 281 for more details on using the *Create Style from Selection* function.

Step 2: Apply the Normal font attributes to the main body text

Next you want to apply the modified **`Normal`** font style attributes to the text of the body paragraphs in your imported text.

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics**

   If you only want to replace styles in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click*. Select the topic containing the example of the style you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Select an example of the body text in the editor, then select Replace Styles and Font mode**

   Click inside some text formatted with the style you want to replace, then select *Styles > Replace Styles* in the **Write** tab. Then select the *Font Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

3. **In the left column, set the Font Style Name to (Unstyled text only)**

   Set *Font Style Name* in the left column to *(Unstyled text only)* and leave all other attributes unchanged. This will find all text with the attributes of the current paragraph and will make sure that any paragraphs in your project that already have named styles remain unaffected.

4. **Select Normal in the right column**

   Select *Normal* in the drop-down list directly below the *Change to Format/Style:* heading on the right. This will apply the Normal style to all matching text.

5. **Leave the inline formatting settings unchanged**

   The exact settings in the left column will only match the unchanged body text, so any text within paragraphs with different formatting will be ignored. This makes the *Inline Formatting:* options irrelevant – you can leave the default setting of *Remove inline formatting* as it is.

6. **Click on Replace Styles to execute**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose where you want to replace: In the entire project, the main topics, the invisible topics or selected topics only. You can also perform a test run to check how many styles would be found and replaced before actually applying the changes.

Note that any changes in the current topic will only be visible in the editor after you close the **Replace Styles** dialog.

Step 3: Apply text styles to sub-texts within the body text

Now you want to apply the text styles created in step 1 to the differently formatted sub-texts within the body text. This must be repeated for each sub-text type.

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics**

   If you only want to replace styles in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click*. Select the topic containing the example of the style you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Click in an example of the sub-text in the editor, then select Replace Styles and Font mode**

   Click inside one of the formatted texts that you want to style, then select *Styles* > *Replace Styles* in the **Write** tab. Then select the *Font Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

3. **Select (Unstyled text only) or (Any text) in the left column**

   If you know that none of the sub-texts have styles applied to them select *(Unstyled text only),* otherwise select *(Any text)* to make sure that you find all of them.

4. **Select the target style in the right column and execute**

   In the right column select the appropriate text style in the *Change to Format/Style* list and then click on *Replace Styles* to replace all the styles.

Repeat the above procedure for every text style in your project.

Step 4: Apply the Normal paragraph attributes to your body text

Finally, you also want to apply the paragraph attributes of the *Normal* style to your imported body text so that it is fully integrated in your stylesheet.

1. **Select multiple topics if you want to replace only in some topics**

   If you only want to replace styles in specific topics select those topics in the Project Explorer first, using *Shift+Click* or *Ctrl+Click*. Select the topic containing the example of

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the style you want to replace last, so that you can select the style example in the next step.

2. **Click in a body paragraph editor, then select Replace Styles and Paragraph mode**

   Click in one of your body text paragraphs, then select *Styles* > *Replace Styles* in the **Write** tab. Then select the *Paragraph Styles* mode at the top of the dialog that appears.

3. **Select (Unstyled text only) for the Para Style Name**

   If a style name is displayed in the *Para Style Name:* field in the left column change it to *(Unstyled text only)*. This will ensure that only paragraphs that do not yet have styles applied to them will be found. This will reduce the possibility of errors and will protect any styled paragraphs in your project with the same settings. Leave all other settings in the left column unchanged!

4. **Select Normal in the right column**

   Select the *Normal* style in the *Change to Format/Style* column. Leave all other settings in this column unchanged. The inline formatting settings are irrelevant because you are performing an exact search.

5. **Click on Replace Styles to execute**

   A dialog will be displayed allowing you to choose where you want to replace: In the entire project, the main topics, the invisible topics or selected topics only. You can also perform a test run to check how many styles would be found and replaced before actually applying the changes.

   Note that any changes in the current topic will only be visible in the editor after you close the *Replace Styles* dialog.

See also:

Importing Data 148
Text Formatting and Styles 273
Dynamic Styles 1482

7.14.7 Integrating imported formatting globally

If you have the Premium Pack style pack add-on for Help+Manual 9 you can use its powerful Toolbox utility to convert formatting imported from HTML to styles. Provided the imported text used HTML classes, Toolbox can strip out the manual formatting and apply the style attributes to bring your imported text fully under the control of your project stylesheet.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

About formatting in text imported from HTML

When you import HTML files or a CHM help file to a Help+Manual project your formatting comes in as inline formatting. Normally, you need to create styles based on the formatting and then manually apply them to all the paragraphs in your project where you want to use the style. This new tool eliminates many hours of tedious work by doing this automatically.

If your imported text includes style names you can use *Normalize Project Styles* in the **Tools** menu of Toolbox to remove the inline formatting and apply the style to all paragraphs in the project using the style. All you need is for a paragraph or any text within the paragraph to be tagged with a style name. It will then apply your selected paragraph style to the entire paragraph, eliminating manual formatting at the same time.

Why is this better than just re-applying styles or using the Replace Styles tool in Help+Manual?

- **Much, much faster than any other method**
  To re-apply styles you would need to go through your project manually, select each paragraph and then select the style. Normalize processes your entire project in seconds.
- **Protects meaningful formatting**
  Re-applying styles is a blunt tool that re-formats everything in the entire paragraph. Normalize allows you to protect text formatted with other styles, while still removing redundant manual formatting attributes from those text tags. You can also protect manual bold, italics and underlining, and choose different styles for different hyperlink and toggle types.
- **Replace Styles doesn't handle paragraph and text attributes at the same time**
  The Replace Styles tool in Help+Manual is powerful, but it only allows you to process either paragraph attributes or text attributes. Because of this, it is impossible to use it globally to format entire paragraphs accurately: You can't tell it to use a style in a text element for the paragraph, or a paragraph style for the text, because these elements are always accessed in separate operations.

This is fully compatible with Tidy XML

The Normalize Project Styles function is fully compatible with the new Tidy XML function 1198 introduced in Help+Manual 9.3. It automatically identifies whether topics are formatted with the Tidy XML option active or not and adjusts its own XML formatting accordingly.

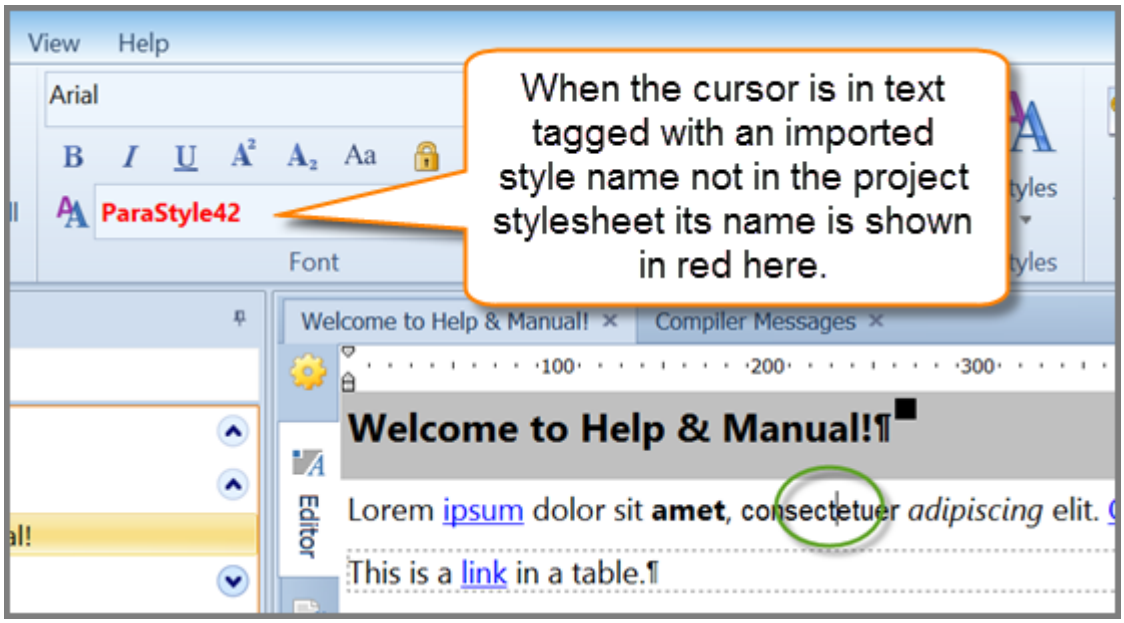
For the most compact code it is best to use both Tidy XML and normalizing.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The imported text does need to include style names

After importing HTML files or a CHM file, first check whether the text is tagged with style names – it will be if style names (classes or IDs) were used in the original HTML. All you need to identify a paragraph for normalization is for some text anywhere within the paragraph to be tagged with a style name.

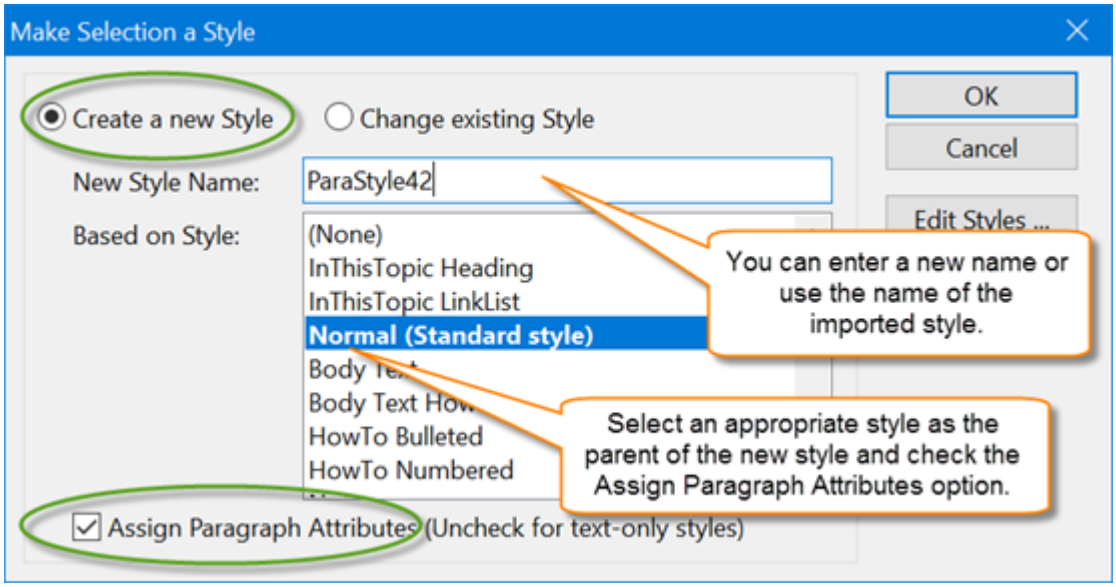
This is necessary, because otherwise it's not possible to identify the paragraphs you want to re-style. Style names that are not present in the stylesheet are shown in red in the style selector. If you are using Help+Manual 9.2 or earlier you may need to activate the XML editor briefly to make the red style names appear in the current topic (this cosmetic bug is fixed in Version 8.3 and later).



Step 1: Create the paragraph style you want to use for all the text containing the imported style

The easiest way to do this is to use a paragraph already containing the style name as a model. Make any adjustments to the formatting you want in the Help+Manual editor, then click in the text that is formatted the way way want it and select **Styles** > **Create Style from Selection** in the **Write** tab.

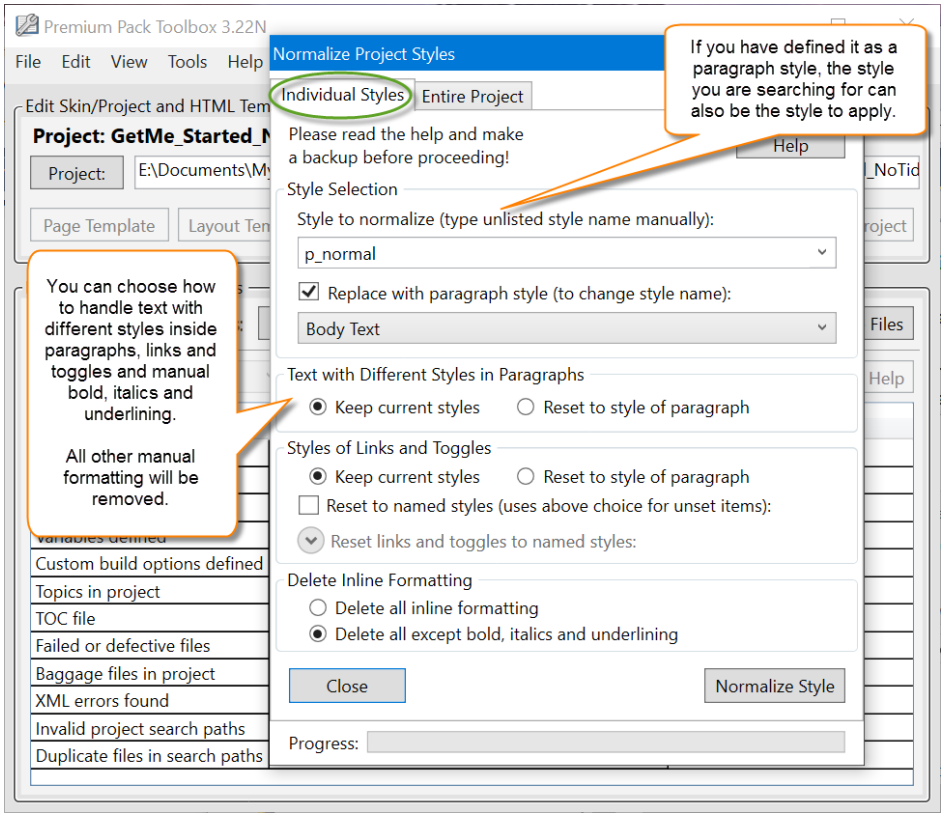
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Repeat this for all the styles you want to use. Then save the project when you have finished and close it.

Step 2: Normalize the styles with Toolbox

Open the project with PP Toolbox and select the **Normalize Project Styles** option in the **Tools** menu. Then select the **Individual Styles** tab.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you have used the name of the imported style for the style added to your project stylesheet you just need to select its name in the *Style to normalize:* field and it will be used both for identifying the paragraphs to style and for normalizing. Otherwise you need to select the style to be applied to the identified paragraphs with the *Replace with paragraph style* option.

Set the other options as explained in the screenshot above, then click on **Normalize Style** to proceed. The first time you do this you should then check the results in your project before proceeding with additional styles.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Multi-User Editing & Translation

¿Cómo se dice en español? Everything about team editing, project translation and localization.

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

8 Multi-User Editing & Translation

8.1 Multi-User Editing

Help+Manual allows multiple users to edit the same project at the same time when both are on the same local network with its integrated multi-user editing capabilities. Users in different locations should use version control for collaboration (see further below).

The only restriction in local multi-user editing is that it is not possible for two authors to edit the same topic simultaneously. When one author is editing a topic, a second author accessing the topic can view it but not edit it. A message will be displayed saying that the topic is read-only because it is in use.

Multi-user editing works directly "out of the box". You do not need to do any server configuration. There are no special settings and you don't need a database or additional external software, either locally or on the server. You just need to store your project in uncompressed XML (**.hmxp**) format on a drive that all your authors can access and start editing.

Productivity Tip
Refresh your project regularly! While collaborating on the same project always click on *Refresh Project* in the Project menu whenever you switch to a new topic to make sure that you see the current version of the Table of Contents and Project Files.

Requirements for multi-user editing

- **Professional and Floating licenses only:**
  Multi-user editing is only supported with the Professional and Floating licenses for Help+Manual. All users accessing the project must be working with Professional or Floating licenses.
- **Uncompressed XML save format only:**
  Projects must be saved in the uncompressed XML (**.hmxp**) format for multi-user editing to be possible. The compressed **.hmxz** format cannot be used because it is stored in a single file and it is necessary to access individual topic files for multi-user editing.
- **All projects and sub-projects must also be saved as uncompressed XML:**
  If the project has any merged sub-projects they must all also be saved as uncompressed **.hmxp** projects. You cannot have any **.hmxz** sub-projects if you are going to use multi-user editing.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use a version control system for remote multi-user editing

Help+Manual's integrated multi-user editing is only for users working on the same local network (LAN). If you wish to do multi-user editing remotely and offline (users in different geographical locations, also needing to edit without a network connection) you need to store a master copy of your project in a version control system. Then each user works on a linked copy of the project on their own computers, which they synchronize via the version control system's server. This provides all the advantages of direct remote editing, but each author is still working on their own local (but linked) copy rather than directly via an Internet connection.

See Using Version Control Systems 848 for instructions on getting Help+Manual set up to work with version control for remote editing.

Each remote user needs their own local copy of Help+Manual

Note that the remote authors will need their own copies of Help+Manual on their own computers to do this. This is possible with both the Professional and Floating license versions.

Supported version control systems

Out of the box, Help+Manual is already configured to support Subversion and Git. Both these systems are free and open source, and extremely mature and reliable. In addition to this, you can also configure additional scripts yourself to support any other version control system with a command line interface.

Basic procedure

With version control, authors can work on shared projects offline from any location. Each author downloads a local working copy of the project from the repository. This working copy is what you edit, but it remains linked to the "master" copy in the repository. Only changes need to be transferred in either direction. This makes the solution extremely efficient and also very robust -- you have none of the data integrity and speed nightmares involved in live editing via an open connection.

Almost all your work is done offline. You just need to synchronize with the server once before starting work, to get the latest changes from your colleagues, and once afterwards to add your new work to the server version.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Conflicts with other users' work

This process generally works even if two people have worked on the same topics. If they have edited different parts of the topics the changes are just merged silently, because there are no conflicts. If they have both edited the same text you get a dialog from the version control system asking you which versions of each change you want to keep ("mine" or "theirs"). Agreements between team members on which topics to work on can keep these conflicts to a minimum.

Full instructions

See Using Version Control Systems 848 for instructions on getting Help+Manual set up to work with version control for remote editing.

Use a style repository to standardize your styles!

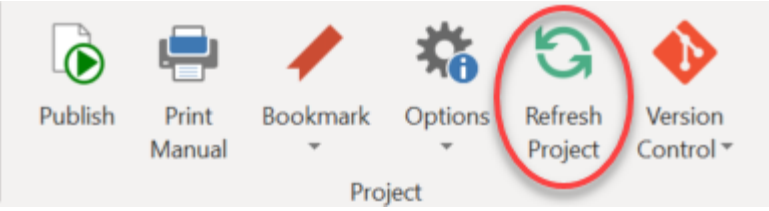
Style standardization is a common problem in team projects: you generally don't want individual authors making arbitrary changes to the styles of your standard layout.

If you want to make sure that the same styles are used by everyone working on the project it's advisable to store the styles in a style repository project and link the repository to your documentation project. Then only give the team member responsible for layout access to the style repository so that only she or he can edit the project styles.

See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for instructions on how to set this up for your project.

The Refresh Project and Synchronize SVN/TFS tools in the Project tab

The Refresh Project tool is for local multi-user editing without a version control system



This is a very important tool when you are working in Help+Manual's direct multi-user editing mode on your local network. It updates the display of the project and the TOC on

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

your screen so that you can be sure that you are seeing the current version, including any changes made to the TOC by other users who may have moved, deleted or renamed TOC items.

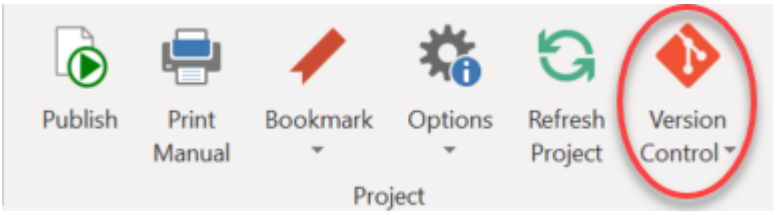
Refresh also updates the contents and lock state (read-only or read-write) of the current topic displayed in the editor.

Always use *Refresh Project* before making any changes that affect the TOC (renaming, moving, deleting and creating topics).

Always save your project directly after making changes that affect the TOC to make sure that there are no conflicts with other users' edits that you need to resolve.

See *Creating, renaming, moving and deleting topics* below for more details.

The Version Control tool is for projects managed in version control systems



The Synchronize tool is only relevant for users working directly on the same project in a local network

When you are working on a local working copy of a project managed in a version control system you don't need to use the **Refresh Project** tool, because you are always the only person working on your local working copy.

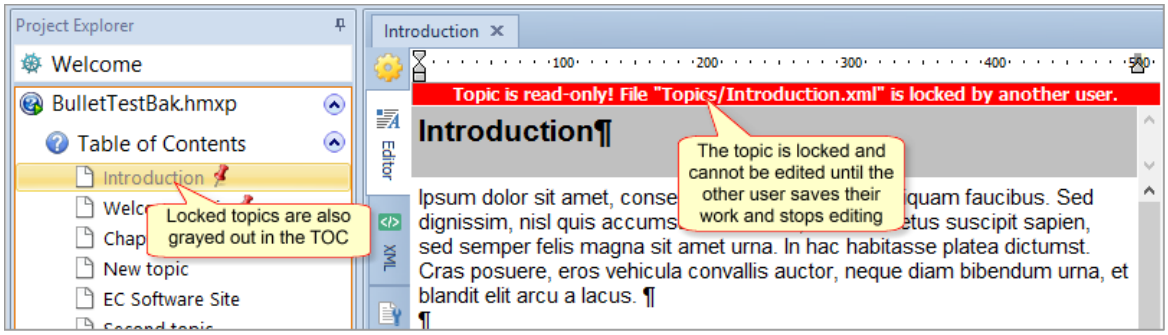
Instead, you use the Version Control tool to merge your work with the master copy on the version control server. See Using Version Control Systems 848 for full details.

Editing topics

For local multi-user editing, just store the project on a network or server drive where all authors have read/write access. (Save using the uncompressed HMXP format, otherwise this will not work!) Then all users open the same project and start editing as normal.

You will only notice a difference if you try to edit a topic that someone else has open – then you will get a message telling you that the topic is open and is not currently available. Help+Manual will never allow two different versions of the same topic to be created and it will never allow two users to edit the same topic at the same time. This applies even if you have not saved your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



When you select a topic that another user is already working on you will see a red bar with a READ ONLY warning at the top of the editor screen and the topic will be grayed out in the TOC.

If another user starts editing the topic while you are *viewing* it you will not see the READ ONLY bar immediately. However, if you then try to edit the topic you will get a message telling you that the topic is now being worked on and then the READ ONLY bar will be displayed.

Custom display color for read-only topics:

You can set a custom color for displaying read-only topics in the TOC to make them easier to identify for you. Go to **View** > **Program Options** > **Editor** and change the setting for *Display color for read-only TOC items*.

Creating, renaming, moving and deleting topics

Help+Manual never allows you to edit the content of topics being worked on by other users under any circumstances, even if you have not saved or refreshed your project.

However, when you make changes in the TOC in multi-user mode you are working on a local copy of the TOC. The changes are only written to the actual project file when you save the project. If another user has made changes to the same TOC entries you will have a conflict and a dialog will be displayed asking you to resolve the conflict – you must then decide which version of the changes to keep and which to discard.

User *Refresh Project* to avoid TOC conflicts:

To avoid conflicts you should always select *Refresh Project* in the **Project** tab before making any changes to the TOC. This will update your local copy of the TOC with the current main version.

Refresh also updates the contents and lock state (read-only or read-write) of the current topic displayed in the editor.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Creating new topics:

You can create new topics just as you would when you are working on a project on your own. New topics cannot conflict with changes made by other users so you can always create them. Of course, if you choose a topic ID/topic file name that conflicts with an existing topic you will not be allowed to create the topic.

Renaming, moving and deleting topics:

Always select *Refresh Project* before moving or deleting topics or renaming them in the TOC. This ensures that you are viewing the current version of the TOC in the main project file and prevents you having to resolve conflicts with your co-workers.

Once you have done this you can move and delete topics just as you would when you are working in single-user mode.

Even so, it is generally advisable to check with your colleagues before moving or deleting topics that others have also worked on! If in doubt make a copy of the topic with *File* > *Save Topic to File* in **Project** > **Manage Topics** before deleting it.

Global search and replace

You can perform global search and replace operations normally when other users are working on the same project as you. You will be able to find terms in topics that other users are working on but you will not be able to replace them there until the other users save their work and stop editing the topics.

Editing your project configuration

Your settings in the Configuration section of your project are not managed in the same way as your project content. Any changes you make here are made without warnings or locking. Anyone who makes changes here and saves the project will overwrite the current settings with the new settings.

When you are working in a team the Configuration section should be the responsibility of the project manager. Always check with your project manager or co-workers before changing anything in your project configuration!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

8.2 Translating Your Projects

Integrated support for translation and localization is only included in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. Although all versions support Unicode and can thus produce projects in all supported languages, the Basic version does not include the Project Synchronization Tool 1245 and does not support saving in the uncompressed XML format required for translation with tools like SDL Trados 1187.

However, you can use the Basic version to edit projects created with the Professional or Floating license version without restrictions. It can edit all the features of both compressed HMXZ projects and uncompressed HMXP projects. It just can't create some of the features that are exclusive to the Professional and Floating license versions, but the translator doesn't need to do that anyway.

The topics in this chapter provide an introduction to Help+Manual's translation and localization features and show you where to find the information you need to use them.

See also:

Translating in Help+Manual 1191
Translating with external editors 1194
The Project Synchronization Tool 1245

8.2.1 About translation support

DeepL AI machine translation is built in to Help+Manual!

If you want to get a head start on translating your projects you can use the built-in DeepL translation system. This advanced artificial intelligence based machine translation is radically better than any automatic translation in the past and you may find it good enough for basic needs or a foundation for proofreading with surprisingly little need for correction.

The XML project format can be processed directly by translation tools

Your uncompressed XML project files (.hmxp save mode) can be edited and translated directly with an XML-aware professional translation tool like SDL Trados. See the topic on translation memory 1187 for instructions.

Using Help+Manual as your translation edtior

You can also translate your projects in Help+Manual itself. This can be done either in-house using your own copy of the program or by an outside translator working with Help+Manual as a translation editor. Only the Basic version of Help+Manual is required for this. The Basic version can edit all features of projects created with the Professional or Floating license versions, including uncompressed projects in the HMXP format (it cannot create them but it can edit them). You cannot create some features with the Basic version,

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

but this is not something the translator should be doing anyway, and all features created with the other versions can be translated with the Basic version.

Integrated support for updating translations made with Help+Manual

The Project Synchronization Tool 1245 makes it easy to identify topics containing changes in the next version of your documentation so that you can provide the translator with a new version of the project file to update.

Using XML editors

While it is possible to edit Help+Manual projects with a normal XML editor it is not something we can recommend. This also exposes all the XML source code and tags to editing and the danger of damage to the code and errors is very high. For good, reliable results it is best to use either Help+Manual itself as the translation editor or a translation memory tool.

Using Help+Manual as the translation editor

This is the simplest solution. If your translator also has Help+Manual (the Basic version can be used to translate all projects, including Professional projects) they just open a copy of the project and translate it, and you then get a translated version back. The Project Synchronization Tool included in the program identifies new text that needs to be translated when you update your projects.

Using a translation memory tool

"Translation memory" tools like SD Trados (this is the market leader) automatically "remember" all text that has been translated so nothing ever needs to be translated twice. They can process Help+Manual's XML projects directly, so there is no conversion necessary. When you update your projects all known text is translated automatically and the human translator only needs to handle new and changed material.

8.2.2 Machine translation with DeepL

The DeepL plugin included with Help+Manual uses DeepL's amazingly accurate artificial intelligence translation system to translate in both directions between the 25 currently supported languages:

Bulgarian, British English, American English, Chinese (simplified), Czech, Danish, Dutch, Estonian, Finnish, French, German, Greek, Hungarian, Italian, Japanese, Latvian, Lithuanian, Polish, Portuguese, Romanian, Russian, Slovak, Slovenian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

It is very fast and works in a way that allows you to check the translations as you go and make any necessary corrections.

How to use the translation plugin

You need a free or paid DeepL Developer API subscription

You can test the quality of DeepL translations directly on the DeepL website. Just visit the site and enter the text you want to translate. You'll be amazed at the quality of the results.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Free subscription

You can use DeepL free of charge in Help+Manual with a free API subscription that allows you to translate up to 500,000 characters of text per month. This is a great way to test it out, and it will also be easily enough for many smaller projects. Note however that the character count does include all the XML code, so it may be less than you expect.

Paid subscription

If you need more text you can opt for the paid subscription, which is just €4.99 a month plus very reasonable volume fees. Either way, it is a tiny fraction of what translation normally costs.

Getting your Developer API key

You can get the free or paid Developer API key subscription directly on this page at the DeepL website:

https://www.deepl.com/en/pro.html#developer

Important: You must have a Developer API key, not any other type

You must use either a **Developer API key** (free or paid) to use DeepL with Help+Manual . Please do make sure that is the one you get, because other key types available on other pages on the DeepL site won't work.

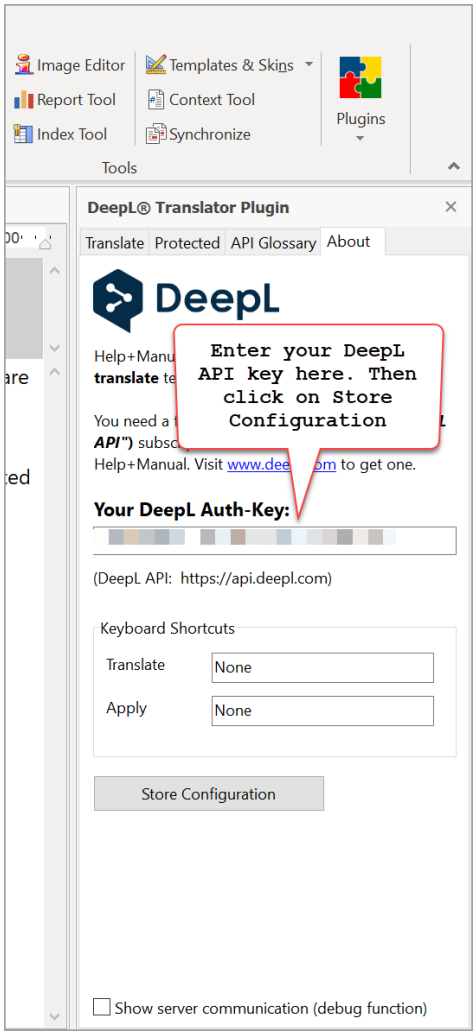
Setting up DeepL in Help+Manual

This couldn't be easier. Just select the *DeepL Translator* plugin with the **Plugins** tool in the **Project** tab. Then select the **About** tab to access the configuration options.

Entering your API key

Select the About tab and paste your key in the **Your DeepL Auth-Key** Field. This automatically selects the correct Base URL, which is displayed below your key.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



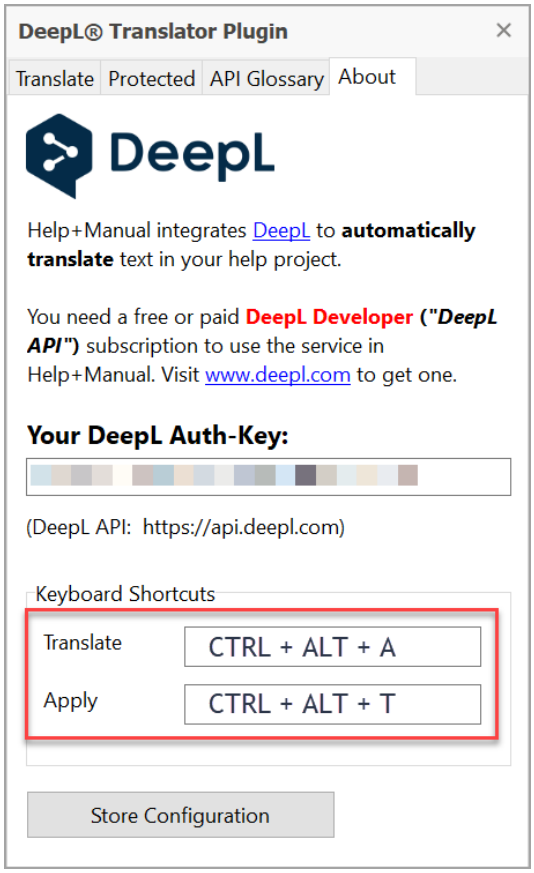
Translating with DeepL

The DeepL plugin doesn't translate entire topics automatically. It works on the text you select in the topic. It is possible to select the entire topic, but we recommend doing one paragraph at a time so that you can check and make any minor corrections to the results as you go along. We strongly recommend that this work should be performed by someone who knows the target language well so that you get good corrections.

Keyboard Shortcuts:

You can assign keyboard shortcuts to the *Translate* and *Apply* operations in the **About** tab of the DeepL plugin:

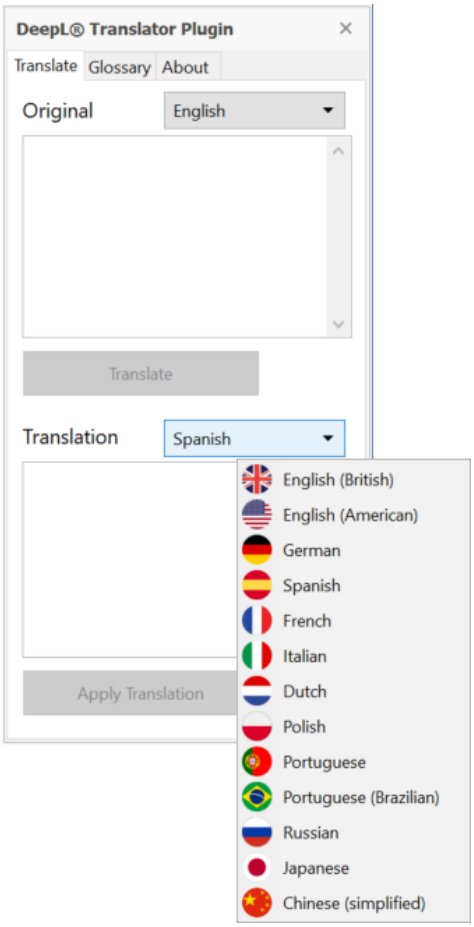
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



1: Select your source and target languages

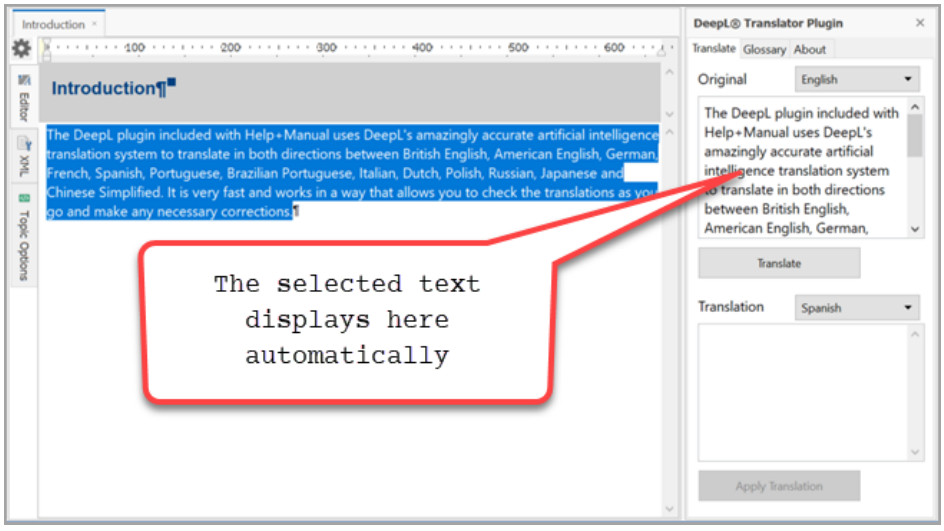
Select the topic you want to translate in your project, then select the **Translate** tab in the plugin. Select the source language from the drop-down list above the **Original** box and the target language from the list above the **Translation** box. You can also choose the **Detect Language** option for the source language if you like, but that may cause a slight delay on some systems.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Select the paragraph you want to translate

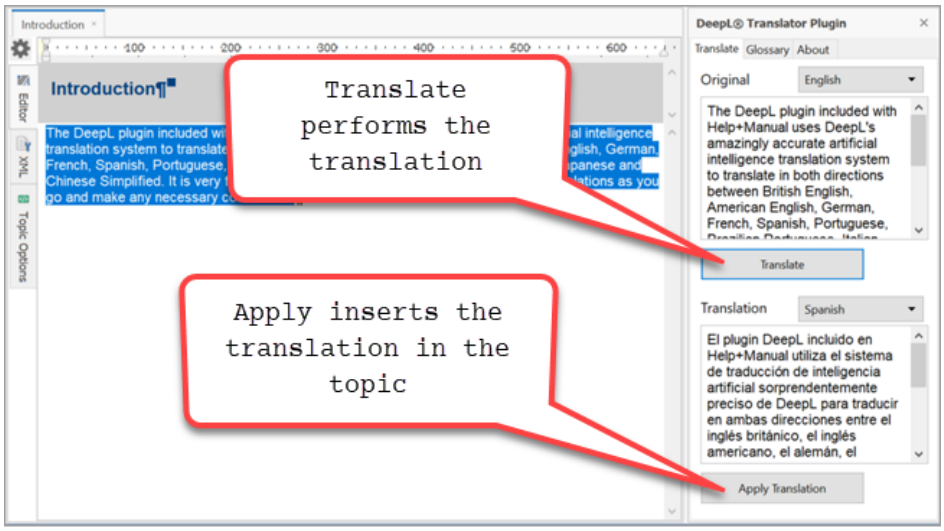
As soon as you select the text you want to translate in the topic it is automatically transferred to the **Original** box in the plugin.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3: Click on Translate to perform the translation

The **Translate** button contacts the DeepL server and performs the translation, which then appears in the **Translation** box. The display in the box is read-only. You can edit the translation after it is transferred into the topic editor.

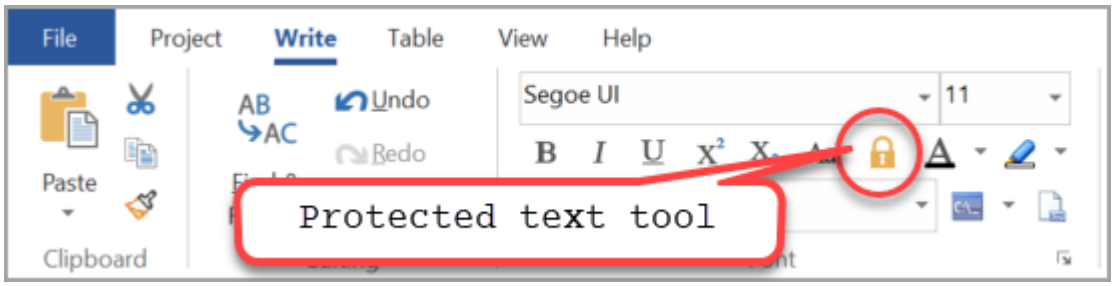


4: Click on Apply Translation to insert the translation

Finally, the **Apply Translation** button inserts the translation in the editor, replacing the original selected text. You can make any edits there if necessary. Then you just repeat the above steps for the next paragraph or group of paragraphs you want to translate.

Protecting text against translation

If you want to prevent individual words and passages of text from being translated you just need to select it and apply the protected text formatting option in the **Font** section of the **Write** tab. DeepL will then ignore the protected text.



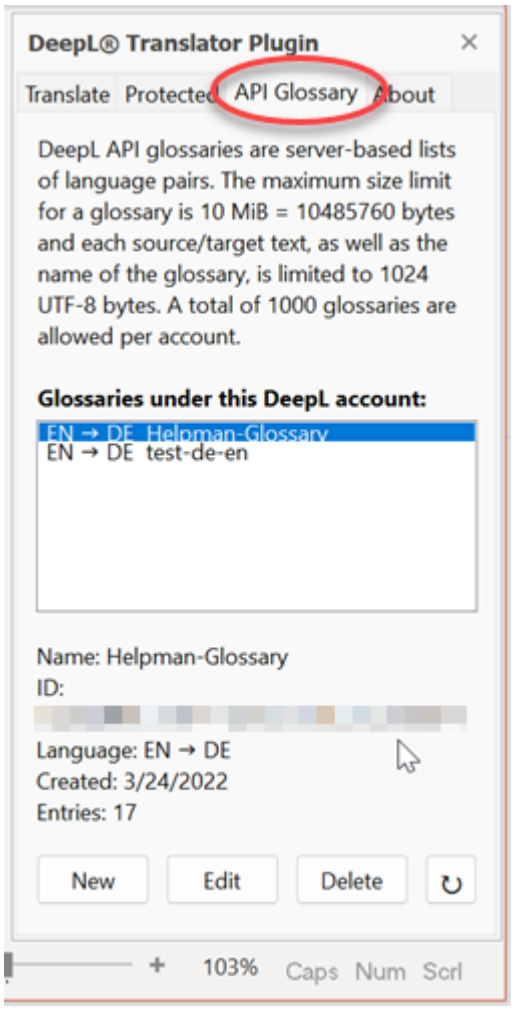
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Protecting frequently-used words and phrases

You can prevent frequently-used words and phrases from being translated by entering them into a glossary. Glossaries can also be used to change words and phrases automatically. See further below for details.

Using the API Glossary feature to protect words and phrases

The API Glossary tab in the DeepL plugin allows you to define and use lists of words and phrases that you don't want to translate. For example, you will generally want product names to remain unchanged whenever you use them. Using a glossary to protect these words and phrases is much easier than locating all instances of the text in your project and applying the protected text feature to each one.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

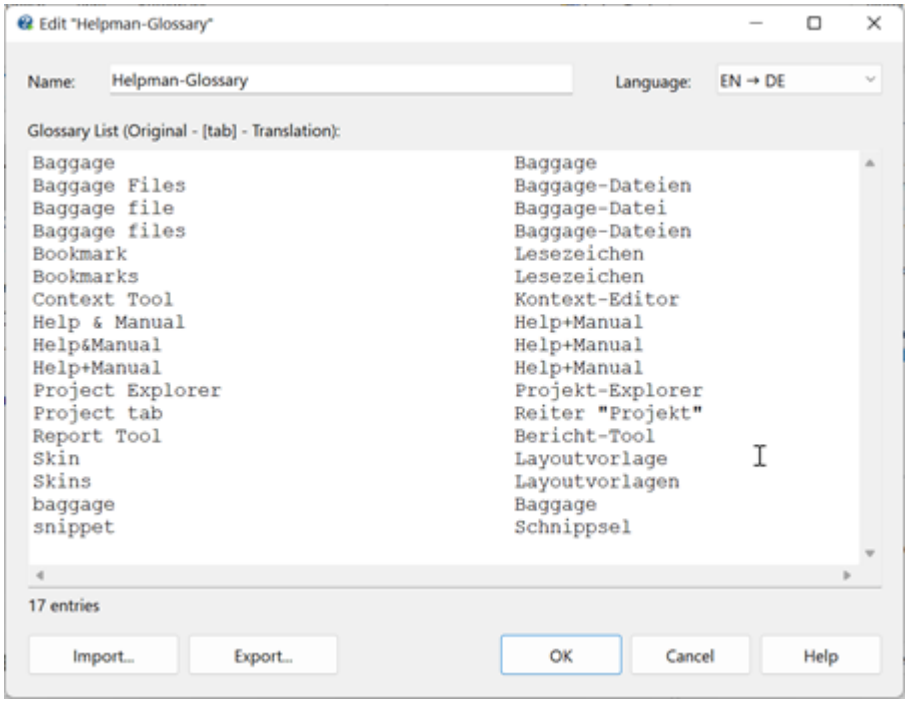
About glossary files

API Glossaries are simple plain-text files containing a list of words and phrases. They are integrated with DeepL's machine learning system so that it takes them into account when analyzing the context of the translation. This results in better translation results than the older local Glossary system.

- You can use multiple glossaries in a single project.
- Glossaries are external files and can be used in multiple projects.
- If you unload the glossary it will no longer be used in the current project.

How to create a glossary

1. Select the API **Glossary** tab in the DeepL plugin and click on **New** to open the glossary editor window.
2. Select the language pair and direction in the language field. This is important as it tells DeepL how to interpret the content inserted by the glossary. Not all possible language combinations are supported yet, but more are being added.
3. Enter the phrase and the desired translation on a single line, separated by tabs



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Entries are case-sensitive

Note that the entries are case-sensitive. If you wish to protect versions of the same words with different cases you need to enter each one separately.

Clicking on **OK** prompts you to save the file with the extension **`.txt`**. If you are only going to use it in the current project you can save it in the project folder. If you want to use it in multiple projects you can save it in a location that will be accessible for all the projects. It is added to the active translation glossary list automatically after saving.

Editing a glossary

To edit an existing glossary just select it in the list and click on the **Edit** button.

Adding and removing existing glossaries

To add an existing glossary for use with the current project just click on **Add** and then select the glossary file. If you no longer wish to use a glossary in the current project select it in the active list and click on the **Remove** button. This does not delete the glossary file. It just removes it from the list of glossaries used in the current project.

8.2.3 Using translation memory tools

Many professional translators and translation agencies use "translation memory" tools like SD Trados (this is the market leader) to translate Help+Manual projects.

Translation memory tools are generally too complex and expensive to purchase and learn yourself unless your company has its own translation department. However, the benefits of using them are so great that you should really consider working with translators who use them, particularly if you have extensive documentation that gets updated regularly.

If you can, using translation memory is definitely the most efficient way to manage the translation and localization of your Help+Manual projects.

Protecting text against changes and translation

You can explicitly protect text against translation and editing changes. To do this select the text in the editor and then select the "padlock" tool in **Write > Font.** The text will then be displayed shaded in the Help+Manual editor and it will be tagged with the attribute *translate*="*false*" in the XML topic file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How translation memory works

Translation memory tools have an integrated dynamic database for your projects that automatically "remembers" all text that has been translated. When you deliver updated version of your project the software first reads it through and automatically translates all the sentences that have already been translated. Then the human translator only needs to process the new and changed material.

In addition to this they generally also feature additional tools to make translation more efficient, like a terminology database that gives the translator direct access to the correct translated terms for all your special terminology.

Benefits of translation memory

- Never translate anything twice – all unchanged material gets translated automatically
- Terminology consistency – your customers don't get confused by varying terms for the same things
- Easy updating – no need to track changes, you just send the new version for translation
- Compatibility with Help+Manual projects – the tools work on them directly

Translation memory tool compatibility

Generally, any tool capable of handling XML files should be able to process Help+Manual's topic and TOC files, although some will do it better than others. XML-aware tools like SDL Trados and Across can process Help+Manual projects directly.

Generating configuration files for Help+Manual in Trados

Trados configuration files are no longer included directly

Help+Manual no longer includes standard configuration files for SDL Trados because experience has shown that most translators need to generate their own version, and this is better done directly in the specific version of Trados that they are using.

Creating an .sdlfiletype for Help+Manual

Translators using SDL Trados need to generate an **`.sdlfiletype`** configuration file from the XSD file included in every HM project folder. XSD stands for "XML Schema Data' and it

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

defines the entire Help+Manual' XML format, or "schema". It describes which tags are allowed by the XML schema, how they relate to each other and what they can contain. Most XML editors, including Trados, can validate an XML file against the schema. If the XML that the program writes validates against the XSD file, this guarantees that H&M will be able read it after translation.

Trados has a list of all the file types that Trados knows how to process, including HTML, XHTML, Word, DITA, and several other XML schemas. Trados can add XML schemas it does not yet know by analyzing the XSD file for that schema. To (re-)create an **`.sdlfiletype`** configuration file for the current version of Trados, the translator needs to get Trados to analyze the file **`helpproject.xsd`** that is included in the project folder of every Help+Manual HMXP project. Trados will then rebuild the **`.sdlfiletype`** to update it to the current version, or create a new one. This configuration file will then be used for processing Help & Manual projects.

Using the XSL file for WYSIWYG display

In addition to using XSD to process XML and be able to write valid XML for the schema, programs like Trados also have configurable display filters to display the data in the XML tags in a way that the human translators can more easily work with. These filters can be configured with XSLT (Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations) defined in an XSL file, which defines how the tags in the schema should be displayed on the screen.

An XSL file is also included in the project folder for browser display of the topics and Trados can use this for displaying the data the translator is working on. Web browsers can also read this file: If you open a topic XML file with a web browser and the browser supports XSLT (the XSL file is referenced in the topic), then the browser can display an approximate representation of the topic, both the original and the translation.

How to deliver your projects for translation with translation memory

If you are working with a translator who is using one of these tools you need to send them the entire folder containing your project in the uncompressed XML/HMXP format. You can only save projects in this format with the Professional or Floating license version.

The translators need to have the entire project folder, which should also contain all your graphics files folders. You will receive back a translated version that you can open directly in Help+Manual to do any final layout work and publish the project to the formats you want to use (CHM, HTML etc).

1. **Make sure your graphics are included in your project folder**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Graphics files:
The translator will be able to understand the project better if you include the graphics files. The easiest way to enable this is to make sure that all the graphics are included in the project folder as well. You can move them there easily, and generally they should always be kept there. See Managing your graphics 514 for instructions.

Graphics containing text:
If you create your graphics using the Impict editor 506 included with Help+Manual you can have it store the text they contain in linked XML files that can be translated by translation memory programs. See Translating texts in images 1197 for more details.

2. **Set up the language settings for the target language in the translation version**

   For details on the settings you need to make and the issues you need to consider study International languages setup 143.

3. **Check whether you need to include any snippet files for the translator**

   If your files contain linked snippets 265 from external sources you may need to include copies of these embedded files for the translator.

   If you include the files with the translation package you should put them in a separate folder inside the project folder you are going to send to the translator and add an entry to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Project Search Path** 1405 pointing to the folder containing the snippet files so that Help+Manual will find them.

4. **Pack everything in a zip file for the translator**

   Finally, pack up the entire prepared folder and all its contents in a zip or other appropriate archive format and send it to the translators for processing.

Translating individual topics

Since all your topics are stored as individual XML files you can also send copies of individual files out for translation as well. However, this is not generally recommended. It is usually better to provide the entire project so that the translator has the entire context. Also, when you split out individual topics it is much too easy to lose track of what has been edited and what hasn't.

In addition to copying individual topic files from your project folder you can also export topic files with the *File* > *Save Topic to File* function in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to update projects using translation memory

When you use translation memory tools the procedure for translating an updated project is exactly the same as for the original project. You just send the translators the entire updated project folder, using the procedure described above. The translation memory database will automatically translate all the known sentences, leaving only the new and changed material for the human translators to process.

8.2.4 Translating in Help+Manual

Help+Manual itself is really the best XML editor for editing and translating your projects. The inexpensive Basic version costs less than most professional XML editors and can do much more. It can edit both compressed and uncompressed projects created with the Professional or Floating license version without restriction. It is just lacking some features, but they are not features the translator needs – for example ePUB and Visual Studio output. Unlike a normal XML editor, you can work in WYSIWYG mode and you also have access to all of Help+Manual's advanced tools and features.

Translating projects in Help+Manual is basically exactly the same as working on a project in your own language. You just make a sibling copy of the project with the Project Synchronization Tool 1245, set up the language settings appropriately for the target language and work you way through the project, translating as you go. When a new version of your project becomes available you can then use the Project Synchronization tool to create an updated version of the translated project containing all the topics with new material to be translated.

Protecting text against changes and translation

You can explicitly protect text against translation and editing changes. To do this select the text in the editor and then select the "padlock" tool in **Write > Font.** The text will then be displayed shaded in the Help+Manual editor and it will be tagged with the attribute *translate="false"* in the XML topic file.

Procedure for translating projects in Help+Manual

When you are using Help+Manual as the translation editor you can use either the compressed .hmxz format or the uncompressed XML .hmxp format – which you use is up to you. However, both the original project and the translated version must be saved in the same format, otherwise you will not be able to use the Project Synchronization tool later to update your translations.

1. **Make sure your graphics are included in the project folder**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Graphics files:
The translator will be able to understand the project better if you include the graphics files. The easiest way to enable this is to make sure that all the graphics are included in the project folder as well. You can move them there easily, and generally they should always be kept there. See Managing your graphics 514 for instructions.

Graphics containing text:
If you create your graphics using the Impict editor 506 included with Help+Manual you can have it store the text they contain in linked XML files that can be translated by translation memory programs. See Translating texts in images 1197 for more details.

2. **Check whether you need to include any snippet files for the translator**

   If your files contain linked snippets 265 from external sources you may need to include copies of these embedded files for the translator.

   If you include the files with the translation package you should put them in a separate folder inside the project folder you are going to send to the translator and add an entry to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Project Search Path** 1405 pointing to the folder containing the snippet files so that Help+Manual will find them.

3. **Make a sibling copy for the translator to work on**

   If you have the Basic version of Help+Manual you must just make a copy with *Save As...* in the File menu. The Project Synchronization tool is not included with the Basic version.

   In the Professional or Floating license version select *Synchronize* in **Project** > **Tools** and make a sibling copy of the original project. This copy will have exactly the same internal IDs as the original, which will make it possible to identify changes and update the translated version with the Synchronize tool later.

   See The Project Synchronization Tool 1245 for more details.

4. **Set up the language settings for the target language in the translation version**

   This is very important and can lead to unexpected errors in your output if you forget it. For details on the settings you need to make and the issues you need to consider study International languages setup 143.

5. **Translate the project in Help+Manual**

   Obviously, the first thing you will translate will be the texts of your topics. But there are also a number of other things that you should not forget, and a few things that you should **not** translate:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Remember to translate all the normal index keywords in the Topic Options tab and the Index Tool. See Keywords and Indexes 565 for details on working with index entries.
- Don't translate any A-keywords 1606 in the tab. These keywords are never seen by the user and they will work best if you leave them unchanged.
- Check through all the sections of Project Configuration 1400 and translate any texts that will be visible to the user, including the values of text variables 917.
- Don't translate the names of variables or include options 988 (build conditions). You can translate the display texts for include options if you want but you don't have to, they are never seen by the user.

See Instructions for translators and editors 1200 for a full list of guidelines.

6. **Publish your output, check and distribute**

   Publish your output as normal. Before distributing it check it to make sure that everything is OK for the target language. For example, if your language settings are not correct special characters in the target language may not be displayed correctly.

Procedure for updating translated projects

Translating the first version of your project is straightforward, you just make a copy and translate it. The next challenge is to produce an updated version of the translation when a new version of your original documentation is released.

If you are using the Basic version of Help+Manual you must make notes of all your changes and tell the translator where they are.

If you have Help+Manual Professional you can use the Project Synchronization Tool 1245 to make an updated version of the translated project. Project Synch will delete removed topics, add new topics and mark changed topics as changed. Full copies of the original text of all new and changed topics, topic titles in the TOC and topic headings can be inserted for the translator if you want. (Otherwise you must provide a copy of the original version for the translator to refer to.)

1. **Create an updated version of the project for the translator**

   Basic version:
   If you have the Basic version of Help+Manual you must send the translator a copy of the new version of the original project with annotations showing where the changes are located. The translator must then use Help+Manual to update the old version of the translation.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Professional/Floating license version:
Follow the instructions in The Project Synchronization Tool 1251 for synchronizing the new version of your documentation with the translated version. This will create a new version of the old translated project for the translator, with deleted topics removed, new topics inserted and changed topics marked as changed. You can also choose to insert full copies of the new content of all new and changed topics for the translator to work with.

2. **Make copies of all new and changed graphics and other external files**

   Before sending the updated project to the translator, make sure that you also include all new and modified graphics in the translation package, along with any new and changed external files. Here too, keeping everything in one project folder makes things a lot easier.

   Also check whether there are any changes in linked snippets 265 – if there are you will probably need to include copies of the new versions of the source files for the translator.

3. **Translate the changes and generate your output**

   Once the translator has produced the new version you can generate your output as normal. Don't forget to check through the Configuration settings in the Project Explorer to make sure that all relevant texts visible to the user have been translated.

   After generating your output check the finished product carefully to make sure that everything is OK in the target language. For example, make sure that special characters are rendered correctly – if they are not you may need to adjust the language settings for your project.

See also:

The Project Synchronization Tool 1245
International languages setup 143

8.2.5 Translating with external editors

It is also possible to edit and translate the XML files in your project with any XML editor, along with WYSIWYG previews if the editor supports that feature. However, we really don't recommend this because the disadvantages greatly outweigh the benefits. XML editors are designed for XML programmers, not for translators or authors. They expose all the XML source code and tags to the translator, who has to be extremely careful not to damage anything accidentally. In addition to this, it is much harder and slower to work on the text in this way, and more errors are almost guaranteed.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Protecting text against changes and translation

You can explicitly protect text against translation and editing changes. To do this select the text in the editor and then select the "padlock" tool in **Write** > **Font.** The text will then be displayed shaded in the Help+Manual editor and it will be tagged with the attribute *translate="false"* in the XML topic file.

Procedure for translating in an external editor

Translating in external editors is only possible with the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. The Basic version cannot write the uncompressed XML format required for access by other editors and translation tools.

The following procedure assumes that you have saved the project in this format. If you haven't, use *Save As...* in the **File** menu and choose *Help Project/Uncompressed XML* as the save format and an empty folder to save to. You can then add folders for graphics, snippets etc. to this new folder.

1. **Make sure your graphics are included in the project folder**

   Graphics files:
   The translator will be able to understand the project better if you include the graphics files. The easiest way to enable this is to make sure that all the graphics are included in the project folder as well. You can move them there easily, and generally they should always be kept there. See Managing your graphics 514 for instructions.

   Graphics containing text:
   If you create your graphics using the Impict editor 506 included with Help+Manual you can have it store the text they contain in linked XML files that can be translated by translation memory programs. See Translating texts in images 1197 for more details.

2. **Check whether you need to include any snippet files for the translator**

   If your files contain linked snippets 265 from external sources you may need to include copies of these embedded files for the translator.

   If you include the files with the translation package you should put them in a separate folder inside the project folder you are going to send to the translator and add an entry to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Project Search Path** 1405 pointing to the folder containing the snippet files so that Help+Manual will find them.

3. **Make a "sibling copy" for the translator to work on**

   Select *Synchronize* in **Project** > **Tools** and make a sibling copy of the original project. This copy will have exactly the same internal IDs as the original, which will make it pos-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

sible to identify changes and update the translated version with the Synchronize tool later. See The Project Synchronization Tool 1245 for more details.

It is best to perform this step after consolidating all your graphics and external files in the project folder.

4. **Set up the language settings in the sibling copy for the new language**

   This is very important and can lead to unexpected errors in your output if you forget it. For details on the settings you need to make and the issues you need to consider study International languages setup 143.

5. **Translate the project with your external tool**

   The physical procedure for translating will depend on the tool you use to edit the XML files. However, there are some important instructions for translators that should always be observed. See Instructions for translators and editors 1200 for full details.

6. **Check through the Configuration to make sure that everything is OK**

   When the translation is complete load it in Help+Manual and check through it carefully make sure that all the relevant texts 1191 in the project's Configuration section in the Project Explorer have been translated to the new language. Also check things like the index keywords etc.

7. **Publish your project in the new language**

   You will be able to generate the new version of your output in the target language directly. What you get back from the translator is already a fully-functional Help+Manual project since they have been working directly on the project source files.

   Here too, of course, you should check things like special characters in your output before distributing the finished product.

Procedure for updating translations

When your original project is updated you can use the Project Synchronization Tool to make an updated version of the old translated project for the translator.

These instructions assume that you used the Project Synchronization tool to create a sibling copy for the translator to work on when you sent the project for translation. If you did not do this you may need to use a special feature of the Synch tool to link the two projects. See Synching existing projects 1257 for details.

1. **Create an updated version of translated project for the translator**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Follow the instructions in The Project Synchronization Tool 1245 for synchronizing the new version of your documentation with the old translated version. This will create a new version of the translated project for the translator. Deleted topics will be removed, new topics will be inserted and changed topics will be marked as changed. You can also choose to insert full copies of the new content of all new and changed topics for the translator to work with.

2. **Translate the new material**

   This is the same procedure as above. The translator just translates the new material in the updated XML package.

3. **Generate your output from the updated project**

   You don't need to check your language settings because you are already using a project set up for the target language. After checking that everything has been translated correctly you can generate your output with Help+Manual normally.

Translating individual topics

Since all your topics are stored as individual XML files you can also send copies of individual files out for translation as well. However, this is not generally recommended. It is usually better to provide the entire project so that the translator has the entire context. Also, when you split out individual topics it is much too easy to lose track of what has been edited and what hasn't.

In addition to copying individual topic files from your project folder you can also export topic files with the *File* > *Save Topic to File* function in **Project** > **Manage Topics.**

8.2.6 Translating texts in images

If you create images with Impict 1216 that contain text objects you will also need to translate the texts in the images. If the translator is working in Help+Manual they can edit the texts directly in Impict – you just need to remember to give them copies of all the images in Impict's own IPP format so that the texts remain editable.

Translating image texts in Impict

If possible it is probably better for the translator to work directly in Impict to translate the image texts. Text lengths often change when they are translated and this will generally make it necessary to move and modify the text objects in the images. Some languages will also require a different layout because of the different structure and logic of the language.

If the translator works in Impict they can do this work directly, eliminating the need for you to have to do it later.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Exporting image texts to XML for translation

Translators using XML editors or translation tools will not have access to Impict. You can export the texts in your Impict IPP images to external XML files that these translators can edit. Later, you can import the translated texts from the XML files to the IPP images with Impict and make any necessary modifications.

For details see the chapter on **Translating Texts in Images** in the Impict help.

8.2.7 Translation-friendly Tidy XML

Starting in Version 8.3 Help+Manual supports "Tidy XML" that is more translation-friendly for XML-based translation tools. It significantly simplifies the amount of XML tag information in the source code of your topics, making them much easier to edit with other XML-based editors.

Tidy XML source code has a minimum of **<text>** tags breaking up your paragraphs and significantly reduced redundant attributes inside the tags that do need to be used.

Benefits, discipline and compatibility warning

The new XML syntax writes **<text>** tags only where necessary. If the text style is identical with the paragraph style, the text is simply placed between the **<para>…</para>** tags, making it much easier to read for an external translator. Explicit **<text>** tags are only inserted for text with a different format from its paragraph. In addition to this, redundant "styleclass" attributes for **<text>** tags and links are eliminated – text that has the same style as its paragraph no longer needs a styleclass attribute at all.

Tidy XML only works if you use styles!

You can only get the full benefits of Tidy XML if you use styles instead of manual formatting. When you format with styles, each paragraph just contains a reference to the styleclass. When you apply manual formatting all the formatting information must be written literally into the XML tags. Your XML gets bloated again and much harder to translate.

You can clean up manual formatting in existing projects by "normalizing" your styles with the Toolbox utility included with the Premium Pack add-on (see below for details).

Not compatible with earlier versions of Help+Manual

Tidy XML is not activated by default because it is not compatible with older versions of Help+Manual. You won't lose data when opening a Tidy XML project with an older version, but the formatting and layout will probably look distorted. Don't open projects con-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

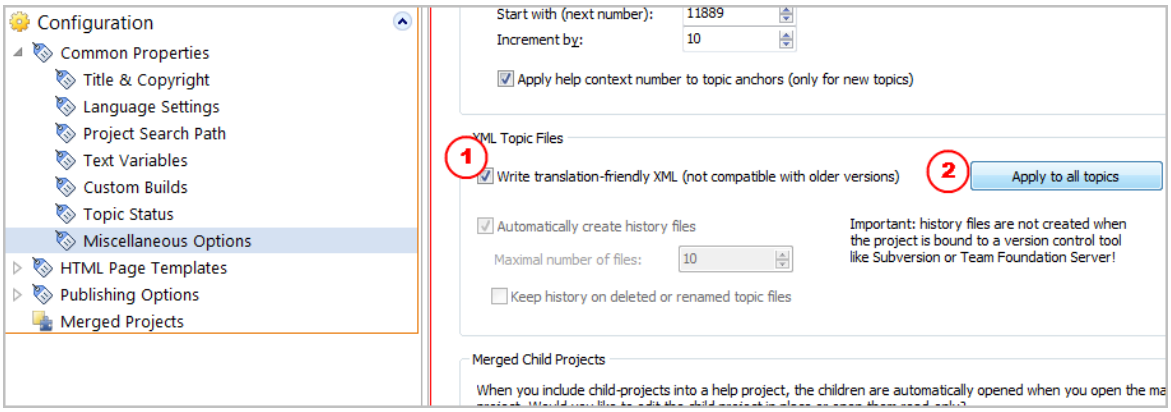
verted to Tidy XML with older versions of Help+Manual, and make a full backup before converting so that you will have access to the older version if necessary!

How to activate Tidy XML

You can activate Tidy XML and apply it to all the topics in existing projects with the options in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous Options** (in the Project Explorer on the left in Help+Manual).

Procedure:

1. Make a backup of your project and store it in a safe place!
2. Open your original project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous Options**.
3. Enable *"Write translation-friendly XML"*, then click on "Apply to all topics" to apply it to all existing topics. (Otherwise it will only be used for new topics created after activating the setting.)



Cleaning up manual formatting with Premium Pack Toolbox

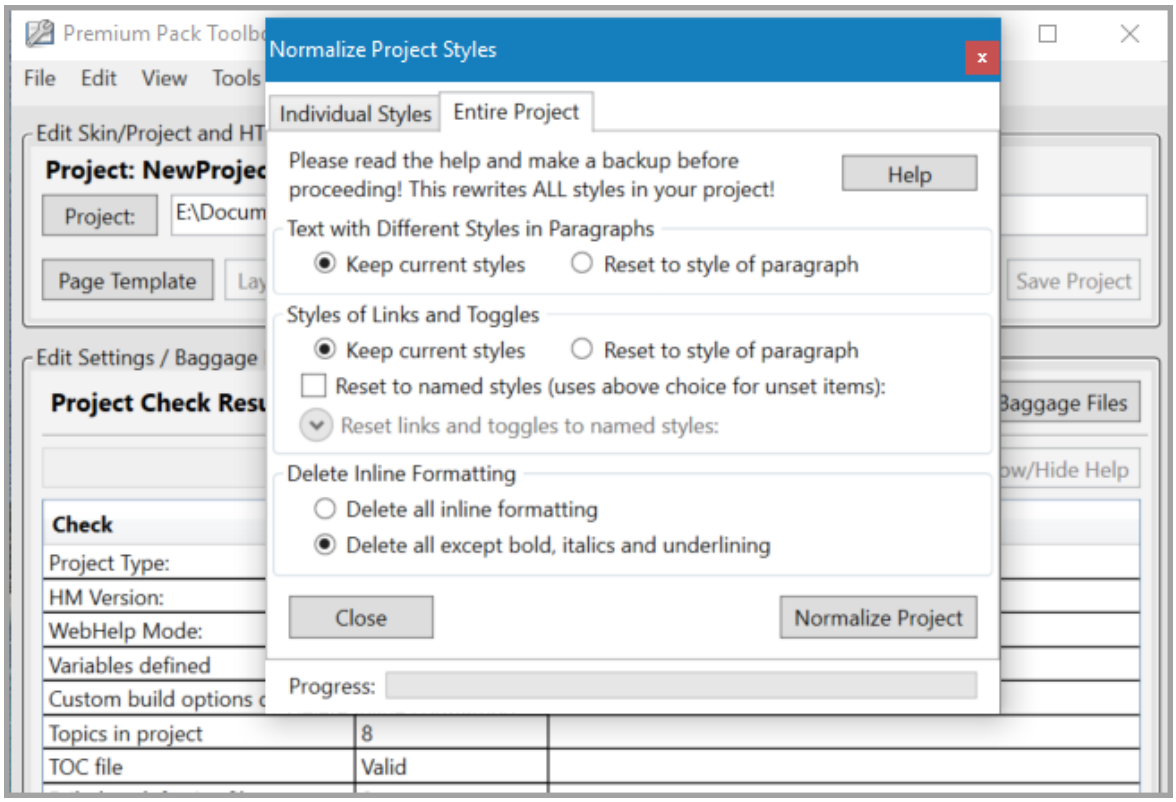
Starting in version 3.25, the powerful Toolbox utility included in the Premium Pack skins add-on has a new function with which you can globally clean up manual formatting from your projects. This can very significantly reduce the amount of "cruft" in your XML code caused by manual formatting.

The *Entire Project* option in this tool strips all the manual formatting from an entire project, but it enables you to retain text formatted with different styles within paragraphs (which are efficient) and optionally also manually-applied bold, italics and underlining (which are so common that they can hardly be avoided). In addition to this it can also

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

standardize the styles used for hyperlinks and toggles, allowing you to choose specific styles for all hyperlink and toggle types.

The *Individual Styles* option is used for integrating inline formatting imported from HTML, converting it globally into references to styles.



8.2.8 Instructions for translators and editors

When you are working on the XML files it is important that you should only translate or edit those parts of the file that are "editable". This topic provides basic instructions for translators and editors of Help+Manual project, particularly those working on the XML files rather than in Help+Manual itself. How important these instructions are will depend on the XML editing tool you are using. Some XML editors will protect attributes and tags, making it difficult or impossible to accidentally damage them, others don't provide this protection and must be used with more care.

Recommendation: Don't use tools that force you to work directly on XML code

We provide tips for what to avoid when working on the XML code directly below. However, the most important recommendation here is to not work on the XML code directly at all, ever. It doesn't matter how experienced you are. If you try to translate text in

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the XML code directly you will damage it and you will then waste many unproductive hours trying to locate and fix the damage.

Any savings you may think you are getting by using a cheap or free tool to edit the source code directly will be eaten up many times over by all the valuable time you waste fixing the problems created when you accidentally damage the source code and make it incompatible with Help+Manual.

Use Tidy XML and eliminate manual formatting as far as possible

If you must use an XML code editor for any reason, use the Tidy XML feature to make the XML code as friendly and accessible as possible. In addition to this, we strongly recommend using the Normalize Project Styles feature in the Premium Pack Toolbox to completely eliminate manual formatting tags from your code to make it easier to work on. See Translation-friendly Tidy XML 1198 for details.

What you are NOT allowed to translate or edit

Do not translate:

- Anything inside tags (XML elements)
- Text identified as *translate*="*false*"
- Tag/element attributes

Anything inside tags (XML elements)

The first and most important principle is that you are never allowed to edit anything inside tags. All text in tags and tag attributes – i.e. anything between the < and > characters marking the beginning and end of a tag – is strictly off limits for translators and editors. Don't even think about editing anything inside tags, this information doesn't even exist for you. Just ignore it.

Nothing inside tags is ever seen by the user so nothing inside tags ever needs to be translated or edited. For example, even though many of the words inside the following tag (in blue) are in English you are not allowed to translate them because they are inside the tag:

```
<config-value name="title" translate="true">Help &amp; Manual
XML Language Reference</config-value>
```

You are only allowed to translate the text shown in red, because it is plain text between tags (and because the tag has a translate="true" attribute, see below).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Text tagged as translate="false"

This should be fairly obvious: In Help+Manual text can be protected against changing and this applies the attribute *translate*="*false*" to the text tag. Any text tagged with this attribute should be left unchanged unless the author specifically provides other instructions.

Element attributes

Element attributes are also inside tags so that is already a very good reason not to translate them. However, this point is so important we would like to repeat it. Don't even think about translating or editing the attributes of any XML elements. Again, none of these attributes are ever seen by the user so they don't need to be translated. If you do translate them you will create syntax errors and make it impossible for Help+Manual to open the project correctly.

In the following example too, you can only translate or edit the text shown in red. Everything else is strictly off limits. All the texts shown in green are element attributes. Editing or translating them will make it impossible to re-import the XML files because of the strictness of XML syntax.

```
<para styleclass="Heading2"><text styleclass="Heading2">What
you are </text><text styleclass="Heading2" style="text-
decoration:underline;">not</text><text
styleclass="Heading2"> allowed to translate or
edit:</text></para>
```

Of course, sometimes you will have to use your own judgment a little. In the example above you will have to move around the underline tags around the word "not" because the structure of the sentence will probably be quite different in another language. This is generally OK provided you do it carefully and don't move these tags outside any other tags enclosing them. Just be careful and if you are not entirely sure what you are doing leave it alone or get help from someone with more experience.

Ultimately, you will save a lot of time and frustration if you use a proper translation tool that hides the tags from you so you don't need to worry about them at all.

What you are allowed to translate or edit

Text data between tags with the translate="true" attribute

What you may translate is very clearly defined. Every element containing translatable data is identified with the translate="true" attribute in the opening tag. This means that you

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

don't even need to look at any elements that don't have this tag. If a tag has the attribute translate="false" just ignore its content.

Here too, of course, you are only allowed to translate or edit the text data between the tags. You are still not permitted to touch anything inside the tags themselves, even in the tags with *translate="true"*.

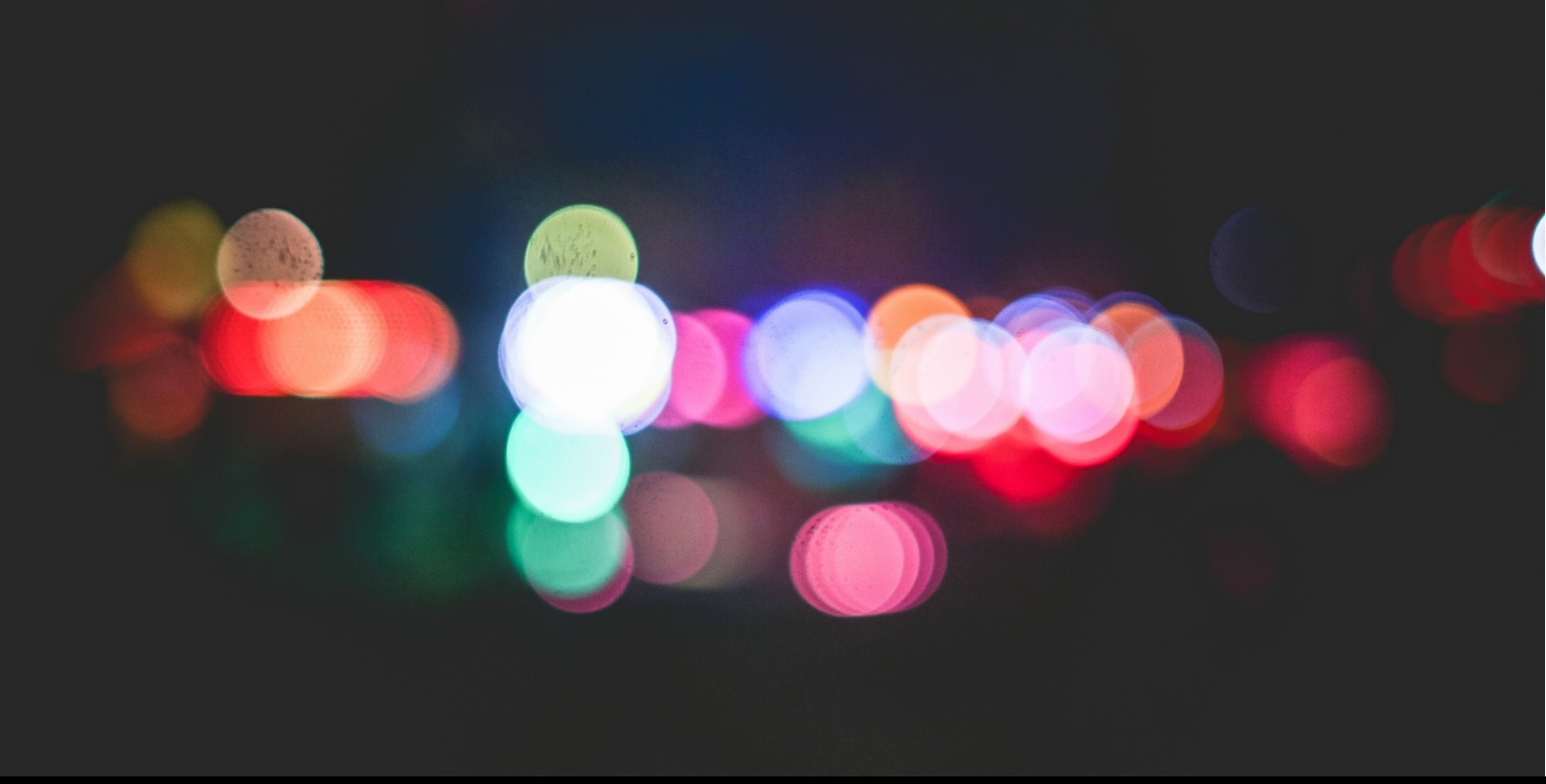
Translatable elements

Element	Translatable
text	Text is always translatable if its *translate* attribute is set to "*true*". Do not translate if *translate="false"* is set.
link	The captions of hyperlinks (topic links, web links, file links, script/macro links) are translatable if their *translate* attribute is set to *true*.
caption	Image captions are translatable if their *translate* attribute is set to *true*.
keyword	Keywords are always translatable. They always have a **`translate`** attribute and the setting is always "true". Note that this does not apply to a-keywords! A-keywords are never seen by the user and should never be translated because this can break help functionality!
html-code	The *translate* attribute of *html-code* elements is always set to "true". However, whether a translation is really required will depend on the nature of the code. If in doubt, ask!
config-value	Only some *config-value* elements are translatable. If they have a *translate* attribute and it is set to *true* they can be translated. If not they should be left alone.

See also:

Project Synchronization 1245
Editing XML source code 264

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Help+Manual Premium Pack

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

9 Help+Manual Premium Pack

The Help+Manual Premium Pack is an add-on that includes a wide range of advanced WebHelp and eWriter skins and a configuration utility called Toolbox that also features a number of useful power tools features for Help+Manual projects as well as skins.

View the Premium Pack documentation

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Tools included with Help+Manual

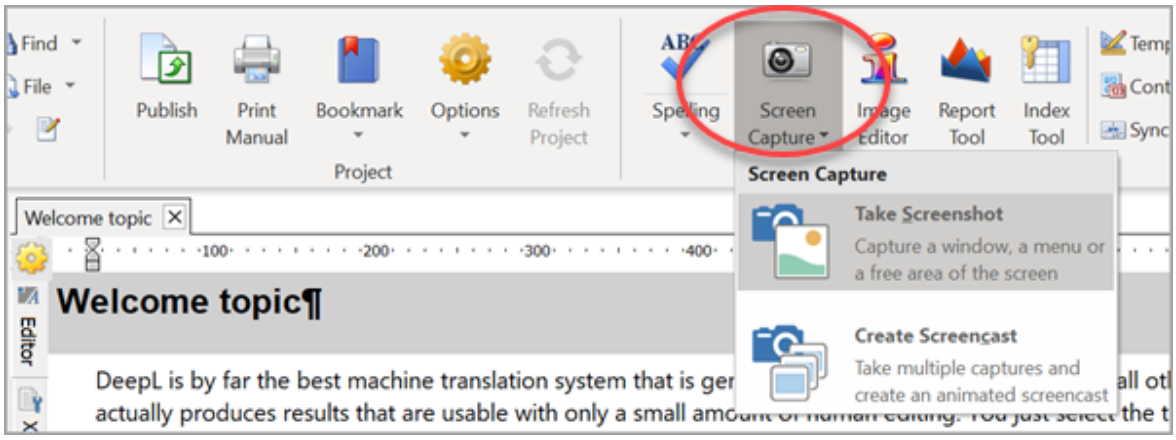
Help+Manual has every tool you need, at your fingertips!

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

10 Tools included with Help+Manual

10.1 The Screen Capture Tool

Help+Manual has an integrated screen capture tool that includes all the functions you need to make attractive screenshots quickly and efficiently. In a unique feature available only on Help+Manual, it can also capture sequences of screenshots and display them as animated tutorials with a moving mouse cursor.



Screen Capture is in the Project tab

Special features

Composite captures:
After selecting the first area for capture you can use **`SHIFT+Click`** to add additional areas and create a composite capture.

Multi-monitor and hi-res support:
The capture tool fully supports multi-monitor configurations and high-resolution displays. You can capture on any monitor, even if one has a higher resolution than the other, and captures will be correct on both high and low resolution displays.

Capture animated screencasts

The unique Screencast feature captures a series of screenshots and turns them into an animated presentation with a moving cursor. This is ideal for showing how something is done and is very much quicker than trying to make a screencast tutorial with a video-based tool.

The Screencasts are compiled to your HTML-based output with the engine from EC Software's HelpXplain tool. Referred to as "Xplains", they are saved in the standard **`.xplain`** format and can be inserted in your topics and published without HelpXplain. If you do

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

have HelpXplain you can edit them to create much more complex animations and presentations. See the HelpXplain website for details.

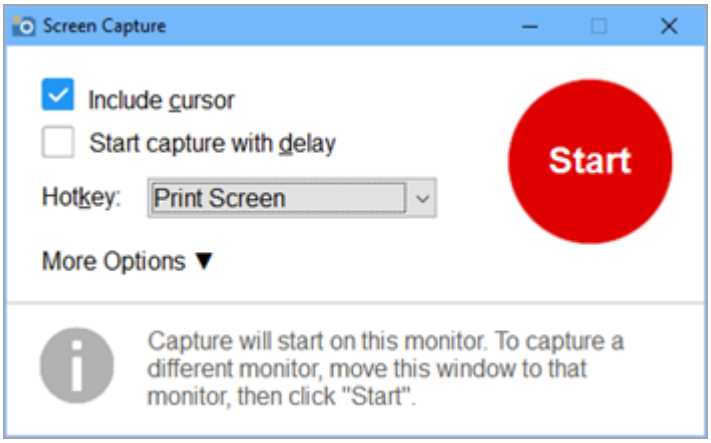
Editing with Impict or HelpXplain

You can add shapes, shadows and background colors and automatically resize your screenshots with a choice of high-quality scaling filters using the Impict graphics editor 506 included with Help+Manual . Impict edits are non-destructive, which means you can always go back and change something if you need to.

Alternatively, you can also use the new HelpXplain tool to edit your screenshots and screencasts. It can then be configured to replace Impict as your standard graphics editor in Program Options 1261.

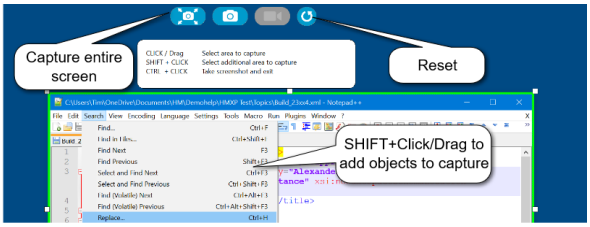
How to capture a window, control or menu

1. Click in the editor in the position where you want to insert the screenshot.
2. Select *Screen Capture* and then *Take Screenshot* in **Project** > **Tools.**



You can change the default hotkey (**`Print Screen`**) for screen capture here if you wish, for example if it conflicts with another program on your system. You can also choose whether you want to include the mouse cursor or not. The Delay option gives you 5 seconds to make changes on the screen before the capture starts.

3. Choose whether you want to include the cursor or not, then select **Start**.



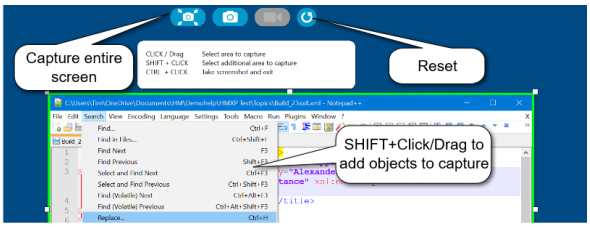
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

4. Click on a window or window control to select it with the green border. Or drag with the mouse to select a free region.
5. Hold down **CTRL** and click in the selection to insert the screenshot in your topic and save the screenshot file.

How to make a composite capture

The capture tool supports making multiple rectangular captures at the same time, which are combined to a single image.

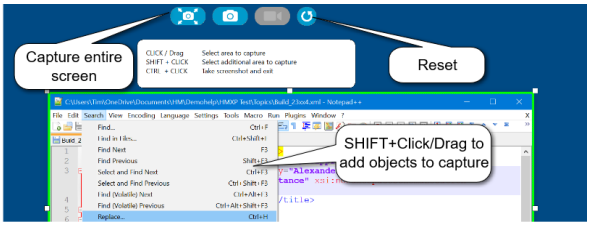
1. Start your capture normally and make your first capture.



2. Instead of using **CTRL+Click**, hold down the **SHIFT** key and click or drag to select an additional area. Repeat to select more areas.
3. When you are finished, hold down **CTRL** and click in the selection to insert the screenshot in your topic and save the screenshot file.

Capturing the entire screen

1. Start your capture normally.



2. Instead of selecting a capture area, click on the full screen icon shown at the top of the screen.

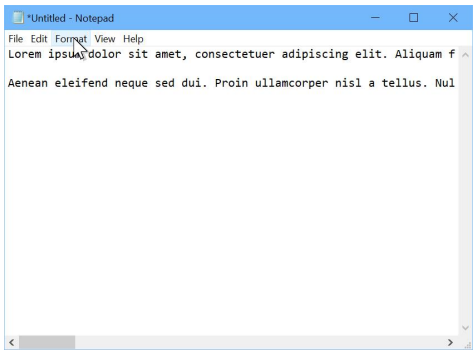
Capturing an animated screencast

This unique tool, which use the graphics and animation engine from our HelpXplain tool, enables you to make little HowTo tutorials with just a few clicks. It combines a series of screenshots showing the steps you want to demonstrate and includes the animated

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

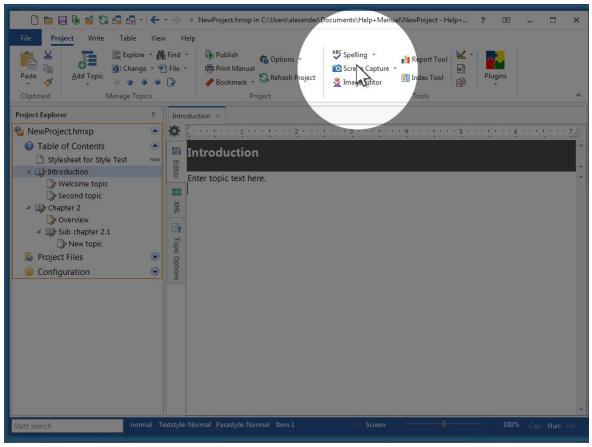
mouse cursor. When played in your output, the screencast steps through the screenshots, demonstrating exactly what you did when you made it.

This simple example demonstrates how to use the word wrap feature in the Notepad editor included with Windows. It took 30 seconds to create.



Simple screencast demo

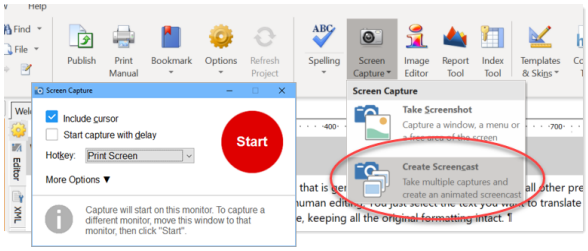
Here's a screencast of how to make a screencast



Creating screencasts with Help+Manual

Procedure

1. Make sure the program you want to document is set up and ready before you start. Click in the topic editor in the position where you want to insert the screencast. Then *Create Screencast* in in the **Screen Capture** tool in **Project** > **Tools**.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

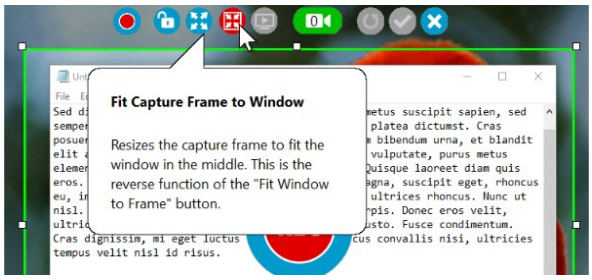
You can change the default hotkey (**Print Screen**) for screen capture here if you wish, for example if it conflicts with another program on your system. You should usually include the mouse cursor in screencasts as a way to show the user what to do.

2. Click on the red **Start** button. This doesn't start recording. It hides Help+Manual and displays the capture tools at the top of your screen and the green capture frame. Position the capture frame roughly around the window or area you want to capture.

Controls at the top of the screen

The controls for adjusting the capture frame to the program window are disabled during recording.

- **Fit capture frame to window** snaps the frame to the window beneath it
- **Fit window to capture frame** snaps the window to the capture frame



3. Click the **Record** button in the center to start. Screenshots are not made until you click. Then Operate the program normally. A screenshot will be made every time you click the mouse. Left-clicks, right-clicks, double-clicks and drag operations will all be recorded and represented.

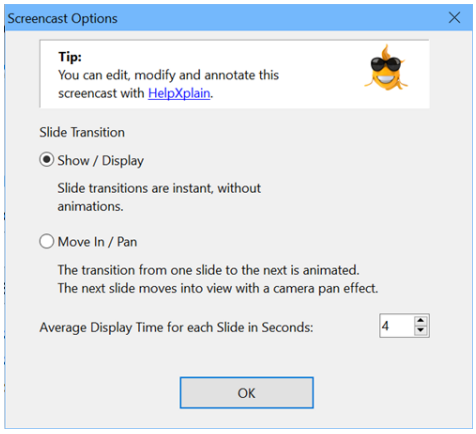
   - Press the **Record** button to pause/restart automatic screenshots. Press the hotkey (default: **Print Screen**) to make a manual screenshot. This also works when recording is paused.

4. Click on the **Done** tool in the icon bar to make the last screenshot and terminate recording. You will then be asked to save the **.xplain** file (give it a descriptive name) and the following dialog will be displayed.

   - **Show/Display** switches instantly between the screencast slides. This is best for creating a "movie" of something happening on the screen.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **Move In / Pan** animates the screenshots, moving them out of and into view like an image slider.



See also:

Screen Capture 1316 (dialog reference)
About Graphics in Help+Manual 1529
The Impict Screenshot Editor 1216

10.2 The Project Report Tool

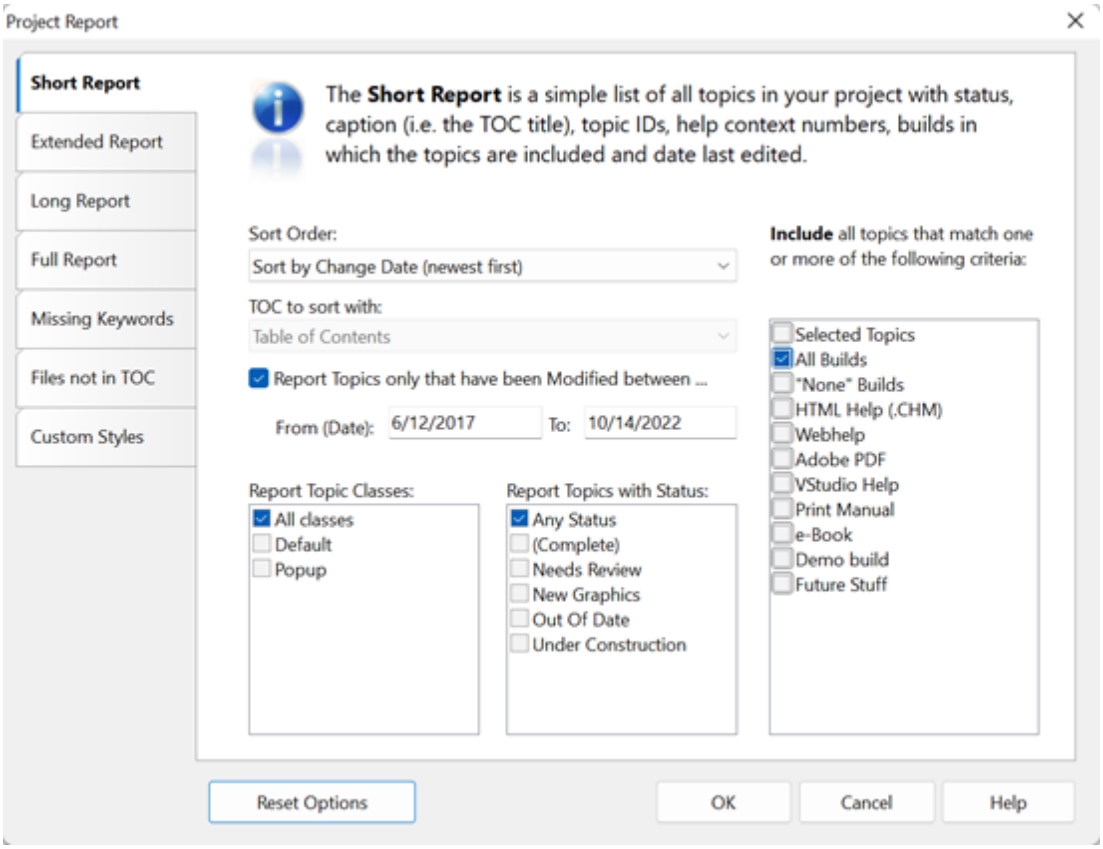
This tool generates detailed reports on your project that can be used for a wide range of purposes, including documentation, providing your programmers with lists of topic IDs for their help calls, checking project status, locating dead links, finding missing images and unused images and so on. Reports are displayed immediately in a special viewer but you can also save them in HTML files for documentation and other purposes.

See the report dialog reference 1318 for details on the dialog options and the available report types 1318.

How to generate a project report

1. Select Report Tool in **Project** > **Tools**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Select the report type in the tabs on the left.
3. Select the other options to change the sort order of your report and which topics you wish to include or exclude (see the dialog reference 1318 for details).
4. Click on OK to display the report in your default browser.

Word and character counts

The **Full Report** option includes word and character counts for each topic listed and also a cumulative count for all the topics in the report.

Word counts for individual topic classes, builds etc.

You can use the selection options in the Report tool to get word counts for any customized group of topics. For example, you can use the date range option to get a count for all the topics modified between specified dates. Similarly, you can get counts for topics with specific build options, classes or status, or any combination of these filters.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Word counts for selected topics

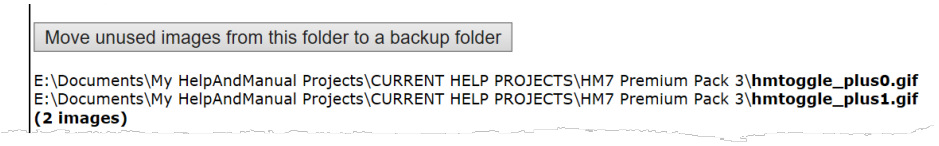
You can also get a cumulative word count for selected topics in the TOC. Just select the topics before opening the Report tool, with **`Ctrl+Click`** and **`Shift+Click`**. Then start the Report tool, select the Selected Topics option in the Include Options box on the right and generate a Full Report.

Important note: Selected chapters always include all the sub-topics of the chapters!

Locate and remove unused images

Help+Manual can help you to locate unused graphics files in your project and remove them so that they no longer take up space.

1. Select the Project Report tool and choose the Full Report option.
2. **Set the *Sort Order* option to *Topic ID*.** This is important to ensure that all topics will be covered by the report, including those that do not have TOC entries.
3. Run the report and scroll down to the bottom of the page. Each folder where unused images are found has a button with which you can move the images to a backup folder for storage or deletion.



Report types

Short report: Simple list of all topics in your project with status, caption (i.e. the TOC title), topic IDs, help context numbers, builds in which the topics are included and date last edited. The report also includes a summary of the number of topics and keywords in your project.

This is a practical format for providing your programmers with a list of topic IDs and context numbers for their calls.

Use Topic ID sort order to include all topics!
Use the *Topic ID* sort order with this report if you want to ensure that all topics are covered by the report, including those that do not have TOC entries.

Extended report: Also includes each topic's keywords and help window and a more detailed project summary with a list of the images used in the project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Missing images are shown in red.

Use Topic ID sort order to include all topics!
Use the *Topic ID* sort order with this report if you want to ensure that all topics are covered by the report, including those that do not have TOC entries.

Long report: Also includes lists of the images used in each topic, lists of the links in each topic with their targets (including topic links, Internet links, file links and script links) and the first lines of the text with which the topic begins.

Missing images and dead links are shown in red.

Use Topic ID sort order to include all topics!
Use the *Topic ID* sort order with this report if you want to ensure that all topics are covered by the report, including those that do not have TOC entries.

Full report: Same as the Long Report but also includes an additional full list of images used in the project with a lists of the topics in which each image is used. In addition to this there is also a list of images in the project's graphics folders that are not used in the project (useful for tidying up your project folders).

This report also includes word and character counts of each individual topic and all the topics in the report. See further above on this page for more details on word counts.

Locating and removing unused images

Unused images are listed at the end of the report with controls for moving them to a backup folder for saving or deletion.

Use Topic ID sort order!
Always use the *Topic ID* sort order with this report to ensure that all topics are covered by the report, including those that do not have TOC entries.

Missing keywords: Displays all topics which do not contain any index keywords. This can be useful when you are building an index, as it shows you where you may have forgotten to enter keywords.

Use Topic ID sort order!
Always use the *Topic ID* sort order with this report to ensure that all

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

topics are covered by the report, including those that do not have TOC entries.

Files not in TOC: Displays all topic files that do not have TOC entries.

Caution: If you use TOC sort order with this option you will get an empty report!

See also:

Reports 1318 (dialog reference)

10.3 The Impict Screenshot Editor

Help+Manual comes with a fully-featured graphics editing program called Impict. This program is designed specifically for editing and enhancing screenshots and other graphics used in help and documentation projects. Since Impict comes with its own comprehensive help this topic only explains how to start the program and how to open graphics files for editing in Impict from the Help+Manual editor.

For full details on editing images with Impict see the program's own help.

Setting Impict as your default image editor

Several of the functions described below only open Impict if it is set as your default image editor. This is the default setting when Help+Manual is installed.

1. Select *Program Options* in the **View** tab and then select the *General* tab in the dialog displayed.
2. Check that `impict.exe` is selected in the *Default Image Editor:* field. If it isn't use the ... browse button to select this file in the Help+Manual program directory, which is normally `C:\Program Files\EC Software\HelpAndManual8`.

Alternatively you can also select any other graphics editing program. Then most of the functions described below will open this program instead of Impict.

How to start Impict

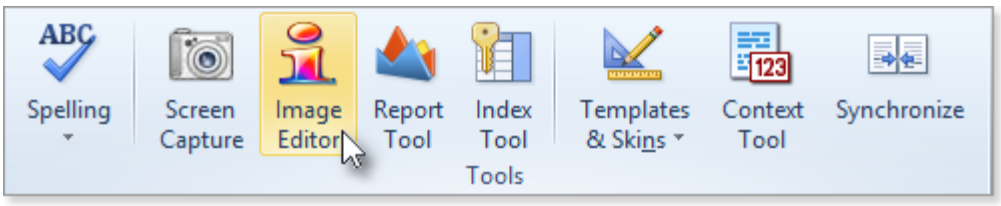
There are several different ways to start Impict:

- Select the *Image Editor* tool in **Project** > **Tools**.
- Select Impict in the Help+Manual program group in the Windows Start menu.
- Right-click on an image in the Help+Manual editor and select the option for editing the image in Impict.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to open an image in Impict from the editor

1. Click once on the image you want to edit in the Help+Manual editor to select it.



2. Select *Image Editor* in **Project** > **Tools** or right-click on the image and select the option for editing the image in Impict.

Note that these options will open the image in a different image editor if Impict is not defined as your default image editor (see above).

See also:

Using Graphics 479
Screen Capture 1207

10.4 The Print Manual Designer

The Print Manual Designer is a separate program used for editing the **`.mnl`** print manual template files that define the layout and appearance of your published PDF files and printed manuals.

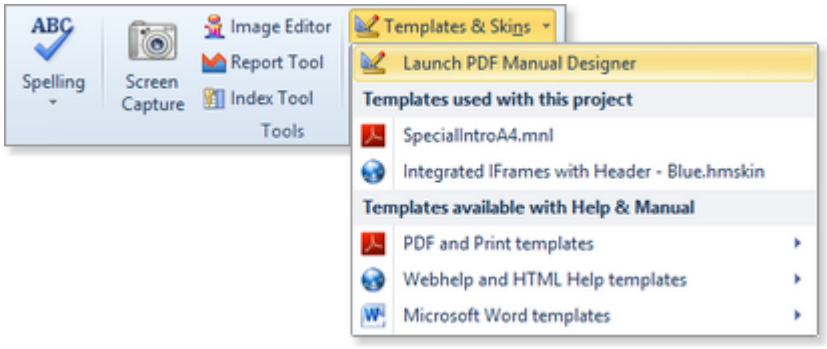
In addition to defining the layout of your PDF pages, you can also add additional pages and content not included in your project, including cover and back cover pages, an introduction, a formatted table of contents, title pages for individual chapters, headers and footers, a formatted index and multiple endnotes pages. You can also add your own custom pages and insert topics from your project and external Help+Manual XML files.

The Print Manual Designer has its own help so this topic only describes the basic procedures for opening templates for editing and selecting them in your projects. Print manual template files have the extension **`.mnl`**.

How to start the Print Manual Designer

- Select **Templates & Skins** > **Launch PDF Manual Designer** in **Project** > **Tools.**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



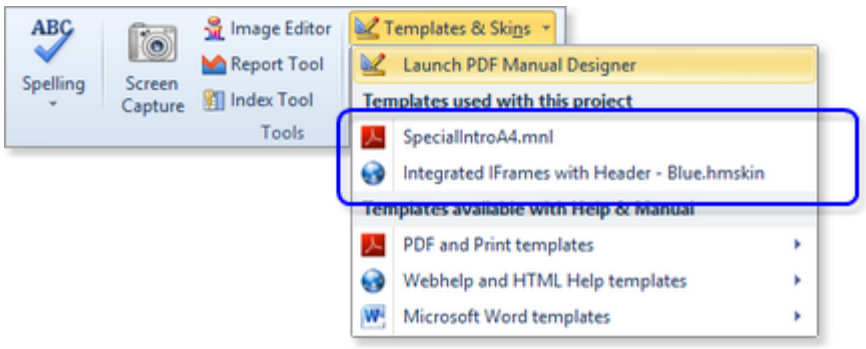
If a PDF template has already been used with the current project you can select it directly in the menu and load it into Manual Designer.

If you have not yet used a PDF template you should start with one of the standard templates included with Help+Manual. It is generally easier to edit an existing template, because all the necessary objects have already been added and you just need to modify them. The standard templates can be found in the `\Templates\pdf` folder in the Help+Manual program directory, which is normally `C:\Program Files\EC Software\HelpAndManual8.`

You will need to make a copy of any standard template you load from the Help+Manual program directory storage to be able to edit it. To do this, select *Save As...* in the **File** menu and save it in your project folder.

How to edit a print manual template associated with your project

If PDF templates have already been used with the current project they are listed in the Templates & Skins menu. You can select one of the templates directly in the menu and it will be opened with Manual Designer.



Note that you can use different templates for PDF and print manual output.

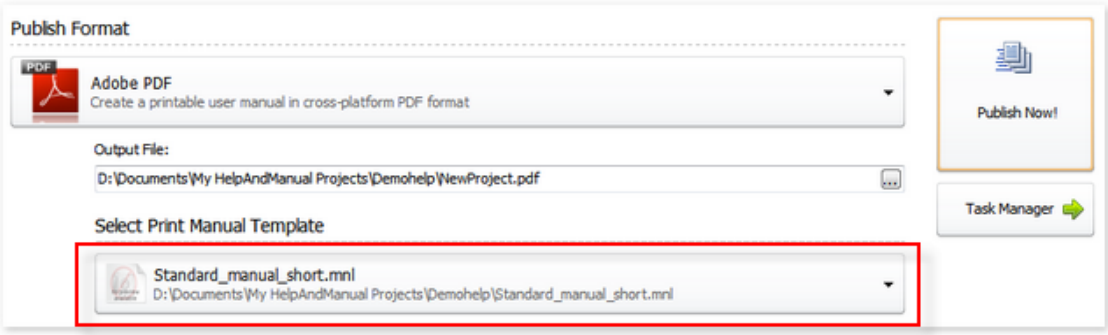
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

How to assign a print manual template to your project

You select the template to be used with your project in the Publish settings when you are publishing your project. Once you have made a selection there Help+Manual will remember the setting the next time you publish your project to PDF.

Selecting a template for Adobe PDF output:

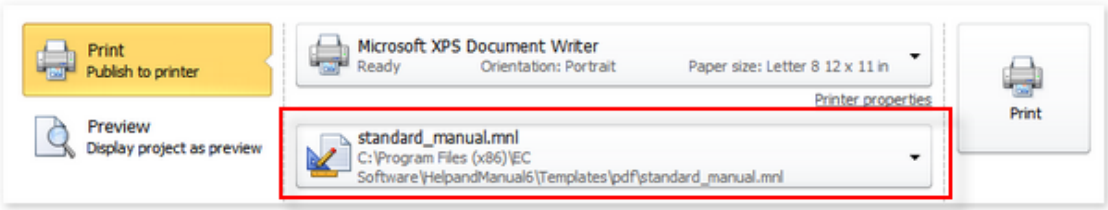
1. Select *Publish* in the File menu and then select PDF as your publishing format.



2. Select the PDF template you want to use by clicking on the drop-down area shown above.

Selecting a template for printed manuals:

1. Open your project, click on the File menu and select *Print Manual*.



2. Select the PDF template you want to use by clicking on the drop-down area shown above.

See also:

PDF and Printed Manuals 785
PDF and print manual templates 1019
Adobe PDF 1523
Printed manuals 1524

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

10.5 The Spell Checker

The spell checker included with Help+Manual supports both manual spell checking (check topics or the entire project in a single session) and "live" spell checking, which highlights incorrectly spelled words as you type.

See Spell checking 238 in the **Creating and Editing Topics** chapter for instructions on using both manual and live spell checking functions.

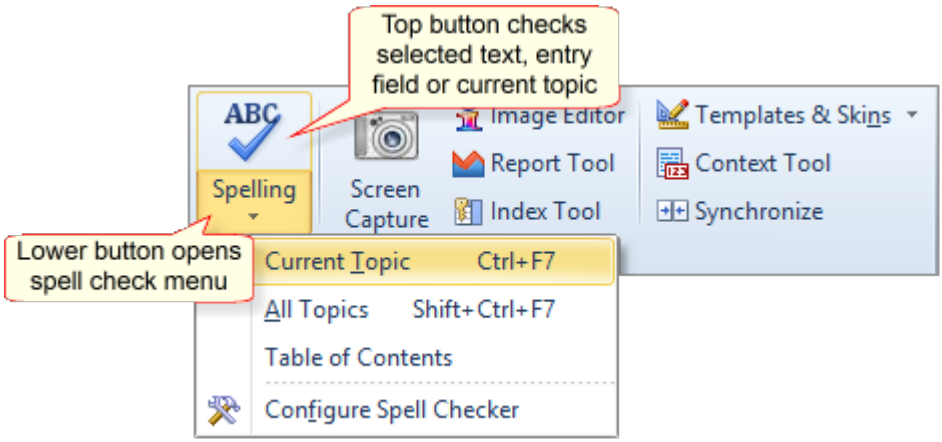
Open Office dictionaries

The spell checker uses Open Office dictionaries for spell checking and hyphenation. These dictionaries are free and are available for a very large number of languages.

> **Productivity Tip**
> Spell checking is supported almost everywhere in Help+Manual where you can enter text. Just right-click to display the context menu or click on the upper half of the *Spelling* tool in the *Project* tab to access.

The Spelling tool

The Spelling tool in the **Project** tab is available almost everywhere in Help+Manual where you can enter text, including the HTML editors for HTML templates and code objects, the XML editor, the TOC captions in text entry mode and all of the text entry fields in the Configuration section of your project.

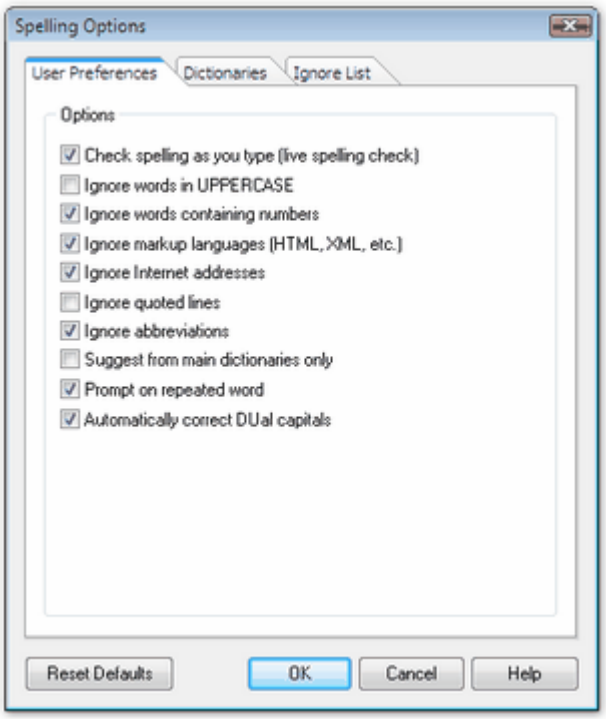


- Clicking on the top half of the Spelling tool checks selected text (if any is selected) ***OR*** the current topic or text entry field or window (if no text is selected).
- Clicking the bottom half of the Spelling tool displays the spell-check menu.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Spell Checker Options

Select **Tools** > **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker,** then configure your options in the *User Preferences* tab.



Most of the settings here are self-explanatory. Here are a couple of notes on special functions:

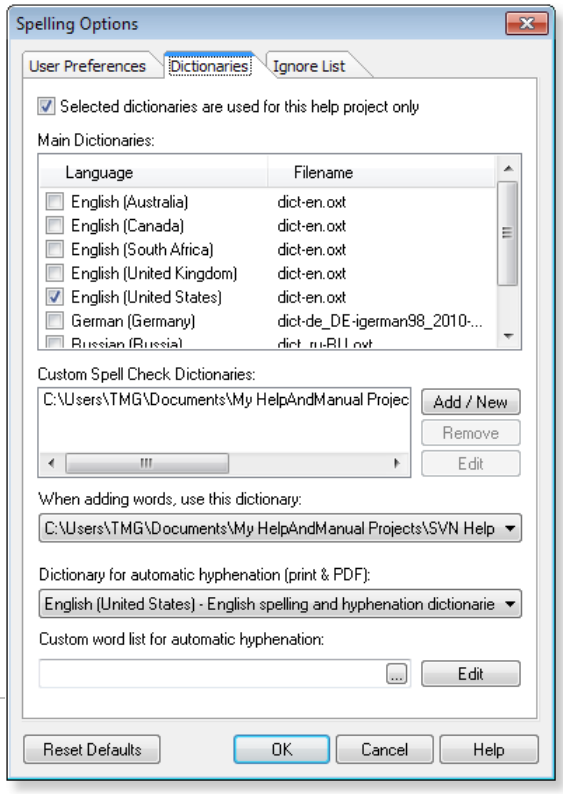
Live spelling:
Identifies incorrect words with squiggly red underlines while you are working. Right-click on words with these underlines to display a spell-check menu. Does not support repeated words and dual capitals (see below)

Main dictionary only:
When this is active suggested corrections will be taken from the main dictionary for the current language only. No suggestions will be taken from your own user dictionaries.

Prompt on repeated word, correct Dual capitals:
These functions are not active for live spell checking. They are only supported in the interactive spell check started from with the Spelling tool in the Ribbon.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Selecting the language and adding main dictionaries



Select **Tools** > **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker,** then select the dictionary for the language of your project in the *Dictionaries* tab.

To add dictionaries for more languages click on *Download dictionaries...* These dictionary files must be unpacked (if they are in a zip or other archive file) and saved in the `\dictionaries` folder in the Help+Manual program directory.

Note that the download page for the OpenOffice dictionaries is often unavailable. If you can't access it you may have to wait a while and try again.

Select the user dictionaries:

All user dictionaries listed in the Custom Dictionaries section will also be used for spell checks. You can store these dictionaries anywhere you want, also on network drives, and multiple users can access the same dictionary at the same time.

Select *When adding words, use this dictionary:* to choose the user dictionary you want to use to store new words.

Hyphenation dictionary is a separate selection:

Note that you need to select the dictionary to be used for automatic hyphenation in PDF and DOCX separately. Note also that there are no configuration options for hyphenation beyond the custom word list with which you can specify how specific words are to be hyphenated, and words that are not to be hyphenated. Beyond that all aspects of hyphenation are controlled by the Open Office hyphenation dictionaries used by Help+Manual.

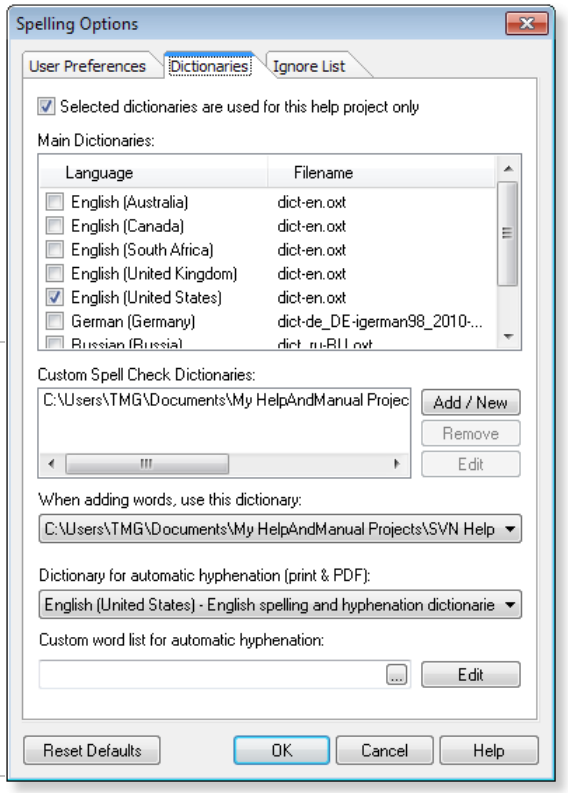
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Styles excluded from spell checking are also excluded from hyphenation

No hyphenation is performed on text formatted with styles that are excluded from spell checking. You can thus disable hyphenation for any text by formatting it with one of the styles you have excluded from spell checking. See *Disabling spell checking for specific styles* further below for details on this.

Hyphenation dictionaries and word lists

The OpenOffice spelling dictionaries also support automatic hyphenation, which is used in printed manuals, DOCX and PDF output. You need to select the dictionary you want to use in the Dictionaries tab (see screenshot on right).



Hyphenation word lists

You can create a list of words that you want to exclude from hyphenation or hyphenate in a special way. Click on the Edit button in the *Custom Word List* section at the bottom of the spell checker configuration dialog to display the editor. Beyond this, all aspects of hyphenation are controlled automatically by the Open Office hyphenation dictionaries.

Creating word lists in a text editor

You can also create your own word list with a text editor and load it with the ... browse button in the Custom Word List section:

- Just create a plain text file with one word on each line.
- Insert equals signs (=) in the positions where you want hyphens to be possible. For example **`re=dun=dant`** allows two possible hyphenations.
- Words without equal signs on the list will be excluded from hyphenation, i.e. they will never be hyphenated.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- The list is case-sensitive. You must include both capitalized and uncapitalized versions of your words if this is relevant for you.

Links are excluded from hyphenation

Internet and email links are automatically excluded from hyphenation.

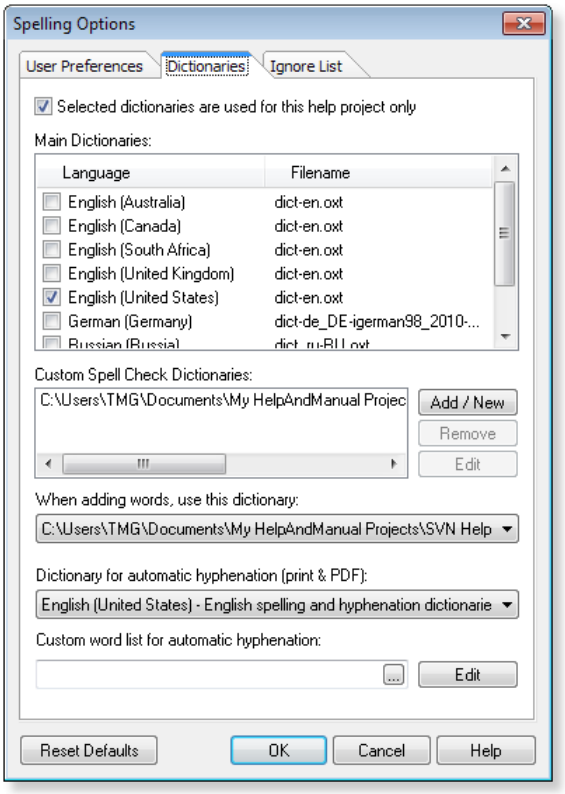
Styles excluded from spell checking are also excluded from hyphenation

No hyphenation is performed on text formatted with styles that are excluded from spell checking. You can thus disable hyphenation for any text by formatting it with one of the styles you have excluded from spell checking. See *Disabling spell checking for specific styles* further below in this topic for instructions.

Selecting and adding custom (user) dictionaries

The main dictionaries are not editable. However, you can create custom user dictionaries to store your own additional terms. These dictionaries can also store auto-correct word pairs and "excluded" words that you want to always identify as incorrect even if they are in the main dictionary.

See Using custom dictionaries 1228 and Creating and editing custom dictionaries 1226 for full details on this subject.



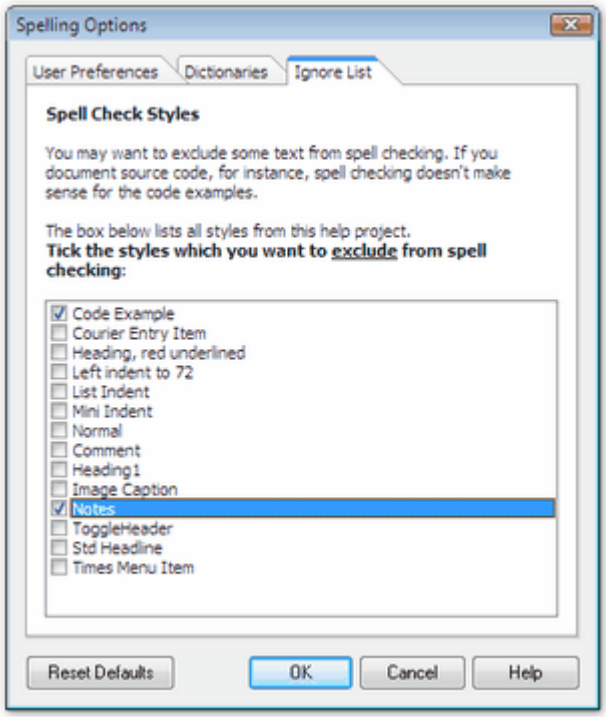
- The standard user dictionary is stored in your *My Documents* folder (called *Documents* in Windows Vista). To use this just select it in the *When adding words, use this dictionary* list at the bottom of the dialog.
- Click on *Add/New* to create a new user dictionary or to select an existing dictionary. You can store your dictionary anywhere you like.
- If you only want to use the selected dictionaries for the current project activate *Selected dictionaries are used for this help project only*. Otherwise your selections will be stored for all projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Disabling spell checking for specific styles

The settings in the **Ignore List** tab exclude text formatted with specific styles from both spell checking and hyphenation. This makes it possible to prevent spell checking for text where it would not make sense, for example in quoted text in other languages. You can also use this feature to prevent hyphenation for any text.

1. Select **Tools** > **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker** and click on the *Ignore List* tab.



2. Select the check boxes of all the styles you want to exclude from checking.

All text formatted with the selected styles will be ignored by the spell checker.

Styles excluded from spell checking are also excluded from hyphenation

Again, note that no hyphenation is performed on text formatted with styles that are excluded from spell checking. You can thus disable hyphenation for any text by formatting it with one of the styles you have excluded from spell checking.

See also:

Using custom user dictionaries 1228
Creating and editing custom user dictionaries 1226
Spell checking 238

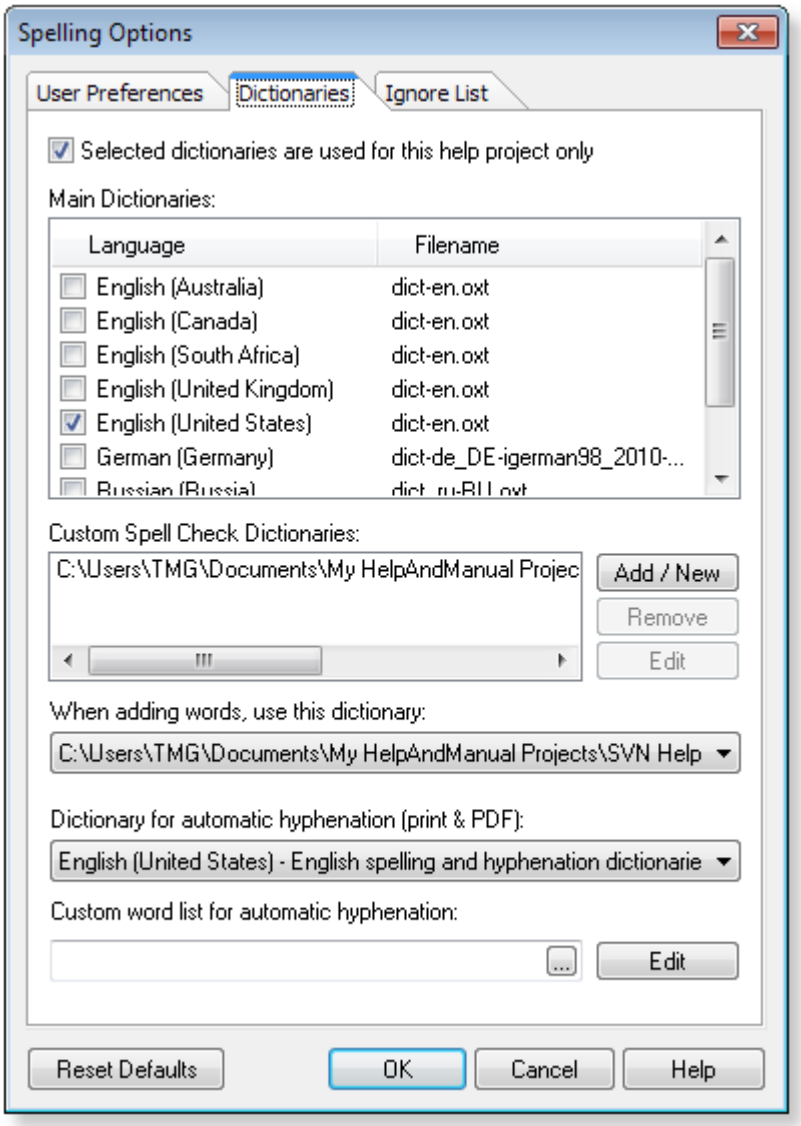
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

10.5.1 Creating and editing custom dictionaries

You can store your custom user dictionaries in any location, including network drives. Multiple users working on the same or different projects can use them simultaneously. In addition to storing your own terms, user dictionaries can also store auto-correct pairs for terms you always want to correct automatically during manual spell checking and "excluded" words that you always want to mark as incorrect, even if they may be in one of the main dictionaries.

Creating a custom user dictionary

1. Select **Tools** > **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker,** then select the *Dictionaries* tab.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Click *Add/New* and choose a name and storage location for the dictionary. Dictionaries can be stored anywhere you like, also on network drives. They can also be used simultaneously by other users working on the same project or different projects.

   You can also use the *Add* button to select existing user dictionaries. This adds them to the Custom Dictionaries list so that they are used by the spell checker.

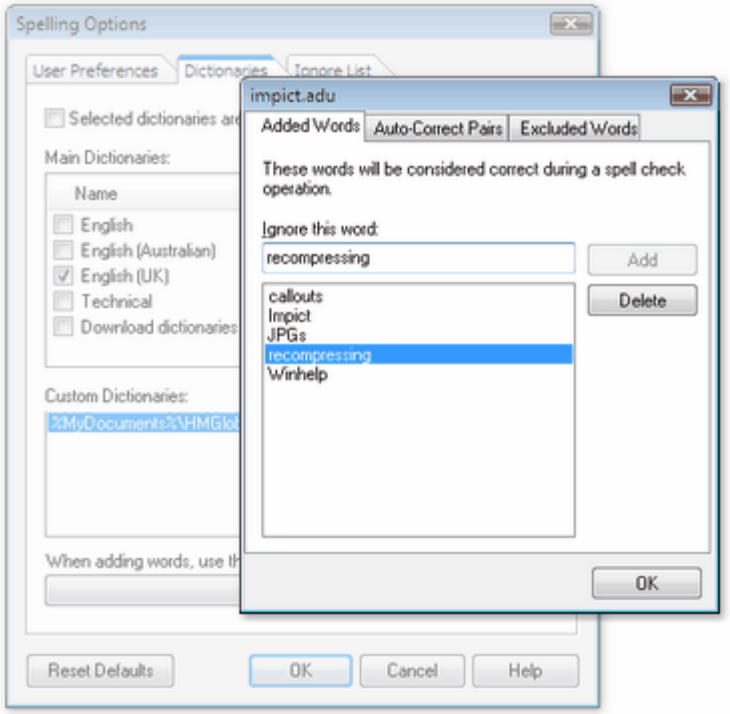
Using dictionaries for the current project only

Normally, your dictionary setup will be stored with your Help+Manual program settings and will be activated for all your projects. If you only want to use your dictionary settings for the current project select the option *Selected options are used for this help project only* in the Dictionaries tab.

How to edit custom user dictionaries

In addition to adding incorrect words to your user dictionaries while spell checking, you can also edit the dictionaries to remove words added accidentally or to add new words.

1. Select **Tools** > **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker,** then select the *Dictionaries* tab and click the dictionary you want to edit in the Custom Dictionaries box.



2. Enter a word and click on *Add* to add, select a word and click on *Delete* to remove.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Auto-Corrections and Excluded Words

The Auto-Corrections and Excluded Words tabs in the edit user dictionary dialog (see above) have the following functions:

Auto-Corrections:
The first word in each pair in this list will be automatically replaced by the second word during manual spell checks. (This function is not supported in live spell checking.) You cannot enter words that are already included in the Excluded Words list.

Excluded Words:
All the words in this list are identified as incorrect by the spell checker, even if they are contained in the main dictionary. You cannot enter words that are already included in the Auto-Correct Pairs list.

See Spell checking 238 for instructions on using these functions while spell checking.

See also:

Using custom dictionaries 1228
Spell checking 238

10.5.2 Using custom dictionaries

You can define and use as many custom user dictionaries as you want. In addition to the standard function of storing words not contained in your main dictionaries these dictionaries also have two more very useful functions:

Auto-Correct for frequent errors and abbreviations:

The **Auto-Correct** function automatically replaces common typing errors and abbreviations with the correct words or entire phrases during manual spell checking (not during live spell-checking or typing). See Spell checking 238 in the **Creating and Editing Topics** chapter for details on using this function. This function is not available in live spell check mode!

Excluded Words for exception handling:

The **Excluded Words** function allows you to enter words that will always be marked as incorrect, even if they would normally be considered correct. This allows you to enter exceptions for words contained in the standard main dictionaries that you want to handle differently.

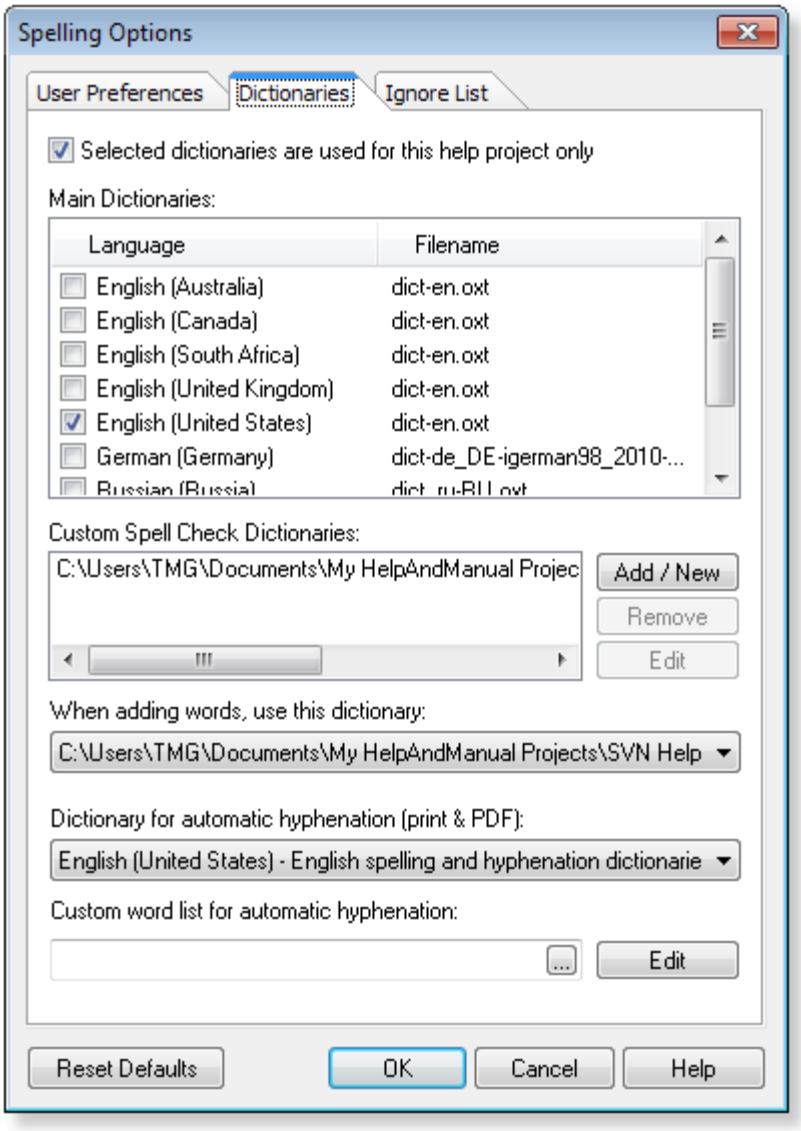
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Selecting the user dictionary for the Add Word function

The spell checker uses the words from all user dictionaries listed in the Custom Dictionaries section in the Dictionaries tab. However, new words can only be added to one selected user dictionary. This dictionary is used for the *Add* function in both live and manual spell checking.

This dictionary is also used when you select *AutoCorrect* in the manual spell checker. For more details see Spell checking 238 in the **Creating and Editing Topics** chapter.

1. Select **Tools** > **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker,** then select the *Dictionaries* tab.



2. Select the custom dictionary you want to use in the *Custom Dictionaries:* box. Click *Add/New* if you want to add a new dictionary or select a dictionary stored in a differ-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ent location. (Custom dictionaries can be stored anywhere and can be shared by multiple users working simultaneously.)

3. Select the dictionary you want to use from the list in the *Custom Dictionary:* field.

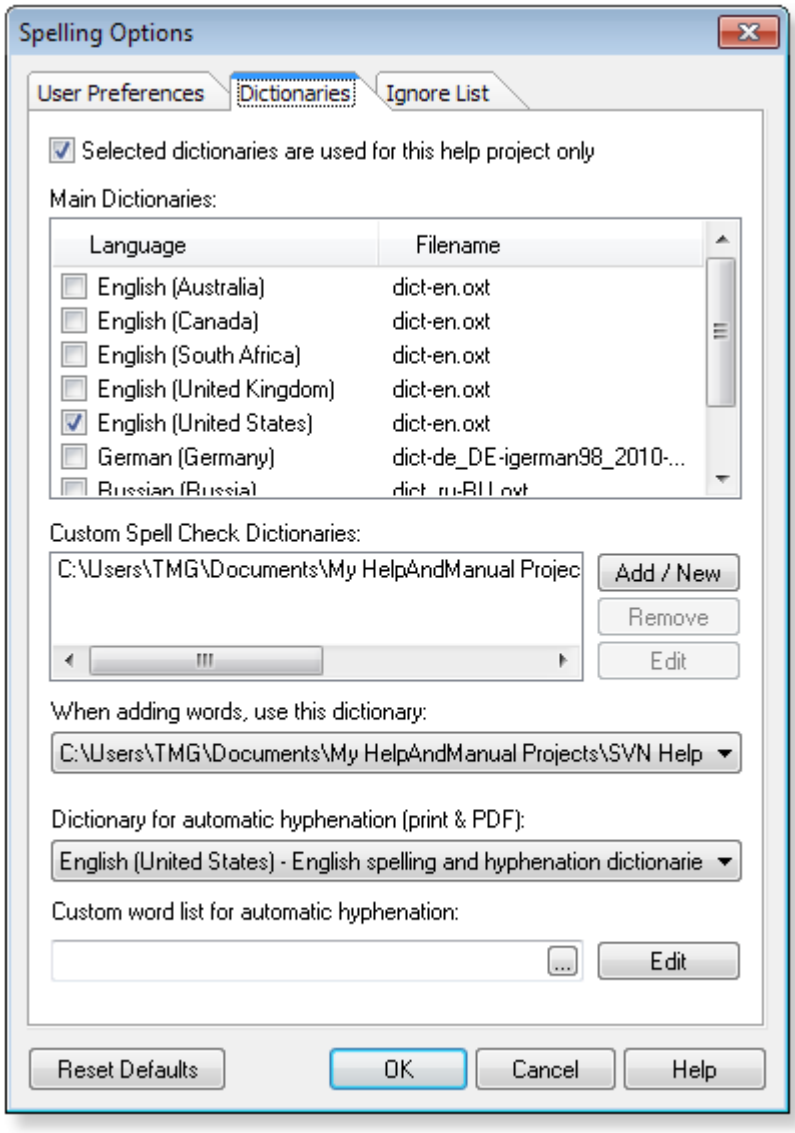
Activating and deactivating custom user dictionaries

Although words are always added to the same custom user dictionary (see above) you can define and use as many custom dictionaries as you like. New words will be added to the standard custom dictionary, but the spell checker will use all the activated dictionaries for checking spelling and for the Auto-Correct 1220 and Excluded Words functions.

Activating user dictionaries:

1. Select **Tools** > **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker** and click on the *Dictionaries* tab.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



2. Click on the *Add/New* button to add dictionaries to the Custom Dictionaries list. You can then create a new dictionary or select an existing dictionary.

   All the listed dictionaries will be used for spell checking. These dictionaries can be stored in any location, also on network drives, and they can be used simultaneously by multiple users.

Deactivating user dictionaries:

To deactivate a user dictionary just select it in the list and click on *Remove*. This will not delete the dictionary, it will just remove it from the dictionaries list.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using dictionaries for the current project only

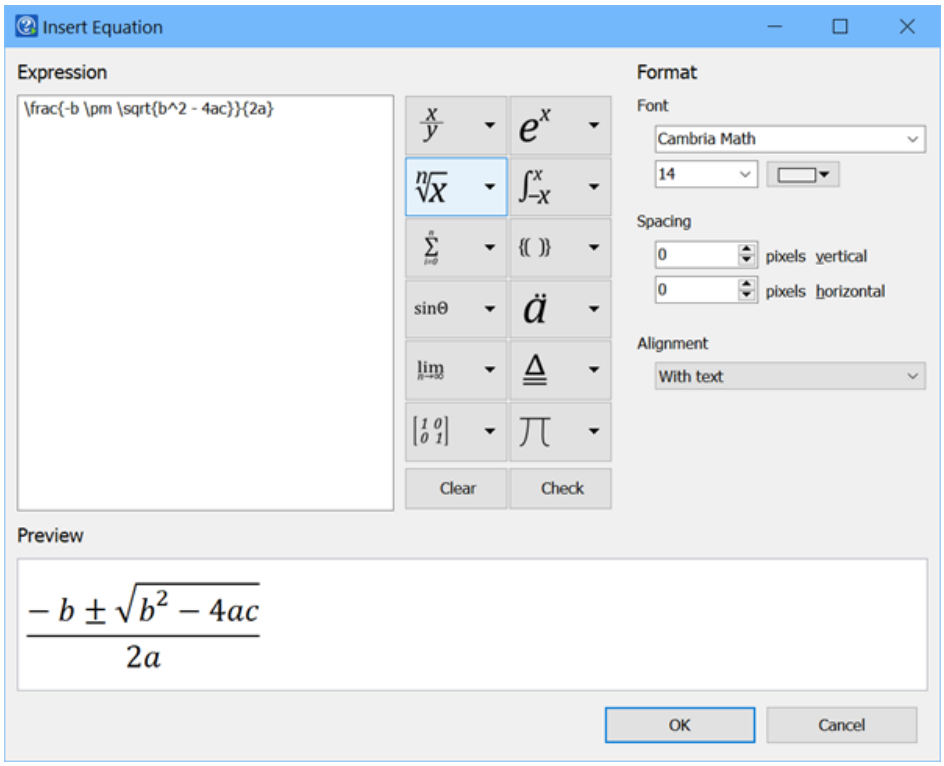
Normally your dictionary setup will be stored with your Help+Manual program settings and will be activated for all your projects. If you only want to use your dictionary settings for the current project select the option *Selected options are used for this help project only* in the Dictionaries tab.

See also:

Creating and editing custom user dictionaries 1226
Spell checking 238

10.6 The Formula Editor

The Help+Manual formual editor tool is available in **Write** > **Insert Object**. It inserts simple or complex formulas directly into your topic pages.



How formulas are inserted and exported

Formulas are inserted in your topics in encapsulated code in the XML source of the topic. However, when your project is exported this is rendered by the compiler and converted to a bitmap graphic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using the tool

Entering expressions

Select the expression you want to enter using the buttons in the middle of the tool. This inserts the LaTeX code in the Expression box and immediately displays the result in the Preview box. You can then edit the code manually, or add additional expressions. If you enter an invalid or unknown expression the preview display will switch to an envelope graphic.

Formatting

Font:	Choose the math font for the expression. The default is Cambria Math and this will usually work well.
Font size:	This adjusts the size of the formula. It is not really the size of the characters, as all the characters are scaled vectors.
Spacing:	Adds padding around the formula

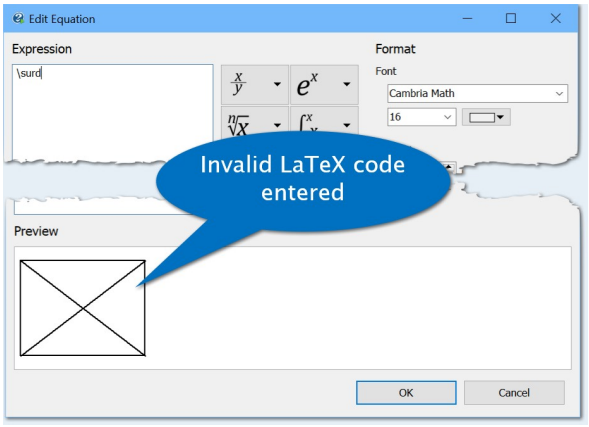
LaTeX-based formulas

The editor uses code based on the standard LaTeX formula syntax, which is displayed and edited in the **Expression** box. This means that you can use any standard guide to LaTeX math formatting to learn how to manipulate the code displayed.

Restrictions on custom LaTeX code

Note that not all LaTeX math codes are supported, although you will find that almost all basic symbols and expression types are available. If you insert invalid or unsupported code this will be indicated by a standard envelope image for the entire formula:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



10.7 The Project Converter

This tool converts the now-obsolete project files created with Help+Manual 3 (**.hm3**) and 4 (**.hmx**) to the current Help+Manual XML format. It also has a command line interface so that you can convert multiple files with batch files. See Project converter syntax 137 in the Command Line Options chapter for details.

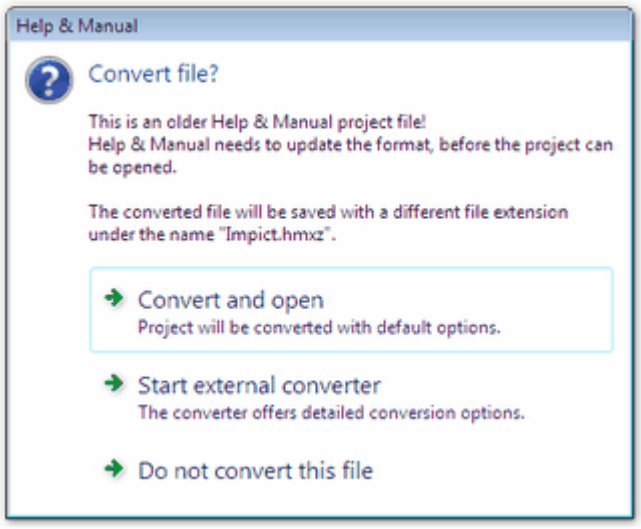
You can convert old projects directly by opening them. Just click on the File menu, select **Open**, choose the project type you want to open and follow the instructions displayed. This will also give you the option of opening the external converter program.

You can also open the Project Converter manually by selecting it in the Help+Manual program group in the windows Start menu. This gives you more control over the conversion options.

How to convert projects

1. Select the File menu and click on **Open**.
2. Select the project or help file type you want to convert, then navigate to the file and select it.
3. The following dialog is displayed:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Convert and open:
Automatically converts the project to the compressed, single-file **.hmxz** format, storing it in the same directory as the original file. The converted project is then loaded for editing automatically. If you choose this option no additional options are displayed.

Start external converter:
Opens the external Project Converter program providing additional options, particularly for Help+Manual 3 (see below).

You can also start the Project Converter directly by selecting it in the Help+Manual program group in the Windows Start menu. See also Project converter syntax 137 for information on running the Converter from batch files to convert multiple projects.

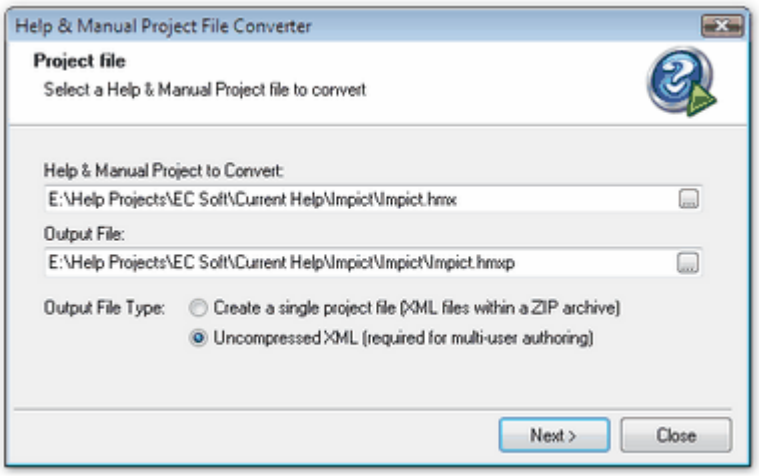
Using the external Project Converter

When you use the external converter you can choose the project file format (compressed single-file format or uncompressed XML) and configure the Help+Manual 3 conversion settings. See also Project converter syntax 137 for information on running the Converter from batch files to convert multiple projects.

Project file format:

First you must choose whether you want to export to the compressed **.hmxz** single-file format (default) or uncompressed XML (a directory of individual XML project files).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



- Uncompressed XML is only available in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. This format is required for multi-user editing.
- If you choose uncompressed XML you must choose an empty directory for the output files. This is necessary because this format consists of several folders with individual files for all topics and other project components.

Help+Manual 3 conversion settings

If you are converting a Help+Manual 3 project the following additional options will be displayed in the next screen of the conversion wizard:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Convert tables to auto-size:

This converts the fixed-size Version 3 tables to dynamic tables that will automatically resize to fit the help viewer window.

Note that this option makes the widths of all columns in your tables variable – they will adjust automatically on the basis of their content.

Don't activate this option if your project contains tables with explicitly defined column widths as it may cause formatting problems! (For example if you use tables as a formatting tool.)

Convert only last column to auto-size:

This has the same effect as the previous option but it only makes the last (rightmost) column in the table variable. This is the most flexible table conversion option.

Concatenate similar tables:

In Help+Manual 3 it was often necessary to split tables to control formatting properly. In PDF and printed manuals Help+Manual now splits tables automatically at page boundaries and can also automatically generate headers on each page so manual table splitting is no longer necessary.

This option can identify similar tables in your topics and automatically join them together to create a single table that is more easy to handle.

Tolerance for column width differences:

Defines how closely matched the columns of tables have to be to be combined with the Concatenate function. Two tables will only be combined if all the widths of all their columns are within this tolerance.

Increase this value if your tables contain manually-adjusted column widths with slight variances.

Try to recognize styles and format converted text with styles:

If this is selected the Converter will attempt to identify styles applied to the text in your **`.hm3`** project. It will create new style definitions for these styles and apply them to paragraphs formatted with these styles in the old project.

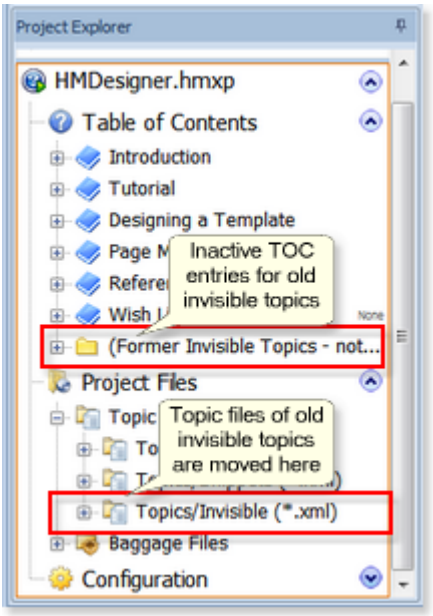
Please note that this process cannot be perfect because style names in Help+Manual 3 projects did not have a very close association with text and paragraphs. All the formatting of your text will be converted correctly but you may find that some paragraphs are associated with the **`Normal`** style instead of a newly-defined style matching the old formatting.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Invisible topics from obsolete Help+Manual project formats (HM3 and HM4)

If your old HMX or HM3 project contains "invisible topics" (topics without TOC entries) they will be moved to a sub-folder called *Topics\Invisible* in the Topic Files section in the Project Explorer.

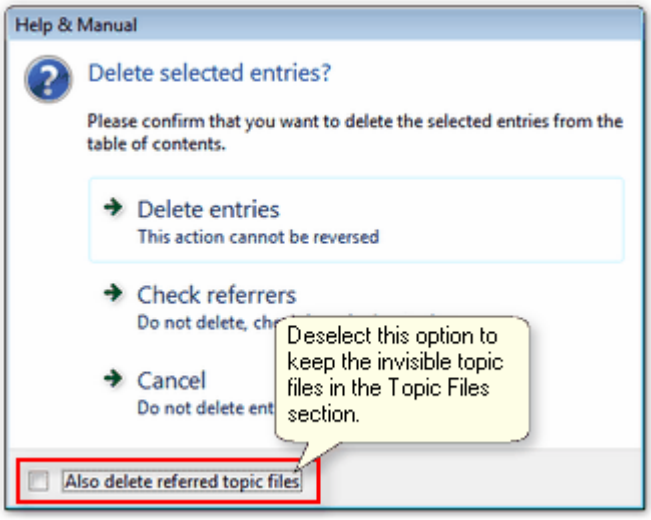
Automatic Converter:



When you use the automatic converter a chapter called *(Former Invisible Topics)* will also be created at the bottom of the converted project's Table of Contents (TOC) section.

These TOC entries are linked to the topic files of the former invisible topics but they will still not be included in your published output because their include options are automatically set to "None".

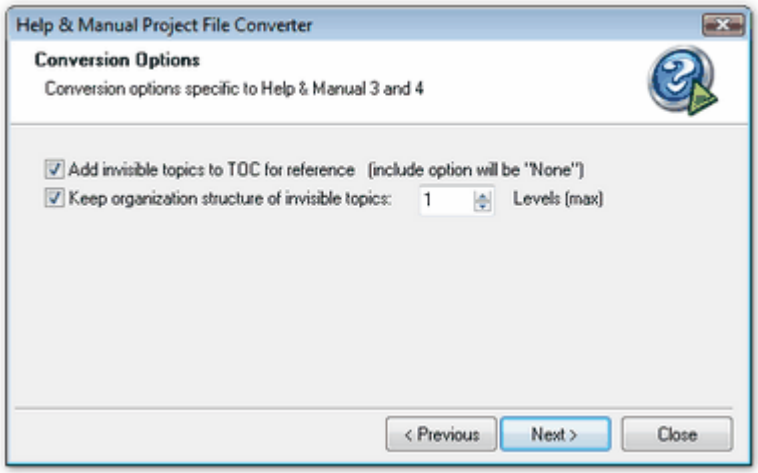
You can delete the (Former Invisible Topics) chapter by selecting it and pressing DELETE. Before confirming, deselect the option *Also delete referred topic files* to keep the actual topic files.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

External Converter:

When you use the external converter program you can decide what you want to do with your old invisible topics:



Add invisible topics to TOC creates the (Former Invisible Topics) chapter described above. We recommend deselecting this option.

Keep organization structure creates sub-folders in the Topic Files section to match your folder structure in your old project. You can create a maximum of 10 levels but the converter will not create more levels than the original project contained.

Help+Manual 5 and 6 projects do not require conversion

The Help+Manual 5 and 6 project formats have the same file extensions as the current version and are directly compatible with Help+Manual 9. They do not require conversion and can be opened directly.

Avoid editing current projects with earlier versions

You can edit Help+Manual 9 projects with versions 5 and 6 but it is not recommended. Any features not supported in the earlier versions will be stripped out when you save there.

Editing teams should all use the same version

Similarly, if you are working on projects in a team, it is essential that all team members should use the same version of Help+Manual. All members should also have the same update installed, so that their builds are really all identical.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

About converting Help+Manual 4 projects

Help+Manual 4 **.hmx** projects are converted 1:1 without any restrictions or limitations. All version 4 features are supported in the current version of Help+Manual – you will not see any formatting or functional changes.

About converting Help+Manual 3 projects

Help+Manual 3 did not have dynamic styles and its table formatting options were quite limited. In addition to this the code of the HTML templates used for HTML-based output formats has changed considerably and if you have made any additions of your own you will have to add them again manually after converting.

Styles:

If you select Convert Styles in the options (see below 1234) the Project Converter will try to identify the styles used in your HM3 project and replace them with dynamic styles. This is only possible with text explicitly formatted with styles in the HM3 project – the formatting of manually-formatted text will be converted but it will not be associated with a defined style.

If the style of a paragraph cannot be identified uniquely it will be assigned the *Normal* style. Its text formatting will converted correctly but it will be applied manually. The result will be a paragraph with the *Normal* style containing manually-formatted text.

Tables:

Tables in Help+Manual 3 were fixed-width only and they were often split into multiple tables to handle page break problems in PDF and printed manuals. The Project Converter has options for dealing with both of these issues (see below 1234) but because of the differences between the two table formats you may need to make some manual corrections to your tables after importing.

Customized HTML templates:

The HTML templates 1021 have changed considerably since version 3, so it is not possible to transfer custom code from your **.hm3** projects when they are imported – the risk of mangling the resulting code would be too great.

If you have entered custom code in your templates you will need to re-enter it manually in the templates of your project after conversion.

See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Creating Projects 124
Importing Data 148
Text Formatting and Styles 273
Dynamic Styles 1482
Working with Tables 518

10.8 The Help Context Tool

The Help Context Tool helps to manage the help context numbers 368 in your project and it can also be used to generate topic files automatically from map files containing a list of topic IDs and context numbers (this will normally be supplied by your programmers).

You can assign, delete, import and export help context numbers in batch mode for your entire project.

> **Key Information**
> Note that you cannot import help context numbers to anchors, even though you can export help context map files with anchor information. Also, you can only import one help context number per topic with the context tool. Multiple numbers must be added manually.

Supported context number range

Help+Manual stores context numbers as an unsigned 4-byte integer, which means you can enter values between 1 and 4294967295. This is nearly 4.3 billion, so it should provide you with just about enough numbers for most help files if they are not too large.

Assigning context numbers to all topics without them

This function only assigns context numbers to topics that do not yet have them, existing context numbers are protected. If you want to renumber all the topics in your project first use the Delete function (see below) to clear all the numbers in your entire project.

1. Select your project in the Project Explorer, then select *Context Tool* in **Project** > **Tools**.
2. Click on *Create Numbers*. A dialog will be displayed informing you of the starting number an the increments that will be used between numbers.
3. Click on *Create Numbers* to assign the numbers. Numbers will be added to all topics in your project that do not yet have context numbers.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Changing the increment:

This function uses the increment set in your project configuration for assigning context numbers to new topics. You can change the setting in the Project Explorer in Configuration > Common Properties > Miscellaneous.

Editing and adding context numbers for single topics

1. Select your project and open the Context Tool (see above).
2. Select *List all Topics* to make sure that all topics are listed, including those that do not have context numbers yet.
3. Select a topic from the list, click on the topic you want to edit and select *Edit Number*.
4. You can then add a new context number or edit the existing number.

You can't add multiple context numbers with this method. To add multiple numbers to a topic you must access the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window.

Adding new numbers and topics:

The *Add New Number* function is for creating new topics with new numbers. Enter a new topic ID followed by a new number. The new topic ID and context number will be added to the list and a new topic file will be created when you click on OK.

An error will be displayed if you enter the ID of an existing topic.

Deleting help context numbers

1. Open your project and select **Tools** > **Help Context Tool**.
2. Select the context numbers you want to delete in the list displayed. Use *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click* to select multiple numbers.
3. Click on *Delete Selected* to delete the context numbers from the selected topics.

   Note that if selected topics have multiple context numbers all the numbers will be deleted, even though only the first number is shown for the topic in the list.

Importing context numbers and auto-generating topics from a map file

Software development tools can generate "map" files with lists of context IDs and matching help context numbers. Programmers often provide these lists to inform the help au-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

thors of the topic IDs and context numbers needed for context-sensitive help calls.

In addition to importing missing context numbers to existing topics this function can also auto-generate missing topics from a map file. Since context-sensitive help often consists of hundreds of very short topics this capability can save you many hours of boring and frustrating work. It creates the basic framework for your context help in seconds.

Importing context numbers:

1. Obtain the map file from the programmers and make sure that it only contains the topics you want to use. These files have a standard syntax – you can create an example by using the Help Context Tool's export function (see below).
2. Open your project (you might want to make a backup first) and select **Tools** > **Help Context Tool**.
3. Select *Import Map File* and select the map file you want to import. A dialog will be displayed asking you whether you want to merge or replace the existing numbers

   Replace:
   This deletes ALL context numbers in the current project and replaces them with the numbers from the map file.

   Merge:
   This only replaces the context numbers for topics with matching IDs. All other topics are left unchanged.

Auto-generating topics:

When you import a map file any topic IDs in the file that don't exist in your project will be listed in red in the Context Tool editing box. When you click on OK the tool will ask you if you want to create topic files for these IDs.

If you say yes the files will be created in the Topic Files section, without TOC entries. If you want to create TOC entries for the new topics you must do this manually. 179

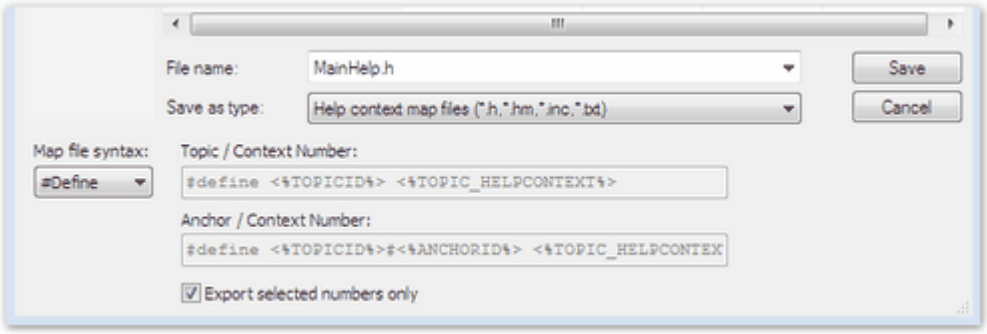
Exporting IDs and context numbers to a map file

You can also use the Help Context Tool to export the topic IDs and help context numbers from your project to a map file that the application programmers can use for writing their context help calls (and also to obtain an example of the map file syntax).

1. Open your project (you might want to make a backup first) and select the **Context Tool** in the **Tools** > **Help Context Tool** section.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. If you only want to export some of the help context numbers select them in the list with *Ctrl+Click* and *Shift+Click*. Then select *Export Map File:*



3. Select *Export selected numbers only* if you don't want to export the entire list, then choose the Map File Syntax:
   - **#Define** is the default and selects the standard #define syntax used in most map files.
   - **INI Style** selects the standard INI file format.
   - **Custom** allows you to define your syntax yourself. To do this you can combine the three map file variables displayed (see below) with any text or additional characters of your own.
4. Enter a filename and click on Save to export the map file.

Variable syntax for custom map file output

You can use the following three variables in your map files:

<%TOPICID%>	Inserts the Topic ID of the current topic. Unlike <%HREF_CURRENT_PAGE%> this variable inserts the Topic ID exactly as it is displayed in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window, including upper and lower case characters.
<%ANCHORID%>	Inserts the anchor ID of an anchor that has a help context number.
<%TOPIC_HELPCONTEXT%>	Inserts the help context number of the current topic or anchor. Just inserting the variable on its own generates a decimal number. You can also export the context numbers in hexadecimal by adding a hex prefix:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

&<%TOPIC_HELPCONTEXT%>	Exports to hex in the format &000000FF
0x<%TOPIC_HELPCONTEXT%>	Exports to hex in the format 0x000000FF

See also:

Topic IDs and context numbers 368
IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600

10.9 The Project Synchronization Tool

The Project Synchronization Tool is used mainly to update translated versions of your projects. This tool compares the latest original version of your project with the last translated version and updates the translated version so that the translator can translate the new and changed material. It inserts new topics, moves moved topics, deletes deleted topics and identifies topics with changes. All new and changed topics are highlighted and the complete new version of the topic content is inserted above the old translated version.

The Project Synchronization Tool is only available in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual.

Project Synchronization is not needed if you are using translation memory!

The Project Synchronization Tool is only needed if you are not using a translation memory tool like SDL Trados. See the translation memory 1187 topic for more detailed instructions.

If you are using translation memory, updating your translations is automatic and there is no need to synchronize your projects. Instead, you just give the translator the latest version of your project in the uncompressed HMXP format. The translation memory tool automatically identifies all the text that has not changed and replaces it with the original translations from its database for your projects. The translator then only needs to work on the new and changed texts. In many cases, much of this will also be translated semi-automatically, because it will contain identical or similar phrases and now familiar terminology.

10.9.1 About Project Synchronization

Project synchronization helps you produce and maintain translated versions of your projects. Producing the initial translation is easy – you just make a "sibling copy" of your original project with Project Synch and give it to the translator, who translates all the text in the project

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

into a different language, using either Help+Manual or an external tool like SDL Trados that can edit the XML project files directly (Professional and Floating license versions of H+M only).

The real job of Project Synch begins when you need to update your documentation. When the new version of the original project is ready you use Project Synch to compare the new version of the original with the last translated version of the project delivered by the translator.

The old translated version is then updated: New versions of modified topics are inserted for translation, completely new topics are inserted, deleted topics are removed, stylesheets and project properties are updated and so on.

You then send the updated version to the translator, who translates the changes and new content and returns it to you.

What project synchronization does and does not do:

Project synchronization compares differences in project structure, not in topic content. This makes it possible to compare two projects written in completely different languages – the original version and the translated version – and to update the structural changes in the translated version.

Project Synch is not a "track changes" or "compare by content" function.

It does not show you where changed text is in individual topics or what specific changes each topic contains. It only tracks which topics have changed and updates the project structure to the latest version.

It just shows you that topics contain changes. These changes can be topic content, keywords, settings in the topic's tab or changes in the topic caption in the TOC.

Project Synch is not suitable for monitoring ongoing changes in two projects.

Project Synch assumes that nothing in the translated version is ever changed independently. It only checks for changes in the original version and updates the structure of the translation version to reflect those changes.

If independent structural changes (new topics, moved topics etc.) are made in the translated version Project Synch will eliminate them!

It is extremely important to understand this. The translator is not permitted to make any structural changes to the project! They must just produce a 1:1 translation of the project structure as you deliver it to them.

Because of this you shouldn't try to use Project Synch to compare and synchronize ongoing changes made in two different versions of the same project in the same language. If

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

you do, all the changes in the target version (equivalent to the translation version) will be eliminated when you synchronize!

How changes are synchronized:

The original project and the translated project are linked as a "translation pair" which we refer to as "siblings". When you compare the two Project Synch can then identify all items in the original project that have changed since a specified date. This is achieved with internal ID codes and timestamps that are assigned to the entire project, topics and other elements of your project.

- **New topics:** These are inserted in the translated version in the correct positions so that they can be translated. They are highlighted in the TOC.
- **Changed topics:** These are highlighted in the translated version. The complete new version of the content of the changed topic is inserted in the translated version. This can either replace the old translated text or be inserted above the old translated text.
- **Deleted topics:** These are removed from the TOC of the translated version.
- **Moved topics:** If their content has not changed they are simply moved to their new positions in the translated project. They are not highlighted in the TOC unless their content is also changed.
- **Topics with changed titles or keywords:** Project Synch treats these as changed topics and also highlights them in the TOC.

See also:

Identifying changes 1255
Interim updates 1256
Problems and troubleshooting 1258

10.9.2 Synchronization Steps

The topics in this chapter describe the steps required to synchronize an updated version of the original project with the old translation. This process creates a new version for the translator in which the following changes have been made:

- Changed topics are marked as changed and the new text from the original topic is inserted above the old translated version so that the translator can compare and make the changes.
- Moved topics are moved
- Deleted topics are removed
- New topics are inserted and marked as new so that the translator can translate them

10.9.2.1 Step 1: Create a translation sibling

The first step of using Project Synch is creating a copy of your original project for the translator to work on. If you want, you can do this in Windows Explorer or any other file manager.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

However, if you do this you must then link the two projects as a "language pair" manually later. It is easier to use Project Synch to create a "sibling", then the two projects are "paired" automatically.

Project format:

If the project is going to be translated using an XML-based tool like SDL Trados 1187, you must save the project and generate the sibling in uncompressed XML format. This format is only supported by the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual.

The compressed single-file **.hmxz** format can only be translated using Help+Manual as the translation editor. Project Synch is also not available in the Basic version of Help+Manual. The tool is only included with the Professional and Floating license versions.

Synchronizing existing translations:

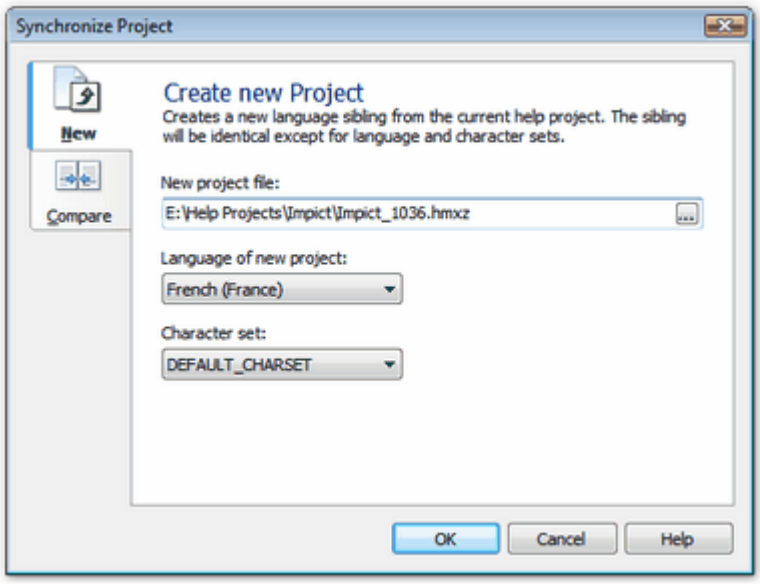
You can also synchronize projects that have already been translated without using the Project Synch function. However, there are a few points you need to bear in mind when doing this. Please see the Problems and Troubleshooting 1258 topic for details.

1: Save the project and create the new sibling

Before you perform this step you should be as certain as possible that your original project is finished and will not be changed again while the translator is working. You can synchronize more changes 1256 later if necessary but it will make the process more complicated.

1. Save your original project. It doesn't hurt to use this as an opportunity create a backup in a safe place as well! From now on this project will be referred to as the Master.
2. Select **Tools** > **Synchronize...** and select the **New** tab in the dialog displayed.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



3. Select the language and character set of your target project (see International languages setup 143 for details) and choose a file name and the location where you want to save it. By default Help+Manual will suggest a project name with the language code of the new language added to the old project name – you can change this to something more descriptive if you like. The select OK to save the new sibling.

   The sibling will automatically be saved in the format of the current project: **.hmxz** for single-file projects, .hmxp for uncompressed XML projects (H+M Pro only).

2: Send the sibling to the translator

Now all you need to do is pack the new project folder and all its contents in a ZIP file and send it to the translator for translation. Before doing so you should check that you have included everything the translator will need.

Graphics files:
Make sure that all the graphics files used in your project are included. It is best to put all the graphics files in one or more folders inside the project folder.

Snippets files:
If you are using linked snippets 265 from other locations you may need to include copies of the snippet files for the translator. It is best to put all the snippet files in one or more folders inside the project folder.

Project Search Path:
Update the Project Search Path 1405 if necessary, adding entries at the top of the list for any folders you have added to the project folder for the snippets and graphics files. Then everything will display correctly when the translator opens the project from the folder – re-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

lative paths are used in the Project Search Path, so if the additional folders are inside the folder containing the project file the paths will be "portable".

It's also a good idea to publish the translation copy once before sending it off to make sure that it's working correctly – then you won't have to waste time answering questions from the translator.

Make sure that the translator reads and understands the translation guidelines 1250 before starting work!

10.9.2.2 Step 2: Translate the original project copy

In this step the translator just works through his or her copy of the project in Help+Manual or their translation tool and translates it into the target language. There is nothing special about this, but the translator must observe the guidelines listed below.

Once the translation is finished it can be published and distributed with the translated version of your application. This is the end of this step of the process. The real work comes when you need to synchronize and the next version of the help and translate the changes.

Guidelines for the translator

The translator's job is only to translate. Making any structural changes to the project is strictly forbidden for the translator! For example, if the translator adds, moves or deletes topics these changes will be deleted the next time the language pair is synchronized!

Configuration: Check and translate all the texts used in **Title & Copyright**, **Text Variables** (see below), **HTML Page Templates** (the translator may need information from you here), **Help Windows** (window titles but not window names) and any text fields used in the relevant publishing options sections (**HTML Help**, **PDF** etc).

Topic Options: Never under any circumstances make any changes to anything in the Topic Options tab except the **Keywords**. Everything else in this tab is off limits for the translator!

The TOC: Only translate the captions. No other changes here are permitted. In particular, never make any changes to the structure of the TOC. Do not move or delete topics.

When working in Help+Manual always translate the TOC captions before translating the topic header above the topic text. The header is normally linked to the caption and will only need to be translated if it is different. Translating the header first would break this link.

Topic Headers: Only translate topic headers if they do not get translated automatically when you translate the TOC captions. (This is only the case if

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the header and the caption are different.)

Topic Text: Translate everything here that is not protected (shaded text, cannot be edited without unprotecting). Be careful not to delete any hyperlinks and only translate the captions of hyperlinks, not their targets, which are the untranslatable topic IDs and anchor IDs.

Text Variables: If the text contains variables go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Text Variables** and translate their definitions. Do not translate the variable names!

Hyperlinks: Only translate the captions of hyperlinks. Do not make any changes to the links themselves or their targets.

Keywords / Index: Only translate the keywords in the **Keywords:** editing box in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. Use the **Index Tool** in the **Project** tab to help you find the other topics where the same keywords are used.

Do not translate the **A-Keywords**. These are never visible to the user and should remain in the original language because they are used in special links that must reference the original keyword names!

10.9.2.3 Step 3: Update the original project

This step must be performed on the original project file used to create the translation sibling in Step 1. Only this file will have the correct Project GUID 1245 that can be used for synchronization in the next step.

That is all you need to know about this step. Simply work on your project normally, making any necessary changes, deletions and additions. There are no restrictions on the changes you can make.

Mark the changes with comments while you are working!

To make the translator's work easier use the comments and bookmarks 253 features to identify the text that has been changed. You can write comments to explain where the changes are, particularly if they are only in the – otherwise the translator may waste a lot of time trying to find changes in the text that are not there!

10.9.2.4 Step 4: Synchronize the new version

This step is where the real work of the Project Synch function comes in. Now you want to synchronize the new version of the original help with the translation of the original version. The result will be an updated translation version in which all the topics containing changes are marked, with the new versions of the updated topic contents inserted for translation.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

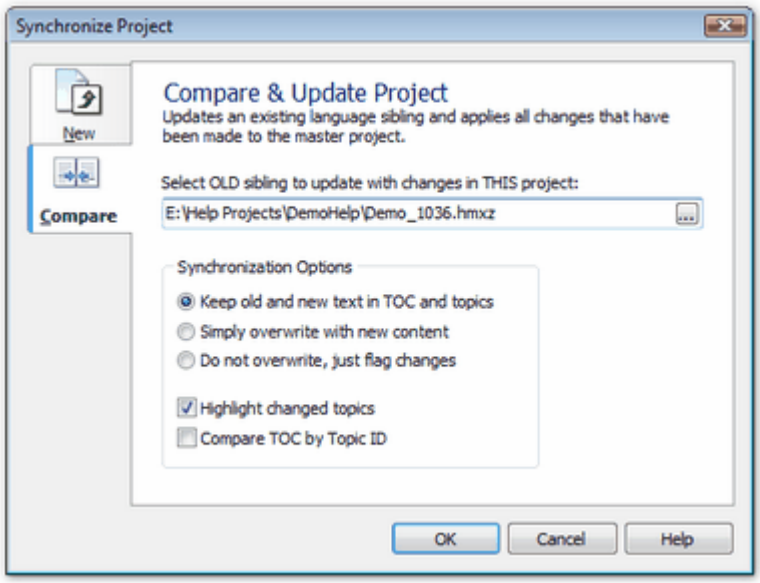
For this step you need the updated version of the original project edited in Step 3 and the original translation delivered by the translator in Step 2.

Key Information
The Synch procedure has reversed since Help+Manual 4! Now you open the Master (original) project and synchronize with the old translation.

Synchronize the old translation with the updated original

The synchronization is performed by opening the latest version of the original project then selecting the old translated version to be updated.

1. Open the updated original project in Help+Manual.
2. Select **Tools** > **Synchronize** and select the *Compare* tab. Then select the old translated project in the *Select OLD sibling...* field:



3. Select your synchronization options. Recommended settings:
   - Keep old and new text in TOC and topics
   - Highlight changed topics

   DON'T select *Compare TOC by Topic ID* when you are comparing a sibling! This is a special setting for comparing existing translations 1257 that are not siblings.
4. Click on OK to update the translated version.

This will update the old translated project with the changes in the new version of the original. After the conversion you can check the updated translation to make sure that

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

everything has gone OK and then send it to the translator so that they can translate the changes and the new material.

Before the translator starts work make sure that he or she has studied the instructions for identifying changes 1254 and the original translation guidelines 1250.

Synchronizing modular projects

When you are synchronizing modular projects consisting of multiple separate Help+Manual projects in a master module, you need to perform the actual synchronization on each project separately. So you would Synchronize the master project with its master sibling in the second language, and the child projects with their corresponding siblings in the second language.

Child projects / modules with different names

In Help+Manual prior to version 8 your child modules needed to have the same names in all languages. Otherwise their names would be changed to the names of the same modules in the master language when you synchronized. Starting in version 8 you can now have child modules with different names in the individual languages. For example, a child module called **CHILDA_ENG.hmxp** in the English master copy can now have an equivalent **CHILDA_DE.hmxp** module in the German sibling and the reference to this will not be reset in the master when you synchronize.

Project synchronization settings

Keep old and new text in TOC and topics:	Selecting this will insert the complete new version of topics containing changes above the old translated version. The old and new versions will be separated by a header saying -----**OLD TEXT**-----. The same procedure is used for the TOC captions, the headers and the keywords in the tab. This is the best mode for normal synchronization.
Simply overwrite with new content:	The content of changed topics, headers, topic captions etc. will be completely overwritten with the new versions in the original language. The translator must then use a copy of the original version of the translation for comparison.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Do not overwrite, just flag changes: This option only highlights changed topics in the TOC and does overwrite the translated version or insert a new version.

The translator must then use a copy of the new version of the original to obtain the new versions of the topics and their keywords etc.

Note that even when this option is selected the following changes will still be updated:

- Context numbers
- Topic IDs
- Help window settings
- TOC structure (new, moved and deleted topics)

Highlight changed topics: Selecting this identifies changed topics with colored highlights ("Needs Review") in the TOC.

This should always be on. If you turn it off it will be very difficult to identify where changes are located.

Compare TOC by Topic ID: **WARNING: Do not use this option for synchronizing siblings!**

This is a special setting for synchronizing two versions of a project that were not created by making a sibling copy of the original. In normal synch mode the Project Synch tool compares topics on the basis of their hidden internal ID, which never changes – this makes it possible to compare topics even when their visible IDs have been edited.

If you independently create two projects that have the same structure and Topic IDs they will look identical but their invisible internal IDs will not match. The first time you synch such projects you need to use this option to compare by topic ID. After this the internal IDs will by synchronized and the projects will then be siblings.

10.9.2.5 Step 5: Translate the changes

Synchronizing the new version of the original with the old translated version updates the translated version with the changes that need to be made. You can then give the updated translated version to the translator for review and translation of the changes.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The translator then needs to go through the project, locate the changes and translate them. The actual translation work here is pretty much the same as the original translation, and the same guidelines should be followed. The main problem is identifying where the changes are.

See also:

Guidelines for translators 1250
Identifying changes in the synch project 1255

10.9.3 Identifying changes

Remember that Project Synch doesn't compare content, it only identifies changed, new and deleted topics and updates the structure of the translation project to match the new version of the original project.

If possible, you should thus always document and explain your changes with comments 253 while you are working on the new version of the original project.

This is particularly important if you only make changes in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window, because then the translator may waste a lot of time looking for changes in the text that are not there. It is also very helpful for the translator if you systematically tag text changes with comments as well, however.

How to identify changes in the synched project

New topics:	New topics are inserted in the translation project in the correct position in the TOC. If you have selected highlighting in the synchronization options, every new topic in the TOC will be highlighted with the *Needs Review* status, which will be light green unless you have changed it. In addition to this, the new topic will not be in the same language as the translated version, of course.
Deleted topics:	Deleted topics are simply removed from the project. They are no longer there.
Changed topics:	Changed topics are highlighted with the *Needs Review* status in the TOC. The new version of the topic in the original language is inserted above the old translated version unless you have turned this off in the synch settings. Remember that changes can be in the topic header and the Topic Options as well as in the topic content!
Moved topics:	Moved topics are simply moved to their new position in the TOC. They are not highlighted as changed un-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

less they contain other changes in their text, header or Topic Options settings.

Topic captions in the TOC: If topic captions have changed the new version of the caption will be inserted and the old version will be enclosed between <OLD> and </OLD> tags, like this:

Getting Started with Widget Confabulator <OLD>Introduction</OLD>

In this example the author has edited the topic caption to make it longer. You can see the old translated version between the OLD tags – the original caption was just *Introduction*.

When only the topic caption is changed no new text is inserted in the topic body or header.

Keywords: When a topic is flagged as changed you should always also check the Keywords in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window, as this can also be the cause for the change flag.

If you have selected *Keep old and new text* in the synchronization options the old and new keywords are separated by an --OLD KEYWORDS-- divider, with the new keywords above.

Topic IDs and other : It is important to understand that changes in the Topic Options can also cause the topic to be flagged as changed, even if nothing has actually changed in the topic text. So if you can't find any changes in the text the change is probably in the Topic Options somewhere, or possibly also in the topic header.

See also:

Guidelines for translators 1250

10.9.4 Interim updates

It happens: You thought your project was finished but after the translator has started work on the new translation you discover that you need to make some more changes and/or additions to the original project. Can the translator synchronize these changes into his/her project, even though the actual translation is not yet finished?

This is possible, provided your new changes are saved **after** the last changes made by the translator. So if you need to make changes after the project has been sent out for translation you need to coordinate with the translator(s) before making the changes.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Synchronizing interim updates

1. Inform the translator that further changes need to be made. Ask them to **finish** all their work on the current version before proceeding. Then they should send you the finished project.
2. Once you have the finished project from the translator that is the new "old" version. You can now make your changes in the original version.
3. Once you have made your changes, perform the project synchronization 1251 step on the translated version of the project again. This will create a new working version for the translator that you can then send them so that they can complete the work.

Always select the "*Keep old and new text*" option in the synchronization options! This ensures that the translator can also reference any work they may have done on the affected topics before you made the new changes.

See also:

Project synchronization settings 1251
Identifying changes 1255

10.9.5 Synching existing projects

You may already have versions of your project in different languages. The question is, can you synchronize these projects? The answer is yes as long as the structure and topic IDs are identical – if they are then Project Synch has a special function that will turn the two projects into siblings.

About matching project siblings:

Projects are synchronized using the hidden internal numerical IDs of your topics and the topic captions in the Table of Contents (TOC). Each topic and each topic caption has a unique internal numerical ID that is assigned when the topic is created and it is normally never changed – not even if you change the Topic ID 1601. It is part of the topic forever, until it is deleted. These IDs are not editable and not visible to the user.

Matching project siblings are projects with identical internal numerical IDs for all topics and all TOC entries. Only matching project pairs can be synchronized directly with the normal Project Synch settings.

In the case of a translated version this is only the case if you created the translated version by making a copy of the original project and then translated its text. If you built the translated version from scratch the internal numerical IDs may not match and you will have a problem. You can correct this with the *Compare by Topic ID* option.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Synchronizing existing projects that are not matching siblings

If the internal IDs of your projects do not match you need to use the Compare by Topic ID option the first time you compare. Project Synch will then synchronize the internal numerical IDs of the two projects. After this you can synchronize the projects normally.

1. Make absolutely sure that the structure and topic IDs of the two versions of your project match. Then save both projects in the same format (single-file compressed or uncompressed XML) and open the original version.
2. Select *Synchronize* in **Project** > **Tools** and click on the *Compare* tab.
3. Choose the translated project in the *Select OLD sibling...* field, then activate the *Compare TOC by Topic ID* option. You will be warned that this is only for special purposes.
4. Set your other options and synchronize the two projects.

You only need to do this once. After this the internal numerical IDs are synchronized and the two projects are real siblings that can be synchronized normally.

See also:

Problems and troubleshooting 1258

10.9.6 Problems and troubleshooting

If you work within its capabilities, remembering that it cannot be used to highlight changes in topic text, Project Synch will work very reliably. However, you may still encounter some problems in certain situations, particularly if you don't follow the instructions.

Always create backups before synchronizing

Since project synch automatically modifies your translated version of the project you should always create backups before synchronizing. This is simply good security policy, and it is particularly important if you are synchronizing existing translations that were not created with the help of project synch (see below). Then you can always resort to the backup if anything goes wrong.

Comparisons with changes in both projects

Structural changes made in the translated version will be deleted!

Please always remember that this function is only for updating translated versions to reflect changes made in the original project. It is assumed that the translator does not make any structural changes to the project. If the translator makes structural changes like adding new topics, moving or deleting topics etc. these changes will be deleted when you synchronize the translated project with the master!

Again: The translator is not allowed to make any structural changes to the project or to alter anything in the project configuration settings or (except translation of the keywords).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Translating the content is fine, but structural changes made by the translator will probably be deleted during synchronization and may also cause problems!

Comparisons with existing translations

Can you compare an existing translation with the original master project?

You can do this even if the language pair was not created with the Project Synch tool, provided that the structure and Topic IDs of the two project versions match precisely. If this is the case you can use the Compare by Topic ID option to turn the two projects into real siblings that can be synchronized normally.

For full details see Synching existing projects 1257.

See also:

Synching existing projects 1257
Translation guidelines 1250

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Reference

Extensive cross-references and links to the Procedures sections. Quickly find what you are looking for!

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

11 Reference

11.1 Program Options

This dialog is available in both the File menu and the View tab. It contains the settings for configuring how Help+Manual itself works. These settings are all saved with the program, as opposed to the settings in Project Explorer > Project Configuration 1400 which are all saved with individual projects.

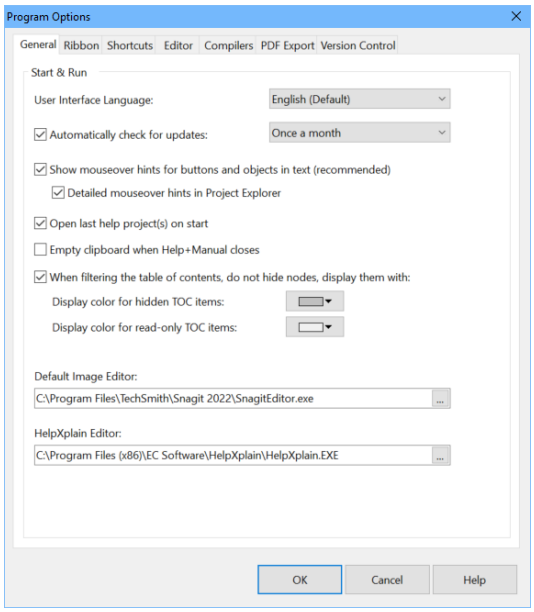
It is a good idea to check through these settings before you start working with Help+Manual. You may be surprised at all the things you can adjust and configure!

See also:

Project Configuration Settings 1400
Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59

11.1.1 Program Options - General

These options control how Help+Manual starts up, automatic backups, automatic update checking and some other general features.



User interface language: Currently either German or English are available. Automatic sets the language to your Windows language (if it is German or English), otherwise you can set the language manually.

Automatically check for updates: Checks for the availability of a more recent version of Help+Manual. New versions are published regularly, both to provide new and improved functions and to correct issues reported by users.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that this only works if you are connected to the Internet. Also, if you are behind a firewall you may need to configure your firewall settings give the Help+Manual program `helpman.exe` permission to access the Internet.

What does checking "now and then" mean in this option? Here's what the programmer has to say about it:

> *It means that it checks for updates not every time you start it, but more frequently than once a month. It will check more often in the beginning and less often if it gets frustrated because it hasn't successfully detected an update for a while. That could be once a week or so. But it never checks for updates on Sundays and occasionally does on weekdays, except if the day is a holiday in Austria. It only checks for updates when it is idle and there are no other urgent tasks to process and it stops checking when it finds that you are on lunch break (it figures you will not read the message while you are away).*

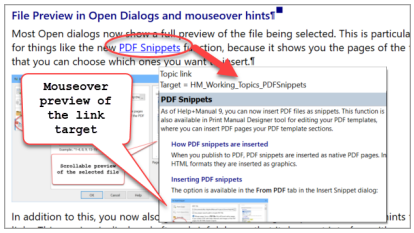
Note: The above is not entirely serious...

Show mouseover hints for buttons and objects in text:

Recommended!

When this is activated little tooltip popups are displayed when you position the mouse cursor over toolbar buttons and objects in the editor. These popups contain a lot of useful information for your project. They are like an extra status bar for links, graphics etc.

New feature in Help+Manual 9:
Topic links now show a preview of the target topic when you hover over a topic link for more than a second or so.



Open last help projects on start:

Automatically loads the last project(s) you had open when you start Help+Manual. If you activate this Help+Manual will also return to the last topic you were editing and re-open any topics that were open in tabs when you closed the program.

See Workspaces and Preferences 45 if you want to save sets of projects that you want to be able to load with a single command.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Empty Clipboard when Help+Manual closes:	Automatically clears the Windows Clipboard when you exit the program.
When filtering table of contents do not hide nodes, display them with:	Setting for the TOC filter option in **Project** > **Manage Topics** > **Explore** > **Filter.** This allows you to filter the TOC display in the Project Explorer to hide or highlight topics on the basis of their "Include in Builds" settings. When you activate this option topics filtered out by build are displayed in a different color instead of being hidden.
Default image editor:	By default Help+Manual starts the integrated Impict graphics editing program when you click on graphic in the Help+Manual editor and then select the Image Editor tool in the Project tab. This setting allows you to change this to a different graphics editing program.
HelpXplain editor:	Location of the full version of EC Software HelpXplain, if it is installed. Help+Manual will use this to compile HelpXplain presentations 561 inserted in your project, if it is installed. Otherwise the simple HelpXplain screencasts you can create directly in Help+Manual will be compiled with the integrated HX compiler.

See also:

Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59
The View Tab 1398
Devices with Hi-Res Displays 44

11.1.2 Program Options - Ribbon

You can configure the Ribbon toolba. If you wish, you can completely rearrange all the tools in all the Ribbon tabs. However, be warned that if you do this referring to the help will become difficult, because the documentation always refers to the standard layout.

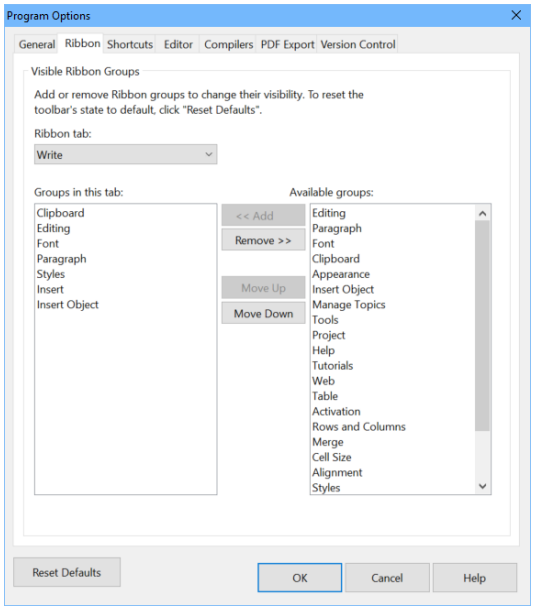
View and Insert tabs for your own use

You can use the **View** tab as your own personal tab. We have intentionally left this tab almost empty and all the standard functions can be removed because they are also available elsewhere. The Quick Access Toolbar can be customized directly and the Program Options are also available in the File menu.

In addition to this, you can also activate an additional **Insert** tab, that is normally empty and thus disabled by default. To do this select **Insert** in the Ribbon Tab: field and then

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

move groups to it from the list on the right. For example, you could move the **Insert** and **Insert Object** groups that are normally in the Write tab there.



Ribbon tab: Selects the Ribbon tab you want to customize.

Groups in this tab: The function groups included in the selected tab. Select and use *Remove>>*, *Move Up* and *Move Down* to edit.

Available groups: Shows all the available function groups. To add a group to the current tab select it and then click on *<<Add*.

Reset defaults: Returns all the Ribbon settings to the default configuration.

See also:

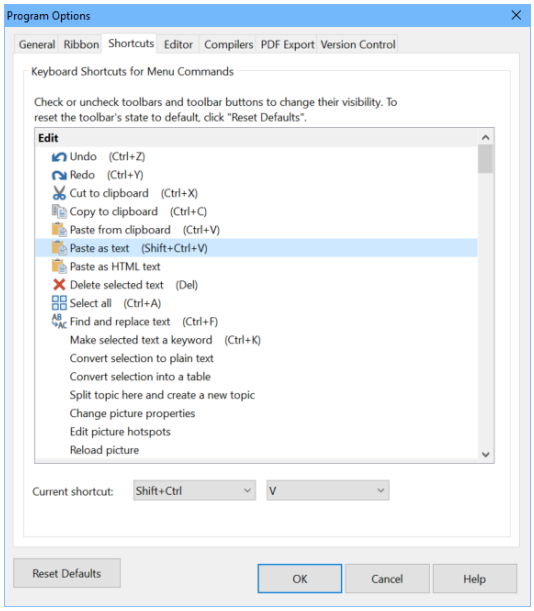
Project Configuration Settings 1400
Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59

11.1.3 Program Options - Shortcuts

You can use these options to assign keyboard shortcuts to most program functions. You can also change the standard keyboard shortcuts that are already assigned if you want, although this is generally not recommended.

Just click on the option you want to assign a new or different shortcut to, then select the shortcut in the *Current Shortcut:* fields.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Current shortcut: These two fields select the letter (right) and the control key (left). Select the letter key first for options that do not yet have a shortcut assigned.

Reset Defaults: Resets all the shortcuts to the default settings that Help+Manual has when it is freshly installed.

See also:

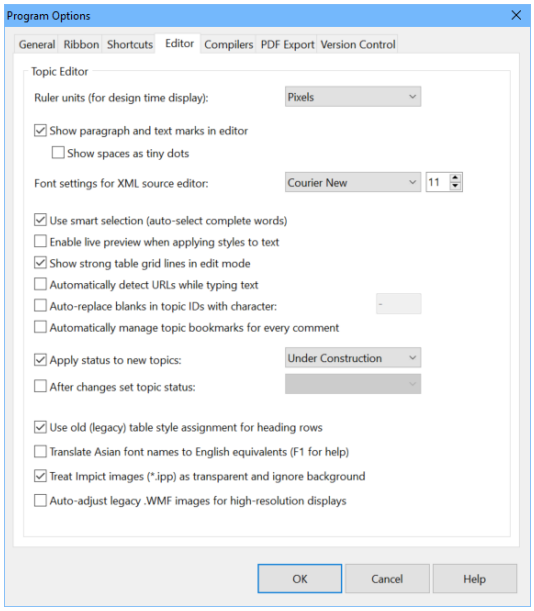
Project Configuration Settings 1400
Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59

11.1.4 Program Options - Editor

Productivity Tip
You can access the Editor settings quickly by right-clicking in the ruler above the editor window. This also provides quick access to the paragraph settings dialog.

These options adjust the appearance and behavior of the Help+Manual editor.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Ruler units:	You can select pixels, inches, centimeters or points. Pixels are recommended for maximum accuracy – Help+Manual handles all sizes internally in pixels and all other units must be converted.
Display a vertical ruler:	Display a vertical ruler to the left of the editor as well as a horizontal ruler.
Show paragraph and text marks in editor: **Show spaces:**	Makes tabs, paragraph end marks and spaces visible in the editor. This can be useful for identifying formatting problems. Can also be switched on and off with ¶ in **Write** > **Paragraph** .
Disable zoom and scale text only:	Turns off the global zoom feature in the Help+Manual editor so that only text is scaled. All other elements (graphics, tables etc) are then no longer scaled.
Font settings for XML and HTML editors:	Allows you to select a different font for the XML source code editor and the HTML code editors used for HTML templates, HTML code objects etc. Only fixed-space console fonts like Courier New or Lucida Console will look good in these editors.
Smart selection:	When you select text Help+Manual tries to automatically select at whole word boundaries to make selectin easier and more accurate. In some languages like Japanese this can cause problems, because they do not have the same kind of white space word boundaries as Western European languages. This option lets you turn this off when working in languages like this.
Live preview for styles:	When this is activated you will get a live preview of what the currently selected text will look like when formatted with styles when you scroll through styles in the style selector tool in the ribbon toolbar. You can turn this feature off if you find that it makes style selection slower.
Show strong table grid lines in edit mode:	Uses darker and slightly thicker grid lines to show the borders of tables. Can be useful to make tables more visible on some monitors.
Automatically detect URLs while typing text:	When this setting is active Internet URLs and email addresses will automatically be turned into Internet links 422 as you type.
Auto-replace blanks in topic IDs with character:	Topic IDs containing blanks and some special characters would be invalid. By default, Help+Manual replaces the blanks

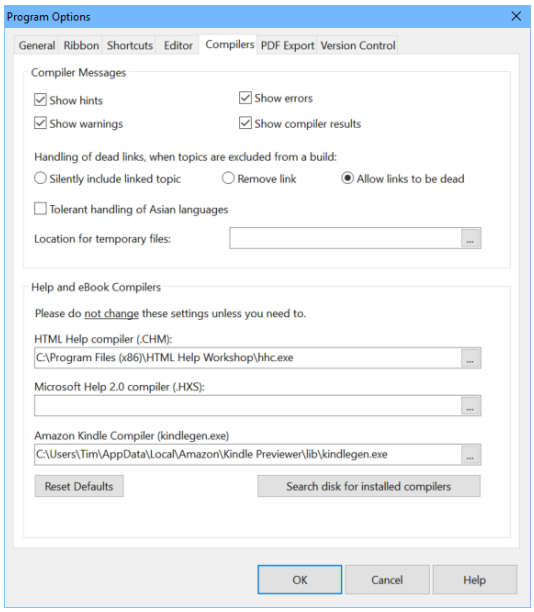
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

Project Configuration Settings 1400
Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59

11.1.5 Program Options - Compilers

These options configure the paths to the Microsoft compilers used to generate HTML Help and Visual Studio Help 2008 (MS Help 2.0/HXS). Visual Studio Help 2010 does not require a compiler. You can also configure which compiler messages you wish to see in the report generated when you publish your projects. The paths to these compilers will usually be found automatically during installation.



Compiler messages: It is a good idea to leave all these messages activated as they make it much easier to identify problems when you are publishing.

Handling of dead links: These settings define how Help+Manual deals with dead hyperlinks created when you exclude topics from your build without also excluding links to them in other topics.

Silently include linked topics:
Excluded topics will be exported anyway if they are referenced in links in other topics in your project.Topics exported in this way do not have TOC entries – they are exported "invisibly" and will only be displayed when the user clicks on the links referencing them.

Remove link:
Removes the hyperlink from the text, leaving only plain text. This

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

is really only recommended for testing purposes because the dead links may not make sense in your text if they are inactive.

Allow links to be dead:
This option does nothing. The links are not changed and the user will either get an error message or nothing at all will happen when they click on the links.

Tolerant handling of Asian languages:

Allows you to publish projects in Asian languages on Windows systems whose language does not match the language of the help project. Some features in the help generated may not work correctly, however (Search, Index). To test these features properly you need a version of Windows whose language or at least the system locale matches that of the project you are compiling. This is necessary because the Microsoft CHM format does not use Unicode and it needs support from the operating system to display languages with special character sets correctly.

If you are not using a version of Windows matching your Asian language you must set the system locale to the correct language, otherwise the HTML Help compiler will not work properly because it is not a Unicode program; it needs support from Windows to be able to handle these character sets correctly. To do this open the International settings in the Windows Control Panel. The setting is in the Advanced tab. In Windows XP it is called "Language for non-Unicode programs", in later versions of Windows it is called System Locale.

You need to restart Windows after changing the locale.

Location for temporary files:

Enables you to specify a different drive and folder for storing the temporary files generated while publishing a number of output formats (CHM, ePUB, Kindle, eWriter, Visual Studio Help). In some cases this can speed up the publishing process, particularly if your project is on a network drive.

See Optimize Publish Speed 651 for details.

HTML Help compiler:

The paths to the Microsoft compiler for HTML Help/CHM files. To get this you need to download the free Microsoft HTML Help Workshop package. Visit this page for the download link for the correct version:

Microsoft HTML Help Workshop download

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Warning:
When you install HTML Help Workshop you will get a confusing message saying that your computer "already has a newer version of HTML Help". This is an error in the Microsoft installer and is not relevant to the HTML Help Workshop program or the compiler. Both have installed correctly when you see this message.

Microsoft Help 2.0 compiler:

Location of Visual Studio Help 2008 compiler for the Microsoft Help 2.0/HXS help format (VS Help 2010 does not require a compiler). You can only get this compiler as part of Visual Studio.

Note that Visual Studio Help is only relevant for programmers documenting Visual Studio .NET components. It is irrelevant for all other purposes and cannot be used as a general help or documentation format for application programs.

Amazon Kindle compiler:

Location of the Amazon compiler that you need for publishing Kindle/Mobi eBooks. This compiler is included in the Amazon Kindle Previewer package, which you can download here:

Download the Amazon Kindle Previewer

Important: Do NOT try to install the Kindle Previewer in the Program Files folder!

Don't change the default installation location of the Kindle Previewer package! If you do, it will not work correctly and you will get all kinds of errors. Because of the way this Amazon program works, it absolutely needs to be installed in your Windows user account directory and the location Amazon chooses, otherwise it will not have the necessary write permissions while it is running.

Help+Manual will normally find the Kindle compiler automatically, but if it doesn't you can set its location here. It will normally be saved in:

Kindle Previewer version 2:

```
C:\Users\YourUserAccount\AppData\Local\Amazon\Kindle Previewer\lib\kindlegen.exe
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Kindle Previewer version 3:

C:\Users\YourUserAccount\AppData\Local\Amazon\Kindle Previewer 3\lib\fc\bin

Reset Defaults	Resets all the settings and paths to the default values.
Search for compilers:	Attempts to locate the necessary compiler executable files in your Program Files directory.

See also:

Project Configuration Settings 1400
Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59

11.1.6 Program Options - PDF Export

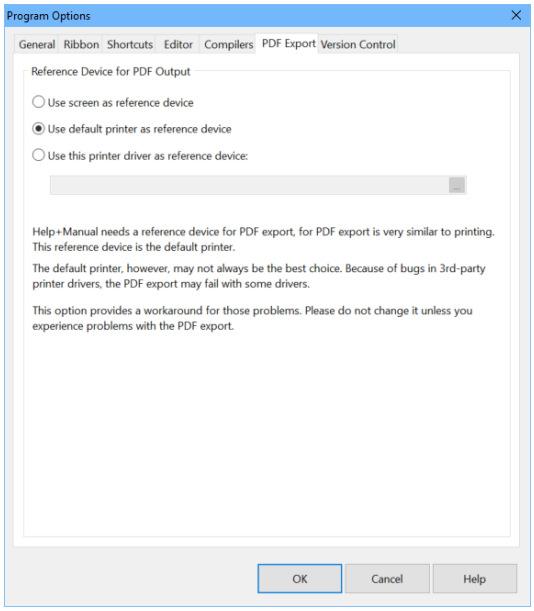
This tab can be used to set a different "reference printer driver" for generating PDF output. The PDF engine must have a printer driver to generate PDF files – if you don't have any printer installed on your computer the screen driver will be used to generate PDFs.

PDF output anomalies are often caused by bugs in proprietary drivers from printer manufacturers. If you experience problems try installing a standard driver for a common printer from the Windows CD and selecting it here. This doesn't have to be a driver for a printer that is physically connected to your computer.

Problems with the reference driver used for generating PDF output can also result in incorrect displays for special characters and international languages. However, if you experience problems like this first check the language settings 1403 of your project to make sure that everything is set up correctly. If you still have problems in your PDF output after making sure that your language settings are correct you can try using a different reference printer driver.

If you are not using WMF or EMF graphics it is generally best to use the screen device to generate PDFs. A proper printer driver is needed to mange EMF and WMF graphics, however – otherwise these graphics may be clipped in your PDF output.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Use screen as reference device:	Uses the computer's screen driver as the reference device for PDF output. Help+Manual defaults to this setting if you have no printer installed. This option is generally preferable unless your projects contain EMF or WMF graphics. If you use EMF or WMF graphics you should choose a printer driver, otherwise the graphics may not display or may be clipped.
Use default reference device:	Uses the default printer driver for PDF output. Leave this setting selected if your PDF output is OK.
Use this printer driver as a reference device:	Use this to select an alternative printer driver to use for PDF output. Click on the ... browse button to select the printer.

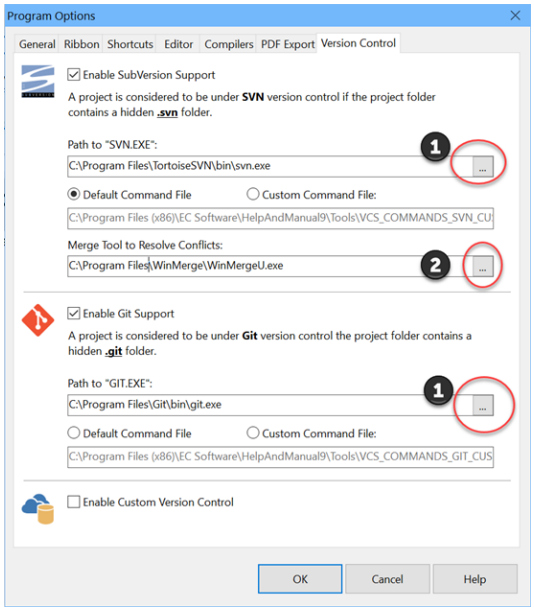
See also:

Project Configuration Settings 1400
Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59

11.1.7 Program Options - Version Control

These settings enable and configure support for version control systems.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Custom scripting

See Scripts and Customization 889 for details on customizing the scripting interface with your version control system.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Subversion, Git: Enable or disable support for Subversion and Git.

Path to VCS EXE: Reference to the program that has to be called to perform synchronization with your version control system. With SVN this will be the Tortoise client's **`svn.exe`** in the **`\bin\`** sub-folder of the Tortoise program directory. With Git it is **`git.exe`** in the **`\bin\`** sub-folder of the Git program directory.

Command file: The command scripting file called by Help+Manual to perform the synchronization operations. The standard files are stored in the **`\Tools\`** sub-folder in the Help+Manual program directory.

Don't edit those files directly. If you want to customize syncing operation, please create your own separate file and use the alternate *Custom Command File* option.

Custom Version Control: This provides the option to interface with a different version control system.

Sub-folder:
The sub-folder in your project folder that contains your version control system's syncing data.

Command file:
This file contains all the commands for interfacing with your VCS, including the paths and references to any programs it uses. A standard command file you can use as a template is provided in the **`\Tools\`** sub-folder in the Help+Manual program directory.

11.2 Workspace, Toolbars and Dialogs

This section provides a reference to the individual controls in the Ribbon Toolbar and their associated dialogs.

Only dialogs that need explaining are documented

Please note that although this reference is quite complete, only dialogs that really need explaining are documented. We try not to waste your time with things that are really obvious and self-explanatory.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can create keyboard shortcuts for most Ribbon tools

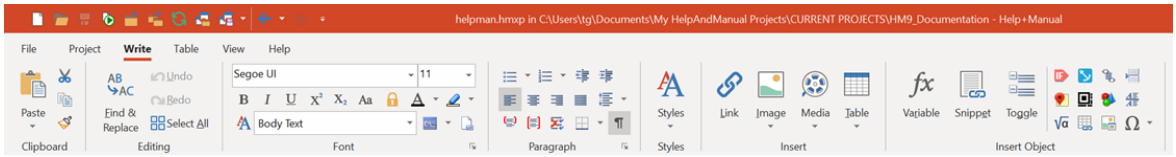
Most of the tools in the Ribbon can also be accessed with keyboard shortcuts. To view, assign and change your keyboard shortcuts select **Program Options** in the **View** tab.

11.2.1 The Workspace

The Help+Manual workspace has three main components that are immediately visible: The Ribbon Toolbar where you access all program functions, the Project Explorer for navigating and managing your projects and the Editor where you edit the content of your projects.

In addition to this, the File menu in the blue tab on the left reveals a fourth component called "backstage view". This completely hides both the Project Explorer and the Editor, providing plenty of the space for the dialogs and interactive assistants needed by the functions in the File menu.

The Ribbon Toolbar

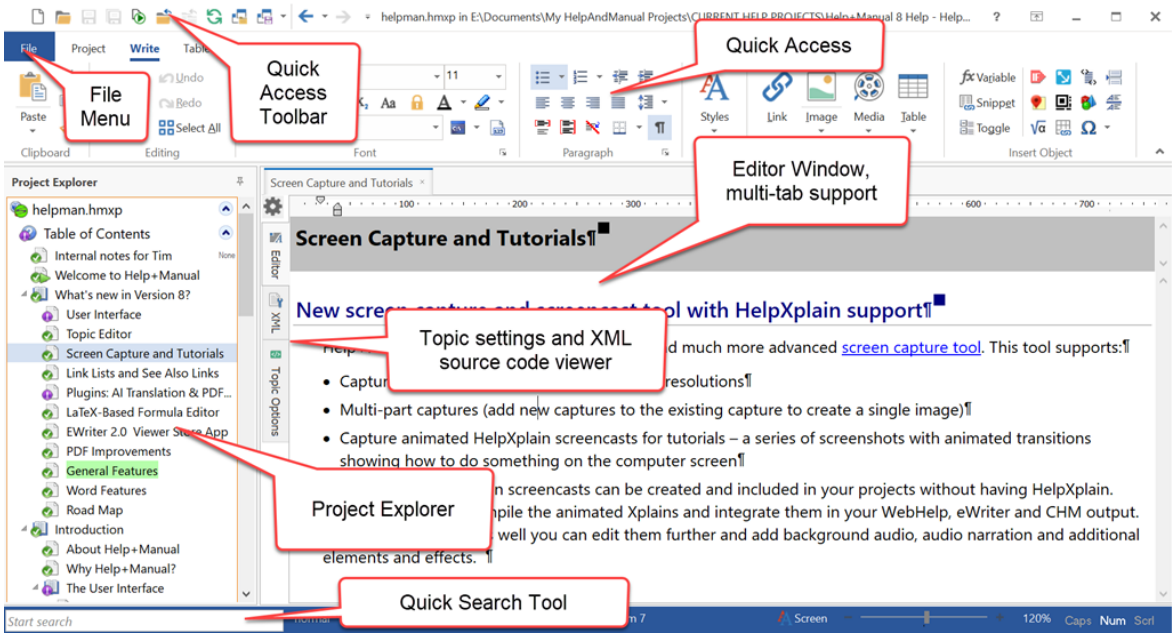


The Ribbon Toolbar is the control center where you access virtually all of Help+Manual's functions. If you use Microsoft Office you will already be familiar with the Ribbon interface. It is context-sensitive, automatically displaying functions relevant to what you are currently doing.

Tip: The Ribbon can also be operated almost entirely via the keyboard. To display the accelerator keys just press and release the ALT key once – the keys will be displayed in icons superimposed on the Ribbon.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Project Explorer and Editor



The Project Explorer is like Windows Explorer for Help+Manual projects. When you load or create a project all its contents are displayed here, including both the topic files it contains and all the settings and configuration options. You can load multiple projects in the Project Explorer and copy and paste between them.

The Editor is where you edit your topic content, and project settings dialogs. To edit a topic you just select the topic in the Project Explorer and start editing in the Editor, which works very much like a normal word processor. To edit project settings you just select the settings in the Configuration section of the Project Explorer.

The File Menu

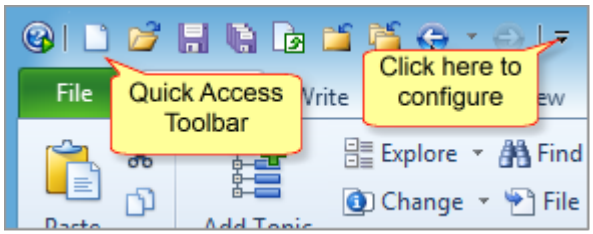
The File menu 1281 in the highlighted tab at the left end of the Ribbon is the fourth main workspace element. When you click on it, it replaces the entire program window with the "backstage view". It provides access to major functions requiring large, interactive dialogs with lots of information and configuration options. This is where you open existing projects, create new projects, publish and print your projects, save your projects with other names and in other formats and so on. The functions include:

- **Open, Close, Save** and **Exit** (normal file menu functions)
- **Save As** (save projects with different names and in a number of different formats, including extended formats like skins and style repositories)
- **Program Options** (global Help+Manual configuration options)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **New Project** (create new Help+Manual projects, either empty or by importing existing data)
- **Publish** (output your projects to any of the supported formats)
- **Import** (import data into the current project)
- **Version Control** (options for integrating your project in a supported version control system)
- **Print Manual** (generated a printed manual from your project)
- **Repository Manager** (register style repositories created with Save As.. so that you can link them to your projects)

The Quick Access Toolbar



The Quick Access Toolbar at the left end of the main program title bar provides access to your most frequently-used tools. It is fully configurable. Just click on the drop-down icon to the right of it to add or remove functions.

By default the QAT includes the *New*, *Open* and *Save* tools and also the *Back* and *Forward* tools that navigate through the topic files and other Project Explorer items you have visited in your current editing session.

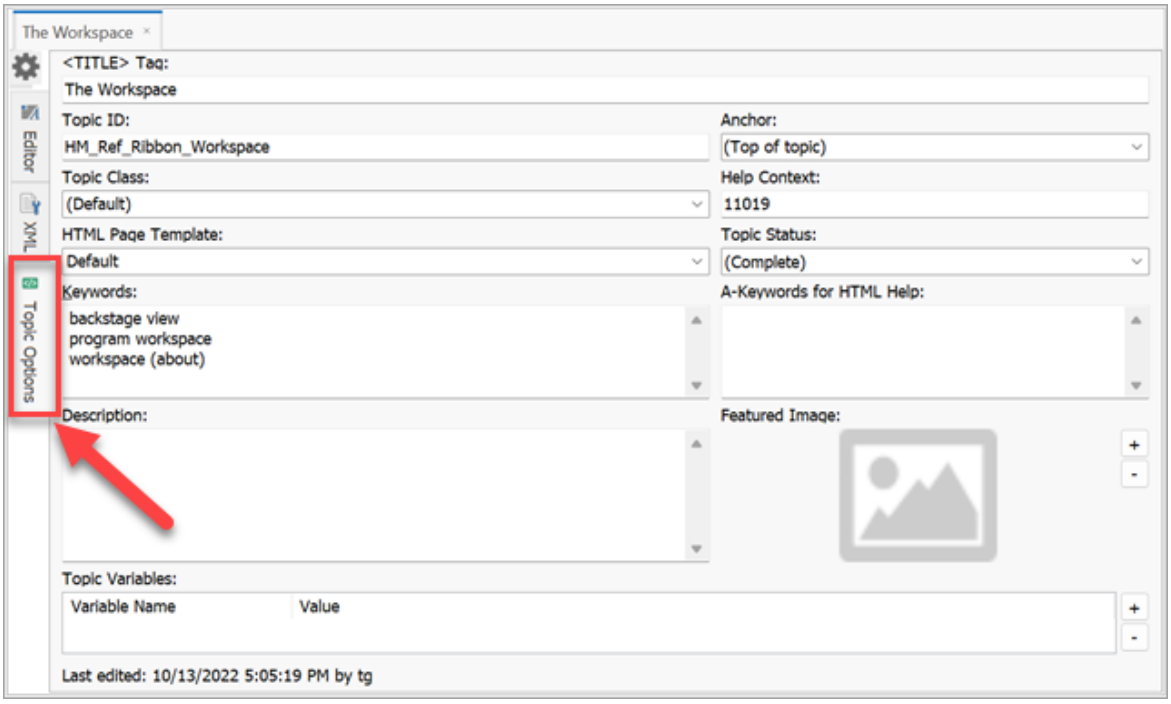
See also:

The User Interface 43
Using the Project Explorer 70
Editing Topics 94

11.2.2 The Topic Options Tab

The Topic Options tab is accessible on the left of the main editor window and contains a number of key settings for the topic currently displayed. It enables you to view and edit a number of settings that are assigned automatically when you create topics, and some additional optional settings.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



<TITLE> tag: This is the text inserted in the <TITLE> tag in topic pages in HTML-based output. By default this is the text displayed as the table of contents entry displayed in the Project Explorer on the left. If you edit the TOC entry this text changes automatically, unless you edit this field in Topic Options manually.

If the topic header text in the box above the editor is different from the TOC entry, the TOC entry is shown here and not the topic header text. (Again, only if you didn't edit the title tag text manually.)

Topic ID: The address of the topic. This is used for referencing topics for links etc. and it is also used for generating the file names of HTML files generated for topics in HTML-based output formats.

You can change the topic ID by editing this entry. When you do this, all the references to the topic within your project are updated automatically.

External references to the topic from other projects and other web pages linking to your WebHelp cannot be updated from within Help+Manual. They will become invalid if you change the topic ID and must then be updated.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Anchor: Target of the TOC entry for the topic. Normally this is the top of the topic, but if there are anchors defined in the topic you can select one here. Then the TOC entry will scroll down to the anchor when it is selected.

This option is normally only used for topics with multiple TOC entries 371. Then each entry can link to the appropriate part of the topic. Don't let this possibility tempt you to make excessively long topics – that is generally a bad idea. Normally, it is much better to have a separate document for each topic.

Topic class: There are two possible classes: *Default* and *Popup*. Most topics will be default topics. The popup class can only be selected for topics that don't have TOC entries, because popup topics are not allowed to have TOC entries. See Creating popup topics 207 for details.

Help context: Optional numeric context IDs for use in Microsoft HTML Help/CHM files. You only need these if your programmers are using context IDs for references from your application to the CHM help file. See the chapters on context sensitive help 892 and the Help Context Tool 1241 for more details.

HTML Page Template: This selects the HTML layout template to be used for this topic in HTML-based output formats. Normally this will be the standard *Default* template. You can only select additional templates here if you have defined them yourself 1036.

Topic Status: This just provides another way to select and set the status for the current topic 373 displayed in the table of contents in the Project Explorer on the left. This is design-time only – the status is not exported to your output.

Keywords: The index keywords associated with the topic. You can enter them directly here or centrally with the Index tool 568 (Professional and Floating license versions only).

A-Keywords: These are special "associative" keywords that are only supported in the Microsoft HTML Help/CHM help format. See this topic 579 for more details on this.

Description: An optional description of the topic. This has two uses:

1. Source for the description meta tag 1573 for search engine optimization in WebHelp.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Future use for alternative table of contents layouts with descriptions and images as well as titles.

Featured image: This allows you to associate an image with the topic that can then be used in topic templates and PDF title pages for chapters.

In HTML templates you can use the TOPIC_PICTURE 1573 variable to insert the images in your templates.

See the help of the Print Manual Designer program for details on how to use the featured images to create title pages for chapters in PDF output.

Topic variables: This table can be used to change the definition of user-defined or global variables for the current topic only. See this topic for details 963.

11.2.3 The XML Source Tab

This tab allows you to view and edit the XML source code of the current topic (Professional and Floating license versions only). You will almost never need to use this when working on projects.

Only edit the XML if you are familiar with the H+M XML schema

Although XML looks similar to HTML at first glance it is actually totally different. It is also 100% strict and does not tolerate even the smallest syntax error. If you make any edit that does not conform to the Help+Manual XML schema, the editor will silently delete your edits when you return to the main topic editor or move to another topic.

See XML and XML Editing 1137 for more information on this subject.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.2.4 The File Menu

The File menu 1281 provides access to major functions requiring large, interactive dialogs with lots of information and configuration options. This is where you open existing projects, create new projects, publish and print your projects, save your projects with other names and in other formats and so on.

The following entries are only described briefly here. See the links in the descriptions for full details.

Open, Save, Save As, Close, Exit: Open an existing project, save or close the current project, exit Help+Manual.

Recent Projects: Select a project you have worked on recently.

New Project: Create a new Help+Manual project; either a completely new project or with data imported from another source. See Creating Projects 124 for full instructions.

Import: Import data from other documentation formats to the current project. See Importing data into existing projects 155 for details.

Version Control: Connect the current project to a version control system or download a working copy of a Help+Manual project from a version control repository. See Using Version Control Systems 848.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Print Manual:	Print the current project as a formatted paper manual. See PDF and Printed Manuals 785.
Repository Manager:	Manage Style Repositories for sharing Help+Manual stylesheets and snippets between multiple projects. See Working with Style Repositories 1076.

11.2.4.1 Recent Projects & Workspaces

Recent Projects

Click/select:	Open the selected project in the current instance of Help+Manual.
Pin icons (on right)	"Pinning" a project entry moves it to the top of the list for easy access.
RIGHT-CLICK MENU:	**Open in new instance:** Open the project in a new copy of Help+Manual. **Add to / Remove from pinned projects:** Moves the entry to the top of the list for easy access or removes the entry from the pinned list (same as pin icon). **Remove from list:** Prune the list by removing the current entry completely. **Move Up/Down:** Arrange the list to suit your preferences
Quickly access recent documents:	Shows the select number of recent documents from the top of the list in the File Menu. 1. Use the pin icons to move the projects you want to manage to the top of the list. 2. Activate quick access to enter these projects in the File Menu.

Workspaces

Lists the workspaces 45 you have created so that you can select them.

11.2.4.2 Publish

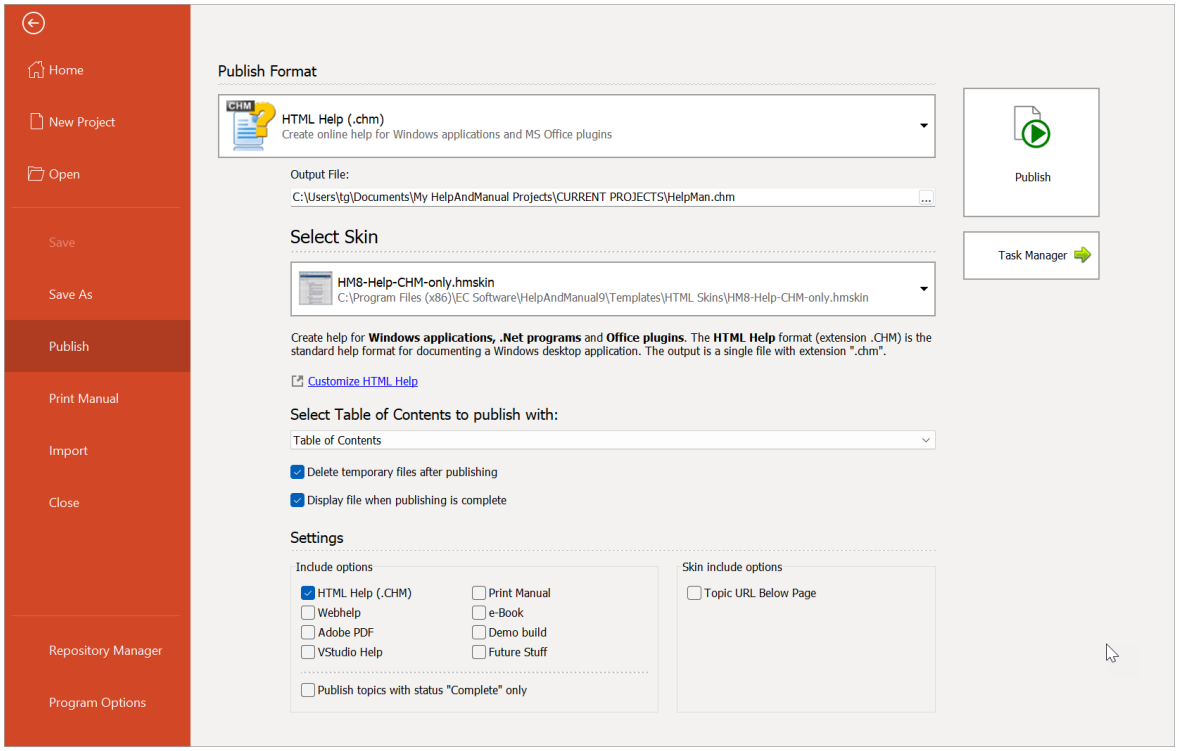
This option outputs or "publishes" the current project to any of the help and documentation

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

formats supported by Help+Manual. The Publish options page changes depending on the output format you select.

The Publish Help Project page:

This page is displayed when you select the Publish tool in the Project tab or Publish in the File menu.

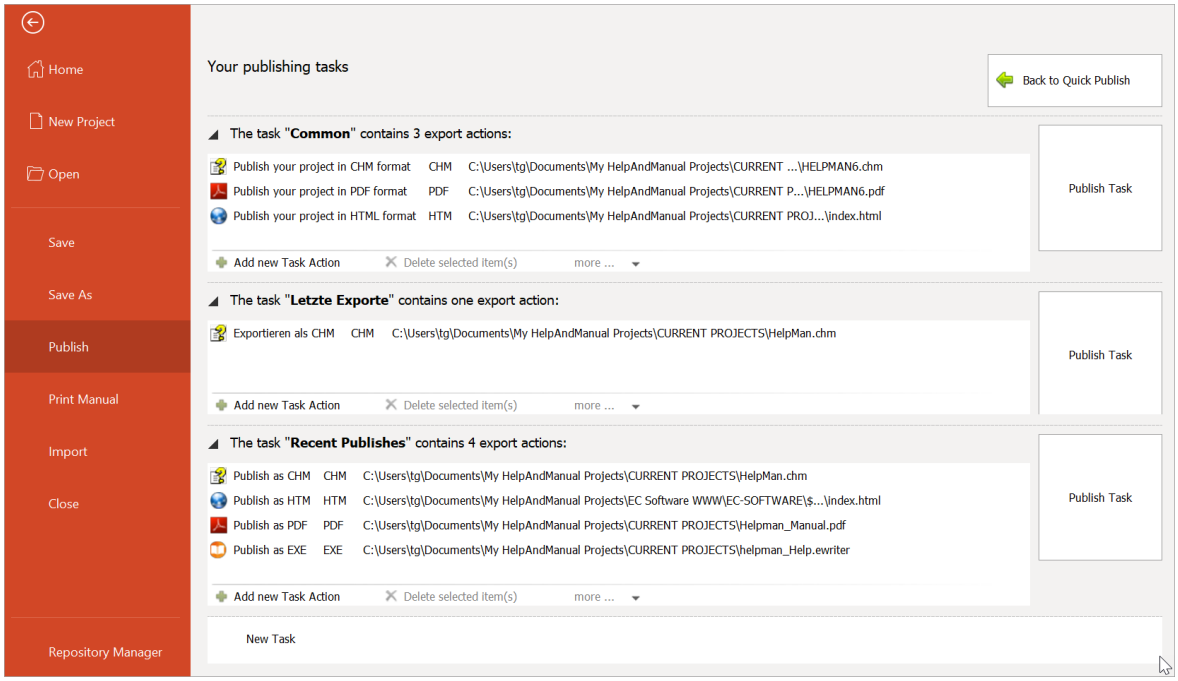


The options displayed depend on the publishing format selected.

The Task Manager

The Task Manager (button at upper right) is used to generate multiple output formats and project versions in a single operation. You can save "tasks" and reuse them to publish multiple versions and formats in one quick process. See Automating Publishing Jobs 809 for full details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Publish multiple versions and formats with the Task Manager

Common features:

Publish Format: Select the format for your published documentation. You can choose any format supported by Help+Manual at any time. Any project can always be published to any format.

The options displayed in the Publish page depend on the publishing format selected.

Output file and path: Where you want to generate your output and the name of the output file. By default Help+Manual uses your project directory and the project name. You can change this here whenever you like, however. When you do this the program makes all necessary internal changes automatically. Your setting is stored for your project and displayed the next time you publish.

You can use the ... browse button to navigate to a different output directory.

Include Options: These options are used in combination with Help+Manual's conditional output features. Topics and content that are "tagged" with the options you select here will be included in your output, those that don't match will be excluded from your output. Please study

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Conditions and Customized Output 969 before using!

Current format:
By default the include option for the selected output format is preselected. If you also select other options you must leave the current format option selected, otherwise only the content matching the other options will be included.

Skin include options:
If you select a skin for publishing to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM any include options stored in the skin will be displayed in a separate box. Skin authors often use these options for activating features available in the skin.

***Table of Contents*:** Active if you have defined at least one additional Table of Contents (TOC) in your project. You can then select which TOC you want to publish your project with.

Publish selected TOC items only:
Displayed in the Table of Contents menu if one or more topics in the TOC are selected. Activating this option only outputs the topics currently selected in the TOC.

Publish topics with status "Complete" only: Only exports topics with the status 1304 "complete" to your published output. This enables you to prevent topics that are not yet finished from being included in your output.

Important: This will only work if you are actually using topic status 1304 to mark your topics while working in the TOC.

Display file when complete: Automatically displays the output file as soon as it has been generated, using the appropriate viewer.

HTML Help settings:

Select Skin: Allows you to select a **`.hmskin`** skin file 638 to replace the entire design of a project while publishing. This allows you to apply a completely different layout and "branding" to your project with a single click. You can save the current project as a skin with *Save As* in the File menu.

Delete temporary files: Selected by default. Normally all the source files generated to publish HTML Help are deleted. If you deselect this you can view the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

source files in the `\~tmphtml` directory, which you can find in your project directory.

Webhelp settings:

Index page: The default index page for WebHelp is **`index.html`**. You can change this here, along with the output path. This is not recommended, however. If you use the standard **`index.html`** name browsers will automatically display the help if the user just access the path, without an index file name. Help+Manual remembers your setting for the current project.

Select Skin: Allows you to select a **`.hmskin`** HTML skin file 638 to replace the entire design of a project while publishing. This allows you to apply a completely different layout and "branding" to your project with a single click. You can save the current project as a skin with *Save As* in the File menu.

Delete all files in output folder: Clears all the files in the output folder before publishing. Use this when you are producing a distribution build to ensure that the folder only contains the files related to the current version of your project. Otherwise the directory may contain HTML files for topics that you have already deleted in your project, left over from previous compiles. These files take up unnecessary space and are also indexed by the indexer and included in the full-text search function, which is something you want to avoid.

Always use this function if you change the title of your project as this also changes the names of all the output files associated with the full-text search 1428 function. If the old files are present the indexer may attempt to index them, which can cause errors.

Sub-folders: This option only deletes files in the output folder, it will not delete sub-folders.

Adobe PDF settings:

Print manual template: Selects the **`.mnl`** print manual template 803 file to be used to generate the PDF file. This template file defines the PDF layout, generates the print-style table of contents and the index and adds a number

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

of additional pages and other features like headers, footers, page numbers etc. You can edit your templates with the Print Manual Designer 805 included with Help+Manual.

Highlight hotspots: For testing only. Displays outlines around the hotspots and links in your PDF output. Dead links and hotspots to missing targets are also highlighted.

Publish PDF with design comments: Publish the comments from your project (normally never exported) as annotations in the PDF. This can be useful for distributing PDFs for proofreading and commenting in a team.

eWriter Help for Windows and MacOS

Since eWriter Help files are WebHelp packaged with an integrated viewer, you will generally select a WebHelp skin for publishing this format.

See eWriter Help 696 in the Publishing chapter for details on preparing your projects for publishing this type of help file.

Kindle/Mobi and ePUB eBook settings

There are no special Publish screen settings for Kindle/Mobi and ePUB eBooks.

See Kindle/Mobi and ePUB 3.0 eBooks 749 for details on configuring your projects for these output formats.

MS Word DOCX Settings

The only setting here is the selection of the layout template for your DOCX output, which is a special DOCX file.

See MS Word DOCX 682 for instructions on how to prepare and use these templates.

Visual Studio Help settings:

Visual Studio Version: Only relevant for documenting programming components in the Visual Studio .NET programming environment. Cannot be used for documenting normal user applications.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can choose both Visual Studio 2008/HXS and Visual Studio 2010/MSHC formats. The HXS format requires installation of a special compiler from the Visual Studio 2008 .NET package. See Visual Studio Help 1464 for details.

Do not compile: Visual Studio 2008/HXS only.

This is a special debugging option for Visual Studio Help 2008 (MS Help 2.0/HXS) only. Instead of publishing a finished **.HXS** file it generates a **.HWProj** project file that you can open and compile manually in Visual Studio .NET. For details see About publishing VS Help 1135.

Delete temporary files: Selected by default. Normally all the source files generated to compile Visual Studio Help are deleted. If you deselect this you can view the source files in the \~tmphxs directory, which you can find in your project directory.

See also:

Conditions and Customized Output 969

11.2.4.3 Save As

Save the current project in another name and/or location and in a different format. You can use this option to switch between the single-file compressed format (HMXZ) and the uncompressed XML format (HMXP, only available in the Professional and Floating license versions). Both these formats have exactly the same contents, the HMXZ format just packs the component files into a single compressed archive file (zip format).

Modular Projects
When you select Save As.. in a modular project Help+Manual always saves the master project. You must edit child projects separately if you want to save copies of them.

In addition to this you can also save your project as a skin or a style repository.

Help Project (single file): Save the current project in compressed, single-file format (HMXZ). This is the only format available in the Basic version of Help+Manual. Same contents as the uncompressed HMXP format,

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

with all files saved in a compressed zip archive with the extension **.hmxz**.

Help Project (uncompressed XML): Professional and Floating license versions only. Save the current project in uncompressed XML format (HMXP). Required for multi-user editing and linking to version control systems. You must save in an empty folder, although you can add other sub-folders yourself later. All the files are plain-text XML, including the main HMXP project file.

Skin XML file: Professional and Floating license versions only. Save the current project as a skin. You can then apply the templates, styles, variables and layout it contains to other projects on publishing by selecting the skin file in the Publish dialog. See Transforming your output with skins 638 for details.

Save as a Repository: Professional and Floating license versions only. A style repository is a special uncompressed HMXP project without a table of contents. Linking it to a project makes the styles and topics in the style repository available in the project. This enables you to share a common set of styles between multiple projects and use the topics in the project as snippets, together with the styles they are defined with. See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for details.

Rescue Copy: The earlier Rescue Copy option has now been replaced by an automatic rescue copy for drive system failures and an ongoing background backup of unsaved edits for recovering from system crashes.

Automatic rescue copy

If you are unable to save your project because the drive it is stored on becomes unavailable or unresponsive Help+Manual will display an automatic rescue copy option that will allow you to save those topics with unsaved edits to a special copy of the project containing only those topics. You can then copy your changes back to the main project when it becomes available again.

Ongoing background backup

All your unsaved edits are stored in a background backup until you successfully save your project. If your computer or Windows

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

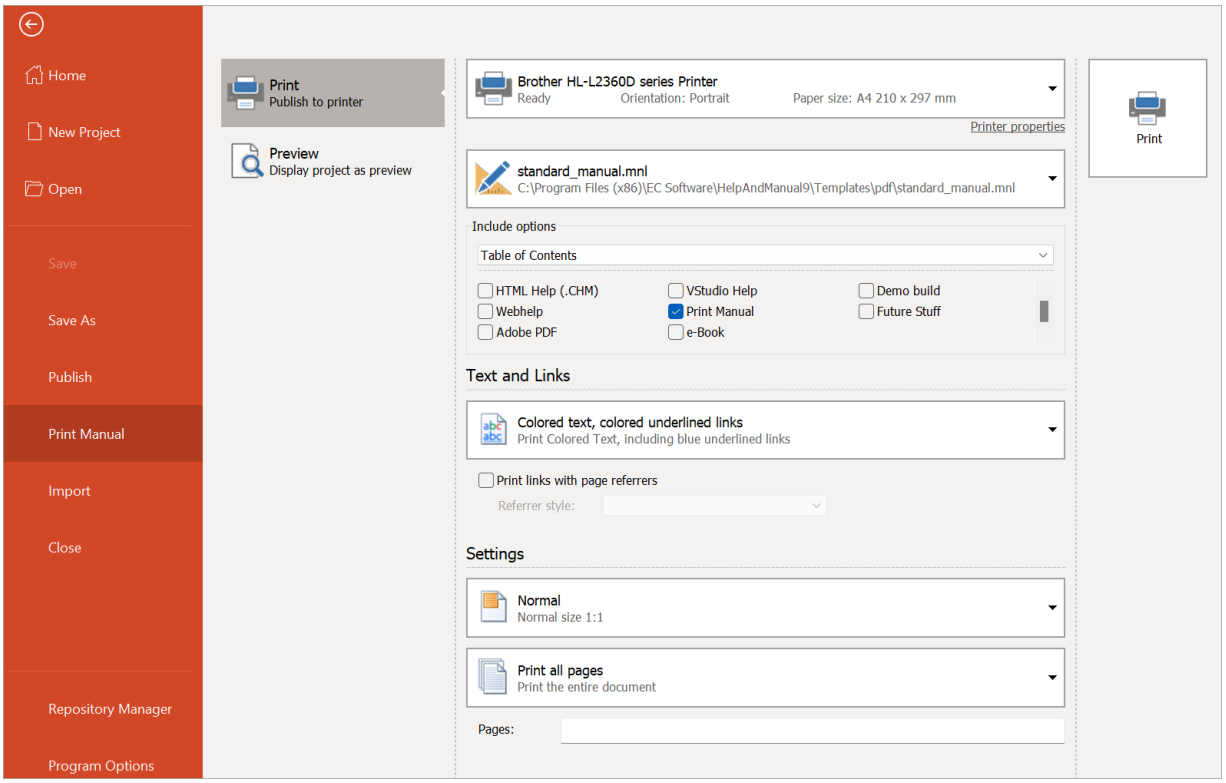
crashes or you experience some other catastrophic event that prevents you from saving, Help+Manual will offer to restore your unsaved edits from the Rescue Copy the next time you open the project.

See Backups and Emergencies 608 for more details on both these features.

11.2.4.4 Print Manual

These options are for generating a printed manual directly on a connected printer. You can preview before printing with the Preview options. In addition to normal printing it also supports booklet printing with multiple pages per sheet and fold/cut options.

If you need to have a manual printed professionally by a service provider you should create a PDF file with Help+Manual's PDF output options 785.



Print options

Printer: The printer you want to use.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Print Manual Template: The Print Manual function uses the same templates 1019 as the PDF output function. Click on the drop-down menu below the printer selection and then select your `.mnl` print manual template file with *Open Template..* or select *Start Manual Designer* to open the current template in Manual Designer. (This program has its own separate help.)

Table of Contents: Active if you have defined at least one additional Table of Contents (TOC) in your project. You can then select which TOC you want to print your project with.

Publish selected TOC items only:
Displayed in the Table of Contents menu if one or more topics in the TOC are selected. Activating this option only outputs the topics currently selected in the TOC.

Include Options: These options can be used in combination with Help+Manual's conditional output features. Topics and content that don't match the selections you make here will be excluded from your output. Please study Conditions and Customized Output 969 before using!

If no options are selected the **Include Options** list is highlighted in red to indicate that no output will be generated.

Current format:
By default the include option for the selected output format (Print Manual) is preselected. If you also select other options you must leave the current format option selected, otherwise content tagged for the current format will be excluded!

Text and Links: Options for controlling how colored text and hyperlinks are to be displayed in your output. Set accordingly for monochrome or color printers.

Print links with page referrers: Prints hyperlinks with "page referrer" cross references. These little icons showing the page number of the referenced topic.

Settings - scaling and booklets: Page scaling or booklet printing. Select *Normal (1:1)* for best quality in normal printouts.

Print cut marks:
Prints professional printer-style cut marks for trimming your output

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Settings - pages output:	All pages, current page, odd pages, even pages, defined page range.

Page Range:
Enter the numbers of the pages you want to print separated by commas (example: 12,42,49). Note that all page range numbers refer to the sequential numbers of the sheets of paper in your output, not to the numbers shown on the pages, which may be different. Use Print Preview 1292 to check the numbers of the pages to output.

Preview options and settings

The Print Preview function previews your printout on the computer screen. The options are exactly the same as in the first screen of the normal Print Dialog. 1290 Print Preview is extremely fast, you can use it for a quick preview of your project layout.

Unsupported functions in preview mode:

- Selection by page number and booklet printing options are not supported in Print Preview mode. *Selected Topics* in the Include Options section works, however.
- Page numbers are not displayed in the page referrers 1290 (cross references to page numbers for links) in Print Preview mode. The page referrer icons are shown, but they are empty. This is not an error. The referrer numbers can only be generated when you actually output to a printer.

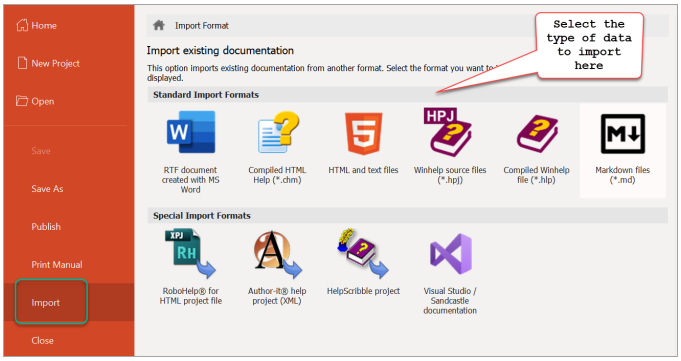
See also:

Print Preview 1292
Conditions and Customized Output 969

11.2.4.5 Import

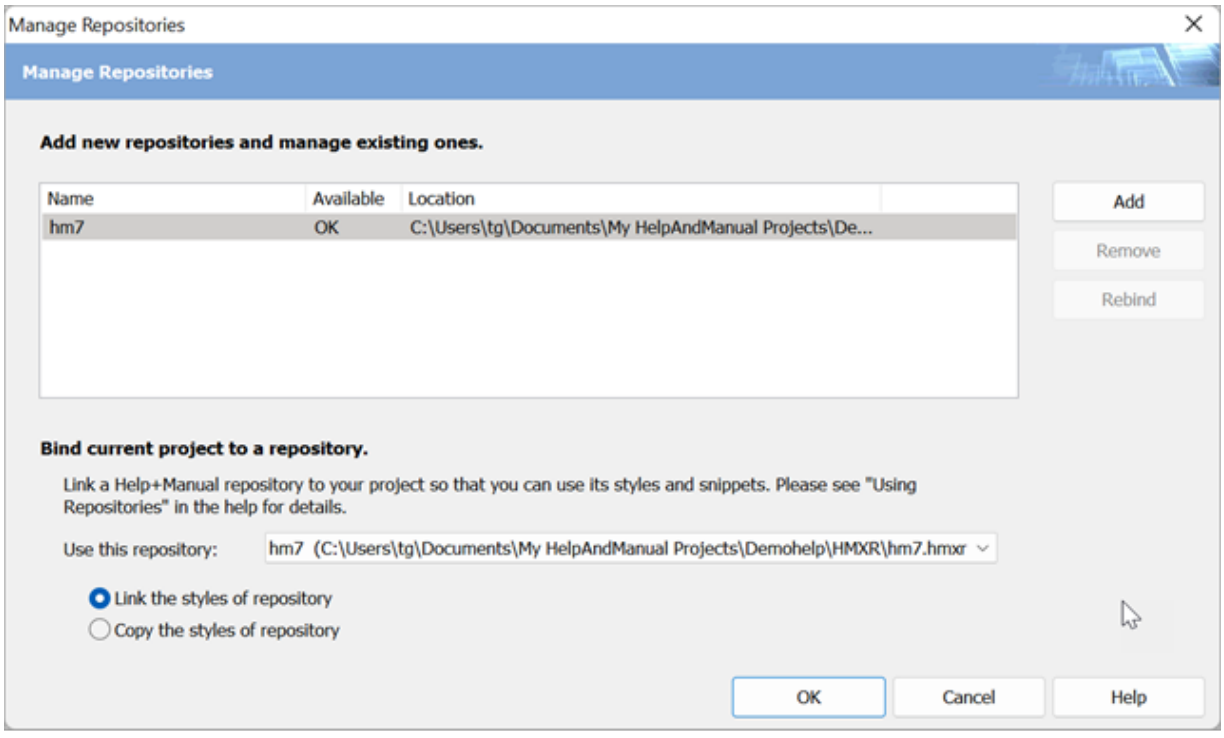
The Import option allows you to import data from external sources into the current project instead of into a new project. It opens the regular Import page. See Importing data into existing projects 155 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



11.2.4.6 Style Repository Manager

The Repository Manager is used for registering style repository projects in your Help+Manual configuration and removing them. Style repositories must be registered with your copy of Help+Manual to be used. After registering, you can then use them in your projects. See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for full details.



Add: Select a `.hmxr` style repository project and add it to the registered lists of repositories for your copy of Help+Manual. You must add a style repository to the list before you can link it to a project.

Remove: Remove (de-register) a style repository from your Help+Manual configuration. This does not delete the style repository project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

It just removes its registration from your copy of Help+Manual.

Use this repository:

Link a repository:
Use this list to link a style repository to the current project selected in Help+Manual.

Unlink a repository:
Select Project does not use a style repository at the top of the list to unlink the repository from the project selected in Help+Manual.

Link styles:

When you select this option the styles in the style repository are actively linked to the Help+Manual project. When the styles are updated in the style repository they are automatically updated in the linked project.

The styles are locked in the project and cannot be edited there. They can only be edited in the style repository project.

Use this option to manage styles centrally for multiple projects and projects edited by multiple authors.

Copy styles:

This option simply copies the styles from the style repository to the project. The styles can then also be edited in the project.

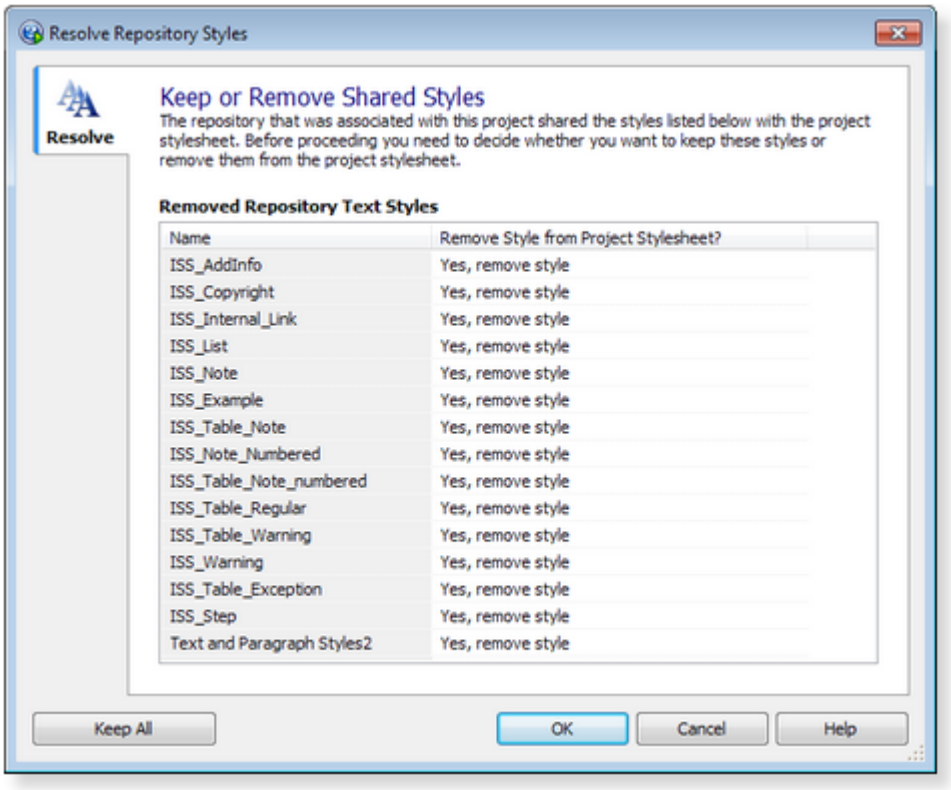
Use this option for more "relaxed" style management: Create a project basing its styles on the repository styles, then make any additional style changes in the project rather than in the style repository.

See also:

Working with Style Repositories 1076

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.2.4.6.1 Resolve Styles Dialog



This dialog appears when you unlink a repository from a project or switch your project's repository association from one repository to another one. In both cases Help+Manual needs to know what you want to do with the styles that the original repository was sharing with your project.

By default all styles will be removed when you unlink a repository. If you want to keep styles click on the "*Yes, remove style*" text in the Remove column to switch it to "Keep".

Remove style: This is the default option. The style will be deleted from your project stylesheet and any text formatted with the style will be reset to "Normal" formatting, without a style association.

Keep style: A copy of the style will be kept in the project stylesheet. Any text formatted with the style will retain its association with this style.

Keep All / Remove All This button switches the entire list between "keep" and "remove".

See also:

Working with Repositories 1076

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.2.5 The Project Tab

This tab contains all the tools used for managing topic files and managing and publishing projects. In addition to this it includes a copy of the clipboard tools available in the Write tab and links to the external tools included with Help+Manual.

Note that the standard file functions (Open, Close, New etc.) are accessed in the File menu 1275.

See also:

Publishing Your Projects 613

11.2.5.1 Clipboard

The **Clipboard** group contains a standard set of tools for using the Windows clipboard (Copy, Cut, Paste, Paste as Text). You can use the clipboard tools for copying both content in topics and for topics and chapters in the Project Explorer.

Remember that Drag & Drop also work both in the editor and in the Project Explorer, also between different projects.

Special Paste Commands:

Paste as Text:

Ctrl+Shift+V

- Pastes copied text as plain text, without any formatting (bold, underline, graphics etc).
- Use if you want to copy text without any formatting from other topics, projects or other programs such as MS Word or a web browser.
- This feature is also useful for pasting text into paragraphs formatted with styles without transferring the style of the copied text into the target paragraph.

Paste HTML:

- Paste material copied from HTML pages into Help+Manual.
- Use for copying formatted text, images etc. from web pages into the Help+Manual editor.
- When copying from some graphics programs this can be used to paste transparent PNG and GIF images from the clipboard without losing transparency. See Inserting Graphics and Screenshots 481 for details.

See also:

Copying, cutting and pasting text 233
Moving cutting and pasting topics 357

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.2.5.2 Manage Topics

The **Manage Topics** group contains all the main functions for creating topics and manipulating them in the Table of Contents (TOC) and Project Files sections of the Project Explorer.

Several of the options in this menu already have keyboard shortcuts. You can assign shortcuts to the other options yourself in **View** > **Program Options** > **Shortcuts**.

Topic group options:

Add Topic / Add File: 1298

Name changes depending on whether you are in the TOC or Project Files.

- Create new topics, chapters and topic files.
- Delete topics, chapters and topic files

Explore

- Expand and collapse branches in the Project Explorer
- Filter Explorer display by build options
- Disable Drag & Drop in Explorer to prevent accidental editing
- Open selected topics in a new tab

Change:

- Set build options for topics and chapters
- Change the item status (colored highlight in the TOC)
- Change the icon displayed for the item (not supported in all output formats)
- Convert a topic to a chapter without text and vice-versa

Find:

- Locate topics by ID and help context numbers
- Locate topics containing links to the current topic

File:

- Load topics from external XML file, and from RTF, RVF, HTML and TXT files
- Save topics as XML files or reusable snippets 265 (text blocks in external files).
- Reload (refresh) the current topic, for example to display updated images.

- Move selected topics around in the TOC (up/down)
- Promote and demote topics in the TOC (left/right)
- Edit topic caption
- Print topic

See also:

Creating and Editing Topics 172
Managing the TOC and Topic Files 342

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

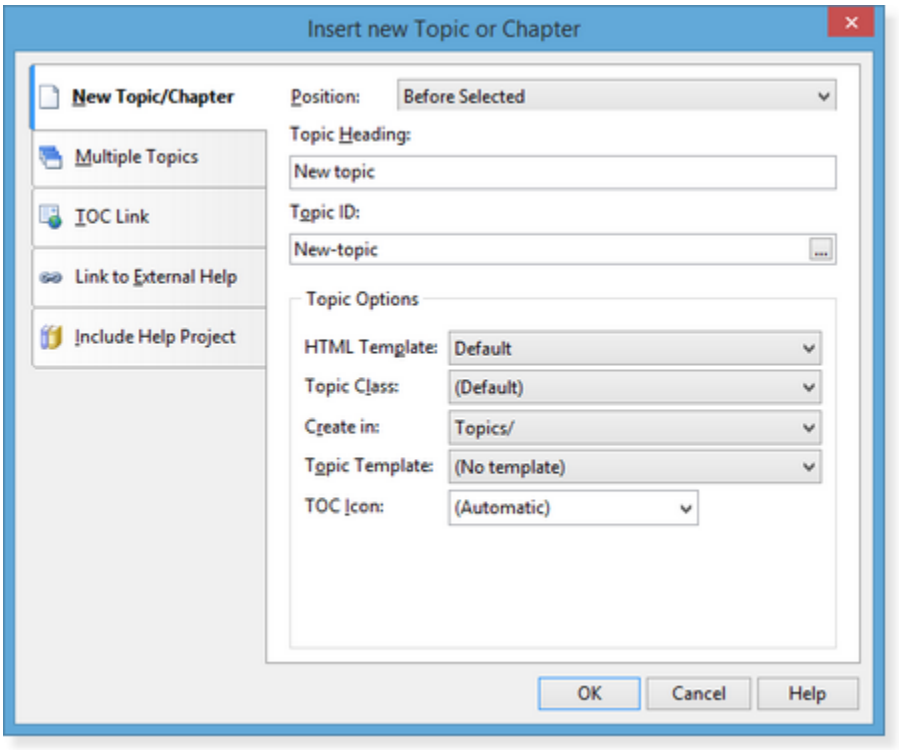
Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59

11.2.5.2.1 Add Topic/File

Creates a new topic file in the Table of Contents (TOC) or the Project Files section. See Creating new topics 174 for more details.

Insert New Topic or Chapter dialog:

This dialog is displayed when you select one of *Add Topic* options. It creates a new topic, a new chapter or a TOC item linked to web page or another help file.



Topic /Chapter:

Creates a new topic with a TOC entry (in the TOC) or a new topic file without a TOC entry (in Project Files). The topic automatically becomes a "chapter" as soon as it has sub-topics.

When you select the function in the Project Files section you can only add topic files, no other options are available.

Position:	Position of the new topic in the TOC relative to the current topic.

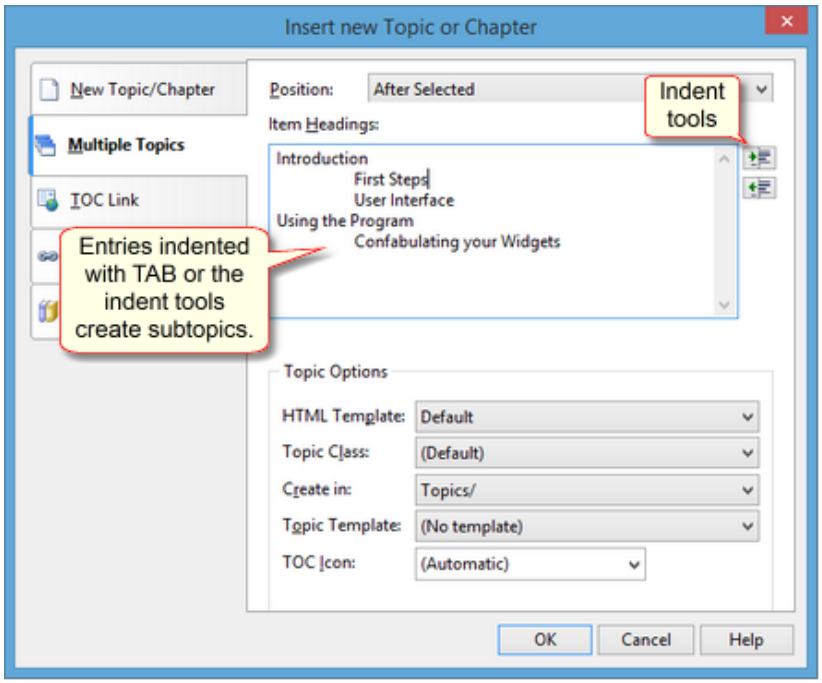
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Topic heading:	The title of the topic in the TOC. This text is also entered as the topic header (in the box above the editor).
Topic ID:	This is the "address" of the topic. It is never seen by the user and must be unique. It is the XML file name of the topic file and used to generate the HTML file name for the topic in HTML-based output formats. Use only English ASCII characters and numbers. Foreign characters, spaces and special characters will cause problems in some output formats.
HTML template:	The HTML page template 203 to be linked to the topic. This will usually be *Default* unless you have created additional templates.
Topic Class:	Whether the topic is a normal topic or a popup topic. You can only select the Popup class in the Topic Files section of the Project Explorer. You cannot create popup topics in the Table of Contents section.
Create in :	The folder in the Project Files section where you want to store the new topic file.
Topic template:	Normally new topics are empty. If you wish, you can specify a template file 1016 here containing standard text, tables, images and any other content. You must create template files first, otherwise nothing will be displayed here.
TOC Icon:	Select the icon for the topic in the TOC. In WebHelp the custom Help+Manual icons will be used. Microsoft HTML Help CHM files can only use the standard Microsoft CHM icon set, which Help+Manual matches to the most similar custom icons.

Multiple topics:

Allows you to enter multiple topics at the same time, for example by pasting a list of topic titles that you want to use as captions. Each line of text entered in the *Item Captions:* field will create a new topic with that text as the caption in the TOC. The topic IDs 368 are generated automatically from the caption texts.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Position:	Position of the first new topic in the TOC relative to the current topic.
Headings:	Each line of text you enter here creates a new topic. Press **Enter** to create a new topic line. Press **Tab** or use the indent buttons on the right to create sub-topics. 
Create In:	The folder in the Project Files section where you want to store the new topic file.
Topic Template:	Normally new topics are empty. If you wish, you can specify a template file 1016 here containing standard text, tables, images and any other content.

TOC Link: Link to web address or an existing topic

This option can create two types of links:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

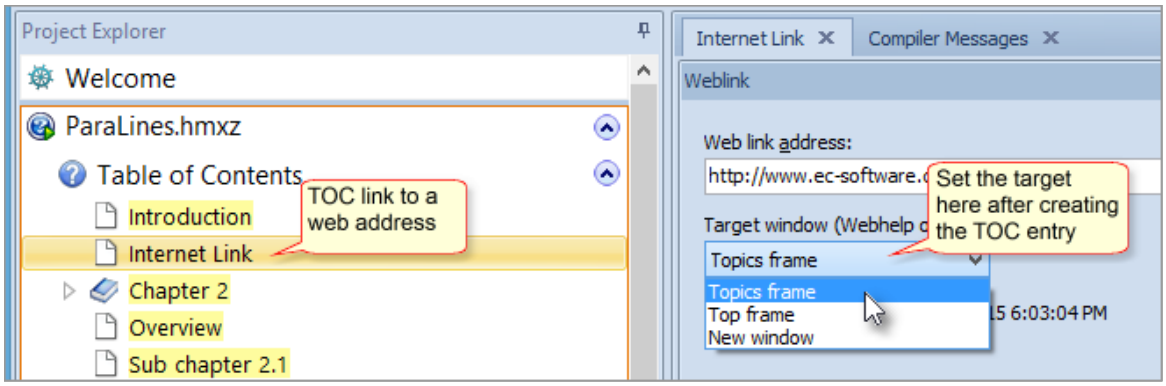
Link to a topic in this project:

Creates an additional link to an existing topic in the current project. See Multiple TOC entries for one topic 371 for more details on this subject.

Link to a web address:

Instead of displaying a topic this displays a web page with the URL you enter here. You must include the **`http://`** prefix if the address, otherwise it won't work.

After creating the TOC entry you can specify the target of the link on the right:



TOC link targets in different output formats:

WebHelp: Web links in the TOC are no longer recommended for WebHelp. In the future, they will not work in responsive, single-page layouts because there is no topic frame where a web page can be loaded. They will just open in a new window instead.

- **Topic frame** displays in the topic frame, if there is one. Otherwise it will open in a new browser page or tab.
- **Top frame** replaces the WebHelp entirely with the linked web page.
- **New window opens the link in a new browser window or tab.**

HTML Help/CHM: Web links in the TOC always open in the topic frame in CHM files. The target window setting is ignored.

eWriter Help: Web links in the TOC are not recommended in eWriter Help. They can be opened in the topic frame but the embedded browser will often not provide good results with external websites. It is much

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	better to put web links in the body of your topics and configure them to open in an external browser window in the eWriter settings 1477.
PDF and Word DOCX:	Web links in the TOC are not supported and are ignored in these formats. The TOC entries are not included in the TOC.
Kindle/Mobi ePUB eBooks	Web links in the TOC are not supported and are ignored in these formats. The TOC entries are not included in the TOC.
Visual Studio Help:	Web links and external links in the TOC are not permitted in these formats. The TOC entries are not included in the TOC.

Link to External Help (CHM only!)

Instead of creating a new topic file this creates a TOC item that is a link to a topic in another CHM help file. When the user clicks on the TOC entry the topic from the other help file is displayed.

This only works in HTML Help!

The target topic must be the same format as the main help file – you can't link between help files of different formats.

Position:	Position of the chapter node in the TOC relative to the current topic.
Heading in Table of Contents:	The title of the item in the TOC.
Help file:	The Help+Manual project file (`.hmxp`, `.hmxz`) or the help file (`.chm`) containing the topic you want to link to.
Target topic:	The topic you want to link to.

Web Link:

Creates a topic that references a web page on the Internet:

- **In eBooks** selecting the topic in the TOC opens the referenced web page in an external browser window.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **In HTML Help and WebHelp** selecting the topic the page can be opened inside the help viewer, as part of the help, or in an external window.
- **In PDF and Word DOCX** the topic is ignored and is not included in the output.

Position:	Position of the item in the TOC relative to the current topic.
Heading:	The title of the item in the TOC.
Target address:	The URL of the HTML page you want to link to. If this is not a local file you must enter the fully-qualified URL, including the *http://* prefix.

Include Help Project:

Inserts a placeholder for another Help+Manual project, turning the current project into a master/parent project. When you publish the master project the TOC of the child project will be added to that of the master project.

Position:	Position of the first topic of the external project in the TOC relative to the current topic.
Project file:	The the **`.hmxp`** or **`.hmxz`** project file that you want to include
Merge content on publishing / runtime:	These settings are only relevant for HTML Help (CHM). All other formats are always merged when they are published. For more details see Working with Modular Help Systems 1088. **Merge content on publishing:** This merges the selected project with the project you are inserting it. The result is integrated help that is the same as help produced from a single project. You do not have to publish your child projects separately when you use this method. However, you must take steps 1107 to ensure that you do not have duplicate topic IDs and help context numbers in your projects, otherwise you will experience unexpected errors in your help. **Merge content at runtime:** Supported in HTML Help (CHM) only. This merges the child help file modules into the TOC of the master when the help is opened on the user's computer. The child help files must be published separately. If these help file modules (CHM) are present in the same

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	folder as the master help file their TOCs will be merged with the master TOC and the effect is the same as one help file containing all modules. If the modules are not present on the user's computer they will not be included in the TOC.

See also:

Creating new topics 174
Content templates for topics 1016

11.2.5.2.2 Explore

This sub-menu contains options that control the behavior of the Project Explorer.

Expand / Collapse

These options expand and collapse the Table of Contents and Topic Files display in the Project Explorer.

Filter

This allows you to filter the Table of Contents display on the basis of your build options/include options. It will only have any effect if you have actually assigned build options to your topics. See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for more details.

Note that this function only filters topics in the TOC, it does not filter content in your topics tagged with build options using the Conditional Text tool.

Disable Drag & Drop in Explorer

This protects your TOC against accidental changes with the mouse. This can be useful when you are just editing your project and are no longer making any changes to the TOC.

Open Topic in a New Tab

Open the current topic in a new tab in the Help+Manual editor.

11.2.5.2.3 Change

The options in this sub-menu are for changing the properties and functions of selected TOC items and topic files (some functions are only available for TOC items).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Include in Builds

Sets or clears conditional build/include options for the selected TOC items or topic files. This feature is used to include or exclude topics from your published output. You can do the same for content inside your topics with the Conditional Text 1371 tool. See Conditions and Customized Output 382 for details.

Topic Status

This is an editing aid. It allows you to "flag" topics in the TOC with colors associated with "status" name as a reminder of the current editing status of the topic -- for example "Needs Review" or "Out of Date". You can define your own status options with *Define Custom Status* and you can edit your status definitions in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Topic Status**.

Topic status is not exported when you publish, it is an editing aid only.

You can also use topic status to exclude unfinished topics from your output. Just select the option "Complete Only" in the Publish 1310 dialog and all topics with a status other than *Complete* will not be exported when you publish.

You can also sort and group the display of your files by topic status in the Topic Files file viewer – see Managing topic files in the Explorer 377 for details.

Change Icon

Allows you to change the TOC icon of the selected topics in the TOC. Only the displayed icons are available in HTML Help (CHM) and eWriter Help. Topic icons are not supported at all in ePUB eBooks.

If you want chapter icons to switch automatically between the "open" and "closed" versions you must use one of the first eight icons and make sure that "Automatic" is activated in the Change Icon menu.

In WebHelp you can also use your own custom icons, which you can set in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Navigation**.

Convert to Chapter without/with Text

Converts the selected chapter topic to a chapter with or without text. A chapter topic without text is just an empty node in the Table of Contents and does not have any content of its own or any properties. If you convert a chapter topic with text to a chapter topic without text the text in the deleted topic will be moved to a new sub-topic.

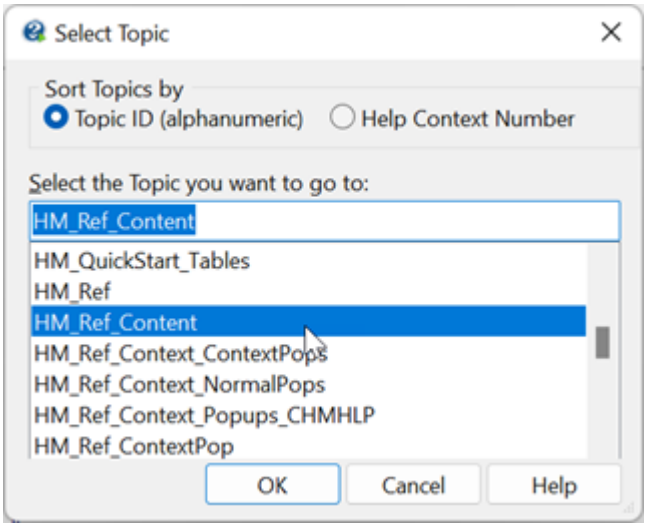
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note: Chapters without text are deprecated in modern documentation and we do not recommend using them.

11.2.5.2.4 Find

This sub-menu contains options for locating topics in your project and links to and from selected topics.

The Find Topic dialog:



- Typing text in the **Select Topic:** field automatically takes you to the first topic in the list matching the text you type. (This does not work for help context numbers.)
- The topic IDs and help context numbers of modular child projects in your TOC are not shown in the list.

Find Referrers:

This option displays a list of all links to and from one or more selected topics. It is normally displayed in the main program window but you can undock it by double-clicking on its title bar. To redock just double-click again.

The Find Referrers report includes both normal links and links in graphics hotspots 509. However, please note that the report does not include any references to topics that may be contained in scripts, macros or plain HTML code 469 that you have entered yourself.

Dialog options

Topic: The link address of the current topic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Tip: All the links are active! You can navigate to all the topics and back to the current topic by clicking on the links in the dialog.

Is referred by: All the topics in the current project that refer to the selected topic. Links to the topic from other projects are not included, even if the projects are included in the TOC of the current project as child modules.

Links to: All the topics in the current project linked to by the current topic. Links to topics in other projects are not listed, even if the projects are included in the TOC of the current project as child modules.

This list also includes references to any topics in which the current topic is used as a snippet 265.

You can click on the topic ID links in the list to visit the topics and edit them without closing the Find Referrers report.

Dialog toolbar

Returns you to the original topic after visiting other topics in the reports list. Inactive for reports including results for more than one topic.

Simple search function for finding text in the report window.

Copies text from the report window to the clipboard. (This does not select all the text in the report - you must select text with the mouse first.)

Prints the report.

Saves the report to a file. The file is saved in HTML format.

See also:

Searching for text, topics and referrers 235
Find Topic 1304
Find & Replace Text 1326

11.2.5.2.5 File

This sub-menu contains options for saving and loading selected text and topics to and from external files. You can save topics and selected text to Help+Manual XML files. You can load topics from Help+Manual XML files and also from RTF, RVF, HTML and TXT files.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Reload Topic command refreshes the current topic. This can be useful when you have changed a graphics file on the hard disk and also when multiple users are working on the same project (use together with *Refresh Project* in the **Project** tab).

Dialog options:

Load Topic from file:	Create an empty topic before using! Overwrites the current topic with the contents of an RTF, RVF, TXT, HTML or Help+Manual XML file.
Save Topic to File:	Saves the entire topic to a Help+Manual XML file that you can use as a snippet or load with *Load Topic from File*. Saves and loads the topic's keywords with the topic file.
Save Snippet:	**Text in topic selected:** Saves only the selected text to a simple Help+Manual XML file without any keywords. **No text selected:** Saves the entire topic to a Help+Manual XML file along with keywords (same as *Save Topic to File*).
Print topic:	Sends the current topic to a printer.
Reload Topic:	Reloads the current topic file in the editor. Refreshes graphics if the graphic file has been changed and can also be used to refresh topic lock status for multi-user editing.

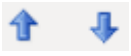
See also:

Reusing content with snippets 265

11.2.5.2.6 Mini Toolbar

The "mini toolbar" in the Manage Topics group is mainly for editing the structure of your Table of Contents. You can move topics up and down and also change the "level" of topics in the TOC – this is done by "demoting" or "promoting" topics. In addition to this the mini toolbar contains a function for editing the topic caption.

Mini toolbar functions



Move the selected topic up or down in the TOC. This doesn't change the current level of the topic, it just moves it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Promote or demote the selected topic in the TOC hierarchy. "Promoting" (left arrow) a topic moves it up to a higher level – for example it moves a topic out of a chapter onto the same level as the main chapter topic. "Demoting" (right arrow) moves the topic down to a lower level – for example making it the sub-topic of a chapter.

Edit the TOC caption (title) of the topic. You can also edit the caption by clicking in the TOC and pressing F2 and by clicking twice slowly in the TOC.

11.2.5.3 Project

The Project group contains functions for publishing your project, jumping to bookmarks and accessing your Project Configuration settings.

Project group options:

Publish:
- Displays the same Publish 1315 dialog available in the File menu
- Clicking on the lower part of the icon executes a "Quick Publish" to the selected output format, applying the last settings used.

Print Manual: Displays the same Print Manual 1290 page available in the File menu.

Bookmark: Displays a list of the bookmarks 253 defined in your project. Selecting a bookmark in the list jumps to the topic containing the bookmark.

You can also add a bookmark to the current topic and delete bookmarks.

Options: Links to the different sections of the Configuration 1400 section of your project that is also available directly in the Project Explorer.

Refresh Project: Reloads the project and updates the TOC and editor display. This is only active for multi-user editing 1171 and projects linked to a version control system 848 repository.

Version Control: Only displayed in projects under recognized version control. Options for synchronizing the project with the VCS repository and other related functions. See Using Version Control Systems 848.

See also:

Project Configuration 1400
Comments and Bookmarks 253

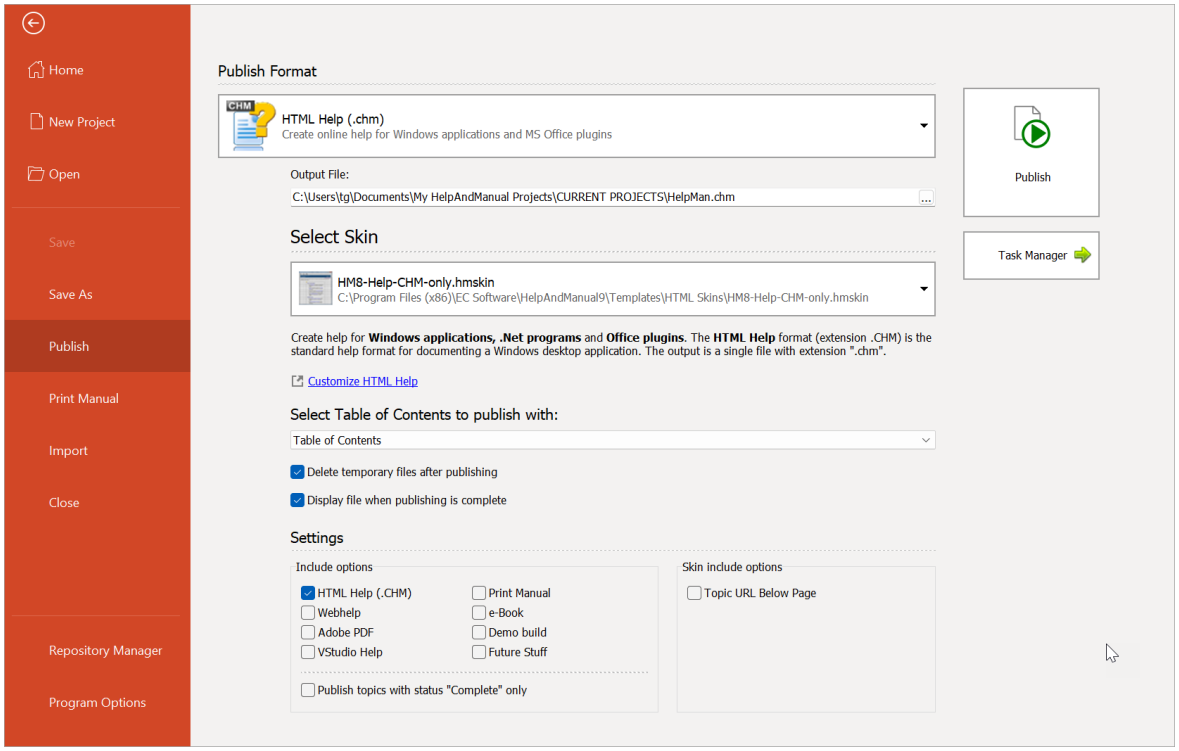
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.2.5.3.1 Publish

This option outputs or "publishes" the current project to any of the help and documentation formats supported by Help+Manual. The Publish options page changes depending on the output format you select.

The Publish Help Project page:

This page is displayed when you select the Publish tool in the Project tab or Publish in the File menu.

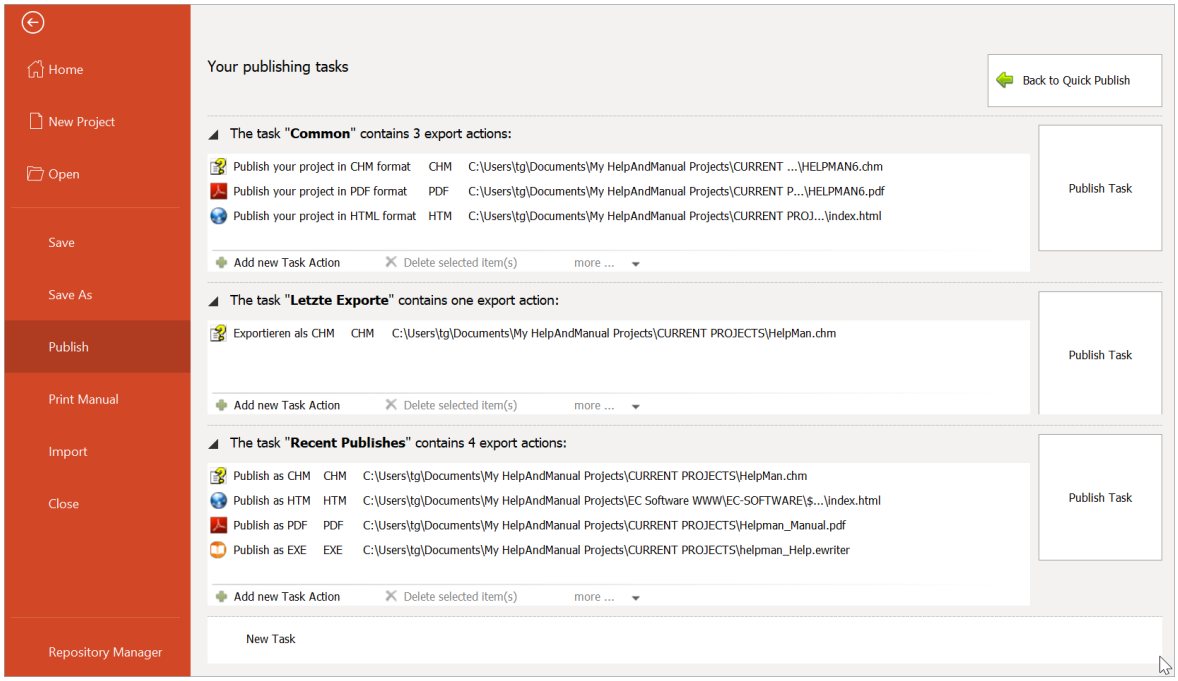


The options displayed depend on the publishing format selected.

The Task Manager

The Task Manager (button at upper right) is used to generate multiple output formats and project versions in a single operation. You can save "tasks" and reuse them to publish multiple versions and formats in one quick process. See Automating Publishing Jobs 809 for full details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Publish multiple versions and formats with the Task Manager

Common features:

Publish Format: Select the format for your published documentation. You can choose any format supported by Help+Manual at any time. Any project can always be published to any format.

The options displayed in the Publish page depend on the publishing format selected.

Output file and path: Where you want to generate your output and the name of the output file. By default Help+Manual uses your project directory and the project name. You can change this here whenever you like, however. When you do this the program makes all necessary internal changes automatically. Your setting is stored for your project and displayed the next time you publish.

You can use the ... browse button to navigate to a different output directory.

Include Options: These options are used in combination with Help+Manual's conditional output features. Topics and content that are "tagged" with the options you select here will be included in your output, those

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

that don't match will be excluded from your output. Please study Conditions and Customized Output 969 before using!

Current format:
By default the include option for the selected output format is preselected. If you also select other options you must leave the current format option selected, otherwise only the content matching the other options will be included.

Skin include options:
If you select a skin for publishing to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM any include options stored in the skin will be displayed in a separate box. Skin authors often use these options for activating features available in the skin.

***Table of Contents*:** Active if you have defined at least one additional Table of Contents (TOC) in your project. You can then select which TOC you want to publish your project with.

Publish selected TOC items only:
Displayed in the Table of Contents menu if one or more topics in the TOC are selected. Activating this option only outputs the topics currently selected in the TOC.

Publish topics with status "Complete" only: Only exports topics with the status 1304 "complete" to your published output. This enables you to prevent topics that are not yet finished from being included in your output.

Important: This will only work if you are actually using topic status 1304 to mark your topics while working in the TOC.

Display file when complete: Automatically displays the output file as soon as it has been generated, using the appropriate viewer.

HTML Help settings:

Select Skin: Allows you to select a **`.hmskin`** skin file 638 to replace the entire design of a project while publishing. This allows you to apply a completely different layout and "branding" to your project with a single click. You can save the current project as a skin with *Save As* in the File menu.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Delete temporary files: Selected by default. Normally all the source files generated to publish HTML Help are deleted. If you deselect this you can view the source files in the `\~tmphtml` directory, which you can find in your project directory.

Webhelp settings:

Index page: The default index page for WebHelp is **`index.html`**. You can change this here, along with the output path. This is not recommended, however. If you use the standard **`index.html`** name browsers will automatically display the help if the user just access the path, without an index file name. Help+Manual remembers your setting for the current project.

Select Skin: Allows you to select a **`.hmskin`** HTML skin file 638 to replace the entire design of a project while publishing. This allows you to apply a completely different layout and "branding" to your project with a single click. You can save the current project as a skin with *Save As* in the File menu.

Delete all files in output folder: Clears all the files in the output folder before publishing. Use this when you are producing a distribution build to ensure that the folder only contains the files related to the current version of your project. Otherwise the directory may contain HTML files for topics that you have already deleted in your project, left over from previous compiles. These files take up unnecessary space and are also indexed by the indexer and included in the full-text search function, which is something you want to avoid.

Always use this function if you change the title of your project as this also changes the names of all the output files associated with the full-text search 1428 function. If the old files are present the indexer may attempt to index them, which can cause errors.

Sub-folders: This option only deletes files in the output folder, it will not delete sub-folders.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Adobe PDF settings:

Print manual template: Selects the **.mnl** print manual template 803 file to be used to generate the PDF file. This template file defines the PDF layout, generates the print-style table of contents and the index and adds a number of additional pages and other features like headers, footers, page numbers etc. You can edit your templates with the Print Manual Designer 805 included with Help+Manual.

Highlight hotspots: For testing only. Displays outlines around the hotspots and links in your PDF output. Dead links and hotspots to missing targets are also highlighted.

Publish PDF with design comments: Publish the comments from your project (normally never exported) as annotations in the PDF. This can be useful for distributing PDFs for proofreading and commenting in a team.

eWriter Help for Windows and MacOS

Since eWriter Help files are WebHelp packaged with an integrated viewer, you will generally select a WebHelp skin for publishing this format.

See eWriter Help 696 in the Publishing chapter for details on preparing your projects for publishing this type of help file.

Kindle/Mobi and ePUB eBook settings

There are no special Publish screen settings for Kindle/Mobi and ePUB eBooks.

See Kindle/Mobi and ePUB 3.0 eBooks 749 for details on configuring your projects for these output formats.

MS Word DOCX Settings

The only setting here is the selection of the layout template for your DOCX output, which is a special DOCX file.

See MS Word DOCX 682 for instructions on how to prepare and use these templates.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Visual Studio Help settings:

Visual Studio Version: Only relevant for documenting programming components in the Visual Studio .NET programming environment. Cannot be used for documenting normal user applications.

You can choose both Visual Studio 2008/HXS and Visual Studio 2010/MSHC formats. The HXS format requires installation of a special compiler from the Visual Studio 2008 .NET package. See Visual Studio Help 1464 for details.

Do not compile: Visual Studio 2008/HXS only.

This is a special debugging option for Visual Studio Help 2008 (MS Help 2.0/HXS) only. Instead of publishing a finished **.HXS** file it generates a **.HWProj** project file that you can open and compile manually in Visual Studio .NET. For details see About publishing VS Help 1135.

Delete temporary files: Selected by default. Normally all the source files generated to compile Visual Studio Help are deleted. If you deselect this you can view the source files in the `\~tmphxs` directory, which you can find in your project directory.

See also:

Conditions and Customized Output 969

11.2.5.3.2 Bookmark

This option displays a list of the bookmarks in your current project and allows you to add new bookmarks. Bookmarks mark topics, not positions within topics. You can only add one bookmark to any one topic.

You can jump to the bookmarks by selecting them in the list.

To create a new bookmark just select Bookmark Current Topic. By default the topic title is used as the bookmark title but you can change this if you want.

Automatically creating bookmarks for comments:

You can configure Help+Manual to automatically create a topic bookmark for every comment you insert. Open Program Options in the File menu and activate the option *Automatically manage topic bookmarks for every comment*. Then a bookmark with a pin in the Table of Contents will be added for every comment you create. These bookmarks can be viewed and accessed with the Bookmarks tool in the Project tab.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

Comments and bookmarks 253

11.2.5.3.3 Options

This provides links to the main configuration sections for your project in the Project Explorer. These links are just a convenience, all the sections can be accessed directly in the Configuration section of the Project Explorer.

See Project Configuration 1400.

11.2.5.4 Tools

The Tools group provides direct access to a variety of tools included with Help+Manual, including a full-featured graphics editing program, a powerful screenshot capture program and a separate editor for designing the layout templates for your PDF files and printed manuals.

These tools are covered in more detail in the Tools Included with Help+Manual 1207 chapter, and some of them also have their own help files.

See also:

Tools included with Help+Manual 1207

11.2.5.4.1 Spelling

The **Spell Check** option in the **Tools** menu provides access to Help+Manual's spell checker and its configuration options. Full details of these options and the configuration settings are can be found in The Spell Checker 1220 in the chapter on the tools included with the program.

Note that Help+Manual supports live spell checking that marks incorrectly-spelled words as you type. Just select **Spelling** > **Configure Spell Checker** and activate the *Check spelling as you type* option.

Productivity Tip
Spell checking is supported almost everywhere in Help+Manual where you can enter text. Just right-click to display the context menu or click on the upper half of the *Spelling* tool in the *Project* tab to access.

See also:

The Spell Checker 1220

11.2.5.4.2 Screen Capture

This option starts Help+Manual 's integrated screenshot program, with which you can:

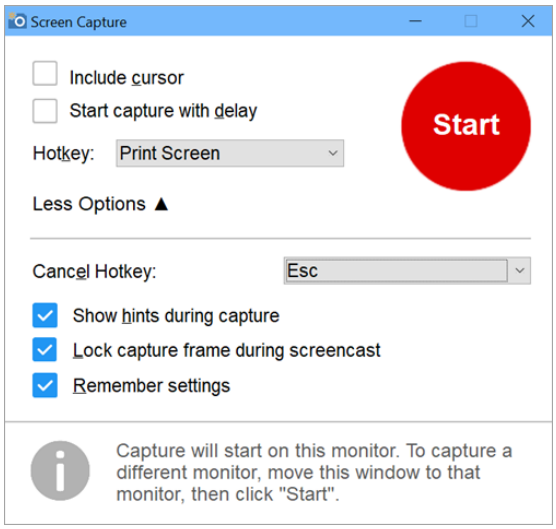
- **Take snapshots of your screen** and program components for using in your documentation. This tool captures windows, controls, menus, the entire screen and free areas.
- **Create animated screencasts.** This unique tool uses the capture and animation engine from our HelpXplain application to capture a series of screenshots and turn them into

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

an animated HowTo video. This is massively easier and faster than using a video-based tool.

For details on using this tool see Screen Capture 1207 in *Tools Included with Help+Manual*.

The Screen Capture dialog:



Click on ***More Options*** to display all the options shown in the screenshot above.

Dialog options

Start:	Starts the screenshot or screencast process.
Include cursor:	Includes the mouse pointer in the captured image.
Start with delay: (screencasts only)	Gives you a 5-second delay to open dialogs etc. before the capture process begins. This only relevant for screenshots, not for screencasts.
Hotkey: (screencasts only)	Lets you choose the hotkey you want to use for capturing slides manually in screencasts. This only relevant for screenshots, not for screencasts.
Cancel hotkey:	The key to use for canceling/exiting from the screenshot or screencast and returning to Help+Manual without doing anything.
Show hints:	Guides you through the capture process with popups and mouse-over information.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Lock frame: (screencasts only)	Locks the capture frame during the screencast capture process to prevent accidental adjustment of its size with the mouse.
Remember settings:	Stores your settings for the next capture

See also:

The Screen Capture Tool 1207 (Instructions)

11.2.5.4.3 Image Editor

By default the *Image Editor* tool in **Project** > **Tools** starts the Impict graphics editing program included with Help+Manual. You can change this to a different graphics editing program in **View** > **Program Options** > **General**.

The Impict program has its own separate help and documentation.

If you select an image in the Help+Manual editor before selecting *Image Editor* the corresponding graphics file will be loaded into the graphics editing program automatically.

See also:

The Impict Screenshot Editor 1216

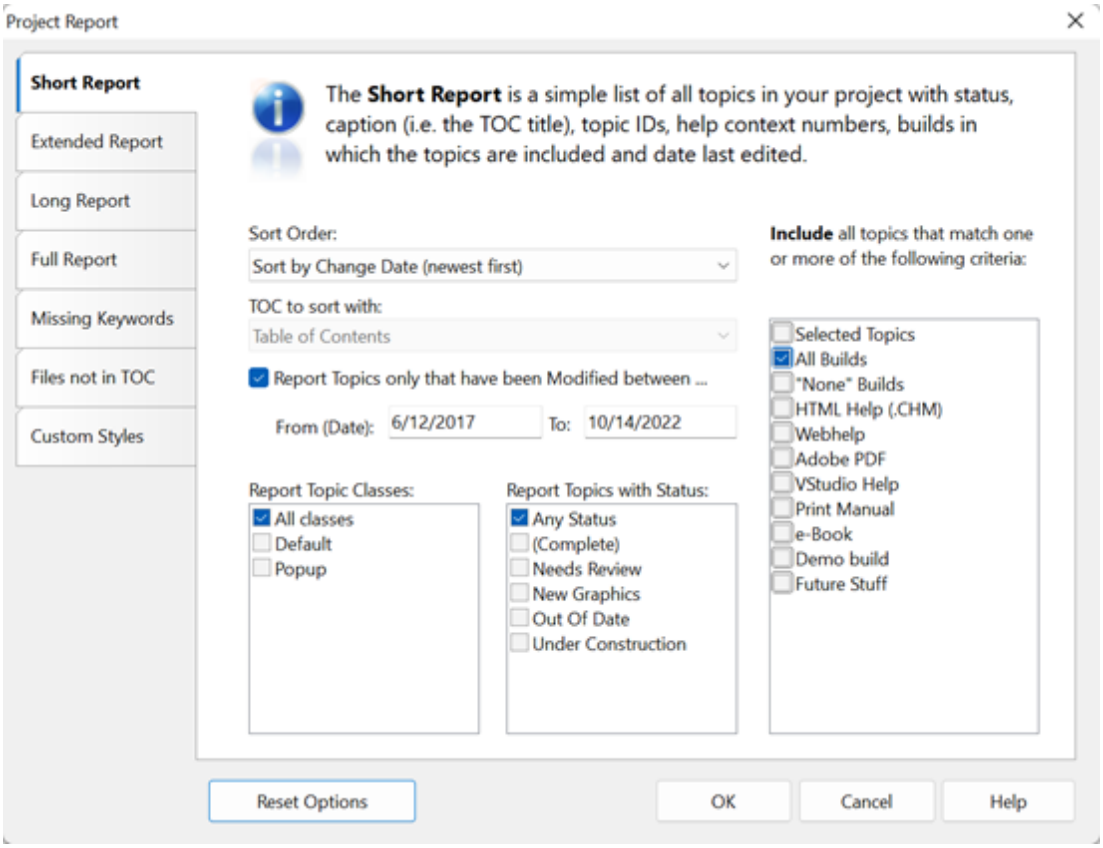
11.2.5.4.4 Report Tool

This tool generates detailed reports on your project that can be used for a wide range of purposes, including documentation, providing your programmers with lists of topic IDs for their help calls, checking project status, locating dead links, finding missing images and unused images and so on.

See the Report Tool 1212 for full details on how to generate reports.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Project Report dialog:



Note that all options that exclude topics will reduce the accuracy of link reporting (links to topics that are not included in the report will not be checked).

Dialog options

Sort order: How you want your topics to be sorted in the report. Note that only the **`Table of Contents`** sort option also includes chapters without text. All the other options (**`Topic ID`**, **`Context Number`**, **`Modification Date`**) only include topics that actually have contents.

> If you sort by context number only those topics that actually have context numbers will be included in the report!

TOC: If you have defined more than one TOC in your project you can select the TOC here to report on only the topics included in that TOC. See Multiple TOCs 343 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Modified between: Only include topics edited between two specified dates.

Report topic classes: Include only topics with specific topic classes in the report. Currently there are only two classes: Default for all normal topics and Popup for popup topics 207.

Topics with status: Include only topics with a specific editing status 373 in the report.

Include options: Include topics on the basis of predefined and user-defined include options. This works in the same way as include options in conditional output 982.

Selected Topics:
If you have selected topics in the TOC before opening the Report Tool you can select this to report on only the selected topics. Note that selecting chapters always includes all the topics in the chapter. Use **`Ctrl+Click`** and **`Shift+Click`** to select multiple topics in the TOC.

Report types

Short project report: Simple list of all topics in your project with status, caption (i.e. the TOC title), topic IDs, help context numbers, builds in which the topics are included and date last edited. The report also includes a summary of the number of topics and keywords in your project.

This is a practical format for providing your programmers with a list of topic IDs and context numbers for their calls.

Extended report: Also includes each topic's keywords and help window and a more detailed project summary at the end with a list of all the images used in the project.

Missing images are shown in red.

Long report: Also includes lists of the images used in each topic, lists of the links in each topic with their targets (including topic links, Internet links, file links and script links) and the first lines of the text with which the topic begins. As in the extended report the summary includes a list of all the images used in the project

Missing images and dead links are shown in red.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Full report:	Same as the Long Report but also includes an additional full list of images used in the project with references to the topics in which each image is used, and word and character counts 781 for individual topics and all the topics in the report. In addition to this there is also a list of images found in the project's image folders that are not used in the project (useful for tidying up your project folders). Missing images and dead links are shown in red.
Missing keywords report:	Special report that only locates topics that do not have any index keywords.
Files not in TOC report:	Special report that lists the topic files in your project that do not have TOC entries. **Caution:** If you use TOC sort order with this option you will get an empty report!
Custom styles report:	Special report that locates topics containing text with manual formatting instead of styles 273. Styles are strongly recommended for efficiency and compatibility with translation tools.

See also:

Report Tool 1212 (Instructions)

11.2.5.4.5 Index Tool

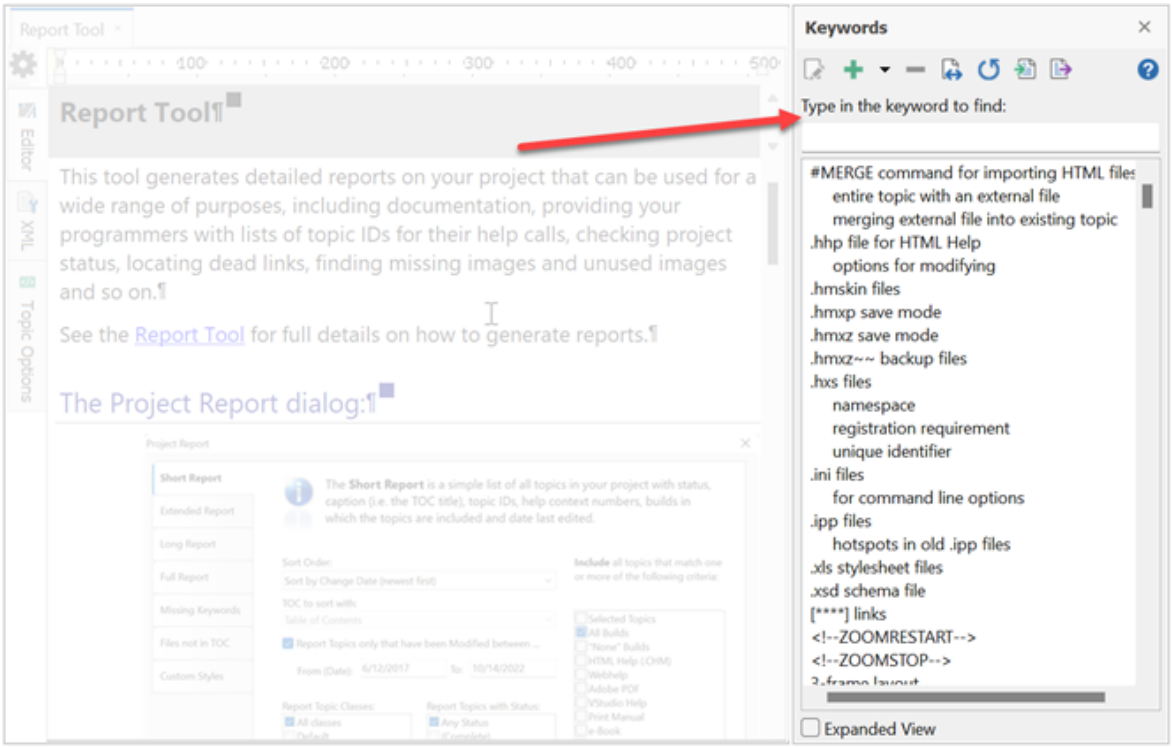
This tool displays an editable and fully-functional version of the finished index of your project. This enables you to polish and tidy your index very easily. For example you can quickly correct multiple index entries that are similar, and you can test your index links to make sure that they point to the right places. You can also use the integrated editing tools to assign existing and new keywords to multiple topics in a single operation.

The Index Tool can be used most effectively in combination with the index keyword entry functions for individual topics in the Topic Options tab on the left the main editor window.

See Keywords and Indexes 565

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Index Tool window:



Editing tools

Edit keyword

Edit the selected keyword simultaneously in all the topics where the keyword occurs. You can also add the keyword to additional topics by including them in the list on the left side of the dialog displayed.

New keyword:

Add a new keyword to one or more topics simultaneously.

Delete keyword:

Delete the selected keyword from all the topics where it is used. Access the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window to delete keyword from individual topics.

Display:

Display the topic(s) the current keyword links to.

Reload:

Reload the finished index to refresh editing changes.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Import/Export: Import index from an XML file, export the index to an XML file.

Expanded view: Includes direct links to the topics containing the keywords.

See also:

Editing the index directly 568

11.2.5.4.6 Templates & Skins

PDF Templates and Manual Designer

This menu provides access to the Manual Designer 785, with which you can edit your PDF Templates. If PDF templates have already been used with the project you can select them here to edit them in Manual Designer.

The Print Manual Designer is a separate program included with Help+Manual. It is used for editing the template files that define the layout and appearance of the PDF files and printed manuals generated from your projects. The Print Manual Designer program has its own separate help and documentation.

HTML Skins and Word DOCX templates

You can also select available HTML skins and Word DOCX templates in this menu.

HTML Skins are actually a special kind of Help+Manual project and they are opened in Help+Manual. See Transforming your output with skins 667 and HTML Output and HTML Templates 1026 for more information.

DOCX templates are Word DOCX files and they are opened in MS Word. See Word DOCX Templates 1021 for more information.

See also:

Print Manual Designer 1217
Using PDF templates 803

11.2.5.4.7 Context Tool

The Help Context Tool is used to manage the help context numbers 368 in your project. You can use it to assign, delete, import and export help context numbers in batch mode for your entire project. In addition to this you can also use the tool to automatically generate context help topics from a map file containing a list of topic IDs and context numbers.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help context numbers are a HTML Help CHM technology

Help context numbers are generally only relevant in the Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) format. They are not used natively in any other help format and programmers nowadays generally prefer to use topic IDs instead because they are more "human-readable".

However, if you are already using context numbers for your calls to your help Help+Manual also supports them in URLs for WebHelp. This allows you to use the same context IDs for accessing your web-based documentation as well. See Linking to WebHelp topics 899 for details.

See also:

The Help Context Tool 1241

11.2.5.4.8 Synchronize

The Project Synchronization tool is used for updating translated versions of your project. When your original project has been updated you use Project Synch to compare the updated original project with the old translated project. The Project Synchronizer then creates a new version for the translator containing the changed and new material that needs to be translated.

The Project Synchronizer adds new topics, deletes deleted topics, moves moved topics and marks topics with new content as changed. It also updates the table of contents, index, etc., providing a complete updated project for the translator to work on. You can also configure it to insert the new version of changed topics above the old translated version so that the translator can compare them and update the changes.

See also:

The Project Synchronization Tool 1245

11.2.6 The Write Tab

This is the tab where you will probably be spending most of your time while actually writing the content of your projects. It contains all your text formatting and editing tools and also all the tools for inserting special help features like toggles (expanding sections and images), snippets (reusable text blocks), HTML code objects and so on.

11.2.6.1 Clipboard

The **Clipboard** group contains a standard set of tools for using the Windows clipboard (Copy, Cut, Paste, Paste as Text). You can use the clipboard tools for copying both content in topics and for topics and chapters in the Project Explorer.

Remember that Drag & Drop also work both in the editor and in the Project Explorer, also between different projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Special Paste Commands:

Paste as Text:

Ctrl+Shift+V

- Pastes copied text as plain text, without any formatting (bold, underline, graphics etc).
- Use if you want to copy text without any formatting from other topics, projects or other programs such as MS Word or a web browser.
- This feature is also useful for pasting text into paragraphs formatted with styles without transferring the style of the copied text into the target paragraph.

Paste HTML:

- Paste material copied from HTML pages into Help+Manual.
- Use for copying formatted text, images etc. from web pages into the Help+Manual editor.
- When copying from some graphics programs this can be used to paste transparent PNG and GIF images from the clipboard without losing transparency. See Inserting Graphics and Screenshots 481 for details.

See also:

Copying, cutting and pasting text 233
Moving cutting and pasting topics 357

11.2.6.2 Editing

The Editing group contains basic editing commands for finding, replacing and selecting text and for undoing your editing operations. All these commands are also available via keyboard shortcuts. You can view and edit the shortcuts in **View** > **Program Options** > **Shortcuts.**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Editing group functions:

Find and Replace: Search for and replace text. You can search in topics and headers, topic keywords (index keywords), captions, the table of contents, graphics file names and conditional text tags inserted with the Conditional Text tool 994.

Undo: Undo the last editing action. Note that this must be selected repeatedly for some more complex actions.

Undo is not available for operations in the TOC!

Redo: Reverse the last Undo operation.

Redo is not available for operations in the TOC!

Select All: Selects the entire contents of the current topic or the current table cell.

See also:

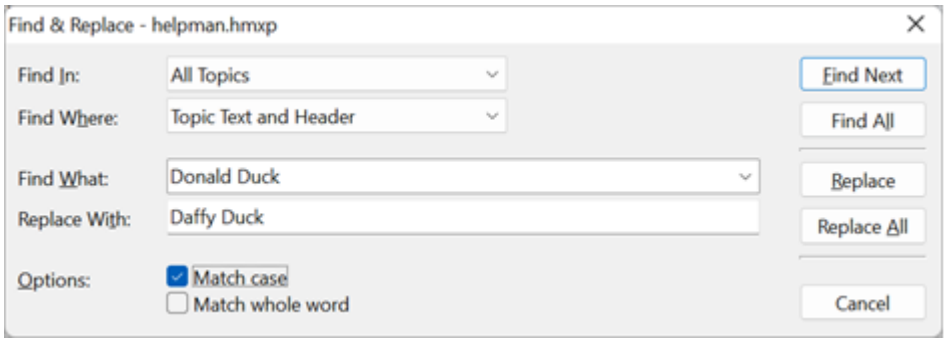
Creating and Editing Topics 172
The Project Explorer 70
Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59

11.2.6.2.1 Find & Replace Text

This is a standard find and replace function but with a couple of extra features for finding and replacing in Help+Manual projects. The dialog can be used both for simple searches and for replacing text. The dialog serves dual purpose, both for searching without replacing and for searching and replacing in the same operation.

Note that you cannot search for or replace text in the topic captions in the Table of Contents (TOC).

The Find & Replace dialog:



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that some of the buttons on the right will be disabled depending on where and how you are searching. For example, you cannot replace in the Table of Contents, but you can in Captions (TOC captions, topic titles). Wildcard characters are not supported.

Dialog options:

Find in: Search in the current topic (default), all topics from here or all Topics.

Find Where:

- **Topic text and header** searches the content of your topics.
- **Topic keywords** searches the keywords stored in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window.
- **Table of Contents** locates topics in the TOC by their title. Replace is not supported in this mode.
- **Captions** searches the TOC captions (topic title) stored in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. Replace is supported in this mode.
- **Image filenames** searches for references to graphics files. You can use this mode to "replace" images in your project by making image references point to different graphics files.
- **Conditional texts** searches for conditional text tags inserted with the Conditional Text tool 994.

Find what: Enter the text you want to find here.

Replace with: Enter the replacement text here.

Find Next: Starts or continues the search.

Find All: Finds all occurrences of the search term and displays them in a report screen with links to the topics.

Replace: Replaces the current instance.

Replace All: Replaces all instances of the search text. A prompt is displayed to make sure that you want to do this before proceeding.

Note that the scope of Replace All is also defined by the selections you make in Search Options!

See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

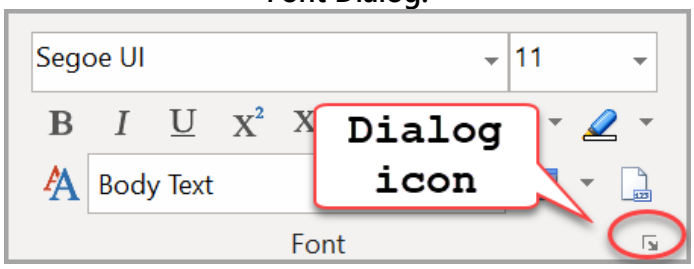
Searching for text, topics and referrers 235
Find Topic 1304
Find Referrers 1306

11.2.6.3 Font

Most of the formatting tools in the **Font** group should be self-explanatory. They are very similar to the options available in normal word processors. There are just a couple that deserve extra mention and explanation.

Font formatting tools

Font Dialog:

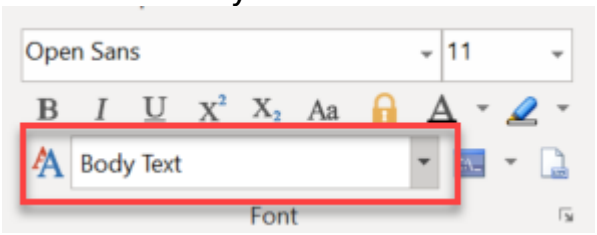


Clicking on the Font Dialog icon at the bottom right corner of the Font group opens the full font formatting dialog. See Format Font 1329 for more details.

Protect Text:

Protects text from change and translation. Select text and click to apply. Protected text is displayed with a shaded background and is tagged with the attribute *translate="false"* in the XML source code of your topic file.

Style selector:



Shows the style applied to the current text at the cursor and can be used to select a new style. Used for both text and paragraph styles. If text is manually formatted or imported you must select it first to apply a style, otherwise the style will be applied to the entire current paragraph.

Syntax highlighting:

Tool for applying standardized syntax highlighting to program code in a number of different languages.

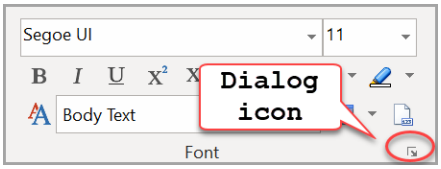
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Count words:	Count the words in selected text or the current topic. See Word and Character Count 781 for more options.
Subscript, Superscript, Upper/Lower Case, Text Color, Highlight Color	Functions for applying these functions to selected text.

See also:

Text Formatting & Styles 273
Formatting Program Source Code 310

11.2.6.3.1 Format Font



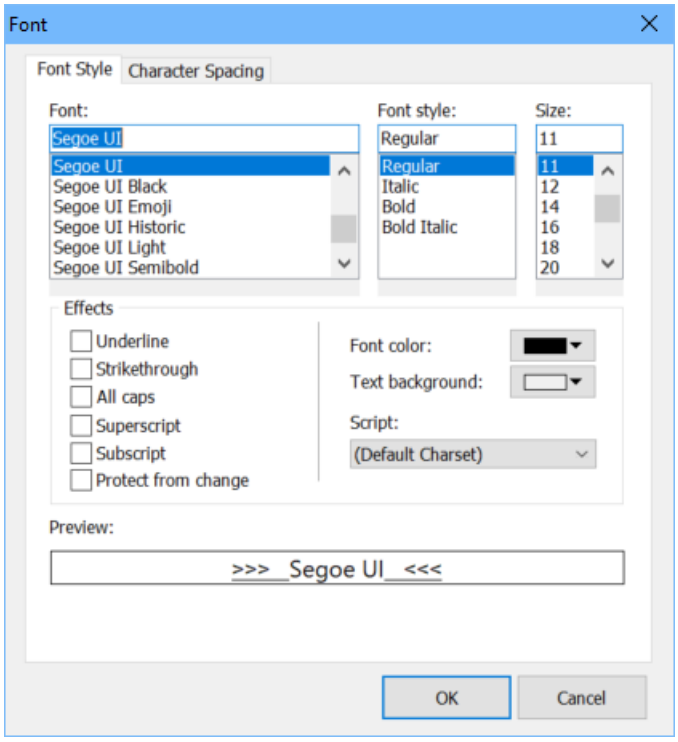
Click the dialog icon in the Font group to display the Font dialog

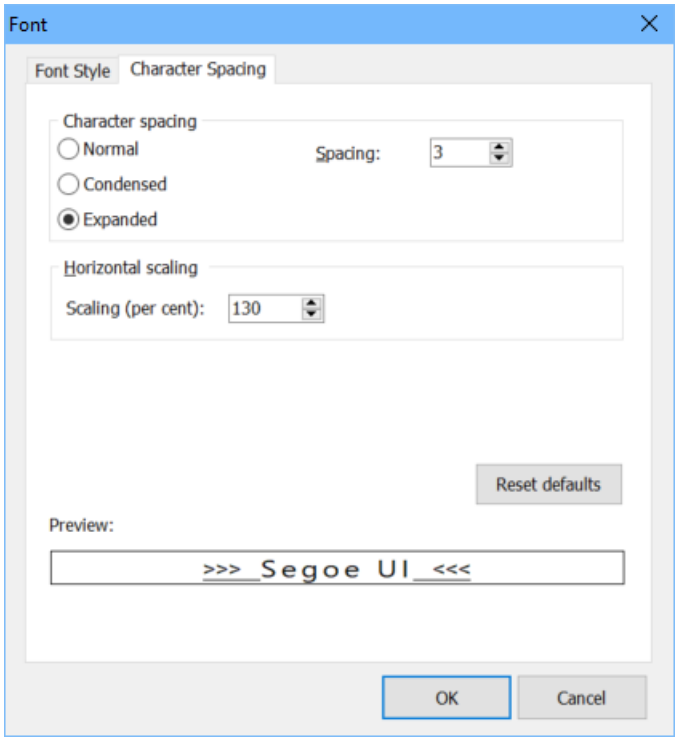
This is a standard font formatting dialog. Everything should be familiar from word processing programs and pretty self-explanatory. Exactly the same dialogs are displayed for formatting text manually 274 and for defining styles 281. The only difference when you define a style is that your formatting is stored in the style for reuse. All font attributes can either be used directly or for defining styles.

The Format Font dialog:

This dialog is displayed by clicking on the little Dialog icon in the toolbar (see above).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved





Font formatting principles:

- When formatting text manually select text before selecting the Font dialog to apply formatting to text.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- If you apply font attributes without selecting text they will only be applied to new text typed at the current cursor position.
- Remember that only standard fonts will be present on most user's computers for most output formats!

Font tab options:

The only option here that is not self-explanatory is *Script:*, which is important for texts in non-English languages. If you are having problems with displaying special characters in these languages always check the Script setting, particularly if you have imported your text from RTF, HTML or CHM files.

Character Spacing tab options:

Character spacing:	These options increase or decrease the spaces ("leading") between individual characters. The effects are shown directly in the preview box.
Horizontal scaling:	This "stretches" or "compresses" the text horizontally. The effects are shown directly in the preview box.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273

11.2.6.3.2 Syntax Highlighting

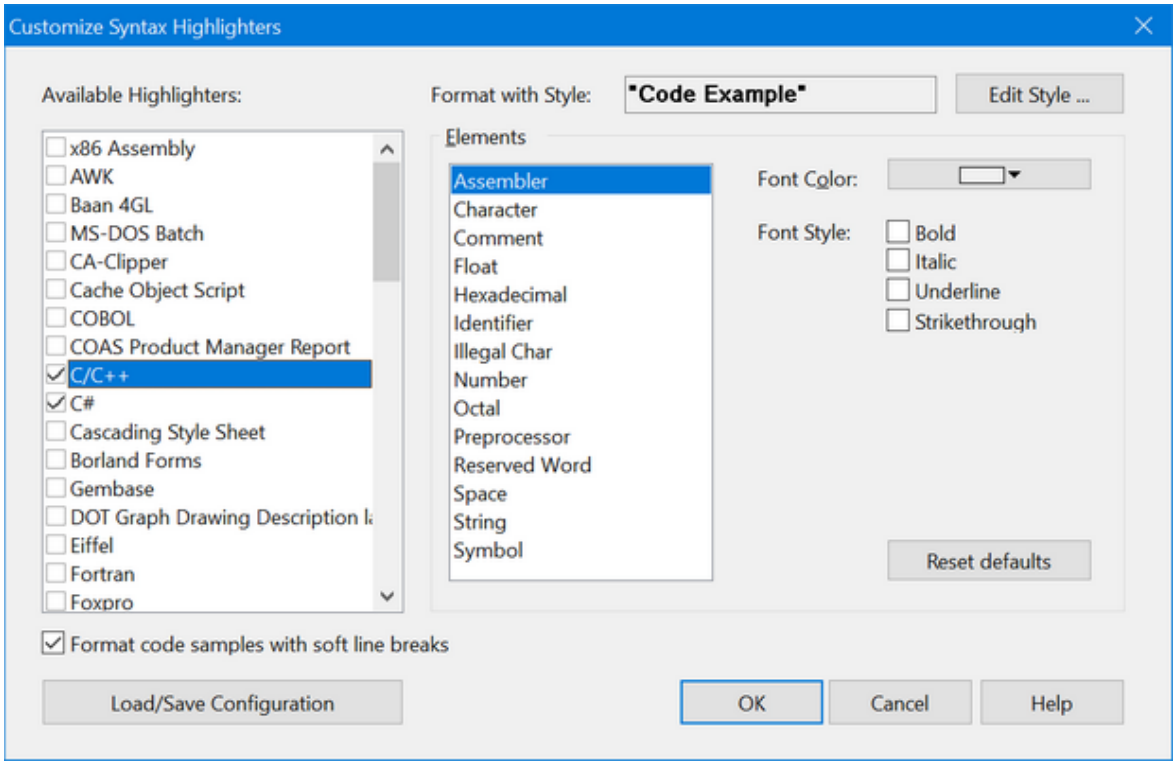
This menu option applies highlights program code text to make it easier to read. A number of programming languages are supported, and you can customize the highlighting styles for each program language.

For more details see Formatting program source code 310.

Options for predefined languages

This dialog is displayed when you select **Format** > **Syntax Highlighting** > **Customize**. The following options are available when you select one of the predefined languages:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Format with style: The basic appearance of all text formatted with the Syntax Highlighting function is controlled by the standard **`Code Example`** style. This is the currently only style you can use for syntax highlighting.

Edit Style ... Opens the **Edit Styles** dialog to edit the **Code Example** style.

Elements: Settings for defining the color and font styles of the various elements highlighted by the function.

Format with soft breaks: Use soft line breaks instead of paragraphs for code examples. This can be necessary to get the desired results in some cases.

Reset defaults: Resets all settings for the current language to the default values. This also replaces any reserved words you have loaded.

Additional options for custom highlighters

If you select one of the three custom highlighters at the bottom of the list you have the following additional options for defining your own language highlighting rules:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Quotes: Specify whether single or double quotes are to be identified as quotes.

Identifiers: The relevant characters that are allowed in identifiers for the language you are using. This should normally be set to ***A-Za-z0-9***, and/or an explicit list. Identifiers are all special words used in the language.

Sequential character classes are identified with the beginning and end characters linked with a dash (0-9), otherwise you just enter explicit characters. For example, if you want to include the $ and _ characters as well as alphanumeric characters, you would enter:

```
0-9a-zA-Z$_
```

Don't use commas or spaces!

That would include the comma and space characters as identifiers. Then "ERROR,LIST" and "ERROR LIST" would both be identified as a single keyword.

Include all the characters you use in your list!

You should include **all** the characters that can appear in variables and keywords in your identifiers character list. For example, if you include the underscore character in your variable names, you **must** also include it in your identifiers list. If you don't, the characters between underscores will be identified as a separate word.

How the identifier characters are used

Only words that contain only the characters listed in the Identifiers list will be checked. If the word is in the list of reserved words it will get the reserved words formatting. If it is not, it will get the identifiers formatting.

A different category will be applied if a word does not consist of the identifier characters, or if it is covered by another rule (Number, Comment, String etc).

Comments: The commenting style used. You can currently only choose between a list of preset commenting styles, but this should cover most needs.

Edit reserved words: Create and edit a list of reserved words for your custom language. You can paste lists of words into the editing dialog. Only the characters you define in the Identifiers setting can be included in your

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

reserved words. If the words include other characters they will be ignored by the highlighter.

See also:

Formatting program source code 310

11.2.6.4 Paragraph

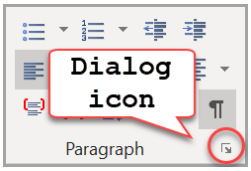
The **Paragraph** group contains the tools for formatting paragraphs manually. In addition to justification, line spacing and indents this also includes tools for creating bulleted and numbered lists and applying borders and background colors to paragraphs.

The following reference only shows the Paragraph group tools that are not entirely self-explanatory.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Paragraph group tools:

Paragraph dialog:



Clicking on the small dialog icon in the bottom right corner opens the normal paragraph formatting dialog in which you can apply all available paragraph formatting settings.

Lists:

Tools for bulleted and numbered lists. List definitions are separate from styles. Click on the arrows next to the list tools to display a list style gallery and the options for opening the list dialogs.

Indents:

Increase and decrease paragraph indents. These tools can also be used in lists, where they change the level of the list items.

Borders and Shading:

Displays a menu in which you can apply individual simple borders or open the full Borders and Backgrounds dialog to set more complex options for the current paragraph.

Alignment and Line Spacing:

Adjusts the paragraph alignment and line spacing.

Clicking on the main line spacing button successively increases the line spacing of the text at the cursor. The menu displayed with the arrow on the right of the button allows you to select a range of individual line spacing options.

Keep with Next, Keep Together, Word Wrap:

Keep current paragraph with next paragraph, keep selected paragraphs together, turn word wrap on and off.

Be careful with the keep together options. If you over-use them you can create oversized unbreakable blocks that run off the bottom of the page.

Keep with next and keep together are only active in PDF and Word output.

Text marks:

Clicking this tool displays paragraph end markers and tab characters in your text so that you can see them more easily. You can turn this on permanently with the settings in **View** > **Program Options** > **Editor**.

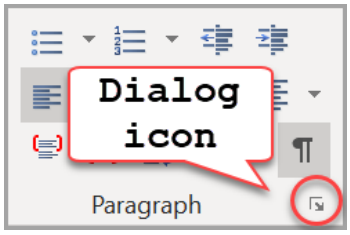
See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Numbered and bulleted lists 313

11.2.6.4.1 Format Paragraph



The dialog icons opens the Paragraph dialog

This is the manual paragraph formatting dialog displayed when you select the Dialog icon 1334 in the **Paragraph** group. Most of its features should be familiar from word processing programs and pretty self-explanatory. Exactly the same dialogs are displayed for formatting text manually 274 and for defining styles 281.

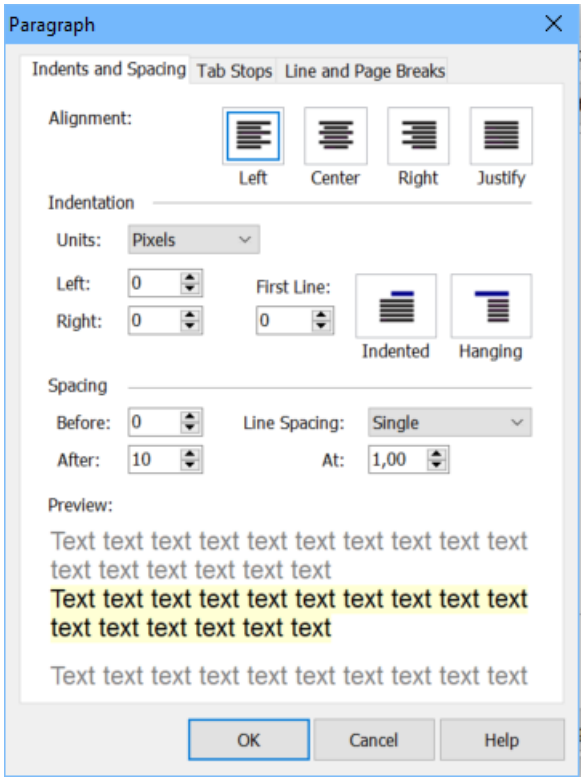
When formatting text manually paragraph attributes are applied to all paragraphs that are at least partially selected, or to the paragraph in which the cursor is currently located.

Internally, Help+Manual handles all measurements in pixels. For maximum precision working in pixels rather than inches or centimeters is recommended. You can change your measurement units setting globally in **View** > **Program Options** > **Editor** > **Ruler Units** 1265.

The Indents and Spacing and Tab Stops tabs:

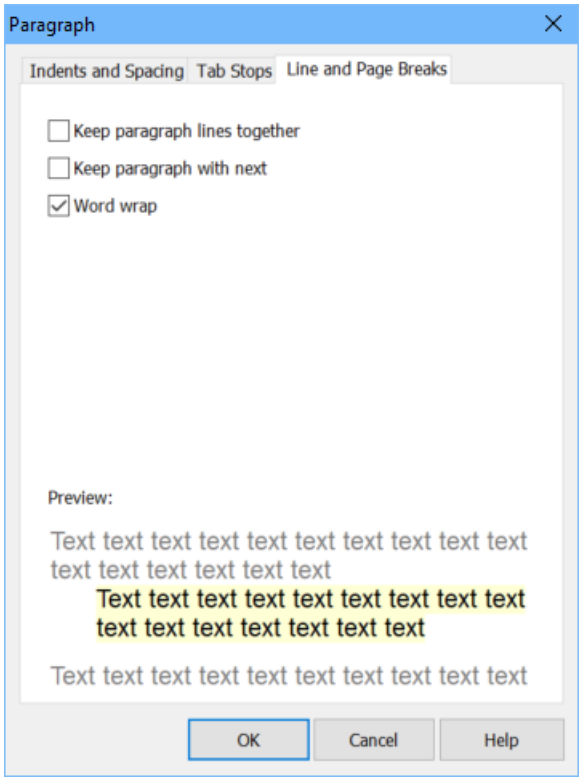
All the settings in these tabs are exactly the same as in a normal word processor and should be self-explanatory. Note that tab stops are not supported in HTML-based formats and should generally only be used in hanging indents, where they are automatically converted in HTML output. Please see Using indents 299 for details on using indents in help files.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved


Paragraph
Indents and Spacing
Tab Stops
Line and Page Breaks
Alignment:
Left
Center
Right
Justify
Indentation
Units:
Pixels
Left:
0
Right:
0
First Line:
0
Indented
Hanging
Spacing
Before:
0
After:
10
Line Spacing:
Single
At:
1,00
Preview:
Text text text

The Line and Page breaks tab:

The first two settings in this tab are only used for printing manuals and generating PDF and Word output. They are ignored in all other output formats.


Paragraph
Indents and Spacing
Tab Stops
Line and Page Breaks
Keep paragraph lines together
Keep paragraph with next
Word wrap
Preview:
Text text text

In HTML-based output formats turning off word wrap is achieved by converting all spaces to non-breaking spaces. You can then also use leading spaces for indenting text.

See also:

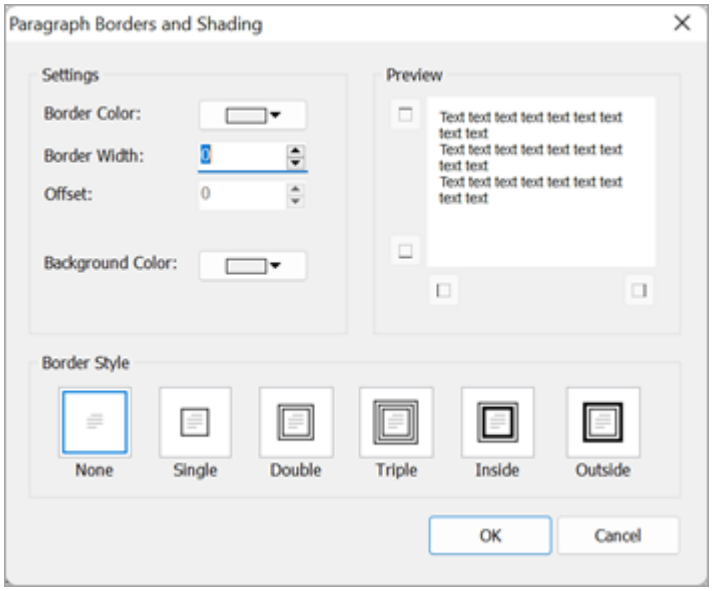
Text Formatting and Styles 273
Using indents 299
Tabs, indents and HTML 1500

11.2.6.4.2 Format Borders and Shading

This dialog is displayed by clicking on the Borders tool in the **Write** > **Paragraph** group and then selecting *Borders and Shading*.

These settings allow you to apply borders and colored backgrounds to paragraphs. Most of its features should be familiar from word processing programs and pretty self-explanatory. Exactly the same dialogs are displayed for formatting text manually 274 and for defining styles 281.

The Format Borders & Shading tab:



When you format text manually border and background attributes are applied to all paragraphs that are at least partially selected, or to the paragraph in which the cursor is currently located.

Multiple paragraphs with a background color may have white space between them. Multiple paragraphs with borders will have individual borders around each paragraph instead of one border around all paragraphs. To avoid these problems press SHIFT-ENTER instead of ENTER between paragraphs with borders and backgrounds.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Dialog options:

Settings:	These settings define the color and dimensions of the border and the background. The *Offset* is the distance between the border and the paragraph.
Preview:	The buttons around the Preview window activate or deactivate the border display for top / bottom / left / right.
Border style:	You must select one of these styles to display borders. If **None** (the default) is selected no borders will be displayed!

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273

11.2.6.4.3 Format Bullets and Numbering

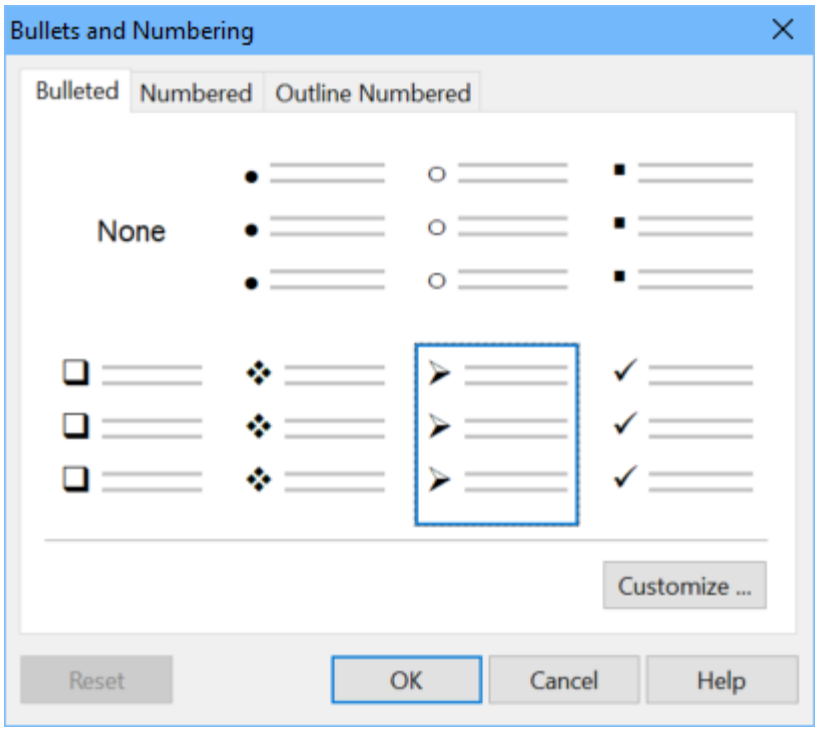
This dialog is displayed when you click on the Bulleted or Numbered List tool in **Write** > **Paragraph** and then select the Bullets and Numbering option displayed below the list styles displayed.

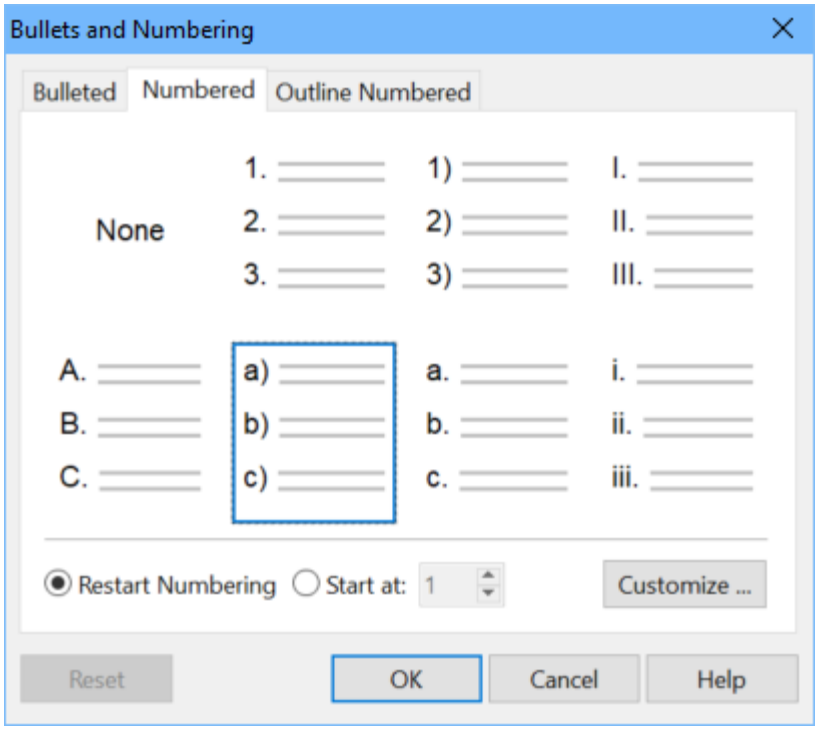
To apply a bulleted or numbered list select paragraphs in the editor, display this dialog and then select one of the list styles.

Although selecting numbered and bulleted lists is very simple using them properly in Help+Manual requires a little more information. Please see Numbered and bulleted lists 313 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Format Bullets & Numbering dialogs:





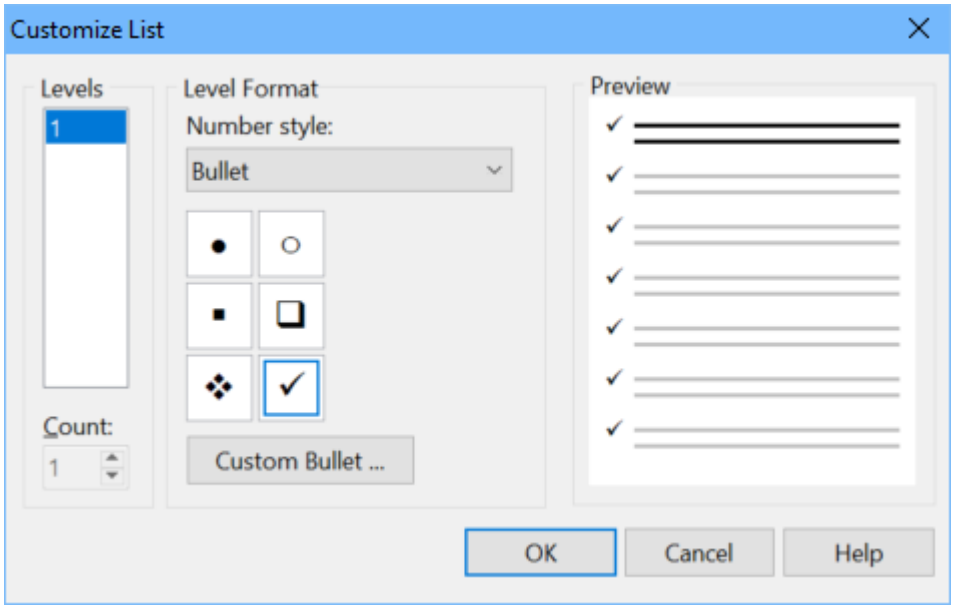
Restart numbering / Select to restart the numbering of the current item or list with a

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Start at:	different number. You can also use this to reset the numbering of a list to begin at 1.
Customize:	Select to modify the currently selected bullet or numbering style.
Reset:	Select to reset the current bullet or numbering style to its default settings.

The Customize dialog (Bullets):

Displayed by selecting *Customize* in the *Bulleted* tab. Edits the properties for the bullets style selected in the main tab.

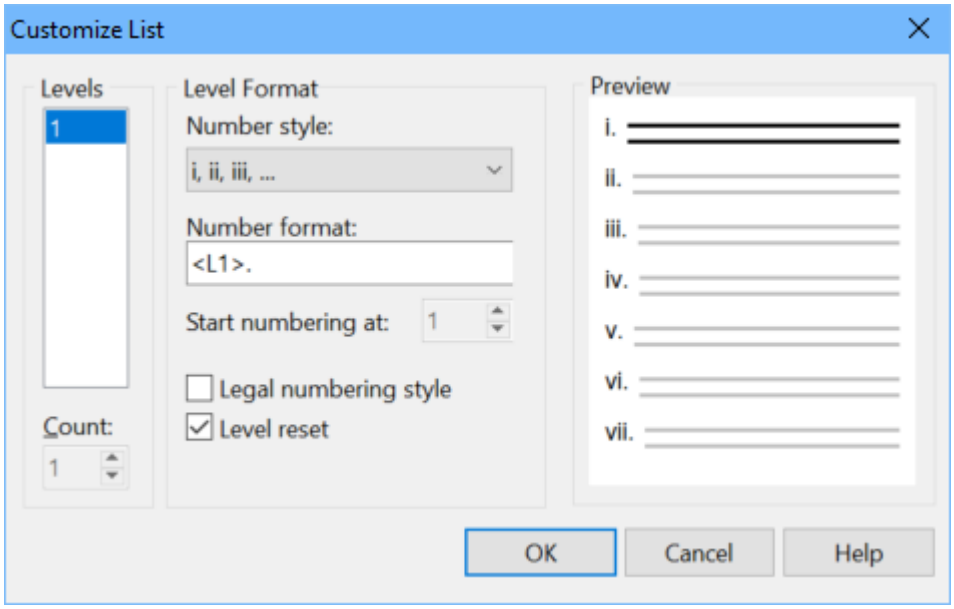


Levels:	Number of levels in the list. This is not active for bulleted lists, which always only have one level.
Level Format:	Formatting and style for the current level. Bulleted lists always only have one level.
Number style:	Selecting anything except *Bullet* here switches to a numbered list.
Select Bullet:	Select a different character to use for the bullet in the bulleted list. The selected character will be displayed in the preview box on the right.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Customize dialog (Numbered List):

Displayed by selecting *Customize* in the *Numbered* tab. Edits the properties for the numbered list style selected in the main tab.



Levels: Number of levels in the list. This is not active for ordinary lists, which always only have one level.

Level Format: Formatting and style for the current level. Ordinary numbered lists always only have one level.

Number style: You can choose a variety of styles for your numbered list. Experiment!

Number format: The format of the number displayed in the list. The variable <L1> displays the list number and should not be deleted. Any other characters you enter will be added to the number. The result is displayed in the preview box on the right.

Start numbering at: Only active for lower levels of outline numbered lists (see below).

Legal numbering style: Activates legal numbering style for outline numbered lists, with all the list numbers at the left margin (see below).

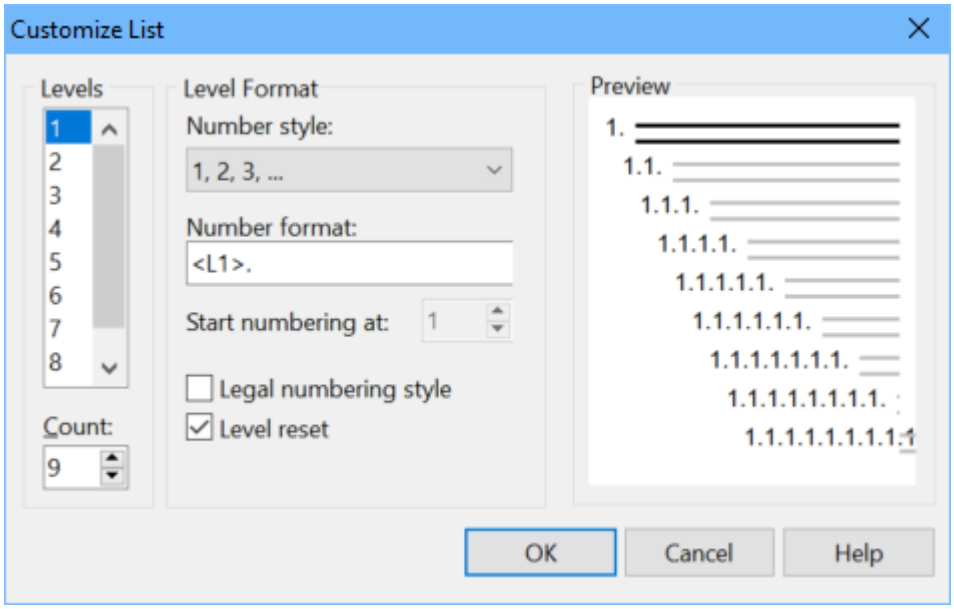
Level reset: When this is selected the numbering of sub-levels in outline numbered lists always re-starts with 1 or the equivalent (see be-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

low).

The Customize dialog (Outline Numbered List):

Displayed by selecting *Customize* in the *Outline Numbered* tab. Edits the properties for the outline numbered list style selected in the main tab.



Levels / Count: Number of levels in the outline numbered list style. You can change the number of levels by adjusting the *Count:* value.

Level Format: Formatting and style for the current level. Select the level to modify by clicking in the *Levels* box.

Number style: You can choose a variety of styles for your numbered list. Experiment!

Number format: The format of the number displayed in the list. The variables <L1>, <L2> etc. (for the levels) display the list numbers and should not be deleted. Any other characters you enter will be added to the number. The result is displayed in the preview box on the right.

Start numbering at: Resets the starting number of the current level. Only active for lower levels of outline numbered lists.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Legal numbering style: Activates legal numbering style for outline numbered lists, with all the list numbers at the left margin. **This setting must be set separately for each level of an outline numbered list!**

Legal Style:	Normal Style (default):
1. Text	**1.** Text
1.1. Text	**1.1.** Text
1.1.1. Text	**1.1.1.** Text

Level reset: When this is selected the numbering of sub-levels in outline numbered lists always re-starts with 1 or the equivalent. Otherwise the numbering continues from one sub-level to the next. Must be selected separately for each level of the outline numbered list.

With Level Reset (default):	Without Level Reset:
1. Text	**1.** Text
a) Text	**a)** Text
b) Text	**b)** Text
2. Text	**2.** Text
a) Text	**c)** Text
b) Text	**d)** Text

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273
Numbered and bulleted lists 313

11.2.6.5 Styles

The Styles group contains the main functions for editing and manipulating text, paragraph and table styles. Using styles effectively can radically speed up your work and will also make your projects look more uniform and professional. They will also save you a lot of time – once you have got styles set up you can change the fonts and formatting in your entire project in a couple of minutes just by changing your style definitions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Styles group functions:

Edit Styles: Display the dialog for creating and editing text, paragraph and table styles.

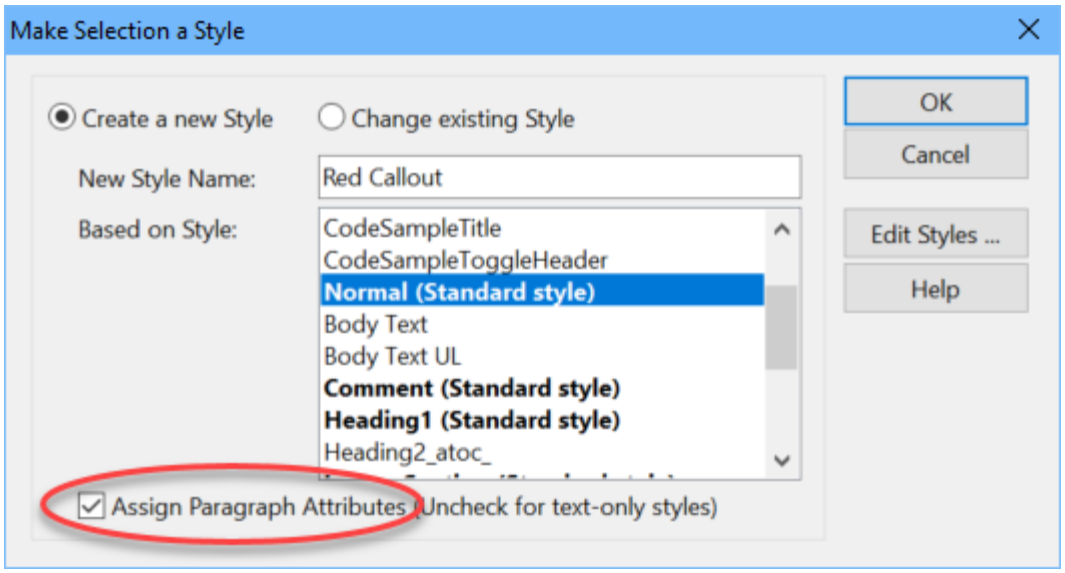
Create Style from Selection: Uses the text and paragraph settings at the cursor position to create a new style or redefine an existing style.

Replace Styles: Global search and replace operation to replace formatting and styles in your entire project. Searches for text attributes and paragraph attributes separately.

11.2.6.5.1 Create Style from Selection

This option turns the current selection into a dynamic style that you can reuse. Formatting text manually and then turning it into a style is often easier than designing a style "from scratch" in the styles definition dialogs.

If no text is selected the function uses the attributes of the paragraph in which the cursor is currently located, including the paragraph attributes and the text attributes at the current cursor position.



Dialog options

Create a new style: Define a completely new style using the current selection as a model.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Change existing style:	Redefine an existing style. The style assigned to the current selection or cursor position is the default but you can select another style to redefine.
New style name:	Enter a new name or accept the name of the style you want to redefine.
Based on style:	Select a "parent" child to make the new or redefined style the child of another style. If you select a paragraph style as the parent the new style will also be a paragraph style.
Assign paragraph attributes:	Assigns both the text and paragraph attributes of the current selection to the new or redefined style.
Edit Styles:	Opens the **Edit Styles** dialog for more detailed styles editing.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273
Defining styles 281

11.2.6.5.2 Edit Styles

This dialog contains all the settings for creating and editing text, paragraph and table styles. For full details on creating, editing and using styles please see Text Formatting and Styles 273.

Table styles and text/paragraph styles

To display the options for table styles just click on one of the entries in the *Table Styles* section on the left. In the same way, display the options for text and paragraph styles by clicking on one of the entries in the *Text & Paragraph* Styles section.

Image styles

The image styles 29 are a separate group in the styles list, in the same way as the Table and Text & Paragraph styles.

Dual Styles for electronic help and print-style help (PDF etc.)

Screen View and Print View tabs:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can define two sets of settings for each style: **Screen View** is for electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp and eWriter Help), **Print View** is for page-style formats (PDF, Print User Manual, Word DOCX and ePUB eBooks).

You can switch between the Screen and Print View style settings in the Help+Manual editor by clicking on the Screen/Print button in the status bar at the bottom of the main program window.

Dialog options

Style name:	Name of the current style.
Based on style:	The "parent" style of the current style. Styles inherit all attributes that you do not explicitly change from their parent style. You can change the parent style by selecting a different style in this field.
Shortcut:	The keyboard shortcut for selecting the style. To add a shortcut just click in this field and press the key combination for the shortcut.
Add Style	Creates a new style definition.
Remove Style	Deletes the current style. If the style has any sub-styles (child styles) they will also be deleted (a warning is displayed). Not active for Help+Manual's standard styles, which cannot be deleted.
Copy Styles From...	Copies the styles definition set from another Help+Manual project. This completely overwrites the current style definition set, replacing it with the definitions of the other project.
Font, Paragraph, Borders (Text & Para-	These buttons display the dialogs for formatting the *Font*, *Paragraph* and *Borders & Backgrounds* attributes of the current style.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

graph Styles)	The dialogs are exactly the same as the standard Format Font 1329, Format Paragraph 1336 and Format Borders & Backgrounds 1339 dialogs.
Modify Layout (Table and Image Styles)	Displays the layout settings for table styles. These settings are a subset of the normal Table Properties dialog.
Reset Style	Resets the current styles to the default settings. Always use this before defining a text-only style 281 to make sure that you do not accidentally include paragraph or border attributes.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273
Dynamic Styles 1482

11.2.6.5.3 Replace Styles

This is quite a complex and powerful tool for replacing formatting and styles globally throughout your entire project. It replaces font and paragraph styles and settings separately, in two separate operations, and requires a little planning to use. See Replacing Formatting and Styles 1143 for details.

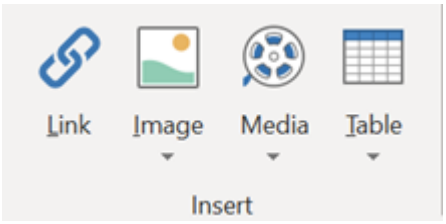
See also:

Replacing Formatting and Styles 1143

11.2.6.6 Insert / Insert Object

The **Insert** and **Insert Object** groups in the Write tab are particularly important. They contains options for inserting different kinds of hyperlinks and all the objects that you can use in Help+Manual topics in addition to text. You can also insert tables here so that you don't have to switch to the **Table** tab while you are working.

Insert group:



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

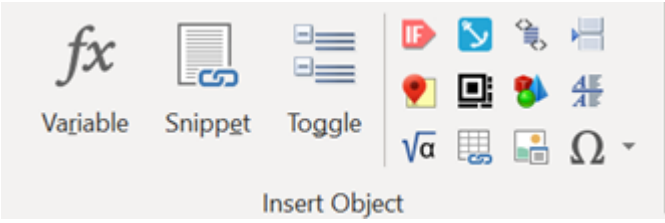
Link: Displays the dialog for inserting hyperlinks in your topic. You can insert topic links, file links, internet/email links and links that run scripts or macros. Select text first to create

Image: Displays the dialog for inserting a graphic in your topic.

Media: Displays the dialog for inserting a video or other media in your topic.

Table: A graphical tool for inserting tables quickly and a link to the standard Insert Table dialog.

Insert Object group



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Text Variable: Displays the dialog for inserting a text variable 917 in your topic. Includes both the program's predefined variables and any variables you have defined for your project.

Snippet: Inserts a topic or an external Help+Manual XML file as a snippet 265 which can be either linked or pasted. Linked snippets are dynamic and update automatically when the linked file is changed. Pasted snippets are like ordinary cut and paste.

Toggle: Insert toggles 382: expanding sections, expanding inline text and expanding images. These items "grow" when the user clicks on them in the help. Only supported in HTML-based output formats with JavaScript.

Conditional Text: Displays the dialog for inserting conditional text tags 994 to include or exclude text and other content from your output on the basis of conditions.

Topic Anchor: Displays the dialog for inserting an anchor 415 in your topic as a target for topic links and other references. (Anchors can also be used as targets for HTML links in WebHelp.)

HTML Code Object: Displays the dialog for inserting inline HTML code 469 in your topics for adding features and functionality in HTML-based output formats. This code is ignored in all non-HTML based output formats.

Manual Page Break: Inserts a hard page break 245 at the cursor position. Page breaks are only used in PDF, Printed Manuals and Word output. They are ignored in all other formats.

Print orientation: Landscape / Portrait

When you insert a manual page break you can decide whether you want the orientation to switch between landscape and portrait mode. This enables you to use both landscape and portrait pages within a single document.

Comment/Bookmark: Opens the dialog for entering a comment 253 for yourself or others working on the project. Comments can also be used as bookmarks, with which you can find and jump to places in your project quickly with *Bookmark* in **Project > Project**. Comments and bookmarks are not included in your output.

QR Code: Insert a QR code 262. These codes can be directly interpreted by smartphone cameras. If the QR code contains a web hyperlink scanning the code will automatically open the referenced page in the smartphone's browser.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

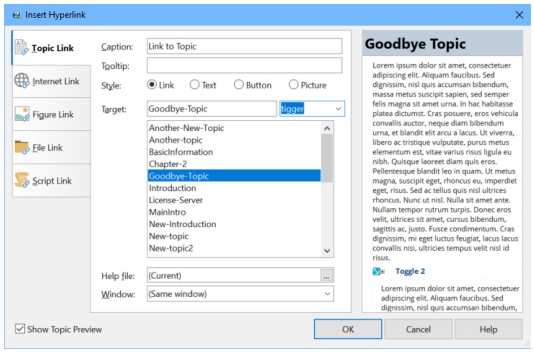
See also:

- Using Graphics 479
- Adding video files 548
- Re-using content with snippets 265
- Using OLE Objects 1139
- Using Context-Sensitive Help 892
- Using Variables 917
- Conditions and Customized Output 969

11.2.6.6.1 Link

This dialog contains all the options for inserting hyperlinks in your topics. For detailed instructions see the Links, Anchors, Macros Scripts and HTML 409 chapter. The appearance of the dialog changes depending on the kind of link you are inserting.

The Insert Hyperlink dialog:



Common options for all link types:

Caption / Picture: The caption displayed in the text for the link if you are creating a text link. If you select text in the editor before invoking the Insert Link function the selected text is displayed here.

If you select **`Picture`** in the **Style** section (see below) **Picture:** is displayed above this field instead of **Caption:**. The browse button to the right of the entry field is then activated so that you can select a picture to use.

Using the `Automating Publishing Jobs` variable:
If you type this variable in the *Caption:* field it will automatically insert the title of the target topic as the caption of the link when you publish your project. See Inserting topic links 410 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Tooltip: Adds text for a tooltip that is displayed on mouseover in HTML-based output formats.

Style:

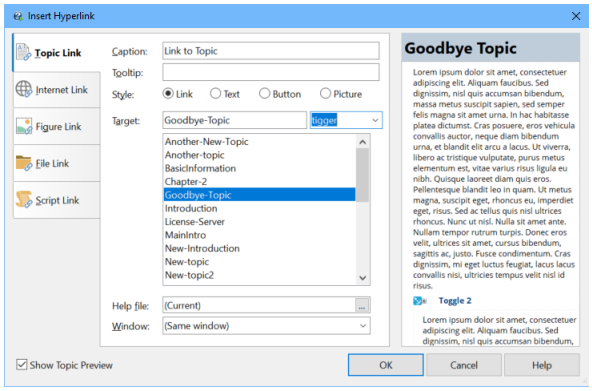
Link: The standard link format: text link, displayed in blue with an underline.

Text: Displays the link as plain text that you must format yourself in the editor. If you don't format the link it will be active but it will not look any different from the text around it, i.e. it will not be identifiable as a link.

Button: Displays the link as a standard Windows button. The caption in the Caption: field is used as the label text on the button.

Picture: Uses a graphic as the link instead of a text caption. The supported graphics types are indicated by file extensions are displayed in the dialog displayed when you click on the ... Browse button to select a file.

Topic link dialog options:



Help file: The file containing the topic you want to link to. By default this is the current project file but you can also create links to other project files and compiled HTML Help CHM files.

Click on the ... browse button to select a different help file. Its topics will then be displayed in the **Topic ID** list.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The target help file must be present in the same directory as the file containing the link at runtime (i.e. on the user's computer). Also, the target help file must have the same format as the help file containing the link. You cannot create links between help files of different types, only between two CHM files.

Window: Only relevant in HTML Help. If you have defined secondary window types for your project you can select a different help window type for opening the target topic.

In HTML Help selecting a secondary help window here only opens an external window if secondary HTML Help windows are activated in the Help Windows 1454 configuration. If they are not activated this setting has no effect in HTML Help.

Topics in HTML Help do not change their background colors when you specify a secondary help window in a hyperlink. Their colors are defined by the HTML template of their own window type definition and this cannot be changed by a link. Even when they are displayed in an external window the secondary window type only controls the appearance of the window, not of the topic itself.

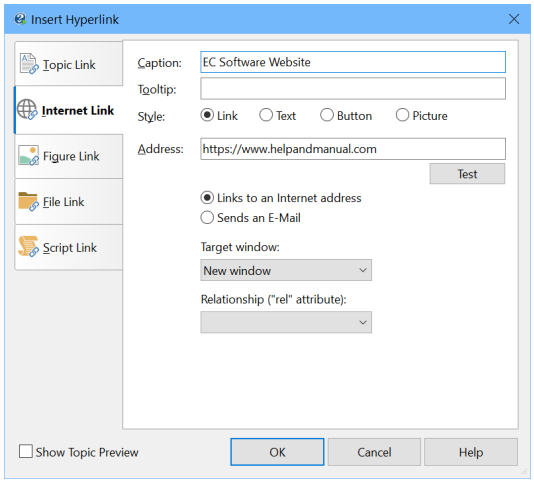
Target: The topic ID of the topic you want to link to. Select the ID from the list or type its name in the entry field. Each letter you type will automatically display the first topic matching that letter.

Anchor: (drop-down list next to Target:) Use to link to an anchor inside the selected topic, so that clicking on the link takes the user directly to the position of the anchor. Anchors are only displayed here if the target topic already contains anchors. If you have just inserted an anchor in the target topic it is not displayed until you save your project.

Topic preview: Preview of the target topic

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Internet link dialog options:



Address: The website URL or email address you want to link to. Always enter a complete URL for websites, including the `http://` protocol prefix. Links without this prefix sometimes don't work in HTML Help.

Test Test the URL. Opens your browser or email program.

Links to an Internet address: Select to enter a website URL.

Sends an email: Select to enter an email address.

Target window:

Same as referring topic
Opens the web page in the current browser window or the help viewer if possible. (The Windows Exe eBook viewers cannot display web pages, ePUB readers will only open a browser if possible and available.)

> Use this option instead of ***`Top frame`*** when loading web pages into WebHelp topics if you want the Table of Contents to remain visible when the web page is loaded.

New window:
Opens the web page in a new browser window.

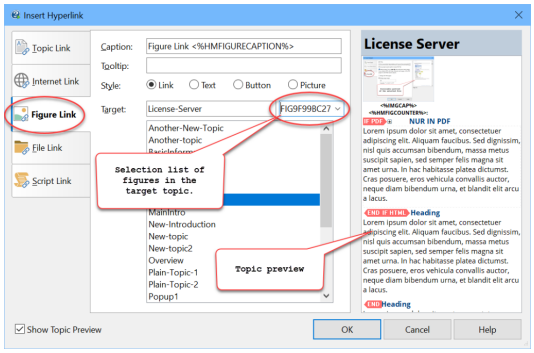
Top frame:
This option is designed for WebHelp output. It loads the web page into the topmost frame in the current frame structure, completely overwriting the Table of Contents so that the web page fills the entire browser window.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Figure link dialog options:

Figure links are special topic links that use the ID of a figure, table or caption variable as their target. You choose the topic containing the figure, then choose the figure ID from a drop-down list. This functions in exactly the same way as a link to an anchor in a topic.

See Figure and Table Counters 944 for details on how to use these variables and create figure IDs.



Target: The topic containing the figure you want to link to. This is exactly the same as a regular topic link. It must be in the current project.

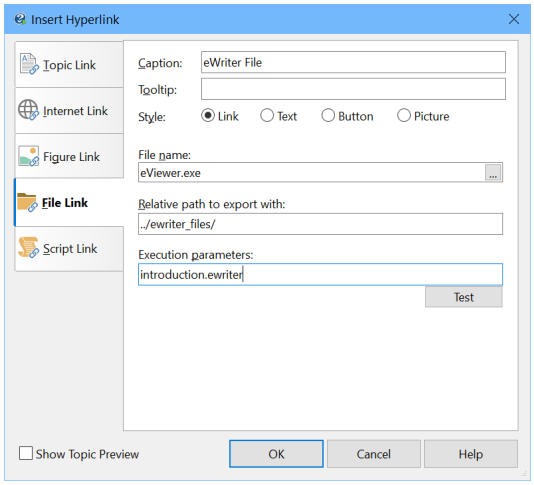
Figure ID: Select this from the drop-down list next to the target field. There will only be entries in the list if there are figure IDs in the target topic. This works in exactly the same way as a link to an anchor in a topic.

File link dialog options:

File links link to external files located in the same directory as the help file containing the link. When the user selects the link it is like double-clicking on a file in the Windows Explorer.

See Inserting file links 424 for details and compatibility with various output formats.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



File name: The name of the file you want to link to. You can use the ... browse button to select a file but this will not enter any path information because it is assumed that the file will be in the same directory as the help file containing the link.

If you enter the file name manually always type the complete name of the file, including the extension.

Relative path: A relative path to the file. This path will be inserted before the file name in the actual link. It should be the path that is valid when the help is viewed by the user, NOT a path on your computer!

Execution parameters: Any parameters you want to add to the file link, for example switches or a file name to follow an executable program.

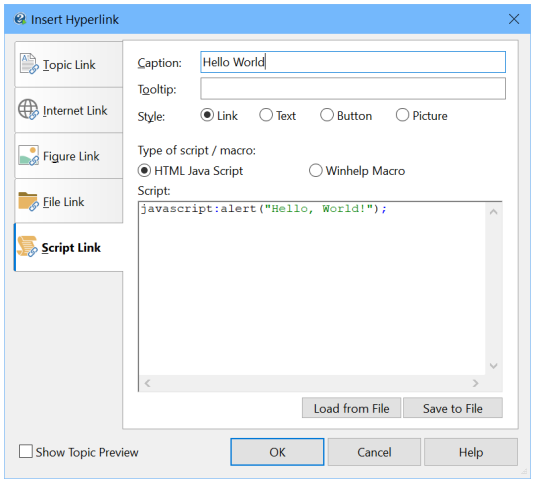
Test Tests the file link with the execution parameters. If you use the ... button in the **File name:** field to select the file this will access the file wherever it is located.

Note that this doesn't test whether the file link is compatible with your output format! It only tests how executing the external file behaves with the execution parameters entered.

Script link dialog options:

This option enters a link that executes a Winhelp macro or some JavaScript code. Please see Inserting script and macro links 452 for information on how to use this function.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



HTML JavaScript: Select this to enter JavaScript code. Only supported in HTML Help and WebHelp output.

Winhelp macro: Select to enter a Winhelp macro. Although the obsolete Winhelp output is no longer supported, four special Winhelp macros are automatically converted to their ActiveX equivalents in HTML Help. See Inserting script and macro links 452 for details.

Script: Enter your script or Winhelp macro here.

Note on script links:

Script links are generated as follows:

<a href=" contents of Script window **">**

If you are familiar with web scripting you can use this information to enter complex scripts. (See the links under *See also:* below for full details on this.)

Load from File:
Save to File: These buttons allow you to save and load blocks of script and macro code that you want to reuse.

Load from file.. loads a text file to the current cursor position in the script window.
Save to file.. saves the entire contents of the script window to a text file.

See also:

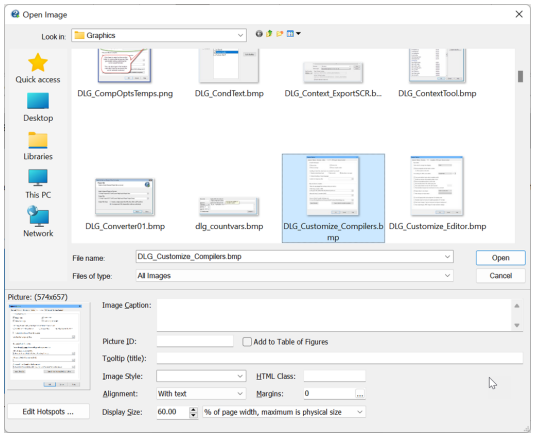
Inserting script and macro links 452
Scripts, HTML and Macros 1539 (Reference)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.2.6.6.2 Image

This dialog contains all the options for inserting graphics in your topics. For detailed instructions see the Working with Graphics 479 chapter. In addition to this also see the The Impict Screenshot Editor 1216 information on the screenshot enhancement and graphics editing program included with Help+Manual.

The Insert / Open Image dialog:



Dialog options:

Open file options: The upper part of the window is a standard Windows file open dialog.

File name: The image file you want to insert. You can select a file from the directory above with the mouse or type the filename here. You can also use wildcard characters (**?** and *) to filter the directory. For example typing `*.jpg` will only display the JPG files in the current folder and `???.gif` will only display GIF files with 3-character names.

Files of type: This drop-down list filters all the graphics file formats supported by Help+Manual. You can display all the supported files or only files of specific types.

Picture: This box displays a thumbnail preview of the currently selected graphics file and the dimensions of the file. Click on the thumbnail to display a full-size preview of the selected graphics file.

Picture ID: Text you add here is inserted in the `<img>` tag as an ID attribute in HTML-based output formats. This is only relevant if you want to

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

manipulate your HTML code manually and need to reference your images with ID attributes.

Image Style: Apply an image style 492 that you have defined to set the width and a border for a class of images.

HTML Class: Allows you to enter one or more HTML class names (separated by spaces) to be added to the **`class=""`** attribute of the <img> tag in HTML-based output. This is only needed if you plan to provide additional formatting for images with your own CSS code. Use with care – this can easily interfere with things like responsive images!

Tooltip: Text you enter here is added to the `<img>` tag as the ALT attribute in HTML-based output formats so that it will be displayed as a tool-tip when the user positions the mouse over the image.

Note: If you leave this field blank the image filename will be exported as the tooltip unless you turn this off in **Configuration > Publishing Options > WebHelp / HTML Help > HTML Export Options**.

Alignment: These options define how the graphic will be aligned in your output. This works in all output formats (including PDF) and

With text
The default setting. Treats the graphic as though it is a character in the text. It flows with the text without any wrapping.

Left of text
Positions the graphic to the left of the text and wraps the text around it to the right.

Right of text
Positions the graphic to the right of the text and wraps the text around it to the left.

Note that the left/right of text formatting is not displayed in the editor. It is only shown in the output.

Left/right of text is an electronic help format feature. It is not supported in PDF or Word DOCX. Use tables to position graphics in these formats.

Padding: This defines an invisible margin around the edge of the graphic, between the graphic and text and any other objects on the page.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Enter a value in pixels or click on ... to set individual values for the sides of the image.

You can also enter individual values for each side of the image manually:

Padding setting	Effect
10	Sets the same padding value for all four sides of the image,.
10 15	Sets padding to 10 pixels for top and bottom and 15 pixels for left and right
10 25 15 5	Top: 10 pixels, Right: 25 pixels, Bottom: 5 pixels, Left: 15 pixels

Display size: This setting allows you to resize graphics 503 precisely by percent. Images are not physically resized. The original files are exported with scaling information that controls their display size in the output format.

Use % of page width settings for responsive images:

The *% of page width* settings ensure that images adjust for the current window size in HTML and when exporting to PDF and Word. This prevents breaking your layout on mobile devices.

Caption: Text displayed as a caption beneath the graphic. This text is always centered and automatically uses the standard style Image Caption. You can format it manually by selecting the graphic in the editor window and then selecting text formatting options.

Hotspots ... Opens the Hotspot Editor 1361, with which you can add clickable areas with hyperlinks to your graphics.

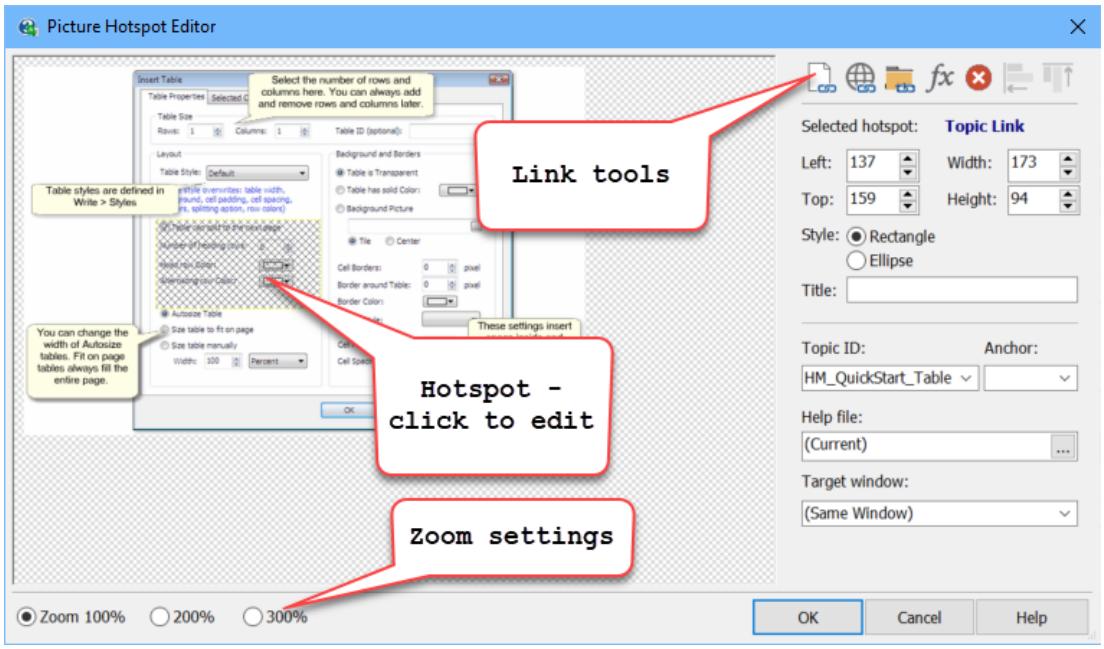
11.2.6.6.3 Hotspot editor

The hotspot editor enables you to define "clickable areas" in your graphics and associate all the different types of hyperlinks with them that are supported by H+M. When the user clicks on the hotspot area in the graphic it is exactly the same as clicking on a hyperlink of the same type in the topic text.

The parameters of the different kinds of hotspot hyperlinks are exactly the same as those for normal hyperlinks. For details see Links, Anchors, Macros, Scripts and HTML 409 and Graphics with hotspots, macros and scripts 509.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Picture Hotspot Editor:



Dialog options:

Toolbar options:

Inserts a topic link hotspot.

Inserts an Internet link hotspot.

Inserts a file link hotspot.

Inserts a script link hotspot.

Aligns the hotspots in a vertical row, aligning with the first hotspot selected.

Aligns the hotspots in a horizontal row, aligning with the first hotspot selected.

Deletes the hotspot (same as pressing the Delete key).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Selected hotspot:	Shows the properties of the selected hotspot. You can adjust the size and position of the hotspot by dragging with the mouse or by entering values here.
Rectangle / Ellipse:	Choose a rectangular or an elliptical hotspot.
Title:	Adds a title attribute text to the hotspot link.

Hyperlink settings:
The settings of the various hyperlink types are exactly the same as those for normal hyperlinks in the topic text. For details see Links, Anchors, Macros, Scripts and HTML 409 and Graphics with hotspots, macros and scripts 509.

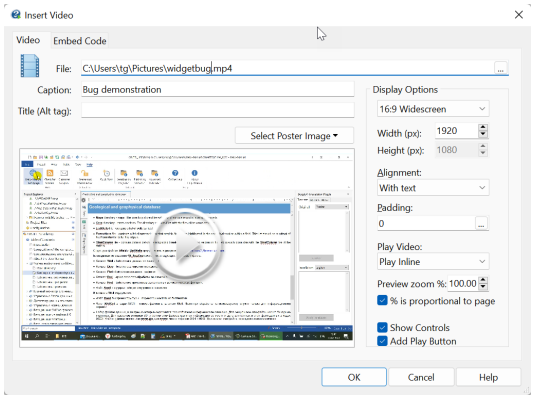
See also:

Graphics with hotspots, macros and scripts 509
Links, Anchors, Macros, Scripts and HTML 409

11.2.6.6.4 Media: Local Videos

This option is used to insert movies in your topics for the output formats that support them. See Videos and Animated Media 548 for details. There are a number of different dialogs for the different video and animated media types. The options in each dialog are quite similar, however.

Insert Video / Video tab:



File:	The local video file you want to insert. **Drag & Drop:** • You can drag local video files into the the Local Video dialog
Caption/Title:	The caption is displayed below the placeholder image for the video just like the caption of an image. The Title is the ALT tag text of the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

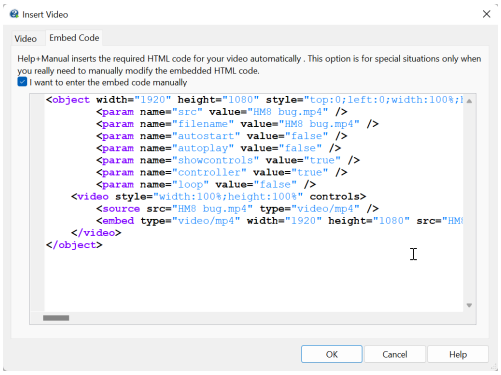
	preview image that is also displayed as mouseover tip.
Aspect ratio:	This will generally be set automatically from the video you select. If you select the aspect ratio (4:3, 16:9 or 16:10) you only need to enter the width of the video. The height is then calculated automatically. Alternatively you can select Custom Aspect Ratio and enter both values manually.
Width/Height:	The dimensions of the video. If you select the aspect ratio the height is grayed out and is calculated automatically from the width.
Alignment/ Padding:	This is the same as the alignment and padding values for inserting images. It inserts space around the video in the topic page.
Play Inline/ Use Lightbox:	If you select *Lightbox* the video will be played in an overlay on the page when the user clicks on the placeholder image. *Inline* plays the video in the page in the position where the placeholder image is displayed, in the same way as embedded videos on most web pages.
Preview zoom:	Zoom size of the preview image. This is also the display size of the video when you select *Zoom proportional to page width* (inline option only).
Zoom proportional to page:	Makes the preview image responsive, and also the video if it is played inline. Its percentage width will then be relative to the current page width and will adjust automatically when the user changes the browser or viewer window size. This is only available if you select *Play Inline*. When you choose Lightbox mode the lightbox overlay containing the video always scales to the page automatically.
Show controls:	Displays the video player's controls if possible.
Add play button:	Adds an overlay Play button to the placeholder image so that it is more obvious to the user that they can play the video by clicking on it.

Insert Video / Embed Code tab:

This tab displays the HTML code used to embed the movie in HTML-based output formats (HTML Help and WebHelp) and allows you to edit it if you want to.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Selecting *I want to enter the embedded HTML code manually* displays the code and allows you to edit it or replace it with your own code. Select this after selecting your video in the main tab, otherwise you won't get very meaningful code!



See also:

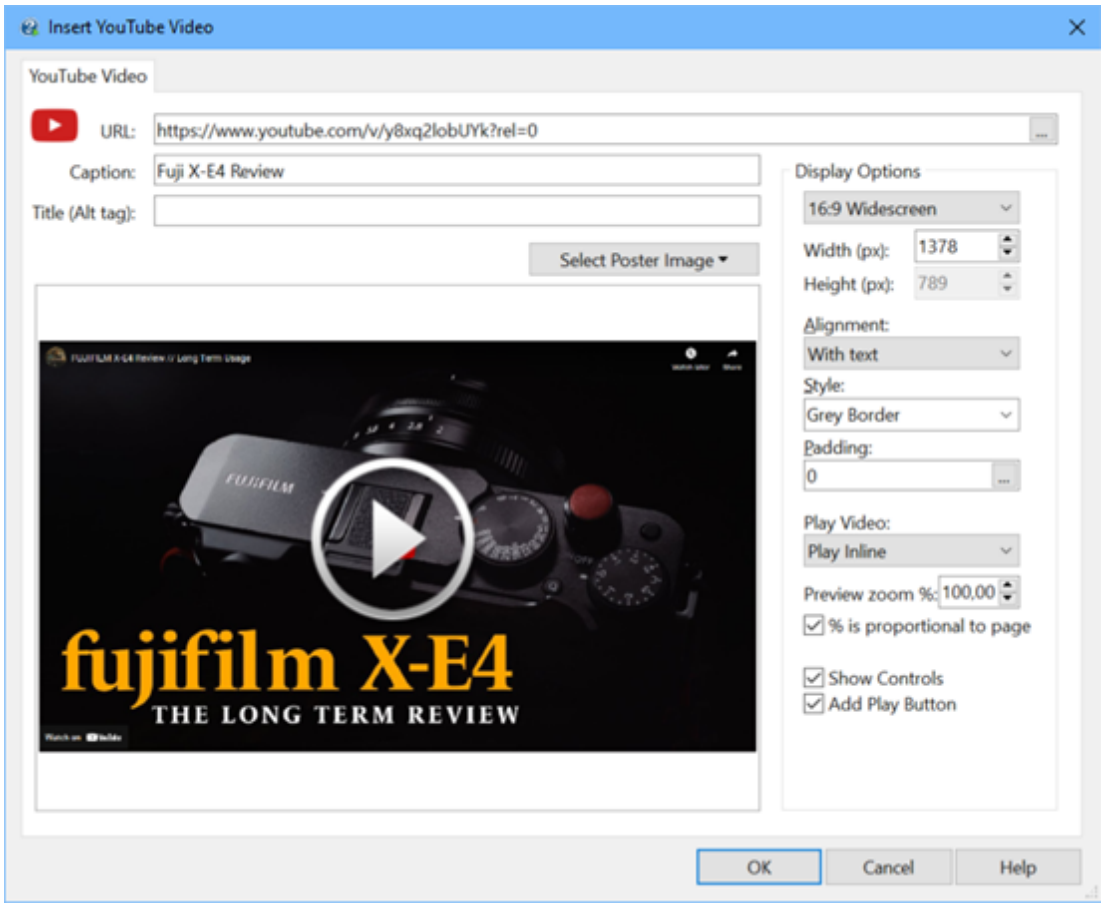
Videos and Animated Media 548

11.2.6.6.5 Media: Online Video Services

This option is used to insert videos hosted by online video services in your topics for the output formats that support them. See Videos and Animated Media 548 for details. In addition to online videos, Help+Manual also supports Prezi, an online tool that creates cool presentations with rotation and zoom effects. Each online video service has its own dialog. The options in each dialog are identical, however. The example below uses the Vimeo dialog.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Insert Video / Video tab:



URL: The URL of the online video or animated presentation. You can use either the URL from the Address: field of your browser or the shortened "Share" URL provided by the video service you are using. Help+Manual will automatically convert it so that it works properly.

Drag & Drop:

- You can drag URLs from the browser into the YouTube, Vimeo and Prezi dialogs.

Caption/Title: The caption is displayed below the placeholder image for the video just like the caption of an image. The Title is the ALT tag text of the preview image that is also displayed as mouseover tip.

Aspect ratio: If you select the aspect ratio (4:3, 16:9 or 16:10) you only need to enter the width of the video. The height is then calculated

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

automatically. Alternatively you can select *Custom Aspect Ratio* and enter both values manually.

Width/Height: The dimensions of the video. If you select the aspect ratio the height is grayed out and is calculated automatically from the width.

Alignment/ Padding: This is the same as the alignment and padding values for inserting images. It inserts space around the video in the topic page.

Play Inline/ Use Lightbox: If you select *Lightbox* the video will be played in an overlay on the page when the user clicks on the placeholder image. *Inline* plays the video in the page in the position where the placeholder image is displayed, in the same way as embedded videos on most web pages.

Preview zoom: Zoom size of the preview image. This is also the display size of the video when you select *Zoom proportional to page width* (inline option only).

Zoom proportional to page width: Makes the video and the preview image responsive. Its percentage width will then be relative to the current page width and will adjust automatically when the user changes the browser or viewer window size.

This is only available if you select *Play Inline*. When you choose Lightbox mode the lightbox overlay containing the video always scales to the page automatically.

Show controls: Displays the video player's controls if possible.

Add play button: Adds an overlay Play button to the placeholder image so that it is more obvious to the user that they can play the video by clicking on it.

See also:

Videos and Animated Media 548

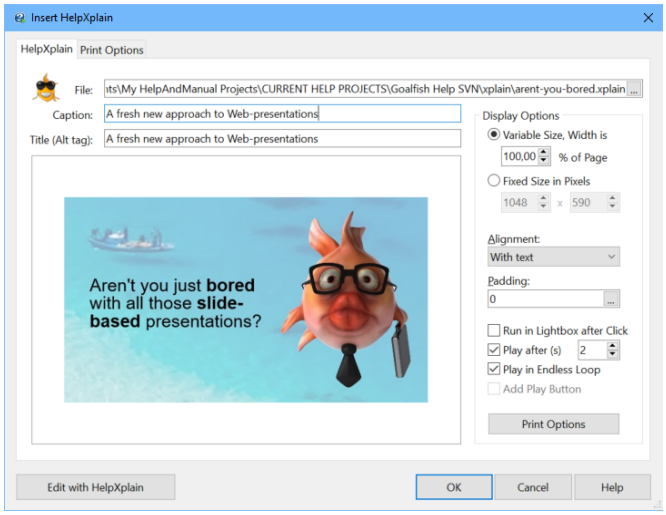
11.2.6.6.6 Media: HelpXplain

This option is used to insert animated presentations and infographics created with our own HelpXplain tool. This links directly to the **`.xplain`** source file, which is compiled fresh when you publish your Help+Manual project so that the latest version is always integrated in your output.

The dialog is very similar to the video dialog, with just a couple of small differences.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Insert HelpXplain / HelpXplain tab:



File: The HelpXplain source file, which has the extension **`.xplain`**.

Drag & Drop:

- You can drag **`.xplain`** files into the the HelpXplain dialog

Caption/Title: The caption is displayed below the placeholder image for the video just like the caption of an image. The Title is the ALT tag text of the preview image that is also displayed as mouseover tip.

Display Options: Fixed or variable. Variable is recommended for inline presentations. Then the presentation will expand and contract with the browser page.

Alignment: This is the same as the alignment and padding values for inserting images. Padding inserts space around the video in the topic page.

Lightbox: If you select *Lightbox* the video will be played in an overlay on the page when the user clicks on the placeholder image. Otherwise the presentation plays inline in the page in the position where the placeholder image is displayed, in the same way as embedded videos on most web pages.

Play after: Delay before the presentation plays automatically. Uncheck the checkbox to disable autoplay.

Endless loop: Repeat the presentation indefinitely unless the user stops it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Add play button: Adds an overlay Play button to the placeholder image so that it is more obvious to the user that they can play the video by clicking on it. Only available for Lightbox mode.

Print options: Options for outputting the Xplain as static slides when publishing to PDF or Word.

Print Options tab

Options for outputting the Xplain as static slides when publishing to PDF or Word. You can export just the first slide, or all slides in a tabular grid.

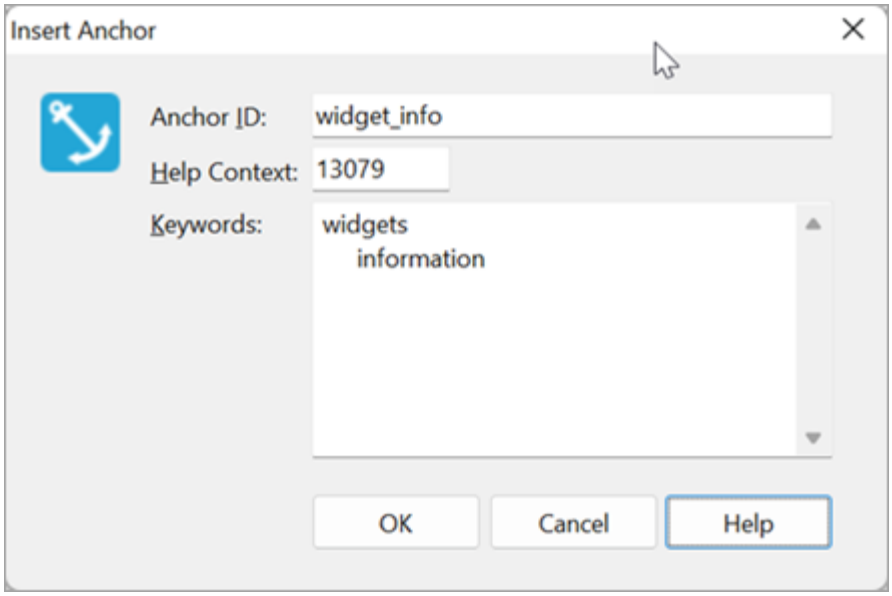
See also:

Videos and Animated Media 548
Animated HelpXplain presentations 561

11.2.6.6.7 Anchor

Inserts an anchor in your topic. An anchor is a "jump target" within a topic that enables you to define hyperlinks that jump to specific positions in topics.

The Insert Anchor dialog:



Dialog options:

Anchor ID: An alphanumeric ID that is used as the address of the anchor. Use a descriptive ID that is easy to identify. These IDs are displayed in the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window and in the Insert Hyperlink dialog.

You cannot use spaces or special characters. A warning will be displayed if you try to use illegal characters.

Help Context: You can assign help context numbers to anchors so that you can make context-sensitive calls to specific positions inside topics. If you have activated the automatic generation 368 of context numbers for anchors a number will be displayed here automatically.

Keywords: You can also assign index keywords to anchors (normal K-keywords only, A-keywords 579 are not supported here). If you do this, selecting the keyword in the index will jump to the anchor instead of the top of the topic. In this case the keyword should only be defined in the anchor, not also in the topic's Topic Options.

See also:

Anchors - jump targets 415

11.2.6.6.8 Text Variable

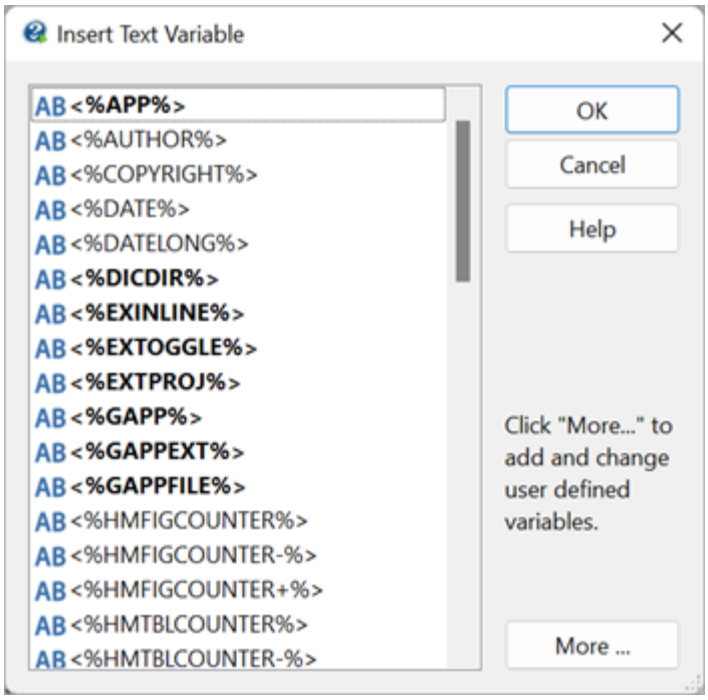
This simple dialog displays the list of available text variables for insertion in your topic. The list includes both Help+Manual's predefined variables and any variables you have defined for your project. When you insert variables with this dialog they are highlighted as objects in the editor, like this:

<%COPYRIGHT%>

This makes them easier to identify. This is only a convenience, however. You can also enter variables by typing them directly in the editor. When you publish your output Help+Manual will still identify them.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Insert Text Variable dialog:



Selecting *More...* displays the Text Variables section in your Project Configuration so that you can edit existing variables or add new ones.

See also:

Using Variables 917

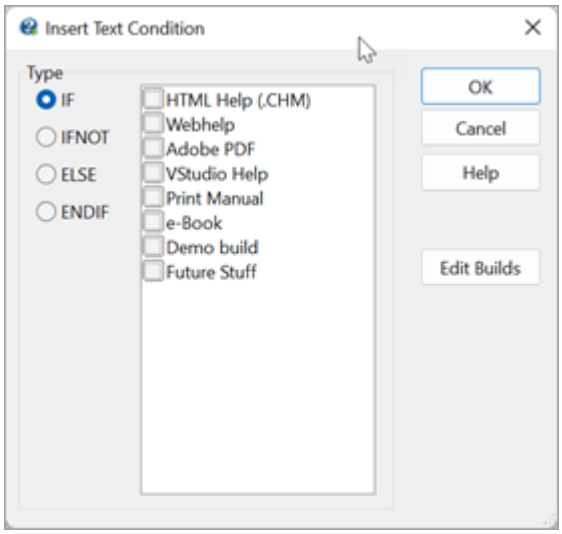
11.2.6.6.9 Conditional Text

This dialog is used to insert include option tags in your topics to control what is included and excluded from your output on the text level. See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for more details.

Note that conditions set in the text work in combination with the options you select in the Publish 1310 settings when you publish your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Insert Text Condition dialog:



Dialog options:

IF Marks the beginning of a positive include option condition for all the options selected in the list on the right (tagged content is included if the condition evaluates TRUE). You can select multiple conditions.

The text and other content enclosed by the condition will be included in your output if one or more of the selected conditions are fulfilled (***OR*** logic).

IFNOT Sets the beginning of a negative include option condition for all the options selected in the list (tagged content is included if the condition evaluates FALSE). Here too, you can select multiple conditions.

The text and other content enclosed by the condition will only be included in your output if none of the selected conditions are fulfilled (***OR*** logic).

ELSE Marks the beginning of text to be included if the previous condition is not fulfilled. This tag must be inserted between a pair of **IF/ENDIF** or **IFNOT/ENDIF** condition tags.

For example, if the output format is HTML Help (CHM) the following condition will output TEXT 1, otherwise it will output TEXT 2:

IF CHM TEXT 1 ELSE TEXT 2 END

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ENDIF Marks the end of an **IF** or **IFNOT** condition. If you select text in the editor before invoking this function the **ENDIF** tag is added automatically at the end of the selected text.

Edit Builds Opens the dialog for defining and editing user-defined include options.

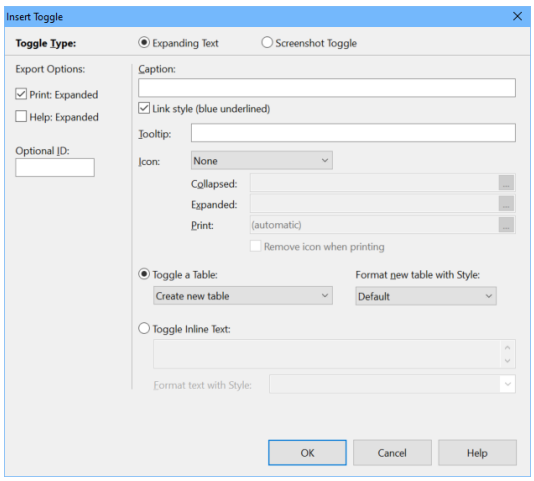
See also:

Conditions and Customized Output 969
Compile Help File 1310
Publishing Your Projects 613

11.2.6.6.10 Toggle

This dialog is used to insert expanding sections, text and images, known as Toggles 382, in your topics. There are two versions of the dialog, depending on whether you choose the **Expanding Text** or **Screenshot Toggle** option a the top of the dialog.

The Insert Toggle dialog – Expanding Text mode:



Insert Toggle dialog options for expanding text:

Export Options: These options control whether the toggle is expanded or collapsed in your output. Normally, toggles are expanded in print formats (PDF, printed manuals and Word DOCX) and collapsed by default in supported electronic formats.

Note that toggle switching is not supported in Windows Exe or ePUB eBooks and so toggles are always displayed expanded in these formats.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Optional ID: **This is optional and we recommend that you leave it blank.** You only need to enter an ID here if you plan to access the toggle IDs in the HTML code of your output for any reason.

If you leave this field blank Help+Manual will give each toggle a unique internal ID. If you enter your own ID you must make sure that each ID in the current topic is unique and you must also edit your IDs manually if you copy your toggles, otherwise you will have ID conflicts.

Caption: This is the "header" of your expanding section. It is also the active link that the user clicks on to expand or collapse the section. (If you select text before inserting the toggle the text will automatically be displayed here).

Link style: Selecting this displays the toggle header formatted as a normal hyperlink, deselecting it displays the header as plain text (it is still an active link).

For more details on formatting toggle links see below and in the Formatting toggle links 399 topic.

Tooltip: Text you enter here is displayed as a mouseover tooltip when the user positions the mouse pointer over the toggle header.

Icon: This option allows you to choose the image to be displayed to the left of the toggle header/link for both expanding section toggles and inline text toggles. You can choose no icon, one of the three standard icons or use your own icons.

If you choose a standard icon the icon files (one for each state) will be copied to your project or graphics directory the first time you select the function.

If you choose to use your own icons you can then select the graphics for the two icon states in the *Collapsed:* and *Expanded:* fields. We recommend storing the icons in your standard graphics folder 514 or your project folder. See below 384 for more details on using your own icons for expanding sections.

Print icons:
The icons used for expanding toggle links are often not appropriate for printed manuals and other print-style documents (PDF, DOCX, iBooks®/ePUB). When you select custom icons you can set a different icon to be used in these formats. Or select *Remove icon when printing* to publish without an icon.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Toggle a Table: This option creates an expanding section toggle.

Create a new table:
This is the standard option. It automatically creates a new, single-cell table for the text that you want to expand. This table is inserted directly after the toggle header (caption). The table and the header are both automatically indented by the same amount from the icon.

Toggle the table below this link:
This option is displayed if there is a table directly below the current position and it allows you to toggle an existing table. There can be a maximum of one paragraph of empty space between the toggle header and the table.

Toggle Inline Text: This option creates an expanding inline text toggle.

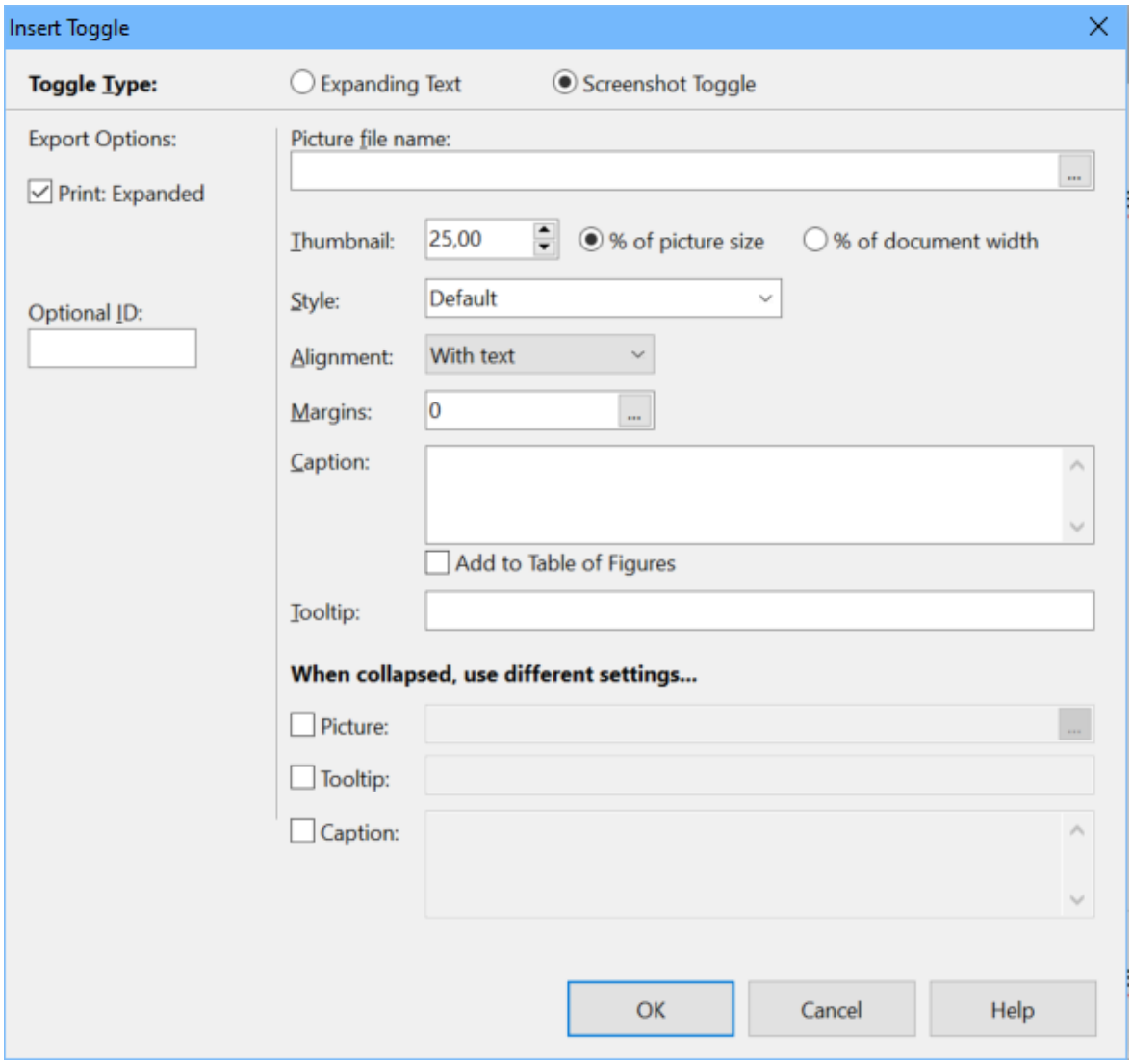
Enter your text in the editing box. You cannot enter any formatting in this box. You can enter hard returns with enter for easier editing but they will be ignored in the generated toggle.

Note that you can also include icons with inline text toggle links. They work the same way as for the icons in expanding text toggle headings.

Format text with Style: Applies a style to the expanding inline text, for example to make it stand out against the rest of the text in the paragraph.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Insert Toggle dialog – Screenshot Toggle mode:



Insert Toggle dialog options for expanding images

Export Options: These options control whether the toggle is expanded or collapsed in your output. Normally, toggles are expanded in print formats (PDF, printed manuals and Word DOCX) and collapsed by default in supported electronic formats.

Note that toggle switching is not supported Windows Exe or ePUB eBooks and so toggles are always displayed expanded in these formats.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Optional ID: **This is optional and we recommend that you leave this field blank.** You only need to enter an ID here if you plan to access the toggle IDs in the HTML code of your output for any reason.

If you leave this field blank Help+Manual will give each toggle a unique internal ID. If you enter your own ID you must make sure that each ID in the current topic is unique and you must also edit your IDs manually if you copy your toggles, otherwise you will have ID conflicts.

Picture file name: This is the full-size image to be used in your toggle. Click on the ... Browse button to select an image file directly.

Thumbnail: Size of the preview image relative to the full size of the image.

Zoom is proportional to document width: Makes the image responsive in HTML-based output formats. The defined zoom size of the image will then be relative to the current page width. For example, 50% zoom will make the image 50% of the page width, with the height proportional to the width.

Alignment: Selecting *Left* or *Right* positions the preview image to the left or right of the text and flows the text around it. Works the same as the alignment option for normal images.

Padding: Inserts padding around the image. The values are in pixels.

Tooltip:
Caption: The tooltip and caption you enter here are normally displayed in both the expanded and the collapsed states. The texts are automatically copied to the *When Collapsed:* fields, which are grayed out unless you select them to enter different texts there.

The tooltip is displayed when the user positions the mouse pointer over the image. The caption is displayed beneath the image using the standard image caption style 305.

When collapsed use different settings: Normally, the toggle will use the same image, tooltip and caption for both the expanded and the collapsed states. You can select the options here to use a different image and enter a different tooltip or caption.

Picture: Select this option to use a different image 392 in the collapsed state. You only need to use this if you are really using a completely different image for the collapsed state, for example an icon. Normally, the smaller version of the image is generated automatically.

Alternatively you can use your own image for the thumbnail version. If you do this you must create this version yourself with Impict 1216 or

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

your favorite graphics program. You must create the image with the correct size you want to display – Help+Manual will not zoom the image for you.

Tooltip: / **Caption:** Select these options to enter a different tooltip and/or caption for the collapsed state.

See also:

Toggles: Expanding Text and Images 382

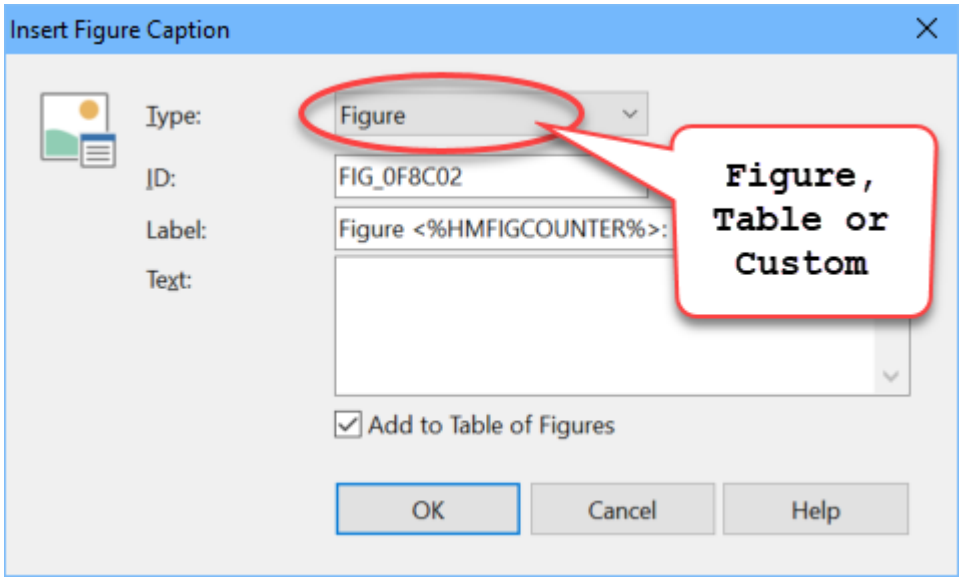
11.2.6.6.11 Caption

The caption tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** inserts an independent caption object that can be referenced in a table of figures or tables and used as a target for topic links, in the same way as a link to an anchor. These captions can be used just as static independent captions for images, tables or anything else, or integrated with the figure and table counters 944 functions.

Topic links to caption objects

Provided you include an ID, you can link to caption objects in topic links 410 in the same way as to regular anchors. The ID can be selected from the drop-down list of anchors next to the *Target:* field in the Link tool.

The caption object dialog



Type: You can create a figure, table or custom caption. These are generally used in tables of figures and tables 944, for which a reference

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

variable and an ID are generated automatically. However, you can also delete the variable and just use the object as a static caption.

ID:	Generated automatically, but you can also edit it. It should be unique in the current topic. The ID is required when you are using figure and table counters, and for using the caption object as an anchor target.
Label and Text:	Title and content of the caption. You need to include the counter variable in the label if you are integrating with the figure and table counters feature.
Add to Table of Figures	Required for the figure and table counters features.

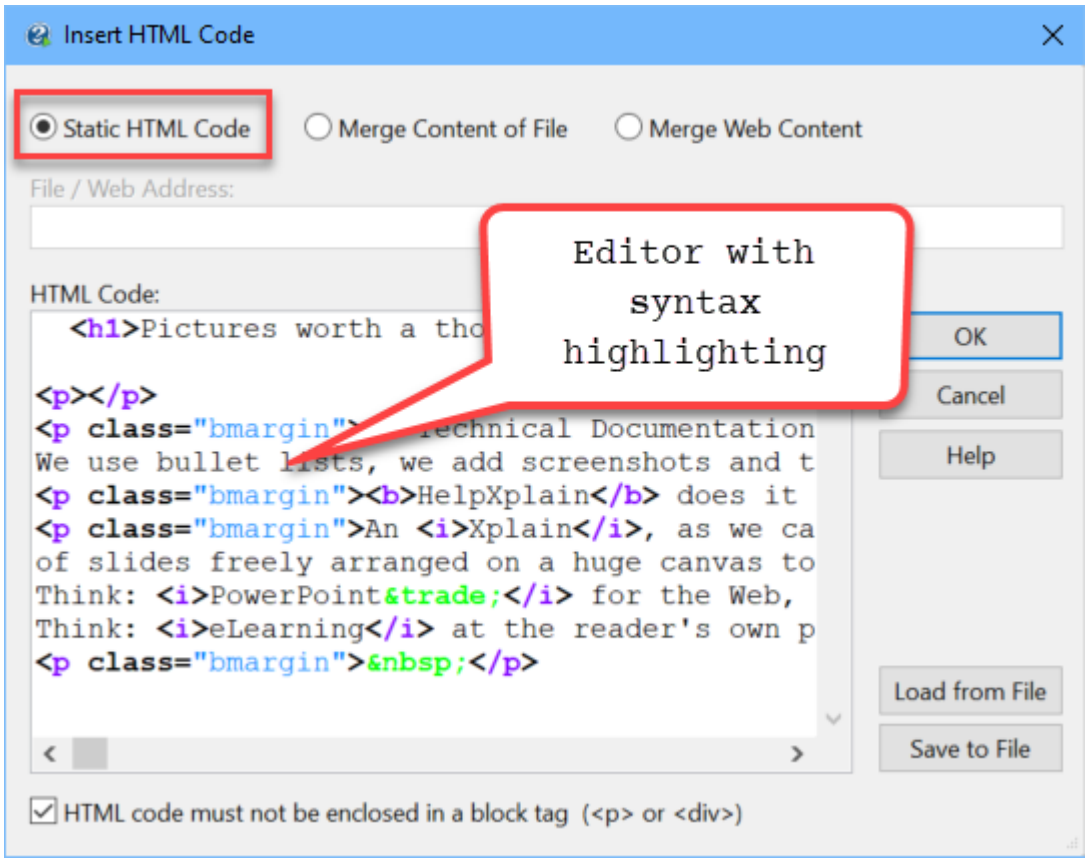
11.2.6.6.12 HTML Code Object

This function is designed for advanced users with a good knowledge of HTML. It is used to insert your own inline HTML code to be included in HTML Help and WebHelp output. Code you insert with this function is ignored in all other output formats.

The code you enter here is inserted directly in the output page at the point in the text where you insert it. Your code will not be checked or parsed in any way by Help+Manual – you are entirely responsible for making sure that it works yourself. If you include references to files you must also make sure that they are accessible.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Insert HTML Code dialog:



You don't need to insert any normal page tags like <HEAD> or <BODY> and so on. these tags already exist in the output pages.

Dialog options:

Just type the code you want to insert in the editing window. You can increase the window size by dragging the lower right corner.

Load from File: Saves the contents of the editing window to a text file so that you can reuse it.

Save to File: Loads the contents of a text file to the current cursor position in the editing window.

See also:

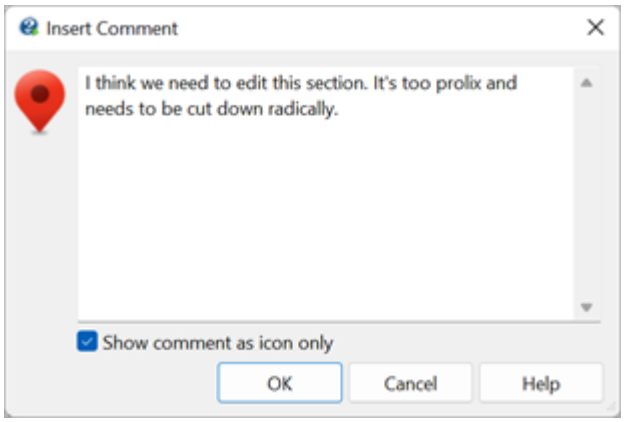
Inserting plain HTML code 469

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.2.6.6.13 Comment

This function inserts a comment in the current topic with information, reminders or questions for the authors or reviewers of the project. Note that comments are an editing aid only. They are not included in your published output!

The Insert Comment/Bookmark dialog:



- Just type your comment in the editing box and click on OK to insert it at the cursor position.
- *Show comment as icon only* displays the comment as a red "pin" icon in the editor.

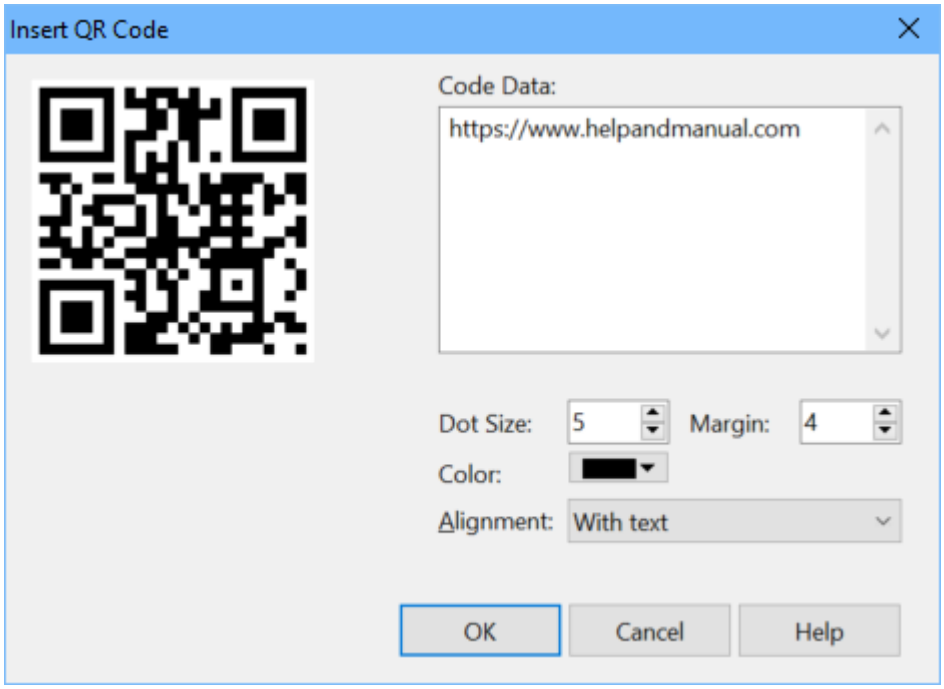
See also:

Comments and bookmarks 253
Image caption and comment styles 305

11.2.6.6.14 QR Code

Inserts a QR code in your topic. QR codes can be scanned by smartphone cameras with little QR apps. If the code contains a valid web link the smartphone's browser will automatically open the referenced page when the code is scanned. QR codes can also contain text.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Code Data: The data you want to encode in the QR code. This will normally be a web link that you want users to be able to visit when they scan the code with their smartphone. Web links must be complete, including the `http://` prefix!

In addition to web links QR codes can also contain plain text, which will also be scanned.

Dot size: The size of the dots to be used to make up the QR code matrix, in pixels. Larger dots can be scanned more easily and reliably but will create larger QR codes. At least 4 pixels per dot are recommended.

Margins: A margin around the QR code graphic, in pixels.

Color: The color of the code. Only use black unless you have a very special reason for using a different color.

Alignment: Position of the QR code in relation to the text in your topic. This is the same as the Alignment option for graphics. It works in all output formats and is shown in the editor.

11.2.6.6.15 Snippets

This option inserts a topic from the current project, a style repository project 1076 or an external Help+Manual XML topic or snippet file in the current topic at the cursor position. You can insert snippets in two modes: Paste and Linked. Pasted snippets are just like normal pasted text

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

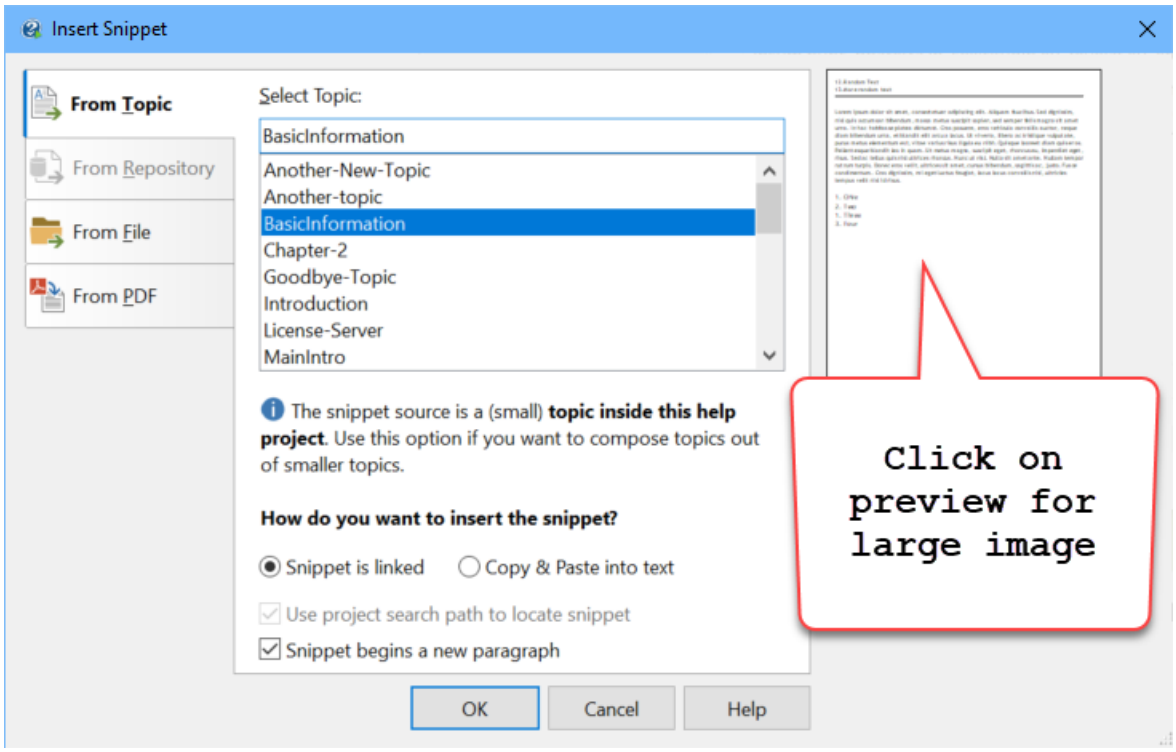
from any other source. Linked snippets are dynamically linked to the source topics or files and will updated automatically when the sources are edited.

When you publish your project a copy of the linked snippets is inserted in the output.

See Re-using content with snippets 265 for details on working with snippets.

The Insert Snippet Dialog – From Topic

This dialog inserts topics from the current project as snippets. Just select the topic ID of the topic you want to embed from the list and click on OK to insert it.



Dialog options:

Select topic:	Select the topic ID of the topic you want to insert as a snippet.

Common options in all snippet dialog modes:

Preview	Click on the preview on the right to see a full-size preview of the snippet contents.
Copy & Paste	Pastes the contents of the snippet file at the cursor position. After this you can edit it normally, just like any other text. Pasted snip-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

pets are not linked to the source file.

Snippet is linked — Creates a link to the original topic. The contents of the snippet cannot be edited in the editor but they will update automatically when the original topic is changed.

Snippet begins a new paragraph — If this is selected the snippet begins and ends with a new paragraph (block mode). If you deselect it the snippet will be inserted in inline mode, which allows you to use snippets within paragraphs.

The Insert Snippet dialog – From File and From Repository:

From file:

This option is for inserting snippets from external XML topic files. You can create these files from topics and from selected text in topics with *File* > *Save Snippet* in **Project > Manage Topics.**

From repository:

This option is only available in Help+Manual Professional and only in projects linked to a style repository. It displays the snippets stored in a style repository project linked to your current project. It works the same as inserting a snippet from a topic in the current project. See Working with Style Repositories 1076 for details on style repositories.

Dialog options:

Snippet file: — The snippet file you want to insert. This must be a valid Help+Manual XML topic file or snippet file. You can create snippet files from topics and selected text with *File* > *Save Snippet* in **Project > Manage Topics.**

Help+Manual Professional only:
If you are using Help+Manual Professional you can save your projects in the uncompressed XML format (**`.hmxp`** option). When you do this you can load any topic file from another project directly as a snippet.

Select Topic: — Select the topic ID of the topic file stored in the style repository.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use project search path

Only relevant for external XML snippet files. Select this to add the path to the snippet file to your Project Search Path 1405 in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** in the Project Explorer. If you do not select this option the path to the snippet will be stored in the topic with the snippet and the link to the snippet will be dead if the snippet is ever moved.

It is a good idea to use this option and to keep your snippet files organized in easily-accessible directories. You can then move your snippets and Help+Manual will still be able to find them if you update the Project Search Path. This will make it easier to transport your entire project and to send out all the components of your project for translation if this ever becomes necessary.

See also:

Using embedded topics 265
Working with style repositories 1076

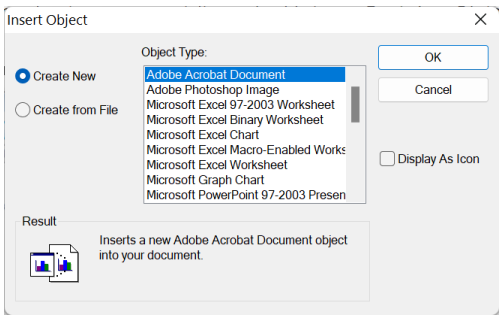
11.2.6.6.16 OLE Object

This function inserts an OLE (Object Linking & Embedding) object in the editor screen. An OLE object is a document created by another program. If you double-click on the object in the Help+Manual editor the document will be opened with its associated program so that you can edit it.

Depending on how you create them, OLE objects are either embedded in your topic file or inserted as links. We recommend using the link method, this generates fewer overheads and allows you to edit the files without opening Help+Manual.

Important: OLE objects are only linked in the Help+Manual editor. In your published output they are just bitmap graphics. This is necessary because the documentation formats do not support live OLE objects.

The Insert OLE Object dialog:



When you publish your output OLE objects are converted to bitmap graphics. They are not exported to your published files as active links – this is impossible in the Help+Manual's out-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

put formats. This means that you cannot use all types of OLE objects supported by your Windows installation. For example, you can't insert movies as OLE objects because they would be converted to static bitmap images.

Create from File mode dialog options:

Create from File: Insert an existing file as an OLE object.

Create New: Open an OLE-enabled program to create a new OLE object. See below.

File: Click on Browse to select the file to insert. This file does not have to be in your project folder.

Link: Inserts a link to the file instead of embedding it in your project. Recommended – this reduces system overheads and makes it possible to edit the linked file without opening Help+Manual.

If you deselect this option a copy of the file will be embedded in your project and you can only edit it by double-clicking on it in the Help+Manual editor.

Display as icon: Displays an icon to represent the object in the editor instead of the contents of the OLE object file.

Create New mode dialog options:

Create New: Opens the associated program to create an OLE object and embed it in your project file. This method is not recommended. It creates considerable system overheads and you cannot edit the object as an external file. **`Create from File`** (see above) in **`Link`** mode is always preferable.

Create from File: Switches to **`Create from File`** mode. See above.

Object Type: Select the program with which you wish to create the document for the OLE link. Only use programs that generate documents that can be converted to a single bitmap graphic, such as Word or Excel.

Display as icon: Displays an icon to represent the object in the editor instead of the contents of the OLE object file.

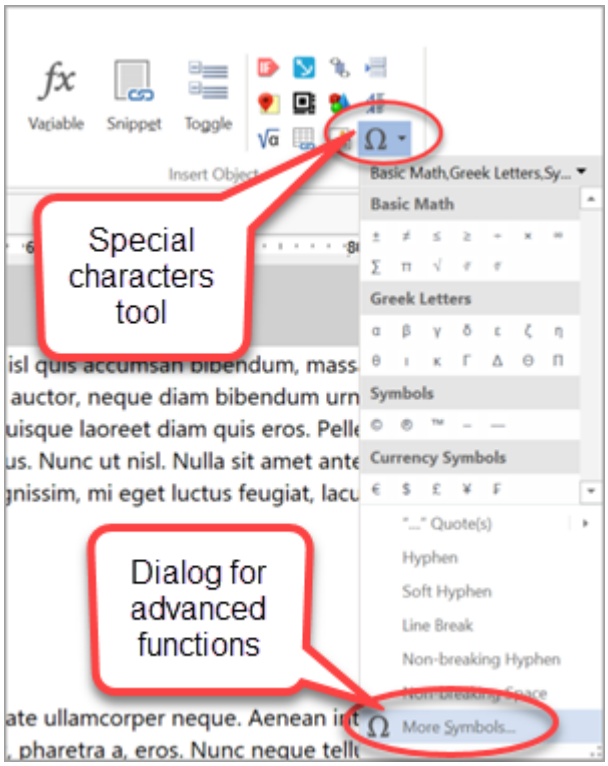
See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using OLE Objects 1139
About using OLE objects 1538

11.2.6.6.17 Special Characters

This function allows you to insert special characters not available directly via the keyboard. A number of common special characters are available directly from the menu:



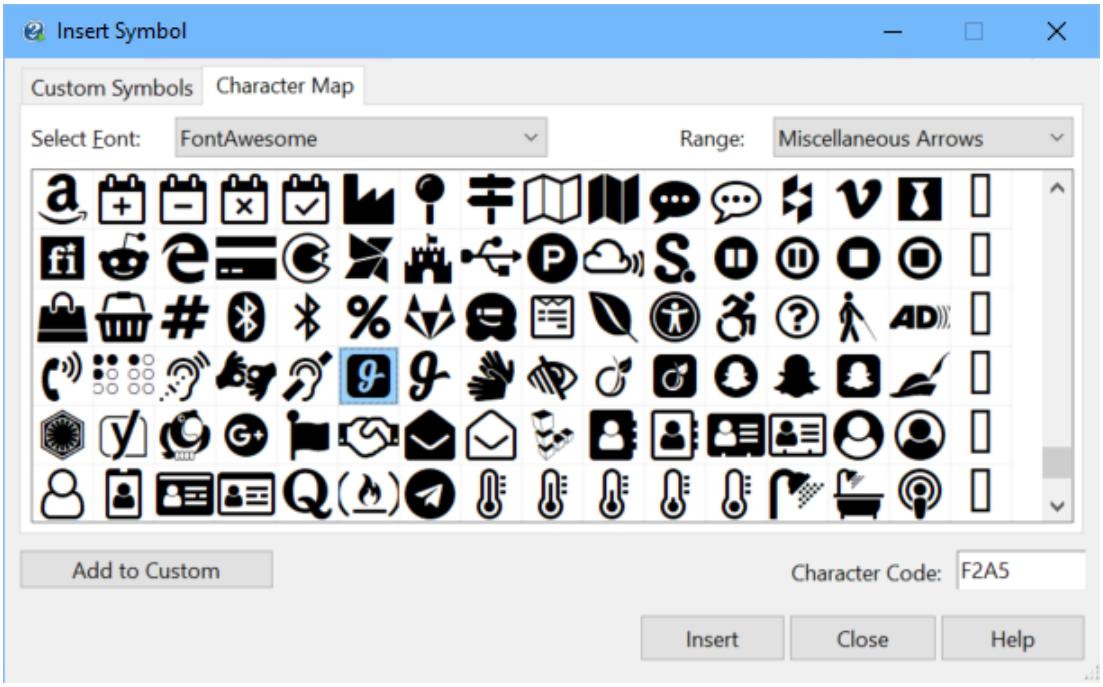
Advanced functions of the Special Characters dialog

This dialog also allows you to access and store a wide range of special characters from special symbol fonts and use them reliably in all output formats by configuring Help+Manual to convert them to scalable vector graphics on output. Please also see the Special characters, lines and breaks 245 topic for full details on the capabilities of this dialog.

The Insert Special Character dialog:

Clicking on **More Symbols...** at the bottom of the menu displays the following dialog:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



- Just select the font you want to use, then select the character and click on *Insert* to insert it in the editor at the current cursor position.
- You can increase the size of the character map for easier viewing by dragging the bottom right corner of the dialog window.

Select font: Choose the font you want to use. Note that in specialized symbol fonts like FontAwesome and Fontello the characters included in the font are usually right down at the bottom of the list, after all the normal standard characters. See the Special characters, lines and breaks 245 topic for full details on using these fonts with maximum compatibility in your output.

Range: Select the standard range of characters you want to access in the font. These selections will work for standard fonts but may not for specialized symbol fonts.

Character Code: The standard hexadecimal code for the selected character.

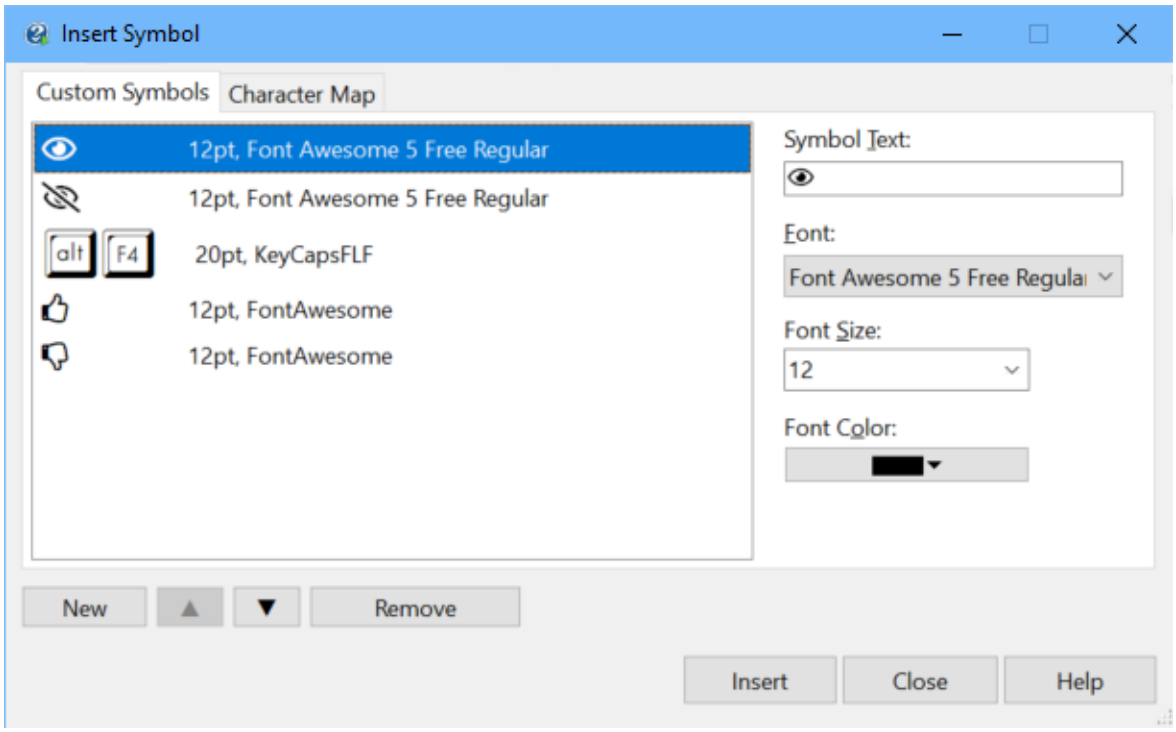
Add to Custom: Copy the selected character to the **Custom Symbols** tab (see below).

Insert: Inserts the selected character in the topic editor.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Custom Symbols tab

You can store selected symbols from the Character Map in this tab for quick access with the **Add to Custom** button (see above). This works for both single symbols and sequences of symbols. See the Special characters, lines and breaks 245 topic for instructions.



Symbol Text: The symbol or symbols in the entry. A new entry is created automatically when you use the **Add to Custom** button in the **Character Map** tab. You can also create entries with the **New** button.

Font: Displays and changes the font of the current entry. Changing the font may display unexpected or garbage characters as not all fonts will have the same symbol characters in the same locations.

Size and color: Font size and color. ;-)

New: Creates a new entry. This allows you to create entries with multiple characters, which you can then copy from other entries.

Up/Down: Organize the entries in the list

Remove: Delete the selected entry

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Insert: Insert the current entry in the topic editor

See also:

Special characters, lines and breaks 245

11.2.7 The Table Tab

This menu contains the options for inserting and manipulating tables in your topics. Most of these options will only be active when the cursor is actually in a table or when you have selected all or part of the table.

Table styles:

Note that you must select **Properties** to select a style for the current table. To define table styles go to **Write** > **Styles** > **Edit Styles**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Table tab options:

Select:	Selection options for selecting all or part of the current table.
Properties:	Opens the Table Properties dialog to edit the properties of an existing table. You must select this if you want to set or change the style for the current table.
New Table:	Opens the dialog for defining and inserting a new table at the current cursor position. Same options as in the **Write** tab.
Delete:	Delete rows or columns.
Rows and Columns:	Insert additional rows and columns.
Move and Sort:	Move selected rows and sort the entire table.
Merge	Options for merging, splitting and unmerging table cells and rows.
Lock Column:	Locks or unlocks the width of the selected column or columns. When column width is locked the column will not become wider or narrower when the user resizes the viewer window on the screen. Tables with a percentage width must have at least one unlocked column.
Alignment:	Sets the alignment of text within cells.
Text Direction:	Switch between vertical and horizontal text.

See also:

Working with Tables 518

11.2.7.1 Table Properties

This dialog is displayed by clicking in a table and selecting **Properties** in the **Table** tab. It defines or changes the formatting, layout and appearance of entire tables and selected parts of tables. It is also displayed automatically when you create a new table. See Working with Tables 518 for details on creating and using tables.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The Table Properties Tab:

The properties in this tab are applied to the entire table.

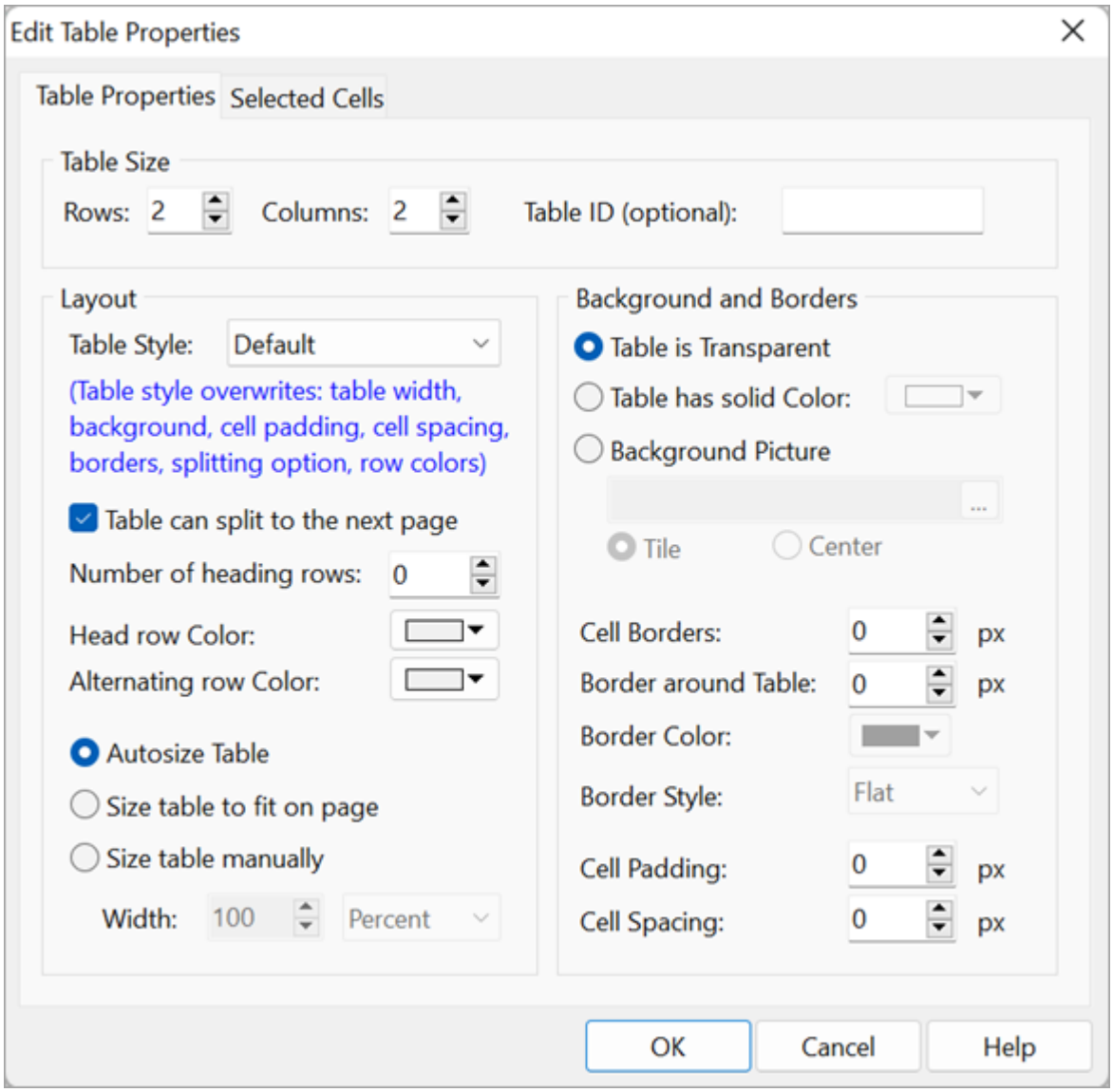


Table Size

Rows:
Columns:

If you are creating a new table these values define the total number of rows and columns in the table.

In an existing table increasing the values adds rows and columns in the last row and column and decreasing the values deletes rows

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

and columns from the last row and column (i.e. rightmost column and bottom row).

For more precise control over adding and deleting rows and columns use the Insert and Delete functions 528 in the Table menu.

Table ID: This setting is optional. It assigns an ID attribute to the `<table>` tag that you can reference in your own HTML code.

Most users should leave this blank. Only use it if you really plan to reference your tables by ID with your own HTML and CSS code.

If you assign your own IDs to the tables used in toggles 384 you must be very careful not to use the same ID more than once in any topic If you do your toggles will not work properly.

Layout

Table Style: Selecting this applies the selected table style 533 to the table. Any attributes you change after applying a style will not be under the control of the style – they are like manual formatting in a paragraph formatted with a style.

Table can split to next page: Tables can now split automatically at page boundaries for PDFs and printed manuals generated with **File menu** > **Print User Manual** 1290 .

Page breaks are possible inside table rows but not in rows containing nested tables 539.

Number of heading rows: The heading rows option repeats the first **x** rows of the table at the top of the table when it is continued on the following page.

If you enter 0 for the heading rows the table will not have a heading.

Head row color: The background color for the heading row

Alternating row color: Background color for alternating table rows. The main background color is set by the Table has solid color: setting (see below). This setting defines the color for every other row.

Autosize table: Creates a table that calculates its size on the basis of the contents of its cells. The absolute width of the table in your output will de-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

pend on how you adjust the width of the cells and the table itself and the content you put in them.

In the editor an autosized table initially occupies the full available width of the current paragraph (if the paragraph has indents the table will be narrower than the page). You can adjust column widths with the mouse after adding content (note that this locks the width 522 of the columns).

In PDF, printed manuals and DOCX autosized tables appear exactly as the are displayed in the editor, filling the entire width of the paragraph/page.

In HTML-based output formats autosized tables are only as wide as their content. If all columns contain full paragraphs the table will be as wide as the page but if the columns only contain small amounts of text the table will be narrower than the page.

Size table to fit on page:

Creates a table that is permanently maximized to the width of the current paragraph (if the paragraph has indents the table will be narrower than the page). This is exactly the same as setting a width of 100% with the **`Size manually`** option.

Tables sized with this option always occupy the entire available width of the current paragraph or page. They can only be made narrower by increasing the left and/or right indents of the paragraph.

The same applies for tables inside other tables: If paragraph containing the table is indented the 100% value is the width of the indented paragraph, otherwise it is the width of the cell containing the table.

Size table manually:

Creates a table with a fixed width in percent or pixels, relative to the width of the current paragraph. Setting a value of 100% is exactly the same as **`Size table to fit on page`**.

Here too, percentage values are always relative to the paragraph containing the table. If the paragraph is indented the value is a percentage of the width of the indented paragraph; otherwise the value is a percentage of the page width or the table cell width, if the table is inserted inside another table.

Note that as in HTML tables, pixel values are "preferred values" rather than being absolute. If you insert graphics or other objects

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

that are larger than these values the cell widths will be adjusted automatically so that the objects fit, and the other cells will be made narrower accordingly.

- Note that all automatic width adjustment features can only work if the width of at least one of the table's columns is dynamic (i.e. has no set width).
- To set/reset click in a table column or select one or more columns. Then select **Table** > **Lock Column Width** or right-click and select **Table** > **Lock Column Width**.

Background and Borders

These settings define the background for the entire table. You can define the background color for individual cells in the Selected Cells 1391 tab.

Table is transparent:	This makes the background of the page visible through the table.
Table has solid color:	This selects an opaque background color. If you also set a color for alternating rows (see above) this color is only used for the alternating rows of the table.
Background picture:	This allows you to use a graphics file as the background for your table. See Using background graphics 540 in the **Working with Tables** chapter for details. Select **`Tile`** to repeat the background picture, **`Center`** to center it in the table.

Cell Borders

These settings work just like the formatting parameters for borders and cell spacing in HTML tables. In all settings a value of zero turns the property off (i.e. no borders).

Cell borders:	This defines the width of borders around the cells inside the table.
Border around table:	This defines the border around the edges of the table.
Border color:	This defines the color of all borders
Border style:	This defines the appearance of the border. This is easier to see than to describe – just try it out!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can't define different colors for individual cell borders. However, you can achieve this by inserting a second table inside your main table. See Nested tables 539 for details.

Cell Padding and Spacing

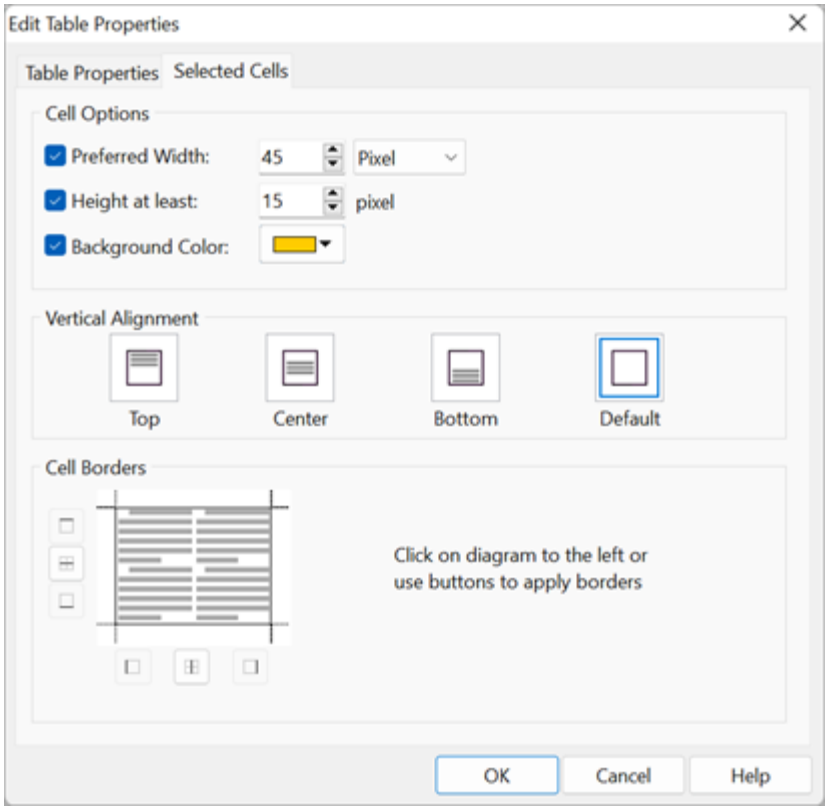
Cell padding: This is the space between the edge of the cell contents and the border of the cell.

Cell spacing: This is the space between the border of one cell and the border of the next cell. This is effectively like making a broader border between the cells but it doesn't affect the width of any border lines you define between the cells.

You can only define padding and spacing for the entire table. If you need different settings for individual rows, columns or cells you can achieve this by using nested tables 539.

The Selected Cells tab:

The properties in this tab are applied to selected cells only. If no cells are selected the Selected Cells properties are applied to the cell in which the cursor is located.



© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

To apply these options to a single cell just click in the cell you want to format before selecting **Table Properties**. You don't need to drag to select a single cell.

Cell Options

Note that adjusting the size of cells manually with the mouse automatically resets the settings configured in this section.

Preferred width: This sets the target width of the selected cells/columns in pixels or percent. Percent values are relative to the width of the table. If this is set to 0 the automatic width is calculated as the table width divided by the number of columns, unless graphics or other objects force different widths for individual columns.

If you set the preferred width to a non-zero percent or pixel value the editor will attempt to achieve the specified value but the widths will be adjusted if it is not possible. The width of content such as graphics or other objects always has priority. If you insert an image wider than the preferred width the cell will be made wider so that the image fits, for example.

Height at least: This is the minimum height of the cell/row. If it is 0 the height is calculated automatically on the basis of the cell contents. If it has any non-zero value the cell/row will be at least that high, and higher if necessary to accommodate the content.

Background color: Sets a different background color for individual cells.

Vertical alignment

Top / Center:
Bottom / Default: These options control the vertical positioning of text and other content within the selected cells. They are pretty self-explanatory.

Cell borders

Cell borders: Set individual border options for the selected cell(s).

See also:

Working with Tables 518

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.2.8 The View Tab

The **View** menu contains options for changing Help+Manual's appearance and behavior. In addition to changing the color and style of the program window you can also access the Program Options 1261 dialog with extensive configuration options for all aspects of the program.

Most of the settings in these dialogs are self-explanatory. For more details see Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59.

View menu options:

Program Options
Customize the way Help+Manual works, see Program Options 1261 for full details.

Also available in the File menu 1275.

Color Scheme
Select from a variety of themes for the Help+Manual user interface.

Text size
Adjust the size of the text displayed in the Help+Manual user interface

Toolbar options
Position and visibility of the ribbon toolbar

Save/Load Preferences
Saves all your preferences and program settings, including your license, to a text `.ini` file. You can then load these preferences from the file to completely restore your entire Help+Manual configuration. This can be very helpful when setting up a new computer, or for making sure you have the same settings on your desktop and laptop machines.

What is included:

All user preferences, license key, keyboard shortcuts, recent projects, Quick Access Toolbar 53 settings, pinned projects, syntax highlighter configuration and everything else that you can configure.

What is not included

Window positions, since these are usually not relevant on a second computer.

Reset Windows Settings / User Preferences
These two options reset everything to the factory defaults. The **Window Settings** option resets all the appearance settings. The **User Preferences** option resets all your settings for the entire program.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This option can be a first alternative to reinstalling if you think there is some problem with your installation.

Change File Associations

Opens the utility program **fileasoc.exe**, which requires administrator permissions.

This program sets or changes the default application for Help+Manual's file extensions (.HMXZ, .HMXP, .HMXR, .MNL and .IPP). In other words: which program starts if you double-click on such a file in Windows Explorer. This tool is helpful if you unintentionally changed those file associations in Windows, or if you have installed an additional older version of Help+Manual after installing version 8.

Edit Proxy Settings

Opens the utility program **proxyedt.exe**, which requires administrator permissions.

This specifies a proxy address, user name and password for Internet access, in particular to automatically check-out floating licenses 37. If your organization uses a mandatory internal proxy server for Internet access, these settings might be required to get an Internet connection. **proxyedt.exe** creates an INI file named `proxy.ini` in the application folder. Once created, you can deploy this INI file to other workstations by copy & paste, if they are using the same credentials.

See also:

Customize 1261
Customizing Help+Manual 59

11.2.9 The Help Tab

The Help tab provides access to this help file (Online Help), which can also be accessed at any time by pressing the **F1** key. In addition, this menu also contains a number of links to specific important information and how-to topics in the help and some useful links to the EC Software website.

You can also check whether you are using the latest version of Help+Manual with the Check for Update function and send a mail to support with the Customer Support link.

License and Maintenance

Check the current status of your license and maintenance, change the license key, enter and purchase maintenance extensions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.3 Project Configuration Settings

The *Configuration* section in the Project Explorer menu is the control center for your project. Unlike the settings in **View** > **Program Options** (which are program settings), all the settings you enter here are stored in your current project and are only available to the project in which they are stored. They define all the basic parameters for your help project and how it is output to the formats supported by the program.

Productivity Tip
You can use both user-defined variables and global variables in the text fields in your configuration settings. For example you could use © <%\YEAR%> by <%AUTHOR%> for your copyright message.

There are three groups of settings in the program configuration settings: Common Properties, HTML Page Templates and Publishing Options.

Common Properties:

These settings define things like the name of your project displayed in help window title bars, copyright messages, language settings, where images and snippet files used in the project are stored, text variables used in the project and so on. This is also where you will find the help window definitions used to configure the help viewer for Microsoft HTML Help (CHM).

It is always a good idea to check all the settings in this section when you create a new project.

HTML Page Templates:

The HTML page templates are combined with the contents of your topic pages when you publish to most HTML-based output formats (ePUB and Kindle eBooks have their own page template). The template provides everything above and below <body> </body> tags, the content from the editor provides everything that goes between the body tags.

Advanced users can edit the source code of the HTML page templates directly to customize their output in any way they like.

HTML page templates in skins:
If you are using a skin the HTML page template in your project is not used. It is replaced by the template in the skin. If you want to make changes, you need to edit the HTML page template in the skin, not in your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Publishing Options:

These settings are organized in sections by output format. They allow you to control how each output format is handled, providing a high degree of customization. For example, in the WebHelp section you can directly edit all the additional HTML templates that define the frameset and the Contents, Index and Search pages of your WebHelp output. In HTML Help you can configure different modes for popup topics, in PDF you can choose between interactive and static PDF files and so on.

11.3.1 Common Properties

Most of these settings are "housekeeping" for your project. They include things like the title of your project, language settings, customized topic status settings and the locations of images and snippet files used in the project.

In addition to this section also includes settings for some of Help+Manual's special features:

Text Variables:

This section allows you to define and store any number of variables for use in your project. You can use both plain text variables for inserting text anywhere in your project (also in the TOC, keywords and Configuration) and HTML variables for inserting HTML code in your HTML templates and HTML code objects.

This is very useful for texts that may change after you create your project, such as program names and so on. You can then change the texts in your entire project just by editing the variables, and you are always sure that all instances have been changed.

Custom Builds:

This section allows you to define your own include options 988. Include options are like tags that you use to include or exclude text, topics, chapters or entire modules from your help output. You simply tag content with your include options in your project and then select or deselect the corresponding options in the Compile Help File 1310 dialog when you publish.

Miscellaneous Options:

This may sound unimportant but it isn't! Some key settings that don't fit anywhere else are stored here, so do check it out.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.3.1.1 Title & Copyright

Help title: The title of your help project. The text you enter here can be inserted anywhere in your project with the <%TITLE%> variable.

For example, in HTML Help you can display it in the title bar of the help viewers by inserting the <%TITLE%> variable in the *Title bar text:* field for the Main help window definition in the Help Windows 1452 section (this is the default setting).

In WebHelp this text is inserted in the title bar of the web browser by using the <%TITLE%> variable in the <title> tag of the frameset file in the Layout 1415 section (this is the default setting).

Author: The author of your help project. This text is not used automatically by Help+Manual. You can insert it yourself anywhere in your project with the <%AUTHOR%> variable.

Summary: A short text describing your project. This text is not used automatically by Help+Manual. You can insert it yourself anywhere in your project with the <%SUMMARY%> variable.

Copyright: The copyright notice for your project. This text is not used automatically by Help+Manual. You can insert it yourself anywhere in your project with the <%COPYRIGHT%> variable.

Comment: Space for a comment about your project. This text is for internal information and documentation only. There is no corresponding variable so you cannot insert it in topics in your project.

Major Version:
Minor Version:
Build Version: These fields have four corresponding variables that can be used to generate three-part version numbers.

The variables corresponding to the individual components are <%VERSION_MAJOR%>, <%VERSION_MINOR%> and <%VERSION_BUILD%>.

The fourth variable, <\%VERSION%>, combines the contents of the three fields with dots between them, like this:

6.5.456

Default ("Home") topic: This setting specifies the topic that is automatically displayed when an electronic help file is opened (HTML Help, WebHelp, eWriter

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help). This setting is not supported in ePUB eBooks.

See Setting the default topic 128 for full details on setting and using the default topic in different contexts.

You can also use a user-defined variable in this setting to insert the topic ID of the default topic. Just type the variable name into the Default Topic field using the standard **<%VARIABLE_NAME%>** syntax. This makes it possible to define the default topic dynamically by changing the definition 960 of the variable when you publish.

Note on Home topic and CHM publishing:
When you are working in Help+Manual and publish a CHM it will try to display with the topic you are currently working on, not with the Home topic. This won't affect the CHM when it is opened directly or by your application, it is just a convenience for use when you are testing while working with Help+Manual.

See also:

Creating Projects 124
Using Variables 917

11.3.1.2 Language Settings

These settings are very important for correct handling of languages and character sets in your output. Before making any changes here please study the International Languages and Unicode 1627 chapter in the **Reference** section carefully. For more detailed instructions for individual languages please also refer to International languages setup 143 in the **Creating Projects** chapter.

Language of help file: Defines the language of the help file. This option controls sorting in the keyword index and full-text search in the published help file. In addition to this it also identifies the language to the system for proper handling of languages with special character sets and languages requiring Unicode 1627 for proper processing.

- The default setting (**`English United States`**) works correctly for all Western European languages and should not be changed unless really necessary.
- The language setting should be changed for Eastern European languages (including Greek and Turkish) and the *Font character set* setting (see below) should then be set to match.
- This setting must be changed for all Asian languages and other languages requiring Unicode 1627 support (all languages with

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

more than 255 characters that store characters as two bytes). Here too, the *Font character set* must also be set to match. Correct Unicode support for these languages is not possible without a correct language setting and a matching font character set setting.

Bi-directional Language Mode: This setting is for activating support for right-to-left languages like Arabic, Hebrew and Farsi. The default is Left to Right and it should only be changed if you are working with a right-to-left language like Hebrew, Farsi or Arabic.

Right-to-left support is only available in HTML Help (CHM). It is not supported in any other output format.

The setting makes radical changes in the way Help+Manual operates, switching the direction of all the texts in the editor, TOC and everywhere else, both in Help+Manual itself and in the published output.

Font character set: Defines the character set to be used both in your published help file and in the Help+Manual editor.

- The default setting (ANSI_CHARSET) should be used for English and all other Western European languages.
- This option must be set to the correct, specific character set for all Eastern European languages (including Greek and Turkish). Furthermore, this setting must match the *Language of the help file* setting.
- This option must also be set to the correct, specific character set for all languages requiring Unicode 1627 support (most Asian languages and other languages with more than 255 characters). In these languages too it is essential to set both this option and the help file language option to the correct, matching settings for the language you are using.

Default font: This is not the default font for your help file! This option only sets the font used by Microsoft HTML Help for dialog boxes and table of contents entries. The default is *MS Sans Serif,8,0* and HTML Help is optimized for this font and font size. If you change this font always test thoroughly before publishing your help.

The value 8 defines the font size and should generally not be changed. The value 0 defines the character set. You do not need to

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

change the character set value – if it is necessary Help+Manual will do this for you automatically when you publish your project.

See also:

International Languages Setup 143 (Procedures)
International Languages and Unicode 1627 (Reference)
Test-publishing Asian languages on non-Asian Windows 613

11.3.1.3 Project Search Path

This section contains the relative paths to folders where you store the graphics and external snippet files 265 used in your project.

Key Information
The project search paths are all relative to the project directory – the full path is only shown for information. This makes it easier to move your project and your graphics and snippets folders.

How Help+Manual locates graphics and snippet files:

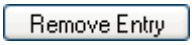
When you insert an image or snippet file in your project Help+Manual only stores the file name, it does not store the path to the file. It finds the file by searching all the folders listed in the Project Search Path, in the order in which they are listed.

This makes it easy to move project and graphics folders to other locations. However, it also means you must be careful to avoid duplicate graphics file names in different folders. See Managing your graphics 514 for more information.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Controls:

To insert a new entry click on *Add Entry* and navigate to the folder you want to add.



To delete an entry click on the entry to select it, then click on *Remove Entry*.

The *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons move entries up and down in the list. This controls the order in which Help+Manual searches folders to locate graphics files.

Remember that Help+Manual always inserts the first file with a matching name that it finds with a matching name. If two folders in the search list contain files with the same name the first file will always be inserted. The second file will never be found.

See also:

Using Graphics 479
Reusing content with snippets 265
Managing your graphics 514

11.3.1.4 Text Variables

This section allows you to define and store any number of variables for use in your project. This is very useful for texts that may change after you create your project, such as program names and so on. You can then change the texts in your entire project just by editing the variables, and you are always sure that all instances have been changed.

Key Information
Plain text variables can include other variables as part of their definition. HTML variables cannot include variables in their definitions.

Plain text variables and HTML variables

You can define variables as either plain text variables or HTML variables.

Plain text variables can be used anywhere and everything they contain will be rendered as plain text, including HTML code.

HTML variables can contain HTML code. If they are used in topics only the plain text part of the code will be inserted, for example the text portion of a hyperlink. The HTML code is only used when the variables are used in HTML templates and HTML code objects. If you

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

insert an HTML variable in locations where HTML code is not supported (for example the main editor) only the plain-text portion of the variable value will be used. If there is no plain-text portion nothing will be inserted.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Controls:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Add

Add a new variable to the list. Variable names can contain spaces. Variable names are converted to all upper case characters automatically.

After creating a variable select the *Type* (HTML or Text), then enter the value in the *Value* column. There is no effective limit on the amount of text you can enter. The theoretical limit is 2 gigabytes, which should be enough for most purposes.

Delete

Select to delete variables from the list. Does not check whether the variable is in use in your project. You can select multiple variables for deletion with **SHIFT+Click** and **CTRL+Click**. This also works with multiple variables with unselected variables between them.

Undefined variables will be output to your project as the variable name. You can search for them and remove them as normal text with *Find & Replace* in the **Write** tab.

Import

Imports a list of variables and corresponding values from a plain text file using the standard INI format, adding them to the project's variable list. You must set the variable type (HTML or Text) manually after importing the list – the type cannot be stored with the list. INI sections are not supported, so please don't use them.

Syntax: VARIABLENAME=Variable value

Enter one variable per line without spaces on either side of the = sign and with a hard carriage return at the end of each line.

Example:

```
PRODNAME=Widget Confabulator 3
PRODUCT PATH=\Application\Widget\Program
WEBSITE=<a href="http://www.acmecoyote.com/">Acme Coyote
Products</a>
CURRENT LOCATION=Bombay, India
```

Export

This function exports the current variable list to a text file, using the same format as shown above. (You can use this to get a full example of the format if you like.)

This only includes user-defined variables. Help+Manual's own predefined variables are not exported.

Move Up
Move Down
Sort

These functions help you to arrange the variables list. The **Sort** button sorts the entire list alphabetically. The **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons move individual variables up and down in the list. You can select multiple variables for moving with **SHIFT+Click** and **CTRL+Click**. This also works with multiple variables with unselected variables between them.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

Using Variables 917

11.3.1.5 Custom Builds

This section allows you to define your own include options, which are also referred to as build options. These options s are like tags that you use to include or exclude text, topics, chapters or entire modules from your help output. You simply tag content with your include options in your project and then select or deselect the corresponding options in the Publish 1310 dialog when you publish.

See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for details on using this function in your projects.

Controls:

Add	Select to add a new user-defined build option. Spaces and a number of special characters are not allowed in build option names. They will simply be removed if you enter them. It is best just to use *A..Z* and *0..9*. All the characters you enter will also be converted to upper case. The *Display Text* is displayed in the lists of build options used in the program to help you identify the individual options. By default it is the same as the build option name but you can change it if you want. Just click in the text in the Display Text column and edit.
Delete	Deletes the current build option from the list. Note that Help+Manual does not check whether you have used the include option in your project when you do this! Undefined include option tags used in your topics will still be functional and since you cannot select them in the Compile Help File 1310 dialog they will always exclude the text they enclose.

See also:

Conditions and Customized Output 969

11.3.1.6 Topic Status

This section allows you to modify the standard "topic status" colors and names that you can use to identify topics in the Table of Contents while you are working. You can also define as many custom status types as you like. When you publish your project you can select *Export "complete" only* to exclude unfinished topics from your published output.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Controls:

Add Status	Define a new custom status. You will first be able to define the new status name then the color picker will be displayed so that you can define the highlight color. Choose a light color that will not obscure the black text in the Table of Contents!
Delete Status	Deletes the current status definition from the list. You can only delete user-defined status definitions. The three standard definitions cannot be deleted.
Change Status	Edit the name and color of the current status definition.

See also:

Topic icon, status and timestamps 373

11.3.1.7 Miscellaneous Options

The settings in this section set the read-only attribute for merged child projects and allow you to automatically generate help context numbers and prefixes for topic IDs for new topics.

Help context numbers are sometimes used to make direct calls to help topics from application programs. Topic ID prefixes are useful for preventing duplicate IDs in modular help systems.

Topic ID Prefix: Any text you enter here is automatically added as a prefix to the suggested topic ID when you create a new topic. Note that this function can only be used for new topics; you cannot automatically change existing topic IDs.

Help Context Numbers: If you activate this function help context numbers will be assigned to new topics automatically, starting with the *Start with* number. Each new number will be generated by incrementing the last number assigned by the *Increment by* setting.

This function will only be used for new topics and anchors created after it is activated. You can add, delete and change the context numbers of existing topics with the Help Context Tool 1241.

Apply help context numbers to topic anchors:
This setting will also automatically generate help context numbers for new topic anchors 415 so that anchors can also be used for calls to help topics from applications.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Write translation-friendly XML

This "Tidy XML" feature significantly simplifies the XML source code of your topics, reducing the amount of tag information that needs to be written. This can make translation with XML-based tools easier but it is not compatible with earlier versions of Help+Manual.

Make sure you have a backup of your project before applying this option. Otherwise you will have trouble accessing it with earlier versions if you ever need to.

History Files:

Configure whether history files are automatically created for changed topics so that you can revert to previous versions if necessary. History files are then saved every time you save your project.

See Topic History 355 for details.

Calculate figure tables:

This option does a preliminary generation pass of your project to calculate the numbers and captions of figures, tables and captions using the figure table references. It is needed to enable forward references to these elements to work – i.e. references to figures coming later in the project than the reference.

It is semi-automatic: If it is off and Help+Manual finds a figure table reference that needs advance calculation during export, it will stop with an error and ask you to restart. After this, it will be left on for the project until you turn it off.

Note that leaving this on will roughly double the time it takes to publish a project, so turn it off unless you really need it.

See Inserting figure links 420 and Figure and table counters 944 for details.

Open child projects read-only:

This protects child projects merged into the TOC of the current project against accidental editing. This is the default setting.

See Working with Modular Help Systems 1088 for more information on editing merged child projects.

See also:

Topic IDs and context numbers 368
IDs and context numbers in modular help 1107
Working with Modular Help Systems 1088
Anchors - jump targets 415

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.3.2 HTML Page Templates

This section allows you to edit the HTML templates that define the layout and general appearance of your topic pages in all HTML-based output formats. See Using HTML Templates 1026 for full details.

HTML page templates are shared:

Note that the same HTML templates are used for most HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, eWriter Help and both versions of Visual Studio Help). The only exception are ePUB and Kindle eBooks. The layout for these eBooks is extremely strict and they uses special template generated by Help+Manual. You can edit this template in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **eBooks**, but please only do so if you are familiar with the eBook specifications.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Simple Template Layout tab:

The Simple Template Layout tab hides the HTML code of the page template and allows you to make some simple changes and additions. This mode is recommended if you do not have experience with editing HTML code.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

Add / Delete	Create new HTML templates and delete existing ones. You can assign page templates to individual topics when you create them and in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window.
Reset Defaults	Resets the current page template to the default settings.
Header /Text background color:	Defines the background colors of the topic header and text.
Text above topic: **Text below topic:**	Any text you enter in these two editing boxes will be inserted on every page above and below the main text of your topic. HTML code is permitted but you are responsible for the correct syntax.
Topics with headers have <Top>, <Previous> and <Next> links:	Activating this option adds additional navigation links to the headers of your topic. These links always point to the Top topic (the home topic defined in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Language Settings**) and the Next and Previous topics in your help. You can edit the captions of the links in the **Caption** column but you cannot change their functionality. By default the links are text-only. You can create button links by selecting graphics files for your buttons in the **Image File** column. Use the ... browse button to locate the graphics files.

HTML Source Code tab:

In this mode you can edit all the code of the HTML templates for your help window definitions manually with a basic HTML code editor with syntax highlighting. Experience with editing HTML code is needed – please don't change or delete anything here unless you

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

really understand what you are doing!

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

See also:
Templates and Secondary Windows 1007
Using HTML Templates 1026

11.3.3 Publishing Options

The options in this section configure how your project is published to the supported output formats. You should always check through all the settings in the relevant section before you output to a new format.

See also:
Publishing 613
Configuring Your Output 644

11.3.3.1 WebHelp

The settings in this section control how your project is exported to WebHelp, which can be displayed with any modern web browser. Help+Manual's WebHelp provides a layout similar to that of the HTML Help viewer so that it can be used intuitively by all Windows users. In addition to a Table of Contents with expanding and collapsing chapter entries it also includes a keyword index and full-text search and supports JavaScript popups 212 that will also work transparently on all modern browsers.

Shared settings:

The options in the **HTML Export Options** section for WebHelp are also used for eBooks (ePUB, Kindle/Mobi) and eWriter Help. These settings are accessible in the WebHelp 1435 section of your project configuration. Settings that are not relevant for individual formats are ignored in those formats.

See also:
WebHelp 1510 (Help Formats)
WebHelp 655 (Configuring Your Output)

11.3.3.1.1 Layout

This section defines the HTML template 1021 file containing the source code of the main page of your WebHelp output, which is normally called **`index.html`**. The default setting is **Integrated** and you should leave this unchanged for most projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- For more background information see WebHelp 655 in the **Configuring Your Output** chapter and WebHelp 1510 and Browser compatibility 1512 in the **Reference > Help Formats** chapter.
- There are also some special variables you can use in the layout page's HTML template. For details see HTML template variables 1577 in the Reference section.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Simple Options

Simple Options provides basic configuration options without source code editing. Please only use the options available here if you are not familiar with editing HTML code manually.

HTML Source Code tab:

This tab allows you to see and edit all the code of the TOC template manually. Experience in editing HTML code is necessary for using this mode! Note that the code in this template is essential for the proper functioning of the TOC. Please don't change or delete anything that you don't fully understand!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

Editing window:	The editor provides full HTML syntax highlighting to make editing easier. To enlarge the window for easier editing just resize the window.
	This button automatically clears the HTML template and reloads the default template. Use with caution. This function completely overwrites all your editing changes in the source code! Applying this change re-enables the Simple Layout Tab.

Integrated

This is the modern version of WebHelp and should be preferred for most purposes. It uses an HTML5-based layout with iFrames instead of the deprecated frameset used in the classic two-frame and three-frame layouts. When you choose this option the Layout template is your main `index.html` file.

Background color:	The color of the background page visible around the navigation, topic and header panes.
Width of left frame:	Width of the navigation pane in pixels. The TOC, Keyword Index and Search are displayed in this pane.
Frame margins:	Free space around the WebHelp panes on the page.
Frame border:	Width of the border line around the three frames on the page.
Header height:	Height of the header pane across the top of the page.
Header HTML content:	By default the header only contains the title of your project. However, you can include anything you like here to provide a header that will integrate the help in the rest of your website.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

No frames

Choose for manual website integration. This uses the TOC page as your main index.html file instead of the layout page. There is then no integration in a user interface and the TOC, Index, Search and Topic pages are all separate.

If you choose this option you should also turn off the navigation option 1422 that forces loading of the user interface when topic pages are opened on their own.

Classic two-frames and three frames

These two layouts use a classic HTML4 frameset layout with a frameset page containing normal frames. These components are now deprecated and you should only use them if you have a specific reason for doing so. When you choose one of these options the Layout template is your main `index.html` file.

The three-pane layout gives you an additional frame above for integration in your website. You can use the top frame to insert your standard website header components.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Show borders between frames: Displays border lines between the two or three frames of your layout. Turn off for a "seamless" look.

Width of the left frame: Defines the width of the navigation frame containing your project's TOC. Only displayed if a frame mode is activated. You can enter the values as either pixels or percent:

- Values under 100 are interpreted as percent.
- Values above 100 are interpreted as pixels.

Height of head frame: Only displayed if the Three Frame option is selected. Defines the height of the head frame in pixels. The height of this frame is always fixed so you must choose the right height to match the layout of the file you are loading into the head frame.

Head frame has scrollbars: Only displayed if the Three Frame option is selected. If you deselect this no scrollbars will be displayed, even if the content does not fit in the head frame. Deactivate for a seamless appearance (you must plan the height of your head frame content precisely for this to work properly).

Head frame loads external file: Select to load an existing HTML file into the top frame. Only displayed if the Three Frame option is selected.

Enter the name of the HTML file you want to load into your top frame here. Filenames are case sensitive in most web servers so be careful to enter the entire name correctly.

Enter the absolute or relative path to the file if is not going to be in the same directory as your help (for example if you are going to use the standard header file for your website).

Important: Help+Manual will not copy this file or any files that it references to your output folder for you! You are responsible for ensuring that the file and any files it references (graphics etc.) are stored in the correct location.

Examples:

File will be in help directory:

```
headframe.html
```

File will be in another directory two levels up from your help on the server:

```
././headframe.htm
```

File will be on a different server:

```
http://www.servername.com/general/head-
frame.htm
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

Using HTML Templates 1026
WebHelp 655 (Configuring your Output)
WebHelp 1510 (Help Formats)
HTML template variables 1577 (Reference)
Browser compatibility 1512

11.3.3.1.2 Navigation

These settings control how the navigation is handled in your WebHelp output. Like the settings in the Layout template, they are important for the functionality and appearance of your help in web browsers. You should always check them before publishing your WebHelp to make absolutely sure that the help will behave as you want.

For more information see WebHelp 655 in the Configuring Your Output chapter and WebHelp 1510 and Browser compatibility 1512 in the Reference > Help Formats chapter.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Include Keyword Index **Include Full-text Search**	These features should be self-explanatory. They simply switch individual features in your WebHelp on and off.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that Full Text Search is only available in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual and will only work if the user has JavaScript enabled.

If you activate search you should also configure the search options in the Full Text Search 1428 section.

Add chapter numbers to Table of Contents:

Adds topic/chapter numbering to the TOC in your WebHelp output.

Numbering format string:

This string defines the format of your chapter numbers. The standard format is standard legal numbering (1.1, 1.2 etc.), defined by the string 1.1.1.1.1.1

The characters in the string are processed in pairs for each level: A format character followed by a spacing character. Enter as many pairs as you need for the levels in your project. There are five format characters you can use. Do not include a spacing character after the last format character.

Format characters: (only these characters allowed)

1 = Numeric/Arabic
I = Roman, upper case
i = Roman, lower case
A = Alphabetic, upper case
a = Alphabetic, lower case

Examples:

Format String	Result
1.1.1.1.1.1	"1.4.5" or "2.1.16.7.9"
I 1.a.1.a.1	"I 4.e" or "II 1.p.7.i"
I-1.1	"I-4.5" or "II.1.16"
A.i.1.1.1.1	"A.iv.5" or "B.i.16.7.9"

Single click on caption in Table of Contents expands chapter:

By default, the user must double-click on chapters to expand them in the TOC. This option allows you to change this to expand on a single click.

Note:
We recommend leaving this option off. The default mode al-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

lows you to select chapters without expanding them automatically and you can still expand chapters with a single click on the chapter icon.

Automatically collapse unfocused entries:

When you set this option all chapters except the chapter in which the user is currently browsing collapse (close) automatically. This can make navigation easier in large help projects because you do not have a large number of chapters open at the same time.

Note:
Selecting this option will disable *On load, expand... All Entries* (see below)

On load, expand:

Allows you to expand the TOC automatically when the user opens the help. You can expand either all entries or just top-level entries (main chapters).

Note:
Expand All Entries is disabled when *Automatically collapse unfocused entries* is selected (see above).

When a topic is loaded outside the navigation frame, force it to reload the navigation frame

Leave this OFF if you want your WebHelp to be indexed by Google!

Turning this on automatically reloads the entire WebHelp interface automatically when a topic is opened directly with a link to the topic file only (`topicname.htm`) instead of the full WebHelp syntax (`index.html?topicname.htm`).

In the past, Help+Manual automatically activated this option. Unfortunately, Google now interprets redirects like this as "duplicate content" and does not index any of the WebHelp topic pages on a site that does this. This option is now turned off by default and you should not activate it if you want to be indexed by Google.

The standard WebHelp skins included with Help+Manual and the Premium Pack skins now have a solution for this problem. When a page is opened on its own an automatic link above the topic header is shown that the user can click on to open the full user interface. This does not trigger the problem with Google.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Create a site map for improved search engine visibility:

Generates an XML site map file that will be automatically read by search engines like Google, Yahoo!, Ask and Bing. The site map tells the search engine where all your topics are and when they were last updated. This can improve search engine efficiency when scanning your site.

Topics excluded from site map: Note that topics with IDs beginning with an underscore character (_) are excluded from the site map because they are also excluded from full-text search.

Full website URL: You must enter the fully-qualified URL to your WebHelp folder on your website here, including the http:// protocol prefix and the last slash. For example:

```
http://www.yourdomain.com/info/help/
```

Icons in the TOC:

If you want you can select your own icons to be used in the Table of Contents here. If you select custom icons stored in folders listed in your Image Folders 1405 they will be copied to your output directory automatically.

If you use custom icons you can only use a set of three icons: One pair for the open/closed state of chapters and one icon for individual topics.

See also:

WebHelp 655 (Configuring your Output)
WebHelp 1510 (Help Formats)
Browser compatibility 1512

11.3.3.1.3 Table of Contents

This section provides access to the HTML template 1021 file that contains the source code of the Table of Contents pane in your WebHelp output. the See Using HTML Templates 1026 for full details.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Simple Template Layout tab:

This mode is recommended if you do not have experience with editing HTML code!

Text above TOC headings: **Text below TOC headings:**	Any text you enter in these two editing boxes will be inserted above and below the TOC tree with the topic entries. For example, you might want to enter the title of your project above the tree and a copyright notice below the tree. HTML tags are allowed. The default code inserts the title of your project and links to the Keyword Index and Full-text Search panes (if activated in your settings). Please do not change this code unless you really understand how it works.
Format of TOC headings:	These settings define the formatting styles to be used for the headings in your TOC. You can use up to six levels. However, note that users will normally find anything more than a maximum of three levels generally and four in exceptional cases confusing and difficult to navigate.
Reset Defaults	This button automatically clears the HTML template and reloads the default template. Use with caution. This function completely overwrites all your editing changes!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

HTML Source Code tab:

This tab allows you to see and edit all the code of the TOC template manually. Experience in editing HTML code is necessary for using this mode! Note that the code in this template is essential for the proper functioning of the TOC. Please don't change or delete anything that you don't fully understand!

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

Editing window:	The editor provides full HTML syntax highlighting to make editing easier. To enlarge the window for easier editing just resize the window.
Reset Defaults	This button automatically clears the HTML template and reloads the default template. Use with caution. This function completely overwrites all your editing changes in the source code! Applying this change re-enables the Simple Layout Tab.

See also:
WebHelp 1510 (Help Formats)
Using HTML Templates 1026
HTML Templates 1611 (Reference)

11.3.3.1.4 Keyword Index

This section allows you to edit the HTML template 1021 that defines the layout and appearance of the Keyword Index pane in your WebHelp output. See Using HTML Templates 1026 for full details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

Simple Template Layout tab:

This mode is recommended if you do not have experience with editing HTML code!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Text above Keyword Index:	Any text you enter in this editing box will be inserted above the Keyword Index. HTML tags are allowed. The default code inserts the title of the Keyword Index and links to the TOC and Full-text Search (if activated in your settings) panes. Please do not change this code unless you really understand how it works.
Keyword Index Font:	These settings define the font styles to be used for the components of your Keyword Index.
Index Separators:	These entries generate the headings for each letter group in the Keyword Index. If your help is not in English you can add appropriate letters for your language.
Reset Defaults	This button automatically clears the HTML template and reloads the default template. Use with caution – this function completely overwrites all your editing changes!

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

HTML Source Code tab:

This tab allows you to see and edit all the code of the TOC template manually. Experience in editing HTML code is necessary for using this mode! Note that the code in this template is essential for the proper functioning of the TOC. Please don't change or delete anything that you don't fully understand!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

Editing window:	The editor provides full HTML syntax highlighting to make editing easier. To enlarge the window for easier editing just resize the window.
Reset Defaults	This button automatically clears the HTML template and reloads the default template. Use with caution. This function completely overwrites all your editing changes in the source code! Applying this change re-enables the Simple Layout Tab.

See also:
Using HTML Templates 1026
HTML Templates 1611 (Reference)
WebHelp 1510 (Help Formats)

11.3.3.1.5 Full Text Search

This section configures the Full-text Search function for WebHelp output. It includes both the options for configuring the behavior of the search function and the HTML template 1021 that defines the layout and appearance of the Search pane in your WebHelp output. See Using HTML Templates 1026 for full details.

- **Professional and Floating license version feature only:**
  Please note that the support for full-text search in WebHelp is only included in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **`.hmskin`** skin file. Edit-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

A full web server required for testing PHP and ASP search

The PHP and ASP search modes use server-side scripting languages that make search performance much faster in large projects and also support phrasal searching, which is not possible with client-side JavaScript searching. However, because of this you need a full web server with support for PHP or ASP for these search modes, also for testing.

The mini server included with Help+Manual for WebHelp does not include PHP or ASP support and you cannot use it to test PHP or ASP search on your local computer.

How full-text search works in WebHelp

There are three different search modes you can choose: JavaScript, PHP or ASP. JavaScript works entirely in the user's browser, PHP and ASP work on the web server and require web server support.

JavaScript mode:
This mode works on any computer, even without a web server, so you can also test it directly on your local machine. It uses an index of words found in the project, together with the locations where the words are found. This means that it is not possible to search for phrases because the index only knows about the locations of the individual words.

PHP and ASP modes:
These modes work on the server and support searching for exact phrases as well as single words. They require a web server with PHP or ASP support, also for testing. Which you choose will depend on what your web server supports – ask your system administrator or web provider for advice if you are not sure. You cannot test PHP or ASP search on your local computer, you must use a web server with the appropriate PHP or ASP support (this can also be installed locally, check with your system administrator for details).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Simple Template Layout tab:

This mode is recommended if you do not have experience with editing HTML code!

Reset Defaults	This button automatically clears all your settings and the HTML template and reloads the default template. Use with caution – this function completely overwrites all your editing changes!
Text on top of Search page:	The text here defines what appears at the top of the Search pane in the WebHelp shown in the user's browser. HTML tags are allowed. The default code inserts the title of the Full-text Search and links to TOC and Index. Please do not change this code unless you really understand how it works.

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

HTML Source Code tab:

This tab allows you to see and edit all the code of the TOC template manually. Experience in editing HTML code is necessary for using this mode! Note that the code in this template is essential for the proper functioning of the TOC. Please don't change or delete anything that you don't fully understand!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Disabled Simple Layout tab:
The Simple Layout tab will be disabled as soon as you edit source code to prevent accidental deletion of your custom code. It can only be re-enabled by clicking on the **Reset Template** button. This will delete the edited code and replace it with the standard template

Editing window:	The editor provides full HTML syntax highlighting to make editing easier. To enlarge the window for easier editing just resize the window.
	This button automatically clears the HTML template and reloads the default template. Use with caution. This function completely overwrites all your editing changes in the source code! Applying this change re-enables the Simple Layout Tab.

Configuration options:

The configuration options for Full-text Search are quite simple but they are important because they make a major difference to how search functions. The *Accent* and *Single-case* options are particularly important for some languages.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Search platform:

JavaScript, PHP or ASP.

JavaScript works everywhere, also on local machines, and does not require web server support but does not support phrasal searches and may be slower with larger projects.

PHP and ASP require a web server with PHP or ASP support. They support phrasal searches and are considerably faster than JavaScript but they do not work without a properly-configured web server. Local testing is not possible without a local web server.

String Constants / Translation:

The String Constants table is a list of the texts that are used in the user interface of the Search function. You can edit the default texts in the *Text* column directly. HTML tags are not permitted here, you can only enter plain text.

(Load / Save Constants):

In addition to editing the string constants yourself you can also load sets of constants for a variety of different languages, and save your own constants to external files.

The constants are stored in Unicode text files, so you can store your texts in any language. The files have the extension `*.zlang` and are stored in the `\Templates\html` folder in the Help+Manual program directory, which is normally `C:\Program Files\EC Software\HelpAndManual8.` You will find files for most common languages in this directory.

Exclude these words from search:

This list defines common words you don't want to include in the full-text search index to save space. This is an important point because the JavaScript full-text index has to be completely downloaded from your server by the user's browser before a search can be executed.

You can add your own words and delete existing words. Just click in the list and edit, and only enter one word per line. Copy and paste is supported.

Note that this list must contain at least one word. If you delete all the entries it will default to the standard entries when you save your project.

Skip words with less than ... characters:

This is another function that decreases the size of the index. Words with less then 3 characters are usually not very meaningful and excluding them from the search is generally recommended.

© 2023 by EC Software. All rights reserved

See also:

WebHelp 1510 (Help Formats)
Using HTML Templates 1026
HTML Templates 1611 (Reference)

11.3.3.1.6 Zoom Indexer

The full-text search in your WebHelp output is implemented with a bundled version of the Zoom search indexer tool from Wrensoft. The standard version will serve the great majority of users' needs, but if you want you can also integrate the full version of Zoom in your projects. This gives you access to much more extensive search configuration options through Zoom's own configuration interface.

The full version of Zoom also gives you the option to use CGI server-side searching. This is only really needed for huge sites with thousands of topics. For almost all other purposes, the PHP and ASP server-side options included in the bundled version will be more than sufficient.

Important: This section is not included in skins

This section is not stored in HTML skins, it is project-only. Even if you are using a skin, you must still configure this in your project.

Using the full version of Zoom

Just activate the check box in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Zoom Indexer** to tell Help+Manual that you want to use the full version of Zoom. Then enter the locations of your Zoom installation and the Zoom configuration file that you plan to use. See the Zoom documentation for full details on using and configuring the standalone version of Zoom.

Tip: You can use a user-defined variable 919 to specify the Zoom configuration file. In addition to this, you can also use variables inside the custom Zoom configuration file. This makes it possible to select different configuration files in publishing tasks and batch files for automated build operations.

11.3.3.1.7 Google Analytics

Use Google Analytics 4 — Universal Analytics is being closed down

Note that the older Universal Analytics from Google with the **UA-xxxxxxx-x** tracking IDs is now deprecated and is going to be completely closed down at the end of June 2023. Help+Manual 9 and Premium Pack 5 both have full support for the new Google Analytics 4 (GA4) with the new **G-xxxxxxxxxx** ID format, and you should switch to it immediately. Among other things, in the default configuration, Google claims that it is now compliant

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

with the European Union's GDPR legislation. This is disputed by some parties, but it is definitely more compliant than Universal Analytics.

Help+Manual Professional and Floating have built-in support for Google Analytics

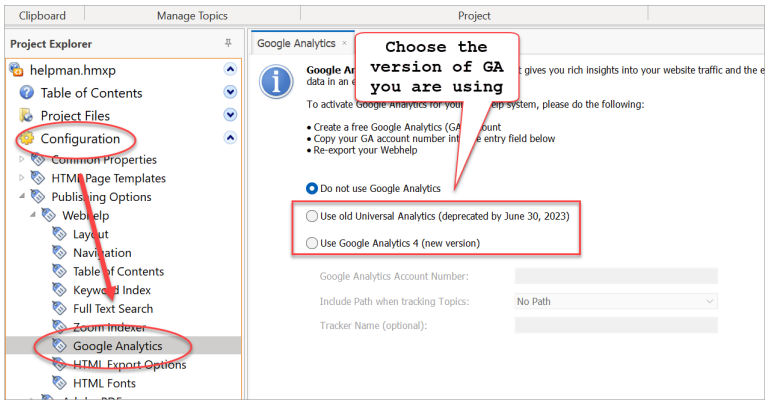
Please note that Google Analytics support is available in Help+Manual Professional and Floating only. This feature is not available in the Basic version of Help+Manual.

Sign up for Google Analytics and get a tracking ID

To use Google Analytics you must sign up for the service, configure it for the URL of your WebHelp and get a tracking ID. Then you just need to enter the ID in your Help+Manual project.

Activating Google Analytics in your project

You must activate Google Analytics in your project by entering either your Universal Analytics or your GA4 ID in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **Google Analytics**. Everything else is automatic and is handled by the code in the skins used to publish your WebHelp output.



Important: This section is not included in skins

This section is not stored in HTML skins, it is project-only. Even if you are using a skin, you must still configure this in your project.

Use the correct Google Analytics ID

It is important that you really enter the tracking ID. This is a little confusing in the Google Analytics site – your account can also have another numeric identifier –and the ID is some-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

times difficult to find. We can't post navigation examples here because Google also changes their site layout quite often. Here is how to know that you have the right ID.

If you find an ID that is only numbers without the prefixes shown below, it is not your tracking ID.

Old Universal Analytics

The tracking ID for the older Universal Analytics always starts with **UA-** and has the format **UA-xxxxxxx-x**, where the x characters are your specific ID.

New Google Analytics 4

The tracking ID for the new GA4 always starts with **G-** and has the format **G-xxxxxxxxxx**.

See also:

Profiling WebHelp with Google Analytics 666 (Overview)
Full Text Search 1428 (Configuration Options)

11.3.3.1.8 HTML Export Options

These options configure many key aspects of how your project content is converted to HTML code for WebHelp and eBooks (ePUB, Kindle and eWriter Help). There is a separate set of settings for Microsoft HTML Help CHM files and the Microsoft Visual Studio Help formats, which have different requirements .

Important: This section is not included in skins

This section is not stored in HTML skins, it is project-only. Even if you are using a skin, you must still configure this in your project.

HTML export settings for WebHelp and eBooks (ePUB, Kindle and eWriter):

Extension for HTML topic files:

By default all HTML topic files are exported with the extension **.html**. You can change this to **.htm, .asp, .php** or a manually-entered extension but extensions other than **.htm** or **.html** are only supported in WebHelp. The **.html** extension is always used for topic files in HTML Help (CHM files) and Visual Studio Help.

This setting is also irrelevant for eBooks.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

CSS stylesheet file name:

This setting allows you to change the name of the stylesheet file exported with the CSS style information. The default file name is `default.css`.

Note that in Premium Pack V3, V4 and V5 skins the CSS stylesheet name is automatically set to `hmproject-styles.css` on export and cannot be changed. The name is not displayed here.

Font size encoding:

This setting allows you to choose how font sizes are defined in your output. You can choose **pt** (points), **px** (pixels), % (percent) or **ems** (where 1 em = 100%). Which setting you choose controls how fonts are displayed on the user's screen and whether or not the user can change the font size.

- Choose **pt** or **px** to lock your font size and layout, **%** or **ems** to allow the user to change the font size.
- Always choose **%** or ems for **ePUB** eBooks, otherwise many readers will not allow font size changing.

Points:
When you export the font size in points the user cannot adjust the font size. However, the size of the fonts displayed on the user's computer screen will vary depending on the Windows screen DPI setting and/or font size settings. For example, if you develop your help on a machine with Windows set to 96dpi (the standard) your text layout may be incorrect on computers set to 120dpi (fonts look much too big, text in hanging indents may be wider than the indent etc). This is because the size of the fonts changes but the size of the other layout elements (indents, locked table cells etc.) doesn't.

Pixels:
This is the only setting that ensures that the fonts and your layout will always be displayed exactly as you see them on your development machine. The font size is always uses the same number of pixels, so it is always the same size relative to other elements of your layout like indents, graphics and so on.

Percent or Ems:
If you select percent or Ems the user will be able to adjust the font size in the help, for example by holding down **`Ctrl`** and turning the mouse scroll wheel. This may or may not be a good thing, because the size of other layout elements (graphics, indents, locked table cells etc.) will not change, so the user

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

adjustments may "break" your layout.

Important note on the % and ems settings:

If you choose these units all the other dimensions in the HTML output for WebHelp and eBooks will use relative ems dimensions instead of absolute values. This is necessary for responsive designs in which the entire layout can be scaled by changing the base font size.

Font size of Normal style:

If you choose percent or ems for font size encoding (see above) you can also use this setting to define the size of the Normal style in relation to the default font of the user's browser. The value is expressed in percent and the default is 100%.

The 100% default is generally not the best choice, however! What you need really depends on the entire layout. For example, if your base font size is equivalent to 10-11 points the correct font size for Normal would be around 82%.

Export WebHelp with UTF-8 BOM:

Only switch this off if you are using PHP code in your project and your server's PHP system is having trouble with the BOM at the beginning of your webhelp files. If you don't know what PHP is you don't need to turn this off!

All Help+Manual webhelp files are stored in UTF-8 Unicode. The UTF-8 BOM (Byte Order Mark) is a special character code at the beginning of the file that identifies it as a UTF-8 Unicode file. It is generally better to leave this in because it will prevent old and badly-configured servers from misinterpreting the UTF-8 Unicode formatting. However, the PHP installations on some servers still have trouble with the BOM and so you may need to switch the BOM off if you are using PHP.

Replace blanks and underscores in HTML file names with hyphens:

If you leave this off, illegal characters, spaces and underscores in HTML file names will be replaced by underscores (old Help+Manual standard). Turning it on uses hyphens instead.

This is off by default to prevent breaking links in existing projects.

Apply date and time

When this is on (default setting) the timestamps of your HTML

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

stamp of topic to HTML topic files:

topic files will be set to the date and time of the topic in your project, which is equivalent to the time of the last change. This makes it easier to synchronize your output folder with an old version on your web server, for example. This is only really relevant for WebHelp output – in CHM help the topic files are all hidden inside the CHM.

If you turn this off the timestamps of all HTML files will always be the date and time at which your entire project was published.

Do not turn this setting off unless you have a specific reason to do so.

Modify archive bit of topic files depending on changes:

Turning this on will automatically clear the archive bits of all modified files in your WebHelp output folder. Use this if you have an FTP program like Second Copy that can synchronize your output folder with your web server folder using archive bits.

The advantage of this is that it automatically flags all modified files, even if their timestamps have not changed. This is important because the timestamps of your topic files are only changed if the topics have actually been edited. For example, if you change your HTML templates this will change all your topic files but it will not change the timestamps of topic files that have not been edited, even though their contents change because of the template changes. Using archive bits guarantees that all modified files are identified.

Using this option only makes sense if you have an FTP program that supports folder synchronization on the basis of archive bits, however...

Export style names:

When this is selected Help+Manual uses the full names of your styles in the stylesheet. This makes the sheet much easier to read if you ever want to view or edit it manually.

If you deselect this option the style names are converted to brief, alphanumeric codes that are not so "human-friendly". This can make your project a little bit smaller but not much.

Export lists as text:

This setting is recommended. When it is selected numbered and bulleted lists are managed using text formatting in HTML-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

based output. This will generally provide better list formatting across browsers than the standard lists generated when you turn it off. Even in HTML Help, which uses MS Internet Explorer for HTML rendering, you will find that lists display better with this setting.

If you deselect this option lists will be exported as standard <OL> and <UL> lists with <LI> list elements. This option also supports formatted lists but has some limitations compared to the text option. See Formatting Lists 335 for more information on this.

If an image has no caption, export file name as hint:

Images in HTML pages can have an ALT attribute that displays a small text in a "tooltip" when the user positions the mouse pointer over the image.

Selecting this option exports the image file name as the ALT attribute if the image doesn't have a caption. Unless your graphics files have very descriptive names it is normally advisable to switch this off.

Highlight hotspots in pictures

When this is on hotspot links in images and graphics are highlighted for easier visibility and respond on mouseover. Turning this off creates invisible hotspots that only change the mouse cursor form on mouseover.

Conversion options for non-HTML image formats:

This option controls how images in your project not compatible with HTML are converted and exported when you publish to HTML-based formats. It does not affect JPEG, GIF and PNG images, which are exported without conversion.

Which option provides the best results depends on the type of images in your project. GIF and PNG generally provide the smallest files with the best quality for screenshots with 256 colors or less. PNG files are usually too large for images with more than 256 colors; JPEG is the better choice for those.

Screenshots often do not look so good when converted to JPEG so you should always choose your settings to make sure that this doesn't happen. It is better to use GIF or PNG and no more than 256 colors for screenshots.

JPEG and true-color PNG are really only needed for photographs and continuous-tone graphics, and JPEG is generally

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	preferable for this because it produces much smaller files for true color images.
Output quality for JPEG images:	You can reduce graphic file size by decreasing the quality but this will also make the images look less good. A value of between 80 and 90 is normally acceptable. Note that this quality setting is only applied to JPEG images actually generated by the program on the basis of the conversion settings (see above). JPEG images that you insert in your project directly are not affected. They are used as they are, without any changes.
Export topics of class "Popup" as JavaScript popup windows:	Activate this to use JavaScript popups in WebHelp, CHM and Visual Studio Help. See Creating popup topics 207 and Using JavaScript popups 212 for full details.

See also:

Configuring Your Output 644
WebHelp 1510 (Help Formats)

11.3.3.1.8.1 Popup Topics

In WebHelp, popup topics are activated with the option *Export topics of class "Popup" as JavaScript popup windows* in HTML Export Options. This is the only option for popups in WebHelp. If it is not activated the popup topics will be displayed as normal topics.

For full details see Creating popup topics 207 and Using JavaScript popups 212.

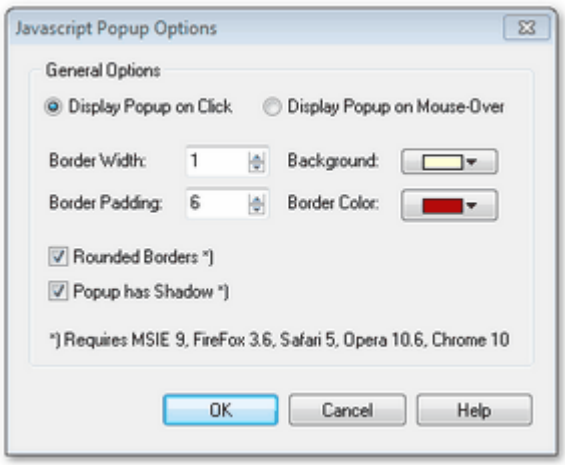
Important: This section is not included in skins

This section is not stored in HTML skins, it is project-only. Even if you are using a skin, you must still configure this in your project.

Customizing JavaScript popups:

Click on *Customize popup appearance* in **HTML Export Options** to display the configuration dialog:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Click/mouseover: Displays the popup on user click or mouseover (i.e. as soon as the user moves the mouse pointer over the link). Be careful with using the mouseover option as many users find this intrusive and it may also trigger popup blockers in some browsers.

Border width: Enter 0 for no border, any value above 0 (in pixels) to draw a border around the popup box.

Border padding: The distance between the popup content and the border or edge of the popup (if there is no border) in pixels.

Background: The background color of the popup box.

Border color: The color of the border, if there is one.

Rounded borders and drop shadow: These effects are only supported by modern browsers: Internet Explorer 9, Firefox 3.6, Opera 10.6, Google Chrome 10 or later.

See also:

Creating popup topics 207
Using JavaScript popups 212

11.3.3.1.9 HTML Fonts

These options configure how fonts and symbol characters are exported to HTML output formats. The same settings can be configured in both the WebHelp and Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) sections, but they are used globally for all HTML output formats (WebHelp, CHM, eWriter, ePub, Kindle, Visual Studio Help).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Important: This section is not included in skins

This section is not stored in HTML skins, it is project-only. Even if you are using a skin, you must still configure this in your project.

Export Symbol fonts as SVG

Converts characters of the Symbol fonts specified here to SVG glyphs on output. SVG graphics scale just as well as fonts, but unlike Symbol fonts, SVG graphics work in all browsers and cannot be blocked by ad blockers or security settings as web fonts can. They also make it possible to use Windows-only Symbol fonts like Windings on the web.

See Special characters, lines and breaks 245 for full details.

Define HTML font families

This section allows you change the predefined HTML font families in Help+Manual and define your own for additional fonts. Font families are a list of alternative fonts to be used if the user's browser does not have access to the main font you have defined.

See HTML fonts and headings 286 for instructions.

See also:

Configuring Your Output 644

11.3.3.2 Adobe PDF

The settings in this section control how your project is exported to Adobe PDF, which can be displayed with Adobe Acrobat or Acrobat Reader, or any number of other PDF viewers. The most important setting is the link to the print manual template which defines the appearance and layout of your PDF output.

In addition to selecting the template you can choose whether you want to generate an interactive PDF with active hyperlinks for on-screen viewing or a print manual style PDF designed to enable the user to print out a hard copy of the user manual. You can also adjust a number of security-related settings.

See also:

Customize - PDF Export 1271
PDF and Printed Manuals 785
Adobe PDF 1523 (Help Formats)

11.3.3.2.1 PDF Layout

The settings in this section have an effect on the appearance and style of your PDF output. The most important setting is the link to the print manual template 803 which defines the page

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

layout of your PDF output and adds additional pages and features (cover, index, contents etc). See PDF and Printed Manuals 785 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Options:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Interactive PDF document:

Generates a PDF designed for interactive on-screen viewing. When you select this option hyperlinks in the PDF are active and the entries in the print-style Table of Contents at the beginning of the document are actively linked to the topics they refer to.

When you select this you should also activate *Underline Topic Links and paint in color* (see below) to make your hyperlinks visible.

Similar to a printed manual:

Generates a static PDF designed for printing rather than on-screen viewing. Automatically disables all the other interactive options in this section.

Create Table of Contents:

Generates an interactive Table of Contents which is displayed in the "Bookmarks" section of Adobe Reader. Only available for interactive PDF documents.

Note that this is not the same as the Table of Contents section configured in the print manual template 803, which is designed for use in printed PDFs.

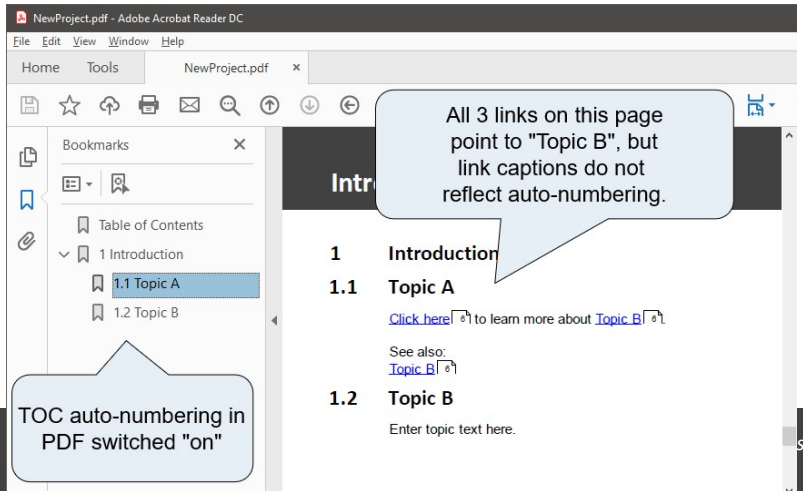
Outlines are numbered (1.2.3.4...):

If you activate this option the entries "Bookmarks" Table of Contents displayed in Adobe Reader will also be numbered automatically.This option uses the standard legal numbering format for chapters/sections and sub-chapters/sub-sections.

Important: You cannot change change the numbering style for this auto-generated TOC. It is generated by the PDF viewer, not by Help+Manual. Even if your PDF template uses another numbering style, the Bookmarks TOC will still use the standard legal style if this option is activated.

Apply numbers to links:

If outlines are numbered, links that point to these Table of Contents entries do not automatically pick up the numbering of the outline. You can enable that with this option.



s reserved

See also:

Customize - PDF Export 1271
PDF and Printed Manuals 785
Embedding files in PDFs 807

11.3.3.2.2 PDF Options

These options set the standard options for saving the PDF output file. These are identical to the options that you can set in Acrobat and they should all be self-explanatory. Note that some PDF viewer programs may not support some of the options you activate here.

PDF/A Mode:	Activate PDF-A mode for compatibility with the official long-term archiving options. See this Wikipedia page for details.
Text compression:	PDF text compression. Should usually be set to *Deflate* for maximum compression.
Image quality:	Activating JPEG compression reduces file size but also reduces the quality of the images in your PDF file.
Open mode:	How and what the PDF displays when the user first opens it.
Zoom mode:	Default zoom mode to be activated when the user first opens the PDF.
Viewer layout:	Default PDF viewer layout to be activated when the user first opens the PDF.
Owner and user password:	Passwords you can set to protect the PDF against changes or unauthorized opening. Use in combination with the user permissions check boxes on the right.
Document information:	The information displayed when the user selects the document information option in the PDF viewer program.

Using variables:

Note that you can use variables 917 in all the **Document Information** fields.

See also:

Customize - PDF Export 1271
PDF and Printed Manuals 785

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.3.3.2.3 Font Embedding

If the fonts you use in your PDF document are not installed on the user's computer your document may not be displayed correctly, because substitute fonts will be used. You can solve this problem by embedding the fonts in your PDF document, but this can increase the size of your document considerably, particularly if you are using Unicode-based languages like Asian languages.

If you need to keep your PDF files as small as possible it is advisable to only use standard fonts like Arial and Times Roman that will be installed on all users' computers. You can then reduce the PDF file size by adding these fonts to the exclusion list and by embedding only font subsets of the characters used in your project (see below). This is often not possible for languages with special character sets, particularly Asian languages.

Problems in font rendering: check the PDF printer driver!

If your fonts are rendered with strange spacing and seemingly incorrect characters the problem is generally the reference printer driver used for generating PDFs. See here 1271 for information.

Recommendation for Asian languages and other languages with special character sets

In general you should always embed fonts for languages with special character sets, like Russian, Greek and Asian languages in particular. If you experience problems with the normal embedding modes, try the option for Type 3 fonts, even if you are not using Type 3 fonts in your project. Help+Manual will then embed the fonts in Type 3 mode, and this often solves problems, particularly in documents where Asian languages are mixed with text using the English alphabet.

It is generally best not to use CID font embedding for these languages. See CID font embedding 1450 in the PDF chapter for more details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Options:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Embedding fonts:

If you must embed fonts you can reduce the size of your PDF files by selecting the right embedding option.

Embed TrueType fonts embeds all TrueType fonts except the fonts you add to the exclusion list (see below).

Embed symbol fonts only embeds fonts like Symbol and Wingdings. This ensures that special characters that depend on these fonts will be displayed correctly. Other fonts not found on the user's computers will be substituted with available similar fonts.

Use Base 14 Type1 fonts tells Acrobat to substitute its own built-in fonts. This switches off font embedding and will work adequately if your fonts are similar enough to the Base 14 fonts (Times/Mac or Times New Roman PS MT /Win; Helvetica/Mac or Arial MT/Win; Courier, Symbol, and Zapf Dingbats, each with regular, bold, italic or oblique, and bold italic styles).

Embed TrueType subset only embeds the code pages of the TrueType fonts that are actually used in your project.

Embed TrueType subset (used characters only) saves even more space by only embedding the characters that are actually used in your project. Note that this can slow down publishing considerably with larger projects.

Embed Type 3 Fonts is fur using Adobe Type 3 fonts instead of TrueType.

Embed CID Fonts generates virtual fonts in the PDF that are encoded with CIDs (Character IDs). In some documents this can provide better rendering. However, this option may not be optimal for special character sets like Russian, Greek and Asian languages. With these fonts, you will often find that CID fonts look good but the PDF file is very large and the text cannot be selected or searched. See CID font embedding 1450 in the PDF chapter for more details.

Do not embed these fonts:

If you choose *Embed TrueType fonts* you can reduce the size of your output file by excluding all the common fonts that all users are likely to have installed on their computers.

All the fonts you add to this list will not be embedded in your output file.

If a TrueType font cannot be embedded, use Type3

Some Windows TrueType fonts like MSGothic are implemented as "collections" of font variants with the extension **`.ttc`** instead of as the standard TrueType **`.ttf`** font package. Font collections can't be embedded directly in PDF, but if you leave this option on Help+Manual will automatically convert them to Type3 and embed them. Then they will work fine.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

Customize - PDF Export 1271
CID Font embedding 1450
PDF and Printed Manuals 785

11.3.3.2.4 CID font embedding

The *Embed CID Fonts* option in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **Font Embedding** is a rather esoteric technology that can reduce the size of your PDF and improve font rendering.

When you activate *Embed CID Fonts* the characters actually used in the project are embedded in the PDF file as "virtual" fonts, using a special internal format and CID (Character ID) encoding of the characters.

This only works with fonts that actually contain all the characters you need to display. If you select a normal western font like Trebuchet that does not contain the characters for the language you are using you will have problems. The text will automatically be rendered as graphical glyphs because the characters are not available, which will make your PDF files huge. Also, it will not be possible to select or copy text from the PDF, because it does not contain text, only graphics.

Effectively, this means that *Embed CID Fonts* only works with Unicode fonts that contain the full Unicode character set!

CID font embedding and Asian fonts

When you select CID font embedding for Asian fonts the PDF will generally look very good but you will usually not be able to select or search the text and the PDF file will be very large. This is because the characters are then rendered as glyphs (small graphics). In most cases, it is better to choose either TrueType or Type 3 embedding for Asian documents, particularly Asian documents that also contain text using the English alphabet. Type 3 embedding will usually produce the best results for such documents, even if you are not using Type 3 fonts in your project (Help+Manual embeds the fonts in Type 3 mode.)

Recommendations for CID font embedding

It is not really possible to provide more than a general rule of thumb for CID font embedding: It should usually be off for Asian languages, Russian and Greek, but it can provide better rendering and smaller PDF sizes for other languages. We can only suggest that you test your PDFs with CID on and off to see which is better for your specific needs.

PDF files much too large:
If your PDF files get massively larger with CID embedding switched on, that is a sure sign that the fonts you are using do not contain all the characters you need. This also means

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

that these fonts will not actually be used even if CID is off: Then, Windows will perform font substitution and will replace your font with one that does contain the necessary characters.

Special Unicode characters:
If special characters are not rendering correctly this is also a sign that the font you are using does not contain all the necessary characters, and Windows font substitution is also failing to find them. The only way to really get all characters to render correctly is to use fonts that really contain all the characters you are using. Otherwise you will get oversized PDFs or incorrect rendering or both.

Why CID font embedding exists

Although Help+Manual can generate PDFs from projects written in Unicode-based languages, the Adobe PDF format does not actually support Unicode directly. This is because PDF is a universal format designed to be displayed on any computer running any operating system. If PDF files were encoded with Unicode they would not display on older operating systems like Windows 98 and Windows NT that have no Unicode support.

PDF files gets around this problem by using a different encoding internally that can map and represent all the Unicode characters. PDF currently supports two internal encoding formats for Unicode: double-byte characters (which are often mistakenly confused with Unicode) and "character ID" or CID.

When you use CID font embedding, PDF engine does not embed the entire font. Instead, it only embeds the characters that are actually used, storing them as a special PDF "virtual" font with character ID encoding. A single copy of each character in each size used is stored as a graphical glyph and it is then referenced in the text with the CID code that makes it possible to copy text and search in the PDF.

You might think that this would make it unnecessary to embed fonts not available on the user's computer in the PDF, but unfortunately this is not always the case.

See also:

International languages setup 143
Adobe PDF - Font Embedding 1447 (Configuration Options)

11.3.3.3 Microsoft HTML Help

The settings in this section control how your project is exported to HTML Help. The settings here are also used for the MS Visual Studio Help output formats.

Shared settings:

The options in the **HTML Export Options** section for MS HTML Help/CHM 1451 files are also used for the MS Visual Studio Help 1464 output formats. These settings are accessible

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

in the HTML Help 1459 section of your project configuration. Settings that are not relevant for an individual format are ignored in that format.

The HTML export settings for WebHelp and eBooks can be configured in the WebHelp 1435 and configuration section.

See also:

HTML Help 1506 (Help Formats)
HTML Help Options 1454 (Help Windows)
HTML Page Templates 1413

11.3.3.3.1 Help Windows

These settings define the appearance and behavior of the help viewer used to display Microsoft HTML Help CHM files. They are completely irrelevant for all other formats. They used to be relevant for the Microsoft Winhelp format but that format is now completely obsolete and no longer used or supported. HTML Help CHM has been the standard Windows help format since Windows 98.

This help viewer is a component of Microsoft Windows. The settings in the help window definitions can only control the features provided by the viewer. For more information see Help Windows 1609 in the Reference section.

See also:

Using help windows 194
Configuring Your Output 644
Templates and Secondary Windows 1007
Help Windows 1609 (Reference)

11.3.3.3.1.1 General Options

These common properties are displayed at the top of the editing screen and are always available no matter which tab is selected.

Select window: Select a help window definition for editing. By default only the standard *Main* window is defined. Click on *Add* to create additional secondary help windows. *Remove* deletes the current secondary help window (Main cannot be deleted).

Window name: This is the identifying name of your help window type, which is displayed in the **Help Window:** field in each topic's tab. It is restricted to a maximum length of 8 characters. No spaces or non-alphanumeric characters are allowed.

You cannot rename a secondary help window once you have created it.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Global window name:

Only use this option for HTML Help files using runtime merging in a collection of master/child CHM files. You can then use the same global help window name for all the CHM files for better access to the CHM collections via the help calls from your applications.

The benefit of using a global help window is that the help always opens in the same window on new help calls, even when you are making calls to child modules. If you don't use a global window, calls to different modules in the help system will open new instances of the help viewer.

If you use this option the global help window name **must** use the following format, and you must use the **same** global name in all the projects:

$global_<windowname>

Examples:

```
$global_main_mycompany
$global_widgethelp
```

Important – make sure your window name is unique!

Don't use the standard $global_main name! If you do it is quite possible that some other software on the user's computer will also be using that name and then your help could open in their help window!

Title bar text:

This is the text displayed in the title bar of the help viewer in HTML Help. You can enter different texts for secondary window definitions to display different titles in the title bars of external windows.

By default this field contains the <%TITLE%> variable, which automatically displays the text entered in *Help Title:* field in the Title & Copyright 1402 section, so you only need to change this if you want to display a different text.

Size and position:

Defines the size and position of the main help viewer for *Main* and for external windows for secondary help window definitions.

Note that in HTML Help these settings are only used the first time the help is opened for the main help viewer. After that Windows stores the user's own settings and re-uses them the next time the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

help is opened. The settings will always be used for external windows, however.

Position Wizard

The Position Wizard displays a dummy window that you can position and resize on the screen to set the size and position values.

If you have a dual monitor system use the position wizard in the primary monitor and make sure that the primary monitor is on the left: On dual-monitor systems the 0,0 position is defined as the top left corner of the primary monitor, so doing this will make sure that the resulting values also work on single-monitor computers.

See also:

Using help windows 194

11.3.3.3.1.2 HTML Help Viewer UI

These options control the appearance and behavior of the main HTML Help viewer (*Main* help window) and the viewer windows for external windows 1025 (user-defined secondary windows).

Specifying a secondary help window in a hyperlink to a topic will only have any effect in HTML Help if the option *Links to secondary help windows open a new help window* is activated here. If not, all the secondary window settings will be ignored and the settings for *Main* will be used.

Productivity Tip
Note that there is no *Keep window on top* setting for HTML Help. This can only be activated by the programmer in the call to the HTML Help – see the HTML Help API documentation for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Controls:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Links to secondary help windows open a new help window:

Activates external windows. When you specify a secondary help window in the Insert Hyperlink dialog (with the *Window:* option) the target window will be opened in an external window with the settings for the specified secondary window.

If this option is not activated links to secondary windows will open in the main help viewer.

Visible buttons:

These options are used to choose which control buttons are displayed in the help viewer. You may want to switch them all off for external windows 1025.

Window has a navigation panel:

This option activates or deactivates display of the help viewer's navigation panel containing the Table of Contents, keyword index and other tabs. You may want to disable this for external windows 1025. Note that if you also disable the **Hide/Show** button in the Visible Buttons section the user will not be able to activate the navigation panel at all!

Search tab:
Favorites tab:

These options activate or deactivate the display of the Search and Favorites tabs in the navigation panel. Note that if they are disabled it will not be possible for the user to enable them.

Save size and position in Registry:

When this is selected the current help window size and position are saved in the Windows Registry when the user closes the help. Otherwise the size and position you define will always be used. Don't turn this option off; it really annoys most users if their positions are not saved!

User-defined buttons:

Allows you to define two HTML URLs as targets for the Home button and two user-defined buttons. (These buttons must also be activated in *Visible buttons:* to be displayed.)

You cannot enter links to topics in the help here. Note that you must enter fully-qualified URLs including the protocol (i.e. `http://`, `ftp://` etc). Simple URLs without the protocol (e.g. `www.domainname.com`) will not work.

You can edit the names of the Jump 1 and Jump 2 buttons but you cannot change the name of the Home button.

The icons displayed for these buttons are hard-wired into the Microsoft HTML Help viewer and cannot be changed.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

Secondary windows 1025

11.3.3.3.2 Extended .HHP Settings

This section enables you to add or overwrite sections of the HHP project file used to generate your HTML Help output. (See HTML Help project files 1508 for details). Normally you will never need to use this feature but there may be situations where you want or need to make changes to your HTML Help output by making changes or additions to the HHP file.

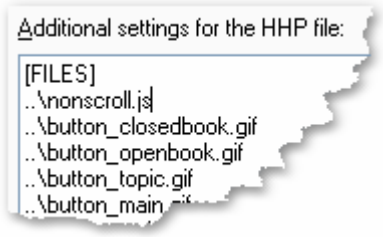
Please only use these feature if you understand HHP files and how to edit them. You can find information on the settings in the documentation distributed with Microsoft HTML Help Workshop.

Adding entries to the HHP file

To add entries to the HHP file enter the section heading name in upper case and enclosed in square brackets, followed by the settings you want to add or change, entering one setting per line with a hard line break (ENTER) at the end of each line. Don't enter any section heading more than once.

Note that merging files into your CHM file is much easier with the Baggage Files section in the Project Explorer. See Using Baggage Files 1119 for details.

Example:



About paths to referenced files:

When Help+Manual compiles your project all the HTML Help project files 1508, including the HHP file, are generated in a temporary directory called `\~tmpchm` and then fed to the Microsoft HTML Help compiler. This directory is created in your project directory, which is the directory containing your **`.hmxp`** or **`.hmxz`** project file.

This means that all file paths entered in the Extended HHP Settings must be relative to this directory, because that is where the **`.hhp`** file is located. In the example above, for instance, the files referenced are located in the project directory, which is one directory up from `\~tmpchm`. This is why `..\` must be prefixed to each file reference so that the compiler can find the files.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If your files are stored in other locations you must adjust the relative paths accordingly. Storing them in the project directory is usually the simplest solution, however.

Context-sensitive application help file

You can set the file name for the plain-text popups file stored inside the CHM file here. By default it is called `CSHelp.txt`.

This file name is only relevant if you are accessing these popups from your application to use them as field-level popups that are displayed in your application without the main help interface. See Creating context-sensitive topics 895 and About field-level popups 1592 for details.

Window styles of the Table of Contents

Below the Extended HHP Settings editing window are some additional options with which you can adjust the appearance and behavior of the TOC in the Microsoft HTML Help viewer:

Display plus/minus icons:
Activates or deactivates the +/- icons displayed to the left of closed/open chapter icons ("books") in the HTML Help viewer's TOC.

Draw lines between items:
When this is activated fine dotted lines are displayed between related items in the TOC, making it easier see which topic belongs to which chapter in complex TOCs.

Track selection (mouseover effect):
When this is activated an underline is displayed below topic entries in the TOC when the user moves the mouse over them. This makes it easier to be sure which topic you are going to click on.

Only expand a single heading:
When the user selects a new chapter any other chapters on the same level in the TOC that are open will be closed automatically. This is useful for complex help documents with lots of chapters, because it is easier to navigate in the TOC if you do not have multiple chapters open.

Child module TOC settings

This setting is only relevant if the current project is a child project in your modular help system. It controls what happens when the user tries to open the child **`.chm`** module dir-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ectly.

Its own table of contents
This makes the child file open with its own table of contents as a separate help file in its own right.

Table of contents of the master file
This automatically opens the master **.chm** and loads the child **.chm** into its TOC when the child file is opened. This is effectively the same as opening the master **.chm** directly. Use the ... browse button to select the master **.chm** file (this must be present in the same directory on the user's computer at runtime).

See also:

Working with Modular Help Systems 1088
Using Baggage Files 1119
Using HTML Templates 1026
Inserting HTML Code 469
HTML Help 1506 (Help Formats)
HTML Help Options 1454 (Help Windows)

11.3.3.3.3 HTML Export Options

These options configure many key aspects of how your project content is converted to HTML code for the Microsoft HTML Help/CHM help file format and the two Microsoft Visual Studio Help file formats. There is a separate set of settings for the WebHelp and ePUB eBook formats, which have different requirements .

Important: This section is not included in skins

This section is not stored in HTML skins, it is project-only. Even if you are using a skin, you must still configure this in your project.

HTML export settings for Microsoft CHM and Microsoft Visual Studio Help:

Setting up CHM files for high-resolution devices:

The Microsoft CHM Viewer in Windows uses an old HTML rendering engine that has special requirements. Help+Manual can automatically configure your CHM file so that it displays correctly on high-resolution 4K monitors and devices like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro. If you don't do this the text and other elements will often be too small to read on these devices.

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration > Publishing Options > MS HTML Help > HTML Export Options**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

2. Set *Font Size Encoding* to: `pt Points`.
3. Select the checkbox for *Make pixel sizes relative to monitor resolution (4K display compatibility)*

All elements of your CHM file will then automatically be adapted for correct display on both normal and high-resolution devices and monitors.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Extension for HTML topic files:	By default all HTML topic files are exported with the extension **`.html`**. You can change this to **`.htm`**, here if you want. However, CHM and Visual Studio Help only support either **`.htm`** or **`.html`**. Other extensions are only allowed in WebHelp.
CSS stylesheet file name:	This setting allows you to change the name of the stylesheet file exported with the CSS style information. The default file name is `default.css`.
Font size encoding:	This setting allows you to choose how font sizes are defined in your output. You can choose **pt** (points), **px** (pixels), **%** (percent) or **ems** (where 1 em = 100%). Which setting you choose controls how fonts are displayed on the user's screen and whether or not the user can change the font size. **Special note on font size for CHM files and high-resolution devices:** Always choose points for CHM for the best results on modern devices. See above 1459. **Points:** Normally, font sizes set in points cannot be adjusted by the user. However, because of the special way the MS CHM Viewer works, this is still the optimum setting for CHM files. You should always choose points for CHM unless you have a specific reason for choosing something else. **Pixels:** This is a 1:1 setting. The font sizes are set in screen pixels, so they should correspond directly to the number of pixels on the screen. This does not work on modern high-resolution monitors, where the physical pixels on the screen are no longer equivalent to the defined pixel dimensions of fonts and other elements. **Percent or Ems:** These are relative dimensions. Percent is relative to the base font size. Ems are more complicated, but they are also indirectly relative to the base font size. However, these font size encodings are not recommended for HTML Help/CHM files!
Font size of Normal style:	If you choose percent or ems for font size encoding (see above) you can also use this setting to define the size of the Normal style in relation to the default font of the user's browser, which is a 16-pixel font on all current browser. The value is expressed in percent and the default is 100%.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

Configuring Your Output 644
HTML Help 1506 (Help Formats)
HTML Help Options 1454 (Help Windows)

11.3.3.3.3.1 Popup Topics

In HTML Help CHM you can use either the CHM format's native plain-text popups and the JavaScript popups generated by Help+Manual. If you activate JavaScript popups then they will be used for all popup links in your project. If you turn JavaScript popups off then the native plain-text popups will be used for topic popup links. However, even when JavaScript popups are activated the plain-text version of the popup file is still exported to the CHM and can be used for field-level popups displayed in your application.

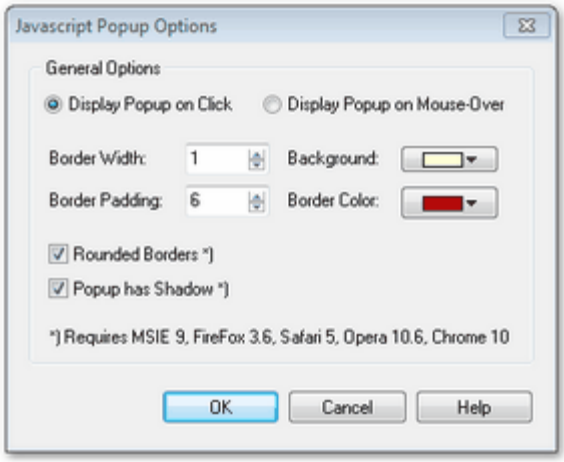
Selecting popup mode in HTML Help

To activate JavaScript popups select *Export topics of class "Popup" as JavaScript popup windows* in **HTML Export Options**. If this option is not activated, links to popup topics in your help will display as normal CHM plain-text popups.

For full details see Creating popup topics 207 and Using JavaScript popups 212.

Customizing JavaScript popups:

Click on *Customize popup appearance* in **HTML Export Options** to display the configuration dialog:



Click/mouseover: Displays the popup on user click or mouseover (i.e. as soon as the user moves the mouse pointer over the link). Be careful with using the mouseover option as many users find this intrusive and it may also trigger popup blockers in some browsers.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Border width:	Enter 0 for no border, any value above 0 (in pixels) to draw a border around the popup box.
Border padding:	The distance between the popup content and the border or edge of the popup (if there is no border) in pixels.
Background:	The background color of the popup box.
Border color:	The color of the border, if there is one.
Rounded borders and drop shadow:	These effects are only supported by modern browsers: Internet Explorer 9, Firefox 3.6, Opera 10.6, Google Chrome 10 or later.

See also:

Creating popup topics 207
Using JavaScript popups 212
Using Context-Sensitive Help 892
HTML Help 1506 (Help Formats)
HTML Help Options 1454 (Help Windows)

11.3.3.3.4 HTML Fonts

These options configure how fonts and symbol characters are exported to HTML output formats. The same settings can be configured in both the WebHelp and Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) sections, but they are used globally for all HTML output formats (WebHelp, CHM, eWriter, ePub, Kindle, Visual Studio Help).

Important: This section is not included in skins

This section is not stored in HTML skins, it is project-only. Even if you are using a skin, you must still configure this in your project.

Export Symbol fonts as SVG

Converts characters of the Symbol fonts specified here to SVG glyphs on output. SVG graphics scale just as well as fonts, but unlike Symbol fonts, SVG graphics work in all browsers and cannot be blocked by ad blockers or security settings as web fonts can. They also make it possible to use Windows-only Symbol fonts like Windings on the web.

See Special characters, lines and breaks 245 for full details.

Define HTML font families

This section allows you change the predefined HTML font families in Help+Manual and

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

define your own for additional fonts. Font families are a list of alternative fonts to be used if the user's browser does not have access to the main font you have defined.

See HTML fonts and headings 286 for instructions.

See also:

Configuring Your Output 644

11.3.3.4 Visual Studio Help

Visual Studio Help is available in two versions, Visual Studio Help 2008 and 2010, which are also known as MS Help 2.0 and MS Help 3.0, respectively. Originally, each of these help formats was announced as the upcoming the successor to HTML Help. However, in both cases Microsoft then backpedaled and it now seems clear that they are not going to be released as help formats for normal user applications.

You cannot use Visual Studio Help for normal applications

Please note that these are special help formats that are ***only*** used for documenting programming components integrated in the Visual Studio .NET programming environment. They are not suitable for any other purpose and cannot be used for normal help projects for application programs!

Shared settings:

The options in the **HTML Export Options** section for MS HTML Help/CHM 1451 files are also used for the MS Visual Studio Help 1464 output formats. These settings are accessible in the HTML Help 1459 section of your project configuration. Settings that are not relevant for an individual format are ignored in that format.

The HTML export settings for WebHelp and eBooks can be configured in the WebHelp 1435 and configuration section.

See also:

Visual Studio Help 1132 (Advanced Procedures)
Visual Studio Help 1525 (Reference)

11.3.3.4.1 Namespace & Options

This section is where you enter the special settings required for publishing Visual Studio Help. Please refer to the documentation of Visual Studio .NET and the Visual Studio Help Integration Kit (version for VS 2008 and earlier) for full details.

Visual Studio 2010 (MSHC)

There are only three required settings for MSHC output:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Vendor Name:	The company that owns the book and packages. This name is also used for certificate validation. A "package" is a single MSHC help file. A "book" is a group of packages installed together. A package can belong to more than one book.
Product Name:	The name of your product.
Book Name:	The name of the book to which the package belongs. A "package" is a single MSHC help file. A "book" is a group of packages installed together. A package can belong to more than one book.

Visual Studio 2008 (HXS):

Unlike HTML Help CHM files, Visual Studio Help HXS files cannot be opened unless they are registered in the Windows Registry (see About publishing VS Help 1135). Also, they are not called by their file name but by their "Namespace".

Namespace:	The Namespace identifier used for calling MS Help 2.0 files. No special characters or spaces are permitted. See the VS.NET documentation for details.
Unique Identifier:	The unique identifier (rather like a topic ID for an entire help file) required for Visual Studio Help files. See the VS.NET documentation for details.
Output file type:	You can output either a single **.HXS** file or an **.HXS** file with a separate **.HXL** file. See the VS.NET documentation for details.
Indexes:	Help+Manual can generate both full-text search and associative keyword indexes using the A-keywords entered in the tabs of your topics.
F-Index	Forces the generation of the F-Index file for use in Visual Studio Help.

See also:

Visual Studio Help 1132 (Advanced Procedures)
Visual Studio Help 1525 (Reference)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.3.3.4.2 Popup Topics

Microsoft has abandoned popup technology in Visual Studio Help. These formats have no native format for popups and do not support field-level popups. However, you can add Help+Manual's own JavaScript popups for display within the main help file.

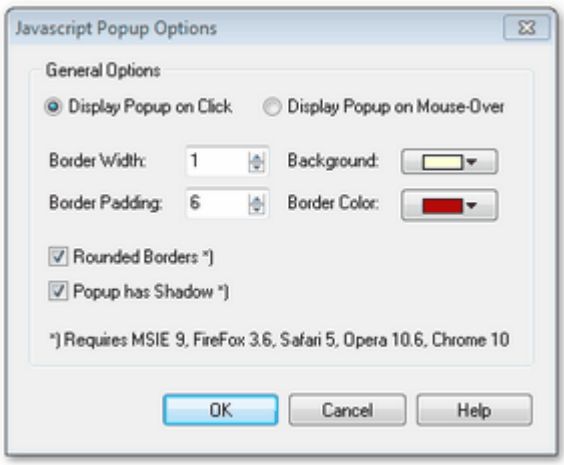
Activating popups:

The option for activating popups is in the HTML Export Options 1467.

For full details see Creating popup topics 207 and Using JavaScript popups 212.

Customizing JavaScript popups:

JavaScript popups are user-customizable. Select *Customize popup appearance* option in **HTML Export Options** to display the configuration dialog:



Click/mouseover: Displays the popup on user click or mouseover (i.e. as soon as the user moves the mouse pointer over the link). Be careful with using the mouseover option as many users find this intrusive and it may also trigger popup blockers in some browsers.

Border width: Enter 0 for no border, any value above 0 (in pixels) to draw a border around the popup box.

Border padding: The distance between the popup content and the border or edge of the popup (if there is no border) in pixels.

Background: The background color of the popup box.

Border color: The color of the border, if there is one.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Rounded borders and drop shadow:	These effects are only supported by modern browsers: Internet Explorer 9, Firefox 3.6, Opera 10.6, Google Chrome 10 or later.

See also:

Creating popup topics 207
Using JavaScript popups 212

11.3.3.4.3 HTML Export Options

These options configure many key aspects of how your project content is converted to HTML code for the Microsoft HTML Help/CHM help file format and the two Microsoft Visual Studio Help file formats. There is a separate set of settings for the WebHelp and ePUB eBook formats, which have different requirements .

Important: This section is not included in skins

This section is not stored in HTML skins, it is project-only. Even if you are using a skin, you must still configure this in your project.

HTML export settings for Microsoft CHM and Microsoft Visual Studio Help:

Setting up CHM files for high-resolution devices:

The Microsoft CHM Viewer in Windows uses an old HTML rendering engine that has special requirements. Help+Manual can automatically configure your CHM file so that it displays correctly on high-resolution 4K monitors and devices like the Microsoft Surface and Lenovo Yoga Pro. If you don't do this the text and other elements will often be too small to read on these devices.

1. Open your project in Help+Manual and in the Project Explorer navigate to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **MS HTML Help** > **HTML Export Options**.
2. Set *Font Size Encoding* to: `pt Points`.
3. Select the checkbox for *Make pixel sizes relative to monitor resolution (4K display compatibility)*

All elements of your CHM file will then automatically be adapted for correct display on both normal and high-resolution devices and monitors.

Extension for HTML topic files:	By default all HTML topic files are exported with the extension **`.html`**. You can change this to **`.htm`**, here if you want. However, CHM and Visual Studio Help only support either **`.htm`** or **`.html`**. Other extensions are only allowed in We-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	bHelp.
CSS stylesheet file name:	This setting allows you to change the name of the stylesheet file exported with the CSS style information. The default file name is `default.css`.
Font size encoding:	This setting allows you to choose how font sizes are defined in your output. You can choose **pt** (points), **px** (pixels), **%** (percent) or **ems** (where 1 em = 100%). Which setting you choose controls how fonts are displayed on the user's screen and whether or not the user can change the font size. **Special note on font size for CHM files and high-resolution devices:** Always choose points for CHM for the best results on modern devices. See above 1467. **Points:** Normally, font sizes set in points cannot be adjusted by the user. However, because of the special way the MS CHM Viewer works, this is still the optimum setting for CHM files. You should always choose points for CHM unless you have a specific reason for choosing something else. **Pixels:** This is a 1:1 setting. The font sizes are set in screen pixels, so they should correspond directly to the number of pixels on the screen. This does not work on modern high-resolution monitors, where the physical pixels on the screen are no longer equivalent to the defined pixel dimensions of fonts and other elements. **Percent or Ems:** These are relative dimensions. Percent is relative to the base font size. Ems are more complicated, but they are also indirectly relative to the base font size. However, these font size encodings are not recommended for HTML Help/CHM files!
Font size of Normal style:	If you choose percent or ems for font size encoding (see above) you can also use this setting to define the size of the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	Normal style in relation to the default font of the user's browser, which is a 16-pixel font on all current browser. The value is expressed in percent and the default is 100%. The 100% default is generally not the best choice, however! What you need really depends on the entire layout. For example, if your base font size is equivalent to 10-11 points the correct font size for Normal would be around 82%. The ems and percent font size encodings used with this are not recommended for HTML Help/CHM files!
Make CHM compatible with high resolution monitors	This option encodes all dimensions that are normally specified in pixels, for example in a tag like `<img src="xxxxx.png" width="500" height="300"/>` as inches in CHM files to make the content automatically scalable on ultra-high resolution monitors. For hi-res compatible CHM files you need to specify this option in combination with font encoding in **points**. This is set automatically when you choose this option and should not be changed.
Exclude topics from CHM search if topic starts with an underscore	Topics whose IDs start with an underscore are automatically excluded from search in WebHelp 664. If you check this option, topics whose IDs start with an underscore will also be excluded from search in CHM files: **Important note for context help:** When you activate this option, the extension of the topic file is changed from **`.htm`** to **`.xhtm`**. You need to remember this for your context calls made to the internal topic HTML file in the CHM file. For example, if the ID is **`_Introduction_Topic`** the new HTML file name to make the call to will be **`_introduction_topic.xhtm`**.
Replace blanks and underscores in HTML file names with hyphens:	If you leave this off, illegal characters, spaces and underscores in HTML file names will be replaced by underscores (old Help+Manual standard). Turning it on uses hyphens instead.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	This is off by default to prevent breaking links in existing projects from earlier Help+Manual versions.
Export style names:	When this is selected Help+Manual uses the full names of your styles in the stylesheet. This makes the sheet much easier to read if you ever want to view or edit it manually. If you deselect this option the style names are converted to brief, alphanumeric codes that are not so "human-friendly". This can make your project a little bit smaller but not much.
Export lists as text:	This setting is recommended. When it is selected numbered and bulleted lists are managed using text formatting in HTML-based output. This will generally provide better list formatting across browsers than the standard lists generated when you turn it off. Even in HTML Help, which uses MS Internet Explorer for HTML rendering, you will find that lists display better with this setting. If you deselect this option lists will be exported as standard <OL> and <UL> lists with <LI> list elements. This option also supports formatted lists but has some limitations compared to the text option. See Formatting Lists 335 for more information on this.
If an image has no caption export file name as hint:	Images in HTML pages can have an ALT attribute that displays a small text in a "tooltip" when the user positions the mouse pointer over the image. Selecting this option exports the image file name as the ALT attribute if the image doesn't have a caption. Unless your graphics files have very descriptive names it is normally advisable to switch this off.
Highlight hotspots in pictures	When this is on hotspot links in images and graphics are highlighted for easier visibility and respond on mouseover. Turning this off creates invisible hotspots that only change the mouse cursor form on mouseover.
Export SVG images as PNG	If you turn this off, SVG vector images will be exported natively to CHM. However, you need to ensure that your SVGs are compatible with CHM for this to work correctly. See SVG Graphics 1532 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

File links - embed linked files	Activating this option physically embeds external files in the PDF file so that you can distribute additional files with your PDF document. Only files linked to in your document with file links 424 will be embedded.
Conversion options for non-HTML image formats:	This option controls how images in your project not compatible with HTML are converted and exported when you publish to HTML-based formats. It does not affect JPEG, GIF and PNG images, which are exported without conversion. Which option provides the best results depends on the type of images in your project. GIF and PNG generally provide the smallest files with the best quality for screenshots with 256 colors or less. PNG files are usually too large for images with more than 256 colors; JPEG is the better choice for those. Screenshots often do not look so good when converted to JPEG so you should always choose your settings to make sure that this doesn't happen. It is better to use GIF or PNG and no more than 256 colors for screenshots. JPEG and true-color PNG are really only needed for photographs and continuous-tone graphics, and JPEG is generally preferable for this because it produces much smaller files for true color images.
Output quality for JPEG images:	You can reduce graphic file size by decreasing the quality but this will also make the images look less good. A value of between 80 and 90 is normally acceptable. Note that this quality setting is only applied to JPEG images actually generated by the program on the basis of the conversion settings (see above). JPEG images that you insert in your project directly are not affected. They are used as they are, without any changes.
Export topics of class "Popup" as JavaScript popup windows:	Activate this to use JavaScript popups in WebHelp, CHM and Visual Studio Help. See Creating popup topics 207 and Using JavaScript popups 212 for full details.

See also:

Configuring Your Output 644
Visual Studio Help 1132 (Advanced Procedures)
Visual Studio Help 1525 (Reference)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.3.3.5 Microsoft Word

The settings in this section control how your project is exported to MS Word DOCX, which generates 100% compatible Word DOCX documents.

In addition to the options you can configure here you can also define the entire Word DOCX layout with templates that you can edit directly in Word. See this chapter 682 for details.

11.3.3.5.1 Word Options

The options in this section provide some additional options for your MS Word DOCX output.

In addition to the options you can configure here you can also define the entire Word DOCX layout with templates that you can edit directly in Word. See this chapter 682 for details.

Options:

Link colors and underline styles	Colors and styles for hyperlinks in your Word documents
Enable links to external files:	Enter the extensions of external file types you want to permit links to here. Note that the files will generally have to be in the same folder as the Word file for these links to work!
Figure numbering:	Add automatic figure numbering to images in your topics that have captions. Note that figure numbering will only be added to images with captions configured in the Insert Image dialog. It will not be applied to images without captions!

See also:

MS Word DOCX 1525 (Help Formats)
MS Word DOCX 682 (Publishing)

11.3.3.6 eBooks: ePUB+Kindle

The settings in this section control how your project is exported to the ePUB and Kindle/Mobi eBooks formats. Kindle/Mobi is the standard format for Amazon Kindle eBooks and allows you to distribute your eBooks directly through Amazon. The ePUB eBook format is now the leading universal open format for eBooks. The ePUB 3.0 eBooks generated by Help+Manual are compatible with all ePUB hardware and software readers. However, they also contain the additional special configuration and formatting information for display on Apple iOS devices (iPad, iPhone and iPod Touch).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See the sections on eBooks in the Publishing Formats 1513 and Configuring Your Output 749 chapters for more information on preparing and publishing eBooks.

See also:

Publishing Formats - eBooks 1513
Configuring Your Output - ePUB 749

11.3.3.6.1 ePUB+Kindle: General Settings

The ePUB 3.0 eBook and Kindle/Mobi eBook formats are ideal for distributing your documentation as eBooks on the great majority of platforms available today.

However, you also need to understand that eBooks are more restrictive than some other formats. They are designed to be more like a book than an electronic document. As a result, there are both limitations on the formatting you can use and some special requirements. See the sections on eBooks in the Publishing Formats 1513 and Configuring Your Output 749 chapters for more information on preparing and publishing eBooks.

Important: This section is not included in skins

This section is not stored in HTML skins, it is project-only. Even if you are using a skin, you must still configure this in your project.

Cover pictures

Just click and select an image to add front and/or back cover pictures. You must use an HTML-compatible format (JPG, PNG or GIF).

Configuration options

The only fields that are absolutely required are the book ID (UID), which is the unique identifier for your eBook, and the title, without which your eBook will not display its title properly in readers. Most of the other options are recommended, however.

You can use text variables 917 in all the fields listed below.

Book ID: *Required!*	Also referred to as the UID. This is the unique identifier of your eBook, so you should attempt to make it genuinely unique to avoid confusion with other available publications. You can use any alphanumeric text string here – for example your web address plus the name of the book.
URI: *Optional but recommended*	A web link, for example to a page with information about the book on your website. It's a good idea to include this as eBook readers often have online access. Always include

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	the `http://` prefix with the URI, plain `www.` addresses will probably fail!
ISBN: *Optional, recommended if you have one*	If your book has an ISBN code then enter it here.
Book Title: *Technically optional but required for proper display of book title in readers*	The title of your eBook. You can use the `<\%TITLE%>` variable to insert the title of your project here.
Subject: *Optional but recommended*	A short description of your eBook's subject matter.
Description: *Optional, generally helpful*	A longer description of your eBook.
Author: *Optional but recommended*	The author of your eBook. If you have entered the author of your project in your Common Properties you can insert the `<%AUTHOR%>` variable here to use the same text string automatically.
File Author as: *Optional*	An additional attribute for the author that shows explicitly how the author is to be filed officially. For example, you might enter `Rev. Dr. Martin Luther King Jr.` for *Author* and `King, Martin Luther Jr.` for *File As*.
Publisher: *Optional but recommended*	The publisher (i.e. your company) of the eBook.
Copyright: *Optional but recommended*	Your copyright notice. You can use the `<\%COPYRIGHT%>` variable to insert the standard copyright notice stored in your project.
Relation: *Optional*	Relation information for your eBook, this can be an URI (weblink, the new term for URLs) or other information. This is defined as an "auxiliary resource and its relationship to the publication".
Embed fonts:	Embeds the fonts used in your project in the eBook. See below for more details on this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Export HelpXplain slide shows as interactive HTML: If your project contains a HelpXplain slide show activating this option will export it with full interactivity instead of as a static image.Only use this option if you are certain that the eBook readers you are targeting will support it. Most readers have very limited HTML5 and CSS3 support. s

Font embedding

You can embed fonts used in your ePUB and Kindle eBooks. This is required for languages with special character sets on some readers, including Adobe Digital Editions. Apple iBooks does not require font embedding for special characters, but you may wish to embed fonts to get more control over your book's appearance.

Kindle does not display embedded fonts by default

Note that Kindle readers and apps do not user your embedded fonts by default. The user must activate them in the device's or reader's font settings and must know that the setting is available. If your layout depends on a specific font you need to be aware that that font will **not** be displayed by default on Kindle devices and apps!

Font rights, eBook size

Embedding fonts can make your eBook considerably larger and you must have permission from the font copyright holder to distribute the fonts you embed.

See Managing Fonts in eBooks 764 for full details.

11.3.3.6.2 ePUB+Kindle: Table of Contents

The ePUB 3.0 and Kindle/Mobi formats support a customizable Table of Contents (TOC). These formats are HTML, and you can change the format of the TOC for your eBooks by editing the TOC template in this section.

TOC HTML Code:

The actual table of contents HTML code is generated automatically by Help+Manual as an unordered list (**<ol>**) and inserted in the template by the **<%TABLE_OF_CONTENTS%>** variable.

Don't replace the <nav> element:

For compatibility with the ePUB format you should not try to replace the <nav> tags in the TOC template with different elements.

CSS styles and stylesheets:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

By default Help+Manual references the CSS stylesheet generated from the styles defined in your project in this page, using the **<%STYLESHEET%>** variable in the head section of the template. You can replace this with your own inline CSS styles in the template or a reference to your own CSS stylesheet file if you like. If you use your own stylesheet file, just add it to the baggage files 1121 section of your project and it will be exported automatically.

11.3.3.6.3 ePUB+Kindle: Page Template

The ePUB 3.0 and Kindle/Mobi formats supports a customizable page template. The format is HTML, and you can change the layout of the pages for your eBooks by editing the page template in this section.

Don't try to lay out eBooks like normal HTML pages!

The Kindle and ePUB formats are designed to be like a real printed book and they only support very limited HTML layout capabilities. Don't try to include JavaScript and navigation commands – that would just make your book invalid and it will never work.

Remember also that the pages on eBook readers are effectively very small. Basically, you should aim for simple, free-flowing paragraphs with images between the paragraphs.

Page content HTML code:

The HTML code for your pages is generated automatically by Help+Manual from the topics in your project and inserted in the template by the **<%TOPIC_TEXT%>** variable.

Keywords element:

Don't delete or replace the element containing the **<%TOPIC_KEYWORDS%>** variable. This is required to enable Help+Manual to insert valid index keywords in your pages.

CSS styles and stylesheets:

By default Help+Manual references the CSS stylesheet generated from the styles defined in your project in this page, using the **<%STYLESHEET%>** variable in the head section of the template. **Don't delete this!** If you do, none of the styles defined in your project will be used!

In almost all cases, the formatting of your page content should be controlled entirely by the styles defined in your project. You can add your own inline CSS styles in the template or a reference to your own CSS stylesheet file if you like, but these should only be used for page layout.

If you use your own stylesheet file, just add it to the baggage files 1121 section of your project and it will be exported automatically.

11.3.3.6.4 HTML Export Options

The ePUB and Kindle/Mobi formats share their HTML export settings with WebHelp. These settings can be configured in the **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > **HTML Export Options**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

section. Settings there that are not relevant for eBooks will just be ignored in eBook output. See here for details 1435.

11.3.3.7 eWriter Help

eWriter Help is available with viewers for both Windows and MacOS. The standalone Windows eViewer is also available in a Windows Store version, that the user is prompted to install when they open a file with the **`.ewriter`** extension. In addition to this there are download installers for the various viewer versions for end users, and versions of the viewers for developers to install with their software for application help.

See eWriter Help 696 in the Publishing chapter for full details.

Shared settings:

The options in the **HTML Export Options** section for WebHelp are also used for eBooks (ePUB, Kindle/Mobi) and eWriter Help. These settings are accessible in the WebHelp 1435 section of your project configuration. Settings that are not relevant for individual formats are ignored in those formats.

11.3.3.7.1 General Settings

The settings in this section control the appearance of the eWriter Help viewer, an icon and logo and some security options

Zoom +/- Keys
In your finished eWriter Help file, pressing the CTRL+[Plus] and CTRL+[Minus] keys will zoom the eViewer display in and out

Window title

The eViewer window title displays the title of the help file/project. This is a static display that does not change with the current topic. The previous per-topic display is no longer supported. The behavior now matches other formats, including CHM, PDF and so on, which all have static window titles.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Options

eViewer Window:

These settings define the size of the eWriter viewer window when the user first opens it. Once the user has adjusted the size this setting is ignored. You can also set the size and the position of the window on the first call from your software with the defpos command 701 in your call to the viewer. This command will be ignored if you use it in subsequent calls once the viewer has been opened.

The dimensions use virtual pixels that adapt automatically to the resolution of the user's monitor.

Custom Icon (Windows only):

Choose an **`.ico`** format icon file to be displayed for your help file in Windows Explorer. This setting is ignored on the MacOS version.

Logo:

Optional logo image with an optional URL to a web page. This is displayed in the title bar of the eViewer on the right, next to the Print icon.

Copy and print options:

Restrict the ability of the user to copy or print content.

Important – copy/print restriction requires a custom context menu!

In order to be able to restrict copying and printing you must activate a custom context menu 1480 in the General Settings page. If you don't do this the embedded browser engine provides copying and printing facilities that cannot be disabled by the eWriter viewer.

Require Admin mode:

Windows EXE files only

The user can only view the help file from an Administrator Windows account. This is only for integrated EXE eWriter Help files with the viewer and the book in a single file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Open external links in default browser:

When this is selected, links to external web pages open in the user's default web browser.

This is recommended, because otherwise the external pages will open in the viewer, replacing the current help entirely. Also, the embedded browser may not provide desirable functionality for normal web pages that often need to navigate elsewhere.

Password:

Password required to open the help file and text prompt to display when asking for the password.

Including the password in application calls

If your book is protected with a password you can include it in the call from your software with the **p=** switch so that the user does not need to enter it. However, be aware that doing this is not secure, as it may be possible to retrieve the password on computers where this has been done.

```
eViewer.exe "ewriter://<path>\my-help.ewriter?pw=password"
```

Expiry date:

Create a time-limited eWriter Help file that expires automatically on a specific date. The file cannot be opened or accessed after this date.

11.3.3.7.2 App Menus

The functions in this tab allow you to enable and customize the two types of menus that can be displayed in the eViewer: An application menu to be displayed at the top left corner of the viewer, and a context menu to be displayed when the user right-clicks in a topic page.

Zoom +/- Keys
In your finished eWriter Help file pressing the CTRL+[Plus] and CTRL+[Minus] keys will zoom the eViewer display in and out

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Activating and deactivating menus

Select the check boxes above the menu types to include or exclude the menus from your Help file.

Changes since the previous version

Application menu and context (right-click) menu

Application Menu

This is the menu accessed in the top left corner of the eWriter viewer window. The title is always displayed, so you need to configure it even when you turn the menu itself off. When the eViewer is opened on its own without an eWriter Help file, it displays "**eViewer**".

No menu entries:	Application menu button is displayed without an arrow and with the short title of the project.
Menu entries:	Menu button includes a drop-down arrow for opening the menu.
Command line:	The contents of the menu can be affected by command line switches if you are calling eWriter Help from your application. See EWriter for Software Help 731 for full details.

Context menu (required for disabling copying and printing!)

This is the menu displayed when the user right-clicks in an eWriter book. If you don't activate this the right-click menu of the embedded web browser engine is used.

Disabling copying and printing:
Note that you can only disable copying and printing (see General Settings 1477) if the custom context menu is enabled, because this replaces the browser's context menu. The embedded browser's context menu automatically supports copying and printing and this cannot be disabled by the eWriter viewer if it has not been replaced by a custom context menu.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Configuring and customizing menus

- **Existing menu items:** Click in the demo menu to select an item or position in the menu. Then click on the entry type on the right and configure it with the options displayed.
- **New items:** Click in the menu where you want to insert the item and select Add or Insert. Then define the menu type and configure it.
- **Moving items:** Select the item and use the four move buttons to move it around. The < and > buttons are only active for items below submenu items.
- **Deleting and resetting:** The **`Delete`** button removes the current item. The Reset button restores all menus to the default settings, deleting any custom menus.

Entry types

Command

A number of standard commands supported by the viewer. They include commands for navigation, selecting and copying text, printing pages and closing the viewer.

The `:home` command is no longer available

This command is deprecated in the new version of eViewer and if you add it, or if it is already configured from an earlier version, it will not be displayed in your eWriter Help file.

Page link

A link to a topic page in your help file. You can select the page from a drop-down list of all the pages in your source folder.

The field can also be edited manually. This enables you to use this feature when compiling a modular project made up of multiple projects to eWriter. Then you just need to manually enter the topic ID of the topic you want to link to in any of the projects that are going to be published to the eWriter book.

Web link

A link to an external web page.

- Enter the full URL, including the **`http://`** or **`https://`** prefix.
- Pages will open in the Help file viewer or the user's default browser, depending on the setting in the General Settings screen.

Execute external file:

Creates an entry that runs a program or opens an external document. Enter the name and path to the file and any addi-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

tional execution parameters you wish to use.

Sub-menus and dividers:	These entries create sub-menu headings and dividers to organize your menus. After creating a sub-menu you can move other entries into the sub-menu with the four move buttons (up / down / left / right).
Caption:	The captions displayed in the menus. Add a an ampersand (&) character before the letter that you want to be active for the keyboard shortcut for the menu option.

11.4 Styles, Formatting and Tables

This section provides some general background information on the styles used in Help+Manual and how they work. If you are familiar with using styles in word processors like Microsoft Word most of this will already be familiar to you but there are also some differences that you should be aware of.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273 (how-to instructions)

11.4.1 Why use dynamic styles?

The advantages of dynamic styles are so great that you will never want to go back to manual formatting once you have learned how to use them. They will speed up your work, make it more efficient and make your finished product look more attractive and professional. If you wish, it is quite possible to use only manual formatting in your Help+Manual projects. However, if you do this you will create a lot of unnecessary extra work for yourself and your documentation will not look so good.

Instant changes throughout your project

When you format text manually you have to go back and change everything manually whenever you change your mind about how you want a headline or a paragraph to look. This can take hours in a big project, and since it's boring and repetitive work you are also likely to make mistakes. Also, when you format manually you will often apply slightly different formatting to text passages that are supposed to look the same, and your work will look messy as a result.

Suppose your client or your boss says that they want to use Verdana 16 point instead of Times Roman 14 point in the topic headers. With styles all you need to do is change the definition of the heading style, which takes a couple of seconds, and all the headers in your entire project are updated instantly.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You can think of a style as a named formatting definition for either text or an entire paragraph. When you use styles you have a separate style for every different type of paragraph and text in your project. For example, by default normal body text paragraphs are normally formatted with a style called *Normal,* and the topic headers are normally formatted with a style called *Heading1*. You can define as many other styles as you like for other purposes.

Instant formatting

Once you get the hang of it, working with styles is much faster than using manual formatting. To format an entire paragraph you just select the style in the menu, or press the hotkey combination for the style, and all the formatting is applied immediately. You don't even have to select the paragraph. And all new text and paragraphs you type from that point will also have the selected style until you change it.

Uniform appearance and layout

Since your styles are predefined all your formatting, indents and so on will be identical, giving your projects a uniform and much more professional appearance.

"Branding" your output with skins

If you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can save all your styles and your other project layout settings in a special format file called a "skin". When you publish another project you can apply all the styles from the skin to it by selecting the skin file in the Publish 1310 dialog – all the styles in the project with matching names will then be replaced by the styles from the skin.

See Transforming Your Output with Skins 638 for full details on this.

Dynamic inheritance

Help+Manual's styles aren't just dynamic, they also have dynamic inheritance. This means that styles based on other styles automatically "inherit" the properties of their parent styles. All properties that you do not change in the child styles are dynamically linked to the parent style.

This means you can create families of styles in which you can change properties throughout the entire family just by modifying a single parent style. See About inheritance in styles 1485 for full details on dynamic inheritance and how it works.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Smaller output files

Note that using styles efficiently can also make your output files quite a bit smaller, particularly in HTML-based output (HTML Help, WebHelp, Visual Studio Help, Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks). Manual formatting must include a large number of detailed tags every time it is applied – in extreme cases these tags can use up more bytes than the text itself. Styles are only defined once and are applied with a simple and very brief reference to the internal stylesheet.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273 (how-to instructions)
About inheritance in styles 1485

11.4.2 How do styles work?

To understand how dynamic styles work you need to understand three concepts: Style definitions, dynamic linking and dynamic inheritance. Style definitions are how you create styles, dynamic linking is how your styles are associated with your text and dynamic inheritance enables you to create related "families" of styles.

Style definitions:

A style is a set of formatting definitions with a name that makes it possible for you to identify and select it. It can include all the formatting attributes that you can apply to text and paragraphs with the *Font, Paragraph* and *Borders and Backgrounds* formatting tools.

For convenience, you can create two kinds of styles: Text styles, which only define font formatting attributes, and paragraph styles, which define all available attributes, including font attributes. Similarly, styles can also be linked to either entire paragraphs or individual passages of text. These are the two "units" that are used in connection with styles. (See Paragraph and text styles 1491 for details.)

Dynamic linking:

A set of formatting definitions is no good on its own, of course. Styles are useful because you can link them to paragraphs and text in your project. As soon as you apply a style 292 to a paragraph or a passage of text the style definition is *dynamically linked* to that paragraph or that text. All the style attributes are applied to the paragraph or the text automatically, and when the cursor is in the paragraph or the text the name of the style is displayed in the style selector in the Toolbar:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Here the cursor is in a paragraph formatted with the Normal style.

We say that the style is *dynamically linked* because all changes in the style definition are automatically and immediately reflected in all paragraphs and/or text linked to the style. If you change the font face, font size, paragraph indents and so on in the style definition these changes are all immediately reflected in all the paragraphs and text linked to the style.

Dynamic inheritance:

Most styles are based on other styles. This makes defining styles easier, because you often have groups of quite similar styles. In addition to this it also makes styles much more powerful. Here's why:

We refer to "parent" and "child" styles. Just as a human child inherits some genes from its parents and has some unique characteristics of its own, styles also inherit some properties from their parents and have some properties of their own.

In styles, however, inheritance is dynamic, in exactly the same way that linking to the text formatted by styles is dynamic. All attributes that you don't change in the child styles are shared with the parent style. If you change an attribute in the parent style the change is immediately reflected in ***both*** the child style ***and*** all paragraphs and/or text formatted with the child style.

This means that you can make changes to entire "families" of styles, and to all the text formatted with those styles, just by editing one parent style. For example, you can usually change the font in your entire project by changing the font setting in the **`Normal`** style, because most of styles in your project are usually based on that style.

See About inheritance in styles 1485 for full details on this subject.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273 (how-to instructions)
About inheritance in styles 1485

11.4.3 About inheritance in styles

Alongside dynamic linking 1484, dynamic inheritance is the second feature that gives dynamic styles their great flexibility and power. If you understand dynamic inheritance you will be able to use and organize your styles much more efficiently, so please do study this topic carefully!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

What is dynamic inheritance?

Put briefly, dynamic inheritance means that styles based on other styles *inherit* the attributes of their parent styles, and the inherited attributes are *dynamically linked* to the same attributes in the parent styles. If an attribute is changed in the parent the change is automatically (and immediately) inherited by all child styles. Equally, these changes are also automatically and immediately reflected in all texts to which the child styles are linked.

For example, if you change the font of the *Normal* style, which is usually the "Granddaddy" style on which almost all styles in any project are based, this automatically and immediately changes the font in (almost) all styles in your project. The only exceptions are styles that are not based on *Normal,* and styles which already have different fonts set.

And this is the next important aspect of dynamic inheritance: It ***only*** applies to attributes that have not been changed in the child styles. As soon as an attribute is changed in a style it is "fixed", and no longer affected by changes in the parent style. Styles based on the changed child style will then inherit this new attribute, not the original attribute from the original parent.

The inheritance tree

Styles do not have to be based on other styles but they usually are. When you create a new style on the basis of another style (see Defining styles 281) it is initially an exact copy of its parent style, so that it shares all its attributes of the parent. We say that the child style "inherits" all the attributes of its parent style.

Two identical styles wouldn't be much use, so you then edit some of the attributes of your new style and leave others unchanged. The key to understanding dynamic inheritance is understanding its relationship to the changed and unchanged attributes in the child styles.

Let's have a look at a simple example of a style inheritance tree. The standard style on which almost all other styles are based is called *Normal*. You can edit this style, but like the other standard styles 1490 you cannot rename it or delete it. The example below shows some styles based on *Normal*. Please note that this tree is simplified to make the explanations easier; in reality there are many more attributes, and each style could also have multiple children on each level instead of just one.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

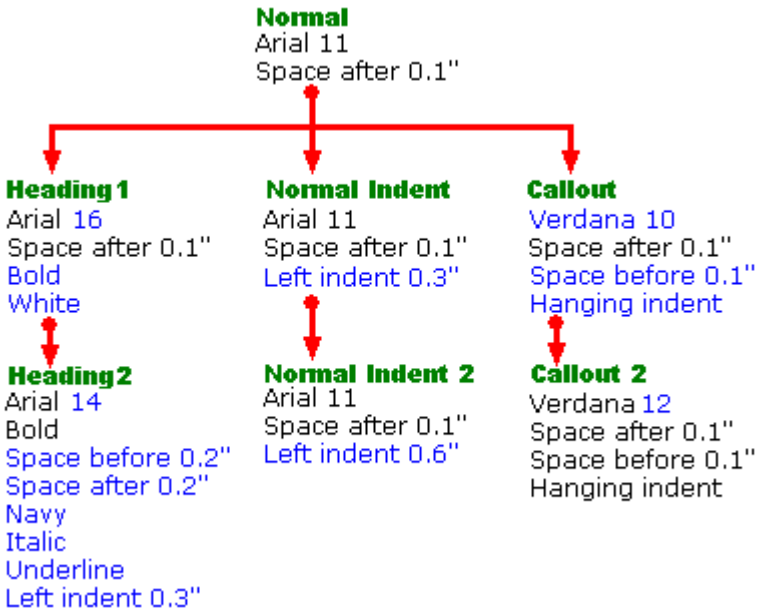


Fig. 1: Simplified example of a style tree

Changed and unchanged attributes:

In this example changed attributes are shown in blue, unchanged attributes in black.

The unchanged attributes are dynamically linked to the corresponding attributes in their parent styles – changes made to these attributes in the parent are automatically inherited by the children. By the same token, inheritance from the parent stops at the changed attributes.

How this works in the example:

In the example above all the child styles except *Callout* inherit the Arial font from Normal, because this font face has not been changed in any of these styles. If you edit *Normal* and change Arial to Times Roman then the font of all the child styles except *Callout* will automatically change from Arial to Times Roman.

The styles *Normal Indent* and *Normal Indent 2* also inherit the font size from *Normal*. If you edit Normal and change the its font size from 11 points to 12 points this change will be inherited by these two styles, but not by the two *Heading* styles.

Another good example is the *Space After* attribute. In Normal this attribute is set to 0.1", and this value is inherited by all of the child styles except *Heading2*. If you edit *Normal* and set its *Space After* attribute to 0.0" this change will be inherited by all the child styles except *Heading2*.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Changed attributes start a new inheritance sequence:

A changed attribute in a child style starts a new inheritance sequence:

In *Callout* the original font has been changed to Verdana 10. *Callout 2* inherits the font face, but the size has been changed to 12. This means that if you edit *Callout* and change its font to Tahoma, this change will be inherited by *Callout 2*. However, changing the font size in *Callout* will not be reflected in *Callout 2,* because the font size has been changed there, thus stopping inheritance for that attribute.

The same applies to the font weight in the two *Heading* styles. In *Heading1* the font weight has been changed to bold, so changes to the font weight in Normal will not have any effect on *Heading1* or any of its children. *Heading2* inherits the font weight attribute from *Heading1,* so if you edit *Heading1* and change its weight to non-bold this change will be inherited by *Heading2*.

This illustrates the most important characteristic of inheritance for changed attributes: Changing an attribute turns off inheritance from the parent for that attribute. At the same time, however, it starts a new inheritance tree for the same attribute: when you create new styles based on the modified style the new setting is inherited by the new styles.

Parallel inheritance and serial inheritance:

You can also organize the inheritance of your style families in two different ways, with parallel inheritance and serial inheritance. It works like this:

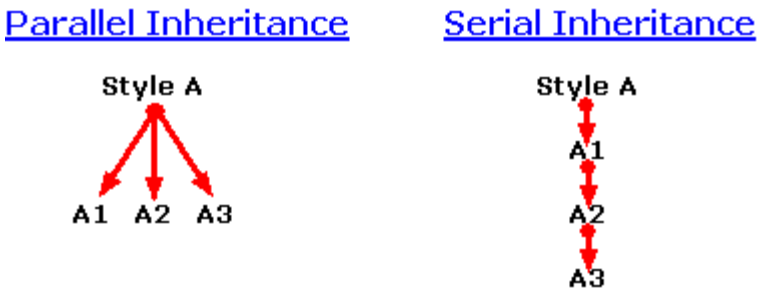


Fig. 2: Parallel and serial inheritance

In parallel inheritance trees all the sub-styles are direct children of the parent style. This option is used when you are creating direct variants of a parent style. For example, you might use this to create three different variants of your body text style that have different indents but are otherwise identical.

In serial trees you have a grandparent - parent - child relationship structure. Each new style is based on the preceding variant. This option is used for families of styles that change progressively. A typical example of this is a family of headline styles with font sizes that get progressively smaller.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

As Fig. 1 1486 further above in this topic shows, most style trees use a combination of parallel and serial inheritance.

Why dynamic inheritance is useful:

Just as dynamic styles make it possible to reformat your entire project by editing a couple of style definitions, dynamic inheritance makes it possible to make basic changes to entire families of styles by editing a single style definition. For example, you can usually change the base font for your entire project by changing the font setting of *Normal*. For more details on using these features to plan your styles see Style organization strategies 1497.

Stopping inheritance:

Precisely because dynamic inheritance is so powerful there may be times when you want to stop it. There are situations when you want to make absolutely certain that a style will never be changed when you make changes to another style.

Doing this is very simple: Just don't base your new style on another style: When you create a new style 281 select *(None)* in the *Based on Style:* field for the style definition. You can also change this later if you want. See Editing styles 288 for details.

The standard *Code Example* style used for formatting program code with the syntax highlighter 310 is an example of this. This style does not have a parent because its format must always be the same – you don't want any other styles to be able to change its font, size or paragraph formatting.

A style without a parent starts a new inheritance tree

A style without a parent does not inherit any attributes from any other styles. This means that it is "protected" against unexpected changes caused by changes in parent styles.

At the same time, a style without a parent is also the "first parent" in a new inheritance tree: If you base new styles on this style they will inherit the properties of the style. You can use these capabilities to create new and separate families of styles. See Style organization strategies 1497 for some more ideas on this.

Switch off inheritance with caution!

When you are learning how to use styles it is tempting to switch off inheritance for many styles because you may think this will give you greater control over your formatting. In the short term this is true but in the long term it is better to learn to use inheritance efficiently. Defining many styles without parents will actually create much more work for you later if you decide to make far-reaching changes in your formatting. Again, see Style organization strategies 1497 for some more ideas on this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

Style organization strategies 1497
Text Formatting and Styles 273 (how-to instructions)

11.4.4 The standard styles

If you look at the styles list in the styles editing dialog you will notice that some styles are displayed with the addition *(Standard Style)* after the style name. These styles are special styles that Help+Manual always expects to find because it uses them for specific purposes. You can edit them but you cannot change their names and you cannot delete them.

The standard styles and what they are for:

Normal: This is the basic parent style that almost all other styles, including header styles, are normally based on. By default *Normal* is also used for the standard starting paragraph in all new topics. (You can change this by defining a new standard topic content template 1016.)

Having almost all other styles based on *Normal* makes it possible to make changes to the appearance of your entire project by editing *Normal*. For example, changing the font of *Normal* automatically changes the font of all other styles in which you have not explicitly defined a different font from the one set for *Normal*.

For more details on this see About inheritance in styles 1485 and Style organization strategies 1497.

Code Example: This style is automatically applied to all program code formatted with the Syntax Highlighter 310. Unlike most other styles it is not based on Normal, because you don't want its appearance to change when you change the formatting of the rest of your project.

Comment: This style defines the appearance of the comments 253 you can enter in your project. This style is quite limited compared to most other styles. See Image caption and comment styles 305 for details.

Heading1: This is the style used for the topic header displayed in the box above the editing area. It's a good idea to use it as the parent for a family of heading styles for use in the rest of your project.

Image Caption: This style is applied to the captions of graphics 481 inserted in your topics. Like the Comment style it is quite limited: See Image caption and comment styles 305 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Notes: This style is reserved for functions that may be added to Help+Manual in a future release.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273 (how-to instructions)

11.4.5 Paragraph, text and table styles

There are three different kinds of styles: paragraph styles, text styles and table styles. Paragraph and text styles are closely related, table styles are actually completely separate.

As their names suggest, paragraph styles are for formatting entire paragraphs, text styles are for formatting text only. See Defining styles 281 and Formatting text with styles 292 and for details on how to define and use paragraph and text styles.

About table styles

Table styles are used for tables only and do not have anything to do with the styles used for formatting text and paragraphs. However, the rules of dynamic styles and dynamic inheritance also apply for table styles. See Table styles 533 in the Working with Tables chapter for details on using table styles.

The difference between paragraph and text styles:

Paragraph styles:
These are the most commonly-used styles. They include ***all*** style attributes (font and paragraph, including borders and background colors) and they are used for controlling the general layout of your entire project. A paragraph style is generally applied to one or more paragraphs. Note that border and background attributes are set separately but they are actually a subset of the paragraph attributes.

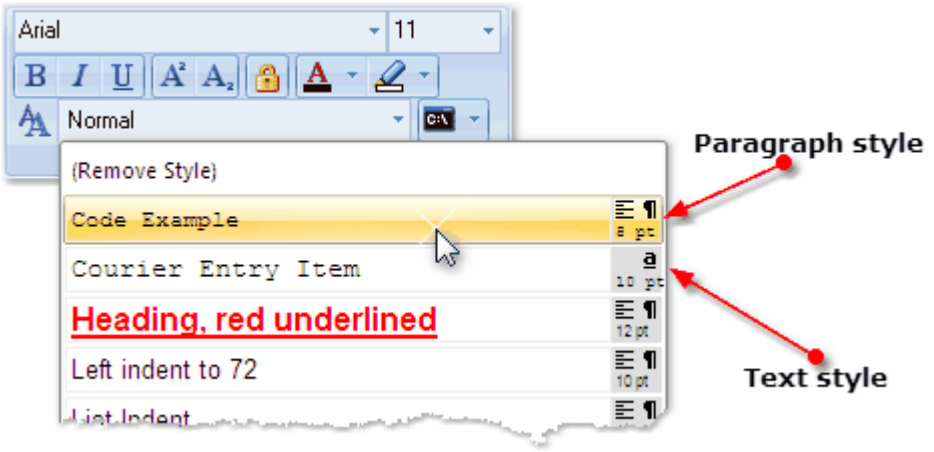
Text styles:
These styles ***only*** include font attributes. They are used for applying standard formatting to individual passages of text.

Using paragraph styles as text styles:
If you select text within a paragraph and apply a paragraph style only its text attributes will be applied. Effectively, the paragraph style is used as a text style when you do this.

Display in the Ribbon:

In the style selector in the Ribbon paragraph styles are identified by a paragraph symbol, text styles by an underlined **a** symbol.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Can you convert between the two style types?

Yes. The division between paragraph and text styles is actually made for convenience. In reality all styles can always store all possible style attributes.

Converting a text style to a paragraph style:

You can always convert a text style to a paragraph style simply by adding paragraph attributes to it. This is possible even if the style is based on another text style because you are adding attributes, not taking them away, and this does not cause any problems in the style's dynamic inheritance tree (see below).

Converting a paragraph style to a text style:

You can also convert a paragraph style to text styles, but this is a little more difficult. If the paragraph style is based on another paragraph style you must change its parent setting 288 to *(None)* or to a text style. This is necessary because of dynamic inheritance: If a style is based on a paragraph style it must inherit its parent's paragraph attributes, and this makes it impossible for it to be a text style.

See About inheritance in styles 1485 for more information on dynamic inheritance.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273 (how-to instructions)
Defining styles 281
Editing styles 288
About inheritance in styles 1485

11.4.6 Image Styles

You can now define styles for images in the same way as for paragraphs and tables. And just as with paragraphs and tables, changing the image style definition changes the formatting for

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

all images tagged with the style.

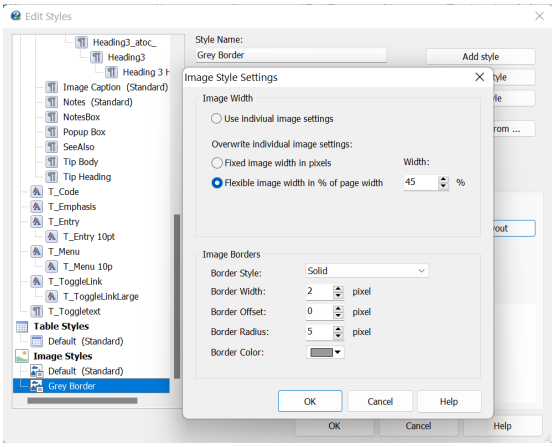


Image styles can also be used for image toggles and video placeholders

Note that image styles can be applied to image toggles 392 and the placeholders for videos and online media 548.

Image style settings

Image styles can include these settings. The width and height settings allow you to create a class of images that match exactly in your output.

Responsive or fixed width: We recommend always using the responsive width setting (% of page width). This makes your images adjust to the browser or viewer window in HTML formats, or to the page width on publishing in PDF and Word files. In both cases this prevents your images from breaking your layout.

Responsive images in tables:
Note that when an image is in a table the % width is relative to the table cell, not to the page.

Fixed height: This sets all the images to the same absolute height in pixels. You cannot combine this with a width setting. You must set either the width, or the height.

Borders: Apply a border around all images formatted with the style.

Caption alignment: Align the image caption left, centered or right.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note on image styles in Word export

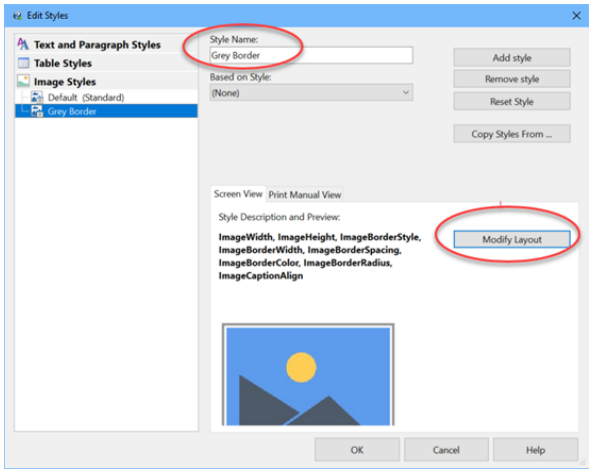
Image styles in Word DOCX export can have borders, but they cannot include rounded corners or an offset between the image and the border. This is a restriction of the style settings available in Word.

Defining an image style

Notes

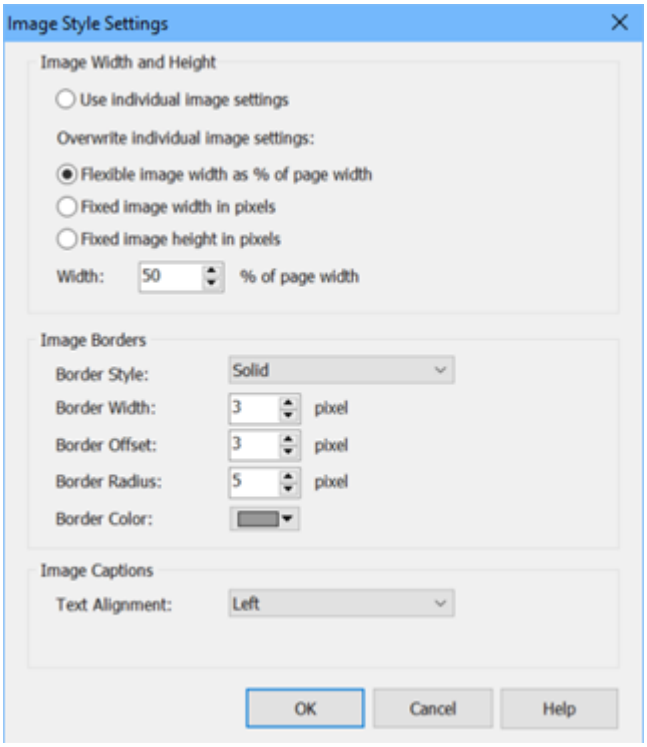
- You can't add style settings to the **Default** image style. This is the standard setting for images and is without additional style attributes.
- Image styles can be based on other image styles or independent. This is the same as with other style types.

Procedure



1. Open **Styles** > **Edit Styles** in the **Write** tab.
2. Locate the **Image Styles** heading and click on **Add Style**.
3. Enter a name and choose whether it is to be based on another style or not. Styles based on other styles inherit any settings you don't change in the parent.
4. Select Modify Layout to define the style settings.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Width or height:

You can define **either** the width **or** the height. The other setting is always automatic.

Percentage width or fixed width:
Percentage is recommended, because it makes the images responsive, adjusting in relation to the width of the current window or page. This is essential for responsive web design for both desktop and mobile devices, and it also ensures that your images won't break PDF and Word layouts.

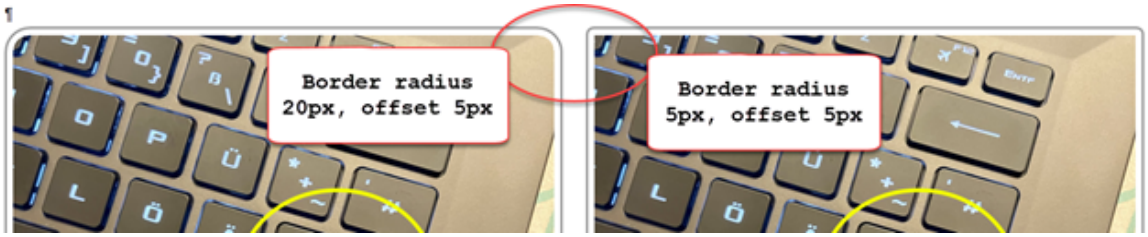
Borders:

You can define the border style (solid, dashed etc.), width and color. Plus the radius, which creates rounded corners, and an offset, for a border offset from the image.

Rounded borders with an offset:

If you use a style with rounded borders and an offset for the border, you will want the rounded corners of the image to match those of the border as closely as possible. For this to work, you need to use a fairly high value for the border radius. In the example below, the 5px radius doesn't match the image, but the 20px radius does.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Caption alignment:

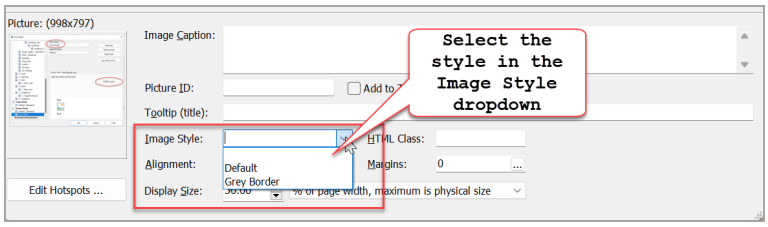
Centered, left or right. The text style for the caption is defined globally with the Image Caption style in the **Text & Paragraph Styles** section.

Applying styles to images

The style setting is in the **Insert/Open Image** dialog displayed when you insert an image. For existing images, just double-click on the image in the topic editor to display it.

Procedure

1. Insert a new image, or double-click on an existing image to display the dialog.
2. Select the style from the Image Style: dropdown list and click on Open to save.

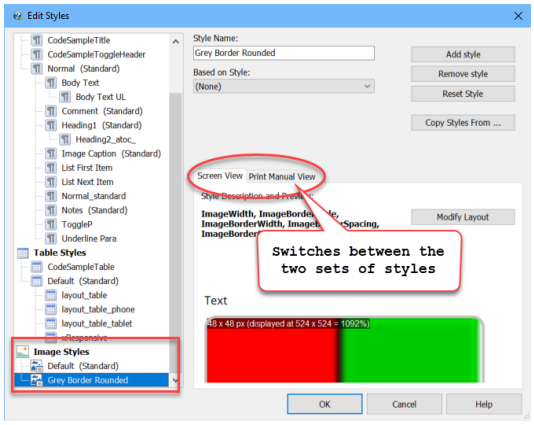


Dual Styles for electronic help and print-style help (PDF etc.)

Screen View and Print View tabs:

You can define two sets of settings for each style: Screen View is for electronic help formats (HTML Help, WebHelp and eWriter Help), Print View is for page-style formats (PDF, Print User Manual, Word DOCX and ePUB eBooks).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



You can switch between the Screen and Print View style settings in the Help+Manual editor by clicking on the Screen/Print button in the status bar at the bottom of the main program window.

11.4.7 Style organization strategies

This section describes some basic principles that will help you to use styles more efficiently. Once you understand styles the way you use them is also a question of your personal working preferences. For example, some people prefer to have a small, more manageable set of styles and pay for this convenience with a little more manual formatting work. Others prefer to have a large and almost complete set of styles that allows them to control virtually all their formatting by editing styles.

Separating formatting and content:

One of the basic purposes of dynamic styles is to allow you to separate formatting and content. Theoretically, if you do this completely ***all*** the formatting in your entire project would be controlled by styles and you would be able to change the appearance of everything just by modifying the styles. In the real world all projects will normally contain a certain amount of manually-formatted text. For example bold and underlining to emphasize individual words and passages, and individual manually-formatted paragraphs and sections for which it would not be worthwhile to create one or more special styles.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The "many styles" and "few styles" strategies:

The number of styles you really need depends mainly on the amount of manual formatting you are willing to do. There are two basic approaches to this, the "many styles" strategy and the "few styles" strategy:

Many styles:

If you want to control all your formatting with styles you will need quite a large number of styles for each project. Most of these styles will not be unique, they will be variants of other styles. For example you will probably want to have several variants of the *Normal* style used for standard paragraphs with indents and other modifications.

Few styles:

The "few styles" approach uses exactly the opposite strategy. Here you would use a single style for each basic paragraph type, heading type and so on. With this strategy you don't create any variants of these styles: If you want to use a variant, for example with an indent, you must then apply the indent manually while you are writing and editing your topics.

This approach results in a much smaller list of styles that is easier to manage. It works if you are quite clear about what formatting you are going to apply manually. However, you must really be absolutely sure that all the manual formatting you apply are things you are not going to change. In the case of indents, for example, this is generally a relatively safe assumption.

You can still make global changes to your styles when you use this method, but any manual formatting you have applied will not be changed when you change the style definitions. (Manual formatting always has priority over style formatting.)

Style families

No matter whether you use many or few styles it is always advisable to organize your styles in "families", both by name and by inheritance 1485.

Style name families:

This is simply logical and makes your styles easier to identify and find. It makes sense to create families of headline styles called *Heading1*, *Heading2*, *Heading3* and so on. Then they all appear together in the list and you know what they are for. If you want you can also include some key information in the names. You can organize your other style groups like body text and so on in the same way.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Remember that you can rename your styles at any time!

Don't hesitate to rename your styles if you need to! Help+Manual automatically updates all style references so you can rename them to improve your styles organization whenever you want.

Style inheritance families:

Styles inherit properties from the styles they are based on. If you base groups of styles on a common parent style you can make changes to the common properties of the entire style group by editing the parent style.

For example, you could base all your headline styles on the standard style 1490 Heading1, if you want them to be similar to Heading1. If you don't want them to be similar to Heading1 you could create a new parent style for the headlines you want to use in your topics, and base your other headline styles on that.

The same applies to other groups of styles for text or paragraphs with similar attributes. See About inheritance in styles 1485 for more background information on this.

Naming paragraph and text styles

It's advisable to apply a prefix to text styles that automatically distinguishes them from paragraph styles and keeps them together in all the style selection lists, which are sorted alphabetically – for example P_ for paragraph styles and T_ for text styles.

Actually, you only need to use a prefix for one of the two because anything that doesn't have the prefix is automatically identifiable as the other type.

One inheritance tree or multiple trees?

By default all the styles in Help+Manual except the standard Code Example style (see The standard styles 1490) are based on *Normal,* which is also the style used for standard paragraphs in topics. This means that you have a single style inheritance tree. The advantage of this is that it makes it possible to change attributes throughout your entire project by editing *Normal*. You can change the standard font in all your styles simply by changing the font of Normal, provided you haven't explicitly changed the base font in any styles. The same applies for all other inherited attributes of Normal.

Creating new style inheritance trees:

When you create a new style that is not based on any other styles you effectively create a new style inheritance tree. The question is, is this an advantage or a disadvantage?

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The main advantage of a completely new tree is that it is guaranteed that you can't accidentally change the attributes of styles in the tree by editing *Normal* or another higher-level style. Many authors use one tree for body text styles and another tree for header styles, for example.

The disadvantage is the same as the advantage: You have to edit the styles in the second tree separately, which means maintaining your styles can be a little more work. But it can be worth it if you find making this division makes it easier for you to manage your project.

It's a question of personal preference:

Ultimately it's a question of personal preference whether you use the one-tree or the multi-tree method. However, it's probably a bad idea to create too many trees, as that can get really troublesome to manage.

If you do use multiple trees it's best to stick to one tree for each main group, for example one tree for body text styles, one tree for header styles (particularly if you use different fonts for headers and body text) and so on.

Using hotkeys

Last but not least, don't forget to assign hotkeys (keyboard shortcuts) to your frequently-used styles! If you spend any amount of time working with Help+Manual (and if you're writing help you will) this can radically speed up your work.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273 (how-to instructions)

11.4.8 Tabs, indents and HTML

Tab stops and indents as used in word processors are unknown in HTML. You should thus always avoid using tab stops in any topics intended for output to HTML-based formats, i.e. HTML Help, WebHelp and Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks.

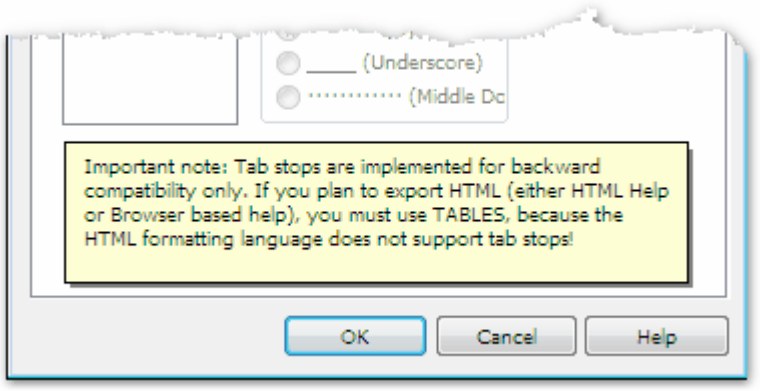
Attempts to use spaces to create indented effects in HTML-based output will also not be very successful. This is because all HTML browsers ignore multiple spaces: It doesn't matter whether you enter a single space or 100 spaces, the browser will always render them as a single space – unless you enter hard (non-breaking) spaces with **Alt+0160** on the numeric keypad.

Help+Manual actually converts multiple spaces you enter in the editor to space/hard space pairs in HTML output to get around this problem, but this still doesn't make spaces a good tool for indents – spaces render with different widths in different fonts and hard and soft spaces can also have different widths.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Tabs and indents are not the same thing:

In the **Tab Stops** settings of the Paragraph formatting dialog you will see the following warning:



This might make you think that you can't use indents at all for HTML-based output but this is not the case. You can use indented paragraphs, you just shouldn't try to use tabs or spaces to make indents. You should always use Help+Manual's paragraph indenting 299 functions.

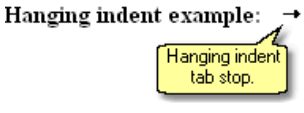
How Help+Manual handles indents in HTML:

How Help+Manual handles indented paragraphs depends on how they are formatted. Paragraphs with simple indents are formatted with margin settings.

Hanging indents are converted to tables, because this is the only way to make this construction stable in HTML.

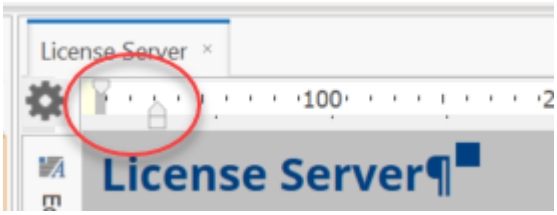
Special case – hanging indents with a tab stop:

Hanging indents are the only place you should use a tab stop. Here the tab character is used to insert the space between the text in the left part of the indent (the hanging part) from the main body of the paragraph, as shown in the example below. Paragraphs like this are converted to tables in HTML, which is the only really stable structure for displaying paragraphs with hanging indents in all browsers and the Microsoft HTML Help viewer.



A paragraph with a "hanging indent" has an indented paragraph and a first line that begins further to the left of the paragraph. There is a tab stop between the "hanging" part of the paragraph and the main part. In addition to this you can also indent the entire paragraph, including the left indent. This example uses all three features. The ruler for this example looks like this:¶

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



This also works if the beginning of the first line is indented from the left margin. This will also be converted to a table structure that will be stable in HTML-based output.

See also:

Using indents 299

11.4.9 About table and column widths

The dynamic behavior of tables in the Help+Manual editor and published output may be a little unfamiliar and even frustrating at first if you come from a word processing background. This is because they work much more like HTML tables than like tables in word processors like Word or Open Office Writer. However, if you have experience with HTML you will feel right at home with Help+Manual's table sizing functions.

Table and column width values

Tables have two sets of width values that interact with one another: The width of the table and the widths of the individual columns. These values can be defined or undefined.

Undefined width:

When the width value of a table or a column is undefined its width is determined by its content – then the cells and columns will expand just enough for the content to fit, and no more. This also applies to the height of table cells.

Defined width:

When the width value of a table or column is defined it will be at least as wide as the defined value. If the content is wider the defined value will be ignored and the table or column will expand to fit the content.

Content expands table cells

Table cells are always at least as large as the content they contain. Your width and height settings will always be ignored if your content is wider or higher. Table cells always expand to accommodate all the text and graphics they contain. Additional wrapping text will only make a cell higher but graphics and non-wrapping text can also make cells wider, overriding the width settings.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Table width settings

Tables have three different "width modes":

Autosize:

This is the default setting. Initially, the width of the table and all columns is undefined. All widths are dynamic and everything expands to fit the content – the content defines the width of both the columns and the table.

Fit on page:

Equivalent to a width of 100%. The table will always expand to fit the current margins of the paragraph or the entire page. Any column width settings that prevent this will be ignored. The table should have at least one dynamic column to allow it to expand to fit the page, otherwise all columns will automatically switch to dynamic width.

Manual:

The table will always have the preset width in percent or absolute pixels. It should have at least one dynamic column that can expand or contract to make the defined width possible. If the defined table width is not possible with the preset column widths ***all*** columns will automatically switch to dynamic width.

Column width settings

By default, columns are "dynamic" – this means that they do not have a width setting, they expand automatically to fit the content in their cells and the table width settings.

"Lock Column":

The **Lock Column** tool in the **Table** tab locks the current width of the selected column as a fixed value in pixels. This width will be maintained if possible. This tool also shows whether the current column is locked or unlocked – it is highlighted when the column is locked.

Column width in the Table Properties dialog:

You can lock the column width to a pixel or percentage value with **Table** > **Properties** > **Selected Cells**. This width will be maintained if possible.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Resizing column widths with the mouse:

Resizing column widths with the mouse always locks both columns affected by the resize operation. Be aware of this when planning your tables! You will often need to unlock one column after resizing with the mouse to allow your table to resize correctly.

Impossible column widths

If any column width setting is not possible all column widths in the table will be reset to dynamic. This will happen if the column contains content (graphics, non-breaking text) that is wider than the set width or if the set width is made impossible by the other table settings.

For example, this will happen if:

- The table has a fixed width in pixels and the sum of the individual column widths is greater than the width of the table.
- The sum of the column widths in percent is greater than 100%.
- Any table column contains content that is wider than the defined width of the column.

Height settings

Tables do not have height settings. Their height is always defined by the height of their content.

Row/cell height is dynamic by default – it expands automatically to fit the content. You can set a minimum fixed height value in pixels in **Table** > **Properties** > **Selected Cells**. If the content of the cell or row is smaller than this value white space will be added. If the content is higher the setting is ignored.

See also:

Working with Tables 518
Table Properties 1391

11.5 Publishing Formats

This section provides an overview of the features, characteristics, advantages and disadvantages of the output formats currently supported by Help+Manual. There is no such thing as the "best" format. Each format serves its purpose, and each can be a good choice for some tasks and a less good choice for others.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The supported formats:

HTML Help: 1506

This is currently the most popular electronic help format for Windows applications. It packs your entire help project into a single CHM file. Fast, compact, excellent navigation and usability, universally compatible and full interaction with applications. Displayed by the HTML Help Viewer, that has been included with Windows since Windows 98.

WebHelp: 1510

Displays in normal web browsers on all platforms (Windows, Linux, Mac OS X, Unix). An emulation of the HTML Help interface, designed for use on the Web and intranets. Complete with a dynamic Table of Contents pane, keyword index and full-text search. Consists of a directory containing a large number of HTML files, graphics files and the files needed to display the Table of Contents etc.

eWriter Help: 1519

eWriter combines the benefits of CHM and WebHelp and eliminates many of the disadvantages of both. This exclusive Help+Manual format has viewer applications for both Windows and MacOS. You can distribute your eWriter Help in two ways:

- **A single EXE file** with combined integrated viewer and documentation (Windows only)
- **Separate viewer and help files** (eViewer viewer and help files with an extension of your choice)

Using a separate viewer program and help files makes it easier to give your customers updates for your help files because you just need to distribute plain data files that do not need to be signed.

This format also provides an emulation of the familiar HTML Help Viewer layout so that all users will be able to use it intuitively without additional explanation.

Apple iBooks®/ePUB eBooks 1513:

ePUB eBooks are an open format that is rapidly becoming a universal standard. In addition to displaying on Apple iOS devices (iPad, iPhone, iPod Touch), they are supported by many other hardware and software readers on many platforms.

Adobe PDF: 1523

Your project can also be output as a fully-formatted and full-featured PDF file that can be displayed on any computer with a PDF

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

reader. Ideal for providing manuals that users can print themselves, either on CDs or for download.

Printed manuals: 1524
The *Print Manual* feature (in the File menu) generates a temporary PDF file in the background and outputs it to your printer. Also supports booklet format (multiple pages per sheet) and duplex printing.

MS Word DOCX: 1525
Generates the current MS Word DOCX format, compatible with all versions of Word that support DOCX. Includes templates that are themselves DOCX files that can be edited in Word. For details see MS Word DOCX 682 in the Configuring for Publishing chapter.

Visual Studio Help 2008 and 2010: 1525
These specialized formats are also known as MS Help 2.0 and MS Help 3.0. They are provided for programmers who need them to document programming components in Visual Studio .NET. They are not documented extensively in the help because Microsoft has not released them for general use under Windows. Both formats are irrelevant for normal application documentation.

For details see Visual Studio Help 1132 in the More Advanced Procedures section and the documentation of the MS Visual Studio .NET package. (If you don't have this package you don't need and cannot use Visual Studio Help.)

11.5.1 HTML Help

HTML Help is now fully established as the standard Windows help format and unless you have a very good reason to use something else it is the best choice for online help distributed with modern Windows applications. Users are familiar with it, navigation is intuitive and it supports all the interactive and context-sensitive help technologies that make good help effective. And since it is HTML-based you have considerable flexibility for both formatting and introducing special features and functions.

HTML Help does have a couple of disadvantages: It is not ideal for web-based help or for help on networks, but it is the top choice for help installed with applications on the user's computer.

Restrictions on HTML Help on network drives:

Security restrictions in Windows now prevent access to HTML Help files network drives and the Internet. File links 424 in HTML Help files will now generally not work at all across networks, you can only link to files stored in the same folder as the HTML Help CHM file. It

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

is possible to enable display of HTML Help on network drives with some special Windows Registry entries, for which EC Software provides a free tool.

Features and pros and cons of HTML Help:

File extension:	`.chm`
Format:	One CHM file contains the entire help.
Platforms:	All Windows versions since Windows 98
Typical use:	Local online help for applications installed on the user's computer
Table of contents:	Yes. Integrated in the CHM file and always visible in the viewer. Excellent, immediately intuitive navigation for the user.
Keyword index:	Yes
Full text search:	Yes
Context sensitive help:	Yes, full context-sensitive help support. Can include text-only field-level popups 897 which can be displayed directly within your application without the main help window.
Popups:	Yes, both in the help viewer and for context-sensitive help. Natively, HTML Help only supports text-only popups without formatting or graphics. Only these plain-text popups can be used for field-level popups displayed in your application. You can also use Help+Manual's JavaScript popups 212 in HTML Help. In addition to formatted text and graphics JavaScript popups also support hyperlinks and even videos and animations. You cannot mix JavaScript popups and plain-text popups in a single project but you can create a separate project containing only your plain-text popups if you want to include JavaScript popups in your main project.
Multimedia:	All Windows-compatible video formats are supported, along with online video services. However, support for playing the formats used must also be installed on the user's computer. For

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

example, if you use a DiVX video don't expect it to be playable on all user machines!

Generally speaking, MP4 video is the most reliable video format. However, if you want guaranteed compatibility it is best to put your video on an online service like YouTube or Vimeo. Then they will automatically handle the compatibility issues by generating multiple versions of your video and serving up the correct one for the current user.

Printable by user: The Print function of HTML Help is very limited. The help viewer can print topics and chapters but each topic is printed on a separate page.

Pros: Single file containing all topics, graphics and the table of contents. Intuitive, directory tree style table of contents that is always visible to the user. Flexible formatting with HTML (in Help+Manual you have full control over your topic pages with HTML templates 1026), including the ability to add functions with JavaScript etc. by adding your own code to topics 469 and templates 1026.The HTML base makes it easy to produce a browser-based version for the web that looks almost identical to the HTML Help version.

Cons: Popup topics are limited to plain text in native mode. Severe restrictions on deployment in networks and the Internet, primarily suitable for help installed locally on the user's computer together with the application.

See also:

HTML Help 645 (Configuring Your Output)
HTML Help 1451 (Configuration Options)

11.5.1.1 HTML Help project files

When you publish your project to HTML Help Help+Manual creates a temporary directory called `\~tmpchm` in your project directory (this is the directory containing your **`.hmxp`** or **`.hmxz`** project file). It then outputs all the files needed by the Microsoft HTML Help compiler to this directory. These files include all the standard HTML Help project files that you would create if you were producing HTML Help manually with HTML Help Workshop.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Viewing the HTML Help source files:

Normally the `\~tmpchm` directory and all its contents are deleted after your project has been published. If you want to view the files after publishing to check them just deselect the *Delete temporary files* option in the Publish 1310 dialog.

HTML Help project files:

projectname.hhp: This is the "control" file that brings together all the elements of the project, telling the compiler what is going to be used and what goes where.

projectname.hhc: This file contains the table of contents.

projectname.hhk: This file contains the keyword index.

projectname.hm: This is the map file containing the help context number assignments.

projectname.h: This file contains the alias assignments, if applicable.

projectname.log: This file is generated by the Microsoft HTML Help compiler. It contains the log of the last publishing session and any error messages or warnings.

default.css: This file is generated by Help+Manual and contains the styles information for your project. It may have a different name if you have changed it in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > HTML Export Options 1467 (Note that these settings are shared with all HTML-based output formats. They are also accessible in the **WebHelp** and **Visual Studio Help** sections of the Configuration section.)

CSHelp.txt: This file is generated by Help+Manual if you have activated plain-text popups for HTML Help. It is a plain-text file containing the texts of your popup topics. It may have a different name if you have changed it in the the popup options 1462 for HTML Help.

hm_popuptopics.js: This file is generated by Help+Manual if you have activated JavaScript popups 212 in your project. It contains the code for your JavaScript popups. It is added to the compiled CHM help file.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

HTML files: These files with the extension **.htm** or **.html** contain your topics. They are generated from your project by Help+Manual so that the Microsoft compiler can use them to create the compiled CHM help file.

Graphics files: These files are generated from your project in the correct formats by Help+Manual so that the compiler can use them to create the compiled CHM help file.

11.5.2 WebHelp

WebHelp outputs your project to normal HTML pages that can be displayed with a standard web browser, either locally or on the Internet. The WebHelp generated by Help+Manual is designed to emulate the appearance and functionality of HTML Help, with a TOC tree pane, a keyword index and full-text search (Pro version only).

The HTML code generated for WebHelp is CSS and DHTML based and is compatible with all modern browsers on all platforms (Windows, Linux, Mac OS X, Unix). It is intelligent code that automatically "downgrades gracefully" when it encounters old browses and browsers with restrictive security functions. On these browsers some of the "eye candy" functions will be turned off but the help will still be fully functional.

WebHelp is the best choice for help on the Internet and on local intranet systems, where HTML Help is restricted by Windows security barriers.

Features and pros and cons of WebHelp:

File extensions: **.htm** and **.html**, graphics in JPG, PNG or GIF format. You can also set the extensions of your topic files to anything else required by your project in HTML Export Options 1459 (e.g. **.php** etc.).

Format: A collection of HTML, graphics and other files in a directory, just like a website (it is a website)

Platforms: All major computer platforms and browsers, including Mac and Linux

Browser compatibility: The WebHelp output generated by Help+Manual is fully compatible with all major browsers. In addition to this the output will also work transparently on older and security-restricted browsers. It achieves this by automatically identifying browser capabilities and "downgrading gracefully", providing less dy-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	namic and formatting features but still presenting a fully-functional help system.
Typical use:	Online help and documentation on the web or on local intranets where the use of HTML Help is not practical.
Table of contents:	Yes
Keyword index:	Yes
Full text search:	Yes (available in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual only)
Context-sensitive help:	Context calls from applications 899 to topics and anchors in topics are supported. Field-level context popups displayed within your applications are not supported.
Popups:	Yes, with JavaScript popups 212 that are compatible with all current browsers and do not trigger popup blockers.
Multimedia:	Theoretically a wide range of video formats are supported, but whether they work or not depend on support for playing the formats used being installed on the user's computer. Also, the degree and quality of the support also depends on the support provided by the browser the user is using. So please test your output on all relevant browsers before distributing! However, if you want guaranteed compatibility it is best to put your video on an online service like YouTube or Vimeo. Then they will automatically handle the compatibility issues by generating multiple versions of your video and serving up the correct one for the current user.
Printable by user:	Limited to browser print functions, which can generally only print individual topics.
Pros:	Platform and cross-browser compatible, ideal for help on the web and intranet systems. All the flexibility and formatting power of HTML, including the ability to add functions with JavaScript etc. by adding your own code to topics 469 and templates 1026.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Cons:	WebHelp consists of many individual HTML files, graphics and other files.

See also:

WebHelp 655 (Configuring Your Output)
WebHelp 1415 (Configuration Options)
Browser compatibility 1512

11.5.2.1 Browser compatibility

The WebHelp generated by Help+Manual is compatible with all modern browsers. It requires a web server and JavaScript to work correctly (see below for details). For documentation installed locally, use eWriter, CHM, or possibly PDF.

Different appearance in different browsers:

It is unavoidable that your WebHelp output will look slightly different depending on the browser used to view it. HTML Help and Visual Studio Help are proprietary Microsoft formats that are displayed with Microsoft viewers using the integrated Windows WebView component. Your output in these formats will generally resemble your source in the Help+Manual editor more closely.

This is not possible in WebHelp. The HTML code generated is the best possible compromise between compliance with web standards for HTML and CSS and the quirks and weaknesses of individual browsers. Discrepancies between browsers have become less in recent years, but to a certain extent individual browsers often interpret the same rules differently.

Skins for legacy browsers

If you are targeting legacy browsers or WebViews, usually based on very old versions of Internet Explorer, we recommend using the "Two Frames Classic" skins. These are original skins from the IE 6 era that still use the deprecated frameset structure, and they should still work fine on very old browsers.

Browser and web server requirements for all features:

The current WebHelp skins require current browsers supporting HTML5, CSS3 and the current iteration of JavaScript. WebHelp has a complex, multi-page structure and requires both JavaScript and a web server to work correctly. It will not work if you just try to open its HTML files by double-clicking them — it is designed for the web and must be deployed on a web server (either Internet or intranet) and accessed via a web browser with a URL. If you need WebHelp style documentation stored locally, use eWriter instead 1519.

See also:

WebHelp 655 (Configuring Your Output)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

WebHelp 1415 (Configuration Options)

11.5.3 Kindle and ePUB eBooks

The Amazon Kindle/Mobi eBook format

Kindle/Mobi is the proprietary format used for Amazon Kindle eBooks, which can be read on the Amazon Kindle hardware eBook readers and a wide variety of Kindle apps on different platofrms. Internally, this format is really just a minor variant of the universal ePUB format. However, Kindle eBooks are packaged in a proprietary Amazon binary format instead of in a normal ZIP file like standard ePUB. There are just a few formatting and configuration changes that need to be made and these are handled automatically by Help+Manual.

The standard ePUB eBook format

The ePUB format (file extension .epub) is a standard for eBooks created by the International Digital Publishing Forum. It is the standard eBook format on Apple iOS devices, which currently include the iPad, the iPhone and the iPod Touch. Help+Manual's ePUB output is designed to be fully compatible with the Apple iBooks® eBook reader on these devices so that you can distribute your ePUB output through the Apple iTunes store.

In addition to Apple iBooks®, ePUB is also supported by most other hardware eBook readers, including the Sony Reader series, other smartphones and many other devices, and by many software readers like the Adobe Digital Editions reader.

See ePUB Resources 769 for more details, including sources for reader software and devices.

Professional and Floating license versions only

Please note that the support for ePUB and Kindle eBooks only included in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. You cannot generate these eBooks with the Basic version.

11.5.3.1 Apple iBooks® - ePUB

Key Information
Keep your eBook projects simple. Avoid complex layouts and formatting, only use simple tables and don't use invisible topics. Only *a..z, A..Z, 0..9* and _ are permitted in topic IDs in eBooks!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The ePUB format

The ePUB format is completely open. An ePUB eBook consists of basic XHTML for the book content, XML for descriptions, and a zip archive file with the extension **.epub** containing all the files.

Apple iBooks® ePUB eBooks:

The ePUB eBooks generated by Help+Manual are fully compatible with the Apple iBooks® reader on the Apple iPad, iPhone and iPod Touch. iBooks® is different from other readers in many ways and has a number of special requirements.

Features and pros and cons of ePUB eBooks:

File extension:	**.epub**
Format:	A single zip archive file containing the XHTML and XML files and other components. Additional configuration files and special settings are required for compatibility with Apple iBooks® on Apple's iOS devices (iPad, iPhone and iPod Touch).
Platforms:	Viewable on any platform or device for which an ePUB reader is available. Apple iBooks® on the iPad, iPhone and iPod Touch, Sony Reader, Windows, Apple OS X, Linux, Unix, Sony Reader, mobile phones and many more.
Typical use:	Reading books on hardware eBook readers. Although a large number of software readers are available, only a very small number of users actually read books on computers. The huge majority use mobile devices like the iPad to read eBooks.
Distribution:	ePUB eBooks can be distributed directly. Even if you are targeting Apple iBooks® devices, you can distribute your ePUB eBooks directly to your customers and they can install them on the device themselves. **Easiest distribution method:** Put the eBook file online and post the URL to the file as a QR code, which can be generated by Help+Manual 262. Users then scan the QR code with their device camera and the book is downloaded and loaded automatically by their ePUB eBook reader app.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Table of contents:	Yes, not supported by all readers
Keyword index:	No
Full text search:	Yes, but search functionality depends on reader
Context-sensitive help:	No support for context-sensitive help, you cannot make direct calls to specific topics in the help
Popups:	No
Multimedia:	Video is supported in iBooks® on Apple iOS devices (iPad, iPhone, iPod Touch). Some other devices may support video but don't depend on it. Most don't.
Printable by user:	Yes, but print functionality depends on reader
Pros:	Single-file, universal cross-platform format already supported by many software and hardware readers. Large number of ePUB eBooks already published, already a universal standard. Generally intuitive handling (depends on reader).
Cons:	This is really a dedicated format for books in electronic form. Best for books that users read in the same way as a printed book. Search but no index, simple formatting only, video only in iBooks®.

See also:

Kindle/Mobi and ePUB 3.0 749 (Configuring for Publishing)

11.5.3.2 Amazon Kindle/Mobi

Key Information
Keep your eBook projects simple. Avoid complex layouts and formatting, only use simple tables and don't use invisible topics. Only *a..z, A..Z, 0..9* and _ are permitted in topic IDs in eBooks!

The Amazon Kindle/Mobi format

The Kindle/Mobi format is closed and proprietary and used only for Amazon Kindle eBooks. You can view the source files generated before the creation of a Kindle eBook, but once the book has been created it can generally be regarded as closed and only viewable on an Amazon Kindle device or with an Amazon Kindle app.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Features and pros and cons of Kindle eBooks:

File extension:	`.mobi`
Format:	A proprietary compressed binary file containing the XHTML and XML files and other Kindle eBook components.
Platforms:	Kindle eBooks distributed via the Amazon Kindle store are only viewable on Amazon Kindle devices and apps. Unprotected Kindle eBook files can also be viewed with other compatible reader apps like Calibre.
Typical use:	Can only be used for Kindle eBooks.
Distribution:	Unprotected Kindle eBooks can be distributed directly. Users can install them on their devices themselves. The only exception is the Windows Phone platform, which can only accept Kindle eBooks directly from the Amazon Kindle store for the Kindle app. **Easiest distribution method:** Put the eBook file online and post the URL to the file as a QR code, which can be generated by Help+Manual 262. Users then scan the QR code with their device camera and the book is downloaded and loaded automatically by the Kindle app (except on Windows Phone).
Table of contents:	Yes
Keyword index:	No
Full text search:	Yes
Context-sensitive help:	No support for context-sensitive help, you cannot make direct calls to specific topics in the help
Popups:	No
Multimedia:	No
Printable by user:	No

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Pros: Only way to distribute eBooks for the Amazon Kindle. You can distribute them directly to the user or submit them to Amazon for distribution via the official Kindle store.

Cons:

See also:

Kindle/Mobi and ePUB 3.0 749 (Configuring for Publishing)

11.5.3.3 ePUB resources

This page contains a selection of hardware, software and information resources relating to the ePUB format and ePUB eBooks. It is not necessarily complete, but it is a good starting-point.

Reference reader devices and readers for testing

Apple iBooks

The only reference eBook reader for iBooks is the Apple iPad, with the iBooks app installed from the Apple App Store. If you want to distribute your eBooks for iOS devices you must have access to a physical iPad for testing. You will also need access to an iPhone or iPod Touch if you expect your books to be read on these smaller devices. You can install ePUB eBooks on these devices with Apple iTunes. Just connect the device to your computer and drag the ePUB file onto the iPad entry in the iTunes window.

Other hardware readers

It's a good idea to have access to the physical hardware readers you are targeting for testing. Some have more limited capabilities than others.

Software readers - get Adobe Digital Editions

The reference software reader is the free Adobe Digital Editions. Before trying to create ePUB eBooks you should download this free reader from Adobe and install it. If you don't do this you won't be able to view your ePUB eBooks on your Windows computer after creating them with Help+Manual. ADE generally provides a good idea of how your eBook is going to look on software readers.

Up-to-date resources list on Wikipedia

The most up-to-date list of ePUB resources is available on this page on Wikipedia:

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/EPUB

Hardware devices supporting ePub eBooks

The following hardware readers currently support ePUB eBooks, either directly or with free additional software. The most notably absent device on this list at the moment is the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Amazon Kindle, which still uses its own closed proprietary format. However, it is rumored that ePUB support for the Kindle is in the works and due to be released in the near future.

Dedicated hardware ePUB and eBook readers
There are now a wide range of hardware ePUB and eBook readers on market. See the Comparison of e-readers on Wikipedia for a good list of the currently available devices and their capabilities.

Apple iPad, iPhone and iPod Touch
All these devices support ePUB directly with the iBooks® eBook reader integrated in their iOS operating system. Help+Manual ePUB eBooks are fully compatible with Apple iBooks®. There are also other eBook readers for iOS available in the Apple iTunes App Store.

Android smartphones and tablets
A wide variety of ePUB readers are available for Android.

Other mobile phones and smartphones
Many other mobile devices also support ePUB eBooks.

Software readers for ePub eBooks

Software readers for ePUB eBooks are already available on many platforms. The following list only includes the known software-based readers that support the ePUB format at the time of writing – others may already be available.

The reference software reader is Adobe Digital Editions used to be a good choice but it is now no longer supported so well and it has been involved in controversies regarding Adobe's use of user data. For general testing on Windows, Mac OS and Linux we now recommend the Calibre eBook Reader.

Calibre eBook Reader (*Windows, Apple Mac OS, Linux*)
This free program is now the software ePUB reader with the best support for ePUB and we strongly recommend that you install it for testing your ePUB books.

Other software eBook readers
There is now such a large number of software-based eBook readers for all current systems that it would be impossible to make any recommendations here. You will need to check current reviews for the best readers for the system you want to use. For testing your own eBooks, however, we can warmly recommend Calibre.

Online resources for ePub eBooks

Melody Simmons eBook Indie Covers

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Excellent site for everything related to eBook covers and cover images.

International Digital Publishing Forum
This is main home page for ePUB and everything relating to the ePUB format. This is also where you can find full specifications of the open ePUB format.

Project Gutenberg
A huge number of free eBooks in all categories, including both classics and new books.

Feedbooks
Free classics in ePUB format.

Snee
Free children's picture books in ePUB format

11.5.4 eWriter Help

Key Information
Help+Manual eWriter Help is available for Windows and MacOS. Use ePUB, PDF or Word RTF to target other platforms.

This exclusive Help+Manual format packages WebHelp 1510 with its full table of contents and user interface into a single file. On Windows 10 users will be prompted to install the Windows Store eViewer app for eWriter when they open a file with the **`.ewriter`** extension, if they don't already have the viewer. A free installer for the standard Windows eViewer app is available from our eWriter page for users on earlier versions of Windows.

EWriter uses Windows' own HTML rendering engine to display the content, with full support for CSS3, HTML5 and JavaScript. The eWriter files are neutral, digitally compressed files that can be distributed without signatures by download or as email attachments.

The better alternative to CHM on Windows

eWriter Help files are an attractive alternative to the obsolete CHM format for documenting software applications on Windows machines. The eWriter format combines the benefits of CHM and WebHelp and eliminates many disadvantages of both. It also allows you to execute operations 708 in your application with hyperlinks for the creation of interactive help tutorials.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

A modern integrated help format for MacOS

With the exception of the very old Apple Help/Help Viewer format that most Mac apps no longer use, there is not really an integrated help format like CHM for the Apple platform. eViewer provides one.

Layout and functionality with WebHelp skins

You can use WebHelp skins for eWriter to get all the layout and formatting options available in WebHelp, including integrated search and a keyword index. At the same time, it is a compact single file like a CHM and supports context help calls from applications. Unlike CHM files, it can be accessed on networks, and unlike WebHelp, repeated application calls to the same eWriter Help file all open in the same window. It is stored in a single, compact binary file.

Unique benefits of eWriter Help

Viewer and distribution options

- Windows Store viewer that installs automatically when the user opens an eWriter file with the **`.ewriter`** extension (Windows 10)
- Free installer for users on earlier versions of Windows
- Viewer can also be installed as part of your software installation 731
- Neutral binary files that can be freely distributed by download, as email attachments or as part of a software installation

General Features:

- Publish Help+Manual created documentation directly to eWriter with full TOC and user interface, using WebHelp skins.
- You can also package any HTML files or websites as an eWriter Help file, complete with all the layout and dynamic features supported by HTML.
- Consistent presentation, always using the same HTML rendering engine. No nasty surprises because of different displays in different browsers.
- Perform operations in your application with links in the help for interactive documentation and tutorials
- Advanced security: provides levels of protection impossible in CHM files or WebHelp.
- Supports HelpXplain animations, video, JavaScript, CSS etc.
- Context help support – use eBooks instead of CHM files or WebHelp for software documentation.
- Make advanced eBooks with rich features not possible in conventional, plain-text eBooks.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Kiosk mode for interactive demonstrations and presentations.

Security features

- Password protection.
- Prevent copying and printing.
- EBooks with expiry date that can automatically open a specific web page when opened after expiry.
- Support for digital signing for added validation and protection.
- Prevent access to the source code of your HTML pages.
- Allow eBooks to be opened only by Administrator Windows accounts.

Benefits for software documentation

- Full support for context help calls to topics and anchors
- Security and access control features not available in CHM and WebHelp
- Can be accessed on a local network, unlike CHM.
- Compact, single-file format (WebHelp must be stored in a folder containing many files and requires a web server to work properly)
- Unlike WebHelp, every call from your application to the eBook is opened in the same window. Every call from an application to WebHelp opens a new browser window.
- Full support for context help with simple URL syntax. You can interpret all the components of the URL command line just as you would in a normal web browser.
- The user never sees the command line.

Features and pros and cons of eWriter Help:

File extension:	`.ewriter` `.exe` (older integrated format with book and viewer in a single EXE file) You can also choose any extension you like when deploying eWriter for your own software documentation 731.
Formats:	Single, neutral compressed binary file. Separate standalone viewer. Alternative: Integrated format combining viewer and book in a single EXE file with a name of your choice.
Platforms:	Full MS Windows only, Windows RT and Windows CS not supported. Viewer for MacOS planned.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Typical use:	Windows software documentation, computer and Windows tablet based eBooks, standalone documentation, time-limited subscription and demonstration books, kiosk applications (includes a kiosk mode)
Table of contents:	Yes
Keyword index:	Yes
Full text search:	Yes
Context-sensitive help:	Full support for context-sensitive help. It is possible to make direct calls to specific topics and anchors in the help. Combines the functionality of CHM and WebHelp in a single compact file. Limitation: No equivalent for CHM's A-Links and K-Links
Popups:	Yes, same formatted popup functionality supported as in regular WebHelp.
Multimedia:	Same as WebHelp
Printable by user:	Printing by topic, as in WebHelp. Even so, we recommend providing a PDF version for printing.
Pros:	Combines benefits of CHM and WebHelp, eliminating the disadvantages of both formats. Reliable HTML rendering because the same Windows HTML engine is always used. Same layout and skinning flexibility as WebHelp. Supports performing operations in your application 708 from links in the help for interactive documentation and tutorials. Full context sensitive help support. Single compact file. Accessible on local networks. Excellent security and access control features. Windows Store viewer app installs automatically for users of Windows 8 and 10. Free viewer installers available for Windows XP, Vista and 7.
Cons:	Windows only, not yet available on Linux, MacOS, iOS or Android. Not compatible with hardware eBook readers (but can be used on Windows tablets). No equivalent for CHM A-Link and K-Link functionality.

See also:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Configuring eWriter Help 696
eWriter project configuration settings reference 1477

11.5.5 Adobe PDF

Adobe's Portable Document Format (PDF) is now the industry standard format for electronic distribution of printable manuals. PDF provides a high level of formatting fidelity. Layout and appearance are "fixed", and unlike HTML it is not dependent on the quirks of browsers.

It is also a compact, single-file format that is now supported by all major computer platforms as well as Windows. Navigation can be quite good but it is less flexible for on-screen viewing and navigation than HTML Help. The domain of PDF is printable manuals with clearly-defined layout and formatting that do not change on different systems. It is suitable for downloading but not for online viewing on the Web as users must always download the entire document, even if they only want to view a single page.

Features and pros and cons of Adobe PDF:

File extension:	`.pdf`
PDF version:	The PDF output conforms to version 1.2 of the PDF specification and can be viewed with version 3 and above of Adobe Acrobat and Adobe Reader.
Format:	One `.pdf` file containing all text and graphics
Platforms:	All major computer platforms and operating systems
Typical use:	Print manuals distributed in electronic form, electronic books
Table of contents:	Yes, integrated in the PDF file. Hyperlinks are supported for on-screen viewing.
Keyword index:	Yes but limited, just page number references at the end of the document.
Full text search:	Yes, in Adobe Reader
Context-sensitive help:	Support for links to topics, page numbers and PDF template sections with named destinations 465
Popups:	No support for popups. Popup links are displayed as normal text.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Multimedia: No multimedia support.

Printable by user: Yes. The PDF format is ideal for printing and providing a printable version of your manual.

Pros: Printer orientated format supporting precise layout with specifically defined page sizes, margins, headers, footers, etc. Highly customizable with Help+Manual using print manual templates 1019.

Cons: Requires the Adobe Reader viewer but this is free and installed on almost all computers. Many other excellent viewers are available. Not appropriate for application help because of the lack of context-sensitive features. Not suitable for Internet access because the entire document must be downloaded to view anything in the document.

Other information: All the topics not included in your project's Table of Contents are excluded from PDF output and printed manuals. This is by design because PDF is treated as a print format. By definition, there is no place in print-style documents for topics that are not included in the TOC, which are only designed to be accessed with hyperlinks.

If you want to include information from topics not included in your TOC you need to use Help+Manual's conditional output features 969 to make alternative content for the PDF version.

See also:

Adobe PDF 677 (Configuring Your Output)
Adobe PDF 1442 (Configuration Options)
PDF and Printed Manuals 785

11.5.6 Printed manuals

When you output a manual to your printer with the Print Manual in the File menu Help+Manual generates a temporary PDF file and deletes it after the printout has been completed.

Just like Adobe PDF output, the layout of printed manuals is controlled with print manual templates 803. For details on printing manuals and using print manual templates see PDF and Printed Manuals 785.

See also:

Adobe PDF 677 (Configuring Your Output)
PDF and Printed Manuals 785

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.5.7 Visual Studio Help

Visual Studio Help is available in two versions, Visual Studio Help 2008 and 2010, which are also known as MS Help 2.0 and MS Help 3.0, respectively. Originally, each of these help formats was announced as the upcoming the successor to HTML Help. However, in both cases Microsoft then backpedaled and it now seems clear that they are not going to be released as help formats for normal user applications.

Professional and Floating license versions Only

Please note that the support for Visual Studio Help (both formats) is only included in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual. You cannot generate Visual Studio Help with the Basic version.

Visual Studio Help is not for consumer applications!

Visual Studio Help is ***only*** used for documenting components designed to be integrated into the Visual Studio .NET programming environment. The advantage of this is that the documentation becomes part of VS.NET's own documentation, making it possible to provide context-sensitive help for third-party VS.NET components.

For all other help applications you should always use one of the the other more appropriate formats, for example an HTML Help CHM file for help installed locally with your application and WebHelp for help accessed on a network or the Internet. For more information see Visual Studio Help 1132 in the **More Advanced Procedures** section.

See also:

Visual Studio Help 1132 (Advanced Procedures)
Visual Studio Help 1464 (Publishing Options)

11.5.8 MS Word DOCX

This is the native MS Word DOCX format supported by all current versions of Word. It includes full support for configurable layout templates 683 that are themselves DOCX files that you can edit in Word.

Features and pros and cons of the Word DOCX format:

File extension:	**.docx**
Format:	One DOCX file, graphics embedded in the file
Platforms:	MS Word

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Typical use:	Print manuals distributed in electronic form, has now been generally replaced by PDF
Table of contents:	Yes, auto-generated in Word
Keyword index:	Yes, auto-generated in Word
Full text search:	Yes (with MS Word)
Context sensitive help:	No
Popups:	No support for popups
Multimedia:	No multimedia support
Printable by user:	Yes (with MS Word)
Pros:	Can be viewed, edited, searched and printed with MS Word.
Cons:	Relatively static, similar to PDF. Not suitable for interactive help.
Other information:	As in PDF, all the topics not included in your TOC are excluded from DOCX output. This is by design because DOCX is treated as a print format. By definition, there is no place in print-style documents for topics that are not included in the TOC. If you want to include information from topics not included in your TOC you need to use Help+Manual's conditional output features 969 or alternative TOCs 343 to make alternative content for the DOCX version. Hyperlinks 1472 are supported in MS Word DOCX files.

See also:

MS Word DOCX 682 (Configuring Your Output)
MS Word DOCX 1472 (Configuration Options)

11.6 Project Content

This section covers some subjects relating to the content of your projects, including Section 1194.21 accessibility information, background information on using snippets and multiple TOC references, information on using graphics and videos in your projects and information on scripts, inline HTML code objects and macros.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.6.1 Snippets and multiple references

Help+Manual gives you two different ways to "reuse" topics in your project: The Snippets Tool 265, which inserts a copy of the contents of one topic or an external H+M XML file in another topic, and multiple references 371 to a single topic in the Table of Contents (TOC). Both these methods have their advantages and disadvantages.

About multiple TOC references to a single topic:

Creating multiple TOC references to a single topic is a little like having several doors to the same room. You may be able to enter through different doors, but the room is always the same. A topic with multiple TOC references is still just one topic, but the user can display it by clicking on different entries in the TOC.

For the user it looks as though there is a separate copy of the topic in several different locations. Actually, however, there isn't. There is still just one topic, and this means that it is 100% identical in every location. It cannot have even the smallest difference because it is the same topic. The only difference that is possible is that you can have different captions (titles) for the TOC entries for each instance – the doors are different but the room is the same.

See Multiple TOC entries for one topic 371 for instructions on using this feature.

Advantages:

- The "multiple topics" do not increase the size of your output files because there is really only one topic.

Disadvantages:

- All the "instances" have the same topic ID so it is only possible to create hyperlinks to the original instance.
- For the same reason all keywords associated with the topic will always link to the original instance of the topic.
- All the instances are 100% identical because they are the same topic. You cannot have different text before or after the "copies" in the individual locations.

About the Snippets Tool:

The Snippets Tool 265 allows you to insert the contents of one topic in another topic. This can be done either in Copy mode or in Link mode.

Using Copy mode is like copying and pasting text. The contents of the other topic or XML file are pasted into the current topic and can be edited. Only the text is copied and once

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

the copy has been made the text is part of the current topic. If the topic you inserted from is edited nothing changes in the current topic.

This mode is used for text blocks that you want to edit after inserting them, for example tables that need to be filled out.

When you use Link mode you create a link to the other topic or XML file. You can't edit the text inside the current topic but when the source topic or file is changed the changes are reflected in the linked copy as well. When you publish your project a static copy is made of the linked topic, but until then the link is dynamic and all changes in the linked topic are updated.

Linked snippets can be used in multiple places and all the "copies" will be updated simultaneously when the linked topic or file is edited. This mode is used for text that you want to use in many places in exactly the same way.

The current contents of the source topic are displayed in the editor at the insertion point with a shaded background.

In addition to this, the source topic or XML file also exports any index keywords 565 it contains to the target topic. (With XML file snippets this only applies if the snippet is a full topic.) This means that any keywords associated with the source topic also only need to be entered once; they are automatically exported to all target topics and combined with any keywords the target topic already contains. This only works with index keywords, however. A-keywords 579, topic IDs 368 and help context numbers 368 are not exported, because this would cause logical problems.

Advantages:

This method has several important advantages over multiple TOC references 371:

- You can include different text before and after the embedded topic. This makes embedded topics ideal for documentation where you need to repeat the same instructions in different contexts.
- You can insert snippets inline, as formatted text that is part of an existing paragraph.
- In the published output all the topics containing embedded topics are real, unique topics containing copies of the source information. Each topic has its own unique topic ID that can be linked to directly.
- All normal index keywords are embedded together with the topic – you only need to enter the keywords for the embedded text once. (A-keywords are not embedded because this would cause logical contradictions.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Disadvantages:

- The only real disadvantage of embedded topics is that they make your project larger, but not really all that much larger. Text does not take up much room and multiple instances of graphics don't inflate your file size because there is never more than one copy of identical graphics in your output file.

See Re-using content with snippets 265 for instructions on using this feature.

See also:

Multiple TOC entries for one topic 371
Re-using content with snippets 265

11.6.2 Graphics, Videos and OLE Objects

This section contains some useful background information on using graphics, multimedia files and OLE objects in your help projects.

11.6.2.1 Graphic formats and file size

The main factor that increases the size of your help files is the use of big graphics with too many colors. Compared to images text hardly takes up any space at all.

In many cases you may find it most practical to use standard uncompressed BMP bitmap files for your graphics in your projects. This may seem odd at first: BMP files are generally larger than all other graphic files, as they are without any compression at all. However, they can be converted most easily and since they are uncompressed they suffer no quality degradation. Help+Manual converts BMP files to the appropriate format and compress them automatically when you publish your output. Like the XML format used for the source of your topics, BMP is a flexible choice for exporting to multiple formats.

Use Impict .IPP images directly for edited screenshots

If you edit your images in Help+Manual's Impict graphics editor you will often add shapes, text callouts etc. If you save these images in Impict's own .IPP format you will be able to re-edit all the objects you add later. You can insert Impict .IPP images directly in your topics. They have lossless compression and can be converted to all other formats required, just like BMP.

How to keep your graphics and help files small:

Here are some basic rules of thumb for minimizing the size of your graphics and output files if you need to keep output sizes to an absolute minimum. However, file sizes are really not as important nowadays as they used to be. You may find it more practical to relax these rules and use full-color BMP and IPP images across the board.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Use images with 256 colors for screenshots.

This will generally reduce your output file size more than anything else. You will almost never need more than 256 colors for screenshots unless your program contains graphical components with complex color gradients.

Don't use JPEGs for screenshots.

Help+Manual allows you to insert compressed JPG images directly into your projects, along with many other graphics formats. However, JPG images are always TrueColor, so it's not possible to reduce the number of colors to 256 or less. Also, the compression used in JPEG images often makes screenshots look bad because it creates ugly "artefacts" at the sharp transitions that are typical in elements of items on computer screens.

It's better to use uncompressed BMP images with 256 colors or less and allow Help+Manual's Image Conversion function to handle the compression at publish time. If you want to do the compression yourself use GIF or PNG for 256-color images, the quality will be much better than with JPG.

The Image Conversion settings are in the HTML Export Options 1459, which can be accessed in both the HTML Help and the WebHelp sections of **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** in the Project Explorer.

Don't use PNG for images with more than 256 colors

The PNG format is an excellent choice for images with up to 256 colors. It is even more compact than GIF and has excellent quality. However, PNG files with more than 256 colors are actually a different format. These files are significantly larger than the equivalent JPG files. Sometimes they are only a little smaller than BMP files.

This also means that you should make sure that your image conversion settings 1459 will not convert images with more than 256 colors to PNG. If your project contains images with more than 256 colors it is better to choose JPG as the conversion format.

Avoid conversion of photos reduced to 256 colors:

Modern graphics programs can do an excellent job of reducing photos to 256 colors with little or no reduction in visible quality, which also saves space. However, doing this can cause a problem in Help+Manual if you save the images as BMP.

If your image conversion settings 1459 are set to convert images with 256 colors or less to GIF any photos with this number of colors will also be converted to GIF. This can make them look bad, with nasty posterizing effects, and it can also increase the size of your files because continuous-tone images compress poorly in the GIF format.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you get bad results with 256-color photos saved as BMP try saving them in the PNG format with your graphics program and then insert them directly into your Help+Manual project. This will ensure that they will not be converted in HTML-based output formats.

Keep the dimensions of your graphics small.

Smaller graphics take up much less space. Do you really need to include a full-size screenshot of the main program window? If the user is reading your help the program you are describing is already on the screen, and full-size screenshots also make the help difficult to navigate. A 75% or even 50% size version is normally plenty as a visual reference.

You can shrink the screenshot and add attractive callouts and other features with Impict 1216, the full-featured screenshot editing program bundled with Help+Manual. You can also make screenshots at reduced sizes directly with Help+Manual's integrated screen capture utility 1207 or with the standalone TNT screen capture program.

Reduce the use of photographs.

Lots of full-color photos will also bloat your output files. If you do use them keep them small and if you are producing HTML Help or WebHelp make sure that your image conversion settings 1459 are set to *Convert 256 colors to GIF and True Color to JPEG*. While you are at it, experiment with the JPG compression setting in the same place; your pictures may be smaller and look just as good with a lower quality setting. A value between 70 and 80 is generally fine for most purposes and you can often get away with even higher compression settings.

Don't show the entire image if you don't have to.

Areas of an image that are a single color take up almost no space when the image is compressed and parts of an image that are not there take up no space. Quite often you can save space by cropping your images to remove unnecessary information, and this also focuses user attention on what is important.

You can also crop your screenshots with special effects like *Ripped Paper Edge* in the Screen Capture 1207 tool and the Impict 1216 screenshot editing program. This both saves space and makes your screenshots look better!

Tips and tricks for graphics formats:

Adding JPGs, PNGs, SVGs and GIFs to your projects directly:

Help+Manual inserts JPG, PNG, SVG and GIF images directly, without converting or recompressing them. They are exported to HTML-based output formats just as they are.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

However, they do have to be converted for some other formats. See SVG Graphics 1532 for some more information on this vector-based format.

Windows metafiles:

You also can add vector-format Windows metafiles (WMF and EMF files) to your projects directly. When you publish your projects these files are converted to bitmaps and then the normal conversion and compression options set in your Image Conversion settings are applied.

See also:

Using Graphics 479
SVG Graphics 1532
Image conversion settings 1459

11.6.2.2 SVG Graphics

Vector-based SVG graphics files are very useful for responsive designs and any other formats where the content may be zoomed because they are compact and can be scaled without any loss of quality. You can insert them directly in your topics just like any other graphics files. How they are supported and handled in individual output formats varies slightly, however.

WebHelp:	Both uncompressed SVG and compressed SVGz graphics are exported directly as the original files in WebHelp. In addition to this, each image has a PNG fallback image that is displayed in older browsers that do not support SVG.
MS HTML Help/CHM: **(Also applies for older versions of Internet Explorer)**	The Microsoft CHM viewer uses an older mode of Internet Explorer to display help pages which is not seamlessly compatible with SVG files. They can only be rendered correctly if certain conditions are fulfilled. Because of this, SVGs are converted to PNG by default when you publish to CHM. If you are sure that your SVG files will work correctly in CHM you can turn this conversion off. **Characteristics of the PNG conversion:** When SVGs are converted to PNG the resulting PNG will have the current display dimensions of the SVG or the original SVG dimensions, whichever are larger.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Enable export of native SVG files to CHM:

By default, Help+Manual converts SVG to PNG for CHM export for maximum compatibility. If you want vector SVGs to be exported natively to CHM you need to turn off PNG conversion in **Configuration > Publishing Options > Microsoft HTML Help > HTML Export Options**.

Compiler warnings for incompatible SVGs

Help+Manual checks for these attributes when you publish to CHM with native SVG support switched on. If it encounters files without the necessary attributes warnings will be displayed in the compiler report.

Conditions for correct rendering of SVG graphics in the CHM viewer

SVG graphics are will be rendered and scaled correctly in the Microsoft CHM viewer if the following conditions are fulfilled:

1) The skin or template includes the following line in the HTML Page Template:

```
<meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=9" />
```

This line is included by default in all of Help+Manual's standard CHM skins and in the CHM skins in the Premium Pack add-on. If this line is missing or if the IE level is set to 8 or lower, the CHM viewer will not support SVG and the SVG graphics will be converted to PNG on export.

2) The SVG file you use contains correctly configured *width*, *height* and *viewBox* attribute

The version of MS Internet Explorer used in the CHM viewer can only scale SVG graphics if the **<svg>** tag in the SVG file contains correctly configured width and height attributes followed by the correctly configured *viewBox* attribute. These attributes should look like this when you view the SVG file in a code or text editor (see further below for instructions):

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	<svg width="212.16249" height="211.27501" viewBox="0 0 212.16249 211.27501" ... **Configuring the *width*, *height* and *viewBox* attributes in your SVG images** If your graphic program can configure the *width*, *height* and *viewBox* attributes in the **<svg>** tag in your images you just need to enable those options there. Otherwise you need to edit the **.svg** file in a text/code editor and add the attributes to the **<svg>** tag yourself. (SVG files are actually text files containing vector graphics code.) **Editing the <svg> tag manually** 1. Open the .svg file in a text or code editor (NOT in a word processor!). 2. Locate the **<svg ...** tag, which begins in the first line of the file. 3. Add the *viewBox* attribute after the *width* and *height* attributes, as follows: <svg width="212.16249" height="211.27501" viewBox="0 0 212.16249 211.27501" ... 4. The first two values in the *viewBox* attribute are two zeroes separated by a space. This is followed by the width and height values, which should be exactly the same as the values from the *width* and *height* attributes, as shown in the example. 5. Save the SVG file. After this, it should behave responsively in CHM and Internet Explorer.
Word DOCX:	Only the latest version of Word 2016 in the Office 365 edition supports SVG graphics. To ensure maximum compatibility with the very large number of users on other versions, SVG graphics are converted to PNG files for export to Word DOCX. When SVGs are converted to PNG the resulting PNG will have the current display dimensions of the SVG or the original SVG dimensions, whichever are larger.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Adobe PDF:	SVG graphics are exported to PDF if possible (if they are not too complex). More complex SVGs will be exported to PNG with alpha transparency, which is supported natively in PDF. When SVGs are converted to PNG the resulting PNG will have a 32-bit color depth and will have the current display dimensions of the SVG or the original SVG dimensions, whichever are larger.
eWriter Help:	Same support as in WebHelp (eWriter is WebHelp in a single file with an embedded viewer).
ePUB and Kindle eBooks:	SVG graphics are supported natively in these formats.

11.6.2.3 Embedded graphics

Normally when you insert graphics in Help+Manual you only insert references to external graphics files. This is also the recommended way for handling graphics because it is much more efficient and prevents your project file from getting too large.

There are two kinds of images that actually get embedded in your project files as encapsulated binary data: Embedded OLE objects 1139 and images pasted together with text from word processing programs like Microsoft Word.

Avoid using embedded images whenever you can.

For technical reasons embedded images use up many times their own size in memory and also place quite a heavy load on system resources. If you use a lot of them they will also significantly increase the size of your project files, which may slow down the functioning of the Help+Manual editor on older computers with limited memory.

Embedded OLE objects:

See Embedded OLE objects 1538 and Inserting OLE objects 1140 for information on how to use OLE objects in your projects without embedding them. Embedded OLE objects are also embedded in your topic files, which bloats the files unnecessarily.

Pasting graphics from MS Word:

When you paste graphics together with text from MS Word you will be prompted to convert them to external files. You should always do this to avoid bloating your topics with

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

embedded images. You can also convert embedded images later: by right-clicking on the graphic and selecting *Convert Embedded Image* in the popup menu.

Identifying embedded images:

When you click on an embedded image it does not appear as a "negative" image. Normally-inserted images appear as negatives with all their colors reversed when you click on them. You can also locate embedded images in your project with the Report Tool 1212: Perform a full report with image references and then search for the word "embedded" in the report.

See also:

Using Graphics 479

11.6.2.4 About using video files

Video files used in Help+Manual and the output formats it generates are always handled by the associated players and codecs, not by Help+Manual itself. These players and the necessary codecs for the specific formats must be properly installed, both on your computer for editing and on the user's computer or mobile device for viewing. Because of this a number of restrictions apply that you should be aware of before using video files in your projects.

Basically, only MP4 and online video sharing sites are reliable

For reliable video, use only MP4 video or online video sharing sites for video in your Help+Manual projects. All other video formats will cause problems.

MP4 will be generally compatible provided you encode it with a standard profile using H.264 for video and MP3 or AAC for the audio. Online video sharing sites like YouTube handle all the compatibility problems for you and reduce the bandwidth load on your own website, which can otherwise be considerable if many people view your videos.

Adobe Flash discontinued:

Adobe Flash has now been discontinued worldwide and on all platforms, among other things because of its horrendous security performance. Existing Flash videos in projects will still work on platforms that have Flash installed but you can no longer add new Flash content. We **strongly** recommend that you remove all Flash content.

Support for media files in output formats:

HTML Help (CHM)	Use online video services in CHM. Help+Manual handles this so that the online site is only accessed when the user actually clicks on the preview image to start the video.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Local video formats will always cause problems in CHM files for at least some of your users and should be avoided.

WebHelp (*HTML*): Supports all media formats supported by the user's browser, but only MP4 and online video services can now be considered to be really reliable.

Flash has been discontinued worldwide on all platforms and Flash content should now be removed from all projects.

eWriter Help: Same video support as in WebHelp.

ePUB eBooks: M4V video files encoded with an Apple profile for the iPad or iPhone are supported in ePUB in Apple iBooks on Apple iOS devices. They will not play on the great majority of other devices and software readers.

M4V videos must be created in the correct format for iOS devices with Apple QuickTime or a third-party program like the free Handbrake (highly recommended) that comes with correct profiles for these devices.

Dynamic HelpXplain presentations are supported in some ePUB readers but you shouldn't depend on it. Only use HelpXplain presentations in ePUB if you are certain that your users will have an appropriate reader.

Kindle eBooks: No support for video.

Adobe PDF: No support for video files except external links.

MS Word DOCX: No support for video files except external links.

See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for details on creating alternative content for different output formats.

Embedding video files:

Since the termination of Flash support, Microsoft CHM files no longer support embedding for any video formats. MP4 video files can be embedded in eWriter Help. All other video files must be distributed with your help as separate files.

When you publish your project a list of any files you need to distribute together with your help is displayed in the compiler report if necessary, so always remember to check this!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The video preview function in Help+Manual

Functionality in Help+Manual also depends on the players

How and whether the preview function works in Help+Manual also depends on the player installation on your computer. If the necessary players or codecs are not available or not installed properly the preview function will not work.

You may need administrator rights to run the preview function

On some systems you need to be working in a Windows account with full administrator rights to use the movie preview function. If the function doesn't work and you know that the correct player is installed try switching to a full administrator account.

See also:

Videos and Animated Media 548

11.6.2.5 About using OLE objects

OLE support has some restrictions, because active OLE objects cannot be supported directly in the published output formats generated by Help+Manual. OLE objects in the editor remain clickable and editable so that you can edit them in their associated applications. However, when you publish your project the objects are converted into static bitmap graphics.

It is best to think of OLE objects as static graphics that remain editable until you publish your output.

Linking is always preferable to embedding:

You can either embed OLE objects in your project or insert them as a link to an external file. The *Create New* option in the Insert OLE Object 1385 dialog always embeds the object in your project. The *Create from File* option embeds the object if you deselect the Link option.

Embedding OLE objects in your projects has several disadvantages:

- It increases the size of your project files.
- Handling embedded objects generates considerable system overheads. This can slow down Help+Manual, particularly on older computers and systems with less memory.
- Embedded objects can only be edited by opening Help+Manual and double-clicking on the object in the editor. Linked objects can be edited normally as external files

It is thus always preferable to use links to external files instead of embedded OLE objects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Restrictions on OLE objects in Help+Manual

Because of the restrictions listed below it is advisable to only use OLE objects when there is no alternative. For example, you can copy text with tables and complex formatting 233 directly from MS Word and Excel, so you no longer need to use OLE objects for this. You can also use linked snippets 265 for reusing content once you have converted it to a Help+Manual XML file.

You can only use OLE objects that can be displayed as graphics.	You cannot use dynamic objects like videos and other media files. The OLE selection dialog is a Windows element that automatically displays all the OLE-capable applications installed on your system. This does not mean that you can use all the object types listed!
Only the visible part of large OLE objects is included in the output.	For example, if you insert a Word document consisting of several pages only the page (or part of the page) that is visible in the Help+Manual editor will be included in your published output. This is a restriction imposed by conversion of the objects into static graphic images.
Print quality and the quality of OLE objects in PDFs may be slightly inferior.	This is caused by the conversion to static graphics designed for on-screen viewing and cannot be prevented.

See also:

Using OLE Objects 1139
Insert OLE Object 1385

11.6.3 Scripts and HTML

In addition to creating word-processor style content, experienced help authors often want or need to "get under the hood" of their help output and add their own code in the form of JavaScript, HTML code or Winhelp macros. Help+Manual has extensive facilities that allow you to do this:

- You can create links in your text that execute Winhelp macros or JavaScript code 452 in the appropriate output formats. These links can be inserted both in the text 452 of your topics and in hotspots 509 in your graphics.
- You can enter inline HTML code 469 in your topics that will be inserted in your output exactly as you wrote it, without any changes. (HTML-based output formats only, of course.) This code can include anything supported by HTML, including scripts.
- You can manually edit the HTML templates 1026 that are used to generate the topic pages in HTML-based output formats.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

You need to be familiar with HTML, scripting and Winhelp macros to use these features. It is assumed that you know what you are doing and the code you enter is entirely your responsibility. It is not corrected, parsed or syntax-checked by Help+Manual. The only exceptions are some graphic file references in your HTML topic page templates, which are parsed and exported 1613 with your output.

The topics in this section provide some extra background information that will help you to use these features more effectively.

11.6.3.1 About JavaScript links

You can enter links that execute JavaScript code both in the text 452 of your topics and in hotspots 509 in your graphics. Since JavaScript is an HTML-based technology requiring a browser this feature is only supported in HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, WebHelp and Visual Studio Help). Note that although Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks are also HTML-based, JavaScript is not supported in eBooks: The embedded viewer in Exe eBooks does not support JavaScript. Even though scripting is officially included in the ePUB specification, neither Apple iBooks® nor the majority of other readers for ePUB eBooks support it, so it is effectively irrelevant in ePUB.

You can also include JavaScript and other script code in plain HTML code inserted in your topics using the Insert > HTML Code 469 feature. This option is normally preferable to script links for more complex code. See About inline HTML code 1545 for some more information on this.

JavaScript restrictions in users' browsers:

In HTML Help you can generally assume that MSIE-compatible JavaScript will work because the HTML Help viewer is actually Microsoft Internet Explorer with a different user interface. However, when you use JavaScript in WebHelp remember that some users may have JavaScript turned off, so your help should also be comprehensible and functional without the additional JavaScript functions.

JavaScript links that refer to script functions:

You can also refer to JavaScript functions stored in your own external JavaScript code (i.e. code that you have written) in JavaScript links. There are several different ways to make these functions available to the JavaScript links:

- Add your separate **.js** script file to the Baggage Files 1119 to include it in your output. Then edit the HTML page template 1036 for your topics and add an include for the **.js** script file in the appropriate location in the template file.
- Use HTML variables 963 – you can then insert your script in the correct position in your template with the variable and redefine it on a per-topic basis in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window, allowing you to use different versions of your code in every topic if you want.

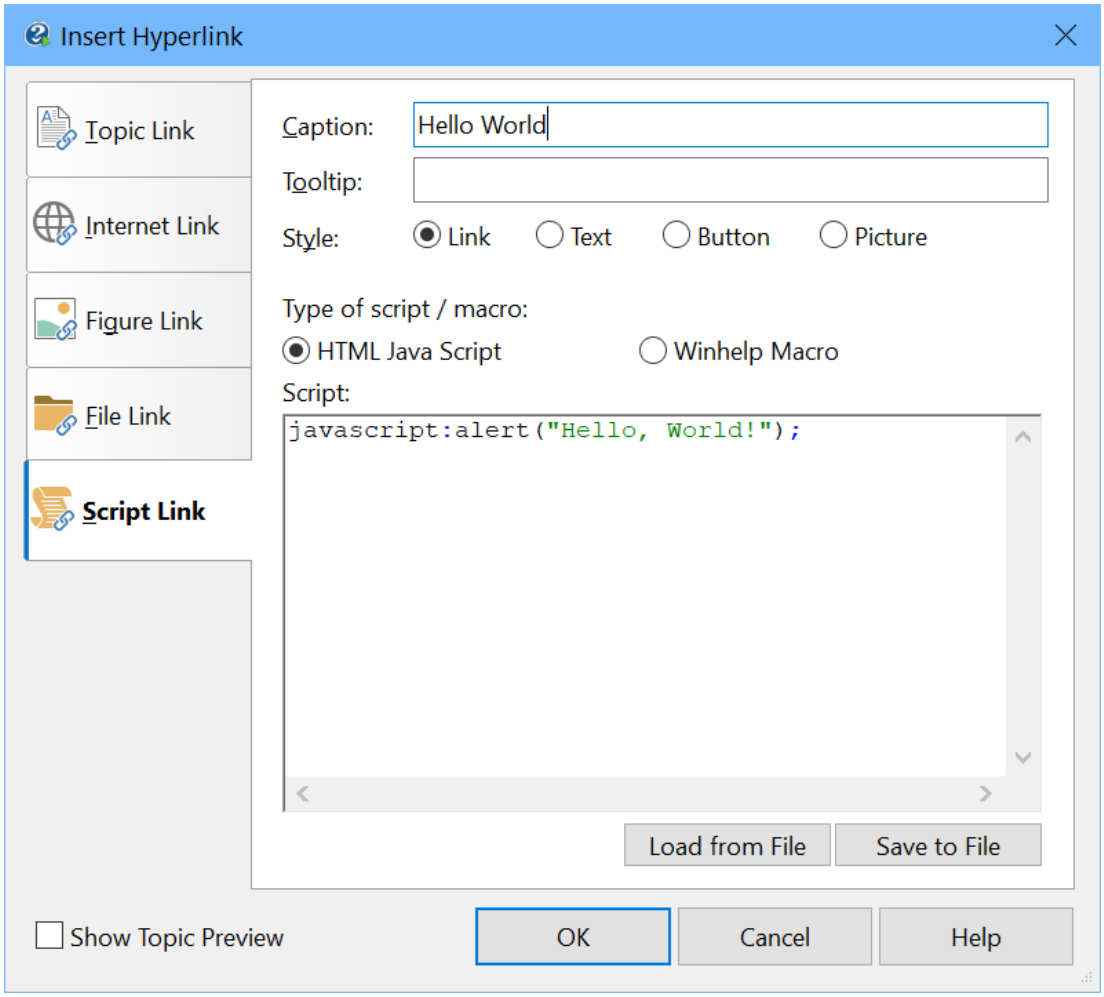
© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Edit the HTML template for your topics and manually add the script with the functions to the <head> section of the template. Note that this will include the script code in every topic page, even those pages where the functions are not needed. (See About in-line HTML code 1546 for details on how to avoid this problem.)
- Insert the script code containing the functions at the beginning of the topic containing the link with the Insert > HTML Code 469 function. If you use this method the code will only be available in the topic where you insert it. Note also that this will insert the code between the <BODY> tags of the topic page – this will work in most cases but since referenced scripts should generally be in the <HEAD> section you may want to use one of the other methods.

How Help+Manual handles JavaScript code in links:

To use this feature effectively it is important to understand how Help+Manual handles the JavaScript code you enter in your links. When you select the JavaScript option in the Insert Hyperlink 1352 dialog the script you enter in the dialog box is only part of the final code generated in your output:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



This dialog is effectively identical for script links in your text and script links in hotspots in graphics.

In the HTML output the code is put together as follows:

**** + link caption + ****

For example, if you enter `javascript:alert('Hello World!');` in the **Script:** entry box and `Hello World!` in the **Caption:** field Help+Manual will generate the following link:

```
<a href="javascript:alert('Hello World!');">Hello World!</a>
```

That is just a simple example. Here is a more complex piece of JavaScript as entered in the **Script:** entry box (this example opens a popup window):

```
javascript:window.open('https://www.helpandmanual.com/helphtml/in-
dex.html?whatsnew.htm','PopupWindow','toolbar=0,location=0,direct-
ories=0,status=0,menubar=0,resizable=yes,scroll-
bars=1,width=600,height=600,left=0,top=0');
```

The output generated from this script would look like this:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

```
<a href="javascript:window.open('https://www.helpand-
manual.com/helphtml/index.html?whatsnew.htm','PopupWindow','tool-
bar=0,location=0,directories=0,status=0,menubar=0,resiz-
able=yes,scrollbars=1,width=600,height=600,left=0,top=0');">Your
Link Caption</a>
```

Entering complex JavaScript Code:

Effectively, Help+Manual enters your JavaScript code between the " and " characters for the `href=` attribute of the `<a>` tag. However, this is not nearly as restrictive as it sounds at first. When you understand how Help+Manual actually generates the output code you can also enter quite complex scripts. You just have to remember the syntax and work within it:

`<a href="` + your code + **`">`** + link caption + **`</a>`**

For example, you can also create a complex link tags like this, using multiple quotes within the tag:

```
<a href="javascript:void(0);"
onmouseover="return overlib('Popup text.', STICKY, MOUSEOFF);"
onmouseout="return nd();">Display Overlib Popup</a>
```

All you need to do to achieve this is copy the entire link shown above into the **Script:** field, leaving out the `<a href="` at the beginning and the `">Display Overlib Popup</a>` at the end. For the above example you would first enter `Display Overlib Popup` in the **Caption:** field and the following code in the **Script:** field:

```
javascript:void(0);"
onmouseover="return overlib('Popup text.', STICKY, MOUSEOFF);"
onmouseout="return nd();
```

JavaScript stumbling blocks:

Remember that JavaScript is very picky about syntax and case! For example, if you enter `javascript:Alert("Hello World!")` instead of `javascript:alert("Hello World!")` you will just get an error message.

You must also remember to be very careful about nesting single and double quotes. Help+Manual generates script links with double quotes on the outside so any quotes nested within those quotes must be single quotes.

See also:

Inserting script and macro links 452
Inserting plain HTML code 469
About inline HTML code 1545
Using HTML Templates 1026

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.6.3.2 About Winhelp macro links

Although the obsolete Winhelp format is no longer supported, the Winhelp macro option in the Insert > Hyperlink 452 function has been kept because it makes it possible to use four Winhelp macros as "shorthand" methods for implementing features in HTML Help CHM files that would be much more complicated if you programmed them manually. Help+Manual automatically converts these four macros into the necessary CHM ActiveX code.

No other Winhelp macros can be used. You can only use these four, and only for HTML Help CHM output.

Winhelp macros translated in HTML Help:

The following four Winhelp macros are supported for HTML Help because their syntax is much easier to use than the equivalent source code for HTML Help. When you use these macros, Help+Manual translates them into the necessary ActiveX commands and scripting in HTML Help.

You can only use these four macros, and only for HTML Help CHM output:

ALink() **KLink()**

TCard() **Close()**

This is particularly useful when you are using A-Keywords to build automated *See Also*.. lists and links between help files in modular help systems.

For details see Inserting script and macro links 452 and Using A-keywords 579.

Note that only keywords are supported as arguments in the ALink and KLink macros when they are used in HTML Help. All other arguments are ignored.

You don't need the ExecFile() macro

If you have upgraded from Help+Manual 3 you may be wondering what has happened to the **ExecFile()** Winhelp macro, which used to be translated in HTML Help. This is no longer necessary because you can now use file links 424 instead, which produce the same result much more efficiently.

See also:

Inserting file links 424
Inserting script and macro links 452
Using A-keywords 579

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.6.3.3 About inline HTML code

The *Insert HTML Code Object* tool in **Write** > **Insert Object** allows you to include plain HTML code at any point in your topics and export it unchanged to all HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, Browser-based HTML, Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks and Visual Studio Help).

This topic assumes that you are already familiar with writing code in HTML and JavaScript.

Plain HTML code in eBooks:

Note that although regular HTML is exported to eBooks, only plain formatting code and basic CSS will actually work in this format. You cannot use scripts or DHTML. Technically, the ePUB specifications do include scripting but almost all ePUB readers ignore it, and those that don't are unlikely to do what you want.

Apple iBooks®:
Be extremely careful when entering inline HTML code for Apple iBooks. It is more quirky than any other ePUB reader and the results can be unexpected.

When to use plain HTML code:

There are basically two situations where you may want to use plain HTML code:

- When you want to add features to your HTML-based output with dynamic HTML and scripting.
- When you want to write your own HTML code to achieve formatting results that you can't create directly with Help+Manual.

HTML code objects are preferable to using JavaScript links 1540 for inserting more complex JavaScript code in your pages. Since the code is inserted in the page you can also include links, and you have more freedom to format your code because you are not restricted by the link insertion syntax.

How plain HTML code is inserted:

Plain HTML code objects are inserted directly at the current insertion point in your topic text. The code is inserted exactly as you write it without any changes, and it is not parsed or syntax-checked in any way. The only exceptions are some graphic file references in your HTML topic templates, which are parsed and exported 1613 with your output.

This means that you are 100% responsible for making sure that you write valid code!

Since the entire topic contents are always inserted between the <body> and </body> tags of the HTML topic page template 1036 the plain HTML code you enter is also always in-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

serted ***after*** the opening <body> tag, even if you enter it right at the top of the topic page. It is important to remember this if you are inserting scripts that need to be in the <head> section.

Adding HTML code to HTML topic page templates:

You cannot use the Insert HTML Code Object tool to add code outside the <body> and </body> tags of your topic pages. If you need to do this you must add the code to the HTML template 1036 that is used to generate all the topic code outside the <body> and </body> tags.

You can do this either directly or with HTML variables. In addition to this you can also edit the content of your variables on a by-topic basis by redefining variables for individual topics in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. See The power of editable variables 963 for more details on this.

Adding template code to selected topics only

If you need different versions of the code in individual topics you can use HTML variables to achieve this. Basically you define an HTML variable to hold the code and insert it in the appropriate location in your HTML page template. Then you redefine the content of the variable for individual topics in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window (in the Topic Variables table at the bottom of the screen).

You can also use these redefinable variables to link to different versions of external script files in individual topics. See The power of editable variables 963 for more details on this.

Referencing script functions in plain HTML code:

If the code you insert in your topics with the HTML Code Object tool contains calls to JavaScript functions you have written you may want or need to include these functions in external **.js** files or in the <HEAD> section of your topic pages. There are two ways to do this:

- Add your separate **.js** script file to the Baggage Files 1119 to include it in your output. Then edit the HTML template 1036 for your topics and add an include directive for the **.js** script file in the appropriate location in the template file.
- Edit the HTML template for your topics and manually add the script with the functions to the <head> section of the template.

See also:

Inserting script and macro links 452
About JavaScript Links 1540
Inserting plain HTML code 469
The power of editable variables 963

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using HTML Templates 1026

11.7 Modules, Conditional Output & Variables

This section provides background information on the features of Help+Manual that allow you to create variants of your projects.

Modular projects make it possible to combine multiple projects in a single master project, in which you can edit and publish them as though they were a single project.

Conditional output is used to generate different versions of your project for different output formats or different purposes.

Variables are used to quickly insert standard texts and they can be redefined quickly for project variants.

11.7.1 Modular Projects

A modular help system is a help system that consists of multiple help projects that can be edited separately but published as though they were a single project. There are also two levels of "modularity": Modular help projects (your project consists of multiple Help+Manual modules) and modular help systems (your output help files also consist of modules).

Modular help projects:

A modular project consists of multiple projects, referred to as "modules", that you edit separately but publish together with the help of a main project referred to as a "master project" or "master module".

You can output a modular project as a single help file, then you are only using authoring modularity, or as multiple help files, then you are also using output modularity.

Authoring modularity gives you practical advantages for managing your projects, output modularity gives you additional flexibility for the configuration of different versions of your help.

Modular help systems:

A modular help system is one that is made of separate modules at "runtime", i.e. when the user is viewing it. Runtime modular help systems are only supported in the Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) format.

A modular CHM help system consist of a "master" CHM module containing the main TOC, which must always be present, and one or more "child" CHM modules, any of which may or may not be present.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If a child CHM module is present at runtime its TOC is merged into the TOC of the master CHM module when the help is viewed. For the user everything looks like a single help file. If the child module is not present its TOC is not included. This process is automatic and depends only on the presence of the child CHM module in the same folder as the master CHM module.

With a little planning you can easily distribute different versions of your CHM-based help for different product versions just by including or excluding individual modules in your distribution package.

See Runtime and publish time merging 1551 for more details on truly modular projects.

Multiple TOCs

You can combine alternative TOCs 343 with modular projects. For example, you could create a TOC that contains references to a completely different set modules in a different order and combined with different topics and chapters.

Linked snippets are not modules

In addition to modular help systems Help+Manual also allows you to include individual topic files and chapters from other projects in your current project as linked snippets. 265 This blurs the distinction between modular and non-modular projects slightly.

It is important to understand that true modular help systems are only possible when entire projects are used as modules. When you insert a topic or chapter from another project it becomes part of the current module when you publish. Such topics and chapters cannot be handled as separate modules in published modular help systems, even in HTML Help.

Why use modular help systems?

There are a number of very good reasons for using modular help systems:

Create different versions without editing:

In HTML Help you can create genuinely modular help systems (see above) in which you can include and exclude entire sections of the help simply by including and excluding help files from your distribution package. You must always include the master file but if a child file is not found its contents are simply excluded from the TOC automatically. This is ideal for applications with different versions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Reusing content efficiently:

You can create "boilerplate" projects for reusable project sections, for example introductions that are always very similar or your product lists or terms and conditions. (Note that in many cases snippets 265 are also an efficient way of doing this.)

More efficient group work:

When you are working on a project in a team you can assign separate modules to each team member. Each author can then work on his or her own modules separately if they do not have access to the central version on the server.

Managing very large projects:

Modularizing your help projects makes large projects easier to manage. Among other things, publishing the smaller child modules on their own is faster and you can check your output more quickly.

Master projects and child projects

A modular project consists of one master project and one or more child projects (which can in turn be master projects containing their own child projects).

Both master projects and child projects are ordinary Help+Manual projects. The only thing that makes them "modular" is the way they are structured: References to the child projects are inserted in the TOC of the master project as single items, in exactly the same way that you insert topics.

It is important to understand that inserting a child project in a master project does not merge the projects physically. They still remain separate projects. They are just managed together.

Editing modules inserted in publish-time merging mode:

- **In the Master TOC:**
  Publish-time merging modules are displayed as part of the master TOC and can be edited directly in the TOC, in the same way as the master project's own topics. (To enable in-place editing you may need to activate this in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous** and then reload your project.)
- **In the Merged Projects section:**
  If you open the Configuration section in the Project Explorer you will find a section called "Merged Projects" right down at the bottom. This gives you direct editing access

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

to the entire contents of the module, including its Configuration settings, project files and so on.

Editing modules inserted in runtime merging mode:

Modules inserted for runtime merging are just placeholders, however. To edit them you need to right-click on the placeholder in the master TOC and select Open Child Project... The project will then be opened as a normal additional project in the Project Explorer.

Publishing modular projects

When you publish the master project it behaves as though it is a single project. The entire TOC of each child project and all the topics it contains is merged into the output. This works in ***all*** output formats supported by Help+Manual, but there are differences in how it is handled and the options you have depending on the format you choose:

HTML Help: You can choose whether you want to merge the projects completely and create a single output file, or create individual projects whose TOCs are all displayed and accessed through the TOC of the master help file. See Runtime merging and publish time merging 1551.

Important:
The project filenames and the output filenames of the CHM files must be identical. The references between the child and the master help files are based on the filenames (before the extension) and if project and output filename don't match the references will be invalid.

WebHelp: In WebHelp the output of a modular project is always merged completely. The files of all the modules are output to a single directory and accessed with a single `index.html` file that integrates the master and all child TOCs in a single master TOC.

eWriter, Kindle and ePUB eBooks: The entire modular project is always published to a single eBook. The TOCs of the master module and all child modules are integrated in the single TOC of the eBook.

PDF and DOCX: Modular projects are always merged to a single document when you output to PDF or DOCX or print a user manual with the *Print Manual* function in the File menu.

See also:

Working with Modular Help Systems 1088

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.7.1.1 CHM: Runtime and publish time merging

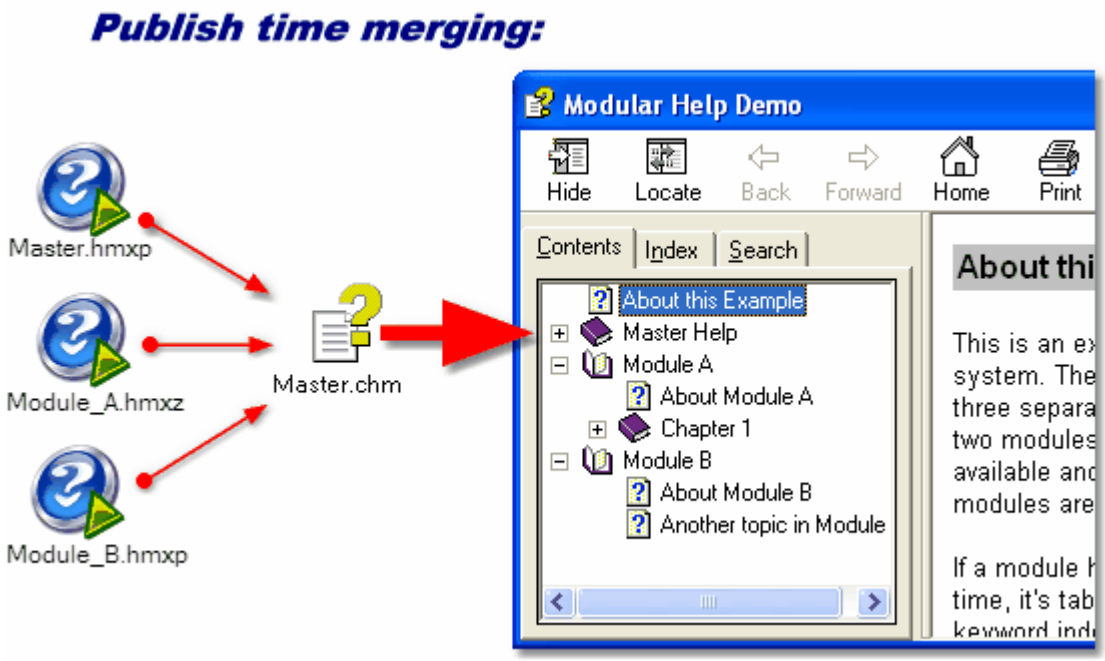
In HTML Help (CHM) you can create genuine modular help systems with separate help files that are displayed in a single TOC at runtime (when the user views them). Alternatively, you can also combine all your modules to one large help file.

See Choosing the merge method 1096 for instructions on how to set the different merge methods for HTML Help.

Publish time merging – one integrated help file

Publish time merging generates one single help file from all your module projects. From the point of view of your output this is no different from working with one single project without modules. With this method the project is only modular while you are working on it, your output is exactly the same as that produced from a single help file without modules.

One of the more practical advantages of publish time merging is that all the modules, including all the child modules, are published in a single quick process when you publish the master project. You don't have to open and publish every module separately as you do for projects configured for runtime merging.



In publish time merging Help+Manual combines all the modules and creates one big help file when you publish the master module. If you want to exclude a module you must republish without the module.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

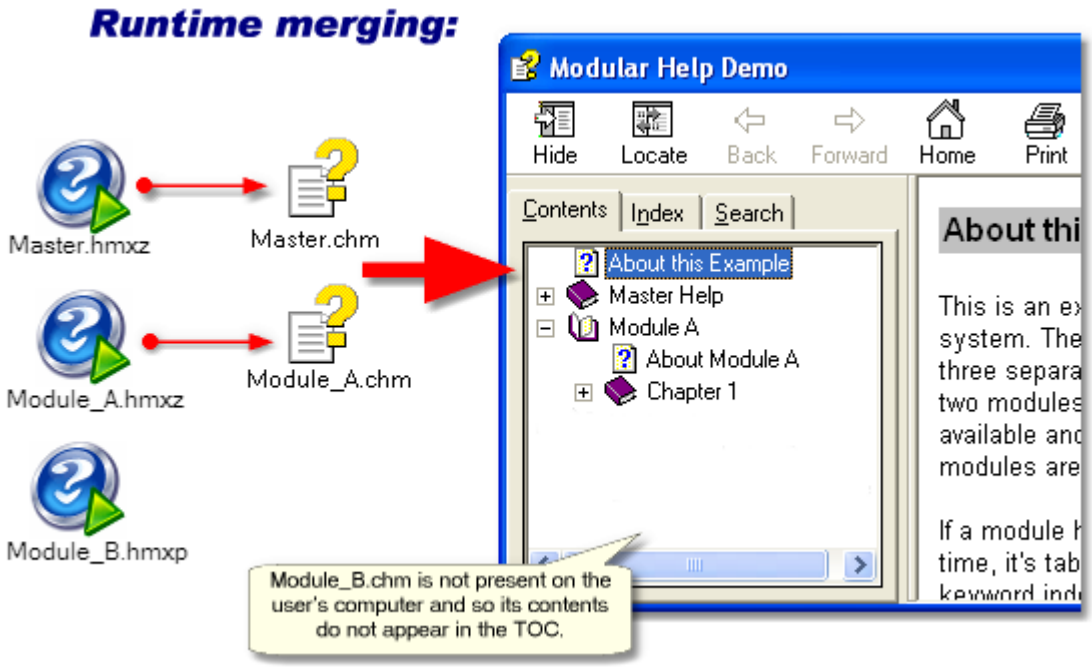
Runtime merging – separate help files

When you generate separate help files for each module in your project this is called **runtime merging**: When the user "runs" the help the separate help files are "merged" and displayed in a single help viewer with a single Table of Contents (TOC) containing all the topics of all the available modules.

Runtime merging produces genuinely modular help systems in HTML Help. The master module containing the main TOC must always be present, but you can include or exclude the other modules from the help simply by including and excluding the help files of the child modules from the directory in which the help is stored. If a module's help file is not present its topics are simply not included in the TOC.

The great advantage of this is the enormous flexibility it gives you. With a little planning you can reduce the work involved in distributing different versions of your help for different versions of your product to almost zero. All you need to do is include or exclude help files from your distribution package.

Important: The project filenames and the output filenames of your CHM files must be identical. The references between the child and the master help files are based on the filenames and if project and output filename don't match the references will be invalid.



With runtime merging you create separate help files for the master and child modules (each module must be compiled separately). Help files that are not present on the user's computer are automatically excluded from the TOC.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Mixing runtime and publish time merging

You specify whether child projects are to be merged at publish time or runtime when you insert the project in the master project. Since this is specified separately for each project it is possible to mix runtime and publish time merging. However, you need to be careful when you do this as it is quite easy to lose track of what you are doing in complex projects with a lot of modules.

Global help window names for runtime merging

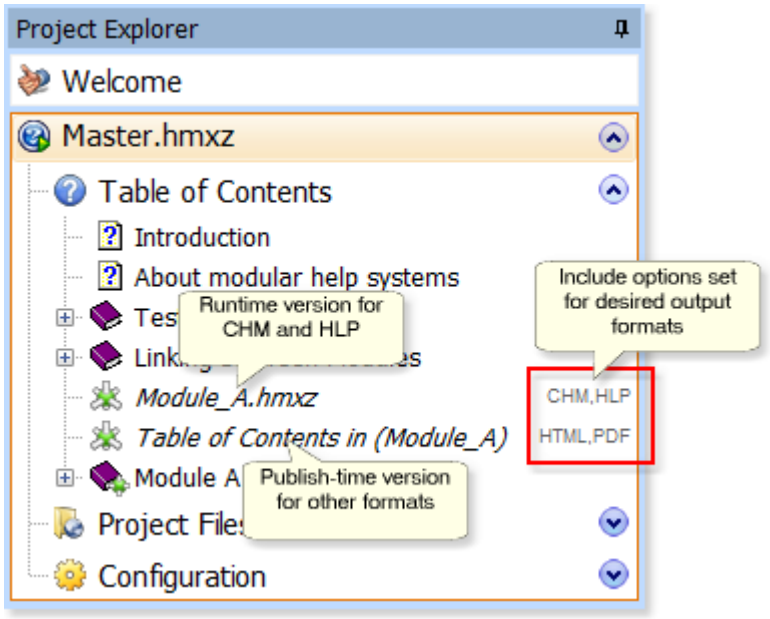
When using runtime merging it is advisable to define a global "window name" for all the projects in the modular help system. This improves the performance of links to your help from your applications. When you define a global help window, all calls to the help system will open in the same CHM help viewer. Without a global window, you will get additional help viewers opening when calls are made first to one module and then to another.

The global help window option is set in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows** 1453. You need to set the same global window name in all projects in the modular help system, including the master project.

Exporting runtime modules to other formats

When you insert a module in runtime mode it will only be published to HTML Help (CHM). If you want to publish the same module to other formats you must insert it in your TOC a second time in publish-time mode. When you do this you should also set the include options for each version so that the correct version gets published automatically depending on the output format you choose:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved



Setting the include options:

Just right-click on the main module "node" (spiky green icon) in the TOC, select Include in Builds in the context menu and then set the include options appropriately. Make sure that you set the options so that it is not possible to export both versions together!

You can also access the include options in *Manage Topics* > *Change* in the **Project** tab. See Conditions and Customized Output 969 for more details on using include options.

Advantages and Disadvantages of the Two Merging Methods

The following table summarizes the pros and cons of the two merging methods. Remember that runtime merging is only possible in HTML Help (CHM).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Runtime Merging		**Publish Time Merging**	
Advantages	**Disadvantages**	**Advantages**	**Disadvantages**
Truly modular, dynamic help systems. Different versions can be created simply by including and excluding help files in your distribution without re-publishing.	All the component modules must be published separately 1114.	Single help file, exactly like those produced from single Help+Manual projects. All the component modules are published automatically in a single quick process.	You must republish 1114 to produce different versions of the help for different product versions.
Duplicate topic IDs and context numbers in modules are not a problem because the output files are truly separate.	When creating links to the help from your application you must always be careful to link to the correct help file 1110.	Links to the help from your application are always to the same help file.	You must be careful to avoid duplicate topic IDs 1107 and context numbers in different modules because the modules are merged to a single help file.
Invisible topics of all modules are included automatically because the child modules are published separately.	Multiple files that must be distributed instead of a single help file.	A little easier to manage because you can handle all the projects as if they were a single project.	

See also:

Working with Modular Help Systems 1088
Planning modular projects 1555

11.7.1.2 Planning modular projects

If you want to get the full benefits from modular projects you need to do some planning. Module divisions should be logical rather than arbitrary. You must break your project up into modules in a way that increases your flexibility, and you need to plan ahead to make sure that you take any possible future changes into account. You also need to think very carefully about links between modules and make sure that any links you create will not create problems for you later.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Planning for future modular help systems

Even if you are not using modular projects now it is a good idea to plan ahead just in case you decide to modularize your projects in the future. In particular, you should always use topic ID naming schemes that will enable you to combine projects at a later date without creating ID conflicts. Then you always have the freedom to switch to runtime merging if you want, and your projects will also have a better and more logical structure that is easier to manage in the long run. See Managing IDs and context numbers 1107 for instructions on how to avoid duplicates.

Be clear about which module is your master module:

Even though every Help+Manual project can contain as many modules as you like, you should always manage each modular help system with ***one*** master project. Otherwise you will go crazy trying to keep track of everything and mistakes are almost guaranteed sooner or later. You can reuse modules in different modular help systems, but then they should be completely separate systems with their own master modules.

Don't nest your modules too deeply

Sub-modules can also contain their own sub-modules and there are no physical limits on how far you can nest sub-modules. However, it is best to make cautious use of this capability because it is easy to lose track of what you are doing. This applies in particular when you are mixing runtime and publish time merging.

It's a good idea to store your child module projects in a clearly-organized directory system without many levels of sub-directories. Even if your project itself has many levels, you will find your project files much easier to access if you store them all on the same level in folders with descriptive names, possibly including level numbers.

Don't create modules unless you really need to

Don't create modules just for the sake of making modules. A single project is always easier to manage, it can be edited by multiple users at the same time (Professional and Floating license versions only) and Help+Manual can manage large projects with ease.

Master modules with and without content

The master module can have content of its own or you can use it as an empty framework for the sub-modules. If the master has content then the common components of your documentation that are always included should be in the master module.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

If you put as much as possible in separate modules the master module only needs to be edited by the person responsible for doing the final publish, and this can be an advantage.

Exception: Runtime-merged CHM modules
In modular HTML Help (CHM) projects in which the child projects are merged in runtime mode 1096, the master project must contain at least one topic and the default topic must be set in the master project. If you don't do this you will get an error opening the main CHM and the indexes of the child CHMs won't be available. (This is caused by uncorrected bugs in the Microsoft HTML Help system.)

Minimize links between modules:

Each module should be as independent and complete in itself as possible. It should contain all the information needed to describe the module of your application that it is built for.

If you are using runtime merging it is particularly important to make sure that the context-sensitive help topics 892 needed by your application are going to be there when the user needs them. It may be necessary to move topics to one of the main modules that is always present. If you don't want to include the topic in the TOC you don't have to, you can create a topic without a TOC entry and link to that.

It is generally advisable to avoid context links across module boundaries, even if you are currently using publish time merging. This will save you a lot of unnecessary work if you ever decide you want to switch to runtime merging.

Links to the master module are never a problem because that is always present, but links between modules and from the master to the child modules should be kept to an absolute minimum. If you must create inter-module links you should make absolutely sure that the target module will *always* be present when the user runs the help. Alternatively, use A-links 1110 to make sure that links to non-existent modules will display a suitable alternative topic.

Always call popup topics directly

Calls to CHM popup topics are not routed from the master module to the child modules. If you call popup topics in HTML Help CHM files from your application you must always make the popup calls directly to the help file containing the popup topic, not to the master file. (This only applies for runtime merging, of course – in publish time merging there is always only one help file you can make calls to.)

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Take steps to avoid duplicate topic IDs and context numbers:

In publish time merging duplicate topic IDs and help context numbers 1600 in modules will cause link failures and other errors in your help files. Help+Manual can only prevent duplicates within a single project so you have to take steps to prevent duplicates in your modules yourself. For details see Managing IDs and context numbers 1107 in Working with Modular Help Systems 1088.

Always place all your output files in the same directory

This is essential for runtime-merged CHM projects. The Microsoft HTML Help viewer in particular has some annoying bugs that make it almost impossible to call files from the help that are not in the same directory as the help file. Even if links to other directories seem to work on your test computer they ***will*** fail on very many users' computers, so don't use them.

Don't worry about the whys and wherefores, just *always* put all your help files and any external files you need to call in the same directory. That is the only way to avoid problems and have a help system that always works.

See also:

Working with Modular Help Systems 1088

11.7.2 Variables and Conditional Output

This section contains background information on the various kinds of variables and conditional switches available in Help+Manual and reference lists of all the variables and switches.

See also:

Using Variables 917

11.7.2.1 Where you can use variables

The following table provides a quick reference showing where you can use which kinds of variables in your projects:

Location:	Supported variables:
Topic text and headers	**Plain-text variables:** Global predefined variables and user-defined variables inserted with the Text Variable tool in **Write** > **Insert Object**:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	<%VARIABLE_NAME%> Note that variables typed in manually are not highlighted in the editor and double-clicking on them will not open the variable selection list. **HTML variables:** HTML variables inserted in these locations will only insert the text portion of the HTML code. For example, if the variable contains: EC Software Website only "EC Software Website" will be inserted. All the HTML code (blue) will be stripped out. If there is no plain-text portion nothing will be inserted.
TOC, keywords, image captions, link captions, macros in macro links	**Plain-text variables:** Global predefined variables and user-defined variables inserted manually by typing the variable names using the syntax <%VARIABLE_NAME%>. **HTML variables:** In these locations only the plain-text portion of HTML variable values will be inserted (see example above). If there is no plain-text portion nothing will be inserted.
HTML code objects and scripts in script links	**Plain-text variables:** Global predefined variables and user-defined variables can be used in code objects and script link scripts directly. The variables must inserted manually by typing the variable names using the standard syntax <%VARIABLE_NAME%>. **HTML variables:** HTML variables will generally work as expected in these

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	locations, inserting the full HTML code stored in the variable. You can also use most of the exclusive HTML template variables 1569 here, with a couple of logical exceptions: **HTML template variable exceptions:** The following HTML template variables can't be used in code objects because they can only be evaluated when they are used directly in the HTML template: DOCTYPE, GAACCOUNT
HTML templates	**Plain-text variables:** Global predefined variables, user-defined variables and special HTML template variables inserted manually by typing the variable names. **HTML variables:** You can use HTML variables without restriction in HTML templates. The HTML code stored in the variable will be inserted in the in the template. You can also use HTML template variables 1569 as part of the value of the HTML variable.
PDF templates edited with Manual Designer	**Plain-text variables:** Global predefined variables, user-defined variables and special PDF template variables inserted manually by typing the variable names. **HTML variables:** HTML variables will only insert the plain-text portion of the variable value in PDF templates. If there is no plain-text portion nothing will be inserted.

See also:

Using Variables 917

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.7.2.2 Global predefined variables

With the exception of `Automating Publishing Jobs`, these variables can be used everywhere in your project where variables are supported, including topics, headers, links, the TOC, scripts, macros and all HTML templates. See Using Variables 917 for details, and Date and Time Variables 1565 for information on date and time formatting options.

All the date and time variables use the corresponding date and time formats set in the Windows configuration on the computer on which you are running Help+Manual.

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%AUTHOR%>	The name of the author of the help defined in **Project Explorer > Configuration > Common Properties > Title & Copyright**.
<%COPYRIGHT%>	The copyright statement defined in **Project Explorer > Configuration > Common Properties > Title & Copyright**.
<%DATE%>	The current date in short format, without the time. The format matches the language set for your project. Supports manual formatting options 1565 that allow you to configure how the date is displayed. Returns the month in genitive form in applicable languages.
<%DATELONG%>	The current date in long format. The language and format are generated automatically to match the language set for your project. This automatically includes long month names, in the genitive form in applicable languages. No manual formatting options.
<%HMFIGURECOUNTER%> <%HMTABLECOUNTER%>	Counter variables 944 for figures and variables. Unlike user-defined counter variables, these variables can be referenced to create references like "See Fig. X". **Important:** Counter variables cannot be used in the table of contents.
<%MONTHNAME%>	The current month in long format (i.e. February, not Feb or 2). The format matches the language set for your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%NOW%>	The current date and time. The language and format are generated automatically to match the language set for your project. Supports manual formatting options 1565 that allow you to configure how the date and time are displayed. Returns the month in nominative form in applicable languages.
<%OUTPUTFILEDIR%>	The absolute Windows-style output path of the current build, without a trailing backslash.
<%OUTPUTFILENAME%>	Name of the output file for the current build, without path or other information. For example, if you are publishing to CHM it will be the name of the CHM file, if you are publishing to HTML it will be the name of the main HTML file (normally `index.html` unless you change it), and so on.
<%OUTPUTFILEPATH%>	The absolute Windows-style output path of the current build, including a trailing backslash.
<%SELF%>	The name of the current project file without path or extension.
<%SELFFULLNAME%>	The name of the current project file including the file extension and the full path to the project directory, as displayed in the Help+Manual title bar. This can be useful for documenting which project version you have used to generate your documentation.
<%SUMMARY%>	The Summary text for the project defined in **`Project Explorer > Configuration > Common Properties > Title & Copyright`**.
<%TARGETTITLE%>	This is a special variable that can only be used in the captions of topic hyperlinks. When used there it will automatically insert the current title of the target topic of the link as the caption when you publish your project. See Inserting topic links 410 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%TIME%>	The current time in short format. The format matches the language set for your project. No manual formatting options.
<%TIMELONG%>	The current time in long format. The format matches the language set for your project. No manual formatting options.
<%TITLE%>	The title of the help project defined in **Project Explorer > Configuration > Common Properties > Title & Copyright**.
<%TOPICHELPCONTEXT%>	Help context number(s) assigned to the current topic
<%TOPICLASTEDITED%>	The date when the topic containing the variable was last edited in short format. Supports manual formatting options 1565 that allow you to configure how the date and time are displayed. Returns the month in nominative form in applicable languages.
<%TOPICLASTEDITEDTIME%>	The time when the topic containing the variable was last edited. The format matches the language set for your project.
<%TOPICLASTEDITEDUSER%>	Name of the user who last edited the current topic.
<%TOPICMETA:NAME%>	Special variable for use in topics only. Inserts the values of meta tags added to the XML source of topic files. Currently only relevant for Sandcastle import, where Help+Manual inserts a meta tag with hash value to check whether existing sandcastle topics have been changed or not. (Have a look at the XML source of imported Sandcastle topics to see this.) However, it will also work on your own meta tags if you add them to the XML yourself. **Usage:** Replace "NAME" with the name of the XML meta tag you want to reference.
<%TOPICSTATUS%>	Status 373 of the current topic.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%TOPICTITLE%>	Title text of the current topic. This is taken from the **Title Tag:** field in the **Topic Options** tab (on the left of the editor window) and is normally the same as the TOC caption for the topic and will change automatically when you edit the TOC caption in the TOC. So this variable gives you the TOC caption, ***unless*** you edit the Title Tag field **Editing the Title Tag text in Topic Options:** Editing the **Title Tag:** field manually "uncouples" this field from the TOC caption. The variable then still returns the contents of the field in Topic Options, so if you want to use it for the TOC caption we recommend not editing the field in Topic Options. To "recouple" the Topic Options field with the TOC caption, just edit either so that the texts are both identical. This works the same as the coupling between the TOC caption and the topic header text. **Deprecated older version:** The older <\%TOPIC_TITLE%> version of this variable is still supported and does not need to be changed in your projects. However, please always use the current <%TOPICTITLE%> version now.
<%VERSION%>	An automatically-generated combination of the **Major**, **Minor** and **Build** version variables, with dots between the versions. For example, if **Major=3**, **Minor=25** and **Build=329** then <%VERSION%> will be **3.25.329**.
<%VERSION_BUILD%>	The Build Version text for the project defined in **Project Explorer > Configuration > Common Properties > Title & Copyright**.
<%VERSION_MAJOR%>	The Major Version text for the project defined in **Project Explorer > Configuration > Common Properties > Title & Copyright**.
<%VERSION_MINOR%>	The Minor Version text for the project defined in **Project Explorer > Configuration > Common Properties > Title & Copyright**.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%YEAR%>	The current year in 4-digit format. No manual formatting options.

See also:

Date and Time Variables 1565
Using Variables 917
Using HTML Templates 1026

11.7.2.3 Variables in Style Repositories

If you define variables in a style repository 1076 they will also appear and be available in the projects to which the repository is linked. When you link the repository, all the variables in the repository that do not exist in the project are copied to the project. Variables that already exist in the projects are left unchanged; their values do not update with different values from the repository.

At present, this is really just a convenience for sharing variables to multiple projects. The values of the variables are not dynamically linked, even if the styles are. The values of the variables in your projects will NOT update when their values are changed in the repository. This is the same as existing variables in the project, which are not updated with the values of repository variables when you link a repository.

Updating variable values from a repository

The only way to force the values of a variable in a project to update with a changed value in the repository is to delete the variable in the project. Then the variable will appear again with the new value from the linked repository the next time the project is loaded.

So to update your repository variables you need to delete them in your project and reload the project. You can select and delete multiple variables with CTRL+Click (individual variables) and SHIFT+Click (blocks of variables).

This is admittedly not all that practical, because you need to do this for all the variables in all your projects every time you change the values of the variables in the repository. In a future major release of Help+Manual we plan to make repository variables dynamically linked as well.

11.7.2.4 Date and time variables

Key Information
You can only format the date and time with these four variables that support formatting strings..

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual supports a number of variables for inserting the date and/or time. Some of these support special formatting strings with which you have full control over how the date and time elements are displayed.

Language of the date and time entries

The date and time entries created by these variables will use the language setting of your Help+Manual project.

Languages with nominative or genitive date forms

Variables that include time can only write the month names in the nominative form for these languages, because that is all that Windows allows in combination with the time. If you need the genitive form use <%DATELONG%> or <%DATE%>, which both write the genitive form, and combine them with a separate time variable. The variables <%NOW%> and <%TOPICLASTEDITED%> both write the nominative form, because they also include the time.

All date and time variables

The variables shown in red also support formatting strings (see further below for details).

<%NOW%>:	Inserts the current date and time. Returns the month in nominative form in applicable languages. Supports a formatting string (see further below for details).
<%DATE%>:	The current date in short format, without the time. Returns the month in genitive form in applicable languages. Supports a formatting string (see further below for details).
<%\DATELONG%>:	The current date in long format, without the time. This also includes long month names, in the genitive form in applicable languages.
<%TIME%>:	The current time in short format.
<%TIMELONG%>:	The current time in long format.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

<%MONTHNAME%>:	The current month in long format (i.e. February, not Feb or 2).
<%YEAR%>:	The current year in 4-digit format.
<%TOPICLASTEDITED%>:	The date and time when the topic containing the variable was last edited in short format. Supports a formatting string (see further below for details). Uses the nominative form for applicable languages.
<%TOPICLASTEDITEDTIME%>:	The time when the topic containing the variable was last edited.

How to use formatting strings in the supported variables

To use this feature you insert the **<%NOW%>** , **<%DATE%>** or **<%TOPICLASTEDITED%>** variable in your project, either manually or with the Insert Variable tool, and then manually type a format string in parentheses inside the variable name in the Help+Manual editor:

```
<%NOW(format string)%>
<%DATE(format string)%>
<%TOPICLASTEDITED(format string)%>
```

Position and syntax of the format string:

The format string must be inserted in parentheses between last letter of the variable name and the closing **%>** characters of the variable tag. The string can contain both "specifiers" that define the date and time format and normal text. Normal text must be enclosed in double quotes.

Specifiers may be written in upper or lower case, the result will be the same.

Examples:

```
<%NOW("This topic was published on " dddd, mmmm d, yyyy, " at "
hh:mm AM/PM)%>
<%TOPICLASTEDITED("This topic was last modified on " dddd, mmmm d,
yyyy, " at " hh:mm AM/PM)%>
```

Example result: *This topic was last modified on Tuesday, January 3, 2013, at 12:22 PM*

The text within the quotes will be inserted exactly as it is written. Any spaces required must be included within the quotes and the quotes must be separated from the specifiers by spaces.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Date and time format specifiers

Specifier	Function
" text " ' text '	Anything enclosed in single or double quotes is inserted unchanged as plain text and does not affect formatting.
. and ,	You can include periods and commas in the formatting string with the specifiers, these characters to not need to be quoted.
c	Displays the date using the standard Windows short date format, followed by the time using the standard Windows long time format. The time is not displayed if the fractional part of the DateTime value is zero.
d	Displays the day of the month as a number without a leading zero (1-31).
dd	Displays the day of the month as a number with a leading zero (01-31).
ddd	Displays the day as an abbreviation (Sun-Sat) using the standard Windows strings for short day names.
dddd	Displays the day as a full name (Sunday-Saturday) using the standard Windows strings for full day names.
ddddd	Displays the date using the standard Windows short date format.
dddddd	Displays the date using the standard Windows long date format.
m	Displays the month as a number without a leading zero (1-12). If the **m** specifier immediately follows an **h** or **hh** specifier, the minute rather than the month is displayed.
mm	Displays the month as a number with a leading zero (01-12). If the **mm** specifier immediately follows an **h** or **hh** specifier, the minute rather than the month is displayed.
mmm	Displays the month as an abbreviation (Jan-Dec) using the standard Windows values for short month names.
mmmm	Displays the month as a full name (January-December) using the standard Windows values for long month names.
yy	Displays the year as a two-digit number (00-99).
yyyy	Displays the year as a four-digit number (0000-9999).
h	Displays the hour without a leading zero (0-23).
hh	Displays the hour with a leading zero (00-23).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

n	Displays the minute without a leading zero (0-59).
nn	Displays the minute with a leading zero (00-59).
s	Displays the second without a leading zero (0-59).
ss	Displays the second with a leading zero (00-59).
z	Displays the millisecond without a leading zero (0-999).
zzz	Displays the millisecond with a leading zero (000-999).
t	Displays the time using the standard Windows short time format.
tt	Displays the time using the standard Windows long time format.
am/pm	Uses the 12-hour clock for the preceding h or hh specifier, and displays 'am' for any hour before noon, and 'pm' for any hour after noon. The **am/pm** specifier can use lower, upper, or mixed case, and the result is displayed accordingly.
ampm	Uses the 12-hour clock for the preceding h or hh specifier, and displays the contents of the Windows *TimeAMString* global variable for any hour before noon, and the contents of the *TimePMString* global variable for any hour after noon.
/	Displays the date separator set in your Windows configuration.
:	Displays the time separator set in your Windows configuration.

See also:

Using Variables 917

11.7.2.5 HTML template variables

You can use all global predefined variables 1561 and user-defined variables 919 in HTML templates 1026. In addition to this you can also use the following special predefined variables, which are only relevant in HTML templates.

Variables for use in topic page templates only:

These variables can only be used in topic page templates. They are valid in all HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks and Visual Studio Help).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on.
<%DOCCHARSET%>	Inserts the correct character set information in the meta tags at the beginning of the HTML output pages. This variable is essential in all templates and should not be removed. If you do remove it you will get an error message from the compiler.
<%DOCTYPE%>	Inserts the correct DOCTYPE tag at the beginning of the HTML output pages. This variable is essential in all templates and should normally not be removed. If you do remove it you will get an error message from the compiler. You can insert your own <DOCTYPE> declaration in the template explicitly and if you do this no error message will be displayed. However, it may produce unexpected results.
<%GA4ACCOUNT%>	Filled with the value specified for the for your new Google Analytics 4 (GA4) Google Analytics account 666 (your tracking ID).
<%GAACCOUNT%>	Filled with the value specified for the for your old Universal Analytics Google Analytics account 666 (your tracking ID).
<%HM_LINKLIST_SIBLINGS%> <%HM_LINKLIST_CHILDREN%> <%HM_LINKLIST_ANCHORS%>	These variables can be used in the topic HTML page template. They insert UL link lists: SIBLINGS: All the siblings of the current topic. CHILDREN: All the children of the current topic. ANCHORS: Anchors in the current topic. **Not for use in V3 and V4 skins:** Note that you can't use these variables in the page templates for Premium Pack V3 and V4

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on. skins. Since topic content is loaded dynamically in these skins, variables set in the template don't change.
<%HREF_CURRENT_PAGE%>	Link address of the current page.
<%HREF_DEFAULT_PAGE%>	Link address of the "Default" topic. This is used for the standard **Top** navigation link in the topic headers so that users can return to the default topic in your project.
<%HREF_NEXT_PAGE%>	Link address of the next topic.
<%HREF_PARENT_CHAPTER%>	Link address of the parent topic (chapter). This can be used as an alternative to <%HREF_DEFAULT_PAGE%>. If the parent is a chapter without text, this is the link address of the parent's parent. If no valid parent is available, the variable is the link address of the default page.
<%HREF_PREVIOUS_PAGE%>	Link address of the previous topic (used for Previous/Next buttons).
<%STYLESHEET%>	Inserts the reference to the CSS stylesheet containing all the styles information for your project. This variable is essential in all templates and should not be removed. If you do remove it you will get an error message from the compiler.
<%TOPIC_AKEYWORDS%>	Inserts all the A-keywords 579 of the current topic, comma-separated.
<%TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS%>	Generates a series of "breadcrumb trail" navigation links to topics above the current topic in the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on. TOC tree. This variable is empty in top-level topics. In second-level topics and below the variable generates a series of links in the format **Link1** > **Link2** > **Link3** ... The current topic is not included in the series. If you want to place the current topic title at the end of the breadcrumb trail you can do so with the `HTML template variables` variable (see below). The breadcrumb trail variable is empty in topics in the Invisible Topics section. This variable has a matching condition pair: `<IF_TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS>` and `<IFNOT_TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS>`. These conditions can be used to only insert the trail where it is relevant and to insert alternative content when it is not relevant. See here 1036 for details on how to use this variable.
`<%TOPIC_HEADER%>`	Inserts the header of the current topic if it exists. If the current topic has no header the value of this variable is null. This can be different from the topic caption inserted with `<%TOPIC_TITLE%>`.
`<%TOPIC_HEADER_TEXT%>`	Inserts the header of the current topic as plain text. This is particularly useful if your project headers are different from and longer than the TOC captions, which is inserted with `<%TOPIC_TITLE%>`. This is used primarily for search engine optimization, for which you would insert it in the **de-**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on.
	`scription` meta tag, like this: `<meta name="description" content="<%TOPIC_HEADER_TEXT%>">`
`<%TOPIC_DESCRIPTION%>` `<%TOPICMETA:DESCRIPTION%>`	Inserts the text from the *Description* field in the topic's Topic Options tab if you have entered a description there. Otherwise it inserts the first 177 characters of the topic text, followed by an ellipsis (...). This can be used in combination with the "featured image" (see next row) to insert a "title" image and a description for your topic in your template. In addition to this it can also be used to populate the description meta tag for search engines like this: `<meta name="description" content="<%TOPIC_DESCRIPTION%>">`
`<%TOPICMETA:PICTURE%>` `<%TOPIC_PICTURE%>`	Returns the file name of the "featured image" for the current topic, if one has been set in the topic's Topic Options. Returns blank if no featured image has been set.
`<%TOPIC_KEYWORDS%>`	Inserts all the keywords 565 of the current topic, comma-separated. Needless to say, this variable is essential for the keyword index and shouldn't be removed...
`<%TOPIC_TEXT%>`	Inserts the body text of a topic, i.e. the entire topic as edited and formatted in your project in the Help+Manual editor. This is the most important variable. If you leave it out your topics will be empty!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on.
<%TOPICTITLE%>	Title text of the current topic. This is taken from the **`Title Tag:`** field in the **Topic Options** tab (on the left of the editor window) and is normally the same as the TOC caption for the topic and will change automatically when you edit the TOC caption in the TOC. So this variable gives you the TOC caption, ***unless*** you edit the Title Tag field **Editing the Title Tag text in Topic Options:** Editing the **`Title Tag:`** field manually "uncouples" this field from the TOC caption. The variable then still returns the contents of the field in Topic Options, so if you want to use it for the TOC caption we recommend not editing the field in Topic Options. To "recouple" the Topic Options field with the TOC caption, just edit either so that the texts are both identical. This works the same as the coupling between the TOC caption and the topic header text. **Deprecated older version:** The older <\%TOPIC_TITLE%> version of this variable is still supported and does not need to be changed in your projects. However, please always use the current <%TOPICTITLE%> version now.
<%TOPIC_TITLE_PATH%>	This variable is similar to the breadcrumbs variable above but it delivers the breadcrumb trail as a plain text string without any links. Unlike the breadcrumbs variable it also includes the name of the current topic, so it always delivers a full trail. The primary use of this variable is for search en-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable

Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on.
	
	gine optimization, for which you would insert it in the `<title>` tag of your topic page template instead of the normal `<%TOPIC_TITLE%>` variable, like this:
	`<title><%TOPIC_TITLE_PATH%></title>`
	
	Modification for HTML Help:
	If you also output to HTML Help you should use conditional text to ensure that this variable is only used in Browser Help, otherwise you will get the full path as the topic name in your search results in the HTML Help viewer. Do it like this:
	`<title><IF_HTML><%TOPIC_TITLE_PATH%></IF_HTML><IF_CHM><%TOPIC_TITLE%></IF_CHM></title>`

`<%TOPICID%>`	Returns the plain topic ID as written in the **Topic ID:** field of , without any filename extension and without changing the ID text to lower case. This can be used to add an ID reference in your meta attributes in your web pages, for example: `<meta name="id" content="<%TOPICID%>" />` (This variable can also be used in normal topic pages.)
`<%XMLLANG%>`	Returns the project language code, e.g. **en-us** for US English.

Variables for use in WebHelp only:

All the remaining variables are only relevant in WebHelp 1510 (HTML):

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variables for WebHelp 3 mode only:

In WebHelp 3 mode, the JavaScript files, graphics and video files and CSS files are all saved in sub-folders of the main WebHelp folder. You can use these variables in your HTML templates to automatically insert the relative paths to these folders.

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%HM_RELPATH_JAVASCRIPT%>	Returns the relative path to the JavaScript files folder: `./js/`
<%HM_RELPATH_IMAGES%>	Returns the relative path to the images and media files folder (video files are also stored here): `./images/`
<%HM_RELPATH_CSS%>	Returns the relative path to the CSS files folder: `./css/`

Global variables for all WebHelp templates:

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%HREF_CONTENT_PAGE%>	Link address of the TOC page
<%HREF_INDEX_PAGE%>	Link address of the keyword index-page
<%HREF_SEARCH_PAGE%>	Link address of the full-text search page
<%HREF_TOP_PAGE%>	Link address of the top frame (e.g. "index.html")

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variables for the Layout frameset template only:

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%HREF_CONTENT_PAGE_DYN%>	Link address of the dynamic TOC page.
<%HREF_CONTENT_PAGE_STATIC%>	Link address of the static TOC page.
<%NAVIGATION_SCRIPT%>	Inserts the navigation script required by the top frame.

Variables for the Table of Contents template only:

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%TABLE_OF_CONTENTS%>	Inserts the entire TOC in the page.

Variables for the Keyword Index template only:

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%KEYWORD_INDEX%>	Inserts the entire keyword index in the page.

Variables for the Search template only:

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%SEARCH_SCRIPT%>	Inserts the full-text search script in the page.

See also:

Using Variables 917
Using HTML Templates 1026
Editing HTML templates 1030
Help Windows 1609

11.7.2.6 HTML template output conditions

You can use all of Help+Manual's standard conditional output options in HTML templates,

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

both your user-defined include options 988 and options based on the current output format. In addition to this there are a few special conditional switches which are only for use in Help+Manual's WebHelp output, because they are only relevant there. See the lists below for details.

These conditions are like special HTML tags. They are used to enclose blocks of HTML code in your template that you want to include in the output only if the condition is fulfilled.

In HTML templates you can only use output format conditions for HTML-based output formats (CHM, HTML, EBOOK and HXS). This is because these templates are only used for HTML-based output – so <IF_PDF> would not have any meaning, for example. Note that the EBOOK condition applies both for Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks.

Conditions are stripped before publishing

All the condition tags are stripped from your code before actually generating the HTML output. No proprietary tags are included in your output!

Conditional tags in templates are hard-wired to the output format

Conditional tags in HTML templates look very similar to the conditions you use for content in your project. However, there is one very important difference: In templates, the true/false status of the conditions is hard-wired to the output format and cannot be changed.

In the Publish screen you can include content tagged for other output formats than the one you are currently publishing to by activating the checkboxes for those formats manually. This has no effect on the conditional tags in your templates, however. This is very important, because in templates you will often want to exclude code that would cause errors in some output formats. If this wasn't the case, including content tagged for WebHelp in a CHM file the Publish screen could cause serious errors if that also included template code tagged exclusively for WebHelp in a CHM file.

Combining conditions with AND and OR logic

You can combine conditions to achieve AND and OR logic if necessary. For AND you need to nest two sets of conditons, for OR you combine the conditions in a single tag.

Nesting conditions for AND logic

If you only want to include content when multiple conditions are all true you need to nest them like this:

```
<IF_HTML><IF_TOGGLES> ... </IF_TOGGLES></IF_HTML>
```


© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The above conditions will only include the content between the tags if the output format is WebHelp and there are toggles on the current page.

Combining conditions for OR logic

If you want to include content if any one of multiple conditions is true you combine them in a single tag separated by the | pipe character.

Important: Note that this does not work with **IFNOT** conditions, only with **IF** conditions!

You can use this feature like this:

<IF_CHM|TOGGLES> ... </IF_CHM|TOGGLES>

The above condition will include the content between the tags if the current format is CHM or if there are toggles on the page, or if both are the case.

Predefined HTML template conditions:

In addition to the predefined conditions listed here you can also use your own user-defined include options 988 as conditions in HTML templates. See Conditional output in HTML templates 1052 for details on how to use the conditions.

Conditions	Function of the condition
<IF_CHM>	True when you generate HTML Help/CHM.
<IF_EBOOK>	True for eWriter/Windows EXE eBooks (false for other eBook types).
<IF_EPUB>	True for ePUB and Kindle/Mobi eBooks (false for eWriter Help).
<IF_FRAMES>	True if WebHelp is exported with frames (a frame-based format is selected in the Navigation 1420 options). This could be used for entering a link from topic pages to your TOC page when you select the **No Frames, No Scripts** layout option, for example. Only relevant for WebHelp.
<IF_GA4ACCOUNT>	True if the setting for your new Google Analytics 4 (GA4) Google Analytics account 666 is not empty.
<IF_GAACCOUNT>	True if the setting for your old Universal Analytics Google Analytics account 666 is not empty.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Conditions	Function of the condition
<IF_HTML>	True when you generate WebHelp (HTML)
<IF_HXS>	True when you generate Visual Studio Help (2008 or 2010)
<IF_INDEX_PAGE>	True if a keyword index is included in the output. For example, you could use this to exclude a link to the index page from the TOC page if the keyword index is not included. Only relevant for WebHelp.
<IF_NEXT_PAGE>	True if a next page exists. Used to suppress or display a grayed-out version of the **Next** button in the very last topic. Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_PREVIOUS_PAGE>	True if a previous page exists (the variable <%HREF_PREVIOUS_PAGE%> is not empty). Used to suppress or display a grayed-out version of the **Previous** navigation button in the very first topic. Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_SEARCH_PAGE>	True if full-text search is included in the output. For example, you could use this to exclude a link to the search page from the TOC or keyword index page if the search function is turned off. Only relevant for WebHelp.
<IF_TOGGLES>	True if the current topic contains one or more toggles 382 (expanding text and images). Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS>	True if the <%TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS%> variable is not empty (see HTML template variables 1569). For example, this variable is always empty in topics in the Invisible Topics section and in top-level topics. Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_TOPIC_HEADER>	True if the current topic has a header and the header is not empty (the variable <%TOPIC_HEADER%> is not equal to ""). Can only be used in topic page templates.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Conditions	Function of the condition
<IF_TOPIC_PICTURE>	True if the current topic has a featured image associated with it. You can then use this to insert the image. Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_XHTML>	True if XHTML 1.1 output is activated in your HTML Export Options. 1435 You will generally only need this in reusable skins, when the skin may be used for projects published with either normal HTML or XHTML.

"IFNOT" versions negate the meaning of the conditions:

Exclude Conditions	Function of the exclude condition
<IFNOT_CONDITIONNAME>	Negates the positive version of the condition. Content between the condition tags is only inserted if the condition is not true. Available for all conditions.

See also:

User-defined include options 988
Using HTML Templates 1026
Conditional output in HTML templates 1052
Help Windows 1609

11.7.2.7 PDF template variables

You can use all Help+Manual's global predefined variables 1561 and your own user-defined variables 919 in the text objects in PDF print manual templates 803. In addition to this there are also a number of special predefined variables that can only be used in print manual templates. These variables are described and listed in the separate help and documentation of the Print Manual Designer program included with Help+Manual.

Key Information
Conditions are not supported in PDF print manual templates. You cannot use conditional text or any other conditions in these templates.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Using variables in PDF templates

Global and user-defined variables from your project:

Just type the variable in any text object in your PDF template, using the standard <% VARIABLENAME%> syntax.

Special PDF template variables:

These variables can be typed in manually but they can also be inserted from a list by selecting the *Variable* button in the text object dialog. This option is preferable because it automatically shows you which PDF template variables are valid in the current location.

See also:

Using Variables 917
PDF and Printed Manuals 785
The Print Manual Designer 1217

11.7.2.8 Conditional output

Help+Manual supports multiple levels of conditional output that give you very precise control over what is included in your published projects on the basis of output format and user-defined output conditions 988. These features make it possible to generate different versions of your project for different purposes and formats. You can control the inclusion or exclusion of everything from individual words (or even single letters) to entire topics and branches of the Table of Contents (TOC).

For example, if you output your project to both HTML Help and PDF you will generally need to make some small changes to the text for the PDF version because some things that are relevant in electronic help don't make sense in PDF or a printed manual. With conditional output you can include both versions in the same project and only the relevant components will be included when you publish.

How conditional output works:

Instead of creating and maintaining multiple versions of your project for different versions you only have one project, or one set of modular projects, containing all the content and topics for the alternate versions you need to generate. The chapters, topics and topic content (text, graphics, tables etc.) for the alternate versions are "tagged" with conditions called "include options" (also known as build conditions) that control whether they are included in the output or not.

Note that in HTML Help you can also create different versions of your documentation with runtime modular projects. See Runtime and publish time merging 1551 for details on this.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Format-based include options:

These options allow you to include or exclude topics and content on the basis of the selected output format.

For example, suppose you have two different versions of a sentence, one for the HTML Help version and one for the PDF version. You would enclose the first version in an IF_CHM conditional text tag 994 and the second in an IF_PDF tag. And that is all you have to do, everything else is automatic. When you publish to HTML Help only the IF_CHM version is included, and when you publish to PDF only the IF_PDF version is included.

User-defined include options:

These options allow you to include or exclude topics and content on the basis of conditions that you define. This makes it possible to create different versions of your published output irrespective of the output format. For example you may have different documentation for different versions of a product.

For example, suppose you defined an include option called BETABUILD and tag specific text passages and topics in your project with an IF_BETABUILD condition. To include those passages in your output you just select the BETABUILD include option in the Publish 1310 dialog when you publish, along with any other relevant options.

Multiple TOCs

You can combine alternative TOCs 343 with conditional output when you need to create versions of your project with a completely different TOC structure.

Conditional output and links

It is important to plan your links when you are working with conditional output. When you exclude a topic from your output any hyperlinks to that topic in other topic will be dead unless you also exclude the links.

Before excluding a topic always right-click on its TOC entry and select *Check Referrers* to locate any links to the topic. You can then use the same conditions to exclude the links from your output. In addition to this you may want to add additional conditional text options to include alternative text to replace the links.

You can configure Help+Manual to include the topic anyway 1268 to prevent dead links, but it is better to exclude the links using the same output conditions.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Levels of conditional output supported by Help+Manual:

Conditional text: On the text level you can use conditional text tags 994 to mark sections in your topics – paragraphs, graphics, sentences and even individual words and letters – that should only be included when a specific condition is fulfilled (output format or user defined).

Text variables: Text variables (see Using Variables 917) allow you to use variables for text items. Then if the item changes you only need to redefine the variable once to implement the change throughout your entire project.

Variables are not really conditional output in the strictest sense of the term, but you can use them for conditional output by redefining them globally 1004 with a project skin or a variables file that replaces the variable definitions in your project at publish time.

Topic conditions: These conditions allow you to include or exclude entire topics and chapters 989 on the basis of output format or user-defined conditions.

Multiple TOCs: You can combine alternative TOCs 343 with conditional output when you need to create versions of your project with a completely different TOC structure.

Modular projects: Help+Manual's modular projects features 1088 enable you to include or exclude entire projects in your help at publish time. This makes it possible to quickly add or remove entire blocks with multiple chapters

HTML conditions: You can also use some special conditional switches in HTML templates 1026 to control when code in the template should be included or excluded.

See also:

Conditions and Customized Output 969
Using Variables 917
Working with Modular Help Systems 1088
Conditional output in HTML templates 1052

11.7.2.9 TOC entry and topic file include options

Your TOC entries and topic files are actually two separate items: The TOC entries are only links pointing to the topic files. The TOC entry and the topic files also have separate include op-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

tions. If you work in the TOC you will normally not need to think about this because the matching include options for the associated topic files will be set automatically.

However, the situation is different if you have multiple TOC entries 371 for the same topic in the TOC. Then you need to think about what happens when you set different include options for TOC entries linked to the same topic file.

How build options are applied to TOC entries and topic files

Working in the TOC:

When you work in the Table of Contents section of the Project Explorer setting or changing an include option for the TOC item automatically sets the same option for the topic file to which the TOC entry is linked. Normally this is a 1:1 association and you don' t need to think about it at all. It is set and cleared for both items automatically. However, the situation is different for topic files with multiple TOC entries. See below for details.

Working in the Topic Files section:

Setting or changing an include option for a topic in the Topic Files section of the Project Explorer does ***not*** automatically change the include options for any associated TOC entries. For technical reasons, the topic files cannot be permitted to control the TOC entries. Among other things, this would create a mess when the TOC contains multiple references to the topic file, each with different build options.

Topic files with no TOC entry

If a topic file has no TOC entry (for example for popup topics or topics displayed in external windows) you must set include options directly for the topic file, in Topic Files in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer.

This is generally the only time when you should set include options for topic files directly. In all other cases you should set the options in the TOC unless you have a specific reason for wanting different options for the TOC entry and the associated topic file.

Topic files with multiple TOC entries

If you have multiple TOC entries 371 for the same topic in the TOC setting include options for the individual TOC entries is a little more complicated. Basically, the following principles are applied:

- The include options are saved separately for each TOC entry.
- The include options of the linked topic file are set as the sum of all the options set for the linked TOC entries.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Note that these settings are handled automatically if you set the options in the TOC. However, if you set the include options for the topic files directly you are responsible for getting the associations right yourself.

Examples:

In the following example the include options of the topic file are set to ALL because only this setting will cover all the settings required for both the associated TOC entries.

Item Type	Name	Include Options
TOC entry 1	`Introduction`	CHM
TOC entry 2	`Introduction(2)`	ALL
Topic file	`Introduction.xml`	ALL

In the following example the include options of the topic file are set to the combination of the options for both associated TOC entries.

Item Type	Name	Include Options
TOC entry 1	`Introduction`	CHM, HTML
TOC entry 2	`Introduction(2)`	PDF
Topic file	`Introduction.xml`	CHM, HTML, PDF

11.7.3 Context-Sensitive Help & Popups

Context-sensitive help 1587 enables users to obtain help that is directly relevant to a specific program feature or the task they are currently performing. It can make it much easier for users to learn how to use your application because they get information about what they are trying to do while they are trying to do it. This makes your users happier and saves you time and money by reducing the amount of support you have to provide.

What is context-sensitive help?

There are basically three kinds of context-sensitive help that you need to think about as a help author:

- **The user presses F1** and the help is displayed with a topic relevant to the "context" in which the user pressed the key. For example, pressing F1 in an editor could display a topic on editing, pressing F1 in a configuration dialog could display a topic on the features of that dialog, and so on.
- **Clicking on a "Help" button** in a dialog displays a help topic describing that dialog.
- **Right-clicking on a control** in an application and selecting **What's This?** displays a popup window with a text describing the control and what it is for.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **Clicking on any other kind of control** in an application (an icon etc.) to display a small popup directly in the application.

The first two kinds of context-sensitive help are implemented with normal calls to specific topics in your help. These are almost always ordinary topics that are included in the Table of Contents (TOC). As the help author you only have to make sure that relevant topics are available, and you must also coordinate with the programmers on the topic IDs and/or help context numbers 1600 that are to be used to access the topics from the application. See About implementing context help 1594 for some more background information on this.

Context-sensitive help using popup topics displayed directly in your application is a special case. These popups are referred to as "field-level" popups and they are only supported in the Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) format. See About field-level popups 1592 in this chapter for details.

See also:

Context-Sensitive Help 892 (HowTo)
About field-level popups 1592

11.7.3.1 Context-sensitive help technologies

A full tutorial on implementing context-sensitive help in applications would go well beyond the scope of this help. This topic is just provided to inform you of the various context-sensitive help technologies that are available in Windows so that you can consider using them in your application.

Context-sensitive help technologies available in Windows:

Tooltips: Little "tips" that appear automatically when the user moves the mouse over a control. These are usually implemented in the application itself rather than being stored in an external help file. Most modern programming environments support tooltips.

Even if you don't implement any other kind of context help for the controls in your application it is always a good idea to include tooltips with brief explanations of what the controls do. This alone can significantly reduce the number of support requests you have to deal with!

***What's This?* help:** In many modern applications you can right-click on a control and select a *What's This?* option that displays a popup window with a help text. If you can make your users aware of this (and that is not easy) this can significantly reduce support requests.

This can be implemented with the help of popup topics created in Help+Manual. The advantage of this is that the topics are displayed

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

on their own in a little independent window, without opening the entire help.

Microsoft includes support for *What's This?* help in its programming languages. The free EC Software Help Suite tools package available on our website makes implementing *What's This?* help easier in older versions of Borland Delphi and Borland C++. Delphi 2005 and later have integrated support for CHM and do not need the Help Suite.

Help buttons in dialogs:

These buttons link directly to the relevant topic in your main help file. These are implemented with a direct call to the help file and the topic.

All dialogs requiring any explanation should have a HELP button. In addition to making your application much easier to use these buttons also help to ensure that your users actually read your help instead of just reaching for the phone or writing you an email!

_F1_ context help:

Relevant help is displayed automatically when the user presses the F1 key. What help topics or features are called depends on where and when the user presses F1 (the "context"). How this is implemented depends on the individual programming language and it is entirely up to the programmer. As the help author you only have to provide the programmers with the necessary topic IDs and/or help context numbers 1600 so that they can call the appropriate topics.

Training card help:

This is a powerful but rather cumbersome help technology developed by Microsoft and supported in HTML Help 1506. It allows you to create interactive tutorials in your help that automatically perform actions in your application when the user clicks on hotspots and links in your help. For example, you can invoke functions, display menus, select options and fill out data fields to show the user how to do things.

For programming information on implementing training card help see the MSDN Library on Microsoft's website – we can't provide direct links here because the MSDN web programmers change the addresses so frequently.

Although training card help is a very powerful tool there are good reasons why it is very rarely used. It can be quite tricky to implement and every programming language handles it differently.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Interactive wizards:

There are basically two kinds of interactive wizards: "Programmed wizards" created as part of your program and "help wizards" created with help technologies like HTML Help.

We don't want to go into programmed wizards here, but they can be very useful for guiding your users through complex configuration tasks. For example, a help wizard could guide a user through the process of configuring a complex program, only continuing to the next dialog screen when all the settings have been completed correctly.

Non-programmed help wizards are simply ordinary help files, or sections of help files, that teach users how to perform a specific task in a systematic way. They can be integrated in your main help but it is generally a good idea to create them as separate help files. Then they can be called when needed and they don't get in the way when they are no longer needed.

Simple help wizards guide the user through a task or procedure without direct interactivity. For example, you could create a little help project that shows the user how to configure your program. Each topic would be a single step in the procedure, with screenshots showing exactly what needs to be done and **Next** and **Previous** buttons for navigation.

More advanced help wizards make use of training card help (see above) to open dialogs and perform operations in your application. If you use this you should always also prompt your users to try the procedure out for themselves as well, otherwise they will only learn how to use the wizard rather than the program itself!

HelpXplain screencasts and tutorials:

You can insert animated screencasts and tutorials made with our HelpXplain tool 561 in any topic with a couple of clicks. These tutorials are easy to make and can make your documentation much more informative and easy to understand.

Simple HelpXplain screencasts can be made directly with the Screen Capture tool 1207 in Help+Manual itself, but you need the full HelpXplain program if you want to edit them or make more advanced presentations.

Flash demos:

Flash has now been discontinued worldwide on all platforms and is no longer supported. All Flash content should now be removed from Help+Manual projects.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

See also:

Using Context-Sensitive Help 892
Creating popup topics 207

11.7.3.2 About popup topics

Popup topics 207 must be created without TOC entries 179 because they are never included in the TOC (Table of Contents). If a topic has a TOC entry you will not be able to use it as a popup.

Instead of being displayed in the help viewer popups are displayed in small "popup windows" that are closed again when the user clicks after reading their contents.

All popup topics can be displayed with links from within your help file. HTML Help (CHM) native plain-text popups can also be displayed within your application, without displaying the main help viewer. Then they are referred to as "field-level popups".

The two uses for popup topics:

Within the help file:

Inside the help file popups are used to display small items of information that you want to make available but you don't want to include again and again in the help text.

A good example of this would be a definition of a technical term that is used frequently in your text. Instead of repeating the definition again and again you would turn the term into a link that links to a popup topic. However, you may also want to consider using inline text toggles 389 for this.

When the user clicks on the link the contents of the topic are displayed in a small popup box, without leaving the current topic.

Context-sensitive help:

HTML Help popup topics (but not JavaScript popups 212) can also be called directly from applications. When they are called in this way they are displayed on their own, without displaying the help file, and closed again immediately when the user clicks on them. This makes them a useful context-sensitive help tool for describing controls and functions in programs. See About field-level popups 1592 for more details.

The pros and cons of using popups:

Popups are definitely useful and it is tempting to make extensive use of them. However, there are a couple of issues you need to think about before doing so:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- Using popups makes it more difficult to produce a printed version of your help. The user can't display popups in a PDF or a printed manual so to produce the printed version you need to provide different ways of accessing the same information, for example by creating different versions of the text and using conditional output 969. This can be quite a lot of work and can get quite complicated to maintain.
- Popups reduce the multi-output compatibility of your source. Plain text popups are exclusive to HTML Help, and in WebHelp (HTML) you can only use JavaScript popups 212. Popups do not work at all in Word DOCX, PDF and printed manuals.
- If you want to produce multiple format versions of your help project from the same source it's best not to use popups too much because they can significantly increase the work involved in maintaining the multiple versions.
- If you need context-sensitive field-level HTML Help for display within your application it may be advisable to make a separate Help+Manual project just for these popups.

Where popup topics are supported:

Popups are not supported in all the output formats generated by Help+Manual, and the way popups are handled and the options available also vary from format to format. The following table provides a summary of where and how you can use popups:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Where popups are supported

Output Format	Supported Popup Types	Where Supported
HTML Help (.CHM):	Plain-text popups integrated in the main help file. Context numbers are required for these popup topics! Formatted JavaScript popups 212 stored in the main help file.	Plain-text popups are only supported as field-level popups in applications. If you want popups in the help text you must activate JavaScript popups. Formatted JavaScript popups can only be used in the help text. They are not supported for context-sensitive help.
Browser-based HTML (.HTM):	Fully-formatted JavaScript popups 212 integrated in the individual HTML files.	JavaScript popups can only be used in help topics. You cannot link to them from your application.
eWriter Help:	Same popup options as WebHelp	Same as WebHelp
ePUB and Kindle Mobi eBooks:	Popups are not supported. Popup links are automatically converted to plain text.	N/A
Adobe PDF and printed user manuals:	Popups are not supported. Popup links are automatically converted to plain text.	N/A
Word DOCX:	Popups are not supported. Popup links are automatically converted to plain text.	N/A

See also:

Context-Sensitive Help 892 (HowTo)
Conditions and Customized Output 969
Using JavaScript popups 212

11.7.3.3 Using field-level popups

Key Information
Field-level popups must have help context 368 numbers. Field-level popups are only exported if you assign help context numbers to them!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

A field-level popup is a popup displayed directly from within your application. They are normally only available for Microsoft HTML Help CHM files.

Field-level popups for WebHelp

In their native form field-level popups are only supported by the Microsoft HTML Help (CHM) format. This is the version described in this topic. However, the responsive skins available in the Premium Pack 3 add-on for Help+Manual also add field-level popups for WebHelp. Their use is explained in the additional help chapter titled Help+Manual Premium Pack added to the main Help+Manual help when you install the Premium Pack. (If you don't have the Premium Pack installed this chapter will just display some introductory material.)

Introduction

In your Help+Manual project, the same popup topics are used for both purposes. When you publish your project the content of the topics are automatically exported to a special text file in the CHM for field-level popups, and to the JavaScript popups file for JavaScript popups.

The plain-text CHM popups are not available within the main CHM file, however. They are only for field-level popups. You can only use JavaScript popups for popups displayed within the CHM file.

- **Normal popup topics** are displayed within the help when the user clicks on a link in a topic, for example to display a definition or an explanation. JavaScript popups must be activated for this to be possible in HTML Help CHM files and WebHelp.
- **Field-level popup topics** are called directly by the application and displayed in little windows of their own. This is done without displaying the rest of the help at all. Only the little popup is displayed, and it is closed again as soon as the user clicks on it.

About creating field-level popups:

Field-level popups are only supported in HTML Help CHM files. They are a proprietary Microsoft technology and they are not supported in any other output format.

To create field-level popups the help author needs to perform the following steps:

1. Create popup topics 207 so that you have popups to display.
2. Assign help context numbers 368 to all your popup topics. This is essential because field-level CHM popups must be called by their context numbers. If you don't assign numbers the topics won't be exported to the plain-text field-level popups file!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

3. Inform your programmer of the help context numbers and topic IDs and the name of the internal plain text popups file so that they can make the calls. You can use the context tool 1241 to export a list of IDs and context numbers.

The internal popups file is normally called `CSHelp.txt` but you can change its name in the Extended .HHP Settings 1457.

See Implementing context help 1594 for more general information.

If you are writing field-level popups for an application you may have to produce a ***lot*** of popups. You can save yourself a lot of work by generating your field-level popups automatically 911.

Using both field-level popups and JavaScript popups

Only the CHM format's native plain-text popups can be used as field-level popups. If you also want to display popups inside your CHM help file you must activate JavaScript popups 212, otherwise links to popup topics will be displayed as normal topics.

The native plain-text popups used in CHM cannot be used for displaying topics inside the main CHM file, only for field-level popups. (This plain-text file is always exported, even if JavaScript popups are turned off.)

If JavaScript popups are activated, popup links in your project topics will display as JS popups in the HTML Help viewer. However, since the plain-text popups file is also stored in the CHM, calls to this file from your application will also work.

See also:

Creating popup topics 207
Using Context-Sensitive Help 892
IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords 1600

11.7.3.4 Implementing context help

Generally, implementing context-sensitive help called from the application is the job of the programmers. They must write the calls that access specific topics in your help, and the syntax of these calls depends both on the help format and the programming language they are using.

HTML Help (CHM) supports both context-sensitive calls to specific help topics and field-level popups displayed within your application. WebHelp only supports calls to specific topics (see Context calls to WebHelp for details 899).

Free tutorials and context-sensitive help tools for programmers:

How the context-sensitive help calls to your help are made varies depending on the programming language you are using. A collection of free tutorials for programmers is available on the tutorials page at the EC Software website. These tutorials cover implement-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ing context-sensitive help and interfacing with the help files generated by Help+Manual in most common programming languages.

You may also be interested in **EC Software Help Suite** (EHS), a free package of tools for interfacing with help for Borland Delphi and Borland C++ programmers. EHS is particularly useful for implementing all kinds of context-sensitive help and ships with the full source code. It is available on the Delphi resources page at the EC Software website, where you can also download a comprehensive free tutorial on integrating help in Delphi applications.

Resources for .NET programmers:

You can find an excellent guide to interfacing with help files in .NET programming languages on Rob Chandler's Helpware site:

Working with HH 1.x CHM Files in .NET Applications

Rob's site also offers a wealth of information on working with help files in other applications and languages, including plenty of information on Visual Studio Help for programmers.

Your job as the help author

There are a number of things that you need to do as the help author to help make context-sensitive help work:

Topic IDs and context numbers for the programmers

Your programmers need a way to access the topics in the help. This applies equally to topics in the main help that bring up the entire help and popup topics that are accessed individually.

Programs access the topics in HTML Help with the topic IDs and/or the help context numbers 368, both of which are stored in the Topic Options tab of each topic. When you are planning your help project you need to talk to the programmers and find out which they want to use, and if they need to use special formats. (Some programming languages require special formats for topic IDs or specific number ranges for help context numbers.)

Topic ID prefixes:

If your programmers require special topic ID prefixes you can apply these to the IDs of new topics automatically. Just go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Miscellaneous** 1411 and insert the prefix you want to use in the *Topic ID Prefix* field.

If you have the Professional or Floating license version of Help+Manual you can also use an external editor 1107 to add

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

	ID prefixes to existing topics globally throughout your entire project (advanced users only).
Auto-generating help context numbers:	Help+Manual can generate and apply help context numbers to new topics automatically. Go to **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > Miscellaneous 1411 to set up this feature.
Applying help context numbers to existing topics:	You can apply help context numbers to existing topics and import "help context map files" with lists of context numbers provided by your programmers. See The Help Context Tool 1241 for details.
Changing topic IDs:	Don't despair if you discover that you've been using the wrong topic ID format! You can edit your topic IDs at any time, Help+Manual updates all internal links automatically. See Topic IDs and context numbers 368 for details.

Planning your structure for context-sensitive help

Before you start writing you also need to plan the kind of context-sensitive help you are going to use. For example, if the dialogs in the application are going to have a Help button you need to have appropriate topics for those buttons to link to from all the relevant dialogs. This may sound trivial but it's quite easy to forget!

Planning the use of field-level popup topics

Field-level popup topics are exactly the same as popup topics used within your help. The only difference is that they are accessed directly by the application instead of with a link from a help topic.

When they are used in this way they are displayed in their own little window that is closed after the user has read the contents, without displaying the entire help. They are most commonly used for What's This? help 1587, but they can also be accessed by buttons etc.

If you are going to use field-level popup topics these require some careful planning. Among other things, you need a full list of all the controls and other program elements for which you need field-level popups, along with all the topic IDs and/or help context numbers that are going to be used to access them.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Auto-generating your field-level popup topics

Since there are generally a lot of these topics creating them manually can be time-consuming, and you will probably start to wish that you could generate them automatically. Well, you can!

All you need to do is get a "help context map file" from the programmer with a list of the topic IDs and help context numbers (if applicable). Once you have this you can automatically generate all the popup topics in Help+Manual together with the matching IDs and help context numbers. See Auto-generating field-level popups 911 for details.

See also:

Using Context-Sensitive Help 892
The Help Context Tool 1241
Creating popup topics 207
Topic IDs and context numbers 368
Auto-generating field-level popups 911

11.7.3.5 Popups in CHM and eBooks

There are a couple of things you need to bear in mind when editing popup topics because of the different ways they are handled in different formats.

Popup topics in eBooks:

Amazon Kindle and ePUB/Apple iBooks have no support for popups or any other dynamic features. Technically, the ePUB specification does include support for JavaScript, but you cannot expect it to actually work anywhere.

Popup topics in HTML Help:

Native CHM plain-text popups:

If you do not activate JavaScript popups 212 your CHM files will only use HTML Help's native popup plain-text topics. These can only contain text, without any formatting or other elements. This means that even if you enter formatted text in the popup topics in the Help+Manual editor (which is possible because it is needed for other output formats) all formatting, links, graphics, tables, table contents etc. will be stripped when you publish to HTML Help.

Formatted JavaScript popups:

Help+Manual also supports a custom JavaScript popup mode that can be used in both HTML Help and WebHelp. However, you cannot make application calls to JavaScript

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

popups. If you activate JavaScript popups in CHM, you must still access the plain-text popups (which are also included in the CHM file) for field-level popups 896 displayed in your application. See Using JavaScript popups 212 for details on JavaScript popups.

Information for application programmers:

The plain-text popups used in HTML Help are stored in an internal text file in the HTML Help CHM file. This is the file you need to reference in your application calls to field-level popups. By default this file is called **`CSHelp.txt`**, but you can change this file name in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > **Popup Topics** 1462.

Controlling the width of popup topics:

In HTML Help the width of popup windows is controlled by the help viewer on the basis of the amount of text and the user's screen width. Since this system was designed a long time ago it does not allow for modern computers with wide-format screens and multiple monitors. When normal popups are displayed on these computers the popups can be much too wide, which looks terrible.

There are a couple of simple tricks for solving this problem, which are described in Creating popup topics 207 in the Basic Procedures section.

See also:

Creating popup topics 207
Using Context-Sensitive Help 892
Using JavaScript popups 212

11.7.3.6 About map files

The compilers for many modern programming languages have facilities for automatically generating text files called "map files" containing the topic IDs and/or help context numbers for the components and controls used in the program. These files can save you a lot of work in Help+Manual.

Generating missing topics and context numbers:

Help+Manual can use these files both to assign missing help context numbers to existing topics and to automatically generate missing topics with the topic IDs and help context numbers. This second capability is particularly useful for generating the field-level popup topics used to document program components controls and controls with the right-click **What's This?** function and other similar functions. See Auto-generating field-level popups 911 and The Help Context Tool 1241 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Map file syntax:

By default, these files have a very simple syntax, which can be either *#define* syntax or *INI* syntax. When anchor IDs are used they must follow directly on the associated topic ID, separated by a # character:

Example of #define syntax:

```
#define IDH_DEFAULT 100001
#define IDH_OK_BTN 100002
#define IDH_CANCEL_BTN 100003
#define IDH_CLOSE#example 100004
#define IDH_HELP_BTN 100005
#define IDH_APPLY_BTN 100006
#define IDH_APP_HMB 100010
#define IDH_WHAT_IS_THIS_CMD 100011
#define IDH_WHAT_IS_THIS_POPUP 100012
```

Example of INI syntax:

```
AboutImage = 10172
AboutIMPICT = 10000
AddingCallout#example = 10236
AddingCursorsandDazzle = 10230
AddingDropShadow = 10167
AddingLensObject#example = 10234
AddingLinesandArrow = 10229
AddingMoreBitmap = 10225
```

Alternative map file syntax:

When you are exporting map files 1241 with the context tool you can also generate your own alternative syntax using the following variables:

<%TOPICID%>	The topic ID of the topic being exported
<%ANCHORID%>	The anchor ID of the anchor being exported
<%TOPIC_HELPCONTEXT%>	The help context number

Just select the Custom option in the export dialog to configure your own map file with these variables. You can place any text characters you need between the variables, they will be exported as-is.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Restrictions of map files:

Using map files to apply help context numbers to existing topics is very straightforward. However, there are two basic restrictions when you are using map files to generate topics that do not yet exist in your help project:

You cannot generate topic captions

Since the map file syntax only includes the topic ID and the help context number you cannot include captions (i.e. the names of the topics in the TOC) for the topics in the map file and you cannot use the map file to generate captions. All topics generated from map files use the topic ID as the caption.

You can only generate topics without TOC entries

This second restriction follows from the first. Since auto-generated topics cannot have captions they are always generated without TOC entries, as topic files in the Topic Files section of the Project Explorer.

This is generally not a problem since the primary purpose of this function is to auto-generate field-level popup topics for documenting program components. If you need to use the function to generate topics in the TOC you must create TOC items 375 for them manually after importing them.

You cannot assign context numbers to anchors

Help+Manual's context tool can export the information about anchor links to map files but you cannot import context numbers to existing or new anchors from a map file.

See also:

Auto-generating context-sensitive topics 911
The Help Context Tool 1241
Using Context-Sensitive Help 892

11.8 Project Structure & Templates

This section includes some background information about the structure of your projects and some of the features that are important in help files and WebHelp output. Studying this section will give you a better understanding of these formats.

11.8.1 Topic IDs, Context Numbers and Keywords

Topic IDs, context numbers and keywords are grouped together in this chapter because they are all used for locating things in your help files.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Topic IDs and context numbers are used as the "addresses" of topics, both for links within your help files and for context-sensitive calls to your help file from applications.

Keywords are used for generating index entries, which are also hyperlinks to topics in electronic help files. In addition to this there are also special keywords called "A-keywords" can also be used to create other kinds of links, including **See Also...** links to related topics and links between different help files.

11.8.1.1 About topic IDs and anchors

Topic IDs:

Every topic in your help project has a unique alphanumeric topic ID, which you can view by clicking on the topic's tab above the editor pane. The topic ID is required because it is the unique identifier of each topic. Without the topic ID neither Help+Manual nor any electronic help system can find the topic.

Internally, Help+Manual uses the Topic IDs as the "addresses" for accessing topics within your help while you are working. In addition to this they are also used as the addresses for calls to topics in your help from applications, both on their own and in combination with help context numbers 1603.

For information on making these calls to different help formats see the documentation of your programming language and the tutorials for programmers available on the EC Software website.

Topic ID properties:

Maximum topic ID length:	Topic IDs can be up to 255 characters long.
Permitted characters:	Topic IDs are computer-readable addresses and are used as the file names of HTML topic files in HTML-based formats. Because of this, it is advisable to only use **a..z**, **A..Z**, **0..9**, the underline character _ and the **$** character in topic IDs. This is actually stricter than necessary, but following this rule will ensure that you do not experience problems later, particularly in HTML-based publishing formats.
Forbidden characters:	Spaces and a number of special characters like (**\ / : * ? # = + % ! @ [ ] > " | , < > &'**) are explicitly forbidden in topic IDs and Help+Manual will display a warning message if you try to enter them.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Changing topic IDs:

Help+Manual allows you to edit topic IDs at any time. All internal links within your project are updated automatically when you do this. However, remember that changing topic IDs may break links from other projects and calls to the topics from applications.

- For more information see Topic IDs and context numbers 368.

Topic IDs and HTML output files:

Topic IDs are used as the names of the HTML files generated for your topics by Help+Manual. In HTML-based output formats, links and calls to topics simply access the HTML files containing the topics.

This applies both for the visible files generated in WebHelp and the "internal" files used in HTML Help (here the HTML topic files are hidden inside the CHM help file, as though they were inside a directory).

In both cases the file name is created by converting the topic ID to all lower case characters and adding the file extension. In HTML Help this extension is always **`.htm`**. In WebHelp the default is also **`.htm`** but you can change this in **Project Explorer** > **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** > HTML Export Options 1435.

Anchors:

Anchors are named "jump targets" that you can insert in your topics so that you can create links to specific locations within topics. They can be used both for hyperlinks within your help project and for calls to your help topics made from application programs.

Anchors are entered with the Anchor Tool in **Write** > **Insert Object.** The anchors stored in each topic are listed in the topic's tab in the Anchor: list. This list always contains at least one anchor called *(Top of Page),* which is the standard jump target for links without anchors.

- For details see Anchors - jump targets 415.

Maximum anchor ID length:	Anchor IDs can be up to 256 characters long.
Permitted characters:	Spaces and a number of special characters like (**\ / : * ? # = + % ! @ [ ] > " | , < > &'**) are not permitted in anchor IDs and Help+Manual will display a warning message if you try to enter them. In addition to this, however, it is actually advisable only use

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

a..z, **A..Z**, **0..9**, the underline character _ and the **$** character in anchor IDs.

This will ensure that you do not experience problems later, particularly in HTML-based publishing formats. Most browsers only support plain ASCII filenames and anchor names.

Where not supported: Links to anchors are not supported in external windows 1025 in HTML Help.

Anchors with context numbers and keywords

Help+Manual allows you to assign both help context numbers and keywords to anchors. This makes it possible to make help calls to anchors from application programs and to create index entries that take the user to a specific location in a topic instead of to the top of the topic containing the keyword.

- For details see Topic IDs and context numbers 368 and Using keywords with anchors 577 .

Syntax for browser links to anchors in topics

You can create ordinary links from web pages to anchors in your WebHelp topic pages. However, the syntax for these links is slightly different from the standard HTML syntax for linking to anchors:

```
index.html?topicname.htm#anchorname
```

- See Anchors - jump targets 415 for details.

See also:

Topic IDs and context numbers 368
Anchors - jump targets 415

11.8.1.2 About help context numbers

Help context numbers are a second unique numeric identifier for each topic (the first and main identifier is the topic ID 1601). Unlike topic IDs context numbers are optional. You can use them if you want, but you don't have to.

Introduction:

Like topic IDs, context numbers can be viewed and edited in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. They are displayed in the **Help Context Number:** field. You can enter and edit them there, but they can also be assigned automatically. See Topic IDs and context numbers 368 for details.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help context numbers were originally introduced with the now obsolete Winhelp format as the main way of making application calls to help topics, and they are still supported in HTML Help CHM files. Many programmers and programming languages still use them but they have actually become less popular in recent years. Since they are numeric only they are not very "human-friendly" and it is quite easy for a programmer to make a call to the wrong help context number and not notice it.

Most modern programming languages can make calls directly to topic IDs 1601 in HTML Help without using context numbers at all, and this is now the preferred method. Topic IDs are alphanumeric and can be up to 255 characters long, which means that they can be descriptive and human-readable, which significantly reduces errors.

Help context number range:

Help context numbers are stored as unsigned 4-byte integers. This means you can enter values between **1** and **4294967295**. This gives you nearly 4.3 billion unique numbers. If you have a project that requires more context numbers than this we would love to meet you and buy you a beer.

Context number are generally for HTML Help only:

Help context numbers are a Microsoft help technology and since the demise of Winhelp they are only used for application calls to HTML Help. They are not used for internal hyperlinks within your help project and are generally irrelevant in other output formats.

Support for context numbers in WebHelp URLs

However, Help+Manual does support the use of context numbers in URLs used as context references to WebHelp topics. You wouldn't want to use this as your primary reference method for WebHelp – normal topic IDs are human-readable easier to implement without errors – but this support may be useful if you are already using context numbers in CHM and want to use the same references for your WebHelp documentation. See here 899 for details.

Context numbers in anchors:

In addition to context numbers in topics Help+Manual also allows you to assign help context numbers to anchors 415. This makes it possible to make direct context number application help calls to defined points within topics instead of just opening the topic at the top.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Compatibility and call syntax:

Help+Manual's HTML Help output is generated directly by the Microsoft HTML Help compiler and is 100% compatible with HTML Help standards. This also includes the format and syntax of the help context numbers. If your project contains help context numbers you can make calls to them with the standard syntax of the HTML Help API.

For details on making calls to help context numbers see the documentation included with the Microsoft HTML Help Workshop compiler package. In addition to this you can also find some useful tutorials for programmerson the EC Software website that explain how to interface to HTML Help with range of common programming languages. If you use .NET languages see the Guide to CHM Help in .NET on the excellent Helpware site.

See also:

Topic IDs and context numbers 368

11.8.1.3 About index keywords

Index keywords are a list of words associated with a topic that are used to generate the keyword indexes in the output formats that support them. Keywords are entered and viewed in the **Keywords:** field of each topic's tab. In addition to this you can also view and manage the resulting index interactively by right-clicking in the Index tab in the Table of Contents / Index pane.

- See Keywords and Indexes 565 for details on using these features.

Keywords and sub-keywords:

Keywords can have sub-keywords, which are also described as child keywords. This is a standard feature of all indexes in both printed and electronic form. For example, an entry called **Indexes** might have the following kind of child keywords:

Indexes
about
editing
editing, in teams
organizing
problems

One level of sub-keywords only:

Indexes cannot have more than one level of sub-keywords. This is a restriction of the output formats, not of Help+Manual. All the supported output formats only have one level of sub-keywords and Help+Manual is thus also limited to one level.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Choosing relevant keywords:

Producing a good index is not a process that can be automated. It is an art, not a science, and needs to be done manually. There is simply no alternative to the selection of individual relevant keywords in each topic by the author. For example, an index including all occurrences of all the words in your help would be worse than useless, because it would make it impossible to find anything relevant. You need to examine each topic individually and make individual decisions whether a word merits being added to the index or not.

It may be relevant to list every single reference to an author's name, for the sake of completeness. However, in a help file you will not want to list every single reference to most subjects. For example, index entries that refer to passing mentions in introductory chapters will simply waste the user's time. When users click on an index entry they want to find information that they can use, and that should be the criterion for including a term in the index.

See also:

Keywords and Indexes 565

11.8.1.4 About A-Keywords

A-keywords, which are also referred to as "associative keywords" (that's what the A stands for) or "A-link keywords", are quite a mystery to many help authors. They are actually not as complicated as many people believe, but they tend to get neglected because most people believe they are too difficult to understand or use.

A-keywords are available in HTML Help CHM files only

A-keywords are a proprietary Microsoft technology that is only supported in the Microsoft HTML Help CHM format. They used to be supported in the Winhelp HLP format as well, but that is now obsolete and no longer used. You cannot use A-keywords in any other format.

Introduction to A-keywords

The following brief list describes the main features and capabilities of A-keywords. First and foremost it is important to understand that A-keywords are a Microsoft help technology that is only available in HTML Help. Their functionality is not available in any other output format.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

A-keywords are invisible

A-keywords are similar to ordinary index keywords ("K-keywords" or "K-link keywords") but they are never seen by the user. This might seem strange at first – what good is a keyword that nobody can see? That brings us to the purpose of A-keywords:

A-keywords are used for "associative" linking

A-keywords are not used for indexes, they are used for creating "associative" links. When an A-keyword is accessed it returns a list of links to all the topics in the help that contain that keyword. We say that the topics are "associated" with the keyword.

These links are not pre-defined by the help author, they are generated actively when the user views the help. When the user clicks on a special hyperlink that access an A-keyword the help viewer searches all the topics in the help to see whether they contain the keyword, including all topics in external help files in modular help systems 1088.

This makes it possible to use them to generate lists of links to "relevant" topics. To add a topic to the list you just need to include the relevant A-keyword in its Topic Options, in the A-Keywords section.

A-keywords are "soft" and "conditional"

This means that you don't have to "hard code" links to specific topic addresses. Only links to topics containing the A-keyword (or keywords) at runtime are displayed. This means you can create links to topics that may or may not be present when the user views the help, which usually only happens in modular help systems.

A-keywords have their limitations

All this being said, A-keywords do have their drawbacks. They are extremely useful for creating links to external help files in modular projects. However, as you will discover yourself when you try, it is a lot of work to use them to create genuinely meaningful "See also" lists.

The problem is that the inclusion of a simple keyword is too mechanical to be able to provide a real basis for relevance in all but the most simple and technical texts. Also, managing your A-keywords and their relevance is actually much more difficult than simply deciding yourself which topics are really relevant to the current topic. You will either end up overwhelming the user with too many links that are not really relevant, or you will miss the relevant links.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

More information about A-keywords

If you are interested in more background information about the technology and uses of A-keywords the best place to start is the website http://www.helpware.net. Be warned, however, that the information provided there will be easiest to understand if you have experience with developing HTML Help and Winhelp *Note that Windows Vista does not support Winhelp. If you want to be compatible with Vista you must transition to a different help format.* files manually with Microsoft's Help Workshop and HTML Help Workshop!

The main uses of A-keywords

There quite a few technical uses for A-keywords but the main purposes in normal help files are for automated generation of "See also" lists and for links between separate help files in modular help systems 1088.

"See also" lists:

You can use A-keywords to create "See Also" links that automatically display link lists of related topics when the user clicks on them. The list includes all topics found containing the A-keywords specified in the A-link macro definition. These links work in both individual help files and modular help systems 1088 consisting of multiple help files.

One of the most interesting features of this function is that you don't have to specify which help files you want to look in. The help viewer will automatically search all available help files that are part of the modular help system for the A-keyword. This means that it will automatically include topics from modules that are available from the list and exclude topics from modules that are not available.

See Using A-Keywords 579 for details on how to make your own "See also" lists.

Links between help modules:

You can also A-keywords to create links between modular help files 1088. The advantage of this method is that if the target file is not available at runtime the link is not dead. Instead, the user sees an alternative topic from the current help file. If the target file is available the user sees a dialog in which he or she can choose the topic from the target file or the alternative topic.

See Using A-keywords 579 for details on how to make associative links between help modules.

See also:

Keywords and Indexes 565
Using A-keywords 579

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.8.2 Help Windows in HTML Help

The Microsoft HTML Help format uses sets of definitions referred to as "help windows" to configure the help viewers used to display CHM files. Help window definitions can also be used to display individual topics in external windows when you link to them.

Help window definitions are only relevant for HTML Help output. Their settings are ignored in all other output formats.

Help windows in Help+Manual

In Help+Manual help window definitions are stored with your projects. Each project has its own set of help window definitions, which you can view, edit and add to in the Project Explorer in **Configuration** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows**.

Secondary windows

By default there is only one help window called *Main*, which defines the configuration of the main help viewer for HTML Help.

You can define additional "secondary" help windows are used to display topics in external help viewer windows when you link to them. You do this by selecting the name of the secondary window in the Insert Hyperlink dialog, in the *Window:* field.

This is the only use for secondary windows, they have no other purpose and they are only relevant in HTML Help.

See also:

Help Windows settings 1452
Using help windows 194
External windows and invisible topics 1609

11.8.2.1 External windows in HTML Help

In HTML Help you can use additional or "secondary" help window definitions to display topics in external windows. An external window is a full-featured help viewer window that is displayed separately from the main help window. In a way, external windows are like popups, but they have all the features of the main help viewer.

External windows are only supported in HTML Help and can only be activated by specifying a secondary help window in the definition of a hyperlink to the topic you want to open in an external window.

External windows in HTML Help

In HTML Help you must activate secondary windows to be able to display external windows. This is a global setting – when you activate it all links to topics specifying a second-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

ary window will be displayed in external windows. The appearance and features of the external window are defined by the *HTML Help Options* settings in **Configuration > Microsoft HTML Help > Help Windows.**

Note that in HTML Help using a secondary window in a hyperlink does not change the background colors or the topic template, which are controlled by the topic's HTML page template, 203 not by the help window. The buttons, controls, window position and size from the secondary help window definition are all used, however.

- To display an external window with different background colors in HTML Help you must define the topic file itself with an HTML page template that has different background colors.

Secondary windows cannot be used in the TOC

It is not possible to create topics in the TOC that automatically open in external windows when you click on them. You can only activate secondary windows by specifying the window type in a hyperlink definition.

See also:

Help Windows settings 1452
Using secondary windows 1025

11.8.2.2 Help windows in HTML Help

In HTML Help the *Main* help window definition defines the buttons and other features of the main help viewer window. The size and position settings are only used the first time the user opens the help – after that Windows stores the user' settings and uses those the next time the help is opened.

Secondary help windows can be used in HTML Help to display topics in external windows with hyperlinks. This is a global setting (see below) – if you turn it on all topics associated with secondary windows will be displayed in external windows.

About help windows in HTML help:

Level of control:	The definition of the *Main* help window controls the entire appearance of the HTML Help viewer and the controls it contains. The size and position settings are only used the first time the user opens the help – after that Windows stores the user' settings and uses those the next time the help is opened.
Secondary windows:	Hyperlinks to topics specifying secondary windows can display the topic in an external window if this feature is activated in the HTML

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help Options in **Configuration** > **Microsoft HTML Help** > **Help Windows**.

If this feature is not activated the *Window:* option in the Insert Hyperlink dialog will simply be ignored.

Popups: Help window settings are irrelevant for popup topics. Popup topic files are defined by selecting "Popup" as the Topic Class, either when defining the topic or in the tab.

See also:

Help Windows settings 1452
Using help windows 194
Creating popup topics 207

11.8.3 HTML Templates

Help+Manual uses editable HTML files referred to as "templates" to define the basic layout of your topic pages in your published output. There are templates for your topic pages that are used for all HTML-based output formats and additional templates that are only used for WebHelp output, which are used to define the overall layout (frameset) and the Table of Contents, Search and Index panes in the WebHelp help system generated by Help+Manual.

If you are using an HTML skin you must edit your templates and settings in the skin!

Nowadays you will almost always choose an HTML skin 667 to publish your project to WebHelp or HTML Help/CHM. A skin is a special kind of Help+Manual project without topics that only stores your HTML templates and all the settings relevant for HTML output to these two formats. When you choose a skin, the templates and settings in the skin completely replace those in your project.

Normally, a skin is pre-designed and you don't need to change anything. However, if you do want to change something, you must do all your editing in the **.hmskin** skin file. Editing in your Help+Manual project won't have any effect because those templates and settings are not used.

To edit a skin, make a copy of the **.hmskin** skin file in your project folder and then open it in Help+Manual by selecting **.hmskin** as the file type to open in the **Open** dialog. All the templates and settings are in the same places as in a normal Help+Manual project.

Exception: HTML Export Options

The *HTML Export Options* section is not stored in skins and needs to be edited in your project.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

HTML templates are not help windows!

HTML topic page templates and help windows 1609 are completely separate. Help windows are only relevant in HTML Help (CHM), where they are used to configure the help viewer and for opening linked topics in external windows.

HTML topic page templates can be assigned to individual topics in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window. Help windows cannot be assigned to individual topics, you can only use them in hyperlinks.

HTML topic page templates

These templates define the layout and appearance of your topic pages in all HTML-based output formats, including the background colors of the topic and the topic header.

By default there is one HTML topic page template called *Default* that is assigned to all topics. You can edit this template and you can also define as many additional templates as you like and assign them to individual topics, by selecting them in the *HTML Page Template:* field in the Topic Options tab on the left of the main editor window.

The HTML topic page templates can be accessed in **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** in the Project Explorer. See Using HTML Templates 1026 for more details.

How topic page templates work

If you are familiar with HTML, you will know that HTML pages consist of a number of standard sections. The visible content of the page is stored between the <body> and </body> tags. The general page definition and any additional functions (for example the page title, keywords, scripts, search engine information etc.) are stored in the other sections above and sometimes also below this main body section.

When you publish your project to HTML-based output formats the HTML pages for your topics are "assembled" from two components: The HTML page template is taken as the framework and the content from the Help+Manual editor is inserted in this template between the <body> and </body> tags. Individual content outside the body section is inserted with variables. The content of your topics is also inserted by a variable called <%TOPIC_TEXT%>.

Additional WebHelp templates

In addition to the HTML topic page templates there are also four additional HTML templates that are used to configure your WebHelp output. These templates define the layout of the entire help (frameset) and the pages for the Table of Contents, Search and Index panes in your WebHelp output.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

These templates can be accessed in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **WebHelp** in the Project Explorer. Unlike the topic page templates, there is only one copy of each of these WebHelp templates per project, you cannot define additional versions as you can for HTML topic page templates. However, you can apply different versions to your output with "skins". See Transforming your Output with Skins 638 for details and instructions.

See also:

Using HTML Templates 1026
Templates in Help+Manual 1007
Using help windows 194

11.8.3.1 Graphics in HTML templates

You can reference external graphics in HTML templates, using any graphics types supported in HTML. This is generally JPG, GIF and PNG.

Automatic identification and export of graphics files

Graphics referenced in your templates with `<img>` tags and with background attributes in `<body>` and `<table>` tags (see below) will be located and exported automatically if possible:

- Graphics listed in the project search path 1405 will be found and exported automatically. You do not need to enter path information in your templates for graphics files stored in these locations. You do need to add your project directory to the project search path explicitly if you have anything stored there directly, however.
- Graphics stored in other locations will be found and exported if you include the paths to the files in your template code. These paths will be stripped from the code automatically when the project is published, where appropriate.

If you use other tags and/or store the files in one of the above locations you need to add the files to your Baggage Files. 1119 They will then be exported to your published output automatically, irrespective of where and how they are referenced.

See Graphics references in HTML templates 1056 for instructions and more information.

How graphics references in your templates are processed:

When you publish your project to an HTML-based format Help+Manual parses the template, resolves the file paths to graphics files if specified, copies the file to the destination output directory and removes any path information from the file references. In the case of HTML Help and Visual Studio Help the graphic is automatically integrated in the output file.

However, the parser only parses the three HTML tags and attributes listed below. No other image references are processed automatically.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Supported HTML tags:

Graphics referenced using the tags and attributes shown below are identified automatically by Help+Manual and exported with your project when you publish to HTML-based output formats. You do not need to do anything yourself to include them in your project.

If you reference graphics in your templates using other tags you should add them to the Baggage Files 1119 to make sure they are exported with your project. In particular, this also includes the variant images for mouseover buttons as they are not referenced with the tags listed below!

You should also add your graphics to the Baggage Files if they are not stored in the project folder and you do not want to add the paths to the graphics in your template code.

Automatically Parsed Tags	Supported Attributes
<body>	Images referenced with the background="" attribute. ***OR*** Images referenced within the style="" attribute using the syntax **style="background: #FFFFFF url(image.jpg)"** (this can be combined with other style elements, of course)
<img>	Images referenced with the src="" attribute
<table>	Images referenced with the background="" attribute ***OR*** Images referenced within the style="" attribute using the syntax **style="background: #FFFFFF url(image.jpg)"** (this can be combined with other style elements, of course)

See also:

Using Baggage Files 1119
Using HTML Templates 1026
Editing HTML templates 1030
Help Windows 1609

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.8.3.2 HTML Template Variables

You can use all global predefined variables 1561 and user-defined variables 919 in HTML templates 1026. In addition to this you can also use the following special predefined variables, which are only relevant in HTML templates.

Variables for use in topic page templates only:

These variables can only be used in topic page templates. They are valid in all HTML-based output formats (HTML Help, WebHelp, Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks and Visual Studio Help).

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm`, `topic2name.htm` and so on.
<%DOCCHARSET%>	Inserts the correct character set information in the meta tags at the beginning of the HTML output pages. This variable is essential in all templates and should not be removed. If you do remove it you will get an error message from the compiler.
<%DOCTYPE%>	Inserts the correct DOCTYPE tag at the beginning of the HTML output pages. This variable is essential in all templates and should normally not be removed. If you do remove it you will get an error message from the compiler. You can insert your own <DOCTYPE> declaration in the template explicitly and if you do this no error message will be displayed. However, it may produce unexpected results.
<%GA4ACCOUNT%>	Filled with the value specified for the for your new Google Analytics 4 (GA4) Google Analytics account 666 (your tracking ID).
<%GAACCOUNT%>	Filled with the value specified for the for your old Universal Analytics Google Analytics account 666 (your tracking ID).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on.
<%HM_LINKLIST_SIBLINGS%> <%HM_LINKLIST_CHILDREN%> <%HM_LINKLIST_ANCHORS%>	These variables can be used in the topic HTML page template. They insert UL link lists: SIBLINGS: All the siblings of the current topic. CHILDREN: All the children of the current topic. ANCHORS: Anchors in the current topic. **Not for use in V3 and V4 skins:** Note that you can't use these variables in the page templates for Premium Pack V3 and V4 skins. Since topic content is loaded dynamically in these skins, variables set in the template don't change.
<%HREF_CURRENT_PAGE%>	Link address of the current page.
<%HREF_DEFAULT_PAGE%>	Link address of the "Default" topic. This is used for the standard **Top** navigation link in the topic headers so that users can return to the default topic in your project.
<%HREF_NEXT_PAGE%>	Link address of the next topic.
<%HREF_PARENT_CHAPTER%>	Link address of the parent topic (chapter). This can be used as an alternative to <%HREF_DEFAULT_PAGE%>. If the parent is a chapter without text, this is the link address of the parent's parent. If no valid parent is available, the variable is the link address of the default page.
<%HREF_PREVIOUS_PAGE%>	Link address of the previous topic (used for Previous/Next buttons).
<%STYLESHEET%>	Inserts the reference to the CSS stylesheet con-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on. taining all the styles information for your project. This variable is essential in all templates and should not be removed. If you do remove it you will get an error message from the compiler.
<%TOPIC_AKEYWORDS%>	Inserts all the A-keywords 579 of the current topic, comma-separated.
<%TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS%>	Generates a series of "breadcrumb trail" navigation links to topics above the current topic in the TOC tree. This variable is empty in top-level topics. In second-level topics and below the variable generates a series of links in the format **Link1** > **Link2** > **Link3** ... The current topic is not included in the series. If you want to place the current topic title at the end of the breadcrumb trail you can do so with the `HTML Template Variables` variable (see below). The breadcrumb trail variable is empty in topics in the Invisible Topics section. This variable has a matching condition pair: <IF_TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS> and <IFNOT_TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS>. These conditions can be used to only insert the trail where it is relevant and to insert alternative content when it is not relevant. See here 1036 for details on how to use this variable.
<%TOPIC_HEADER%>	Inserts the header of the current topic if it exists. If the current topic has no header the value of this variable is null. This can be different from the

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on. topic caption inserted with <%TOPIC_TITLE%>.
<%TOPIC_HEADER_TEXT%>	Inserts the header of the current topic as plain text. This is particularly useful if your project headers are different from and longer than the TOC captions, which is inserted with <%TOPIC_TITLE%>. This is used primarily for search engine optimization, for which you would insert it in the **description** meta tag, like this: `<meta name="description" content="<%TOPIC_HEADER_TEXT%>">`
<%TOPIC_DESCRIPTION%> <%TOPICMETA:DESCRIPTION%>	Inserts the text from the *Description* field in the topic's Topic Options tab if you have entered a description there. Otherwise it inserts the first 177 characters of the topic text, followed by an ellipsis (...). This can be used in combination with the "featured image" (see next row) to insert a "title" image and a description for your topic in your template. In addition to this it can also be used to populate the description meta tag for search engines like this: `<meta name="description" content="<%TOPIC_DESCRIPTION%>">`
<%TOPICMETA:PICTURE%> <%TOPIC_PICTURE%>	Returns the file name of the "featured image" for the current topic, if one has been set in the topic's Topic Options. Returns blank if no featured image has been set.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on.
<%TOPIC_KEYWORDS%>	Inserts all the keywords 565 of the current topic, comma-separated. Needless to say, this variable is essential for the keyword index and shouldn't be removed...
<%TOPIC_TEXT%>	Inserts the body text of a topic, i.e. the entire topic as edited and formatted in your project in the Help+Manual editor. This is the most important variable. If you leave it out your topics will be empty!
<%TOPICTITLE%>	Title text of the current topic. This is taken from the **`Title Tag:`** field in the **Topic Options** tab (on the left of the editor window) and is normally the same as the TOC caption for the topic and will change automatically when you edit the TOC caption in the TOC. So this variable gives you the TOC caption, ***unless*** you edit the Title Tag field **Editing the Title Tag text in Topic Options:** Editing the **`Title Tag:`** field manually "uncouples" this field from the TOC caption. The variable then still returns the contents of the field in Topic Options, so if you want to use it for the TOC caption we recommend not editing the field in Topic Options. To "recouple" the Topic Options field with the TOC caption, just edit either so that the texts are both identical. This works the same as the coupling between the TOC caption and the topic header text. **Deprecated older version:** The older <\%TOPIC_TITLE%> version of this variable is still supported and does not need to

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on. be changed in your projects. However, please always use the current <%TOPICTITLE%> version now.
<%TOPIC_TITLE_PATH%>	This variable is similar to the breadcrumbs variable above but it delivers the breadcrumb trail as a plain text string without any links. Unlike the breadcrumbs variable it also includes the name of the current topic, so it always delivers a full trail. The primary use of this variable is for search engine optimization, for which you would insert it in the `<title>` tag of your topic page template instead of the normal <%TOPIC_TITLE%> variable, like this: `<title><%TOPIC_TITLE_PATH%></title>` **Modification for HTML Help:** If you also output to HTML Help you should use conditional text to ensure that this variable is only used in Browser Help, otherwise you will get the full path as the topic name in your search results in the HTML Help viewer. Do it like this: `<title><IF_HTML><%TOPIC_TITLE_PATH%> ></IF_HTML><IF_CHM><%TOPIC_TITLE%> ></IF_CHM></title>`
<%TOPICID%>	Returns the plain topic ID as written in the **Topic ID:** field of , without any filename extension and without changing the ID text to lower case. This can be used to add an ID reference in your meta attributes in your web pages, for example: `<meta name="id" content="<%TOPICID%> >" />`

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
Note on HREF-Variables:	All the HREF variables insert the local names of the corresponding pages within the current directory without any path information, e.g. `topic1name.htm, topic2name.htm` and so on. (This variable can also be used in normal topic pages.)
<%XMLLANG%>	Returns the project language code, e.g. **en-us** for US English.

Variables for use in WebHelp only:

All the remaining variables are only relevant in WebHelp 1510 (HTML):

Variables for WebHelp 3 mode only:

In WebHelp 3 mode, the JavaScript files, graphics and video files and CSS files are all saved in sub-folders of the main WebHelp folder. You can use these variables in your HTML templates to automatically insert the relative paths to these folders.

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%HM_RELPATH_JAVASCRIPT%>	Returns the relative path to the JavaScript files folder: **./js/**
<%HM_RELPATH_IMAGES%>	Returns the relative path to the images and media files folder (video files are also stored here): **./images/**
<%HM_RELPATH_CSS%>	Returns the relative path to the CSS files folder: **./css/**

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Global variables for all WebHelp templates:

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%HREF_CONTENT_PAGE%>	Link address of the TOC page
<%HREF_INDEX_PAGE%>	Link address of the keyword index-page
<%HREF_SEARCH_PAGE%>	Link address of the full-text search page
<%HREF_TOP_PAGE%>	Link address of the top frame (e.g. "index.html")

Variables for the Layout frameset template only:

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%HREF_CONTENT_PAGE_DYN%>	Link address of the dynamic TOC page.
<%HREF_CONTENT_PAGE_STATIC%>	Link address of the static TOC page.
<%NAVIGATION_SCRIPT%>	Inserts the navigation script required by the top frame.

Variables for the Table of Contents template only:

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%TABLE_OF_CONTENTS%>	Inserts the entire TOC in the page.

Variables for the Keyword Index template only:

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%KEYWORD_INDEX%>	Inserts the entire keyword index in the page.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Variables for the Search template only:

Variable	Content and/or function of the variable
<%SEARCH_SCRIPT%>	Inserts the full-text search script in the page.

See also:

Using Variables 917
Using HTML Templates 1026
Editing HTML templates 1030
Help Windows 1609

11.8.3.3 HTML Template Output Conditions

You can use all of Help+Manual's standard conditional output options in HTML templates, both your user-defined include options 988 and options based on the current output format. In addition to this there are a few special conditional switches which are only for use in Help+Manual's WebHelp output, because they are only relevant there. See the lists below for details.

These conditions are like special HTML tags. They are used to enclose blocks of HTML code in your template that you want to include in the output only if the condition is fulfilled.

In HTML templates you can only use output format conditions for HTML-based output formats (CHM, HTML, EBOOK and HXS). This is because these templates are only used for HTML-based output – so <IF_PDF> would not have any meaning, for example. Note that the EBOOK condition applies both for Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks.

Conditions are stripped before publishing

All the condition tags are stripped from your code before actually generating the HTML output. No proprietary tags are included in your output!

Conditional tags in templates are hard-wired to the output format

Conditional tags in HTML templates look very similar to the conditions you use for content in your project. However, there is one very important difference: In templates, the true/false status of the conditions is hard-wired to the output format and cannot be changed.

In the Publish screen you can include content tagged for other output formats than the one you are currently publishing to by activating the checkboxes for those formats manually. This has no effect on the conditional tags in your templates, however. This is very important, because in templates you will often want to exclude code that would cause errors

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

in some output formats. If this wasn't the case, including content tagged for WebHelp in a CHM file the Publish screen could cause serious errors if that also included template code tagged exclusively for WebHelp in a CHM file.

Combining conditions with AND and OR logic

You can combine conditions to achieve AND and OR logic if necessary. For AND you need to nest two sets of conditons, for OR you combine the conditions in a single tag.

Nesting conditions for AND logic

If you only want to include content when multiple conditions are all true you need to nest them like this:

```
<IF_HTML><IF_TOGGLES> ... </IF_TOGGLES></IF_HTML>
```

The above conditions will only include the content between the tags if the output format is WebHelp and there are toggles on the current page.

Combining conditions for OR logic

If you want to include content if any one of multiple conditions is true you combine them in a single tag separated by the | pipe character.

Important: Note that this does not work with **IFNOT** conditions, only with **IF** conditions!

You can use this feature like this:

```
<IF_CHM|TOGGLES> ... </IF_CHM|TOGGLES>
```

The above condition will include the content between the tags if the current format is CHM or if there are toggles on the page, or if both are the case.

Predefined HTML template conditions:

In addition to the predefined conditions listed here you can also use your own user-defined include options 988 as conditions in HTML templates. See Conditional output in HTML templates 1052 for details on how to use the conditions.

Conditions	Function of the condition
<IF_CHM>	True when you generate HTML Help/CHM.
<IF_EBOOK>	True for eWriter/Windows EXE eBooks (false for other eBook types).

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Conditions	Function of the condition
<IF_EPUB>	True for ePUB and Kindle/Mobi eBooks (false for eWriter Help).
<IF_FRAMES>	True if WebHelp is exported with frames (a frame-based format is selected in the Navigation 1420 options). This could be used for entering a link from topic pages to your TOC page when you select the **No Frames, No Scripts** layout option, for example. Only relevant for WebHelp.
<IF_GA4ACCOUNT>	True if the setting for your new Google Analytics 4 (GA4) Google Analytics account 666 is not empty.
<IF_GAACCOUNT>	True if the setting for your old Universal Analytics Google Analytics account 666 is not empty.
<IF_HTML>	True when you generate WebHelp (HTML)
<IF_HXS>	True when you generate Visual Studio Help (2008 or 2010)
<IF_INDEX_PAGE>	True if a keyword index is included in the output. For example, you could use this to exclude a link to the index page from the TOC page if the keyword index is not included. Only relevant for WebHelp.
<IF_NEXT_PAGE>	True if a next page exists. Used to suppress or display a grayed-out version of the **Next** button in the very last topic. Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_PREVIOUS_PAGE>	True if a previous page exists (the variable <% HREF_PREVIOUS_PAGE%> is not empty). Used to suppress or display a grayed-out version of the **Previous** navigation button in the very first topic. Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_SEARCH_PAGE>	True if full-text search is included in the output. For example, you could use this to exclude a link to the search page from the TOC or keyword index page if the search function is turned off. Only relevant for

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Conditions	Function of the condition
	WebHelp.
<IF_TOGGLES>	True if the current topic contains one or more toggles 382 (expanding text and images). Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS>	True if the <%TOPIC_BREADCRUMBS%> variable is not empty (see HTML template variables 1569). For example, this variable is always empty in topics in the Invisible Topics section and in top-level topics. Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_TOPIC_HEADER>	True if the current topic has a header and the header is not empty (the variable <%TOPIC_HEADER%> is not equal to ""). Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_TOPIC_PICTURE>	True if the current topic has a featured image associated with it. You can then use this to insert the image. Can only be used in topic page templates.
<IF_XHTML>	True if XHTML 1.1 output is activated in your HTML Export Options. 1435 You will generally only need this in reusable skins, when the skin may be used for projects published with either normal HTML or XHTML.

"IFNOT" versions negate the meaning of the conditions:

Exclude Conditions	Function of the exclude condition
<IFNOT_CONDITIONNAME>	Negates the positive version of the condition. Content between the condition tags is only inserted if the condition is not true. Available for all conditions.

See also:

User-defined include options 988
Using HTML Templates 1026
Conditional output in HTML templates 1052
Help Windows 1609

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

11.9 International Languages and Unicode

Help+Manual's project files are always encoded in Unicode, which means that you can develop help projects in all languages, including Asian languages and other languages with more than 255 characters that are supported under Windows. The only restriction is on right-to-left languages like Arabic, Farsi and Hebrew. You can edit projects in RTL languages, but you can only publish to HTML Help CHM and WebHelp. Other output formats are not supported for RTL languages.

When you are working with languages requiring Unicode and some other languages requiring special characters, including Eastern European languages, Greek and Turkish, it is important to configure your project correctly to avoid problems in your published help files.

In addition to this there are also some important requirements for your Windows configuration for Unicode-based languages, and you need to be aware of these before you start work on a project in a language requiring Unicode.

The topics in this chapter provide some useful background information on handling international languages that should make these issues easier to understand.

See also:

Language Settings 1403 (Configuration Options)
International Language Setup 143

11.9.1 About H+M's Unicode support

This topic provides some important background information that will help you to understand how to use Help+Manual with languages that cannot be edited or displayed properly without Unicode.

In addition to reading this section please also see International languages setup 143 and Language Settings 1403 for details on configuring your project output in the language you are using, both with Unicode-based languages and other languages.

Unicode support in Help+Manual's output formats:

Provided the other requirements listed below are met Help+Manual can output projects written in Unicode-based languages to all its output formats.

Windows versions supporting Unicode:

Help+Manual requires XP, Vista, Windows 7 or later. You cannot run the program on Windows 95, 98, ME and NT4 because these versions of Windows do not support Unicode. Windows 2000 may work but it is not officially supported.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Windows language version requirements:

Although you can edit and publish projects on any language version of Windows that is properly configured you can only test the published Unicode HTML Help properly on a version of Windows with a matching language.

For example, Chinese HTML Help can only be tested properly on a Chinese version of Windows. You may be able to display the help, but things like full-text search and the index will not work correctly.

This means that ideally, a matching language version of Windows XP or later is required for development of help in Unicode-based languages. You need a Chinese Windows to develop Chinese help, Thai Windows to develop Thai help and so on.

Requirements for publishing projects:

The Microsoft help compiler for HTML Help (CHM files) is quite old and it does not support Unicode directly. This means that some special configuration settings in Windows are required when you are publishing projects using Unicode-based languages like Chinese or Thai to HTML Help.

WebHelp, Windows Exe and ePUB eBooks, DOCX, Visual Studio Help:

You can publish Unicode projects to these formats with any version of Windows XP or later provided you have the necessary language support installed to display and edit the language you are using. Help+Manual itself handles the Unicode output to WebHelp, eBooks and MS Word DOCX, and the MS Help 2.0 compiler is fully Unicode-compliant.

HTML Help:

The HTML Help compiler does not support Unicode directly. (This is a restriction of the compiler, not of Help+Manual). To be able to publish a project written in a Unicode-based language to HTML Help the "system locale" of your version of Windows Windows XP or later must be set to match the language you are using. This is necessary to enable the HTML Help compiler to process the language correctly for Unicode output.

Changing the system locale
Note that the *system locale* and the *user locale* are different! Simply setting the display and/or data entry language does not change the system locale!

1. Log in to a user account with administrator privileges.
2. Open the **Regional and Languages** section in the Windows Control Panel.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- **Windows XP:** Select your language as the default language for non-Unicode programs in the **Advanced** tab (this tab is only displayed if you have administrator privileges!).
- **Windows Vista and Windows 7:** Select the Change System Locale button in the Administrative tab (this tab is only displayed if you have administrator privileges!).

3. Click on **OK** to apply the setting and then restart Windows.

Requirements for viewing Unicode-based help:

WebHelp, eBooks, MS Word DOCX:

You can view Unicode help in these formats with any version of Windows 95 or later provided you have the necessary language support installed to display the language in question. The browser and word processor used to display WebHelp and DOCX must be Unicode-enabled, of course. The operating system must also be able to run the reader software for ePUB – some readers may not run on very early versions of Windows.

HTML Help:

You can display Unicode-based languages with any version of Windows XP or later provided you have the necessary support installed to display the language you are using. However, some features of the help, such as the full-text search and index, will only work properly on Windows versions with a matching language.

Visual Studio Help:

Visual Studio Help is only supported on Windows Windows XP or later. However, it is fully Unicode-compliant and will display properly with all features on any language version of these versions of Windows provided they have support installed for the language of your help file. Note that Visual Studio Help is only relevant for documenting programming components in the Visual Studio .NET environment. It cannot be used for documenting normal application programs.

See also:

International languages setup 143
Language Settings 1403

11.9.2 About project language settings

The language settings for your project in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Language Settings** control how texts with international languages and character sets are handled in your output. If you work in English or any other Western European language you should not need to change the default settings, but in other languages you will need to adjust the settings to avoid font display problems in your published output.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Language of the Help File:

This sets the language code of your project. On its own this setting does not actually affect how characters are displayed, it only identifies the language to the system and controls how sorting is handled in the Keyword Index and everywhere else where sorting is used.

Setting for English and other Western European Languages:

The default setting is **English (United States)** and if you are using English or any other Western European language you don't need to change this. In fact, it's better if you don't because if you do you may experience a known problem in your HTML Help output: On some users' computers the title bar of your help will sometimes display "HTML Help" instead of the title of your help project. Setting this option to **English (United States)** will prevent this problem.

Setting for other languages:

If you are using languages with special character sets or Unicode character sets like Eastern European languages, Greek, Turkish, Chinese, Japanese or Thai you must change this setting to the language you are using. In these languages this setting makes sure that sorting works correctly. In addition to this it also identifies the language to the system so that special characters and Unicode processing (if necessary) are handled correctly for the language.

In addition to this you must also change the **Font Character Set** setting (see below) to the correct character set for your language. In these languages both these settings must set to the correct values for the language you are using for the language to be handled properly in your output.

Bi-directional Language Mode:

This is used to switch Help+Manual's writing mode to right-to-left for languages like Hebrew, Arabic and Farsi. The setting makes radical changes to the way Help+Manual operates, switching the writing direction of the TOC and all text in both the program itself and all output formats.

Don't change the default setting unless you are using one of these languages! Please also note that right-to-left languages are only supported in HTML Help, you cannot publish help in other formats in these languages.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Font character set:

This is the setting that really controls how international characters are displayed on the user's computer, because it defines the character set containing the characters to be displayed.

Setting for English and other Western European Languages:

The default setting is **ANSI_CHARSET** and this character set contains all the characters required for English and all other Western European languages. If you are using any of these languages you do not need to change this, and you shouldn't! For example, if you change it to **DEFAULT_CHARSET** or any other value you may experience display problems with special characters in your output.

Setting for other languages:

If you are using languages with special character sets or Unicode character sets like Eastern European languages, Greek, Turkish, Chinese, Japanese or Thai you must set the correct character set for the language you are using to ensure that all characters are handled correctly in your output.

In addition to this you must also change the **Language of the Help File** setting (see above) to ensure correct sorting and to identify the language you are using to the system. In all these languages both these settings must set to the correct values for the language you are using to be handled properly in your output.

The Default Font setting:

This setting is only relevant for HTML Help (CHM). Despite its rather misleading name, which was chosen by Microsoft, it does not set the default font for your entire project. It only sets the font for the Table of Contents (TOC) and dialog boxes displayed in CHM files.

Setting for English and Western European languages

The default setting for this is `MS Sans Serif,8,0` and the HTML Help viewer is designed for the size of letters generated by this font at this setting. It is thus generally advisable to leave the setting as it is for English and Western European languages. If you do change it you should test your published help thoroughly on as many versions of Windows as you can and with Windows set to both regular and large fonts to make sure that everything fits.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Languages with special character sets

It may be necessary to choose other fonts for languages with special character sets, including Eastern European languages, Greek, Turkish and Asian languages. In these cases you may need to experiment a little until you find a font that produces satisfactory results.

You should always use a standard font included with Windows in these languages, however, otherwise the font may not be available on your users' systems when the help is displayed.

See also:

Language Settings 1403
International Languages Setup 143

11.9.3 Language settings and PDF

There are some additional settings that are relevant for PDF output when you are publishing Unicode-based languages like Asian languages.

The Reference Printer Driver for PDF

In addition to the language settings in the Project Explorer in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Language Settings**, which apply to all output formats, font handling in PDF and printed user manuals is also controlled by the reference printer driver that is used to generate the PDF output. (Printed manuals are also generated using PDF.)

Problems with the reference driver used for generating PDF output can also result in incorrect displays for special characters and international languages. However, if you experience issues like this first check the language settings of your project to make sure that everything is set up correctly. If you still have problems in your PDF output after making sure that your language settings are correct you can try using a different reference printer driver.

To set the reference printer driver for PDF output go to **View** > **Program Options** > **PDF Export**. See Program Options - PDF Export 1271 for more details.

CID font embedding

The CID font embedding option enables more efficient embedding of Unicode fonts in PDF files, particularly for Asian languages with very large character sets. You can set it in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **Font Embedding.** See CID font embedding for Unicode fonts 1450 for more details on this.

See also:

Language Settings 1403

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Program Options - PDF Export 1271
PDF Font Embedding 1447

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Frequently Asked Questions

Typical questions organized by category. Where necessary, links are provided to relevant sections of the help.

Picture courtesy of pixabay or picjumbo

12 Frequently Asked Questions

12.1 General questions

Which help format is the best?
There is no simple answer to this question. Each of the formats currently supported by Help+Manual (eight including printed manuals) has its advantages and disadvantages. For detailed information see Help Formats 1504 in the **Reference** section.

How can I integrate my help files with my application?
Help+Manual creates 100% standards-conform help files. How published help files are integrated with Windows applications depends on the development tool used for creating the application. You can download a collection of free tutorials for programmers from our website describing how to integrate HTML Help with number of leading programming tools:

https://www.helpandmanual.com/support_tutorials.html

WebHelp can be integrated with your application with normal URLs. The syntax is explained in Application links to WebHelp 440, along with examples.

Where can I get the Microsoft help compilers?
A free Microsoft help compiler is needed to generate HTML help CHM files. The HTML Help Workshop compiler package can be freely downloaded from the Microsoft website.

However, since the compiler is quite hard to find on the Microsoft site and the location sometimes changes we provide a link to the correct version on our website:

https://www.helpandmanual.com/downloads_mscomp.html

Visual Studio Help 2008 compiler:
The Visual Studio Help 2008 compiler for the HXS format is part of the Visual Studio Help Integration Kit (VSIK) which can be downloaded from the Microsoft MSDN website. (Visual Studio Help 2010 does not require a compiler.) However, it is not a standalone compiler, it can only be used in combination with the Visual Studio .NET programming package. You don't need it if you don't have this package. This format is only used for documenting Visual Studio .NET components. It is not used for creating normal help for applications and you will not need it unless you are a Visual Studio .NET programmer.

12.2 Publishing questions

I get a message saying topics have been "implicitly included"!
This is the result of a configuration option that prevents dead hyperlinks in your output. When this option is used Help+Manual will automatically include topics referenced by active hyperlinks even if you exclude them from your output with conditional output controls.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

There are a number of other options and methods for dealing with hyperlinks to excluded topics. See Preventing dead links 984 for more information on all these options.

I get a message saying hyperlinks in my output have been deleted!
This is the result of a configuration option that prevents dead hyperlinks in your output. When this option is used Help+Manual will automatically convert active hyperlinks to excluded topics to plain text.

There are a number of other options and methods for dealing with hyperlinks to excluded topics. See Preventing dead links 984 for more information on all these options.

I get a message saying the "help compiler" cannot be found!
HTML Help (CHM) compiler:

You need to install the free Microsoft HTML Help Workshop help compiler package to be able to publish your project to the HTML Help (CHM) format. You can download this compiler from this page on our website:

https://www.helpandmanual.com/downloads_mscomp.html

After installing the compilers to **View** > **Program Options** > **Compilers** and check that the paths to the compiler program is correct.

Kindle eBook compiler:

This is required for publishing Kindle/Mobi eBooks. See Amazon Kindle/Mobi eBooks 753 for details on how to get and install the compiler for Help+Manual.

Visual Studio Help compiler:

The Visual Studio Help 2008 compiler for the HXS format is part of the Visual Studio Help Integration Kit (VSIK) which can be downloaded from the Microsoft MSDN website. (Visual Studio Help 2010 does not require a compiler.) However, it is not a standalone compiler, it can only be used in combination with the Visual Studio .NET programming package. You don't need it if you don't have this package. This format is only used for documenting Visual Studio .NET components. It is not used for creating normal help for applications and you will not need it unless you are a Visual Studio .NET programmer.

See also:

Publishing your Output 613
Conditions and Customized Output 969

12.3 Dynamic styles questions

My paragraph style is "stuck", applying a style doesn't seem to change it!
You have probably applied manual formatting to the paragraph. To apply a new style or reapply the original settings of the current style first select the entire paragraph, then apply the style. If only part of the text in the paragraph is selected only font attributes are applied.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Imported formatted text is always initially "manually formatted". You must apply styles to it to bring it under the control of the Help+Manual styles system. For example, you can use Create style from selection 281 to define and use new styles on the basis of your imported formatted text.

I can't reformat a new empty paragraph. Applying a new style doesn't seem to change anything.
A new paragraph must contain some text before you can apply a style correctly. Enter some text first, then you will be able to apply the style.

Nothing happens when I apply a style to a list paragraph!
The indentation of bulleted and numbered lists is controlled by the first item in the list. You can apply styles to the other items but the paragraph attributes will be ignored in all items except the first list item. See Formatting lists 334 for more details.

See also:

Text Formatting and Styles 273

12.4 Editing questions

I'm trying to activate paragraph borders but no borders are being displayed!
You have to select a Border Style option in the Paragraph Border & Background 1339 dialog. The default setting is *None* and this does not display any borders.

Editing has become very slow and my .hmxz project file is much larger than I expected!
You probably have a large number of image objects embedded in the text. This can happen when you copy and paste images and text together MS Word. This automatically inserts the images as embedded OLE objects, which uses up a very large amount of memory and computer resources. Inserting a large number of large OLE objects can also have the same effect, particularly on older and slower computers with limited memory.

To solve this problem you can convert these embedded images into external graphics files. Just right-click on the embedded images and select *Convert Embedded Image* in the popup menu.

Identifying embedded images:
When you click on an embedded image it does not appear as a "negative" image. Normally-inserted images appear as negatives with all their colors reversed when you click on them.

I'm having trouble copying paragraphs with the mouse – my copied paragraph gets "combined" with the next paragraph!
You're probably used to working with a word processor like Word or Open Office. Help+Manual's editor is a little different from these programs and it stores its paragraph formatting in a different way. Because of this it's not possible to select the "paragraph mark" at the end of each paragraph.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

The best way to copy paragraphs "cleanly" is to press **Enter** once in the target location to create an empty paragraph, then copy to the empty paragraph. After completing the copy you can then delete any extra paragraphs without losing style information.

I sometimes experience unexpected small changes in indents and spacing when I change paragraph and other formatting attributes!
Help+Manual calculates all dimensions in pixels internally. If you display your dimensions in inches or another unit the values are converted from pixels and the results must often be rounded.

If you want to work with maximum precision choose pixels for all dimensions. You will get used to it quite quickly and then you won't experience any rounding "surprises".

When I format lists in a single indented paragraph the indent disappears!
Technically lists need to contain at least two items (paragraphs) because the formatting of the list is "controlled" by the first paragraph. You can solve this problem by selecting more than one paragraph ***or*** the entire text of a single paragraph before selecting the bullet or numbering tool in the Toolbar.

Alternatively you can also place the cursor at the very beginning of the paragraph (before the first paragraph) before selecting the list tool, this will also work.

See also:

Writing and formatting text 223

12.5 HTML and HTML Help questions

My HTML Help CHM file doesn't work on a network drive – I just see error messages instead of the topic pages!
Windows now imposes severe restrictions on accessing HTML Help CHM files on networks and the Internet. File links will now generally not work at all and HTML Help itself is also severely restricted.

Without registry changes on the user's computer HTML Help now cannot be used at all on networks. EC Software has produced a small free tool called HHReg to help with this problem, which can be downloaded here:

HHReg CHM Utility

However, it is really better to use WebHelp for help on networks and on the Internet. These registry changes must be made on every computer that needs to access the help, and although HHReg can be integrated in your install process opening up these registry keys on your users' computers does represent a security risk.

I entered tab stops or spaces to create indents but they don't work in any HTML-based output formats!
Tab stops are unknown in HTML, it simply doesn't support them at all. Spaces also don't work for indents in HTML because all groups of spaces are ignored and displayed as a single space.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Help+Manual converts multiple spaces to alternating hard and soft spaces to solve this problem but this will still not be accurate for tabular data.

If you need to create accurate spacing to format code examples use indented paragraphs (these are converted automatically in HTML-based output formats) or tables. You can use multiple spaces for indenting in code examples if you turn word wrap off in the paragraph settings – then all spaces will be non-breaking spaces, which will render correctly.

Also use tables to create tabulated lists in HTML-based output formats.

Search isn't working in my HTML Help CHM output, even though I enabled it in my project configuration!

This is probably a Microsoft HTML Help Workshop installation problem. To correct this proceed as follows:

1. Uninstall MS HTML Help Workshop.
2. Download the latest version from our website at https://www.helpandmanual.com/downloads_mscomp.html
3. Log on to a Windows account with administrator rights (this is essential!) and install the new version.

I can't activate search in my WebHelp output!

Full-text search for WebHelp is only supported in the Professional and Floating license versions of Help+Manual because a royalty-free license for the search indexing tool is required.

When publishing to WebHelp you should also make sure that your user account has full read-write access permissions to the Help+Manual program directory. Not having write access here can sometimes cause generation of the search index to fail.

I want to change the Top / Previous / Next navigation texts in the topic headers of my output!

You can change these texts and also select graphics files to use as buttons instead of the texts. In the Project Explorer select the *Default* template in **Configuration** > **HTML Page Templates** to change these texts.

If you want to get more fancy and do things like adding buttons with mouseover effects you will need to edit the HTML code of the template yourself. See Using HTML Templates 1026 for more information on editing HTML templates.

How can I change the title of the help viewer window?

By default the title bar of the help viewer displays the Project Title entered in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > Title & Copyright 1402.

This text is inserted in the help window title by inserting the <%TITLE%> variable in the help window definition. This makes it possible to define different titles to be displayed when topics are displayed in external windows using different help window definitions:

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Go to **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > Help Windows 1452. Select the *Main* help window type and check the *Title bar text:* field. If you insert <%TITLE%> here it will insert the topic title, but you can enter any text you like.

Note that if a different title is assigned to the current help window this has priority over the Help Title entered in the Title & Copyright 1402 section. The help window title will then be displayed in the help viewer title bar when a topic using the corresponding window type is displayed.

I entered the title correctly but the help viewer of my CHM file always has the title "HTML Help"!

This is a bug in the Microsoft HTML Help viewer. Non-English HTML Help files always display "HTML Help" in the title bar when they are displayed by Windows versions with a different language from the language of the help file. Only the titles of English help files are displayed correctly on all language versions of Windows.

The only known solution is to set the Language of the help file in **Configuration** > **Common Properties** > **Language Settings** to *English (United States)* if this is possible for your help project. (This is generally possible for all western European languages without special character sets.)

See About project language settings 1629 for more details.

The names of my image files are displayed as tooltips in my HTML-based output formats!

In the Project Explorer go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > HTML Export Options 1459 and deselect the option *If an image has no caption export file name as hint (ALT tag)*.

Note that these are shared options. They can also be accessed in the **WebHelp** and **Visual Studio Help** sections.

The popups in my HTML Help output are only plain text, although I included bold and other formatting in my popup topics!

By default, HTML Help only supports plain-text popups without any formatting. Help+Manual provides another solution for formatted popups in HTML Help. See Creating popup topics 207 for details

Can I view and edit the HTML Help source files?

Help+Manual generates all the files needed for viewing and editing HTML Help projects with the MS HTML Help Workshop application. However, these files are normally deleted automatically after publishing.

To prevent this deselect the option *Delete temporary files after compilation* in the Publish 1310 dialog when you publish your project to HTML Help. You will then find all the project files in the `\~tmpchm` folder in your project directory (the directory containing your project file).

I want to use my own custom icons in the HTML Help TOC!

Help+Manual includes 42 predefined icons that can be used in the HTML Help TOC by selecting **Project** > **Manage Topics** > **Change** > **Icon**. These icons are predefined by HTML Help and they are the only ones that are available. Although the Microsoft HTML Help Workshop

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

documentation suggests that these default icons can be replaced by a custom icon strip this feature has never actually worked in HTML Help. Please complain to Microsoft. Loudly.

My help file fails or crashes if it is installed in a path containing a # character!
This is a restriction of HTML Help that cannot be changed. The **#** character is reserved for bookmark (anchor) references from URLs and cannot be used in the paths. The only solution is to make sure that there are no **#** characters in the paths to your help files.

I would like to call a HTML Help CHM file from the command line!
Just execute the hh.exe HTML Help viewer with the name of the help file as the first parameter:

```
HH "myhelp.chm"
```

HH.exe is the HTML Help executable. It is located in the Windows directory does not require a path.

Examples:

Note that topic names are referenced as *Topic ID* + *.htm* in all lower case characters. (The standard extension is *.htm* but this can be changed in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **HTML Help** > HTML Export Options 1459.)

```
HH "myhelp.chm::/requestedtopic.htm"
```

Opens the file *myhelp.chm* and displays the topic *requestedtopic.htm*. The "::/" in the parameter separates the requested topic (the html file name in the internal structure of the .chm file).

```
HH "myhelp.chm::/requestedtopic.htm#paragraph2"
```

Opens the file *myhelp.chm* and displays the topic *requestedtopic.htm* and jumps to the topic anchor *paragraph2*.

```
HH -mapid 123456 myhelp.chm
```

Opens the file **myhelp.chm** and displays a topic referring to its help context number.

Our programmers need a list of help context numbers!
Select *Context Tool* in the **Tools** tab and then select the option *Export Map File*. This exports the Topic IDs and corresponding context numbers to a standard map file. See The Help Context Tool 1241 for full instructions.

See also:

HTML Help 1506 (Help Formats)

12.6 PDF questions

The formatting of topic headings in my PDFs doesn't match what I see in the H+M editor!

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

This is normal. Although all the formatting of your topic content is preserved in PDF only the text of your topic headers is used in your PDF documents. In PDF the formatting of your topic headers and the layout of your pages are controlled by the "print manual template" for your PDF output. See Topic headings in PDF 790 for details.

My PDF files seem to be too big. What could be causing this?
There are a number of possible causes for this:

- **Graphics scaling:** The first thing to check is the images used in your files. Help+Manual supports image scaling 503 of high-resolution images for PDF files. If you are using large images to improve printout quality your files will be bigger and there is not a lot you can do about it, other than turning off scaling and using smaller images.
- **Graphics compression:** Check your image compression settings for PDF in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **PDF Options** 1446. You can significantly reduce the size of your files with JPEG compression but this also reduces image quality.
- **Font embedding:** Embedded fonts significantly increase the size of PDF files. Unless it's absolutely essential only use standard fonts like Arial and Times Roman so that you don't have to embed fonts. Check your embedding settings in **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **Font Embedding** 1447.
- **Graphics in your PDF template:** If you insert very large graphics in your PDF templates 1019 this will also increase the size of your PDF. Check all the template sections for forgotten graphics, including graphics objects whose size has accidentally been made very small – they will still be exported to the PDF!

Note that the nominal image format doesn't affect the size of your PDF files. All supported formats are converted to bitmaps.

Where are the settings for activating/deactivating PDF pages?
If you are upgrading from Help+Manual 3 you may be looking for the project configuration settings that activate and deactivate PDF components (TOC, Introduction etc.) in your output. This functionality is now only available in the print manual template 803, which you must edit with the Print Manual Designer 1217. In Help+Manual 3 it was possible to make these settings in two places (project configuration and the template), and this caused conflicts and mistakes for some users.

I configured my template to start chapters on odd pages but all my chapters are starting on the next available page, no matter whether the page is odd or even!
Go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **PDF Layout** 1442 and deselect the option *Ignore blank pages in PDF file*. Setting this option disables the "Start on odd pages" setting because it makes it impossible to insert blank pages in the output to force topics to start on odd pages.

Graphics in tables extend beyond the edge of the page in PDF output!
When you place graphics on the page without tables they are automatically resized to fit on the page in PDF. This is not possible for graphics in tables, however, because here the table

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

cell and not the page is the container for the graphic. When you insert graphics in tables you need to make sure that your layout will fit on the page. In addition to graphics clipping oversized graphics in tables will also switch all column widths to variable in PDF, which will probably mess up your layout.

The text in my PDF output looks strange or garbled!
Help+Manual uses a printer driver to generate PDF documents and "optimized" drivers from printer manufacturers sometimes cause output problems.

You can solve this problem by installing a different printer driver and selecting it as the reference driver for PDF generation. This driver does not have to be for a printer that is physically connected to your computer. In fact, you will probably achieve the best results with a standard printer driver from the Windows CD rather than with an "optimized" driver from a printer manufacturer.

If you are not using WMF or EMF graphics it is generally best to use the screen device to generate PDFs. A proper printer driver is needed to mange EMF and WMF graphics, however.

See Customize - PDF Export 1271 for details on how to set this up.

I created a PDF with active hyperlinks but the links are invisible!
Go to **Configuration** > **Publishing Options** > **Adobe PDF** > **PDF Layout** and activate the *Underline topic links and paint in color:* option to define the visibility and color of the hyperlinks in your PDF document.

For more details see PDF Layout 1442.

My hyperlinks to topics in other projects don't work in PDF!
PDF is really a print-style documentation format that was not originally designed for use as interactive help. Hyperlinks within PDF files will now work but you cannot link between PDF files.

You can link to external PDF files with file links, 424 provided the external PDF is in the same folder as the PDF containing the link, but this will only open the PDF file. You cannot link to a specific topic inside an external PDF file.

See also:

Adobe PDF 1523 (Help Formats)

12.7 Printing questions

The page referrer numbers aren't shown in my print preview!
This is not an error. Page referrers (cross references with page numbers for hyperlinks) can only be displayed in the actual printout.

The text in my printed manuals looks strange or garbled!
When you print a user manual Help+Manual first generates a PDF file and then prints it. The PDF is generated using a printer driver and "optimized" drivers from printer manufacturers can sometimes cause output problems. The printer driver used to generate the PDF is nor-

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

mally your default printer driver but it is possible to select a different driver for PDF generation if necessary.

You can generally solve this problem by installing a different printer driver and selecting it as the reference driver for PDF generation. This driver does not have to be for a printer that is physically connected to your computer. In fact, you will probably achieve the best results with a standard printer driver from the Windows CD rather than with an "optimized" driver from a printer manufacturer.

See Customize - PDF Export 1271 for details on how to set this up.

See also:

PDF and Printed Manuals 785
Customize - PDF Export 1271

12.8 Searching in WebHelp

How does searching work in WebHelp?
After you publish your WebHelp project the indexer scans all the files found in the HTML output directory and creates an index file. This index contains a list of all the words found and their locations in the files in your project.

When the user accesses the search function for the first time the index file is downloaded by the user's browser. All subsequent searches during the current session then access this local copy on the user's computer.

My index includes references to additional files that I added to my output directory manually! Huh??
It's important to understand that the indexer scans all the files in your output directory! This means if you add your own files to the directory before you publish they will be scanned too.

If you don't want your own files to be included in the index you must add them to the output directory after you publish your project – or upload them to your server separately so that they cannot be indexed when you publish.

My index includes references to deleted topics! What's happening?
Normally Help+Manual doesn't delete anything in your HTML output directory. Since every topic is a separate HTML file in WebHelp the files for deleted topics are still in the output directory when you publish a new version of the project that no longer contains these topics.

To prevent this it's a good idea to use the *Delete all files in output folder* function in the Publish dialog when you publish a build for distribution. See Publishing 613 for more details on this.

Why can't I search for phrases in WebHelp?
Actually, you can. However, to do this you need to set up your search platform to use server-side searching based on either the PHP or ASP platform. This requires support for PHP or ASP on your server and can't be tested locally, because it is a server-only technology.

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

By default, WebHelp is generated using the client-side JavaScript platform, which is fine for smaller projects. However, for larger projects and features like phrasal searching it is better to use the PHP or ASP platforms.

See this topic 1428 for instructions.

How can I search for exact words and phrases in WebHelp?
JavaScript platform:

Enclosing one or more words in quotes searches for exact words if you are using the JavaScript search platform. For example, entering **cat** will find **cat**, **catalog** and **advocate**, but entering **"cat"** with quotes will only find **cat**. This also works for groups of words – entering **"cat dog fish"** will only find the exact occurrences of all three words.

This can be combined with wildcard characters. For example, **"cat*"** will find **catalog** but not **advocate**.

ASP and PHP platforms:

These platforms support searches for exact phrases that are enclosed in quotes.

See this topic 1428 for instructions.

See also:

Full-text Search configuration options 1428

12.9 Spell check questions

Can I create custom dictionaries for specific projects or subjects?
Yes, as many as you like! You can store your custom dictionaries wherever you like, including network drives, and multiple users can use them at the same time. See The Spell Checker 1220 for full details on how to create and use custom dictionaries.

I selected "Auto-Correct" for a correction during spell checking but the auto-correct word pair was not added to the custom dictionary!
Check which custom dictionary you have activated for adding terms in the current project in *Spelling* > *Configure Spell Checker* in the **Project** tab. You can use multiple dictionaries for spell checking but you can only add new terms to one dictionary at a time.

Where can I get additional dictionaries for the spell checker?
You can download additional dictionaries directly from the spell checker configuration dialog. Select *Spelling* > *Configure Spell Checker* in the **Project** tab, then click on *Download dictionaries...* in the Dictionaries tab.

Note that main dictionaries must be saved in the Dictionaries folder in the Help+Manual program directory, otherwise Help+Manual will not be able to find them.

See also:

Spell checking 238
Spell Checker 1220

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

12.10 Table questions

The widths of the columns in my tables are different from what I expect them to be!
You have probably entered contradictory settings for the table and cell/column widths. When this happens Help+Manual automatically sets the widths of all columns to dynamic and they then adjust themselves on the basis of their content. You can usually correct this by setting at least one column with a dynamic width so that you can "lock" the width of the other columns.

You can turn column width locking on and off with the *Lock Column* tool in the **Table** tab. The tool is highlighted when the cursor is in a column that is locked.

Graphics in tables extend beyond the edge of the page in PDF output!
When you place graphics on the page without tables they are automatically resized to fit on the page in PDF. This is not possible for graphics in tables, however, because here the table cell and not the page is the container for the graphic. When you insert graphics in tables you need to make sure that your layout will fit on the page. In addition to graphics clipping oversized graphics in tables will also switch all column widths to variable in PDF, which will probably mess up your layout.

See also:
Working with Tables 518

12.11 User interface questions

There are two copies of my topics – once in the TOC and once in Topic Files!
Actually, there is only one copy of each topic. The Table of Contents is really just a list of links, like hyperlinks on a web page. The actual topic files are stored in Topic Files in the Project Files section of the Project Explorer. For convenience the topic files that TOC entries link to are displayed for editing automatically when you click on the entries.

I undocked a Help+Manual window and now I can't dock it again!
You can always redock a window by double-clicking on its title bar (double-clicking also works for undocking, by the way). In addition to this you can dock or undock any dockable window by dragging it to the border of the main Editor window. Most windows can be docked to any side of the editor window.

I'd also like to be able to undock the Topic Options tab!
This is not possible. The Editor window components and tabs are fixed and cannot be undocked.

See also:
Options & Keyboard Shortcuts 59

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

12.12 Video questions

My movie is not playing properly in my published output. What can I do?
See About using video 1536 for recommendations on video formats. Basically, you should only use either MP4 video files or online video sharing services (YouTube, Vimeo and Prezi). All other video formats will cause problems sooner or later.

Check that the correct codec and/or player are installed. Videos can only be played if the correct player and codec support for them is installed on the computer where your help is being viewed. Generally speaking, only MP4 video is reliable.

With some formats and/or browsers you may need to activate the *Start Automatically* and *Show Controls* options in the Insert Video 1363 dialog for the animation or video to play correctly. Flash videos do not support these external controls – if you want player controls for Flash you must embed them in the video with the program that you use to create it.

The movie preview function in Insert Video dialog doesn't seem to be working!
On some systems you may find that need to be working in a Windows account with full administrator rights to use the movie preview function. If the function doesn't work and you know that the correct player is installed try switching to a full administrator account.

See also:

Videos and Online Media 548

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

- # -

#MERGE command for importing HTML files
entire topic with an external file 169
merging external file into existing topic 469

- . -

.hhp file for HTML Help
options for modifying 1457
.hmskin files 116
.hmxp save mode 126
.hmxz save mode 126
.hmxz~~ backup files 1261
.hxs files
namespace 1135
registration requirement 1135
unique identifier 1135
.ini files
for command line options 837
.ipp files
hotspots in old .ipp files 479, 509
.xls stylesheet files 116
.xsd schema file 116

- [-

[****] links 455

- < -

<!--ZOOMRESTART--> 664
<!--ZOOMSTOP--> 664

- 3 -

3-frame layout 655, 660

- A -

about Help+Manual 35
accelerator keys 59
Across 1177
configuration file for 1187
adding material to on every page 1036
addresses 66
Adobe FrameMaker projects
how to import 157
Adobe PDF
about 785, 1523
Bookmarks TOC, numbering 1442
cannot embed font message 1447
CID font embedding 143, 1447, 1450
clipped graphics 1271
comments, include as annotations 253, 798
configuring Adobe PDF output 677
cross references 1290, 1442
font embedding 677
font embedding settings in Project Configuration 143, 1447
fonts and font embedding recommendations 808
generating 798
including/excluding pages 677, 798, 803, 1019
layout settings in Project Configuration 1442
max. TOC levels 798
no graphics 1271
Outline TOC, numbering 1442
page referrers 1290, 1442
Print Manual Designer 805, 1217
printer driver required for 677
pros and cons 1523
reference driver for 1271
settings 798
settings in Project Configuration 1442, 1446
template variables 1581
templates for 805, 1019, 1217
templates, location 803
templates, using 803
topic headings in 790
Type 14 fonts 1447
Type 3 fonts 1447
Unicode now supported 1632
video files support 1536
videos and animations 563
Adobe PDF problems
can't output 1641
files too big 1641
garbled output 1641
heading formatting doesn't match project 1641
including/excluding pages 1641
invisible hyperlinks 1641
odd/even page problems 1641
AJC Active Backup 608

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

A-keywords
about 1606
automated "See Also" lists 476, 579
find and replace 573
in CHM only 476, 579
linking between help modules 476, 579, 1110
not supported in embedded topics 196, 265
not translatable in XML 1200
uses and limitations 1606
ALink() macro
translation in HTML Help 452, 1544
A-Links for links between modules 120
anchors
about 1601
assigning help context numbers to 368
cannot import context numbers to 1241
cannot search keywords in 573
context numbers in 1603
dead anchors 415
do not edit 415
embedded topics 410
hyperlinks to 110
in browser-based HTML 415
in embedded topics 410
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1369
inserting 415
linking to 415
linking to anchors in 410
linking to in eWriter 457
linking to in topics 410
linking to in WebHelp 457, 1601
maximum length 1601
permitted characters 1601
syntax for calling 1601
using keywords with 415, 568, 577
animation
toggles 383
animations and videos 1647
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1363
video preview function not working 1647
videos not playing properly 1647
application calls to eWriter 444, 903
application calls to WebHelp 440, 899
applications
calls to help 897
context-sensitive help 897
archive bit folder synching for FTP 1435
Asian languages
CID font embedding 1450
requiring Unicode 1627
test-publishing on non-Asian Windows 143, 613
tolerant option for publishing 1268
ASP search in WebHelp 1428
associative linking
and A-keywords 1606
AuthorIT projects
import settings and features 157
autobackup
removed from program options 1261
auto-correct function 1226, 1228
dictionary 238
spell checker 238
automatic backup 1261
automatic numbering 941
automatic save 1261
automatic templates for new topics 1016
autosave 1261
autosize tables 520

- B -

background and borders (dialog reference) 1339
background colors 142
backstage view 1275
backup options
AJC Active Backup 608
automatic backup 608
automatic rescue copy 608
cloud backup services 608
rescue copy when you can't save 139, 1288
backups
.hmxz~~ backup files 1261
automatic 124, 1261
backward compatibility with HM 5 and 6 132
Baggage files
about 1119, 1120
alternative to Extended .HHP settings 1457
avoiding duplicates 1124
defined 48
editing in Help+Manual 1123
graphics files, HTML template references 1056
include options with 1124
integrating external files 469, 1120, 1121
non-graphics files 1121
removing and exporting 1122
renaming 1122

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Baggage files
restrictions and handling 1124
size of 1124
supported file formats 1124
Baggage Files section 48
batch files
for command line options 837
batch publishing jobs 809, 810
creating and editing 812
redefining variables in 812
blanks for indents 299, 310
BMP images 479
BODY section of HTML template
adding HTML code outside of 1545
BOM, switch off for PHP 1435
Bookmark 1309
bookmarks 1315
bookmarks and comments
automatic bookmarks for comments 1265
create bookmarks for comments 253
inserting, using and editing 253
Bookmarks TOC in PDF 1442
Bookmarks TOC in PDF, numbering 1442
borders
in tables 541
no paragraph borders displayed 1637
borders and background (dialog reference) 1339
breadcrumb trail navigation 1569
example and how-to 1036
build conditions 1582
conditional text 994
defined 969
defining user conditions 988
for topic entries 1584
for topic files 1584
in tables 542, 996
build conditions, defining 120
build options
about 979
eWriter Help files 979
filer TOC with 1304
filtering in the TOC 982
filtering TOC with 77, 377
for topics without TOC entries 179
format-based 979
insert dialog (dialog reference) 1371
logic 982
modular project build options 1002
OR logic 979
searching 235, 982
topic build options 989
user-defined 979
using 982
bullet and symbol characters in PDF 808
bulleted lists
adjusting indents 334
changing 313
changing bullet color 334
creating 313
customizing 313
styles in 334
bullets and numbering (dialog reference) 1340

- C -

cannot embed font message in PDF 1447
cannot embed font messages 1449
can't save project
automatic rescue copy prompt 608
make a rescue copy 139, 1288
captions
for tables 535
captions (TOC)
spell checking 238
captions for graphics 481
formatting 305
style of 305
cells (tables)
borders, individual borders 541
deleting contents 531
formatting 525
merging/unmerging 529
resizing 525
rotated text 525
selecting 525
splitting 529
centering tables 532
change icon 1304
chapters
moving, cutting and pasting 357
character count and word count 223, 781, 1212
check for update 1399
Check In 1307
Check Out 1307
checklist for publication 633
child projects 1547

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

child projects 1547
copying 1103
second copies 1103
CHM help files
configuring output 645
correct display on hi-res monitors 645
exclude topics from search 645
internal structure for help calls 897
settings for importing 157
SVG graphics in 496, 500, 1532
TOC behavior, configuring 645
CHM modules
links to 1100
search in 1100
Chrome
WebHelp doesn't run locally 673
CID font embedding 808, 1447
CID font embedding for PDF 143, 1450, 1632
class (topic class) 1298
Clipboard functions 1296, 1324
Close() macro
translation in HTML Help 452, 1544
Code Example style 1490
Collapse All
code to collapse TOC in WebHelp 1044
collections (WebHelp projects) 1117
column width and height 1502
column widths (tables)
controlling 522
locking/unlocking 522
preferred width 522
setting 522
troubleshooting 522
columns (tables)
adding, deleting 528
formatting 525
resizing 525
selecting 525
widths 520
command line options
about 816
and exclude options (conditional output) 828
and include options (conditional output) 828
applying skins 638, 667, 834
exit codes 825
INI and batch files 837
multiple-format output 830
Project Converter 137
publishing directly from your application 845
redefining variables 834, 960
syntax reference 817
temp files location 844
using 826
Comment style 1490
comments
formatting 305
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1381
style of 305
comments and bookmarks
automatic bookmarks for comments 1265
create bookmarks for comments 253
inserting, using and editing 253
common HTML settings 1415, 1451, 1472
compilers
help compilers not found 1635
compilers for Microsoft help formats
compiler messages settings 1268
options 1268
setting locations 1268
where to get help compilers 632, 1635
complex search and replace 264
compressed single-file mode 126
conditional output
about 1558, 1582
and command line options 828
build conditions 1582
conditions for HTML templates 1577
explained 969
find referrers 982
HTML template conditions 1006
in HTML templates 1611
include and exclude options 828
include options 1582
links and 1582
logic 982
multiple TOCs tutorial project 119
redefining variables for 1004
topic entry include options 1584
topic file include options 1584
tutorials 120
using, general instructions 982
conditional tags
searching 235
conditional text 1582
in tables 542, 996
insert dialog (dialog reference) 1371

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

conditional text include options
setting and editing 994
Configuration
and multi-user editing 1171
setting color for read-only topics 1171, 1265
Configuration settings
variables in 934
console build mode 817
exit codes 825
contact support - email link 1399
content templates for new topics 174
context numbers, context IDs
and anchors 368
assigning automatically 368
assigning manually 368
auto-generating 368
changing globally 1107
editing 368
finding 235, 782
generating list 1638
Help Context Tool 1323
in modular projects 1107
linking to in eWriter 444
linking to in WebHelp 440
listing 1212
multiple context numbers per topic 368
required for CHM popups 207
value range 368
Context Tool 1323
context-sensitive help
about 892, 1586
about implementing 1594
and eWriter 444, 903
and WebHelp 440, 899
application calls and 897
auto-generating topics for 911
calls to CHM files 897
CHM 435, 892
context IDs in eWriter URLs 444, 903
context IDs in WebHelp URLs 440, 899
creating topics for 895
DOCX 435, 892
dual-mode HTML Help not supported 895
eBooks 435, 892
eWriter 435, 892
field-level popups 440, 895, 899, 1590, 1594
general guidlines 435
in supported output formats 435, 892
PDF 435, 892
popup topics for 895
popups and 1590
technologies for in Windows 1587
tutorials and tools for programmers 897, 1594
WebHelp 435, 892
convert graphic to link
not possible 508
converter
command line syntax 137
converting old H+M projects 85, 132, 1234
converting styles 1491
converting tables to text 531
converting text to tables 531
converting to plain text 253
copy and paste 73
between projects 165
copying, cutting and pasting 1296, 1324
from Word 94
text and other content 233
unformatted text 233
without style information 233
copyright notice 139
counter variables for numbering 941
counters
for tables 535
creating hyperlinks 110
creating new topics 91
creating projects (tutorial) 69
cross references for PDF 1290, 1442
cross-references
page referrers for topic links in PDF 410
CSS classes for tables 308
CSS styles 389, 392, 399
CSS components in HTML templates 1063
curly quotes 245
custom builds
settings in Project Configuration 1410
custom code in HTML templates
transferring from .HM3 projects 132, 1234
custom user dictionaries
multiple languages 238
spell checker 238
customizing Help+Manual 59
automatic backups 1261
compiler location settings 1268
editor customizing options 1265
keyboard shortcuts 1264

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

customizing Help+Manual 59
mouseover hints 1261
PDF reference driver 1271
Ribbon Toolbar 1263
shortcuts 1264
Tools menu 1261
user interface language 1261
cut and paste
from Word and Excel 233
inserting graphics with 481
inserting text with 233
cutting and pasting topics 100

- D -

dead link highlighting 781
dead links 779
dead links, preventing 461, 984
DeepL machine translation
API key 1178
subscription 1178
default font (language settings) 143
default topic 139, 1402
in modular CHM projects 1096
deleting TOC entries and topics 361
demote/promote topics in the TOC 1308
dialog icons 53
dictionaries for spell checker
auto-correct function 238, 1226
custom project dictionaries 1226
custom user dictionaries 1226, 1228
downloading 238
excluded words 1226
multi-user use 1226
OpenOffice dictionaries 1220
selecting and downloading 1220
displays, high resolution 44
distribution files (output formats) 636
do not contain formatting 228
docking and undocking program windows 1646
DOCX
configuring Word DOCX output 682
distribute DOCX without macros 695
header formatting 302
individual styles for 302
table of figures 689
table of tables 689
update Word fields without macros 695
Word macros 695
DOCX output format
about 1525
pros and cons 1525
settings in Project Configuration 1472
double click to select word 223
dpi, high-resolution displays 44
Drag & Drop
creating hyperlinks with 410
creating topics with 174
disable in TOC 1304
duplicate graphics filenames 514, 1107
dynamic styles
quick guide to using 277
dynamic styles (see styles) 1482

- E -

eBooks
ePUB, general settings 1473
ePUB, HTML export options 1476
ePUB, page template 1476
ePUB, TOC template 1475
eWriter Help files, configuring 696
individual styles for 302
popup topics in 207
popups in 1597
settings in Project Configuration 1472
support for videos and animations 563
template files 116
templates for 1024
video files support 1536
eBooks, ePUB
about 1513
configuring output 750
distributing 768
font management 764
formatting recommendations 756
hardware readers 769, 1517
inline images bug in iBooks 750
pros and cons 1513
publishing 613
resources 769, 1517
restrictions and requirements 750
settings 760
software readers 769, 1517
source files for manual editing 750
eBooks, eWriter for Windows

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

eBooks, eWriter for Windows
configuring output 696
EC Software contact information 66
Edit menu
Find and Replace 1326
editable variables 963
in HTML templates 1049
editing topics 94
editor
change font for 1265
customizing 1265
double click, triple click 223
editing is slow, oversized .HMX projects 1637
format painter 223
navigating in 223
paragraph copying problems 1637
protect text against changes 223
sections 55
selecting text in 232
tabs 55
using 223
ELSE condition
and text include options 994
and topic include options 989
not supported in HTML templates 1052
embedded graphics
identifying 1535
locating with Report Tool 1535
embedding files in PDFs 424, 807
EMF images 479, 1529
English interface 1261
ePUB
general settings 1473
HTML export options 1476
page template 1024, 1476
settings in Project Configuration 1472
TOC template 1475
eWriter
application calls 903
close viewer from application 903
context calls and 903
linking to context IDs in WebHelp 903
linking to WebHelp topics 903
links to 457
syntax for calls/links to 903
eWriter Help files
about 1519
application menu 714, 1479
CD ROM catalogs 1519
context help 444, 701, 731, 903
context menu 714, 1479
distributing 718
field-level popups 1519
file links 444, 701, 731, 903
for software documentation 731
kiosk applications 1519
layout settings in Project Configuration 711, 1477
links to EXE files 444, 701, 731, 903
menu configuration and translation 714, 1479
pros and cons 1519
Short Title in eWriter menu 714, 1479
special include options 979
viewer installers 716
viewers 718, 719
Windows Store and Win32 viewers 719
eWriter Help files, configuring 696
eWriter website 731
Excel
copying from and to 233
exclude and include options (conditional output) 828
exclude topics from search in CHM 645
exclude topics from search in WebHelp
special settings for in WebHelp 664
excluded topics
export if referenced (option) 1268
remove dead links (option) 1268
excluding topics and content 120
EXE files
linking to in EWrieter eBooks 444, 701, 731, 903
ExecFile() macro
equivalent for HTML Help 1544
exit codes (command line builds) 825
Expand All
code for expanding WebHelp TOC 1044
expanding image toggles
converting existing images 392
creating 392
formatting with CSS 392
expanding inline text toggles
creating 389
formatting text and links 389
expanding section toggles
creating 384
editing 384
embedded topics in 384
existing tables with IDs 384

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

expanding section toggles
formatting headers 384
icons, suppressing in PDF etc. 384
icons, swapping 384
icons, using in 384
indents in 384
nesting 384
supported content 384
expanding sections
nesting 382
expanding text and images
copying 395
copying and editing 396
CSS styles for links 399
duplicate ID conflicts 396
examples 382
Expand All / Collapse All functions 402
IDs, auto-incrementing 395
Print button with Expand All 402
support in output formats 382
troubleshooting 404
updating old expanding sections 406
expanding text and images, troubleshooting
large output files 404
output file size 404
page breaks in PDFs and printed manuals 404
problems with expanding section toggles 404
problems with formatting in toggle links 404
problems with IDs 404
Explorer
folders 77, 377
managing Topic Files 77, 377
exporting
topics as XML files 365
Extended .HHP Settings 1457
file references in 469
external data
importing into projects and topics 155
importing Sandcastle projects 151
external files
integrating in projects 1120, 1121
referencing in HTML code 469, 1121
external windows
and hyperlinks 469
and invisible topics 1609
displaying topics in 194
how to display topics in 1025
in HTML Help 1610
in modular projects 1609
opening topics in 469
restrictions in modular projects 1110

- F -

F1 context help 1587
featured images 792
tutorial 118
field-level popups 207, 212, 215, 435, 440, 645, 892, 899, 1462, 1506, 1586, 1590, 1592, 1594, 1597
about 215, 1592
and map files 1598
in HTML Help 215, 1592
internal file name 895, 1457
figure and table numbering 944
figure links 420
figures
links to 420
file links
compatibility in output formats 424
creating 424
eWriter Help files 444, 701, 731, 903
linking to targets and pages in PDFs 424, 438
using in hotspots in graphics 509
File Menu 53
Print Manual (dialog reference) 1290
save as 1288
file size
smaller with styles 1482
files
excluding from full-text search in WebHelp 664
filter TOC by build options
filter TOC 1304
Find and Replace
conditional tags 235
Edit menu 1326
font styles 1144, 1147, 1151
formatting 1144
graphics 513
images 235, 782
in TOC and Invisible Topics 235, 782
multi-user editing 1171
paragraph styles 1144, 1154, 1158
referrers 235, 782
styles 1637
text 235, 782
topics 235, 782

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Find and Replace
variables 235, 958
Find Referrers 461, 982, 984
Topics menu 1306
F-Index 1464
Firefox
underlined TOC entries, suppressing 122
firewalls
and update checking function 1261
font character set (language settings) 143
font size preview 223
changing 94, 223
font styles
searching and replacing 1144, 1147, 1151
fonts
change font for XML and HTML editors 1265
CID font embedding 1447
different in print and help file 302
embedding in PDF files 1447
fonts and font embedding in PDF 808
Format Font (dialog reference) 1329
formatting tools 274
Type 14 fonts 1447
Type 3 fonts 1447
footers and headers
creating in topics (HTML only) 1036
in HTML pages 203
Format Font (dialog reference) 1329
Format menu 1347
Syntax Highlighting 1331
format painter tool 223, 274
formatting
replacing, about 1143
searching and replacing, about 1144
formatting text 94
formulas
inserting as OLE objects 1140
vertical alignment 1140
FrameMaker projects
how to import 157
frames in WebHelp 1415
frequently-used graphics
creating shortcuts to 517
FTP
archive bit mode for folder synching 1435
Second Copy folder synching program 1435
full text search template 1611
full-text search
ASP search 1428
enhance with index keywords 664
excluding files from search index in WebHelp 664
excluding page sections from search index in WebHelp 664
HTML template for WebHelp 1046
in WebHelp 1512
issues in WebHelp 613
language files for other languages 116
not working in HTML Help 1638
PHP search 1428
phrasal searches 664
phrasal searching 1428
settings for WebHelp 1428
special settings for in WebHelp 664
template for in WebHelp 664
full-text search in WebHelp 655
deleting output folder before publishing 1644
phrasal searches 1644
searching for exact words 1644

- G -

German interface 1261
Get Latest VCS Version 1307
getting help for Help+Manual 65
ghost links 455
GIF images 479, 1529
global predefined variables 1561
global variables
name syntax 923
plain text only 923
where supported 923
Google Analytics 666, 1433
Google Chrome
WebHelp doesn't run locally 673
graphics 481
about 1529
aligning 489
as table background 540
caption style 1490
captions, adding and formatting 481
converting to expanding image toggles 392
creating shortcuts to 517
duplicate filenames 514, 1107
editing 503
editing and resizing 503
embedded 1535

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

graphics 481
exporting text in as XML 1197
finding and replacing 513
folders for 514
formats and file size 1529
frequently-used 517
HelpXplain slides as graphics 481
hi-res for PDF and printing 503
hotspots, macros and scripts in 509
IDs for, incrementing 514
Image Shortcuts for frequently-used graphics 517
in HTML templates 1613
in modular projects 514, 1107
in PDF 797
Insert dialog 1359
inserting 104
inserting from files 481
inserting in topics 481
inserting unsupported graphics formats 481
inserting with cut and paste 104, 481
listing 1212
managing 514
missing 779
missing and unused, finding 1212
moving and renaming 514
opening in Impict graphics editor 506
pasting from Word 104, 1535
positioning 489
project search path 514
recently-used images, reinserting 517
referencing in HTML templates 1056
replacing manually 513
resizing increases output size 503
responsive 481
responsive with captions 481
selecting 232
setting default editor 1261, 1318
storing in Baggage 1120
supported formats 479
testing for missing graphics 781
translating text in 1191, 1197
unused, removing 1212
updating for translations 1191
updating quickly with new versions 481
using 479
using as hyperlinks 508
zoom factor 481, 503
graphics editor
Impict 1216
setting default editor 1216, 1261, 1318
using 1216
graphics folders
project search path 1405
setting locations for 1405
group work
with modular projects 1547

- H -

H1 - H6 headings for HTML 286
hanging indents
and tab stops 1500
restrictions 299
using 299
hard page breaks
inserting 245
hard spaces 1500
HEAD section of HTML template
adding HTML code and scripts to 1545
header
adding material to on every page 1036
additional content in 191, 229
changing background color 191, 229
formatting 191, 229
in electronic help formats 191, 229
in PDF, RTF and printed manuals 191, 229
turning on and off 191, 229
header formatting for PDF and DOCX 302
headers and footers
creating in topics (HTML only) 1036
in HTML pages 203
Heading1 style 1490
Help 2.0 1525
setting compiler location 1268
Help buttons 1587
help compilers 632
compiler messages settings 1268
not found 1635
options 1268
setting locations 1268
where to get 1635
help context numbers
about 1603
auto-generating 1411
auto-generating topics with 1241
cannot import to anchors 1241

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

help context numbers
context numbers 1241
exporting and importing 1241
generating list 1638
help formats 1603
output format compatibility 1603
reassigning and deleting multiple 1241
settings in Project Configuration 1411
supported range 1241, 1603
help context numbers, context IDs
and anchors 368
assigning automatically 368
assigning manually 368
auto-generating 368
changing globally 1107
linking to in eWriter 444, 903
linking to in WebHelp 440, 899
multiple context numbers per topic 368
preventing duplicates in modular projects 1107
value range 368
Help Context Tool 1323
using 1241
help files
integrating with applications 1635
TOC link to 183
help for Help+Manual 65
help formats
about 1504
Adobe PDF 1523
eBooks, ePUB 1513
eWriter Help files 1519
HTML Help 1506
MS Word DOCX 1525
printed manuals 1524
Visual Studio Help/Help 2.0 1525
WebHelp 1510
Help menu
reference 1399
help project
language and character set 143
help title 139
help viewers
background colors 142
changing appearance of 194
defining appearance of 142
for different output formats 194
help window title in HTML Help 1638
help windows
about 1609
and output formats 650
changing for topic 194
choosing (basic setup) 194
creating, deleting and editing 194
external 469
in HTML Help 1610
not linked to HTML templates 1611
secondary windows 469
secondary windows, using 1025
setting title 139
settings in Project Configuration 1452, 1454
types 650
Help+Manual
about 35
buying 66
customizing 1261
getting help 65
Quick Start Tutorials 69
support address 65
tutorials 65
user interface 43
why Help+Manual? 35
Help+Manual 2 Go mini server 673
Help+Manual 3 projects
converting 132, 1234
custom HTML code in 132, 1234
invisible topic conversion 1234
style conversion 132, 1234
table conversion 132, 1234
Help+Manual 4 projects
converting 132
Help+Manual 5 projects
backward compatibility with 132
Help+Manual 9 new features 23
Help+Manual help
using as a template for your projects 1008
Help+Manual help source code 121
HelpXplain
animated presentations and screencasts 561
insert slide as static image 481
high-resolution displays 44
settings for CHM files 645
HLP files
settings for importing 157
HM2Go mini server 673
HM3 IPP graphics with hotspots 479
HM3 projects

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

HM3 projects
converting 132, 1234
custom HTML code in 132, 1234
invisible topic conversion 1234
style conversion 132, 1234
table conversion 132, 1234
HMXP 126
HMXZ 126
horizontal lines
inserting 245
hotkeys
for styles 281, 295
Hotspot editor (dialog reference) 1361
hotspots
aligning 509
compatibility in output formats 509
in old .ipp and .SHG files 479, 509
inserting in graphics 509
linking to popup topics 509
visible or invisible 509
HTML
appearance in different browsers 655
configuring WebHelp output 655
expand WebHelp automatically on open 655
H1 - H6 headings 286
output format for lists 341, 1435, 1459, 1467
single-click option for WebHelp navigation 655
timestamp of HTML topic files 1435, 1459
HTML (WebHelp) 1510
HTML code
about using 1539
inserting in topics 469
pasting into Help+Manual editor 1296, 1324
saving to and loading from files 469
HTML code object
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1379
HTML code objects
about 1545
and HTML variables 1545
inserting in topics 469
inserting outside <body> tags 1545
limitations in eBooks 1545
referencing script functions in 1545
saving to and loading from files 469
variables in 934
where supported 1545
HTML Export Options 1435, 1459, 1467
HTML files
importing into individual topics 155
importing to topics 365
merging into existing topics 169, 469
settings for importing 157
HTML Help 1457, 1508
about 1506
anchor keyword display in 577
calling from command line 1638
compiler 632
configuring output 645
context-sensitive help 892
correct display on hi-res monitors 645
crashes 1638
custom TOC icons 1638
editing source files 1638
exclude topics from search 645
Extended .HHP settings 1457
external windows 1609
field-level popups 1597
field-level popups in 215, 1592
help window title issues 1638
help windows 1609
help windows in 1610
HTML page templates 1413
JavaScript popups 1597
keep on top 1454
links to CHM modules 1100
links to external windows across modules 1110
merge options for modules 1096, 1100
modular help settings 1457
navigation links in header 1638
popup topics in 207, 1597
popup topics settings 1462
project files 1508
pros and cons 1506
referencing external files in 1457
restrictions on network drives 1506, 1638
search in CHM modules 1100
search not working 1638
secondary windows 1609
setting compiler location 1268
settings in Project Configuration 1451
support for modular projects 1088
support for videos and animations 563
temporary files 1508
TOC behavior, configuring 645
users get error message 1638
video files support 1536

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

HTML Help options 1454
HTML page templates
background colors 203
headers and footers 203
HTML editing mode 1413
navigation links 203
setting for individual topics 203
simple editing mode 1413
HTML templates
about 1021, 1028, 1611
and Baggage graphics 1056
color code entry tool 1030
conditional output in 1052
creating new 1030, 1036
defined 1007
editable variables in 1049
editing 1030
editing changes don't work! 1030
ELSE condition 1052
for topic pages 1036
graphics in 1613
HTML page templates 1413
in HTML Help 1610
include options in 1006
Index template for WebHelp 1045
Layout template 1043
multiple conditions 1052
output conditions (reference) 1577
pixel ems calculator 1030
referencing external files in 1062
referencing graphics in 1056
Search template for WebHelp 1046
TOC template for WebHelp 1044
troubleshooting 1075
variables and 1611
variables in 934, 959, 1049
variables in (reference) 1569
HTML topic page templates
defined 1007
HTML variables 963
defining 919
how they work 919
managing 1406
search engine optimization 963
settings in Project Configuration 1406
using with HTML code objects 1545
where supported 917
HTML5
video tag 563
HXS
publishing 613
HXS files
namespace 1135
registration requirement 1135
unique identifier 1135
hyperlinks
[****] links 455
and external windows 469
and secondary windows 469
automatic title of target as caption 410
captions 455
converting to normal text 455
creating 110
editing and formatting 455
file links 424, 438
ghost links 455
graphics as hyperlinks 508
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1352
Internet links 422
Internet links to PDF pages 422
linking to targets and pages in PDF 424, 438
macro links 452
preventing dead links 461, 984
script links 452
selecting 232
testing for dead hyperlinks 781
to anchors 110, 415
to anchors in snippets 415
to eWriter 457
to figures and captions 420
to other projects and help files 457
to popup topics 207
to WebHelp 457
topic links 410
types supported 409
hyphenation
creating hyphenation word lists 1220
selecting hyphenation dictionary 1220

- I -

iBooks, ePUB
configuring output 750
distributing 768
font management 764
formatting recommendations 756

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

iBooks, ePUB
inline images bug in iBooks 750
resources 769
restrictions and requirements 750
settings 760
source files for manual editing 750
icon
change icon 1304
IDs
assigning and choosing 368
internal numerical IDs (Project Synch) 1257
prefixes for topic IDs 368
IDs, auto-incrementing for graphics 514
IDs, auto-incrementing for tables 535
IDs, auto-incrementing for toggles 395
image captions
entering 481
formatting 305, 481
standard style for 292, 305, 1490
variables in 934
image editor
selecting default 1318
image folders
managing 514
moving and renaming 514
project search path 1405
setting locations for 1405
Image Shortcuts
for frequently-used graphics 517
image styles 492, 1492
images
converting to expanding image toggles 392
creating shortcuts to 517
exporting text in as XML 1197
frequently-used 517
Image Shortcuts for frequently-used graphics 517
image styles 492, 1492
recently-used images, reinserting 517
translating text in 1197
unused, locating and removing 1212
images (see graphics)
supported formats 479
using 479
Impict
no red capture border 507
screen capture tool in 507
Impict graphics editor
editable objects 506
exporting text for translation 506
output file larger after resizing 503
resizing images with 503
transparent background 506
using 506
Impict screenshot editor
using 1216
implicitly included topics 1635
imported text
globally applying styles to 1144
globally applying styles to, example 1162
globally integrating styles with Toolbox 1165
importing external data 148
external HTML files (#MERGE) 169, 469
globally applying styles to imported text 1144
into existing projects 90
into new projects 90
Sandcastle projects 151
settings for importing 157
styles from other projects 281, 295
topics from external files 365
importing styles with style repositories 1083
include and exclude options (conditional output) 828
include conditions
defined 969
include options
about 979
and modular projects 1002
and publishing 613, 989, 994, 1002
conditional text 994
defining user options 988
editing 989, 994, 1002
eWriter Help files 979
exclude all a topic's subtopics 989
filter TOC with 1304
filtering in the TOC 982
for Baggage files 1124
for topic entries 1584
for topic files 1584
for topics without TOC entries 179
format-based 979, 1582
in command lines 828
in HTML templates 1052
insert dialog (dialog reference) 1371
logic 982
negating with exclude options 828
nesting 994
OR logic 979

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

include options
searching 235, 982
settings in Project Configuration (custom builds) 1410
topic include options 989
user-defined 979, 1582
using 982
indent tool
error message in lists 334
indenting tables 532
indents
and tab stops 1500
cannot indent lists 299
hanging indents 1500
how exported 1500
leading spaces 299, 310
negative indents 299
problems when adjusting 1637
problems with lists 334, 1637
restrictions 299
unexpected changes 1637
using 299
index
anchors and 565
editing 565
editing directly 568
exporting and importing the index 574
HTML template for WebHelp 1045
letter links in WebHelp 582
section header separators in 582
translating and editing the index 574
index keywords 664
about 1605
adding 565
duplicates and variants 565
editing 565
enhance WebHelp search with 664
entry format 565
in popups 565
in topics without TOC entries 565
red underline 565
sub-entry levels 565
sub-keywords 1605
index separators for WebHelp 1425
Index template 1611
Index Tool 568
exporting and importing the index 574
translating and editing the index 574
Index Tool (dialog reference) 1321
inheritance
in styles 1484, 1485
inheritance trees 1485
stopping 1485
style families 1497
INI files
for command line options 837
inline HTML code (HTML code objects) 1545
inserting in topics 469
saving to and loading from files 469
Insert / Insert Object (reference) 1349
Insert Video (dialog reference) 1363
inserting graphics 104
inserting tables 107
Interactive wizards 1587
international languages
about 1627
and PDF 1632
CID font embedding for PDF 143
configuration settings for 143
project settings 1629
requiring Unicode 1627
Unicode mode in Windows 1629
Internet Explorer
SVG graphics in 496, 500, 1532
turning off yellow warning bar in WebHelp 613
yellow warning bar 673
Internet links
compatibility in output formats 422
creating 422
creating automatically 422
linking to PDF pages 422
using in hotspots in graphics 509
invisible files 48
invisible topics
importing from old projects 1234
invisible topics, converting from old projects 85
IPP images
transparent background 506

- J -

JavaScript
about JS links 1540
about using 1539
complex code in links 1540
complex scripts 452

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

JavaScript
nesting quotes 1540
script links 452
syntax in Help+Manual 1540
troubleshooting 1540
using in hotspots in graphics 509
where supported 1540
JavaScript popups 215, 1592, 1597
in HTML Help and WebHelp 212
in WebHelp 1512
options 212, 1440, 1462
using 212
JPG images 479, 1529
jump targets 415

- K -

keyboard shortcuts 59, 1274
customizing 1264
for styles 281, 295
using with styles 292
keyword index template 1611
keywords 565, 1212
about 1600
adding 565
adding child keywords 568
adding master keywords 568
adding to anchors 568
A-keywords 476, 579
checking 779
deleting 568
duplicates and variants 565
editing 565, 568
entry format 565
exporting and importing the index 574
find and replace 573, 785
find topics with no keywords 1212
finding topics with no keywords 565, 1212
in embedded topics 196, 265
in popups 565
in topics without TOC entries 565
listing for project 1212
red underline 565
sorting problems 143
sub-entry levels 565
testing 785
translating and editing the index 574
using with anchors 415, 577
variables in 934
viewing in Index Tool 577
Kindle/Mobi
compiler for 633, 1268
page template 1024
K-keywords
in embedded topics 196, 265
KLink() macro
translation in HTML Help 452, 1544

- L -

language
user interface language 1261
language and character set 143
language of help file (language settings) 143
language settings 139
and PDF 1632
CID font embedding for PDF 143
configuration settings for 143
default font 143
font character set 143
for project 69, 1629
help file language 143
in Project Configuration 1403
language of help file 143
project language and character set 143
right-to-left languages, activating support for 1403
Unicode 143
languages 1627, 1629
right-to-left languages 1403
last topic edited, returning to 217
Layout section in WebHelp 655, 660
Layout template 1043
leading spaces 299
legal numbering style 324
Lenovo Yoga Pro - hi-res displays 44
level reset (outline numbering) 324
levels (outline numbering) 324
lines
inserting 245
link styling tutorial 122
link texts
editing 455
linking
to popup topics 207
linking to context IDs in eWriter 903
linking to context IDs in WebHelp 440, 899

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

linking to eWriter topics 903
linking to WebHelp topics 440, 899
links
dead 779
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1352
named destinations in PDF 409, 465, 793, 913
preventing dead links 461, 984
styling with CSS, tutorial 122
to anchors 110, 415
to anchors in snippets 415
tutorial 110
types supported 409
links to CHM modules 1100
lists
applying deletes indent 1637
cannot indent 299
output format in HTML 341, 1435, 1459, 1467
lists (dialog reference) 1340
live spell checking 94
Load Topic from File 1307
loading multiple projects 73
loading projects 73
localization 1177
localization and translation
DeepL 1178
features and support 1177
machine translation 1178
translation memory 1187
tutorials 1177
logic of include options 979

- M -

machine translation 1178
macro links
creating 452
macros
distribute DOCX without macros 695
update Word fields without macros 695
Word macros 695
macros (Winhelp)
about 1544
translation in HTML Help 452, 1544
macros and scripts
variables in 934
map files
about 1598
auto-generating topics with 911
cannot import context nos. to anchors 1241
exporting (with custom syntax) 1241
field-level popups 1598
generating context numbers and topics with 1598
importing 1241
restrictions 1598
map styles from RTF 157
master and child projects 1547
master projects 1547
menu icons 53
menus reference
Help tab 1399
MERGE command for importing HTML files 169, 469
merge method in modular projects
choosing and changing 1089, 1096
Merged Projects section 1089
metafiles 1529
Microsoft help compilers
setting locations 1268
where to get 1635
Microsoft Sandcastle 1125, 1126, 1127
getting Sandcastle 1126
importing Sandcastle projects 151
Sandcastle Help File Builder 1126
supported Sandcastle versions 151
Microsoft Surface Pro - hi-res displays 44
missing graphics 779
modular help
about 1088
A-keywords and 476, 579, 1606
linking between modules 476, 579
modular help systems
about 1547
modular projects 1547
about 1547
and WebHelp 1117
changing merge method 1089
child modules 1555
child projects 1089, 1555
context numbers, preventing duplicates 1107
copying 1103
creating 1089
editing child projects in master 1089
editing in master 1089
graphics in 514, 1107
hyperlinks between 457
IDs, preventing duplicates 1107
include options 1002

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

modular projects 1547
including without TOC entries 1089
inserting a project in the TOC (quick guide) 183
linking between modules 1110, 1555
links to CHM modules 1100
managing modules in the TOC 1103
master modules 1555
master projects 1089, 1555
merge methods 1096
merge options for HTML Help 1096
Merged Projects section 1089
nesting modules 1555
planning 1555
project and output names must match 633
publishing 1114
read-only mode 1089
read-only mode for child projects 1089
runtime and publish-time merging 1551
search in CHM modules 1100
second copies 1103
structuring 1555
support in output formats 1088
modules
changing merge method 1089
master and child 1089
monitors, high resolution 44
monitors, multiple
save window positions for 1261
mouse wheel
changing font size preview setting 1265
movies
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1363
moving topics 100
MS Excel
copying from and to 233
MS Help 2.0 (Visual Studio Help)
about 1132, 1525
compiler 632, 1132
configuring Visual Studio Help output 775
example calls 1135
export options 1464
limitations 1132
namespace 1135, 1464
popups 1466
publishing 113, 1135
registering HXS files 1135
requirements 1132
unique identifier 1135, 1464
MS Help 2.0/3.0 (Visual Studio Help)
publishing 613
MS Word
copying and pasting from/to 94
copying from and to 233
differences from Word 228
mangles XML source code 264
pasting graphics from 1535
MS Word DOCX
about 1525
pros and cons 1525
MS Word DOCX output
settings in Project Configuration 1472
MSHC
publishing 613
multi-monitor displays
save window positions for 1261
multiple TOCs 589, 592
tutorial project 119
multi-user editing
and version control systems 848, 1171
read-only mode for child projects 1089
standardizing styles 1171

- N -

named destinations in PDF files 409, 424, 438, 465, 793, 913
limitations 465, 793, 913
navigation links in topic headers 203
Navigation section in WebHelp 655
nested tables
don't split across pages 539
nesting include options 994
network drives
HTML Help doesn't work 1638
restrictions on HTML Help 1506
new projects 124
creating with imported data 149
non-breaking spaces 1500
non-scrolling header template 121
Normal style 96, 1490
Notes style 1490
number format (outline numbering) 324
number style (outline numbering) 324
numbered lists
adjusting indents 334
creating 318

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

numbered lists
customizing 318
format 318
formatting numbers in 334
inserting un-numbered paragraphs 318
outline numbered lists 324
styles in 334
numbering
restarting in numbered lists 318
style in numbered lists 318
numbering and bullets (dialog reference) 1340
numbering, automatic with variables 941

- O -

old projects, converting 85
OLE objects
about 1139, 1529
creating new 1140
editing 1140
embedded 1535
embedding 1140
embedding vs. linking 1538
implementation in Help+Manual 1538
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1385
inserting from files 1140
restrictions 1538
vertical alignment 1140
online media 548
OpenOffice spelling dictionaries
selecting and downloading 1220
optimizing publishing speed 651, 771, 775
organizing styles 1497
outline numbered lists
customizing 324
formatting 324
level reset 324
levels 324
number format 324
number style 324
styles in 334
Outline TOC in PDF 1442
Outline TOC in PDF, numbering 1442
output formats 132
about 1504
Adobe PDF 1523
configuring (introduction) 644
configuring Adobe PDF output 677
configuring ePUB eBooks output 750
configuring eWriter Help files 696
configuring HTML Help output 645
configuring printed manuals 677
configuring Visual Studio Help output 775
configuring WebHelp output 655
configuring Word DOCX output 682
distribution files 636
eBooks, ePUB 1513
ePUB formatting recommendations 756
ePUB resources 769
ePUB restrictions and requirements 750
ePUB settings 760
ePUB, distributing 768
eWriter Help files 1519
font management 764
HTML Help 1506
MS Word DOCX 1525
printed manuals 1524
Visual Studio Help/Help 2.0 1525
WebHelp 1510
which is best? 1635
output size
larger after resizing graphics 503

- P -

page breaks
errors caused by tables 539
inserting 245
page referrers for PDF 1290, 1442
paragraph end marks
cannot select 228
paragraph marks
displaying in editor 1265
paragraph styles 292, 1491
defining 281
defining from selection 281, 295
naming for easy finding 1497
searching and replacing 1144, 1154, 1158
paragraphs
borders and backgrounds (dialog reference) 1339
borders not displayed 1637
copying problems 1637
Format menu (dialog reference) 1336
formatting tools 274
indenting 299
selecting with triple click 223

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

parent style
changing 288
paste as text
copying text without formatting 1296, 1324
paste HTML 1296, 1324
PCD images 479
PDF
about 785
additional pages in 786
Bookmarks TOC, numbering 1442
bullet and symbol characters 808
CID font embedding 143, 1447, 1450, 1632
clipped graphics 1271
comments, include as annotations 253, 798
configuring PDF output 677
cross references 1290, 1442
embedding files in 424, 807
file embedding setting 1442
font embedding 677
font embedding settings in Project Configuration 143, 1447
fonts and font embedding recommendations 808
generating 798
graphics in 797
header formatting 302
including/excluding pages 677, 798, 803, 1019
individual styles for 302
layout settings in Project Configuration 1442
linking to specific pages in 422
linking to specific targets and pages in 424
linking to targets and pages in 438
max. TOC levels 798
named destinations in 409, 424, 438, 465, 793, 913
negative indents 299
no graphics 1271
Outline TOC, numbering 1442
page break errors 539
page referrers 1290, 1442
page referrers for topic links 410
PDF-A activation 1446
Print Manual Designer 805, 1217
printer driver required for 677
pros and cons 1523
reference driver for 1271
settings 798
settings in Project Configuration 1442, 1446
sidebar with negative indents 299
suppressing toggle icons 384
table widths 522
template variables 1581
templates for 805, 1019, 1217
templates for, standard files 116
templates, location 803
templates, using 803
title pages tutorial 118
title pages with images 792
topic headings in 790
Type 14 fonts 1447
Type 3 fonts 1447
Unicode now supported 1632
using hi-res graphics in 503
video files support 1536
PDF manual 65
PDF problems
can't output 1641
files too big 1641
garbled output 1641
heading formatting doesn't match project 1641
including/excluding pages 1641
odd/even page problems 1641
PDF templates
defined 1007
variables in 968
PDF-A 1446
per-topic variable redefinition 963
PHP search in WebHelp 1428
PHP, switch off the BOM for compatibility 1435
phrasal searches in WebHelp 664, 1644
phrasal searching
PHP or ASP required 1428
plain HTML code
about 1545
adding to <head> section 1545
and Baggage 1120
and HTML variables 1545
files referenced in 1120
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1379
inserting outside <body> tags 1545
limitations in eBooks 1545
referencing script functions in 1545
where supported 1545
plain-text variables
defining 919
PNG
in PDF 797
PNG images 479, 1529

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

popup topics
about 1586, 1590
and context help 1590
application calls to 897
auto-generating for context help 1594
context numbers for CHM popups 207
creating 207
field-level popups 207, 215, 895, 1586, 1590, 1592, 1594, 1597
for context-sensitive help 895
in eBooks 1597
in HTML Help 207, 1597, 1610
in Visual Studio Help/Help 2.0 1466
JavaScript popups 212, 1440
linking to 207, 410
linking to from hotspots 509
plain text only in HTML Help 1638
pros and cons 1590
settings for HTML Help 1462
settings for WebHelp 1440
where supported 207, 1590
width of, controlling 207, 1597
Premium Pack 3 655
preview mode for screen and print styles 302
Print Manual 1290
Print Manual Designer 1323
configuring PDF output with 677
configuring printed manuals with 677
using 805, 1217
print manual templates 786, 800
defined 1007
editing 803, 1019
opening current template for editing 1442
selecting 803, 1019
standard files 116
standard templates 803, 1019
using 1019
variables in 968
Print Preview 1290
Print Preview function
selected topics only 800
print styles and screen styles 302
printed manuals
about 785, 1524
configuring 677
templates for 800, 1019
printing
excluding TOC etc. 800
garbled printouts 1643
no page referrers (cross references) in print preview 1643
previewing before printing 800
selected topics only 800
single and multiple topics 263
toggles 407
program code
Syntax Highlighting 1331
Program Options - Compilers 1268
Program Options - Editor 1265
Program Options - General 1261
Program Options - PDF Export 1271
Program Options - Ribbon 1263
Program Options - Shortcuts 1264
program workspace 1275
project
save as 1288
title & copyright notice 1402
Project Configuration 1457
about 1400
Adobe PDF font embedding options 1447
Adobe PDF Layout 1442
Adobe PDF Options 1442, 1446
and multi-user editing 1171
CID font embedding 1447
Common Properties 1401
copying settings between projects 233
custom builds 1410
eBooks settings 1472
editing 139
eWriter Help files layout settings 711, 1477
eWriter Help files menu configuration 714, 1479
Google Analytics 1433
help windows 1452
help windows general options 1452
help windows HTML Help options 1454
HTML Export Options 1435, 1459, 1467
HTML Help 1451
HTML Help Extended .HHP settings 1457
HTML Help modular help 1457
HTML Help popup topics 1462
HTML page templates 1413
Language Settings 1403
MS Word DOCX settings 1472
project search path 1405
publishing options 1415
right-to-left languages, activating support for 1403

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Project Configuration 1457
sections 1400
Text Variables 1406
Title & Copyright 1402
Topic IDs and Help Context numbers 1411
variables in 1401
Visual Studio Help (Help 2.0) settings 1464
WebHelp 1415, 1420, 1423, 1425, 1428, 1440
Project Converter
command line syntax 137
converting H+M 3 projects 1234
converting old projects 132
custom code in HTML templates 132, 1234
invisible topic conversion 1234
restrictions and limitations 132, 1234
Project Explorer 1304
defined 48
docking and undocking Explorer panes 59
folders 77, 377
managing Topic Files 77, 377
navigating in 73
pinning Explorer panes 59
sections, about 70
Table of Contents 173
tutorial 70
Project Explorer panes
moving 82
pinning 82
split view 82, 94
undocking and redocking 82
Project Files section 48
defined 48
Project menu
Project Configuration 1316
project reports 779
saving as HTML files 1212
using the Reports Tool 1212
Project Reports tool 1212
Project Reports tool (dialog reference) 1318
project search path 1405
and graphics 514
and snippets 196, 265
Project Synchronization
about 1245
creating translation sibling pairs 1247
how changes are synchronized 1245
identifying changes in synchronized projects 1255
interim updates 1256
internal numerical IDs 1257
material disappears after synchronization! 1258
no text-level comparison 1245
Professional version only 1245
project folder and 1247
synchronizing existing translations 1257, 1258
synchronizing new versions 1251
translating changes 1254
translating the original project 1250
updating the original project 1251
Project Synchronization Tool
Ribbon reference 1324
project templates
applying to existing projects 1008
creating 1008
defined 1007
Help+Manual help project template 1008
using to create new projects 1008
projects
checking status 1212
converting old projects 85, 132, 1234
copying and moving topics between 165, 357
copying settings between 233
copying styles between 306
copying text and content between 233
creating 124
creating (tutorial) 69
creating new projects 124
creating with imported data 149
inserting in another project (quick guide) 183
invisible topics from old projects 1234
language settings 1629
large projects 1547
multi-user edting 1171
PDF and language settings 1632
Project Configuration 1316
publishing 113, 613
saving as skins 638, 667
templates for 1008
testing 779
title, copyright and language settings 139
translating in Help+Manual 1191
translating with XML in external editors 1194
promote/demote topics in the TOC 1308
protect text against changes 223
protected variables 919
PSD images 479
PSP images 479

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Publish 1309
Publish Help File (dialog reference) 1282, 1310
publishing
about 613
Asian languages on non-Asian windows 613
checklist 633
epub eBooks 613
file locations 651, 771, 775
implicitly included topics message 1635
include options and 613
Microsoft help compilers 632
modular projects 1547
projects 613
publish only complete to 613
selected topics 613
speeding up 651, 771, 775
tasks - batch publishing jobs 586, 809, 810, 812
temporary files 651, 771, 775
with skins 613
publishing directly from your application 845
publishing formats 132
Publishing Options 1415
Publishing Task Manager 809
creating and editing publishing tasks 812
using publishing tasks 810
publishing, about 1547
publish-time merging 1096, 1114, 1551

- Q -

QR codes 262, 1381
Quick Access Toolbar 53
Quick Search tool 43, 58

- R -

read-only topics
setting display color in TOC 1171, 1265
recently changed topics, link list 217
recently-used images, reinserting 517
Reference section 1261
references
to topics, finding 1306
referrers 779, 982
finding 235, 782
Refresh Project 1309
Refresh Project command
for multi-user editing 1171
Reload Topic 1307
remote editing 848, 1171
replace
multi-user editing 1171
replace styles 1637
replacing formatting
about 1144
replacing formatting and styles
about 1143
replacing styles
about 1144
Report Tool (dialog reference) 1318
Reporting Tool
locating missing graphics with 781
using to test projects 780
reports
saving as HTML files 1212
using the Reports Tool 1212
repositories: style repositories for shared styles and snippets 196, 265, 1293, 1411
about 1076
creating and using 1078
snippets in 1086
styles in 1083
variables in 1087
repository (style repository)
save as 1288
rescue copy 1288
automatically restore lost work 608
if you can't save 139
when you can't save your project 608
resizing graphics 481, 503
responsive design
ems and percent dimensions for 1435
responsive graphics
relative to page width 481
relative to table width 481
responsive images
SVG in CHM and Internet Explorer 496, 500, 1532
with styles 492, 496, 1492
reusing content 1547
Ribbon - Project 1296
Add File (dialog reference) 1298
Add Topic (dialog reference) 1298
Bookmark 1315
Change 1304
File 1307

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Ribbon - Project 1296
Find Referrers (dialog reference) 1306
Manage Topics group (dialog reference) 1297
Project group (dialog reference) 1309
Publish 1282, 1310
Ribbon - Table 1390
Table Properties (dialog reference) 1391
Ribbon - Tools 1207, 1316
Customize 1261
editor customizing options 1265
general customize options 1261
Help Context Tool 1323
Image Editor 1318
Index Tool (dialog reference) 1321
Print Manual Designer 1323
Report Tool (dialog reference) 1318
Screen Capture (dialog reference) 1316
Spell Checker 1316
Synchronize 1324
Ribbon - View 1398
Ribbon - Write 1324
Anchor (dialog reference) 1369
Borders and Background (dialog reference) 1339
Bullets and Numbering (dialog reference) 1340
Comment (dialog reference) 1381
Conditional Text (dialog reference) 1371
Create Style from Selection (dialog reference) 1346
Edit Styles (dialog reference) 1347
Editing group (dialog reference) 1325
Font (dialog reference) 1329
Font group (dialog reference) 1328
Hotspot editor (dialog reference) 1361
HTML Code Object (dialog reference) 1379
Image (dialog reference) 1359
Insert / Insert Object 1349
Link 1352
OLE Object (dialog reference) 1385
Paragraph (dialog reference) 1336
Paragraph group (dialog reference) 1334
Replace Styles 1349
snippets (dialog reference) 1382
Special Characters (dialog reference) 1387
Styles group (dialog reference) 1345
Text Variable (dialog reference) 1370
Toggles (dialog reference) 1373
Video (dialog reference) 1363
Ribbon - Write tab
mini toolbar 1308
Ribbon reference
Project tab 1296
Ribbon Toolbar 53
accelerator keys 59
customizing 1263
Ribbon Toolbar (Reference) 1274
right-to-left languages 1403, 1629
RoboHelp projects (X5, X6, 7 and 8)
settings for importing 157
rotated text in tables 525
row height 1502
rows (tables)
adding, deleting, moving 528
RTF
table widths 522
RTF files
importing into individual topics 155
importing styles 157
importing to topics 365
map styles from RTF 157
settings for importing 157
styles in 157
ruler
indent tool 299
rulers
display vertical ruler 1265
ruler units 1265
runtime merging 1096, 1100, 1114, 1551
RVF files
exporting topics to RVF 365
importing into individual topics 155
importing to topics 365

- S -

sample projects 65
Sandcastle 1125, 1126, 1127
commenting your code 1127
configuring your .NET project 1127
getting Sandcastle 1126
importing Sandcastle projects 151
Sandcastle Help File Builder 1126
supported Sandcastle versions 151
Sandcastle Help File Builder 1126
save mode
uncompressed XML mode 126
Save Topic to File 1307
Screen Capture tool 1207

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Screen Capture tool 1207
no red capture border 507
using 507
Screen Capture tool (dialog reference) 1316
screen resolution 44
screen styles and print styles 302
screencasts
HelpXplain presentations 561
screenshots
Screen Capture Tool 1207
with Screen Capture tool 507
script links
creating 452
using in hotspots in graphics 509
scripts
about using 1539
files referenced in 1120
inserting JavaScript in topics 1540
script components in HTML templates 1063
user-defined variables in 1049
SDL Trados 1177
configuration file for 1187
INI file for 1177
search
exclude parts of topics from search in WebHelp 664
exclude topics from search in CHM 645
exclude topics from search in WebHelp 664
full-text search for WebHelp 664, 1046
not working in HTML Help 1638
search and replace
complex with XML 264
conditional text 235
font styles 1144, 1147, 1151
formatting 1144
graphics 513
images 235, 782
in TOC and Invisible Topics 235, 782
multi-user editing 1171
paragraph styles 1144, 1154, 1158
referrers 235, 782
text 235, 782
topics 235, 782
variables 235, 958
search engine optimization 1569
per-topic variable redefinition 963
search in CHM modules 1100
search interface language files for WebHelp 116
Search template 1611
Second Copy FTP folder synching program 1435
secondary windows
and hyperlinks 469
in HTML Help 1610
opening topics in 469
using 1025
section header separators (in keyword index) 582
See Also lists
creating with A-keywords 476, 579
selecting
keyboard shortcuts for 232
paragraphs 232
text and content 232
SEO 963, 1569
settings
copying project settings between projects 233
shared HTML settings 1415, 1451, 1472
shared snippets in style repositories 1086
shared styles in style repositories 1083
SHG graphics with hotspots 479
SHG images
hotspots converted automatically 479
supported formats 479
Short Title in eWriter menu 714, 1479
shortcuts
customizing 1264
Show Differences 1307
Show History 1307
sidebar for PDF 299
single sourcing 585
content variation for multiple formats 586
eBook templates 601
eBooks 601
HTML page templates 601
multiple formats from one project 586
multiple TOCs 589
PDF templates 601
templates and skins 601
variant content 589
site map 655, 1420
sitemap
generate automatically 655, 1420
skins 116
and styles 1482
command line option 834
creating skin files 638, 667
defined 1007

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

skins 116
editing skin files 638, 667
multiple skins with command line options 638, 667
publishing with 613
redefining variables with 834, 960
save as 1288
using 1010
using for HTML output formats 638, 667
slow publishing
optimizing 651, 771, 775
snippet project 1083
managing snippets 196, 265
style repositories 1086
snippets 365
and project search path 196, 265
editing snippet files 196, 265
finding where used 196, 265
hyperlinks and 196, 265
in style repositories 1086
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1382
keywords in 196, 265
linking to anchors in 415
locating source files with Find Referrers 1306
managing in a snippet project 196, 265
moving 1382
project search path 1382
repositories and 196, 265
save selected text as snippet 1307
save topic as snippet 1307
using 196, 265
vs. multiple references 1527
snippets folders
project search path 1405
setting locations for 1405
sorting tables 530
sorting TOC entries 363
source code
color code entry tool 1030
editor 1030
leading spaces for indents 299, 310
pixel ems calculator 1030
syntax highlighting 310
source code documentation
.NET source documentation with Sandcastle 1125, 1126
commenting your code 1127
configuring your .NET project 1127
source code for the Help+Manual help 121
spaces
hard spaces 1500
multiple spaces in HTML 1500
spaces for indents 299, 310
spacing
unexpected changes 1637
special characters
curly quotes 245
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1387
inserting 245
typographic quotes 245
Spell Checker
configuring 1220
custom user dictionaries 1226, 1228, 1645
dictionaries 1220
disabling for selected styles 1220
hyphenation 1220
OpenOffice dictionaries 1220
using 1220
spell checking
auto-correct 238
configuring 238
custom dictionaries 238
custom user dictionaries 1645
live spell checking 94, 238
manual 238
multiple languages 238
TOC captions 238
status
edit 1304
status (dialog reference) 1410
style inheritance
in table styles 533
style repositories for shared styles and snippets
about 1076
creating and using 1078
snippets in 1086
styles in 1083
variables in 1087
styles
about 1482
aligning tables with 537
applying to table contents 308, 537
applying to tables 308
can't reformat empty paragraphs 1636
changing on the basis of selection 288
changing parent 288
converting styles 1491

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

styles
copying from other projects 306
copying text without styles 233
creating from selection 1346
defining 281
defining from selection 281, 295
defining new 96
different styles for PDF, DOCX and eBooks 302
display in Toolbar 279
dynamic linking and inheritance 1484, 1485
editing 288, 1347
explained 1484, 1485
families 1497
formatting text with 292
H1 - H6 headings for HTML 286
image captions and comments 305
image styles 492, 1492
imported 281, 295
importing from another project 281, 295
importing from RTF 157
importing with style repositories 1083
in skin files 638, 667
in style reposities 1083
in tables 308
inheritance trees 1485, 1497
moving and renaming 288
organization strategies 1497
paragraph and text styles 292, 1491
paragraph style "stuck" 1636
preview mode 302
quick guide to using 277
renaming 1497
replacing, about 1143
searching and replacing, about 1144
selecting and applying 292
smaller files with styles 1482
source code 310
standard styles 1490
standardizing for team projects 1171
syntax highlighting 310
table styles 107, 533, 1491
toolbar display 1491
using (tutorial) 96
using in numbered and bulleted lists 334
why use? 1482
styles preview mode (screen/print) 94, 223
stylesheets
applying from project template 1008
copying between projects 306
subtitles in video 563
subtopics
exclude all a topic's subtopics 989
Subversion 1272
activate/deactivate 1272
client library location, manual setting 1272
support address 65
support email link 1399
Surface Pro - hi-res displays 44
SVG graphics 797
in CHM and Internet Explorer 496, 500, 1532
responsive images 496, 500, 1532
SVG images 479
SVN 1272
activate/deactivate 1272
client library location, manual setting 1272
symbols
inserting 1387
syntax highlighting
customizing 310
exporting and importing settings 310
Format menu 1331
leading spaces for indents 310
sharing settings with other users 310
system locale
changing for Unicode 1627
system locale, changing for language compatibility 143

- T -

tab stops
and indents 1500
not supported in HTML 1500, 1638
table and figure numbering 944
table grid lines
displaying darker 1265
Table of Contents 48
changing topic icons in 373
defined 48
docking and undocking 1646
multiple entries for one topic 371
multi-user editing 1171
organizing 100
overview 100
promoting and demoting topics in 364
spell checking 238
timestamps 373

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Table of Contents section
about, in Project Explorer 173
table of figures 689
table of tables 689
table styles 107, 1347, 1491
applying 96, 533
creating tables with 533
CSS classes for 308
defining 96, 533
multiple classes for one table 533
table styles (dialog reference) 1347
Table tab (dialog reference) 1390
table width and height 1502
tables
about 519
about table sizing 1502
adding, deleting, moving rows/columns 528
auto-incrementing table IDs 535
background images 540
borders 541
captions 535
column width problems 1646
column widths 520, 522
conditional text in tables 542, 996
converting tables to text 531
converting text to tables 531
copying and pasting in 519
copying multiple cells 519
counters 535
creating 520
CSS classes for 308
deleting cell contents 531
displaying grid lines darker 1265
formatting 525
including and excluding rows and columns 542, 996
indenting and centering 532
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1391
inserting 107
manipulating 107
merging/unmerging cells 529
nested 539
paragraph settings for 532
printing settings 520
resizing 525
rotated text 525
selecting 525
size options 520
sorting 530
splitting cells 529
splitting tables 529
styles and 308
table captions 535
table IDs 535
table styles 519
tabs
and indents 1500
not supported in HTML 1500
Task Manager 809
creating and editing publishing tasks 812
using publishing tasks 810
tasks - batch publishing jobs 809, 810
creating and editing 812
redefining variables 812
TCard() macro
translation in HTML Help 452, 1544
templates
automatic for new topics 1016
color code entry tool 1030
content templates for new topics 174
external templates included with Help+Manual 116
for eBooks 1024
for PDF 786
for PDF and printed manuals 800, 1019
for PDF and printed manuals, using 803
for projects 1008
for topics (with content) 1016
HTML templates 1021, 1028
HTML templates, conditional output 1052
HTML templates, creating new 1030
HTML templates, editing 1030
HTML templates, external file references in 1062
HTML templates, graphics references in 1056
HTML templates, troubleshooting 1075
HTML templates, variables in 1049
HTML topic templates 1036
HTML topic templates, creating 1036
Index template for WebHelp 1045
PDF templates with Print Manual Designer 805, 1217
pixel ems calculator 1030
Search template for WebHelp 1046
template types defined 1007
TOC template for WebHelp 1044
templates for new topics 1016
templates for new topics, automatic 1016
templates, HTML page

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

templates, HTML page
background colors 203
headers and footers 203
navigation links 203
setting for individual topics 203
temporary files
change folder location 651, 771, 775
HTML Help files 1508
testing projects 779
testing WebHelp with HM2Go mini server 673
text
copying unformatted 233
copying without formatting 1296, 1324
copying, cutting and pasting 233
format painter tool 274
formatting manually 274
formatting with styles 292
in images, translating 1197
selecting 232
wrapping around graphics 489
text style 253
text styles 253, 292, 1491
creating from selection 1346
defining 281
defining from selection 281, 295
display in Toolbar 279
editing 1347
naming for easy finding 1497
Text Variable
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1370
text variables
managing 1406
settings in Project Configuration 1406
three-frame layout 655, 660
Tidy XML
about 1198
activate and apply to project 1411
strip manual formatting globally 1198
TIF images 479
timestamp
of HTML topic files 1435, 1459
timestamps
topic and TOC timestamps 373
title & copyright notice 1402
title bar text 1402
title pages in PDF
tutorial 118
TOC 48
about, in Project Explorer 173
alternative TOCs 589
changing topic icons in 373
check out to edit with VCS systems 1171
custom icons in WebHelp 373
defined 48
disable Drag & Drop 1304
docking and undocking 1646
expand/collapse 1304
filter by build options 1261, 1304
filter display with build options 982
filtering by build options 77, 377
multiple entries for one topic 371
multiple TOCs 592
multi-user editing 1171
promoting and demoting topics in 364
setting color for read-only topics 1171, 1265
spell checking 238
timestamps 373
variables in 934
TOC entries
adding to topic files 179
deleting with and without topic files 361
deleting without deleting topic 179
sorting 363
TOC link to web page 183
TOC template 1611
toggles 384, 389, 392
about 383
animation 383
copying 395
copying and editing 396
CSS styles for links 399
duplicate ID conflicts 396
examples 382
Expand All / Collapse All functions 402
IDs 404
IDs, auto-incrementing 395
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1373
nesting 382
output file size 404
pre-expanding toggles for printing 407
Print button with Expand All 402
printing 407
Pro version only 382
support in output formats 382
troubleshooting 404
types 383

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

toggles 384, 389, 392
updating old expanding sections 406
toggles, expanding images
converting existing images 392
creating 392
formatting with CSS 392
toggles, expanding inline text
creating 389
formatting text and links 389
toggles, expanding sections
creating 384
editing 384
embedded topics in 384
formatting headers 384
icons, suppressing in PDF etc. 384
icons, swapping 384
icons, using in 384
indents in 384
nesting 384
supported content 384
toggles, troubleshooting
large output files 404
page breaks in PDFs and printed manuals 404
problems with expanding section toggles 404
problems with formatting in toggle links 404
problems with IDs 404
Tooltips 1587
topic
convert to chapter with/without text 1304
load from file 1307
reload function 1307
save snippet (selected text) 1307
save to file 1307
status 1304
topic caption (in TOC)
editing 189, 360
link with topic header (off/on) 189, 360
topic class 1298
topic content templates 1016
defined 1007
topic files
about - general introduction 173
auto-generating from map files 179
creating without TOC entries 179
deleting 77, 377
deleting with and without TOC entries 361
find topic files with no TOC entry 77, 377, 1212
importing into individual topics 155
include options with 179
managing 77, 377
moving 77, 377
organizing in folders 375
sorting and grouping 77, 377
Topic Files section 48
creating new folders in 179
defined 48
topic header (editing box above topic)
additional content in 191, 229
changing background color 191, 229
editing 189, 360, 1036
formatting 191, 229
in electronic help formats 191, 229
in PDF, RTF and printed manuals 191, 229
link with topic caption (off/on) 189, 360
turning off for individual topics 189, 360
turning on and off 191, 229
topic headings
in PDF 790
topic icons
changing in TOC 373
topic IDs
about 1600, 1601
assigning and choosing 368
auto-correcting blanks in 1265
changing globally 1107
descriptive 368
editing 368
editing/changing 1601
finding 235, 782
hierarchical 368
in modular projects 1107
listing 1212
maximum length 1601
permitted characters 1601
prefixes, generating automatically 368
settings in Project Configuration 1411
topic include options
checking and correcting dead links 989
exclude all a topic's subtopics 989
setting and editing 989
topics without TOC entries 989
topic links
compatibility in output formats 410
creating multiple 410
inserting 410
page referrers for links in PDF 410

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

topic links
quick captions 410
to figures and captions 420
Topic Options
cannot undock 1646
topic page template 1611
topic status
edit 1304
topic status (dialog reference) 1410
topic templates 1016
topic templates, HTML
breadcrumb trail navigation 1036
creating new 1036
using and editing 1036
topics
about - general introduction 173
and project search path 165
auto-generating with map files 1598
background colors 194
copying and pasting between projects 165
creating and editing 172
creating multiple in TOC 174
creating new 91
creating new in TOC 174
creating popups 207
creating with templates 174
creating without TOC entries 179
cutting and pasting 100
display in external windows 1025
displaying in external windows 194
edit caption (title) 1308
edit in multiple tabs 55
editing caption and header 189, 360
exclude topics from search in CHM 645
exclude topics from search in WebHelp 664
exporting 165
exporting and importing 365
field-level popups 1598
finding 235, 782
finding references to 1306
formatting 165
implicitly included compiler message 1635
importing 165
include options with 179
inserting JavaScript in 1540
last topic edited, returning to 217
listing editing dates 1212
move up/down 1308
moving 100
moving, cutting and pasting 357
multiple TOC entries for one topic 371
multi-user editing 1171
opening in external windows 469
print 1308
printing single and multiple topics 263
promote/demote 1308
promoting and demoting in the TOC 364
publish only complete topics 613
recently changed, editing 217
recently changed, get a link list 217
saving as snippets 365
sharing 165
snippets 165
snippets vs. multiple references 1527
styles 165
testing 780, 782
text is unformatted! 165
timestamps 373
TOC link to external help file 183
translating 1194
topics without TOC entries
creating 179, 375
include options with 179
organizing in folders 375
Trados 1177
configuration file for 1187
INI file for 1177
training card help 1587
translatable elements in XML 1200
translate="false" 1200
translating individual topics 1194
translating individual topics with XML
tutorials 1194
translating projects
and localization 1177
project synchronization and 1245
text in images 1197
translating projects in Help+Manual 1191
translating with external editors 1194
translation 1177, 1194, 1197
procedure 1191
protecting text against changes and translation 1191
translation and localization
DeepL 1178
features and support 1177

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

translation and localization
machine translation 1178
translation memory 1187
tutorials 1177
translation memory 1187
transparent background
activate for IPP images 506
triple click to select paragraph 223
troubleshooting 1271
TrueType fonts
cannot embed font message in PDF 1447
embedding in PDF files 1447
tutorials
adding topics 91
background images for topics and headers 122
conditional output 120
creating hyperlinks 110
creating projects 69
customized icons for WebHelp TOC 122
DHTML Examples 122
entering and editing text 94
expanding and collapsing sections 122
external tutorials included with Help+Manual 116
featured images 118
inserting graphics 104
inserting tables 107
modular help systems 120
multiple TOCs 119
navigation buttons 122
non-scrolling headers 122
organizing the TOC 100
Print link 122
publishing projects 113
Quick Start 69
styling hyperlinks with CSS 122
suppress underlined TOC entries in Firefox 122
title pages in PDF 118
using Help+Manual 65
Using Styles 96
videos and online media 119
TXT files
importing into individual topics 155
Type 14 fonts 1447
Type 3 fonts 1447
typographic quotes 245

- U -

Unicode
about support in H+M 1627
editing requirements 1627
international language setup 143
now supported in PDF 1632
publishing requirements 1627
which languages require 1627
Windows requirements for 1627
Unicode mode in Windows 1629
unused images, locating and removing 1212
update checker 1399
update checking function
and firewalls 1261
configuring 1261
updating graphics quickly 481
URLs
detecting automatically 1265
user dictionaries
for spell checker 238
multi-user 238
storage locations 238
user interface 43
Application Button 53
customizing 59
dialog icons 53
editor 55
menu icons 53
Project Explorer 48
Quick Access Toolbar 53
Ribbon Toolbar 53
user manuals
using hi-res graphics in 503
user-defined variables
where supported 919
UTF-8
not supported in HTML Help 143
UTF-8 BOM, switch off for PHP 1435

- V -

variable name syntax 919
variable names
editing in the editor 924
variables

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

variables
about 917, 1558
breadrcrumb trail variable 1569
counter variables for numbering 941
date and time formatting 932
date and time formatting in 937, 1565
disable variable highlight 924
disabling 924
editing and formatting 924
find and replace 958
formatting and styles with 924
global predefined variables 923, 1561
HTML variables 917
in HTML templates 959, 1049, 1611
in PDF templates 968, 1581
in style repositories 1087
Insert dialog (dialog reference) 1370
inserting in topics and headers 932
managing 1406
maximum characters 917
nesting - variable as value of another variable 924
plain-text variables 917
protected variables 919
redefining for conditional output 960, 1004
redefining in command line options 834
redefining in individual topics 960
redefining per topic 963
redefining with publishing tasks 963
redefining with skins 638, 667, 834
search and replace 958
search engine optimization 963
settings in Project Configuration 1406
typing manually 932
user-defined, creating and editing 919
user-defined, importing and exporting 919
using outside topics 934
variable name syntax 919, 923
where supported 917, 1558
with and without highlight 932, 958
VCS
advantages 848
and multi-user editing 848
and remote editing 848
backups 891
control visibility 848
graphics and additional files 1120
manual check-out and check-in 1411
Project tab functions 1307
supported systems 848
unbinding projects 891
Version Control Systems
advantages 848
and multi-user editing 848
and remote editing 848
backups 891
control visibility 848
graphics and additional files 1120
introduction 848
manual check-out and check-in 1411
Project tab functions 1307
supported systems 848
unbinding projects 891
vertical alignment of OLE objects 1140
vertical ruler
display 1265
video 563
HTML5 video tag 563
subtitles 563
video files 548
about 1529
converting to M4V and MP4 549
HelpXplain presentations and screencasts 561
inserting in topics 549
support in output formats 563, 1536
video preview function not working 1647
videos not playing properly 1647
videos and online media
tutorial project 119
Visual Source Safe
support in HM 848
Visual SourceSafe
Project tab functions 1307
Visual Studio Help (MS Help 2.0)
about 1132
compiler 1132
configuring Visual Studio Help output 775
example calls 1135
export options 1464
F-Index 1464
limitations 1132
namespace 1135, 1464
popups 1466
publishing 113, 1135
registering HXS files 1135
requirements 1132
settings in Project Configuration 1464

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Visual Studio Help (MS Help 2.0)
unique identifier 1135, 1464
Visual Studio Help (MS Help 2.0/3.0)
publishing 613
Visual Studio Help Integration Kit 1132
Visual Studio Help/Help 2.0
about 1525
pros and cons 1525
VSIK 1132

- W -

web pages
inserting in topics 183
WebHelp
3-frame layout 655
about 1510
and modular projects 1117
appearance in different browsers 655
application calls 899
ASP search 1428
browser compatibility 1512
configuring output 655
context calls and 440, 899
custom icons 373
deleting output folder before publishing 613, 1282, 1310, 1644
displaying topics without TOC 440, 899
expand automatically on open 655
frames settings 1415
FTP folder synching with archive bits 1435
full-text search 655, 1046
full-text search issues 613, 1644
full-text search settings 1428
Google Analytics 655
HM2Go mini server 673
HTML page templates 1413
index separators 1425
integrated web server for testing 613
JavaScript popups 1512
Keyword Index settings 1425
language files for Search interface 116
Layout section in Project Configuration 655
layout settings 1415
link syntax 1117
linking to 440
linking to anchors in 415
linking to context IDs in WebHelp 899
linking to WebHelp topics 899
links between projects 1117
links to 457
navigation behavior (single or double click) 655
Navigation section in Project Configuration 655
navigation settings 1420
PHP search 1428
phrasal searching 1428
popup topics settings 1440
pros and cons 1510
publishing 113
search engine optimization 1420
settings in Project Configuration 1415
sitemap file, generating 655
support for videos and animations 563
syntax for calls/links to 440, 899
testing with HM2Go mini server 673
three-frame layout 655
TOC settings 1423
video files support 1536
WebHelp links to context IDs 440
WebHelp statistics with Google Analytics 666
welcome page 21
Welcome section 48
defined 48
What's This? help 1587
windows
docking and undocking 1646
external windows 469
secondary windows 469
Windows metafiles 1529
Winhelp files
settings for importing 157
Winhelp macros
about 1544
translation in HTML Help 452, 1544
wizards 1587
WMF images 479, 1529
Word
copying and pasting from/to 94
copying from and to 233
pasting graphics from 104, 1535
word count and character count 223, 781, 1212
Word DOCX
about 1525
configuring Word DOCX output 682
pros and cons 1525
table of figures 689

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved

Word DOCX
table of tables 689
Word files (RTF)
importing graphics from (troubleshooting) 157
settings for importing 157
word formatting
automatic for word left of cursor 1637
Word macros
distribute DOCX without macros 695
update Word fields without macros 695
Word macros 695
Word RTF
videos and animations 563
workspace (about) 1275
Wrensoft Zoom WebHelp search indexer 1433
writing and formatting text in the editor 223

- X -

X5 and X6 projects
settings for importing 157
XML
activate and apply Tidy XML 1411
and translating projects 1194
exporting text in Impict images 506
strip manual formatting globally 1198
translation-friendly Tidy XML 1198
XML editing 1137
XML elements
translatable elements 1200
XML Export/Import
text in images 1197
XML files
check list for translators and editors 1200
editable elements 1200
exporting/importing topics 365
importing 165
reusing as snippets 165
XML schema 1194
documentation 264
XML schema and stylesheet files 116
XML source code
complex search and replace 1137
editing 264, 1137
XSL stylesheets for previews 1137
XML Source tab 264, 1137
editing XML source code 223
XML topic files
importing into individual topics 155
XSL stylesheets for previews 1137

- Y -

Yoga Pro - hi-res displays 44
YouTube videos
embedding in topics 549

- Z -

zoom factor for graphics 481, 503
Zoom Indexer for WebHelp search
using full version 1433

© 2023 by EC Software, all rights reserved